



# **EDB Postgres Advanced Server**

## **Version 13**

1	ECPGPlus Guide	20
1.1	ECPGPlus - Overview	20
1.2	Using Embedded SQL	25
1.3	Using Descriptors	32
1.4	Building and Executing Dynamic SQL Statements	42
1.5	Error Handling	57
1.6	Reference	62
2	EDB pgAdmin4 Quickstart Linux Guide for EPAS	91
3	EDB Plus User Guide	94
3.1	EDB*Plus	95
3.2	Installing EDB*Plus	95
3.3	Using EDB*Plus	104
3.4	Using a Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) Connection	106
3.5	Command Summary	112
4	Database Compatibility for Oracle® Developers Built-in Package Guide	129
4.1	Packages	129
4.1.1	Package Components	130
4.1.2	Creating Packages	136
4.1.3	Referencing a Package	139
4.1.4	Using Packages With User Defined Types	139
4.1.5	Dropping a Package	142
4.2	Built-In Packages	143
4.2.1	DBMS_ALERT	143
4.2.2	DBMS_AQ	150
4.2.2.1	ENQUEUE	152
4.2.2.2	DEQUEUE	154
4.2.2.3	REGISTER	157
4.2.2.4	UNREGISTER	158
4.2.3	DBMS_AQADM	160
4.2.3.1	ALTER_QUEUE	161
4.2.3.2	ALTER_QUEUE_TABLE	162
4.2.3.3	CREATE_QUEUE	163
4.2.3.4	CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE	164
4.2.3.5	DROP_QUEUE	166
4.2.3.6	DROP_QUEUE_TABLE	166
4.2.3.7	PURGE_QUEUE_TABLE	167
4.2.3.8	START_QUEUE	168
4.2.3.9	STOP_QUEUE	169
4.2.4	DBMS_CRYPTO	169
4.2.4.1	DECRYPT	170
4.2.4.2	ENCRYPT	172
4.2.4.3	HASH	174
4.2.4.4	MAC	175
4.2.4.5	RANDOMBYTES	175
4.2.4.6	RANDOMINTEGER	176
4.2.4.7	RANDOMNUMBER	176
4.2.5	DBMS_JOB	177
4.2.5.1	BROKEN	178

4.2.5.2	CHANGE	179
4.2.5.3	INTERVAL	179
4.2.5.4	NEXT_DATE	180
4.2.5.5	REMOVE	180
4.2.5.6	RUN	181
4.2.5.7	SUBMIT	181
4.2.5.8	WHAT	182
4.2.6	DBMS_LOB	183
4.2.6.1	APPEND	184
4.2.6.2	COMPARE	185
4.2.6.3	CONVERTTOBLOB	185
4.2.6.4	CONVERTTOCLOB	186
4.2.6.5	COPY	187
4.2.6.6	ERASE	188
4.2.6.7	GET_STORAGE_LIMIT	189
4.2.6.8	GETLENGTH	189
4.2.6.9	INSTR	189
4.2.6.10	READ	190
4.2.6.11	SUBSTR	191
4.2.6.12	TRIM	191
4.2.6.13	WRITE	191
4.2.6.14	WRITEAPPEND	192
4.2.7	DBMS_LOCK	192
4.2.8	DBMS_MVIEW	193
4.2.8.1	GET_MV_DEPENDENCIES	194
4.2.8.2	REFRESH	194
4.2.8.3	REFRESH_ALL_MVIEWS	196
4.2.8.4	REFRESH_DEPENDENT	197
4.2.9	DBMS_OUTPUT	198
4.2.10	DBMS_PIPE	206
4.2.10.1	CREATE_PIPE	207
4.2.10.2	NEXT_ITEM_TYPE	208
4.2.10.3	PACK_MESSAGE	210
4.2.10.4	PURGE	210
4.2.10.5	RECEIVE_MESSAGE	212
4.2.10.6	REMOVE_PIPE	212
4.2.10.7	RESET_BUFFER	214
4.2.10.8	SEND_MESSAGE	215
4.2.10.9	UNIQUE_SESSION_NAME	215
4.2.10.10	UNPACK_MESSAGE	216
4.2.10.11	Comprehensive Example	216
4.2.11	DBMS_PROFILER	219
4.2.12	DBMS_RANDOM	238
4.2.13	DBMS_REDACT	242
4.2.14	DBMS_RLS	263
4.2.15	DBMS_SCHEDULER	273
4.2.15.1	Using Calendar Syntax to Specify a Repeating Interval	275
4.2.15.2	CREATE_JOB	276

4.2.15.3	CREATE_PROGRAM	278
4.2.15.4	CREATE_SCHEDULE	279
4.2.15.5	DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT	281
4.2.15.6	DISABLE	282
4.2.15.7	DROP_JOB	282
4.2.15.8	DROP_PROGRAM	283
4.2.15.9	DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT	284
4.2.15.10	DROP_SCHEDULE	285
4.2.15.11	ENABLE	285
4.2.15.12	EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING	286
4.2.15.13	RUN_JOB	287
4.2.15.14	SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE	287
4.2.16	DBMS_SESSION	288
4.2.17	DBMS_SQL	289
4.2.17.1	BIND_VARIABLE	290
4.2.17.2	BIND_VARIABLE_CHAR	292
4.2.17.3	BIND VARIABLE RAW	292
4.2.17.4	CLOSE_CURSOR	293
4.2.17.5	COLUMN_VALUE	293
4.2.17.6	COLUMN_VALUE_CHAR	295
4.2.17.7	COLUMN_VALUE_RAW	295
4.2.17.8	DEFINE_COLUMN	296
4.2.17.9	DEFINE_COLUMN_CHAR	298
4.2.17.10	DEFINE_COLUMN_RAW	298
4.2.17.11	DESCRIBE COLUMNS	300
4.2.17.12	EXECUTE	300
4.2.17.13	EXECUTE_AND_FETCH	301
4.2.17.14	FETCH_ROWS	303
4.2.17.15	IS_OPEN	304
4.2.17.16	LAST_ROW_COUNT	305
4.2.17.17	OPEN_CURSOR	307
4.2.17.18	PARSE	307
4.2.18	DBMS.Utility	309
4.2.19	UTL_ENCODE	322
4.2.19.1	BASE64_DECODE	323
4.2.19.2	BASE64_ENCODE	324
4.2.19.3	MIMEHEADER_DECODE	325
4.2.19.4	MIMEHEADER_ENCODE	325
4.2.19.5	QUOTED_PRINTABLE_DECODE	326
4.2.19.6	QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ENCODE	327
4.2.19.7	TEXT_DECODE	328
4.2.19.8	TEXT_ENCODE	329
4.2.19.9	UUDECODE	330
4.2.19.10	UUENCODE	331
4.2.20	UTL_FILE	332
4.2.21	UTL_HTTP	347
4.2.22	UTL_MAIL	365
4.2.23	UTL_RAW	368

4.2.24	UTL_SMTP	373
4.2.25	UTL_URL	381
5	Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Catalog Views Guide	384
5.1	ALL_ALL_TABLES	384
5.2	ALL_CONS_COLUMNS	385
5.3	ALL_CONSTRAINTS	385
5.4	ALL_COL_PRIVS	386
5.5	ALL_DB_LINKS	387
5.6	ALL_DEPENDENCIES	387
5.7	ALL_DIRECTORIES	387
5.8	ALL_IND_COLUMNS	388
5.9	ALL_INDEXES	388
5.10	ALL_JOBS	389
5.11	ALL_OBJECTS	389
5.12	ALL_PART_KEY_COLUMNS	390
5.13	ALL_PART_TABLES	390
5.14	ALL_POLICIES	391
5.15	ALL_QUEUES	392
5.16	ALL_QUEUE_TABLES	393
5.17	ALL_SEQUENCES	394
5.18	ALL_SOURCE	394
5.19	ALL_SUBPART_KEY_COLUMNS	395
5.20	ALL_SYNONYMS	395
5.21	ALL_TAB_COLUMNS	395
5.22	ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS	396
5.23	ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS	397
5.24	ALL_TAB_PRIVS	398
5.25	ALL_TABLES	399
5.26	ALL_TRIGGERS	399
5.27	ALL_TYPES	400
5.28	ALL_USERS	400
5.29	ALL_VIEW_COLUMNS	400
5.30	ALL_VIEWS	401
5.31	DBA_ALL_TABLES	401
5.32	DBA_CONS_COLUMNS	402
5.33	DBA_CONSTRAINTS	402
5.34	DBA_COL_PRIVS	403
5.35	DBA_DB_LINKS	403
5.36	DBA_DIRECTORIES	404
5.37	DBA_DEPENDENCIES	404
5.38	DBA_IND_COLUMNS	405
5.39	DBA_INDEXES	405
5.40	DBA_JOBS	406
5.41	DBA_OBJECTS	407
5.42	DBA_PART_KEY_COLUMNS	407
5.43	DBA_PART_TABLES	407
5.44	DBA_POLICIES	408
5.45	DBA_PROFILES	409

5.46	DBA_QUEUES	409
5.47	DBA_QUEUE_TABLES	410
5.48	DBA_ROLE_PRIVS	411
5.49	DBA_ROLES	412
5.50	DBA_SEQUENCES	412
5.51	DBA_SOURCE	412
5.52	DBA_SUBPART_KEY_COLUMNS	413
5.53	DBA_SYNONYMS	413
5.54	DBA_TAB_COLUMNS	413
5.55	DBA_TAB_PARTITIONS	414
5.56	DBA_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS	415
5.57	DBA_TAB_PRIVS	416
5.58	DBA_TABLES	417
5.59	DBA_TRIGGERS	417
5.60	DBA_TYPES	418
5.61	DBA_USERS	418
5.62	DBA_VIEW_COLUMNS	419
5.63	DBA_VIEWS	419
5.64	USER_ALL_TABLES	420
5.65	USER_CONS_COLUMNS	420
5.66	USER_CONSTRAINTS	420
5.67	USER_COL_PRIVS	421
5.68	USER_DB_LINKS	422
5.69	USER_DEPENDENCIES	422
5.70	USER_INDEXES	423
5.71	USER_JOBS	424
5.72	USER_OBJECTS	424
5.73	USER_PART_TABLES	425
5.74	USER_POLICIES	426
5.75	USER_QUEUES	426
5.76	USER_QUEUE_TABLES	427
5.77	USER_ROLE_PRIVS	428
5.78	USER_SEQUENCES	428
5.79	USER_SOURCE	429
5.80	USER_SUBPART_KEY_COLUMNS	429
5.81	USER_SYNONYMS	430
5.82	USER_TAB_COLUMNS	430
5.83	USER_TAB_PARTITIONS	430
5.84	USER_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS	431
5.85	USER_TAB_PRIVS	432
5.86	USER_TABLES	433
5.87	USER_TRIGGERS	433
5.88	USER_TYPES	434
5.89	USER_USERS	434
5.90	USER_VIEW_COLUMNS	435
5.91	USER_VIEWS	436
5.92	V\$VERSION	436
5.93	PRODUCT_COMPONENT_VERSION	436

<b>6</b>	<b>Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers</b>	<b>437</b>
6.1	Configuration Parameters Compatible with Oracle Databases	437
6.1.1	edb_redwood_date	438
6.1.2	edb_redwood_raw_names	438
6.1.3	edb_redwood_strings	439
6.1.4	edb_stmt_level_tx	441
6.1.5	oracle_home	442
6.2	About the Examples Used in this Guide	442
6.3	SQL Tutorial	443
6.3.1	Sample Database	444
6.3.1.1	Sample Database Installation	444
6.3.1.2	Sample Database Description	444
6.3.2	Creating a New Table	455
6.3.3	Populating a Table With Rows	456
6.3.4	Querying a Table	456
6.3.5	Joins Between Tables	458
6.3.6	Aggregate Functions	461
6.3.7	Updates	463
6.3.8	Deletions	463
6.3.9	The SQL Language	464
6.4	Advanced Concepts	464
6.4.1	Views	465
6.4.2	Foreign Keys	466
6.4.3	The ROWNUM Pseudo-Column	466
6.4.4	Synonyms	468
6.4.5	Hierarchical Queries	470
6.4.5.1	Defining the Parent/Child Relationship	471
6.4.5.2	Selecting the Root Nodes	472
6.4.5.3	Organization Tree in the Sample Application	472
6.4.5.4	Node Level	473
6.4.5.5	Ordering the Siblings	474
6.4.5.6	Retrieving the Root Node with CONNECT_BY_ROOT	475
6.4.5.7	Retrieving a Path with SYS_CONNECT_BY_PATH	478
6.4.6	Multidimensional Analysis	479
6.4.6.1	ROLLUP Extension	481
6.4.6.2	CUBE Extension	484
6.4.6.3	GROUPING SETS Extension	487
6.4.6.4	GROUPING Function	492
6.4.6.5	GROUPING_ID Function	495
6.5	Profile Management	497
6.5.1	Creating a New Profile	498
6.5.1.1	Creating a Password Function	500
6.5.2	Altering a Profile	502
6.5.3	Dropping a Profile	503
6.5.4	Associating a Profile with an Existing Role	504
6.5.5	Unlocking a Locked Account	505
6.5.6	Creating a New Role Associated with a Profile	506
6.5.7	Backing up Profile Management Functions	508

6.6	Optimizer Hints	508
6.6.1	Default Optimization Modes	509
6.6.2	Access Method Hints	511
6.6.3	Specifying a Join Order	515
6.6.4	Joining Relations Hints	515
6.6.5	Global Hints	518
6.6.6	Using the APPEND Optimizer Hint	521
6.6.7	Parallelism Hints	521
6.6.8	Conflicting Hints	525
6.7	dblink_ora	526
6.7.1	dblink_ora Functions and Procedures	526
6.7.1.1	dblink_ora_connect()	527
6.7.1.2	dblink_ora_status()	527
6.7.1.3	dblink_ora_disconnect()	528
6.7.1.4	dblink_ora_record()	528
6.7.1.5	dblink_ora_call()	528
6.7.1.6	dblink_ora_exec()	529
6.7.1.7	dblink_ora_copy()	529
6.7.2	Calling dblink_ora Functions	530
6.8	Open Client Library	530
6.9	Oracle Catalog Views	531
6.10	Tools and Utilities	531
6.11	ECPGPlus	532
6.12	System Catalog Tables	532
7	Database Compatibility for Oracle® Developers Reference Guide	532
7.1	The SQL Language	533
7.1.1	SQL Syntax	533
7.1.1.1	Lexical Structure	533
7.1.1.2	Identifiers and Key Words	534
7.1.1.3	Constants	535
7.1.1.4	Comments	537
7.1.2	Data Types	537
7.1.2.1	Numeric Types	538
7.1.2.2	Character Types	540
7.1.2.3	Binary Data	541
7.1.2.4	Date/Time Types	541
7.1.2.5	Boolean Types	545
7.1.2.6	XML Type	545
7.1.3	Functions and Operators	546
7.1.3.1	Logical Operators	546
7.1.3.2	Comparison Operators	546
7.1.3.3	Mathematical Functions and Operators	547
7.1.3.4	String Functions and Operators	550
7.1.3.5	Pattern Matching String Functions	556
7.1.3.6	Pattern Matching Using the LIKE Operator	560
7.1.3.7	Data Type Formatting Functions	560
7.1.3.8	Date/Time Functions and Operators	566
7.1.3.9	Sequence Manipulation Functions	581

7.1.3.10	Conditional Expressions	582
7.1.3.11	Aggregate Functions	585
7.1.3.12	Subquery Expressions	591
7.2	System Catalog Tables	593
8	Database Compatibility Stored Procedural Language Guide	597
8.1	Character Set	597
8.1.1	Case Sensitivity	597
8.1.2	Identifiers	598
8.1.3	Qualifiers	598
8.1.4	Constants	599
8.1.5	User-Defined PL/SQL Subtypes	599
8.2	SPL Programs	601
8.2.1	Basic SPL Elements	601
8.2.1.1	Character Set	602
8.2.1.2	Case Sensitivity	602
8.2.1.3	Identifiers	602
8.2.1.4	Qualifiers	603
8.2.1.5	Constants	604
8.2.1.6	User-Defined PL/SQL Subtypes	604
8.2.2	SPL Block Structure	606
8.2.3	Anonymous Blocks	608
8.2.4	Procedures Overview	608
8.2.4.1	Creating a Procedure	608
8.2.4.2	Calling a Procedure	612
8.2.4.3	Deleting a Procedure	612
8.2.5	Functions Overview	613
8.2.5.1	Creating a Function	613
8.2.5.2	Calling a Function	617
8.2.5.3	Deleting a Function	618
8.2.6	Procedure and Function Parameters	618
8.2.6.1	Positional vs. Named Parameter Notation	620
8.2.6.2	Parameter Modes	622
8.2.6.3	Using Default Values in Parameters	623
8.2.7	Subprograms – Subprocedures and Subfunctions	624
8.2.7.1	Creating a Subprocedure	624
8.2.7.2	Creating a Subfunction	627
8.2.7.3	Block Relationships	628
8.2.7.4	Invoking Subprograms	630
8.2.7.5	Using Forward Declarations	636
8.2.7.6	Overloading Subprograms	638
8.2.7.7	Accessing Subprogram Variables	641
8.2.8	Compilation Errors in Procedures and Functions	648
8.2.9	Program Security	649
8.2.9.1	EXECUTE Privilege	650
8.2.9.2	Database Object Name Resolution	650
8.2.9.3	Database Object Privileges	651
8.2.9.4	Definer's vs. Invokers Rights	651
8.2.9.5	Security Example	652

8.3	Variable Declarations	657
8.3.1	Declaring a Variable	657
8.3.2	Using %TYPE in Variable Declarations	658
8.3.3	Using %ROWTYPE in Record Declarations	660
8.3.4	User-Defined Record Types and Record Variables	661
8.4	Basic Statements	663
8.4.1	Assignment	663
8.4.2	DELETE	664
8.4.3	INSERT	665
8.4.4	NULL	667
8.4.5	Using the RETURNING INTO Clause	667
8.4.6	SELECT INTO	670
8.4.7	UPDATE	671
8.4.8	Obtaining the Result Status	672
8.5	Control Structures	673
8.5.1	IF Statement	673
8.5.1.1	IF-THEN	674
8.5.1.2	IF-THEN-ELSE	674
8.5.1.3	IF-THEN-ELSE IF	675
8.5.1.4	IF-THEN-ELSIF-ELSE	677
8.5.2	RETURN Statement	678
8.5.3	GOTO Statement	679
8.5.4	CASE Expression	680
8.5.4.1	Selector CASE Expression	681
8.5.4.2	Searched CASE Expression	682
8.5.5	CASE Statement	683
8.5.5.1	Selector CASE Statement	683
8.5.5.2	Searched CASE Statement	685
8.5.6	Loops	686
8.5.6.1	LOOP	687
8.5.6.2	EXIT	687
8.5.6.3	CONTINUE	688
8.5.6.4	WHILE	688
8.5.6.5	FOR (integer variant)	689
8.5.7	Exception Handling	690
8.5.8	User-defined Exceptions	692
8.5.9	PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT	693
8.5.10	RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR	695
8.6	Transaction Control	696
8.6.1	COMMIT	697
8.6.2	ROLLBACK	698
8.6.3	PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION	702
8.7	Dynamic SQL	709
8.8	Static Cursors	710
8.8.1	Declaring a Cursor	711
8.8.2	Opening a Cursor	711
8.8.3	Fetching Rows From a Cursor	712
8.8.4	Closing a Cursor	713

8.8.5	Using %ROWTYPE With Cursors	714
8.8.6	Cursor Attributes	714
8.8.6.1	%ISOPEN	715
8.8.6.2	%FOUND	715
8.8.6.3	%NOTFOUND	716
8.8.6.4	%ROWCOUNT	717
8.8.6.5	Summary of Cursor States and Attributes	719
8.8.7	Cursor FOR Loop	719
8.8.8	Parameterized Cursors	720
8.9	REF CURSORs and Cursor Variables	721
8.9.1	REF CURSOR Overview	721
8.9.2	Declaring a Cursor Variable	721
8.9.2.1	Declaring a SYS_REF_CURSOR Cursor Variable	722
8.9.2.2	Declaring a User Defined REF CURSOR Type Variable	722
8.9.3	Opening a Cursor Variable	722
8.9.4	Fetching Rows From a Cursor Variable	723
8.9.5	Closing a Cursor Variable	723
8.9.6	Usage Restrictions	724
8.9.7	Examples	725
8.9.7.1	Returning a REF CURSOR From a Function	725
8.9.7.2	Modularizing Cursor Operations	726
8.9.8	Dynamic Queries With REF CURSORs	729
8.10	Collections	731
8.10.1	Associative Arrays	731
8.10.2	Nested Tables	735
8.10.3	Varrays	738
8.11	Collection Methods	740
8.11.1	COUNT	740
8.11.2	DELETE	741
8.11.3	EXISTS	742
8.11.4	EXTEND	742
8.11.5	FIRST	744
8.11.6	LAST	745
8.11.7	LIMIT	746
8.11.8	NEXT	746
8.11.9	PRIOR	746
8.11.10	TRIM	747
8.12	Working with Collections	748
8.12.1	TABLE()	748
8.12.2	Using the MULTISET UNION Operator	749
8.12.3	Using the FORALL Statement	751
8.12.4	Using the BULK COLLECT Clause	753
8.12.4.1	SELECT BULK COLLECT	753
8.12.4.2	FETCH BULK COLLECT	755
8.12.4.3	EXECUTE IMMEDIATE BULK COLLECT	756
8.12.4.4	RETURNING BULK COLLECT	756
8.12.5	Errors and Messages	759
8.13	Triggers	759

8.13.1	Overview	759
8.13.2	Types of Triggers	760
8.13.3	Creating Triggers	760
8.13.4	Trigger Variables	764
8.13.5	Transactions and Exceptions	765
8.13.6	Compound Triggers	765
8.13.7	Trigger Examples	766
8.13.7.1	Before Statement-Level Trigger	767
8.13.7.2	After Statement-Level Trigger	767
8.13.7.3	Before Row-Level Trigger	768
8.13.7.4	After Row-Level Trigger	769
8.13.7.5	INSTEAD OF Trigger	771
8.13.7.6	Compound Triggers	772
8.14	Packages	776
8.15	Object Types and Objects	776
8.15.1	Basic Object Concepts	777
8.15.1.1	Attributes	777
8.15.1.2	Methods	778
8.15.1.3	Overloading Methods	778
8.15.2	Object Type Components	778
8.15.2.1	Object Type Specification Syntax	778
8.15.2.2	Object Type Body Syntax	781
8.15.3	Creating Object Types	783
8.15.3.1	Member Methods	784
8.15.3.2	Static Methods	785
8.15.3.3	Constructor Methods	786
8.15.4	Creating Object Instances	787
8.15.5	Referencing an Object	788
8.15.6	Dropping an Object Type	790
8.16	Errors and Messages	791
9	Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers SQL Guide	791
9.1	ALTER DIRECTORY	791
9.2	ALTER INDEX	792
9.3	ALTER PROCEDURE	794
9.4	ALTER PROFILE	795
9.5	ALTER QUEUE	797
9.6	ALTER QUEUE TABLE	799
9.7	ALTER ROLE... IDENTIFIED BY	800
9.8	ALTER ROLE - Managing Database Link and DBMS_RLS Privileges	801
9.9	ALTER SEQUENCE	803
9.10	ALTER SESSION	804
9.11	ALTER TABLE	805
9.12	ALTER TRIGGER	809
9.13	ALTER TABLESPACE	810
9.14	ALTER USER... IDENTIFIED BY	811
9.15	ALTER USER ROLE... PROFILE MANAGEMENT CLAUSES	812
9.16	CALL	814
9.17	COMMENT	814

9.18	COMMIT	815
9.19	CREATE DATABASE	816
9.20	CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK	817
9.21	CREATE DIRECTORY	827
9.22	CREATE FUNCTION	829
9.23	CREATE INDEX	834
9.24	CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW	836
9.25	CREATE PACKAGE	837
9.26	CREATE PACKAGE BODY	839
9.27	CREATE PROCEDURE	845
9.28	CREATE PROFILE	850
9.29	CREATE QUEUE	853
9.30	CREATE QUEUE TABLE	854
9.31	CREATE ROLE	856
9.32	CREATE SCHEMA	857
9.33	CREATE SEQUENCE	858
9.34	CREATE SYNONYM	860
9.35	CREATE TABLE	862
9.36	CREATE TABLE AS	869
9.37	CREATE TRIGGER	869
9.38	CREATE TYPE	878
9.39	CREATE TYPE BODY	884
9.40	CREATE USER	886
9.41	CREATE USER ROLE... PROFILE MANAGEMENT CLAUSES	887
9.42	CREATE VIEW	889
9.43	DELETE	890
9.44	DROP DATABASE LINK	892
9.45	DROP DIRECTORY	892
9.46	DROP FUNCTION	893
9.47	DROP INDEX	894
9.48	DROP PACKAGE	895
9.49	DROP PROCEDURE	895
9.50	DROP PROFILE	897
9.51	DROP QUEUE	897
9.52	DROP QUEUE TABLE	898
9.53	DROP SYNONYM	899
9.54	DROP ROLE	900
9.55	DROP SEQUENCE	901
9.56	DROP TABLE	901
9.57	DROP TABLESPACE	902
9.58	DROP TRIGGER	903
9.59	DROP TYPE	904
9.60	DROP USER	904
9.61	DROP VIEW	905
9.62	EXEC	906
9.63	GRANT	907
9.64	INSERT	912
9.65	LOCK	914

9.66	REVOKE	916
9.67	ROLLBACK	918
9.68	ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT	919
9.69	SAVEPOINT	920
9.70	SELECT	921
9.71	SET CONSTRAINTS	930
9.72	SET ROLE	931
9.73	SET TRANSACTION	932
9.74	TRUNCATE	932
9.75	UPDATE	933
10	Database Compatibility Table Partitioning Guide	935
10.1	Selecting a Partition Type	936
10.1.1	Interval Range Partitioning	937
10.1.2	Automatic List Partitioning	937
10.2	Using Partition Pruning	938
10.2.1	Example - Partition Pruning	940
10.3	Partitioning Commands Compatible with Oracle Databases	942
10.3.1	CREATE TABLE...PARTITION BY	942
10.3.1.1	Example - PARTITION BY LIST	946
10.3.1.2	Example - AUTOMATIC LIST PARTITION	947
10.3.1.3	Example - PARTITION BY RANGE	948
10.3.1.4	Example - INTERVAL RANGE PARTITION	949
10.3.1.5	Example - PARTITION BY HASH	949
10.3.1.6	Example - PARTITION BY HASH...PARTITIONS num...	951
10.3.1.7	Example - PARTITION BY RANGE, SUBPARTITION BY LIST	958
10.3.2	ALTER TABLE...ADD PARTITION	960
10.3.2.1	Example - Adding a Partition to a LIST Partitioned Table	962
10.3.2.2	Example - Adding a Partition to a RANGE Partitioned Table	962
10.3.2.3	Example - Adding a Partition with SUBPARTITIONS num...IN PARTITION DESCRIPTION	963
10.3.3	ALTER TABLE...ADD SUBPARTITION	967
10.3.3.1	Example - Adding a Subpartition to a LIST/RANGE Partitioned Table	968
10.3.3.2	Example - Adding a Subpartition to a RANGE/LIST Partitioned Table	970
10.3.4	ALTER TABLE...SPLIT PARTITION	971
10.3.4.1	Example - Splitting a LIST Partition	973
10.3.4.2	Example - Splitting a RANGE Partition	974
10.3.4.3	Example - Splitting a RANGE/LIST Partition	976
10.3.5	ALTER TABLE...SPLIT SUBPARTITION	980
10.3.5.1	Example - Splitting a LIST Subpartition	982
10.3.5.2	Example - Splitting a RANGE Subpartition	984
10.3.6	ALTER TABLE...EXCHANGE PARTITION	987
10.3.6.1	Example - Exchanging a Table for a Partition	988
10.3.7	ALTER TABLE...MOVE PARTITION	990
10.3.7.1	Example - Moving a Partition to a Different Tablespace	991
10.3.8	ALTER TABLE...RENAME PARTITION	992
10.3.8.1	Example - Renaming a Partition	993
10.3.9	ALTER TABLE...SET INTERVAL	994
10.3.9.1	Example - Setting an Interval Range Partition	994
10.3.10	ALTER TABLE...SET [ PARTITIONING ] AUTOMATIC	995

10.3.10.1	Example - Setting an AUTOMATIC List Partition	996
10.3.11	ALTER TABLE...SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE	997
10.3.11.1	Example - Setting a SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE	997
10.3.12	DROP TABLE	1000
10.3.13	ALTER TABLE...DROP PARTITION	1001
10.3.13.1	Example - Deleting a Partition	1001
10.3.14	ALTER TABLE...DROP SUBPARTITION	1002
10.3.14.1	Example - Deleting a Subpartition	1002
10.3.15	TRUNCATE TABLE	1003
10.3.15.1	Example - Emptying a Table	1004
10.3.16	ALTER TABLE...TRUNCATE PARTITION	1005
10.3.16.1	Example - Emptying a Partition	1006
10.3.17	ALTER TABLE...TRUNCATE SUBPARTITION	1008
10.3.17.1	Example - Emptying a Subpartition	1008
10.4	Handling Stray Values in a LIST or RANGE Partitioned Table	1010
10.5	Specifying Multiple Partitioning Keys in a RANGE Partitioned Table	1015
10.6	Retrieving Information about a Partitioned Table	1016
10.6.1	Table Partitioning Views - Reference	1017
10.6.1.1	ALL_PART_TABLES	1017
10.6.1.2	ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS	1019
10.6.1.3	ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS	1020
10.6.1.4	ALL_PART_KEY_COLUMNS	1021
10.6.1.5	ALL_SUBPART_KEY_COLUMNS	1021
11	Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Tools and Utilities Guide	1022
11.1	EDB*Loader	1022
11.2	EDB Wrap	1052
11.3	Dynamic Runtime Instrumentation Tools Architecture (DRITA)	1056
12	EDB Postgres Advanced Server Guide	1084
12.1	What's New	1085
12.1.1	Conventions Used in this Guide	1087
12.1.2	About the Examples Used in this Guide	1088
12.2	Enhanced Compatibility Features	1097
12.3	Database Administration	1103
12.3.1	Configuration Parameters	1103
12.3.1.1	Setting Configuration Parameters	1103
12.3.1.2	Summary of Configuration Parameters	1106
12.3.1.3	Configuration Parameters by Functionality	1110
12.3.1.3.1	Top Performance Related Parameters	1111
12.3.1.3.1.1	shared_buffers	1111
12.3.1.3.1.2	work_mem	1111
12.3.1.3.1.3	maintenance_work_mem	1112
12.3.1.3.1.4	wal_buffers	1112
12.3.1.3.1.5	checkpoint_segments	1113
12.3.1.3.1.6	checkpoint_completion_target	1113
12.3.1.3.1.7	checkpoint_timeout	1114
12.3.1.3.1.8	max_wal_size	1114
12.3.1.3.1.9	min_wal_size	1114
12.3.1.3.1.10	bgwriter_delay	1115

12.3.1.3.1.11	seq_page_cost	1115
12.3.1.3.1.12	random_page_cost	1116
12.3.1.3.1.13	effective_cache_size	1116
12.3.1.3.1.14	synchronous_commit	1117
12.3.1.3.1.15	edb_max_spins_per_delay	1118
12.3.1.3.1.16	pg_prewarm.autoprewarm	1118
12.3.1.3.1.17	pg_prewarm.autoprewarm_interval	1119
12.3.1.3.2	Resource Usage / Memory	1119
12.3.1.3.3	Resource Usage / EDB Resource Manager	1120
12.3.1.3.4	Query Tuning	1121
12.3.1.3.5	Query Tuning / Planner Method Configuration	1122
12.3.1.3.6	Reporting and Logging / What to Log	1122
12.3.1.3.7	Auditing Settings	1124
12.3.1.3.7.1	edb_audit	1124
12.3.1.3.7.2	edb_audit_directory	1124
12.3.1.3.7.3	edb_audit_filename	1125
12.3.1.3.7.4	edb_audit_rotation_day	1125
12.3.1.3.7.5	edb_audit_rotation_size	1125
12.3.1.3.7.6	edb_audit_rotation_seconds	1126
12.3.1.3.7.7	edb_audit_connect	1126
12.3.1.3.7.8	edb_audit_disconnect	1126
12.3.1.3.7.9	edb_audit_statement	1127
12.3.1.3.7.10	edb_audit_tag	1127
12.3.1.3.7.11	edb_audit_destination	1128
12.3.1.3.7.12	edb_log_every_bulk_value	1128
12.3.1.3.8	Client Connection Defaults / Locale and Formatting	1128
12.3.1.3.9	Client Connection Defaults / Statement Behavior	1129
12.3.1.3.10	Client Connection Defaults / Other Defaults	1130
12.3.1.3.11	Compatibility Options	1131
12.3.1.3.12	Customized Options	1138
12.3.1.3.13	Ungrouped	1146
12.3.2	Index Advisor	1148
12.3.2.1	Index Advisor Components	1149
12.3.2.2	Index Advisor Configuration	1150
12.3.2.3	Using Index Advisor	1151
12.3.2.4	Reviewing the Index Advisor Recommendations	1154
12.3.2.5	Index Advisor Limitations	1157
12.3.3	SQL Profiler	1158
12.3.4	pgsnmpd	1159
12.3.5	EDB Audit Logging	1162
12.3.5.1	Audit Logging Configuration Parameters	1162
12.3.5.2	Selecting SQL Statements to Audit	1164
12.3.5.3	Enabling Audit Logging	1172
12.3.5.4	Audit Log File	1177
12.3.5.5	Using Error Codes to Filter Audit Logs	1182
12.3.5.6	Using Command Tags to Filter Audit Logs	1183
12.3.5.7	Redacting Passwords from Audit Logs	1184
12.3.6	Unicode Collation Algorithm	1185

12.4	Configuration Parameters	1192
12.4.1	Setting Configuration Parameters	1192
12.4.2	Summary of Configuration Parameters	1194
12.4.3	Configuration Parameters by Functionality	1199
12.4.3.1	Top Performance Related Parameters	1199
12.4.3.1.1	shared_buffers	1200
12.4.3.1.2	work_mem	1200
12.4.3.1.3	maintenance_work_mem	1201
12.4.3.1.4	wal_buffers	1201
12.4.3.1.5	checkpoint_segments	1202
12.4.3.1.6	checkpoint_completion_target	1202
12.4.3.1.7	checkpoint_timeout	1202
12.4.3.1.8	max_wal_size	1203
12.4.3.1.9	min_wal_size	1203
12.4.3.1.10	bgwriter_delay	1204
12.4.3.1.11	seq_page_cost	1204
12.4.3.1.12	random_page_cost	1205
12.4.3.1.13	effective_cache_size	1205
12.4.3.1.14	synchronous_commit	1206
12.4.3.1.15	edb_max_spins_per_delay	1206
12.4.3.1.16	pg_prewarm.autoprewarm	1207
12.4.3.1.17	pg_prewarm.autoprewarm_interval	1208
12.4.3.2	Resource Usage / Memory	1208
12.4.3.3	Resource Usage / EDB Resource Manager	1209
12.4.3.4	Query Tuning	1210
12.4.3.5	Query Tuning / Planner Method Configuration	1211
12.4.3.6	Reporting and Logging / What to Log	1211
12.4.3.7	Auditing Settings	1212
12.4.3.7.1	edb_audit	1213
12.4.3.7.2	edb_audit_directory	1213
12.4.3.7.3	edb_audit_filename	1213
12.4.3.7.4	edb_audit_rotation_day	1214
12.4.3.7.5	edb_audit_rotation_size	1214
12.4.3.7.6	edb_audit_rotation_seconds	1215
12.4.3.7.7	edb_audit_connect	1215
12.4.3.7.8	edb_audit_disconnect	1215
12.4.3.7.9	edb_audit_statement	1216
12.4.3.7.10	edb_audit_tag	1216
12.4.3.7.11	edb_audit_destination	1216
12.4.3.7.12	edb_log_every_bulk_value	1217
12.4.3.8	Client Connection Defaults / Locale and Formatting	1217
12.4.3.9	Client Connection Defaults / Statement Behavior	1218
12.4.3.10	Client Connection Defaults / Other Defaults	1219
12.4.3.11	Compatibility Options	1220
12.4.3.12	Customized Options	1227
12.4.3.13	Ungrouped	1235
12.5	Index Advisor	1236
12.5.1	Index Advisor Components	1237

12.5.2	Index Advisor Configuration	1238
12.5.3	Using Index Advisor	1240
12.5.4	Reviewing the Index Advisor Recommendations	1242
12.5.5	Index Advisor Limitations	1246
12.6	SQL Profiler	1247
12.7	pgsnmpd	1248
12.8	EDB Audit Logging	1250
12.8.1	Audit Logging Configuration Parameters	1251
12.8.2	Selecting SQL Statements to Audit	1252
12.8.3	Enabling Audit Logging	1261
12.8.4	Audit Log File	1266
12.8.5	Using Error Codes to Filter Audit Logs	1271
12.8.6	Using Command Tags to Filter Audit Logs	1272
12.8.7	Redacting Passwords from Audit Logs	1273
12.9	Unicode Collation Algorithm	1274
12.10	EDB Resource Manager	1281
12.11	libpq C Library	1300
12.12	Debugger	1309
12.13	Performance Analysis and Tuning	1324
12.14	EDB Clone Schema	1333
12.15	Enhanced SQL and Other Miscellaneous Features	1354
12.16	System Catalog Tables	1358
12.17	Advanced Server Exceptions	1362
13	Advanced Server Installation Guide for Linux	1364
13.1	Supported Platforms	1365
13.2	Using a Package Manager to Install Advanced Server	1365
13.3	Installation Troubleshooting	1386
13.4	Managing an Advanced Server Installation	1387
13.5	Installing and Configuring pgAdmin4	1390
13.6	Uninstalling Advanced Server	1392
14	Advanced Server Installation Guide for Windows	1393
14.1	Requirements Overview	1393
14.2	Installing Advanced Server with the Interactive Installer	1394
14.2.1	Performing a Graphical Installation on Windows	1395
14.2.2	Invoking the Graphical Installer from the Command Line	1403
14.2.2.1	Performing an Unattended Installation	1404
14.2.2.2	Performing an Installation with Limited Privileges	1404
14.2.2.3	Reference - Command Line Options	1406
14.2.3	Using StackBuilder Plus	1410
14.2.4	Installation Troubleshooting	1412
14.3	Connecting to Advanced Server with the pgAdmin 4 Client	1413
14.4	Managing an Advanced Server Installation	1415
14.4.1	Using the Windows Services Applet	1416
14.4.2	Using pg_ctl to Control Advanced Server	1416
14.4.3	Controlling Server Startup Behavior on Windows	1417
14.5	Configuring Advanced Server	1418
14.5.1	Setting Advanced Server Environment Variables	1418
14.5.2	Connecting to Advanced Server with edb-psql	1419

14.6	Uninstalling Advanced Server	1420
15	Quick Start Guide for Linux on CentOS or RHEL 7	1421
16	Quick Start Guide for Linux on CentOS or RHEL 8	1423
17	Quick Start Guide for Windows	1425
18	EDB Postgres Advanced Server 13 Release Notes	1435
19	EDB Postgres Advanced Server Security Features Guide	1438
19.1	Protecting Against SQL Injection Attacks	1438
19.1.1	SQL/Protect Overview	1439
19.1.2	Configuring SQL/Protect	1441
19.1.3	Common Maintenance Operations	1450
19.1.4	Backing Up and Restoring a SQL/Protect Database	1454
19.2	Virtual Private Database	1459
19.3	sslutils	1460
19.4	Data Redaction	1462
20	Advanced Server Upgrade Guide	1470
20.1	Supported Platforms	1470
20.2	Limitations	1470
20.3	Upgrading an Installation With pg_upgrade	1470
20.3.1	Performing an Upgrade	1471
20.3.1.1	Linking versus Copying	1472
20.3.2	Invoking pg_upgrade	1472
20.3.2.1	Command Line Options - Reference	1473
20.3.3	Upgrading to Advanced Server 13	1475
20.3.4	Upgrading a pgAgent Installation	1482
20.3.5	pg_upgrade Troubleshooting	1482
20.3.6	Reverting to the Old Cluster	1483
20.4	Performing a Minor Version Update of an RPM Installation	1483
20.5	Using StackBuilder Plus to Perform a Minor Version Update	1484
20.6	Migration to Version 13	1486
21	EDB Postgres Language Pack Guide	1488
21.1	Supported Database Server Versions	1488
21.2	Installing and Configuring Language Pack	1489
21.3	Using the Procedural Languages	1495
21.4	Uninstalling Language Pack	1497

# 1 ECPGPlus Guide

EDB has enhanced ECPG (the PostgreSQL pre-compiler) to create ECPGPlus. ECPGPlus allows you to include Pro\*C compatible embedded SQL commands in C applications when connected to an EDB Postgres Advanced Server (Advanced Server) database. When you use ECPGPlus to compile an application, the SQL code is syntax-checked and translated into C.

ECPGPlus supports:

- Oracle Dynamic SQL – Method 4 (ODS-M4).
- Pro\*C compatible anonymous blocks.
- A `CALL` statement compatible with Oracle databases.

As part of ECPGPlus's Pro\*C compatibility, you do not need to include the `BEGIN DECLARE SECTION` and `END DECLARE SECTION` directives.

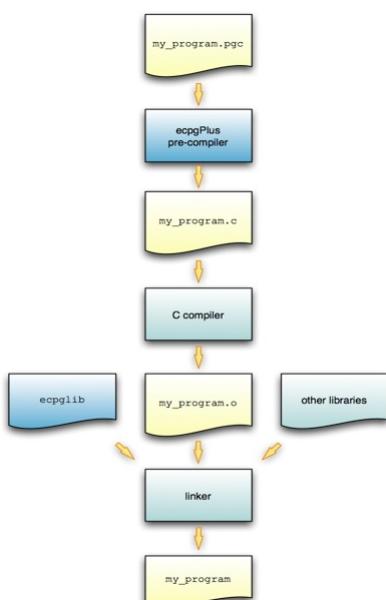
## PostgreSQL Compatibility

While most ECPGPlus statements will work with community PostgreSQL, the `CALL` statement, and the `EXECUTE...END EXEC` statement work only when the client application is connected to EDB Postgres Advanced Server.

## 1.1 ECPGPlus - Overview

EDB has enhanced ECPG (the PostgreSQL pre-compiler) to create ECPGPlus. ECPGPlus is a Pro\*C-compatible version of the PostgreSQL C pre-compiler. ECPGPlus translates a program that combines C code and embedded SQL statements into an equivalent C program. As it performs the translation, ECPGPlus verifies that the syntax of each SQL construct is correct.

The following diagram charts the path of a program containing embedded SQL statements as it is compiled into an executable:



To produce an executable from a C program that contains embedded SQL statements, pass the program (`my_program.pqc` in the diagram above) to the ECPGPlus pre-compiler. ECPGPlus translates each SQL statement in `my_program.pgc` into C code that calls the `ecpglib` API, and produces a C program (`my_program.c`). Then, pass the C program to a C compiler; the C compiler generates an object file (`my_program.o`). Finally, pass the object file (`my_program.o`), as well as the `ecpglib` library file, and any other required libraries to the linker, which in turn produces the executable (`my_program`).

While the ECPGPlus preprocessor validates the *syntax* of each SQL statement, it cannot validate the *semantics*. For example, the preprocessor will confirm that an `INSERT` statement is syntactically correct, but it cannot confirm that the table mentioned in the `INSERT` statement actually exists.

## Behind the Scenes

A client application contains a mix of C code and SQL code comprised of the following elements:

- C preprocessor directives
- C declarations (variables, types, functions, ...)
- C definitions (variables, types, functions, ...)
- SQL preprocessor directives
- SQL statements

For example:

```

1 #include <stdio.h>
2 EXEC SQL INCLUDE sqlca;
3
4 extern void printInt(char *label, int val);
5 extern void printStr(char *label, char *val);
6 extern void printFloat(char *label, float val);
7
8 void displayCustomer(int custNumber)
9 {
10 EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
11  VARCHAR custName[50];
12  float custBalance;
13  int custID = custNumber;
14 EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
15
16 EXEC SQL SELECT name, balance
17  INTO :custName, :custBalance
18  FROM customer
19  WHERE id = :custID;
20
21 printInt("ID", custID);
22 printStr("Name", custName);
23 printFloat("Balance", custBalance);
24 }
```

In the above code fragment:

- Line 1 specifies a directive to the C preprocessor.

C preprocessor directives may be interpreted or ignored; the option is controlled by a command line option (`-C PROC`) entered when you invoke ECPGPlus. In either case, ECPGPlus copies each C preprocessor directive to the output file (4) without change; any C preprocessor directive found in the source file will appear in the output file.

- Line 2 specifies a directive to the SQL preprocessor.

SQL preprocessor directives are interpreted by the ECPGPlus preprocessor, and are not copied to the output file.

- Lines 4 through 6 contain C declarations.

C declarations are copied to the output file without change, except that each `VARCHAR` declaration is translated into an equivalent `struct` declaration.

- Lines 10 through 14 contain an embedded-SQL declaration section.

C variables that you refer to within SQL code are known as `host variables`. If you invoke the ECPGPlus preprocessor in Pro\*C mode (`-C PROC`), you may refer to *any* C variable within a SQL statement; otherwise you must declare each host variable within a `BEGIN/END DECLARATION SECTION` pair.

- Lines 16 through 19 contain a SQL statement.

SQL statements are translated into calls to the ECPGPlus run-time library.

- Lines 21 through 23 contain C code.

C code is copied to the output file without change.

Any SQL statement must be prefixed with `EXEC SQL` and extends to the next (unquoted) semicolon. For example:

```
printf("Updating employee salaries\n");

EXEC SQL UPDATE emp SET sal = sal * 1.25;
EXEC SQL COMMIT;

printf("Employee salaries updated\n");
```

When the preprocessor encounters the code fragment shown above, it passes the C code (the first line and the last line) to the output file without translation and converts each `EXEC SQL` statement into a call to an `ecpglib` function. The result would appear similar to the following:

```
printf("Updating employee salaries\n");

{
    ECPGdo( __LINE__, 0, 1, NULL, 0, ECPGst_normal,
            "update emp set sal = sal * 1.25",
            ECPGt_EOIT, ECPGt_EORT);
}

{
    ECPGtrans(__LINE__, NULL, "commit");
}

printf("Employee salaries updated\n");
```

## Installation and Configuration

On Windows, ECPGPlus is installed by the Advanced Server installation wizard as part of the `Database Server` component. On Linux, install with the `edb-asxx-server-devel` RPM package where `xx` is the Advanced Server version number. By default, the executable is located in:

On Windows:

```
C:\Program Files\edb\as13\bin
```

On Linux:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin
```

When invoking the ECPGPlus compiler, the executable must be in your search path (`%PATH%` on Windows, `$PATH` on Linux). For example, the following commands set the search path to include the directory that holds the ECPGPlus executable file `ecpg`.

On Windows:

```
set EDB_PATH=C:\Program Files\edb\as13\bin
set PATH=%EDB_PATH%;%PATH%
```

On Linux:

```
export EDB_PATH==/usr/edb/as13/bin
export PATH=$EDB_PATH:$PATH
```

## Constructing a Makefile

A `makefile` contains a set of instructions that tell the `make` utility how to transform a program written in C (that contains embedded SQL) into a C program. To try the examples in this guide, you will need:

- a C compiler (and linker)
- the `make` utility
- ECPGPlus preprocessor and library
- a `makefile` that contains instructions for ECPGPlus

The following code is an example of a `makefile` for the samples included in this guide. To use the sample code, save it in a file named `makefile` in the directory that contains the source code file.

```
INCLUDES = -I$(shell pg_config --includedir)
LIBPATH = -L $(shell pg_config --libdir)
CFLAGS += $(INCLUDES) -g
LDFLAGS += -g
LDLIBS += $(LIBPATH) -lecpg -lpq
```

```
.SUFFIXES: .pgc,.pc
```

```
.pgc.c:
  ecpg -c $(INCLUDES) $?
```

```
.pc.c:
  ecpg -C PROC -c $(INCLUDES) $?
```

The first two lines use the `pg_config` program to locate the necessary header files and library directories:

```
INCLUDES = -I$(shell pg_config --includedir)
LIBPATH = -L $(shell pg_config --libdir)
```

The `pg_config` program is shipped with Advanced Server.

`make` knows that it should use the `CFLAGS` variable when running the C compiler and `LDFLAGS` and `LDLIBS` when invoking the linker. ECPG programs must be linked against the ECPG run-time library (`-lecpg`) and the libpq

library (-lpq)

```
CFLAGS += $(INCLUDES) -g
LDFLAGS += -g
LDLIBS += $(LIBPATH) -lecpg -lpq
```

The sample `makefile` instructs `make` how to translate a `.pgc` or a `.pc` file into a C program. Two lines in the `makefile` specify the mode in which the source file will be compiled. The first compile option is:

```
.pgc.c:
  ecpg -c $(INCLUDES) $?
```

The first option tells `make` how to transform a file that ends in `.pgc` (presumably, an ECPG source file) into a file that ends in `.c` (a C program), using community ECPG (without the ECPGPlus enhancements). It invokes the ECPG pre-compiler with the `-c` flag (instructing the compiler to convert SQL code into C), using the value of the `INCLUDES` variable and the name of the `.pgc` file.

```
.pc.c:
  ecpg -C PROC -c $(INCLUDES) $?
```

The second option tells `make` how to transform a file that ends in `.pg` (an ECPG source file) into a file that ends in `.c` (a C program), using the ECPGPlus extensions. It invokes the ECPG pre-compiler with the `-c` flag (instructing the compiler to convert SQL code into C), as well as the `-C PROC` flag (instructing the compiler to use ECPGPlus in Pro\*C-compatibility mode), using the value of the `INCLUDES` variable and the name of the `.pgc` file.

When you run `make`, pass the name of the ECPG source code file you wish to compile. For example, to compile an ECPG source code file named `customer_list.pgc`, use the command:

```
make customer_list
```

The `make` utility consults the `makefile` (located in the current directory), discovers that the `makefile` contains a rule that will compile `customer_list.pgc` into a C program (`customer_list.c`), and then uses the rules built into `make` to compile `customer_list.c` into an executable program.

## ECPGPlus Command Line Options

In the sample `makefile` shown above, `make` includes the `-C` option when invoking ECPGPlus to specify that ECPGPlus should be invoked in Pro\*C compatible mode.

If you include the `-C PROC` keywords on the command line, in addition to the ECPG syntax, you may use Pro\*C command line syntax; for example:

```
$ ecpg -C PROC INCLUDE=/usr/edb/as13/include acct_update.c
```

To display a complete list of the other ECPGPlus options available, navigate to the ECPGPlus installation directory, and enter:

```
/ecpg --help
```

The command line options are:

Option	Description
-c	Automatically generate C code from embedded SQL code.

Option	Description
	Use the <code>-C</code> option to specify a compatibility mode:
<code>-C mode</code>	<p><code>INFORMIX</code></p> <p><code>INFORMIX_SE</code></p> <p><code>PROC</code></p>
	Define a preprocessor <i>symbol</i> .
<code>-D symbol</code>	The <code>-D</code> keyword is not supported when compiling in <i>PROC mode</i> . Instead, use the Oracle-style ' <code>DEFINE=</code> ' clause.
<code>-h</code>	Parse a header file, this option includes option <code>-c</code> .
<code>-i</code>	Parse system, include files as well.
<code>-I directory</code>	Search <i>directory</i> for include files.
<code>-o outfile</code>	Write the result to <i>outfile</i> .
	Specify run-time behavior; <i>option</i> can be:
<code>-r option</code>	<p><code>no_indicator</code> - Do not use indicators, but instead use special values to represent NULL values.</p> <p><code>prepare</code> - Prepare all statements before using them.</p> <p><code>questionmarks</code> - Allow use of a question mark as a placeholder.</p> <p><code>usebulk</code> - Enable bulk processing for INSERT, UPDATE and DELETE statements that operate on host variable arrays.</p>
<code>--regression</code>	Run in regression testing mode.
<code>-t</code>	Turn on <code>autocommit</code> of transactions.
<code>-l</code>	Disable <code>#line</code> directives.
<code>--help</code>	Display the help options.
<code>--version</code>	Output version information.

## Note

If you do not specify an output file name when invoking ECPGPlus, the output file name is created by stripping off the `.pgc` filename extension, and appending `.c` to the file name.

## 1.2 Using Embedded SQL

Each of the following sections leads with a code sample, followed by an explanation of each section within the code sample.

### Example - A Simple Query

The first code sample demonstrates how to execute a `SELECT` statement (which returns a single row), storing the results in a group of host variables. After declaring host variables, it connects to the `edb` sample database using a hard-coded role name and the associated password, and queries the `emp` table. The query returns the values into the declared host variables; after checking the value of the `NULL` indicator variable, it prints a simple result set onscreen and closes the connection.

```
*****  
* print_emp.pgc  
*  
*/  
#include <stdio.h>  
  
int main(void)  
{  
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;  
    int v_empno;  
    char v_ename[40];  
    double v_sal;  
    double v_comm;  
    short v_comm_ind;  
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;  
  
    EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR sqlprint;  
  
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO edb  
        USER 'alice' IDENTIFIED BY '1safePWD';  
  
    EXEC SQL  
        SELECT  
            empno, ename, sal, comm  
        INTO  
            :v_empno, :v_ename, :v_sal, :v_comm INDICATOR:v_comm_ind  
        FROM  
            emp  
        WHERE  
            empno = 7369;  
  
    if (v_comm_ind)  
        printf("empno(%d), ename(%s), sal(%f) comm(%f)\n",  
               v_empno, v_ename, v_sal);  
    else  
        printf("empno(%d), ename(%s), sal(%f) comm(%f)\n",  
               v_empno, v_ename, v_sal, v_comm);  
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT;  
}  
*****/*
```

The code sample begins by including the prototypes and type definitions for the C `stdio` library, and then declares the `main` function:

```
#include <stdio.h>  
  
int main(void)  
{
```

Next, the application declares a set of host variables used to interact with the database server:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int v_empno;
char v_ename[40];
double v_sal;
double v_comm;
short v_comm_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

Please note that if you plan to pre-compile the code in `PROC` mode, you may omit the `BEGIN DECLARE...END DECLARE` section. For more information about declaring host variables, refer to the [Declaring Host Variables](#).

The data type associated with each variable within the declaration section is a C data type. Data passed between the server and the client application must share a compatible data type; for more information about data types, see the [Supported C Data Types](#).

The next statement instructs the server how to handle an error:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR sqlprint;
```

If the client application encounters an error in the SQL code, the server will print an error message to `stderr` (standard error), using the `sqlprint()` function supplied with `ecpglib`. The next `EXEC SQL` statement establishes a connection with Advanced Server:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO edb
USER 'alice' IDENTIFIED BY '1safePWD';
```

In our example, the client application connects to the `edb` database, using a role named `alice` with a password of `1safePWD`.

The code then performs a query against the `emp` table:

```
EXEC SQL
SELECT
    empno, ename, sal, comm
INTO
    :v_empno, :v_ename, :v_sal, :v_comm INDICATOR :v_comm_ind
FROM
    emp
WHERE
    empno = 7369;
```

The query returns information about employee number `7369`.

The `SELECT` statement uses an `INTO` clause to assign the retrieved values (from the `empno`, `ename`, `sal` and `comm` columns) into the `:v_empno`, `:v_ename`, `:v_sal` and `:v_comm` host variables (and the `:v_comm_ind` null indicator). The first value retrieved is assigned to the first variable listed in the `INTO` clause, the second value is assigned to the second variable, and so on.

The `comm` column contains the commission values earned by an employee, and could potentially contain a `NULL` value. The statement includes the `INDICATOR` keyword, and a host variable to hold a null indicator.

The code checks the null indicator, and displays the appropriate on-screen results:

```
if (v_comm_ind)
printf("empno(%d), ename(%s), sal(%2f) comm(NULL)\n",
       v_empno, v_ename, v_sal);
else
printf("empno(%d), ename(%s), sal(%2f) comm(%2f)\n",
       v_empno, v_ename, v_sal, v_comm);
```

```
v_empno, v_ename, v_sal, v_comm);
```

If the null indicator is 0 (that is, `false`), the `comm` column contains a meaningful value, and the `printf` function displays the commission. If the null indicator contains a non-zero value, `comm` is `NULL`, and `printf` displays a value of `NULL`. Please note that a host variable (other than a null indicator) contains no meaningful value if you fetch a `NULL` into that host variable; you must use null indicators to identify any value which may be `NULL`.

The final statement in the code sample closes the connection to the server:

```
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT;
}
```

## Using Indicator Variables

The previous example included an *indicator variable* that identifies any row in which the value of the `comm` column (when returned by the server) was `NULL`. An indicator variable is an extra host variable that denotes if the content of the preceding variable is `NULL` or truncated. The indicator variable is populated when the contents of a row are stored. An indicator variable may contain the following values:

Indicator Value	Denotes
If an indicator variable is less than 0.	The value returned by the server was <code>NULL</code> .
If an indicator variable is equal to 0.	The value returned by the server was not <code>NULL</code> , and was not truncated.
If an indicator variable is greater than 0.	The value returned by the server was truncated when stored in the host variable.

When including an indicator variable in an `INTO` clause, you are not required to include the optional `INDICATOR` keyword.

You may omit an indicator variable if you are certain that a query will never return a `NULL` value into the corresponding host variable. If you omit an indicator variable and a query returns a `NULL` value, `ecpglib` will raise a run-time error.

## Declaring Host Variables

You can use a *host variable* in a SQL statement at any point that a value may appear within that statement. A host variable is a C variable that you can use to pass data values from the client application to the server, and return data from the server to the client application. A host variable can be:

- an array
- a `typedef`
- a pointer
- a `struct`
- any scalar C data type

The code fragments that follow demonstrate using host variables in code compiled in `PROC` mode, and in non-`PROC` mode. The SQL statement adds a row to the `dept` table, inserting the values returned by the variables `v_deptno`, `v_dname` and `v_loc` into the `deptno` column, the `dname` column and the `loc` column, respectively.

If you are compiling in `PROC` mode, you may omit the `EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION` and `EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION` directives. `PROC` mode permits you to use C function parameters as host variables:

```
void addDept(int v_deptno, char v_dname, char v_loc)
{
```

```
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO dept VALUES( :v_deptno, :v_dname, :v_loc);
}
```

If you are not compiling in **PROC** mode, you must wrap embedded variable declarations with the **EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION** and the **EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION** directives, as shown below:

```
void addDept(int v_deptno, char v_dname, char v_loc)
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    int v_deptno_copy = v_deptno;
    char v_dname_copy[14+1] = v_dname;
    char v_loc_copy[13+1] = v_loc;
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL INSERT INTO dept VALUES( :v_deptno, :v_dname, :v_loc);
}
```

You can also include the **INTO** clause in a **SELECT** statement to use the host variables to retrieve information:

```
EXEC SQL SELECT deptno, dname, loc
    INTO :v_deptno, :v_dname, v_loc FROM dept;
```

Each column returned by the **SELECT** statement must have a type-compatible target variable in the **INTO** clause. This is a simple example that retrieves a single row; to retrieve more than one row, you must define a cursor, as demonstrated in the next example.

## Example - Using a Cursor to Process a Result Set

The code sample that follows demonstrates using a cursor to process a result set. There are four basic steps involved in creating and using a cursor:

1. Use the **DECLARE CURSOR** statement to define a cursor.
2. Use the **OPEN CURSOR** statement to open the cursor.
3. Use the **FETCH** statement to retrieve data from a cursor.
4. Use the **CLOSE CURSOR** statement to close the cursor.

After declaring host variables, our example connects to the **edb** database using a user-supplied role name and password, and queries the **emp** table. The query returns the values into a cursor named **employees**. The code sample then opens the cursor, and loops through the result set a row at a time, printing the result set. When the sample detects the end of the result set, it closes the connection.

```
*****
* print_emps.pgc
*
*/
#include <stdio.h>

int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char *username = argv[1];
    char *password = argv[2];
    int v_empno;
    char v_ename[40];
    double v_sal;
    double v_comm;
```

```

short v_comm_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR sqlprint;

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO edb USER :username IDENTIFIED BY :password;

EXEC SQL DECLARE employees CURSOR FOR
SELECT
  empno, ename, sal, comm
FROM
  emp;

EXEC SQL OPEN employees;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO break;

for (;;)
{
  EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM employees
  INTO
    :v_empno, :v_ename, :v_sal, :v_comm INDICATOR :v_comm_ind;

  if (v_comm_ind)
    printf("empno(%d), ename(%s), sal(%f) comm(%f)\n",
      v_empno, v_ename, v_sal);
  else
    printf("empno(%d), ename(%s), sal(%f) comm(%f)\n",
      v_empno, v_ename, v_sal, v_comm);
}
EXEC SQL CLOSE employees;
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT;
}
*****

```

The code sample begins by including the prototypes and type definitions for the C `stdio` library, and then declares the `main` function:

```
#include <stdio.h>

int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
```

Next, the application declares a set of host variables used to interact with the database server:

```

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char *username = argv[1];
char *password = argv[2];
int v_empno;
char v_ename[40];
double v_sal;
double v_comm;
short v_comm_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

`argv[]` is an array that contains the command line arguments entered when the user runs the client application.

`argv[1]` contains the first command line argument (in this case, a `username`), and `argv[2]` contains the second command line argument (a `password`); please note that we have omitted the error-checking code you would normally include in a real-world application. The declaration initializes the values of `username` and `password`, setting them to the values entered when the user invoked the client application.

You may be thinking that you could refer to `argv[1]` and `argv[2]` in a SQL statement (instead of creating a separate copy of each variable); that will not work. All host variables must be declared within a `BEGIN/END DECLARE SECTION` (unless you are compiling in `PROC` mode). Since `argv` is a function parameter (not an automatic variable), it cannot be declared within a `BEGIN/END DECLARE SECTION`. If you are compiling in `PROC` mode, you can refer to any C variable within a SQL statement.

The next statement instructs the server to respond to an SQL error by printing the text of the error message returned by ECPGPlus or the database server:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR sqlprint;
```

Then, the client application establishes a connection with Advanced Server:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO edb USER :username IDENTIFIED BY :password;
```

The `CONNECT` statement creates a connection to the `edb` database, using the values found in the `:username` and `:password` host variables to authenticate the application to the server when connecting.

The next statement declares a cursor named `employees`:

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE employees CURSOR FOR
  SELECT
    empno, ename, sal, comm
  FROM
    emp;
```

`employees` will contain the result set of a `SELECT` statement on the `emp` table. The query returns employee information from the following columns: `empno`, `ename`, `sal` and `comm`. Notice that when you declare a cursor, you do not include an `INTO` clause - instead, you specify the target variables (or descriptors) when you `FETCH` from the cursor.

Before fetching rows from the cursor, the client application must `OPEN` the cursor:

```
EXEC SQL OPEN employees;
```

In the subsequent `FETCH` section, the client application will loop through the contents of the cursor; the client application includes a `WHENEVER` statement that instructs the server to `break` (that is, terminate the loop) when it reaches the end of the cursor:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO break;
```

The client application then uses a `FETCH` statement to retrieve each row from the cursor `INTO` the previously declared host variables:

```
for (;;)
{
  EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM employees
  INTO
    :v_empno, :v_ename, :v_sal, :v_comm INDICATOR :v_comm_ind;
```

The `FETCH` statement uses an `INTO` clause to assign the retrieved values into the `:v_empno`, `:v_ename`, `:v_sal` and `:v_comm` host variables (and the `:v_comm_ind` null indicator). The first value in the cursor is assigned to the first variable listed in the `INTO` clause, the second value is assigned to the second variable, and so on.

The `FETCH` statement also includes the `INDICATOR` keyword and a host variable to hold a null indicator. If the `comm` column for the retrieved record contains a `NULL` value, `v_comm_ind` is set to a non-zero value, indicating that the column is `NULL`.

The code then checks the null indicator, and displays the appropriate on-screen results:

```
if (v_comm_ind)
    printf("empno(%d), ename(%s), sal(%f) comm(NULL)\n",
           v_empno, v_ename, v_sal);
else
    printf("empno(%d), ename(%s), sal(%f) comm(%f)\n",
           v_empno, v_ename, v_sal, v_comm);
}
```

If the null indicator is `0` (that is, `false`), `v_comm` contains a meaningful value, and the `printf` function displays the commission. If the null indicator contains a non-zero value, `comm` is `NULL`, and `printf` displays the string '`NULL`'. Please note that a host variable (other than a null indicator) contains no meaningful value if you fetch a `NULL` into that host variable; you must use null indicators for any value which may be `NULL`.

The final statements in the code sample close the cursor (`employees`), and the connection to the server:

```
EXEC SQL CLOSE employees;
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT;
```

## 1.3 Using Descriptors

Dynamic SQL allows a client application to execute SQL statements that are composed at runtime. This is useful when you don't know the content or form a statement will take when you are writing a client application. ECPGPlus does *not* allow you to use a host variable in place of an identifier (such as a table name, column name or index name); instead, you should use dynamic SQL statements to build a string that includes the information, and then execute that string. The string is passed between the client and the server in the form of a *descriptor*. A descriptor is a data structure that contains both the data and the information about the shape of the data.

A client application must use a `GET DESCRIPTOR` statement to retrieve information from a descriptor. The following steps describe the basic flow of a client application using dynamic SQL:

1. Use an `ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR` statement to allocate a descriptor for the result set (select list).
2. Use an `ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR` statement to allocate a descriptor for the input parameters (bind variables).
3. Obtain, assemble or compute the text of an SQL statement.
4. Use a `PREPARE` statement to parse and syntax-check the SQL statement.
5. Use a `DESCRIBE` statement to describe the select list into the select-list descriptor.
6. Use a `DESCRIBE` statement to describe the input parameters into the bind-variables descriptor.
7. Prompt the user (if required) for a value for each input parameter. Use a `SET DESCRIPTOR` statement to assign the values into a descriptor.
8. Use a `DECLARE CURSOR` statement to define a cursor for the statement.
9. Use an `OPEN CURSOR` statement to open a cursor for the statement.
10. Use a `FETCH` statement to fetch each row from the cursor, storing each row in select-list descriptor.
11. Use a `GET DESCRIPTOR` command to interrogate the select-list descriptor to find the value of each column in the current row.
12. Use a `CLOSE CURSOR` statement to close the cursor and free any cursor resources.

A descriptor may contain the attributes listed in the table below:

Field	Type	Attribute Description
-------	------	-----------------------

Field	Type	Attribute Description
CARDINALITY	integer	The number of rows in the result set.
DATA	N/A	The data value.
		If TYPE is 9:
DATETIME_INTERVAL_CODE	integer	1 - DATE 2 - TIME 3 - TIMESTAMP 4 - TIME WITH TIMEZONE 5 - TIMESTAMP WITH TIMEZONE
DATETIME_INTERVAL_PRECISION	integer	Unused.
INDICATOR	integer	Indicates a NULL or truncated value.
KEY_MEMBER	integer	Unused (returns FALSE).
LENGTH	integer	The data length (as stored on server).
NAME	string	The name of the column in which the data resides.
NULLABLE	integer	Unused (returns TRUE).
OCTET_LENGTH	integer	The data length (in bytes) as stored on server.
PRECISION	integer	The data precision (if the data is of numeric type).
RETURNED_LENGTH	integer	Actual length of data item.
RETURNED_OCTET_LENGTH	integer	Actual length of data item.
SCALE	integer	The data scale (if the data is of numeric type).

Field	Type	Attribute Description
TYPE	integer	A numeric code that represents the data type of the column: 1 - SQL3_CHARACTER 2 - SQL3_NUMERIC 3 - SQL3_DECIMAL 4 - SQL3_INTEGER 5 - SQL3_SMALLINT 6 - SQL3_FLOAT 7 - SQL3_REAL 8 - SQL3_DOUBLE_PRECISION 9 - SQL3_DATE_TIME_TIMESTAMP 10 - SQL3_INTERVAL 12 - SQL3_CHARACTER_VARYING 13 - SQL3_ENUMERATED 14 - SQL3_BIT 15 - SQL3_BIT_VARYING 16 - SQL3_BOOLEAN

## Example - Using a Descriptor to Return Data

The following simple application executes an SQL statement entered by an end user. The code sample demonstrates:

- how to use a SQL descriptor to execute a `SELECT` statement.
- how to find the data and metadata returned by the statement.

The application accepts an SQL statement from an end user, tests the statement to see if it includes the `SELECT` keyword, and executes the statement.

When invoking the application, an end user must provide the name of the database on which the SQL statement will be performed, and a string that contains the text of the query.

For example, a user might invoke the sample with the following command:

```
./exec_stmt edb "SELECT * FROM emp"
```

```
*****
/* exec_stmt.pgc
*
*/
```

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <sql3types.h>
#include <sqlca.h>

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR SQLPRINT;
static void print_meta_data( char * desc_name );

char *md1 = "col field      data      ret";
char *md2 = "num name      type      len";
char *md3 = "----- ----- ----- -----";

int main( int argc, char *argv[] )
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char *db = argv[1];
    char *stmt = argv[2];
    int col_count;
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :db;

    EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR parse_desc;
    EXEC SQL PREPARE query FROM :stmt;
    EXEC SQL DESCRIBE query INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR parse_desc;
    EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR 'parse_desc' :col_count = COUNT;

    if( col_count == 0 )
    {
        EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :stmt;

        if( sqlca.sqlcode >= 0 )
            EXEC SQL COMMIT;
    }
    else
    {
        int row;

        EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR row_desc;
        EXEC SQL DECLARE my_cursor CURSOR FOR query;
        EXEC SQL OPEN my_cursor;

        for( row = 0; ; row++ )
        {
            EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
            int col;
            EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
            EXEC SQL FETCH IN my_cursor
                INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR row_desc;

            if( sqlca.sqlcode != 0 )
                break;
        }
    }
}

```

```

if( row == 0 )
    print_meta_data( "row_desc" );

printf("[RECORD %d]\n", row+1);

for( col = 1; col <= col_count; col++ )
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    short  ind;
    varchar val[40+1];
    varchar name[20+1];
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR 'row_desc'
        VALUE :col
        :val = DATA, :ind = INDICATOR, :name = NAME;

    if( ind == -1 )
        printf( " %-20s : <null>\n", name.arr );
    else if( ind > 0 )
        printf( " %-20s : <truncated>\n", name.arr );
    else
        printf( " %-20s : %s\n", name.arr, val.arr );
}
printf( "\n" );

}

printf( "%d rows\n", row );
}

exit( 0 );
}

static void print_meta_data( char *desc_name )
{
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char *desc = desc_name;
int  col_count;
int  col;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

static char *types[] =
{
"unused      ",
"CHARACTER   ",
"NUMERIC     ",
"DECIMAL     ",
"INTEGER     ",
"SMALLINT    ",
"FLOAT       ",
"REAL        ",
"DOUBLE      ",
"DATE_TIME   ",
"INTERVAL    "
};

```

```

"unused      ",
"CHARACTER_VARYING",
"ENUMERATED   ",
"BIT        ",
"BIT_VARYING  ",
"BOOLEAN     ",
"abstract    "
};

EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR :desc :col_count = count;

printf( "%s\n", md1 );
printf( "%s\n", md2 );
printf( "%s\n", md3 );

for( col = 1; col <= col_count; col++ )
{

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int type;
int ret_len;
varchar name[21];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
char *type_name;

EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR :desc
VALUE :col
:name = NAME,
:type = TYPE,
:ret_len = RETURNED_OCTET_LENGTH;

if( type > 0 && type < SQL3_abstract )
  type_name = types[type];
else
  type_name = "unknown";

printf( "%02d: %-20s %-17s %04d\n",
  col, name.arr, type_name, ret_len );
}
printf( "\n");
}

*****

```

The code sample begins by including the prototypes and type definitions for the C `stdio` and `stdlib` libraries, SQL data type symbols, and the `SQLCA` (SQL communications area) structure:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <sql3types.h>
#include <sqlca.h>
```

The sample provides minimal error handling; when the application encounters an SQL error, it prints the error message to screen:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR SQLPRINT;
```

The application includes a forward-declaration for a function named `print_meta_data()` that will print the metadata found in a descriptor:

```
static void print_meta_data( char * desc_name );
```

The following code specifies the column header information that the application will use when printing the metadata:

```
char *md1 = "col field data ret";
char *md2 = "num name type len";
char *md3 = "---- ----- ----- -----";

int main( int argc, char *argv[] )
{
```

The following declaration section identifies the host variables that will contain the name of the database to which the application will connect, the content of the SQL Statement, and a host variable that will hold the number of columns in the result set (if any).

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char *db = argv[1];
char *stmt = argv[2];
int col_count;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

The application connects to the database (using the default credentials):

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :db;
```

Next, the application allocates an SQL descriptor to hold the metadata for a statement:

```
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR parse_desc;
```

The application uses a `PREPARE` statement to syntax check the string provided by the user:

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE query FROM :stmt;
```

and a `DESCRIBE` statement to move the metadata for the query into the SQL descriptor.

```
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE query INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR parse_desc;
```

Then, the application interrogates the descriptor to discover the number of columns in the result set, and stores that in the host variable `col_count`.

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR parse_desc :col_count = COUNT;
```

If the column count is zero, the end user did not enter a `SELECT` statement; the application uses an `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` statement to process the contents of the statement:

```
if( col_count == 0 )
{
    EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :stmt;
```

If the statement executes successfully, the application performs a `COMMIT`:

```
if( sqlca.sqlcode >= 0 )
    EXEC SQL COMMIT;
}
else
{
```

If the statement entered by the user is a **SELECT** statement (which we know because the column count is non-zero), the application declares a variable named **row**.

```
int row;
```

Then, the application allocates another descriptor that holds the description and the values of a specific row in the result set:

```
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR row_desc;
```

The application declares and opens a cursor for the prepared statement:

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE my_cursor CURSOR FOR query;
EXEC SQL OPEN my_cursor;
```

Loops through the rows in result set:

```
for( row = 0; ; row++ )
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    int col;
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

Then, uses a **FETCH** to retrieve the next row from the cursor into the descriptor:

```
EXEC SQL FETCH IN my_cursor INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR row_desc;
```

The application confirms that the **FETCH** did not fail; if the **FETCH** fails, the application has reached the end of the result set, and breaks the loop:

```
if( sqlca.sqlcode != 0 )
    break;
```

The application checks to see if this is the first row of the cursor; if it is, the application prints the metadata for the row.

```
if( row == 0 )
    print_meta_data( "row_desc" );
```

Next, it prints a record header containing the row number:

```
printf("[RECORD %d]\n", row+1);
```

Then, it loops through each column in the row:

```
for( col = 1; col <= col_count; col++ )
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    short ind;
    varchar val[40+1];
    varchar name[20+1];
```

```
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

The application interrogates the row descriptor (`row_desc`) to copy the column value (`:val`), null indicator (`:ind`) and column name (`:name`) into the host variables declared above. Notice that you can retrieve multiple items from a descriptor using a comma-separated list.

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR row_desc
  VALUE :col
    :val = DATA, :ind = INDICATOR, :name = NAME;
```

If the null indicator (`ind`) is negative, the column value is `NULL`; if the null indicator is greater than `0`, the column value is too long to fit into the `val` host variable (so we print `<truncated>`); otherwise, the null indicator is `0` (meaning `NOT NULL`) so we print the value. In each case, we prefix the value (or `<null>` or `<truncated>`) with the name of the column.

```
if( ind == -1 )
  printf( " %-20s : <null>\n", name.arr );
else if( ind > 0 )
  printf( " %-20s : <truncated>\n", name.arr );
else
  printf( " %-20s : %s\n", name.arr, val.arr );
}

printf( "\n");
```

When the loop terminates, the application prints the number of rows fetched, and exits:

```
printf( "%d rows\n", row );
}

exit( 0 );
```

The `print_meta_data()` function extracts the metadata from a descriptor and prints the name, data type, and length of each column:

```
static void print_meta_data( char *desc_name )
{
```

The application declares host variables:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char *desc = desc_name;
int col_count;
int col;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

The application then defines an array of character strings that map data type values (`numeric`) into data type names. We use the numeric value found in the descriptor to index into this array. For example, if we find that a given column is of type `2`, we can find the name of that type (`NUMERIC`) by writing `types[2]`.

```
static char *types[] =
{
  "unused",
  "CHARACTER",
  "NUMERIC",
```

```
"DECIMAL",
"INTEGER",
"SMALLINT",
"FLOAT",
"REAL",
"DOUBLE",
"DATE_TIME",
"INTERVAL",
"unused",
"CHARACTER_VARYING",
"ENUMERATED",
"BIT",
"BIT_VARYING",
"BOOLEAN",
"abstract"
};

}
```

The application retrieves the column count from the descriptor. Notice that the program refers to the descriptor using a host variable (`desc`) that contains the name of the descriptor. In most scenarios, you would use an identifier to refer to a descriptor, but in this case, the caller provided the descriptor name, so we can use a host variable to refer to the descriptor.

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR :desc :col_count = count;
```

The application prints the column headers (defined at the beginning of this application):

```
printf( "%s\n", md1 );
printf( "%s\n", md2 );
printf( "%s\n", md3 );
```

Then, loops through each column found in the descriptor, and prints the name, type and length of each column.

```
for( col = 1; col <= col_count; col++ )
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    int type;
    int ret_len;
    varchar name[21];
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
    char *type_name;
```

It retrieves the name, type code, and length of the current column:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR :desc
VALUE :col
:name = NAME,
:type = TYPE,
:ret_len = RETURNED_OCTET_LENGTH;
```

If the numeric type code matches a 'known' type code (that is, a type code found in the `types[]` array), it sets `type_name` to the name of the corresponding type; otherwise, it sets `type_name` to "unknown".

```
if( type > 0 && type < SQL3_abstract )
    type_name = types[type];
else
    type_name = "unknown";
```

and prints the column number, name, type name, and length:

```
printf( "%02d: %-20s %-17s %04d\n",
    col, name.arr, type_name, ret_len );
}
printf( "\n" );
}
```

If you invoke the sample application with the following command:

```
./exec_stmt test "SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno IN(7902, 7934)"
```

The application returns:

col field num name	data type	ret len
01: empno	NUMERIC	0004
02: ename	CHARACTER_VARYING	0004
03: job	CHARACTER_VARYING	0007
04: mgr	NUMERIC	0004
05: hiredate	DATE_TIME	0018
06: sal	NUMERIC	0007
07: comm	NUMERIC	0000
08: deptno	NUMERIC	0002
 [RECORD 1]		
empno	:	7902
ename	:	FORD
job	:	ANALYST
mgr	:	7566
hiredate	:	03-DEC-81 00:00:00
sal	:	3000.00
comm	:	<null>
deptno	:	20
 [RECORD 2]		
empno	:	7934
ename	:	MILLER
job	:	CLERK
mgr	:	7782
hiredate	:	23-JAN-82 00:00:00
sal	:	1300.00
comm	:	<null>
deptno	:	10

2 rows

## 1.4 Building and Executing Dynamic SQL Statements

The following examples demonstrate four techniques for building and executing dynamic SQL statements. Each

example demonstrates processing a different combination of statement and input types:

- The first example demonstrates processing and executing a SQL statement that does not contain a `SELECT` statement and does not require input variables. This example corresponds to the techniques used by Oracle Dynamic SQL Method 1.
- The second example demonstrates processing and executing a SQL statement that does not contain a `SELECT` statement, and contains a known number of input variables. This example corresponds to the techniques used by Oracle Dynamic SQL Method 2.
- The third example demonstrates processing and executing a SQL statement that may contain a `SELECT` statement, and includes a known number of input variables. This example corresponds to the techniques used by Oracle Dynamic SQL Method 3.
- The fourth example demonstrates processing and executing a SQL statement that may contain a `SELECT` statement, and includes an unknown number of input variables. This example corresponds to the techniques used by Oracle Dynamic SQL Method 4.

## Example - Executing a Non-query Statement Without Parameters

The following example demonstrates how to use the `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` command to execute a SQL statement where the text of the statement is not known until you run the application. You cannot use `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` to execute a statement that returns a result set. You cannot use `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` to execute a statement that contains parameter placeholders.

The `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` statement parses and plans the SQL statement each time it executes, which can have a negative impact on the performance of your application. If you plan to execute the same statement repeatedly, consider using the `PREPARE/EXECUTE` technique described in the next example.

```
/*************************/
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

static void handle_error(void);

int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    char *insertStmt;

    EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO handle_error();

    EXEC SQL CONNECT :argv[1];

    insertStmt = "INSERT INTO dept VALUES(50, 'ACCTG', 'SEATTLE')";

    EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :insertStmt;

    fprintf(stderr, "ok\n");

    EXEC SQL COMMIT RELEASE;

    exit(EXIT_SUCCESS);
}

static void handle_error(void)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc);
```

```

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE;
EXEC SQL ROLLBACK RELEASE;

exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
}

/*****************/

```

The code sample begins by including the prototypes and type definitions for the C `stdio`, `string`, and `stdlib` libraries, and providing basic infrastructure for the program:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

static void handle_error(void);
int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    char *insertStmt;

```

The example then sets up an error handler; ECPGPlus calls the `handle_error()` function whenever a SQL error occurs:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO handle_error();
```

Then, the example connects to the database using the credentials specified on the command line:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT :argv[1];
```

Next, the program uses an `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` statement to execute a SQL statement, adding a row to the `dept` table:

```
insertStmt = "INSERT INTO dept VALUES(50, 'ACCTG', 'SEATTLE')";
```

```
EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :insertStmt;
```

If the `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` command fails for any reason, ECPGPlus will invoke the `handle_error()` function (which terminates the application after displaying an error message to the user). If the `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` command succeeds, the application displays a message (`ok`) to the user, commits the changes, disconnects from the server, and terminates the application.

```
fprintf(stderr, "ok\n");
```

```
EXEC SQL COMMIT RELEASE;
```

```
exit(EXIT_SUCCESS);
```

```
}
```

ECPGPlus calls the `handle_error()` function whenever it encounters a SQL error. The `handle_error()` function prints the content of the error message, resets the error handler, rolls back any changes, disconnects from the database, and terminates the application.

```

static void handle_error(void)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc);

```

```

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE;
EXEC SQL ROLLBACK RELEASE;

exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
}

```

## Example - Executing a Non-query Statement with a Specified Number of Placeholders

To execute a non-query command that includes a known number of parameter placeholders, you must first **PREPARE** the statement (providing a *statement handle*), and then **EXECUTE** the statement using the statement handle. When the application executes the statement, it must provide a *value* for each placeholder found in the statement.

When an application uses the **PREPARE/EXECUTE** mechanism, each SQL statement is parsed and planned once, but may execute many times (providing different *values* each time).

ECPGPlus will convert each parameter value to the type required by the SQL statement, if possible; if not possible, ECPGPlus will report an error.

```

/*************************/
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <sqlca.h>

static void handle_error(void);

int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    char *stmtText;

    EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO handle_error();

    EXEC SQL CONNECT :argv[1];

    stmtText = "INSERT INTO dept VALUES(?, ?, ?)";

    EXEC SQL PREPARE stmtHandle FROM :stmtText;

    EXEC SQL EXECUTE stmtHandle USING :argv[2], :argv[3], :argv[4];

    fprintf(stderr, "ok\n");

    EXEC SQL COMMIT RELEASE;

    exit(EXIT_SUCCESS);
}

static void handle_error(void)
{
    printf("%s\n", sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc);
    EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE;
    EXEC SQL ROLLBACK RELEASE;

    exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
}

```

```
}
```

---

```
*****
```

The code sample begins by including the prototypes and type definitions for the C `stdio`, `string`, `stdlib`, and `sqlca` libraries, and providing basic infrastructure for the program:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <sqlca.h>

static void handle_error(void);

int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    char *stmtText;
```

The example then sets up an error handler; ECPGPlus calls the `handle_error()` function whenever a SQL error occurs:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO handle_error();
```

Then, the example connects to the database using the credentials specified on the command line:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT :argc[1];
```

Next, the program uses a `PREPARE` statement to parse and plan a statement that includes three parameter markers - if the `PREPARE` statement succeeds, it will create a statement handle that you can use to execute the statement (in this example, the statement handle is named `stmtHandle`). You can execute a given statement multiple times using the same statement handle.

```
stmtText = "INSERT INTO dept VALUES(?, ?, ?);
```

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmtHandle FROM :stmtText;
```

After parsing and planning the statement, the application uses the `EXECUTE` statement to execute the statement associated with the statement handle, substituting user-provided values for the parameter markers:

```
EXEC SQL EXECUTE stmtHandle USING :argc[2], :argc[3], :argc[4];
```

If the `EXECUTE` command fails for any reason, ECPGPlus will invoke the `handle_error()` function (which terminates the application after displaying an error message to the user). If the `EXECUTE` command succeeds, the application displays a message `(ok)` to the user, commits the changes, disconnects from the server, and terminates the application.

```
fprintf(stderr, "ok\n");
```

```
EXEC SQL COMMIT RELEASE;
```

```
exit(EXIT_SUCCESS);
}
```

ECPGPlus calls the `handle_error()` function whenever it encounters a SQL error. The `handle_error()` function prints the content of the error message, resets the error handler, rolls back any changes, disconnects from the database, and terminates the application.

```
static void handle_error(void)
```

```
{
printf("%s\n", sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc);

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE;
EXEC SQL ROLLBACK RELEASE;
exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
}
```

## Example - Executing a Query With a Known Number of Placeholders

This example demonstrates how to execute a *query* with a known number of input parameters, and with a known number of columns in the result set. This method uses the **PREPARE** statement to parse and plan a query, before opening a cursor and iterating through the result set.

```
/*****************************************/
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdbool.h>
#include <sqlca.h>

static void handle_error(void);

int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    VARCHAR empno[10];
    VARCHAR ename[20];

    EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO handle_error();

    EXEC SQL CONNECT :argv[1];

    EXEC SQL PREPARE queryHandle
        FROM "SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE deptno = ?";

    EXEC SQL DECLARE empCursor CURSOR FOR queryHandle;

    EXEC SQL OPEN empCursor USING :argv[2];

    EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO break;

    while(true)
    {
        EXEC SQL FETCH empCursor INTO :empno, :ename;

        printf("%-10s %s\n", empno.arr, ename.arr);
    }

    EXEC SQL CLOSE empCursor;

    EXEC SQL COMMIT RELEASE;

    exit(EXIT_SUCCESS);
```

```

}

static void handle_error(void)
{
    printf("%s\n", sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc);

    EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE;
    EXEC SQL ROLLBACK RELEASE;

    exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
}

/*****************/

```

The code sample begins by including the prototypes and type definitions for the C `stdio`, `string`, `stdlib`, `stdbool`, and `sqlca` libraries, and providing basic infrastructure for the program:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdbool.h>
#include <sqlca.h>

static void handle_error(void);

int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    VARCHAR empno[10];
    VARCHAR ename[20];

```

The example then sets up an error handler; ECPGPlus calls the `handle_error()` function whenever a SQL error occurs:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO handle_error();
```

Then, the example connects to the database using the credentials specified on the command line:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT :argv[1];
```

Next, the program uses a `PREPARE` statement to parse and plan a query that includes a single parameter marker - if the `PREPARE` statement succeeds, it will create a statement handle that you can use to execute the statement (in this example, the statement handle is named `stmtHandle`). You can execute a given statement multiple times using the same statement handle.

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmtHandle
    FROM "SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE deptno = ?";
```

The program then declares and opens the cursor, `empCursor`, substituting a user-provided value for the parameter marker in the prepared `SELECT` statement. Notice that the `OPEN` statement includes a `USING` clause: the `USING` clause must provide a *value* for each placeholder found in the query:

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE empCursor CURSOR FOR stmtHandle;
```

```
EXEC SQL OPEN empCursor USING :argv[2];
```

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO break;
```

```
while(true)
{
```

The program iterates through the cursor, and prints the employee number and name of each employee in the selected department:

```
EXEC SQL FETCH empCursor INTO :empno, :ename;
printf("%-10s %s\n", empno.arr, ename.arr);
}
```

The program then closes the cursor, commits any changes, disconnects from the server, and terminates the application.

```
EXEC SQL CLOSE empCursor;
EXEC SQL COMMIT RELEASE;
exit(EXIT_SUCCESS);
}
```

The application calls the `handle_error()` function whenever it encounters a SQL error. The `handle_error()` function prints the content of the error message, resets the error handler, rolls back any changes, disconnects from the database, and terminates the application.

```
static void handle_error(void)
{
    printf("%s\n", sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc);

    EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE;
    EXEC SQL ROLLBACK RELEASE;

    exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
}
```

## Example - Executing a Query With an Unknown Number of Variables

The next example demonstrates executing a query with an unknown number of input parameters and/or columns in the result set. This type of query may occur when you prompt the user for the text of the query, or when a query is assembled from a form on which the user chooses from a number of conditions (i.e., a filter).

```
/*****************************************/
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <sqlda.h>
#include <sqlcpr.h>

SQLDA *params;
SQLDA *results;

static void allocateDescriptors(int count,
                               int varNameLength,
                               int indNameLenth);
static void bindParams(void);
static void displayResultSet(void);
```

```

int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char *username = argv[1];
char *password = argv[2];
char *stmtText = argv[3];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR sqlprint;

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO test
USER :username
IDENTIFIED BY :password;

params = sqlald(20, 64, 64);
results = sqlald(20, 64, 64);

EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt FROM :stmtText;

EXEC SQL DECLARE dynCursor CURSOR FOR stmt;

bindParams();

EXEC SQL OPEN dynCursor USING DESCRIPTOR params;

displayResultSet(20);
}

static void bindParams(void)
{
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE BIND VARIABLES FOR stmt INTO params;

if (params->F < 0)
fprintf(stderr, "Too many parameters required\n");
else
{
int i;

params->N = params->F;

for (i = 0; i < params->F; i++)
{
char *paramName = params->S[i];
int nameLen = params->C[i];
char paramValue[255];

printf("Enter value for parameter %.*s: ",
nameLen, paramName);

fgets(paramValue, sizeof(paramValue), stdin);

params->T[i] = 1; /* Data type = Character (1) */
params->L[i] = strlen(paramValue) - 1;
params->V[i] = strdup(paramValue);
}
}
}

```

```

    }

}

static void displayResultSet(void)
{
    EXEC SQL DESCRIBE SELECT LIST FOR stmt INTO results;

    if (results->F < 0)
        fprintf(stderr, "Too many columns returned by query\n");
    else if (results->F == 0)
        return;
    else
    {
        int col;

        results->N = results->F;

        for (col = 0; col < results->F; col++)
        {
            int null_permitted, length;

            sqlnul(&results->T[col],
                   &results->T[col],
                   &null_permitted);

            switch (results->T[col])
            {
                case 2: /* NUMERIC */
                {
                    int precision, scale;

                    sqlprc(&results->L[col], &precision, &scale);

                    if (precision == 0)
                        precision = 38;

                    length = precision + 3;
                    break;
                }

                case 12: /* DATE */
                {
                    length = 30;
                    break;
                }

                default: /* Others */
                {
                    length = results->L[col] + 1;
                    break;
                }
            }

            results->V[col] = realloc(results->V[col], length);
        }
    }
}

```

```

results->L[col] = length;
results->T[col] = 1;
}

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO break;

while (1)
{
    const char *delimiter = "";

    EXEC SQL FETCH dynCursor USING DESCRIPTOR results;

    for (col = 0; col < results->F; col++)
    {
        if (*results->I[col] == -1)
            printf("%s%s", delimiter, "<null>");
        else
            printf("%s%s", delimiter, results->V[col]);
        delimiter = ", ";
    }

    printf("\n");
}
}
}
*****

```

The code sample begins by including the prototypes and type definitions for the C `stdio` and `stdlib` libraries. In addition, the program includes the `sqlda.h` and `sqlcpr.h` header files. `sqlda.h` defines the SQLDA structure used throughout this example. `sqlcpr.h` defines a small set of functions used to interrogate the metadata found in an SQLDA structure.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <sqlda.h>
#include <sqlcpr.h>
```

Next, the program declares pointers to two SQLDA structures. The first SQLDA structure (`params`) will be used to describe the metadata for any parameter markers found in the dynamic query text. The second SQLDA structure (`results`) will contain both the metadata and the result set obtained by executing the dynamic query.

```
SQLDA *params;
SQLDA *results;
```

The program then declares two helper functions (defined near the end of the code sample):

```
static void bindParams(void);
static void displayResultSet(void);
```

Next, the program declares three host variables: the first two (`username` and `password`) are used to connect to the database server; the third host variable (`stmtTxt`) is a NULL-terminated C string containing the text of the query to execute. Notice that the values for these three host variables are derived from the command-line arguments. When the program begins execution, it sets up an error handler and then connects to the database server:

```
int main(int argc, char *argv[])
```

```
{
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char *username = argv[1];
char *password = argv[2];
char *stmtText = argv[3];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR sqlprint;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO test
USER :username
IDENTIFIED BY :password;
```

Next, the program calls the `sqlald()` function to allocate the memory required for each descriptor. Each descriptor contains (among other things):

- a pointer to an array of column names
- a pointer to an array of indicator names
- a pointer to an array of data types
- a pointer to an array of lengths
- a pointer to an array of data values.

When you allocate an `SQLDA` descriptor, you specify the maximum number of columns you expect to find in the result set (for `SELECT`-list descriptors) or the maximum number of parameters you expect to find the dynamic query text (for bind-variable descriptors) - in this case, we specify that we expect no more than 20 columns and 20 parameters. You must also specify a maximum length for each column (or parameter) name and each indicator variable name - in this case, we expect names to be no more than 64 bytes long.

See [SQLDA Structure](#) section for a complete description of the `SQLDA` structure.

```
params = sqlald(20, 64, 64);
results = sqlald(20, 64, 64);
```

After allocating the `SELECT`-list and bind descriptors, the program prepares the dynamic statement and declares a cursor over the result set.

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt FROM :stmtText;
```

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE dynCursor CURSOR FOR stmt;
```

Next, the program calls the `bindParams()` function. The `bindParams()` function examines the bind descriptor (`params`) and prompt the user for a value to substitute in place of each parameter marker found in the dynamic query.

```
bindParams();
```

Finally, the program opens the cursor (using the parameter values supplied by the user, if any) and calls the `displayResultSet()` function to print the result set produced by the query.

```
EXEC SQL OPEN dynCursor USING DESCRIPTOR params;
displayResultSet();
}
```

The `bindParams()` function determines whether the dynamic query contains any parameter markers, and, if so, prompts the user for a value for each parameter and then binds that value to the corresponding marker. The `DESCRIBE BIND VARIABLE` statement populates the `params` `SQLDA` structure with information describing each parameter marker.

```
static void bindParams(void)
{
    EXEC SQL DESCRIBE BIND VARIABLES FOR stmt INTO params;
```

If the statement contains no parameter markers, `params->F` will contain 0. If the statement contains more parameters than will fit into the descriptor, `params->F` will contain a negative number (in this case, the absolute value of `params->F` indicates the number of parameter markers found in the statement). If `params->F` contains a positive number, that number indicates how many parameter markers were found in the statement.

```
if (params->F < 0)
    fprintf(stderr, "Too many parameters required\n");
else
{
    int i;

    params->N = params->F;
```

Next, the program executes a loop that prompts the user for a value, iterating once for each parameter marker found in the statement.

```
for (i = 0; i < params->F; i++)
{
    char *paramName = params->S[i];
    int nameLen = params->C[i];
    char paramValue[255];

    printf("Enter value for parameter %.*s: ",
           nameLen, paramName);

    fgets(paramValue, sizeof(paramValue), stdin);
```

After prompting the user for a value for a given parameter, the program *binds* that value to the parameter by setting `params->T[i]` to indicate the data type of the value (see [Type Codes](#) for a list of type codes), `params->L[i]` to the length of the value (we subtract one to trim off the trailing new-line character added by `fgets()`), and `params->V[i]` to point to a copy of the NULL-terminated string provided by the user.

```
params->T[i] = 1;      /* Data type = Character (1) */
params->L[i] = strlen(paramValue) + 1;
params->V[i] = strdup(paramValue);
}
}
}
```

The `displayResultSet()` function loops through each row in the result set and prints the value found in each column. `displayResultSet()` starts by executing a `DESCRIBE SELECT LIST` statement - this statement populates an SQLDA descriptor (`results`) with a description of each column in the result set.

```
static void displayResultSet(void)
{
    EXEC SQL DESCRIBE SELECT LIST FOR stmt INTO results;
```

If the dynamic statement returns no columns (that is, the dynamic statement is not a `SELECT` statement), `results->F` will contain 0. If the statement returns more columns than will fit into the descriptor, `results->F` will contain a negative number (in this case, the absolute value of `results->F` indicates the number of columns returned by the statement). If `results->F` contains a positive number, that number indicates how many columns where returned by the query.

```

if (results->F < 0)
    fprintf(stderr, "Too many columns returned by query\n");
else if (results->F == 0)
    return;
else
{
    int col;

    results->N = results->F;
}

```

Next, the program enters a loop, iterating once for each column in the result set:

```

for (col = 0; col < results->F; col++)
{
    int null_permitted, length;
}

```

To decode the type code found in `results->T`, the program invokes the `sqlnul()` function (see the description of the `T` member of the SQLDA structure in the [The SQLDA Structure](#)). This call to `sqlnul()` modifies `results->T[col]` to contain only the type code (the nullability flag is copied to `null_permitted`). This step is necessary because the `DESCRIBE SELECT LIST` statement encodes the type of each column and the nullability of each column into the `T` array.

```

sqlnul(&results->T[col]
       &results->T[col]
       &null_permitted);
}

```

After decoding the actual data type of the column, the program modifies the results descriptor to tell ECPGPlus to return each value in the form of a NULL-terminated string. Before modifying the descriptor, the program must compute the amount of space required to hold each value. To make this computation, the program examines the maximum length of each column (`results->V[col]`) and the data type of each column (`results->T[col]`).

For numeric values (where `results->T[col] = 2`), the program calls the `sqlprc()` function to extract the precision and scale from the column length. To compute the number of bytes required to hold a numeric value in string form, `displayResultSet()` starts with the precision (that is, the maximum number of digits) and adds three bytes for a sign character, a decimal point, and a NULL terminator.

```

switch (results->T[col])
{
    case 2: /* NUMERIC */
    {
        int precision, scale;

        sqlprc(&results->L[col], &precision, &scale);

        if (precision == 0)
            precision = 38;
        length = precision + 3;
        break;
    }
}

```

For date values, the program uses a somewhat arbitrary, hard-coded length of 30. In a real-world application, you may want to more carefully compute the amount of space required.

```

case 12: /* DATE */
{
    length = 30;
    break;
}

```

}

For a value of any type other than date or numeric, `displayResultSet()` starts with the maximum column width reported by `DESCRIBE SELECT LIST` and adds one extra byte for the NULL terminator. Again, in a real-world application you may want to include more careful calculations for other data types.

```
default: /* Others */
{
    length = results->L[col] + 1;
    break;
}
}
```

After computing the amount of space required to hold a given column, the program allocates enough memory to hold the value, sets `results->L[col]` to indicate the number of bytes found at `results->V[col]`, and set the type code for the column (`results->T[col]`) to `1` to instruct the upcoming `FETCH` statement to return the value in the form of a NULL-terminated string.

```
results->V[col] = malloc(length);
results->L[col] = length;
results->T[col] = 1;
}
```

At this point, the results descriptor is configured such that a `FETCH` statement can copy each value into an appropriately sized buffer in the form of a NULL-terminated string.

Next, the program defines a new error handler to break out of the upcoming loop when the cursor is exhausted.

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO break;

while (1)
{
    const char *delimiter = "";
```

The program executes a `FETCH` statement to fetch the next row in the cursor into the `results` descriptor. If the `FETCH` statement fails (because the cursor is exhausted), control transfers to the end of the loop because of the `EXEC SQL WHENEVER` directive found before the top of the loop.

`| EXEC SQL FETCH dynCursor USING DESCRIPTOR results;`

The `FETCH` statement will populate the following members of the results descriptor:

- `*results->I[col]` will indicate whether the column contains a NULL value (`-1`) or a non-NULL value (`0`). If the value non-NUL but too large to fit into the space provided, the value is truncated and `*results->I[col]` will contain a positive value.
- `results->V[col]` will contain the value fetched for the given column (`unless *results->I[col]` indicates that the column value is NULL).
- `results->L[col]` will contain the length of the value fetched for the given column

Finally, `displayResultSet()` iterates through each column in the result set, examines the corresponding NULL indicator, and prints the value. The result set is not aligned - instead, each value is separated from the previous value by a comma.

```
for (col = 0; col < results->F; col++)
{
    if (*results->I[col] == -1)
        printf("%s%s", delimiter, "<null>");
    else
        printf("%s%s", delimiter, results->V[col]);
```

```

delimiter = ", ";
}

printf("\n");
}
}
}
*****
/*****
```

## 1.5 Error Handling

ECPGPlus provides two methods to detect and handle errors in embedded SQL code:

- A client application can examine the `sqlca` data structure for error messages, and supply customized error handling for your client application.
- A client application can include `EXEC SQL WHENEVER` directives to instruct the ECPGPlus compiler to add error-handling code.

### Error Handling with sqlca

`sqlca` (SQL communications area) is a global variable used by `ecpglib` to communicate information from the server to the client application. After executing a SQL statement (for example, an `INSERT` or `SELECT` statement) you can inspect the contents of `sqlca` to determine if the statement has completed successfully or if the statement has failed.

`sqlca` has the following structure:

```

struct
{
    char sqlaid[8];
    long sqlabc;
    long sqlcode;
    struct
    {
        int sqlerrml;
        char sqlerrmc[SQLERRMC_LEN];
    } sqlerrm;
    char sqlerrp[8];
    long sqlerrd[6];
    char sqlwarn[8];
    char sqlstate[5];
} sqlca;
```

Use the following directive to implement `sqlca` functionality:

```
EXEC SQL INCLUDE sqlca;
```

If you include the `ecpg` directive, you do not need to `#include` the `sqlca.h` file in the client application's header declaration.

The Advanced Server `sqlca` structure contains the following members:

#### `sqlcaid`

`sqlcaid` contains the string: "SQLCA".

#### `sqlabc`

`sqlabc` contains the size of the `sqlca` structure.

#### `sqlcode`

The `sqlcode` member has been deprecated with SQL 92; Advanced Server supports `sqlcode` for backward compatibility, but you should use the `sqlstate` member when writing new code.

`sqlcode` is an integer value; a positive `sqlcode` value indicates that the client application has encountered a harmless processing condition, while a negative value indicates a warning or error.

If a statement processes without error, `sqlcode` will contain a value of 0. If the client application encounters an error (or warning) during a statement's execution, `sqlcode` will contain the last code returned.

The SQL standard defines only a positive value of 100, which indicates that the most recent SQL statement processed returned/affected no rows. Since the SQL standard does not define other `sqlcode` values, please be aware that the values assigned to each condition may vary from database to database.

`sqlerrm` is a structure embedded within `sqlca`, composed of two members:

#### `sqlerrml`

`sqlerrml` contains the length of the error message currently stored in `sqlerrmc`.

#### `sqlerrmc`

`sqlerrmc` contains the null-terminated message text associated with the code stored in `sqlstate`. If a message exceeds 149 characters in length, `ecpglib` will truncate the error message.

#### `sqlerrp`

`sqlerrp` contains the string "NOT SET".

`sqlerrd` is an array that contains six elements:

`sqlerrd[1]` contains the OID of the processed row (if applicable).

`sqlerrd[2]` contains the number of processed or returned rows.

`sqlerrd[0]`, `sqlerrd[3]`, `sqlerrd[4]` and `sqlerrd[5]` are unused.

`sqlwarn` is an array that contains 8 characters:

`sqlwarn[0]` contains a value of 'W' if any other element within `sqlwarn` is set to 'W'.

`sqlwarn[1]` contains a value of 'W' if a data value was truncated when it was stored in a host variable.

`sqlwarn[2]` contains a value of 'W' if the client application encounters a non-fatal warning.

`sqlwarn[3]`, `sqlwarn[4]`, `sqlwarn[5]`, `sqlwarn[6]`, and `sqlwarn[7]` are unused.

#### `sqlstate`

`sqlstate` is a 5 character array that contains a SQL-compliant status code after the execution of a statement from the client application. If a statement processes without error, `sqlstate` will contain a value of 00000.

Please note that `sqlstate` is *not* a null-terminated string.

`sqlstate` codes are assigned in a hierarchical scheme:

- The first two characters of `sqlstate` indicate the general class of the condition.
- The last three characters of `sqlstate` indicate a specific status within the class.

If the client application encounters multiple errors (or warnings) during an SQL statement's execution `sqlstate` will contain the last code returned.

The following table lists the `sqlstate` and `sqlcode` values, as well as the symbolic name and error description for the related condition:

sqlstate	sqlcode (Deprecated)	Symbolic Name	Description
YE001	-12	ECPG_OUT_OF_MEMORY	Virtual memory is exhausted.
YE002	-200	ECPG_UNSUPPORTED	The preprocessor has generated an unsupported command.
07001, or 07002	-201	ECPG_TOO_MANY_ARGUMENTS	The program specifies more variables than are defined in the query.
07001, or 07002	-202	ECPG_TOO_FEW_ARGUMENTS	The program specified fewer variables than are defined in the query.
21000	-203	ECPG_TOO_MANY_MATCHES	The SQL command has returned too many matches.
42804	-204	ECPG_INT_FORMAT	The host variable (defined in the query) is not in integer format.
42804	-205	ECPG_UINT_FORMAT	The host variable (defined in the query) is not in unsigned integer format.
42804	-206	ECPG_FLOAT_FORMAT	The host variable (defined in the query) is not in floating point format.
42804	-211	ECPG_CONVERT_BOOL	The host variable (defined in the query) is not in boolean format.
YE002	-2-1	ECPG_EMPTY	The statement sent to the server was empty.
22002	-213	ECPG_MISSING_INDICATOR	A NULL indicator variable has been passed to the server.
42804	-214	ECPG_NO_ARRAY	The server has returned an array, but no array indicator variable was passed to the client.

42804	-215	ECPG_DATA_NOT_ARRAY	The server has returned a val
08003	-220	ECPG_NO_CONN	The client application has atte
YE002	-221	ECPG_NOT_CONN	The client application has atte
26000	-230	ECPG_INVALID_STMT	The statement has not been p
33000	-240	ECPG_UNKNOWN_DESCRIPTOR	The specified descriptor is not
07009	-241	ECPG_INVALID_DESCRIPTOR_INDEX	The descriptor index is out-of-
YE002	-242	ECPG_UNKNOWN_DESCRIPTOR_ITEM	The client application has req
07006	-243	ECPG_VAR_NOT_NUMERIC	A dynamic statement has retu
07006	-244	ECPG_VAR_NOT_CHAR	A dynamic SQL statement has
	-400	ECPG_PGSQL	The server has returned an er
08007	-401	ECPG_TRANS	The server cannot start, comm
08001	-402	ECPG_CONNECT	The client application's attemp
02000	100	ECPG_NOT_FOUND	The last command retrieved o

## EXEC SQL WHENEVER

Use the `EXEC SQL WHENEVER` directive to implement simple error handling for client applications compiled with ECPGPlus. The syntax of the directive is:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER <condition> <action>;
```

This directive instructs the ECPG compiler to insert error-handling code into your program.

The code instructs the client application that it should perform a specified action if the client application detects a given condition. The *condition* may be one of the following:

### SQLERROR

A `SQLERROR` condition exists when `sqlca.sqlcode` is less than zero.

### SQLWARNING

A `SQLWARNING` condition exists when `sqlca.sqlwarn[0]` contains a '`W`'.

## NOT FOUND

A **NOT FOUND** condition exists when `sqlca.sqlcode` is **ECPG\_NOT\_FOUND** (when a query returns no data).

You can specify that the client application perform one of the following *actions* if it encounters one of the previous conditions:

### CONTINUE

Specify **CONTINUE** to instruct the client application to continue processing, ignoring the current **condition**. **CONTINUE** is the default action.

### DO CONTINUE

An action of **DO CONTINUE** will generate a **CONTINUE** statement in the emitted C code that if it encounters the condition, skips the rest of the code in the loop and continues with the next iteration. You can only use it within a loop.

### GOTO label

or

### GO TO label

Use a C `goto` statement to jump to the specified **label**.

### SQLPRINT

Print an error message to `stderr` (standard error), using the `sqlprint()` function. The `sqlprint()` function prints `sql error`, followed by the contents of `sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc`.

### STOP

Call `exit(1)` to signal an error, and terminate the program.

### DO BREAK

Execute the C `break` statement. Use this action in loops, or `switch` statements.

### CALL name(args)

or

### DO name(args)

Invoke the C function specified by the name `parameter`, using the parameters specified in the `args` parameter.

### Example:

The following code fragment prints a message if the client application encounters a warning, and aborts the application if it encounters an error:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING SQLPRINT;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;
```

### Note

The ECPGPlus compiler processes your program from top to bottom, even though the client application may not execute from top to bottom. The compiler directive is applied to each line in order, and remains in effect until the compiler encounters another directive. If the control of the flow within your program is not top-to-bottom, you

should consider adding error-handling directives to any parts of the program that may be inadvertently missed during compilation.

---

## 1.6 Reference

The sections that follow describe ecpgPlus language elements:

- C-Preprocessor Directives
- Supported C Data Types
- Type Codes
- The SQLDA Structure
- ECPGPlus Statements

### C-preprocessor Directives

The ECPGPlus C-preprocessor enforces two behaviors that are dependent on the mode in which you invoke ECPGPlus:

- **PROC** mode
- non-**PROC** mode

#### Compiling in PROC Mode

In **PROC** mode, ECPGPlus allows you to:

- Declare host variables outside of an **EXEC SQL BEGIN/END DECLARE SECTION**.
- Use any C variable as a host variable as long as it is of a data type compatible with ECPG.

When you invoke ECPGPlus in **PROC** mode (by including the **-C PROC** keywords), the ECPG compiler honors the following C-preprocessor directives:

```
#include
#ifndef expression
#define symbolName
#ifndef symbolName
#else
#endif
#define symbolName expansion
#define symbolName([macro arguments]) expansion
#undef symbolName
#define(symbolName)
```

Pre-processor directives are used to effect or direct the code that is received by the compiler. For example, using the following code sample:

```
#if HAVE_LONG_LONG == 1
#define BALANCE_TYPE long long
#else
#define BALANCE_TYPE double
#endif
```

```
...
BALANCE_TYPE customerBalance;
```

If you invoke ECPGPlus with the following command-line arguments:

```
ecpg -C PROC -D HAVE_LONG_LONG=1
```

ECPGPlus will copy the entire fragment (without change) to the output file, but will only send the following tokens to the ECPG parser:

```
long long customerBalance;
```

On the other hand, if you invoke ECPGPlus with the following command-line arguments:

```
ecpg -C PROC -D HAVE_LONG_LONG=0
```

The ECPG parser will receive the following tokens:

```
double customerBalance;
```

If your code uses preprocessor directives to filter the code that is sent to the compiler, the complete code is retained in the original code, while the ECPG parser sees only the processed token stream.

You can also use compatible syntax when executing the following preprocessor directives with an **EXEC** directive:

```
EXEC ORACLE DEFINE
EXEC ORACLE UNDEF
EXEC ORACLE INCLUDE
EXEC ORACLE IFDEF
EXEC ORACLE IFNDEF
EXEC ORACLE ELIF
EXEC ORACLE ELSE
EXEC ORACLE ENDIF
EXEC ORACLE OPTION
```

For example, if your code includes the following:

```
EXEC ORACLE IFDEF HAVE_LONG_LONG;
#define BALANCE_TYPE long long
EXEC ORACLE ENDIF;
BALANCE_TYPE customerBalance;
```

If you invoke ECPGPlus with the following command-line arguments:

```
ecpg -C PROC DEFINE=HAVE_LONG_LONG=1
```

ECPGPlus will send the following tokens to the output file, and the ECPG parser:

```
long long customerBalance;
```

#### Note

The **EXEC ORACLE** pre-processor directives only work if you specify **-C PROC** on the ECPG command line.

### Using the **SELECT\_ERROR** Precompiler Option

When using ECPGPlus in compatible mode, you can use the **SELECT\_ERROR** precompiler option to instruct

your program how to handle result sets that contain more rows than the host variable can accommodate. The syntax is:

```
SELECT_ERROR={YES|NO}
```

The default value is **YES**; a **SELECT** statement will return an error message if the result set exceeds the capacity of the host variable. Specify **NO** to instruct the program to suppress error messages when a **SELECT** statement returns more rows than a host variable can accommodate.

Use **SELECT\_ERROR** with the **EXEC ORACLE OPTION** directive.

### Compiling in non-PROC Mode

If you do not include the **-C PROC** command-line option:

- C preprocessor directives are copied to the output file without change.
- You must declare the type and name of each C variable that you intend to use as a host variable within an **EXEC SQL BEGIN/END DECLARE** section.

When invoked in non-**PROC** mode, ECPG implements the behavior described in the PostgreSQL Core documentation.

### Supported C Data Types

An ECPGPlus application must deal with two sets of data types: SQL data types (such as **SMALLINT**, **DOUBLE PRECISION** and **CHARACTER VARYING**) and C data types (like **short**, **double** and **varchar[n]**). When an application fetches data from the server, ECPGPlus will map each SQL data type to the type of the C variable into which the data is returned.

In general, ECPGPlus can convert most SQL server types into similar C types, but not all combinations are valid. For example, ECPGPlus will try to convert a SQL character value into a C integer value, but the conversion may fail (at execution time) if the SQL character value contains non-numeric characters. The reverse is also true; when an application sends a value to the server, ECPGPlus will try to convert the C data type into the required SQL type. Again, the conversion may fail (at execution time) if the C value cannot be converted into the required SQL type.

ECPGPlus can convert any SQL type into C character values (**char[n]** or **varchar[n]**). Although it is safe to convert any SQL type to/from **char[n]** or **varchar[n]**, it is often convenient to use more natural C types such as **int**, **double**, or **float**.

The supported C data types are:

- **short**
- **int**
- **unsigned int**
- **long long int**
- **float**
- **double**
- **char[n+1]**
- **varchar[n+1]**
- **bool**
- and any equivalent created by a **typedef**

In addition to the numeric and character types supported by C, the **pgtypeslib** run-time library offers custom data types (and functions to operate on those types) for dealing with date/time and exact numeric values:

- **timestamp**
- **interval**
- **date**
- **decimal**

- numeric

To use a data type supplied by `pgtypeslib`, you must `#include` the proper header file.

## Type Codes

The following table contains the type codes for *external* data types. An external data type is used to indicate the type of a C host variable. When an application binds a value to a parameter or binds a buffer to a `SELECT`-list item, the type code in the corresponding SQLDA descriptor (`(descriptor->T[column])`) should be set to one of the following values:

Type Code	Host Variable Type (C Data Type)
1, 2, 8, 11, 12, 15, 23, 24, 91, 94, 95, 96, 97	char[]
3	int
4, 7, 21	float
5, 6	null-terminated string (char[length+1])
9	varchar
22	double
68	unsigned int

The following table contains the type codes for *internal* data types. An internal type code is used to indicate the type of a value as it resides in the database. The `DESCRIBE SELECT LIST` statement populates the data type array (`(descriptor->T[column])`) using the following values.

Internal Type Code	Server Type
1	VARCHAR2
2	NUMBER
8	LONG
11	ROWID
12	DATE
23	RAW
24	LONG RAW
96	CHAR
100	BINARY FLOAT
101	BINARY DOUBLE
104	UROWID
187	TIMESTAMP
188	TIMESTAMP W/TIMEZONE
189	INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH
190	INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND
232	TIMESTAMP LOCAL_TZ

## The SQLDA Structure

Oracle Dynamic SQL method 4 uses the SQLDA data structure to hold the data and metadata for a dynamic SQL statement. A SQLDA structure can describe a set of input parameters corresponding to the parameter markers found in the text of a dynamic statement or the result set of a dynamic statement. The layout of the SQLDA structure is:

```

struct SQLDA
{
    int    N; /* Number of entries          */
    char **V; /* Variables                */
    int   *L; /* Variable lengths         */
    short *T; /* Variable types           */
    short **I; /* Indicators              */
    int    F; /* Count of variables discovered by DESCRIBE */
    char **S; /* Variable names           */
    short *M; /* Variable name maximum lengths */
    short *C; /* Variable name actual lengths */
    char **X; /* Indicator names         */
    short *Y; /* Indicator name maximum lengths */
    short *Z; /* Indicator name actual lengths */
};

```

## Parameters

### N - maximum number of entries

The `N` structure member contains the maximum number of entries that the SQLDA may describe. This member is populated by the `sqlald()` function when you allocate the SQLDA structure. Before using a descriptor in an `OPEN` or `FETCH` statement, you must set `N` to the *actual* number of values described.

### V - data values

The `V` structure member is a pointer to an array of data values.

- For a `SELECT`-list descriptor, `V` points to an array of values returned by a `FETCH` statement (each member in the array corresponds to a column in the result set).
- For a bind descriptor, `V` points to an array of parameter values (you must populate the values in this array before opening a cursor that uses the descriptor).

Your application must allocate the space required to hold each value. Refer to `displayResultSet` function for an example of how to allocate space for `SELECT`-list values.

### L - length of each data value

The `L` structure member is a pointer to an array of lengths. Each member of this array must indicate the amount of memory available in the corresponding member of the `V` array. For example, if `V[5]` points to a buffer large enough to hold a 20-byte NULL-terminated string, `L[5]` should contain the value 21 (20 bytes for the characters in the string plus 1 byte for the NULL-terminator). Your application must set each member of the `L` array.

### T - data types

The `T` structure member points to an array of data types, one for each column (or parameter) described by the descriptor.

- For a bind descriptor, you must set each member of the `T` array to tell ECPGPlus the data type of each parameter.
- For a `SELECT`-list descriptor, the `DESCRIBE SELECT LIST` statement sets each member of the `T` array to reflect the type of data found in the corresponding column.

You may change any member of the `T` array before executing a `FETCH` statement to force ECPGPlus to convert the corresponding value to a specific data type. For example, if the `DESCRIBE SELECT LIST` statement indicates that a given column is of type `DATE`, you may change the corresponding `T` member to request that the next `FETCH` statement return that value in the form of a NULL-terminated string. Each member of the `T` array is a numeric type code (see `Type Codes` for a list of type codes). The type codes returned by a `DESCRIBE SELECT LIST` statement differ from those expected by a `FETCH` statement. After

executing a `DESCRIBE SELECT LIST` statement, each member of `T` encodes a data type *and* a flag indicating whether the corresponding column is nullable. You can use the `sqlnul()` function to extract the type code and nullable flag from a member of the `T` array. The signature of the `sqlnul()` function is as follows:

```
void sqlnul(unsigned short *valType,
            unsigned short *typeCode,
            int           *isNull)
```

For example, to find the type code and nullable flag for the third column of a descriptor named `results`, you would invoke `sqlnul()` as follows:

```
sqlnul(&results->T[2], &typeCode, &isNull);
```

#### I - indicator variables

The `I` structure member points to an array of indicator variables. This array is allocated for you when your application calls the `sqlald()` function to allocate the descriptor.

- For a `SELECT`-list descriptor, each member of the `I` array indicates whether the corresponding column contains a NULL (non-zero) or non-NUL (zero) value.
- For a bind parameter, your application must set each member of the `I` array to indicate whether the corresponding parameter value is NULL.

#### F - number of entries

The `F` structure member indicates how many values are described by the descriptor (the `N` structure member indicates the *maximum* number of values which may be described by the descriptor; `F` indicates the actual number of values). The value of the `F` member is set by ECPGPlus when you execute a `DESCRIBE` statement. `F` may be positive, negative, or zero.

- For a `SELECT`-list descriptor, `F` will contain a positive value if the number of columns in the result set is equal to or less than the maximum number of values permitted by the descriptor (as determined by the `N` structure member); 0 if the statement is *not* a `SELECT` statement, or a negative value if the query returns more columns than allowed by the `N` structure member.
- For a bind descriptor, `F` will contain a positive number if the number of parameters found in the statement is less than or equal to the maximum number of values permitted by the descriptor (as determined by the `N` structure member); 0 if the statement contains no parameters markers, or a negative value if the statement contains more parameter markers than allowed by the `N` structure member.

If `F` contains a positive number (after executing a `DESCRIBE` statement), that number reflects the count of columns in the result set (for a `SELECT`-list descriptor) or the number of parameter markers found in the statement (for a bind descriptor). If `F` contains a negative value, you may compute the absolute value of `F` to discover how many values (or parameter markers) are required. For example, if `F` contains `-24` after describing a `SELECT` list, you know that the query returns 24 columns.

#### S - column/parameter names

The `S` structure member points to an array of NULL-terminated strings.

- For a `SELECT`-list descriptor, the `DESCRIBE SELECT LIST` statement sets each member of this array to the name of the corresponding column in the result set.
- For a bind descriptor, the `DESCRIBE BIND VARIABLES` statement sets each member of this array to the name of the corresponding bind variable.

In this release, the name of each bind variable is determined by the left-to-right order of the parameter marker within the query - for example, the name of the first parameter is always `?0`, the name of the second parameter is always `?1`, and so on.

#### M - maximum column/parameter name length

The **M** structure member points to an array of lengths. Each member in this array specifies the *maximum* length of the corresponding member of the **S** array (that is, **M[0]** specifies the maximum length of the column/parameter name found at **S[0]**). This array is populated by the **sqlald()** function.

#### C - actual column/parameter name length

The **C** structure member points to an array of lengths. Each member in this array specifies the *actual* length of the corresponding member of the **S** array (that is, **C[0]** specifies the actual length of the column/parameter name found at **S[0]**).

This array is populated by the **DESCRIBE** statement.

#### X - indicator variable names

The **X** structure member points to an array of NULL-terminated strings -each string represents the name of a NULL indicator for the corresponding value.

This array is not used by ECPGPlus, but is provided for compatibility with Pro\*C applications.

#### Y - maximum indicator name length

The **Y** structure member points to an array of lengths. Each member in this array specifies the *maximum* length of the corresponding member of the **X** array (that is, **Y[0]** specifies the maximum length of the indicator name found at **X[0]**).

This array is not used by ECPGPlus, but is provided for compatibility with Pro\*C applications.

#### Z - actual indicator name length

The **Z** structure member points to an array of lengths. Each member in this array specifies the *actual* length of the corresponding member of the **X** array (that is, **Z[0]** specifies the actual length of the indicator name found at **X[0]**).

This array is not used by ECPGPlus, but is provided for compatibility with Pro\*C applications.

## ECPGPlus Statements

An embedded SQL statement allows your client application to interact with the server, while an embedded directive is an instruction to the ECPGPlus compiler.

You can embed any Advanced Server SQL statement in a C program. Each statement should begin with the keywords **EXEC SQL**, and must be terminated with a semi-colon (;). Within the C program, a SQL statement takes the form:

```
EXEC SQL <sql_command_body>;
```

Where **sql\_command\_body** represents a standard SQL statement. You can use a host variable anywhere that the SQL statement expects a value expression. For more information about substituting host variables for value expressions, refer to [Declaring Host Variables](#).

ECPGPlus extends the PostgreSQL server-side syntax for some statements; for those statements, syntax differences are outlined in the following reference sections. For a complete reference to the supported syntax of other SQL commands, refer to the *PostgreSQL Core Documentation* available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-commands.html>

## ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR

Use the **ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR** statement to allocate an SQL descriptor area:

```
EXEC SQL [FOR <array_size>] ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR <descriptor_name>
[WITH MAX <variable_count>];
```

Where:

**array\_size** is a variable that specifies the number of array elements to allocate for the descriptor. **array\_size** may be an **INTEGER** value or a host variable.

**descriptor\_name** is the host variable that contains the name of the descriptor, or the name of the descriptor. This value may take the form of an identifier, a quoted string literal, or of a host variable.

**variable\_count** specifies the maximum number of host variables in the descriptor. The default value of **variable\_count** is **100**.

The following code fragment allocates a descriptor named **emp\_query** that may be processed as an array (**emp\_array**):

```
EXEC SQL FOR :emp_array ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR emp_query;
```

## CALL

Use the **CALL** statement to invoke a procedure or function on the server. The **CALL** statement works only on Advanced Server. The **CALL** statement comes in two forms; the first form is used to call a *function*:

```
EXEC SQL CALL <program_name> '(['<actual_arguments>'])'
INTO [:<ret_variable>][: <ret_indicator>];
```

The second form is used to call a *procedure*:

```
EXEC SQL CALL <program_name> '(['<actual_arguments>'])';
```

Where:

**program\_name** is the name of the stored procedure or function that the **CALL** statement invokes. The program name may be schema-qualified or package-qualified (or both); if you do not specify the schema or package in which the program resides, ECPGPlus will use the value of **search\_path** to locate the program.

**actual\_arguments** specifies a comma-separated list of arguments required by the program. Note that each **actual\_argument** corresponds to a formal argument expected by the program. Each formal argument may be an **IN** parameter, an **OUT** parameter, or an **INOUT** parameter.

**:ret\_variable** specifies a host variable that will receive the value returned if the program is a function.

**:ret\_indicator** specifies a host variable that will receive the indicator value returned, if the program is a function.

For example, the following statement invokes the **get\_job\_desc** function with the value contained in the **:ename** host variable, and captures the value returned by that function in the **:job** host variable:

```
EXEC SQL CALL get_job_desc(:ename)
INTO :job;
```

## CLOSE

Use the `CLOSE` statement to close a cursor, and free any resources currently in use by the cursor. A client application cannot fetch rows from a closed cursor. The syntax of the `CLOSE` statement is:

```
EXEC SQL CLOSE [<cursor_name>];
```

Where:

`cursor_name` is the name of the cursor closed by the statement. The cursor name may take the form of an identifier or of a host variable.

The `OPEN` statement initializes a cursor. Once initialized, a cursor result set will remain unchanged unless the cursor is re-opened. You do not need to `CLOSE` a cursor before re-opening it.

To manually close a cursor named `emp_cursor`, use the command:

```
EXEC SQL CLOSE emp_cursor;
```

A cursor is automatically closed when an application terminates.

## COMMIT

Use the `COMMIT` statement to complete the current transaction, making all changes permanent and visible to other users. The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL [AT <database_name>] COMMIT [WORK]
[COMMENT '<text>'] [COMMENT '<text>' RELEASE];
```

Where:

`database_name` is the name of the database (or host variable that contains the name of the database) in which the work resides. This value may take the form of an unquoted string literal, or of a host variable.

For compatibility, ECPGPlus accepts the `COMMENT` clause without error but does *not* store any text included with the `COMMENT` clause.

Include the `RELEASE` clause to close the current connection after performing the commit.

For example, the following command commits all work performed on the `dept` database and closes the current connection:

```
EXEC SQL AT dept COMMIT RELEASE;
```

By default, statements are committed only when a client application performs a `COMMIT` statement. Include the `-t` option when invoking ECPGPlus to specify that a client application should invoke `AUTOCOMMIT` functionality. You can also control `AUTOCOMMIT` functionality in a client application with the following statements:

```
EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO ON
```

and

```
EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO OFF
```

## CONNECT

Use the `CONNECT` statement to establish a connection to a database. The `CONNECT` statement is available in

two forms - one form is compatible with Oracle databases, the other is not.

The first form is compatible with Oracle databases:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT
{:<user_name>} IDENTIFIED BY :<password> | :<connection_id>
[AT <database_name>]
[USING :database_string]
[ALTER AUTHORIZATION :new_password];
```

Where:

`user_name` is a host variable that contains the role that the client application will use to connect to the server.

`password` is a host variable that contains the password associated with that role.

`connection_id` is a host variable that contains a slash-delimited user name and password used to connect to the database.

Include the `AT` clause to specify the database to which the connection is established. `database_name` is the name of the database to which the client is connecting; specify the value in the form of a variable, or as a string literal.

Include the `USING` clause to specify a host variable that contains a null-terminated string identifying the database to which the connection will be established.

The `ALTER AUTHORIZATION` clause is supported for syntax compatibility only; ECPGPlus parses the `ALTER AUTHORIZATION` clause, and reports a warning.

Using the first form of the `CONNECT` statement, a client application might establish a connection with a host variable named `user` that contains the identity of the connecting role, and a host variable named `password` that contains the associated password using the following command:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT :user IDENTIFIED BY :password;
```

A client application could also use the first form of the `CONNECT` statement to establish a connection using a single host variable named `:connection_id`. In the following example, `connection_id` contains the slash-delimited role name and associated password for the user:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT :connection_id;
```

The syntax of the second form of the `CONNECT` statement is:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO <database_name>
[AS <connection_name>] [<credentials>];
```

Where `credentials` is one of the following:

```
USER user_name password
USER user_name IDENTIFIED BY password
USER user_name USING password
```

In the second form:

`database_name` is the name or identity of the database to which the client is connecting. Specify `database_name` as a variable, or as a string literal, in one of the following forms:

```
<database_name>[@<hostname>][:<port>]
```

`tcp:postgresql://<hostname>[:<port>][/<database_name>][options]`

`unix:postgresql://<hostname>[:<port>][/<database_name>][options]`

Where:

`hostname` is the name or IP address of the server on which the database resides.

`port` is the port on which the server listens.

You can also specify a value of `DEFAULT` to establish a connection with the default database, using the default role name. If you specify `DEFAULT` as the target database, do not include a `connection_name` or `credentials`.

`connection_name` is the name of the connection to the database. `connection_name` should take the form of an identifier (that is, not a string literal or a variable). You can open multiple connections, by providing a unique `connection_name` for each connection.

If you do not specify a name for a connection, `ecpglib` assigns a name of `DEFAULT` to the connection. You can refer to the connection by name (`DEFAULT`) in any `EXEC SQL` statement.

`CURRENT` is the most recently opened or the connection mentioned in the most-recent `SET CONNECTION TO` statement. If you do not refer to a connection by name in an `EXEC SQL` statement, ECPG assumes the name of the connection to be `CURRENT`.

`user_name` is the role used to establish the connection with the Advanced Server database. The privileges of the specified role will be applied to all commands performed through the connection.

`password` is the password associated with the specified `user_name`.

The following code fragment uses the second form of the `CONNECT` statement to establish a connection to a database named `edb`, using the role `alice` and the password associated with that role, `1safePWD`:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO edb AS acctg_conn
USER 'alice' IDENTIFIED BY '1safePWD';
```

The name of the connection is `acctg_conn`; you can use the connection name when changing the connection name using the `SET CONNECTION` statement.

## DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR

Use the `DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR` statement to free memory in use by an allocated descriptor. The syntax of the statement is:

```
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR <descriptor_name>
```

Where:

`descriptor_name` is the name of the descriptor. This value may take the form of a quoted string literal, or of a host variable.

The following example deallocates a descriptor named `emp_query`:

```
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR emp_query;
```

## DECLARE CURSOR

Use the **DECLARE CURSOR** statement to define a cursor. The syntax of the statement is:

```
EXEC SQL [AT <database_name>] DECLARE <cursor_name> CURSOR FOR
(<select_statement> | <statement_name>);
```

Where:

**database\_name** is the name of the database on which the cursor operates. This value may take the form of an identifier or of a host variable. If you do not specify a database name, the default value of **database\_name** is the default database.

**cursor\_name** is the name of the cursor.

**select\_statement** is the text of the **SELECT** statement that defines the cursor result set; the **SELECT** statement cannot contain an **INTO** clause.

**statement\_name** is the name of a SQL statement or block that defines the cursor result set.

The following example declares a cursor named **employees**:

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE employees CURSOR FOR
  SELECT
    empno, ename, sal, comm
  FROM
    emp;
```

The cursor generates a result set that contains the employee number, employee name, salary and commission for each employee record that is stored in the **emp** table.

## DECLARE DATABASE

Use the **DECLARE DATABASE** statement to declare a database identifier for use in subsequent SQL statements (for example, in a **CONNECT** statement). The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE <database_name> DATABASE;
```

Where:

**database\_name** specifies the name of the database.

The following example demonstrates declaring an identifier for the **acctg** database:

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE acctg DATABASE;
```

After invoking the command declaring **acctg** as a database identifier, the **acctg** database can be referenced by name when establishing a connection or in **AT** clauses.

This statement has no effect and is provided for Pro\*C compatibility only.

## DECLARE STATEMENT

Use the **DECLARE STATEMENT** directive to declare an identifier for an SQL statement. Advanced Server supports two versions of the **DECLARE STATEMENT** directive:

```
EXEC SQL [<database_name>] DECLARE <statement_name> STATEMENT;
```

and

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE STATEMENT <statement_name>;
```

Where:

`statement_name` specifies the identifier associated with the statement.

`database_name` specifies the name of the database. This value may take the form of an identifier or of a host variable that contains the identifier.

A typical usage sequence that includes the `DECLARE STATEMENT` directive might be:

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE give_raise STATEMENT;    // give_raise is now a statement
handle (not prepared)
EXEC SQL PREPARE give_raise FROM :stmtText; // give_raise is now associated
with a statement
EXEC SQL EXECUTE give_raise;
```

This statement has no effect and is provided for Pro\*C compatibility only.

## DELETE

Use the `DELETE` statement to delete one or more rows from a table. The syntax for the ECPGPlus `DELETE` statement is the same as the syntax for the SQL statement, but you can use parameter markers and host variables any place that an expression is allowed. The syntax is:

```
[FOR <exec_count>] DELETE FROM [ONLY] <table> [[AS] <alias>]
[USING <using_list>]
[WHERE <condition> | WHERE CURRENT OF <cursor_name>]
[<RETURNING|RETURN> * | <output_expression> [[ AS] <output_name>]
[, ...] INTO <host_variable_list> ]
```

Where:

Include the `FOR exec_count` clause to specify the number of times the statement will execute; this clause is valid only if the `VALUES` clause references an array or a pointer to an array.

`table` is the name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table. Include the `ONLY` clause to limit processing to the specified table; if you do not include the `ONLY` clause, any tables inheriting from the named table are also processed.

`alias` is a substitute name for the target table.

`using_list` is a list of table expressions, allowing columns from other tables to appear in the `WHERE` condition.

Include the `WHERE` clause to specify which rows should be deleted. If you do not include a `WHERE` clause in the statement, `DELETE` will delete all rows from the table, leaving the table definition intact.

`condition` is an expression, host variable or parameter marker that returns a value of type `BOOLEAN`. Those rows for which `condition` returns true will be deleted.

`cursor_name` is the name of the cursor to use in the `WHERE CURRENT OF` clause; the row to be deleted will be the one most recently fetched from this cursor. The cursor must be a non-grouping query on the `DELETE` statements target table. You cannot specify `WHERE CURRENT OF` in a `DELETE` statement that includes a Boolean condition.

The `RETURN/RETURNING` clause specifies an `output_expression` or `host_variable_list` that is returned by the

`DELETE` command after each row is deleted:

`output_expression` is an expression to be computed and returned by the `DELETE` command after each row is deleted. `output_name` is the name of the returned column; include \* to return all columns.

`host_variable_list` is a comma-separated list of host variables and optional indicator variables. Each host variable receives a corresponding value from the `RETURNING` clause.

For example, the following statement deletes all rows from the `emp` table where the `sal` column contains a value greater than the value specified in the host variable, `:max_sal`:

```
DELETE FROM emp WHERE sal > :max_sal;
```

For more information about using the `DELETE` statement, see the PostgreSQL Core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-delete.html>

## DESCRIBE

Use the `DESCRIBE` statement to find the number of input values required by a prepared statement or the number of output values returned by a prepared statement. The `DESCRIBE` statement is used to analyze a SQL statement whose shape is unknown at the time you write your application.

The `DESCRIBE` statement populates an `SQLDA` descriptor; to populate a SQL descriptor, use the `ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR` and `DESCRIBE...DESCRIPTOR` statements.

```
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE BIND VARIABLES FOR <statement_name> INTO
<descriptor>;
```

or

```
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE SELECT LIST FOR <statement_name> INTO <descriptor>;
```

Where:

`statement_name` is the identifier associated with a prepared SQL statement or PL/SQL block.

`descriptor` is the name of C variable of type `SQLDA*`. You must allocate the space for the descriptor by calling `sqlald()` (and initialize the descriptor) before executing the `DESCRIBE` statement.

When you execute the first form of the `DESCRIBE` statement, ECPG populates the given descriptor with a description of each input variable *required* by the statement. For example, given two descriptors:

```
SQLDA *query_values_in;
SQLDA *query_values_out;
```

You might prepare a query that returns information from the `emp` table:

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE get_emp FROM
"SELECT ename, empno, sal FROM emp WHERE empno = ?";
```

The command requires one input variable (for the parameter marker (?)).

```
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE BIND VARIABLES
FOR get_emp INTO query_values_in;
```

After describing the bind variables for this statement, you can examine the descriptor to find the number of

variables required and the type of each variable.

When you execute the second form, ECPG populates the given descriptor with a description of each value *returned* by the statement. For example, the following statement returns three values:

```
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE SELECT LIST
FOR get_emp INTO query_values_out;
```

After describing the select list for this statement, you can examine the descriptor to find the number of returned values and the name and type of each value.

Before *executing* the statement, you must bind a variable for each input value and a variable for each output value. The variables that you bind for the input values specify the actual values used by the statement. The variables that you bind for the output values tell ECPGPlus where to put the values when you execute the statement.

This is alternate Pro\*C compatible syntax for the **DESCRIBE DESCRIPTOR** statement.

## DESCRIBE DESCRIPTOR

Use the **DESCRIBE DESCRIPTOR** statement to retrieve information about a SQL statement, and store that information in a SQL descriptor. Before using **DESCRIBE DESCRIPTOR**, you must allocate the descriptor with the **ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR** statement. The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE [INPUT | OUTPUT] <statement_identifier>
USING [SQL] DESCRIPTOR <descriptor_name>;
```

Where:

**statement\_name** is the name of a prepared SQL statement.

**descriptor\_name** is the name of the descriptor. **descriptor\_name** can be a quoted string value or a host variable that contains the name of the descriptor.

If you include the **INPUT** clause, ECPGPlus populates the given descriptor with a description of each input variable *required* by the statement.

For example, given two descriptors:

```
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR query_values_in;
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR query_values_out;
```

You might prepare a query that returns information from the **emp** table:

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE get_emp FROM
"SELECT ename, empno, sal FROM emp WHERE empno = ?";
```

The command requires one input variable (for the parameter marker (?)).

```
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE INPUT get_emp USING 'query_values_in';
```

After describing the bind variables for this statement, you can examine the descriptor to find the number of variables required and the type of each variable.

If you do not specify the **INPUT** clause, **DESCRIBE DESCRIPTOR** populates the specified descriptor with the values returned by the statement.

If you include the **OUTPUT** clause, ECPGPlus populates the given descriptor with a description of each value *returned* by the statement.

For example, the following statement returns three values:

```
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE OUTPUT FOR get_emp USING 'query_values_out';
```

After describing the select list for this statement, you can examine the descriptor to find the number of returned values and the name and type of each value.

## DISCONNECT

Use the **DISCONNECT** statement to close the connection to the server. The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT [<connection_name>][CURRENT][DEFAULT][ALL];
```

Where:

**connection\_name** is the connection name specified in the **CONNECT** statement used to establish the connection. If you do not specify a connection name, the current connection is closed.

Include the **CURRENT** keyword to specify that ECPGPlus should close the most-recently used connection.

Include the **DEFAULT** keyword to specify that ECPGPlus should close the connection named **DEFAULT**. If you do not specify a name when opening a connection, ECPGPlus assigns the name, **DEFAULT**, to the connection.

Include the **ALL** keyword to instruct ECPGPlus to close all active connections.

The following example creates a connection (named **hr\_connection**) that connects to the **hr** database, and then disconnects from the connection:

```
/* client.pgc*/
int main()
{
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO hr AS connection_name;
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT connection_name;
    return(0);
}
```

## EXECUTE

Use the **EXECUTE** statement to execute a statement previously prepared using an **EXEC SQL PREPARE** statement. The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL [FOR <array_size>] EXECUTE <statement_name>
[USING {DESCRIPTOR <SQLDA_descriptor>
|: <host_variable> [|INDICATOR] :<indicator_variable>]}];
```

Where:

**array\_size** is an integer value or a host variable that contains an integer value that specifies the number of rows to be processed. If you omit the **FOR** clause, the statement is executed once for each member of the array.

**statement\_name** specifies the name assigned to the statement when the statement was created (using the **EXEC SQL PREPARE** statement).

Include the **USING** clause to supply values for parameters within the prepared statement:

Include the `_DESCRIPTOR SQLDA_descriptor` clause to provide an SQLDA descriptor value for a parameter.

Use a `host_variable` (and an optional `indicator_variable`) to provide a user-specified value for a parameter.

The following example creates a prepared statement that inserts a record into the `emp` table:

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE add_emp (numeric, text, text, numeric) AS
  INSERT INTO emp VALUES($1, $2, $3, $4);
```

Each time you invoke the prepared statement, provide fresh parameter values for the statement:

```
EXEC SQL EXECUTE add_emp USING 8000, 'DAWSON', 'CLERK', 7788;
EXEC SQL EXECUTE add_emp USING 8001, 'EDWARDS', 'ANALYST', 7698;
```

## EXECUTE DESCRIPTOR

Use the `EXECUTE` statement to execute a statement previously prepared by an `EXEC SQL PREPARE` statement, using an SQL descriptor. The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL [FOR <array_size>] EXECUTE <statement_identifier>
[USING [SQL] DESCRIPTOR <descriptor_name>]
[INTO [SQL] DESCRIPTOR <descriptor_name>];
```

Where:

`array_size` is an integer value or a host variable that contains an integer value that specifies the number of rows to be processed. If you omit the `FOR` clause, the statement is executed once for each member of the array.

`statement_identifier` specifies the identifier assigned to the statement with the `EXEC SQL PREPARE` statement.

Include the `USING` clause to specify values for any input parameters required by the prepared statement.

Include the `INTO` clause to specify a descriptor into which the `EXECUTE` statement will write the results returned by the prepared statement.

`descriptor_name` specifies the name of a descriptor (as a single-quoted string literal), or a host variable that contains the name of a descriptor.

The following example executes the prepared statement, `give_raise`, using the values contained in the descriptor `stmtText`:

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE give_raise FROM :stmtText;
EXEC SQL EXECUTE give_raise USING DESCRIPTOR :stmtText;
```

## EXECUTE...END EXEC

Use the `EXECUTE...END-EXEC` statement to embed an anonymous block into a client application. The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL [AT <database_name>] EXECUTE <anonymous_block> END-EXEC;
```

Where:

`database_name` is the database identifier or a host variable that contains the database identifier. If you omit the `AT` clause, the statement will be executed on the current default database.

`anonymous_block` is an inline sequence of PL/pgSQL or SPL statements and declarations. You may include host variables and optional indicator variables within the block; each such variable is treated as an `IN/OUT` value.

The following example executes an anonymous block:

```
EXEC SQL EXECUTE
BEGIN
  IF (current_user = :admin_user_name) THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('You are an administrator');
  END IF;
END-EXEC;
```

#### Note

The `EXECUTE...END EXEC` statement is supported only by Advanced Server.

## EXECUTE IMMEDIATE

Use the `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` statement to execute a string that contains a SQL command. The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL [AT <database_name>] EXECUTE IMMEDIATE <command_text>;
```

Where:

`database_name` is the database identifier or a host variable that contains the database identifier. If you omit the `AT` clause, the statement will be executed on the current default database.

`command_text` is the command executed by the `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` statement.

This dynamic SQL statement is useful when you don't know the text of an SQL statement (ie., when writing a client application). For example, a client application may prompt a (trusted) user for a statement to execute. After the user provides the text of the statement as a string value, the statement is then executed with an `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` command.

The statement text may not contain references to host variables. If the statement may contain parameter markers or returns one or more values, you must use the `PREPARE` and `DESCRIBE` statements.

The following example executes the command contained in the `:command_text` host variable:

```
EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :command_text;
```

## FETCH

Use the `FETCH` statement to return rows from a cursor into an SQLDA descriptor or a target list of host variables. Before using a `FETCH` statement to retrieve information from a cursor, you must prepare the cursor using `DECLARE` and `OPEN` statements. The statement syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL [FOR <array_size>] FETCH <cursor>
{ USING DESCRIPTOR <SQLDA_descriptor> }{ INTO <target_list> };
```

Where:

`array_size` is an integer value or a host variable that contains an integer value specifying the number of rows to fetch. If you omit the `FOR` clause, the statement is executed once for each member of the array.

`cursor` is the name of the cursor from which rows are being fetched, or a host variable that contains the name of the cursor.

If you include a `USING` clause, the `FETCH` statement will populate the specified SQLDA descriptor with the values returned by the server.

If you include an `INTO` clause, the `FETCH` statement will populate the host variables (and optional indicator variables) specified in the `target_list`.

The following code fragment declares a cursor named `employees` that retrieves the `employee number`, `name` and `salary` from the `emp` table:

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE employees CURSOR
  SELECT empno, ename, esal FROM emp
EXEC SQL OPEN emp_cursor
EXEC SQL FETCH emp_cursor INTO :emp_no, :emp_name, :emp_sal;
```

## FETCH DESCRIPTOR

Use the `FETCH DESCRIPTOR` statement to retrieve rows from a cursor into an SQL descriptor. The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL [FOR <array_size>] FETCH <cursor>
  INTO [SQL] DESCRIPTOR <descriptor_name>;
```

Where:

`array_size` is an integer value or a host variable that contains an integer value specifying the number of rows to fetch. If you omit the `FOR` clause, the statement is executed once for each member of the array.

`cursor` is the name of the cursor from which rows are fetched, or a host variable that contains the name of the cursor. The client must `DECLARE` and `OPEN` the cursor before calling the `FETCH DESCRIPTOR` statement.

Include the `INTO` clause to specify an SQL descriptor into which the `EXECUTE` statement will write the results returned by the prepared statement. `descriptor_name` specifies the name of a descriptor (as a single-quoted string literal), or a host variable that contains the name of a descriptor. Prior to use, the descriptor must be allocated using an `ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR` statement.

The following example allocates a descriptor named `row_desc` that will hold the description and the values of a specific row in the result set. It then declares and opens a cursor for a prepared statement (`my_cursor`), before looping through the rows in result set, using a `FETCH` to retrieve the next row from the cursor into the descriptor:

```
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR 'row_desc';
EXEC SQL DECLARE my_cursor CURSOR FOR query;
EXEC SQL OPEN my_cursor;

for( row = 0; ; row++)
{
  EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
  int col;
  EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
  EXEC SQL FETCH my_cursor INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR 'row_desc';
```

## GET DESCRIPTOR

Use the `GET DESCRIPTOR` statement to retrieve information from a descriptor. The `GET DESCRIPTOR`

statement comes in two forms. The first form returns the number of values (or columns) in the descriptor.

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR <descriptor_name>
:<host_variable> = COUNT;
```

The second form returns information about a specific value (specified by the `VALUE column_number` clause).

```
EXEC SQL [FOR <array_size>] GET DESCRIPTOR <descriptor_name>
  VALUE <column_number> {:<host_variable> = <descriptor_item> {...}};
```

Where:

`array_size` is an integer value or a host variable that contains an integer value that specifies the number of rows to be processed. If you specify an `array_size`, the `host_variable` must be an array of that size; for example, if `array_size` is `10`, `:host_variable` must be a 10-member array of `host_variables`. If you omit the `FOR` clause, the statement is executed once for each member of the array.

`descriptor_name` specifies the name of a descriptor (as a single-quoted string literal), or a host variable that contains the name of a descriptor.

Include the `VALUE` clause to specify the information retrieved from the descriptor.

`column_number` identifies the position of the variable within the descriptor.

`host_variable` specifies the name of the host variable that will receive the value of the item.

`descriptor_item` specifies the type of the retrieved descriptor item.

ECPGPlus implements the following `descriptor_item` types:

- `TYPE`
- `LENGTH`
- `OCTET LENGTH`
- `RETURNED LENGTH`
- `RETURNED_OCTET_LENGTH`
- `PRECISION`
- `SCALE`
- `NULLABLE`
- `INDICATOR`
- `DATA`
- `NAME`

The following code fragment demonstrates using a `GET DESCRIPTOR` statement to obtain the number of columns entered in a user-provided string:

```
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR parse_desc;
EXEC SQL PREPARE query FROM :stmt;
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE query INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR parse_desc;
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR parse_desc :col_count = COUNT;
```

The example allocates an SQL descriptor (named `parse_desc`), before using a `PREPARE` statement to syntax check the string provided by the user (`:stmt`). A `DESCRIBE` statement moves the user-provided string into the descriptor, `parse_desc`. The call to `EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR` interrogates the descriptor to discover the number of columns (`:col_count`) in the result set.

## INSERT

Use the `INSERT` statement to add one or more rows to a table. The syntax for the ECPGPlus `INSERT` statement is the same as the syntax for the SQL statement, but you can use parameter markers and host variables any place

that a value is allowed. The syntax is:

```
[FOR <exec_count>] INSERT INTO <table> [(<column> [, ...])]  
{DEFAULT VALUES |  
VALUES ({<expression> | DEFAULT} [, ...])[, ...] | <query>}  
[RETURNING * | <output_expression> [[ AS ] <output_name>] [, ...]]
```

Where:

Include the `FOR exec_count` clause to specify the number of times the statement will execute; this clause is valid only if the `VALUES` clause references an array or a pointer to an array.

`table` specifies the (optionally schema-qualified) name of an existing table.

`column` is the name of a column in the table. The column name may be qualified with a subfield name or array subscript. Specify the `DEFAULT VALUES` clause to use default values for all columns.

`expression` is the expression, value, host variable or parameter marker that will be assigned to the corresponding column. Specify `DEFAULT` to fill the corresponding column with its default value.

`query` specifies a `SELECT` statement that supplies the row(s) to be inserted.

`output_expression` is an expression that will be computed and returned by the `INSERT` command after each row is inserted. The expression can refer to any column within the table. Specify `*` to return all columns of the inserted row(s).

`output_name` specifies a name to use for a returned column.

The following example adds a row to the `employees` table:

```
INSERT INTO emp (empno, ename, job, hiredate)  
VALUES ('8400', :ename, 'CLERK', '2011-10-31');
```

## Note

The `INSERT` statement uses a host variable (`:ename`) to specify the value of the `ename` column.

For more information about using the `INSERT` statement, see the PostgreSQL Core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-insert.html>

## OPEN

Use the `OPEN` statement to open a cursor. The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL [FOR <array_size>] OPEN <cursor> [USING <parameters>];
```

Where `parameters` is one of the following:

```
DESCRIPTOR <SQLDA_descriptor>
```

or

```
<host_variable> [ [ INDICATOR ] <indicator_variable>, ... ]
```

Where:

`array_size` is an integer value or a host variable that contains an integer value specifying the number of rows to

fetch. If you omit the `FOR` clause, the statement is executed once for each member of the array.

`cursor` is the name of the cursor being opened.

`parameters` is either `DESCRIPTOR SQLDA_descriptor` or a comma-separated list of `host variables` (and optional `indicator variables`) that initialize the cursor. If specifying an `SQLDA_descriptor`, the descriptor must be initialized with a `DESCRIBE` statement.

The `OPEN` statement initializes a cursor using the values provided in `parameters`. Once initialized, the cursor result set will remain unchanged unless the cursor is closed and re-opened. A cursor is automatically closed when an application terminates.

The following example declares a cursor named `employees`, that queries the `emp` table, returning the `employee number`, `name`, `salary` and `commission` of an employee whose name matches a user-supplied value (stored in the host variable, `:emp_name`).

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE employees CURSOR FOR
  SELECT
    empno, ename, sal, comm
  FROM
    emp
  WHERE ename = :emp_name;
EXEC SQL OPEN employees;
...
```

After declaring the cursor, the example uses an `OPEN` statement to make the contents of the cursor available to a client application.

## OPEN DESCRIPTOR

Use the `OPEN DESCRIPTOR` statement to open a cursor with a SQL descriptor. The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL [FOR <array_size>] OPEN <cursor>
  [USING [SQL] DESCRIPTOR <descriptor_name>]
  [INTO [SQL] DESCRIPTOR <descriptor_name>];
```

Where:

`array_size` is an integer value or a host variable that contains an integer value specifying the number of rows to fetch. If you omit the `FOR` clause, the statement is executed once for each member of the array.

`cursor` is the name of the cursor being opened.

`descriptor_name` specifies the name of an SQL descriptor (in the form of a single-quoted string literal) or a host variable that contains the name of an SQL descriptor that contains the query that initializes the cursor.

For example, the following statement opens a cursor (named `emp_cursor`), using the host variable, `:employees`:

```
EXEC SQL OPEN emp_cursor USING DESCRIPTOR :employees;
```

## PREPARE

Prepared statements are useful when a client application must perform a task multiple times; the statement is parsed, written and planned only once, rather than each time the statement is executed, saving repetitive processing time.

Use the **PREPARE** statement to prepare an SQL statement or PL/pgSQL block for execution. The statement is available in two forms; the first form is:

```
EXEC SQL [AT <database_name>] PREPARE <statement_name>
  FROM <sql_statement>;
```

The second form is:

```
EXEC SQL [AT <database_name>] PREPARE <statement_name>
  AS <sql_statement>;
```

Where:

**database\_name** is the database identifier or a host variable that contains the database identifier against which the statement will execute. If you omit the **AT** clause, the statement will execute against the current default database.

**statement\_name** is the identifier associated with a prepared SQL statement or PL/SQL block.

**sql\_statement** may take the form of a **SELECT** statement, a single-quoted string literal or host variable that contains the text of an SQL statement.

To include variables within a prepared statement, substitute placeholders (**\$1**, **\$2**, **\$3**, etc.) for statement values that might change when you **PREPARE** the statement. When you **EXECUTE** the statement, provide a value for each parameter. The values must be provided in the order in which they will replace placeholders.

The following example creates a prepared statement (named **add\_emp**) that inserts a record into the **emp** table:

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE add_emp (int, text, text, numeric) AS
  INSERT INTO emp VALUES($1, $2, $3, $4);
```

Each time you invoke the statement, provide fresh parameter values for the statement:

```
EXEC SQL EXECUTE add_emp(8003, 'Davis', 'CLERK', 2000.00);
EXEC SQL EXECUTE add_emp(8004, 'Myer', 'CLERK', 2000.00);
```

Note

A client application must issue a **PREPARE** statement within each session in which a statement will be executed; prepared statements persist only for the duration of the current session.

## ROLLBACK

Use the **ROLLBACK** statement to abort the current transaction, and discard any updates made by the transaction. The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL [AT <database_name>] ROLLBACK [WORK]
  [ { TO [SAVEPOINT] <savepoint> } | RELEASE ]
```

Where:

**database\_name** is the database identifier or a host variable that contains the database identifier against which the statement will execute. If you omit the **AT** clause, the statement will execute against the current default database.

Include the **TO** clause to abort any commands that were executed after the specified **savepoint**; use the **SAVEPOINT** statement to define the **savepoint**. If you omit the **TO** clause, the **ROLLBACK** statement will abort the transaction, discarding all updates.

Include the **RELEASE** clause to cause the application to execute an **EXEC SQL COMMIT RELEASE** and close

the connection.

Use the following statement to rollback a complete transaction:

```
EXEC SQL ROLLBACK;
```

Invoking this statement will abort the transaction, undoing all changes, erasing any savepoints, and releasing all transaction locks. If you include a savepoint (`my_savepoint` in the following example):

```
EXEC SQL ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
```

Only the portion of the transaction that occurred after the `my_savepoint` is rolled back; `my_savepoint` is retained, but any savepoints created after `my_savepoint` will be erased.

Rolling back to a specified savepoint releases all locks acquired after the savepoint.

## SAVEPOINT

Use the `SAVEPOINT` statement to define a `savepoint`; a savepoint is a marker within a transaction. You can use a `ROLLBACK` statement to abort the current transaction, returning the state of the server to its condition prior to the specified savepoint. The syntax of a `SAVEPOINT` statement is:

```
EXEC SQL [AT <database_name>] SAVEPOINT <savepoint_name>
```

Where:

`database_name` is the database identifier or a host variable that contains the database identifier against which the savepoint resides. If you omit the `AT` clause, the statement will execute against the current default database.

`savepoint_name` is the name of the savepoint. If you re-use a `savepoint_name`, the original savepoint is discarded.

Savepoints can only be established within a transaction block. A transaction block may contain multiple savepoints.

To create a savepoint named `my_savepoint`, include the statement:

```
EXEC SQL SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
```

## SELECT

ECPGPlus extends support of the `SQL SELECT` statement by providing the `INTO host_variables` clause. The clause allows you to select specified information from an Advanced Server database into a host variable. The syntax for the `SELECT` statement is:

```
EXEC SQL [AT <database_name>]
SELECT
[ <hint> ]
[ ALL | DISTINCT [ ON( <expression>, ... ) ] ]
select_list INTO <host_variables>
[ FROM from_item [, from_item ]...]
[ WHERE condition ]
[ hierarchical_query_clause ]
[ GROUP BY expression [, ...]]
[ HAVING condition ]
```

```
[ { UNION [ ALL ] | INTERSECT | MINUS } (subquery) ]
[ ORDER BY expression> [order_by_options]]
[ LIMIT { count | ALL }]
[ OFFSET start [ ROW | ROWS ] ]
[ FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [ count ] { ROW | ROWS } ONLY ]
[ FOR { UPDATE | SHARE } [OF table_name [, ...]][NOWAIT ][...]]
```

Where:

`database_name` is the name of the database (or host variable that contains the name of the database) in which the table resides. This value may take the form of an unquoted string literal, or of a host variable.

`host_variables` is a list of host variables that will be populated by the `SELECT` statement. If the `SELECT` statement returns more than a single row, `host_variables` must be an array.

ECPGPlus provides support for the additional clauses of the SQL `SELECT` statement as documented in the PostgreSQL Core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-select.html>

To use the `INTO host_variables` clause, include the names of defined host variables when specifying the `SELECT` statement. For example, the following `SELECT` statement populates the `:emp_name` and `:emp_sal` host variables with a list of `employee names` and `salaries`:

```
EXEC SQL SELECT ename, sal
  INTO :emp_name, :emp_sal
  FROM emp
 WHERE empno = 7988;
```

The enhanced `SELECT` statement also allows you to include parameter markers (question marks) in any clause where a value would be permitted. For example, the following query contains a parameter marker in the `WHERE` clause:

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE dept_no = ?;
```

This `SELECT` statement allows you to provide a value at run-time for the `dept_no` parameter marker.

## SET CONNECTION

There are (at least) three reasons you may need more than one connection in a given client application:

- You may want different privileges for different statements;
- You may need to interact with multiple databases within the same client.
- Multiple threads of execution (within a client application) cannot share a connection concurrently.

The syntax for the `SET CONNECTION` statement is:

```
EXEC SQL SET CONNECTION <connection_name>;
```

Where:

`connection_name` is the name of the connection to the database.

To use the `SET CONNECTION` statement, you should open the connection to the database using the second form of the `CONNECT` statement; include the `AS` clause to specify a `connection_name`.

By default, the current thread uses the current connection; use the `SET CONNECTION` statement to specify a default connection for the current thread to use. The default connection is only used when you execute an `EXEC`

**SQL** statement that does not explicitly specify a connection name. For example, the following statement will use the default connection because it does not include an **AT connection\_name** clause. :

```
EXEC SQL DELETE FROM emp;
```

This statement will not use the default connection because it specifies a connection name using the **AT connection\_name** clause:

```
EXEC SQL AT acctg_conn DELETE FROM emp;
```

For example, a client application that creates and maintains multiple connections (such as):

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO edb AS acctg_conn
USER 'alice' IDENTIFIED BY 'acctpwd';
```

and

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO edb AS hr_conn
USER 'bob' IDENTIFIED BY 'hrpwd';
```

Can change between the connections with the **SET CONNECTION** statement:

```
SET CONNECTION acctg_conn;
```

or

```
SET CONNECTION hr_conn;
```

The server will use the privileges associated with the connection when determining the privileges available to the connecting client. When using the **acctg\_conn** connection, the client will have the privileges associated with the role, **alice**; when connected using **hr\_conn**, the client will have the privileges associated with **bob**.

## SET DESCRIPTOR

Use the **SET DESCRIPTOR** statement to assign a value to a descriptor area using information provided by the client application in the form of a host variable or an integer value. The statement comes in two forms; the first form is:

```
EXEC SQL [FOR <array_size>] SET DESCRIPTOR <descriptor_name>
  VALUE <column_number> <descriptor_item> = <host_variable>;
```

The second form is:

```
EXEC SQL [FOR <array_size>] SET DESCRIPTOR <descriptor_name>
  COUNT = integer;
```

Where:

**array\_size** is an integer value or a host variable that contains an integer value specifying the number of rows to fetch. If you omit the **FOR** clause, the statement is executed once for each member of the array.

**descriptor\_name** specifies the name of a descriptor (as a single-quoted string literal), or a host variable that contains the name of a descriptor.

Include the **VALUE** clause to describe the information stored in the descriptor.

**column\_number** identifies the position of the variable within the descriptor.

`descriptor_item` specifies the type of the descriptor item.

`host_variable` specifies the name of the host variable that contains the value of the item.

ECPGPlus implements the following `descriptor_item` types:

- `TYPE`
- `LENGTH`
- `[REF] INDICATOR`
- `[REF] DATA`
- `[REF] RETURNED LENGTH`

For example, a client application might prompt a user for a dynamically created query:

```
query_text = promptUser("Enter a query");
```

To execute a dynamically created query, you must first `prepare` the query (parsing and validating the syntax of the query), and then `describe` the `input` parameters found in the query using the `EXEC SQL DESCRIBE INPUT` statement.

```
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR query_params;
EXEC SQL PREPARE emp_query FROM :query_text;
```

```
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE INPUT emp_query
  USING SQL DESCRIPTOR 'query_params';
```

After describing the query, the `query_params` descriptor contains information about each parameter required by the query.

For this example, we'll assume that the user has entered:

```
SELECT ename FROM emp WHERE sal > ? AND job = ?;
```

In this case, the descriptor describes two parameters, one for `sal > ?` and one for `job = ?`.

To discover the number of parameter markers (question marks) in the query (and therefore, the number of values you must provide before executing the query), use:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR ... :host_variable = COUNT;
```

Then, you can use `EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR` to retrieve the name of each parameter. You can also use `EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR` to retrieve the type of each parameter (along with the number of parameters) from the descriptor, or you can supply each `value` in the form of a character string and ECPG will convert that string into the required data type.

The data type of the first parameter is `numeric`; the type of the second parameter is `varchar`. The name of the first parameter is `sal`; the name of the second parameter is `job`.

Next, loop through each parameter, prompting the user for a value, and store those values in host variables. You can use `GET DESCRIPTOR ... COUNT` to find the number of parameters in the query.

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR 'query_params'
:param_count = COUNT;
```

```
for(param_number = 1;
    param_number <= param_count;
    param_number++)
{
```

Use **GET DESCRIPTOR** to copy the name of the parameter into the `param_name` host variable:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR 'query_params'
  VALUE :param_number :param_name = NAME;

reply = promptUser(param_name);
if (reply == NULL)
  reply_ind = 1; /* NULL */
else
  reply_ind = 0; /* NOT NULL */
```

To associate a `value` with each parameter, you use the **EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR** statement. For example:

```
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR 'query_params'
  VALUE :param_number DATA = :reply;
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR 'query_params'
  VALUE :param_number INDICATOR = :reply_ind;
}
```

Now, you can use the **EXEC SQL EXECUTE DESCRIPTOR** statement to execute the prepared statement on the server.

## UPDATE

Use an **UPDATE** statement to modify the data stored in a table. The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL [AT <database_name>][FOR <exec_count>]
  UPDATE [ ONLY ] table [ [ AS ] alias ]
  SET {column = { expression | DEFAULT } |
    (column [, ...]) = ({ expression|DEFAULT } [, ...])} [, ...]
  [ FROM from_list ]
  [ WHERE condition | WHERE CURRENT OF cursor_name ]
  [ RETURNING * | output_expression [[ AS ] output_name] [, ...] ]
```

Where:

`database_name` is the name of the database (or host variable that contains the name of the database) in which the table resides. This value may take the form of an unquoted string literal, or of a host variable.

Include the `FOR exec_count` clause to specify the number of times the statement will execute; this clause is valid only if the `SET` or `WHERE` clause contains an array.

ECPGPlus provides support for the additional clauses of the SQL **UPDATE** statement as documented in the PostgreSQL Core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-update.html>

A host variable can be used in any clause that specifies a value. To use a host variable, simply substitute a defined variable for any value associated with any of the documented **UPDATE** clauses.

The following **UPDATE** statement changes the job description of an employee (identified by the `:ename` host variable) to the value contained in the `:new_job` host variable, and increases the employees salary, by multiplying the current salary by the value in the `:increase` host variable:

```
EXEC SQL UPDATE emp
  SET job = :new_job, sal = sal * :increase
```

```
WHERE ename = :ename;
```

The enhanced **UPDATE** statement also allows you to include parameter markers (question marks) in any clause where an input value would be permitted. For example, we can write the same update statement with a parameter marker in the **WHERE** clause:

```
EXEC SQL UPDATE emp
  SET job = ?, sal = sal * ?
 WHERE ename = :ename;
```

This **UPDATE** statement could allow you to prompt the user for a new value for the **job** column and provide the amount by which the **sal** column is incremented for the employee specified by **:ename**.

## WHENEVER

Use the **WHENEVER** statement to specify the action taken by a client application when it encounters an SQL error or warning. The syntax is:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER <condition> <action>;
```

The following table describes the different conditions that might trigger an **action**:

Condition	Description
NOT FOUND	The server returns a NOT FOUND condition when it encounters a SELECT that returns no rows, or when a FETCH reaches the end of a result set.
SQLERROR	The server returns an SQLERROR condition when it encounters a serious error returned by an SQL statement.
SQLWARNING	The server returns an SQLWARNING condition when it encounters a non-fatal warning returned by an SQL statement.

The following table describes the actions that result from a client encountering a **condition**:

Action	Description
CALL function [[args]]	Instructs the client application to call the named function.
CONTINUE	Instructs the client application to proceed to the next statement.
DO BREAK	Instructs the client application to a C break statement. A break statement may appear in a loop or a switch statement. If executed, the break statement terminate the loop or the switch statement..
DO CONTINUE	Instructs the client application to emit a C continue statement. A continue statement may only exist within a loop, and if executed, will cause the flow of control to return to the top of the loop.
DO function ([args])	Instructs the client application to call the named function.
GOTO label or GO TO label	Instructs the client application to proceed to the statement that contains the label.
SQLPRINT	Instructs the client application to print a message to standard error.
STOP	Instructs the client application to stop execution.

The following code fragment prints a message if the client application encounters a warning, and aborts the application if it encounters an error:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING SQLPRINT;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;
```

Include the following code to specify that a client should continue processing after warning a user of a problem:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING SQLPRINT;
```

Include the following code to call a function if a query returns no rows, or when a cursor reaches the end of a result set:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND CALL error_handler(__LINE__);
```

## 2 EDB pgAdmin4 Quickstart Linux Guide for EPAS

pgAdmin 4 is the leading Open Source management tool for Postgres databases. EDB pgAdmin 4 is distributed by EDB along with EDB Postgres Advanced Server databases. It is designed to meet the needs of both novice and experienced Postgres users alike, providing a powerful graphical interface that simplifies the creation, maintenance and use of database objects.

You can install [EDB pgAdmin 4](#) for your Advanced Server databases using yum package manager for RHEL/CentOS 6.x or 7.x or 8.x platforms.

### Installing EDB pgAdmin 4 on a Linux Host

You can use the following steps to use the yum package manager to install EDB pgAdmin4:

#### 1. Create a Repository Configuration File

To create a repository configuration file, you must have the credentials that allow to access the EnterpriseDB repository. For information about requesting credentials, visit:

<https://info.enterprisedb.com/rs/069-ALB-339/images/Repository%20Access%2004-09-2019.pdf>.

To create the repository configuration file, assume superuser privileges and invoke the following command:

```
yum -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edb-repo-rpms/edb-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
```

The repository configuration file is named `edb.repo`. The file resides in `/etc/yum.repos.d`. After creating the `edb.repo` file, use the following command to replace the `USERNAME` and `PASSWORD` placeholders in the `baseurl` specification with the username and password of a registered EDB user:

```
sed -i "s@<username>:<password>@USERNAME:PASSWORD@" /etc/yum.repos.d/edb.repo
```

#### Note

If you have `edb.repo` already configured then you can skip this step and go to the next step.

#### 1. Install EPEL Repository

For CentOS 7.x use the following command:

```
yum -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm
```

#### Note

To install EPEL repository on CentOS/RHEL6.x, RHEL 7.x and CentOS/RHEL 8.x see the platform specific steps at [EDB Website](#).

## 2. Install EDB pgAdmin 4

After creating the repository configuration file and adding a username and password to the `edb.repo` file, you can install `edb-pgadmin4`. To install `edb-pgadmin4`, assume superuser privileges and invoke the following command:

```
yum install edb-pgadmin4*
```

### Note

This command will install following packages:

`edb-pgadmin4`

`edb-pgadmin4-desktop-common`

`edb-pgadmin4-desktop-gnome`

`edb-pgadmin4-docs`

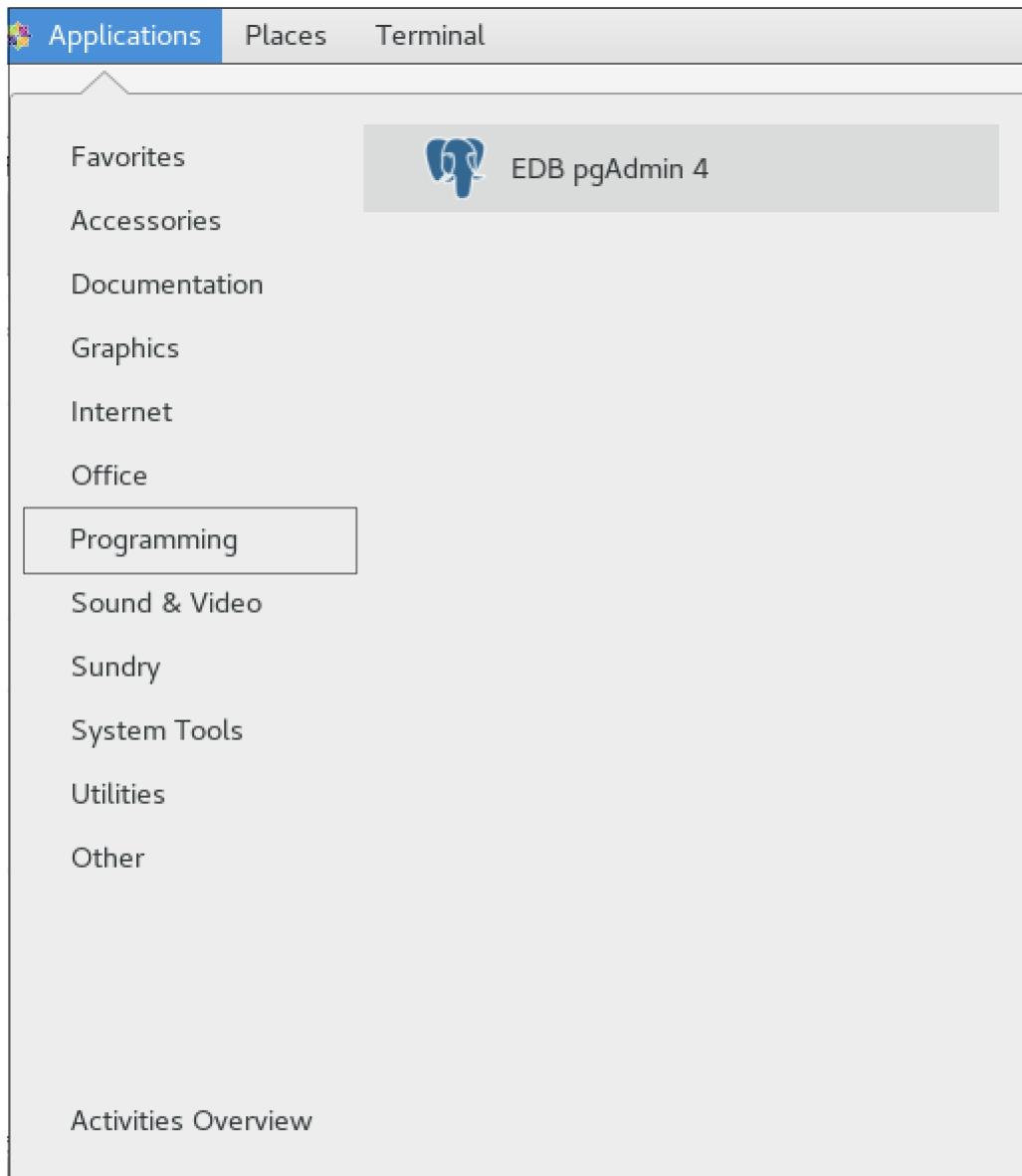
`edb-pgadmin4-web`

### Starting pgAdmin 4 in Desktop Mode

You can use the following command to start pgAdmin 4 in desktop mode:

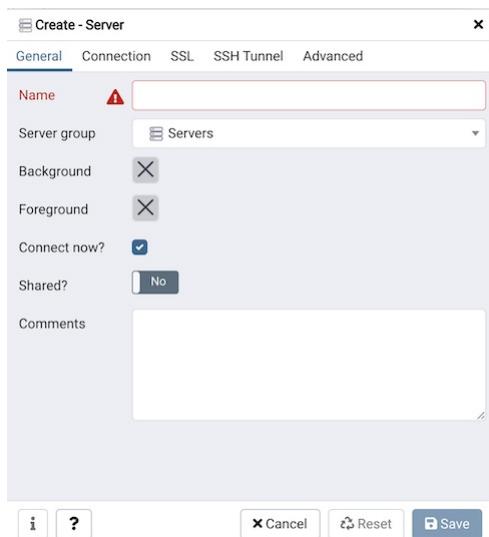
```
/usr/edb/pgadmin4/bin/pgAdmin4
```

You can also use the link on the `Applications` menu to start pgAdmin 4 in desktop mode:



## Registering and Connecting to Advanced Server with pgAdmin 4

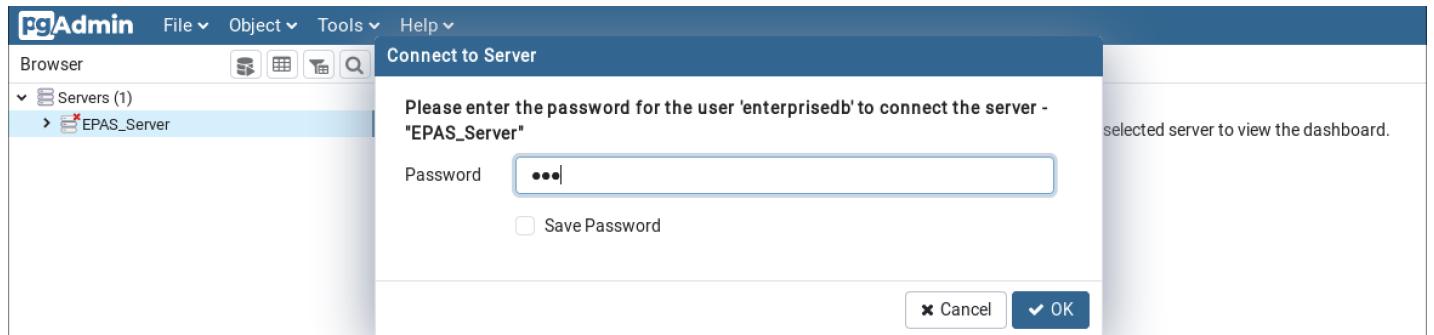
Before managing an Advanced Server cluster, you must register the server. To register the server, use the fields on the **Server** dialog to specify the connection properties. To open the **Server** dialog, right-click on the **Servers** node of the tree control, and select **Server** from the **Create** menu.



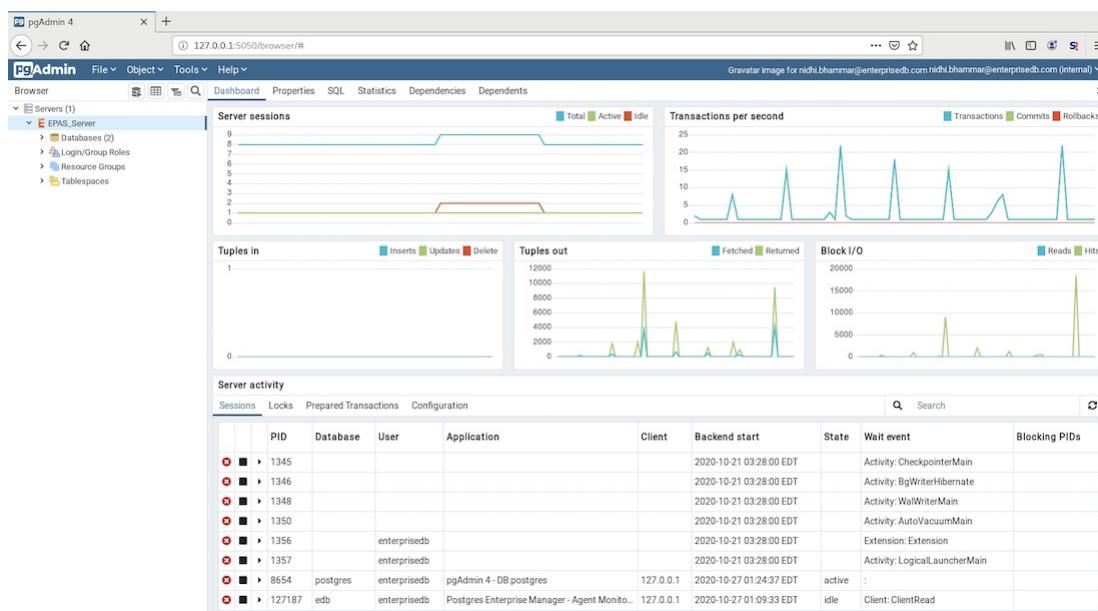
For detailed information about registering your server, visit:

[https://www.pgadmin.org/docs/pgadmin4/latest/server\\_dialog.html](https://www.pgadmin.org/docs/pgadmin4/latest/server_dialog.html).

Then, to connect to your Advanced Server instance, right click on the server name and select **Connect Server**; provide your password when the **Connect to Server** dialog opens:



Once you are connected to the server, you can see the **Dashboard** tab as shown below:



## 3 EDB Plus User Guide

This guide describes how to connect to an Advanced Server database using EDB\*Plus. EDB\*Plus provides a command line user interface to EDB Postgres Advanced Server that accepts SQL commands that allow you to:

- Query certain database objects
- Execute stored procedures
- Format output from SQL commands
- Execute batch scripts
- Execute OS commands
- Record output

For detailed information about the features supported by Advanced Server, consult the complete library of Advanced Server guides available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## 3.1 EDB\*Plus

EDB\*Plus is a utility program that provides a command line user interface to EDB Postgres Advanced Server. EDB\*Plus accepts SQL commands, SPL anonymous blocks, and EDB\*Plus commands.

EDB\*Plus commands are compatible with Oracle SQL\*Plus commands and provide various capabilities including:

- Querying certain database objects
- Executing stored procedures
- Formatting output from SQL commands
- Executing batch scripts
- Executing OS commands
- Recording output

## 3.2 Installing EDB\*Plus

You can use an RPM installer or a graphical installer to add EDB\*Plus to your Advanced Server installation.

### Installation Pre-Requisites

Before installing EDB\*Plus, you must first install Java (version 1.8 or later). On a Linux system, you can use the `yum` package manager to install Java. Open a terminal window, assume superuser privileges, and enter:

- On RHEL or CentOS 7:

```
# yum -y install java
```

- On RHEL or CentOS 8:

```
# dnf -y install java
```

If you are using Windows, Java installers and instructions are available online at:

<http://www.java.com/en/download/manual.jsp>

You must also have credentials that allow access to the EDB repository. For information about requesting credentials, visit:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/user/login>

After receiving your repository credentials:

1. Create the repository configuration file.
2. Modify the file, providing your user name and password.
3. Install EDB\*Plus.

For detailed information about creating and using EDB repositories to install Advanced Server or its supporting components, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server Installation Guide* available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## Installing EDB\*Plus on a CentOS Host

You can use an RPM package to install EDB\*Plus on a CentOS host.

- To install the repository configuration file, assume superuser privileges, and invoke one of the following platform-specific commands:

On CentOS 7:

```
yum -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edbrepos/edb-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
```

On CentOS 8:

```
dnf -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edbrepos/edb-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
```

- Replace the `USERNAME:PASSWORD` variable in the following command with the username and password of a registered EDB user:

```
sed -i "s@<username>:<password>@USERNAME:PASSWORD@" /etc/yum.repos.d/edb.repo
```

- Before installing EDB\*Plus, you must install the `epel-release` package:

On CentOS 7:

```
yum -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm
```

On CentOS 8:

```
dnf -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-8.noarch.rpm
```

- For CentOS 8, enable the PowerTools repository to satisfy package dependencies:

```
dnf config-manager --set-enabled PowerTools
```

The repository configuration file is named `edb.repo`. The file resides in `/etc/yum.repos.d`.

After creating the `edb.repo` file, use your choice of editor to ensure that the value of the `enabled` parameter is `1`, and replace the `username` and `password` placeholders in the `baseurl` specification with the name and password of a registered EDB user.

```
[edb]
name=EnterpriseDB RPMs $releasever - $basearch
baseurl=https://<username>:<password>@yum.enterprisedb.com/edb/redhat/rhel-$releasever-$basearch
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=file:///etc/pki/rpm-gpg/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY
```

After saving your changes to the configuration file, you can use the following command to install EDB\*Plus:

- On CentOS 7:

```
yum -y install edb-asxx-edbplus
```

- On CentOS 8:

```
dnf -y install edb-asxx-edbplus
```

Where, `xx` is the Advanced Server version.

When you install an RPM package that is signed by a source that is not recognized by your system, `yum` may ask for your permission to import the key to your local server. If prompted, and you are satisfied that the packages come from a trustworthy source, enter `y`, and press `Return` to continue.

During the installation, `yum` may encounter a dependency that it cannot resolve. If it does, it will provide a list of the required dependencies that you must manually resolve.

## Installing EDB\*Plus on a RHEL Host

You can use an RPM package to install EDB\*Plus on a RHEL host.

- To install the repository configuration file, assume superuser privileges, and invoke one of the following platform-specific commands:

On RHEL 7:

```
yum -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edbrepos/edb-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
```

On RHEL 8:

```
dnf -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edbrepos/edb-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
```

- Replace the `USERNAME:PASSWORD` variable in the following command with the username and password of a registered EDB user:

```
sed -i "s@<username>:<password>@USERNAME:PASSWORD@" /etc/yum.repos.d/edb.repo
```

- Before installing EDB\*Plus, you must install the `epel-release` package:

On RHEL 7:

```
yum -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm
```

On RHEL 8:

```
dnf -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-8.noarch.rpm
```

- Enable the repository:

On RHEL7, enable the `optional`, `extras`, and `HA` repositories to satisfy package dependencies:

```
subscription-manager repos --enable "rhel-* optional-rpms" --enable "rhel-* extras-rpms" --enable "rhel-ha-for-rhel-* server-rpms"
```

On RHEL 8, enable the `codeready-builder-for-rhel-8-*-rpms` repository to satisfy package dependencies:

```
ARCH=$( /bin/arch )
subscription-manager repos --enable "codeready-builder-for-rhel-8-$
{ARCH}-rpms"
```

The repository configuration file is named `edb.repo`. The file resides in `/etc/yum.repos.d`.

After creating the `edb.repo` file, use your choice of editor to ensure that the value of the `enabled` parameter is `1`, and replace the `username` and `password` placeholders in the `baseurl` specification with the name and password of a registered EDB user.

```
[edb]
name=EnterpriseDB RPMs $releasever - $basearch
baseurl=https://<username>:<password>@yum.enterprisedb.com/edb/redhat/
rhel-$releasever-$basearch
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=file:///etc/pki/rpm-gpg/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY
```

After saving your changes to the configuration file, you can use the following command to install EDB\*Plus:

- On RHEL 7:

```
yum -y install edb-asxx-edbplus
```

- On RHEL 8:

```
dnf -y install edb-asxx-edbplus
```

Where, `xx` is the Advanced Server version.

When you install an RPM package that is signed by a source that is not recognized by your system, `yum` may ask for your permission to import the key to your local server. If prompted, and you are satisfied that the packages come from a trustworthy source, enter `y`, and press `Return` to continue.

During the installation, `yum` may encounter a dependency that it cannot resolve. If it does, it will provide a list of the required dependencies that you must manually resolve.

## Installing EDB\*Plus on a CentOS/RHEL 7 ppc64le Host

You can use an RPM package to install EDB\*Plus on a CentOS or RHEL 7 ppc64le host.

- To install the IBM Advance Toolchain repository:

On CentOS or RHEL 7 ppc64le:

```
rpm --import https://public.dhe.ibm.com/software/server/POWER/Linux/
toolchain/at/redhat/RHEL7/gpg-pubkey-6976a827-5164221b
```

The repository configuration file is named `advance-toolchain.repo`. The file resides in `/etc/yum.repos.d`.

- After creating the `advance-toolchain.repo` file, use your choice of editor to set the value of the `enabled` parameter to `1`, and replace the `username` and `password` placeholders in the `baseurl` specification with the registered EDB username and password.

```
[advance-toolchain]
name=Advance Toolchain IBM FTP
baseurl=https://public.dhe.ibm.com/software/server/POWER/Linux/
toolchain/at/redhat/RHEL7
failovermethod=priority
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/software/server/POWER/Linux/
toolchain/at/redhat/RHELX/gpg-pubkey-6976a827-5164221b
```

- To install the Enterprisedb repository configuration file, assume superuser privileges and invoke the following command:

On CentOS or RHEL 7 ppc64le:

```
yum -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edbrepos/edb-repo-
latest.noarch.rpm
```

- Replace the **USERNAME:PASSWORD** in the following command with the username and password of a registered EDB user:

```
sed -i "s@<username>:<password>@USERNAME:PASSWORD@" /etc/yum.repos.d/
edb.repo
```

- Before installing EDB\*Plus, you must install the **epel-release** package:

On CentOS or RHEL 7 ppc64le:

```
yum -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-
latest-7.noarch.rpm
```

- Enable the repository:

On RHEL7, enable the **optional**, **extras**, and **HA** repositories to satisfy package dependencies:

```
subscription-manager repos --enable "rhel-*optional-rpms" --enable
"rhel-*extras-rpms" --enable "rhel-ha-for-rhel-*server-rpms"
```

The repository configuration file is named **edb.repo**. The file resides in **/etc/yum.repos.d**.

After creating the **edb.repo** file, use your choice of editor to ensure that the value of the enabled parameter is **1**, and replace the **username** and **password** placeholders in the **baseurl** specification with the name and password of a registered EDB user.

```
[edb]
name=EnterpriseDB RPMs $releasever - $basearch
baseurl=https://<username>:<password>@yum.enterprisedb.com/edb/redhat/
rhel-$releasever-$basearch
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=file:///etc/pki/rpm-gpg/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY
```

After saving your changes to the configuration file, you can use the following command to install EDB\*Plus:

```
yum -y install edb-asxx-edbplus
```

Where, **xx** is the Advanced Server version.

When you install an RPM package that is signed by a source that is not recognized by your system, `yum` may ask for your permission to import the key to your local server. If prompted, and you are satisfied that the packages come from a trustworthy source, enter `y`, and press `Return` to continue.

During the installation, `yum` may encounter a dependency that it cannot resolve. If it does, it will provide a list of the required dependencies that you must manually resolve.

## Installing EDB\*Plus on a Debian or Ubuntu Host

To install EDB\*Plus on a Debian or Ubuntu host, you must have credentials that allow access to the EDB repository. To request credentials for the repository, visit:

```
https://www.enterprisedb.com/repository-access-request
```

The following steps will walk you through using the EDB apt repository to install a debian package. When using the commands, replace the `username` and `password` with the credentials provided by EDB.

- Assume superuser privileges:

```
sudo su -
```

- Configure the EDB repository:

On Debian 9, Ubuntu 18, and Ubuntu 20:

```
sh -c 'echo "deb https://USERNAME:PASSWORD@apt.enterprisedb.com/
$(lsb_release -cs)-edb/ $(lsb_release -cs) main" > /etc/apt/sources.
list.d/edb-$(lsb_release -cs).list'
```

On Debian 10:

1. Set up the EDB repository:

```
sh -c 'echo "deb [arch=amd64] https://apt.enterprisedb.com/
$(lsb_release -cs)-edb/ $(lsb_release -cs) main" > /etc/apt/
sources.list.d/edb-$(lsb_release -cs).list'
```

1. Substitute your EDB credentials for the `username` and `password` placeholders in the following command:

```
sh -c 'echo "machine apt.enterprisedb.com login <USERNAME>
password <PASSWORD>" > /etc/apt/auth.conf.d/edb.conf'
```

- Add support to your system for secure APT repositories:

```
apt-get -y install apt-transport-https
```

- Add the EBD signing key:

```
wget -q -O - https://apt.enterprisedb.com/edb-deb.gpg.key | sudo
apt-key add -
```

- Update the repository metadata:

```
apt-get update
```

- Install Debian package:

```
apt-get -y install edb-asxx-edbplus
```

Where, xx is the Advanced Server version.

## Configuring an RPM Installation

After performing an RPM installation of EDB\*Plus, you must set the values of environment variables that allow EDB\*Plus to locate your Java installation. Use the following commands to set variable values:

```
export JAVA_HOME=<path_to_java>
export PATH=<path_to_java>/bin:$PATH
```

By default, the `pg_hba.conf` file for the RPM installer enforces `IDENT` authentication. Before invoking EDB\*Plus, you must either modify the `pg_hba.conf` file, changing the authentication method to a form other than `IDENT` (and restarting the server), or perform the following steps to ensure that an `IDENT` server is accessible:

You must confirm that an `identd` server is installed and running. You can use the `yum` package manager to install an `identd` server by invoking the command:

- On RHEL or CentOS 7:

```
yum -y install xinetd authd
```

- On RHEL or CentOS 8:

```
dnf -y install xinetd authd
```

The command should create a file named `/etc/xinetd.d/auth` that contains:

```
service auth
{
    disable = yes
    socket_type = stream
    wait =no
    user = ident
    cps = 4096 10
    instances = UNLIMITED
    server = /usr/sbin/in.authd server_args = -t60 --xerror --os
}
```

### Note

If the file includes a `-E` argument at the end of the server arguments, please erase `-E`.

Then, to start the `identd` server, invoke the following commands:

```
systemctl enable xinetd
systemctl start xinetd
```

Open the `pg_ident.conf` file and create a user mapping:

```
### map_name    system_username    postgres_username
edbas        enterpriseDB      enterpriseDB
```

Where:

- The name specified in the `map_name` column is a user-defined name that will identify the mapping in the `pg_hba.conf` file.
- The name specified in the `system_username` column is `enterprisedb`.
- The name specified in the `postgres_username` column is `enterprisedb`.

Then, open the `pg_hba.conf` file and modify the `IDENT` entries:

- If you are using an IPv4 local connection, modify the file entry to read:

```
host all all 127.0.0.0/0 ident map=edbas
```

- If you are using an IPv6 local connection, modify the file entry to read:

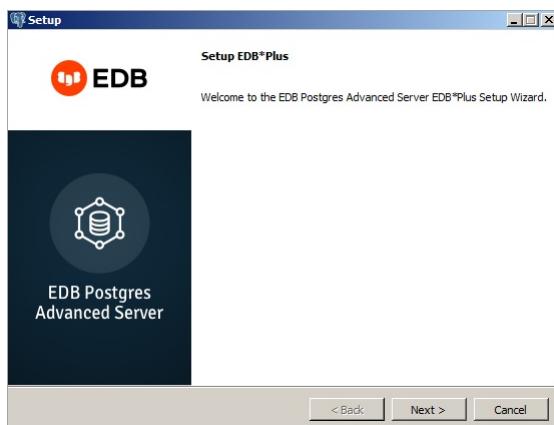
```
host all all ::1/128 ident map=edbas
```

You must restart the Advanced Server service before invoking EDB\*Plus. For detailed information about controlling the Advanced Server service, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server Installation Guide*, available at:

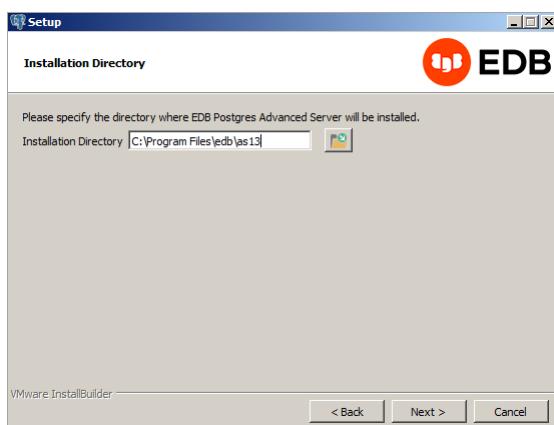
<https://www.enterprisedb.com/resources/product-documentation>

## Using the Graphical Installer

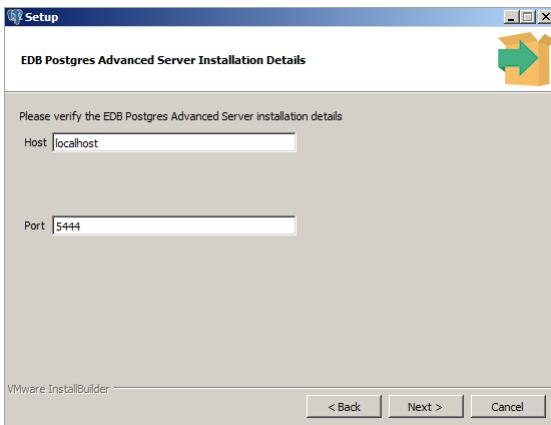
Graphical installers for EDB\*Plus are available via StackBuilder Plus; you can access StackBuilder Plus through your Windows or Linux start menu. After opening StackBuilder Plus and selecting the installation for which you wish to install EDB\*Plus, expand the component selection screen tree control to select and download the EDB\*Plus installer.



The EDB\*Plus installer welcomes you to the setup wizard, as shown in the figure below.



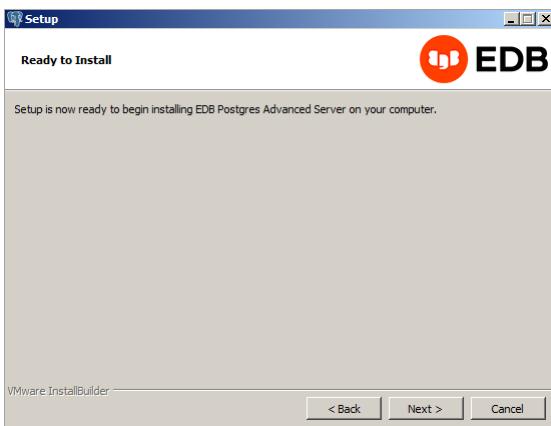
Use the `Installation Directory` field to specify the directory in which you wish to install the EDB\*Plus software. Then, click `Next` to continue.



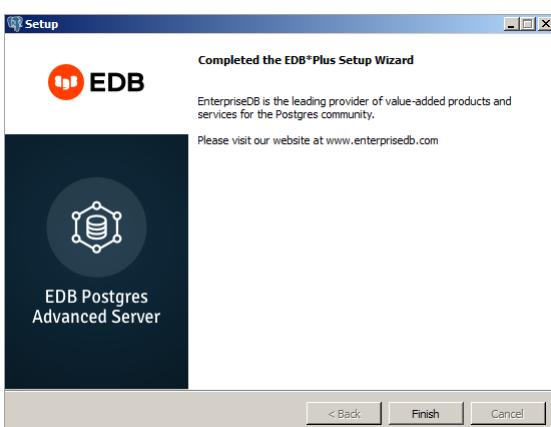
Use fields on the **EDB Postgres Advanced Server Installation Details** window to identify the location of the Advanced Server host:

- Use the **Host** field to identify the system on which Advanced Server resides.
- Use the **Port** field to identify the listener port that Advanced Server monitors for client connections.

Then, click **Next** to continue.



The **Ready to Install** window notifies you when the installer has all of the information needed to install EDB\*Plus on your system. Click **Next** to install EDB\*Plus.



The installer notifies you when the setup wizard has completed the EDB\*Plus installation. Click **Finish** to exit the installer.

### 3.3 Using EDB\*Plus

To open an EDB\*Plus command line, navigate through the `Applications` or `Start` menu to the `Advanced Server` menu, to the `Run SQL Command Line` menu, and select the `EDB*Plus` option. You can also invoke EDB\*Plus from the operating system command line with the following command:

```
edbplus [ -S[ILENT] ] [ <login> | /NOLOG ] [ @<scriptfile>[.<ext>] ]
```

`SILENT`

If specified, the EDB\*Plus sign-on banner is suppressed along with all prompts.

`login`

Login information for connecting to the database server and database. `login` takes the following form; there must be no white space within the login information.

```
<username>[/<password>][@{<connectstring>} <variable>]
```

Where:

`username` is a database username with which to connect to the database.

`password` is the password associated with the specified `username`. If a `password` is not provided, but a password is required for authentication, a password file is used if available. If there is no password file or no entry in the password file with the matching connection parameters, then EDB\*Plus will prompt for the password.

`connectstring` is the database connection string with the following format:

```
<host>[:<port>]/<dbname>]?ssl={true | false}]
```

Where:

`host` is the hostname or IP address on which the database server resides. If neither `@connectstring` nor `@variable` nor `/NOLOG` is specified, the default host is assumed to be the localhost. `port` is the port number receiving connections on the database server. If not specified, the default is `5444`. `dbname` is the name of the database to connect to. If not specified the default is `edb`. If `Internet Protocol version 6` (IPv6) is used for the connection instead of IPv4, then the IP address must be enclosed within square brackets (that is, `[ipv6_address]`). The following is an example using an IPv6 connection:

```
edbplus.sh enterprisedb/password@[fe80::20c:29ff:fe7c:78b2]:5444/edb
```

The `pg_hba.conf` file for the database server must contain an appropriate entry for the IPv6 connection. The following example shows an entry that allows all addresses:

#	TYPE	DATABASE	USER	ADDRESS	METHOD
host	all	all	::/0	md5	

For more information about the `pg_hba.conf` file, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/auth-pg-hba-conf.html>

If an SSL connection is desired, then include the `?ssl=true` parameter in the connection string. In such a case, the connection string must minimally include `host:port`, with or without `/dbname`. If the `ssl` parameter is not specified, the default is `false`. See [Using a Secure Sockets Layer \(SSL\) Connection](#) for instructions on setting up an SSL connection.

`variable` is a variable defined in the `login.sql` file that contains a database connection string. The `login.sql`

file can be found in the `edbplus` subdirectory of the Advanced Server home directory.

#### /NOLOG

Specify `/NOLOG` to start EDB\*Plus without establishing a database connection. SQL commands and EDB\*Plus commands that require a database connection cannot be used in this mode. The `CONNECT` command can be subsequently given to connect to a database after starting EDB\*Plus with the `/NOLOG` option.

#### scriptfile[.ext ]

`scriptfile` is the name of a file residing in the current working directory, containing SQL and/or EDB\*Plus commands that will be automatically executed after startup of EDB\*Plus. `ext` is the filename extension. If the filename extension is `sql`, then the `.sql` extension may be omitted when specifying `scriptfile`. When creating a script file, always name the file with an extension, otherwise it will not be accessible by EDB\*Plus. (EDB\*Plus will always assume a `.sql` extension on filenames that are specified with no extension.)

The following example shows user `enterprisedb` with password `password`, connecting to database `edb` running on a database server on the `localhost` at port `5444`.

```
C:\Program Files\edb\as13\edbplus>edbplus enterprisedb/password
Connected to EnterpriseDB 13.0.1 (localhost:5444/edb) AS enterprisedb
```

```
EDB*Plus: Release 13 (Build 39.0.0)
Copyright (c) 2008-2020, EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.
```

```
SQL>
```

The following example shows user `enterprisedb` with password, `password`, connecting to database `edb` running on a database server on the `localhost` at port `5445`.

```
C:\Program Files\edb\as13\edbplus>edbplus enterprisedb/
password@localhost:5445/edb
Connected to EnterpriseDB 13.0.1 (localhost:5445/edb) AS enterprisedb
```

```
EDB*Plus: Release 13 (Build 39.0.0)
Copyright (c) 2008-2020, EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.
```

```
SQL>
```

Using variable `hr 5445` in the `login.sql` file, the following illustrates how it is used to connect to database `hr` on `localhost` at port `5445`.

```
C:\Program Files\edb\as13\edbplus>edbplus enterprisedb/password@hr_5445
Connected to EnterpriseDB 13.0.1 (localhost:5445/hr) AS enterprisedb
```

```
EDB*Plus: Release 13 (Build 39.0.0)
Copyright (c) 2008-2020, EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.
```

```
SQL>
```

The following is the content of the `login.sql` file used in the previous example.

```
define edb="localhost:5445/edb"
define hr_5445="localhost:5445/hr"
```

The following example executes a script file, `dept_query.sql` after connecting to database `edb` on server `localhost` at port `5444`.

```
C:\Program Files\edb\as13\edbplus>edbplus enterprisedb/password @dept_query
Connected to EnterpriseDB 13.0.1 (localhost:5444/edb) AS enterprisedb
```

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM dept;
```

DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON

```
SQL> EXIT
```

Disconnected from EnterpriseDB Database.

The following is the content of file `dept_query.sql` used in the previous example.

```
SET PAGESIZE 9999
SET ECHO ON
SELECT * FROM dept;
EXIT
```

## 3.4 Using a Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) Connection

An EDB\*Plus connection to the Advanced Server database can be accomplished using secure sockets layer (SSL) connectivity.

Using SSL requires various prerequisite configuration steps performed on the database server involved with the SSL connection as well as creation of the Java truststore and keystore on the host that will run EDB\*Plus.

The Java *truststore* is the file containing the Certificate Authority (CA) certificates with which the Java client (EDB\*Plus) uses to verify the authenticity of the server to which it is initiating an SSL connection.

The Java *keystore* is the file containing private and public keys and their corresponding certificates. The keystore is required for client authentication to the server, which is used for the EDB\*Plus connection.

The following is material to which you can refer to for guidance in setting up the SSL connections:

- For information on setting up SSL connectivity to the Advanced Server database, see the section about secure TCP connections with SSL in Chapter 18 “Server Setup and Operation” in the PostgreSQL Core Documentation located at:
  - | <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/ssl-tcp.html>
- For information on JDBC client connectivity using SSL, see the section on configuring the client in Chapter 4 “Using SSL” in The PostgreSQL JDBC Interface located at:
  - | <https://jdbc.postgresql.org/documentation/head/ssl-client.html>

The following sections provide information for the configuration steps of using SSL.

- Configuring SSL on Advanced Server
- Configuring SSL for the EDB\*Plus client
- Requesting SSL connection to the Advanced Server database

## Configuring SSL on Advanced Server

This section provides an example of configuring SSL on a database server to demonstrate the use of SSL with EDB\*Plus. A self-signed certificate is used for this purpose.

### Step 1: Create the certificate signing request (CSR).

In the following example the generated certificate signing request file is `server.csr`. The private key is generated as file `server.key`.

```
$ openssl req -new -nodes -text -out server.csr \
> -keyout server.key -subj "/CN=enterprisedb"
Generating a 2048 bit RSA private key
.....+++
.....+++
writing new private key to 'server.key'
-----
```

#### Note

When creating the certificate, the value specified for the common name field (designated as `CN=enterprisedb` in this example) must be the database user name that is specified when connecting to EDB\*Plus.

In addition, user name maps can be used as defined in the `pg_ident.conf` file to permit more flexibility for the common name and database user name. Steps 8 and 9 describe the use of user name `maps`.

### Step 2: Generate the self-signed certificate.

The following generates a self-signed certificate to file `server.crt` using the certificate signing request file, `server.csr`, and the private key, `server.key`, as input.

```
$ openssl x509 -req -days 365 -in server.csr -signkey server.key \
> -out server.crt
Signature ok
subject=/CN=enterprisedb
Getting Private key
```

### Step 3: Make a copy of the server certificate (`server.crt`) to be used as the root Certificate Authority (CA) file (`root.crt`).

```
$ cp server.crt root.crt
```

### Step 4: Delete the now redundant certificate signing request (`server.csr`).

```
$ rm -f server.csr
```

### Step 5: Move or copy the certificate and private key files to the Advanced Server data directory (for example, `/opt/edb/as10/data`).

```
$ mv root.crt /opt/edb/as10/data
$ mv server.crt /opt/edb/as10/data
$ mv server.key /opt/edb/as10/data
```

### Step 6: Set the file ownership and permissions on the certificate files and private key file.

Set the ownership to the operating system account that owns the data sub-directory of the database server. Set the permissions so that no other groups or accounts other than the owner can access these files.

```
$ chown enterprise db root.crt server.crt server.key
$ chgrp enterprise db root.crt server.crt server.key
$ chmod 600 root.crt server.crt server.key
$ ls -l
total 152
```

```
rw----- 1 enterprise db enterprise 985 Aug 22 11:00 root.crt
rw----- 1 enterprise db enterprise 985 Aug 22 10:59 server.crt
rw----- 1 enterprise db enterprise 1704 Aug 22 10:58 server.key
```

**Step 7:** In the `postgresql.conf` file, make the following modifications.

```
ssl = on
ssl_cert_file = 'server.crt'
ssl_key_file = 'server.key'
ssl_ca_file = 'root.crt'
```

**Step 8:** Modify the `pg_hba.conf` file to enable SSL usage on the desired database to which EDB\*Plus is to make the SSL connection.

In the `pg_hba.conf` file, the `hostssl` type indicates the entry is used to validate SSL connection attempts from the client (EDB\*Plus).

The authentication method is set to cert with the option `clientcert=1` in order to require an SSL certificate from the client against which authentication is performed using the common name of the certificate (`enterprise db` in this example).

The `map=sslusers` option specifies that a mapping named `sslusers` defined in the `pg_ident.conf` file is to be used for authentication. This mapping allows a connection to the database if the common name from the certificate and the database user name attempting the connection match the `SYSTEM-USERNAME/PG-USERNAME` pair listed in the `pg_ident.conf` file.

The following is an example of the settings in the `pg_hba.conf` file if the database `(edb)` must use SSL connections.

##	TYPE	DATABASE	USER	ADDRESS	METHOD
### "local"					is for Unix domain socket connections only
local	all	all			md5
### IPv4 local connections:					
hostssl	edb	all	192.168.2.0/24	cert	clientcert=1 map=sslusers

**Step 9:** The following shows the user name maps in the `pg_ident.conf` file related to the `pg_hba.conf` file by the `map=sslusers` option. These user name maps permit you to specify database user names `edbuser`, `postgres`, or `enterprise db` when connecting with EDB\*Plus.

```
## MAPNAME SYSTEM-USERNAME PG-USERNAME
sslusers enterprise db    edbuser
sslusers enterprise db    postgres
sslusers enterprise db    enterprise db
```

**Step 10:** Restart the database server after you have made the changes to the configuration files.

## Configuring SSL for the EDB\*Plus Client

After you have configured SSL on the database server, the following steps provide an example of generating certificate and keystore files for EDB\*Plus (the JDBC client).

**Step 1:** Using files `server.crt` and `server.key` located under the database server data sub-directory, create copies of these files and move them to the host where EDB\*Plus is to be running.

Store these files in the desired directory to contain the trusted certificate and keystore files to be generated in the following steps. The suggested location is to create a `.postgresql` sub-directory under the home user account that will invoke EDB\*Plus. Thus, these files will be under the `~/.postgresql` directory of the user account that will run EDB\*Plus.

For this example, assume file `edb.crt` is a copy of `server.crt` and `edb.key` is a copy of `server.key`.

**Step 2:** Create an additional copy of `edb.crt`.

```
$ cp edb.crt edb_root.crt
$ ls -l
total 12
-rw-r--r-- 1 user user 985 Aug 22 14:17 edb.crt
-rw-r--r-- 1 user user 1704 Aug 22 14:18 edb.key
-rw-r--r-- 1 user user 985 Aug 22 14:19 edb_root.crt
```

**Step 3:** Create a Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER) format of file `edb_root.crt`. The generated DER format of this file is `edb_root.crt.der`. The DER format of the file is required for the `keytool` program used in Step 4.

```
$ openssl x509 -in edb_root.crt -out edb_root.crt.der -outform der
$ ls -l
total 16
-rw-r--r-- 1 user user 985 Aug 22 14:17 edb.crt
-rw-r--r-- 1 user user 1704 Aug 22 14:18 edb.key
-rw-r--r-- 1 user user 985 Aug 22 14:19 edb_root.crt
-rw-rw-r-- 1 user user 686 Aug 22 14:21 edb_root.crt.der
```

**Step 4:** Use the `keytool` program to create a keystore file (`postgresql.keystore`) using `edb_root.crt.der` as the input. This process adds the certificate of the Postgres database server to the keystore file.

#### Note

The file name `postgresql.keystore` is recommended so that it can be accessed in its default directory location `~/.postgresql postgresql.keystore`, which is under the home directory of the user account invoking EDB\*Plus. Also note that the file name suffix can be `.jks` instead of `.keystore` (thus, file name `postgresql.jks`). However, in the remainder of these examples, file name `postgresql.keystore` is used.

**For Windows only:** The path is `%APPDATA%\postgresql\postgresql.keystore`

The `keytool` program can be found under the `bin` subdirectory of the Java Runtime Environment installation.

You will be prompted for a new password. **Save this password as it must be specified with the PGSSLCERTPASS environment variable.**

```
$ /usr/java/jdk1.8.0_131/jre/bin/keytool -keystore postgresql.keystore \
> -alias postgresqlstore -import -file edb_root.crt.der
Enter keystore password:
Re-enter new password:
Owner: CN=enterprisedb
Issuer: CN=enterprisedb
Serial number: c60f40256b0e8d53
Valid from: Tue Aug 22 10:59:25 EDT 2017 until: Wed Aug 22 10:59:25 EDT 2018
Certificate fingerprints:
```

```

MD5: 85:0B:E9:A7:6E:4F:7C:B0:9B:D6:3A:44:55:E2:E9:8E
SHA1: DD:A6:71:24:0B:6C:F8:BC:7A:4C:89:9B:DC:22:6A:6C:B0:F5:3F:7C
SHA256:
DC:02:64:E2:B0:E9:6F:1C:FC:4F:AE:E6:18:85:0B:79:57:43:C3:C5:AE:43:0D:37
:49:53:6D:11:69:06:46:48
Signature algorithm name: SHA1withRSA
Version: 1
Trust this certificate? [no]: yes
Certificate was added to keystore

```

**Step 5:** Create a **PKCS #12** format of the keystore file (**postgresql.p12**) using files **edb.crt** and **edb.key** as input.

#### Note

The file name **postgresql.p12** is recommended so that it can be accessed in its default directory location **~/.postgresql/postgresql.p12**, which is under the home directory of the user account invoking EDB\*Plus.

**For Windows only:** The path is **%APPDATA%\postgresql\postgresql.p12**

You will be prompted for a new password. **Save this password as it must be specified with the PGSSLKEYPASS environment variable.**

```

$ openssl pkcs12 -export -in edb.crt -inkey edb.key -out postgresql.p12
Enter Export Password:
Verifying - Enter Export Password:
$ ls -
total 24
-rw-rw-r-- 1 user user  985 Aug 24 12:18 edb.crt
-rw-rw-r-- 1 user user 1704 Aug 24 12:18 edb.key
-rw-rw-r-- 1 user user  985 Aug 24 12:20 edb_root.crt
-rw-rw-r-- 1 user user  686 Aug 24 12:20 edb_root.crt.der
-rw-rw-r-- 1 user user  758 Aug 24 12:26 postgresql.keystore
-rw-rw-r-- 1 user user 2285 Aug 24 12:28 postgresql.p12

```

**Step 6:** If the **postgresql.keystore** and **postgresql.p12** files are not already in the **~/.postgresql** directory, move or copy them to that location.

**For Windows only:** The directory is **%APPDATA%\postgresql**

**Step 7:** If the default location **~/.postgresql** is not used, then the full path (including the file name) to the **postgresql.keystore** file must be set with the **PGSSLCERT** environment variable, and the full path (including the file name) to file **postgresql.p12** must be set with the **PGSSLKEY** environment variable before invoking EDB\*Plus.

In addition, if the generated file from Step 4 was not named **postgresql.keystore** or **postgresql.jks** then, use the **PGSSLCERT** environment variable to designate the file name and its location. Similarly, if the generated file from Step 5 was not named **postgresql.p12** then, use the **PGSSLKEY** environment variable to designate the file name and its location.

## Requesting an SSL Connection between EDB\*Plus and the Advanced Server Database

Be sure the following topics have been addressed in order to perform an SSL connection:

- The trusted certificate and keystore files have been generated for both the database server and the client host to be invoking EDB\*Plus.
- The **postgresql.conf** file for the database server contains the updated configuration parameters.
- The **pg\_hba.conf** file for the database server contains the required entry for permitting the SSL connection.

- For the client host, either the client's certificate and keystore files have been placed in the user account's `~/.postgresql` directory or the environment variables `PGSSLCERT` and `PGSSLKEY` are set before invoking EDB\*Plus.
- The `PGSSLCERTPASS` environment variable is set with a password.
- The `PGSSLKEYPASS` environment variable is set with a password

When invoking EDB\*Plus, include the `?ssl=true` parameter in the database connection string as shown for the `connectstring` option in [Using EDB\\*Plus](#).

The following is an example where EDB\*Plus is invoked from a host that is remote to the database server.

The `postgresql.conf` file of the database server contains the following modified parameters:

```
ssl = on
ssl_cert_file = 'server.crt'
ssl_key_file = 'server.key'
ssl_ca_file = 'root.crt'
```

The `pg_hba.conf` file of the database server contains the following entry for connecting from EDB\*Plus on the remote host:

## TYPE	DATABASE	USER	ADDRESS	METHOD
### "local"				is for Unix domain socket connections only
local	all			md5
### IPv4 local connections:				
hostssl	edb	all	192.168.2.24/32	cert clientcert=1

On the remote host where EDB\*Plus is to be invoked, the Linux user account named `user` contains the certificate and keystore files in its `~/.postgresql` directory:

```
[user@localhost ~]$ whoami
user
[user@localhost ~]$ cd .postgresql
[user@localhost .postgresql]$ pwd
/home/user/.postgresql
[user@localhost .postgresql]$ ls -l
total 8
-rw-rw-r-- 1 user user 758 Aug 24 12:37 postgresql.keystore
-rw-rw-r-- 1 user user 2285 Aug 24 12:37 postgresql.p12
```

Logged into Linux with the account named `user`, EDB\*Plus is successfully invoked with the `ssl=true` parameter:

```
$ export PGSSLCERTPASS=keypass
$ export PGSSLKEYPASS=exppass
$ cd /opt/edb/as10/edbplus
$ ./edbplus.sh enterpriseDb/password@192.168.2.22:5444/edb?ssl=true
Connected to EnterpriseDB 10.0.1 (192.168.2.22:5444/edb)
AS enterpriseDb
```

EDB\*Plus: Release 10 (Build 36.0.0)  
 Copyright (c) 2008-2020, EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

SQL>

Alternatively, without placing the certificate and keystore files in `~/.postgresql`, but in a different directory, EDB\*Plus can be invoked in the following manner:

```
$ export PGSSLCERT=/home/user/ssl/postgresql.keystore
$ export PGSSLKEY=/home/user/ssl/postgresql.p12
$ export PGSSLCERTPASS=keypass
$ export PGSSLKEYPASS=exppass
$ cd /opt/edb/as10/edbplus
$ ./edbplus.sh enterprisedb/password@192.168.2.22:5444/edb?ssl=true
Connected to EnterpriseDB 10.0.1 (192.168.2.22:5444/edb)
AS enterprisedb
```

EDB\*Plus: Release 10 (Build 36.0.0)  
 Copyright (c) 2008-2020, EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

SQL>

Note that in both cases the database user name used to log into EDB\*Plus is `enterprise` as this is the user specified for the common name field when creating the certificate in Step 1 of [Configuring SSL on Advanced Server](#).

Other database user names can be used if the `pg_hba.conf` file with the `map` option and the `pg_ident.conf` file are used as described in Steps 8 and 9 of [Configuring SSL on Advanced Server](#).

## 3.5 Command Summary

The following sections contains a summary of EDB\*Plus commands.

### ACCEPT

The `ACCEPT` command displays a prompt and waits for the user's keyboard input. The value input by the user is placed in the specified variable.

`ACC[EPT ] variable`

The following example creates a new variable named `my_name`, accepts a value of John Smith, then displays the value using the `DEFINE` command.

```
SQL> ACCEPT my_name
Enter value for my_name: John Smith
SQL> DEFINE my_name
DEFINE MY_NAME = "John Smith"
```

### APPEND

`APPEND` is a line editor command that appends the given text to the end of the current line in the SQL buffer.

`A[PPEND ] text`

In the following example, a `SELECT` command is built-in the SQL buffer using the `APPEND` command. Note that two spaces are placed between the `APPEND` command and the `WHERE` clause in order to separate `dept` and

**WHERE** by one space in the SQL buffer.

```
SQL> APPEND SELECT * FROM dept
SQL> LIST
1 SELECT * FROM dept
SQL> APPEND WHERE deptno = 10
SQL> LIST
1 SELECT * FROM dept WHERE deptno = 10
```

## CHANGE

**CHANGE** is a line editor command performs a search-and-replace on the current line in the SQL buffer.

```
C[CHANGE ] /from/[to/ ]
```

If **to/** is specified, the first occurrence of text **from** in the current line is changed to text **to**. If **to/** is omitted, the first occurrence of text **from** in the current line is deleted.

The following sequence of commands makes line 3 the current line, then changes the department number in the **WHERE** clause from 20 to 30.

```
SQL> LIST
1 SELECT empno, ename, job, sal, comm
2 FROM emp
3 WHERE deptno = 20
4* ORDER BY empno
SQL> 3
3* WHERE deptno = 20
SQL> CHANGE /20/30/
3* WHERE deptno = 30
SQL> LIST
1 SELECT empno, ename, job, sal, comm
2 FROM emp
3 WHERE deptno = 30
4* ORDER BY empno
```

## CLEAR

The **CLEAR** command removes the contents of the SQL buffer, deletes all column definitions set with the **COLUMN** command, or clears the screen.

```
CL[EAR ] [ BUFF[ER ] | SQL | COL[UMNS ] | SCR[EEN ] ]
```

**BUFFER | SQL**

Clears the SQL buffer.

**COLUMNS**

Removes column definitions.

**SCREEN**

Clears the screen. This is the default if no options are specified.

## COLUMN

The `COLUMN` command controls output formatting. The formatting attributes set by using the `COLUMN` command remain in effect only for the duration of the current session.

```
COL[UMN]
[ column
{ CLE[AR] |
{ FOR[MAT] spec |
HEA[DING] text |
{ OFF | ON }
} [...]
}
]
```

If the `COLUMN` command is specified with no subsequent options, formatting options for current columns in effect for the session are displayed.

If the `COLUMN` command is followed by a column name, then the column name may be followed by one of the following:

1. No other options
2. `CLEAR`
3. Any combination of `FORMAT`, `HEADING`, and one of `OFF` or `ON`

### column

Name of a column in a table to which subsequent column formatting options are to apply. If no other options follow `column`, then the current column formatting options if any, of `column` are displayed.

### CLEAR

The `CLEAR` option reverts all formatting options back to their defaults for `column`. If the `CLEAR` option is specified, it must be the only option specified.

### spec

Format specification to be applied to `column`. For character columns, `spec` takes the following format:

### n

`n` is a positive integer that specifies the column width in characters within which to display the data. Data in excess of `n` will wrap around with the specified column width.

For numeric columns, `spec` is comprised of the following elements.

Element	Description
\$	Display a leading dollar sign.
,	Display a comma in the indicated position.
.	Marks the location of the decimal point.
0	Display leading zeros.
9	Number of significant digits to display.

If loss of significant digits occurs due to overflow of the format, then all #'s are displayed.

### text

Text to be used for the column heading of `column`.

**OFF | ON**

If **OFF** is specified, formatting options are reverted back to their defaults, but are still available within the session. If **ON** is specified, the formatting options specified by previous **COLUMN** commands for **column** within the session are re-activated.

The following example shows the effect of changing the display width of the **job** column.

```
SQL> SET PAGESIZE 9999
SQL> COLUMN job FORMAT A5
SQL> COLUMN job
COLUMN  JOB ON
FORMAT  A5
wrapped
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, job FROM emp;
```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB
7369	SMITH	CLERK
7499	ALLEN	SALES MAN
7521	WARD	SALES MAN
7566	JONES	MANAG ER
7654	MARTIN	SALES MAN
7698	BLAKE	MANAG ER
7782	CLARK	MANAG ER
7788	SCOTT	ANALY ST
7839	KING	PRESI DENT
7844	TURNER	SALES MAN
7876	ADAMS	CLERK
7900	JAMES	CLERK
7902	FORD	ANALY ST
7934	MILLER	CLERK

The following example applies a format to the **sal** column.

```

SQL> COLUMN sal FORMAT $99,999.00
SQL> COLUMN
COLUMN  JOB ON
FORMAT  A5
wrapped

COLUMN  SAL ON
FORMAT  $99,999.00
wrapped
SQL> SELECT empno, ename, job, sal FROM emp;

EMPNO ENAME    JOB        SAL
-----
7369 SMITH    CLERK    $800.00
7499 ALLEN    SALES   $1,600.00
                  MAN

7521 WARD     SALES   $1,250.00
                  MAN

7566 JONES    MANAG   $2,975.00
                  ER

7654 MARTIN   SALES   $1,250.00
                  MAN

7698 BLAKE    MANAG   $2,850.00
                  ER

7782 CLARK    MANAG   $2,450.00
                  ER

7788 SCOTT    ANALY   $3,000.00
                  ST

7839 KING     PRESI   $5,000.00
                  DENT

7844 TURNER   SALES   $1,500.00
                  MAN

7876 ADAMS    CLERK   $1,100.00
7900 JAMES    CLERK   $950.00
7902 FORD     ANALY   $3,000.00
                  ST

7934 MILLER   CLERK   $1,300.00

```

14 rows retrieved.

## CONNECT

Change the database connection to a different user and/or connect to a different database. There must be no white space between any of the parameters following the **CONNECT** command.

`CON[NECT] <username>[/<password>][@{<connectstring>} | <variable> ]`

Where:

`username` is a database username with which to connect to the database.

`password` is the password associated with the specified `username`. If a `password` is not provided, but a password is required for authentication, a search is made for a password file, first in the home directory of the Linux operating system account invoking EDB\*Plus (or in the `%APPDATA%\postgresql` directory for Windows) and then at the location specified by the `PGPASSFILE` environment variable. The password file is `.pgpass` on Linux hosts and `pgpass.conf` on Windows hosts. The following is an example on a Windows host:

```
C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Roaming\postgresql\pgpass.conf
```

If a password file cannot be located, or it does not have an entry matching the EDB\*Plus connection parameters, then EDB\*Plus will prompt for the password. For more information about password files, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/libpq-pgpass.html>

#### Note

When a password is not required, EDB\*Plus does not prompt for a password such as when the `trust` authentication method is specified in the `pg_hba.conf` file. For more information about the `pg_hba.conf` file and authentication methods, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/auth-pg-hba-conf.html>

`connectstring` is the database connection string. See [Using EDB\\*Plus](#) for further information on the database connection string.

`variable` is a variable defined in the `login.sql` file that contains a database connection string. The `login.sql` file can be found in the `edbplus` subdirectory of the Advanced Server home directory.

In the following example, the database connection is changed to database `edb` on the localhost at port `5445` with username `smith`.

```
SQL> CONNECT smith/mypassword@localhost:5445/edb
Disconnected from EnterpriseDB Database.
Connected to EnterpriseDB 13.0.1 (localhost:5445/edb) AS smith
```

From within the session shown above, the connection is changed to username `enterprisedb`. Also note that the host defaults to the localhost, the port defaults to `5444` (which is not the same as the port previously used), and the database defaults to `edb`.

```
SQL> CONNECT enterprisedb/password
Disconnected from EnterpriseDB Database.
Connected to EnterpriseDB 13.0.1 (localhost:5444/edb) AS enterprisedb
```

## DEFINE

The `DEFINE` command creates or replaces the value of a *user variable* (also called a *substitution variable*).

`DEF[INE] [ variable [ = text ] ]`

If the `DEFINE` command is given without any parameters, all current variables and their values are displayed.

If `DEFINE variable` is given, only `variable` is displayed with its value.

`DEFINE variable = text` assigns `text` to `variable.text` may be optionally enclosed within single or double quotation marks. Quotation marks must be used if `text` contains space characters.

The following example defines two variables, `dept` and `name`.

```
SQL> DEFINE dept = 20
SQL> DEFINE name = 'John Smith'
SQL> DEFINE
DEFINE EDB = "localhost:5445/edb"
DEFINE DEPT = "20"
DEFINE NAME = "John Smith"
```

#### Note

The variable `EDB` is read from the `login.sql` file located in the `edbplus` subdirectory of the Advanced Server home directory.

## DEL

`DEL` is a line editor command that deletes one or more lines from the SQL buffer.

```
DEL [ n | n m | n * | n L[AST] | * | * n | * L[AST] ] |
      L[AST] ]
```

The parameters specify which lines are to be deleted from the SQL buffer. Two parameters specify the start and end of a range of lines to be deleted. If the `DEL` command is given with no parameters, the current line is deleted.

`n`

`n` is an integer representing the `n`th line

`n m`

`n` and `m` are integers where `m` is greater than `n` representing the `n`th through the `m`th lines

`*`

`Current line`

`LAST`

`Last line`

In the following example, the fifth and sixth lines containing columns `sal` and `comm`, respectively, are deleted from the `SELECT` command in the SQL buffer.

```
SQL> LIST
 1 SELECT
 2   empno
 3   ,ename
 4   ,job
 5   ,sal
 6   ,comm
 7   ,deptno
 8* FROM emp
SQL> DEL 5 6
SQL> LIST
```

```

1 SELECT
2   empno
3 ,ename
4 ,job
5 ,deptno
6* FROM emp

```

## DESCRIBE

The **DESCRIBE** command displays:

- A list of columns, column data types, and column lengths for a table or view
- A list of parameters for a procedure or function
- A list of procedures and functions and their respective parameters for a package.

The **DESCRIBE** command will also display the structure of the database object referred to by a synonym. The syntax is:

**DESC[RIBE]** [ schema.]object

**schema**

Name of the schema containing the object to be described.

**object**

Name of the table, view, procedure, function, or package to be displayed, or the synonym of an object.

## DISCONNECT

The **DISCONNECT** command closes the current database connection, but does not terminate EDB\*Plus.

**DISC[ONNECT]**

## EDIT

The **EDIT** command invokes an external editor to edit the contents of an operating system file or the SQL buffer.

**ED[IT]** [ filename[.ext] ]

**filename[.ext]**

**filename** is the name of the file to open with an external editor. **ext** is the filename extension. If the filename extension is **sql**, then the **.sql** extension may be omitted when specifying **filename**. **EDIT** always assumes a **.sql** extension on filenames that are specified with no extension. If the **filename** parameter is omitted from the **EDIT** command, the contents of the SQL buffer are brought into the editor.

## EXECUTE

The **EXECUTE** command executes an SPL procedure from EDB\*Plus.

`EXEC[UTE] spl_procedure [ ([ parameters ]) ]`

### spl\_procedure

The name of the SPL procedure to be executed.

### parameters

Comma-delimited list of parameters. If there are no parameters, then a pair of empty parentheses may optionally be specified.

## EXIT

The `EXIT` command terminates the EDB\*Plus session and returns control to the operating system. `QUIT` is a synonym for `EXIT`. Specifying no parameters is equivalent to `EXIT SUCCESS COMMIT`.

```
{ EXIT | QUIT }
[ SUCCESS | FAILURE | WARNING | value | variable ]
[ COMMIT | ROLLBACK ]SUCCESS | FAILURE |WARNING]
```

Returns an operating system dependent return code indicating successful operation, failure, or warning for `SUCCESS`, `FAILURE`, and `WARNING`, respectively. The default is `SUCCESS`.

### value

An integer value that is returned as the return code.

### variable

A variable created with the `DEFINE` command whose value is returned as the return code.

### COMMIT | ROLLBACK

If `COMMIT` is specified, uncommitted updates are committed upon exit. If `ROLLBACK` is specified, uncommitted updates are rolled back upon exit. The default is `COMMIT`.

## GET

The `GET` command loads the contents of the given file to the SQL buffer.

`GET filename[.ext] [ LIST[T] | NOLIST ]`

### filename[.ext]

`filename` is the name of the file to load into the SQL buffer. `ext` is the filename extension. If the filename extension is `sql`, then the `.sql` extension may be omitted when specifying `filename`. `GET` always assumes a `.sql` extension on filenames that are specified with no extension.

### LIST | NOLIST

If `LIST` is specified, the content of the SQL buffer is displayed after the file is loaded. If `NOLIST` is specified, no listing is displayed. The default is `LIST`.

## HELP

The **HELP** command obtains an index of topics or help on a specific topic. The question mark (?) is synonymous with specifying **HELP**.

```
{ HELP | ? } { INDEX | topic }
```

## INDEX

Displays an index of available topics.

### topic

The name of a specific topic – e.g., an EDB\*Plus command, for which help is desired.

## HOST

The **HOST** command executes an operating system command from EDB\*Plus.

```
HO[ST] [os_command]
```

### os\_command

The operating system command to be executed. If you do not provide an operating system command, EDB\*Plus pauses execution and opens a new shell prompt. When the shell exits, EDB\*Plus resumes execution.

## INPUT

The **INPUT** line editor command adds a line of text to the SQL buffer after the current line.

```
I[INPUT] text
```

The following sequence of **INPUT** commands constructs a **SELECT** command.

```
SQL> INPUT SELECT empno, ename, job, sal, comm
SQL> INPUT FROM emp
SQL> INPUT WHERE deptno = 20
SQL> INPUT ORDER BY empno
SQL> LIST
1 SELECT empno, ename, job, sal, comm
2 FROM emp
3 WHERE deptno = 20
4* ORDER BY empno
```

## LIST

**LIST** is a line editor command that displays the contents of the SQL buffer.

```
L[IST] [ n | n m | n * | n L[AST] | * | * n | * L[AST] | L[AST] ]
```

The buffer does not include a history of the EDB\*Plus commands.

### n

| `n` represents the buffer line number.

`n m`

| `n m` displays a list of lines between `n` and `m`.

`n *`

| `n *` displays a list of lines that range between line `n` and the current line.

`n L[AST]`

| `n L[AST]` displays a list of lines that range from line `n` through the last line in the buffer.

`*`

| `*` displays the current line.

`* n`

| `* n` displays a list of lines that range from the current line through line `n`.

`* L[AST]`

| `* L[AST]` displays a list of lines that range from the current line through the last line.

`L[AST]`

| `L[AST]` displays the last line.

## PASSWORD

Use the `PASSWORD` command to change your database password.

`PASSW[ORD] [user_name]`

You must have sufficient privileges to use the `PASSWORD` command to change another user's password. The following example demonstrates using the `PASSWORD` command to change the password for a user named `acctg`:

```
SQL> PASSWORD acctg
Changing password for acctg
  New password:
  New password again:
Password successfully changed.
```

## PAUSE

The `PAUSE` command displays a message, and waits for the user to press `ENTER`.

`PAU[SE] [optional_text]`

`optional_text` specifies the text that will be displayed to the user. If the `optional_text` is omitted, Advanced Server will display two blank lines. If you double quote the `optional_text` string, the quotes will be included in the output.

## PROMPT

The **PROMPT** command displays a message to the user before continuing.

```
PRO[MPT] [message_text]
```

**message\_text** specifies the text displayed to the user. Double quote the string to include quotes in the output.

## QUIT

The **QUIT** command terminates the session and returns control to the operating system. **QUIT** is a synonym for **EXIT**.

```
QUIT
```

```
[SUCCESS | FAILURE | WARNING | value | sub_variable]
```

```
[COMMIT | ROLLBACK]
```

The default value is **QUIT SUCCESS COMMIT**.

## REMARK

Use **REMARK** to include comments in a script.

```
REM[ARK] [optional_text]
```

You may also use the following convention to include a comment:

```
/*
 * This is an example of a three line comment.
 */
```

## SAVE

Use the **SAVE** command to write the SQL Buffer to an operating system file.

```
SAV[E] file_name
[CREATE | REPLACE | APPEND]
```

**file\_name**

**file\_name** specifies the name of the file (including the path) where the buffer contents are written. If you do not provide a file extension, **.sql** is appended to the end of the file name.

## CREATE

Include the **CREATE** keyword to create a new file. A new file is created *only* if a file with the specified name does not already exist. This is the default.

## REPLACE

Include the **REPLACE** keyword to specify that Advanced Server should overwrite an existing file.

## APPEND

Include the **APPEND** keyword to specify that Advanced Server should append the contents of the SQL buffer to the end of the specified file.

The following example saves the contents of the SQL buffer to a file named **example.sql**, located in the **temp** directory:

```
SQL> SAVE C:\example.sql CREATE
File "example.sql" written.
```

## SET

Use the **SET** command to specify a value for a session level variable that controls EDB\*Plus behavior. The following forms of the **SET** command are valid:

### SET AUTOCOMMIT

Use the **SET AUTOCOMMIT** command to specify commit behavior for Advanced Server transactions.

**SET AUTO[COMMIT]**

{ON | OFF | IMMEDIATE | statement\_count}

Please note that EDB\*Plus always automatically commits DDL statements.

**ON**

Specify **ON** to turn **AUTOCOMMIT** behavior on.

**OFF**

Specify **OFF** to turn **AUTOCOMMIT** behavior off.

**IMMEDIATE**

**IMMEDIATE** has the same effect as **ON**.

**statement\_count**

Include a value for **statement\_count** to instruct EDB\*Plus to issue a commit after the specified count of successful SQL statements.

### SET COLUMN SEPARATOR

Use the **SET COLUMN SEPARATOR** command to specify the text that Advanced Server displays between columns.

**SET COLSEP column\_separator**

The default value of **column\_separator** is a single space.

### SET ECHO

Use the **SET ECHO** command to specify if SQL and EDB\*Plus script statements should be displayed onscreen as they are executed.

`SET ECHO {ON | OFF}`

The default value is `OFF`.

## **SET FEEDBACK**

The `SET FEEDBACK` command controls the display of interactive information after a SQL statement executes.

`SET FEED[BACK] {ON | OFF | row_threshold}`

`row_threshold`

Specify an integer value for `row_threshold`. Setting `row_threshold` to `0` is same as setting `FEEDBACK` to `OFF`. Setting `row_threshold` equal `1` effectively sets `FEEDBACK` to `ON`.

## **SET FLUSH**

Use the `SET FLUSH` command to control display buffering.

`SET FLU[SH] {ON | OFF}`

Set `FLUSH` to `OFF` to enable display buffering. If you enable buffering, messages bound for the screen may not appear until the script completes. Please note that setting `FLUSH` to `OFF` will offer better performance.

Set `FLUSH` to `ON` to disable display buffering. If you disable buffering, messages bound for the screen appear immediately.

## **SET HEADING**

Use the `SET HEADING` variable to specify if Advanced Server should display column headings for `SELECT` statements.

`SET HEA[DING] {ON | OFF}`

## **SET HEAD SEPARATOR**

The `SET HEADSEP` command sets the new heading separator character used by the `COLUMN HEADING` command. The default is `'|'`.

`SET HEADS[EP]`

## **SET LINESIZE**

Use the `SET LINESIZE` command to specify the width of a line in characters.

`SET LIN[ESIZE] width_of_line`

`width_of_line`

The default value of `width_of_line` is `132`.

## **SET NEWPAGE**

Use the `SET NEWPAGE` command to specify how many blank lines are printed after a page break.

`SET NEWP[AGE] lines_per_page`

`lines_per_page`

The default value of `lines_per_page` is `1`.

## SET NULL

Use the `SET NULL` command to specify a string that is displayed to the user when a `NULL` column value is displayed in the output buffer.

```
SET NULL null_string
```

## SET PAGESIZE

Use the `SET PAGESIZE` command to specify the number of printed lines that fit on a page.

```
SET PAGESIZE[IZE] line_count
```

Use the `line_count` parameter to specify the number of lines per page.

## SET SQLCASE

The `SET SQLCASE` command specifies if SQL statements transmitted to the server should be converted to upper or lower case.

```
SET SQLCASE[ASE] {MIX[ED] | UP[PER] | LO[WER]}
```

### UPPER

Specify `UPPER` to convert the command text to uppercase.

### LOWER

Specify `LOWER` to convert the command text to lowercase.

### MIXED

Specify `MIXED` to leave the case of SQL commands unchanged. The default is `MIXED`.

## SET PAUSE

The `SET PAUSE` command is most useful when included in a script; the command displays a prompt and waits for the user to press `Return`.

```
SET PAUSE[SE] {ON | OFF}
```

If `SET PAUSE` is `ON`, the message `Hit ENTER to continue...` will be displayed before each command is executed.

## SET SPACE

Use the `SET SPACE` command to specify the number of spaces to display between columns:

```
SET SPACE number_of_spaces
```

## SET SQLPROMPT

Use `SET SQLPROMPT` to set a value for a user-interactive prompt:

```
SET SQLPROMPT "prompt"
```

By default, `SQLPROMPT` is set to `"SQL>"`

## SET TERMOUT

Use the **SET TERMOOUT** command to specify if command output should be displayed onscreen.

```
SET TERM[OUT] {ON | OFF}
```

## **SET TIMING**

The **SET TIMING** command specifies if Advanced Server should display the execution time for each SQL statement after it is executed.

```
SET TIMI[NG] {ON | OFF}
```

## **SET TRIMSPPOOL**

Use the **SET TRIMSPPOOL** command to remove trailing spaces from each line in the output file specified by the **SPOOL** command.

```
SET TRIMS[POOL] {ON | OFF}
```

The default value is **OFF**.

## **SET VERIFY**

Specifies if both the old and new values of a SQL statement are displayed when a substitution variable is encountered.

```
SET VER[IFY] { ON | OFF }
```

## **SHOW**

Use the **SHOW** command to display current parameter values.

```
SHO[W] {ALL | parameter_name}
```

Display the current parameter settings by including the **ALL** keyword:

```
SQL> SHOW ALL
autocommit      OFF
colsep         " "
define          "&"
echo            OFF
FEEDBACK ON for 6 row(s).
flush           ON
heading         ON
headsep        "|"
linesize        78
newpage         1
null            " "
pagesize       14
pause           OFF
serveroutput   OFF
spool           OFF
sqlcase        MIXED
sqlprompt      "SQL> "
sqlterminator  ";"
suffix          ".sql"
```

```

termout      ON
timing       OFF
verify       ON
USER is      "enterprisedb"
HOST is      "localhost"
PORT is      "5444"
DATABASE is   "edb"
VERSION is    "13.0.0"

```

Or display a specific parameter setting by including the `parameter_name` in the `SHOW` command:

```

SQL> SHOW VERSION
VERSION is "13.0.0"

```

## SPOOL

The `SPOOL` command sends output from the display to a file.

```

SP[POOL] output_file | OFF

```

Use the `output_file` parameter to specify a path name for the output file.

## START

Use the `START` command to run an EDB\*Plus script file; `START` is an alias for `@` command.

```

STA[RT] script_file

```

Specify the name of a script file in the `script_file` parameter.

## UNDEFINE

The `UNDEFINE` command erases a user variable created by the `DEFINE` command.

```

UNDEF[INE] variable_name [ variable_name...]

```

Use the `variable_name` parameter to specify the name of a variable or variables.

## WHENEVER SQLERROR

The `WHENEVER SQLERROR` command provides error handling for SQL errors or PL/SQL block errors. The syntax is:

```

WHENEVER SQLERROR
{CONTINUE|COMMIT|ROLLBACK|NONE}
|EXIT[SUCCESS|FAILURE|WARNING|n|sub_variable]
[COMMIT|ROLLBACK]}

```

If Advanced Server encounters an error during the execution of a SQL command or PL/SQL block, EDB\*Plus performs the action specified in the `WHENEVER SQLERROR` command:

Include the `CONTINUE` clause to instruct EDB\*Plus to perform the specified action before continuing.

Include the `COMMIT` clause to instruct EDB\*Plus to `COMMIT` the current transaction before exiting or continuing.

Include the `ROLLBACK` clause to instruct EDB\*Plus to `ROLLBACK` the current transaction before exiting or continuing.

Include the `NONE` clause to instruct EDB\*Plus to continue without committing or rolling back the transaction.

Include the `EXIT` clause to instruct EDB\*Plus to perform the specified action and exit if it encounters an error.

Use the following options to specify a status code that EDB\*Plus will return before exiting:

```
[SUCCESS|FAILURE|WARNING|n|sub_variable]
```

Please note that EDB\*Plus supports substitution variables, but does not support bind variables.

## 4 Database Compatibility for Oracle® Developers Built-in Package Guide

Database Compatibility for Oracle means that an application runs in an Oracle environment as well as in the EDB Postgres Advanced Server (Advanced Server) environment with minimal or no changes to the application code. This guide focuses solely on the features that are related to the package support provided by Advanced Server.

For more information about using other compatibility features offered by Advanced Server, please see the complete set of Advanced Server guides, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs/>

### 4.1 Packages

This chapter discusses the concept of packages in Advanced Server. A *package* is a named collection of functions, procedures, variables, cursors, user-defined record types, and records that are referenced using a common qualifier – the package identifier. Packages have the following characteristics:

- Packages provide a convenient means of organizing the functions and procedures that perform a related purpose. Permission to use the package functions and procedures is dependent upon one privilege granted to the entire package. All of the package programs must be referenced with a common name.
- Certain functions, procedures, variables, types, etc. in the package can be declared as *public*. Public entities are visible and can be referenced by other programs that are given `EXECUTE` privilege on the package. For public functions and procedures, only their signatures are visible - the program names, parameters if any, and return types of functions. The SPL code of these functions and procedures is not accessible to others, therefore applications that utilize a package are dependent only upon the information available in the signature – not in the procedural logic itself.
- Other functions, procedures, variables, types, etc. in the package can be declared as *private*. Private entities can be referenced and used by function and procedures within the package, but not by other external applications. Private entities are for use only by programs within the package.

- Function and procedure names can be overloaded within a package. One or more functions/procedures can be defined with the same name, but with different signatures. This provides the capability to create identically named programs that perform the same job, but on different types of input.
- 

## 4.1.1 Package Components

Packages consist of two main components:

- The *package specification*: This is the public interface, (these are the elements which can be referenced outside the package). We declare all database objects that are to be a part of our package within the specification.
- The *package body*: This contains the actual implementation of all the database objects declared within the package specification.

The package body implements the specifications in the package specification. It contains implementation details and private declarations which are invisible to the application. You can debug, enhance or replace a package body without changing the specifications. Similarly, you can change the body without recompiling the calling programs because the implementation details are invisible to the application.

### Package Specification Syntax

The package specification defines the user interface for a package (the API). The specification lists the functions, procedures, types, exceptions and cursors that are visible to a user of the package.

The syntax used to define the interface for a package is:

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] PACKAGE <package_name>
[ <authorization_clause> ]
{ IS | AS }
[ <declaration>; ] ...
[ <procedure_or_function_declaration> ] ...
END [ <package_name> ] ;
```

Where `authorization_clause` :=

```
{ AUTHID DEFINER } | { AUTHID CURRENT_USER }
```

Where `procedure_or_function_declaration` :=

```
procedure_declaration | function_declaration
```

Where `procedure_declaration` :=

```
PROCEDURE proc_name [ argument_list ];
[ restriction_pragma; ]
```

Where `function_declaration` :=

```
FUNCTION func_name [ argument_list ]
  RETURN rettype [ DETERMINISTIC ];
[ restriction_pragma; ]
```

Where `argument_list` :=

( `argument_declaration` [, ...] )

Where `argument_declaration` :=

`argname` [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] `argtype` [ DEFAULT `value` ]

Where `restriction_pragma` :=

PRAGMA RESTRICT\_REFERENCES(`name`, `restrictions`)

Where `restrictions` :=

`restriction` [, ... ]

## Parameters

`package_name`

`package_name` is an identifier assigned to the package - each package must have a name unique within the schema.

`AUTHID DEFINER`

If you omit the `AUTHID` clause or specify `AUTHID DEFINER`, the privileges of the package owner are used to determine access privileges to database objects.

`AUTHID CURRENT_USER`

If you specify `AUTHID CURRENT_USER`, the privileges of the current user executing a program in the package are used to determine access privileges.

`declaration`

`declaration` is an identifier of a public variable. A public variable can be accessed from outside of the package using the syntax `package_name.variable`. There can be zero, one, or more public variables. Public variable definitions must come before procedure or function declarations.

`declaration` can be any of the following:

- Variable Declaration
- Record Declaration
- Collection Declaration
- `REF CURSOR` and Cursor Variable Declaration
- `TYPE` Definitions for Records, Collections, and `REF CURSORS`
- Exception
- Object Variable Declaration

`proc_name`

The name of a public procedure.

`argname`

The name of an argument. The argument is referenced by this name within the function or procedure body.

`IN | IN OUT | OUT`

The argument mode. `IN` declares the argument for input only. This is the default. `IN OUT` allows the argument to receive a value as well as return a value. `OUT` specifies the argument is for output only.

**argtype**

The data type(s) of an argument. An argument type may be a base data type, a copy of the type of an existing column using `%TYPE`, or a user-defined type such as a nested table or an object type. A length must not be specified for any base type - for example, specify `VARCHAR2`, not `VARCHAR2(10)`.

The type of a column is referenced by writing `tablename.columnname %TYPE`; using this can sometimes help make a procedure independent from changes to the definition of a table.

**DEFAULT value**

The `DEFAULT` clause supplies a default value for an input argument if one is not supplied in the invocation. `DEFAULT` may not be specified for arguments with modes `IN OUT` or `OUT`.

**func\_name**

The name of a public function.

**rettype**

The return data type.

**DETERMINISTIC**

`DETERMINISTIC` is a synonym for `IMMUTABLE`. A `DETERMINISTIC` function cannot modify the database and always reaches the same result when given the same argument values; it does not do database lookups or otherwise use information not directly present in its argument list. If you include this clause, any call of the function with all-constant arguments can be immediately replaced with the function value.

**restriction**

The following keywords are accepted for compatibility and ignored:

**RNDS****RNPS****TRUST****WNDS****WNPS**

## Package Body Syntax

Package implementation details reside in the package body; the package body may contain objects that are not visible to the package user. Advanced Server supports the following syntax for the package body:

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] PACKAGE BODY <package_name>
  { IS | AS }
  [ <private_declar>; ] ...
  [ <procedure_or_function_definition> ] ...
  [ <package_initializer> ]
END [ <package_name> ] ;
```

Where `procedure_or_function_definition` :=

`procedure_definition | function_definition`

Where `procedure_definition` :=

```
PROCEDURE proc_name[ argument_list ]
[ options_list ]
{ IS | AS }
procedure_body
END [ proc_name ] ;
```

Where `procedure_body` :=

```
[ PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION; ]
[ declaration; ] [, ...]
BEGIN
statement; [...]
[ EXCEPTION
{ WHEN exception [OR exception] [...] THEN statement; }
[...]
]
```

Where `function_definition` :=

```
FUNCTION func_name [ argument_list ]
RETURN rettype [ DETERMINISTIC ]
[ options_list ]
{ IS | AS }
function_body
END [ func_name ] ;
```

Where `function_body` :=

```
[ PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION; ]
[ declaration; ] [, ...]
BEGIN
statement; [...]
[ EXCEPTION
{ WHEN exception [ OR exception ] [...] THEN statement; }
[...]
]
```

Where `argument_list` :=

```
( argument_declaration [, ...] )
```

Where `argument_declaration` :=

```
argname [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] argtype [ DEFAULT value ]
```

Where `options_list` :=

```
option [ ... ]
```

Where `option` :=

```
STRICT
LEAKPROOF
PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }
```

```
COST execution_cost
ROWS result_rows
SET config_param { TO value | = value | FROM CURRENT }
```

Where `package_initializer` :=

```
BEGIN
statement; [...]
END;
```

## Parameters

`package_name`

`package_name` is the name of the package for which this is the package body. There must be an existing package specification with this name.

`private_declaration`

`private_declaration` is an identifier of a private variable that can be accessed by any procedure or function within the package. There can be zero, one, or more private variables. `private_declaration` can be any of the following:

- Variable Declaration
- Record Declaration
- Collection Declaration
- `REF CURSOR` and Cursor Variable Declaration
- `TYPE` Definitions for Records, Collections, and `REF CURSORS`
- Exception
- Object Variable Declaration

`proc_name`

The name of the procedure being created.

`PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION`

`PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION` is the directive that sets the procedure as an autonomous transaction.

`declaration`

A variable, type, `REF CURSOR`, or subprogram declaration. If subprogram declarations are included, they must be declared after all other variable, type, and `REF CURSOR` declarations.

`statement`

An SPL program statement. Note that a `DECLARE - BEGIN - END` block is considered an SPL statement unto itself. Thus, the function body may contain nested blocks.

`exception`

An exception condition name such as `NO_DATA_FOUND`, `OTHERS`, etc.

`func_name`

The name of the function being created.

`rettype`

The return data type, which may be any of the types listed for `argtype`. As for `argtype`, a length must not be specified for `rettype`.

## DETERMINISTIC

Include **DETERMINISTIC** to specify that the function will always return the same result when given the same argument values. A **DETERMINISTIC** function must not modify the database.

**Note:** The **DETERMINISTIC** keyword is equivalent to the PostgreSQL **IMMUTABLE** option.

**Note:** If **DETERMINISTIC** is specified for a public function in the package body, it must also be specified for the function declaration in the package specification. (For private functions, there is no function declaration in the package specification.)

## PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION

**PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION** is the directive that sets the function as an autonomous transaction.

### argname

The name of a formal argument. The argument is referenced by this name within the procedure body.

### IN | IN OUT | OUT

The argument mode. **IN** declares the argument for input only. This is the default. **IN OUT** allows the argument to receive a value as well as return a value. **OUT** specifies the argument is for output only.

### argtype

The data type(s) of an argument. An argument type may be a base data type, a copy of the type of an existing column using **%TYPE**, or a user-defined type such as a nested table or an object type. A length must not be specified for any base type - for example, specify **VARCHAR2**, not **VARCHAR2(10)**.

The type of a column is referenced by writing **tablename.columnname%TYPE**; using this can sometimes help make a procedure independent from changes to the definition of a table.

### DEFAULT value

The **DEFAULT** clause supplies a default value for an input argument if one is not supplied in the procedure call. **DEFAULT** may not be specified for arguments with modes **IN OUT** or **OUT**.

Please note: The following options are not compatible with Oracle databases; they are extensions to Oracle package syntax provided by Advanced Server only.

### STRICT

The **STRICT** keyword specifies that the function will not be executed if called with a **NULL** argument; instead the function will return **NULL**.

### LEAKPROOF

The **LEAKPROOF** keyword specifies that the function will not reveal any information about arguments, other than through a return value.

### PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }

The **PARALLEL** clause enables the use of parallel sequential scans (parallel mode). A parallel sequential scan uses multiple workers to scan a relation in parallel during a query in contrast to a serial sequential scan.

When set to **UNSAFE**, the procedure or function cannot be executed in parallel mode. The presence of such a procedure or function forces a serial execution plan. This is the default setting if the **PARALLEL** clause is omitted.

When set to **RESTRICTED**, the procedure or function can be executed in parallel mode, but the execution is restricted to the parallel group leader. If the qualification for any particular relation has anything that is parallel restricted, that relation won't be chosen for parallelism.

When set to `SAFE`, the procedure or function can be executed in parallel mode with no restriction.

#### `execution_cost`

`execution_cost` specifies a positive number giving the estimated execution cost for the function, in units of `cpu_operator_cost`. If the function returns a set, this is the cost per returned row. The default is `0.0025`.

#### `result_rows`

`result_rows` is the estimated number of rows that the query planner should expect the function to return. The default is `1000`.

#### `SET`

Use the `SET` clause to specify a parameter value for the duration of the function:

`config_param` specifies the parameter name.

`value` specifies the parameter value.

`FROM CURRENT` guarantees that the parameter value is restored when the function ends.

#### `package_initializer`

The statements in the `package_initializer` are executed once per user's session when the package is first referenced.

**Note:** The `STRICT`, `LEAKPROOF`, `PARALLEL`, `COST`, `ROWS` and `SET` keywords provide extended functionality for Advanced Server and are not supported by Oracle.

## 4.1.2 Creating Packages

A package is not an executable piece of code; rather it is a repository of code. When you use a package, you actually execute or make reference to an element within a package.

### Creating the Package Specification

The package specification contains the definition of all the elements in the package that can be referenced from outside of the package. These are called the public elements of the package, and they act as the package interface. The following code sample is a package specification:

```
--  
-- Package specification for the 'emp_admin' package.  
--  
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE emp_admin  
IS  
    FUNCTION get_dept_name (  
        p_deptno NUMBER DEFAULT 10  
    )  
    RETURN VARCHAR2;  
    FUNCTION update_emp_sal (  
        p_empno NUMBER,  
    )
```

```

    p_raise NUMBER
)
RETURN NUMBER;
PROCEDURE hire_emp (
    p_emphno      NUMBER,
    p_ename       VARCHAR2,
    p_job        VARCHAR2,
    p_sal         NUMBER,
    p_hiredate    DATE DEFAULT sysdate,
    p_comm        NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
    p_mgr         NUMBER,
    p_deptno      NUMBER DEFAULT 10
);
PROCEDURE fire_emp (
    p_emphno NUMBER
);
END emp_admin;

```

This code sample creates the `emp_admin` package specification. This package specification consists of two functions and two stored procedures. We can also add the `OR REPLACE` clause to the `CREATE PACKAGE` statement for convenience.

## Creating the Package Body

The body of the package contains the actual implementation behind the package specification. For the above `emp_admin` package specification, we shall now create a package body which will implement the specifications. The body will contain the implementation of the functions and stored procedures in the specification.

```

-- 
-- Package body for the 'emp_admin' package.
-- 
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY emp_admin
IS
-- 
-- Function that queries the 'dept' table based on the department
-- number and returns the corresponding department name.
-- 
FUNCTION get_dept_name (
    p_deptno      IN NUMBER DEFAULT 10
)
RETURN VARCHAR2
IS
    v_dname      VARCHAR2(14);
BEGIN
    SELECT dname INTO v_dname FROM dept WHERE deptno = p_deptno;
    RETURN v_dname;
EXCEPTION
    WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Invalid department number ' || p_deptno);
        RETURN '';
END;
-- 
-- Function that updates an employee's salary based on the
-- employee number and salary increment/decrement passed

```

```

-- as IN parameters. Upon successful completion the function
-- returns the new updated salary.
--
FUNCTION update_emp_sal (
    p_empno      IN NUMBER,
    p_raise      IN NUMBER
)
RETURN NUMBER
IS
    v_sal      NUMBER := 0;
BEGIN
    SELECT sal INTO v_sal FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno;
    v_sal := v_sal + p_raise;
    UPDATE emp SET sal = v_sal WHERE empno = p_empno;
    RETURN v_sal;
EXCEPTION
    WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee ' || p_empno || ' not found');
        RETURN -1;
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The following is SQLERRM:');
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLERRM);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The following is SQLCODE:');
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLCODE);
        RETURN -1;
END;

-- Procedure that inserts a new employee record into the 'emp' table.
--

PROCEDURE hire_emp (
    p_empno      NUMBER,
    p_ename      VARCHAR2,
    p_job       VARCHAR2,
    p_sal       NUMBER,
    p_hiredate   DATE  DEFAULT sysdate,
    p_comm      NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
    p_mgr       NUMBER,
    p_deptno    NUMBER DEFAULT 10
)
AS
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO emp(empno, ename, job, sal, hiredate, comm, mgr, deptno)
        VALUES(p_empno, p_ename, p_job, p_sal,
               p_hiredate, p_comm, p_mgr, p_deptno);
END;

-- Procedure that deletes an employee record from the 'emp' table based
-- on the employee number.
--

PROCEDURE fire_emp (
    p_empno      NUMBER
)
AS
BEGIN
    DELETE FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno;

```

```
END;
END;
```

### 4.1.3 Referencing a Package

To reference the types, items and subprograms that are declared within a package specification, we use the dot notation. For example:

```
package_name.type_name
package_name.item_name
package_name.subprogram_name
```

To invoke a function from the `emp_admin` package specification, we will execute the following SQL command.

```
SELECT emp_admin.get_dept_name(10) FROM DUAL;
```

Here we are invoking the `get_dept_name` function declared within the package `emp_admin`. We are passing the department number as an argument to the function, which will return the name of the department. Here the value returned should be `ACCOUNTING`, which corresponds to department number `10`.

### 4.1.4 Using Packages With User Defined Types

The following example incorporates the various user-defined types discussed in earlier chapters within the context of a package.

The package specification of `emp_rpt` shows the declaration of a record type, `emprec_typ`, and a weakly-typed `REF CURSOR`, `emp_refcur`, as publicly accessible along with two functions and two procedures. Function, `open_emp_by_dept`, returns the `REF CURSOR` type, `EMP_REFCUR`. Procedures, `fetch_emp` and `close_refcur`, both declare a weakly-typed `REF CURSOR` as a formal parameter.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE emp_rpt
IS
    TYPE emprec_typ IS RECORD (
        empno    NUMBER(4),
        ename    VARCHAR(10)
    );
    TYPE emp_refcur IS REF CURSOR;

    FUNCTION get_dept_name (
        p_deptno  IN NUMBER
    ) RETURN VARCHAR2;
    FUNCTION open_emp_by_dept (
        p_deptno  IN emp.deptno%TYPE
    ) RETURN EMP_REFCUR;
    PROCEDURE fetch_emp (
```

```

    p_refcur  IN OUT SYS_REFCURSOR
);
PROCEDURE close_refcur (
    p_refcur  IN OUT SYS_REFCURSOR
);
END emp_rpt;

```

The package body shows the declaration of several private variables - a static cursor, `dept_cur`, a table type, `depttab_typ`, a table variable, `t_dept`, an integer variable, `t_dept_max`, and a record variable, `r_emp`.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY emp_rpt
IS
    CURSOR dept_cur IS SELECT * FROM dept;
    TYPE depttab_typ IS TABLE OF dept%ROWTYPE
        INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
    t_dept      DEPTTAB_TYP;
    t_dept_max   INTEGER := 1;
    r_emp       EMPREC_TYP;

    FUNCTION get_dept_name (
        p_deptno  IN NUMBER
    ) RETURN VARCHAR2
    IS
    BEGIN
        FOR i IN 1..t_dept_max LOOP
            IF p_deptno = t_dept(i).deptno THEN
                RETURN t_dept(i).dname;
            END IF;
        END LOOP;
        RETURN 'Unknown';
    END;

    FUNCTION open_emp_by_dept(
        p_deptno      IN emp.deptno%TYPE
    ) RETURN EMP_REFCUR
    IS
        emp_by_dept EMP_REFCUR;
    BEGIN
        OPEN emp_by_dept FOR SELECT empno, ename FROM emp
            WHERE deptno = p_deptno;
        RETURN emp_by_dept;
    END;

    PROCEDURE fetch_emp (
        p_refcur  IN OUT SYS_REFCURSOR
    )
    IS
    BEGIN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO ENAME');
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');
        LOOP
            FETCH p_refcur INTO r_emp;
            EXIT WHEN p_refcur%NOTFOUND;
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(r_emp.empno || ' ' || r_emp.ename);
        END LOOP;
    END;

```

```

PROCEDURE close_refcur (
    p_refcur    IN OUT SYS_REFCURSOR
)
IS
BEGIN
    CLOSE p_refcur;
END;
BEGIN
OPEN dept_cur;
LOOP
    FETCH dept_cur INTO t_dept(t_dept_max);
    EXIT WHEN dept_cur%NOTFOUND;
    t_dept_max := t_dept_max + 1;
END LOOP;
CLOSE dept_cur;
t_dept_max := t_dept_max - 1;
END emp_rpt;

```

This package contains an initialization section that loads the private table variable, `t_dept`, using the private static cursor, `dept_cur.t_dept` serves as a department name lookup table in function, `get_dept_name`.

Function, `open_emp_by_dept` returns a `REF CURSOR` variable for a result set of employee numbers and names for a given department. This `REF CURSOR` variable can then be passed to procedure, `fetch_emp`, to retrieve and list the individual rows of the result set. Finally, procedure, `close_refcur`, can be used to close the `REF CURSOR` variable associated with this result set.

The following anonymous block runs the package function and procedures. In the anonymous block's declaration section, note the declaration of cursor variable, `v_emp_cur`, using the package's public `REF CURSOR` type, `EMP_REFCUR`. `v_emp_cur` contains the pointer to the result set that is passed between the package function and procedures.

```

DECLARE
    v_deptno dept.deptno%TYPE DEFAULT 30;
    v_emp_cur emp_rpt.EMP_REFCUR;
BEGIN
    v_emp_cur := emp_rpt.open_emp_by_dept(v_deptno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPLOYEES IN DEPT #' || v_deptno ||
        ':' || emp_rpt.get_dept_name(v_deptno));
    emp_rpt.fetch_emp(v_emp_cur);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('*****');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_emp_cur%ROWCOUNT || ' rows were retrieved');
    emp_rpt.close_refcur(v_emp_cur);
END;

```

The following is the result of this anonymous block.

EMPLOYEES IN DEPT #30: SALES

EMPNO ENAME

-----

7499 ALLEN

7521 WARD

7654 MARTIN

7698 BLAKE

7844 TURNER

7900 JAMES

\*\*\*\*\*

6 rows were retrieved

The following anonymous block illustrates another means of achieving the same result. Instead of using the package procedures, `fetch_emp` and `close_refcur`, the logic of these programs is coded directly into the anonymous block. In the anonymous block's declaration section, note the addition of record variable, `r_emp`, declared using the package's public record type, `EMPREC_TYP`.

```

DECLARE
  v_deptno  dept.deptno%TYPE DEFAULT 30;
  v_emp_cur  emp_rpt.EMP_REFCUR;
  r_emp      emp_rpt.EMPREC_TYP;
BEGIN
  v_emp_cur := emp_rpt.open_emp_by_dept(v_deptno);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPLOYEES IN DEPT #' || v_deptno ||
    ':' || emp_rpt.get_dept_name(v_deptno));
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO ENAME');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- -----');
  LOOP
    FETCH v_emp_cur INTO r_emp;
    EXIT WHEN v_emp_cur%NOTFOUND;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(r_emp.empno || ' ' ||
      r_emp.ename);
  END LOOP;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('*****');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_emp_cur%ROWCOUNT || ' rows were retrieved');
  CLOSE v_emp_cur;
END;

```

The following is the result of this anonymous block.

EMPLOYEES IN DEPT #30: SALES

EMPNO ENAME

----- -----

7499 ALLEN

7521 WARD

7654 MARTIN

7698 BLAKE

7844 TURNER

7900 JAMES

\*\*\*\*\*

6 rows were retrieved

#### 4.1.5 Dropping a Package

The syntax for deleting an entire package or just the package body is as follows:

```
DROP PACKAGE [ BODY ] package_name;
```

If the keyword, `BODY`, is omitted, both the package specification and the package body are deleted - i.e., the entire package is dropped. If the keyword, `BODY`, is specified, then only the package body is dropped. The package specification remains intact. `package_name` is the identifier of the package to be dropped.

Following statement will destroy only the package body of `emp_admin`:

```
DROP PACKAGE BODY emp_admin;
```

The following statement will drop the entire `emp_admin` package:

```
DROP PACKAGE emp_admin;
```

## 4.2 Built-In Packages

This chapter describes the built-in packages that are provided with Advanced Server. For certain packages, non-superusers must be explicitly granted the `EXECUTE` privilege on the package before using any of the package's functions or procedures. For most of the built-in packages, `EXECUTE` privilege has been granted to `PUBLIC` by default.

For information about using the `GRANT` command to provide access to a package, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers SQL Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

All built-in packages are owned by the special `sys` user which must be specified when granting or revoking privileges on built-in packages:

```
GRANT EXECUTE ON PACKAGE SYS.UTL_FILE TO john;
```

### 4.2.1 DBMS\_ALERT

The `DBMS_ALERT` package provides the capability to register for, send, and receive alerts. The following table lists the supported procedures:

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>REGISTER(name)</code>	n/a	Register to be able to receive alerts named, <code>name</code>
<code>REMOVE(name)</code>	n/a	Remove registration for the alert named, <code>name</code>
<code>REMOVEALL</code>	n/a	Remove registration for all alerts.
<code>SIGNAL(name, message)</code>	n/a	Signals the alert named, <code>name</code> , with <code>message</code>
<code>WAITANY(name OUT, message OUT, status OUT, timeout)</code>	n/a	Wait for any registered alert to occur.
<code>WAITONE(name, message OUT, status OUT, timeout)</code>	n/a	Wait for the specified alert, <code>name</code> , to occur.

Advanced Server's implementation of `DBMS_ALERT` is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those functions and procedures listed in the table above are supported.

Advanced Server allows a maximum of 500 concurrent alerts. You can use the `dbms_alert.max_alerts` GUC variable (located in the `postgresql.conf` file) to specify the maximum number of concurrent alerts allowed on a system.

To set a value for the `dbms_alert.max_alerts` variable, open the `postgresql.conf` file (located by default in `/opt/PostgresPlus/13AS/data`) with your choice of editor, and edit the `dbms_alert.max_alerts` parameter as shown:

```
dbms_alert.max_alerts = alert_count
```

`alert_count`

`alert_count` specifies the maximum number of concurrent alerts. By default, the value of `dbms_alert.max_alerts` is 100. To disable this feature, set `dbms_alert.max_alerts` to 0.

For the `dbms_alert.max_alerts` GUC to function correctly, the `custom_variable_classes` parameter must contain `dbms_alerts`:

```
custom_variable_classes = 'dbms_alert, ...'
```

After editing the `postgresql.conf` file parameters, you must restart the server for the changes to take effect.

## REGISTER

The `REGISTER` procedure enables the current session to be notified of the specified alert.

```
REGISTER(<name> VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

`name`

Name of the alert to be registered.

### Examples

The following anonymous block registers for an alert named, `alert_test`, then waits for the signal.

```
DECLARE
    v_name      VARCHAR2(30) := 'alert_test';
    v_msg       VARCHAR2(80);
    v_status    INTEGER;
    v_timeout   NUMBER(3) := 120;
BEGIN
    DBMS_ALERT.REGISTER(v_name);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Registered for alert ' || v_name);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Waiting for signal...');

    DBMS_ALERT.WAITONE(v_name,v_msg,v_status,v_timeout);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert name : ' || v_name);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert msg  : ' || v_msg);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert status : ' || v_status);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert timeout: ' || v_timeout || ' seconds');

    DBMS_ALERT.REMOVE(v_name);
END;
```

Registered for alert alert\_test

Waiting for signal...

## REMOVE

The **REMOVE** procedure unregisters the session for the named alert.

```
REMOVE(<name> VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

**name**

Name of the alert to be unregistered.

## REMOVEALL

The **REMOVEALL** procedure unregisters the session for all alerts.

```
REMOVEALL
```

## SIGNAL

The **SIGNAL** procedure signals the occurrence of the named alert.

```
SIGNAL(<name> VARCHAR2, <message> VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

**name**

Name of the alert.

**message**

Information to pass with this alert.

### Examples

The following anonymous block signals an alert for **alert\_test**.

```
DECLARE
  v_name  VARCHAR2(30) := 'alert_test';
BEGIN
  DBMS_ALERT.SIGNAL(v_name,'This is the message from ' || v_name);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Issued alert for ' || v_name);
END;
Issued alert for alert_test
```

## WAITANY

The **WAITANY** procedure waits for any of the registered alerts to occur.

```
WAITANY(<name> OUT VARCHAR2, <message> OUT VARCHAR2,
<status> OUT INTEGER, <timeout> NUMBER)
```

## Parameters

### `name`

Variable receiving the name of the alert.

### `message`

Variable receiving the message sent by the `SIGNAL` procedure.

### `status`

Status code returned by the operation. Possible values are: 0 – alert occurred; 1 – timeout occurred.

### `timeout`

Time to wait for an alert in seconds.

## Examples

The following anonymous block uses the `WAITANY` procedure to receive an alert named, `alert_test` or `any_alert`:

```
DECLARE
  v_name      VARCHAR2(30);
  v_msg       VARCHAR2(80);
  v_status    INTEGER;
  v_timeout   NUMBER(3) := 120;
BEGIN
  DBMS_ALERT.REGISTER('alert_test');
  DBMS_ALERT.REGISTER('any_alert');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Registered for alert alert_test and any_alert');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Waiting for signal...');
  DBMS_ALERT.WAITANY(v_name,v_msg,v_status,v_timeout);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert name : ' || v_name);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert msg  : ' || v_msg);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert status : ' || v_status);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert timeout: ' || v_timeout || ' seconds');
  DBMS_ALERT.REMOVEALL;
END;
```

```
Registered for alert alert_test and any_alert
Waiting for signal...
```

An anonymous block in a second session issues a signal for `any_alert`:

```
DECLARE
  v_name  VARCHAR2(30) := 'any_alert';
BEGIN
  DBMS_ALERT.SIGNAL(v_name,'This is the message from ' || v_name);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Issued alert for ' || v_name);
END;
```

```
Issued alert for any_alert
```

Control returns to the first anonymous block and the remainder of the code is executed:

```
Registered for alert alert_test and any_alert
Waiting for signal...
Alert name : any_alert
Alert msg : This is the message from any_alert
Alert status : 0
Alert timeout: 120 seconds
```

## WAITONE

The **WAITONE** procedure waits for the specified registered alert to occur.

```
WAITONE(<name> VARCHAR2, <message> OUT VARCHAR2,
<status> OUT INTEGER, <timeout> NUMBER)
```

### Parameters

**name**

Name of the alert.

**message**

Variable receiving the message sent by the **SIGNAL** procedure.

**status**

Status code returned by the operation. Possible values are: 0 – alert occurred; 1 – timeout occurred.

**timeout**

Time to wait for an alert in seconds.

### Examples

The following anonymous block is similar to the one used in the **WAITANY** example except the **WAITONE** procedure is used to receive the alert named, **alert\_test**.

```
DECLARE
  v_name      VARCHAR2(30) := 'alert_test';
  v_msg       VARCHAR2(80);
  v_status    INTEGER;
  v_timeout   NUMBER(3) := 120;
BEGIN
  DBMS_ALERT.REGISTER(v_name);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_ DBMS_ALERT.REGISTER(v_name);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Registered for alert ' || v_name);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Waiting for signal...');
  DBMS_ALERT.WAITONE(v_name,v_msg,v_status,v_timeout);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert name : ' || v_name);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert msg : ' || v_msg);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert status : ' || v_status);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert timeout: ' || v_timeout || ' seconds');
  DBMS_ALERT.REMOVE(v_name);LINE('Registered for alert ' || v_name);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Waiting for signal...');
  DBMS_ALERT.WAITONE(v_name,v_msg,v_status,v_timeout);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert name : ' || v_name);
```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert msg : ' || v_msg);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert status : ' || v_status);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert timeout: ' || v_timeout || ' seconds');
DBMS_ALERT.REMOVE(v_name);
END;

```

Registered for alert alert\_test  
Waiting for signal...

Signal sent for `alert_test` sent by an anonymous block in a second session:

```

DECLARE
  v_name  VARCHAR2(30) := 'alert_test';
BEGIN
  DBMS_ALERT.SIGNAL(v_name,'This is the message from ' || v_name);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Issued alert for ' || v_name);
END;

```

Issued alert for alert\_test

First session is alerted, control returns to the anonymous block, and the remainder of the code is executed:

```

Registered for alert alert_test
Waiting for signal...
Alert name : alert_test
Alert msg : This is the message from alert_test
Alert status : 0
Alert timeout: 120 seconds

```

## Comprehensive Example

The following example uses two triggers to send alerts when the `dept` table or the `emp` table is changed. An anonymous block listens for these alerts and displays messages when an alert is received.

The following are the triggers on the `dept` and `emp` tables:

```

CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER dept_alert_trig
  AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON dept
DECLARE
  v_action      VARCHAR2(25);
BEGIN
  IF INSERTING THEN
    v_action := ' added department(s)';
  ELSIF UPDATING THEN
    v_action := ' updated department(s)';
  ELSIF DELETING THEN
    v_action := ' deleted department(s)';
  END IF;
  DBMS_ALERT.SIGNAL('dept_alert',USER || v_action || 'on' ||
    SYSDATE);
END;

```

```

CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER emp_alert_trig
  AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp

```

```

DECLARE
    v_action      VARCHAR2(25);
BEGIN
    IF INSERTING THEN
        v_action := ' added employee(s)';
    ELSIF UPDATING THEN
        v_action := ' updated employee(s)';
    ELSIF DELETING THEN
        v_action := ' deleted employee(s)';
    END IF;
    DBMS_ALERT.SIGNAL('emp_alert',USER || v_action || 'on' ||
                       SYSDATE);
END;

```

The following anonymous block is executed in a session while updates to the `dept` and `emp` tables occur in other sessions:

```

DECLARE
    v_dept_alert  VARCHAR2(30) := 'dept_alert';
    v_emp_alert   VARCHAR2(30) := 'emp_alert';
    v_name        VARCHAR2(30);
    v_msg         VARCHAR2(80);
    v_status      INTEGER;
    v_timeout     NUMBER(3) := 60;
BEGIN
    DBMS_ALERT.REGISTER(v_dept_alert);
    DBMS_ALERT.REGISTER(v_emp_alert);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Registered for alerts dept_alert and emp_alert');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Waiting for signal...');
    LOOP
        DBMS_ALERT.WAITANY(v_name,v_msg,v_status,v_timeout);
        EXIT WHEN v_status != 0;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert name : ' || v_name);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert msg  : ' || v_msg);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert status : ' || v_status);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----' || -----
        '-----');
    END LOOP;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alert status : ' || v_status);
    DBMS_ALERT.REMOVEALL;
END;

```

Registered for alerts dept\_alert and emp\_alert  
Waiting for signal...

The following changes are made by user, mary:

```

INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50,'FINANCE','CHICAGO');
INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9001,'JONES',50);
INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9002,'ALICE',50);

```

The following change is made by user, john:

```
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (60,'HR','LOS ANGELES');
```

The following is the output displayed by the anonymous block receiving the signals from the triggers:

```

Registered for alerts dept_alert and emp_alert
Waiting for signal...
Alert name : dept_alert
Alert msg  : mary added department(s) on 25-OCT-07 16:41:01
Alert status : 0
-----
Alert name : emp_alert
Alert msg  : mary added employee(s) on 25-OCT-07 16:41:02
Alert status : 0
-----
Alert name : dept_alert
Alert msg  : john added department(s) on 25-OCT-07 16:41:22
Alert status : 0
-----
Alert status : 1

```

## 4.2.2 DBMS\_AQ

EDB Postgres Advanced Server Advanced Queueing provides message queueing and message processing for the Advanced Server database. User-defined messages are stored in a queue; a collection of queues is stored in a queue table. Procedures in the [DBMS\\_AQADM](#) package create and manage message queues and queue tables. Use the [DBMS\\_AQ](#) package to add messages to a queue or remove messages from a queue, or register or unregister a PL/SQL callback procedure.

Advanced Server also provides extended (non-compatible) functionality for the [DBMS\\_AQ](#) package with SQL commands, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers SQL Guide* for detailed information about the following SQL commands:

- [ALTER QUEUE](#)
- [ALTER QUEUE TABLE](#)
- [CREATE QUEUE](#)
- [CREATE QUEUE TABLE](#)
- [DROP QUEUE](#)
- [DROP QUEUE TABLE](#)

The [DBMS\\_AQ](#) package provides procedures that allow you to enqueue a message, dequeue a message, and manage callback procedures. The supported procedures are:

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<a href="#">ENQUEUE</a>	n/a	Post a message to a queue.
<a href="#">DEQUEUE</a>	n/a	Retrieve a message from a queue if or when a message is available.
<a href="#">REGISTER</a>	n/a	Register a callback procedure.
<a href="#">UNREGISTER</a>	n/a	Unregister a callback procedure.

Advanced Server's implementation of [DBMS\\_AQ](#) is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those procedures listed in the table above are supported.

Advanced Server supports use of the constants listed below:

Constant	Description	For Parameters
----------	-------------	----------------

Constant	Description	For Parameters
DBMS_AQ.BROWSE (0)	Read the message without locking.	dequeue_options_t.dequeue_mode
DBMS_AQ.LOCKED (1)	This constant is defined, but will return an error if used.	dequeue_options_t.dequeue_mode
DBMS_AQ.REMOVE (2)	Delete the message after reading; the default.	dequeue_options_t.dequeue_mode
DBMS_AQ.REMOVE_NODATA (3)	This constant is defined, but will return an error if used.	dequeue_options_t.dequeue_mode
DBMS_AQ.FIRST_MESSAGE (0)	Return the first available message that matches the search terms.	dequeue_options_t.navigation
DBMS_AQ.NEXT_MESSAGE (1)	Return the next available message that matches the search terms.	dequeue_options_t.navigation
DBMS_AQ.NEXT_TRANSACTION (2)	This constant is defined, but will return an error if used.	dequeue_options_t.navigation
DBMS_AQ.FOREVER (-1)	Wait forever if a message that matches the search term is not found, the default.	dequeue_options_t.wait
DBMS_AQ.NO_WAIT (0)	Do not wait if a message that matches the search term is not found.	dequeue_options_t.wait
DBMS_AQ.ON_COMMIT (0)	The dequeue is part of the current transaction.	enqueue_options_t.visibility, dequeue_options_t.visibility
DBMS_AQ.IMMEDIATE (1)	This constant is defined, but will return an error if used.	enqueue_options_t.visibility, dequeue_options_t.visibility
DBMS_AQ.PERSISTENT (0)	The message should be stored in a table.	enqueue_options_t.delivery_mode
DBMS_AQ.BUFFERED (1)	This constant is defined, but will return an error if used.	enqueue_options_t.delivery_mode
DBMS_AQ.READY (0)	Specifies that the message is ready to process.	message_properties_t.state
DBMS_AQ.WAITING (1)	Specifies that the message is waiting to be processed.	message_properties_t.state
DBMS_AQ.PROCESSED (2)	Specifies that the message has been processed.	message_properties_t.state
DBMS_AQ.EXPIRED (3)	Specifies that the message is in the exception queue.	message_properties_t.state
DBMS_AQ.NO_DELAY (0)	This constant is defined, but will return an error if used	message_properties_t.delay
DBMS_AQ.NEVER (NULL)	This constant is defined, but will return an error if used	message_properties_t.expiration
DBMS_AQ.NAMESPACE_AQ (0)	Accept notifications from DBMS_AQ queues.	sys.aq\$_reg_info.namespace
DBMS_AQ.NAMESPACE_ANONYMOUS (1)	This constant is defined, but will return an error if used	sys.aq\$_reg_info.namespace

The `DBMS_AQ` configuration parameters listed in the following table can be defined in the `postgresql.conf` file. After the configuration parameters are defined, you can invoke the `DBMS_AQ` package to use and manage messages held in queues and queue tables.

Parameter	Description
<code>dbms_aq.max_workers</code>	The maximum number of workers to run.

Parameter	Description
dbms_aq.max_idle_time	The idle time a worker must wait before exiting.
dbms_aq.min_work_time	The minimum time a worker can run before exiting.
dbms_aq.launch_delay	The minimum time between creating workers.
dbms_aq.batch_size	The maximum number of messages to process in a single transaction. The default batch size is 10.
dbms_aq.max_databases	The size of DBMS_AQ's hash table of databases. The default value is 1024.
dbms_aq.max_pending_retries	The size of DBMS_AQ's hash table of pending retries. The default value is 1024.

### 4.2.2.1 ENQUEUE

The `ENQUEUE` procedure adds an entry to a queue. The signature is:

```
ENQUEUE(
  <queue_name> IN VARCHAR2,
  <enqueue_options> IN DBMS_AQ.ENQUEUE_OPTIONS_T,
  <message_properties> IN DBMS_AQ.MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T,
  <payload> IN <type_name>,
  <msgid> OUT RAW)
```

#### Parameters

`queue_name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing queue. If you omit the schema name, the server will use the schema specified in the `SEARCH_PATH`. Please note that unlike Oracle, unquoted identifiers are converted to lower case before storing. To include special characters or use a case-sensitive name, enclose the name in double quotes.

For detailed information about creating a queue, see `DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_QUEUE`.

`enqueue_options`

`enqueue_options` is a value of the type, `enqueue_options_t`:

```
DBMS_AQ.ENQUEUE_OPTIONS_T IS RECORD(
  visibility BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT ON_COMMIT,
  relative_msgid RAW(16) DEFAULT NULL,
  sequence_deviation BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
  transformation VARCHAR2(61) DEFAULT NULL,
  delivery_mode PLS_INTEGER NOT NULL DEFAULT PERSISTENT);
```

<code>visibility</code>	<code>ON_COMMIT</code> .
<code>delivery_mode</code>	<code>PERSISTENT</code>
<code>sequence_deviation</code>	<code>NULL</code>
<code>transformation</code>	<code>NULL</code>
<code>relative_msgid</code>	<code>NULL</code>

`message_properties`

`message_properties` is a value of the type, `message_properties_t`:

```
message_properties_t IS RECORD(
    priority INTEGER,
    delay INTEGER,
    expiration INTEGER,
    correlation CHARACTER VARYING(128) COLLATE pg_catalog."C",
    attempts INTEGER,
    recipient_list "AQ$_RECIPIENT_LIST_T",
    exception_queue CHARACTER VARYING(61) COLLATE pg_catalog."C",
    enqueue_time TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE,
    state INTEGER,
    original_msgid BYTEA,
    transaction_group CHARACTER VARYING(30) COLLATE pg_catalog."C",
    delivery_mode INTEGER
DBMS_AQ.PERSISTENT);
```

The supported values for `message_properties_t` are:

<code>priority</code>	If the queue table definition includes a <code>sort_list</code> that references <code>priority</code> , this parameter affects the order that messages are dequeued. A lower value indicates a higher dequeue priority.
<code>delay</code>	Specify the number of seconds that will pass before a message is available for dequeuing or <code>NO_DELAY</code> .
<code>expiration</code>	Use the <code>expiration</code> parameter to specify the number of seconds until a message expires.
<code>correlation</code>	Use <code>correlation</code> to specify a message that will be associated with the entry; the default is <code>NULL</code> .
<code>attempts</code>	This is a system-maintained value that specifies the number of attempts to dequeue the message.
<code>recipient_list</code>	This parameter is not supported.
<code>exception_queue</code>	Use the <code>exception_queue</code> parameter to specify the name of an exception queue to which a message will be moved if it expires or is dequeued by a transaction that rolls back too many times.
<code>enqueue_time</code>	<code>enqueue_time</code> is the time the record was added to the queue; this value is provided by the system.

This parameter is maintained by DBMS\_AQ; state can be:

<code>DBMS_AQ.WAITING</code>	– the delay has not been reached.
<code>DBMS_AQ.READY</code>	– the queue entry is ready for processing.
<code>DBMS_AQ.PROCESSED</code>	– the queue entry has been processed.
<code>DBMS_AQ.EXPIRED</code>	– the queue entry has been moved to the exception queue.

<code>original_msgid</code>	This parameter is accepted for compatibility and ignored.
<code>transaction_group</code>	This parameter is accepted for compatibility and ignored.
<code>delivery_mode</code>	This parameter is not supported; specify a value of <code>DBMS_AQ.PERSISTENT</code> .

### `payload`

Use the `payload` parameter to provide the data that will be associated with the queue entry. The payload type must match the type specified when creating the corresponding queue table (see `DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE`).

## msgid

Use the `msgid` parameter to retrieve a unique (system-generated) message identifier.

### Example

The following anonymous block calls `DBMS_AQ.ENQUEUE`, adding a message to a queue named `work_order`:

```
DECLARE
    enqueue_options  DBMS_AQ.ENQUEUE_OPTIONS_T;
    message_properties DBMS_AQ.MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T;
    message_handle    raw(16);
    payload          work_order;

BEGIN
    payload := work_order('Smith', 'system upgrade');

    DBMS_AQ.ENQUEUE(
        queue_name      => 'work_order',
        enqueue_options => enqueue_options,
        message_properties => message_properties,
        payload         => payload,
        msgid          => message_handle
    );
END;
```

## 4.2.2.2 DEQUEUE

The `DEQUEUE` procedure dequeues a message. The signature is:

```
DEQUEUE(
    <queue_name> IN VARCHAR2,
    <dequeue_options> IN DBMS_AQ.DEQUEUE_OPTIONS_T,
    <message_properties> OUT DBMS_AQ.MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T,
    <payload> OUT <type_name>,
    <msgid> OUT RAW)
```

### Parameters

`queue_name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing queue. If you omit the schema name, the server will use the schema specified in the `SEARCH_PATH`. Please note that unlike Oracle, unquoted identifiers are converted to lower case before storing. To include special characters or use a case-sensitive name, enclose the name in double quotes.

For detailed information about creating a queue, see `DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_QUEUE`.

`dequeue_options` is a value of the type, `dequeue_options_t`:

```
DEQUEUE_OPTIONS_T IS RECORD(
    consumer_name CHARACTER VARYING(30),
    dequeue_mode INTEGER,
    navigation INTEGER,
    visibility INTEGER,
    wait INTEGER,
    msgid BYTEA,
    correlation CHARACTER VARYING(128),
    deq_condition CHARACTER VARYING(4000),
    transformation CHARACTER VARYING(61),
    delivery_mode INTEGER);
```

Currently, the supported parameter values for `dequeue_options_t` are:

`consumer_name` Must be `NULL`.

The locking behavior of the dequeue operation. Must be either:

`DBMS_AQ.BROWSE` – Read the message without obtaining a lock.

`dequeue_mode` `DBMS_AQ.LOCKED` – Read the message after acquiring a lock.

`DBMS_AQ.REMOVE` – Read the message before deleting the message.

`DBMS_AQ.REMOVE_NODATA` – Read the message, but do not delete the message.

Identifies the message that will be retrieved. Must be either:

`navigation` `FIRST_MESSAGE` – The first message within the queue that matches the search term.

`NEXT_MESSAGE` – The next message that is available that matches the first term.

`visibility` Must be `ON_COMMIT` – if you roll back the current transaction the dequeued item will remain in the queue.

Must be a number larger than 0, or:

`wait` `DBMS_AQ.FOREVER` – Wait indefinitely.

`DBMS_AQ.NO_WAIT` – Do not wait.

`msgid` The message ID of the message that will be dequeued.

`correlation` Accepted for compatibility, and ignored.

`deq_condition` A `VARCHAR2` expression that evaluates to a `BOOLEAN` value indicating if the message should be dequeued

`transformation` Accepted for compatibility, and ignored.

`delivery_mode` Must be `PERSISTENT`; buffered messages are not supported at this time.

`message_properties` is a value of the type, `message_properties_t`:

```
message_properties_t IS RECORD(
    priority INTEGER,
    delay INTEGER,
    expiration INTEGER,
    correlation CHARACTER VARYING(128) COLLATE pg_catalog."C",
```

```

attempts INTEGER,
recipient_list "AQ$_RECIPIENT_LIST_T",
exception_queue CHARACTER VARYING(61) COLLATE pg_catalog."C",
enqueue_time TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE,
state INTEGER,
originalmsgid BYTEA,
transaction_group CHARACTER VARYING(30) COLLATE pg_catalog."C",
delivery_mode INTEGER
DBMS_AQ.PERSISTENT);

```

The supported values for `message_properties_t` are:

<code>priority</code>	If the queue table definition includes a <code>sort_list</code> that references <code>priority</code> , this parameter affects the order that messages are dequeued. A lower value indicates a higher dequeue priority.
<code>delay</code>	Specify the number of seconds that will pass before a message is available for dequeuing or <code>NO_DELAY</code> .
<code>expiration</code>	Use the expiration parameter to specify the number of seconds until a message expires.
<code>correlation</code>	Use correlation to specify a message that will be associated with the entry; the default is <code>NULL</code> .
<code>attempts</code>	This is a system-maintained value that specifies the number of attempts to dequeue the message.
<code>recipient_list</code>	This parameter is not supported.
<code>exception_queue</code>	Use the <code>exception_queue</code> parameter to specify the name of an exception queue to which a message will be moved if it expires or is dequeued by a transaction that rolls back too many times.
<code>enqueue_time</code>	<code>enqueue_time</code> is the time the record was added to the queue; this value is provided by the system.

This parameter is maintained by DBMS\_AQ; state can be:

<code>DBMS_AQ.WAITING</code>	– the delay has not been reached.
<code>DBMS_AQ.READY</code>	– the queue entry is ready for processing.
<code>DBMS_AQ.PROCESSED</code>	– the queue entry has been processed.
<code>DBMS_AQ.EXPIRED</code>	– the queue entry has been moved to the exception queue.
<code>originalmsgid</code>	This parameter is accepted for compatibility and ignored.
<code>transaction_group</code>	This parameter is accepted for compatibility and ignored.
<code>delivery_mode</code>	This parameter is not supported; specify a value of <code>DBMS_AQ.PERSISTENT</code> .

## `payload`

Use the `payload` parameter to retrieve the payload of a message with a dequeue operation. The payload type must match the type specified when creating the queue table.

## `msgid`

Use the `msgid` parameter to retrieve a unique message identifier.

## Example

The following anonymous block calls `DBMS_AQ.DEQUEUE`, retrieving a message from the queue and a payload:

```

DECLARE
    dequeue_options  DBMS_AQ.DEQUEUE_OPTIONS_T;
    message_properties DBMS_AQ.MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T;
    message_handle    raw(16);
    payload          work_order;

BEGIN
    dequeue_options.dequeue_mode := DBMS_AQ.BROWSE;

    DBMS_AQ.DEQUEUE(
        queue_name      => 'work_queue',
        dequeue_options => dequeue_options,
        message_properties => message_properties,
        payload         => payload,
        msgid          => message_handle
    );
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(
        'The next work order is [' || payload.subject || ']'
    );
END;

```

The payload is displayed by `DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE`.

### 4.2.2.3 REGISTER

Use the `REGISTER` procedure to register an email address, procedure or URL that will be notified when an item is enqueued or dequeued. The signature is:

```

REGISTER(
    <reg_list> IN SYS.AQ$_REG_INFO_LIST,
    <count> IN NUMBER)

```

#### Parameters

`reg_list` is a list of type `AQ$_REG_INFO_LIST`; that provides information about each subscription that you would like to register. Each entry within the list is of the type `AQ$_REG_INFO`, and may contain:

Attribute	Type	Description
<code>name</code>	VARCHAR2 (128)	The (optionally schema-qualified) name of the subscription.
<code>namespace</code>	NUMERIC	The only supported value is <code>DBMS_AQ.NAMESPACE_AQ (0)</code>

Attribute	Type	Description
		Describes the action that will be performed upon notification. Currently, only calls to PL/SQL procedures are supported. The call should take the form:  plsql://schema.procedure
callback	VARCHAR2 (4000)	<> Where:  schema specifies the schema in which the procedure resides.  procedure specifies the name of the procedure that will be notified.
context	RAW (16)	</> Any user-defined value required by the procedure.

#### count

count is the number of entries in reg\_list.

#### Example

The following anonymous block calls DBMS\_AQ.REGISTER, registering procedures that will be notified when an item is added to or removed from a queue. A set of attributes (of sys.aq\$\_reg\_info type) is provided for each subscription identified in the DECLARE section:

```

DECLARE
    subscription1 sys.aq$_reg_info;
    subscription2 sys.aq$_reg_info;
    subscription3 sys.aq$_reg_info;
    subscriptionlist sys.aq$_reg_info_list;
BEGIN
    subscription1 := sys.aq$_reg_info('q', DBMS_AQ.NAMESPACE_AQ,
'plsql://assign_worker?PR=0',HEXTORAW('FFFF'));
    subscription2 := sys.aq$_reg_info('q', DBMS_AQ.NAMESPACE_AQ,
'plsql://add_to_history?PR=1',HEXTORAW('FFFF'));
    subscription3 := sys.aq$_reg_info('q', DBMS_AQ.NAMESPACE_AQ,
'plsql://reserve_parts?PR=2',HEXTORAW('FFFF'));

    subscriptionlist := sys.aq$_reg_info_list(subscription1,
subscription2, subscription3);
    dbms_aq.register(subscriptionlist, 3);
    commit;

END;
/

```

The subscriptionlist is of type sys.aq\$\_reg\_info\_list, and contains the previously described sys.aq\$\_reg\_info objects. The list name and an object count are passed to dbms\_aq.register.

## 4.2.2.4 UNREGISTER

Use the `UNREGISTER` procedure to turn off notifications related to enqueueing and dequeuing. The signature is:

```
UNREGISTER(
<reg_list> IN SYS.AQ$_REG_INFO_LIST,
<count> IN NUMBER)
```

## Parameter

### `reg_list`

`reg_list` is a list of type `AQ$_REG_INFO_LIST`; that provides information about each subscription that you would like to register. Each entry within the list is of the type `AQ$_REG_INFO`, and may contain:

Attribute	Type	Description
<code>name</code>	<code>VARCHAR2 (128)</code>	The (optionally schema-qualified) name of the subscription.
<code>namespace</code>	<code>NUMERIC</code>	The only supported value is <code>DBMS_AQ.NAMESPACE_AQ (0)</code>

Describes the action that will be performed upon notification. Currently, only calls to PL/SQL procedures are supported. The call should take the form:

`plsql://schema.procedure`

<code>callback</code>	<code>VARCHAR2 (4000)</code>	<code>&lt;&gt;</code> Where: schema specifies the schema in which the procedure resides. procedure specifies the name of the procedure that will be notified.
<code>context</code>	<code>RAW (16)</code>	Any user-defined value required by the procedure.

### `count`

`count` is the number of entries in `reg_list`.

## Example

The following anonymous block calls `DBMS_AQ.UNREGISTER`, disabling the notifications specified in the example for `DBMS_AQ.REGISTER`:

```
DECLARE
  subscription1 sys.aq$_reg_info;
  subscription2 sys.aq$_reg_info;
  subscription3 sys.aq$_reg_info;
  subscriptionlist sys.aq$_reg_info_list;
BEGIN
  subscription1 := sys.aq$_reg_info('q', DBMS_AQ.NAMESPACE_AQ,
  'plsql://assign_worker?PR=0',HEXTORAW('FFFF'));
  subscription2 := sys.aq$_reg_info('q', DBMS_AQ.NAMESPACE_AQ,
  'plsql://add_to_history?PR=1',HEXTORAW('FFFF'));
  subscription3 := sys.aq$_reg_info('q', DBMS_AQ.NAMESPACE_AQ,
  'plsql://reserve_parts?PR=2',HEXTORAW('FFFF'));

  subscriptionlist := sys.aq$_reg_info_list(subscription1,
```

```

subscription2, subscription3);
dbms_aq.unregister(subscriptionlist, 3);
commit;
END;
/

```

The `subscriptionlist` is of type `sys.aq$_reg_info_list`, and contains the previously described `sys.aq$_reg_info` objects. The list name and an object count are passed to `dbms_aq.unregister`.

### 4.2.3 DBMS\_AQADM

EDB Postgres Advanced Server Advanced Queueing provides message queueing and message processing for the Advanced Server database. User-defined messages are stored in a queue; a collection of queues is stored in a queue table. Procedures in the `DBMS_AQADM` package create and manage message queues and queue tables. Use the `DBMS_AQ` package to add messages to a queue or remove messages from a queue, or register or unregister a PL/SQL callback procedure.

Advanced Server also provides extended (non-compatible) functionality for the `DBMS_AQ` package with SQL commands, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers SQL Guide* for detailed information about the following SQL commands:

- `ALTER QUEUE`
- `ALTER QUEUE TABLE`
- `CREATE QUEUE`
- `CREATE QUEUE TABLE`
- `DROP QUEUE`
- `DROP QUEUE TABLE`

The `DBMS_AQADM` package provides procedures that allow you to create and manage queues and queue tables.

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>ALTER_QUEUE</code>	n/a	Modify an existing queue.
<code>ALTER_QUEUE_TABLE</code>	n/a	Modify an existing queue table.
<code>CREATE_QUEUE</code>	n/a	Create a queue.
<code>CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE</code>	n/a	Create a queue table.
<code>DROP_QUEUE</code>	n/a	Drop an existing queue.
<code>DROP_QUEUE_TABLE</code>	n/a	Drop an existing queue table.
<code>PURGE_QUEUE_TABLE</code>	n/a	Remove one or more messages from a queue table.
<code>START_QUEUE</code>	n/a	Make a queue available for enqueueing and dequeuing procedures.
<code>STOP_QUEUE</code>	n/a	Make a queue unavailable for enqueueing and dequeuing procedures

Advanced Server's implementation of `DBMS_AQADM` is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those functions and procedures listed in the table above are supported.

Advanced Server supports use of the arguments listed below:

Constant	Description	For Parameters
----------	-------------	----------------

Constant	Description	For Parameters
DBMS_AQADM.TRANSACTIONAL(1)	This constant is defined, but will return an error if used.	message_grouping
DBMS_AQADM.NONE(0)	Use to specify message grouping for a queue table.	message_grouping
DBMS_AQADM.NORMAL_QUEUE(0)	Use with <code>create queue</code> to <code>specify queue_type</code> .	queue_type
DBMS_AQADM.EXCEPTION_QUEUE (1)	Use with <code>create queue</code> to <code>specify queue_type</code> .	queue_type
DBMS_AQADM.INFINITE(-1)	Use with <code>create queue</code> to specify <code>retention_time</code> .	retention_time
DBMS_AQADM.PERSISTENT (0)	The message should be stored in a table.	enqueue_options_t.delivery_mode
DBMS_AQADM.BUFFERED (1)	This constant is defined, but will return an error if used.	enqueue_options_t.delivery_mode
DBMS_AQADM.PERSISTENT_OR_BUFFERED (2)	This constant is defined, but will return an error if used.	enqueue_options_t.delivery_mode

### 4.2.3.1 ALTER\_QUEUE

Use the `ALTER_QUEUE` procedure to modify an existing queue. The signature is:

```
ALTER_QUEUE(
  <max_retries> IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
  <retry_delay> IN NUMBER DEFAULT 0
  <retention_time> IN NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
  <auto_commit> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE)
  <comment> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
```

#### Parameters

`queue_name`

The name of the new queue.

`max_retries`

`max_retries` specifies the maximum number of attempts to remove a message with a `dequeue` statement. The value of `max_retries` is incremented with each `ROLLBACK` statement. When the number of failed attempts reaches the value specified by `max_retries`, the message is moved to the exception queue. Specify `0` to indicate that no retries are allowed.

`retry_delay`

`retry_delay` specifies the number of seconds until a message is scheduled for re-processing after a `ROLLBACK`. Specify `0` to indicate that the message should be retried immediately (the default).

## retention\_time

`retention_time` specifies the length of time (in seconds) that a message will be stored after being dequeued. You can also specify `0` (the default) to indicate the message should not be retained after dequeuing, or `INFINITE` to retain the message forever.

## auto\_commit

This parameter is accepted for compatibility and ignored.

## comment

`comment` specifies a comment associated with the queue.

### Example

The following command alters a queue named `work_order`, setting the `retry_delay` parameter to 5 seconds:

```
EXEC DBMS_AQADM.ALTER_QUEUE(queue_name => 'work_order', retry_delay => 5);
```

## 4.2.3.2 ALTER\_QUEUE\_TABLE

Use the `ALTER_QUEUE_TABLE` procedure to modify an existing queue table. The signature is:

```
ALTER_QUEUE_TABLE (
  <queue_table> IN VARCHAR2,
  <comment> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  <primary_instance> IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
  <secondary_instance> IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
```

### Parameters

#### queue\_table

The (optionally schema-qualified) name of the queue table.

#### comment

Use the `comment` parameter to provide a comment about the queue table.

#### primary\_instance

`primary_instance` is accepted for compatibility and stored, but is ignored.

#### secondary\_instance

`secondary_instance` is accepted for compatibility, but is ignored.

### Example

The following command modifies a queue table named `work_order_table`:

```
EXEC DBMS_AQADM.ALTER_QUEUE_TABLE
  (queue_table => 'work_order_table', comment => 'This queue table'
```

contains work orders for the shipping department.') ;

The queue table is named `work_order_table`; the command adds a comment to the definition of the queue table.

### 4.2.3.3 CREATE\_QUEUE

Use the `CREATE_QUEUE` procedure to create a queue in an existing queue table. The signature is:

```
CREATE_QUEUE(
  <queue_name> IN VARCHAR2
  <queue_table> IN VARCHAR2,
  <queue_type> IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NORMAL_QUEUE,
  <max_retries> IN NUMBER DEFAULT 5,
  <retry_delay> IN NUMBER DEFAULT 0
  <retention_time> IN NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
  <dependency_tracking> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  <comment> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  <auto_commit> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE)
```

#### Parameters

`queue_name`

The name of the new queue.

`queue_table`

The name of the table in which the new queue will reside.

`queue_type`

The type of the new queue. The valid values for `queue_type` are:

`DBMS_AQADM.NORMAL_QUEUE` – This value specifies a normal queue (the default).

`DBMS_AQADM.EXCEPTION_QUEUE` – This value specifies that the new queue is an exception queue. An exception queue will support only dequeue operations.

`max_retries`

`max_retries` specifies the maximum number of attempts to remove a message with a dequeue statement. The value of `max_retries` is incremented with each `ROLLBACK` statement. When the number of failed attempts reaches the value specified by `max_retries`, the message is moved to the exception queue. The default value for a system table is `0`; the default value for a user created table is `5`.

`retry_delay`

`retry_delay` specifies the number of seconds until a message is scheduled for re-processing after a `ROLLBACK`. Specify `0` to indicate that the message should be retried immediately (the default).

`retention_time`

`retention_time` specifies the length of time (in seconds) that a message will be stored after being dequeued. You can also specify `0` (the default) to indicate the message should not be retained after dequeuing, or `INFINITE` to retain the message forever.

## dependency\_tracking

This parameter is accepted for compatibility and ignored.

### comment

`comment` specifies a comment associated with the queue.

### auto\_commit

This parameter is accepted for compatibility and ignored.

## Example

The following anonymous block creates a queue named `work_order` in the `work_order_table` table:

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_QUEUE ( queue_name => 'work_order', queue_table =>
'work_order_table', comment => 'This queue contains pending work orders.');
END;
```

### 4.2.3.4 CREATE\_QUEUE\_TABLE

Use the `CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE` procedure to create a queue table. The signature is:

```
CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE (
<queue_table> IN VARCHAR2,
<queue_payload_type> IN VARCHAR2,
<storage_clause> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<sort_list> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<multiple_consumers> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
<message_grouping> IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NONE,
<comment> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<auto_commit> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
<primary_instance> IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
<secondary_instance> IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
<compatible> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<secure> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
```

## Parameters

### queue\_table

The (optionally schema-qualified) name of the queue table.

### queue\_payload\_type

The user-defined type of the data that will be stored in the queue table. Please note that to specify a `RAW` data type, you must create a user-defined type that identifies a `RAW` type.

### storage\_clause

Use the `storage_clause` parameter to specify attributes for the queue table. Please note that only the

`TABLESPACE` option is enforced; all others are accepted for compatibility and ignored. Use the `TABLESPACE` clause to specify the name of a tablespace in which the table will be created.

`storage_clause` may be one or more of the following:

`TABLESPACE` `tablespace_name`, `PCTFREE` `integer`, `PCTUSED` `integer`, `INITTRANS` `integer`, `MAXTRANS` `integer` or `STORAGE` `storage_option`.

`storage_option` may be one or more of the following:

`MINEXTENTS` `integer`, `MAXEXTENTS` `integer`, `PCTINCREASE` `integer`, `INITIAL` `size_clause`, `NEXT`, `FREELISTS` `integer`, `OPTIMAL` `size_clause`, `BUFFER_POOL` {`KEEP`|`RECYCLE`|`DEFAULT`}.

`sort_list`

`sort_list` controls the dequeuing order of the queue; specify the names of the column(s) that will be used to sort the queue (in ascending order). The currently accepted values are the following combinations of `enq_time` and `priority`:

- `enq_time, priority`
- `priority, enq_time`
- `priority`
- `enq_time`

`multiple_consumers`

`multiple_consumers` queue tables is not supported.

`message_grouping`

If specified, `message_grouping` must be `NONE`.

`comment`

Use the `comment` parameter to provide a comment about the queue table.

`auto_commit`

`auto_commit` is accepted for compatibility, but is ignored.

`primary_instance`

`primary_instance` is accepted for compatibility and stored, but is ignored.

`secondary_instance`

`secondary_instance` is accepted for compatibility, but is ignored.

`compatible`

`compatible` is accepted for compatibility, but is ignored.

`secure`

`secure` is accepted for compatibility, but is ignored.

## Example

The following anonymous block first creates a type (`work_order`) with attributes that hold a name (a `VARCHAR2`), and a project description (a `TEXT`). The block then uses that type to create a queue table:

```
BEGIN

CREATE TYPE work_order AS (name VARCHAR2, project TEXT, completed BOOLEAN);

EXEC DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE
  (queue_table => 'work_order_table',
   queue_payload_type => 'work_order',
   comment => 'Work order message queue table');

END;
```

The queue table is named `work_order_table`, and contains a payload of a type `work_order`. A comment notes that this is the `Work order message queue table`.

#### 4.2.3.5      `DROP_QUEUE`

Use the `DROP_QUEUE` procedure to delete a queue. The signature is:

```
DROP_QUEUE(
  <queue_name> IN VARCHAR2,
  <auto_commit> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE)
```

##### Parameters

`queue_name`

The name of the queue that you wish to drop.

`auto_commit`

`auto_commit` is accepted for compatibility, but is ignored.

##### Example

The following anonymous block drops the queue named `work_order`:

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AQADM.DROP_QUEUE(queue_name => 'work_order');
END;
```

#### 4.2.3.6      `DROP_QUEUE_TABLE`

Use the `DROP_QUEUE_TABLE` procedure to delete a queue table. The signature is:

```
DROP_QUEUE_TABLE(
  <queue_table> IN VARCHAR2,
  <force> IN BOOLEAN default FALSE,
  <auto_commit> IN BOOLEAN default TRUE)
```

## Parameters

`queue_table`

The (optionally schema-qualified) name of the queue table.

`force`

The `force` keyword determines the behavior of the `DROP_QUEUE_TABLE` command when dropping a table that contain entries:

- If the target table contains entries and force is `FALSE`, the command will fail, and the server will issue an error.
- If the target table contains entries and force is `TRUE`, the command will drop the table and any dependent objects.

`auto_commit`

`auto_commit` is accepted for compatibility, but is ignored.

## Example

The following anonymous block drops a table named `work_order_table`:

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_AQADM.DROP_QUEUE_TABLE ('work_order_table', force => TRUE);
END;
```

## 4.2.3.7 PURGE\_QUEUE\_TABLE

Use the `PURGE_QUEUE_TABLE` procedure to delete messages from a queue table. The signature is:

```
PURGE_QUEUE_TABLE(
  <queue_table> IN VARCHAR2,
  <purge_condition> IN VARCHAR2,
  <purge_options> IN aq$_purge_options_t)
```

## Parameters

`queue_table`

`queue_table` specifies the name of the queue table from which you are deleting a message.

`purge_condition`

Use `purge_condition` to specify a condition (a SQL `WHERE` clause) that the server will evaluate when deciding which messages to purge.

`purge_options`

`purge_options` is an object of the type `aq$_purge_options_t`. An `aq$_purge_options_t` object contains:

Attribute	Type	Description
<code>Block</code>	Boolean	Specify <code>TRUE</code> if an exclusive lock should be held on all queues within the table; the default is <code>FALSE</code> .
<code>delivery_mode</code>	INTEGER	<code>delivery_mode</code> specifies the type of message that will be purged. The only accepted value is <code>DBMS_AQ.PERSISTENT</code> .

### Example

The following anonymous block removes any messages from the `work_order_table` with a value in the `completed` column of `YES`:

```
DECLARE
    purge_options dbms_aqadm.aq$_purge_options_t;
BEGIN
    dbms_aqadm.purge_queue_table('work_order_table', 'completed = YES',
    purge_options);
END;
```

## 4.2.3.8 START\_QUEUE

Use the `START_QUEUE` procedure to make a queue available for enqueueing and dequeuing. The signature is:

```
START_QUEUE(
    <queue_name> IN VARCHAR2,
    <enqueue> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
    <dequeue> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE)
```

### Parameters

`queue_name`

`queue_name` specifies the name of the queue that you are starting.

`enqueue`

Specify `TRUE` to enable enqueueing (the default), or `FALSE` to leave the current setting unchanged.

`dequeue`

Specify `TRUE` to enable dequeuing (the default), or `FALSE` to leave the current setting unchanged.

### Example

The following anonymous block makes a queue named `work_order` available for enqueueing:

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AQADM.START_QUEUE
(queue_name => 'work_order');
END;
```

### 4.2.3.9 STOP\_QUEUE

Use the `STOP_QUEUE` procedure to disable enqueueing or dequeuing on a specified queue. The signature is:

```
STOP_QUEUE(
  <queue_name> IN VARCHAR2,
  <enqueue> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
  <dequeue> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
  <wait> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE)
```

#### Parameters

`queue_name`

`queue_name` specifies the name of the queue that you are stopping.

`enqueue`

Specify `TRUE` to disable enqueueing (the default), or `FALSE` to leave the current setting unchanged.

`dequeue`

Specify `TRUE` to disable dequeuing (the default), or `FALSE` to leave the current setting unchanged.

`wait`

Specify `TRUE` to instruct the server to wait for any uncompleted transactions to complete before applying the specified changes; while waiting to stop the queue, no transactions are allowed to enqueue or dequeue from the specified queue. Specify `FALSE` to stop the queue immediately.

#### Example

The following anonymous block disables enqueueing and dequeuing from the queue named `work_order`:

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AQADM.STOP_QUEUE(queue_name =>'work_order', enqueue=>TRUE,
dequeue=>TRUE, wait=>TRUE);
END;
```

Enqueueing and dequeuing will stop after any outstanding transactions complete.

### 4.2.4 DBMS\_CRYPTO

The `DBMS_CRYPTO` package provides functions and procedures that allow you to encrypt or decrypt `RAW`, `BLOB` or `CLOB` data. You can also use `DBMS_CRYPTO` functions to generate cryptographically strong random values.

The following table lists the `DBMS_CRYPTO` Functions and Procedures.

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
DECRYPT(src, typ, key, iv)	RAW	Decrypts RAW data.
DECRYPT(dst INOUT, src, typ, key, iv)	N/A	Decrypts BLOB data.
DECRYPT(dst INOUT, src, typ, key, iv)	N/A	Decrypts CLOB data.
ENCRYPT(src, typ, key, iv)	RAW	Encrypts RAW data.
ENCRYPT(dst INOUT, src, typ, key, iv)	N/A	Encrypts BLOB data.
ENCRYPT(dst INOUT, src, typ, key, iv)	N/A	Encrypts CLOB data.
HASH(src, typ)	RAW	Applies a hash algorithm to RAW data.
HASH(src)	RAW	Applies a hash algorithm to CLOB data.
MAC(src, typ, key)	RAW	Returns the hashed MAC value of the given RAW data using the specified hash algorithm and key.
MAC(src, typ, key)	RAW	Returns the hashed MAC value of the given CLOB data using the specified hash algorithm and key.
RANDOMBYTES(number_bytes)	RAW	Returns a specified number of cryptographically strong random bytes.
RANDOMINTEGER()	INTEGER	Returns a random INTEGER.
RANDOMNUMBER()	NUMBER	Returns a random NUMBER.

DBMS\_CRYPTO functions and procedures support the following error messages:

ORA-28239 - DBMS\_CRYPTO.KeyNull

ORA-28829 - DBMS\_CRYPTO.CipherSuiteNull

ORA-28827 - DBMS\_CRYPTO.CipherSuiteInvalid

Unlike Oracle, Advanced Server will not return error ORA-28233 if you re-encrypt previously encrypted information.

Please note that RAW and BLOB are synonyms for the PostgreSQL BYTEA data type, and CLOB is a synonym for TEXT.

#### 4.2.4.1 DECRYPT

The DECRYPT function or procedure decrypts data using a user-specified cipher algorithm, key and optional initialization vector. The signature of the DECRYPT function is:

```
DECRYPT
(<src> IN RAW, <typ> IN INTEGER, <key> IN RAW, <iv> IN RAW
DEFAULT NULL) RETURN RAW
```

The signature of the DECRYPT procedure is:

```
DECRYPT
(<dst> INOUT BLOB, <src> IN BLOB, <typ> IN INTEGER, <key> IN RAW,
```

<iv> IN RAW DEFAULT NULL)

or

**DECRYPT**

(<dst> INOUT CLOB, <src> IN CLOB, <typ> IN INTEGER, <key> IN RAW,  
<iv> IN RAW DEFAULT NULL)

When invoked as a procedure, **DECRYPT** returns **BLOB** or **CLOB** data to a user-specified **BLOB**.

## Parameters

**dst**

**dst** specifies the name of a **BLOB** to which the output of the **DECRYPT** procedure will be written. The **DECRYPT** procedure will overwrite any existing data currently in **dst**.

**src**

**src** specifies the source data that will be decrypted. If you are invoking **DECRYPT** as a function, specify **RAW** data; if invoking **DECRYPT** as a procedure, specify **BLOB** or **CLOB** data.

**typ**

**typ** specifies the block cipher type and any modifiers. This should match the type specified when the **src** was encrypted. Advanced Server supports the following block cipher algorithms, modifiers and cipher suites:

### Block Cipher Algorithms

ENCRYPT_DES	CONSTANT INTEGER := 1;
ENCRYPT_3DES	CONSTANT INTEGER := 3;
ENCRYPT_AES	CONSTANT INTEGER := 4;
ENCRYPT_AES128	CONSTANT INTEGER := 6;
ENCRYPT_AES192	CONSTANT INTEGER := 192;
ENCRYPT_AES256	CONSTANT INTEGER := 256;

### Block Cipher Modifiers

CHAIN_CBC	CONSTANT INTEGER := 256;
CHAIN_ECB	CONSTANT INTEGER := 768;

### Block Cipher Padding Modifiers

PAD_PKCS5	CONSTANT INTEGER := 4096;
PAD_NONE	CONSTANT INTEGER := 8192;

### Block Cipher Suites

DES_CBC_PKCS5	CONSTANT INTEGER := ENCRYPT_DES + CHAIN_CBC + PAD_PKCS5;
DES3_CBC_PKCS5	CONSTANT INTEGER := ENCRYPT_3DES + CHAIN_CBC + PAD_PKCS5;
AES_CBC_PKCS5	CONSTANT INTEGER := ENCRYPT_AES + CHAIN_CBC + PAD_PKCS5;

**key**

**key** specifies the user-defined decryption key. This should match the key specified when the **src** was encrypted.

**iv**

**iv** (optional) specifies an initialization vector. If an initialization vector was specified when the **src** was encrypted, you must specify an initialization vector when decrypting the **src**. The default is **NULL**.

## Examples

The following example uses the `DBMS_CRYPTO.DECRYPT` function to decrypt an encrypted password retrieved from the `passwords` table:

```
CREATE TABLE passwords
(
    principal VARCHAR2(90) PRIMARY KEY, -- username
    ciphertext RAW(9) -- encrypted password
);

CREATE FUNCTION get_password(username VARCHAR2) RETURN RAW AS
typ    INTEGER := DBMS_CRYPTO.DES_CBC_PKCS5;
key    RAW(128) := 'my secret key';
iv     RAW(100) := 'my initialization vector';
password RAW(2048);
BEGIN
    SELECT ciphertext INTO password FROM passwords WHERE principal = username;
    RETURN dbms_crypto.decrypt(password, typ, key, iv);
END;
```

Note that when calling `DECRYPT`, you must pass the same cipher type, key value and initialization vector that was used when `ENCRYPTING` the target.

### 4.2.4.2 ENCRYPT

The `ENCRYPT` function or procedure uses a user-specified algorithm, key, and optional initialization vector to encrypt `RAW`, `BLOB` or `CLOB` data. The signature of the `ENCRYPT` function is:

```
ENCRYPT
(<src> IN RAW, <typ> IN INTEGER, <key> IN RAW,
<iv> IN RAW DEFAULT NULL) RETURN RAW
```

The signature of the `ENCRYPT` procedure is:

```
ENCRYPT
(<dst> INOUT BLOB, <src> IN BLOB, <typ> IN INTEGER, <key> IN RAW,
<iv> IN RAW DEFAULT NULL)
```

or

```
ENCRYPT
(<dst> INOUT BLOB, <src> IN CLOB, <typ> IN INTEGER, <key> IN RAW,
<iv> IN RAW DEFAULT NULL)
```

When invoked as a procedure, `ENCRYPT` returns `BLOB` or `CLOB` data to a user-specified `BLOB`.

#### Parameters

`dst`

`dst` specifies the name of a `BLOB` to which the output of the `ENCRYPT` procedure will be written. The `ENCRYPT` procedure will overwrite any existing data currently in `dst`.

**src**

`src` specifies the source data that will be encrypted. If you are invoking `ENCRYPT` as a function, specify `RAW` data; if invoking `ENCRYPT` as a procedure, specify `BLOB` or `CLOB` data.

**typ**

`typ` specifies the block cipher type that will be used by `ENCRYPT`, and any modifiers. Advanced Server supports the block cipher algorithms, modifiers and cipher suites listed below:

**Block Cipher Algorithms**

<code>ENCRYPT_DES</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := 1;</code>
<code>ENCRYPT_3DES</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := 3;</code>
<code>ENCRYPT_AES</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := 4;</code>
<code>ENCRYPT_AES128</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := 6;</code>
<code>ENCRYPT_AES192</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := 192;</code>
<code>ENCRYPT_AES256</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := 256;</code>

**Block Cipher Modifiers**

<code>CHAIN_CBC</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := 256;</code>
<code>CHAIN_ECB</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := 768;</code>

**Block Cipher Padding  
Modifiers**

<code>PAD_PKCS5</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := 4096;</code>
<code>PAD_NONE</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := 8192;</code>

**Block Cipher Suites**

<code>DES_CBC_PKCS5</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := ENCRYPT_DES + CHAIN_CBC + PAD_PKCS5;</code>
<code>DES3_CBC_PKCS5</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := ENCRYPT_3DES + CHAIN_CBC + PAD_PKCS5;</code>
<code>AES_CBC_PKCS5</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := ENCRYPT_AES + CHAIN_CBC + PAD_PKCS5;</code>

**key**

`key` specifies the encryption key.

**iv**

`iv` (optional) specifies an initialization vector. By default, `iv` is `NULL`.

**Examples**

The following example uses the `DBMS_CRYPTO.DES_CBC_PKCS5` Block Cipher Suite (a pre-defined set of algorithms and modifiers) to encrypt a value retrieved from the `passwords` table:

```
CREATE TABLE passwords
(
    principal VARCHAR2(90) PRIMARY KEY, -- username
    ciphertext RAW(9) -- encrypted password
);
CREATE PROCEDURE set_password(username VARCHAR2, cleartext RAW) AS
typ    INTEGER := DBMS_CRYPTO.DES_CBC_PKCS5;
key    RAW(128) := 'my secret key';
iv     RAW(100) := 'my initialization vector';
```

```

encrypted  RAW(2048);
BEGIN
  encrypted := dbms_crypto.encrypt(cleartext, typ, key, iv);
  UPDATE passwords SET ciphertext = encrypted WHERE principal = username;
END;

```

**ENCRYPT** uses a key value of **my secret key** and an initialization vector of **my initialization vector** when encrypting the **password**; specify the same key and initialization vector when decrypting the **password**.

#### 4.2.4.3 HASH

The **HASH** function uses a user-specified algorithm to return the hash value of a **RAW** or **CLOB** value. The **HASH** function is available in three forms:

```

HASH
(<src> IN RAW, <typ> IN INTEGER) RETURN RAW

```

```

HASH
(<src> IN CLOB, <typ> IN INTEGER) RETURN RAW

```

##### Parameters

**src**

**src** specifies the value for which the hash value will be generated. You can specify a **RAW**, a **BLOB**, or a **CLOB** value.

**typ**

**typ** specifies the **HASH** function type. Advanced Server supports the **HASH** function types listed below:

##### HASH Functions

<b>HASH_MD4</b>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 1;
<b>HASH_MD5</b>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 2;
<b>HASH_SH1</b>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 3;

##### Examples

The following example uses **DBMS\_CRYPTO.HASH** to find the **md5** hash value of the string, **cleartext source**:

```

DECLARE
  typ INTEGER := DBMS_CRYPTO.HASH_MD5;
  hash_value RAW(100);
BEGIN
  hash_value := DBMS_CRYPTO.HASH('cleartext source', typ);
END;

```

## 4.2.4.4 MAC

The `MAC` function uses a user-specified `MAC` function to return the hashed `MAC` value of a `RAW` or `CLOB` value. The `MAC` function is available in three forms:

```
MAC
(<src> IN RAW, <typ> IN INTEGER, <key> IN RAW) RETURN RAW
```

```
MAC
(<src> IN CLOB, <typ> IN INTEGER, <key> IN RAW) RETURN RAW
```

### Parameters

`src`

`src` specifies the value for which the `MAC` value will be generated. Specify a `RAW`, `BLOB`, or `CLOB` value.

`typ`

`typ` specifies the `MAC` function used. Advanced Server supports the `MAC` functions listed below.

### MAC Functions

<code>HMAC_MD5</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := 1;</code>
<code>HMAC_SH1</code>	<code>CONSTANT INTEGER := 2;</code>

`key`

`key` specifies the key that will be used to calculate the hashed `MAC` value.

### Examples

The following example finds the hashed `MAC` value of the string `cleartext source`:

```
DECLARE
typ INTEGER := DBMS_CRYPTO.HMAC_MD5;
key RAW(100) := 'my secret key';
mac_value RAW(100);
BEGIN
mac_value := DBMS_CRYPTO.MAC('cleartext source', typ, key);
END;
```

`DBMS_CRYPTO.MAC` uses a key value of `my secret` key when calculating the `MAC` value of `cleartext source`.

## 4.2.4.5 RANDOMBYTES

The `RANDOMBYTES` function returns a `RAW` value of the specified length, containing cryptographically random bytes. The signature is:

RANDOMBYTES  
(<number\_bytes> IN INTEGER) RETURNS RAW

### Parameter

number\_bytes

number\_bytes specifies the number of random bytes to be returned

### Examples

The following example uses RANDOMBYTES to return a value that is 1024 bytes long:

```
DECLARE
  result RAW(1024);
BEGIN
  result := DBMS_CRYPTO.RANDOMBYTES(1024);
END;
```

## 4.2.4.6 RANDOMINTEGER

The RANDOMINTEGER() function returns a random INTEGER between 0 and 268,435,455. The signature is:

RANDOMINTEGER() RETURNS INTEGER

### Examples

The following example uses the RANDOMINTEGER function to return a cryptographically strong random INTEGER value:

```
DECLARE
  result INTEGER;
BEGIN
  result := DBMS_CRYPTO.RANDOMINTEGER();
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(result);
END;
```

## 4.2.4.7 RANDOMNUMBER

The RANDOMNUMBER() function returns a random NUMBER between 0 and 268,435,455. The signature is:

RANDOMNUMBER() RETURNS NUMBER

### Examples

The following example uses the RANDOMNUMBER function to return a cryptographically strong random number:

```

DECLARE
    result NUMBER;
BEGIN
    result := DBMS_CRYPTO.RANDOMNUMBER();
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(result);
END;

```

## 4.2.5 DBMS\_JOB

The `DBMS_JOB` package provides for the creation, scheduling, and managing of jobs. A job runs a stored procedure which has been previously stored in the database. The `SUBMIT` procedure is used to create and store a job definition. A job identifier is assigned to a job along with its associated stored procedure and the attributes describing when and how often the job is to be run.

This package relies on the `pgAgent` scheduler. By default, the Advanced Server installer installs `pgAgent`, but you must start the `pgAgent` service manually prior to using `DBMS_JOB`. If you attempt to use this package to schedule a job after un-installing `pgAgent`, `DBMS_JOB` will throw an error. `DBMS_JOB` verifies that `pgAgent` is installed, but does not verify that the service is running.

The following table lists the supported `DBMS_JOB` procedures:

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>BROKEN(job, broken [, next_date ])</code>	n/a	Specify that a given job is either broken or not broken.
<code>CHANGE(job, what, next_date, interval, instance, force&gt;)</code>	n/a	Change the job's parameters.
<code>INTERVAL(job, interval)</code>	n/a	Set the execution frequency by means of a date function that is recalculated each time the job is run. This value becomes the next date/time for execution.
<code>NEXT_DATE(job, next_date)</code>	n/a	Set the next date/time the job is to be run.
<code>REMOVE(job)</code>	n/a	Delete the job definition from the database.
<code>RUN(job)</code>	n/a	Forces execution of a job even if it is marked broken.
<code>SUBMIT(job OUT, what [, next_date [, interval [, no_parse ]]])</code>	n/a	Creates a job and stores its definition in the database.
<code>WHAT(job, what)</code>	n/a	Change the stored procedure run by a job.

Advanced Server's implementation of `DBMS_JOB` is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those functions and procedures listed in the table above are supported.

Before using `DBMS_JOB`, a database superuser must create the `pgAgent` extension. Use the `psql` client to connect to a database and invoke the command:

```
CREATE EXTENSION pgagent;
```

When and how often a job is run is dependent upon two interacting parameters – `next_date` and `interval`. The `next_date` parameter is a date/time value that specifies the next date/time when the job is to be executed. The `interval` parameter is a string that contains a date function that evaluates to a date/time value.

Just prior to any execution of the job, the expression in the `interval` parameter is evaluated. The resulting value replaces the `next_date` value stored with the job. The job is then executed. In this manner, the expression in `interval` is repeatedly re-evaluated prior to each job execution, supplying the `next_date` date/time for the next execution.

**Note:** The database user must be the same that created a job and schedule to start the `pgAgent` server and execute the job.

The following examples use the following stored procedure, `job_proc`, which simply inserts a timestamp into table, `jobrun`, containing a single `VARCHAR2` column.

```
CREATE TABLE jobrun (
    runtime VARCHAR2(40)
);

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE job_proc
IS
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO jobrun VALUES ('job_proc run at ' || TO_CHAR(SYSDATE,
        'yyyy-mm-dd hh24:mi:ss'));
END;
```

## 4.2.5.1 BROKEN

The `BROKEN` procedure sets the state of a job to either broken or not broken. A broken job cannot be executed except by using the `RUN` procedure.

```
BROKEN(<job> BINARY_INTEGER, <broken> BOOLEAN [, <next_date> DATE ])
```

### Parameters

`job`

Identifier of the job to be set as broken or not broken.

`broken`

If set to `TRUE` the job's state is set to broken. If set to `FALSE` the job's state is set to not broken. Broken jobs cannot be run except by using the `RUN` procedure.

`next_date`

Date/time when the job is to be run. The default is `SYSDATE`.

### Examples

Set the state of a job with job identifier 104 to broken:

```
BEGIN
    DBMS_JOB.BROKEN(104,true);
END;
```

Change the state back to not broken:

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_JOB.BROKEN(104,false);
END;
```

## 4.2.5.2 CHANGE

The **CHANGE** procedure modifies certain job attributes including the stored procedure to be run, the next date/time the job is to be run, and how often it is to be run.

```
CHANGE(<job> BINARY_INTEGER <what> VARCHAR2, <next_date> DATE,
      <interval> VARCHAR2, <instance> BINARY_INTEGER, <force> BOOLEAN)
```

### Parameters

**job**

Identifier of the job to modify.

**what**

Stored procedure name. Set this parameter to null if the existing value is to remain unchanged.

**next\_date**

Date/time when the job is to be run next. Set this parameter to null if the existing value is to remain unchanged.

**interval**

Date function that when evaluated, provides the next date/time the job is to run. Set this parameter to null if the existing value is to remain unchanged.

**instance**

This argument is ignored, but is included for compatibility.

**force**

This argument is ignored, but is included for compatibility.

### Examples

Change the job to run next on December 13, 2007. Leave other parameters unchanged.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_JOB.CHANGE(104,NULL,TO_DATE('13-DEC-07','DD-MON-YY'),NULL, NULL,
                  NULL);
END;
```

## 4.2.5.3 INTERVAL

The **INTERVAL** procedure sets the frequency of how often a job is to be run.

```
INTERVAL(<job> BINARY_INTEGER, <interval> VARCHAR2)
```

## Parameters

**job**

Identifier of the job to modify.

**interval**

Date function that when evaluated, provides the next date/time the job is to be run. If **interval** is **NULL** and the job is complete, the job is removed from the queue.

## Examples

Change the job to run once a week:

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_JOB.INTERVAL(104,'SYSDATE + 7');
END;
```

## 4.2.5.4      NEXT\_DATE

The **NEXT\_DATE** procedure sets the date/time of when the job is to be run next.

```
NEXT_DATE(<job> BINARY_INTEGER, <next_date> DATE)
```

## Parameters

**job**

Identifier of the job whose next run date is to be set.

**next\_date**

Date/time when the job is to be run next.

## Examples

Change the job to run next on December 14, 2007:

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_JOB.NEXT_DATE(104, TO_DATE('14-DEC-07','DD-MON-YY'));
END;
```

## 4.2.5.5      REMOVE

The **REMOVE** procedure deletes the specified job from the database. The job must be resubmitted using the **SUBMIT** procedure in order to have it executed again. Note that the stored procedure that was associated with the job is not deleted.

```
REMOVE(<job> BINARY_INTEGER)
```

#### Parameter

**job**

Identifier of the job that is to be removed from the database.

#### Examples

Remove a job from the database:

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_JOB.REMOVE(104);
END;
```

### 4.2.5.6 RUN

The **RUN** procedure forces the job to be run, even if its state is broken.

```
RUN(<job> BINARY_INTEGER)
```

#### Parameter

**job**

Identifier of the job to be run.

#### Examples

Force a job to be run.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_JOB.RUN(104);
END;
```

### 4.2.5.7 SUBMIT

The **SUBMIT** procedure creates a job definition and stores it in the database. A job consists of a job identifier, the stored procedure to be executed, when the job is to be first run, and a date function that calculates the next date/time the job is to be run.

```
SUBMIT(<job> OUT BINARY_INTEGER, <what> VARCHAR2
[, <next_date> DATE [, <interval> VARCHAR2 [, <no_parse> BOOLEAN ]]])
```

## Parameters

`job`

Identifier assigned to the job.

`what`

Name of the stored procedure to be executed by the job.

`next_date`

Date/time when the job is to be run next. The default is `SYSDATE`.

`interval`

Date function that when evaluated, provides the next date/time the job is to run. If `interval` is set to null, then the job is run only once. Null is the default.

`no_parse`

If set to `TRUE`, do not syntax-check the stored procedure upon job creation – check only when the job first executes. If set to `FALSE`, check the procedure upon job creation. The default is `FALSE`.

**Note:** The `no_parse` option is not supported in this implementation of `SUBMIT()`. It is included for compatibility only.

## Examples

The following example creates a job using stored procedure, `job_proc`. The job will execute immediately and run once a day thereafter as set by the `interval` parameter, `SYSDATE + 1`.

```
DECLARE
    jobid INTEGER;
BEGIN
    DBMS_JOB.SUBMIT(jobid,'job_proc;',SYSDATE,
        'SYSDATE + 1');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('jobid: ' || jobid);
END;
```

jobid: 104

The job immediately executes procedure, `job_proc`, populating table, `jobrun`, with a row:

```
SELECT * FROM jobrun;
```

runtime

```
-----
job_proc run at 2007-12-11 11:43:25
(1 row)
```

## 4.2.5.8 WHAT

The `WHAT` procedure changes the stored procedure that the job will execute.

`WHAT(<job> BINARY_INTEGER, <what> VARCHAR2)`

## Parameters

`job`

Identifier of the job for which the stored procedure is to be changed.

`what`

Name of the stored procedure to be executed.

## Examples

Change the job to run the `list_emp` procedure:

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_JOB.WHAT(104,'list_emp;');
END;
```

## 4.2.6 DBMS\_LOB

The `DBMS_LOB` package provides the capability to operate on large objects. The following table lists the supported functions and procedures:

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>APPEND(dest_lob IN OUT, src_lob)</code>	n/a	Appends one large object to another.
<code>COMPARE(lob_1, lob_2 [, amount [, offset_1 [, offset_2 ]]])</code>	INTEGER	Compares two large objects.
<code>CONVERTOBLOB(dest_lob IN OUT, src_clob, amount, dest_offset IN OUT, src_offset IN OUT, blob_csid, lang_context IN OUT, warning OUT)</code>	n/a	Converts character data to binary.
<code>CONVERTTOCLOB(dest_lob IN OUT, src_blob, amount, dest_offset IN OUT, src_offset IN OUT, blob_csid, lang_context IN OUT, warning OUT)</code>	n/a	Converts binary data to character.
<code>COPY(dest_lob IN OUT, src_lob, amount [, dest_offset [, src_offset ]])</code>	n/a	Copies one large object to another.
<code>ERASE(lob_loc IN OUT, amount IN OUT [, offset ])</code>	n/a	Erase a large object.
<code>GET_STORAGE_LIMIT(lob_loc)</code>	INTEGER	Get the storage limit for large objects.
<code>GETLENGTH(lob_loc)</code>	INTEGER	Get the length of the large object.
<code>INSTR(lob_loc, pattern [, offset [, nth ]])</code>	INTEGER	Get the position of the nth occurrence of a pattern in the large object starting at <code>offset</code>
<code>READ(lob_loc, amount IN OUT, offset, buffer OUT)</code>	n/a	Read a large object.
<code>SUBSTR(lob_loc [, amount [, offset ]])</code>	RAW, VARCHAR2	Get part of a large object.
<code>TRIM(lob_loc IN OUT, newlen)</code>	n/a	Trim a large object to the specified length.

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
WRITE(lob_loc IN OUT, amount, offset, buffer)	n/a	Write data to a large object.
WRITEAPPEND(lob_loc IN OUT, amount, buffer)	n/a	Write data from the buffer to the end of a large object.

Advanced Server's implementation of `DBMS_LOB` is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those functions and procedures listed in the table above are supported.

The following table lists the public variables available in the package.

Public Variables	Data Type	Value
compress_off	INTEGER	0
compress_on	INTEGER	1
deduplicate_off	INTEGER	0
deduplicate_on	INTEGER	4
default_csid	INTEGER	0
default_lang_ctx	INTEGER	0
encrypt_off	INTEGER	0
encrypt_on	INTEGER	1
file_READONLY	INTEGER	0
lobmaxsize	INTEGER	1073741823
lob_READONLY	INTEGER	0
lob_readwrite	INTEGER	1
no_warning	INTEGER	0
opt_compress	INTEGER	1
opt_deduplicate	INTEGER	4
opt_encrypt	INTEGER	2
warn_inconvertible_char	INTEGER	1

In the following sections, lengths and offsets are measured in bytes if the large objects are `BLOBS`. Lengths and offsets are measured in characters if the large objects are `CLOBs`.

#### 4.2.6.1 APPEND

The `APPEND` procedure provides the capability to append one large object to another. Both large objects must be of the same type.

```
APPEND(<dest_lob> IN OUT { BLOB | CLOB }, <src_lob> { BLOB | CLOB })
```

##### Parameters

`dest_lob`

Large object locator for the destination object. Must be the same data type as `src_lob`.

`src_lob`

Large object locator for the source object. Must be the same data type as `dest_lob`.

## 4.2.6.2 COMPARE

The **COMPARE** procedure performs an exact byte-by-byte comparison of two large objects for a given length at given offsets. The large objects being compared must be the same data type.

```
<status> INTEGER COMPARE(<lob_1> { BLOB | CLOB },
<lob_2> { BLOB | CLOB }
[, <amount> INTEGER [, <offset_1> INTEGER [, <offset_2> INTEGER ]]])
```

### Parameters

**lob\_1**

Large object locator of the first large object to be compared. Must be the same data type as **lob\_2**.

**lob\_2**

Large object locator of the second large object to be compared. Must be the same data type as **lob\_1**.

**amount**

If the data type of the large objects is **BLOB**, then the comparison is made for **amount** bytes. If the data type of the large objects is **CLOB**, then the comparison is made for **amount** characters. The default is the maximum size of a large object.

**offset\_1**

Position within the first large object to begin the comparison. The first byte/character is offset 1. The default is 1.

**offset\_2**

Position within the second large object to begin the comparison. The first byte/character is offset 1. The default is 1.

**status**

Zero if both large objects are exactly the same for the specified length for the specified offsets. Non-zero, if the objects are not the same. **NULL** if **amount**, **offset\_1**, or **offset\_2** are less than zero.

## 4.2.6.3 CONVERTTOBLOB

The **CONVERTTOBLOB** procedure provides the capability to convert character data to binary.

```
CONVERTTOBLOB(<dest_lob> IN OUT BLOB, <src_clob> CLOB,
<amount> INTEGER, <dest_offset> IN OUT INTEGER,
<src_offset> IN OUT INTEGER, <blob_csid> NUMBER,
<lang_context> IN OUT INTEGER, <warning> OUT INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

**dest\_lob**

**BLOB** large object locator to which the character data is to be converted.

**src\_clob**

**CLOB** large object locator of the character data to be converted.

**amount**

Number of characters of **src\_clob** to be converted.

**dest\_offset IN**

Position in bytes in the destination **BLOB** where writing of the source **CLOB** should begin. The first byte is offset 1.

**dest\_offset OUT**

Position in bytes in the destination **BLOB** after the write operation completes. The first byte is offset 1.

**src\_offset IN**

Position in characters in the source **CLOB** where conversion to the destination **BLOB** should begin. The first character is offset 1.

**src\_offset OUT**

Position in characters in the source **CLOB** after the conversion operation completes. The first character is offset 1.

**blob\_csid**

Character set ID of the converted, destination **BLOB**.

**lang\_context IN**

Language context for the conversion. The default value of 0 is typically used for this setting.

**lang\_context OUT**

Language context after the conversion completes.

**warning**

0 if the conversion was successful, 1 if an invertible character was encountered.

#### 4.2.6.4 CONVERTTOCLOB

The **CONVERTTOCLOB** procedure provides the capability to convert binary data to character.

```
CONVERTTOCLOB(<dest_lob> IN OUT CLOB, <src_blob> BLOB,
<amount> INTEGER, <dest_offset> IN OUT INTEGER,
<src_offset> IN OUT INTEGER, <blob_csid> NUMBER,
<lang_context> IN OUT INTEGER, <warning> OUT INTEGER)
```

##### Parameters

**dest\_lob**

**CLOB** large object locator to which the binary data is to be converted.

**src\_blob**

**BLOB** large object locator of the binary data to be converted.

**amount**

Number of bytes of **src\_blob** to be converted.

**dest\_offset IN**

Position in characters in the destination **CLOB** where writing of the source **BLOB** should begin. The first character is offset 1.

**dest\_offset OUT**

Position in characters in the destination **CLOB** after the write operation completes. The first character is offset 1.

**src\_offset IN**

Position in bytes in the source **BLOB** where conversion to the destination **CLOB** should begin. The first byte is offset 1.

**src\_offset OUT**

Position in bytes in the source **BLOB** after the conversion operation completes. The first byte is offset 1.

**blob\_csid**

Character set ID of the converted, destination **CLOB**.

**lang\_context IN**

Language context for the conversion. The default value of 0 is typically used for this setting.

**lang\_context OUT**

Language context after the conversion completes.

**warning**

0 if the conversion was successful, 1 if an invertible character was encountered.

## 4.2.6.5 COPY

The **COPY** procedure provides the capability to copy one large object to another. The source and destination large objects must be the same data type.

```
COPY(<dest_lob> IN OUT { BLOB | CLOB }, <src_lob>
{ BLOB | CLOB },
<amount> INTEGER
[, <dest_offset> INTEGER [, <src_offset> INTEGER ]])
```

**Parameters****dest\_lob**

Large object locator of the large object to which `src_lob` is to be copied. Must be the same data type as `src_lob`.

**src\_lob**

Large object locator of the large object to be copied to `dest_lob`. Must be the same data type as `dest_lob`.

**amount**

Number of bytes/characters of `src_lob` to be copied.

**dest\_offset**

Position in the destination large object where writing of the source large object should begin. The first position is offset 1. The default is 1.

**src\_offset**

Position in the source large object where copying to the destination large object should begin. The first position is offset 1. The default is 1.

---

## 4.2.6.6 ERASE

The `ERASE` procedure provides the capability to erase a portion of a large object. To erase a large object means to replace the specified portion with zero-byte fillers for `BLOBs` or with spaces for `CLOBs`. The actual size of the large object is not altered.

```
ERASE(<lob_loc> IN OUT { BLOB | CLOB }, <amount> IN OUT INTEGER
[, <offset> INTEGER ])
```

**Parameters****lob\_loc**

Large object locator of the large object to be erased.

**amount IN**

Number of bytes/characters to be erased.

**amount OUT**

Number of bytes/characters actually erased. This value can be smaller than the input value if the end of the large object is reached before `amount` bytes/characters have been erased.

**offset**

Position in the large object where erasing is to begin. The first byte/character is position 1. The default is 1.

---

## 4.2.6.7 GET\_STORAGE\_LIMIT

The `GET_STORAGE_LIMIT` function returns the limit on the largest allowable large object.

```
<size> INTEGER GET_STORAGE_LIMIT(<lob_loc> BLOB)
```

```
<size> INTEGER GET_STORAGE_LIMIT(<lob_loc> CLOB)
```

### Parameters

`size`

Maximum allowable size of a large object in this database.

`lob_loc`

This parameter is ignored, but is included for compatibility.

---

## 4.2.6.8 GETLENGTH

The `GETLENGTH` function returns the length of a large object.

```
<amount> INTEGER GETLENGTH(<lob_loc> BLOB)
```

```
<amount> INTEGER GETLENGTH(<lob_loc> CLOB)
```

### Parameters

`lob_loc`

Large object locator of the large object whose length is to be obtained.

`amount`

Length of the large object in bytes for `BLOBS` or characters for `CLOBS`.

---

## 4.2.6.9 INSTR

The `INSTR` function returns the location of the nth occurrence of a given pattern within a large object.

```
<position> INTEGER INSTR(<lob_loc> { BLOB | CLOB },
<pattern> { RAW | VARCHAR2 } [, <offset> INTEGER [, <nth> INTEGER ]])
```

### Parameters

`lob_loc`

Large object locator of the large object in which to search for pattern.

#### pattern

Pattern of bytes or characters to match against the large object, `lob`. `pattern` must be `RAW` if `lob_loc` is a `BLOB`. `pattern` must be `VARCHAR2` if `lob_loc` is a `CLOB`.

#### offset

Position within `lob_loc` to start search for `pattern`. The first byte/character is position 1. The default is 1.

#### nth

Search for `pattern`, `nth` number of times starting at the position given by `offset`. The default is 1.

#### position

Position within the large object where `pattern` appears the nth time specified by `nth` starting from the position given by `offset`.

---

## 4.2.6.10 READ

The `READ` procedure provides the capability to read a portion of a large object into a buffer.

```
READ(<lob_loc> { BLOB | CLOB }, <amount> IN OUT BINARY_INTEGER,  
<offset> INTEGER, <buffer> OUT { RAW | VARCHAR2 })
```

### Parameters

#### lob\_loc

Large object locator of the large object to be read.

#### amount IN

Number of bytes/characters to read.

#### amount OUT

Number of bytes/characters actually read. If there is no more data to be read, then `amount` returns 0 and a `DATA_NOT_FOUND` exception is thrown.

#### offset

Position to begin reading. The first byte/character is position 1.

#### buffer

Variable to receive the large object. If `lob_loc` is a `BLOB`, then `buffer` must be `RAW`. If `lob_loc` is a `CLOB`, then `buffer` must be `VARCHAR2`.

---

## 4.2.6.11 SUBSTR

The `SUBSTR` function provides the capability to return a portion of a large object.

```
<data> { RAW | VARCHAR2 } SUBSTR(<lob_loc> { BLOB | CLOB }
[, <amount> INTEGER [, <offset> INTEGER ]])
```

### Parameters

`lob_loc`

Large object locator of the large object to be read.

`amount`

Number of bytes/characters to be returned. Default is 32,767.

`offset`

Position within the large object to begin returning data. The first byte/character is position 1. The default is 1.

`data`

Returned portion of the large object to be read. If `lob_loc` is a `BLOB`, the return data type is `RAW`. If `lob_loc` is a `CLOB`, the return data type is `VARCHAR2`.

## 4.2.6.12 TRIM

The `TRIM` procedure provides the capability to truncate a large object to the specified length.

```
TRIM(<lob_loc> IN OUT { BLOB | CLOB }, <newlen> INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

`lob_loc`

Large object locator of the large object to be trimmed.

`newlen`

Number of bytes/characters to which the large object is to be trimmed.

## 4.2.6.13 WRITE

The `WRITE` procedure provides the capability to write data into a large object. Any existing data in the large object at the specified offset for the given length is overwritten by data given in the buffer.

```
WRITE(<lob_loc> IN OUT { BLOB | CLOB },
<amount> BINARY_INTEGER,
<offset> INTEGER, <buffer> { RAW | VARCHAR2 })
```

#### Parameters

`lob_loc`

Large object locator of the large object to be written.

`amount`

The number of bytes/characters in `buffer` to be written to the large object.

`offset`

The offset in bytes/characters from the beginning of the large object (origin is 1) for the write operation to begin.

`buffer`

Contains data to be written to the large object. If `lob_loc` is a `BLOB`, then `buffer` must be `RAW`. If `lob_loc` is a `CLOB`, then `buffer` must be `VARCHAR2`.

### 4.2.6.14 WRITEAPPEND

The `WRITEAPPEND` procedure provides the capability to add data to the end of a large object.

```
WRITEAPPEND(<lob_loc> IN OUT { BLOB | CLOB },
<amount> BINARY_INTEGER, <buffer> { RAW | VARCHAR2 })
```

#### Parameters

`lob_loc`

Large object locator of the large object to which data is to be appended.

`amount`

Number of bytes/characters from `buffer` to be appended the large object.

`buffer`

Data to be appended to the large object. If `lob_loc` is a `BLOB`, then `buffer` must be `RAW`. If `lob_loc` is a `CLOB`, then `buffer` must be `VARCHAR2`.

### 4.2.7 DBMS\_LOCK

Advanced Server provides support for the `DBMS_LOCK.SLEEP` procedure.

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
SLEEP(seconds)	n/a	Suspends a session for the specified number of seconds.

Advanced Server's implementation of DBMS\_LOCK is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only DBMS\_LOCK.SLEEP is supported.

## SLEEP

The SLEEP procedure suspends the current session for the specified number of seconds.

```
SLEEP(<seconds> NUMBER)
```

### Parameters

seconds

seconds specifies the number of seconds for which you wish to suspend the session. seconds can be a fractional value; for example, enter 1.75 to specify one and three-fourths of a second.

## 4.2.8 DBMS\_MVIEW

Use procedures in the DBMS\_MVIEW package to manage and refresh materialized views and their dependencies. Advanced Server provides support for the following DBMS\_MVIEW procedures:

Procedure	Return Type	Description
GET_MV_DEPENDENCIES(list VARCHAR2, depList VARCHAR2);	n/a	The GET_MV_DEPENDENCIES procedure returns a list of dependencies for a specified view.
REFRESH(list VARCHAR2, method VARCHAR2, rollback_seq VARCHAR2, push_deferred_rpc BOOLEAN, refresh_after_errors BOOLEAN, purge_option NUMBER, parallelism NUMBER, heap_size NUMBER, atomic_refresh BOOLEAN, nested BOOLEAN);	n/a	This variation of the REFRESH procedure refreshes all views named in a comma-separated list of view names.
REFRESH(tab dbms_utility.uncl_array, method VARCHAR2, rollback_seq VARCHAR2, push_deferred_rpc BOOLEAN, refresh_after_errors BOOLEAN, purge_option NUMBER, parallelism NUMBER, heap_size NUMBER, atomic_refresh BOOLEAN, nested BOOLEAN);	n/a	This variation of the REFRESH procedure refreshes all views named in a table of dbms_utility.uncl_array values.
REFRESH_ALL_MVIEWS(number_of_failures BINARY_INTEGER, method VARCHAR2, rollback_seq VARCHAR2, refresh_after_errors BOOLEAN, atomic_refresh BOOLEAN);	n/a	The REFRESH_ALL_MVIEWS procedure refreshes all materialized views.
REFRESH_DEPENDENT(number_of_failures BINARY_INTEGER, list VARCHAR2, method VARCHAR2, rollback_seq VARCHAR2, refresh_after_errors BOOLEAN, atomic_refresh BOOLEAN, nested BOOLEAN);	n/a	This variation of the REFRESH_DEPENDENT procedure refreshes all views that are dependent on the views listed in a comma-separated list.

Procedure	Return Type	Description
REFRESH DEPENDENT(number of failures BINARY INTEGER, tab dbms_utility.uncl_array, method VARCHAR2, rollback_seq VARCHAR2, refresh_after_errors BOOLEAN, atomic_refresh BOOLEAN, nested BOOLEAN);	n/a	This variation of the <b>REFRESH_DEPENDENT</b> procedure refreshes all views that are dependent on the views listed in a table of <b>dbms_utility.uncl_array</b> values.

Advanced Server's implementation of **DBMS\_MVIEW** is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those functions and procedures listed in the table above are supported.

## 4.2.8.1 GET\_MV\_DEPENDENCIES

When given the name of a materialized view, **GET\_MV\_DEPENDENCIES** returns a list of items that depend on the specified view. The signature is:

```
GET_MV_DEPENDENCIES(
    <list> IN VARCHAR2,
    <deplist> OUT VARCHAR2);
```

### Parameters

**list**

**list** specifies the name of a materialized view, or a comma-separated list of materialized view names.

**deplist**

**deplist** is a comma-separated list of schema-qualified dependencies. **deplist** is a **VARCHAR2** value.

### Examples

The following example:

```
DECLARE
    deplist VARCHAR2(1000);
BEGIN
    DBMS_MVIEW.GET_MV_DEPENDENCIES('public.emp_view', deplist);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(deplist || deplist);
END;
```

Displays a list of the dependencies on a materialized view named **public.emp\_view**.

## 4.2.8.2 REFRESH

Use the **REFRESH** procedure to refresh all views specified in either a comma-separated list of view names, or a

table of `DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY` values. The procedure has two signatures; use the first form when specifying a comma-separated list of view names:

```
REFRESH(
  <list> IN VARCHAR2,
  <method> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  <rollback_seg> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  <push_deferred_rpc> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
  <refresh_after_errors> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  <purge_option> IN NUMBER DEFAULT 1,
  <parallelism> IN NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
  <heap_size> IN NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
  <atomic_refresh> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
  <nested> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Use the second form to specify view names in a table of `DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY` values:

```
REFRESH(
  <tab> IN OUT DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY,
  <method> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  <rollback_seg> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  <push_deferred_rpc> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
  <refresh_after_errors> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  <purge_option> IN NUMBER DEFAULT 1,
  <parallelism> IN NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
  <heap_size> IN NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
  <atomic_refresh> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
  <nested> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

## Parameters

### `list`

`list` is a `VARCHAR2` value that specifies the name of a materialized view, or a comma-separated list of materialized view names. The names may be schema-qualified.

### `tab`

`tab` is a table of `DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY` values that specify the name (or names) of a materialized view.

### `method`

`method` is a `VARCHAR2` value that specifies the refresh method that will be applied to the specified view (or views). The only supported method is `C`; this performs a complete refresh of the view.

### `rollback_seg`

`rollback_seg` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `NULL`.

### `push_deferred_rpc`

`push_deferred_rpc` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `TRUE`.

### `refresh_after_errors`

`refresh_after_errors` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `FALSE`.

### `purge_option`

`purge_option` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `1`.

#### parallelism

`parallelism` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `0`.

`heap_size IN NUMBER DEFAULT 0,`

`heap_size` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `0`.

#### atomic\_refresh

`atomic_refresh` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `TRUE`.

#### nested

`nested` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `FALSE`.

### Examples

The following example uses `DBMS_MVIEW.REFRESH` to perform a `COMPLETE` refresh on the `public.emp_view` materialized view:

```
EXEC DBMS_MVIEW.REFRESH(list => 'public.emp_view', method => 'C');
```

## 4.2.8.3 REFRESH\_ALL\_MVIEWS

Use the `REFRESH_ALL_MVIEWS` procedure to refresh any materialized views that have not been refreshed since the table or view on which the view depends has been modified. The signature is:

```
REFRESH_ALL_MVIEWS(
  <number_of_failures> OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
  <method> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  <rollback_seg> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  <refresh_after_errors> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  <atomic_refresh> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

### Parameters

#### number\_of\_failures

`number_of_failures` is a `BINARY_INTEGER` that specifies the number of failures that occurred during the refresh operation.

#### method

`method` is a `VARCHAR2` value that specifies the refresh method that will be applied to the specified view (or views). The only supported method is `C`; this performs a complete refresh of the view.

#### rollback\_seg

`rollback_seg` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `NULL`.

#### refresh\_after\_errors

`refresh_after_errors` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `FALSE`.

`atomic_refresh`

`atomic_refresh` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `TRUE`.

## Examples

The following example performs a `COMPLETE` refresh on all materialized views:

```
DECLARE
  errors INTEGER;
BEGIN
  DBMS_MVIEW.REFRESH_ALL_MVIEWS(errors, method => 'C');
END;
```

Upon completion, `errors` contains the number of failures.

### 4.2.8.4 REFRESH\_DEPENDENT

Use the `REFRESH_DEPENDENT` procedure to refresh all material views that are dependent on the views specified in the call to the procedure. You can specify a comma-separated list or provide the view names in a table of `DBMS.Utility.UNCL_ARRAY` values.

Use the first form of the procedure to refresh all material views that are dependent on the views specified in a comma-separated list:

```
REFRESH_DEPENDENT(
  <number_of_failures> OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
  <list> IN VARCHAR2,
  <method> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  <rollback_seg> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
  <refresh_after_errors> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  <atomic_refresh> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
  <nested> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Use the second form of the procedure to refresh all material views that are dependent on the views specified in a table of `DBMS.Utility.UNCL_ARRAY` values:

```
REFRESH_DEPENDENT(
  <number_of_failures> OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
  <tab> IN DBMS.Utility.UNCL_ARRAY,
  <method> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  <rollback_seg> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  <refresh_after_errors> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  <atomic_refresh> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
  <nested> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

## Parameters

`number_of_failures`

`number_of_failures` is a `BINARY_INTEGER` that contains the number of failures that occurred during the refresh

operation.

#### list

`list` is a `VARCHAR2` value that specifies the name of a materialized view, or a comma-separated list of materialized view names. The names may be schema-qualified.

#### tab

`tab` is a table of `DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY` values that specify the name (or names) of a materialized view.

#### method

`method` is a `VARCHAR2` value that specifies the refresh method that will be applied to the specified view (or views). The only supported method is `C`; this performs a complete refresh of the view.

#### rollback\_seg

`rollback_seg` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `NULL`.

#### refresh\_after\_errors

`refresh_after_errors` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `FALSE`.

#### atomic\_refresh

`atomic_refresh` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `TRUE`.

#### nested

`nested` is accepted for compatibility and ignored. The default is `FALSE`.

### Examples

The following example performs a `COMPLETE` refresh on all materialized views dependent on a materialized view named `emp_view` that resides in the `public` schema:

```
DECLARE
  errors INTEGER;
BEGIN
  DBMS_MVIEW.REFRESH_DEPENDENT(errors, list => 'public.emp_view', method =>
'C');
END;
```

Upon completion, `errors` contains the number of failures.

## 4.2.9 DBMS\_OUTPUT

The `DBMS_OUTPUT` package provides the capability to send messages (lines of text) to a message buffer, or get messages from the message buffer. A message buffer is local to a single session. Use the `DBMS_PIPE` package to send messages between sessions.

The procedures and functions available in the `DBMS_OUTPUT` package are listed in the following table.

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
DISABLE	n/a	Disable the capability to send and receive messages.
ENABLE(buffer_size)	n/a	Enable the capability to send and receive messages.
GET_LINE(line OUT, status OUT)	n/a	Get a line from the message buffer.
GET_LINES(lines OUT, numlines IN OUT)	n/a	Get multiple lines from the message buffer.
NEW_LINE	n/a	Puts an end-of-line character sequence.
PUT(item)	n/a	Puts a partial line without an end-of-line character sequence.
PUT_LINE(item)	n/a	Puts a complete line with an end-of-line character sequence.
SERVEROUTPUT(stdout)	n/a	Direct messages from PUT, PUT_LINE, or NEW_LINE to either standard output or the message buffer.

The following table lists the public variables available in the DBMS\_OUTPUT package.

Public Variables	Data Type	Value	Description
chararr	TABLE		For message lines.

## CHARARR

The CHARARR is for storing multiple message lines.

```
TYPE chararr IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(32767) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

## DISABLE

The DISABLE procedure clears out the message buffer. Any messages in the buffer at the time the DISABLE procedure is executed will no longer be accessible. Any messages subsequently sent with the PUT, PUT\_LINE, or NEW\_LINE procedures are discarded. No error is returned to the sender when the PUT, PUT\_LINE, or NEW\_LINE procedures are executed and messages have been disabled.

Use the ENABLE procedure or SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE) procedure to re-enable the sending and receiving of messages.

```
DISABLE
```

### Examples

This anonymous block disables the sending and receiving messages in the current session.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.DISABLE;
END;
```

## ENABLE

The ENABLE procedure enables the capability to send messages to the message buffer or retrieve messages from the message buffer. Running SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE) also implicitly performs the ENABLE procedure.

The destination of a message sent with `PUT`, `PUT_LINE`, or `NEW_LINE` depends upon the state of `SERVEROUTPUT`.

- If the last state of `SERVEROUTPUT` is `TRUE`, the message goes to standard output of the command line.
- If the last state of `SERVEROUTPUT` is `FALSE`, the message goes to the message buffer.

```
ENABLE [ (<buffer_size> INTEGER) ]
```

## Parameter

`buffer_size`

Maximum length of the message buffer in bytes. If a `buffer_size` of less than 2000 is specified, the buffer size is set to 2000.

## Examples

The following anonymous block enables messages. Setting `SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE)` forces them to standard output.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.ENABLE;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Messages enabled');
END;
```

Messages enabled

The same effect could have been achieved by simply using `SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE)`.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Messages enabled');
END;
```

Messages enabled

The following anonymous block enables messages, but setting `SERVEROUTPUT(FALSE)` directs messages to the message buffer.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.ENABLE;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(FALSE);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Message sent to buffer');
END;
```

## GET\_LINE

The `GET_LINE` procedure provides the capability to retrieve a line of text from the message buffer. Only text that has been terminated by an end-of-line character sequence is retrieved – that is complete lines generated using `PUT_LINE`, or by a series of `PUT` calls followed by a `NEW_LINE` call.

```
GET_LINE(<line> OUT VARCHAR2, <status> OUT INTEGER)
```

## Parameters

**line**

Variable receiving the line of text from the message buffer.

**status**

0 if a line was returned from the message buffer, 1 if there was no line to return.

**Examples**

The following anonymous block writes the `emp` table out to the message buffer as a comma-delimited string for each row.

```
EXEC DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(FALSE);

DECLARE
    v_emprec      VARCHAR2(120);
    CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT * FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.ENABLE;
    FOR i IN emp_cur LOOP
        v_emprec := i.empno || ',' || i.ename || ',' || i.job || ',' ||
                    NVL(LTRIM(TO_CHAR(i.mgr,'9999')),'') || ',' || i.hiredate ||
                    ',' || i.sal || ',' ||
                    NVL(LTRIM(TO_CHAR(i.comm,'9990.99')),'') || ',' || i.deptno;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_emprec);
    END LOOP;
END;
```

The following anonymous block reads the message buffer and inserts the messages written by the prior example into a table named `messages`. The rows in `messages` are then displayed.

```
CREATE TABLE messages (
    status      INTEGER,
    msg         VARCHAR2(100)
);

DECLARE
    v_line      VARCHAR2(100);
    v_status    INTEGER := 0;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.GET_LINE(v_line,v_status);
    WHILE v_status = 0 LOOP
        INSERT INTO messages VALUES(v_status, v_line);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.GET_LINE(v_line,v_status);
    END LOOP;
END;

SELECT msg FROM messages;
```

**msg**


---

```
7369,SMITH,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-80 00:00:00,800.00,,20
7499,ALLEN,SALESMAN,7698,20-FEB-81 00:00:00,1600.00,300.00,30
7521,WARD,SALESMAN,7698,22-FEB-81 00:00:00,1250.00,500.00,30
7566,JONES,MANAGER,7839,02-APR-81 00:00:00,2975.00,,20
7654,MARTIN,SALESMAN,7698,28-SEP-81 00:00:00,1250.00,1400.00,30
```

```

7698,BLAKE,MANAGER,7839,01-MAY-81 00:00:00,2850.00,,30
7782,CLARK,MANAGER,7839,09-JUN-81 00:00:00,2450.00,,10
7788,SCOTT,ANALYST,7566,19-APR-87 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7839,KING,PRESIDENT,,17-NOV-81 00:00:00,5000.00,,10
7844,TURNER,SALESMAN,7698,08-SEP-81 00:00:00,1500.00,0.00,30
7876,ADAMS,CLERK,7788,23-MAY-87 00:00:00,1100.00,,20
7900,JAMES,CLERK,7698,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,950.00,,30
7902,FORD,ANALYST,7566,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7934,MILLER,CLERK,7782,23-JAN-82 00:00:00,1300.00,,10
(14 rows)

```

## GET\_LINES

The `GET_LINES` procedure provides the capability to retrieve one or more lines of text from the message buffer into a collection. Only text that has been terminated by an end-of-line character sequence is retrieved – that is complete lines generated using `PUT_LINE`, or by a series of `PUT` calls followed by a `NEW_LINE` call.

```
GET_LINES(<lines> OUT CHARARR, <numlines> IN OUT INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

`lines`

Table receiving the lines of text from the message buffer. See `CHARARR` for a description of `lines`.

`numlines IN`

Number of lines to be retrieved from the message buffer.

`numlines OUT`

Actual number of lines retrieved from the message buffer. If the output value of `numlines` is less than the input value, then there are no more lines left in the message buffer.

### Examples

The following example uses the `GET_LINES` procedure to store all rows from the `emp` table that were placed on the message buffer, into an array.

```

EXEC DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(FALSE);

DECLARE
    v_emprec      VARCHAR2(120);
    CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT * FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.ENABLE;
    FOR i IN emp_cur LOOP
        v_emprec := i.empno || ',' || i.ename || ',' || i.job || ',' ||
                    NVL(LTRIM(TO_CHAR(i.mgr,'9999')),"") || ',' || i.hiredate ||
                    ',' || i.sal || ',' ||
                    NVL(LTRIM(TO_CHAR(i.comm,'9990.99')),"") || ',' || i.deptno;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_emprec);
    END LOOP;
END;

```

`DECLARE`

```

v_lines      DBMS_OUTPUT.CHARARR;
v_numlines   INTEGER := 14;
v_status     INTEGER := 0;
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.GET_LINES(v_lines,v_numlines);
  FOR i IN 1..v_numlines LOOP
    INSERT INTO messages VALUES(v_numlines, v_lines(i));
  END LOOP;
END;

```

SELECT msg FROM messages;

msg
7369,SMITH,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-80 00:00:00,800.00,,20
7499,ALLEN,SALESMAN,7698,20-FEB-81 00:00:00,1600.00,300.00,30
7521,WARD,SALESMAN,7698,22-FEB-81 00:00:00,1250.00,500.00,30
7566,JONES,MANAGER,7839,02-APR-81 00:00:00,2975.00,,20
7654,MARTIN,SALESMAN,7698,28-SEP-81 00:00:00,1250.00,1400.00,30
7698,BLAKE,MANAGER,7839,01-MAY-81 00:00:00,2850.00,,30
7782,CLARK,MANAGER,7839,09-JUN-81 00:00:00,2450.00,,10
7788,SCOTT,ANALYST,7566,19-APR-87 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7839,KING,PRESIDENT,,17-NOV-81 00:00:00,5000.00,,10
7844,TURNER,SALESMAN,7698,08-SEP-81 00:00:00,1500.00,0.00,30
7876,ADAMS,CLERK,7788,23-MAY-87 00:00:00,1100.00,,20
7900,JAMES,CLERK,7698,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,950.00,,30
7902,FORD,ANALYST,7566,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7934,MILLER,CLERK,7782,23-JAN-82 00:00:00,1300.00,,10

(14 rows)

## NEW\_LINE

The `NEW_LINE` procedure writes an end-of-line character sequence in the message buffer.

### NEW\_LINE

#### Parameter

The `NEW_LINE` procedure expects no parameters.

## PUT

The `PUT` procedure writes a string to the message buffer. No end-of-line character sequence is written at the end of the string. Use the `NEW_LINE` procedure to add an end-of-line character sequence.

### PUT(<item> VARCHAR2)

#### Parameter

##### item

Text written to the message buffer.

## Examples

The following example uses the `PUT` procedure to display a comma-delimited list of employees from the `emp` table.

```

DECLARE
  CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT * FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
  FOR i IN emp_cur LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(i.empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(',');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(i.ename);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(',');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(i.job);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(',');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(i.mgr);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(',');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(i.hiredate);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(',');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(i.sal);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(',');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(i.comm);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(',');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(i.deptno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE;
  END LOOP;
END;

```

7369,SMITH,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-80 00:00:00,800.00,,20  
 7499,ALLEN,SALESMAN,7698,20-FEB-81 00:00:00,1600.00,300.00,30  
 7521,WARD,SALESMAN,7698,22-FEB-81 00:00:00,1250.00,500.00,30  
 7566,JONES,MANAGER,7839,02-APR-81 00:00:00,2975.00,,20  
 7654,MARTIN,SALESMAN,7698,28-SEP-81 00:00:00,1250.00,1400.00,30  
 7698,BLAKE,MANAGER,7839,01-MAY-81 00:00:00,2850.00,,30  
 7782,CLARK,MANAGER,7839,09-JUN-81 00:00:00,2450.00,,10  
 7788,SCOTT,ANALYST,7566,19-APR-87 00:00:00,3000.00,,20  
 7839,KING,PRESIDENT,,17-NOV-81 00:00:00,5000.00,,10  
 7844,TURNER,SALESMAN,7698,08-SEP-81 00:00:00,1500.00,0.00,30  
 7876,ADAMS,CLERK,7788,23-MAY-87 00:00:00,1100.00,,20  
 7900,JAMES,CLERK,7698,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,950.00,,30  
 7902,FORD,ANALYST,7566,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,3000.00,,20  
 7934,MILLER,CLERK,7782,23-JAN-82 00:00:00,1300.00,,10

## PUT\_LINE

The `PUT_LINE` procedure writes a single line to the message buffer including an end-of-line character sequence.

```
PUT_LINE(<item> VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameter

`item`

Text to be written to the message buffer.

## Examples

The following example uses the `PUT_LINE` procedure to display a comma-delimited list of employees from the `emp` table.

```
DECLARE
  v_emprec      VARCHAR2(120);
  CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT * FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
  FOR i IN emp_cur LOOP
    v_emprec := i.empno || ',' || i.ename || ',' || i.job || ',' ||
      NVL(LTRIM(TO_CHAR(i.mgr,'9999')),"") || ',' || i.hiredate ||
      ',' || i.sal || ',' ||
      NVL(LTRIM(TO_CHAR(i.comm,'9990.99')),"") || ',' || i.deptno;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_emprec);
  END LOOP;
END;
```

```
7369,SMITH,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-80 00:00:00,800.00,,20
7499,ALLEN,SALESMAN,7698,20-FEB-81 00:00:00,1600.00,300.00,30
7521,WARD,SALESMAN,7698,22-FEB-81 00:00:00,1250.00,500.00,30
7566,JONES,MANAGER,7839,02-APR-81 00:00:00,2975.00,,20
7654,MARTIN,SALESMAN,7698,28-SEP-81 00:00:00,1250.00,1400.00,30
7698,BLAKE,MANAGER,7839,01-MAY-81 00:00:00,2850.00,,30
7782,CLARK,MANAGER,7839,09-JUN-81 00:00:00,2450.00,,10
7788,SCOTT,ANALYST,7566,19-APR-87 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7839,KING,PRESIDENT,,17-NOV-81 00:00:00,5000.00,,10
7844,TURNER,SALESMAN,7698,08-SEP-81 00:00:00,1500.00,0.00,30
7876,ADAMS,CLERK,7788,23-MAY-87 00:00:00,1100.00,,20
7900,JAMES,CLERK,7698,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,950.00,,30
7902,FORD,ANALYST,7566,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7934,MILLER,CLERK,7782,23-JAN-82 00:00:00,1300.00,,10
```

## SERVEROUTPUT

The `SERVEROUTPUT` procedure provides the capability to direct messages to standard output of the command line or to the message buffer. Setting `SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE)` also performs an implicit execution of `ENABLE`.

The default setting of `SERVEROUTPUT` is implementation dependent. For example, in Oracle SQL\*Plus, `SERVEROUTPUT(FALSE)` is the default. In PSQL, `SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE)` is the default. Also note that in Oracle SQL\*Plus, this setting is controlled using the SQL\*Plus `SET` command, not by a stored procedure as implemented in Advanced Server.

```
SERVEROUTPUT(<stdout> BOOLEAN)
```

To get an Oracle-style display output, you can set the `dbms_output.serveroutput` to `FALSE` in the `postgresql.conf` file; this disables the message output. The default is `TRUE`, which enables the message output.

### Parameter

`stdout`

Set to `TRUE` if subsequent `PUT`, `PUT_LINE`, or `NEW_LINE` commands are to send text directly to standard output of the command line. Set to `FALSE` if text is to be sent to the message buffer.

## Examples

The following anonymous block sends the first message to the command line and the second message to the message buffer.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('This message goes to the command line');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(FALSE);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('This message goes to the message buffer');
END;
```

This message goes to the command line

If within the same session, the following anonymous block is executed, the message stored in the message buffer from the prior example is flushed and displayed on the command line as well as the new message.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Flush messages from the buffer');
END;
```

This message goes to the message buffer  
Flush messages from the buffer

## 4.2.10 DBMS\_PIPE

The `DBMS_PIPE` package provides the capability to send messages through a pipe within or between sessions connected to the same database cluster.

The procedures and functions available in the `DBMS_PIPE` package are listed in the following table:

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>CREATE PIPE(pipename [, maxpipesize ] [, private ])</code>	<code>INTEGER</code>	Explicitly create a private pipe if <code>private</code> is “true” (the default) or a public pipe if <code>private</code> is “false”.
<code>NEXT_ITEM_TYPE</code>	<code>INTEGER</code>	Determine the data type of the next item in a received message.
<code>PACK_MESSAGE(item)</code>	n/a	Place <code>item</code> in the session’s local message buffer.
<code>PURGE(pipename)</code>	n/a	Remove unreceived messages from the specified pipe.
<code>RECEIVE_MESSAGE(pipename [, timeout ])</code>	<code>INTEGER</code>	Get a message from a specified pipe.
<code>REMOVE_PIPE(pipename)</code>	<code>INTEGER</code>	Delete an explicitly created pipe.
<code>RESET_BUFFER</code>	n/a	Reset the local message buffer.
<code>SEND_MESSAGE(pipename [, timeout ] [, maxpipesize ])</code>	<code>INTEGER</code>	Send a message on a pipe.
<code>UNIQUE_SESSION_NAME</code>	<code>VARCHAR2</code>	Obtain a unique session name.
<code>UNPACK_MESSAGE(item OUT)</code>	n/a	Retrieve the next data item from a message into a type-compatible variable, <code>item</code> .

Pipes are categorized as implicit or explicit. An *implicit pipe* is created if a reference is made to a pipe name that was not previously created by the `CREATE_PIPE` function. For example, if the `SEND_MESSAGE` function is executed using a non-existent pipe name, a new implicit pipe is created with that name. An *explicit pipe* is created

using the `CREATE_PIPE` function whereby the first parameter specifies the pipe name for the new pipe.

Pipes are also categorized as private or public. A *private pipe* can only be accessed by the user who created the pipe. Even a superuser cannot access a private pipe that was created by another user. A *public pipe* can be accessed by any user who has access to the `DBMS_PIPE` package.

A public pipe can only be created by using the `CREATE_PIPE` function with the third parameter set to `FALSE`. The `CREATE_PIPE` function can be used to create a private pipe by setting the third parameter to `TRUE` or by omitting the third parameter. All implicit pipes are private.

The individual data items or “lines” of a message are first built-in a *local message buffer*, unique to the current session. The `PACK_MESSAGE` procedure builds the message in the session’s local message buffer. The `SEND_MESSAGE` function is then used to send the message through the pipe.

Receipt of a message involves the reverse operation. The `RECEIVE_MESSAGE` function is used to get a message from the specified pipe. The message is written to the session’s local message buffer. The `UNPACK_MESSAGE` procedure is then used to transfer the message data items from the message buffer to program variables. If a pipe contains multiple messages, `RECEIVE_MESSAGE` gets the messages in *FIFO* (first-in-first-out) order.

Each session maintains separate message buffers for messages created with the `PACK_MESSAGE` procedure and messages retrieved by the `RECEIVE_MESSAGE` function. Thus messages can be both built and received in the same session. However, if consecutive `RECEIVE_MESSAGE` calls are made, only the message from the last `RECEIVE_MESSAGE` call will be preserved in the local message buffer.

#### 4.2.10.1 CREATE\_PIPE

The `CREATE_PIPE` function creates an explicit public pipe or an explicit private pipe with a specified name.

```
<status> INTEGER CREATE_PIPE(<pipename> VARCHAR2
[, <maxpipesize> INTEGER ] [, <private> BOOLEAN ])
```

##### Parameters

`pipename`

Name of the pipe.

`maxpipesize`

Maximum capacity of the pipe in bytes. Default is 8192 bytes.

`private`

Create a public pipe if set to `FALSE`. Create a private pipe if set to `TRUE`. This is the default.

`status`

Status code returned by the operation. 0 indicates successful creation.

##### Examples

The following example creates a private pipe named `messages`:

```
DECLARE
```

```

v_status      INTEGER;
BEGIN
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.CREATE_PIPE('messages');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('CREATE_PIPE status: ' || v_status);
END;
CREATE_PIPE status: 0

```

The following example creates a public pipe named `mailbox`:

```

DECLARE
  v_status      INTEGER;
BEGIN
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.CREATE_PIPE('mailbox',8192, FALSE);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('CREATE_PIPE status: ' || v_status);
END;
CREATE_PIPE status: 0

```

#### 4.2.10.2      NEXT\_ITEM\_TYPE

The `NEXT_ITEM_TYPE` function returns an integer code identifying the data type of the next data item in a message that has been retrieved into the session's local message buffer. As each item is moved off of the local message buffer with the `UNPACK_MESSAGE` procedure, the `NEXT_ITEM_TYPE` function will return the data type code for the next available item. A code of 0 is returned when there are no more items left in the message.

```
<typecode> INTEGER NEXT_ITEM_TYPE
```

##### Parameters

`typecode`

Code identifying the data type of the next data item as shown in the following table.

Type Code	Data Type
0	No more data items
9	NUMBER
11	VARCHAR2
13	DATE
23	RAW

**Note:** The type codes list in the table are not compatible with Oracle databases. Oracle assigns a different numbering sequence to the data types.

##### Examples

The following example shows a pipe packed with a `NUMBER` item, a `VARCHAR2` item, a `DATE` item, and a `RAW` item. A second anonymous block then uses the `NEXT_ITEM_TYPE` function to display the type code of each item.

```

DECLARE
  v_number      NUMBER := 123;
  v_varchar     VARCHAR2(20) := 'Character data';

```

```

v_date      DATE := SYSDATE;
v_raw       RAW(4) := '21222324';
v_status    INTEGER;
BEGIN
  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(v_number);
  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(v_varchar);
  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(v_date);
  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(v_raw);
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.SEND_MESSAGE('datatypes');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SEND_MESSAGE status: ' || v_status);
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM: ' || SQLERRM);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLCODE: ' || SQLCODE);
END;

```

SEND\_MESSAGE status: 0

```

DECLARE
  v_number     NUMBER;
  v_varchar    VARCHAR2(20);
  v_date       DATE;
  v_timestamp  TIMESTAMP;
  v_raw        RAW(4);
  v_status     INTEGER;
BEGIN
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.RECEIVE_MESSAGE('datatypes');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('RECEIVE_MESSAGE status: ' || v_status);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');

  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.NEXT_ITEM_TYPE;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('NEXT_ITEM_TYPE: ' || v_status);
  DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(v_number);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('NUMBER Item : ' || v_number);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');

  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.NEXT_ITEM_TYPE;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('NEXT_ITEM_TYPE: ' || v_status);
  DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(v_varchar);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('VARCHAR2 Item : ' || v_varchar);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');

  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.NEXT_ITEM_TYPE;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('NEXT_ITEM_TYPE: ' || v_status);
  DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(v_date);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('DATE Item : ' || v_date);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');

  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.NEXT_ITEM_TYPE;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('NEXT_ITEM_TYPE: ' || v_status);
  DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(v_raw);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('RAW Item : ' || v_raw);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');

  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.NEXT_ITEM_TYPE;

```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('NEXT_ITEM_TYPE: ' || v_status);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');
EXCEPTION
WHEN OTHERS THEN
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM: ' || SQLERRM);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLCODE: ' || SQLCODE);
END;

RECEIVE_MESSAGE status: 0
-----
NEXT_ITEM_TYPE: 9
NUMBER Item : 123
-----
NEXT_ITEM_TYPE: 11
VARCHAR2 Item : Character data
-----
NEXT_ITEM_TYPE: 13
DATE Item : 02-OCT-07 11:11:43
-----
NEXT_ITEM_TYPE: 23
RAW Item : 21222324
-----
NEXT_ITEM_TYPE: 0

```

### 4.2.10.3 PACK\_MESSAGE

The `PACK_MESSAGE` procedure places an item of data in the session's local message buffer. `PACK_MESSAGE` must be executed at least once before issuing a `SEND_MESSAGE` call.

`PACK_MESSAGE(<item> { DATE | NUMBER | VARCHAR2 | RAW })`

Use the `UNPACK_MESSAGE` procedure to obtain data items once the message is retrieved using a `RECEIVE_MESSAGE` call.

#### Parameters

`item`

An expression evaluating to any of the acceptable parameter data types. The value is added to the session's local message buffer.

### 4.2.10.4 PURGE

The `PURGE` procedure removes the unreceived messages from a specified implicit pipe.

`PURGE(<pipename> VARCHAR2)`

Use the `REMOVE_PIPE` function to delete an explicit pipe.

## Parameters

### pipename

Name of the pipe.

## Examples

Two messages are sent on a pipe:

```
DECLARE
    v_status      INTEGER;
BEGIN
    DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('Message #1');
    v_status := DBMS_PIPE SEND_MESSAGE('pipe');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SEND_MESSAGE status: ' || v_status);

    DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('Message #2');
    v_status := DBMS_PIPE SEND_MESSAGE('pipe');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SEND_MESSAGE status: ' || v_status);
END;

SEND_MESSAGE status: 0
SEND_MESSAGE status: 0
```

Receive the first message and unpack it:

```
DECLARE
    v_item      VARCHAR2(80);
    v_status    INTEGER;
BEGIN
    v_status := DBMS_PIPE RECEIVED_MESSAGE('pipe',1);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('RECEIVE_MESSAGE status: ' || v_status);
    DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(v_item);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Item: ' || v_item);
END;

RECEIVE_MESSAGE status: 0
Item: Message #1
```

Purge the pipe:

```
EXEC DBMS_PIPE.PURGE('pipe');
```

Try to retrieve the next message. The `RECEIVE_MESSAGE` call returns status code 1 indicating it timed out because no message was available.

```
DECLARE
    v_item      VARCHAR2(80);
    v_status    INTEGER;
BEGIN
    v_status := DBMS_PIPE RECEIVED_MESSAGE('pipe',1);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('RECEIVE_MESSAGE status: ' || v_status);
END;
```

RECEIVE\_MESSAGE status: 1

#### 4.2.10.5 RECEIVE\_MESSAGE

The `RECEIVE_MESSAGE` function obtains a message from a specified pipe.

```
<status> INTEGER RECEIVE_MESSAGE(<pipename> VARCHAR2
[, <timeout> INTEGER ])
```

##### Parameters

`pipename`

Name of the pipe.

`timeout`

Wait time (seconds). Default is 86400000 (1000 days).

`status`

Status code returned by the operation.

The possible status codes are:

Status Code	Description
0	Success
1	Time out
2	Message too large for the buffer

#### 4.2.10.6 REMOVE\_PIPE

The `REMOVE_PIPE` function deletes an explicit private or explicit public pipe.

```
<status> INTEGER REMOVE_PIPE(<pipename> VARCHAR2)
```

Use the `REMOVE_PIPE` function to delete explicitly created pipes – i.e., pipes created with the `CREATE_PIPE` function.

##### Parameters

`pipename`

Name of the pipe.

`status`

Status code returned by the operation. A status code of 0 is returned even if the named pipe is non-existent.

## Examples

Two messages are sent on a pipe:

```
DECLARE
  v_status      INTEGER;
BEGIN
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.CREATE_PIPE('pipe');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('CREATE_PIPE status : ' || v_status);

  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('Message #1');
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.SEND_MESSAGE('pipe');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SEND_MESSAGE status: ' || v_status);

  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('Message #2');
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.SEND_MESSAGE('pipe');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SEND_MESSAGE status: ' || v_status);
END;

CREATE_PIPE status : 0
SEND_MESSAGE status: 0
SEND_MESSAGE status: 0
```

Receive the first message and unpack it:

```
DECLARE
  v_item      VARCHAR2(80);
  v_status    INTEGER;
BEGIN
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.RECEIVE_MESSAGE('pipe',1);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('RECEIVE_MESSAGE status: ' || v_status);
  DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(v_item);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Item: ' || v_item);
END;

RECEIVE_MESSAGE status: 0
Item: Message #1
```

Remove the pipe:

```
SELECT DBMS_PIPE.REMOVE_PIPE('pipe') FROM DUAL;

remove_pipe
-----
0
(1 row)
```

Try to retrieve the next message. The `RECEIVE_MESSAGE` call returns status code 1 indicating it timed out because the pipe had been deleted.

```
DECLARE
  v_item      VARCHAR2(80);
  v_status    INTEGER;
BEGIN
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.RECEIVE_MESSAGE('pipe',1);
```

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('RECEIVE_MESSAGE status: ' || v_status);
END;
```

RECEIVE\_MESSAGE status: 1

## 4.2.10.7 RESET\_BUFFER

The `RESET_BUFFER` procedure resets a “pointer” to the session’s local message buffer back to the beginning of the buffer. This has the effect of causing subsequent `PACK_MESSAGE` calls to overwrite any data items that existed in the message buffer prior to the `RESET_BUFFER` call.

`RESET_BUFFER`

### Examples

A message to John is written to the local message buffer. It is replaced by a message to Bob by calling `RESET_BUFFER`. The message is sent on the pipe.

```
DECLARE
  v_status      INTEGER;
BEGIN
  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('Hi, John');
  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('Can you attend a meeting at 3:00, today?');
  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('If not, is tomorrow at 8:30 ok with you?');
  DBMS_PIPE.RESET_BUFFER;
  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('Hi, Bob');
  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('Can you attend a meeting at 9:30, tomorrow?');
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.SEND_MESSAGE('pipe');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SEND_MESSAGE status: ' || v_status);
END;
```

SEND\_MESSAGE status: 0

The message to Bob is in the received message.

```
DECLARE
  v_item      VARCHAR2(80);
  v_status    INTEGER;
BEGIN
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.RECEIVE_MESSAGE('pipe',1);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('RECEIVE_MESSAGE status: ' || v_status);
  DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(v_item);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Item: ' || v_item);
  DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(v_item);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Item: ' || v_item);
END;
```

RECEIVE\_MESSAGE status: 0

Item: Hi, Bob

Item: Can you attend a meeting at 9:30, tomorrow?

## 4.2.10.8 SEND\_MESSAGE

The `SEND_MESSAGE` function sends a message from the session's local message buffer to the specified pipe.

```
<status> SEND_MESSAGE(<pipename> VARCHAR2 [, <timeout> INTEGER ]
[, <maxpipesize> INTEGER ])
```

### Parameters

`pipename`

Name of the pipe.

`timeout`

Wait time (seconds). Default is 86400000 (1000 days).

`maxpipesize`

Maximum capacity of the pipe in bytes. Default is 8192 bytes.

`status`

Status code returned by the operation.

The possible status codes are:

Status Code	Description
0	Success
1	Time out
3	Function interrupted

## 4.2.10.9 UNIQUE\_SESSION\_NAME

The `UNIQUE_SESSION_NAME` function returns a name, unique to the current session.

```
<name> VARCHAR2 UNIQUE_SESSION_NAME
```

### Parameters

`name`

Unique session name.

### Examples

The following anonymous block retrieves and displays a unique session name.

```
DECLARE
    v_session    VARCHAR2(30);
```

```
BEGIN
  v_session := DBMS_PIPE.UNIQUE_SESSION_NAME;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Session Name: ' || v_session);
END;
```

Session Name: PG\$PIPE\$5\$2752

#### 4.2.10.10 UNPACK\_MESSAGE

The **UNPACK\_MESSAGE** procedure copies the data items of a message from the local message buffer to a specified program variable. The message must be placed in the local message buffer with the **RECEIVE\_MESSAGE** function before using **UNPACK\_MESSAGE**.

**UNPACK\_MESSAGE(<item> OUT { DATE | NUMBER | VARCHAR2 | RAW })**

##### Parameters

**item**

Type-compatible variable that receives a data item from the local message buffer.

#### 4.2.10.11 Comprehensive Example

The following example uses a pipe as a “mailbox”. The procedures to create the mailbox, add a multi-item message to the mailbox (up to three items), and display the full contents of the mailbox are enclosed in a package named, **mailbox**.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE mailbox
IS
  PROCEDURE create_mailbox;
  PROCEDURE add_message (
    p_mailbox  VARCHAR2,
    p_item_1   VARCHAR2,
    p_item_2   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'END',
    p_item_3   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'END'
  );
  PROCEDURE empty_mailbox (
    p_mailbox  VARCHAR2,
    p_waittime INTEGER DEFAULT 10
  );
END mailbox;
```

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY mailbox
IS
  PROCEDURE create_mailbox
  IS
```

```

v_mailbox  VARCHAR2(30);
v_status   INTEGER;
BEGIN
  v_mailbox := DBMS_PIPE.UNIQUE_SESSION_NAME;
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.CREATE_PIPE(v_mailbox,1000,FALSE);
  IF v_status = 0 THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Created mailbox: ' || v_mailbox);
  ELSE
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('CREATE_PIPE failed - status: ' ||
      v_status);
  END IF;
END create_mailbox;

PROCEDURE add_message (
  p_mailbox  VARCHAR2,
  p_item_1   VARCHAR2,
  p_item_2   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'END',
  p_item_3   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'END'
)
IS
  v_item_cnt INTEGER := 0;
  v_status   INTEGER;
BEGIN
  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(p_item_1);
  v_item_cnt := 1;
  IF p_item_2 != 'END' THEN
    DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(p_item_2);
    v_item_cnt := v_item_cnt + 1;
  END IF;
  IF p_item_3 != 'END' THEN
    DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(p_item_3);
    v_item_cnt := v_item_cnt + 1;
  END IF;
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.SEND_MESSAGE(p_mailbox);
  IF v_status = 0 THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Added message with ' || v_item_cnt ||
      ' item(s) to mailbox ' || p_mailbox);
  ELSE
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SEND_MESSAGE in add_message failed - ' ||
      'status: ' || v_status);
  END IF;
END add_message;

PROCEDURE empty_mailbox (
  p_mailbox  VARCHAR2,
  p_waittime INTEGER DEFAULT 10
)
IS
  v_msgno   INTEGER DEFAULT 0;
  v_itemno  INTEGER DEFAULT 0;
  v_item    VARCHAR2(100);
  v_status   INTEGER;
BEGIN
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.RECEIVE_MESSAGE(p_mailbox,p_waittime);
  WHILE v_status = 0 LOOP

```

```

v_msgno := v_msgno + 1;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('***** Start message #' || v_msgno ||
' *****');
BEGIN
LOOP
  v_status := DBMS_PIPE.NEXT_ITEM_TYPE;
  EXIT WHEN v_status = 0;
  DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(v_item);
  v_itemno := v_itemno + 1;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Item #' || v_itemno || ':' ||
    v_item);
END LOOP;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('***** End message #' || v_msgno ||
' *****');
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('*');
v_itemno := 0;
v_status := DBMS_PIPE.RECEIVE_MESSAGE(p_mailbox,1);
END;
END LOOP;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Number of messages received: ' || v_msgno);
v_status := DBMS_PIPE.REMOVE_PIPE(p_mailbox);
IF v_status = 0 THEN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Deleted mailbox ' || p_mailbox);
ELSE
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Could not delete mailbox - status: ' ||
    || v_status);
END IF;
END empty_mailbox;
END mailbox;

```

The following demonstrates the execution of the procedures in `mailbox`. The first procedure creates a public pipe using a name generated by the `UNIQUE_SESSION_NAME` function.

```
EXEC mailbox.create_mailbox;
```

Created mailbox: PG\$PIPE\$13\$3940

Using the mailbox name, any user in the same database with access to the `mailbox` package and `DBMS_PIPE` package can add messages:

```
EXEC mailbox.add_message('PG$PIPE$13$3940','Hi, John','Can you attend a
meeting at 3:00, today?','-- Mary');
```

Added message with 3 item(s) to mailbox PG\$PIPE\$13\$3940

```
EXEC mailbox.add_message('PG$PIPE$13$3940','Don''t forget to submit your
report','Thanks','-- Joe');
```

Added message with 3 item(s) to mailbox PG\$PIPE\$13\$3940

Finally, the contents of the mailbox can be emptied:

```
EXEC mailbox.empty_mailbox('PG$PIPE$13$3940');
```

\*\*\*\*\* Start message #1 \*\*\*\*\*

Item #1: Hi, John

Item #2: Can you attend a meeting at 3:00, today?

Item #3: -- Mary

\*\*\*\*\* End message #1 \*\*\*\*\*

\*

\*\*\*\*\* Start message #2 \*\*\*\*\*

Item #1: Don't forget to submit your report

Item #2: Thanks,

Item #3: Joe

\*\*\*\*\* End message #2 \*\*\*\*\*

\*

Number of messages received: 2

Deleted mailbox PG\$PIPE\$13\$3940

## 4.2.11 DBMS\_PROFILER

The `DBMS_PROFILER` package collects and stores performance information about the PL/pgSQL and SPL statements that are executed during a performance profiling session; use the functions and procedures listed below to control the profiling tool.

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>FLUSH_DATA</code>	Status Code or Exception	Flushes performance data collected in the current session without terminating the session (profiling continues).
<code>GET_VERSION(major OUT, minor OUT)</code>	n/a	Returns the version number of this package.
<code>INTERNAL_VERSION_CHECK</code>	Status Code	Confirms that the current version of the profiler will work with the current database.
<code>PAUSE_PROFILER</code>	Status Code or Exception	Pause data collection.
<code>RESUME_PROFILER</code>	Status Code or Exception	Resume data collection.
<code>START_PROFILER(run_comment, run_comment1 [, run_number OUT ])</code>	Status Code or Exception	Start data collection.
<code>STOP_PROFILER</code>	Status Code or Exception	Stop data collection and flush performance data to the <code>PLSQL_PROFILER_RAWDATA</code> table.

The functions within the `DBMS_PROFILER` package return a status code to indicate success or failure; the `DBMS_PROFILER` procedures raise an exception only if they encounter a failure. The status codes and messages returned by the functions, and the exceptions raised by the procedures are listed in the table below.

Status Code	Message	Exception	Description
-1	error_version	<code>version_mismatch</code>	The profiler version and the database are incompatible.
0	success	n/a	The operation completed successfully.
1	error_param	<code>profiler_error</code>	The operation received an incorrect parameter.
2	error_io	<code>profiler_error</code>	The data flush operation has failed.

### FLUSH\_DATA

The `FLUSH_DATA` function/procedure flushes the data collected in the current session without terminating the profiler session. The data is flushed to the tables described in the Advanced Server Performance Features Guide. The function and procedure signatures are:

```
<status> INTEGER FLUSH_DATA
```

```
FLUSH_DATA
```

#### Parameters

`status`

| Status code returned by the operation.

## GET\_VERSION

The `GET_VERSION` procedure returns the version of `DBMS_PROFILER`. The procedure signature is:

```
GET_VERSION(<major> OUT INTEGER, <minor> OUT INTEGER)
```

#### Parameters

`major`

| The major version number of `DBMS_PROFILER`.

`minor`

| The minor version number of `DBMS_PROFILER`.

## INTERNAL\_VERSION\_CHECK

The `INTERNAL_VERSION_CHECK` function confirms that the current version of `DBMS_PROFILER` will work with the current database. The function signature is:

```
<status> INTEGER INTERNAL_VERSION_CHECK
```

#### Parameters

`status`

| Status code returned by the operation.

## PAUSE\_PROFILER

The `PAUSE_PROFILER` function/procedure pauses a profiling session. The function and procedure signatures are:

```
<status> INTEGER PAUSE_PROFILER
```

```
PAUSE_PROFILER
```

#### Parameters

## status

**status** Status code returned by the operation.

## RESUME\_PROFILER

The **RESUME\_PROFILER** function/procedure pauses a profiling session. The function and procedure signatures are:

```
<status> INTEGER RESUME_PROFILER
```

```
RESUME_PROFILER
```

### Parameters

#### status

**status** Status code returned by the operation.

## START\_PROFILER

The **START\_PROFILER** function/procedure starts a data collection session. The function and procedure signatures are:

```
<status> INTEGER START_PROFILER(<run_comment> TEXT := SYSDATE,  
<run_comment1> TEXT := " [, <run_number> OUT INTEGER ]")
```

```
START_PROFILER(<run_comment> TEXT := SYSDATE,  
<run_comment1> TEXT := " [, <run_number> OUT INTEGER ]")
```

### Parameters

#### run\_comment

**run\_comment** A user-defined comment for the profiler session. The default value is **SYSDATE**.

#### run\_comment1

**run\_comment1** An additional user-defined comment for the profiler session. The default value is "".

#### run\_number

**run\_number** The session number of the profiler session.

#### status

**status** Status code returned by the operation.

## STOP\_PROFILER

The **STOP\_PROFILER** function/procedure stops a profiling session and flushes the performance information to the **DBMS\_PROFILER** tables and view. The function and procedure signatures are:

```
<status> INTEGER STOP_PROFILER
```

## STOP\_PROFILER

### Parameters

#### status

Status code returned by the operation.

## Using DBMS\_PROFILER

The `DBMS_PROFILER` package collects and stores performance information about the PL/pgSQL and SPL statements that are executed during a profiling session; you can review the performance information in the tables and views provided by the profiler.

`DBMS_PROFILER` works by recording a set of performance-related counters and timers for each line of PL/pgSQL or SPL statement that executes within a profiling session. The counters and timers are stored in a table named `SYS.PLSQL_PROFILER_DATA`. When you complete a profiling session, `DBMS_PROFILER` will write a row to the performance statistics table for each line of PL/pgSQL or SPL code that executed within the session. For example, if you execute the following function:

```

1 - CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION getBalance(acctNumber INTEGER)
2 - RETURNS NUMERIC AS $$ 
3 - DECLARE
4 -   result NUMERIC;
5 - BEGIN
6 -   SELECT INTO result balance FROM acct WHERE id = acctNumber;
7 -
8 -   IF (result IS NULL) THEN
9 -     RAISE INFO 'Balance is null';
10-  END IF;
11-
12-  RETURN result;
13- END;
14- $$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';
```

`DBMS_PROFILER` adds one `PLSQL_PROFILER_DATA` entry for each line of code within the `getBalance()` function (including blank lines and comments). The entry corresponding to the `SELECT` statement executed exactly one time; and required a very small amount of time to execute. On the other hand, the entry corresponding to the `RAISE INFO` statement executed once or not at all (depending on the value for the `balance` column).

Some of the lines in this function contain no executable code so the performance statistics for those lines will always contain zero values.

To start a profiling session, invoke the `DBMS_PROFILER.START_PROFILER` function (or procedure). Once you've invoked `START_PROFILER`, Advanced Server will profile every PL/pgSQL or SPL function, procedure, trigger, or anonymous block that your session executes until you either stop or pause the profiler (by calling `STOP_PROFILER` or `PAUSE_PROFILER`).

It is important to note that when you start (or resume) the profiler, the profiler will only gather performance statistics for functions/procedures/triggers that start after the call to `START_PROFILER` (or `RESUME_PROFILER`).

While the profiler is active, Advanced Server records a large set of timers and counters in memory; when you invoke the `STOP_PROFILER` (or `FLUSH_DATA`) function/procedure, `DBMS_PROFILER` writes those timers and counters to a set of three tables:

- `SYS.PLSQL_PROFILER_RAWDATA`

Contains the performance counters and timers for each statement executed within the session.

- **SYS.PLSQL\_PROFILER\_RUNS**

Contains a summary of each run (aggregating the information found in **PLSQL\_PROFILER\_RAWDATA**).

- **SYS.PLSQL\_PROFILER\_UNITS**

Contains a summary of each code unit (function, procedure, trigger, or anonymous block) executed within a session.

In addition, **DBMS\_PROFILER** defines a view, **SYS.PLSQL\_PROFILER\_DATA**, which contains a subset of the **PLSQL\_PROFILER\_RAWDATA** table.

Please note that a non-superuser may gather profiling information, but may not view that profiling information unless a superuser grants specific privileges on the profiling tables (stored in the **SYS** schema). This permits a non-privileged user to gather performance statistics without exposing information that the administrator may want to keep secret.

## Querying the DBMS\_PROFILER Tables and View

The following step-by-step example uses **DBMS\_PROFILER** to retrieve performance information for procedures, functions, and triggers included in the sample data distributed with Advanced Server.

1. Open the EDB-PSQL command line, and establish a connection to the Advanced Server database. Use an **EXEC** statement to start the profiling session:

```
acctg=# EXEC dbms_profiler.start_profiler('profile list_emp');
```

EDB-SPL Procedure successfully completed

### Note

(The call to **start\_profiler()** includes a comment that **DBMS\_PROFILER** associates with the profiler session).

1. Then call the **list\_emp** function:

```
acctg=# SELECT list_emp();
INFO: EMPNO  ENAME
INFO: ----- -----
INFO: 7369  SMITH
INFO: 7499  ALLEN
INFO: 7521  WARD
INFO: 7566  JONES
INFO: 7654  MARTIN
INFO: 7698  BLAKE
INFO: 7782  CLARK
INFO: 7788  SCOTT
INFO: 7839  KING
INFO: 7844  TURNER
INFO: 7876  ADAMS
INFO: 7900  JAMES
INFO: 7902  FORD
INFO: 7934  MILLER
list_emp
-----
```

(1 row)

1. Stop the profiling session with a call to `dbms_profiler.stop_profiler`:

```
acctg=# EXEC dbms_profiler.stop_profiler;
```

EDB-SPL Procedure successfully completed

1. Start a new session with the `dbms_profiler.start_profiler` function (followed by a new comment):

```
acctg=# EXEC dbms_profiler.start_profiler('profile get_dept_name and
emp_sal_trig');
```

EDB-SPL Procedure successfully completed

1. Invoke the `get_dept_name` function:

```
acctg=# SELECT get_dept_name(10);
get_dept_name
```

```
-----  
ACCOUNTING
```

(1 row)

1. Execute an `UPDATE` statement that causes a trigger to execute:

```
acctg=# UPDATE memp SET sal = 500 WHERE empno = 7902;
INFO: Updating employee 7902
INFO: ..Old salary: 3000.00
INFO: ..New salary: 500.00
INFO: ..Raise: -2500.00
INFO: User enterprisedb updated employee(s) on 04-FEB-14
UPDATE 1
```

1. Terminate the profiling session and flush the performance information to the profiling tables:

```
acctg=# EXEC dbms_profiler.stop_profiler;
```

EDB-SPL Procedure successfully completed

1. Now, query the `plsql_profiler_runs` table to view a list of the profiling sessions, arranged by `runid`:

```
acctg=# SELECT * FROM plsql_profiler_runs;
runid | related_run | run_owner | run_date
| run_comment | run_total_time | run_system_info
| run_comment1 | spare1
-----+-----+-----+-----+
-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+
1 | | enterprisedb | 04-FEB-14 09:32:48.874315 | profile
list_emp | | 4154 |
| | |
2 | | enterprisedb | 04-FEB-14 09:41:30.546503 | profile
get_dept_name and emp_sal_trig | 2088 |
| | |
(2 rows)
```

1. Query the `plsql_profiler_units` table to view the amount of time consumed by each unit (each function,

procedure, or trigger):

```
acctg=# SELECT * FROM plsql_profiler_units;
runid | unit_number | unit_type | unit_owner |
unit_name      | unit_timestamp | total_time | spare1 | spare2
-----+-----+-----+-----+
-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 | 16999 | FUNCTION | enterprisesdb |
list_emp()           |           |     4 |     |
2 | 17002 | FUNCTION | enterprisesdb |
user_audit_trig()    |           |     1 |     |
2 | 17000 | FUNCTION | enterprisesdb | get_dept_name(p_deptno
numeric) |           |     1 |     |
2 | 17004 | FUNCTION | enterprisesdb |
emp_sal_trig()      |           |     1 |     |
(4 rows)
```

1. Query the `plsql_profiler_rawdata` table to view a list of the wait event counters and wait event times:

```
acctg=# SELECT runid, sourcecode, func_oid, line_number, exec_count,
tuples_returned, time_total FROM plsql_profiler_rawdata;
```

runid	sourcecode	func_oid	line_number	exec_count	tuples_returned	time_total
1	DECLARE					
16999	1   0   0   0					
v_empno	NUMERIC(4);					
16999	2   0   0   0					
v_ename	VARCHAR(10);					
16999	3   0   0   0					
emp_cur	CURSOR FOR					
16999	4   0   0   0					
	SELECT empno, ename FROM memp ORDER BY empno;					
16999	5   0   0   0					
BEGIN						
16999	6   0   0   0					
OPEN	emp_cur;					
16999	7   0   0   0					
RAISE	INFO 'EMPNO ENAME';					
16999	8   1   0   0.001621					
RAISE	INFO '---- -----';					
16999	9   1   0   0.000301					
LOOP						
16999	10   1   0   4.6e-05					
FETCH	emp_cur INTO v_empno, v_ename;					
16999	11   1   0   0.001114					
EXIT	WHEN NOT FOUND;					
16999	12   15   0   0.000206					
RAISE	INFO '% %', v_empno, v_ename;					
16999	13   15   0   8.3e-05					
END	LOOP;					
16999	14   14   0   0.000773					
CLOSE	emp_cur;					
16999	15   0   0   0					

```

1 | RETURN;
| 16999 |    16 |    1 |    0 |  1e-05
1 | END;
| 16999 |    17 |    1 |    0 |    0
1 |
| 16999 |    18 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 | DECLARE
| 17002 |    1 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |   v_action  VARCHAR(24);
| 17002 |    2 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |   v_text    TEXT;
| 17002 |    3 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 | BEGIN
| 17002 |    4 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |   IF TG_OP = 'INSERT' THEN
| 17002 |    5 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |     v_action := ' added employee(s) on ';
| 17002 |    6 |    1 |    0 |  0.000143
2 |   ELSIF TG_OP = 'UPDATE' THEN
| 17002 |    7 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |     v_action := ' updated employee(s) on ';
| 17002 |    8 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |   ELSIF TG_OP = 'DELETE' THEN
| 17002 |    9 |    1 |    0 |  3.2e-05
2 |     v_action := ' deleted employee(s) on ';
| 17002 |   10 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |   END IF;
| 17002 |   11 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |   v_text := 'User ' || USER || v_action || CURRENT_DATE;
| 17002 |   12 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |   RAISE INFO '%', v_text;
| 17002 |   13 |    1 |    0 |  0.000383
2 |   RETURN NULL;
| 17002 |   14 |    1 |    0 |  6.3e-05
2 | END;
| 17002 |   15 |    1 |    0 |  3.6e-05
2 |
| 17002 |   16 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 | DECLARE
| 17000 |    1 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |   v_dname  VARCHAR(14);
| 17000 |    2 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 | BEGIN
| 17000 |    3 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |   SELECT INTO v_dname dname FROM dept WHERE deptno = p_deptno;
| 17000 |    4 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |   RETURN v_dname;
| 17000 |    5 |    1 |    0 |  0.000647
2 |   IF NOT FOUND THEN
| 17000 |    6 |    1 |    0 |  2.6e-05
2 |     RAISE INFO 'Invalid department number %', p_deptno;
| 17000 |    7 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |     RETURN '';
| 17000 |    8 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 | END IF;

```

```

| 17000 |    9 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |END;
| 17000 |   10 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |
| 17000 |   11 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |DECLARE
| 17004 |    1 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |  sal_diff  NUMERIC(7,2);
| 17004 |    2 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |BEGIN
| 17004 |    3 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |  IF TG_OP = 'INSERT' THEN
| 17004 |    4 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |    RAISE INFO 'Inserting employee %', NEW.empno;
| 17004 |    5 |    1 |    0 |  8.4e-05
2 |    RAISE INFO '..New salary: %', NEW.sal;
| 17004 |    6 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |    RETURN NEW;
| 17004 |    7 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |  END IF;
| 17004 |    8 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |  IF TG_OP = 'UPDATE' THEN
| 17004 |    9 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |    sal_diff := NEW.sal - OLD.sal;
| 17004 |   10 |    1 |    0 |  0.000355
2 |    RAISE INFO 'Updating employee %', OLD.empno;
| 17004 |   11 |    1 |    0 |  0.000177
2 |    RAISE INFO '..Old salary: %', OLD.sal;
| 17004 |   12 |    1 |    0 |  5.5e-05
2 |    RAISE INFO '..New salary: %', NEW.sal;
| 17004 |   13 |    1 |    0 |  3.1e-05
2 |    RAISE INFO '..Raise  : %', sal_diff;
| 17004 |   14 |    1 |    0 |  2.8e-05
2 |    RETURN NEW;
| 17004 |   15 |    1 |    0 |  2.7e-05
2 |  END IF;
| 17004 |   16 |    1 |    0 |  1e-06
2 |  IF TG_OP = 'DELETE' THEN
| 17004 |   17 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |    RAISE INFO 'Deleting employee %', OLD.empno;
| 17004 |   18 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |    RAISE INFO '..Old salary: %', OLD.sal;
| 17004 |   19 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |    RETURN OLD;
| 17004 |   20 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |  END IF;
| 17004 |   21 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |END;
| 17004 |   22 |    0 |    0 |    0
2 |
| 17004 |   23 |    0 |    0 |    0

```

(68 rows)

1. Query the `plsql_profiler_data` view to review a subset of the information found in `plsql_profiler_rawdata` table:

```
acctg=# SELECT * FROM plsql_profiler_data;
runid | unit_number | line# | total_occur | total_time | min_time | max_time
| spare1 | spare2 | spare3 | spare4
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 1 | 16999 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 1 | 16999 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 1 | 16999 | 3 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 1 | 16999 | 4 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 1 | 16999 | 5 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 1 | 16999 | 6 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 1 | 16999 | 7 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 1 | 16999 | 8 | 1 | 0.001621 | 0.001621 |
0.001621 | | | |
 1 | 16999 | 9 | 1 | 0.000301 | 0.000301 |
0.000301 | | | |
 1 | 16999 | 10 | 1 | 4.6e-05 | 4.6e-05 | 4.6e-
05 |
 1 | 16999 | 11 | 1 | 0.001114 | 0.001114 |
0.001114 | | | |
 1 | 16999 | 12 | 15 | 0.000206 | 5e-06 | 7.8e-
05 |
 1 | 16999 | 13 | 15 | 8.3e-05 | 2e-06 | 4.7e-
05 |
 1 | 16999 | 14 | 14 | 0.000773 | 4.7e-05 |
0.000116 | | | |
 1 | 16999 | 15 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 1 | 16999 | 16 | 1 | 1e-05 | 1e-05 | 1e-
05 |
 1 | 16999 | 17 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 1 | 16999 | 18 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 2 | 17002 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 2 | 17002 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 2 | 17002 | 3 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 2 | 17002 | 4 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 2 | 17002 | 5 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
 2 | 17002 | 6 | 1 | 0.000143 | 0.000143 |
0.000143 | | | |
 2 | 17002 | 7 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
 0 | | | |
```

2	17002	8	0	0	0
0					
2	17002	9	1	3.2e-05	3.2e-05
05				3.2e-	
2	17002	10	0	0	0
0					
2	17002	11	0	0	0
0					
2	17002	12	0	0	0
0					
2	17002	13	1	0.000383	0.000383
	0.000383				
2	17002	14	1	6.3e-05	6.3e-05
05				6.3e-	
2	17002	15	1	3.6e-05	3.6e-05
05				3.6e-	
2	17002	16	0	0	0
0					
2	17000	1	0	0	0
0					
2	17000	2	0	0	0
0					
2	17000	3	0	0	0
0					
2	17000	4	0	0	0
0					
2	17000	5	1	0.000647	0.000647
	0.000647				
2	17000	6	1	2.6e-05	2.6e-05
05				2.6e-	
2	17000	7	0	0	0
0					
2	17000	8	0	0	0
0					
2	17000	9	0	0	0
0					
2	17000	10	0	0	0
0					
2	17000	11	0	0	0
0					
2	17004	1	0	0	0
0					
2	17004	2	0	0	0
0					
2	17004	3	0	0	0
0					
2	17004	4	0	0	0
0					
2	17004	5	1	8.4e-05	8.4e-05
05				8.4e-	
2	17004	6	0	0	0
0					
2	17004	7	0	0	0
0					
2	17004	8	0	0	0

0							
2	17004	9	0	0	0		
0							
2	17004	10	1	0.000355	0.000355		
0.000355							
2	17004	11	1	0.000177	0.000177		
0.000177							
2	17004	12	1	5.5e-05	5.5e-05	5.5e-	
05							
2	17004	13	1	3.1e-05	3.1e-05	3.1e-	
05							
2	17004	14	1	2.8e-05	2.8e-05	2.8e-	
05							
2	17004	15	1	2.7e-05	2.7e-05	2.7e-	
05							
2	17004	16	1	1e-06	1e-06	1e-	
06							
2	17004	17	0	0	0		
0							
2	17004	18	0	0	0		
0							
2	17004	19	0	0	0		
0							
2	17004	20	0	0	0		
0							
2	17004	21	0	0	0		
0							
2	17004	22	0	0	0		
0							
2	17004	23	0	0	0		
0							

(68 rows)

## DBMS\_PROFILER - Reference

The Advanced Server installer creates the following tables and views that you can query to review PL/SQL performance profile information:

Table Name	Description
PLSQL_PROFILER_RUNS	Table containing information about all profiler runs, organized by <code>runid</code> .
PLSQL_PROFILER_UNITS	Table containing information about all profiler runs, organized by unit.
PLSQL_PROFILER_DATA	View containing performance statistics.
PLSQL_PROFILER_RAWDATA	Table containing the performance statistics <b>and</b> the extended performance statistics for DRITA counters and timers.

### PLSQL\_PROFILER\_RUNS

The `PLSQL_PROFILER_RUNS` table contains the following columns:

Column	Data Type	Description
<code>runid</code>	<code>INTEGER (NOT NULL)</code>	Unique identifier ( <code>plsql_profiler_runnumber</code> )

Column	Data Type	Description
related_run	INTEGER	The <code>runid</code> of a related run.
run_owner	TEXT	The role that recorded the profiling session.
run_date	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	The profiling session start time.
run_comment	TEXT	User comments relevant to this run
run_total_time	BIGINT	Run time (in microseconds)
run_system_info	TEXT	Currently Unused
run_comment1	TEXT	Additional user comments
spare1	TEXT	Currently Unused

## PLSQL\_PROFILER\_UNITS

The `PLSQL_PROFILER_UNITS` table contains the following columns:

Column	Data Type	Description
runid	INTEGER	Unique identifier ( <code>plsql_profiler_runnumber</code> )
unit_number	OID	Corresponds to the OID of the row in the <code>pg_proc</code> table that identifies the unit.
unit_type	TEXT	PL/SQL function, procedure, trigger or anonymous block
unit_owner	TEXT	The identity of the role that owns the unit.
unit_name	TEXT	The complete signature of the unit.
unit_timestamp	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	Creation date of the unit (currently NULL).
total_time	BIGINT	Time spent within the unit (in milliseconds)
spare1	BIGINT	Currently Unused
spare2	BIGINT	Currently Unused

## PLSQL\_PROFILER\_DATA

The `PLSQL_PROFILER_DATA` view contains the following columns:

Column	Data Type	Description
runid	INTEGER	Unique identifier ( <code>plsql_profiler_runnumber</code> )
unit_number	OID	Object ID of the unit that contains the current line.
line#	INTEGER	Current line number of the profiled workload.
total_occur	BIGINT	The number of times that the line was executed.
total_time	DOUBLE PRECISION	The amount of time spent executing the line (in seconds)
min_time	DOUBLE PRECISION	The minimum execution time for the line.
max_time	DOUBLE PRECISION	The maximum execution time for the line.
spare1	NUMBER	Currently Unused
spare2	NUMBER	Currently Unused
spare3	NUMBER	Currently Unused
spare4	NUMBER	Currently Unused

## PLSQL\_PROFILER\_RAWDATA

The `PLSQL_PROFILER_RAWDATA` table contains the statistical and wait events information that is found in the

`PLSQL_PROFILER_DATA` view, as well as the performance statistics returned by the DRITA counters and timers.

Column	Data Type	Description
runid	INTEGER	The run identifier (plsql_profiler_runnumber).
sourcecode	TEXT	The individual line of profiled code.
func_oid	OID	Object ID of the unit that contains the current line.
line_number	INTEGER	Current line number of the profiled workload.
exec_count	BIGINT	The number of times that the line was executed.
tuples_returned	BIGINT	Currently Unused
time_total	DOUBLE PRECISION	The amount of time spent executing the line (in seconds)
time_shortest	DOUBLE PRECISION	The minimum execution time for the line.
time_longest	DOUBLE PRECISION	The maximum execution time for the line.
num_scans	BIGINT	Currently Unused
tuples_fetched	BIGINT	Currently Unused
tuples_inserted	BIGINT	Currently Unused
tuples_updated	BIGINT	Currently Unused
tuples_deleted	BIGINT	Currently Unused
blocks_fetched	BIGINT	Currently Unused
blocks_hit	BIGINT	Currently Unused
wal_write	BIGINT	A server has waited for a write to the write-ahead log buffer (expect this value to be high).
wal_flush	BIGINT	A server has waited for the write-ahead log to flush to disk.
wal_file_sync	BIGINT	A server has waited for the write-ahead log to sync to disk (related to the wal_sync_method parameter which, by default, is 'fsync' - better performance can be gained by changing this parameter to open_sync).
db_file_read	BIGINT	A server has waited for the completion of a read (from disk).
db_file_write	BIGINT	A server has waited for the completion of a write (to disk).
db_file_sync	BIGINT	A server has waited for the operating system to flush all changes to disk.
db_file_extend	BIGINT	A server has waited for the operating system while adding a new page to the end of a file.
sql_parse	BIGINT	Currently Unused.
query_plan	BIGINT	A server has generated a query plan.
other_lwlock_acquire	BIGINT	A server has waited for other light-weight lock to protect data.
shared_plan_cache_collision	BIGINT	A server has waited for the completion of the shared_plan_cache_collision event.
shared_plan_cache_insert	BIGINT	A server has waited for the completion of the shared_plan_cache_insert event.
shared_plan_cache_hit	BIGINT	A server has waited for the completion of the shared_plan_cache_hit event.
shared_plan_cache_miss	BIGINT	A server has waited for the completion of the shared_plan_cache_miss event.
shared_plan_cache_lock	BIGINT	A server has waited for the completion of the shared_plan_cache_lock event.

Column	Data Type	Description
shared_plan_cache_busy	BIGINT	A server has waited for the completion of the <code>shared_plan_cache_busy</code> event.
shmemindexlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to find or allocate space in the shared memory.
oidgenlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to allocate or assign an OID.
xidgenlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to allocate or assign a transaction ID.
procarraylock	BIGINT	A server has waited to get a snapshot or clearing a transaction ID at transaction end.
sinvalreadlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to retrieve or remove messages from shared invalidation queue.
sinvalwritelock	BIGINT	A server has waited to add a message to the shared invalidation queue.
walbufmappinglock	BIGINT	A server has waited to replace a page in WAL buffers.
walwritelock	BIGINT	A server has waited for WAL buffers to be written to disk.
controlfilelock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update the control file or creation of a new WAL file.
checkpointlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to perform a checkpoint.
clogcontrollock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update the transaction status.
subtranscontrollock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update the sub-transaction information.
multixactgenlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update the shared multixact state.
multixactoffsetcontrollock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update multixact offset mappings.
multixactmembercontrollock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update multixact member mappings.
relcacheinitlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or write the relation cache initialization file.
checkpointercommlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to manage the fsync requests.
twophasestatelock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update the state of prepared transactions.
tablespacecreatelock	BIGINT	A server has waited to create or drop the tablespace.
btreevacuumlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update the vacuum related information for a B-tree index.
addinhmeminitlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to manage space allocation in shared memory.
autovacuumlock	BIGINT	The autovacuum launcher waiting to read or update the current state of autovacuum workers.
autovacuumschedulelock	BIGINT	A server has waited to ensure that the table selected for a vacuum still needs vacuuming.
syncscanlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to get the start location of a scan on a table for synchronized scans.
relationmappinglock	BIGINT	A server has waited to update the relation map file used to store catalog to file node mapping.
asyncctllock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update shared notification state.
asyncqueuelock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update the notification messages.
serializableexacthashlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to retrieve or store information about serializable transactions.

Column	Data Type	Description
serializablefinishedlistlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to access the list of finished serializable transactions.
serializablepredicatelocklistlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to perform an operation on a list of locks held by serializable transactions.
oldserxidlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or record the conflicting serializable transactions.
syncrepllock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update information about synchronous replicas.
backgroundworkerlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update the background worker state.
dynamicsharedmemorycontrollock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update the dynamic shared memory state.
autofilelock	BIGINT	A server has waited to update the <code>postgresql.auto.conf</code> file.
replicationslotallocationlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to allocate or free a replication slot.
replicationslotcontrollock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update replication slot state.
commitscontrollock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update transaction commit timestamps.
commitslock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update the last value set for the transaction timestamp.
replicationoriginlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to set up, drop, or use replication origin.
multixacttruncationlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or truncate multixact information.
oldsnapshottimemaplock	BIGINT	A server has waited to read or update old snapshot control information.
backendrandomlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to generate a random number.
logicalrepworkerlock	BIGINT	A server has waited for the action on logical replication worker to finish.
clogtruncationlock	BIGINT	A server has waited to truncate the write-ahead log or waiting for write-ahead log truncation to finish.
bulkloadlock	BIGINT	A server has waited for the <code>bulkloadlock</code> to bulk upload the data.
edbresourcemanagerlock	BIGINT	The <code>edbresourcemanagerlock</code> provides detail aboutedb resource manager lock module.
wal_write_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for a <code>wal_write</code> wait event to write to the write-ahead log buffer (expect this value to be high).
wal_flush_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for a <code>wal_flush</code> wait event to write-ahead log to flush to disk.
wal_file_sync_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for a <code>wal_file_sync</code> wait event to write-ahead log to sync to disk (related to the <code>wal_sync_method</code> parameter which, by default, is 'fsync' - better performance can be gained by changing this parameter to <code>open_sync</code> ).
db_file_read_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>db_file_read</code> wait event for completion of a read (from disk).
db_file_write_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>db_file_write</code> wait event for completion of a write (to disk).

Column	Data Type	Description
db_file_sync_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the db_file_sync wait event to sync all changes to disk.
db_file_extend_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the db_file_extend wait event while adding a new page to the end of a file.
sql_parse_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the sql_parse wait event to parse a SQL statement.
query_plan_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the query_plan wait event to compute the execution plan for a SQL statement.
other_lwlock_acquire_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the other_lwlock_acquire wait event to protect data.
shared_plan_cache_collision_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the shared_plan_cache_collision wait event.
shared_plan_cache_insert_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the shared_plan_cache_insert wait event.
shared_plan_cache_hit_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the shared_plan_cache_hit wait event.
shared_plan_cache_miss_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the shared_plan_cache_miss wait event.
shared_plan_cache_lock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the shared_plan_cache_lock wait event.
shared_plan_cache_busy_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the shared_plan_cache_busy wait event.
shmemindexlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the shmemindexlock wait event to find or allocate space in the shared memory.
oidgenlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the oidgenlock wait event to allocate or assign an OID.
xidgenlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the xidgenlock wait event to allocate or assign a transaction ID.
procarraylock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for a procarraylock wait event to clear a transaction ID at transaction end.
sinvalreadlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for a sinvalreadlock wait event to retrieve or remove messages from shared invalidation queue.
sinvalwritelock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for a sinvalwritelock wait event to add a message to the shared invalidation queue.
walbufmappinglock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for a walbufmappinglock wait event to replace a page in WAL buffers.
walwritelock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for a walwritelock wait event to write the WAL buffers to disk.
controlfilelock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for a controlfilelock wait event to read or update the control file or to create a new WAL file.
checkpointlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for a checkpointlock wait event to perform a checkpoint.

Column	Data Type	Description
clogcontrollock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for a <code>clogcontrollock</code> wait event to read or update the transaction status.
subtranscontrollock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>subtranscontrollock</code> wait event to read or update the sub-transaction information.
multixactgenlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>multixactgenlock</code> wait event to read or update the shared multixact state.
multixactoffsetcontrollock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>multixactoffsetcontrollock</code> wait event to read or update multixact offset mappings.
multixactmembercontrollock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>multixactmembercontrollock</code> wait event to read or update multixact member mappings.
relcacheinitlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>relcacheinitlock</code> wait event to read or write the relation cache initialization file.
checkpointercommlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>checkpointercommlock</code> wait event to manage the fsync requests.
twophasestatelock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>twophasestatelock</code> wait event to read or update the state of prepared transactions.
tablespacecreatelock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>tablespacecreatelock</code> wait event to create or drop the tablespace.
btreevacuumlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>btreevacuumlock</code> wait event to read or update the vacuum related information for a B-tree index.
addinshmeminitlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>addinshmeminitlock</code> wait event to manage space allocation in shared memory.
autovacuumlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>autovacuumlock</code> wait event to read or update the current state of autovacuum workers.
autovacuumschedulelock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>autovacuumschedulelock</code> wait event to ensure that the table selected for a vacuum still needs vacuuming.
syncscanlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>syncscanlock</code> wait event to get the start location of a scan on a table for synchronized scans.
relationmappinglock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>relationmappinglock</code> wait event to update the relation map file used to store catalog to file node mapping.
asyncctllock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>asyncctllock</code> wait event to read or update shared notification state.
asyncqueuelock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>asyncqueuelock</code> wait event to read or update the notification messages.
serializablexacthashlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>serializablexacthashlock</code> wait event to retrieve or store information about serializable transactions.

Column	Data Type	Description
serializablefinishedlistlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>serializablefinishedlistlock</code> wait event to access the list of finished serializable transactions.
serializablepredicateunlocklistlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>serializablepredicateunlocklistlock</code> wait event to perform an operation on a list of locks held by serializable transactions.
oldserxidlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>oldserxidlock</code> wait event to read or record the conflicting serializable transactions.
syncreplock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>syncreplock</code> wait event to read or update information about synchronous replicas.
backgroundworkerlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>backgroundworkerlock</code> wait event to read or update the background worker state.
dynamicsharedmemorycontrollock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>dynamicsharedmemorycontrollock</code> wait event to read or update the dynamic shared memory state.
autofilelock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>autofilelock</code> wait event to update the <code>postgresql.auto.conf</code> file.
replicationslotallocationlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>replicationslotallocationlock</code> wait event to allocate or free a replication slot.
replicationslotcontrollock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>replicationslotcontrollock</code> wait event to read or update replication slot state.
commitscontrollock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>commitscontrollock</code> wait event to read or update transaction commit timestamps.
commitslock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>commitslock</code> wait event to read or update the last value set for the transaction timestamp.
replicationoriginlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>replicationoriginlock</code> wait event to set up, drop, or use replication origin.
multixacttruncationlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>multixacttruncationlock</code> wait event to read or truncate multixact information.
oldsnapshottimemaplock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>oldsnapshottimemaplock</code> wait event to read or update old snapshot control information.
backendrandomlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>backendrandomlock</code> wait event to generate a random number.
logicalrepworkerlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>logicalrepworkerlock</code> wait event for an action on logical replication worker to finish.
clogtruncationlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>clogtruncationlock</code> wait event to truncate the write-ahead log or waiting for write-ahead log truncation to finish.
bulkloadlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>bulkloadlock</code> wait event to bulk upload the data.

Column	Data Type	Description
edbresourcemanagerlock_time	BIGINT	The amount of time that the server has waited for the <code>edbresourcemanagerlock</code> wait event.
totalwaits	BIGINT	The total number of event waits.
totalwaittime	BIGINT	The total time spent waiting for an event.

## 4.2.12 DBMS\_RANDOM

The `DBMS_RANDOM` package provides a number of methods to generate random values. The procedures and functions available in the `DBMS_RANDOM` package are listed in the following table.

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>INITIALIZE(val)</code>	n/a	Initializes the <code>DBMS_RANDOM</code> package with the specified seed <code>value</code> . Deprecated, but supported for backward compatibility.
<code>NORMAL()</code>	NUMBER	Returns a random NUMBER.
<code>RANDOM</code>	INTEGER	Returns a random INTEGER with a value greater than or equal to $-2^{31}$ and less than $2^{31}$ . Deprecated, but supported for backward compatibility.
<code>SEED(val)</code>	n/a	Resets the seed with the specified <code>value</code> .
<code>SEED(val)</code>	n/a	Resets the seed with the specified <code>value</code> .
<code>STRING(opt, len)</code>	VARCHAR2	Returns a random string.
<code>TERMINATE</code>	n/a	<code>TERMINATE</code> has no effect. Deprecated, but supported for backward compatibility.
<code>VALUE</code>	NUMBER	Returns a random number with a value greater than or equal to <code>0</code> and less than <code>1</code> , with 38 digit precision.
<code>VALUE(low, high)</code>	NUMBER	Returns a random number with a value greater than or equal to <code>low</code> and less than <code>high</code> .

### INITIALIZE

The `INITIALIZE` procedure initializes the `DBMS_RANDOM` package with a seed value. The signature is:

```
INITIALIZE(<val> IN INTEGER)
```

This procedure should be considered deprecated; it is included for backward compatibility only.

#### Parameters

`val`

`val` is the seed value used by the `DBMS_RANDOM` package algorithm.

#### Example

The following code snippet demonstrates a call to the `INITIALIZE` procedure that initializes the `DBMS_RANDOM` package with the seed value, `6475`.

```
DBMS_RANDOM.INITIALIZE(6475);
```

## NORMAL

The `NORMAL` function returns a random number of type `NUMBER`. The signature is:

```
<result> NUMBER NORMAL()
```

### Parameters

`result`

`result` is a random value of type `NUMBER`.

### Example

The following code snippet demonstrates a call to the `NORMAL` function:

```
x:= DBMS_RANDOM.NORMAL();
```

## RANDOM

The `RANDOM` function returns a random `INTEGER` value that is greater than or equal to  $-2^{31}$  and less than  $2^{31}$ . The signature is:

```
<result> INTEGER RANDOM()
```

This function should be considered deprecated; it is included for backward compatibility only.

### Parameters

`result`

`result` is a random value of type `INTEGER`.

### Example

The following code snippet demonstrates a call to the `RANDOM` function. The call returns a random number:

```
x := DBMS_RANDOM.RANDOM();
```

## SEED

The first form of the `SEED` procedure resets the seed value for the `DBMS_RANDOM` package with an `INTEGER` value. The `SEED` procedure is available in two forms; the signature of the first form is:

```
SEED(<val> IN INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

`val`

`val` is the seed value used by the `DBMS_RANDOM` package algorithm.

### Example

The following code snippet demonstrates a call to the `SEED` procedure; the call sets the seed value at `8495`.

```
DBMS_RANDOM.SEED(8495);
```

## SEED

The second form of the `SEED` procedure resets the seed value for the `DBMS_RANDOM` package with a string value. The `SEED` procedure is available in two forms; the signature of the second form is:

```
SEED(<val> IN VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

`val`

| `val` is the seed value used by the `DBMS_RANDOM` package algorithm.

### Example

The following code snippet demonstrates a call to the `SEED` procedure; the call sets the seed value to `abc123`.

```
DBMS_RANDOM.SEED('abc123');
```

## STRING

The `STRING` function returns a random `VARCHAR2` string in a user-specified format. The signature of the `STRING` function is:

```
<result> VARCHAR2 STRING(<opt> IN CHAR, <len> IN NUMBER)
```

### Parameters

`opt`

| Formatting option for the returned string. `option` may be:

Option	Specifies Formatting Option
<code>u</code> or <code>U</code>	Uppercase alpha string
<code>l</code> or <code>L</code>	Lowercase alpha string
<code>a</code> or <code>A</code>	Mixed case string
<code>x</code> or <code>X</code>	Uppercase alpha-numeric string
<code>p</code> or <code>P</code>	Any printable characters

`len`

| The length of the returned string.

`result`

| `result` is a random value of type `VARCHAR2`.

### Example

The following code snippet demonstrates a call to the `STRING` function; the call returns a random alpha-numeric character string that is 10 characters long.

```
x := DBMS_RANDOM.STRING('X', 10);
```

## TERMINATE

The **TERMINATE** procedure has no effect. The signature is:

```
TERMINATE
```

The **TERMINATE** procedure should be considered deprecated; the procedure is supported for compatibility only.

## VALUE

The **VALUE** function returns a random **NUMBER** that is greater than or equal to 0, and less than 1, with 38 digit precision. The **VALUE** function has two forms; the signature of the first form is:

```
<result> NUMBER VALUE()
```

### Parameters

**result**

**result** is a random value of type **NUMBER**.

### Example

The following code snippet demonstrates a call to the **VALUE** function. The call returns a random **NUMBER**:

```
x := DBMS_RANDOM.VALUE();
```

## VALUE

The **VALUE** function returns a random **NUMBER** with a value that is between user-specified boundaries. The **VALUE** function has two forms; the signature of the second form is:

```
<result> NUMBER VALUE(<low> IN NUMBER, <high> IN NUMBER)
```

### Parameters

**low**

**low** specifies the lower boundary for the random value. The random value may be equal to **low**.

**high**

**high** specifies the upper boundary for the random value; the random value will be less than **high**.

**result**

**result** is a random value of type **NUMBER**.

### Example

The following code snippet demonstrates a call to the **VALUE** function. The call returns a random **NUMBER** with a value that is greater than or equal to 1 and less than 100:

```
x := DBMS_RANDOM.VALUE(1, 100);
```

## 4.2.13 DBMS\_REDACT

The **DBMS REDACT** package enables the redacting or masking of data returned by a query. The **DBMS\_REDACT** package provides a procedure to create policies, alter policies, enable policies, disable policies, and drop policies. The procedures available in the **DBMS\_REDACT** package are listed in the following table.

Function/Procedure	Function or Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>ADD_POLICY(object schema, object name, policy name, policy description, column name, column description, function_type, function parameters, expression, enable, reqexp pattern, reqexp replace string, reqexp position, reqexp occurrence, regexp_match_parameter, custom_function_expression)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Adds a data redaction policy.
<code>ALTER_POLICY(object schema, object name, policy name, action, column name, function type, function parameters, expression, reqexp pattern, reqexp replace string, reqexp position, reqexp occurrence, reqexp match parameter, policy_description, column_description, custom_function_expression)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Alters the existing data redaction policy.
<code>DISABLE_POLICY(object_schema, object_name, policy_name)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Disables the existing data redaction policy.
<code>ENABLE_POLICY(object_schema, object_name, policy_name)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Enables a previously disabled data redaction policy.
<code>DROP_POLICY(object_schema, object_name, policy_name)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Drops a data redaction policy.
<code>UPDATE_FULL_REDACTION_VALUES(number_val, binfloat_val, bindouble_val, char_val, varchar_val, nchar_val, nvarchar_val, datecol_val, ts_val, tswtz_val, blob_val, clob_val, nclob_val)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Updates the full redaction default values for the specified datatype.

The data redaction feature uses the **DBMS\_REDACT** package to define policies or conditions to redact data in a column based on the table column type and redaction type.

Note that you must be the owner of the table to create or change the data redaction policies. The users are exempted from all the column redaction policies, which the table owner or super-user is by default.

## Using DBMS\_REDACT Constants and Function Parameters

The `DBMS_REDACT` package uses the constants and redacts the column data by using any one of the data redaction types. The redaction type can be decided based on the `function_type` parameter of `dbms_redact.add_policy` and `dbms_redact.alter_policy` procedure. The below table highlights the values for `function_type` parameters of `dbms_redact.add_policy` and `dbms_redact.alter_policy`.

Constant	Type	Value	Description
NONE	INTEGER	0	No redaction, zero effect on the result of a query against table.
FULL	INTEGER	1	Full redaction, redacts full values of the column data.
PARTIAL	INTEGER	2	Partial redaction, redacts a portion of the column data.
RANDOM	INTEGER	4	Random redaction, each query results in a different random value depending on the datatype of the column.
REGEXP	INTEGER	5	Regular Expression based redaction, searches for the pattern of data to redact.
CUSTOM	INTEGER	99	Custom redaction type.

The following table shows the values for the `action` parameter of `dbms_redact.alter_policy`.

Constant	Type	Value	Description
ADD_COLUMN	INTEGER	1	Adds a column to the redaction policy.
DROP_COLUMN	INTEGER	2	Drops a column from the redaction policy.
MODIFY_EXPRESSION	INTEGER	3	Modifies the expression of a redaction policy. The redaction is applied when the expression evaluates to the <code>BOOLEAN</code> value to <code>TRUE</code> .
MODIFY_COLUMN	INTEGER	4	Modifies a column in the redaction policy to change the redaction function type or function parameter.
SET_POLICY_DESCRIPTION	INTEGER	5	Sets the redaction policy description.
SET_COLUMN_DESCRIPTION	INTEGER	6	Sets a description for the redaction performed on the column.

The partial data redaction enables you to redact only a portion of the column data. To use partial redaction, you must set the `dbms_redact.add_policy` procedure `function_type` parameter to `dbms_redact.partial` and use the `function_parameters` parameter to specify the partial redaction behavior.

The data redaction feature provides a predefined format to configure policies that use the following datatype:

- Character
- Number
- Datetime

The following table highlights the format descriptor for partial redaction with respect to datatype. The example described below shows how to perform a redaction for a string datatype (in this scenario, a Social Security Number (SSN)), a `Number` datatype, and a `DATE` datatype.

Datatype	Format Descriptor	Description	Examples

Character	<b>REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT</b>	Specifies the input format. Enter <b>V</b> for each character from the input string to be possibly redacted. Enter <b>F</b> for each character from the input string that can be considered as a separator such as blank spaces or hyphens.	Consider ' <b>VVVFVVFVVV,VVV-VVV,X,1,5</b> ' for masking first 5 digits of SSN strings such as <b>123-45-6789</b> , adding hyphen to format it and thereby resulting in strings such as <b>XXX-6789</b> . The field value <b>VVVFVVFVVV</b> for matching SSN strings such as <b>123-45-6789</b> .
	<b>REDACT_PARTIAL_OUTPUT_FORMAT</b>	Specifies the output format. Enter <b>V</b> for each character from the input string to be possibly redacted. Replace each <b>F</b> character from the input format with a character such as a hyphen or any other separator.	The field value <b>VVV-VV-VVVV</b> can be used to redact SSN strings into <b>XXX-XX-6789</b> where <b>X</b> comes from <b>REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKCHAR</b> field.
	<b>REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKCHAR</b>	Specifies the character to be used for redaction.	The value <b>X</b> for redacting SSN strings into <b>XXX-XX-6789</b> .
	<b>REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKFROM</b>	Specifies which <b>V</b> within the input format from which to start the redaction.	The value <b>1</b> for redacting SSN strings starting at the first <b>V</b> of the input format of <b>VVVFVVFVVV</b> into strings such as <b>XXX-XX-6789</b> .
	<b>REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO</b>	Specifies which <b>V</b> within the input format at which to end the redaction.	The value <b>5</b> for redacting SSN strings up to and including the fifth <b>V</b> within the input format of <b>VVVFVVFVVV</b> into strings such as <b>XXX-XX-6789</b> .
Number	<b>REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKCHAR</b>	Specifies the character to be displayed in the range between 0 and 9.	' <b>9, 1, 5</b> ' for redacting the first five digits of the Social Security Number <b>123456789</b> into <b>999996789</b> .
	<b>REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKFROM</b>	Specifies the start digit position for redaction.	
	<b>REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO</b>	Specifies the end digit position for redaction.	
Datetime	<b>REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_MONTH</b>	' <b>m</b> ' redacts the month. To mask a specific month, specify ' <b>m#</b> ' where # indicates the month specified by its number between <b>1</b> and <b>12</b> .	<b>m3</b> displays as March.

REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_DAY	'd' redacts the day of the month. To mask with a day of the month, append 1-31 to a lowercase d.	d3 displays as 03.
REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_YEAR	'y' redacts the year. To mask with a year, append 1-9999 to a lowercase y.	y1960 displays as 60.
REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_HOUR	'h' redacts the hour. To mask with an hour, append 0-23 to a lowercase h.	h18 displays as 18.
REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_MINUTE	'm' redacts the minute. To mask with a minute, append 0-59 to a lowercase m.	m20 displays as 20.
REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_SECOND	's' redacts the second. To mask with a second, append 0-59 to a lowercase s.	s40 displays as 40.

The following table represents `function_parameters` values that can be used in partial redaction.

Function Parameter	Data Type	Value	Description
REDACT_US_SSN_F5	VARCHAR2	'VVVFVVFVVVV,VVV-VV-VVVV,X,1,5'	Redacts the first numbers of SS  <b>Example:</b> The number 123-456789 becomes XX-6789.
REDACT_US_SSN_L4	VARCHAR2	'VVVFVVFVVVV,VVV-VV-VVVV,X,6,9'	Redacts the last numbers of SS  <b>Example:</b> The number 123-456789 becomes 45-XXXX.
REDACT_US_SSN_ENTIRE	VARCHAR2	'VVVFVVFVVVV,VVV-VV-VVVV,X,1,9'	Redacts the entire SSN.  <b>Example:</b> The number 123-456789 becomes XX-XXXX.

REDACT_NUM_US_SSN_F5	VARCHAR2 '9,1,5'	Redacts the first 5 numbers of SS when the column is a numeric datatype.
REDACT_NUM_US_SSN_L4	VARCHAR2 '9,6,9'	Redacts the last 4 numbers of SS when the column is a numeric datatype.
REDACT_NUM_US_SSN_ENTIRE	VARCHAR2 '9,1,9'	Redacts the entire SSN when the column is a numeric datatype.
REDACT_ZIP_CODE	VARCHAR2 'VVVVV,VVVVV,X,1,5'	Redacts a 5 digit zip code.
REDACT_NUM_ZIP_CODE	VARCHAR2 '9,1,5'	Redacts a 5 digit zip code when the column is a numeric datatype.
REDACT_CCN16_F12	VARCHAR2 'VVVVFVVVVVVVVVVVV,VVVV-VVVV-VVVV,*,1,12'	Redacts a 16 character credit card number and displays only 4 digits.

REDACT_DATE_MILLENNIUM	VARCHAR2	'm1d1y2000'	Redacts a date is in the DD-M format.
REDACT_DATE_EPOCH	VARCHAR2	'm1d1y1970'	Redacts all dat 01-JAN-70 .
REDACT_AMEX_CCN_FORMATTED	VARCHAR2	'VVVVFVVVVVVVVVV,VVVV- VVVVV-VVVVV,*1,10'	Redacts the Amercian Expr credit card nun and replaces th digit with * exc the last 5 digits
REDACT_AMEX_CCN_NUMBER	VARCHAR2	'0,1,10'	Redacts the Amercian Expr credit card nun and replaces th digit with 0 exc the last 5 digits
REDACT_SIN_FORMATTED	VARCHAR2	'VVVFVVVFVVV,VVV-VVV-VVV,*1,6'	Redacts the So Insurance Num by replacing th 6 digits by * <b>Example:</b> 123 789 becomes ***-789 .
REDACT_SIN_NUMBER	VARCHAR2	'9,1,6'	Redacts the So Insurance Num by replacing th 6 digits by 9. <b>Example:</b> 123456789 becomes 999999789 .

REDACT_SIN_UNFORMATTED	VARCHAR2	'VVVVVVVV,VVVVVVVV,*,1,6'	Redacts the Social Insurance Number by replacing the last 6 digits by *.
REDACT_CCN_FORMATTED	VARCHAR2	'VVVFVVVFVVVFVVVV,VVV-VVV-VVVV,*,1,12'	Redacts a credit card number by * and displays only 4 digits.
REDACT_CCN_NUMBER	VARCHAR2	'9,1,12'	Redacts a credit card number by redacting the last 4 digits.
REDACT_NA_PHONE_FORMATTED	VARCHAR2	'VVVFVVVFVVVV,VVV-VVV-VVVV,X,4,10'	Redacts the North American phone number by redacting the area code.
REDACT_NA_PHONE_NUMBER	VARCHAR2	'0,4,10'	Redacts the North American phone number by redacting the area code.

REDACT_NA_PHONE_UNFORMATTED	VARCHAR2	'VVVVVVVVVV,VVVVVVVVVV,X,4,10'	Redacts the North American phone number by <b>X</b> ing out the area code.
REDACT_UK_NIN_FORMATTED	VARCHAR2	'VVFVVFVVFVVFV,VV VV VV VV VV V,X,3,8'	Redacts the UK National Insurance Number by <b>X</b> ing out leaving the alphabetic characters.
REDACT_UK_NIN_UNFORMATTED	VARCHAR2	'VVVVVVVVVV,VVVVVVVVVV,X,3,8'	Redacts the UK National Insurance Number by <b>X</b> ing out leaving the alphabetic characters.

A regular expression-based redaction searches for patterns of data to redact. The `regexp_pattern` search the values in order for the `regexp_replace_string` to change the value. The following table illustrates the `regexp_pattern` values that you can use during `REGEXP` based redaction.

Function Parameter and Description	Data Type	Value
<b>RE_PATTERN_CC_L6_T4:</b> Searches for the middle digits of a credit card number that includes 6 leading digits and 4 trailing digits. The <code>regexp_replace_string</code> setting to use with the format is <code>RE_REDRACT_CC_MIDDLE_DIGITS</code> that replaces the identified pattern with the characters specified by the <code>RE_REDRACT_CC_MIDDLE_DIGITS</code> parameter.	VARCHAR2	'(\d\d\d\d\d\d)(\d\d\d*)(\d\d\d\d)'

Function Parameter and Description	Data Type	Value
<b>RE_PATTERN_ANY_DIGIT:</b> Searches for any digit and replaces the identified pattern with the characters specified by the following values of the regexp_replace_string parameter. regexp_replace_string=> <b>RE_REDACT_WITH_SINGLE_X</b> (replaces any matched digit with the X character). regexp_replace_string=> <b>RE_REDACT_WITH_SINGLE_1</b> (replaces any matched digit with the 1 character).	VARCHAR2	'\d'
<b>RE_PATTERN_US_PHONE:</b> Searches for the U.S phone number and replaces the identified pattern with the characters specified by the regexp_replace_string parameter. regexp_replace_string=> <b>RE_REDACT_US_PHONE_L7</b> (searches the phone number and then replaces the last 7 digits).	VARCHAR2	'(\(\d\d\d\) \d\d\d)-(\d\d\d)-(\d\d\d\d)'
<b>RE_PATTERN_EMAIL_ADDRESS:</b> Searches for the email address and replaces the identified pattern with the characters specified by the following values of the regexp_replace_string parameter. regexp_replace_string=> <b>RE_REDACT_EMAIL_NAME</b> (finds the email address and redacts the email username). regexp_replace_string=> <b>RE_REDACT_EMAIL_DOMAIN</b> (finds the email address and redacts the email domain). regexp_replace_string=> <b>RE_REDACT_EMAIL_ENTIRE</b> (finds the email address and redacts the entire email address).	VARCHAR2	'([A-Za-z0-9._%+-]+)@([A-Za-z0-9.-]+.[A-Za-z]{2,4})'
<b>RE_PATTERN_IP_ADDRESS:</b> Searches for an IP address and replaces the identified pattern with the characters specified by the regexp_replace_string parameter. The regexp_replace_string parameter to be used is <b>RE_REDACT_IP_L3</b> that replaces the last section of an IP address with 999 and indicates it is redacted.	VARCHAR2	'(\d{1,3}\.\d{1,3}\.\d{1,3})\.\d{1,3}'

Function Parameter and Description	Data Type	Value
<b>RE_PATTERN_AMEX_CCN:</b> Searches for the American Express credit card number. The <code>regexp_replace_string</code> parameter to be used is <code>RE_REDACT_AMEX_CCN</code> that redacts all of the digits except the last 5.	VARCHAR2	'.*(\d\d\d\d\d)\$'
<b>RE_PATTERN_CCN:</b> Searches for the credit card number other than American Express credit cards. The <code>regexp_replace_string</code> parameter to be used is <code>RE_REDACT_CCN</code> that redacts all of the digits except the last 4.	VARCHAR2	'.*(\d\d\d\d)\$'
<b>RE_PATTERN_US_SSN:</b> Searches the SSN number and replaces the identified pattern with the characters specified by the <code>regexp_replace_string</code> parameter. ' <code>\1-XXX-XXXX</code> ' or ' <code>XXX-XXX-\13</code> ' will return <code>123-XXX-XXXX</code> or <code>XXX-XXX-6789</code> for the value ' <code>123-45-6789</code> ' respectively.	VARCHAR2	'(\d\d\d)-(\d\d)-(\d\d\d\d)'

The below table illustrates the `regexp_replace_string` values that you can use during `REGEXP` based redaction.

Function Parameter	Data Type	Value	Description
<code>RE_REDACT_CC_MIDDLE_DIGITS</code>	VARCHAR2	'\1XXXXXX\3'	Redacts the middle digits of a credit card number according to the <code>regexp_pattern</code> parameter with the <code>RE_PATTERN_CC_L6_T4</code> format and replaces each redacted character with an <code>X</code> .
<code>RE_REDACT_WITH_SINGLE_X</code>	VARCHAR2	'X'	Replaces the data with a single <code>X</code> character for each matching pattern as specified by setting the <code>regexp_pattern</code> parameter with the <code>RE_PATTERN_ANY_DIGIT</code> format.

RE_REDACT_WITH_SINGLE_1	VARCHAR2	'1'	Replaces the data with a single <b>1</b> digit for each of the data digits as specified by setting the <code>regexp_pattern</code> parameter with the <code>RE_PATTERN_ANY_DIGIT</code> format.
RE_REDACT_US_PHONE_L7	VARCHAR2	'\1-XXX-XXXX'	<b>Example:</b> The credit card number <b>1234 5678 9000 2490</b> becomes <b>1111 1111 1111 1111</b> .
RE_REDACT_EMAIL_NAME	VARCHAR2	'xxxx@\\2'	Redacts the last 7 digits of U.S phone number according to the <code>regexp_pattern</code> parameter with the <code>RE_PATTERN_US_PHONE</code> format and replaces each redacted character with an <b>X</b> .
RE_REDACT_EMAIL_DOMAIN	VARCHAR2	'\\1@xxxxx.com'	<b>Example:</b> The phone number <b>123-444-5900</b> becomes <b>123-XXX-XXXX</b> .
RE_REDACT_EMAIL_ENTIRE	VARCHAR2	'xxxx@xxxxx.com'	Redacts the email name according to the <code>regexp_pattern</code> parameter with the <code>RE_PATTERN_EMAIL_ADDRESS</code> format and replaces the email username with the four x characters.
			<b>Example:</b> The email address <b>sjohn@example.com</b> becomes <b>xxxx@example.com</b> .
			Redacts the email domain name according to the <code>regexp_pattern</code> parameter with the <code>RE_PATTERN_EMAIL_ADDRESS</code> format and replaces the domain with the five x characters.
			<b>Example:</b> The email address <b>sjohn@example.com</b> becomes <b>sjohn@xxxxx.com</b> .
			Redacts the entire email address according to the <code>regexp_pattern</code> parameter with the <code>RE_PATTERN_EMAIL_ADDRESS</code> format and replaces the email address with the x characters.
			<b>Example:</b> The email address <b>sjohn@example.com</b> becomes <b>xxxx@xxxxx.com</b> .

RE_REDACT_IP_L3	VARCHAR2	'\1.999'	Redacts the last 3 digits of an IP address according to the <code>regexp_pattern</code> parameter with the <code>RE_PATTERN_IP_ADDRESS</code> format.
RE_REDACT_AMEX_CCN	VARCHAR2	'*****\1'	<b>Example:</b> The IP address <code>172.0.1.258</code> becomes <code>172.0.1.999</code> , which is an invalid IP address.
RE_REDACT_CCN	VARCHAR2	'*****\1'	Redacts the first 10 digits of an American Express credit card number according to the <code>regexp_pattern</code> parameter with the <code>RE_PATTERN_AMEX_CCN</code> format. <b>Example:</b> <code>123456789062816</code> becomes <code>*****62816</code> .

The following tables show the `regexp_position` value and `regexp_occurrence` values that you can use during `REGEXP` based redaction.

Function Parameter	Data Type	Value	Description
<code>RE_BEGINNING</code>	INTEGER	1	Specifies the position of a character where search must begin. By default, the value is 1 that indicates the search begins at the first character of <code>source_char</code> .

Function Parameter	Data Type	Value	Description
<code>RE_ALL</code>	INTEGER	0	Specifies the replacement occurrence of a substring. If the value is 0, then the replacement of each matching substring occurs.
<code>RE_FIRST</code>	INTEGER	1	Specifies the replacement occurrence of a substring. If the value is 1, then the replacement of the first matching substring occurs.

The following table shows the `regexp_match_parameter` values that you can use during `REGEXP` based redaction which lets you change the default matching behavior of a function.

Function Parameter	Data Type	Value	Description
<code>RE_CASE_SENSITIVE</code>	VARCHAR2	'c'	Specifies the case-sensitive matching.
<code>RE_CASE_INSENSITIVE</code>	VARCHAR2	'i'	Specifies the case-insensitive matching.
<code>RE_MULTIPLE_LINES</code>	VARCHAR2	'm'	Treats the source string as multiple lines but if you omit this parameter, then it indicates as a single line.
<code>RE_NEWLINE_WILDCARD</code>	VARCHAR2	'n'	Specifies the period (.), but if you omit this parameter, then the period does not match the newline character.
<code>RE_IGNORE_WHITESPACE</code>	VARCHAR2	'x'	Ignores the whitespace characters.

## Note

If you create a redaction policy based on a numeric type column, then make sure that the result after redaction is a number and accordingly set the replacement string to avoid runtime errors.

## Note

If you create a redaction policy based on a character type column, then make sure that a length of the result after redaction is compatible with the column type and accordingly set the replacement string to avoid runtime errors.

## ADD\_POLICY

The `add_policy` procedure creates a new data redaction policy for a table.

```
PROCEDURE add_policy (
<object_schema>          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<object_name>            IN VARCHAR2,
<policy_name>             IN VARCHAR2,
<policy_description>      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<column_name>              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<column_description>      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<function_type>           IN INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_REDACT.FULL,
<function_parameters>    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<expression>               IN VARCHAR2,
<enable>                  IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
<regexp_pattern>          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<regexp_replace_string>   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<regexp_position>          IN INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_REDACT.RE_BEGINNING,
<regexp_occurrence>        IN INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_REDACT.RE_ALL,
<regexp_match_parameter>  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<custom_function_expression> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
)
```

### Parameters

#### `object_schema`

Specifies the name of the schema in which the object resides and on which the data redaction policy will be applied. If you specify `NULL` then the given object is searched by the order specified by `search_path` setting.

#### `object_name`

Name of the table on which the data redaction policy is created.

#### `policy_name`

Name of the policy to be added. Ensure that the `policy_name` is unique for the table on which the policy is created.

#### `policy_description`

Specify the description of a redaction policy.

#### `column_name`

Name of the column to which the redaction policy applies. To redact more than one column, use the `alter_policy` procedure to add additional columns.

## column\_description

Description of the column to be redacted. The `column_description` is not supported, but if you specify the description for a column then, you will get a warning message.

## function\_type

The type of redaction function to be used. The possible values are `NONE`, `FULL`, `PARTIAL`, `RANDOM`, `REGEXP`, and `CUSTOM`.

## function\_parameters

Specifies the function parameters for the partition redaction and is applicable only for partial redaction.

## expression

Specifies the Boolean expression for the table and determines how the policy is to be applied. The redaction occurs if this policy expression is evaluated to `TRUE`.

## enable

When set to `TRUE`, the policy is enabled upon creation. The default is set as `TRUE`. When set to `FALSE`, the policy is disabled but the policy can be enabled by calling the `enable_policy` procedure.

## regexp\_pattern

Specifies the regular expression pattern to redact data. If the `regexp_pattern` does not match, then the `NULL` value is returned.

## regexp\_replace\_string

Specifies the replacement string value.

## regexp\_position

Specifies the position of a character where search must begin. By default, the function parameter is `RE_BEGINNING`.

## regexp\_occurrence

Specifies the replacement occurrence of a substring. If the constant is `RE_ALL`, then the replacement of each matching substring occurs. If the constant is `RE_FIRST`, then the replacement of the first matching substring occurs.

## regexp\_match\_parameter

Changes the default matching behavior of a function. The possible `regexp_match_parameter` constants can be `'RE_CASE_SENSITIVE'`, `'RE_CASE_INSENSITIVE'`, `'RE_MULTIPLE_LINES'`, `'RE_NEWLINE_WILDCARD'`, `'RE_IGNORE_WHITESPACE'`.

## Note

For more information on `constants`, `function_parameters`, or `regexp` (regular expressions) see, Using DBMS\_REDACT Constants and Function Parameters.

## custom\_function\_expression

The `custom_function_expression` is applicable only for the `CUSTOM` redaction type. The `custom_function_expression` is a function expression that is, schema-qualified function with a parameter such as `schema_name.function_name(argument1, ...)` that allows a user to use their redaction logic to redact the column data.

## Example

The following example illustrates how to create a policy and use full redaction for values in the `payment_details_tab` table `customer_id` column.

```
edb=# CREATE TABLE payment_details_tab (
customer_id NUMBER      NOT NULL,
card_string VARCHAR2(19) NOT NULL);
CREATE TABLE

edb=# BEGIN
INSERT INTO payment_details_tab VALUES (4000, '1234-1234-1234-1234');
INSERT INTO payment_details_tab VALUES (4001, '2345-2345-2345-2345');
END;
```

EDB-SPL Procedure successfully completed

```
edb=# CREATE USER redact_user;
CREATE ROLE
edb=# GRANT SELECT ON payment_details_tab TO redact_user;
GRANT
```

```
\c edb base_user
```

```
BEGIN
DBMS_REDACT.add_policy(
    object_schema      => 'public',
    object_name        => 'payment_details_tab',
    policy_name        => 'redactPolicy_001',
    policy_description => 'redactPolicy_001 for payment_details_tab
table',
    column_name        => 'customer_id',
    function_type      => DBMS_REDACT.full,
    expression         => '1=1',
    enable             => TRUE);
END;
```

Redacted Result:

```
edb=# \c edb redact_user
You are now connected to database "edb" as user "redact_user".
```

```
edb=> select customer_id from payment_details_tab order by 1;
customer_id
-----
0
0
(2 rows)
```

## ALTER\_POLICY

The `alter_policy` procedure alters or modifies an existing data redaction policy for a table.

```
PROCEDURE alter_policy (
```

```

<object_schema>      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<object_name>        IN VARCHAR2,
<policy_name>        IN VARCHAR2,
<action>             IN INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_REDACT.ADD_COLUMN,
<column_name>        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<function_type>      IN INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_REDACT.FULL,
<function_parameters> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<expression>          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<regexp_pattern>    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<regexp_replace_string> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<regexp_position>   IN INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_REDACT.RE_BEGINNING,
<regexp_occurrence> IN INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_REDACT.RE_ALL,
<regexp_match_parameter> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<policy_description> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<column_description> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<custom_function_expression> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
)

```

## Parameters

### object\_schema

Specifies the name of the schema in which the object resides and on which the data redaction policy will be altered. If you specify `NULL` then the given object is searched by the order specified by `search_path` setting.

### object\_name

Name of the table to which to alter a data redaction policy.

### policy\_name

Name of the policy to be altered.

### action

The action to perform. For more information about action parameters see, [DBMS\\_REDACT Constants and Function Parameters](#).

### column\_name

Name of the column to which the redaction policy applies.

### function\_type

The type of redaction function to be used. The possible values are `NONE`, `FULL`, `PARTIAL`, `RANDOM`, `REGEXP`, and `CUSTOM`.

### function\_parameters

Specifies the function parameters for the redaction function.

### expression

Specifies the Boolean expression for the table and determines how the policy is to be applied. The redaction occurs if this policy expression is evaluated to `TRUE`.

### regexp\_pattern

Enables the use of regular expressions to redact data. If the `regexp_pattern` does not match the data, then the `NULL` value is returned.

**regexp\_replace\_string**

Specifies the replacement string value.

**regexp\_position**

Specifies the position of a character where search must begin. By default, the function parameter is RE\_BEGINNING.

**regexp\_occurrence**

Specifies the replacement occurrence of a substring. If the constant is RE\_ALL, then the replacement of each matching substring occurs. If the constant is RE\_FIRST, then the replacement of the first matching substring occurs.

**regexp\_match\_parameter**

Changes the default matching behavior of a function. The possible regexp\_match\_parameter constants can be 'RE\_CASE\_SENSITIVE', 'RE\_CASE\_INSENSITIVE', 'RE\_MULTIPLE\_LINES', 'RE\_NEWLINE\_WILDCARD', 'RE\_IGNORE\_WHITESPACE'.

**Note**

For more information on constants, function parameters, or regexp (regular expressions) see, [Using DBMS\\_REDACT Constants and Function Parameters](#).

**policy\_description**

Specify the description of a redaction policy.

**column\_description**

Description of the column to be redacted. The column\_description is not supported, but if you specify the description for a column then, you will get a warning message.

**custom\_function\_expression**

The custom function expression is applicable only for the CUSTOM redaction type. The custom\_function\_expression is a function expression that is, schema-qualified function with a parameter such as schema\_name.function\_name(argument1, ...) that allows a user to use their redaction logic to redact the column data.

**Example**

The following example illustrates to alter a policy partial redaction for values in the payment\_details\_tab table card\_string (usually a credit card number) column.

```
\c edb base _user
```

```
BEGIN
```

```
DBMS_REDACT.alter_policy (
    object_schema      => 'public',
    object_name        => 'payment_details_tab',
    policy_name        => 'redactPolicy_001',
    action             => DBMS_REDACT.ADD_COLUMN,
    column_name        => 'card_string',
    function_type      => DBMS_REDACT.partial,
    function_parameters => DBMS_REDACT.REDACT_CCN16_F12);
END;
```

Redacted Result:

```
edb=# \c - redact_user
You are now connected to database "edb" as user "redact_user".
edb=> SELECT * FROM payment_details_tab;
customer_id | card_string
-----+-----
 0 | ****-****-****-1234
 0 | ****-****-****-2345
(2 rows)
```

## DISABLE\_POLICY

The `disable_policy` procedure disables an existing data redaction policy.

```
PROCEDURE disable_policy (
  <object_schema>    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  <object_name>      IN VARCHAR2,
  <policy_name>      IN VARCHAR2
)
```

### Parameters

`object_schema`

Specifies the name of the schema in which the object resides and on which the data redaction policy will be applied. If you specify `NULL` then the given object is searched by the order specified by `search_path` setting.

`object_name`

Name of the table for which to disable a data redaction policy.

`policy_name`

Name of the policy to be disabled.

### Example

The following example illustrates how to disable a policy.

```
\c edb base_user
```

```
BEGIN
DBMS_REDACT.disable_policy(
  object_schema => 'public',
  object_name => 'payment_details_tab',
  policy_name => 'redactPolicy_001');
END;
```

Redacted Result: Data is no longer redacted after disabling a policy.

## ENABLE\_POLICY

The `enable_policy` procedure enables the previously disabled data redaction policy.

```
PROCEDURE enable_policy (
```

```
<object_schema>      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<object_name>        IN VARCHAR2,
<policy_name>        IN VARCHAR2
)
```

## Parameters

### object\_schema

Specifies the name of the schema in which the object resides and on which the data redaction policy will be applied. If you specify `NULL` then the given object is searched by the order specified by `search_path` setting.

### object\_name

Name of the table to which to enable a data redaction policy.

### policy\_name

Name of the policy to be enabled.

## Example

The following example illustrates how to enable a policy.

```
\c edb base_user
```

```
BEGIN
```

```
DBMS_REDACT.enable_policy(
    object_schema => 'public',
    object_name => 'payment_details_tab',
    policy_name => 'redactPolicy_001');
```

```
END;
```

Redacted Result: Data is redacted after enabling a policy.

## DROP\_POLICY

The `drop_policy` procedure drops a data redaction policy by removing the masking policy from a table.

```
PROCEDURE drop_policy (
<object_schema>      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<object_name>        IN VARCHAR2,
<policy_name>        IN VARCHAR2
)
```

## Parameters

### object\_schema

Specifies the name of the schema in which the object resides and on which the data redaction policy will be applied. If you specify `NULL` then the given object is searched by the order specified by `search_path` setting.

### object\_name

Name of the table from which to drop a data redaction policy.

### policy\_name

| Name of the policy to be dropped.

## Example

The following example illustrates how to drop a policy.

```
\c edb base_user

BEGIN
  DBMS_REDACT.drop_policy(
    object_schema => 'public',
    object_name => 'payment_details_tab',
    policy_name => 'redactPolicy_001');
END
```

Redacted Result: The server drops the specified policy.

## UPDATE\_FULL\_REDACTION\_VALUES

The `update_full_redaction_values` procedure updates the default displayed values for a data redaction policy and these default values can be viewed using the `redaction_values_for_type_full` view that use the full redaction type.

```
PROCEDURE update_full_redaction_values (
  <number_val>      IN NUMBER          DEFAULT NULL,
  <bfloat_val>      IN FLOAT4         DEFAULT NULL,
  <bindouble_val>   IN FLOAT8        DEFAULT NULL,
  <char_val>        IN CHAR           DEFAULT NULL,
  <varchar_val>     IN VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
  <nchar_val>       IN NCHAR          DEFAULT NULL,
  <nvarchar_val>    IN NVARCHAR2      DEFAULT NULL,
  <datecol_val>     IN DATE           DEFAULT NULL,
  <ts_val>          IN TIMESTAMP       DEFAULT NULL,
  <tswtz_val>       IN TIMESTAMPTZ    DEFAULT NULL,
  <blob_val>        IN BLOB           DEFAULT NULL,
  <clob_val>        IN CLOB           DEFAULT NULL,
  <nclob_val>       IN CLOB           DEFAULT NULL
)
```

### Parameters

`number_val`

| Updates the default value for columns of the `NUMBER` datatype.

`bfloat_val`

| The `FLOAT4` datatype is a random value. The binary float datatype is not supported.

`bindouble_val`

| The `FLOAT8` datatype is a random value. The binary double datatype is not supported.

`char_val`

| Updates the default value for columns of the `CHAR` datatype.

`varchar_val`

Updates the default value for columns of the `VARCHAR2` datatype.

#### `nchar_val`

The `nchar_val` is mapped to `CHAR` datatype and returns the `CHAR` value.

#### `nvarchar_val`

The `nvarchar_val` is mapped to `VARCHAR2` datatype and returns the `VARCHAR` value.

#### `datecol_val`

Updates the default value for columns of the `DATE` datatype.

#### `ts_val`

Updates the default value for columns of the `TIMESTAMP` datatype.

#### `tswtz_val`

Updates the default value for columns of the `TIMESTAMPTZ` datatype.

#### `blob_val`

Updates the default value for columns of the `BLOB` datatype.

#### `clob_val`

Updates the default value for columns of the `CLOB` datatype.

#### `nclob_val`

The `nclob_val` is mapped to `CLOB` datatype and returns the `CLOB` value.

### Example

The following example illustrates how to update the full redaction values but before updating the values, you can:

View the default values using `redaction_values_for_type_full` view as shown below:

```
edb=# \x
Expanded display is on.
edb=# SELECT number_value, char_value, varchar_value, date_value,
       timestamp_value, timestamp_with_time_zone_value, blob_value,
       clob_value
  FROM redaction_values_for_type_full;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+
number_value      | 0
char_value        |
varchar_value     |
date_value        | 01-JAN-01 00:00:00
timestamp_value   | 01-JAN-01 01:00:00
timestamp_with_time_zone_value | 31-DEC-00 20:00:00 -05:00
blob_value        | \x5b72656461637465645d
clob_value        | [redacted]
(1 row)
```

Now, update the default values for full redaction type. The `NULL` values will be ignored.

```
\c edb base_user
```

```
edb=# BEGIN
  DBMS_REDACT.update_full_redaction_values (
    number_val => 9999999,
    char_val => 'Z',
    varchar_val => 'V',
    datecol_val => to_date('17/10/2018', 'DD/MM/YYYY'),
    ts_val => to_timestamp('17/10/2018 11:12:13', 'DD/MM/YYYY HH24:MI:SS'),
    tswtz_val => NULL,
    blob_val => 'NEW REDACTED VALUE',
    clob_val => 'NEW REDACTED VALUE');
END;
```

You can now see the updated values using `redaction_values_for_type_full` view.

EDB-SPL Procedure successfully completed

```
edb=# SELECT number_value, char_value, varchar_value, date_value,
  timestamp_value, timestamp_with_time_zone_value, blob_value,
  clob_value
FROM redaction_values_for_type_full;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+
number_value | 9999999
char_value | Z
varchar_value | V
date_value | 17-OCT-18 00:00:00
timestamp_value | 17-OCT-18 11:12:13
timestamp_with_time_zone_value | 31-DEC-00 20:00:00 -05:00
blob_value | \x4e45572052454441435445442056414c5545
clob_value | NEW REDACTED VALUE
(1 row)
```

Redacted Result:

```
edb=# \c edb redact_user
You are now connected to database "edb" as user "redact_user".

edb=> select * from payment_details_tab order by 1;
customer_id | card_string
-----+-----
 9999999 | V
 9999999 | V
(2 rows)
```

## 4.2.14 DBMS\_RLS

The `DBMS_RLS` package enables the implementation of Virtual Private Database on certain Advanced Server database objects.

Function/Procedure	Function or Procedure	Return Type	Description
ADD_POLICY(object schema, object name, policy name, function schema, policy function [, statement types [, update check [, enable [, static policy [, policy_type [, long_predicate [, sec_relevant_cols [, sec_relevant_cols_opt ]]]]]]]])	Procedure	n/a	Add a security policy to a database object.
DROP_POLICY(object_schema, object_name, policy_name)	Procedure	n/a	Remove a security policy from a database object.
ENABLE_POLICY(object_schema, object_name, policy_name, enable)	Procedure	n/a	Enable or disable a security policy.

Advanced Server's implementation of `DBMS_RLS` is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those functions and procedures listed in the table above are supported.

*Virtual Private Database* is a type of fine-grained access control using security policies. *Fine-grained access control* in Virtual Private Database means that access to data can be controlled down to specific rows as defined by the security policy.

The rules that encode a security policy are defined in a *policy function*, which is an SPL function with certain input parameters and return value. The *security policy* is the named association of the policy function to a particular database object, typically a table.

#### Note

In Advanced Server, the policy function can be written in any language supported by Advanced Server such as SQL, PL/pgSQL and SPL.

#### Note

The database objects currently supported by Advanced Server Virtual Private Database are tables. Policies cannot be applied to views or synonyms.

The advantages of using Virtual Private Database are the following:

- Provides a fine-grained level of security. Database object level privileges given by the `GRANT` command determine access privileges to the entire instance of a database object, while Virtual Private Database provides access control for the individual rows of a database object instance.
- A different security policy can be applied depending upon the type of SQL command (`INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `SELECT`).
- The security policy can vary dynamically for each applicable SQL command affecting the database object depending upon factors such as the session user of the application accessing the database object.
- Invocation of the security policy is transparent to all applications that access the database object and thus, individual applications do not have to be modified to apply the security policy.
- Once a security policy is enabled, it is not possible for any application (including new applications) to circumvent the security policy except by the system privilege noted by the following.
- Even superusers cannot circumvent the security policy except by the system privilege noted by the following.

#### Note

The only way security policies can be circumvented is if the `EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY` system privilege has been granted to a user. The `EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY` privilege should be granted with extreme care as a user with this privilege is exempted from all policies in the database.

The `DBMS_RLS` package provides procedures to create policies, remove policies, enable policies, and disable

policies.

The process for implementing Virtual Private Database is as follows:

- Create a policy function. The function must have two input parameters of type `VARCHAR2`. The first input parameter is for the schema containing the database object to which the policy is to apply and the second input parameter is for the name of that database object. The function must have a `VARCHAR2` return type. The function must return a string in the form of a `WHERE` clause predicate. This predicate is dynamically appended as an `AND` condition to the SQL command that acts upon the database object. Thus, rows that do not satisfy the policy function predicate are filtered out from the SQL command result set.
- Use the `ADD_POLICY` procedure to define a new policy, which is the association of a policy function with a database object. With the `ADD_POLICY` procedure, you can also specify the types of SQL commands (`INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `SELECT`) to which the policy is to apply, whether or not to enable the policy at the time of its creation, and if the policy should apply to newly inserted rows or the modified image of updated rows.
- Use the `ENABLE_POLICY` procedure to disable or enable an existing policy.
- Use the `DROP_POLICY` procedure to remove an existing policy. The `DROP_POLICY` procedure does not drop the policy function or the associated database object.

Once policies are created, they can be viewed in the catalog views, compatible with Oracle databases: `ALL_POLICIES`, `DBA_POLICIES`, or `USER_POLICIES`. The supported compatible views are listed in the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Catalog Views Guide*, available at the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs/>

The `SYS_CONTEXT` function is often used with `DBMS_RLS`. The signature is:

`SYS_CONTEXT(<namespace>, <attribute>)`

Where:

`namespace` is a `VARCHAR2`; the only accepted value is `USERENV`. Any other value will return `NULL`.

`attribute` is a `VARCHAR2`. `attribute` may be:

attribute Value	Equivalent Value
<code>SESSION_USER</code>	<code>pg_catalog.session_user</code>
<code>CURRENT_USER</code>	<code>pg_catalog.current_user</code>
<code>CURRENT_SCHEMA</code>	<code>pg_catalog.current_schema</code>
<code>HOST</code>	<code>pg_catalog.inet_host</code>
<code>IP_ADDRESS</code>	<code>pg_catalog.inet_client_addr</code>
<code>SERVER_HOST</code>	<code>pg_catalog.inet_server_addr</code>

Note

The examples used to illustrate the `DBMS_RLS` package are based on a modified copy of the sample `emp` table provided with Advanced Server along with a role named `salesmgr` that is granted all privileges on the table. You can create the modified copy of the `emp` table named `vpemp` and the `salesmgr` role as shown by the following:

```
CREATE TABLE public.vpemp AS SELECT empno, ename, job, sal, comm, deptno
FROM emp;
ALTER TABLE vpemp ADD authid VARCHAR2(12);
UPDATE vpemp SET authid = 'researchmgr' WHERE deptno = 20;
UPDATE vpemp SET authid = 'salesmgr' WHERE deptno = 30;
SELECT * FROM vpemp;
```

empno	ename	job	sal	comm	deptno	authid
-------	-------	-----	-----	------	--------	--------

```

7782 | CLARK | MANAGER | 2450.00 |    | 10 |
7839 | KING | PRESIDENT | 5000.00 |    | 10 |
7934 | MILLER | CLERK | 1300.00 |    | 10 |
7369 | SMITH | CLERK | 800.00 |    | 20 | researchmgr
7566 | JONES | MANAGER | 2975.00 |    | 20 | researchmgr
7788 | SCOTT | ANALYST | 3000.00 |    | 20 | researchmgr
7876 | ADAMS | CLERK | 1100.00 |    | 20 | researchmgr
7902 | FORD | ANALYST | 3000.00 |    | 20 | researchmgr
7499 | ALLEN | SALESMAN | 1600.00 | 300.00 | 30 | salesmgr
7521 | WARD | SALESMAN | 1250.00 | 500.00 | 30 | salesmgr
7654 | MARTIN | SALESMAN | 1250.00 | 1400.00 | 30 | salesmgr
7698 | BLAKE | MANAGER | 2850.00 |    | 30 | salesmgr
7844 | TURNER | SALESMAN | 1500.00 | 0.00 | 30 | salesmgr
7900 | JAMES | CLERK | 950.00 |    | 30 | salesmgr
(14 rows)

```

```

CREATE ROLE salesmgr WITH LOGIN PASSWORD 'password';
GRANT ALL ON vpemp TO salesmgr;

```

## ADD\_POLICY

The `ADD_POLICY` procedure creates a new policy by associating a policy function with a database object.

You must be a superuser to execute this procedure.

```

ADD_POLICY(<object_schema> VARCHAR2, <object_name> VARCHAR2,
<policy_name> VARCHAR2, <function_schema> VARCHAR2,
<policy_function> VARCHAR2
[, <statement_types> VARCHAR2
[, <update_check> BOOLEAN
[, <enable> BOOLEAN
[, <static_policy> BOOLEAN
[, <policy_type> INTEGER
[, <long_predicate> BOOLEAN
[, <sec_relevant_cols> VARCHAR2
[, <sec_relevant_cols_opt> INTEGER ]]]]]])

```

### Parameters

#### `object_schema`

Name of the schema containing the database object to which the policy is to be applied.

#### `object_name`

Name of the database object to which the policy is to be applied. A given database object may have more than one policy applied to it.

#### `policy_name`

Name assigned to the policy. The combination of database object (identified by `object_schema` and `object_name`) and policy name must be unique within the database.

#### `function_schema`

Name of the schema containing the policy function.

## Note

The policy function may belong to a package in which case `function_schema` must contain the name of the schema in which the package is defined.

### `policy_function`

Name of the SPL function that defines the rules of the security policy. The same function may be specified in more than one policy.

## Note

The policy function may belong to a package in which case `policy_function` must also contain the package name in dot notation (that is, `package_name.function_name`).

### `statement_types`

Comma-separated list of SQL commands to which the policy applies. Valid SQL commands are `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `SELECT`. The default is `INSERT,UPDATE,DELETE,SELECT`.

## Note

Advanced Server accepts `INDEX` as a statement type, but it is ignored. Policies are not applied to index operations in Advanced Server.

### `update_check`

Applies to `INSERT` and `UPDATE` SQL commands only.

When set to `TRUE`, the policy is applied to newly inserted rows and to the modified image of updated rows. If any of the new or modified rows do not qualify according to the policy function predicate, then the `INSERT` or `UPDATE` command throws an exception and no rows are inserted or modified by the `INSERT` or `UPDATE` command.

When set to `FALSE`, the policy is not applied to newly inserted rows or the modified image of updated rows. Thus, a newly inserted row may not appear in the result set of a subsequent SQL command that invokes the same policy. Similarly, rows which qualified according to the policy prior to an `UPDATE` command may not appear in the result set of a subsequent SQL command that invokes the same policy.

The default is `FALSE`.

### `enable`

When set to `TRUE`, the policy is enabled and applied to the SQL commands given by the `statement_types` parameter. When set to `FALSE` the policy is disabled and not applied to any SQL commands. The policy can be enabled using the `ENABLE_POLICY` procedure. The default is `TRUE`.

### `static_policy`

In Oracle, when set to `TRUE`, the policy is *static*, which means the policy function is evaluated once per database object the first time it is invoked by a policy on that database object. The resulting policy function predicate string is saved in memory and reused for all invocations of that policy on that database object while the database server instance is running.

When set to `FALSE`, the policy is *dynamic*, which means the policy function is re-evaluated and the policy function predicate string regenerated for all invocations of the policy.

The default is `FALSE`.

## Note

In Oracle 10g, the `policy_type` parameter was introduced, which is intended to replace the `static_policy`

parameter. In Oracle, if the `policy_type` parameter is not set to its default value of `NULL`, the `policy_type` parameter setting overrides the `static_policy` setting.

#### Note

The setting of `static_policy` is ignored by Advanced Server. Advanced Server implements only the dynamic policy, regardless of the setting of the `static_policy` parameter.

#### `policy_type`

In Oracle, determines when the policy function is re-evaluated, and hence, if and when the predicate string returned by the policy function changes. The default is `NULL`.

#### Note

The setting of this parameter is ignored by Advanced Server. Advanced Server always assumes a dynamic policy.

#### `long_predicate`

In Oracle, allows predicates up to 32K bytes if set to `TRUE`, otherwise predicates are limited to 4000 bytes. The default is `FALSE`.

#### Note

The setting of this parameter is ignored by Advanced Server. An Advanced Server policy function can return a predicate of unlimited length for all practical purposes.

#### `sec_relevant_cols`

Comma-separated list of columns of `object_name`. Provides *column-level Virtual Private Database* for the listed columns. The policy is enforced if any of the listed columns are referenced in a SQL command of a type listed in `statement_types`. The policy is not enforced if no such columns are referenced.

The default is `NULL`, which has the same effect as if all of the database object's columns were included in `sec_relevant_cols`.

#### `sec_relevant_cols_opt`

In Oracle, if `sec_relevant_cols_opt` is set to `DBMS_RLS.ALL_ROWS` (`INTEGER` constant of value 1), then the columns listed in `sec_relevant_cols` return `NULL` on all rows where the applied policy predicate is false. (If `sec_relevant_cols_opt` is not set to `DBMS_RLS.ALL_ROWS`, these rows would not be returned at all in the result set.) The default is `NULL`.

#### Note

Advanced Server does not support the `DBMS_RLS.ALL_ROWS` functionality. Advanced Server throws an error if `sec_relevant_cols_opt` is set to `DBMS_RLS.ALL_ROWS` (`INTEGER` value of 1).

### Examples

This example uses the following policy function:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION verify_session_user (
    p_schema      VARCHAR2,
    p_object      VARCHAR2
)
RETURN VARCHAR2
IS
BEGIN
    RETURN 'authid = SYS_CONTEXT("USERENV", "SESSION_USER")';
```

```
END;
```

This function generates the predicate `authid = SYS_CONTEXT('USERENV', 'SESSION_USER')`, which is added to the `WHERE` clause of any SQL command of the type specified in the `ADD_POLICY` procedure.

This limits the effect of the SQL command to those rows where the content of the `authid` column is the same as the session user.

#### Note

This example uses the `SYS_CONTEXT` function to return the login user name. In Oracle the `SYS_CONTEXT` function is used to return attributes of an *application context*. The first parameter of the `SYS_CONTEXT` function is the name of an application context while the second parameter is the name of an attribute set within the application context. `USERENV` is a special built-in namespace that describes the current session. Advanced Server does not support application contexts, but only this specific usage of the `SYS_CONTEXT` function.

The following anonymous block calls the `ADD_POLICY` procedure to create a policy named `secure_update` to be applied to the `vpemp` table using function `verify_session_user` whenever an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` SQL command is given referencing the `vpemp` table.

```
DECLARE
    v_object_schema      VARCHAR2(30) := 'public';
    v_object_name        VARCHAR2(30) := 'vpemp';
    v_policy_name        VARCHAR2(30) := 'secure_update';
    v_function_schema    VARCHAR2(30) := 'enterprisedb';
    v_policy_function    VARCHAR2(30) := 'verify_session_user';
    v_statement_types    VARCHAR2(30) := 'INSERT,UPDATE,DELETE';
    v_update_check       BOOLEAN    := TRUE;
    v_enable             BOOLEAN    := TRUE;
BEGIN
    DBMS_RLS.ADD_POLICY(
        v_object_schema,
        v_object_name,
        v_policy_name,
        v_function_schema,
        v_policy_function,
        v_statement_types,
        v_update_check,
        v_enable
    );
END;
```

After successful creation of the policy, a terminal session is started by user `salesmgr`. The following query shows the content of the `vpemp` table:

```
edb=# \c pdb salesmgr
Password for user salesmgr:
You are now connected to database "edb" as user "salesmgr".
edb=> SELECT * FROM vpemp;
empno | ename | job | sal | comm | deptno | authid
-----+-----+-----+-----+
 7782 | CLARK | MANAGER | 2450.00 |   | 10 |
 7839 | KING  | PRESIDENT | 5000.00 |   | 10 |
 7934 | MILLER | CLERK  | 1300.00 |   | 10 |
 7369 | SMITH | CLERK  | 800.00 |   | 20 | researchmgr
 7566 | JONES | MANAGER | 2975.00 |   | 20 | researchmgr
 7788 | SCOTT | ANALYST | 3000.00 |   | 20 | researchmgr
 7876 | ADAMS | CLERK  | 1100.00 |   | 20 | researchmgr
```

```

7902 | FORD | ANALYST | 3000.00 |      | 20 | researchmgr
7499 | ALLEN | SALESMAN | 1600.00 | 300.00 | 30 | salesmgr
7521 | WARD | SALESMAN | 1250.00 | 500.00 | 30 | salesmgr
7654 | MARTIN | SALESMAN | 1250.00 | 1400.00 | 30 | salesmgr
7698 | BLAKE | MANAGER | 2850.00 |      | 30 | salesmgr
7844 | TURNER | SALESMAN | 1500.00 | 0.00 | 30 | salesmgr
7900 | JAMES | CLERK | 950.00 |      | 30 | salesmgr
(14 rows)

```

An unqualified `UPDATE` command (no `WHERE` clause) is issued by the `salesmgr` user:

```

edb=> UPDATE vpemp SET comm = sal * .75;
UPDATE 6

```

Instead of updating all rows in the table, the policy restricts the effect of the update to only those rows where the `authid` column contains the value `salesmgr` as specified by the policy function predicate `authid = SYS_CONTEXT('USERENV', 'SESSION_USER')`.

The following query shows that the `comm` column has been changed only for those rows where `authid` contains `salesmgr`. All other rows are unchanged.

```

edb=> SELECT * FROM vpemp;
empno | ename | job | sal | comm | deptno | authid
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
7782 | CLARK | MANAGER | 2450.00 |      | 10 |
7839 | KING | PRESIDENT | 5000.00 |      | 10 |
7934 | MILLER | CLERK | 1300.00 |      | 10 |
7369 | SMITH | CLERK | 800.00 |      | 20 | researchmgr
7566 | JONES | MANAGER | 2975.00 |      | 20 | researchmgr
7788 | SCOTT | ANALYST | 3000.00 |      | 20 | researchmgr
7876 | ADAMS | CLERK | 1100.00 |      | 20 | researchmgr
7902 | FORD | ANALYST | 3000.00 |      | 20 | researchmgr
7499 | ALLEN | SALESMAN | 1600.00 | 1200.00 | 30 | salesmgr
7521 | WARD | SALESMAN | 1250.00 | 937.50 | 30 | salesmgr
7654 | MARTIN | SALESMAN | 1250.00 | 937.50 | 30 | salesmgr
7698 | BLAKE | MANAGER | 2850.00 | 2137.50 | 30 | salesmgr
7844 | TURNER | SALESMAN | 1500.00 | 1125.00 | 30 | salesmgr
7900 | JAMES | CLERK | 950.00 | 712.50 | 30 | salesmgr
(14 rows)

```

Furthermore, since the `update_check` parameter was set to `TRUE` in the `ADD_POLICY` procedure, the following `INSERT` command throws an exception since the value given for the `authid` column, `researchmgr`, does not match the session user, which is `salesmgr`, and hence, fails the policy.

```

edb=> INSERT INTO vpemp VALUES (9001,'SMITH','ANALYST',3200.00,NULL,20,
'researchmgr');
ERROR: policy with check option violation
DETAIL: Policy predicate was evaluated to FALSE with the updated values

```

If `update_check` was set to `FALSE`, the preceding `INSERT` command would have succeeded.

The following example illustrates the use of the `sec_relevant_cols` parameter to apply a policy only when certain columns are referenced in the SQL command. The following policy function is used for this example, which selects rows where the employee salary is less than `2000`.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION sal_lt_2000 (
  p_schema    VARCHAR2,

```

```

p_object      VARCHAR2
)
RETURN VARCHAR2
IS
BEGIN
    RETURN 'sal < 2000';
END

```

The policy is created so that it is enforced only if a `SELECT` command includes columns `sal` or `comm`:

```

DECLARE
    v_object_schema      VARCHAR2(30) := 'public';
    v_object_name        VARCHAR2(30) := 'vpemp';
    v_policy_name        VARCHAR2(30) := 'secure_salary';
    v_function_schema    VARCHAR2(30) := 'enterprisedb';
    v_policy_function   VARCHAR2(30) := 'sal_lt_2000';
    v_statement_types    VARCHAR2(30) := 'SELECT';
    v_sec_relevant_cols VARCHAR2(30) := 'sal,comm';
BEGIN
    DBMS_RLS.ADD_POLICY(
        v_object_schema,
        v_object_name,
        v_policy_name,
        v_function_schema,
        v_policy_function,
        v_statement_types,
        sec_relevant_cols => v_sec_relevant_cols
    );
END;

```

If a query does not reference columns `sal` or `comm`, then the policy is not applied. The following query returns all 14 rows of table `vpemp`:

```

edb=# SELECT empno, ename, job, deptno, authid FROM vpemp;
empno | ename | job | deptno | authid
-----+-----+-----+-----+
7782 | CLARK | MANAGER | 10 |
7839 | KING | PRESIDENT | 10 |
7934 | MILLER | CLERK | 10 |
7369 | SMITH | CLERK | 20 | researchmgr
7566 | JONES | MANAGER | 20 | researchmgr
7788 | SCOTT | ANALYST | 20 | researchmgr
7876 | ADAMS | CLERK | 20 | researchmgr
7902 | FORD | ANALYST | 20 | researchmgr
7499 | ALLEN | SALESMAN | 30 | salesmgr
7521 | WARD | SALESMAN | 30 | salesmgr
7654 | MARTIN | SALESMAN | 30 | salesmgr
7698 | BLAKE | MANAGER | 30 | salesmgr
7844 | TURNER | SALESMAN | 30 | salesmgr
7900 | JAMES | CLERK | 30 | salesmgr
(14 rows)

```

If the query references the `sal` or `comm` columns, then the policy is applied to the query eliminating any rows where `sal` is greater than or equal to `2000` as shown by the following:

```

edb=# SELECT empno, ename, job, sal, comm, deptno, authid FROM vpemp;

```

empno	ename	job	sal	comm	deptno	authid
7934	MILLER	CLERK	1300.00		10	
7369	SMITH	CLERK	800.00		20	researchmgr
7876	ADAMS	CLERK	1100.00		20	researchmgr
7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN	1600.00	1200.00	30	salesmgr
7521	WARD	SALESMAN	1250.00	937.50	30	salesmgr
7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	1250.00	937.50	30	salesmgr
7844	TURNER	SALESMAN	1500.00	1125.00	30	salesmgr
7900	JAMES	CLERK	950.00	712.50	30	salesmgr

(8 rows)

## DROP\_POLICY

The `DROP_POLICY` procedure deletes an existing policy. The policy function and database object associated with the policy are not deleted by the `DROP_POLICY` procedure.

You must be a superuser to execute this procedure.

```
DROP_POLICY(<object_schema> VARCHAR2, <object_name> VARCHAR2,
<policy_name> VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

`object_schema`

Name of the schema containing the database object to which the policy applies.

`object_name`

Name of the database object to which the policy applies.

`policy_name`

Name of the policy to be deleted.

### Examples

The following example deletes policy `secure_update` on table `public.vpemp`:

```
DECLARE
  v_object_schema      VARCHAR2(30) := 'public';
  v_object_name        VARCHAR2(30) := 'vpemp';
  v_policy_name        VARCHAR2(30) := 'secure_update';
BEGIN
  DBMS_RLS.DROP_POLICY(
    v_object_schema,
    v_object_name,
    v_policy_name
  );
END;
```

## ENABLE\_POLICY

The `ENABLE_POLICY` procedure enables or disables an existing policy on the specified database object.

You must be a superuser to execute this procedure.

```
ENABLE_POLICY(<object_schema> VARCHAR2, <object_name> VARCHAR2,
<policy_name> VARCHAR2, <enable> BOOLEAN)
```

## Parameters

`object_schema`

Name of the schema containing the database object to which the policy applies.

`object_name`

Name of the database object to which the policy applies.

`policy_name`

Name of the policy to be enabled or disabled.

`enable`

When set to `TRUE`, the policy is enabled. When set to `FALSE`, the policy is disabled.

## Examples

The following example disables policy `secure_update` on table `public.vpemp`:

```
DECLARE
  v_object_schema      VARCHAR2(30) := 'public';
  v_object_name        VARCHAR2(30) := 'vpemp';
  v_policy_name        VARCHAR2(30) := 'secure_update';
  v_enable              BOOLEAN := FALSE;
BEGIN
  DBMS_RLS.ENABLE_POLICY(
    v_object_schema,
    v_object_name,
    v_policy_name,
    v_enable
  );
END;
```

## 4.2.15 DBMS\_SCHEDULER

The `DBMS_SCHEDULER` package provides a way to create and manage Oracle-styled jobs, programs and job schedules. The `DBMS_SCHEDULER` package implements the following functions and procedures:

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
--------------------	-------------	-------------

<code>CREATE JOB(job_name, job_type, job_action, number_of_arguments, start_date, repeat_interval, end_date, job_class, enabled, auto_drop, comments)</code>	n/a	Use the first form of the <code>CREATE_JOB</code> procedure to create a job, specifying program and schedule details by means of parameters.
<code>CREATE JOB(job_name, program_name, schedule_name, job_class, enabled, auto_drop, comments)</code>	n/a	Use the second form of <code>CREATE_JOB</code> to create a job that uses a named program and named schedule.
<code>CREATE PROGRAM(program_name, program_type, program_action, number_of_arguments, enabled, comments)</code>	n/a	Use <code>CREATE_PROGRAM</code> to create a program.
<code>CREATE SCHEDULE(schedule_name, start_date, repeat_interval, end_date, comments)</code>	n/a	Use the <code>CREATE_SCHEDULE</code> procedure to create a schedule.
<code>DEFINE PROGRAM ARGUMENT(program_name, argument_position, argument_name, argument_type, default_value, out_argument)</code>	n/a	Use the first form of the <code>DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT</code> procedure to define a program argument that has a default value.
<code>DEFINE PROGRAM ARGUMENT(program_name, argument_position, argument_name, argument_type, out_argument)</code>	n/a	Use the first form of the <code>DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT</code> procedure to define a program argument that does not have a default value.
<code>DISABLE(name, force, commit_semantics)</code>	n/a	Use the <code>DISABLE</code> procedure to disable a job or program.
<code>DROP JOB(job_name, force, defer, commit_semantics)</code>	n/a	Use the <code>DROP_JOB</code> procedure to drop a job.
<code>DROP_PROGRAM(program_name, force)</code>	n/a	Use the <code>DROP_PROGRAM</code> procedure to drop a program.
<code>DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT(program_name, argument_position)</code>	n/a	Use the first form of <code>DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT</code> to drop a program argument by specifying the argument position.
<code>DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT(program_name, argument_name)</code>	n/a	Use the second form of <code>DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT</code> to drop a program argument by specifying the argument name.
<code>DROP_SCHEDULE(schedule_name, force)</code>	n/a	Use the <code>DROP_SCHEDULE</code> procedure to drop a schedule.
<code>ENABLE(name, commit_semantics)</code>	n/a	Use the <code>ENABLE</code> command to enable a program or job.
<code>EVALUATE CALENDAR STRING(calendar_string, start_date, return_date_after, next_run_date)</code>	n/a	Use <code>EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING</code> to review the execution date described by a user-defined calendar schedule.
<code>RUN_JOB(job_name, use_current_session, manually)</code>	n/a	Use the <code>RUN_JOB</code> procedure to execute a job immediately.
<code>SET JOB ARGUMENT VALUE(job_name, argument_position, argument_value)</code>	n/a	Use the first form of <code>SET_JOB_ARGUMENT</code> value to set the value of a job argument described by the argument's position.
<code>SET JOB ARGUMENT VALUE(job_name, argument_name, argument_value)</code>	n/a	Use the second form of <code>SET_JOB_ARGUMENT</code> value to set the value of a job argument described by the argument's name.

Advanced Server's implementation of `DBMS_SCHEDULER` is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those functions and procedures listed in the table above are supported.

The `DBMS_SCHEDULER` package is dependent on the pgAgent service; you must have a pgAgent service installed and running on your server before using `DBMS_SCHEDULER`.

Before using `DBMS_SCHEDULER`, a database superuser must create the catalog tables in which the `DBMS_SCHEDULER` programs, schedules and jobs are stored. Use the `psql` client to connect to the database, and invoke the command:

```
CREATE EXTENSION dbms_scheduler;
```

By default, the `dbms_scheduler` extension resides in the `contrib/dbms_scheduler_ext` subdirectory (under the Advanced Server installation).

Note that after creating the `DBMS_SCHEDULER` tables, only a superuser will be able to perform a dump or reload of the database.

## 4.2.15.1 Using Calendar Syntax to Specify a Repeating Interval

The `CREATE_JOB` and `CREATE_SCHEDULE` procedures use Oracle-styled calendar syntax to define the interval with which a job or schedule is repeated. You should provide the scheduling information in the `repeat_interval` parameter of each procedure.

`repeat_interval` is a value (or series of values) that define the interval between the executions of the scheduled job. Each value is composed of a token, followed by an equal sign, followed by the unit (or units) on which the schedule will execute. Multiple token values must be separated by a semi-colon (;).

For example, the following value:

```
| FREQ=DAILY;BYDAY=MON,TUE,WED,THU,FRI;BYHOUR=17;BYMINUTE=45
```

Defines a schedule that is executed each weeknight at 5:45.

The token types and syntax described in the table below are supported by Advanced Server:

Token type	Syntax	Valid Values
FREQ	<code>FREQ=predefined_interval</code>	Where <code>predefined_interval</code> is one of the following: <code>YEARLY</code> , <code>MONTHLY</code> , <code>WEEKLY</code> , <code>DAILY</code> , <code>HOURLY</code> , <code>MINUTELY</code> . The <code>SECONDLY</code> keyword is not supported.
BYMONTH	<code>BYMONTH=month(, month)...</code>	Where <code>month</code> is the three-letter abbreviation of the month name: <code>JAN</code>   <code>FEB</code>   <code>MAR</code>   <code>APR</code>   <code>MAY</code>   <code>JUN</code>   <code>JUL</code>   <code>AUG</code>   <code>SEP</code>   <code>OCT</code>   <code>NOV</code>   <code>DEC</code>
BYMONTH	<code>BYMONTH=month (, month)...</code>	Where <code>month</code> is the numeric value representing the month: <code>1</code>   <code>2</code>   <code>3</code>   <code>4</code>   <code>5</code>   <code>6</code>   <code>7</code>   <code>8</code>   <code>9</code>   <code>10</code>   <code>11</code>   <code>12</code>
BYMONTHDAY	<code>BYMONTHDAY=day_of_month</code>	Where <code>day_of_month</code> is a value from <code>1</code> through <code>31</code>
BYDAY	<code>BYDAY=weekday</code>	Where <code>weekday</code> is a three-letter abbreviation or single-digit value representing the day of the week. <code>Monday</code>   <code>MON</code>   <code>1</code>

Token type	Syntax	Valid Values
		Tuesday   TUE   2   Wednesday   WED   3   Thursday   THU   4   Friday   FRI   5   Saturday   SAT   6   Sunday   SUN   7
BYDATE	BYDATE=date (, date)...	Where date is YYYYMMDD.  YYYY is a four-digit year representation of the year, MM is a two-digit representation of the month, and DD is a two-digit day representation of the day.
BYDATE	BYDATE=date (, date)...	Where date is MMDD.  MM is a two-digit representation of the month, and DD is a two-digit day representation of the day
BYHOUR	BYHOUR=hour	Where hour is a value from 0 through 23.
BYMINUTE	BYMINUTE=minute	Where minute is a value from 0 through 59.

## 4.2.15.2 CREATE\_JOB

Use the `CREATE_JOB` procedure to create a job. The procedure comes in two forms; the first form of the procedure specifies a schedule within the job definition, as well as a job action that will be invoked when the job executes:

```
CREATE_JOB(
<job_name> IN VARCHAR2,
<job_type> IN VARCHAR2,
<job_action> IN VARCHAR2,
<number_of_arguments> IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
<start_date> IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
<repeat_interval> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<end_date> IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
<job_class> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'DEFAULT_JOB_CLASS',
<enabled> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
<auto_drop> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
<comments> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
```

The second form uses a job schedule to specify the schedule on which the job will execute, and specifies the name of a program that will execute when the job runs:

```
CREATE_JOB(
<job_name> IN VARCHAR2,
<program_name> IN VARCHAR2,
<schedule_name> IN VARCHAR2,
<job_class> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'DEFAULT_JOB_CLASS',
<enabled> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
<auto_drop> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
<comments> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
```

## Parameters

### job\_name

`job_name` specifies the optionally schema-qualified name of the job being created.

### job\_type

`job_type` specifies the type of job. The current implementation of `CREATE_JOB` supports a job type of `PLSQL_BLOCK` or `STORED_PROCEDURE`.

### job\_action

If `job_type` is `PLSQL_BLOCK`, `job_action` specifies the content of the PL/SQL block that will be invoked when the job executes. The block must be terminated with a semi-colon (;).

If `job_type` is `STORED_PROCEDURE`, `job_action` specifies the optionally schema-qualified name of the procedure.

### number\_of\_arguments

`number_of_arguments` is an `INTEGER` value that specifies the number of arguments expected by the job. The default is `0`.

### start\_date

`start_date` is a `TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE` value that specifies the first time that the job is scheduled to execute. The default value is `NULL`, indicating that the job should be scheduled to execute when the job is enabled.

### repeat\_interval

`repeat_interval` is a `VARCHAR2` value that specifies how often the job will repeat. If a `repeat_interval` is not specified, the job will execute only once. The default value is `NULL`.

### end\_date

`end_date` is a `TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE` value that specifies a time after which the job will no longer execute. If a date is specified, the `end_date` must be after `start_date`. The default value is `NULL`.

Please note that if an `end_date` is not specified and a `repeat_interval` is specified, the job will repeat indefinitely until it is disabled.

### program\_name

`program_name` is the name of a program that will be executed by the job.

### schedule\_name

`schedule_name` is the name of the schedule associated with the job.

### job\_class

`job_class` is accepted for compatibility and ignored.

#### enabled

`enabled` is a `BOOLEAN` value that specifies if the job is enabled when created. By default, a job is created in a disabled state, with `enabled` set to `FALSE`. To enable a job, specify a value of `TRUE` when creating the job, or enable the job with the `DBMS_SCHEDULER.ENABLE` procedure.

#### auto\_drop

The `auto_drop` parameter is accepted for compatibility and is ignored. By default, a job's status will be changed to `DISABLED` after the time specified in `end_date`.

#### comments

Use the `comments` parameter to specify a comment about the job.

### Example

The following example demonstrates a call to the `CREATE_JOB` procedure:

```
EXEC
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_JOB (
    job_name      => 'update_log',
    job_type      => 'PLSQL_BLOCK',
    job_action    => 'BEGIN INSERT INTO my_log VALUES(current_timestamp);
                      END;',
    start_date    => '01-JUN-15 09:00:00.000000',
    repeat_interval => 'FREQ=DAILY;BYDAY=MON,TUE,WED,THU,FRI;BYHOUR=17;',
    end_date      => NULL,
    enabled        => TRUE,
    comments       => 'This job adds a row to the my_log table.');
```

The code fragment creates a job named `update_log` that executes each weeknight at 5:00. The job executes a PL/SQL block that inserts the current timestamp into a logfile (`my_log`). Since no `end_date` is specified, the job will execute until it is disabled by the `DBMS_SCHEDULER.DISABLE` procedure.

## 4.2.15.3 CREATE\_PROGRAM

Use the `CREATE_PROGRAM` procedure to create a `DBMS_SCHEDULER` program. The signature is:

```
CREATE_PROGRAM(
    <program_name> IN VARCHAR2,
    <program_type> IN VARCHAR2,
    <program_action> IN VARCHAR2,
    <number_of_arguments> IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
    <enabled> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
    <comments> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
```

### Parameters

#### program\_name

`program_name` specifies the name of the program that is being created.

#### `program_type`

`program_type` specifies the type of program. The current implementation of `CREATE_PROGRAM` supports a `program_type` of `PLSQL_BLOCK` or `PROCEDURE`.

#### `program_action`

If `program_type` is `PLSQL_BLOCK`, `program_action` contains the PL/SQL block that will execute when the program is invoked. The PL/SQL block must be terminated with a semi-colon (`;`).

If `program_type` is `PROCEDURE`, `program_action` contains the name of the stored procedure.

#### `number_of_arguments`

If `program_type` is `PLSQL_BLOCK`, this argument is ignored.

If `program_type` is `PROCEDURE`, `number_of_arguments` specifies the number of arguments required by the procedure. The default value is `0`.

#### `enabled`

`enabled` specifies if the program is created enabled or disabled:

- If `enabled` is `TRUE`, the program is created enabled.
- If `enabled` is `FALSE`, the program is created disabled; use the `DBMS_SCHEDULER.ENABLE` program to enable a disabled program.

The default value is `FALSE`.

#### `comments`

Use the `comments` parameter to specify a comment about the program; by default, this parameter is `NULL`.

#### Example

The following call to the `CREATE_PROGRAM` procedure creates a program named `update_log`:

```
EXEC
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_PROGRAM (
    program_name    => 'update_log',
    program_type   => 'PLSQL_BLOCK',
    program_action => 'BEGIN INSERT INTO my_log VALUES(current_timestamp);
                           END;',
    enabled        => TRUE,
    comment        => 'This program adds a row to the my_log table.');
```

`update_log` is a PL/SQL block that adds a row containing the current date and time to the `my_log` table. The program will be enabled when the `CREATE_PROGRAM` procedure executes.

## 4.2.15.4 CREATE\_SCHEDULE

Use the `CREATE_SCHEDULE` procedure to create a job schedule. The signature of the `CREATE_SCHEDULE` procedure is:

```
CREATE_SCHEDULE(
  <schedule_name> IN VARCHAR2,
  <start_date> IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
  <repeat_interval> IN VARCHAR2,
  <end_date> IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
  <comments> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
```

## Parameters

### schedule\_name

`schedule_name` specifies the name of the schedule.

### start\_date

`start_date` is a `TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE` value that specifies the date and time that the schedule is eligible to execute. If a `start_date` is not specified, the date that the job is enabled is used as the `start_date`. By default, `start_date` is `NULL`.

### repeat\_interval

`repeat_interval` is a `VARCHAR2` value that specifies how often the job will repeat. If a `repeat_interval` is not specified, the job will execute only once, on the date specified by `start_date`.

#### Note

You must provide a value for either `start_date` or `repeat_interval`; if both `start_date` and `repeat_interval` are `NULL`, the server will return an error.

### end\_date

`end_date` is a `TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE` value that specifies a time after which the schedule will no longer execute. If a date is specified, the `end_date` must be after the `start_date`. The default value is `NULL`.

#### Note

If a `repeat_interval` is specified and an `end_date` is not specified, the schedule will repeat indefinitely until it is disabled.

### comments

Use the `comments` parameter to specify a comment about the schedule; by default, this parameter is `NULL`.

## Example

The following code fragment calls `CREATE_SCHEDULE` to create a schedule named `weeknights_at_5`:

```
EXEC
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_SCHEDULE (
  schedule_name  => 'weeknights_at_5',
  start_date     => '01-JUN-13 09:00:00.000000'
  repeat_interval => 'FREQ=DAILY;BYDAY=MON,TUE,WED,THU,FRI;BYHOUR=17;',
  comments       => 'This schedule executes each weeknight at 5:00');
```

The schedule executes each weeknight, at 5:00 pm, effective after June 1, 2013. Since no `end_date` is specified, the schedule will execute indefinitely until it is disabled with `DBMS_SCHEDULER.DISABLE`.

## 4.2.15.5 DEFINE\_PROGRAM\_ARGUMENT

Use the `DEFINE PROGRAM ARGUMENT` procedure to define a program argument. The `DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT` procedure comes in two forms; the first form defines an argument with a default value:

```
DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT(
<program_name> IN VARCHAR2,
<argument_position> IN PLS_INTEGER,
<argument_name> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<argument_type> IN VARCHAR2,
<default_value> IN VARCHAR2,
<out_argument> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
```

The second form defines an argument without a default value:

```
DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT(
<program_name> IN VARCHAR2,
<argument_position> IN PLS_INTEGER,
<argument_name> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
<argument_type> IN VARCHAR2,
<out_argument> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
```

### Parameters

`program_name`

`program_name` is the name of the program to which the arguments belong.

`argument_position`

`argument_position` specifies the position of the argument as it is passed to the program.

`argument_name`

`argument_name` specifies the optional name of the argument. By default, `argument_name` is `NULL`.

`argument_type` IN `VARCHAR2`

`argument_type` specifies the data type of the argument.

`default_value`

`default_value` specifies the default value assigned to the argument. `default_value` will be overridden by a value specified by the job when the job executes.

`out_argument` IN `BOOLEAN` `DEFAULT FALSE`

`out_argument` is not currently used; if specified, the value must be `FALSE`.

### Example

The following code fragment uses the `DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT` procedure to define the first and second arguments in a program named `add_emp`:

```
EXEC
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT(
program_name      => 'add_emp',
```

```

argument_position  => 1,
argument_name      => 'dept_no',
argument_type       => 'INTEGER',
default_value       => '20');

EXEC
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT(
program_name      => 'add_emp',
argument_position  => 2,
argument_name       => 'emp_name',
argument_type       => 'VARCHAR2');

```

The first argument is an `INTEGER` value named `dept_no` that has a default value of `20`. The second argument is a `VARCHAR2` value named `emp_name`; the second argument does not have a default value.

#### 4.2.15.6 DISABLE

Use the `DISABLE` procedure to disable a program or a job. The signature of the `DISABLE` procedure is:

```

DISABLE(
<name> IN VARCHAR2,
<force> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
<commit_semantics> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR')

```

##### Parameters

`name`

`name` specifies the name of the program or job that is being disabled.

`force`

`force` is accepted for compatibility, and ignored.

`commit_semantics`

`commit_semantics` instructs the server how to handle an error encountered while disabling a program or job. By default, `commit_semantics` is set to `STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR`, instructing the server to stop when it encounters an error. Any programs or jobs that were successfully disabled prior to the error will be committed to disk.

The `TRANSACTIONAL` and `ABSORB_ERRORS` keywords are accepted for compatibility, and ignored.

##### Example

The following call to the `DISABLE` procedure disables a program named `update_emp`:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DISABLE('update_emp');
```

#### 4.2.15.7 DROP\_JOB

Use the `DROP_JOB` procedure to `DROP` a job, `DROP` any arguments that belong to the job, and eliminate any future job executions. The signature of the procedure is:

```
DROP_JOB(
  <job_name> IN VARCHAR2,
  <force> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  <defer> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  <commit_semantics> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR')
```

## Parameters

`job_name`

`job_name` specifies the name of the job that is being dropped.

`force`

`force` is accepted for compatibility, and ignored.

`defer`

`defer` is accepted for compatibility, and ignored.

`commit_semantics`

`commit_semantics` instructs the server how to handle an error encountered while dropping a program or job. By default, `commit_semantics` is set to `STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR`, instructing the server to stop when it encounters an error.

The `TRANSACTIONAL` and `ABSORB_ERRORS` keywords are accepted for compatibility, and ignored.

## Example

The following call to `DROP_JOB` drops a job named `update_log`:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_JOB('update_log');
```

## 4.2.15.8      `DROP_PROGRAM`

The `DROP_PROGRAM` procedure to drop a program. The signature of the `DROP_PROGRAM` procedure is:

```
DROP_PROGRAM(
  <program_name> IN VARCHAR2,
  <force> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
```

## Parameters

`program_name`

`program_name` specifies the name of the program that is being dropped.

`force`

`force` is a `BOOLEAN` value that instructs the server how to handle programs with dependent jobs.

Specify `FALSE` to instruct the server to return an error if the program is referenced by a job.

Specify `TRUE` to instruct the server to disable any jobs that reference the program before dropping the program.

The default value is `FALSE`.

### Example

The following call to `DROP_PROGRAM` drops a job named `update_emp`:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_PROGRAM('update_emp');
```

## 4.2.15.9 `DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT`

Use the `DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT` procedure to drop a program argument. The `DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT` procedure comes in two forms; the first form uses an argument position to specify which argument to drop:

```
DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT(  
    <program_name> IN VARCHAR2,  
    <argument_position> IN PLS_INTEGER)
```

The second form takes the argument name:

```
DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT(  
    <program_name> IN VARCHAR2,  
    <argument_name> IN VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

`program_name`

`program_name` specifies the name of the program that is being modified.

`argument_position`

`argument_position` specifies the position of the argument that is being dropped.

`argument_name`

`argument_name` specifies the name of the argument that is being dropped.

### Examples

The following call to `DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT` drops the first argument in the `update_emp` program:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT('update_emp', 1);
```

The following call to `DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT` drops an argument named `emp_name`:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT('update_emp', 'emp_name');
```

## 4.2.15.10 DROP\_SCHEDULE

Use the `DROP_SCHEDULE` procedure to drop a schedule. The signature is:

```
DROP_SCHEDULE(
  <schedule_name> IN VARCHAR2,
  <force> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
```

### Parameters

`schedule_name`

`schedule_name` specifies the name of the schedule that is being dropped.

`force`

`force` specifies the behavior of the server if the specified schedule is referenced by any job:

- Specify `FALSE` to instruct the server to return an error if the specified schedule is referenced by a job. This is the default behavior.
- Specify `TRUE` to instruct the server to disable to any jobs that use the specified schedule before dropping the schedule. Any running jobs will be allowed to complete before the schedule is dropped.

### Example

The following call to `DROP_SCHEDULE` drops a schedule named `weeknights_at_5`:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_SCHEDULE('weeknights_at_5', TRUE);
```

The server will disable any jobs that use the schedule before dropping the schedule.

## 4.2.15.11 ENABLE

Use the `ENABLE` procedure to enable a disabled program or job.

The signature of the `ENABLE` procedure is:

```
ENABLE(
  <name> IN VARCHAR2,
  <commit_semantics> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR')
```

### Parameters

`name`

`name` specifies the name of the program or job that is being enabled.

`commit_semantics`

`commit_semantics` instructs the server how to handle an error encountered while enabling a program or job. By default, `commit_semantics` is set to `STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR`, instructing the server to stop when it

encounters an error.

The `TRANSACTIONAL` and `ABSORB_ERRORS` keywords are accepted for compatibility, and ignored.

### Example

The following call to `DBMS_SCHEDULER.ENABLE` enables the `update_emp` program:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.ENABLE('update_emp');
```

## 4.2.15.12 EVALUATE CALENDAR STRING

Use the `EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING` procedure to evaluate the `repeat_interval` value specified when creating a schedule with the `CREATE_SCHEDULE` procedure. The `EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING` procedure will return the date and time that a specified schedule will execute without actually scheduling the job.

The signature of the `EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING` procedure is:

```
EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING(
<calendar_string> IN VARCHAR2,
<start_date> IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
<return_date_after> IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
<next_run_date> OUT TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE)
```

### Parameters

#### `calendar_string`

`calendar_string` is the calendar string that describes a `repeat_interval` that is being evaluated.

#### `start_date` IN `TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE`

`start_date` is the date and time after which the `repeat_interval` will become valid.

#### `return_date_after`

Use the `return_date_after` parameter to specify the date and time that `EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING` should use as a starting date when evaluating the `repeat_interval`.

For example, if you specify a `return_date_after` value of `01-APR-13 09.00.00.000000`, `EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING` will return the date and time of the first iteration of the schedule after April 1st, 2013.

#### `next_run_date` OUT `TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE`

`next_run_date` is an `OUT` parameter that will contain the first occurrence of the schedule after the date specified by the `return_date_after` parameter.

### Example

The following example evaluates a calendar string and returns the first date and time that the schedule will be executed after June 15, 2013:

```
DECLARE
result    TIMESTAMP;
```

```

BEGIN

DBMS_SCHEDULER.EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING
(
  'FREQ=DAILY;BYDAY=MON,TUE,WED,THU,FRI;BYHOUR=17;',
  '15-JUN-2013', NULL, result
);

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('next_run_date: ' || result);
END;
/

```

next\_run\_date: 17-JUN-13 05.00.00.000000 PM

June 15, 2013 is a Saturday; the schedule will not execute until Monday, June 17, 2013 at 5:00 pm.

---

#### 4.2.15.13 RUN\_JOB

Use the `RUN_JOB` procedure to execute a job immediately. The signature of the `RUN_JOB` procedure is:

```

RUN_JOB(
  <job_name> IN VARCHAR2,
  <use_current_session> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE

```

##### Parameters

`job_name`

`job_name` specifies the name of the job that will execute.

`use_current_session`

By default, the job will execute in the current session. If specified, `use_current_session` must be set to `TRUE`; if `use_current_session` is set to `FALSE`, Advanced Server will return an error.

##### Example

The following call to `RUN_JOB` executes a job named `update_log`:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.RUN_JOB('update_log', TRUE);
```

Passing a value of `TRUE` as the second argument instructs the server to invoke the job in the current session.

---

#### 4.2.15.14 SET\_JOB\_ARGUMENT\_VALUE

Use the `SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE` procedure to specify a value for an argument. The `SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE` procedure comes in two forms; the first form specifies which argument should

be modified by position:

```
SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE(
<job_name> IN VARCHAR2,
<argument_position> IN PLS_INTEGER,
<argument_value> IN VARCHAR2)
```

The second form uses an argument name to specify which argument to modify:

```
SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE(
<job_name> IN VARCHAR2,
<argument_name> IN VARCHAR2,
<argument_value> IN VARCHAR2)
```

Argument values set by the `SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE` procedure override any values set by default.

## Parameters

`job_name`

`job_name` specifies the name of the job to which the modified argument belongs.

`argument_position`

Use `argument_position` to specify the argument position for which the value will be set.

`argument_name`

Use `argument_name` to specify the argument by name for which the value will be set.

`argument_value`

`argument_value` specifies the new value of the argument.

## Examples

The following example assigns a value of `30` to the first argument in the `update_emp` job:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE('update_emp', 1, '30');
```

The following example sets the `emp_name` argument to `SMITH`:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE('update_emp', 'emp_name', 'SMITH');
```

## 4.2.16 DBMS\_SESSION

Advanced Server provides support for the following `DBMS_SESSION.SET_ROLE` procedure:

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>SET_ROLE(role_cmd)</code>	n/a	Executes a <code>SET ROLE</code> statement followed by the string value specified in <code>role_cmd</code> .

Advanced Server's implementation of `DBMS_SESSION` is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only `DBMS_SESSION.SET_ROLE` is supported.

## SET\_ROLE

The `SET ROLE` procedure sets the current session user to the role specified in `role_cmd`. After invoking the `SET_ROLE` procedure, the current session will use the permissions assigned to the specified role. The signature of the procedure is:

```
SET_ROLE(<role_cmd>)
```

The `SET_ROLE` procedure appends the value specified for `role_cmd` to the `SET ROLE` statement, and then invokes the statement.

### Parameters

`role_cmd`

`role_cmd` specifies a role name in the form of a string value.

### Example

The following call to the `SET_ROLE` procedure invokes the `SET ROLE` command to set the identity of the current session user to manager:

```
edb=# exec DBMS_SESSION.SET_ROLE('manager');
```

## 4.2.17 DBMS\_SQL

The `DBMS_SQL` package provides an application interface compatible with Oracle databases to the EDB dynamic SQL functionality. With `DBMS_SQL` you can construct queries and other commands at run time (rather than when you write the application). EDB Advanced Server offers native support for dynamic SQL; `DBMS_SQL` provides a way to use dynamic SQL in a fashion compatible with Oracle databases without modifying your application.

`DBMS_SQL` assumes the privileges of the current user when executing dynamic SQL statements.

Function/Procedure	Function or Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>BIND_VARIABLE(c, name, value [, out_value_size ])</code>	Procedure	n/a	Bind a value to a variable.
<code>BIND_VARIABLE_CHAR(c, name, value [, out_value_size ])</code>	Procedure	n/a	Bind a <code>CHAR</code> value to a variable.
<code>BIND_VARIABLE_RAW(c, name, value [, out_value_size])</code>	Procedure	n/a	Bind a <code>RAW</code> value to a variable.
<code>CLOSE_CURSOR(c IN OUT)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Close a cursor.
<code>COLUMN_VALUE(c, position, value OUT I, column_error OUT [, actual_length OUT ])</code>	Procedure	n/a	Return a column value into a variable.
<code>COLUMN_VALUE_CHAR(c, position, value OUT [, column_error OUT [, actual_length OUT ]])</code>	Procedure	n/a	Return a <code>CHAR</code> column value into a variable.

COLUMN_VALUE_RAW(c, position, value OUT [, column_error OUT [, actual_length OUT ]])	Procedure	n/a	Return a <b>RAW</b> column value into a variable.
COLUMN_VALUE_LONG(c, position, length, offset, value OUT, value_length OUT)	Procedure	n/a	Return a part of the <b>LONG</b> column value into a variable.
DEFINE_COLUMN(c, position, column [, column_size ])	Procedure	n/a	Define a column in the <b>SELECT</b> list.
DEFINE_COLUMN_CHAR(c, position, column, column_size)	Procedure	n/a	Define a <b>CHAR</b> column in the <b>SELECT</b> list.
DEFINE_COLUMN_RAW(c, position, column, column_size)	Procedure	n/a	Define a <b>RAW</b> column in the <b>SELECT</b> list.
DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG(c, position)	Procedure	n/a	Define a <b>LONG</b> column in the <b>SELECT</b> list.
DESCRIBE_COLUMNS	Procedure	n/a	Defines columns to hold a cursor result set.
EXECUTE(c)	Function	INTEGER	Execute a cursor.
EXECUTE_AND_FETCH(c [, exact ])	Function	INTEGER	Execute a cursor and fetch a single row.
FETCH_ROWS(c)	Function	INTEGER	Fetch rows from the cursor.
IS_OPEN(c)	Function	BOOLEAN	Check if a cursor is open.
LAST_ROW_COUNT	Function	INTEGER	Return cumulative number of rows fetched.
LAST_ERROR_POSITION	Function	INTEGER	Return byte offset in the SQL statement text where the error occurred.
OPEN_CURSOR	Function	INTEGER	Open a cursor.
PARSE(c, statement, language_flag)	Procedure	n/a	Parse a statement.

Advanced Server's implementation of **DBMS\_SQL** is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those functions and procedures listed in the table above are supported.

The following table lists the public variable available in the **DBMS\_SQL** package.

Public Variables	Data Type	Value	Description
native	INTEGER	1	Provided for compatibility with Oracle syntax. See DBMS_SQL.PARSE for more information.
V6	INTEGER	2	Provided for compatibility with Oracle syntax. See DBMS_SQL.PARSE for more information.
V7	INTEGER	3	Provided for compatibility with Oracle syntax. See DBMS_SQL.PARSE for more information

## 4.2.17.1 BIND\_VARIABLE

The **BIND\_VARIABLE** procedure provides the capability to associate a value with an **IN** or **IN OUT** bind variable in a SQL command.

```
BIND_VARIABLE(<c> INTEGER, <name> VARCHAR2,
<value> { BLOB | CLOB | DATE | FLOAT | INTEGER | NUMBER |
TIMESTAMP | VARCHAR2 }
```

```
[, <out_value_size> INTEGER ])
```

## Parameters

c

Cursor ID of the cursor for the SQL command with bind variables.

name

Name of the bind variable in the SQL command.

value

Value to be assigned.

out\_value\_size

If `name` is an `IN OUT` variable, defines the maximum length of the output value. If not specified, the length of `value` is assumed.

## Examples

The following anonymous block uses bind variables to insert a row into the `emp` stable.

```
DECLARE
    curid      INTEGER;
    v_sql      VARCHAR2(150) := 'INSERT INTO emp VALUES ' ||
                               '(:p_empno, :p_ename, :p_job, :p_mgr, ' ||
                               ':p_hiredate, :p_sal, :p_comm, :p_deptno)';
    v_empno    emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_ename    emp.ename%TYPE;
    v_job      emp.job%TYPE;
    v_mgr      emp.mgr%TYPE;
    v_hiredate emp.hiredate%TYPE;
    v_sal      emp.sal%TYPE;
    v_comm     emp.comm%TYPE;
    v_deptno   emp.deptno%TYPE;
    v_status   INTEGER;

BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    DBMS_SQLPARSE(curid,v_sql,DBMS_SQL.native);
    v_empno  := 9001;
    v_ename   := 'JONES';
    v_job     := 'SALESMAN';
    v_mgr     := 7369;
    v_hiredate := TO_DATE('13-DEC-07','DD-MON-YY');
    v_sal     := 8500.00;
    v_comm     := 1500.00;
    v_deptno   := 40;
    DBMS_SQLBIND_VARIABLE(curid,:p_empno,v_empno);
    DBMS_SQLBIND_VARIABLE(curid,:p_ename,v_ename);
    DBMS_SQLBIND_VARIABLE(curid,:p_job,v_job);
    DBMS_SQLBIND_VARIABLE(curid,:p_mgr,v_mgr);
    DBMS_SQLBIND_VARIABLE(curid,:p_hiredate,v_hiredate);
    DBMS_SQLBIND_VARIABLE(curid,:p_sal,v_sal);
    DBMS_SQLBIND_VARIABLE(curid,:p_comm,v_comm);
    DBMS_SQLBIND_VARIABLE(curid,:p_deptno,v_deptno);
```

```

v_status := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(curid);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Number of rows processed: ' || v_status);
DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;

```

Number of rows processed: 1

#### 4.2.17.2 BIND\_VARIABLE\_CHAR

The `BIND_VARIABLE_CHAR` procedure provides the capability to associate a `CHAR` value with an `IN` or `IN OUT` bind variable in a SQL command.

```

BIND_VARIABLE_CHAR(<c> INTEGER, <name> VARCHAR2, <value> CHAR
[,<out_value_size> INTEGER ])

```

##### Parameters

`c`

Cursor ID of the cursor for the SQL command with bind variables.

`name`

Name of the bind variable in the SQL command.

`value`

Value of type `CHAR` to be assigned.

`out_value_size`

If `name` is an `IN OUT` variable, defines the maximum length of the output value. If not specified, the length of `value` is assumed.

#### 4.2.17.3 BIND VARIABLE RAW

The `BIND_VARIABLE_RAW` procedure provides the capability to associate a `RAW` value with an `IN` or `IN OUT` bind variable in a SQL command.

```

BIND_VARIABLE_RAW(<c> INTEGER, <name> VARCHAR2, <value> RAW
[,<out_value_size> INTEGER ])

```

##### Parameters

`c`

Cursor ID of the cursor for the SQL command with bind variables.

**name**

Name of the bind variable in the SQL command.

**value**

Value of type **RAW** to be assigned.

**out\_value\_size**

If **name** is an **IN OUT** variable, defines the maximum length of the output value. If not specified, the length of **value** is assumed.

---

## 4.2.17.4 CLOSE\_CURSOR

The **CLOSE\_CURSOR** procedure closes an open cursor. The resources allocated to the cursor are released and it can no longer be used.

```
CLOSE_CURSOR(<c> IN OUT INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

**c**

Cursor ID of the cursor to be closed.

### Examples

The following example closes a previously opened cursor:

```
DECLARE
    curid      INTEGER;
BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;

    .
    .

    DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;
```

## 4.2.17.5 COLUMN\_VALUE

The **COLUMN\_VALUE** procedure defines a variable to receive a value from a cursor.

```
COLUMN_VALUE(<c> INTEGER, <position> INTEGER, <value> OUT { BLOB |
CLOB | DATE | FLOAT | INTEGER | NUMBER | TIMESTAMP | VARCHAR2 }
[, <column_error> OUT NUMBER [, <actual_length> OUT INTEGER ]])
```

## Parameters

C

Cursor id of the cursor returning data to the variable being defined.

## position

Position within the cursor of the returned data. The first value in the cursor is position 1.

value

Variable receiving the data returned in the cursor by a prior fetch call.

## column\_error

Error number associated with the column, if any.

actual\_length

Actual length of the data prior to any truncation.

## Examples

The following example shows the portion of an anonymous block that receives the values from a cursor using the `COLUMN_VALUE` procedure.

```

DECLARE
    curid      INTEGER;
    v_empno    NUMBER(4);
    v_ename    VARCHAR2(10);
    v_hiredate DATE;
    v_sal      NUMBER(7,2);
    v_comm     NUMBER(7,2);
    v_sql      VARCHAR2(50) := 'SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, ' ||
                                'comm FROM emp';
    v_status   INTEGER;
BEGIN
    .
    .
    .
LOOP
    v_status := DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS(curid);
    EXIT WHEN v_status = 0;
    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,1,v_empno);
    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,2,v_ename);
    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,3,v_hiredate);
    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,4,v_sal);
    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,4,v_sal);
    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,5,v_comm);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' || RPAD(v_ename,10) || ' ' ||
                          TO_CHAR(v_hiredate,'yyyy-mm-dd') || ' ' ||
                          TO_CHAR(v_sal,'9,999.99') || ' ' ||
                          TO_CHAR(NVL(v_comm,0),'9,999.99'));
END LOOP;
    DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;

```

## 4.2.17.6 COLUMN\_VALUE\_CHAR

The `COLUMN_VALUE_CHAR` procedure defines a variable to receive a `CHAR` value from a cursor.

```
COLUMN_VALUE_CHAR(<c> INTEGER, <position> INTEGER, <value> OUT CHAR
[, <column_error> OUT NUMBER [, <actual_length> OUT INTEGER ]])
```

### Parameters

`c`

Cursor id of the cursor returning data to the variable being defined.

`position`

Position within the cursor of the returned data. The first value in the cursor is position 1.

`value`

Variable of data type `CHAR` receiving the data returned in the cursor by a prior fetch call.

`column_error`

Error number associated with the column, if any.

`actual_length`

Actual length of the data prior to any truncation.

## 4.2.17.7 COLUMN\_VALUE\_RAW

The `COLUMN_VALUE_RAW` procedure defines a variable to receive a `RAW` value from a cursor.

```
COLUMN_VALUE_RAW(<c> INTEGER, <position> INTEGER, <value> OUT RAW
[, <column_error> OUT NUMBER [, <actual_length> OUT INTEGER ]])
```

### Parameters

`c`

Cursor id of the cursor returning data to the variable being defined.

`position`

Position within the cursor of the returned data. The first value in the cursor is position 1.

`value`

Variable of data type `RAW` receiving the data returned in the cursor by a prior fetch call.

`column_error`

| Error number associated with the column, if any.

**actual\_length**

| Actual length of the data prior to any truncation.

## COLUMN\_VALUE\_LONG

The **COLUMN\_VALUE\_LONG** procedure returns a part of the value of a **LONG** column.

```
COLUMN_VALUE_LONG(<c> INTEGER, <position> INTEGER, <length> INTEGER,
<offset> INTEGER, <value> OUT VARCHAR2, <value_length> OUT INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

**c**

| Cursor id of the cursor from which to get a value.

**position**

| Position of the column of which to get a value.

**length**

| Number of bytes of the long value to fetch.

**offset**

| Offset into the long field for start of fetch.

**value**

| Value of the column.

**value\_length**

| Number of bytes returned in value.

To refer example, see [DEFINE\\_COLUMN\\_LONG](#).

## 4.2.17.8      **DEFINE\_COLUMN**

The **DEFINE\_COLUMN** procedure defines a column or expression in the **SELECT** list that is to be returned and retrieved in a cursor.

```
DEFINE_COLUMN(<c> INTEGER, <position> INTEGER, <column> { BLOB |
CLOB | DATE | FLOAT | INTEGER | NUMBER | TIMESTAMP | VARCHAR2 }
[, <column_size> INTEGER ])
```

### Parameters

**c**

Cursor id of the cursor associated with the `SELECT` command.

### position

Position of the column or expression in the `SELECT` list that is being defined.

### column

A variable that is of the same data type as the column or expression in position `position` of the `SELECT` list.

### column\_size

The maximum length of the returned data. `column_size` must be specified only if `column` is `VARCHAR2`. Returned data exceeding `column_size` is truncated to `column_size` characters.

## Examples

The following shows how the `empno`, `ename`, `hiredate`, `sal`, and `comm` columns of the `emp` table are defined with the `DEFINE_COLUMN` procedure.

```

DECLARE
    curid      INTEGER;
    v_empno    NUMBER(4);
    v_ename    VARCHAR2(10);
    v_hiredate DATE;
    v_sal      NUMBER(7,2);
    v_comm     NUMBER(7,2);
    v_sql      VARCHAR2(50) := 'SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, ' ||
                                'comm FROM emp';
    v_status   INTEGER;
BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    DBMS_SQLPARSE(curid,v_sql,DBMS_SQL.native);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,1,v_empno);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,2,v_ename,10);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,3,v_hiredate);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,4,v_sal);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,5,v_comm);

    .
    .

END;
```

The following shows an alternative to the prior example that produces the exact same results. Note that the lengths of the data types are irrelevant – the `empno`, `sal`, and `comm` columns will still return data equivalent to `NUMBER(4)` and `NUMBER(7,2)`, respectively, even though `v_num` is defined as `NUMBER(1)` (assuming the declarations in the `COLUMN_VALUE` procedure are of the appropriate maximum sizes). The `ename` column will return data up to ten characters in length as defined by the `length` parameter in the `DEFINE_COLUMN` call, not by the data type declaration, `VARCHAR2(1)` declared for `v_varchar`. The actual size of the returned data is dictated by the `COLUMN_VALUE` procedure.

```

DECLARE
    curid      INTEGER;
    v_num      NUMBER(1);
    v_varchar  VARCHAR2(1);
    v_date     DATE;
    v_sql      VARCHAR2(50) := 'SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, ' ||
                                'comm FROM emp';
```

```

v_status      INTEGER;
BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    DBMS_SQLPARSE(curid,v_sql,DBMS_SQL.native);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,1,v_num);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,2,v_varchar,10);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,3,v_date);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,4,v_num);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,5,v_num);
    .
    .
    .
END;
```

#### 4.2.17.9 DEFINE\_COLUMN\_CHAR

The `DEFINE_COLUMN_CHAR` procedure defines a `CHAR` column or expression in the `SELECT` list that is to be returned and retrieved in a cursor.

```
DEFINE_COLUMN_CHAR(<c> INTEGER, <position> INTEGER, <column>
CHAR, <column_size> INTEGER)
```

##### Parameters

`c`

Cursor id of the cursor associated with the `SELECT` command.

`position`

Position of the column or expression in the `SELECT` list that is being defined.

`column`

A `CHAR` variable.

`column_size`

The maximum length of the returned data. Returned data exceeding `column_size` is truncated to `column_size` characters.

#### 4.2.17.10 DEFINE\_COLUMN\_RAW

The `DEFINE_COLUMN_RAW` procedure defines a `RAW` column or expression in the `SELECT` list that is to be returned and retrieved in a cursor.

```
DEFINE_COLUMN_RAW(<c> INTEGER, <position> INTEGER, <column> RAW,
```

```
<column_size> INTEGER)
```

## Parameters

c

Cursor id of the cursor associated with the `SELECT` command.

position

Position of the column or expression in the `SELECT` list that is being defined.

column

A `RAW` variable.

column\_size

The maximum length of the returned data. Returned data exceeding `column_size` is truncated to `column_size` characters.

## DEFINE\_COLUMN\_LONG

The `DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG` procedure defines a long column for a `SELECT` cursor.

```
DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG(<c> INTEGER, <position> INTEGER)
```

## Parameters

c

Cursor id of the cursor for a row defined to be selected.

position

Position of the column in a row that is being defined.

## Examples

The following example shows an anonymous block that defines a long column in the `SELECT` list using `DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG` procedure and returns a part of the `LONG` column value into a variable using procedure `COLUMN_VALUE_LONG`.

```
DECLARE
    curid      INTEGER;
    v_ename    VARCHAR(20);
    sql_stmt   VARCHAR2(50) := 'SELECT ename ' || ' FROM emp WHERE empno
                           = 7844';
    v_status   INTEGER;
    v_length   INTEGER;
BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    DBMS_SQLPARSE(curid, sql_stmt, DBMS_SQL.native);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG(curid, 1);
    v_status := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(curid);
    v_status := DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS(curid);
    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE_LONG(curid, 1, 7, 0, v_ename, v_length);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('ename: ' || v_ename || ' & length: ' || v_length);
```

```
DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;
```

ename: TURNER & length: 6

## 4.2.17.11 DESCRIBE COLUMNS

The **DESCRIBE\_COLUMNS** procedure describes the columns returned by a cursor.

```
DESCRIBE_COLUMNS(<c> INTEGER, <col_cnt> OUT INTEGER, <desc_t> OUT
DESC_TAB);
```

### Parameters

c

The cursor ID of the cursor.

col\_cnt

The number of columns in cursor result set.

desc\_tab

The table that contains a description of each column returned by the cursor. The descriptions are of type **DESC\_REC**, and contain the following values:

Column Name	Type
col_type	INTEGER
col_max_len	INTEGER
col_name	VARCHAR2(128)
col_name_len	INTEGER
col_schema_name	VARCHAR2(128)
col_schema_name_len	INTEGER
col_precision	INTEGER
col_scale	INTEGER
col_charsetid	INTEGER
col_charsetform	INTEGER
col_null_ok	BOOLEAN

## 4.2.17.12 EXECUTE

The **EXECUTE** function executes a parsed SQL command or SPL block.

```
<status> INTEGER EXECUTE(<c> INTEGER)
```

## Parameters

C

Cursor ID of the parsed SQL command or SPL block to be executed.

status

Number of rows processed if the SQL command was `DELETE`, `INSERT`, or `UPDATE`. `status` is meaningless for all other commands.

## Examples

The following anonymous block inserts a row into the `dept` table.

```
DECLARE
    curid      INTEGER;
    v_sql      VARCHAR2(50);
    v_status   INTEGER;
BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    v_sql := 'INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50, "HR", "LOS ANGELES")';
    DBMS_SQLPARSE(curid, v_sql, DBMS_SQL.native);
    v_status := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(curid);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Number of rows processed: ' || v_status);
    DBMS_SQLCLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;
```

## 4.2.17.13 EXECUTE\_AND\_FETCH

Function `EXECUTE_AND_FETCH` executes a parsed `SELECT` command and fetches one row.

```
<status> INTEGER EXECUTE_AND_FETCH(<c> INTEGER
[, <exact> BOOLEAN ])
```

## Parameters

C

Cursor id of the cursor for the `SELECT` command to be executed.

exact

If set to `TRUE`, an exception is thrown if the number of rows in the result set is not exactly equal to 1. If set to `FALSE`, no exception is thrown. The default is `FALSE`. A `NO DATA FOUND` exception is thrown if `exact` is `TRUE` and there are no rows in the result set. A `TOO_MANY_ROWS` exception is thrown if `exact` is `TRUE` and there is more than one row in the result set.

status

Returns 1 if a row was successfully fetched, 0 if no rows to fetch. If an exception is thrown, no value is returned.

## Examples

The following stored procedure uses the `EXECUTE_AND_FETCH` function to retrieve one employee using the employee's name. An exception will be thrown if the employee is not found, or there is more than one employee with the same name.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE select_by_name(
    p_ename      emp.ename%TYPE
)
IS
    curid      INTEGER;
    v_empno     emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_hiredate  emp.hiredate%TYPE;
    v_sal       emp.sal%TYPE;
    v_comm      emp.comm%TYPE;
    v_dname     dept.dname%TYPE;
    v_disp_date VARCHAR2(10);
    v_sql       VARCHAR2(120) := 'SELECT empno, hiredate, sal, ' ||
                                'NVL(comm, 0), dname ' ||
                                'FROM emp e, dept d ' ||
                                'WHERE ename = :p_ename ' ||
                                'AND e.deptno = d.deptno';
    v_status    INTEGER;
BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    DBMS_SQLPARSE(curid,v_sql,DBMS_SQL.native);
    DBMS_SQLBIND_VARIABLE(curid,':p_ename',UPPER(p_ename));
    DBMS_SQLDEFINE_COLUMN(curid,1,v_empno);
    DBMS_SQLDEFINE_COLUMN(curid,2,v_hiredate);
    DBMS_SQLDEFINE_COLUMN(curid,3,v_sal);
    DBMS_SQLDEFINE_COLUMN(curid,4,v_comm);
    DBMS_SQLDEFINE_COLUMN(curid,5,v_dname,14);
    v_status := DBMS_SQLEXECUTE_AND_FETCH(curid,TRUE);
    DBMS_SQLCOLUMN_VALUE(curid,1,v_empno);
    DBMS_SQLCOLUMN_VALUE(curid,2,v_hiredate);
    DBMS_SQLCOLUMN_VALUE(curid,3,v_sal);
    DBMS_SQLCOLUMN_VALUE(curid,4,v_comm);
    DBMS_SQLCOLUMN_VALUE(curid,5,v_dname);
    v_disp_date := TO_CHAR(v_hiredate, 'MM/DD/YYYY');
    DBMS_OUTPUTPUT_LINE('Number : ' || v_empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUTPUT_LINE('Name : ' || UPPER(p_ename));
    DBMS_OUTPUTPUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || v_disp_date);
    DBMS_OUTPUTPUT_LINE('Salary : ' || v_sal);
    DBMS_OUTPUTPUT_LINE('Commission: ' || v_comm);
    DBMS_OUTPUTPUT_LINE('Department: ' || v_dname);
    DBMS_SQLCLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
EXCEPTION
    WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUTPUT_LINE('Employee ' || p_ename || ' not found');
        DBMS_SQLCLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
    WHEN TOO_MANY_ROWS THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUTPUT_LINE('Too many employees named, ' ||
                            p_ename || ', found');
        DBMS_SQLCLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUTPUT_LINE('The following is SQLERRM:');
        DBMS_OUTPUTPUT_LINE(SQLERRM);
        DBMS_OUTPUTPUT_LINE('The following is SQLCODE:');

```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLCODE);
DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;

EXEC select_by_name('MARTIN')

```

Number : 7654  
Name : MARTIN  
Hire Date : 09/28/1981  
Salary : 1250  
Commission: 1400  
Department: SALES

## 4.2.17.14      FETCH\_ROWS

The **FETCH\_ROWS** function retrieves a row from a cursor.

```
<status> INTEGER FETCH_ROWS(<c> INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

**c**

Cursor ID of the cursor from which to fetch a row.

**status**

Returns **1** if a row was successfully fetched, **0** if no more rows to fetch.

### Examples

The following examples fetches the rows from the **emp** table and displays the results.

```

DECLARE
    curid      INTEGER;
    v_empno    NUMBER(4);
    v_ename    VARCHAR2(10);
    v_hiredate DATE;
    v_sal      NUMBER(7,2);
    v_comm     NUMBER(7,2);
    v_sql      VARCHAR2(50) := 'SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, ' ||
                                'comm FROM emp';
    v_status   INTEGER;
BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    DBMS_SQLPARSE(curid,v_sql,DBMS_SQL.native);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,1,v_empno);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,2,v_ename,10);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,3,v_hiredate);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,4,v_sal);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,5,v_comm);

```

```

v_status := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(curid);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME      HIREDATE  SAL      COMM');
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- ----- ----- ----- -----');
LOOP
  v_status := DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS(curid);
  EXIT WHEN v_status = 0;
  DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,1,v_empno);
  DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,2,v_ename);
  DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,3,v_hiredate);
  DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,4,v_sal);
  DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,4,v_sal);
  DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,5,v_comm);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' || RPAD(v_ename,10) || ' ' ||
    TO_CHAR(v_hiredate,'yyyy-mm-dd') || ' ' ||
    TO_CHAR(v_sal,'9,999.99') || ' ' ||
    TO_CHAR(NVL(v_comm,0),'9,999.99'));
END LOOP;
DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;

```

EMPNO	ENAME	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM
7369	SMITH	1980-12-17	800.00	.00
7499	ALLEN	1981-02-20	1,600.00	300.00
7521	WARD	1981-02-22	1,250.00	500.00
7566	JONES	1981-04-02	2,975.00	.00
7654	MARTIN	1981-09-28	1,250.00	1,400.00
7698	BLAKE	1981-05-01	2,850.00	.00
7782	CLARK	1981-06-09	2,450.00	.00
7788	SCOTT	1987-04-19	3,000.00	.00
7839	KING	1981-11-17	5,000.00	.00
7844	TURNER	1981-09-08	1,500.00	.00
7876	ADAMS	1987-05-23	1,100.00	.00
7900	JAMES	1981-12-03	950.00	.00
7902	FORD	1981-12-03	3,000.00	.00
7934	MILLER	1982-01-23	1,300.00	.00

## 4.2.17.15 IS\_OPEN

The **IS\_OPEN** function provides the capability to test if the given cursor is open.

```
<status> BOOLEAN IS_OPEN(<c> INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

c

Cursor ID of the cursor to be tested.

status

Set to **TRUE** if the cursor is open, set to **FALSE** if the cursor is not open.

## 4.2.17.16 LAST\_ROW\_COUNT

The **LAST\_ROW\_COUNT** function returns the number of rows that have been currently fetched.

```
<rowcnt> INTEGER LAST_ROW_COUNT
```

### Parameters

**rowcnt**

Number of row fetched thus far.

### Examples

The following example uses the **LAST\_ROW\_COUNT** function to display the total number of rows fetched in the query.

```
DECLARE
    curid      sINTEGER;
    v_empno    NUMBER(4);
    v_ename    VARCHAR2(10);
    v_hiredate DATE;
    v_sal      NUMBER(7,2);
    v_comm     NUMBER(7,2);
    v_sql      VARCHAR2(50) := 'SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, ' ||
                                'comm FROM emp';
    v_status   INTEGER;
BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    DBMS_SQLPARSE(curid,v_sql,DBMS_SQL.native);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,1,v_empno);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,2,v_ename,10);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,3,v_hiredate);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,4,v_sal);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid,5,v_comm);

    v_status := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(curid);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO ENAME      HIREDATE SAL      COMM');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ');
    LOOP
        v_status := DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS(curid);
        EXIT WHEN v_status = 0;
        DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,1,v_empno);
        DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,2,v_ename);
        DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,3,v_hiredate);
        DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,4,v_sal);
        DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,4,v_sal);
        DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid,5,v_comm);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' || RPAD(v_ename,10) || ' ' ||
```

```

        TO_CHAR(v_hiredate,'yyyy-mm-dd') || ' ' ||
        TO_CHAR(v_sal,'9,999.99') || ' ' ||
        TO_CHAR(NVL(v_comm,0),'9,999.99'));
    END LOOP;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Number of rows: ' || DBMS_SQL.LAST_ROW_COUNT);
    DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;

```

EMPNO	ENAME	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM
7369	SMITH	1980-12-17	800.00	.00
7499	ALLEN	1981-02-20	1,600.00	300.00
7521	WARD	1981-02-22	1,250.00	500.00
7566	JONES	1981-04-02	2,975.00	.00
7654	MARTIN	1981-09-28	1,250.00	1,400.00
7698	BLAKE	1981-05-01	2,850.00	.00
7782	CLARK	1981-06-09	2,450.00	.00
7788	SCOTT	1987-04-19	3,000.00	.00
7839	KING	1981-11-17	5,000.00	.00
7844	TURNER	1981-09-08	1,500.00	.00
7876	ADAMS	1987-05-23	1,100.00	.00
7900	JAMES	1981-12-03	950.00	.00
7902	FORD	1981-12-03	3,000.00	.00
7934	MILLER	1982-01-23	1,300.00	.00

Number of rows: 14

## LAST\_ERROR\_POSITION

The `LAST_ERROR_POSITION` function returns an `INTEGER` value indicating the byte offset in the SQL statement text where the error occurred. The error position of the first character in the SQL statement is at `1`.

```
LAST_ERROR_POSITION RETURN INTEGER;
```

### Examples

The following example demonstrates an anonymous block that returns an error position with the `LAST_ERROR_POSITION` function.

```

DECLARE
    curid      INTEGER;
    sql_stmt   VARCHAR2(50) := 'SELECT empno FROM not_exist_table';
    v_position INTEGER;
BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    DBMS_SQLPARSE(curid, sql_stmt, DBMS_SQL.native);
EXCEPTION WHEN OTHERS THEN
    v_position := DBMS_SQL.LAST_ERROR_POSITION;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('error position = ' || v_position);
    DBMS_SQL CLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;

```

error position = 19

## 4.2.17.17 OPEN\_CURSOR

The `OPEN_CURSOR` function creates a new cursor. A cursor must be used to parse and execute any dynamic SQL statement. Once a cursor has been opened, it can be re-used with the same or different SQL statements. The cursor does not have to be closed and re-opened in order to be re-used.

```
<c> INTEGER OPEN_CURSOR
```

### Parameters

c

Cursor ID number associated with the newly created cursor.

### Examples

The following example creates a new cursor:

```
DECLARE
    curid      INTEGER;
BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    .
    .
END;
```

## 4.2.17.18 PARSE

The `PARSE` procedure parses a SQL command or SPL block. If the SQL command is a DDL command, it is immediately executed and does not require running the `EXECUTE` function.

```
PARSE(<c> INTEGER, <statement> VARCHAR2, <language_flag> INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

c

Cursor ID of an open cursor.

statement

SQL command or SPL block to be parsed. A SQL command must not end with the semi-colon terminator, however an SPL block does require the semi-colon terminator.

language\_flag

Language flag provided for compatibility with Oracle syntax. Use `DBMS_SQL.V6`, `DBMS_SQL.V7` or `DBMS_SQL.native`. This flag is ignored, and all syntax is assumed to be in EDB Advanced Server form.

### Examples

The following anonymous block creates a table named, `job`. Note that DDL statements are executed immediately by the `PARSE` procedure and do not require a separate `EXECUTE` step.

```
DECLARE
    curid      INTEGER;
BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    DBMS_SQLPARSE(curid, 'CREATE TABLE job (jobno NUMBER(3), ' ||
        'jname VARCHAR2(9))',DBMS_SQL.native);
    DBMS_SQLCLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;
```

The following inserts two rows into the `job` table.

```
DECLARE
    curid      INTEGER;
    v_sql      VARCHAR2(50);
    v_status   INTEGER;
BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    v_sql := 'INSERT INTO job VALUES (100, "ANALYST")';
    DBMS_SQLPARSE(curid, v_sql, DBMS_SQL.native);
    v_status := DBMS_SQLEXECUTE(curid);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Number of rows processed: ' || v_status);
    v_sql := 'INSERT INTO job VALUES (200, "CLERK")';
    DBMS_SQLPARSE(curid, v_sql, DBMS_SQL.native);
    v_status := DBMS_SQLEXECUTE(curid);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Number of rows processed: ' || v_status);
    DBMS_SQLCLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;
```

Number of rows processed: 1

Number of rows processed: 1

The following anonymous block uses the `DBMS_SQL` package to execute a block containing two `INSERT` statements. Note that the end of the block contains a terminating semi-colon, while in the prior example, each individual `INSERT` statement does not have a terminating semi-colon.

```
DECLARE
    curid      INTEGER;
    v_sql      VARCHAR2(100);
    v_status   INTEGER;
BEGIN
    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    v_sql := 'BEGIN ' ||
        'INSERT INTO job VALUES (300, "MANAGER"); ' ||
        'INSERT INTO job VALUES (400, "SALESMAN"); ' ||
        'END;';
    DBMS_SQLPARSE(curid, v_sql, DBMS_SQL.native);
    v_status := DBMS_SQLEXECUTE(curid);
    DBMS_SQLCLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;
```

## 4.2.18 DBMS.Utility

The `DBMS.Utility` package provides support for the following various utility programs:

Function/Procedure	Function or Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>ANALYZE DATABASE(method [, estimate_rows [, estimate_percent [, method_opt ]]])</code>	Procedure	n/a	Analyze database tables.
<code>ANALYZE PART OBJECT(schema, object_name [, object_type [, command_type [, command_opt [, sample_clause ]]]])</code>	Procedure	n/a	Analyze a partitioned table.
<code>ANALYZE SCHEMA(schema, method [, estimate_rows [, estimate_percent [, method_opt ]]])</code>	Procedure	n/a	Analyze schema tables.
<code>CANONICALIZE(name, canon_name OUT, canon_len)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Canonicalizes a string – e.g., strips off white space.
<code>COMMA_TO_TABLE(list, tablen OUT, tab OUT)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Convert a comma-delimited list of names to a table of names.
<code>DB_VERSION(version OUT, compatibility OUT)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Get the database version.
<code>EXEC_DDL_STATEMENT (parse_string)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Execute a DDL statement.
<code>FORMAT_CALL_STACK</code>	Function	TEXT	Formats the current call stack.
<code>GET_CPU_TIME</code>	Function	NUMBER	Get the current CPU time.
<code>GET_DEPENDENCY(type, schema, name)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Get objects that are dependent upon the given object..
<code>GET_HASH_VALUE(name, base, hash_size)</code>	Function	NUMBER	Compute a hash value.
<code>GET_PARAMETER_VALUE(parnam, intval OUT, strval OUT)</code>	Procedure	BINARY_INTEGER	Get database initialization parameter settings.
<code>GET_TIME</code>	Function	NUMBER	Get the current time.
<code>NAME_TOKENIZE(name, a OUT, b OUT, c OUT, dblink OUT, nextpos OUT)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Parse the given name into its component parts.
<code>TABLE_TO_COMMA(tab, tablen OUT, list OUT)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Convert a table of names to a comma-delimited list.

Advanced Server's implementation of `DBMS.Utility` is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those functions and procedures listed in the table above are supported.

The following table lists the public variables available in the `DBMS.Utility` package.

Public Variables	Data Type	Value	Description
<code>inv_error_on_restrictions</code>	<code>PLS_INTEGER</code>	<code>1</code>	Used by the <code>INVALIDATE</code> procedure.
<code>Iname_array</code>	<code>TABLE</code>		For lists of long names.
<code>uncl_array</code>	<code>TABLE</code>		For lists of users and names.

## LNAME\_ARRAY

The `LNAME_ARRAY` is for storing lists of long names including fully-qualified names.

```
TYPE Iname_array IS `TABLE OF VARCHAR2(4000) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

## UNCL\_ARRAY

The `UNCL_ARRAY` is for storing lists of users and names.

```
TYPE uncl_array IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(227) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

## ANALYZE\_DATABASE, ANALYZE\_SCHEMA and ANALYZE\_PART\_OBJECT

The `ANALYZE_DATABASE()`, `ANALYZE_SCHEMA()` and `ANALYZE_PART_OBJECT()` procedures provide the capability to gather statistics on tables in the database. When you execute the `ANALYZE` statement, Postgres samples the data in a table and records distribution statistics in the `pg_statistics` system table.

`ANALYZE_DATABASE`, `ANALYZE_SCHEMA`, and `ANALYZE_PART_OBJECT` differ primarily in the number of tables that are processed:

- `ANALYZE DATABASE` analyzes all tables in all schemas within the current database.
- `ANALYZE SCHEMA` analyzes all tables in a given schema (within the current database).
- `ANALYZE_PART_OBJECT` analyzes a single table.

The syntax for the `ANALYZE` commands are:

```
ANALYZE_DATABASE(<method> VARCHAR2 [, <estimate_rows> NUMBER  
[, <estimate_percent> NUMBER [, <method_opt> VARCHAR2 ]]])
```

```
ANALYZE_SCHEMA(<schema> VARCHAR2, <method> VARCHAR2  
[, <estimate_rows> NUMBER [, <estimate_percent> NUMBER  
[, <method_opt> VARCHAR2 ]]])
```

```
ANALYZE_PART_OBJECT(<schema> VARCHAR2, <object_name> VARCHAR2  
[, <object_type> CHAR [, <command_type> CHAR  
[, <command_opt> VARCHAR2 [, <sample_clause> ]]]])
```

**Parameters** - `ANALYZE_DATABASE` and `ANALYZE_SCHEMA`

### method

method determines whether the `ANALYZE` procedure populates the `pg_statistics` table or removes entries from the `pg_statistics` table. If you specify a method of `DELETE`, the `ANALYZE` procedure removes the relevant rows from `pg_statistics`. If you specify a method of `COMPUTE` or `ESTIMATE`, the `ANALYZE`

procedure analyzes a table (or multiple tables) and records the distribution information in `pg_statistics`. There is no difference between `COMPUTE` and `ESTIMATE`; both methods execute the Postgres `ANALYZE` statement. All other parameters are validated and then ignored.

#### `estimate_rows`

Number of rows upon which to base estimated statistics. One of `estimate_rows` or `estimate_percent` must be specified if method is `ESTIMATE`.

This argument is ignored, but is included for compatibility.

#### `estimate_percent`

Percentage of rows upon which to base estimated statistics. One of `estimate_rows` or `estimate_percent` must be specified if method is `ESTIMATE`.

This argument is ignored, but is included for compatibility.

#### `method_opt`

Object types to be analyzed. Any combination of the following:

[ FOR TABLE ]

[ FOR ALL [ INDEXED ] COLUMNS ] [ SIZE n ]

[ FOR ALL INDEXES ]

This argument is ignored, but is included for compatibility.

### Parameters - `ANALYZE_PART_OBJECT`

#### `schema`

Name of the schema whose objects are to be analyzed.

#### `object_name`

Name of the partitioned object to be analyzed.

#### `object_type`

Type of object to be analyzed. Valid values are: `T` – table, `I` – index.

This argument is ignored, but is included for compatibility.

#### `command_type`

Type of analyze functionality to perform. Valid values are: `E` - gather estimated statistics based upon a specified number of rows or a percentage of rows in the `sample_clause` clause; `C` - compute exact statistics; or `V` – validate the structure and integrity of the partitions.

This argument is ignored, but is included for compatibility.

#### `command_opt`

For `command_type` `C` or `E`, can be any combination of:

[ FOR TABLE ]

[ FOR ALL COLUMNS ]

## [ FOR ALL LOCAL INDEXES ]

For `command_type` V, can be `CASCADE` if `object_type` is T.

This argument is ignored, but is included for compatibility.

### sample\_clause

If `command_type` is E, contains the following clause to specify the number of rows or percentage or rows on which to base the estimate.

`SAMPLE n { ROWS | PERCENT }`

This argument is ignored, but is included for compatibility.

## CANONICALIZE

The `CANONICALIZE` procedure performs the following operations on an input string:

- If the string is not double-quoted, verifies that it uses the characters of a legal identifier. If not, an exception is thrown. If the string is double-quoted, all characters are allowed.
- If the string is not double-quoted and does not contain periods, uppercases all alphabetic characters and eliminates leading and trailing spaces.
- If the string is double-quoted and does not contain periods, strips off the double quotes.
- If the string contains periods and no portion of the string is double-quoted, uppercases each portion of the string and encloses each portion in double quotes.
- If the string contains periods and portions of the string are double-quoted, returns the double-quoted portions unchanged including the double quotes and returns the non-double-quoted portions upercased and enclosed in double quotes.

```
CANONICALIZE(<name> VARCHAR2, <canon_name> OUT VARCHAR2,
<canon_len> BINARY_INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

#### name

String to be canonicalized.

#### canon\_name

The canonicalized string.

#### canon\_len

Number of bytes in `name` to canonicalize starting from the first character.

### Examples

The following procedure applies the `CANONICALIZE` procedure on its input parameter and displays the results.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE canonicalize (
    p_name      VARCHAR2,
    p_length    BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 30
)
IS
    v_canon    VARCHAR2(100);
BEGIN
```

```

DBMS_UTILITY.CANONICALIZE(p_name,v_canon,p_length);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Canonicalized name ==>' || v_canon || '<==');
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Length: ' || LENGTH(v_canon));
EXCEPTION
WHEN OTHERS THEN
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM: ' || SQLERRM);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLCODE: ' || SQLCODE);
END;

EXEC canonicalize('Identifier')
Canonicalized name ==>IDENTIFIER<==
Length: 10

EXEC canonicalize("Identifier")
Canonicalized name ==>Identifier<==
Length: 10

EXEC canonicalize("_+142%")
Canonicalized name ==>_+142%<==
Length: 6

EXEC canonicalize('abc.def.ghi')
Canonicalized name ==>"ABC"."DEF"."GHI"<==
Length: 17

EXEC canonicalize("abc.def.ghi")
Canonicalized name ==>abc.def.ghi<==
Length: 11

EXEC canonicalize("abc".def."ghi")
Canonicalized name ==>"abc"."DEF"."ghi"<==
Length: 17

EXEC canonicalize("abc.def".ghi)
Canonicalized name ==>"abc.def"."GHI"<==
Length: 15

```

## COMMA\_TO\_TABLE

The `COMMA_TO_TABLE` procedure converts a comma-delimited list of names into a table of names. Each entry in the list becomes a table entry. The names must be formatted as valid identifiers.

```
COMMA_TO_TABLE(<list> VARCHAR2, <tablen> OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
<tab> OUT { LNAME_ARRAY | UNCL_ARRAY })
```

### Parameters

`list`

Comma-delimited list of names.

`tablen`

Number of entries in `tab`.

**tab**

Table containing the individual names in [list](#).

**LNAME\_ARRAY**

A [DBMS.Utility LNAME\\_ARRAY](#) (as described in the [LNAME\\_ARRAY](#) section).

**UNCL\_ARRAY**

A [DBMS.Utility UNCL\\_ARRAY](#) (as described in the [UNCL\\_ARRAY](#) section).

**Examples**

The following procedure uses the [COMMA\\_TO\\_TABLE](#) procedure to convert a list of names to a table. The table entries are then displayed.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE comma_to_table (
    p_list      VARCHAR2
)
IS
    r_lname      DBMS_UTILITY.LNAME_ARRAY;
    v_length     BINARY_INTEGER;
BEGIN
    DBMS_UTILITY.COMMA_TO_TABLE(p_list,v_length,r_lname);
    FOR i IN 1..v_length LOOP
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(r_lname(i));
    END LOOP;
END;
```

EXEC comma\_to\_table('edb.dept, edb.emp, edb.jobhist')

edb.dept  
edb.emp  
edb.jobhist

**DB\_VERSION**

The [DB\\_VERSION](#) procedure returns the version number of the database.

**DB\_VERSION(<version> OUT VARCHAR2, <compatibility> OUT VARCHAR2)**

**Parameters****version**

Database version number.

**compatibility**

Compatibility setting of the database. (To be implementation-defined as to its meaning.)

**Examples**

The following anonymous block displays the database version information.

**DECLARE**

```

v_version      VARCHAR2(150);
v_compat       VARCHAR2(150);
BEGIN
  DBMS_UTILITY.DB_VERSION(v_version,v_compat);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Version: ' || v_version);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Compatibility: ' || v_compat);
END;

```

Version: EnterpriseDB 10.0.0 on i686-pc-linux-gnu, compiled by GCC gcc (GCC) 4.1.2 20080704 (Red Hat 4.1.2-48), 32-bit  
 Compatibility: EnterpriseDB 10.0.0 on i686-pc-linux-gnu, compiled by GCC gcc (GCC) 4.1.220080704 (Red Hat 4.1.2-48), 32-bit

## EXEC\_DDL\_STATEMENT

The `EXEC_DDL_STATEMENT` provides the capability to execute a `DDL` command.

```
EXEC_DDL_STATEMENT(<parse_string>) VARCHAR2
```

### Parameters

`parse_string`

The DDL command to be executed.

### Examples

The following anonymous block creates the `job` table.

```

BEGIN
  DBMS_UTILITY.EXEC_DDL_STATEMENT(
    'CREATE TABLE job (' ||
    'jobno NUMBER(3,' ||
    'jname VARCHAR2(9))'
  );
END;

```

If the `parse_string` does not include a valid DDL statement, Advanced Server returns the following error:

```
edb=# exec dbms_utility.exec_ddl_statement('select rownum from dual');
ERROR: EDB-20001: 'parse_string' must be a valid DDL statement
```

In this case, Advanced Server's behavior differs from Oracle's; Oracle accepts the invalid `parse_string` without complaint.

## FORMAT\_CALL\_STACK

The `FORMAT_CALL_STACK` function returns the formatted contents of the current call stack.

```
DBMS_UTILITY.FORMAT_CALL_STACK
return VARCHAR2
```

This function can be used in a stored procedure, function or package to return the current call stack in a readable format. This function is useful for debugging purposes.

## GET\_CPU\_TIME

The `GET_CPU_TIME` function returns the CPU time in hundredths of a second from some arbitrary point in time.

```
<cputime> NUMBER GET_CPU_TIME
```

### Parameters

`cputime`

Number of hundredths of a second of CPU time.

### Examples

The following `SELECT` command retrieves the current CPU time, which is 603 hundredths of a second or .0603 seconds.

```
SELECT DBMS_UTILITY.GET_CPU_TIME FROM DUAL;
```

`get_cpu_time`

```
-----  
603
```

## GET\_DEPENDENCY

The `GET_DEPENDENCY` procedure provides the capability to list the objects that are dependent upon the specified object. `GET_DEPENDENCY` does not show dependencies for functions or procedures.

```
GET_DEPENDENCY(<type> VARCHAR2, <schema> VARCHAR2,  
<name> VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

`type`

Name of the object type of `name`. Valid values are `INDEX`, `PACKAGE`, `PACKAGE BODY`, `SEQUENCE`, `TABLE`, `TRIGGER`, `TYPE` and `VIEW`.

`schema`

Name of the schema in which `name` exists.

`name`

Name of the object for which dependencies are to be obtained.

### Examples

The following anonymous block finds dependencies on the `EMP` table.

```
BEGIN  
  DBMS_UTILITY.GET_DEPENDENCY('TABLE','public','EMP');  
END;
```

`DEPENDENCIES ON public.EMP`

```
-----  
*TABLE public.EMP()
```

```
* CONSTRAINT c public.emp()
* CONSTRAINT f public.emp()
* CONSTRAINT p public.emp()
* TYPE public.emp()
* CONSTRAINT c public.emp()
* CONSTRAINT f public.jobhist()
* VIEW .empname_view()
```

## GET\_HASH\_VALUE

The `GET_HASH_VALUE` function provides the capability to compute a hash value for a given string.

```
<hash> NUMBER GET_HASH_VALUE(<name> VARCHAR2, <base> NUMBER,
<hash_size> NUMBER)
```

### Parameters

`name`

The string for which a hash value is to be computed.

`base`

Starting value at which hash values are to be generated.

`hash_size`

The number of hash values for the desired hash table.

`hash`

The generated hash value.

### Examples

The following anonymous block creates a table of hash values using the `ename` column of the `emp` table and then displays the key along with the hash value. The hash values start at 100 with a maximum of 1024 distinct values.

```
DECLARE
    v_hash      NUMBER;
    TYPE hash_tab IS TABLE OF NUMBER INDEX BY VARCHAR2(10);
    r_hash      HASH_TAB;
    CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT ename FROM emp;
BEGIN
    FOR r_emp IN emp_cur LOOP
        r_hash(r_emp.ename) :=
            DBMS.Utility.GET_HASH_VALUE(r_emp.ename,100,1024);
    END LOOP;
    FOR r_emp IN emp_cur LOOP
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(RPAD(r_emp.ename,10) || ' ' ||
            r_hash(r_emp.ename));
    END LOOP;
END;
```

SMITH 377

ALLEN	740
WARD	718
JONES	131
MARTIN	176
BLAKE	568
CLARK	621
SCOTT	1097
KING	235
TURNER	850
ADAMS	156
JAMES	942
FORD	775
MILLER	148

## GET\_PARAMETER\_VALUE

The `GET_PARAMETER_VALUE` procedure provides the capability to retrieve database initialization parameter settings.

```
<status> BINARY_INTEGER GET_PARAMETER_VALUE(<parnam> VARCHAR2,
<intval> OUT INTEGER, <strval> OUT VARCHAR2)``
```

### Parameters

`parnam`

Name of the parameter whose value is to be returned. The parameters are listed in the `pg_settings` system view.

`intval`

Value of an integer parameter or the length of `strval`.

`strval`

Value of a string parameter.

`status`

Returns 0 if the parameter value is `INTEGER` or `BOOLEAN`. Returns 1 if the parameter value is a string.

### Examples

The following anonymous block shows the values of two initialization parameters.

```
DECLARE
  v_intval  INTEGER;
  v_strval  VARCHAR2(80);
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('max_fsm_pages' || ':' || v_intval);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('client_encoding' || ':' || v_strval);
END;
```

max\_fsm\_pages: 72625

```
client_encoding: SQL_ASCII
```

## GET\_TIME

The `GET_TIME` function provides the capability to return the current time in hundredths of a second.

```
<time> NUMBER GET_TIME
```

### Parameters

`time`

Number of hundredths of a second from the time in which the program is started.

### Examples

The following example shows calls to the `GET_TIME` function.

```
SELECT DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME FROM DUAL;
```

`get_time`

-----  
1555860

```
SELECT DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME FROM DUAL;
```

`get_time`

-----  
1556037

## NAME\_TOKENIZE

The `NAME_TOKENIZE` procedure parses a name into its component parts. Names without double quotes are uppercased. The double quotes are stripped from names with double quotes.

```
NAME_TOKENIZE(<name> VARCHAR2, <a> OUT VARCHAR2,
<b> OUT VARCHAR2, <c> OUT VARCHAR2, <dblink> OUT VARCHAR2,
<nextpos> OUT BINARY_INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

`name`

String containing a name in the following format:

`a[.b[.c]][@dblink]`

`a`

Returns the leftmost component.

`b`

Returns the second component, if any.

C

Returns the third component, if any.

`dblink`

Returns the database link name.

`nextpos`

Position of the last character parsed in name.

## Examples

The following stored procedure is used to display the returned parameter values of the `NAME_TOKENIZE` procedure for various names.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE name_tokenize (
    p_name      VARCHAR2
)
IS
    v_a      VARCHAR2(30);
    v_b      VARCHAR2(30);
    v_c      VARCHAR2(30);
    v_dblink  VARCHAR2(30);
    v_nextpos BINARY_INTEGER;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('name : ' || p_name);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('a   : ' || v_a);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('b   : ' || v_b);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('c   : ' || v_c);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('dblink : ' || v_dblink);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('nextpos: ' || v_nextpos);
END;
```

Tokenize the name, `emp`:

```
BEGIN
    name_tokenize('emp');
END;
```

```
name : emp
a   : EMP
b   :
c   :
dblink :
nextpos: 3
```

Tokenize the name, `edb.list_emp` :

```
BEGIN
    name_tokenize('edb.list_emp');
END;
```

```
name : edb.list_emp
a   : EDB
```

```
b    : LIST_EMP
c    :
dblink :
nextpos: 12
```

Tokenize the name, "edb"."Emp\_Admin".update\_emp\_sal :

```
BEGIN
  name_tokenize("edb"."Emp_Admin".update_emp_sal);
END;

name  :"edb"."Emp_Admin".update_emp_sal
a    :edb
b    :Emp_Admin
c    :UPDATE_EMP_SAL
dblink :
nextpos: 32
```

Tokenize the name `edb.emp@edb_dblink`:

```
BEGIN
  name_tokenize('edb.emp@edb_dblink');
END;

name  :edb.emp@edb_dblink
a    :EDB
b    :EMP
c    :
dblink :EDB_DBLINK
nextpos: 18
```

## TABLE\_TO\_COMMA

The `TABLE_TO_COMMA` procedure converts table of names into a comma-delimited list of names. Each table entry becomes a list entry. The names must be formatted as valid identifiers.

```
TABLE_TO_COMMA(<tab> { LNAME_ARRAY | UNCL_ARRAY },
<tablen> OUT BINARY_INTEGER, <list> OUT VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

`tab`

Table containing names.

`LNAME_ARRAY`

A `DBMS.Utility LNAME_ARRAY` (as described in the [LNAME ARRAY](#) section).

`UNCL_ARRAY`

A `DBMS.Utility UNCL_ARRAY` (as described the [UNCL\\_ARRAY](#) section).

`tablen`

Number of entries in `list`.

## list

Comma-delimited list of names from `tab`.

### Examples

The following example first uses the `COMMA_TO_TABLE` procedure to convert a comma-delimited list to a table. The `TABLE_TO_COMMA` procedure then converts the table back to a comma-delimited list that is displayed.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE table_to_comma (
    p_list      VARCHAR2
)
IS
    r_lname     DBMS_UTILITY.LNAME_ARRAY;
    v_length    BINARY_INTEGER;
    v_listlen   BINARY_INTEGER;
    v_list      VARCHAR2(80);
BEGIN
    DBMS_UTILITY.COMMA_TO_TABLE(p_list,v_length,r_lname);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Table Entries');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');
    FOR i IN 1..v_length LOOP
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(r_lname(i));
    END LOOP;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');
    DBMS_UTILITY.TABLE_TO_COMMA(r_lname,v_listlen,v_list);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Comma-Delimited List: ' || v_list);
END;

EXEC table_to_comma('edb.dept,edb.emp,edb.jobhist')
```

Table Entries

-----  
edb.dept  
edb.emp  
edb.jobhist

-----  
Comma-Delimited List: edb.dept, edb.emp, edb.jobhist

## 4.2.19 UTL\_ENCODE

The `UTL_ENCODE` package provides a way to encode and decode data. Advanced Server supports the following functions and procedures:

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>BASE64_DECODE(r)</code>	<code>RAW</code>	Use the <code>BASE64_DECODE</code> function to translate a Base64 encoded string to the original <code>RAW</code> value.
<code>BASE64_ENCODE(r)</code>	<code>RAW</code>	Use the <code>BASE64_ENCODE</code> function to translate a <code>RAW</code> string to an encoded Base64 value.
<code>BASE64_ENCODE(l oid)</code>	<code>TEXT</code>	Use the <code>BASE64_ENCODE</code> function to translate a <code>TEXT</code> string to an encoded Base64 value.

MIMEHEADER_DECODE(buf)	VARCHAR2	Use the <code>MIMEHEADER DECODE</code> function to translate an encoded <code>MIMEHEADER</code> formatted string to it's original value.
MIMEHEADER_ENCODE(buf, encode_charset, encoding)	VARCHAR2	Use the <code>MIMEHEADER ENCODE</code> function to convert and encode a string in <code>MIMEHEADER</code> format.
QUOTED_PRINTABLE_DECODE(r)	RAW	Use the <code>QUOTED_PRINTABLE DECODE</code> function to translate an encoded string to a <code>RAW</code> value.
QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ENCODE(r)	RAW	Use the <code>QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ENCODE</code> function to translate an input string to a quoted-printable formatted <code>RAW</code> value.
TEXT_DECODE(buf, encode_charset, encoding)	VARCHAR2	Use the <code>TEXT DECODE</code> function to decode a string encoded by <code>TEXT_ENCODE</code> .
TEXT_ENCODE(buf, encode_charset, encoding)	VARCHAR2	Use the <code>TEXT_ENCODE</code> function to translate a string to a user-specified character set, and then encode the string.
UUDECODE(r)	RAW	Use the <code>UUDECODE</code> function to translate a uuencode encoded string to a <code>RAW</code> value.
UUENCODE(r, type, filename, permission)	RAW	Use the <code>UUENCODE</code> function to translate a <code>RAW</code> string to an encoded uuencode value.

## 4.2.19.1 BASE64\_DECODE

Use the `BASE64 DECODE` function to translate a Base64 encoded string to the original value originally encoded by `BASE64_ENCODE`. The signature is:

```
BASE64_DECODE (<r> IN RAW)
```

This function returns a `RAW` value.

### Parameters

r

| r is the string that contains the Base64 encoded data that will be translated to `RAW` form.

### Examples

Before executing the following example, invoke the command:

```
SET bytea_output = escape;
```

This command instructs the server to escape any non-printable characters, and to display `BYTEA` or `RAW` values onscreen in readable form. For more information, refer to the Postgres Core Documentation available at:

| <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/datatype-binary.html>

The following example first encodes (using `BASE64_ENCODE`), and then decodes (using `BASE64_DECODE`) a string that contains the text abc:

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.BASE64_ENCODE(CAST ('abc' AS RAW));
base64_encode
-----
YWJj
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.BASE64_DECODE(CAST ('YWJj' AS RAW));
base64_decode
-----
abc
(1 row)
```

## 4.2.19.2 BASE64\_ENCODE

Use the `BASE64_ENCODE` function to translate and encode a string in Base64 format (as described in RFC 4648). This function can be useful when composing `MIME` email that you intend to send using the `UTL_SMTP` package. The `BASE64_ENCODE` function has two signatures:

`BASE64_ENCODE(<r> IN RAW)`

and

`BASE64_ENCODE(<loid> IN OID)`

This function returns a `RAW` value or an `OID`.

### Parameters

`r`

`r` specifies the `RAW` string that will be translated to Base64.

`loid`

`loid` specifies the object ID of a large object that will be translated to Base64.

### Examples

Before executing the following example, invoke the command:

`SET bytea_output = escape;`

This command instructs the server to escape any non-printable characters, and to display `BYTEA` or `RAW` values onscreen in readable form. For more information, refer to the Postgres Core Documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/datatype-binary.html>

The following example first encodes (using `BASE64_ENCODE`), and then decodes (using `BASE64_DECODE`) a string that contains the text `abc`:

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.BASE64_ENCODE(CAST ('abc' AS RAW));
base64_encode
-----
YWJj
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.BASE64_DECODE(CAST ('YWJj' AS RAW));
base64_decode
```

```
-----
abc
(1 row)
```

### 4.2.19.3 MIMEHEADER\_DECODE

Use the `MIMEHEADER_DECODE` function to decode values that are encoded by the `MIMEHEADER_ENCODE` function. The signature is:

```
MIMEHEADER_DECODE(<buf> IN VARCHAR2)
```

This function returns a `VARCHAR2` value.

#### Parameters

`buf`

`buf` contains the value (encoded by `MIMEHEADER_ENCODE`) that will be decoded.

#### Examples

The following examples use the `MIMEHEADER_ENCODE` and `MIMEHEADER_DECODE` functions to first encode, and then decode a string:

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.MIMEHEADER_ENCODE('What is the date?') FROM DUAL;
      mimeheader_encode
-----
```

```
=?UTF8?Q?What is the date??=
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.MIMEHEADER_DECODE('=?UTF8?Q?What is the date??=')
FROM DUAL;
      mimeheader_decode
-----
```

```
What is the date?
(1 row)
```

### 4.2.19.4 MIMEHEADER\_ENCODE

Use the `MIMEHEADER_ENCODE` function to convert a string into mime header format, and then encode the string. The signature is:

```
MIMEHEADER_ENCODE(<buf> IN VARCHAR2, <encode_charset> IN VARCHAR2
DEFAULT NULL, <encoding> IN INTEGER DEFAULT NULL)
```

This function returns a `VARCHAR2` value.

## Parameters

`buf`

`buf` contains the string that will be formatted and encoded. The string is a `VARCHAR2` value.

`encode_charset`

`encode_charset` specifies the character set to which the string will be converted before being formatted and encoded. The default value is `NULL`.

`encoding`

`encoding` specifies the encoding type used when encoding the string. You can specify:

- `Q` to enable quoted-printable encoding. If you do not specify a value, `MIMEHEADER_ENCODE` will use quoted-printable encoding.
- `B` to enable base-64 encoding.

## Examples

The following examples use the `MIMEHEADER_ENCODE` and `MIMEHEADER_DECODE` functions to first encode, and then decode a string:

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.MIMEHEADER_ENCODE('What is the date?') FROM DUAL;
      mimeheader_encode
-----
```

```
=?UTF8?Q?What is the date??=
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.MIMEHEADER_DECODE('=?UTF8?Q?What is the date??=')
FROM DUAL;
      mimeheader_decode
-----
```

```
What is the date?
(1 row)
```

## 4.2.19.5 QUOTED\_PRINTABLE\_DECODE

Use the `QUOTED_PRINTABLE_DECODE` function to translate an encoded quoted-printable string into a decoded `RAW` string.

The signature is:

```
QUOTED_PRINTABLE_DECODE(<r> IN RAW)
```

This function returns a `RAW` value.

## Parameters

`r`

`r` contains the encoded string that will be decoded. The string is a `RAW` value, encoded by `QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ENCODE`.

## Examples

Before executing the following example, invoke the command:

```
| SET bytea_output = escape;
```

This command instructs the server to escape any non-printable characters, and to display `BYTEA` or `RAW` values onscreen in readable form. For more information, refer to the Postgres Core Documentation available at:

```
| https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/datatype-binary.html
```

The following example first encodes and then decodes a string:

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ENCODE('E=mc2') FROM DUAL;
quoted_printable_encode
```

```
-----
E=3Dmc2
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.QUOTED_PRINTABLE_DECODE('E=3Dmc2') FROM DUAL;
quoted_printable_decode
```

```
-----
E=mc2
(1 row)
```

### 4.2.19.6 QUOTED\_PRINTABLE\_ENCODE

Use the `QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ENCODE` function to translate and encode a string in quoted-printable format. The signature is:

```
QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ENCODE(<r> IN RAW)
```

This function returns a `RAW` value.

#### Parameters

```
r
```

`r` contains the string (a `RAW` value) that will be encoded in a quoted-printable format.

## Examples

Before executing the following example, invoke the command:

```
| SET bytea_output = escape;
```

This command instructs the server to escape any non-printable characters, and to display `BYTEA` or `RAW` values onscreen in readable form. For more information, refer to the Postgres Core Documentation available at:

```
| https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/datatype-binary.html
```

The following example first encodes and then decodes a string:

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ENCODE('E=mc2') FROM DUAL;
```

```
quoted_printable_encode
-----
```

```
E=3Dmc2
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.QUOTED_PRINTABLE_DECODE('E=3Dmc2') FROM DUAL;
quoted_printable_decode
-----
```

```
E=mc2
(1 row)
```

## 4.2.19.7 TEXT\_DECODE

Use the `TEXT_DECODE` function to translate and decode an encoded string to the `VARCHAR2` value that was originally encoded by the `TEXT_ENCODE` function. The signature is:

```
TEXT_DECODE(<buf> IN VARCHAR2, <encode_charset> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT
NULL, <encoding> IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL)
```

This function returns a `VARCHAR2` value.

### Parameters

`buf`

`buf` contains the encoded string that will be translated to the original value encoded by `TEXT_ENCODE`.

`encode_charset`

`encode_charset` specifies the character set to which the string will be translated before encoding. The default value is `NULL`.

`encoding`

`encoding` specifies the encoding type used by `TEXT_DECODE`. Specify:

- `UTL_ENCODE.BASE64` to specify base-64 encoding.
- `UTL_ENCODE.QUOTED_PRINTABLE` to specify quoted printable encoding. This is the default.

### Examples

The following example uses the `TEXT_ENCODE` and `TEXT_DECODE` functions to first encode, and then decode a string:

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.TEXT_ENCODE('What is the date?', 'BIG5',
UTL_ENCODE.BASE64) FROM DUAL;
text_encode
-----
```

```
V2hhCBpcyB0aGUgZGF0ZT8=
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.TEXT_DECODE('V2hhCBpcyB0aGUgZGF0ZT8=', 'BIG5',
UTL_ENCODE.BASE64) FROM DUAL;
```

```
text_decode
-----
```

What is the date?  
(1 row)

## 4.2.19.8 TEXT\_ENCODE

Use the `TEXT_ENCODE` function to translate a string to a user-specified character set, and then encode the string. The signature is:

```
TEXT_DECODE(<buf> IN VARCHAR2, <encode_charset> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT
NULL, <encoding> IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL)
```

This function returns a `VARCHAR2` value.

### Parameters

`buf`

`buf` contains the encoded string that will be translated to the specified character set and encoded by `TEXT_ENCODE`.

`encode_charset`

`encode_charset` specifies the character set to which the value will be translated before encoding. The default value is `NULL`.

`encoding`

`encoding` specifies the encoding type used by `TEXT_ENCODE`. Specify:

- `UTL_ENCODE.BASE64` to specify base-64 encoding.
- `UTL_ENCODE.QUOTED_PRINTABLE` to specify quoted printable encoding. This is the default.

### Examples

The following example uses the `TEXT_ENCODE` and `TEXT_DECODE` functions to first encode, and then decode a string:

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.TEXT_ENCODE('What is the date?', 'BIG5',
UTL_ENCODE.BASE64) FROM DUAL;
text_encode
-----
```

V2hhCBpcyB0aGUgZGF0ZT8=
(1 row)

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.TEXT_DECODE('V2hhCBpcyB0aGUgZGF0ZT8=', 'BIG5',
UTL_ENCODE.BASE64) FROM DUAL;
text_decode
-----
```

What is the date?  
(1 row)

## 4.2.19.9 UUDECODE

Use the `UUDECODE` function to translate and decode a uuencode encoded string to the `RAW` value that was originally encoded by the `UUENCODE` function. The signature is:

```
UUDECODE(<r> IN RAW)
```

This function returns a `RAW` value.

If you are using the Advanced Server `UUDECODE` function to decode uuencoded data that was created by the Oracle implementation of the `UTL_ENCODE.UUENCODE` function, then you must first set the Advanced Server configuration parameter `utl_encode.uudecode_redwood` to `TRUE` before invoking the Advanced Server `UUDECODE` function on the Oracle-created data. (For example, this situation may occur if you migrated Oracle tables containing uuencoded data to an Advanced Server database.)

The uuencoded data created by the Oracle version of the `UUENCODE` function results in a format that differs from the uuencoded data created by the Advanced Server `UUENCODE` function. As a result, attempting to use the Advanced Server `UUDECODE` function on the Oracle uuencoded data results in an error unless the configuration parameter `utl_encode.uudecode_redwood` is set to `TRUE`.

However, if you are using the Advanced Server `UUDECODE` function on uuencoded data created by the Advanced Server `UUENCODE` function, then `utl_encode.uudecode_redwood` must be set to `FALSE`, which is the default setting.

### Parameters

`r`

`r` contains the uuencoded string that will be translated to `RAW`.

### Examples

Before executing the following example, invoke the command:

```
SET bytea_output = escape;
```

This command instructs the server to escape any non-printable characters, and to display `BYTEA` or `RAW` values onscreen in readable form. For more information, refer to the Postgres Core Documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/datatype-binary.html>

The following example uses `UUENCODE` and `UUDECODE` to first encode and then decode a string:

```
edb=# SET bytea_output = escape;
SET
edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.UUENCODE('What is the date?') FROM DUAL;
uuencode
-----
begin 0 uuencode.txt\01215VAA="!<R!T:&4@9&%T93\\`\\012`\\012end\\012
(1 row)

edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.UUDECODE
edb-# ('begin 0 uuencode.txt\01215VAA="!<R!T:&4@9&%T93\\`\\012`\\012end\\012')
edb-# FROM DUAL;
uudecode
-----
What is the date?
```

(1 row)

## 4.2.19.10 UUENCODE

Use the `UUENCODE` function to translate `RAW` data into a uuencode formatted encoded string. The signature is:

```
UUENCODE(<r> IN RAW, <type> IN INTEGER DEFAULT 1, <filename> IN
VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL, <permission> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
```

This function returns a `RAW` value.

### Parameters

`r`

`r` contains the `RAW` string that will be translated to uuencode format.

`type`

`type` is an `INTEGER` value or constant that specifies the type of uuencoded string that will be returned; the default value is `1`. The possible values are:

Value	Constant
1	complete
2	header_piece
3	middle_piece
4	end_piece

`filename`

`filename` is a `VARCHAR2` value that specifies the file name that you want to embed in the encoded form; if you do not specify a file name, `UUENCODE` will include a filename of `uuencode.txt` in the encoded form.

`permission`

`permission` is a `VARCHAR2` that specifies the permission mode; the default value is `NULL`.

### Examples

Before executing the following example, invoke the command:

```
SET bytea_output = escape;
```

This command instructs the server to escape any non-printable characters, and to display `BYTEA` or `RAW` values onscreen in readable form. For more information, refer to the Postgres Core Documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/datatype-binary.html>

The following example uses `UUENCODE` and `UUDECODE` to first encode and then decode a string:

```
edb=# SET bytea_output = escape;
SET
```

```

edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.UUENCODE('What is the date?') FROM DUAL;
      uuencode
-----
begin 0 uuencode.txt\01215VAA="!<R!T:&4@9&%T93\\`012`\012end\012
(1 row)

edb=# SELECT UTL_ENCODE.UUDECODE
edb-# ('begin 0 uuencode.txt\01215VAA="!<R!T:&4@9&%T93\\`012`\012end\012')
edb-# FROM DUAL;
      uudecode
-----
What is the date?
(1 row)

```

## 4.2.20 UTL\_FILE

The `UTL_FILE` package provides the capability to read from, and write to files on the operating system's file system. Non-superusers must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the `UTL_FILE` package by a superuser before using any of the functions or procedures in the package. For example the following command grants the privilege to user `mary`:

```
GRANT EXECUTE ON PACKAGE SYS.UTL_FILE TO mary;
```

Also, the operating system username, `enterprisedb`, must have the appropriate read and/or write permissions on the directories and files to be accessed using the `UTL_FILE` functions and procedures. If the required file permissions are not in place, an exception is thrown in the `UTL_FILE` function or procedure.

A handle to the file to be written to, or read from is used to reference the file. The *file handle* is defined by a public variable in the `UTL_FILE` package named, `UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE`. A variable of type `FILE_TYPE` must be declared to receive the file handle returned by calling the `FOPEN` function. The file handle is then used for all subsequent operations on the file.

References to directories on the file system are done using the directory name or alias that is assigned to the directory using the `CREATE DIRECTORY` command.

The procedures and functions available in the `UTL_FILE` package are listed in the following table:

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>FCLOSE(file IN OUT)</code>	n/a	Closes the specified file identified by <code>file</code> .
<code>FCLOSE_ALL</code>	n/a	Closes all open files.
<code>FCOPY(location, filename, dest_dir, dest_file [, start_line [, end_line ]])</code>	n/a	Copies <code>filename</code> in the directory identified by <code>location</code> to file, <code>dest_file</code> , in directory, <code>dest_dir</code> , starting from line, <code>start_line</code> , to line, <code>end_line</code> .
<code>FFLUSH(file)</code>	n/a	Forces data in the buffer to be written to disk in the file identified by <code>file</code> .
<code>FOPEN(location, filename, open_mode [, max_linesize ])</code>	<code>FILE_TYPE</code>	Opens file, <code>filename</code> , in the directory identified by <code>location</code> .
<code>FREMOVE(location, filename)</code>	n/a	Removes the specified file from the file system.
<code>FRENAME(location, filename, dest_dir, dest_file [, overwrite ])</code>	n/a	Renames the specified file.

GET_LINE(file, buffer OUT)	n/a	Reads a line of text into variable, <code>buffer</code> , from the file identified by <code>file</code> .
IS_OPEN(file)	BOOLEAN	Determines whether or not the given file is open.
NEW_LINE(file [, lines ])	n/a	Writes an end-of-line character sequence into the file.
PUT(file, buffer)	n/a	Writes <code>buffer</code> to the given file. <code>PUT</code> does not write an end-of-line character sequence.
PUT_LINE(file, buffer)	n/a	Writes <code>buffer</code> to the given file. An end-of-line character sequence is added by the <code>PUT_LINE</code> procedure.
PUTF(file, format [, arg1 ] [, ...])	n/a	Writes a formatted string to the given file. Up to five substitution parameters, <code>arg1,...arg5</code> may be specified for replacement in <code>format</code> .

Advanced Server's implementation of `UTL_FILE` is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those functions and procedures listed in the table above are supported.

## UTL\_FILE Exception Codes

If a call to a `UTL_FILE` procedure or function raises an exception, you can use the condition name to catch the exception. The `UTL_FILE` package reports the following exception codes compatible with Oracle databases:

Exception Code	Condition name
-29283	invalid_operation
-29285	write_error
-29284	read_error
-29282	invalid_filehandle
-29287	invalid_maxlinesize
-29281	invalid_mode
-29280	invalid_path

## Setting File Permissions with utl\_file.umask

When a `UTL_FILE` function or procedure creates a file, there are default file permissions as shown by the following.

```
-rw----- 1 enterprisebd enterprisebd 21 Jul 24 16:08 utlfile
```

Note that all permissions are denied on users belonging to the `enterprisebd` group as well as all other users. Only the `enterprisebd` user has read and write permissions on the created file.

If you wish to have a different set of file permissions on files created by the `UTL_FILE` functions and procedures, you can accomplish this by setting the `utl_file.umask` configuration parameter.

The `utl_file.umask` parameter sets the *file mode creation mask* or simply, the *mask*, in a manner similar to the Linux `umask` command. This is for usage only within the Advanced Server `UTL_FILE` package.

### Note

The `utl_file.umask` parameter is not supported on Windows systems.

The value specified for `utl_file.umask` is a 3 or 4-character octal string that would be valid for the Linux `umask` command. The setting determines the permissions on files created by the `UTL_FILE` functions and procedures. (Refer to any information source regarding Linux or Unix systems for information on file permissions and the usage of the `umask` command.)

The following is an example of setting the file permissions with `utl_file.umask`.

First, set up the directory in the file system to be used by the `UTL_FILE` package. Be sure the operating system account, `enterprisedb` or `postgres`, whichever is applicable, can read and write in the directory.

```
mkdir /tmp/utldir
chmod 777 /tmp/utldir
```

The `CREATE DIRECTORY` command is issued in `psql` to create the directory database object using the file system directory created in the preceding step.

```
CREATE DIRECTORY utldir AS '/tmp/utldir';
```

Set the `utl_file.umask` configuration parameter. The following setting allows the file owner any permission. Group users and other users are permitted any permission except for the execute permission.

```
SET utl_file.umask TO '0011';
```

In the same session during which the `utl_file.umask` parameter is set to the desired value, run the `UTL_FILE` functions and procedures.

```
DECLARE
  v_utlfile    UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE;
  v_directory   VARCHAR2(50) := 'utldir';
  v_filename    VARCHAR2(20) := 'utlfile';
BEGIN
  v_utlfile := UTL_FILE.FOPEN(v_directory, v_filename, 'w');
  UTL_FILE.PUT_LINE(v_utlfile, 'Simple one-line file');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Created file: ' || v_filename);
  UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(v_utlfile);
END;
```

The permission settings on the resulting file show that group users and other users have read and write permissions on the file as well as the file owner.

```
$ pwd
/tmp/utldir
$ ls -l
total 4
-rw-rw-rw- 1 enterprisedb enterprisedb 21 Jul 24 16:04 utlfile
```

This parameter can also be set on a per role basis with the `ALTER ROLE` command, on a per database basis with the `ALTER DATABASE` command, or for the entire database server instance by setting it in the `postgresql.conf` file.

## FCLOSE

The `FCLOSE` procedure closes an open file.

```
FCLOSE(<file> IN OUT FILE_TYPE)
```

### Parameters

`file`

Variable of type `FILE_TYPE` containing a file handle of the file to be closed.

## FCLOSE\_ALL

The `FCLOSE_ALL` procedure closes all open files. The procedure executes successfully even if there are no open files to close.

### FCLOSE\_ALL

## FCOPY

The `FCOPY` procedure copies text from one file to another.

```
FCOPY(<location> VARCHAR2, <filename> VARCHAR2,
      <dest_dir> VARCHAR2, <dest_file> VARCHAR2
      [, <start_line> PLS_INTEGER [, <end_line> PLS_INTEGER ]])
```

### Parameters

#### location

Directory name, as stored in `pg_catalog.edb_dir.dirname`, of the directory containing the file to be copied.

#### filename

Name of the source file to be copied.

#### dest\_dir

Directory name, as stored in `pg_catalog.edb_dir.dirname`, of the directory to which the file is to be copied.

#### dest\_file

Name of the destination file.

#### start\_line

Line number in the source file from which copying will begin. The default is 1.

#### end\_line

Line number of the last line in the source file to be copied. If omitted or null, copying will go to the last line of the file.

### Examples

The following makes a copy of a file, `C:\TEMP\EMPDIR\empfile.csv`, containing a comma-delimited list of employees from the `emp` table. The copy, `empcopy.csv`, is then listed.

```
CREATE DIRECTORY empdir AS 'C:/TEMP/EMPDIR';
```

#### DECLARE

```
v_empfile    UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE;
v_src_dir    VARCHAR2(50) := 'empdir';
v_src_file   VARCHAR2(20) := 'empfile.csv';
v_dest_dir   VARCHAR2(50) := 'empdir';
v_dest_file  VARCHAR2(20) := 'empcopy.csv';
v_emprec     VARCHAR2(120);
v_count      INTEGER := 0;
```

```

BEGIN
  UTL_FILE.FCOPY(v_src_dir,v_src_file,v_dest_dir,v_dest_file);
  v_empfile := UTL_FILE.FOPEN(v_dest_dir,v_dest_file,'r');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The following is the destination file, "' ||
    v_dest_file || "'");
  LOOP
    UTL_FILE.GET_LINE(v_empfile,v_emprec);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_emprec);
    v_count := v_count + 1;
  END LOOP;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
    UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(v_empfile);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_count || ' records retrieved');
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM: ' || SQLERRM);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLCODE: ' || SQLCODE);
END;

```

The following is the destination file, 'empcopy.csv'

7369,SMITH,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-80,800,,20  
 7499,ALLEN,SALESMAN,7698,20-FEB-81,1600,300,30  
 7521,WARD,SALESMAN,7698,22-FEB-81,1250,500,30  
 7566,JONES,MANAGER,7839,02-APR-81,2975,,20  
 7654,MARTIN,SALESMAN,7698,28-SEP-81,1250,1400,30  
 7698,BLAKE,MANAGER,7839,01-MAY-81,2850,,30  
 7782,CLARK,MANAGER,7839,09-JUN-81,2450,,10  
 7788,SCOTT,ANALYST,7566,19-APR-87,3000,,20  
 7839,KING,PRESIDENT,,17-NOV-81,5000,,10  
 7844,TURNER,SALESMAN,7698,08-SEP-81,1500,0,30  
 7876,ADAMS,CLERK,7788,23-MAY-87,1100,,20  
 7900,JAMES,CLERK,7698,03-DEC-81,950,,30  
 7902,FORD,ANALYST,7566,03-DEC-81,3000,,20  
 7934,MILLER,CLERK,7782,23-JAN-82,1300,,10  
 14 records retrieved

## FFLUSH

The **FFLUSH** procedure flushes unwritten data from the write buffer to the file.

**FFLUSH(<file> FILE\_TYPE)**

### Parameters

**file**

Variable of type **FILE\_TYPE** containing a file handle.

### Examples

Each line is flushed after the **NEW\_LINE** procedure is called.

```

DECLARE
  v_empfile      UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE;
  v_directory    VARCHAR2(50) := 'empdir';

```

```

v_filename    VARCHAR2(20) := 'empfile.csv';
CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT * FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
  v_empfile := UTL_FILE.FOPEN(v_directory,v_filename,'w');
  FOR i IN emp_cur LOOP
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.empno);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,';');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.ename);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,';');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.job);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,';');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.mgr);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,';');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.hiredate);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,';');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.sal);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,';');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.comm);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,';');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.deptno);
    UTL_FILE.NEW_LINE(v_empfile);
    UTL_FILE.FFLUSH(v_empfile);
  END LOOP;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Created file: ' || v_filename);
  UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(v_empfile);
END;

```

## FOPEN

The **FOPEN** function opens a file for I/O.

```

filetype FILE_TYPE FOPEN(<location> VARCHAR2,
<filename> VARCHAR2,<open_mode> VARCHAR2
[, <max_linesize> BINARY_INTEGER ])

```

### Parameters

**location**

Directory name, as stored in `pg_catalog.edb_dir.dirname`, of the directory containing the file to be opened.

**filename**

Name of the file to be opened.

**open\_mode**

Mode in which the file will be opened. Modes are: `a` - append to file; `r` - read from file; `w` - write to file.

**max\_linesize**

Maximum size of a line in characters. In read mode, an exception is thrown if an attempt is made to read a line exceeding `max_linesize`. In write and append modes, an exception is thrown if an attempt is made to write a line exceeding `max_linesize`. The end-of-line character(s) are not included in determining if the maximum line size is exceeded. This behavior is not compatible with Oracle databases; Oracle does count the end-of-line character(s).

## filetype

Variable of type `FILE_TYPE` containing the file handle of the opened file.

## FREMOVE

The `FREMOVE` procedure removes a file from the system.

```
FREMOVE(<location> VARCHAR2, <filename> VARCHAR2)
```

An exception is thrown if the file to be removed does not exist.

### Parameters

#### location

Directory name, as stored in `pg_catalog.edb_dir.dirname`, of the directory containing the file to be removed.

#### filename

Name of the file to be removed.

### Examples

The following removes file `empfile.csv`.

```
DECLARE
    v_directory    VARCHAR2(50) := 'empdir';
    v_filename     VARCHAR2(20) := 'empfile.csv';
BEGIN
    UTL_FILE.FREMOVE(v_directory,v_filename);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Removed file: ' || v_filename);
EXCEPTION
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM: ' || SQLERRM);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLCODE: ' || SQLCODE);
END;
```

Removed file: empfile.csv

## FRENAME

The `FRENAME` procedure renames a given file. This effectively moves a file from one location to another.

```
FRENAME(<location> VARCHAR2, <filename> VARCHAR2,
        <dest_dir> VARCHAR2, <dest_file> VARCHAR2,
        [ <overwrite> BOOLEAN ])
```

### Parameters

#### location

Directory name, as stored in `pg_catalog.edb_dir.dirname`, of the directory containing the file to be renamed.

#### filename

Name of the source file to be renamed.

#### dest\_dir

Directory name, as stored in `pg_catalog.edb_dir.dirname`, of the directory to which the renamed file is to exist.

#### dest\_file

New name of the original file.

#### overwrite

Replaces any existing file named `dest_file` in `dest_dir` if set to `TRUE`, otherwise an exception is thrown if set to `FALSE`. This is the default.

## Examples

The following renames a file, `C:\TEMP\EMPDIR\empfile.csv`, containing a comma-delimited list of employees from the `emp` table. The renamed file, `C:\TEMP\NEWDIR\newemp.csv`, is then listed.

```
CREATE DIRECTORY "newdir" AS 'C:/TEMP/NEWDIR';

DECLARE
    v_empfile    UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE;
    v_src_dir    VARCHAR2(50) := 'empdir';
    v_src_file   VARCHAR2(20) := 'empfile.csv';
    v_dest_dir   VARCHAR2(50) := 'newdir';
    v_dest_file  VARCHAR2(50) := 'newemp.csv';
    v_replace    BOOLEAN := FALSE;
    v_emprec     VARCHAR2(120);
    v_count      INTEGER := 0;
BEGIN
    UTL_FILE.FRENAME(v_src_dir,v_src_file,v_dest_dir,
                      v_dest_file,v_replace);
    v_empfile := UTL_FILE.FOPEN(v_dest_dir,v_dest_file,'r');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The following is the renamed file, "' ||
                         v_dest_file || "'");
    LOOP
        UTL_FILE.GET_LINE(v_empfile,v_emprec);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_emprec);
        v_count := v_count + 1;
    END LOOP;
EXCEPTION
    WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
        UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(v_empfile);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_count || ' records retrieved');
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM: ' || SQLERRM);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLCODE: ' || SQLCODE);
END;
```

The following is the renamed file, 'newemp.csv'

7369,SMITH,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-80 00:00:00,800.00,,20
7499,ALLEN,SALESMAN,7698,20-FEB-81 00:00:00,1600.00,300.00,30
7521,WARD,SALESMAN,7698,22-FEB-81 00:00:00,1250.00,500.00,30
7566,JONES,MANAGER,7839,02-APR-81 00:00:00,2975.00,,20
7654,MARTIN,SALESMAN,7698,28-SEP-81 00:00:00,1250.00,1400.00,30

```

7698,BLAKE,MANAGER,7839,01-MAY-81 00:00:00,2850.00,,30
7782,CLARK,MANAGER,7839,09-JUN-81 00:00:00,2450.00,,10
7788,SCOTT,ANALYST,7566,19-APR-87 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7839,KING,PRESIDENT,,17-NOV-81 00:00:00,5000.00,,10
7844,TURNER,SALESMAN,7698,08-SEP-81 00:00:00,1500.00,0.00,30
7876,ADAMS,CLERK,7788,23-MAY-87 00:00:00,1100.00,,20
7900,JAMES,CLERK,7698,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,950.00,,30
7902,FORD,ANALYST,7566,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7934,MILLER,CLERK,7782,23-JAN-82 00:00:00,1300.00,,10
14 records retrieved

```

## GET\_LINE

The `GET_LINE` procedure reads a line of text from a given file up to, but not including the end-of-line terminator. A `NO_DATA_FOUND` exception is thrown when there are no more lines to read.

```
GET_LINE(<file> FILE_TYPE, <buffer> OUT VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

`file`

Variable of type `FILE_TYPE` containing the file handle of the opened file.

`buffer`

Variable to receive a line from the file.

### Examples

The following anonymous block reads through and displays the records in file `empfile.csv`.

```

DECLARE
  v_empfile  UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE;
  v_directory VARCHAR2(50) := 'empdir';
  v_filename  VARCHAR2(20) := 'empfile.csv';
  v_emprec    VARCHAR2(120);
  v_count     INTEGER := 0;
BEGIN
  v_empfile := UTL_FILE.FOPEN(v_directory,v_filename,'r');
  LOOP
    UTL_FILE.GET_LINE(v_empfile,v_emprec);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_emprec);
    v_count := v_count + 1;
  END LOOP;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
    UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(v_empfile);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('End of file ' || v_filename || ' - ' ||
      v_count || ' records retrieved');
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM: ' || SQLERRM);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLCODE: ' || SQLCODE);
END;

```

```

7369,SMITH,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-80 00:00:00,800.00,,20
7499,ALLEN,SALESMAN,7698,20-FEB-81 00:00:00,1600.00,300.00,30
7521,WARD,SALESMAN,7698,22-FEB-81 00:00:00,1250.00,500.00,30
7566,JONES,MANAGER,7839,02-APR-81 00:00:00,2975.00,,20
7654,MARTIN,SALESMAN,7698,28-SEP-81 00:00:00,1250.00,1400.00,30
7698,BLAKE,MANAGER,7839,01-MAY-81 00:00:00,2850.00,,30
7782,CLARK,MANAGER,7839,09-JUN-81 00:00:00,2450.00,,10
7788,SCOTT,ANALYST,7566,19-APR-87 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7839,KING,PRESIDENT,,17-NOV-81 00:00:00,5000.00,,10
7844,TURNER,SALESMAN,7698,08-SEP-81 00:00:00,1500.00,0.00,30
7876,ADAMS,CLERK,7788,23-MAY-87 00:00:00,1100.00,,20
7900,JAMES,CLERK,7698,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,950.00,,30
7902,FORD,ANALYST,7566,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7934,MILLER,CLERK,7782,23-JAN-82 00:00:00,1300.00,,10
End of file empfile.csv - 14 records retrieved

```

## IS\_OPEN

The `IS_OPEN` function determines whether or not the given file is open.

```
<status> BOOLEAN IS_OPEN(<file> FILE_TYPE)
```

### Parameters

`file`

Variable of type `FILE_TYPE` containing the file handle of the file to be tested.

`status`

`TRUE` if the given file is open, `FALSE` otherwise.

## NEW\_LINE

The `NEW_LINE` procedure writes an end-of-line character sequence in the file.

```
NEW_LINE(<file> FILE_TYPE [, <lines> INTEGER ])
```

### Parameters

`file`

Variable of type `FILE_TYPE` containing the file handle of the file to which end-of-line character sequences are to be written.

`lines`

Number of end-of-line character sequences to be written. The default is one.

## Examples

A file containing a double-spaced list of employee records is written.

```

DECLARE
    v_empfile    UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE;

```

```

v_directory  VARCHAR2(50) := 'empdir';
v_filename   VARCHAR2(20) := 'empfile.csv';
CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT * FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
  v_empfile := UTL_FILE.FOPEN(v_directory,v_filename,'w');
  FOR i IN emp_cur LOOP
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.empno);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,',');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.ename);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,',');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.job);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,',');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.mgr);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,',');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.hiredate);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,',');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.sal);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,',');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.comm);
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,',');
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.deptno);
    UTL_FILE.NEW_LINE(v_empfile,2);
  END LOOP;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Created file: ' || v_filename);
  UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(v_empfile);
END;

```

Created file: empfile.csv

This file is then displayed:

```

C:\TEMP\EMPDIR>TYPE empfile.csv

7369,SMITH,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-80 00:00:00,800.00,,20

7499,ALLEN,SALESMAN,7698,20-FEB-81 00:00:00,1600.00,300.00,30

7521,WARD,SALESMAN,7698,22-FEB-81 00:00:00,1250.00,500.00,30

7566,JONES,MANAGER,7839,02-APR-81 00:00:00,2975.00,,20

7654,MARTIN,SALESMAN,7698,28-SEP-81 00:00:00,1250.00,1400.00,30

7698,BLAKE,MANAGER,7839,01-MAY-81 00:00:00,2850.00,,30

7782,CLARK,MANAGER,7839,09-JUN-81 00:00:00,2450.00,,10

7788,SCOTT,ANALYST,7566,19-APR-87 00:00:00,3000.00,,20

7839,KING,PRESIDENT,,17-NOV-81 00:00:00,5000.00,,10

7844,TURNER,SALESMAN,7698,08-SEP-81 00:00:00,1500.00,0.00,30

7876,ADAMS,CLERK,7788,23-MAY-87 00:00:00,1100.00,,20

7900,JAMES,CLERK,7698,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,950.00,,30

```

```
7902,FORD,ANALYST,7566,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
```

```
7934,MILLER,CLERK,7782,23-JAN-82 00:00:00,1300.00,,10
```

## PUT

The `PUT` procedure writes a string to the given file. No end-of-line character sequence is written at the end of the string. Use the `NEW_LINE` procedure to add an end-of-line character sequence.

```
PUT(<file> FILE_TYPE, <buffer> { DATE | NUMBER | TIMESTAMP |  
VARCHAR2 })
```

### Parameters

`file`

Variable of type `FILE_TYPE` containing the file handle of the file to which the given string is to be written.

`buffer`

Text to be written to the specified file.

### Examples

The following example uses the `PUT` procedure to create a comma-delimited file of employees from the `emp` table.

```
DECLARE  
  v_empfile  UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE;  
  v_directory  VARCHAR2(50) := 'empdir';  
  v_filename   VARCHAR2(20) := 'empfile.csv';  
  CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT * FROM emp ORDER BY empno;  
BEGIN  
  v_empfile := UTL_FILE.FOPEN(v_directory,v_filename,'w');  
  FOR i IN emp_cur LOOP  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.empno);  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,'>');  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.ename);  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,'>');  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.job);  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,'>');  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.mgr);  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,'>');  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.hiredate);  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,'>');  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.sal);  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,'>');  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.comm);  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,'>');  
    UTL_FILE.PUT(v_empfile,i.deptno);  
    UTL_FILE.NEW_LINE(v_empfile);  
  END LOOP;  
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Created file: ' || v_filename);  
  UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(v_empfile);
```

```
END;
```

Created file: empfile.csv

The following is the contents of [empfile.csv](#) created above:

```
C:\TEMP\EMPDIR>TYPE empfile.csv
```

```
7369,SMITH,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-80 00:00:00,800.00,,20
7499,ALLEN,SALESMAN,7698,20-FEB-81 00:00:00,1600.00,300.00,30
7521,WARD,SALESMAN,7698,22-FEB-81 00:00:00,1250.00,500.00,30
7566,JONES,MANAGER,7839,02-APR-81 00:00:00,2975.00,,20
7654,MARTIN,SALESMAN,7698,28-SEP-81 00:00:00,1250.00,1400.00,30
7698,BLAKE,MANAGER,7839,01-MAY-81 00:00:00,2850.00,,30
7782,CLARK,MANAGER,7839,09-JUN-81 00:00:00,2450.00,,10
7788,SCOTT,ANALYST,7566,19-APR-87 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7839,KING,PRESIDENT,,17-NOV-81 00:00:00,5000.00,,10
7844,TURNER,SALESMAN,7698,08-SEP-81 00:00:00,1500.00,0.00,30
7876,ADAMS,CLERK,7788,23-MAY-87 00:00:00,1100.00,,20
7900,JAMES,CLERK,7698,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,950.00,,30
7902,FORD,ANALYST,7566,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7934,MILLER,CLERK,7782,23-JAN-82 00:00:00,1300.00,,10
```

## PUT\_LINE

The [PUT\\_LINE](#) procedure writes a single line to the given file including an end-of-line character sequence.

```
PUT_LINE(<file> FILE_TYPE,
<buffer> {DATE|NUMBER|TIMESTAMP|VARCHAR2})
```

### Parameters

[file](#)

Variable of type [FILE\\_TYPE](#) containing the file handle of the file to which the given line is to be written.

[buffer](#)

Text to be written to the specified file.

### Examples

The following example uses the [PUT\\_LINE](#) procedure to create a comma-delimited file of employees from the [emp](#) table.

```
DECLARE
  v_empfile  UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE;
  v_directory VARCHAR2(50) := 'empdir';
  v_filename  VARCHAR2(20) := 'empfile.csv';
  v_emprec   VARCHAR2(120);
  CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT * FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
  v_empfile := UTL_FILE.FOPEN(v_directory,v_filename,'w');
  FOR i IN emp_cur LOOP
    v_emprec := i.empno || ',' || i.ename || ',' || i.job || ',' ||

```

```

NVL(LTRIM(TO_CHAR(i.mgr,'9999')),"") || ',' || i.hiredate ||
',' || i.sal || ',' ||
NVL(LTRIM(TO_CHAR(i.comm,'9990.99')),"") || ',' || i.deptno;
UTL_FILE.PUT_LINE(v_empfile,v_emprec);
END LOOP;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Created file: ' || v_filename);
UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(v_empfile);
END;

```

The following is the contents of `empfile.csv` created above:

```
C:\TEMP\EMPDIR>TYPE empfile.csv

7369,SMITH,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-80 00:00:00,800.00,,20
7499,ALLEN,SALESMAN,7698,20-FEB-81 00:00:00,1600.00,300.00,30
7521,WARD,SALESMAN,7698,22-FEB-81 00:00:00,1250.00,500.00,30
7566,JONES,MANAGER,7839,02-APR-81 00:00:00,2975.00,,20
7654,MARTIN,SALESMAN,7698,28-SEP-81 00:00:00,1250.00,1400.00,30
7698,BLAKE,MANAGER,7839,01-MAY-81 00:00:00,2850.00,,30
7782,CLARK,MANAGER,7839,09-JUN-81 00:00:00,2450.00,,10
7788,SCOTT,ANALYST,7566,19-APR-87 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7839,KING,PRESIDENT,,17-NOV-81 00:00:00,5000.00,,10
7844,TURNER,SALESMAN,7698,08-SEP-81 00:00:00,1500.00,0.00,30
7876,ADAMS,CLERK,7788,23-MAY-87 00:00:00,1100.00,,20
7900,JAMES,CLERK,7698,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,950.00,,30
7902,FORD,ANALYST,7566,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7934,MILLER,CLERK,7782,23-JAN-82 00:00:00,1300.00,,10
```

## PUTF

The `PUTF` procedure writes a formatted string to the given file.

```
PUTF(<file> FILE_TYPE, <format> VARCHAR2 [, <arg1> VARCHAR2]
[,...])
```

### Parameters

`file`

Variable of type `FILE_TYPE` containing the file handle of the file to which the formatted line is to be written.

`format`

String to format the text written to the file. The special character sequence, `%s`, is substituted by the value of arg. The special character sequence, `\n`, indicates a new line. Note, however, in Advanced Server, a new line character must be specified with two consecutive backslashes instead of one - `\n`. This characteristic is not compatible with Oracle databases.

`arg1`

Up to five arguments, `arg1,...arg5`, to be substituted in the format string for each occurrence of `%s`. The first arg is substituted for the first occurrence of `%s`, the second arg is substituted for the second occurrence of `%s`, etc.

### Examples

The following anonymous block produces formatted output containing data from the `emp` table. Note the use of the E literal syntax and double backslashes for the new line character sequence in the format string which are not compatible with Oracle databases.

```

DECLARE
  v_empfile  UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE;
  v_directory VARCHAR2(50) := 'empdir';
  v_filename  VARCHAR2(20) := 'empfile.csv';
  v_format    VARCHAR2(200);
  CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT * FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
  v_format := E'%s %s, %s\\nSalary: $%s Commission: $%s\\n\\n';
  v_empfile := UTL_FILE.FOPEN(v_directory,v_filename,'w');
  FOR i IN emp_cur LOOP
    UTL_FILE.PUTF(v_empfile,v_format,i.empno,i.ename,i.job,i.sal,
      NVL(i.comm,0));
  END LOOP;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Created file: ' || v_filename);
  UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(v_empfile);
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM: ' || SQLERRM);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLCODE: ' || SQLCODE);
END;

```

Created file: empfile.csv

The following is the contents of `empfile.csv` created above:

```

C:\TEMP\EMPDIR>TYPE empfile.csv
7369 SMITH, CLERK
Salary: $800.00 Commission: $0
7499 ALLEN, SALESMAN
Salary: $1600.00 Commission: $300.00
7521 WARD, SALESMAN
Salary: $1250.00 Commission: $500.00
7566 JONES, MANAGER
Salary: $2975.00 Commission: $0
7654 MARTIN, SALESMAN
Salary: $1250.00 Commission: $1400.00
7698 BLAKE, MANAGER
Salary: $2850.00 Commission: $0
7782 CLARK, MANAGER
Salary: $2450.00 Commission: $0
7788 SCOTT, ANALYST
Salary: $3000.00 Commission: $0
7839 KING, PRESIDENT
Salary: $5000.00 Commission: $0
7844 TURNER, SALESMAN
Salary: $1500.00 Commission: $0.00
7876 ADAMS, CLERK
Salary: $1100.00 Commission: $0
7900 JAMES, CLERK
Salary: $950.00 Commission: $0
7902 FORD, ANALYST
Salary: $3000.00 Commission: $0

```

7934 MILLER, CLERK  
Salary: \$1300.00 Commission: \$0

## 4.2.21 UTL\_HTTP

The `UTL_HTTP` package provides a way to use the HTTP or HTTPS protocol to retrieve information found at an URL. Advanced Server supports the following functions and procedures:

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>BEGIN_REQUEST(url, method, http_version)</code>	<code>UTL_HTTP.REQ</code>	Initiates a new HTTP request.
<code>END_REQUEST(r IN OUT)</code>	n/a	Ends an HTTP request before allowing it to complete.
<code>END_RESPONSE(r IN OUT)</code>	n/a	Ends the HTTP response.
<code>END_OF_BODY(r IN OUT)</code>	n/a	Ends package body
<code>GET_BODY_CHARSET</code>	<code>VARCHAR2</code>	Returns the default character set of the body of future HTTP requests.
<code>GET_BODY_CHARSET(charset OUT)</code>	n/a	Returns the default character set of the body of future HTTP requests.
<code>GET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT(max_redirects OUT)</code>	n/a	Current setting for the maximum number of redirections allowed.
<code>GET_HEADER(r IN OUT, n, name OUT, value OUT)</code>	n/a	Returns the nth header of the HTTP response.
<code>GET_HEADER_BY_NAME(r IN OUT, name, value OUT, n)</code>	n/a	Returns the HTTP response header for the specified name.
<code>GET_HEADER_COUNT(r IN OUT)</code>	<code>INTEGER</code>	Returns the number of HTTP response headers.
<code>GET_RESPONSE(r IN OUT)</code>	<code>UTL_HTTP.RESP</code>	Returns the HTTP response.
<code>GET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK(enable OUT)</code>	n/a	Returns whether or not response error check is set.
<code>GET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT(timeout OUT)</code>	n/a	Returns the transfer timeout setting for HTTP requests.
<code>READ_LINE(r IN OUT, data OUT, remove_crlf)</code>	n/a	Returns the HTTP response body in text form until the end of line.
<code>READ_RAW(r IN OUT, data OUT, len)</code>	n/a	Returns the HTTP response body in binary form for a specified number of bytes.
<code>READ_TEXT(r IN OUT, data OUT, len)</code>	n/a	Returns the HTTP response body in text form for a specified number of characters.
<code>REQUEST(url)</code>	<code>VARCHAR2</code>	Returns the content of a web page.
<code>REQUEST_PIECES(url, max_pieces)</code>	<code>UTL_HTTP.HTML_PIECES</code>	Returns a table of 2000-byte segments retrieved from an URL.
<code>SET_BODY_CHARSET(charset)</code>	n/a	Sets the default character set of the body of future HTTP requests.
<code>SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT(max_redirects)</code>	n/a	Sets the maximum number of times to follow the redirect instruction.
<code>SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT(r IN OUT, max_redirects)</code>	n/a	Sets the maximum number of times to follow the redirect instruction for an individual request.
<code>SET_HEADER(r IN OUT, name, value)</code>	n/a	Sets the HTTP request header.

<code>SET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK(enable)</code>	n/a	Determines whether or not HTTP 4xx and 5xx status codes are to be treated as errors.
<code>SET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT(timeout)</code>	n/a	Sets the default, transfer timeout value for HTTP requests.
<code>SET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT(r IN OUT, timeout)</code>	n/a	Sets the transfer timeout value for an individual HTTP request.
<code>WRITE_LINE(r IN OUT, data)</code>	n/a	Writes CRLF terminated data to the HTTP request body in TEXT form.
<code>WRITE_RAW(r IN OUT, data)</code>	n/a	Writes data to the HTTP request body in BINARY form.
<code>WRITE_TEXT(r IN OUT, data)</code>	n/a	Writes data to the HTTP request body in TEXT form.

Advanced Server's implementation of `UTL_HTTP` is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those functions and procedures listed in the table above are supported.

#### Note

In Advanced Server, an `HTTP 4xx` or `HTTP 5xx` response produces a database error; in Oracle, this is configurable but `FALSE` by default.

In Advanced Server, the `UTL_HTTP` text interfaces expect the downloaded data to be in the database encoding. All currently-available interfaces are text interfaces. In Oracle, the encoding is detected from HTTP headers; in the absence of the header, the default is configurable and defaults to `ISO-8859-1`.

Advanced Server ignores all cookies it receives.

The `UTL_HTTP` exceptions that can be raised in Oracle are not recognized by Advanced Server. In addition, the error codes returned by Advanced Server are not the same as those returned by Oracle.

#### **UTL\_HTTP Exception Codes**

If a call to a `UTL_HTTP` procedure or function raises an exception, you can use the condition name to catch the exception. The `UTL_HTTP` package reports the following exception codes compatible with Oracle databases:

Exception Code	Condition Name	Description	Raised Where
-29266	<code>END_OF_BODY</code>	The end of HTTP response body is reached	<code>READ_LINE</code> , <code>READ_RAW</code> , and <code>READ_TEXT</code> functions

To use the `UTL_HTTP.END_OF_BODY` exception, first you need to run the `utl_http_public.sql` file from the `contrib/utl_http` directory of your installation directory.

There are various public constants available with `UTL_HTTP`. These are listed in the following tables.

The following table contains `UTL_HTTP` public constants defining HTTP versions and port assignments.

#### **HTTP VERSIONS**

<code>HTTP_VERSION_1_0</code>	CONSTANT VARCHAR2(64) := 'HTTP/1.0';
<code>HTTP_VERSION_1_1</code>	CONSTANT VARCHAR2(64) := 'HTTP/1.1';

#### **STANDARD PORT ASSIGNMENTS**

<code>DEFAULT_HTTP_PORT</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 80;
<code>DEFAULT_HTTPS_PORT</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 443;

The following table contains `UTL_HTTP` public status code constants.

#### **1XX INFORMATIONAL**

<code>HTTP_CONTINUE</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 100;
<code>HTTP_SWITCHING_PROTOCOLS</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 101;
<code>HTTP_PROCESSING</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 102;

#### **2XX SUCCESS**

<code>HTTP_OK</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 200;
<code>HTTP_CREATED</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 201;
<code>HTTP_ACCEPTED</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 202;
<code>HTTP_NON_AUTHORITATIVE_INFO</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 203;
<code>HTTP_NO_CONTENT</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 204;
<code>HTTP_RESET_CONTENT</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 205;
<code>HTTP_PARTIAL_CONTENT</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 206;
<code>HTTP_MULTI_STATUS</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 207;
<code>HTTP_ALREADY_REPORTED</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 208;
<code>HTTP_IM_USED</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 226;

#### **3XX REDIRECTION**

<code>HTTP_MULTIPLE_CHOICES</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 300;
<code>HTTP_MOVED_PERMANENTLY</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 301;
<code>HTTP_FOUND</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 302;
<code>HTTP_SEE_OTHER</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 303;
<code>HTTP_NOT_MODIFIED</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 304;
<code>HTTP_USE_PROXY</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 305;
<code>HTTP_SWITCH_PROXY</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 306;
<code>HTTP_TEMPORARY_REDIRECT</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 307;
<code>HTTP_PERMANENT_REDIRECT</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 308;

#### **4XX CLIENT ERROR**

<code>HTTP_BAD_REQUEST</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 400;
<code>HTTP_UNAUTHORIZED</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 401;
<code>HTTP_PAYMENT_REQUIRED</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 402;
<code>HTTP_FORBIDDEN</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 403;
<code>HTTP_NOT_FOUND</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 404;
<code>HTTP_METHOD_NOT_ALLOWED</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 405;
<code>HTTP_NOT_ACCEPTABLE</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 406;
<code>HTTP_PROXY_AUTH_REQUIRED</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 407;
<code>HTTP_REQUEST_TIME_OUT</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 408;
<code>HTTP_CONFLICT</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 409;
<code>HTTP_GONE</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 410;
<code>HTTP_LENGTH_REQUIRED</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 411;
<code>HTTP_PRECONDITION_FAILED</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 412;
<code>HTTP_REQUEST_ENTITY_TOO_LARGE</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 413;
<code>HTTP_REQUEST_URI_TOO_LARGE</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 414;
<code>HTTP_UNSUPPORTED_MEDIA_TYPE</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 415;
<code>HTTP_REQ_RANGE_NOT_SATISFIABLE</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 416;
<code>HTTP_EXPECTATION_FAILED</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 417;
<code>HTTP_I_AM_A_TEAPOT</code>	CONSTANT INTEGER := 418;

**4XX CLIENT ERROR**

HTTP_AUTHENTICATION_TIME_OUT	CONSTANT INTEGER := 419;
HTTP_ENHANCE_YOUR_CALM	CONSTANT INTEGER := 420;
HTTP_UNPROCESSABLE_ENTITY	CONSTANT INTEGER := 422;
HTTP_LOCKED	CONSTANT INTEGER := 423;
HTTP_FAILED_DEPENDENCY	CONSTANT INTEGER := 424;
HTTP_UNORDERED_COLLECTION	CONSTANT INTEGER := 425;
HTTP_UPGRADE_REQUIRED	CONSTANT INTEGER := 426;
HTTP_PRECONDITION_REQUIRED	CONSTANT INTEGER := 428;
HTTP_TOO_MANY_REQUESTS	CONSTANT INTEGER := 429;
HTTP_REQUEST_HEADER_FIELDS_TOO_LARGE	CONSTANT INTEGER := 431;
HTTP_NO_RESPONSE	CONSTANT INTEGER := 444;
HTTP_RETRY_WITH	CONSTANT INTEGER := 449;
HTTP_BLOCKED_BY_WINDOWS_PARENTAL_CONTROLS	CONSTANT INTEGER := 450;
HTTP_REDIRECT	CONSTANT INTEGER := 451;
HTTP_REQUEST_HEADER_TOO_LARGE	CONSTANT INTEGER := 494;
HTTP_CERT_ERROR	CONSTANT INTEGER := 495;
HTTP_NO_CERT	CONSTANT INTEGER := 496;
HTTP_HTTP_TO_HTTPS	CONSTANT INTEGER := 497;
HTTP_CLIENT_CLOSED_REQUEST	CONSTANT INTEGER := 499;

**5XX SERVER ERROR**

HTTP_INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR	CONSTANT INTEGER := 500;
HTTP_NOT_IMPLEMENTED	CONSTANT INTEGER := 501;
HTTP_BAD_GATEWAY	CONSTANT INTEGER := 502;
HTTP_SERVICE_UNAVAILABLE	CONSTANT INTEGER := 503;
HTTP_GATEWAY_TIME_OUT	CONSTANT INTEGER := 504;
HTTP_VERSION_NOT_SUPPORTED	CONSTANT INTEGER := 505;
HTTP_VARIANT_ALSO_NEGOTIATES	CONSTANT INTEGER := 506;
HTTP_INSUFFICIENT_STORAGE	CONSTANT INTEGER := 507;
HTTP_LOOP_DETECTED	CONSTANT INTEGER := 508;
HTTP_BANDWIDTH_LIMIT_EXCEEDED	CONSTANT INTEGER := 509;
HTTP_NOT_EXTENDED	CONSTANT INTEGER := 510;
HTTP_NETWORK_AUTHENTICATION_REQUIRED	CONSTANT INTEGER := 511;
HTTP_NETWORK_READ_TIME_OUT_ERROR	CONSTANT INTEGER := 598;
HTTP_NETWORK_CONNECT_TIME_OUT_ERROR	CONSTANT INTEGER := 599;

**HTML\_PIECES**

The `UTL_HTTP` package declares a type named `HTML_PIECES`, which is a table of type `VARCHAR2(2000)` indexed by `BINARY_INTEGER`. A value of this type is returned by the `REQUEST_PIECES` function.

```
TYPE html_pieces IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(2000) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

**REQ**

The `REQ` record type holds information about each HTTP request.

```
TYPE req IS RECORD (
    url      VARCHAR2(32767),    -- URL to be accessed
    method   VARCHAR2(64),       -- HTTP method
    http_version  VARCHAR2(64),  -- HTTP version
    private_hdl  INTEGER        -- Holds handle for this request
);
```

## RESP

The `RESP` record type holds information about the response from each HTTP request.

```
TYPE resp IS RECORD (
    status_code  INTEGER,        -- HTTP status code
    reason_phrase  VARCHAR2(256), -- HTTP response reason phrase
    http_version  VARCHAR2(64),  -- HTTP version
    private_hdl  INTEGER        -- Holds handle for this response
);
```

## BEGIN\_REQUEST

The `BEGIN_REQUEST` function initiates a new HTTP request. A network connection is established to the web server with the specified URL. The signature is:

```
BEGIN_REQUEST(<url> IN VARCHAR2, <method> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT
'GET ', <http_version> IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL) RETURN
UTL_HTTP.REQ
```

The `BEGIN_REQUEST` function returns a record of type `UTL_HTTP.REQ`.

### Parameters

`url`

`url` is the Uniform Resource Locator from which `UTL_HTTP` will return content.

`method`

`method` is the HTTP method to be used. The default is `GET`.

`http_version`

`http_version` is the HTTP protocol version sending the request. The specified values should be either `HTTP/1.0` or `HTTP/1.1`. The default is null in which case the latest HTTP protocol version supported by the `UTL_HTTP` package is used which is 1.1.

## END\_REQUEST

The `END_REQUEST` procedure terminates an HTTP request. Use the `END_REQUEST` procedure to terminate an HTTP request without completing it and waiting for the response. The normal process is to begin the request, get the response, then close the response. The signature is:

```
END_REQUEST(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.REQ)
```

## Parameters

r

| r is the HTTP request record.

## END\_RESPONSE

The END\_RESPONSE procedure terminates the HTTP response. The END\_RESPONSE procedure completes the HTTP request and response. This is the normal method to end the request and response process. The signature is:

```
END_RESPONSE(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.RESP)
```

## Parameters

r

| r is the HTTP response record.

## GET\_BODY\_CHARSET

The GET BODY CHARSET program is available in the form of both a procedure and a function. A call to GET\_BODY\_CHARSET returns the default character set of the body of future HTTP requests.

The procedure signature is:

```
GET_BODY_CHARSET(<charset> OUT VARCHAR2)
```

The function signature is:

```
GET_BODY_CHARSET() RETURN VARCHAR2
```

This function returns a VARCHAR2 value.

## Parameters

charset

| charset is the character set of the body.

## Examples

The following is an example of the GET\_BODY\_CHARSET function.

```
edb=# SELECT UTL_HTTP.GET_BODY_CHARSET() FROM DUAL;
get_body_charset
-----
ISO-8859-1
(1 row)
```

## GET\_FOLLOW\_REDIRECT

The `GET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT` procedure returns the current setting for the maximum number of redirections allowed. The signature is:

```
GET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT(<max_redirects> OUT INTEGER)
```

## Parameters

`max_redirects`

| `max_redirects` is maximum number of redirections allowed.

## GET\_HEADER

The `GET_HEADER` procedure returns the `nth` header of the HTTP response. The signature is:

```
GET_HEADER(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.RESP, <n> INTEGER, <name> OUT
VARCHAR2, <value> OUT VARCHAR2)
```

## Parameters

`r`

| `r` is the HTTP response record.

`n`

| `n` is the `nth` header of the HTTP response record to retrieve.

`name`

| `name` is the name of the response header.

`value`

| `value` is the value of the response header.

## Examples

The following example retrieves the header count, then the headers.

```
DECLARE
  v_req      UTL_HTTP.REQ;
  v_resp     UTL_HTTP.RESP;
  v_name     VARCHAR2(30);
  v_value    VARCHAR2(200);
  v_header_cnt  INTEGER;
BEGIN
  -- Initiate request and get response
  v_req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST('www.enterprisedb.com');
  v_resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(v_req);

  -- Get header count
  v_header_cnt := UTL_HTTP.GET_HEADER_COUNT(v_resp);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Header Count: ' || v_header_cnt);

  -- Get all headers
  FOR i IN 1 .. v_header_cnt LOOP
```

```

UTL_HTTP.GET_HEADER(v_resp, i, v_name, v_value);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_name || ':' || v_value);
END LOOP;

-- Terminate request
UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(v_resp);
END;

```

The following is the output from the example.

```

Header Count: 23
Age: 570
Cache-Control: must-revalidate
Content-Type: text/html; charset=utf-8
Date: Wed, 30 Apr 2015 14:57:52 GMT
ETag: "aab02f2bd2d696eed817ca89ef411dda"
Expires: Sun, 19 Nov 1978 05:00:00 GMT
Last-Modified: Wed, 30 Apr 2015 14:15:49 GMT
RTSS: 1-1307-3
Server: Apache/2.2.3 (Red Hat)
Set-Cookie:
SESS2771d0952de2a1a84d322a262e0c173c=jn1u1j1etmdi5gg4lh8hakvs01;
expires=Fri, 23-May-2015 18:21:43 GMT; path=/; domain=.enterprisedb.com
Vary: Accept-Encoding
Via: 1.1 varnish
X-EDB-Backend: ec
X-EDB-Cache: HIT
X-EDB-Cache-Address: 10.31.162.212
X-EDB-Cache-Server: ip-10-31-162-212
X-EDB-Cache-TTL: 600.000
X-EDB-Cacheable: MAYBE: The user has a cookie of some sort. Maybe it's
double choc-chip!
X-EDB-Do-GZIP: false
X-Powered-By: PHP/5.2.17
X-Varnish: 484508634 484506789
transfer-encoding: chunked
Connection: keep-alive

```

## GET\_HEADER\_BY\_NAME

The `GET_HEADER_BY_NAME` procedure returns the header of the HTTP response according to the specified name. The signature is:

```

GET_HEADER_BY_NAME(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.RESP, <name> VARCHAR2,
<value> OUT VARCHAR2, <n> INTEGER DEFAULT 1)

```

### Parameters

`r`

`| r` is the HTTP response record.

`name`

`| name` is the name of the response header to retrieve.

## value

**value** is the value of the response header.

## n

**n** is the **nth** header of the HTTP response record to retrieve according to the values specified by **name**. The default is 1.

## Examples

The following example retrieves the header for Content-Type.

```
DECLARE
  v_req      UTL_HTTP.REQ;
  v_resp     UTL_HTTP.RESP;
  v_name     VARCHAR2(30) := 'Content-Type';
  v_value    VARCHAR2(200);
BEGIN
  v_req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST('www.enterprisedb.com');
  v_resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(v_req);
  UTL_HTTP.GET_HEADER_BY_NAME(v_resp, v_name, v_value);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_name || ':' || v_value);
  UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(v_resp);
END;
```

Content-Type: text/html; charset=utf-8

## GET\_HEADER\_COUNT

The **GET\_HEADER\_COUNT** function returns the number of HTTP response headers. The signature is:

```
GET_HEADER_COUNT(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.RESP) RETURN INTEGER
```

This function returns an **INTEGER** value.

### Parameters

#### r

**r** is the HTTP response record.

## GET\_RESPONSE

The **GET\_RESPONSE** function sends the network request and returns any HTTP response. The signature is:

```
GET_RESPONSE(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.REQ) RETURN UTL_HTTP.RESP
```

This function returns a **UTL\_HTTP.RESP** record.

### Parameters

#### r

**r** is the HTTP request record.

## GET\_RESPONSE\_ERROR\_CHECK

The `GET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK` procedure returns whether or not response error check is set. The signature is:

```
GET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK(<enable> OUT BOOLEAN)
```

### Parameters

`enable`

| `enable` returns `TRUE` if response error check is set, otherwise it returns `FALSE`.

## GET\_TRANSFER\_TIMEOUT

The `GET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT` procedure returns the current, default transfer timeout setting for HTTP requests. The signature is:

```
GET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT(<timeout> OUT INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

`timeout`

| `timeout` is the transfer timeout setting in seconds.

## READ\_LINE

The `READ_LINE` procedure returns the data from the HTTP response body in text form until the end of line is reached. A `CR` character, a `LF` character, a `CR LF` sequence, or the end of the response body constitutes the end of line. The signature is:

```
READ_LINE(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.RESP, <data> OUT VARCHAR2,
<remove_crlf> BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
```

### Parameters

`r`

| `r` is the HTTP response record.

`data`

| `data` is the response body in text form.

`remove_crlf`

| Set `remove_crlf` to `TRUE` to remove new line characters, otherwise set to `FALSE`. The default is `FALSE`.

### Examples

The following example retrieves and displays the body of the specified website.

```
DECLARE
    v_req      UTL_HTTP.REQ;
```

```

v_resp      UTL_HTTP.RESP;
v_value     VARCHAR2(1024);
BEGIN
  v_req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST('http://www.enterprisedb.com');
  v_resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(v_req);
  LOOP
    UTL_HTTP.READ_LINE(v_resp, v_value, TRUE);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_value);
  END LOOP;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(v_resp);
END;

```

The following is the output.

```

<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"
 "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml" xml:lang="en" lang="en" dir="ltr">

<!-- _____ HEAD _____ -->

<head>
<meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=utf-8" />

<title>EnterpriseDB | The Postgres Database Company</title>

<meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=utf-8" />
<meta name="keywords" content="postgres, postgresql, postgresql installer,
mysql migration, open source database, training, replication" />
<meta name="description" content="The leader in open source database
products, services, support, training and expertise based on PostgreSQL.
Free downloads, documentation, and tutorials." />
<meta name="abstract" content="The Enterprise PostgreSQL Company" />
<link rel="EditURI" type="application/rsd+xml" title="RSD" href="http://
www.enterprisedb.com/blogapi/rsd" />
<link rel="alternate" type="application/rss+xml" title="EnterpriseDB RSS"
href="http://www.enterprisedb.com/rss.xml" />
<link rel="shortcut icon" href="/sites/all/themes/edb_pixelcrayons/
favicon.ico" type="image/x-icon" />
<link type="text/css" rel="stylesheet" media="all" href="/sites/default/
files/css/css_db11adabae0aed6b79a2c3c52def4754.css" />
<!--[if IE 6]>
<link type="text/css" rel="stylesheet" media="all" href="/sites/all/themes/
oho_basic/css/ie6.css?g" />
<![endif]-->
<!--[if IE 7]>
<link type="text/css" rel="stylesheet" media="all" href="/sites/all/themes/
oho_basic/css/ie7.css?g" />
<![endif]-->
<script type="text/javascript" src="/sites/default/files/js/
js_74d97b1176812e2fd6e43d62503a5204.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript">
<!--//--><![CDATA[//><!--

```

## READ\_RAW

The `READ_RAW` procedure returns the data from the HTTP response body in binary form. The number of bytes returned is specified by the `len` parameter. The signature is:

```
READ_RAW(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.RESP, <data> OUT RAW, <len> INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

`r`

`r` is the HTTP response record.

`data`

`data` is the response body in binary form.

`len`

Set `len` to the number of bytes of data to be returned.

### Examples

The following example retrieves and displays the first 150 bytes in binary form.

```
DECLARE
  v_req      UTL_HTTP.REQ;
  v_resp     UTL_HTTP.RESP;
  v_data     RAW;
BEGIN
  v_req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST('http://www.enterprisedb.com');
  v_resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(v_req);
  UTL_HTTP.READ_RAW(v_resp, v_data, 150);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_data);
  UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(v_resp);
END;
```

The following is the output from the example.

```
\x3c21444f43545950452068746d6c205055424c494320222d2f2f5733432f2f4454442058485
44d4c20312e30205374726963742f2f454e220d0a202022687474703a2f2f7777772e77332e6f
72672f54522f7868746d6c312f4454442f7868746d6c312d7374726963742e647464223e0d0a3
c68746d6c20786d6c6e733d22687474703a2f2f7777772e77332e6f72672f313939392f
```

## READ\_TEXT

The `READ_TEXT` procedure returns the data from the HTTP response body in text form. The maximum number of characters returned is specified by the `len` parameter. The signature is:

```
READ_TEXT(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.RESP, <data> OUT VARCHAR2, <len> INTEGER)
```

### Parameters

`r`

`r` is the HTTP response record.

## data

**data** is the response body in text form.

## len

Set **len** to the maximum number of characters to be returned.

## Examples

The following example retrieves the first 150 characters.

```
DECLARE
  v_req      UTL_HTTP.REQ;
  v_resp     UTL_HTTP.RESP;
  v_data     VARCHAR2(150);
BEGIN
  v_req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST('http://www.enterprisedb.com');
  v_resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(v_req);
  UTL_HTTP.READ_TEXT(v_resp, v_data, 150);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_data);
  UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(v_resp);
END;
```

The following is the output.

```
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/
```

## REQUEST

The **REQUEST** function returns the first 2000 bytes retrieved from a user-specified URL. The signature is:

```
REQUEST(<url> IN VARCHAR2) RETURN VARCHAR2
```

If the data found at the given URL is longer than 2000 bytes, the remainder will be discarded. If the data found at the given URL is shorter than 2000 bytes, the result will be shorter than 2000 bytes.

## Parameters

### url

**url** is the Uniform Resource Locator from which **UTL\_HTTP** will return content.

## Example

The following command returns the first 2000 bytes retrieved from the EDB website:

```
SELECT UTL_HTTP.REQUEST('http://www.enterprisedb.com/') FROM DUAL;
```

## REQUEST\_PIECES

The **REQUEST\_PIECES** function returns a table of 2000-byte segments retrieved from an URL. The signature is:

```
REQUEST_PIECES(<url> IN VARCHAR2, <max_pieces> NUMBER IN
DEFAULT 32767) RETURN UTL_HTTP.HTML_PIECES
```

## Parameters

`url`

`url` is the Uniform Resource Locator from which `UTL_HTTP` will return content.

`max_pieces`

`max_pieces` specifies the maximum number of 2000-byte segments that the `REQUEST_PIECES` function will return. If `max_pieces` specifies more units than are available at the specified `url`, the final unit will contain fewer bytes.

## Example

The following example returns the first four 2000 byte segments retrieved from the EDB website:

```
DECLARE
    result UTL_HTTP.HTML_PIECES;
BEGIN
result := UTL_HTTP.REQUEST_PIECES('http://www.enterprisedb.com/', 4);
END
```

## SET\_BODY\_CHARSET

The `SET_BODY_CHARSET` procedure sets the default character set of the body of future HTTP requests. The signature is:

```
SET_BODY_CHARSET(<charset> VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
```

## Parameters

`charset`

`charset` is the character set of the body of future requests. The default is null in which case the database character set is assumed.

## SET\_FOLLOW\_REDIRECT

The `SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT` procedure sets the maximum number of times the HTTP redirect instruction is to be followed in the response to this request or future requests. This procedures has two signatures:

```
SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT(<max_redirects> IN INTEGER DEFAULT 3)
```

and

```
SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.REQ, <max_redirects>
IN INTEGER DEFAULT 3)``
```

Use the second form to change the maximum number of redirections for an individual request that a request inherits from the session default settings.

## Parameters

**r**

| **r** is the HTTP request record.

**max\_redirects**

| **max\_redirects** is maximum number of redirections allowed. Set to 0 to disable redirections. The default is 3.

## SET\_HEADER

The **SET\_HEADER** procedure sets the HTTP request header. The signature is:

```
SET_HEADER(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.REQ, <name> IN VARCHAR2, <value>
IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
```

### Parameters

**r**

| **r** is the HTTP request record.

**name**

| **name** is the name of the request header.

**value**

| **value** is the value of the request header. The default is null.

## SET\_RESPONSE\_ERROR\_CHECK

The **SET\_RESPONSE\_ERROR\_CHECK** procedure determines whether or not HTTP 4xx and 5xx status codes returned by the **GET\_RESPONSE** function should be interpreted as errors. The signature is:

```
SET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK(<enable> IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
```

### Parameters

**enable**

| Set **enable** to **TRUE** if HTTP 4xx and 5xx status codes are to be treated as errors, otherwise set to **FALSE**.  
The default is **FALSE**.

## SET\_TRANSFER\_TIMEOUT

The **SET\_TRANSFER\_TIMEOUT** procedure sets the default, transfer timeout setting for waiting for a response from an HTTP request. This procedure has two signatures:

```
SET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT(<timeout> IN INTEGER DEFAULT 60)
```

and

```
SET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.REQ, <timeout> IN
INTEGER DEFAULT 60)
```

Use the second form to change the transfer timeout setting for an individual request that a request inherits from the session default settings.

## Parameters

r

| r is the HTTP request record.

timeout

| timeout is the transfer timeout setting in seconds for HTTP requests. The default is 60 seconds.

## WRITE\_LINE

The `WRITE_LINE` procedure writes data to the HTTP request body in text form; the text is terminated with a CRLF character pair. The signature is:

```
WRITE_LINE(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.REQ, <data> IN VARCHAR2)
```

## Parameters

r

| r is the HTTP request record.

data

| data is the request body in `TEXT` form.

## Example

The following example writes data (`Account balance $500.00`) in text form to the request body to be sent using the HTTP `POST` method. The data is sent to a hypothetical web application (`post.php`) that accepts and processes data.

```
DECLARE
    v_req      UTL_HTTP.REQ;
    v_resp     UTL_HTTP.RESP;
BEGIN
    v_req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST('http://www.example.com/post.php',
        'POST');
    UTL_HTTP.SET_HEADER(v_req, 'Content-Length', '23');
    UTL_HTTP.WRITE_LINE(v_req, 'Account balance $500.00');
    v_resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(v_req);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Status Code: ' || v_resp.status_code);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Reason Phrase: ' || v_resp.reason_phrase);
    UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(v_resp);
END;
```

Assuming the web application successfully processed the `POST` method, the following output would be displayed:

```
Status Code: 200
Reason Phrase: OK
```

## WRITE\_RAW

The `WRITE_RAW` procedure writes data to the HTTP request body in binary form. The signature is:

```
WRITE_RAW(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.REQ, <data> IN RAW)
```

### Parameters

`r`

`| r` is the HTTP request record.

`data`

`| data` is the request body in binary form.

### Example

The following example writes data in binary form to the request body to be sent using the HTTP `POST` method to a hypothetical web application that accepts and processes such data.

```
DECLARE
  v_req      UTL_HTTP.REQ;
  v_resp     UTL_HTTP.RESP;
BEGIN
  v_req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST('http://www.example.com/post.php',
  'POST');
  UTL_HTTP.SET_HEADER(v_req, 'Content-Length', '23');
  UTL_HTTP.WRITE_RAW(v_req, HEXTORAW
  ('54657374696e6720504f5354206d6574686f6420696e20485454502072657175657374'));
  v_resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(v_req);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Status Code: ' || v_resp.status_code);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Reason Phrase: ' || v_resp.reason_phrase);
  UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(v_resp);
END;
```

The text string shown in the `HEXTORAW` function is the hexadecimal translation of the text `Testing POST method in HTTP request`.

Assuming the web application successfully processed the `POST` method, the following output would be displayed:

```
Status Code: 200
Reason Phrase: OK
```

## WRITE\_TEXT

The `WRITE_TEXT` procedure writes data to the HTTP request body in text form. The signature is:

```
WRITE_TEXT(<r> IN OUT UTL_HTTP.REQ, <data> IN VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

`r`

`| r` is the HTTP request record.

## data

**data** is the request body in text form.

### Example

The following example writes data ([Account balance \\$500.00](#)) in text form to the request body to be sent using the HTTP [POST](#) method. The data is sent to a hypothetical web application ([post.php](#)) that accepts and processes data.

```
DECLARE
  v_req      UTL_HTTP.REQ;
  v_resp     UTL_HTTP.RESP;
BEGIN
  v_req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST('http://www.example.com/post.php',
    'POST');
  UTL_HTTP.SET_HEADER(v_req, 'Content-Length', '23');
  UTL_HTTP.WRITE_TEXT(v_req, 'Account balance $500.00');
  v_resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(v_req);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Status Code: ' || v_resp.status_code);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Reason Phrase: ' || v_resp.reason_phrase);
  UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(v_resp);
END;
```

Assuming the web application successfully processed the [POST](#) method, the following output would be displayed:

```
Status Code: 200
Reason Phrase: OK
```

## END\_OF\_BODY

The [END\\_OF\\_BODY](#) exception will be raised when it reaches the end of the HTTP response body.

### Example

The following example handles the exception and writes [Exception caught](#) in text form to the request body to be sent using the HTTP [POST](#) method. The data is sent to a hypothetical web application ([post.php](#)) that accepts and processes data.

```
DECLARE
  req UTL_HTTP.REQ;
  resp UTL_HTTP.RESP;
  value VARCHAR2(32768);
BEGIN
  req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST('https://www.google.com/');
  resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(req);
LOOP
  UTL_HTTP.READ_LINE(resp, value, TRUE);
END LOOP;
  UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(resp);
EXCEPTION
  WHEN UTL_HTTP.END_OF_BODY THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Exception caught');
    UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(resp);
END;
```

Assuming the web application successfully processed the `POST` method, the following output will be displayed:

Output is:

Exception caught

## 4.2.22 UTL\_MAIL

The `UTL_MAIL` package provides the capability to manage e-mail. Advanced Server supports the following procedures:

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>SEND(sender, recipients, cc, bcc, subject, message [, mime_type [, priority ]])</code>	n/a	Packages and sends an e-mail to an SMTP server.
<code>SEND_ATTACH_RAW(sender, recipients, cc, bcc, subject, message, mime_type, priority, attachment [, att_inline [, att_mime_type [, att_filename ]]])</code>	n/a	Same as the <code>SEND</code> procedure, but with <code>BYTEA</code> or large object attachments.
<code>SEND_ATTACH_VARCHAR2(sender, recipients, cc, bcc, subject, message, mime_type, priority, attachment [, att_inline [, att_mime_type [, att_filename ]]])</code>	n/a	Same as the <code>SEND</code> procedure, but with <code>VARCHAR2</code> attachments.

### Note

An administrator must grant execute privileges to each user or group before they can use this package.

## SEND

The `SEND` procedure provides the capability to send an e-mail to an SMTP server.

```
SEND(<sender> VARCHAR2, <recipients> VARCHAR2, <cc> VARCHAR2,
<bcc> VARCHAR2, <subject> VARCHAR2, <message> VARCHAR2
[, <mime_type> VARCHAR2 [, <priority> PLS_INTEGER ]])
```

### Parameters

`sender`

E-mail address of the sender.

`recipients`

Comma-separated e-mail addresses of the recipients.

`cc`

Comma-separated e-mail addresses of copy recipients.

`bcc`

Comma-separated e-mail addresses of blind copy recipients.

**subject**

Subject line of the e-mail.

**message**

Body of the e-mail.

**mime\_type**

Mime type of the message. The default is `text/plain; charset=us-ascii`.

**priority**

Priority of the e-mail. The default is 3.

**Examples**

The following anonymous block sends a simple e-mail message.

```
DECLARE
  v_sender      VARCHAR2(30);
  v_recipients  VARCHAR2(60);
  v_subj        VARCHAR2(20);
  v_msg         VARCHAR2(200);
BEGIN
  v_sender := 'jsmith@enterprisedb.com';
  v_recipients := 'ajones@enterprisedb.com,rrogers@enterprisedb.com';
  v_subj := 'Holiday Party';
  v_msg := 'This year''s party is scheduled for Friday, Dec. 21 at ' ||
    '6:00 PM. Please RSVP by Dec. 15th.';
  UTL_MAIL.SEND(v_sender,v_recipients,NULL,NULL,v_subj,v_msg);
END;
```

**SEND\_ATTACH\_RAW**

The `SEND_ATTACH_RAW` procedure provides the capability to send an e-mail to an SMTP server with an attachment containing either `BYTEA` data or a large object (identified by the large object's `OID`). The call to `SEND_ATTACH_RAW` can be written in two ways:

```
SEND_ATTACH_RAW(<sender> VARCHAR2, <recipients> VARCHAR2,
  <cc> VARCHAR2, <bcc> VARCHAR2, <subject> VARCHAR2, <message> VARCHAR2,
  <mime_type> VARCHAR2, <priority> PLS_INTEGER,
  <attachment> BYTEA[, <att_inline> BOOLEAN
  [, <att_mime_type> VARCHAR2[, <att_filename> VARCHAR2 ]]])
```

or

```
SEND_ATTACH_RAW(<sender> VARCHAR2, <recipients> VARCHAR2,
  <cc> VARCHAR2, <bcc> VARCHAR2, <subject> VARCHAR2, <message> VARCHAR2,
  <mime_type> VARCHAR2, <priority> PLS_INTEGER, <attachment> OID
  [, <att_inline> BOOLEAN [, <att_mime_type> VARCHAR2
  [, <att_filename> VARCHAR2 ]]])
```

**Parameters**

**sender**

| E-mail address of the sender.

**recipients**

| Comma-separated e-mail addresses of the recipients.

**cc**

| Comma-separated e-mail addresses of copy recipients.

**bcc**

| Comma-separated e-mail addresses of blind copy recipients.

**subject**

| Subject line of the e-mail.

**message**

| Body of the e-mail.

**mime\_type**

| Mime type of the message. The default is `text/plain; charset=us-ascii`.

**priority**

| Priority of the e-mail. The default is `3`.

**attachment**

| The attachment.

**att\_inline**

| If set to `TRUE`, then the attachment is viewable inline, `FALSE` otherwise. The default is `TRUE`.

**att\_mime\_type**

| Mime type of the attachment. The default is `application/octet`.

**att\_filename**

| The file name containing the attachment. The default is `NULL`.

**SEND\_ATTACH\_VARCHAR2**

The `SEND_ATTACH_VARCHAR2` procedure provides the capability to send an e-mail to an SMTP server with a text attachment.

```
SEND_ATTACH_VARCHAR2(<sender> VARCHAR2, <recipients> VARCHAR2, <cc>
VARCHAR2, <bcc> VARCHAR2, <subject> VARCHAR2, <message> VARCHAR2,
<mime_type> VARCHAR2, <priority> PLS_INTEGER, <attachment> VARCHAR2 [,,
<att_inline> BOOLEAN [, <att_mime_type> VARCHAR2 [, <att_filename> VARCHAR2
]]])
```

## Parameters

### sender

E-mail address of the sender.

### recipients

Comma-separated e-mail addresses of the recipients.

### cc

Comma-separated e-mail addresses of copy recipients.

### bcc

Comma-separated e-mail addresses of blind copy recipients.

### subject

Subject line of the e-mail.

### message

Body of the e-mail.

### mime\_type

Mime type of the message. The default is `text/plain; charset=us-ascii`.

### priority

Priority of the e-mail. The default is `3`.

### attachment

The `VARCHAR2` attachment.

### att\_inline

If set to `TRUE`, then the attachment is viewable inline, `FALSE` otherwise. The default is `TRUE`.

### att\_mime\_type

Mime type of the attachment. The default is `text/plain; charset=us-ascii`.

### att\_filename

The file name containing the attachment. The default is `NULL`.

## 4.2.23 UTL\_RAW

The `UTL_RAW` package allows you to manipulate or retrieve the length of raw data types.

### Note

An administrator must grant execute privileges to each user or group before they can use this package.

Function/Procedure	Function or Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>CAST_TO_RAW(c IN VARCHAR2)</code>	Function	<code>RAW</code>	Converts a <code>VARCHAR2</code> string to a <code>RAW</code> value.
<code>CAST_TO_VARCHAR2(r IN RAW)</code>	Function	<code>VARCHAR2</code>	Converts a <code>RAW</code> value to a <code>VARCHAR2</code> string.
<code>CONCAT(r1 IN RAW, r2 IN RAW, r3 IN RAW,...)</code>	Function	<code>RAW</code>	Concatenate multiple <code>RAW</code> values into a single <code>RAW</code> value.
<code>CONVERT(r IN RAW, to_charset IN VARCHAR2, from_charset IN VARCHAR2)</code>	Function	<code>RAW</code>	Converts encoded data from one encoding to another, and returns the result as a <code>RAW</code> value.
<code>LENGTH(r IN RAW)</code>	Function	<code>NUMBER</code>	Returns the length of a <code>RAW</code> value.
<code>SUBSTR(r IN RAW, pos IN INTEGER, len IN INTEGER)</code>	Function	<code>RAW</code>	Returns a portion of a <code>RAW</code> value.

Advanced Server's implementation of `UTL_RAW` is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those functions and procedures listed in the table above are supported.

## CAST\_TO\_RAW

The `CAST_TO_RAW` function converts a `VARCHAR2` string to a `RAW` value. The signature is:

```
CAST_TO_RAW(<c> VARCHAR2)
```

The function returns a `RAW` value if you pass a non-`NULL` value; if you pass a `NULL` value, the function will return `NULL`.

### Parameters

c

The `VARCHAR2` value that will be converted to `RAW`.

### Example

The following example uses the `CAST_TO_RAW` function to convert a `VARCHAR2` string to a `RAW` value:

```
DECLARE
v VARCHAR2;
r RAW;
BEGIN
v := 'Accounts';
dbms_output.put_line(v);
r := UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_RAW(v);
dbms_output.put_line(r);
END;
```

The result set includes the content of the original string and the converted `RAW` value:

```
Accounts
\x4163636f756e7473
```

## CAST\_TO\_VARCHAR2

The `CAST_TO_VARCHAR2` function converts `RAW` data to `VARCHAR2` data. The signature is:

```
CAST_TO_VARCHAR2(<r> RAW)
```

The function returns a `VARCHAR2` value if you pass a non-`NULL` value; if you pass a `NULL` value, the function will return `NULL`.

### Parameters

`r`

The `RAW` value that will be converted to a `VARCHAR2` value.

### Example

The following example uses the `CAST_TO_VARCHAR2` function to convert a `RAW` value to a `VARCHAR2` string:

```
DECLARE
  r RAW;
  v VARCHAR2;
BEGIN
  r := '\x4163636f756e7473';
  dbms_output.put_line(v);
  v := UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_VARCHAR2(r);
  dbms_output.put_line(r);
END;
```

The result set includes the content of the original string and the converted `RAW` value:

```
\x4163636f756e7473
Accounts
```

## CONCAT

The `CONCAT` function concatenates multiple `RAW` values into a single `RAW` value. The signature is:

```
CONCAT(<r1> RAW, <r2> RAW, <r3> RAW,...)
```

The function returns a `RAW` value. Unlike the Oracle implementation, the Advanced Server implementation is a variadic function, and does not place a restriction on the number of values that can be concatenated.

### Parameters

`r1, r2, r3,...`

The `RAW` values that `CONCAT` will concatenate.

### Example

The following example uses the `CONCAT` function to concatenate multiple `RAW` values into a single `RAW` value:

```
SELECT UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_VARCHAR2(UTL_RAW.CONCAT('\x61', '\x62', '\x63')) FROM
```

```
DUAL;
concat
-----
abc
(1 row)
```

The result (the concatenated values) is then converted to `VARCHAR2` format by the `CAST_TO_VARCHAR2` function.

## CONVERT

The `CONVERT` function converts a string from one encoding to another encoding and returns the result as a `RAW` value. The signature is:

```
CONVERT(<r> RAW, <to_charset> VARCHAR2, <from_charset> VARCHAR2)
```

The function returns a `RAW` value.

### Parameters

`r`

The `RAW` value that will be converted.

`to_charset`

The name of the encoding to which `r` will be converted.

`from_charset`

The name of the encoding from which `r` will be converted.

### Example

The following example uses the `UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_RAW` function to convert a `VARCHAR2` string (`Accounts`) to a raw value, and then convert the value from `UTF8` to `LATIN7`, and then from `LATIN7` to `UTF8`:

```
DECLARE
  r RAW;
  v VARCHAR2;
BEGIN
  v:= 'Accounts';
  dbms_output.put_line(v);
  r:= UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_RAW(v);
  dbms_output.put_line(r);
  r:= UTL_RAW.CONVERT(r, 'UTF8', 'LATIN7');
  dbms_output.put_line(r);
  r:= UTL_RAW.CONVERT(r, 'LATIN7', 'UTF8');
  dbms_output.put_line(r);
```

The example returns the `VARCHAR2` value, the `RAW` value, and the converted values:

```
Accounts
\x4163636f756e7473
\x4163636f756e7473
\x4163636f756e7473
```

## LENGTH

The `LENGTH` function returns the length of a `RAW` value. The signature is:

```
LENGTH(<r> RAW)
```

This function returns a `RAW` value.

### Parameters

`r`

The `RAW` value that `LENGTH` will evaluate.

### Example

The following example uses the `LENGTH` function to return the length of a `RAW` value:

```
SELECT UTL_RAW.LENGTH(UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_RAW('Accounts')) FROM DUAL;
length
-----
8
(1 row)
```

The following example uses the `LENGTH` function to return the length of a `RAW` value that includes multi-byte characters:

```
SELECT UTL_RAW.LENGTH(UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_RAW('hello'));
length
-----
12
(1 row)
```

## SUBSTR

The `SUBSTR` function returns a substring of a `RAW` value. The signature is:

```
SUBSTR (<r> RAW, <pos> INTEGER, <len> INTEGER)
```

This function returns a `RAW` value.

### Parameters

`r`

The `RAW` value from which the substring will be returned.

`pos`

The position within the `RAW` value of the first byte of the returned substring.

- If `pos` is `0` or `1`, the substring begins at the first byte of the `RAW` value.
- If `pos` is greater than one, the substring begins at the first byte specified by `pos`. For example, if `pos` is `3`, the substring begins at the third byte of the value.
- If `pos` is negative, the substring begins at `pos` bytes from the end of the source value. For example, if `pos` is `-3`, the substring begins at the third byte from the end of the value.

**len**

The maximum number of bytes that will be returned.

**Example**

The following example uses the **SUBSTR** function to select a substring that begins **3** bytes from the start of a **RAW** value:

```
SELECT UTL_RAW.SUBSTR(UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_RAW('Accounts'), 3, 5) FROM DUAL;
substr
-----
count
(1 row)
```

The following example uses the **SUBSTR** function to select a substring that starts **5** bytes from the end of a **RAW** value:

```
SELECT UTL_RAW.SUBSTR(UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_RAW('Accounts'), -5 , 3) FROM DUAL;
substr
-----
oun
(1 row)
```

## 4.2.24      **UTL\_SMTP**

The **UTL\_SMTP** package provides the capability to send e-mails over the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP).

**Note**

An administrator must grant execute privileges to each user or group before they can use this package.

Function/Procedure	Function or Procedure	Return Type	Description
CLOSE_DATA(c IN OUT)	Procedure	n/a	Ends an e-mail message.
COMMAND(c IN OUT, cmd [, arg ])	Both	REPLY	Execute an SMTP command.
COMMAND_REPLIES(c IN OUT, cmd [, arg ])	Function	REPLIES	Execute an SMTP command where multiple reply lines are expected.
DATA(c IN OUT, body VARCHAR2)	Procedure	n/a	Specify the body of an e-mail message.
EHLO(c IN OUT, domain)	Procedure	n/a	Perform initial handshaking with an SMTP server and return extended information.
HELO(c IN OUT, domain)	Procedure	n/a	Perform initial handshaking with an SMTP server
HELP(c IN OUT [, command ])	Function	REPLIES	Send the <b>HELP</b> command.
MAIL(c IN OUT, sender [, parameters ])	Procedure	n/a	Start a mail transaction.
NOOP(c IN OUT)	Both	REPLY	Send the null command.
OPEN_CONNECTION(host [, port [, tx_timeout ]])	Function	CONNECTION	Open a connection.

<code>OPEN_DATA(c IN OUT)</code>	Both	<code>REPLY</code>	Send the <code>DATA</code> command.
<code>QUIT(c IN OUT)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Terminate the SMTP session and disconnect.
<code>RCPT(c IN OUT, recipient [, parameters ])</code>	Procedure	n/a	Specify the recipient of an e-mail message.
<code>RSET(c IN OUT)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Terminate the current mail transaction.
<code>VRFY(c IN OUT, recipient)</code>	Function	<code>REPLY</code>	Validate an e-mail address.
<code>WRITE_DATA(c IN OUT, data)</code>	Procedure	n/a	Write a portion of the e-mail message.

Advanced Server's implementation of `UTL_SMTP` is a partial implementation when compared to Oracle's version. Only those functions and procedures listed in the table above are supported.

The following table lists the public variables available in the `UTL_SMTP` package.

Public Variables	Data Type	Value	Description
<code>connection</code>	<code>RECORD</code>		Description of an SMTP connection.
<code>reply</code>	<code>RECORD</code>		SMTP reply line.

## CONNECTION

The `CONNECTION` record type provides a description of an SMTP connection.

```
TYPE connection IS RECORD (
    host      VARCHAR2(255),
    port      PLS_INTEGER,
    tx_timeout PLS_INTEGER
);
```

## REPLY/REPLIES

The `REPLY` record type provides a description of an SMTP reply line. `REPLIES` is a table of multiple SMTP reply lines.

```
TYPE reply IS RECORD (
    code      INTEGER,
    text      VARCHAR2(508)
);
TYPE replies IS TABLE OF reply INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

## CLOSE\_DATA

The `CLOSE_DATA` procedure terminates an e-mail message by sending the following sequence:

```
| <CR><LF>.<CR><LF>
```

This is a single period at the beginning of a line.

```
CLOSE_DATA(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION)
```

## Parameters

c

The SMTP connection to be closed.

## COMMAND

The **COMMAND** procedure provides the capability to execute an SMTP command. If you are expecting multiple reply lines, use **COMMAND\_REPLYSES**.

```
<reply> REPLY COMMAND(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION, <cmd> VARCHAR2
[, <arg> VARCHAR2 ])
```

```
COMMAND(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION, <cmd> VARCHAR2 [, <arg> VARCHAR2 ])
```

### Parameters

c

The SMTP connection to which the command is to be sent.

cmd

The SMTP command to be processed.

arg

An argument to the SMTP command. The default is null.

reply

SMTP reply to the command. If SMTP returns multiple replies, only the last one is returned in **reply**.

See [Reply/Replies](#) for a description of **REPLY** and **REPLIES**.

## COMMAND\_REPLYSES

The **COMMAND\_REPLYSES** function processes an SMTP command that returns multiple reply lines. Use **COMMAND** if only a single reply line is expected.

```
<replies> REPLIES COMMAND(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION, <cmd> VARCHAR2
[, <arg> VARCHAR2 ])
```

### Parameters

c

The SMTP connection to which the command is to be sent.

cmd

The SMTP command to be processed.

arg

An argument to the SMTP command. The default is null.

## replies

SMTP reply lines to the command. See [Reply/Replies](#) for a description of **REPLY** and **REPLIES**.

## DATA

The **DATA** procedure provides the capability to specify the body of the e-mail message. The message is terminated with a **<CR><LF>.<CR><LF>** sequence.

```
DATA(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION, <body> VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

**c**

The SMTP connection to which the command is to be sent.

**body**

Body of the e-mail message to be sent.

## EHLO

The **EHLO** procedure performs initial handshaking with the SMTP server after establishing the connection. The **EHLO** procedure allows the client to identify itself to the SMTP server according to RFC 821. RFC 1869 specifies the format of the information returned in the server's reply. The **HELO** procedure performs the equivalent functionality, but returns less information about the server.

```
EHLO(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION, <domain> VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

**c**

The connection to the SMTP server over which to perform handshaking.

**domain**

Domain name of the sending host.

## HELO

The **HELO** procedure performs initial handshaking with the SMTP server after establishing the connection. The **HELO** procedure allows the client to identify itself to the SMTP server according to RFC 821. The **EHLO** procedure performs the equivalent functionality, but returns more information about the server.

```
HELO(<c> IN OUT, <domain*> VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

**c**

The connection to the SMTP server over which to perform handshaking.

## domain

Domain name of the sending host.

## HELP

The **HELP** function provides the capability to send the **HELP** command to the SMTP server.

```
<replies> REPLIES HELP(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION [, <command> VARCHAR2 ])
```

### Parameters

c

The SMTP connection to which the command is to be sent.

command

Command on which help is requested.

replies

SMTP reply lines to the command. See [Reply/Replies](#) for a description of **REPLY** and **REPLIES**.

## MAIL

The **MAIL** procedure initiates a mail transaction.

```
MAIL(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION, <sender> VARCHAR2  
[, <parameters> VARCHAR2 ])
```

### Parameters

c

Connection to SMTP server on which to start a mail transaction.

sender

The sender's e-mail address.

parameters

Mail command parameters in the format, **key=value** as defined in RFC 1869.

## NOOP

The **NOOP** function/procedure sends the null command to the SMTP server. The **NOOP** has no effect upon the server except to obtain a successful response.

```
<reply> REPLY NOOP(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION)
```

```
NOOP(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION)
```

## Parameters

**c**

The SMTP connection on which to send the command.

**reply**

SMTP reply to the command. If SMTP returns multiple replies, only the last one is returned in **reply**. See [Reply/Replies](#) for a description of **REPLY** and **REPLIES**.

## OPEN\_CONNECTION

The **OPEN\_CONNECTION** functions open a connection to an SMTP server.

```
<c> CONNECTION OPEN_CONNECTION(<host> VARCHAR2 [, <port>
PLS_INTEGER [, <tx_timeout> PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL]])
```

## Parameters

**host**

Name of the SMTP server.

**port**

Port number on which the SMTP server is listening. The default is 25.

**tx\_timeout**

Time out value in seconds. Do not wait is indicated by specifying 0. Wait indefinitely is indicated by setting timeout to null. The default is null.

**c**

Connection handle returned by the SMTP server.

## OPEN\_DATA

The **OPEN\_DATA** procedure sends the **DATA** command to the SMTP server.

```
OPEN_DATA(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION)
```

## Parameters

**c**

SMTP connection on which to send the command.

## QUIT

The **QUIT** procedure closes the session with an SMTP server.

```
QUIT(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION)
```

## Parameters

C

SMTP connection to be terminated.

## RCPT

The **RCPT** procedure provides the e-mail address of the recipient. To schedule multiple recipients, invoke **RCPT** multiple times.

```
RCPT(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION, <recipient> VARCHAR2
    [, <parameters> VARCHAR2 ])
```

## Parameters

C

Connection to SMTP server on which to add a recipient.

**recipient**

The recipient's e-mail address.

**parameters**

Mail command parameters in the format, key=value as defined in RFC 1869.

## RSET

The **RSET** procedure provides the capability to terminate the current mail transaction.

```
RSET(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION)
```

## Parameters

C

SMTP connection on which to cancel the mail transaction.

## VRFY

The **VRFY** function provides the capability to validate and verify the recipient's e-mail address. If valid, the recipient's full name and fully qualified mailbox is returned.

```
<reply> REPLY VRFY(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION, <recipient> VARCHAR2)
```

## Parameters

C

The SMTP connection on which to verify the e-mail address.

**recipient**

The recipient's e-mail address to be verified.

### reply

SMTP reply to the command. If SMTP returns multiple replies, only the last one is returned in `reply`. See [Reply/Replies](#) for a description of `REPLY` and `REPLIES`.

## WRITE\_DATA

The `WRITE_DATA` procedure provides the capability to add `VARCHAR2` data to an e-mail message. The `WRITE_DATA` procedure may be repetitively called to add data.

```
WRITE_DATA(<c> IN OUT CONNECTION, <data> VARCHAR2)
```

### Parameters

#### c

The SMTP connection on which to add data.

#### data

Data to be added to the e-mail message. The data must conform to the RFC 822 specification.

## Comprehensive Example

The following procedure constructs and sends a text e-mail message using the `UTL_SMTP` package.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE send_mail (
    p_sender      VARCHAR2,
    p_recipient   VARCHAR2,
    p_subj        VARCHAR2,
    p_msg         VARCHAR2,
    p_mailhost    VARCHAR2
)
IS
    v_conn        UTL_SMTP.CONNECTION;
    v_crlf        CONSTANT VARCHAR2(2) := CHR(13) || CHR(10);
    v_port        CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := 25;
BEGIN
    v_conn := UTL_SMTP.OPEN_CONNECTION(p_mailhost,v_port);
    UTL_SMTP.HELO(v_conn,p_mailhost);
    UTL_SMTP.MAIL(v_conn,p_sender);
    UTL_SMTP.RCPT(v_conn,p_recipient);
    UTL_SMTP.DATA(v_conn, SUBSTR(
        'Date: ' || TO_CHAR(SYSDATE,
        'Dy, DD Mon YYYY HH24:MI:SS') || v_crlf
        || 'From: ' || p_sender || v_crlf
        || 'To: ' || p_recipient || v_crlf
        || 'Subject: ' || p_subj || v_crlf
        || p_msg
        , 1, 32767));
    UTL_SMTP.QUIT(v_conn);
END;
```

```
EXEC send_mail('asmith@enterprisedb.com','pjones@enterprisedb.com','Holiday
Party','Are you planning to attend?','smtp.enterprisedb.com');
```

The following example uses the `OPEN_DATA`, `WRITE_DATA`, and `CLOSE_DATA` procedures instead of the `DATA` procedure.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE send_mail_2 (
    p_sender      VARCHAR2,
    p_recipient   VARCHAR2,
    p_subj        VARCHAR2,
    p_msg         VARCHAR2,
    p_mailhost    VARCHAR2
)
IS
    v_conn        UTL_SMTP.CONNECTION;
    v_crlf        CONSTANT VARCHAR2(2) := CHR(13) || CHR(10);
    v_port        CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := 25;
BEGIN
    v_conn := UTL_SMTP.OPEN_CONNECTION(p_mailhost,v_port);
    UTL_SMTP.HELO(v_conn,p_mailhost);
    UTL_SMTP.MAIL(v_conn,p_sender);
    UTL_SMTP.RCPT(v_conn,p_recipient);
    UTL_SMTP.OPEN_DATA(v_conn);
    UTL_SMTP.WRITE_DATA(v_conn,'From: ' || p_sender || v_crlf);
    UTL_SMTP.WRITE_DATA(v_conn,'To: ' || p_recipient || v_crlf);
    UTL_SMTP.WRITE_DATA(v_conn,'Subject: ' || p_subj || v_crlf);
    UTL_SMTP.WRITE_DATA(v_conn,v_crlf || p_msg);
    UTL_SMTP.CLOSE_DATA(v_conn);
    UTL_SMTP.QUIT(v_conn);
END;
```

```
EXEC send_mail_2('asmith@enterprisedb.com','pjones@enterprisedb.com','Holiday
Party','Are you planning to attend?','smtp.enterprisedb.com');
```

## 4.2.25 UTL\_URL

The `UTL_URL` package provides a way to escape illegal and reserved characters within an URL.

Function/Procedure	Return Type	Description
<code>ESCAPE(url, escape_reserved_chars, url_charset)</code>	<code>VARCHAR2</code>	Use the <code>ESCAPE</code> function to escape any illegal and reserved characters in a URL.
<code>UNESCAPE(url, url_charset)</code>	<code>VARCHAR2</code>	The <code>UNESCAPE</code> function to convert an URL to its original form.

The `UTL_URL` package will return the `BAD_URL` exception if the call to a function includes an incorrectly-formed URL.

### ESCAPE

Use the `ESCAPE` function to escape illegal and reserved characters within an URL. The signature is:

```
ESCAPE(<url> VARCHAR2, <escape_reserved_chars> BOOLEAN,
<url_charset> VARCHAR2)
```

Reserved characters are replaced with a percent sign, followed by the two-digit hex code of the ascii value for the escaped character.

## Parameters

`url`

`url` specifies the Uniform Resource Locator that `UTL_URL` will escape.

`escape_reserved_chars`

`escape_reserved_chars` is a `BOOLEAN` value that instructs the `ESCAPE` function to escape reserved characters as well as illegal characters:

- If `escaped_reserved_chars` is `FALSE`, `ESCAPE` will escape only the illegal characters in the specified URL.
- If `escape_reserved_chars` is `TRUE`, `ESCAPE` will escape both the illegal characters and the reserved characters in the specified URL.

By default, `escape_reserved_chars` is `FALSE`.

Within an URL, legal characters are:

Uppercase A through Z	Lowercase a through z	0 through 9
asterisk (*)	exclamation point (!)	hyphen (-)
left parenthesis ()	period (.)	right parenthesis ()
single-quote (')	tilde (~)	underscore (_)

Some characters are legal in some parts of an URL, while illegal in others; to review comprehensive rules about illegal characters, refer to RFC 2396. Some *examples* of characters that are considered illegal in any part of an URL are:

Illegal Character	Escape Sequence
a blank space ( )	%20
curly braces ({ or })	%7b and %7d
hash mark (#)	%23

The `ESCAPE` function considers the following characters to be reserved, and will escape them if `escape_reserved_chars` is set to `TRUE`:

Reserved Character	Escape Sequence
ampersand (&)	%5C
at sign (@)	%25
colon (:)	%3a
comma (,)	%2c
dollar sign (\$)	%24
equal sign (=)	%3d
plus sign (+)	%2b
question mark (?)	%3f

Reserved Character	Escape Sequence
semi-colon (;)	%3b
slash (/)	%2f

### url\_charset

`url_charset` specifies a character set to which a given character will be converted before it is escaped. If `url_charset` is `NULL`, the character will not be converted. The default value of `url_charset` is `ISO-8859-1`.

### Examples

The following anonymous block uses the `ESCAPE` function to escape the blank spaces in the URL:

```
DECLARE
  result varchar2(400);
BEGIN
  result := UTL_URL.ESCAPE('http://www.example.com/Using the ESCAPE
function.html');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(result);
END;
```

The resulting (escaped) URL is:

`http://www.example.com/Using%20the%20ESCAPE%20function.html`

If you include a value of `TRUE` for the `escape_reserved_chars` parameter when invoking the function:

```
DECLARE
  result varchar2(400);
BEGIN
  result := UTL_URL.ESCAPE('http://www.example.com/Using the ESCAPE
function.html', TRUE);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(result);
END;
```

The `ESCAPE` function escapes the reserved characters as well as the illegal characters in the URL:

`http%3A%2F%2Fwww.example.com%2FUsing%20the%20ESCAPE%20function.html`

## UNESCAPE

The `UNESCAPE` function removes escape characters added to an URL by the `ESCAPE` function, converting the URL to its original form.

The signature is:

`UNESCAPE(<url> VARCHAR2, <url_charset> VARCHAR2)`

### Parameters

#### url

`url` specifies the Uniform Resource Locator that `UTL_URL` will unescape.

#### url\_charset

After unescaping a character, the character is assumed to be in `url_charset` encoding, and will be converted from that encoding to database encoding before being returned. If `url_charset` is `NULL`, the character will not be converted. The default value of `url_charset` is `ISO-8859-1`.

## Examples

The following anonymous block uses the `ESCAPE` function to escape the blank spaces in the URL:

```
DECLARE
  result varchar2(400);
BEGIN
  result := UTL_URL.UNESCAPE('http://www.example.com
Using%20the%20UNESCAPE%20function.html');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(result);
END;
```

The resulting (unespaced) URL is:

<http://www.example.com/Using the UNESCAPE function.html>

## 5 Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Catalog Views Guide

The Oracle Catalog Views provide information about database objects in a manner compatible with the Oracle data dictionary views.

For detailed information about Advanced Server's compatibility features and extended functionality, see the complete library of Advanced Server documentation, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/resources/product-documentation>

### 5.1 ALL\_ALL\_TABLES

The `ALL_ALL_TABLES` view provides information about the tables accessible by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the table's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the table belongs.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table.
tablespace_name	TEXT	Name of the tablespace in which the table resides if other than the default tablespace.
degree	CHARACTER VARYING(10)	Number of threads per instance to scan a table, or DEFAULT.
status	CHARACTER VARYING (5)	Included for compatibility only; always set to VALID.
temporary	TEXT	Y if the table is temporary; N if the table is permanent.

## 5.2 ALL\_CONS\_COLUMNS

The `ALL_CONS_COLUMNS` view provides information about the columns specified in constraints placed on tables accessible by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the constraint's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the constraint belongs.
constraint_name	TEXT	The name of the constraint.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table to which the constraint belongs.
column_name	TEXT	The name of the column referenced in the constraint.
position	SMALLINT	The position of the column within the object definition.
constraint_def	TEXT	The definition of the constraint.

## 5.3 ALL\_CONSTRAINTS

The `ALL_CONSTRAINTS` view provides information about the constraints placed on tables accessible by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the constraint's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the constraint belongs.
constraint_name	TEXT	The name of the constraint.
constraint_type	TEXT	The constraint type. Possible values are:
		C – check constraint
		F – foreign key constraint
		P – primary key constraint
		U – unique key constraint
		R – referential integrity constraint
		V – constraint on a view
		O – with read-only, on a view
table_name	TEXT	Name of the table to which the constraint belongs.
search_condition	TEXT	Search condition that applies to a check constraint.
r_owner	TEXT	Owner of a table referenced by a referential constraint.
r_constraint_name	TEXT	Name of the constraint definition for a referenced table.

The delete rule for a referential constraint. Possible values are:

delete_rule	TEXT	C – cascade R – restrict N – no action
deferrable	BOOLEAN	Specified if the constraint is deferrable (T or F).
deferred	BOOLEAN	Specifies if the constraint has been deferred (T or F).
index_owner	TEXT	User name of the index owner.
index_name	TEXT	The name of the index.
constraint_def	TEXT	The definition of the constraint.

## 5.4 ALL\_COL\_PRIVS

The **ALL\_COL\_PRIVS** view provides the following types of privileges:

- Column object privileges for which a current user is either an object owner, grantor, or grantee.
- Column object privileges for which **PUBLIC** is the grantee.

Name	Type	Description
grantor	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user who granted the privilege.
grantee	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user with the privilege.
table_schema	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user who owns the object.
schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the schema in which the object resides.
table_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Object name.
column_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Column name.
privilege	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Privilege on the column.
grantable	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Indicates whether the privilege was granted with the grant option YES or NO. YES indicates that the GRANTEE (recipient of the privilege) can in turn grant the privilege to others. The value may be YES if the grantee has the administrator privileges.
common	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO.
inherited	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO.

## 5.5 ALL\_DB\_LINKS

The `ALL_DB_LINKS` view provides information about the database links accessible by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the database link's owner.
db_link	TEXT	The name of the database link.
type	CHARACTER VARYING	Type of remote server. Value will be either REDWOOD or EDB
username	TEXT	User name of the user logging in.
host	TEXT	Name or IP address of the remote server.

## 5.6 ALL\_DEPENDENCIES

The `ALL_DEPENDENCIES` view provides information about the dependencies between database objects that the current user can access (except for synonyms).

Name	Type	Description
owner	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Owner of dependent object.
schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the schema in which the dependent object resides.
name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the dependent object.
type	CHARACTER VARYING(18)	Type of the dependent object.
referenced_owner	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Owner of the referenced object.
referenced_schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the schema in which the referenced object resides.
referenced_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the referenced object.
referenced_type	CHARACTER VARYING(18)	Type of the referenced object.
referenced_link_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Included for compatibility only. Always NULL.
dependency_type	CHARACTER VARYING(4)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to HARD.

## 5.7 ALL\_DIRECTORIES

The `ALL_DIRECTORIES` view provides information about all directories created with the `CREATE DIRECTORY` command.

Name	Type	Description
owner	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	User name of the directory's owner.
directory_name	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	The alias name assigned to the directory.
directory_path	CHARACTER VARYING(4000)	The path to the directory.

## 5.8 ALL\_IND\_COLUMNS

The `ALL_IND_COLUMNS` view provides information about columns included in indexes on the tables accessible by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
index_owner	TEXT	User name of the index's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the index belongs.
index_name	TEXT	The name of the index.
table_owner	TEXT	User name of the table owner.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table to which the index belongs.
column_name	TEXT	The name of the column.
column_position	SMALLINT	The position of the column within the index.
column_length	SMALLINT	The length of the column (in bytes).
char_length	NUMERIC	The length of the column (in characters).
descend	CHARACTER(1)	Always set to Y (descending); included for compatibility only.

## 5.9 ALL\_INDEXES

The `ALL_INDEXES` view provides information about the indexes on tables that may be accessed by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the index's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the index belongs.
index_name	TEXT	The name of the index.
index_type	TEXT	The index type is always BTREE. Included for compatibility only.
table_owner	TEXT	User name of the owner of the indexed table.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the indexed table.
table_type	TEXT	Included for compatibility only. Always set to TABLE.
uniqueness	TEXT	Indicates if the index is UNIQUE or NONUNIQUE.
compression	CHARACTER(1)	Always set to N (not compressed). Included for compatibility only.
tablespace_name	TEXT	Name of the tablespace in which the table resides if other than the default tablespace.
degree	CHARACTER VARYING(10)	Number of threads per instance to scan the index.

logging	TEXT	Always set to LOGGING. Included for compatibility only.
status	TEXT	Included for compatibility only; always set to VALID.
partitioned	CHARACTER(3)	Indicates that the index is partitioned. Currently, always set to NO.
temporary	CHARACTER(1)	Indicates that an index is on a temporary table. Always set to N; included for compatibility only.
secondary	CHARACTER(1)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to N.
join_index	CHARACTER(3)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to NO.
dropped	CHARACTER(3)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to NO.

## 5.10 ALL\_JOBS

The `ALL_JOBS` view provides information about all jobs that reside in the database.

Name	Type	Description
job	INTEGER	The identifier of the job (Job ID).
log_user	TEXT	The name of the user that submitted the job.
priv_user	TEXT	Same as log_user. Included for compatibility only.
schema_user	TEXT	The name of the schema used to parse the job.
last_date	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	The last date that this job executed successfully.
last_sec	TEXT	Same as last_date.
this_date	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	The date that the job began executing.
this_sec	TEXT	Same as this_date
next_date	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	The next date that this job will be executed.
next_sec	TEXT	Same as next_date.
total_time	INTERVAL	The execution time of this job (in seconds).
broken	TEXT	If Y, no attempt will be made to run this job. If N, this job will attempt to execute.
interval	TEXT	Determines how often the job will repeat.
failures	BIGINT	The number of times that the job has failed to complete since its last successful execution.
what	TEXT	The job definition (PL/SQL code block) that runs when the job executes.
nls_env	CHARACTER VARYING(4000)	Always NULL. Provided for compatibility only.
misc_env	BYTEA	Always NULL. Provided for compatibility only.
instance	NUMERIC	Always 0. Provided for compatibility only.

## 5.11 ALL\_OBJECTS

The `ALL_OBJECTS` view provides information about all objects that reside in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the object's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the object belongs.
object_name	TEXT	Name of the object.
object_type	TEXT	Type of the object – possible values are: INDEX, FUNCTION, PACKAGE, PACKAGE BODY, PROCEDURE, SEQUENCE, SYNONYM, TABLE, TRIGGER, and VIEW.
status	CHARACTER VARYING	Whether or not the state of the object is valid. Currently, Included for compatibility only; always set to VALID.
temporary	TEXT	Y if a temporary object; N if this is a permanent object.

## 5.12 ALL\_PART\_KEY\_COLUMNS

The `ALL_PART_KEY_COLUMNS` view provides information about the key columns of the partitioned tables that reside in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	The owner of the table.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
name	TEXT	The name of the table in which the column resides.
object_type	CHARACTER(5)	For compatibility only; always TABLE.
column_name	TEXT	The name of the column on which the key is defined.
column_position	INTEGER	1 for the first column; 2 for the second column, etc.

## 5.13 ALL\_PART\_TABLES

The `ALL_PART_TABLES` view provides information about all of the partitioned tables that reside in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	The owner of the partitioned table.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table.
partitioning_type	TEXT	The partitioning type used to define table partitions.
subpartitioning_type	TEXT	The subpartitioning type used to define table subpartitions.
partition_count	BIGINT	The number of partitions in the table.
def_subpartition_count	INTEGER	The number of subpartitions in the table.
partitioning_key_count	INTEGER	The number of partitioning keys specified.
subpartitioning_key_count	INTEGER	The number of subpartitioning keys specified.

Name	Type	Description
status	CHARACTER VARYING(8)	Provided for compatibility only. Always VALID.
def_tablespace_name	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_pct_free	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_pct_used	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_ini_trans	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_max_trans	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_initial_extent	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_next_extent	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_min_extents	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_max_extents	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_pct_increase	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_freelists	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_freelist_groups	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_logging	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Provided for compatibility only. Always YES.
def_compression	CHARACTER VARYING(8)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NONE
def_buffer_pool	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Provided for compatibility only. Always DEFAULT
ref_ptn_constraint_name	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL
interval	CHARACTER VARYING(1000)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL

## 5.14 ALL\_POLICIES

The `ALL_POLICIES` view provides information on all policies in the database. This view is accessible only to superusers.

Name	Type	Description
object_owner	TEXT	Name of the owner of the object.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the object belongs.
object_name	TEXT	Name of the object on which the policy applies.
policy_group	TEXT	Included for compatibility only; always set to an empty string.
policy_name	TEXT	Name of the policy.
pf_owner	TEXT	Name of the schema containing the policy function, or the schema containing the package that contains the policy function.
package	TEXT	Name of the package containing the policy function (if the function belongs to a package).
function	TEXT	Name of the policy function.
sel	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to SELECT commands. Possible values are YES or NO.

ins	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to INSERT commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
upd	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to UPDATE commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
del	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to DELETE commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
idx	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to index maintenance. Possible values are YES or NO.
chk_option	TEXT	Whether or not the check option is in force for INSERT and UPDATE commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
enable	TEXT	Whether or not the policy is enabled on the object. Possible values are YES or NO.
static_policy	TEXT	Included for compatibility only; always set to NO.
policy_type	TEXT	Included for compatibility only; always set to UNKNOWN.
long_predicate	TEXT	Included for compatibility only; always set to YES.

## 5.15 ALL\_QUEUES

The `ALL_QUEUES` view provides information about any currently defined queues.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the queue owner.
name	TEXT	The name of the queue.
queue_table	TEXT	The name of the queue table in which the queue resides.
qid	OID	The system-assigned object ID of the queue.
queue_type	CHARACTER VARYING	The queue type; may be EXCEPTION_QUEUE, NON_PERSISTENT_QUEUE, or NORMAL_QUEUE.
max_retries	NUMERIC	The maximum number of dequeue attempts.
retrydelay	NUMERIC	The maximum time allowed between retries.
enqueue_enabled	CHARACTER VARYING	YES if the queue allows enqueueing; NO if the queue does not.
dequeue_enabled	CHARACTER VARYING	YES if the queue allows dequeuing; NO if the queue does not.
retention	CHARACTER VARYING	The number of seconds that a processed message is retained in the queue.

user_comment	CHARACTER VARYING	A user-specified comment.
network_name	CHARACTER VARYING	The name of the network on which the queue resides.
sharded	CHARACTER VARYING	YES if the queue resides on a sharded network; NO if the queue does not.

## 5.16 ALL\_QUEUE\_TABLES

The `ALL_QUEUE_TABLES` view provides information about all of the queue tables in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	Role name of the owner of the queue table.
queue_table	TEXT	The user-specified name of the queue table.
type	CHARACTER VARYING	The type of data stored in the queue table.
object_type	TEXT	The user-defined payload type.
sort_order	CHARACTER VARYING	The order in which the queue table is sorted.
recipients	CHARACTER VARYING	Always SINGLE.
message_grouping	CHARACTER VARYING	Always NONE.
compatible	CHARACTER VARYING	The release number of the Advanced Server release with which this queue table is compatible.
primary_instance	NUMERIC	Always 0.
secondary_instance	NUMERIC	Always 0.
owner_instance	NUMERIC	The instance number of the instance that owns the queue table.

user_comment	CHARACTER VARYING	The user comment provided when the table was created.
secure	CHARACTER VARYING	YES indicates that the queue table is secure; NO indicates that it is not.

## 5.17 ALL\_SEQUENCES

The `ALL_SEQUENCES` view provides information about all user-defined sequences on which the user has `SELECT`, or `UPDATE` privileges.

Name	Type	Description
sequence_owner	TEXT	User name of the sequence's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the sequence resides.
sequence_name	TEXT	Name of the sequence.
min_value	NUMERIC	The lowest value that the server will assign to the sequence.
max_value	NUMERIC	The highest value that the server will assign to the sequence.
increment_by	NUMERIC	The value added to the current sequence number to create the next sequent number.
cycle_flag	CHARACTER VARYING	Specifies if the sequence should wrap when it reaches min_value or max_value.
order_flag	CHARACTER VARYING	Will always return Y.
cache_size	NUMERIC	The number of pre-allocated sequence numbers stored in memory.
last_number	NUMERIC	The value of the last sequence number saved to disk.

## 5.18 ALL\_SOURCE

The `ALL_SOURCE` view provides a source code listing of the following program types: functions, procedures, triggers, package specifications, and package bodies.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the program's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the program belongs.
name	TEXT	Name of the program.
type	TEXT	Type of program – possible values are: FUNCTION, PACKAGE, PACKAGE BODY, PROCEDURE, and TRIGGER.
line	INTEGER	Source code line number relative to a given program.

---

text	TEXT	Line of source code text.
------	------	---------------------------

---

## 5.19 ALL\_SUBPART\_KEY\_COLUMNS

The **ALL\_SUBPART\_KEY\_COLUMNS** view provides information about the key columns of those partitioned tables which are subpartitioned that reside in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	The owner of the table.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
name	TEXT	The name of the table in which the column resides.
object_type	CHARACTER(5)	For compatibility only; always TABLE.
column_name	TEXT	The name of the column on which the key is defined.
column_position	INTEGER	1 for the first column; 2 for the second column, etc.

---

## 5.20 ALL\_SYNONYMS

The **ALL\_SYNONYMS** view provides information on all synonyms that may be referenced by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the synonym's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the synonym resides.
synonym_name	TEXT	Name of the synonym.
table_owner	TEXT	User name of the object's owner.
table_schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the object that the synonym refers to.
db_link	TEXT	The name of any associated database link.

---

## 5.21 ALL\_TAB\_COLUMNS

The **ALL\_TAB\_COLUMNS** view provides information on all columns in all user-defined tables and views.

Name	Type	Description
owner	CHARACTER VARYING	User name of the owner of the table or view in which the column resides.

schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the schema in which the table or view resides.
table_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the table or view.
column_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the column.
data_type	CHARACTER VARYING	Data type of the column.
data_length	NUMERIC	Length of text columns.
data_precision	NUMERIC	Precision (number of digits) for NUMBER columns.
data_scale	NUMERIC	Scale of NUMBER columns.
nullable	CHARACTER(1)	Whether or not the column is nullable. Possible values are: Y – column is nullable; N – column does not allow null.
column_id	NUMERIC	Relative position of the column within the table or view.
data_default	CHARACTER VARYING	Default value assigned to the column.

## 5.22 ALL\_TAB\_PARTITIONS

The `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view provides information about all of the partitions that reside in the database.

Name	Type	Description
table_owner	TEXT	The owner of the table in which the partition resides.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table.
composite	TEXT	YES if the table is subpartitioned; NO if the table is not subpartitioned.
partition_name	TEXT	The name of the partition.
subpartition_count	BIGINT	The number of subpartitions in the partition.
high_value	TEXT	The high partitioning value specified in the CREATE TABLE statement.
high_value_length	INTEGER	The length of high partitioning value.
partition_position	INTEGER	The ordinal position of this partition.
tablespace_name	TEXT	The name of the tablespace in which the partition resides.
pct_free	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
pct_used	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
ini_trans	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
max_trans	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
initial_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
next_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
min_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
max_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
pct_increase	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
freelists	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
freelist_groups	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
logging	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Included for compatibility only; always YES

Name	Type	Description
compression	CHARACTER VARYING(8)	Included for compatibility only; always NONE
num_rows	NUMERIC	Same as pg_class.reltuples.
blocks	INTEGER	Same as pg_class.relpages.
empty_blocks	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
avg_space	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
chain_cnt	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
avg_row_len	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
sample_size	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
last_analyzed	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
buffer_pool	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
global_stats	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always YES
user_stats	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO
backing_table	REGCLASS	Name of the partition backing table.

## 5.23 ALL\_TAB\_SUBPARTITIONS

The **ALL\_TAB\_SUBPARTITIONS** view provides information about all of the subpartitions that reside in the database.

Name	Type	Description
table_owner	TEXT	The owner of the table in which the subpartition resides.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table.
partition_name	TEXT	The name of the partition.
subpartition_name	TEXT	The name of the subpartition.
high_value	TEXT	The high subpartitioning value specified in the CREATE TABLE statement.
high_value_length	INTEGER	The length of high partitioning value.
subpartition_position	INTEGER	The ordinal position of this subpartition.
tablespace_name	TEXT	The name of the tablespace in which the subpartition resides.
pct_free	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
pct_used	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
ini_trans	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
max_trans	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
initial_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
next_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
min_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
max_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
pct_increase	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
freelists	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
freelist_groups	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
logging	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Included for compatibility only; always YES

Name	Type	Description
compression	CHARACTER VARYING(8)	Included for compatibility only; always NONE
num_rows	NUMERIC	Same as pg_class.reltuples.
blocks	INTEGER	Same as pg_class.relpages.
empty_blocks	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
avg_space	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
chain_cnt	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
avg_row_len	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
sample_size	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
last_analyzed	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
buffer_pool	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
global_stats	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always YES
user_stats	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO
backing_table	REGCLASS	Name of the subpartition backing table.

## 5.24 ALL\_TAB\_PRIVS

The `ALL_TAB_PRIVS` view provides the following types of privileges:

- Object privileges for which a current user is either an object owner, grantor, or grantee.
- Object privileges for which the `PUBLIC` is the grantee.

Name	Type	Description
grantor	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user who granted the privilege.
grantee	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user with the privilege.
table_schema	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user who owns the object.
schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the schema in which the object resides.
table_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Object name.
privilege	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Privilege name.
grantable	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Indicates whether the privilege was granted with the grant option YES or NO. YES indicates that the GRANTEE (recipient of the privilege) can in turn grant the privilege to others. The value may be YES if the grantee has the administrator privileges.
hierarchy	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	The value can be YES or NO. The value may be YES if the privilege is SELECT else NO.
common	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO.
type	CHARACTER VARYING(24)	Type of object.
inherited	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO.

## 5.25 ALL\_TABLES

The `ALL_TABLES` view provides information on all user-defined tables.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the table's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the table belongs.
table_name	TEXT	Name of the table.
tablespace_name	TEXT	Name of the tablespace in which the table resides if other than the default tablespace.
degree	CHARACTER VARYING(10)	Number of threads per instance to scan a table, or DEFAULT.
status	CHARACTER VARYING(5)	Whether or not the state of the table is valid. Currently, Included for compatibility only; always set to VALID.
temporary	CHARACTER(1)	Y if this is a temporary table; N if this is not a temporary table.

## 5.26 ALL\_TRIGGERS

The `ALL_TRIGGERS` view provides information about the triggers on tables that may be accessed by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the trigger's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the trigger resides.
trigger_name	TEXT	The name of the trigger.

The type of the trigger. Possible values are:

		BEFORE ROW
trigger_type	TEXT	BEFORE STATEMENT
		AFTER ROW
		AFTER STATEMENT
triggering_event	TEXT	The event that fires the trigger.
table_owner	TEXT	The user name of the owner of the table on which the trigger is defined.
base_object_type	TEXT	Included for compatibility only. Value will always be TABLE.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table on which the trigger is defined.
referencing_name	TEXT	Included for compatibility only. Value will always be REFERENCING NEW AS NEW OLD AS OLD.
status	TEXT	Status indicates if the trigger is enabled (VALID) or disabled (NOTVALID).
description	TEXT	Included for compatibility only.
trigger_body	TEXT	The body of the trigger.

---

`action_statement` TEXT The SQL command that executes when the trigger fires.

---

## 5.27 ALL\_TYPES

The `ALL_TYPES` view provides information about the object types available to the current user.

Name	Type	Description
<code>owner</code>	TEXT	The owner of the object type.
<code>schema_name</code>	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the type is defined.
<code>type_name</code>	TEXT	The name of the type.
<code>type_oid</code>	OID	The object identifier (OID) of the type.

The typecode of the type. Possible values are:

<code>typecode</code>	TEXT	OBJECT
		COLLECTION
		OTHER
<code>attributes</code>	INTEGER	The number of attributes in the type.

---

## 5.28 ALL\_USERS

The `ALL_USERS` view provides information on all user names.

Name	Type	Description
<code>username</code>	TEXT	Name of the user.
<code>user_id</code>	OID	Numeric user id assigned to the user.
<code>created</code>	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	Included for compatibility only; always NULL.

---

## 5.29 ALL\_VIEW\_COLUMNS

The `ALL_VIEW_COLUMNS` view provides information on all columns in all user-defined views.

Name	Type	Description
<code>owner</code>	CHARACTER VARYING	User name of the view's owner.

schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the schema in which the view belongs.
view_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the view.
column_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the column.
data_type	CHARACTER VARYING	Data type of the column.
data_length	NUMERIC	Length of text columns.
data_precision	NUMERIC	Precision (number of digits) for NUMBER columns.
data_scale	NUMERIC	Scale of NUMBER columns.
nullable	CHARACTER(1)	Whether or not the column is nullable – possible values are: Y – column is nullable; N – column does not allow null.
column_id	NUMERIC	Relative position of the column within the view.
data_default	CHARACTER VARYING	Default value assigned to the column.

## 5.30 ALL\_VIEWS

The `ALL_VIEWS` view provides information about all user-defined views.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the view's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the view belongs.
view_name	TEXT	Name of the view.
text	TEXT	The SELECT statement that defines the view.

## 5.31 DBA\_ALL\_TABLES

The `DBA_ALL_TABLES` view provides information about all tables in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the table's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the table belongs.
table_name	TEXT	Name of the table.
tablespace_name	TEXT	Name of the tablespace in which the table resides if other than the default tablespace.
degree	CHARACTER VARYING(10)	Number of threads per instance to scan a table, or DEFAULT.
status	CHARACTER VARYING(5)	Included for compatibility only; always set to VALID.

temporary	TEXT	Y if the table is temporary; N if the table is permanent.
-----------	------	---

## 5.32 DBA\_CONS\_COLUMNS

The **DBA\_CONS\_COLUMNS** view provides information about all columns that are included in constraints that are specified in on all tables in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the constraint's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the constraint belongs.
constraint_name	TEXT	The name of the constraint.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table to which the constraint belongs.
column_name	TEXT	The name of the column referenced in the constraint.
position	SMALLINT	The position of the column within the object definition.
constraint_def	TEXT	The definition of the constraint.

## 5.33 DBA\_CONSTRAINTS

The **DBA\_CONSTRAINTS** view provides information about all constraints on tables in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the constraint's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the constraint belongs.
constraint_name	TEXT	The name of the constraint.

The constraint type. Possible values are:

constraint_type	TEXT	C – check constraint
		F – foreign key constraint
		P – primary key constraint
		U – unique key constraint
		R – referential integrity constraint
		V – constraint on a view
		O – with read-only, on a view
table_name	TEXT	Name of the table to which the constraint belongs.
search_condition	TEXT	Search condition that applies to a check constraint.
r_owner	TEXT	Owner of a table referenced by a referential constraint.
r_constraint_name	TEXT	Name of the constraint definition for a referenced table.

The delete rule for a referential constraint. Possible values are:

delete_rule	TEXT	C – cascade R - restrict N – no action
deferrable	BOOLEAN	Specified if the constraint is deferrable (T or F).
deferred	BOOLEAN	Specifies if the constraint has been deferred (T or F).
index_owner	TEXT	User name of the index owner.
index_name	TEXT	The name of the index.
constraint_def	TEXT	The definition of the constraint.

## 5.34 DBA\_COL\_PRIVS

The **DBA\_COL\_PRIVS** view provides a listing of the object privileges granted on columns for all the database users.

Name	Type	Description
grantee	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user with the privilege.
owner	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Object owner.
schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the schema in which the object resides.
table_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Object name.
column_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Column name.
grantor	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user who granted the privilege.
privilege	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Privilege on the column.
grantable	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Indicates whether the privilege was granted with the grant option YES or NO. YES indicates that the GRANTEE (recipient of the privilege) can in turn grant the privilege to others. The value may be YES if the grantee has the administrator privileges.
common	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO.
inherited	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO.

## 5.35 DBA\_DB\_LINKS

The `DBA_DB_LINKS` view provides information about all database links in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the database link's owner.
db_link	TEXT	The name of the database link.
type	CHARACTER VARYING	Type of remote server. Value will be either REDWOOD or EDB
username	TEXT	User name of the user logging in.
host	TEXT	Name or IP address of the remote server.

## 5.36 DBA\_DIRECTORIES

The `DBA_DIRECTORIES` view provides information about all directories created with the `CREATE DIRECTORY` command.

Name	Type	Description
owner	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	User name of the directory's owner.
directory_name	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	The alias name assigned to the directory.
directory_path	CHARACTER VARYING(4000)	The path to the directory.

## 5.37 DBA\_DEPENDENCIES

The `DBA_DEPENDENCIES` view provides information about the dependencies between all objects in the database (except for synonyms).

Name	Type	Description
owner	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Owner of the dependent object.
schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the schema in which the dependent object resides.
name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the dependent object.
type	CHARACTER VARYING(18)	Type of the dependent object.
referenced_owner	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Owner of the referenced object.
referenced_schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the schema in which the referenced object resides.
referenced_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the referenced object.
referenced_type	CHARACTER VARYING(18)	Type of the referenced object.

referenced_link_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Included for compatibility only. Always NULL.
dependency_type	CHARACTER VARYING(4)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to HARD.

## 5.38 DBA\_IND\_COLUMNS

The `DBA_IND_COLUMNS` view provides information about all columns included in indexes, on all tables in the database.

Name	Type	Description
index_owner	TEXT	User name of the index's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the index belongs.
index_name	TEXT	Name of the index.
table_owner	TEXT	User name of the table's owner.
table_name	TEXT	Name of the table in which the index belongs.
column_name	TEXT	Name of column or attribute of object column.
column_position	SMALLINT	The position of the column in the index.
column_length	SMALLINT	The length of the column (in bytes).
char_length	NUMERIC	The length of the column (in characters).
descend	CHARACTER(1)	Always set to Y (descending); included for compatibility only.

## 5.39 DBA\_INDEXES

The `DBA_INDEXES` view provides information about all indexes in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the index's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the index resides.
index_name	TEXT	The name of the index.
index_type	TEXT	The index type is always BTREE. Included for compatibility only.
table_owner	TEXT	User name of the owner of the indexed table.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the indexed table.
table_type	TEXT	Included for compatibility only. Always set to TABLE.
uniqueness	TEXT	Indicates if the index is UNIQUE or NONUNIQUE.
compression	CHARACTER(1)	Always set to N (not compressed). Included for compatibility only.
tablespace_name	TEXT	Name of the tablespace in which the table resides if other than the default tablespace.
degree	CHARACTER VARYING(10)	Number of threads per instance to scan the index.
logging	TEXT	Included for compatibility only. Always set to LOGGING.

status	TEXT	Whether or not the state of the object is valid. (VALID or INVALID).
partitioned	CHARACTER(3)	Indicates that the index is partitioned. Always set to NO.
temporary	CHARACTER(1)	Indicates that an index is on a temporary table. Always set to N.
secondary	CHARACTER(1)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to N.
join_index	CHARACTER(3)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to NO.
dropped	CHARACTER(3)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to NO.

## 5.40 DBA\_JOBS

The `DBA_JOBS` view provides information about all jobs in the database.

Name	Type	Description
job	INTEGER	The identifier of the job (Job ID).
log_user	TEXT	The name of the user that submitted the job.
priv_user	TEXT	Same as log_user. Included for compatibility only.
schema_user	TEXT	The name of the schema used to parse the job.
last_date	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	The last date that this job executed successfully.
last_sec	TEXT	Same as last_date.
this_date	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	The date that the job began executing.
this_sec	TEXT	Same as this_date
next_date	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	The next date that this job will be executed.
next_sec	TEXT	Same as next_date.
total_time	INTERVAL	The execution time of this job (in seconds).
broken	TEXT	If Y, no attempt will be made to run this job. If N, this job will attempt to execute.
interval	TEXT	Determines how often the job will repeat.
failures	BIGINT	The number of times that the job has failed to complete since it's last successful execution.
what	TEXT	The job definition (PL/SQL code block) that runs when the job executes.
nls_env	CHARACTER VARYING(4000)	Always NULL. Provided for compatibility only.
misc_env	BYTEA	Always NULL. Provided for compatibility only.
instance	NUMERIC	Always 0. Provided for compatibility only.

## 5.41 DBA\_OBJECTS

The `DBA_OBJECTS` view provides information about all objects in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the object's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the object belongs.
object_name	TEXT	Name of the object.
object_type	TEXT	Type of the object – possible values are: INDEX, FUNCTION, PACKAGE, PACKAGE BODY, PROCEDURE, SEQUENCE, SYNONYM, TABLE, TRIGGER, and VIEW.
status	CHARACTER VARYING	Included for compatibility only; always set to VALID.
temporary	TEXT	Y if the table is temporary; N if the table is permanent.

## 5.42 DBA\_PART\_KEY\_COLUMNS

The `DBA_PART_KEY_COLUMNS` view provides information about the key columns of the partitioned tables that reside in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	The owner of the table.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
name	TEXT	The name of the table in which the column resides.
object_type	CHARACTER(5)	For compatibility only; always TABLE.
column_name	TEXT	The name of the column on which the key is defined.
column_position	INTEGER	1 for the first column; 2 for the second column, etc.

## 5.43 DBA\_PART\_TABLES

The `DBA_PART_TABLES` view provides information about all of the partitioned tables in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	The owner of the partitioned table.
schema_name	TEXT	The schema in which the table resides.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table.
partitioning_type	TEXT	The type used to define table partitions.
subpartitioning_type	TEXT	The subpartitioning type used to define table subpartitions.

Name	Type	Description
partition_count	BIGINT	The number of partitions in the table.
def_subpartition_count	INTEGER	The number of subpartitions in the table.
partitioning_key_count	INTEGER	The number of partitioning keys specified.
subpartitioning_key_count	INTEGER	The number of subpartitioning keys specified.
status	CHARACTER VARYING(8)	Provided for compatibility only. Always VALID.
def_tablespace_name	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_pct_free	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_pct_used	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_ini_trans	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_max_trans	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_initial_extent	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_next_extent	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_min_extents	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_max_extents	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_pct_increase	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_freelists	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_freelist_groups	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_logging	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Provided for compatibility only. Always YES.
def_compression	CHARACTER VARYING(8)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NONE
def_buffer_pool	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Provided for compatibility only. Always DEFAULT
ref_ptn_constraint_name	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL
interval	CHARACTER VARYING(1000)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL

## 5.44 DBA\_POLICIES

The **DBA\_POLICIES** view provides information on all policies in the database. This view is accessible only to superusers.

Name	Type	Description
object_owner	TEXT	Name of the owner of the object.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the object resides.
object_name	TEXT	Name of the object to which the policy applies.
policy_group	TEXT	Name of the policy group. Included for compatibility only; always set to an empty string.
policy_name	TEXT	Name of the policy.
pf_owner	TEXT	Name of the schema containing the policy function, or the schema containing the package that contains the policy function.

package	TEXT	Name of the package containing the policy function (if the function belongs to a package).
function	TEXT	Name of the policy function.
sel	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to SELECT commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
ins	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to INSERT commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
upd	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to UPDATE commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
del	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to DELETE commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
idx	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to index maintenance. Possible values are YES or NO.
chk_option	TEXT	Whether or not the check option is in force for INSERT and UPDATE commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
Enable	TEXT	Whether or not the policy is enabled on the object. Possible values are YES or NO.
static_policy	TEXT	Included for compatibility only; always set to NO.
policy_type	TEXT	Included for compatibility only; always set to UNKNOWN.
long_predicate	TEXT	Included for compatibility only; always set to YES.

## 5.45 DBA\_PROFILES

The **DBA\_PROFILES** view provides information about existing profiles. The table includes a row for each profile/resource combination.

Name	Type	Description
profile	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	The name of the profile.
resource_name	CHARACTER VARYING(32)	The name of the resource associated with the profile.
resource_type	CHARACTER VARYING(8)	The type of resource governed by the profile; currently PASSWORD for all supported resources.
limit	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	The limit values of the resource.
common	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	YES for a user-created profile; NO for a system-defined profile.

## 5.46 DBA\_QUEUES

The **DBA\_QUEUES** view provides information about any currently defined queues.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the queue owner.

name	TEXT	The name of the queue.
queue_table	TEXT	The name of the queue table in which the queue resides.
qid	OID	The system-assigned object ID of the queue.
queue_type	CHARACTER VARYING	The queue type; may be EXCEPTION_QUEUE, NON_PERSISTENT_QUEUE, or NORMAL_QUEUE.
max_retries	NUMERIC	The maximum number of dequeue attempts.
retrydelay	NUMERIC	The maximum time allowed between retries.
enqueue_enabled	CHARACTER VARYING	YES if the queue allows enqueueing; NO if the queue does not.
dequeue_enabled	CHARACTER VARYING	YES if the queue allows dequeuing; NO if the queue does not.
retention	CHARACTER VARYING	The number of seconds that a processed message is retained in the queue.
user_comment	CHARACTER VARYING	A user-specified comment.
network_name	CHARACTER VARYING	The name of the network on which the queue resides.
sharded	CHARACTER VARYING	YES if the queue resides on a sharded network; NO if the queue does not.

## 5.47 DBA\_QUEUE\_TABLES

The `DBA_QUEUE_TABLES` view provides information about all of the queue tables in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	Role name of the owner of the queue table.
queue_table	TEXT	The user-specified name of the queue table.

type	CHARACTER VARYING	The type of data stored in the queue table.
object_type	TEXT	The user-defined payload type.
sort_order	CHARACTER VARYING	The order in which the queue table is sorted.
recipients	CHARACTER VARYING	Always SINGLE.
message_grouping	CHARACTER VARYING	Always NONE.
compatible	CHARACTER VARYING	The release number of the Advanced Server release with which this queue table is compatible.
primary_instance	NUMERIC	Always 0.
secondary_instance	NUMERIC	Always 0.
owner_instance	NUMERIC	The instance number of the instance that owns the queue table.
user_comment	CHARACTER VARYING	The user comment provided when the table was created.
secure	CHARACTER VARYING	YES indicates that the queue table is secure; NO indicates that it is not.

## 5.48 DBA\_ROLE\_PRIVS

The **DBA\_ROLE\_PRIVS** view provides information on all roles that have been granted to users. A row is created for each role to which a user has been granted.

Name	Type	Description
grantee	TEXT	User name to whom the role was granted.
granted_role	TEXT	Name of the role granted to the grantee.
admin_option	TEXT	YES if the role was granted with the admin option, NO otherwise.
default_role	TEXT	YES if the role is enabled when the grantee creates a session.

## 5.49 DBA\_ROLES

The **DBA\_ROLES** view provides information on all roles with the **NOLOGIN** attribute (groups).

Name	Type	Description
role	TEXT	Name of a role having the NOLOGIN attribute – i.e., a group.
password_required	TEXT	Included for compatibility only; always N.

## 5.50 DBA\_SEQUENCES

The **DBA\_SEQUENCES** view provides information about all user-defined sequences.

Name	Type	Description
sequence_owner	TEXT	User name of the sequence's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the sequence resides.
sequence_name	TEXT	Name of the sequence.
min_value	NUMERIC	The lowest value that the server will assign to the sequence.
max_value	NUMERIC	The highest value that the server will assign to the sequence.
increment_by	NUMERIC	The value added to the current sequence number to create the next sequent number.
cycle_flag	CHARACTER VARYING	Specifies if the sequence should wrap when it reaches min_value or max_value.
order_flag	CHARACTER VARYING	Will always return Y.
cache_size	NUMERIC	The number of pre-allocated sequence numbers stored in memory.
last_number	NUMERIC	The value of the last sequence number saved to disk.

## 5.51 DBA\_SOURCE

The **DBA\_SOURCE** view provides the source code listing of all objects in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the program's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the program belongs.
name	TEXT	Name of the program.
type	TEXT	Type of program – possible values are: FUNCTION, PACKAGE, PACKAGE BODY, PROCEDURE, and TRIGGER.
line	INTEGER	Source code line number relative to a given program.
text	TEXT	Line of source code text.

## 5.52 DBA\_SUBPART\_KEY\_COLUMNS

The `DBA_SUBPART_KEY_COLUMNS` view provides information about the key columns of those partitioned tables which are subpartitioned that reside in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	The owner of the table.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
name	TEXT	The name of the table in which the column resides.
object_type	CHARACTER(5)	For compatibility only; always TABLE.
column_name	TEXT	The name of the column on which the key is defined.
column_position	INTEGER	1 for the first column; 2 for the second column, etc.

## 5.53 DBA\_SYNONYMS

The `DBA_SYNONYM` view provides information about all synonyms in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the synonym's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the synonym belongs.
synonym_name	TEXT	Name of the synonym.
table_owner	TEXT	User name of the table's owner on which the synonym is defined.
table_schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
table_name	TEXT	Name of the table on which the synonym is defined.
db_link	TEXT	Name of any associated database link.

## 5.54 DBA\_TAB\_COLUMNS

The `DBA_TAB_COLUMNS` view provides information about all columns in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	CHARACTER VARYING	User name of the owner of the table or view in which the column resides.
schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the schema in which the table or view resides.
table_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the table or view in which the column resides.

column_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the column.
data_type	CHARACTER VARYING	Data type of the column.
data_length	NUMERIC	Length of text columns.
data_precision	NUMERIC	Precision (number of digits) for NUMBER columns.
data_scale	NUMERIC	Scale of NUMBER columns.
nullable	CHARACTER(1)	Whether or not the column is nullable – possible values are: Y – column is nullable; N – column does not allow null.
column_id	NUMERIC	Relative position of the column within the table or view.
data_default	CHARACTER VARYING	Default value assigned to the column.

## 5.55 DBA\_TAB\_PARTITIONS

The `DBA_TAB_PARTITIONS` view provides information about all of the partitions that reside in the database.

Name	Type	Description
table_owner	TEXT	The owner of the table in which the partition resides.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table.
composite	TEXT	YES if the table is subpartitioned; NO if the table is not subpartitioned.
partition_name	TEXT	The name of the partition.
subpartition_count	BIGINT	The number of subpartitions in the partition.
high_value	TEXT	The high partitioning value specified in the CREATE TABLE statement.
high_value_length	INTEGER	The length of high partitioning value.
partition_position	INTEGER	The ordinal position of this partition.
tablespace_name	TEXT	The name of the tablespace in which the partition resides.
pct_free	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
pct_used	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
ini_trans	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
max_trans	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
initial_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
next_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
min_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
max_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
pct_increase	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
freelists	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
freelist_groups	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
logging	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Included for compatibility only; always YES
compression	CHARACTER VARYING(8)	Included for compatibility only; always NONE
num_rows	NUMERIC	Same as pg_class.reltuples.
blocks	INTEGER	Same as pg_class.relpages.

Name	Type	Description
empty_blocks	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
avg_space	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
chain_cnt	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
avg_row_len	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
sample_size	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
last_analyzed	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
buffer_pool	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
global_stats	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always YES
user_stats	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO
backing_table	REGCLASS	Name of the partition backing table.

## 5.56 DBA\_TAB\_SUBPARTITIONS

The `DBA_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS` view provides information about all of the subpartitions that reside in the database.

Name	Type	Description
table_owner	TEXT	The owner of the table in which the subpartition resides.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table.
partition_name	TEXT	The name of the partition.
subpartition_name	TEXT	The name of the subpartition.
high_value	TEXT	The high subpartitioning value specified in the CREATE TABLE statement.
high_value_length	INTEGER	The length of high partitioning value.
subpartition_position	INTEGER	The ordinal position of this subpartition.
tablespace_name	TEXT	The name of the tablespace in which the subpartition resides.
pct_free	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
pct_used	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
ini_trans	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
max_trans	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
initial_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
next_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
min_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
max_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
pct_increase	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
freelists	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
freelist_groups	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
logging	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Included for compatibility only; always YES
compression	CHARACTER VARYING(8)	Included for compatibility only; always NONE
num_rows	NUMERIC	Same as pg_class.reltuples.
blocks	INTEGER	Same as pg_class.relpages.

Name	Type	Description
empty_blocks	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
avg_space	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
chain_cnt	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
avg_row_len	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
sample_size	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
last_analyzed	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
buffer_pool	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
global_stats	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always YES
user_stats	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO
backing_table	REGCLASS	Name of the subpartition backing table.

## 5.57 DBA\_TAB\_PRIVS

The `DBA_TAB_PRIVS` view provides a listing of the access privileges granted to database users and to `PUBLIC`.

Name	Type	Description
grantee	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user with the privilege.
owner	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Object owner.
schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the schema in which the object resides.
table_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Object name.
grantor	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user who granted the privilege.
privilege	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Privilege name.
grantable	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Indicates whether the privilege was granted with the grant option YES or NO. YES indicates that the GRANTEE (recipient of the privilege) can in turn grant the privilege to others. The value may be YES if the grantee has the administrator privileges.
hierarchy	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	The value can be YES or NO. The value may be YES if the privilege is SELECT else NO.
common	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO.
type	CHARACTER VARYING(24)	Type of object.
inherited	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO.

## 5.58 DBA\_TABLES

The **DBA\_TABLES** view provides information about all tables in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the table's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the table belongs.
table_name	TEXT	Name of the table.
tablespace_name	TEXT	Name of the tablespace in which the table resides if other than the default tablespace.
degree	CHARACTER VARYING(10)	Number of threads per instance to scan a table, or DEFAULT.
status	CHARACTER VARYING(5)	Included for compatibility only; always set to VALID.
temporary	CHARACTER(1)	Y if the table is temporary; N if the table is permanent.

## 5.59 DBA\_TRIGGERS

The **DBA\_TRIGGERS** view provides information about all triggers in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the trigger's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the trigger resides.
trigger_name	TEXT	The name of the trigger.

The type of the trigger. Possible values are:

		BEFORE ROW
trigger_type	TEXT	BEFORE STATEMENT
		AFTER ROW
		AFTER STATEMENT
triggering_event	TEXT	The event that fires the trigger.
table_owner	TEXT	The user name of the owner of the table on which the trigger is defined.
base_object_type	TEXT	Included for compatibility only. Value will always be TABLE.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table on which the trigger is defined.
referencing_names	TEXT	Included for compatibility only. Value will always be REFERENCING NEW AS NEW OLD AS OLD.
status	TEXT	Status indicates if the trigger is enabled (VALID) or disabled (NOTVALID).
description	TEXT	Included for compatibility only.
trigger_body	TEXT	The body of the trigger.
action_statement	TEXT	The SQL command that executes when the trigger fires.

## 5.60 DBA\_TYPES

The `DBA_TYPES` view provides information about all object types in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	The owner of the object type.
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the type is defined.
type_name	TEXT	The name of the type.
type_oid	OID	The object identifier (OID) of the type.
		The typecode of the type. Possible values are:
typecode	TEXT	OBJECT COLLECTION OTHER
attributes	INTEGER	The number of attributes in the type.

## 5.61 DBA\_USERS

The `DBA_USERS` view provides information about all users of the database.

Name	Type	Description
username	TEXT	User name of the user.
user_id	OID	ID number of the user.
password	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	The password (encrypted) of the user.
		The current status of the account. Possible values are:
account_status	CHARACTER VARYING(32)	OPEN EXPIRED EXPIRED(GRACE) EXPIRED & LOCKED EXPIRED & LOCKED(TIMED) EXPIRED(GRACE) & LOCKED EXPIRED(GRACE) & LOCKED(TIMED) LOCKED LOCKED(TIMED)
		Use the <code>edb_get_role_status(role_id)</code> function to get the current status of the account.

lock_date	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	If the account status is LOCKED, lock_date displays the date and time the account was locked.
expiry_date	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	The expiration date of the password. Use the <code>edb_get_password_expiry_date(role_id)</code> function to get the current password expiration date.
default_tablespace	TEXT	The default tablespace associated with the account.
temporary_tablespace	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	Included for compatibility only. The value will always be " (an empty string).
created	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	Included for compatibility only. The value is always NULL.
profile	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	The profile associated with the user.
initial_rsrc_consumer_group	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	Included for compatibility only. The value is always NULL.
external_name	CHARACTER VARYING(4000)	Included for compatibility only. The value is always NULL.

## 5.62 DBA\_VIEW\_COLUMNS

The `DBA_VIEW_COLUMNS` view provides information on all columns in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	CHARACTER VARYING	User name of the view's owner.
schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the schema in which the view belongs.
view_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the view.
column_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the column.
data_type	CHARACTER VARYING	Data type of the column.
data_length	NUMERIC	Length of text columns.
data_precision	NUMERIC	Precision (number of digits) for NUMBER columns.
data_scale	NUMERIC	Scale of NUMBER columns.
nullable	CHARACTER(1)	Whether or not the column is nullable – possible values are: Y – column is nullable; N – column does not allow null.
column_id	NUMERIC	Relative position of the column within the view.
data_default	CHARACTER VARYING	Default value assigned to the column.

## 5.63 DBA\_VIEWS

The **DBA\_VIEWS** view provides information about all views in the database.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the view's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the view belongs.
view_name	TEXT	Name of the view.
text	TEXT	The text of the SELECT statement that defines the view.

---

## 5.64 USER\_ALL\_TABLES

The **USER\_ALL\_TABLES** view provides information about all tables owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the table belongs.
table_name	TEXT	Name of the table.
tablespace_name	TEXT	Name of the tablespace in which the table resides if other than the default tablespace.
degree	CHARACTER VARYING(10)	Number of threads per instance to scan a table, or DEFAULT.
status	CHARACTER VARYING(5)	Included for compatibility only; always set to VALID.
temporary	TEXT	Y if the table is temporary; N if the table is permanent.

---

## 5.65 USER\_CONS\_COLUMNS

The **USER\_CONS\_COLUMNS** view provides information about all columns that are included in constraints in tables that are owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	User name of the constraint's owner.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the constraint belongs.
constraint_name	TEXT	The name of the constraint.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table to which the constraint belongs.
column_name	TEXT	The name of the column referenced in the constraint.
position	SMALLINT	The position of the column within the object definition.
constraint_def	TEXT	The definition of the constraint.

---

## 5.66 USER\_CONSTRAINTS

The `USER_CONSTRAINTS` view provides information about all constraints placed on tables that are owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
owner	TEXT	The name of the owner of the constraint.
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the constraint belongs.
constraint_name	TEXT	The name of the constraint.
constraint_type	TEXT	<p>The constraint type. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>C – check constraint</li> <li>F – foreign key constraint</li> <li>P – primary key constraint</li> <li>U – unique key constraint</li> <li>R – referential integrity constraint</li> <li>V – constraint on a view</li> <li>O – with read-only, on a view</li> </ul>
table_name	TEXT	Name of the table to which the constraint belongs.
search_condition	TEXT	Search condition that applies to a check constraint.
r_owner	TEXT	Owner of a table referenced by a referential constraint.
r_constraint_name	TEXT	Name of the constraint definition for a referenced table.
delete_rule	TEXT	<p>The delete rule for a referential constraint. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>C – cascade</li> <li>R – restrict</li> <li>N – no action</li> </ul>
deferrable	BOOLEAN	Specified if the constraint is deferrable (T or F).
deferred	BOOLEAN	Specifies if the constraint has been deferred (T or F).
index_owner	TEXT	User name of the index owner.
index_name	TEXT	The name of the index.
constraint_def	TEXT	The definition of the constraint.

## 5.67 USER\_COL\_PRIVS

The `USER_COL_PRIVS` view provides a listing of the object privileges granted on a column for which a current user is either an object owner, grantor, or grantee.

Name	Type	Description

grantee	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user with the privilege.
owner	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Object owner.
schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the schema in which the object resides.
table_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Object name.
column_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Column name.
grantor	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user who granted the privilege.
privilege	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Privilege on the column.
grantable	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Indicates whether the privilege was granted with the grant option YES or NO. YES indicates that the GRANTEE (recipient of the privilege) can in turn grant the privilege to others. The value may be YES if the grantee has the administrator privileges.
common	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO.
inherited	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO.

## 5.68 USER\_DB\_LINKS

The `USER_DB_LINKS` view provides information about all database links that are owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
db_link	TEXT	The name of the database link.
type	CHARACTER VARYING	Type of remote server. Value will be either REDWOOD or EDB
username	TEXT	User name of the user logging in.
password	TEXT	Password used to authenticate on the remote server.
host	TEXT	Name or IP address of the remote server.

## 5.69 USER\_DEPENDENCIES

The `USER_DEPENDENCIES` view provides information about dependencies between objects owned by a current user (with the exception of synonyms).

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the schema in which the dependent object resides.

name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the dependent object.
type	CHARACTER VARYING(18)	Type of the dependent object.
referenced_owner	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Owner of the referenced object.
referenced_schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the schema in which the referenced object resides.
referenced_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the referenced object.
referenced_type	CHARACTER VARYING(18)	Type of the referenced object.
referenced_link_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Included for compatibility only. Always NULL.
schemaid	NUMERIC	ID of the current schema.
dependency_type	CHARACTER VARYING(4)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to HARD.

## 5.70 USER\_INDEXES

The **USER\_INDEXES** view provides information about all indexes on tables that are owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the index belongs.
index_name	TEXT	The name of the index.
index_type	TEXT	Included for compatibility only. The index type is always BTREE.
table_owner	TEXT	User name of the owner of the indexed table.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the indexed table.
table_type	TEXT	Included for compatibility only. Always set to TABLE.
uniqueness	TEXT	Indicates if the index is UNIQUE or NONUNIQUE.
compression	CHARACTER(1)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to N (not compressed).
tablespace_name	TEXT	Name of the tablespace in which the table resides if other than the default tablespace.
degree	CHARACTER VARYING(10)	Number of threads per instance to scan the index.
logging	TEXT	Included for compatibility only. Always set to LOGGING.
status	TEXT	Whether or not the state of the object is valid. (VALID or INVALID).
partitioned	CHARACTER(3)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to NO.
temporary	CHARACTER(1)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to N.
secondary	CHARACTER(1)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to N.
join_index	CHARACTER(3)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to NO.
dropped	CHARACTER(3)	Included for compatibility only. Always set to NO.

## 5.71 USER\_JOBS

The `USER_JOBS` view provides information about all jobs owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
job	INTEGER	The identifier of the job (Job ID).
log_user	TEXT	The name of the user that submitted the job.
priv_user	TEXT	Same as log_user. Included for compatibility only.
schema_user	TEXT	The name of the schema used to parse the job.
last_date	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	The last date that this job executed successfully.
last_sec	TEXT	Same as last_date.
this_date	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	The date that the job began executing.
this_sec	TEXT	Same as this_date.
next_date	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	The next date that this job will be executed.
next_sec	TEXT	Same as next_date.
total_time	INTERVAL	The execution time of this job (in seconds).
broken	TEXT	If Y, no attempt will be made to run this job. If N, this job will attempt to execute.
interval	TEXT	Determines how often the job will repeat.
failures	BIGINT	The number of times that the job has failed to complete since its last successful execution.
what	TEXT	The job definition (PL/SQL code block) that runs when the job executes.
nls_env	CHARACTER VARYING(4000)	Always NULL. Provided for compatibility only.
misc_env	BYTEA	Always NULL. Provided for compatibility only.
instance	NUMERIC	Always 0. Provided for compatibility only.

## 5.72 USER\_OBJECTS

The `USER_OBJECTS` view provides information about all objects that are owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
------	------	-------------

schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the object belongs.
object_name	TEXT	Name of the object.
object_type	TEXT	Type of the object – possible values are: INDEX, FUNCTION, PACKAGE, PACKAGE BODY, PROCEDURE, SEQUENCE, SYNONYM, TABLE, TRIGGER, and VIEW.
status	CHARACTER VARYING	Included for compatibility only; always set to VALID.
temporary	TEXT	Y if the object is temporary; N if the object is not temporary.

## 5.73 USER\_PART\_TABLES

The `USER_PART_TABLES` view provides information about all of the partitioned tables in the database that are owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table.
partitioning_type	TEXT	The partitioning type used to define table partitions.
subpartitioning_type	TEXT	The subpartitioning type used to define table subpartitions.
partition_count	BIGINT	The number of partitions in the table.
def_subpartition_count	INTEGER	The number of subpartitions in the table.
partitioning_key_count	INTEGER	The number of partitioning keys specified.
subpartitioning_key_count	INTEGER	The number of subpartitioning keys specified.
status	CHARACTER VARYING(8)	Provided for compatibility only. Always VALID.
def_tablespace_name	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_pct_free	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_pct_used	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_ini_trans	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_max_trans	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_initial_extent	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_min_extents	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_max_extents	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_pct_increase	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_freelists	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_freelist_groups	NUMERIC	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL.
def_logging	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Provided for compatibility only. Always YES.
def_compression	CHARACTER VARYING(8)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NONE
def_buffer_pool	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Provided for compatibility only. Always DEFAULT
ref_ptn_constraint_name	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL

Name	Type	Description
interval	CHARACTER VARYING(1000)	Provided for compatibility only. Always NULL

## 5.74 USER\_POLICIES

The `USER_POLICIES` view provides information on policies where the schema containing the object on which the policy applies has the same name as the current session user. This view is accessible only to superusers.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the object resides.
object_name	TEXT	Name of the object on which the policy applies.
policy_group	TEXT	Name of the policy group. Included for compatibility only; always set to an empty string.
policy_name	TEXT	Name of the policy.
pf_owner	TEXT	Name of the schema containing the policy function, or the schema containing the package that contains the policy function.
package	TEXT	Name of the package containing the policy function (if the function belongs to a package).
function	TEXT	Name of the policy function.
sel	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to SELECT commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
ins	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to INSERT commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
upd	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to UPDATE commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
del	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to DELETE commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
idx	TEXT	Whether or not the policy applies to index maintenance. Possible values are YES or NO.
chk_option	TEXT	Whether or not the check option is in force for INSERT and UPDATE commands. Possible values are YES or NO.
enable	TEXT	Whether or not the policy is enabled on the object. Possible values are YES or NO.
static_policy	TEXT	Whether or not the policy is static. Included for compatibility only; always set to NO.
policy_type	TEXT	Policy type. Included for compatibility only; always set to UNKNOWN.
long_predicate	TEXT	Included for compatibility only; always set to YES.

## 5.75 USER\_QUEUES

The `USER_QUEUES` view provides information about any queue on which the current user has usage privileges.

Name	Type	Description
name	TEXT	The name of the queue.

queue_table	TEXT	The name of the queue table in which the queue resides.
qid	OID	The system-assigned object ID of the queue.
queue_type	CHARACTER VARYING	The queue type; may be EXCEPTION_QUEUE, NON_PERSISTENT_QUEUE, or NORMAL_QUEUE.
max_retries	NUMERIC	The maximum number of dequeue attempts.
retrydelay	NUMERIC	The maximum time allowed between retries.
enqueue_enabled	CHARACTER VARYING	YES if the queue allows enqueueing; NO if the queue does not.
dequeue_enabled	CHARACTER VARYING	YES if the queue allows dequeuing; NO if the queue does not.
retention	CHARACTER VARYING	The number of seconds that a processed message is retained in the queue.
user_comment	CHARACTER VARYING	A user-specified comment.
network_name	CHARACTER VARYING	The name of the network on which the queue resides.
sharded	CHARACTER VARYING	YES if the queue resides on a sharded network; NO if the queue does not.

## 5.76 USER\_QUEUE\_TABLES

The `USER_QUEUE_TABLES` view provides information about all of the queue tables accessible by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
queue_table	TEXT	The user-specified name of the queue table.
type	CHARACTER VARYING	The type of data stored in the queue table.
object_type	TEXT	The user-defined payload type.

sort_order	CHARACTER VARYING	The order in which the queue table is sorted.
recipients	CHARACTER VARYING	Always SINGLE.
message_grouping	CHARACTER VARYING	Always NONE.
compatible	CHARACTER VARYING	The release number of the Advanced Server release with which this queue table is compatible.
primary_instance	NUMERIC	Always 0.
secondary_instance	NUMERIC	Always 0.
owner_instance	NUMERIC	The instance number of the instance that owns the queue table.
user_comment	CHARACTER VARYING	The user comment provided when the table was created.
secure	CHARACTER VARYING	YES indicates that the queue table is secure; NO indicates that it is not.

## 5.77 USER\_ROLE\_PRIVS

The **USER\_ROLE\_PRIVS** view provides information about the privileges that have been granted to the current user. A row is created for each role to which a user has been granted.

Name	Type	Description
username	TEXT	The name of the user to which the role was granted.
granted_role	TEXT	Name of the role granted to the grantee.
admin_option	TEXT	YES if the role was granted with the admin option, NO otherwise.
default_role	TEXT	YES if the role is enabled when the grantee creates a session.
os_granted	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO.

## 5.78 USER\_SEQUENCES

The **USER\_SEQUENCES** view provides information about all user-defined sequences that belong to the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the sequence resides.
sequence_name	TEXT	Name of the sequence.
min_value	NUMERIC	The lowest value that the server will assign to the sequence.
max_value	NUMERIC	The highest value that the server will assign to the sequence.
increment_by	NUMERIC	The value added to the current sequence number to create the next sequent number.
cycle_flag	CHARACTER VARYING	Specifies if the sequence should wrap when it reaches min_value or max_value.
order_flag	CHARACTER VARYING	Included for compatibility only; always Y.
cache_size	NUMERIC	The number of pre-allocated sequence numbers in memory.
last_number	NUMERIC	The value of the last sequence number saved to disk.

## 5.79 USER\_SOURCE

The **USER\_SOURCE** view provides information about all programs owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the program belongs.
name	TEXT	Name of the program.
type	TEXT	Type of program – possible values are: FUNCTION, PACKAGE, PACKAGE BODY, PROCEDURE, and TRIGGER.
line	INTEGER	Source code line number relative to a given program.
text	TEXT	Line of source code text.

## 5.80 USER\_SUBPART\_KEY\_COLUMNS

The **USER\_SUBPART\_KEY\_COLUMNS** view provides information about the key columns of those partitioned tables which are subpartitioned that belong to the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
name	TEXT	The name of the table in which the column resides.
object_type	CHARACTER(5)	For compatibility only; always TABLE.
column_name	TEXT	The name of the column on which the key is defined.
column_position	INTEGER	1 for the first column; 2 for the second column, etc.

## 5.81 USER\_SYNONYMS

The **USER\_SYNONYMS** view provides information about all synonyms owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the synonym resides.
synonym_name	TEXT	Name of the synonym.
table_owner	TEXT	User name of the table's owner on which the synonym is defined.
table_schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
table_name	TEXT	Name of the table on which the synonym is defined.
db_link	TEXT	Name of any associated database link.

## 5.82 USER\_TAB\_COLUMNS

The **USER\_TAB\_COLUMNS** view displays information about all columns in tables and views owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the schema in which the table or view resides.
table_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the table or view in which the column resides.
column_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the column.
data_type	CHARACTER VARYING	Data type of the column.
data_length	NUMERIC	Length of text columns.
data_precision	NUMERIC	Precision (number of digits) for NUMBER columns.
data_scale	NUMERIC	Scale of NUMBER columns.
nullable	CHARACTER(1)	Whether or not the column is nullable – possible values are: Y Y – column is nullable; N – column does not allow null.
column_id	NUMERIC	Relative position of the column within the table.
data_default	CHARACTER VARYING	Default value assigned to the column.

## 5.83 USER\_TAB\_PARTITIONS

The **USER\_TAB\_PARTITIONS** view provides information about all of the partitions that are owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table.
composite	TEXT	YES if the table is subpartitioned; NO if the table is not subpartitioned.
partition_name	TEXT	The name of the partition.
subpartition_count	BIGINT	The number of subpartitions in the partition.
high_value	TEXT	The high partitioning value specified in the CREATE TABLE statement.
high_value_length	INTEGER	The length of high partitioning value.
partition_position	INTEGER	The ordinal position of this partition.
tablespace_name	TEXT	The name of the tablespace in which the partition resides.
pct_free	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
pct_used	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
ini_trans	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
max_trans	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
initial_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
next_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
min_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
max_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
pct_increase	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
freelists	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
freelist_groups	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
logging	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Included for compatibility only; always YES
compression	CHARACTER VARYING(8)	Included for compatibility only; always NONE
num_rows	NUMERIC	Same as pg_class.reltuples.
blocks	INTEGER	Same as pg_class.relpages.
empty_blocks	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
avg_space	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
chain_cnt	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
avg_row_len	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
sample_size	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
last_analyzed	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
buffer_pool	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
global_stats	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always YES
user_stats	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO
backing_table	REGCLASS	Name of the partition backing table.

## 5.84 USER\_TAB\_SUBPARTITIONS

The **USER\_TAB\_SUBPARTITIONS** view provides information about all of the subpartitions owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
------	------	-------------

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table.
partition_name	TEXT	The name of the partition.
subpartition_name	TEXT	The name of the subpartition.
high_value	TEXT	The high subpartitioning value specified in the CREATE TABLE statement.
high_value_length	INTEGER	The length of high partitioning value.
subpartition_position	INTEGER	The ordinal position of this subpartition.
tablespace_name	TEXT	The name of the tablespace in which the subpartition resides.
pct_free	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
pct_used	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
ini_trans	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
max_trans	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
initial_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
next_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
min_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
max_extent	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
pct_increase	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always 0
freelists	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
freelist_groups	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
logging	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Included for compatibility only; always YES
compression	CHARACTER VARYING(8)	Included for compatibility only; always NONE
num_rows	NUMERIC	Same as pg_class.reltuples.
blocks	INTEGER	Same as pg_class.relpages.
empty_blocks	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
avg_space	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
chain_cnt	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
avg_row_len	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
sample_size	NUMERIC	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
last_analyzed	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
buffer_pool	CHARACTER VARYING(7)	Included for compatibility only; always NULL
global_stats	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always YES
user_stats	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO
backing_table	REGCLASS	Name of the partition backing table.

## 5.85 USER\_TAB\_PRIVS

The `USER_TAB_PRIVS` view provides a listing of the object privileges for which a current user is either an object owner, grantor, or grantee.

Name	Type	Description

grantee	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user with the privilege.
owner	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Object owner.
schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the schema in which the object resides.
table_name	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Object name.
grantor	CHARACTER VARYING(128)	Name of the user who granted the privilege.
privilege	CHARACTER VARYING(40)	Privilege name.
grantable	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Indicates whether the privilege was granted with the grant option YES or NO. YES indicates that the GRANTEE (recipient of the privilege) can in turn grant the privilege to others. The value may be YES if the grantee has the administrator privileges.
hierarchy	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	The value can be YES or NO. The value may be YES if the privilege is SELECT else NO.
common	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO.
type	CHARACTER VARYING(24)	Type of object.
inherited	CHARACTER VARYING(3)	Included for compatibility only; always NO.

## 5.86 USER\_TABLES

The **USER\_TABLES** view displays information about all tables owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the table belongs.
table_name	TEXT	Name of the table.
tablespace_name	TEXT	Name of the tablespace in which the table resides if other than the default tablespace.
degree	CHARACTER VARYING(10)	Number of threads per instance to scan a table, or DEFAULT.
status	CHARACTER VARYING(5)	Included for compatibility only; always set to VALID.
temporary	CHARACTER(1)	Y if the table is temporary; N if the table is not temporary.

## 5.87 USER\_TRIGGERS

The **USER\_TRIGGERS** view displays information about all triggers on tables owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the trigger resides.
trigger_name	TEXT	The name of the trigger.
The type of the trigger. Possible values are:		
		BEFORE ROW
trigger_type	TEXT	BEFORE STATEMENT
		AFTER ROW
		AFTER STATEMENT
triggering_event	TEXT	The event that fires the trigger.
table_owner	TEXT	The user name of the owner of the table on which the trigger is defined.
base_object_type	TEXT	Included for compatibility only. Value will always be TABLE.
table_name	TEXT	The name of the table on which the trigger is defined.
referencing_names	TEXT	Included for compatibility only. Value will always be REFERENCING NEW AS NEW OLD AS OLD.
status	TEXT	Status indicates if the trigger is enabled (VALID) or disabled (NOTVALID).
description	TEXT	Included for compatibility only.
trigger_body	TEXT	The body of the trigger.
action_statement	TEXT	The SQL command that executes when the trigger fires.

## 5.88 USER\_TYPES

The `USER_TYPES` view provides information about all object types owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	The name of the schema in which the type is defined.
type_name	TEXT	The name of the type.
type_oid	OID	The object identifier (OID) of the type.
The typecode of the type. Possible values are:		
typecode	TEXT	OBJECT COLLECTION OTHER
attributes	INTEGER	The number of attributes in the type.

## 5.89 USER\_USERS

The `USER_USERS` view provides information about the current user.

Name	Type	Description
username	TEXT	User name of the user.
user_id	OID	ID number of the user.
account_status	CHARACTER VARYING(32)	<p>The current status of the account. Possible values are:</p> <p>OPEN EXPIRED EXPIRED(GRACE) EXPIRED &amp; LOCKED EXPIRED &amp; LOCKED(TIMED) EXPIRED(GRACE) &amp; LOCKED EXPIRED(GRACE) &amp; LOCKED(TIMED) LOCKED LOCKED(TIMED)</p> <p>Use the <code>edb_get_role_status(role_id)</code> function to get the current status of the account.</p>
lock_date	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	If the account status is LOCKED, lock_date displays the date and time the account was locked.
expiry_date	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	The expiration date of the account.
default_tablespace	TEXT	The default tablespace associated with the account.
temporary_tablespace	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	Included for compatibility only. The value will always be "" (an empty string).
created	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	Included for compatibility only. The value will always be NULL.
initial_rsrc_consumer_group	CHARACTER VARYING(30)	Included for compatibility only. The value will always be NULL.
external_name	CHARACTER VARYING(4000)	Included for compatibility only; always set to NULL.

## 5.90 USER\_VIEW\_COLUMNS

The `USER_VIEW_COLUMNS` view provides information about all columns in views owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the schema in which the view belongs.
view_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the view.

column_name	CHARACTER VARYING	Name of the column.
data_type	CHARACTER VARYING	Data type of the column.
data_length	NUMERIC	Length of text columns.
data_precision	NUMERIC	Precision (number of digits) for NUMBER columns.
data_scale	NUMERIC	Scale of NUMBER columns.
nullable	CHARACTER(1)	Whether or not the column is nullable – possible values are: Y – column is nullable; N – column does not allow null.
column_id	NUMERIC	Relative position of the column within the view.
data_default	CHARACTER VARYING	Default value assigned to the column.

## 5.91 USER\_VIEWS

The `USER.Views` view provides information about all views owned by the current user.

Name	Type	Description
schema_name	TEXT	Name of the schema in which the view resides.
view_name	TEXT	Name of the view.
text	TEXT	The SELECT statement that defines the view.

## 5.92 V\$VERSION

The `V$VERSION` view provides information about product compatibility.

Name	Type	Description
banner	TEXT	Displays product compatibility information.

## 5.93 PRODUCT\_COMPONENT\_VERSION

The `PRODUCT_COMPONENT_VERSION` view provides version information about product version compatibility.

Name	Type	Description
product	CHARACTER VARYING(74)	The name of the product.
version	CHARACTER VARYING(74)	The version number of the product.
status	CHARACTER VARYING(74)	Included for compatibility; always Available.

## 6 Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers

Database Compatibility for Oracle means that an application runs in an Oracle environment as well as in the EDB Postgres Advanced Server (Advanced Server) environment with minimal or no changes to the application code. Developing an application that is compatible with Oracle databases in the Advanced Server requires special attention to which features are used in the construction of the application. For example, developing a compatible application means choosing compatible:

- System and built-in functions for use in SQL statements and procedural logic.
- Stored Procedure Language (SPL) when creating database server-side application logic for stored procedures, functions, triggers, and packages.
- Data types that are compatible with Oracle databases
- SQL statements that are compatible with Oracle SQL
- System catalog views that are compatible with Oracle's data dictionary

For detailed information about the compatible SQL syntax, data types, and views, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers SQL Guide*.

The compatibility offered by the procedures and functions that are part of the Built-in packages is documented in the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Built-in Packages Guide*.

For information about using the compatible tools and utilities (EDB\*Plus, EDB\*Loader, DRITA, and EDB Wrap) that are included with an Advanced Server installation, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Tools and Utilities Guide*.

For applications written using the Oracle Call Interface (OCI), EDB's Open Client Library (OCL) provides interoperability with these applications. For detailed information about using the Open Client Library, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server OCL Connector Guide*.

Advanced Server contains a rich set of features that enables development of database applications for either PostgreSQL or Oracle. For more information about all of the features of Advanced Server, see the user documentation available at the EDB website.

Advanced Server documentation is available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

### 6.1 Configuration Parameters Compatible with Oracle Databases

EDB Postgres Advanced Server supports the development and execution of applications compatible with PostgreSQL and Oracle. Some system behaviors can be altered to act in a more PostgreSQL or in a more Oracle compliant manner; these behaviors are controlled by configuration parameters. Modifying the parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file changes the behavior for all databases in the cluster, while a user or group can `SET` the parameter value on the command line, effecting only their session. These parameters are:

- `edb_redwood_date` – Controls whether or not a time component is stored in `DATE` columns. For behavior compatible with Oracle databases, set `edb_redwood_date` to `TRUE`. See [edb\\_redwood\\_date](#).
- `edb_redwood_raw_names` – Controls whether database object names appear in uppercase or lowercase letters when viewed from Oracle system catalogs. For behavior compatible with Oracle databases, `edb_redwood_raw_names` is set to its default value of `FALSE`. To view database object names as they are actually stored in the PostgreSQL system catalogs, set `edb_redwood_raw_names` to `TRUE`. See [edb\\_redwood\\_raw\\_names](#).

- `edb_redwood_strings` – Equates `NULL` to an empty string for purposes of string concatenation operations. For behavior compatible with Oracle databases, set `edb_redwood_strings` to `TRUE`. See [edb\\_redwood\\_strings](#).
  - `edb_stmt_level_tx` – Isolates automatic rollback of an aborted SQL command to statement level rollback only – the entire, current transaction is not automatically rolled back as is the case for default PostgreSQL behavior. For behavior compatible with Oracle databases, set `edb_stmt_level_tx` to `TRUE`; however, use only when absolutely necessary. See [edb\\_stmt\\_level\\_tx](#).
  - `oracle_home` – Point Advanced Server to the correct Oracle installation directory. See [oracle\\_home](#).
- 

### 6.1.1 `edb_redwood_date`

When `DATE` appears as the data type of a column in the commands, it is translated to `TIMESTAMP` at the time the table definition is stored in the data base if the configuration parameter `edb_redwood_date` is set to `TRUE`. Thus, a time component will also be stored in the column along with the date. This is consistent with Oracle's `DATE` data type.

If `edb_redwood_date` is set to `FALSE` the column's data type in a `CREATE TABLE` or `ALTER TABLE` command remains as a native PostgreSQL `DATE` data type and is stored as such in the database. The PostgreSQL `DATE` data type stores only the date without a time component in the column.

Regardless of the setting of `edb_redwood_date`, when `DATE` appears as a data type in any other context such as the data type of a variable in an SPL declaration section, or the data type of a formal parameter in an SPL procedure or SPL function, or the return type of an SPL function, it is always internally translated to a `TIMESTAMP` and thus, can handle a time component if present.

See the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Reference Guide* for more information about date/time data types.

---

### 6.1.2 `edb_redwood_raw_names`

When `edb_redwood_raw_names` is set to its default value of `FALSE`, database object names such as table names, column names, trigger names, program names, user names, etc. appear in uppercase letters when viewed from Oracle catalogs (for a complete list of supported catalog views, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Catalog Views Guide*). In addition, quotation marks enclose names that were created with enclosing quotation marks.

When `edb_redwood_raw_names` is set to `TRUE`, the database object names are displayed exactly as they are stored in the PostgreSQL system catalogs when viewed from the Oracle catalogs. Thus, names created without enclosing quotation marks appear in lowercase as expected in PostgreSQL. Names created with enclosing quotation marks appear exactly as they were created, but without the quotation marks.

For example, the following user name is created, and then a session is started with that user.

```
CREATE USER reduser IDENTIFIED BY password;
edb=# \c - reduser
Password for user reduser:
You are now connected to database "edb" as user "reduser".
```

When connected to the database as `reduser`, the following tables are created.

```
CREATE TABLE all_lower (col INTEGER);
CREATE TABLE ALL_UPPER (COL INTEGER);
CREATE TABLE "Mixed_Case" ("Col" INTEGER);
```

When viewed from the Oracle catalog, `USER_TABLES`, with `edb_redwood_raw_names` set to the default value `FALSE`, the names appear in uppercase except for the `Mixed_Case` name, which appears as created and also with enclosing quotation marks.

```
edb=> SELECT * FROM USER_TABLES;
schema_name | table_name | tablespace_name | status | temporary
-----+-----+-----+-----+
REDUSER    | ALL_LOWER   |           | VALID  | N
REDUSER    | ALL_UPPER   |           | VALID  | N
REDUSER    | "Mixed_Case" |           | VALID  | N
(3 rows)
```

When viewed with `edb_redwood_raw_names` set to `TRUE`, the names appear in lowercase except for the `Mixed_Case` name, which appears as created, but now without the enclosing quotation marks.

```
edb=> SET edb_redwood_raw_names TO true;
SET
edb=> SELECT * FROM USER_TABLES;
schema_name | table_name | tablespace_name | status | temporary
-----+-----+-----+-----+
reduser    | all_lower  |           | VALID  | N
reduser    | all_upper  |           | VALID  | N
reduser    | Mixed_Case |           | VALID  | N
(3 rows)
```

These names now match the case when viewed from the PostgreSQL `pg_tables` catalog.

```
edb=> SELECT schemaname, tablename, tableowner FROM pg_tables WHERE
tableowner = 'reduser';
schemaname | tablename | tableowner
-----+-----+
reduser   | all_lower | reduser
reduser   | all_upper | reduser
reduser   | Mixed_Case | reduser
(3 rows)
```

### 6.1.3 `edb_redwood_strings`

In Oracle, when a string is concatenated with a null variable or null column, the result is the original string; however, in PostgreSQL concatenation of a string with a null variable or null column gives a null result. If the `edb_redwood_strings` parameter is set to `TRUE`, the aforementioned concatenation operation results in the original string as done by Oracle. If `edb_redwood_strings` is set to `FALSE`, the native PostgreSQL behavior is maintained.

The following example illustrates the difference.

The sample application introduced in the next section contains a table of employees. This table has a column named `comm` that is null for most employees. The following query is run with `edb_redwood_string` set to `FALSE`. The concatenation of a null column with non-empty strings produces a final result of null, so only employees that have a commission appear in the query result. The output line for all other employees is null.

```
SET edb_redwood_strings TO off;

SELECT RPAD(ename,10) || ' ' || TO_CHAR(sal,'99,999.99') || ' ' ||
TO_CHAR(comm,'99,999.99') "EMPLOYEE COMPENSATION" FROM emp;
```

#### EMPLOYEE COMPENSATION

---

ALLEN	1,600.00	300.00
WARD	1,250.00	500.00
MARTIN	1,250.00	1,400.00
TURNER	1,500.00	.00

(14 rows)

The following is the same query executed when `edb_redwood_strings` is set to `TRUE`. Here, the value of a null column is treated as an empty string. The concatenation of an empty string with a non-empty string produces the non-empty string. This result is consistent with the results produced by Oracle for the same query.

```
SET edb_redwood_strings TO on;

SELECT RPAD(ename,10) || ' ' || TO_CHAR(sal,'99,999.99') || ' ' ||
TO_CHAR(comm,'99,999.99') "EMPLOYEE COMPENSATION" FROM emp;
```

#### EMPLOYEE COMPENSATION

---

SMITH	800.00	
ALLEN	1,600.00	300.00
WARD	1,250.00	500.00
JONES	2,975.00	
MARTIN	1,250.00	1,400.00
BLAKE	2,850.00	
CLARK	2,450.00	
SCOTT	3,000.00	
KING	5,000.00	
TURNER	1,500.00	.00
ADAMS	1,100.00	
JAMES	950.00	
FORD	3,000.00	
MILLER	1,300.00	

(14 rows)

## 6.1.4 edb\_stmt\_level\_tx

In Oracle, when a runtime error occurs in a SQL command, all the updates on the database caused by that single command are rolled back. This is called *statement level transaction isolation*. For example, if a single `UPDATE` command successfully updates five rows, but an attempt to update a sixth row results in an exception, the updates to all six rows made by this `UPDATE` command are rolled back. The effects of prior SQL commands that have not yet been committed or rolled back are pending until a `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` command is executed.

In PostgreSQL, if an exception occurs while executing a SQL command, all the updates on the database since the start of the transaction are rolled back. In addition, the transaction is left in an aborted state and either a `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` command must be issued before another transaction can be started.

If `edb_stmt_level_tx` is set to `TRUE`, then an exception will not automatically roll back prior uncommitted database updates, emulating the Oracle behavior. If `edb_stmt_level_tx` is set to `FALSE`, then an exception will roll back uncommitted database updates.

### Note

Use `edb_stmt_level_tx` set to `TRUE` only when absolutely necessary, as this may cause a negative performance impact.

The following example run in PSQL shows that when `edb_stmt_level_tx` is `FALSE`, the abort of the second `INSERT` command also rolls back the first `INSERT` command. Note that in PSQL, the command `\set AUTOCOMMIT off` must be issued, otherwise every statement commits automatically defeating the purpose of this demonstration of the effect of `edb_stmt_level_tx`.

```
\set AUTOCOMMIT off
SET edb_stmt_level_tx TO off;

INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9001, 'JONES', 40);
INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9002, 'JONES', 00);
ERROR: insert or update on table "emp" violates foreign key constraint
"emp_ref_dept_fk"
DETAIL: Key (deptno)=(0) is not present in table "dept".

COMMIT;
SELECT empno, ename, deptno FROM emp WHERE empno > 9000;

empno | ename | deptno
-----+-----+
(0 rows)
```

In the following example, with `edb_stmt_level_tx` set to `TRUE`, the first `INSERT` command has not been rolled back after the error on the second `INSERT` command. At this point, the first `INSERT` command can either be committed or rolled back.

```
\set AUTOCOMMIT off
SET edb_stmt_level_tx TO on;

INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9001, 'JONES', 40);
INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9002, 'JONES', 00);
ERROR: insert or update on table "emp" violates foreign key constraint
"emp_ref_dept_fk"
DETAIL: Key (deptno)=(0) is not present in table "dept".
```

```
SELECT empno, ename, deptno FROM emp WHERE empno > 9000;
```

```
empno | ename | deptno
-----+-----+
9001 | JONES |   40
(1 row)
```

```
COMMIT;
```

A `ROLLBACK` command could have been issued instead of the `COMMIT` command in which case the insert of employee number `9001` would have been rolled back as well.

## 6.1.5 oracle\_home

Before creating a link to an Oracle server, you must direct Advanced Server to the correct Oracle home directory. Set the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable on Linux (or `PATH` on Windows) to the `lib` directory of the Oracle client installation directory.

For Windows only, you can instead set the value of the `oracle_home` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file. The value specified in the `oracle_home` configuration parameter will override the Windows `PATH` environment variable.

The `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable on Linux (`PATH` environment variable or `oracle_home` configuration parameter on Windows) must be set properly each time you start Advanced Server.

When using a Linux service script to start Advanced Server, be sure `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` has been set within the service script so it is in effect when the script invokes the `pg_ctl` utility to start Advanced Server.

**For Windows only:** To set the `oracle_home` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file, edit the file, adding the following line:

```
oracle_home = 'lib_directory'
```

Substitute the name of the Windows directory that contains `oci.dll` for `lib_directory`.

After setting the `oracle_home` configuration parameter, you must restart the server for the changes to take effect. Restart the server from the Windows Services console.

## 6.2 About the Examples Used in this Guide

The examples shown in this guide are illustrated using the PSQL program. The prompt that normally appears when using PSQL is omitted in these examples to provide extra clarity for the point being demonstrated.

Examples and output from examples are shown in fixed-width, grey font on a light background.

Also note the following points:

- During installation of the EDB Postgres Advanced Server the selection for configuration and defaults compatible with Oracle databases must be chosen in order to reproduce the same results as the examples shown in this guide. A default compatible configuration can be verified by issuing the following commands in PSQL and obtaining the same results as shown below.

```
SHOW edb_redwood_date;
```

```
edb_redwood_date
```

---

```
on
```

```
SHOW datestyle;
```

```
DateStyle
```

---

```
Redwood, DMY
```

```
SHOW edb_redwood_strings;
```

```
edb_redwood_strings
```

---

```
on
```

- The examples use the sample tables, `dept`, `emp`, and `jobhist`, created and loaded when Advanced Server is installed. The `emp` table is installed with triggers that must be disabled in order to reproduce the same results as shown in this guide. Log onto Advanced Server as the `enterprisedb` superuser and disable the triggers by issuing the following command.

```
ALTER TABLE emp DISABLE TRIGGER USER;
```

The triggers on the `emp` table can later be re-activated with the following command.

```
ALTER TABLE emp ENABLE TRIGGER USER;
```

## 6.3 SQL Tutorial

Advanced Server is a *relational database management system* (RDBMS). That means it is a system for managing data stored in *relations*. A relation is essentially a mathematical term for a *table*. The notion of storing data in tables is so commonplace today that it might seem inherently obvious, but there are a number of other ways of organizing databases. Files and directories on Unix-like operating systems form an example of a hierarchical database. A more modern development is the object-oriented database.

Each table is a named collection of *rows*. Each row of a given table has the same set of named *columns*, and each column is of a specific *data type*. Whereas columns have a fixed order in each row, it is important to remember that SQL does not guarantee the order of the rows within the table in any way (although they can be explicitly sorted for display).

Tables are grouped into *databases*, and a collection of databases managed by a single Advanced Server instance constitutes a database *cluster*.

## 6.3.1 Sample Database

Throughout this documentation we will be working with a sample database to help explain some basic to advanced level database concepts.

### 6.3.1.1 Sample Database Installation

When Advanced Server is installed a sample database named, `edb`, is automatically created. This sample database contains the tables and programs used throughout this document by executing the script, `edb-sample.sql`, located in the `/usr/edb/as13/share` directory.

This script does the following:

- Creates the sample tables and programs in the currently connected database
- Grants all permissions on the tables to the `PUBLIC` group

The tables and programs will be created in the first schema of the search path in which the current user has permission to create tables and procedures. You can display the search path by issuing the command:

```
SHOW SEARCH_PATH;
```

Altering the search path can be done using commands in PSQL.

### 6.3.1.2 Sample Database Description

The sample database represents employees in an organization.

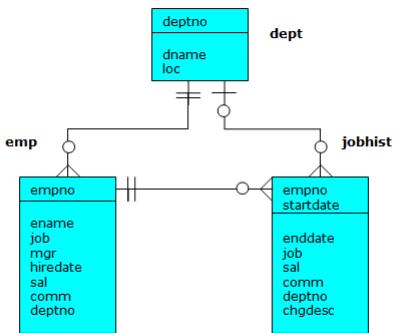
It contains three types of records: employees, departments, and historical records of employees.

Each employee has an identification number, name, hire date, salary, and manager. Some employees earn a commission in addition to their salary. All employee-related information is stored in the `emp` table.

The sample company is regionally diverse, so the database keeps track of the location of the departments. Each company employee is assigned to a department. Each department is identified by a unique department number and a short name. Each department is associated with one location. All department-related information is stored in the `dept` table.

The company also tracks information about jobs held by the employees. Some employees have been with the company for a long time and have held different positions, received raises, switched departments, etc. When a change in employee status occurs, the company records the end date of the former position. A new job record is added with the start date and the new job title, department, salary, and the reason for the status change. All employee history is maintained in the `jobhist` table.

The following is an entity relationship diagram of the sample database tables.



The following is the [edb-sample.sql](#) script.

```

-- 
-- Script that creates the 'sample' tables, views, procedures,
-- functions, triggers, etc.
-- 
-- Start new transaction - commit all or nothing
-- 
-- BEGIN;
/
-- 
-- Create and load tables used in the documentation examples.
-- 
-- Create the 'dept' table
-- 
CREATE TABLE dept (
  deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
  dname       VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
  loc         VARCHAR2(13)
);
-- 
-- Create the 'emp' table
-- 
CREATE TABLE emp (
  empno      NUMBER(4) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT emp_pk PRIMARY KEY,
  ename       VARCHAR2(10),
  job         VARCHAR2(9),
  mgr         NUMBER(4),
  hiredate    DATE,
  sal         NUMBER(7,2) CONSTRAINT emp_sal_ck CHECK (sal > 0),
  comm        NUMBER(7,2),
  deptno     NUMBER(2) CONSTRAINT emp_ref_dept_fk
              REFERENCES dept(deptno)
);
-- 
-- Create the 'jobhist' table
-- 
CREATE TABLE jobhist (
  empno      NUMBER(4) NOT NULL,
  startdate   DATE NOT NULL,
  enddate     DATE,
  job         VARCHAR2(9),
  sal         NUMBER(7,2),
  comm        NUMBER(7,2),
  deptno     NUMBER(2)
);
  
```

```

deptno      NUMBER(2),
chgdesc     VARCHAR2(80),
CONSTRAINT jobhist_pk PRIMARY KEY (empno, startdate),
CONSTRAINT jobhist_ref_emp_fk FOREIGN KEY (empno)
    REFERENCES emp(empno) ON DELETE CASCADE,
CONSTRAINT jobhist_ref_dept_fk FOREIGN KEY (deptno)
    REFERENCES dept(deptno) ON DELETE SET NULL,
CONSTRAINT jobhist_date_chk CHECK (startdate <= enddate)
);

-- 
-- Create the 'salesemp' view
-- 

CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW salesemp AS
SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, comm FROM emp WHERE job = 'SALESMAN';

-- 
-- Sequence to generate values for function 'new_empno'.
-- 

CREATE SEQUENCE next_empno START WITH 8000 INCREMENT BY 1;

-- 
-- Issue PUBLIC grants
-- 

GRANT ALL ON emp TO PUBLIC;
GRANT ALL ON dept TO PUBLIC;
GRANT ALL ON jobhist TO PUBLIC;
GRANT ALL ON salesemp TO PUBLIC;
GRANT ALL ON next_empno TO PUBLIC;

-- 
-- Load the 'dept' table
-- 

INSERT INTO dept VALUES (10,'ACCOUNTING','NEW YORK');
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (20,'RESEARCH','DALLAS');
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (30,'SALES','CHICAGO');
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (40,'OPERATIONS','BOSTON');

-- 
-- Load the 'emp' table
-- 

INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7369,'SMITH','CLERK',7902,'17-DEC-80',800,NULL,20);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7499,'ALLEN','SALESMAN',7698,'20-FEB-81',1600,300,30);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7521,'WARD','SALESMAN',7698,'22-FEB-81',1250,500,30);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7566,'JONES','MANAGER',7839,'02-APR-81',2975,NULL,20);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7654,'MARTIN','SALESMAN',7698,'28-SEP-81',1250,1400,30);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7698,'BLAKE','MANAGER',7839,'01-MAY-81',2850,NULL,30);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7782,'CLARK','MANAGER',7839,'09-JUN-81',2450,NULL,10);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7788,'SCOTT','ANALYST',7566,'19-APR-87',3000,NULL,20);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7839,'KING','PRESIDENT',NULL,'17-NOV-81',5000,NULL,10);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7844,'TURNER','SALESMAN',7698,'08-SEP-81',1500,0,30);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7876,'ADAMS','CLERK',7788,'23-MAY-87',1100,NULL,20);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7900,'JAMES','CLERK',7698,'03-DEC-81',950,NULL,30);

```

```

INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7902,'FORD','ANALYST',7566,'03-DEC-81',3000,NULL,20);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7934,'MILLER','CLERK',7782,'23-JAN-82',1300,NULL,10);
--
-- Load the 'jobhist' table
--
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7369,'17-DEC-80',NULL,'CLERK',800,NULL,20,'New
Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7499,'20-FEB-
81',NULL,'SALESMAN',1600,300,30,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7521,'22-FEB-
81',NULL,'SALESMAN',1250,500,30,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7566,'02-APR-
81',NULL,'MANAGER',2975,NULL,20,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7654,'28-SEP-
81',NULL,'SALESMAN',1250,1400,30,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7698,'01-MAY-
81',NULL,'MANAGER',2850,NULL,30,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7782,'09-JUN-
81',NULL,'MANAGER',2450,NULL,10,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7788,'19-APR-87','12-APR-
88','CLERK',1000,NULL,20,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7788,'13-APR-88','04-MAY-
89','CLERK',1040,NULL,20,'Raise');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7788,'05-MAY-
90',NULL,'ANALYST',3000,NULL,20,'Promoted to Analyst');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7839,'17-NOV-
81',NULL,'PRESIDENT',5000,NULL,10,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7844,'08-SEP-81',NULL,'SALESMAN',1500,0,30,'New
Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7876,'23-MAY-87',NULL,'CLERK',1100,NULL,20,'New
Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7900,'03-DEC-81','14-JAN-
83','CLERK',950,NULL,10,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7900,'15-JAN-
83',NULL,'CLERK',950,NULL,30,'Changed to Dept 30');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7902,'03-DEC-
81',NULL,'ANALYST',3000,NULL,20,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (7934,'23-JAN-82',NULL,'CLERK',1300,NULL,10,'New
Hire');

-- Populate statistics table and view (pg_statistic/pg_stats)
--
ANALYZE dept;
ANALYZE emp;
ANALYZE jobhist;

-- Procedure that lists all employees' numbers and names
-- from the 'emp' table using a cursor.
--
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE list_emp
IS
    v_empno      NUMBER(4);
    v_ename      VARCHAR2(10);
    CURSOR emp_cur IS
        SELECT empno, ename FROM emp ORDER BY empno;

```

```

BEGIN
  OPEN emp_cur;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO    ENAME');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----');
  LOOP
    FETCH emp_cur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
    EXIT WHEN emp_cur%NOTFOUND;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || '  ' || v_ename);
  END LOOP;
  CLOSE emp_cur;
END;
/
-- 
-- Procedure that selects an employee row given the employee
-- number and displays certain columns.
--
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE select_emp (
  p_empno      IN NUMBER
)
IS
  v_ename      emp.ename%TYPE;
  v_hiredate   emp.hiredate%TYPE;
  v_sal        emp.sal%TYPE;
  v_comm       emp.comm%TYPE;
  v_dname      dept.dname%TYPE;
  v_disp_date  VARCHAR2(10);
BEGIN
  SELECT ename, hiredate, sal, NVL(comm, 0), dname
  INTO v_ename, v_hiredate, v_sal, v_comm, v_dname
  FROM emp e, dept d
  WHERE empno = p_empno
    AND e.deptno = d.deptno;
  v_disp_date := TO_CHAR(v_hiredate, 'MM/DD/YYYY');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Number : ' || p_empno);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name : ' || v_ename);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || v_disp_date);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary : ' || v_sal);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Commission: ' || v_comm);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Department: ' || v_dname);
EXCEPTION
  WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee ' || p_empno || ' not found');
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The following is SQLERRM:');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLERRM);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The following is SQLCODE:');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLCODE);
END;
/
-- 
-- Procedure that queries the 'emp' table based on
-- department number and employee number or name. Returns
-- employee number and name as IN OUT parameters and job,
-- hire date, and salary as OUT parameters.
-- 
```

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_query (
    p_deptno      IN  NUMBER,
    p_empno       IN OUT NUMBER,
    p_ename        IN OUT VARCHAR2,
    p_job         OUT  VARCHAR2,
    p_hiredate    OUT  DATE,
    p_sal          OUT  NUMBER
)
IS
BEGIN
    SELECT empno, ename, job, hiredate, sal
    INTO p_empno, p_ename, p_job, p_hiredate, p_sal
    FROM emp
    WHERE deptno = p_deptno
        AND (empno = p_empno
            OR ename = UPPER(p_ename));
END;
/
-- 
-- Procedure to call 'emp_query_caller' with IN and IN OUT
-- parameters. Displays the results received from IN OUT and
-- OUT parameters.
-- 
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_query_caller
IS
    v_deptno      NUMBER(2);
    v_empno       NUMBER(4);
    v_ename        VARCHAR2(10);
    v_job         VARCHAR2(9);
    v_hiredate    DATE;
    v_sal          NUMBER;
BEGIN
    v_deptno := 30;
    v_empno := 0;
    v_ename := 'Martin';
    emp_query(v_deptno, v_empno, v_ename, v_job, v_hiredate, v_sal);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Department : ' || v_deptno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee No: ' || v_empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name    : ' || v_ename);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job     : ' || v_job);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || v_hiredate);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary   : ' || v_sal);
EXCEPTION
    WHEN TOO_MANY_ROWS THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('More than one employee was selected');
    WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('No employees were selected');
END;
/
-- 
-- Function to compute yearly compensation based on semimonthly
-- salary.
-- 
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION emp_comp (
    p_sal      NUMBER,

```

```

p_comm      NUMBER
) RETURN NUMBER
IS
BEGIN
  RETURN (p_sal + NVL(p_comm, 0)) * 24;
END;
/
-- 
-- Function that gets the next number from sequence, 'next_empno',
-- and ensures it is not already in use as an employee number.
--
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION new_empno RETURN NUMBER
IS
  v_cnt      INTEGER := 1;
  v_new_empno  NUMBER;
BEGIN
  WHILE v_cnt > 0 LOOP
    SELECT next_empno.nextval INTO v_new_empno FROM dual;
    SELECT COUNT(*) INTO v_cnt FROM emp WHERE empno = v_new_empno;
  END LOOP;
  RETURN v_new_empno;
END;
/
-- 
-- EDB-SPL function that adds a new clerk to table 'emp'. This function
-- uses package 'emp_admin'.
--
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION hire_clerk (
  p_ename      VARCHAR2,
  p_deptno     NUMBER
) RETURN NUMBER
IS
  v_empno      NUMBER(4);
  v_ename      VARCHAR2(10);
  v_job        VARCHAR2(9);
  v_mgr        NUMBER(4);
  v_hiredate   DATE;
  v_sal         NUMBER(7,2);
  v_comm        NUMBER(7,2);
  v_deptno     NUMBER(2);
BEGIN
  v_empno := new_empno;
  INSERT INTO emp VALUES (v_empno, p_ename, 'CLERK', 7782,
    TRUNC(SYSDATE), 950.00, NULL, p_deptno);
  SELECT empno, ename, job, mgr, hiredate, sal, comm, deptno INTO
    v_empno, v_ename, v_job, v_mgr, v_hiredate, v_sal, v_comm, v_deptno
  FROM emp WHERE empno = v_empno;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Department : ' || v_deptno);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee No: ' || v_empno);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name    : ' || v_ename);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job     : ' || v_job);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Manager  : ' || v_mgr);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || v_hiredate);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary   : ' || v_sal);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Commission : ' || v_comm);

```

```

RETURN v_empno;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The following is SQLERRM:');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLERRM);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The following is SQLCODE:');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLCODE);
    RETURN -1;
END;
/
-- 
-- PostgreSQL PL/pgSQL function that adds a new salesman
-- to table 'emp'.
-- 

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION hire_salesman (
  p_ename      VARCHAR,
  p_sal        NUMERIC,
  p_comm       NUMERIC
) RETURNS NUMERIC
AS $$$
DECLARE
  v_empno      NUMERIC(4);
  v_ename      VARCHAR(10);
  v_job        VARCHAR(9);
  v_mgr        NUMERIC(4);
  v_hiredate   DATE;
  v_sal         NUMERIC(7,2);
  v_comm        NUMERIC(7,2);
  v_deptno     NUMERIC(2);
BEGIN
  v_empno := new_empno();
  INSERT INTO emp VALUES (v_empno, p_ename, 'SALESMAN', 7698,
    CURRENT_DATE, p_sal, p_comm, 30);
  SELECT INTO
    v_empno, v_ename, v_job, v_mgr, v_hiredate, v_sal, v_comm, v_deptno
    empno, ename, job, mgr, hiredate, sal, comm, deptno
  FROM emp WHERE empno = v_empno;
  RAISE INFO 'Department : %', v_deptno;
  RAISE INFO 'Employee No: %', v_empno;
  RAISE INFO 'Name      : %', v_ename;
  RAISE INFO 'Job       : %', v_job;
  RAISE INFO 'Manager   : %', v_mgr;
  RAISE INFO 'Hire Date : %', v_hiredate;
  RAISE INFO 'Salary    : %', v_sal;
  RAISE INFO 'Commission : %', v_comm;
  RETURN v_empno;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    RAISE INFO 'The following is SQLERRM:';
    RAISE INFO '%', SQLERRM;
    RAISE INFO 'The following is SQLSTATE:';
    RAISE INFO '%', SQLSTATE;
    RETURN -1;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';

```

```

/
-- 
-- Rule to INSERT into view 'salesemp'
-- 

CREATE OR REPLACE RULE salesemp_i AS ON INSERT TO salesemp
DO INSTEAD
  INSERT INTO emp VALUES (NEW.empno, NEW.ename, 'SALESMAN', 7698,
    NEW.hiredate, NEW.sal, NEW.comm, 30);

-- 
-- Rule to UPDATE view 'salesemp'
-- 

CREATE OR REPLACE RULE salesemp_u AS ON UPDATE TO salesemp
DO INSTEAD
  UPDATE emp SET empno = NEW.empno,
    ename = NEW.ename,
    hiredate = NEW.hiredate,
    sal = NEW.sal,
    comm = NEW.comm
  WHERE empno = OLD.empno;

-- 
-- Rule to DELETE from view 'salesemp'
-- 

CREATE OR REPLACE RULE salesemp_d AS ON DELETE TO salesemp
DO INSTEAD
  DELETE FROM emp WHERE empno = OLD.empno;

-- 
-- After statement-level trigger that displays a message after
-- an insert, update, or deletion to the 'emp' table. One message
-- per SQL command is displayed.
-- 

CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER user_audit_trig
  AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp
DECLARE
  v_action      VARCHAR2(24);
BEGIN
  IF INSERTING THEN
    v_action := ' added employee(s) on ';
  ELSIF UPDATING THEN
    v_action := ' updated employee(s) on ';
  ELSIF DELETING THEN
    v_action := ' deleted employee(s) on ';
  END IF;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('User ' || USER || v_action ||
TO_CHAR(SYSDATE,'YYYY-MM-DD'));
END;
/
-- 
-- Before row-level trigger that displays employee number and
-- salary of an employee that is about to be added, updated,
-- or deleted in the 'emp' table.
-- 

CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER emp_sal_trig
  BEFORE DELETE OR INSERT OR UPDATE ON emp
  FOR EACH ROW
DECLARE

```

```

sal_diff      NUMBER;
BEGIN
  IF INSERTING THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Inserting employee ' || :NEW.empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(..New salary: ' || :NEW.sal);
  END IF;
  IF UPDATING THEN
    sal_diff := :NEW.sal - :OLD.sal;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Updating employee ' || :OLD.empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(..Old salary: ' || :OLD.sal);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(..New salary: ' || :NEW.sal);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(..Raise   : ' || sal_diff);
  END IF;
  IF DELETING THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Deleting employee ' || :OLD.empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(..Old salary: ' || :OLD.sal);
  END IF;
END;
/
-- 
-- Package specification for the 'emp_admin' package.
-- 
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE emp_admin
IS
  FUNCTION get_dept_name (
    p_deptno      NUMBER
  ) RETURN VARCHAR2;
  FUNCTION update_emp_sal (
    p_empno       NUMBER,
    p_raise       NUMBER
  ) RETURN NUMBER;
  PROCEDURE hire_emp (
    p_empno       NUMBER,
    p_ename        VARCHAR2,
    p_job         VARCHAR2,
    p_sal          NUMBER,
    p_hiredate    DATE,
    p_comm         NUMBER,
    p_mgr          NUMBER,
    p_deptno      NUMBER
  );
  PROCEDURE fire_emp (
    p_empno       NUMBER
  );
END emp_admin;
/
-- 
-- Package body for the 'emp_admin' package.
-- 
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY emp_admin
IS
  --
  -- Function that queries the 'dept' table based on the department
  -- number and returns the corresponding department name.
  --

```

```

FUNCTION get_dept_name (
    p_deptno      IN NUMBER
) RETURN VARCHAR2
IS
    v_dname      VARCHAR2(14);
BEGIN
    SELECT dname INTO v_dname FROM dept WHERE deptno = p_deptno;
    RETURN v_dname;
EXCEPTION
    WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Invalid department number ' || p_deptno);
        RETURN '';
END;
-- 
-- Function that updates an employee's salary based on the
-- employee number and salary increment/decrement passed
-- as IN parameters. Upon successful completion the function
-- returns the new updated salary.
-- 
FUNCTION update_emp_sal (
    p_empno      IN NUMBER,
    p_raise      IN NUMBER
) RETURN NUMBER
IS
    v_sal      NUMBER := 0;
BEGIN
    SELECT sal INTO v_sal FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno;
    v_sal := v_sal + p_raise;
    UPDATE emp SET sal = v_sal WHERE empno = p_empno;
    RETURN v_sal;
EXCEPTION
    WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee ' || p_empno || ' not found');
        RETURN -1;
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The following is SQLERRM:');
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLERRM);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The following is SQLCODE:');
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLCODE);
        RETURN -1;
END;
-- 
-- Procedure that inserts a new employee record into the 'emp' table.
-- 
PROCEDURE hire_emp (
    p_empno      NUMBER,
    p_ename      VARCHAR2,
    p_job       VARCHAR2,
    p_sal       NUMBER,
    p_hiredate   DATE,
    p_comm      NUMBER,
    p_mgr       NUMBER,
    p_deptno     NUMBER
)
AS

```

```

BEGIN
    INSERT INTO emp(empno, ename, job, sal, hiredate, comm, mgr, deptno)
        VALUES(p_empno, p_ename, p_job, p_sal,
               p_hiredate, p_comm, p_mgr, p_deptno);
END;
-- 
-- Procedure that deletes an employee record from the 'emp' table based
-- on the employee number.
-- 
PROCEDURE fire_emp (
    p_empno      NUMBER
)
AS
BEGIN
    DELETE FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno;
END;
END;
/
COMMIT;

```

### 6.3.2 Creating a New Table

A new table is created by specifying the table name, along with all column names and their types. The following is a simplified version of the `emp` sample table with just the minimal information needed to define a table.

```

CREATE TABLE emp (
    empno      NUMBER(4),
    ename      VARCHAR2(10),
    job        VARCHAR2(9),
    mgr        NUMBER(4),
    hiredate   DATE,
    sal        NUMBER(7,2),
    comm       NUMBER(7,2),
    deptno     NUMBER(2)
);

```

You can enter this into PSQL with line breaks. PSQL will recognize that the command is not terminated until the semicolon.

White space (i.e., spaces, tabs, and newlines) may be used freely in SQL commands. That means you can type the command aligned differently than the above, or even all on one line. Two dashes ("--) introduce comments. Whatever follows them is ignored up to the end of the line. SQL is case insensitive about key words and identifiers, except when identifiers are double-quoted to preserve the case (not done above).

`VARCHAR(10)` specifies a data type that can store arbitrary character strings up to 10 characters in length. `NUMBER(7,2)` is a fixed point number with precision 7 and scale 2. `NUMBER(4)` is an integer number with precision 4 and scale 0.

Advanced Server supports the usual SQL data types `INTEGER`, `SMALLINT`, `NUMBER`, `REAL`, `DOUBLE PRECISION`, `CHAR`, `VARCHAR2`, `DATE`, and `TIMESTAMP` as well as various synonyms for these types.

If you don't need a table any longer or want to recreate it differently you can remove it using the following

command:

```
DROP TABLE tablename;
```

### 6.3.3 Populating a Table With Rows

The **INSERT** statement is used to populate a table with rows:

```
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7369,'SMITH','CLERK',7902,'17-DEC-80',800,NULL,20);
```

Note that all data types use rather obvious input formats. Constants that are not simple numeric values usually must be surrounded by single quotes ('), as in the example. The **DATE** type is actually quite flexible in what it accepts, but for this tutorial we will stick to the unambiguous format shown here.

The syntax used so far requires you to remember the order of the columns. An alternative syntax allows you to list the columns explicitly:

```
INSERT INTO emp(empno,ename,job,mgr,hiredate,sal,comm,deptno)
VALUES (7499,'ALLEN','SALESMAN',7698,'20-FEB-81',1600,300,30);
```

You can list the columns in a different order if you wish or even omit some columns, e.g., if the commission is unknown:

```
INSERT INTO emp(empno,ename,job,mgr,hiredate,sal,deptno)
VALUES (7369,'SMITH','CLERK',7902,'17-DEC-80',800,20);
```

Many developers consider explicitly listing the columns better style than relying on the order implicitly.

### 6.3.4 Querying a Table

To retrieve data from a table, the table is *queried*. An SQL **SELECT** statement is used to do this. The statement is divided into a select list (the part that lists the columns to be returned), a table list (the part that lists the tables from which to retrieve the data), and an optional qualification (the part that specifies any restrictions). The following query lists all columns of all employees in the table in no particular order.

```
SELECT * FROM emp;
```

Here, “\*” in the select list means all columns. The following is the output from this query.

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno
7369	SMITH	CLERK	7902	17-DEC-80 00:00:00	800.00		20
7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN	7698	20-FEB-81 00:00:00	1600.00	300.00	30
7521	WARD	SALESMAN	7698	22-FEB-81 00:00:00	1250.00	500.00	30
7566	JONES	MANAGER	7839	02-APR-81 00:00:00	2975.00		20
7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	7698	28-SEP-81 00:00:00	1250.00	1400.00	30
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	7839	01-MAY-81 00:00:00	2850.00		30

7782   CLARK   MANAGER   7839   09-JUN-81 00:00:00   2450.00     10
7788   SCOTT   ANALYST   7566   19-APR-87 00:00:00   3000.00     20
7839   KING   PRESIDENT     17-NOV-81 00:00:00   5000.00     10
7844   TURNER   SALESMAN   7698   08-SEP-81 00:00:00   1500.00   0.00   30
7876   ADAMS   CLERK   7788   23-MAY-87 00:00:00   1100.00     20
7900   JAMES   CLERK   7698   03-DEC-81 00:00:00   950.00     30
7902   FORD   ANALYST   7566   03-DEC-81 00:00:00   3000.00     20
7934   MILLER   CLERK   7782   23-JAN-82 00:00:00   1300.00     10

(14 rows)

You may specify any arbitrary expression in the select list. For example, you can do:

```
SELECT ename, sal, sal * 24 AS yearly_salary, deptno FROM emp;
```

ename	sal	yearly_salary	deptno
SMITH	800.00	19200.00	20
ALLEN	1600.00	38400.00	30
WARD	1250.00	30000.00	30
JONES	2975.00	71400.00	20
MARTIN	1250.00	30000.00	30
BLAKE	2850.00	68400.00	30
CLARK	2450.00	58800.00	10
SCOTT	3000.00	72000.00	20
KING	5000.00	120000.00	10
TURNER	1500.00	36000.00	30
ADAMS	1100.00	26400.00	20
JAMES	950.00	22800.00	30
FORD	3000.00	72000.00	20
MILLER	1300.00	31200.00	10

(14 rows)

Notice how the **AS** clause is used to re-label the output column. (The **AS** clause is optional.)

A query can be qualified by adding a **WHERE** clause that specifies which rows are wanted. The **WHERE** clause contains a Boolean (truth value) expression, and only rows for which the Boolean expression is true are returned. The usual Boolean operators (**AND**, **OR**, and **NOT**) are allowed in the qualification. For example, the following retrieves the employees in department 20 with salaries over \$1000.00:

```
SELECT ename, sal, deptno FROM emp WHERE deptno = 20 AND sal > 1000;
```

ename	sal	deptno
JONES	2975.00	20
SCOTT	3000.00	20
ADAMS	1100.00	20
FORD	3000.00	20

(4 rows)

You can request that the results of a query be returned in sorted order:

```
SELECT ename, sal, deptno FROM emp ORDER BY ename;
```

ename	sal	deptno
ADAMS	1100.00	20

ALLEN	1600.00	30
BLAKE	2850.00	30
CLARK	2450.00	10
FORD	3000.00	20
JAMES	950.00	30
JONES	2975.00	20
KING	5000.00	10
MARTIN	1250.00	30
MILLER	1300.00	10
SCOTT	3000.00	20
SMITH	800.00	20
TURNER	1500.00	30
WARD	1250.00	30

(14 rows)

You can request that duplicate rows be removed from the result of a query:

```
SELECT DISTINCT job FROM emp;
```

job
ANALYST
CLERK
MANAGER
PRESIDENT
SALESMAN

(5 rows)

The following section shows how to obtain rows from more than one table in a single query.

### 6.3.5 Joins Between Tables

Thus far, our queries have only accessed one table at a time. Queries can access multiple tables at once, or access the same table in such a way that multiple rows of the table are being processed at the same time. A query that accesses multiple rows of the same or different tables at one time is called a *join* query. For example, say you wish to list all the employee records together with the name and location of the associated department. To do that, we need to compare the `deptno` column of each row of the `emp` table with the `deptno` column of all rows in the `dept` table, and select the pairs of rows where these values match. This would be accomplished by the following query:

```
SELECT emp.ename, emp.sal, dept.deptno, dept.dname, dept.loc FROM emp, dept
WHERE emp.deptno = dept.deptno;
```

ename	sal	deptno	dname	loc
MILLER	1300.00	10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
CLARK	2450.00	10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
KING	5000.00	10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
SCOTT	3000.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
JONES	2975.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
SMITH	800.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS

ADAMS	1100.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
FORD	3000.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
WARD	1250.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
TURNER	1500.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
ALLEN	1600.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
BLAKE	2850.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
MARTIN	1250.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
JAMES	950.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO

(14 rows)

Observe two things about the result set:

- There is no result row for department 40. This is because there is no matching entry in the `emp` table for department 40, so the join ignores the unmatched rows in the `dept` table. Shortly we will see how this can be fixed.
- It is more desirable to list the output columns qualified by table name rather than using \* or leaving out the qualification as follows:

```
SELECT ename, sal, dept.deptno, dname, loc FROM emp, dept WHERE emp.deptno =
dept.deptno;
```

Since all the columns had different names (except for `deptno` which therefore must be qualified), the parser automatically found out which table they belong to, but it is good style to fully qualify column names in join queries:

Join queries of the kind seen thus far can also be written in this alternative form:

```
SELECT emp.ename, emp.sal, dept.deptno, dept.dname, dept.loc FROM emp INNER
JOIN dept ON emp.deptno = dept.deptno;
```

This syntax is not as commonly used as the one above, but we show it here to help you understand the following topics.

You will notice that in all the above results for joins no employees were returned that belonged to department 40 and as a consequence, the record for department 40 never appears. Now we will figure out how we can get the department 40 record in the results despite the fact that there are no matching employees. What we want the query to do is to scan the `dept` table and for each row to find the matching `emp` row. If no matching row is found we want some “empty” values to be substituted for the `emp` table’s columns. This kind of query is called an *outer join*. (The joins we have seen so far are *inner joins*.) The command looks like this:

```
SELECT emp.ename, emp.sal, dept.deptno, dept.dname, dept.loc FROM dept LEFT
OUTER JOIN emp ON emp.deptno = dept.deptno;
```

ename	sal	deptno	dname	loc
MILLER	1300.00	10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
CLARK	2450.00	10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
KING	5000.00	10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
SCOTT	3000.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
JONES	2975.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
SMITH	800.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
ADAMS	1100.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
FORD	3000.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
WARD	1250.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
TURNER	1500.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
ALLEN	1600.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
BLAKE	2850.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
MARTIN	1250.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
JAMES	950.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO

| | 40 | OPERATIONS | BOSTON  
(15 rows)

This query is called a *left outer join* because the table mentioned on the left of the join operator will have each of its rows in the output at least once, whereas the table on the right will only have those rows output that match some row of the left table. When a left-table row is selected for which there is no right-table match, empty (`NULL`) values are substituted for the right-table columns.

An alternative syntax for an outer join is to use the outer join operator, "(+)", in the join condition within the `WHERE` clause. The outer join operator is placed after the column name of the table for which null values should be substituted for unmatched rows. So for all the rows in the `dept` table that have no matching rows in the `emp` table, Advanced Server returns null for any select list expressions containing columns of `emp`. Hence the above example could be rewritten as:

```
SELECT emp.ename, emp.sal, dept.deptno, dept.dname, dept.loc FROM dept, emp
WHERE emp.deptno(+) = dept.deptno;
```

ename	sal	deptno	dname	loc
MILLER	1300.00	10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
CLARK	2450.00	10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
KING	5000.00	10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
SCOTT	3000.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
JONES	2975.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
SMITH	800.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
ADAMS	1100.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
FORD	3000.00	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
WARD	1250.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
TURNER	1500.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
ALLEN	1600.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
BLAKE	2850.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
MARTIN	1250.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO
JAMES	950.00	30	SALES	CHICAGO

| | 40 | OPERATIONS | BOSTON  
(15 rows)

We can also join a table against itself. This is called a *self join*. As an example, suppose we wish to find the name of each employee along with the name of that employee's manager. So we need to compare the `mgr` column of each `emp` row to the `empno` column of all other `emp` rows.

```
SELECT e1.ename || ' works for ' || e2.ename AS "Employees and their
Managers" FROM emp e1, emp e2 WHERE e1.mgr = e2.empno;
```

Employees and their Managers

---

FORD works for JONES
SCOTT works for JONES
WARD works for BLAKE
TURNER works for BLAKE
MARTIN works for BLAKE
JAMES works for BLAKE
ALLEN works for BLAKE
MILLER works for CLARK
ADAMS works for SCOTT
CLARK works for KING
BLAKE works for KING
JONES works for KING

SMITH works for FORD

(13 rows)

Here, the `emp` table has been re-labeled as `e1` to represent the employee row in the select list and in the join condition, and also as `e2` to represent the matching employee row acting as manager in the select list and in the join condition. These kinds of aliases can be used in other queries to save some typing, for example:

```
SELECT e.ename, e.mgr, d.deptno, d.dname, d.loc FROM emp e, dept d WHERE
e.deptno = d.deptno;
```

ename	mgr	deptno	dname	loc
MILLER	7782	10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
CLARK	7839	10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
KING		10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
SCOTT	7566	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
JONES	7839	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
SMITH	7902	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
ADAMS	7788	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
FORD	7566	20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
WARD	7698	30	SALES	CHICAGO
TURNER	7698	30	SALES	CHICAGO
ALLEN	7698	30	SALES	CHICAGO
BLAKE	7839	30	SALES	CHICAGO
MARTIN	7698	30	SALES	CHICAGO
JAMES	7698	30	SALES	CHICAGO

(14 rows)

This style of abbreviating will be encountered quite frequently.

### 6.3.6 Aggregate Functions

Like most other relational database products, Advanced Server supports aggregate functions. An aggregate function computes a single result from multiple input rows. For example, there are aggregates to compute the `COUNT`, `SUM`, `AVG` (average), `MAX` (maximum), and `MIN` (minimum) over a set of rows.

As an example, the highest and lowest salaries can be found with the following query:

```
SELECT MAX(sal) highest_salary, MIN(sal) lowest_salary FROM emp;
```

highest_salary	lowest_salary
5000.00	800.00

(1 row)

If we wanted to find the employee with the largest salary, we may be tempted to try:

```
SELECT ename FROM emp WHERE sal = MAX(sal);
```

ERROR: aggregates not allowed in WHERE clause

This does not work because the aggregate function, `MAX`, cannot be used in the `WHERE` clause. This restriction exists because the `WHERE` clause determines the rows that will go into the aggregation stage so it has to be evaluated before aggregate functions are computed. However, the query can be restated to accomplish the intended result by using a *subquery*:

```
SELECT ename FROM emp WHERE sal = (SELECT MAX(sal) FROM emp);
```

```
ename
```

```
-----  
KING  
(1 row)
```

The subquery is an independent computation that obtains its own result separately from the outer query.

Aggregates are also very useful in combination with the `GROUP BY` clause. For example, the following query gets the highest salary in each department.

```
SELECT deptno, MAX(sal) FROM emp GROUP BY deptno;
```

```
deptno | max
```

```
-----+-----  
10 | 5000.00  
20 | 3000.00  
30 | 2850.00  
(3 rows)
```

This query produces one output row per department. Each aggregate result is computed over the rows matching that department. These grouped rows can be filtered using the `HAVING` clause.

```
SELECT deptno, MAX(sal) FROM emp GROUP BY deptno HAVING AVG(sal) > 2000;
```

```
deptno | max
```

```
-----+-----  
10 | 5000.00  
20 | 3000.00  
(2 rows)
```

This query gives the same results for only those departments that have an average salary greater than 2000.

Finally, the following query takes into account only the highest paid employees who are analysts in each department.

```
SELECT deptno, MAX(sal) FROM emp WHERE job = 'ANALYST' GROUP BY deptno  
HAVING AVG(sal) > 2000;
```

```
deptno | max
```

```
-----+-----  
20 | 3000.00  
(1 row)
```

There is a subtle distinction between the `WHERE` and `HAVING` clauses. The `WHERE` clause filters out rows before grouping occurs and aggregate functions are applied. The `HAVING` clause applies filters on the results after rows have been grouped and aggregate functions have been computed for each group.

So in the previous example, only employees who are analysts are considered. From this subset, the employees are grouped by department and only those groups where the average salary of analysts in the group is greater than 2000 are in the final result. This is true of only the group for department 20 and the maximum analyst salary in department 20 is 3000.00.

### 6.3.7 Updates

The column values of existing rows can be changed using the **UPDATE** command. For example, the following sequence of commands shows the before and after results of giving everyone who is a manager a 10% raise:

```
SELECT ename, sal FROM emp WHERE job = 'MANAGER';
```

ename   sal
-----+-----
JONES   2975.00
BLAKE   2850.00
CLARK   2450.00
(3 rows)

```
UPDATE emp SET sal = sal * 1.1 WHERE job = 'MANAGER';
```

```
SELECT ename, sal FROM emp WHERE job = 'MANAGER';
```

ename   sal
-----+-----
JONES   3272.50
BLAKE   3135.00
CLARK   2695.00
(3 rows)

### 6.3.8 Deletions

Rows can be removed from a table using the **DELETE** command. For example, the following sequence of commands shows the before and after results of deleting all employees in department **20**.

```
SELECT ename, deptno FROM emp;
```

ename   deptno
-----+-----
SMITH   20
ALLEN   30
WARD   30
JONES   20
MARTIN   30
BLAKE   30
CLARK   10
SCOTT   20
KING   10
TURNER   30
ADAMS   20
JAMES   30
FORD   20
MILLER   10

(14 rows)

```
DELETE FROM emp WHERE deptno = 20;
```

```
SELECT ename, deptno FROM emp;
ename | deptno
```

ename	deptno
ALLEN	30
WARD	30
MARTIN	30
BLAKE	30
CLARK	10
KING	10
TURNER	30
JAMES	30
MILLER	10

(9 rows)

Be extremely careful of giving a `DELETE` command without a `WHERE` clause such as the following:

```
DELETE FROM tablename;
```

This statement will remove all rows from the given table, leaving it completely empty. The system will not request confirmation before doing this.

### 6.3.9 The SQL Language

Advanced Server supports SQL language that is compatible with Oracle syntax as well as syntax and commands for extended functionality (functionality that does not provide database compatibility for Oracle or support Oracle-style applications).

The *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's SQL Guide* provides detailed information about:

- Compatible SQL syntax and language elements
- Data types
- Supported SQL command syntax

To review a copy of the guide, visit the Advanced Server website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## 6.4 Advanced Concepts

The previous section discussed the basics of using SQL to store and access your data in Advanced Server. This section discusses more advanced SQL features that may simplify management and prevent loss or corruption of your data.

## 6.4.1 Views

Consider the following `SELECT` command.

```
SELECT ename, sal, sal * 24 AS yearly_salary, deptno FROM emp;
```

ename	sal	yearly_salary	deptno
SMITH	800.00	19200.00	20
ALLEN	1600.00	38400.00	30
WARD	1250.00	30000.00	30
JONES	2975.00	71400.00	20
MARTIN	1250.00	30000.00	30
BLAKE	2850.00	68400.00	30
CLARK	2450.00	58800.00	10
SCOTT	3000.00	72000.00	20
KING	5000.00	120000.00	10
TURNER	1500.00	36000.00	30
ADAMS	1100.00	26400.00	20
JAMES	950.00	22800.00	30
FORD	3000.00	72000.00	20
MILLER	1300.00	31200.00	10

(14 rows)

If this is a query that is used repeatedly, a shorthand method of reusing this query without re-typing the entire `SELECT` command each time is to create a *view* as shown below.

```
CREATE VIEW employee_pay AS SELECT ename, sal, sal * 24 AS yearly_salary,
deptno FROM emp;
```

The view name, `employee_pay`, can now be used like an ordinary table name to perform the query.

```
SELECT * FROM employee_pay;
```

ename	sal	yearly_salary	deptno
SMITH	800.00	19200.00	20
ALLEN	1600.00	38400.00	30
WARD	1250.00	30000.00	30
JONES	2975.00	71400.00	20
MARTIN	1250.00	30000.00	30
BLAKE	2850.00	68400.00	30
CLARK	2450.00	58800.00	10
SCOTT	3000.00	72000.00	20
KING	5000.00	120000.00	10
TURNER	1500.00	36000.00	30
ADAMS	1100.00	26400.00	20
JAMES	950.00	22800.00	30
FORD	3000.00	72000.00	20
MILLER	1300.00	31200.00	10

(14 rows)

Making liberal use of views is a key aspect of good SQL database design. Views provide a consistent interface

that encapsulate details of the structure of your tables which may change as your application evolves.

Views can be used in almost any place a real table can be used. Building views upon other views is not uncommon.

## 6.4.2 Foreign Keys

Suppose you want to make sure all employees belong to a valid department. This is called maintaining the *referential integrity* of your data. In simplistic database systems this would be implemented (if at all) by first looking at the `dept` table to check if a matching record exists, and then inserting or rejecting the new employee record. This approach has a number of problems and is very inconvenient. Advanced Server can make it easier for you.

A modified version of the `emp` table presented in [Creating a New Table](#) is shown in this section with the addition of a foreign key constraint. The modified `emp` table looks like the following:

```
CREATE TABLE emp (
    empno      NUMBER(4) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT emp_pk PRIMARY KEY,
    ename      VARCHAR2(10),
    job        VARCHAR2(9),
    mgr        NUMBER(4),
    hiredate   DATE,
    sal         NUMBER(7,2),
    comm       NUMBER(7,2),
    deptno    NUMBER(2) CONSTRAINT emp_ref_dept_fk
              REFERENCES dept(deptno)
);
```

If an attempt is made to issue the following `INSERT` command in the sample `emp` table, the foreign key constraint, `emp_ref_dept_fk`, ensures that department `50` exists in the `dept` table. Since it does not, the command is rejected.

```
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (8000,'JONES','CLERK',7902,'17-AUG-07',1200,NULL,50);
```

```
ERROR: insert or update on table "emp" violates foreign key constraint
"emp_ref_dept_fk"
DETAIL: Key (deptno)=(50) is not present in table "dept".
```

The behavior of foreign keys can be finely tuned to your application. Making correct use of foreign keys will definitely improve the quality of your database applications, so you are strongly encouraged to learn more about them.

## 6.4.3 The ROWNUM Pseudo-Column

`ROWNUM` is a pseudo-column that is assigned an incremental, unique integer value for each row based on the order the rows were retrieved from a query. Therefore, the first row retrieved will have `ROWNUM` of `1`; the second row will have `ROWNUM` of `2` and so on.

This feature can be used to limit the number of rows retrieved by a query. This is demonstrated in the following

example:

```
SELECT empno, ename, job FROM emp WHERE ROWNUM < 5;
```

empno	ename	job
7369	SMITH	CLERK
7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN
7521	WARD	SALESMAN
7566	JONES	MANAGER

(4 rows)

The `ROWNUM` value is assigned to each row before any sorting of the result set takes place. Thus, the result set is returned in the order given by the `ORDER BY` clause, but the `ROWNUM` values may not necessarily be in ascending order as shown in the following example:

```
SELECT ROWNUM, empno, ename, job FROM emp WHERE ROWNUM < 5 ORDER BY ename;
```

rownum	empno	ename	job
2	7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN
4	7566	JONES	MANAGER
1	7369	SMITH	CLERK
3	7521	WARD	SALESMAN

(4 rows)

The following example shows how a sequence number can be added to every row in the `jobhist` table. First a new column named, `seqno`, is added to the table and then `seqno` is set to `ROWNUM` in the `UPDATE` command.

```
ALTER TABLE jobhist ADD seqno NUMBER(3);
UPDATE jobhist SET seqno = ROWNUM;
```

The following `SELECT` command shows the new `seqno` values.

```
SELECT seqno, empno, TO_CHAR(startdate,'DD-MON-YY') AS start, job FROM
jobhist;
```

seqno	empno	start	job
1	7369	17-DEC-80	CLERK
2	7499	20-FEB-81	SALESMAN
3	7521	22-FEB-81	SALESMAN
4	7566	02-APR-81	MANAGER
5	7654	28-SEP-81	SALESMAN
6	7698	01-MAY-81	MANAGER
7	7782	09-JUN-81	MANAGER
8	7788	19-APR-87	CLERK
9	7788	13-APR-88	CLERK
10	7788	05-MAY-90	ANALYST
11	7839	17-NOV-81	PRESIDENT
12	7844	08-SEP-81	SALESMAN
13	7876	23-MAY-87	CLERK
14	7900	03-DEC-81	CLERK
15	7900	15-JAN-83	CLERK
16	7902	03-DEC-81	ANALYST
17	7934	23-JAN-82	CLERK

(17 rows)

## 6.4.4      Synonyms

A *synonym* is an identifier that can be used to reference another database object in a SQL statement. A synonym is useful in cases where a database object would normally require full qualification by schema name to be properly referenced in a SQL statement. A synonym defined for that object simplifies the reference to a single, unqualified name.

Advanced Server supports synonyms for:

- tables
- views
- materialized views
- sequences
- procedures
- functions
- types
- objects that are accessible through a database link
- other synonyms

Neither the referenced schema or referenced object must exist at the time that you create the synonym; a synonym may refer to a non-existent object or schema. A synonym will become invalid if you drop the referenced object or schema. You must explicitly drop a synonym to remove it.

As with any other schema object, Advanced Server uses the search path to resolve unqualified synonym names. If you have two synonyms with the same name, an unqualified reference to a synonym will resolve to the first synonym with the given name in the search path. If `public` is in your search path, you can refer to a synonym in that schema without qualifying that name.

When Advanced Server executes an SQL command, the privileges of the current user are checked against the synonym's underlying database object; if the user does not have the proper permissions for that object, the SQL command will fail.

### Creating a Synonym

Use the `CREATE SYNONYM` command to create a synonym. The syntax is:

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] [PUBLIC] SYNONYM [<schema>.]<syn_name>
FOR <object_schema>.<object_name>[@<dblink_name>];
```

#### Parameters:

`syn_name`

`syn_name` is the name of the synonym. A synonym name must be unique within a schema.

`schema`

`schema` specifies the name of the schema that the synonym resides in. If you do not specify a schema name, the synonym is created in the first existing schema in your search path.

`object_name`

`object_name` specifies the name of the object.

## object\_schema

`object_schema` specifies the name of the schema that the object resides in.

## dblink\_name

`dblink_name` specifies the name of the database link through which a target object may be accessed.

Include the `REPLACE` clause to replace an existing synonym definition with a new synonym definition.

Include the `PUBLIC` clause to create the synonym in the `public` schema. Compatible with Oracle databases, the `CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM` command creates a synonym that resides in the `public` schema:

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] PUBLIC SYNONYM <syn_name> FOR
<object_schema>.<object_name>;
```

This just a shorthand way to write:

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] SYNONYM public.<syn_name> FOR
<object_schema>.<object_name>;
```

The following example creates a synonym named `personnel` that refers to the `enterprisedb.emp` table.

```
CREATE SYNONYM personnel FOR enterprisedb.emp;
```

Unless the synonym is schema qualified in the `CREATE SYNONYM` command, it will be created in the first existing schema in your search path. You can view your search path by executing the following command:

```
SHOW SEARCH_PATH;
```

```
search_path
```

---

```
development,accounting
(1 row)
```

In our example, if a schema named `development` does not exist, the synonym will be created in the schema named `accounting`.

Now, the `emp` table in the `enterprisedb` schema can be referenced in any SQL statement (DDL or DML), by using the synonym, `personnel`:

```
INSERT INTO personnel VALUES (8142,'ANDERSON','CLERK',7902,'17-DEC-06',1300,NULL,20);
```

```
SELECT * FROM personnel;
```

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno
7369	SMITH	CLERK	7902	17-DEC-80 00:00:00	800.00		20
7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN	7698	20-FEB-81 00:00:00	1600.00	300.00	30
7521	WARD	SALESMAN	7698	22-FEB-81 00:00:00	1250.00	500.00	30
7566	JONES	MANAGER	7839	02-APR-81 00:00:00	2975.00		20
7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	7698	28-SEP-81 00:00:00	1250.00	1400.00	30
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	7839	01-MAY-81 00:00:00	2850.00		30
7782	CLARK	MANAGER	7839	09-JUN-81 00:00:00	2450.00		10
7788	SCOTT	ANALYST	7566	19-APR-87 00:00:00	3000.00		20
7839	KING	PRESIDENT		17-NOV-81 00:00:00	5000.00		10
7844	TURNER	SALESMAN	7698	08-SEP-81 00:00:00	1500.00	0.00	30

7876	ADAMS	CLERK	7788	23-MAY-87 00:00:00	1100.00	20
7900	JAMES	CLERK	7698	03-DEC-81 00:00:00	950.00	30
7902	FORD	ANALYST	7566	03-DEC-81 00:00:00	3000.00	20
7934	MILLER	CLERK	7782	23-JAN-82 00:00:00	1300.00	10
8142	ANDERSON	CLERK	7902	17-DEC-06 00:00:00	1300.00	20

(15 rows)

## Deleting a Synonym

To delete a synonym, use the command, `DROP SYNONYM`. The syntax is:

```
DROP [PUBLIC] SYNONYM [<schema>.] <syn_name>
```

### Parameters:

`syn_name`

`syn_name` is the name of the synonym. A synonym name must be unique within a schema.

`schema`

`schema` specifies the name of the schema in which the synonym resides.

Like any other object that can be schema-qualified, you may have two synonyms with the same name in your search path. To disambiguate the name of the synonym that you are dropping, include a schema name. Unless a synonym is schema qualified in the `DROP SYNONYM` command, Advanced Server deletes the first instance of the synonym it finds in your search path.

You can optionally include the `PUBLIC` clause to drop a synonym that resides in the `public` schema. Compatible with Oracle databases, the `DROP PUBLIC SYNONYM` command drops a synonym that resides in the `public` schema:

```
DROP PUBLIC SYNONYM <syn_name>;
```

The following example drops the synonym, `personnel`:

```
DROP SYNONYM personnel;
```

---

## 6.4.5 Hierarchical Queries

A *hierarchical query* is a type of query that returns the rows of the result set in a hierarchical order based upon data forming a parent-child relationship. A hierarchy is typically represented by an inverted tree structure. The tree is comprised of interconnected *nodes*. Each node may be connected to none, one, or multiple *child* nodes. Each node is connected to one *parent* node except for the top node which has no parent. This node is the *root node*. Each tree has exactly one root node. Nodes that don't have any children are called *leaf* nodes. A tree always has at least one leaf node - e.g., the trivial case where the tree is comprised of a single node. In this case it is both the root and the leaf.

In a hierarchical query the rows of the result set represent the nodes of one or more trees.

### Note

It is possible that a single, given row may appear in more than one tree and thus appear more than once in the result set.

The hierarchical relationship in a query is described by the `CONNECT BY` clause which forms the basis of the order in which rows are returned in the result set. The context of where the `CONNECT BY` clause and its associated optional clauses appear in the `SELECT` command is shown below.

```
SELECT <select_list> FROM <table_expression> [ WHERE ...]
[ START WITH <start_expression> ]
  CONNECT BY { PRIOR <parent_expr> = <child_expr> |
    <child_expr> = PRIOR <parent_expr> }
[ ORDER SIBLINGS BY <column1> [ ASC | DESC ]
  [, <column2> [ ASC | DESC ] ] ...
[ GROUP BY ...]
[ HAVING ...]
[ <other> ...]
```

`select_list` is one or more expressions that comprise the fields of the result set. `table_expression` is one or more tables or views from which the rows of the result set originate. `other` is any additional legal `SELECT` command clauses. The clauses pertinent to hierarchical queries, `START WITH`, `CONNECT BY`, and `ORDER SIBLINGS BY` are described in the following sections.

#### Note

At this time, Advanced Server does not support the use of `AND` (or other operators) in the `CONNECT BY` clause.

---

### 6.4.5.1 Defining the Parent/Child Relationship

For any given row, its parent and its children are determined by the `CONNECT BY` clause. The `CONNECT BY` clause must consist of two expressions compared with the equals (=) operator. In addition, one of these two expressions must be preceded by the keyword, `PRIOR`.

For any given row, to determine its children:

1. Evaluate `parent_expr` on the given row
2. Evaluate `child_expr` on any other row resulting from the evaluation of `table_expression`
3. If `parent_expr = child_expr`, then this row is a child node of the given parent row
4. Repeat the process for all remaining rows in `table_expression`. All rows that satisfy the equation in step 3 are the children nodes of the given parent row.

#### Note

The evaluation process to determine if a row is a child node occurs on every row returned by `table_expression` before the `WHERE` clause is applied to `table_expression`.

By iteratively repeating this process treating each child node found in the prior steps as a parent, an inverted tree of nodes is constructed. The process is complete when the final set of child nodes has no children of their own - these are the leaf nodes.

A `SELECT` command that includes a `CONNECT BY` clause typically includes the `START WITH` clause. The `START WITH` clause determines the rows that are to be the root nodes - i.e., the rows that are the initial parent nodes upon which the algorithm described previously is to be applied. This is further explained in the following section.

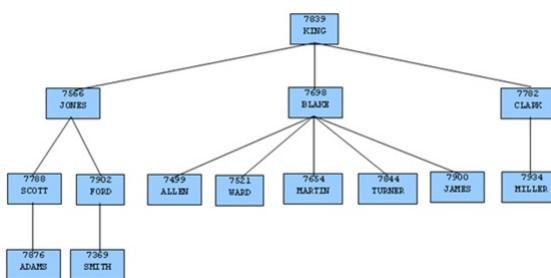
---

## 6.4.5.2 Selecting the Root Nodes

The **START WITH** clause is used to determine the row(s) selected by `table_expression` that are to be used as the root nodes. All rows selected by `table_expression` where `start_expression` evaluates to true become a root node of a tree. Thus, the number of potential trees in the result set is equal to the number of root nodes. As a consequence, if the **START WITH** clause is omitted, then every row returned by `table_expression` is a root of its own tree.

## 6.4.5.3 Organization Tree in the Sample Application

Consider the `emp` table of the sample application. The rows of the `emp` table form a hierarchy based upon the `mgr` column which contains the employee number of the employee's manager. Each employee has at most, one manager. `KING` is the president of the company so he has no manager, therefore `KING`'s `mgr` column is null. Also, it is possible for an employee to act as a manager for more than one employee. This relationship forms a typical, tree-structured, hierarchical organization chart as illustrated below.



To form a hierarchical query based upon this relationship, the `SELECT` command includes the clause, `CONNECT BY PRIOR empno = mgr`. For example, given the company president, `KING`, with employee number `7839`, any employee whose `mgr` column is `7839` reports directly to `KING` which is true for `JONES`, `BLAKE`, and `CLARK` (these are the child nodes of `KING`). Similarly, for employee, `JONES`, any other employee with `mgr` column equal to `7566` is a child node of `JONES` - these are `SCOTT` and `FORD` in this example.

The top of the organization chart is `KING` so there is one root node in this tree. The `START WITH mgr IS NULL` clause selects only `KING` as the initial root node.

The complete `SELECT` command is shown below.

```

SELECT ename, empno, mgr
FROM emp
START WITH mgr IS NULL
CONNECT BY PRIOR empno = mgr;
  
```

The rows in the query output traverse each branch from the root to leaf moving in a top-to-bottom, left-to-right order. Below is the output from this query.

ename	empno	mgr
KING	7839	
JONES	7566	7839
SCOTT	7788	7566
ADAMS	7876	7788
FORD	7902	7566

```
SMITH | 7369 | 7902
BLAKE | 7698 | 7839
ALLEN | 7499 | 7698
WARD | 7521 | 7698
MARTIN | 7654 | 7698
TURNER | 7844 | 7698
JAMES | 7900 | 7698
CLARK | 7782 | 7839
MILLER | 7934 | 7782
(14 rows)
```

#### 6.4.5.4 Node Level

`LEVEL` is a pseudo-column that can be used wherever a column can appear in the `SELECT` command. For each row in the result set, `LEVEL` returns a non-zero integer value designating the depth in the hierarchy of the node represented by this row. The `LEVEL` for root nodes is 1. The `LEVEL` for direct children of root nodes is 2, and so on.

The following query is a modification of the previous query with the addition of the `LEVEL` pseudo-column. In addition, using the `LEVEL` value, the employee names are indented to further emphasize the depth in the hierarchy of each row.

```
SELECT LEVEL, LPAD (' ', 2 * (LEVEL - 1)) || ename "employee", empno, mgr
FROM emp START WITH mgr IS NULL
CONNECT BY PRIOR empno = mgr;
```

The output from this query follows.

level	employee	empno	mgr
1	KING	7839	
2	JONES	7566	7839
3	SCOTT	7788	7566
4	ADAMS	7876	7788
3	FORD	7902	7566
4	SMITH	7369	7902
2	BLAKE	7698	7839
3	ALLEN	7499	7698
3	WARD	7521	7698
3	MARTIN	7654	7698
3	TURNER	7844	7698
3	JAMES	7900	7698
2	CLARK	7782	7839
3	MILLER	7934	7782
(14 rows)			

Nodes that share a common parent and are at the same level are called *siblings*. For example in the above output, employees ALLEN, WARD, MARTIN, TURNER, and JAMES are siblings since they are all at level three with parent, BLAKE. JONES, BLAKE, and CLARK are siblings since they are at level two and KING is their common parent.

## 6.4.5.5 Ordering the Siblings

The result set can be ordered so the siblings appear in ascending or descending order by selected column value(s) using the `ORDER SIBLINGS BY` clause. This is a special case of the `ORDER BY` clause that can be used only with hierarchical queries.

The previous query is further modified with the addition of `ORDER SIBLINGS BY ename ASC`.

```
SELECT LEVEL, LPAD (' ', 2 * (LEVEL - 1)) || ename "employee", empno, mgr
FROM emp START WITH mgr IS NULL
CONNECT BY PRIOR empno = mgr
ORDER SIBLINGS BY ename ASC;
```

The output from the prior query is now modified so the siblings appear in ascending order by name. Siblings **BLAKE**, **CLARK**, and **JONES** are now alphabetically arranged under **KING**. Siblings **ALLEN**, **JAMES**, **MARTIN**, **TURNER**, and **WARD** are alphabetically arranged under **BLAKE**, and so on.

level	employee	empno	mgr
1	KING	7839	
2	BLAKE	7698	7839
3	ALLEN	7499	7698
3	JAMES	7900	7698
3	MARTIN	7654	7698
3	TURNER	7844	7698
3	WARD	7521	7698
2	CLARK	7782	7839
3	MILLER	7934	7782
2	JONES	7566	7839
3	FORD	7902	7566
4	SMITH	7369	7902
3	SCOTT	7788	7566
4	ADAMS	7876	7788

(14 rows)

This final example adds the `WHERE` clause and starts with three root nodes. After the node tree is constructed, the `WHERE` clause filters out rows in the tree to form the result set.

```
SELECT LEVEL, LPAD (' ', 2 * (LEVEL - 1)) || ename "employee", empno, mgr
FROM emp WHERE mgr IN (7839, 7782, 7902, 7788)
START WITH ename IN ('BLAKE','CLARK','JONES')
CONNECT BY PRIOR empno = mgr
ORDER SIBLINGS BY ename ASC;
```

The output from the query shows three root nodes (level one) - **BLAKE**, **CLARK**, and **JONES**. In addition, rows that do not satisfy the `WHERE` clause have been eliminated from the output.

level	employee	empno	mgr
1	BLAKE	7698	7839
1	CLARK	7782	7839
2	MILLER	7934	7782
1	JONES	7566	7839
3	SMITH	7369	7902

```
3 | ADAMS | 7876 | 7788
(6 rows)
```

### 6.4.5.6 Retrieving the Root Node with CONNECT\_BY\_ROOT

`CONNECT_BY_ROOT` is a unary operator that can be used to qualify a column in order to return the column's value of the row considered to be the root node in relation to the current row.

#### Note

A *unary operator* operates on a single operand, which in the case of `CONNECT_BY_ROOT`, is the column name following the `CONNECT_BY_ROOT` keyword.

In the context of the `SELECT` list, the `CONNECT_BY_ROOT` operator is shown by the following.

```
SELECT [...] CONNECT_BY_ROOT <column> [, ...]
  FROM <table_expression> ...
```

The following are some points to note about the `CONNECT_BY_ROOT` operator.

- The `CONNECT_BY_ROOT` operator can be used in the `SELECT` list, the `WHERE` clause, the `GROUP BY` clause, the `HAVING` clause, the `ORDER BY` clause, and the `ORDER SIBLINGS BY` clause as long as the `SELECT` command is for a hierarchical query.
- The `CONNECT_BY_ROOT` operator cannot be used in the `CONNECT BY` clause or the `START WITH` clause of the hierarchical query.
- It is possible to apply `CONNECT_BY_ROOT` to an expression involving a column, but to do so, the expression must be enclosed within parentheses.

The following query shows the use of the `CONNECT_BY_ROOT` operator to return the employee number and employee name of the root node for each employee listed in the result set based on trees starting with employees `BLAKE`, `CLARK`, and `JONES`.

```
SELECT LEVEL, LPAD (' ', 2 * (LEVEL - 1)) || ename "employee", empno, mgr,
CONNECT_BY_ROOT empno "mgr empno",
CONNECT_BY_ROOT ename "mgr ename"
FROM emp
START WITH ename IN ('BLAKE','CLARK','JONES')
CONNECT BY PRIOR empno = mgr
ORDER SIBLINGS BY ename ASC;
```

Note that the output from the query shows that all of the root nodes in columns `mgr empno` and `mgr ename` are one of the employees, `BLAKE`, `CLARK`, or `JONES`, listed in the `START WITH` clause.

level	employee	empno	mgr	mgr empno	mgr ename
1	BLAKE	7698	7839	7698	BLAKE
2	ALLEN	7499	7698	7698	BLAKE
2	JAMES	7900	7698	7698	BLAKE
2	MARTIN	7654	7698	7698	BLAKE
2	TURNER	7844	7698	7698	BLAKE
2	WARD	7521	7698	7698	BLAKE
1	CLARK	7782	7839	7782	CLARK
2	MILLER	7934	7782	7782	CLARK

```

1 | JONES   | 7566 | 7839 |    7566 | JONES
2 | FORD    | 7902 | 7566 |    7566 | JONES
3 | SMITH   | 7369 | 7902 |    7566 | JONES
2 | SCOTT   | 7788 | 7566 |    7566 | JONES
3 | ADAMS   | 7876 | 7788 |    7566 | JONES
(13 rows)

```

The following is a similar query, but producing only one tree starting with the single, top-level, employee where the `mgr` column is null.

```

SELECT LEVEL, LPAD (' ', 2 * (LEVEL - 1)) || ename "employee", empno, mgr,
CONNECT_BY_ROOT empno "mgr empno",
CONNECT_BY_ROOT ename "mgr ename"
FROM emp START WITH mgr IS NULL
CONNECT BY PRIOR empno = mgr
ORDER SIBLINGS BY ename ASC;

```

In the following output, all of the root nodes in columns `mgr empno` and `mgr ename` indicate `KING` as the root for this particular query.

level	employee	empno	mgr	mgr empno	mgr ename
1	KING	7839		7839	KING
2	BLAKE	7698	7839	7839	KING
3	ALLEN	7499	7698	7839	KING
3	JAMES	7900	7698	7839	KING
3	MARTIN	7654	7698	7839	KING
3	TURNER	7844	7698	7839	KING
3	WARD	7521	7698	7839	KING
2	CLARK	7782	7839	7839	KING
3	MILLER	7934	7782	7839	KING
2	JONES	7566	7839	7839	KING
3	FORD	7902	7566	7839	KING
4	SMITH	7369	7902	7839	KING
3	SCOTT	7788	7566	7839	KING
4	ADAMS	7876	7788	7839	KING

(14 rows)

By contrast, the following example omits the `START WITH` clause thereby resulting in fourteen trees.

```

SELECT LEVEL, LPAD (' ', 2 * (LEVEL - 1)) || ename "employee", empno, mgr,
CONNECT_BY_ROOT empno "mgr empno",
CONNECT_BY_ROOT ename "mgr ename"
FROM emp
CONNECT BY PRIOR empno = mgr
ORDER SIBLINGS BY ename ASC;

```

The following is the output from the query. Each node appears at least once as a root node under the `mgr empno` and `mgr ename` columns since even the leaf nodes form the top of their own trees.

level	employee	empno	mgr	mgr empno	mgr ename
1	ADAMS	7876	7788	7876	ADAMS
1	ALLEN	7499	7698	7499	ALLEN
1	BLAKE	7698	7839	7698	BLAKE
2	ALLEN	7499	7698	7698	BLAKE

2   JAMES   7900   7698   7698   BLAKE
2   MARTIN   7654   7698   7698   BLAKE
2   TURNER   7844   7698   7698   BLAKE
2   WARD   7521   7698   7698   BLAKE
1   CLARK   7782   7839   7782   CLARK
2   MILLER   7934   7782   7782   CLARK
1   FORD   7902   7566   7902   FORD
2   SMITH   7369   7902   7902   FORD
1   JAMES   7900   7698   7900   JAMES
1   JONES   7566   7839   7566   JONES
2   FORD   7902   7566   7566   JONES
3   SMITH   7369   7902   7566   JONES
2   SCOTT   7788   7566   7566   JONES
3   ADAMS   7876   7788   7566   JONES
1   KING   7839     7839   KING
2   BLAKE   7698   7839   7839   KING
3   ALLEN   7499   7698   7839   KING
3   JAMES   7900   7698   7839   KING
3   MARTIN   7654   7698   7839   KING
3   TURNER   7844   7698   7839   KING
3   WARD   7521   7698   7839   KING
2   CLARK   7782   7839   7839   KING
3   MILLER   7934   7782   7839   KING
2   JONES   7566   7839   7839   KING
3   FORD   7902   7566   7839   KING
4   SMITH   7369   7902   7839   KING
3   SCOTT   7788   7566   7839   KING
4   ADAMS   7876   7788   7839   KING
1   MARTIN   7654   7698   7654   MARTIN
1   MILLER   7934   7782   7934   MILLER
1   SCOTT   7788   7566   7788   SCOTT
2   ADAMS   7876   7788   7788   SCOTT
1   SMITH   7369   7902   7369   SMITH
1   TURNER   7844   7698   7844   TURNER
1   WARD   7521   7698   7521   WARD

(39 rows)

The following illustrates the unary operator effect of `CONNECT_BY_ROOT`. As shown in this example, when applied to an expression that is not enclosed in parentheses, the `CONNECT_BY_ROOT` operator affects only the term, `ename`, immediately following it. The subsequent concatenation of `|| 'manages' || ename` is not part of the `CONNECT_BY_ROOT` operation, hence the second occurrence of `ename` results in the value of the currently processed row while the first occurrence of `ename` results in the value from the root node.

```
SELECT LEVEL, LPAD (' ', 2 * (LEVEL - 1)) || ename "employee", empno, mgr,
CONNECT_BY_ROOT ename || 'manages' || ename "top mgr/employee"
FROM emp
START WITH ename IN ('BLAKE','CLARK','JONES')
CONNECT BY PRIOR empno = mgr
ORDER SIBLINGS BY ename ASC;
```

The following is the output from the query. Note the values produced under the `top mgr/employee` column.

level	employee	empno	mgr	top mgr/employee
1   BLAKE   7698   7839   BLAKE manages BLAKE				
2   ALLEN   7499   7698   BLAKE manages ALLEN				

```

2 | JAMES | 7900 | 7698 | BLAKE manages JAMES
2 | MARTIN | 7654 | 7698 | BLAKE manages MARTIN
2 | TURNER | 7844 | 7698 | BLAKE manages TURNER
2 | WARD | 7521 | 7698 | BLAKE manages WARD
1 | CLARK | 7782 | 7839 | CLARK manages CLARK
2 | MILLER | 7934 | 7782 | CLARK manages MILLER
1 | JONES | 7566 | 7839 | JONES manages JONES
2 | FORD | 7902 | 7566 | JONES manages FORD
3 | SMITH | 7369 | 7902 | JONES manages SMITH
2 | SCOTT | 7788 | 7566 | JONES manages SCOTT
3 | ADAMS | 7876 | 7788 | JONES manages ADAMS
(13 rows)

```

The following example uses the `CONNECT_BY_ROOT` operator on an expression enclosed in parentheses.

```

SELECT LEVEL, LPAD (' ', 2 * (LEVEL - 1)) || ename "employee", empno, mgr,
CONNECT_BY_ROOT ('Manager ' || ename || ' is emp #' || empno)
"top mgr/empno"
FROM emp
START WITH ename IN ('BLAKE','CLARK','JONES')
CONNECT BY PRIOR empno = mgr
ORDER SIBLINGS BY ename ASC;

```

The following is the output of the query. Note that the values of both `ename` and `empno` are affected by the `CONNECT_BY_ROOT` operator and as a result, return the values from the root node as shown under the `top mgr/empno` column.

level	employee	empno	mgr	top mgr/empno
1	BLAKE	7698	7839	Manager BLAKE is emp # 7698
2	ALLEN	7499	7698	Manager BLAKE is emp # 7698
2	JAMES	7900	7698	Manager BLAKE is emp # 7698
2	MARTIN	7654	7698	Manager BLAKE is emp # 7698
2	TURNER	7844	7698	Manager BLAKE is emp # 7698
2	WARD	7521	7698	Manager BLAKE is emp # 7698
1	CLARK	7782	7839	Manager CLARK is emp # 7782
2	MILLER	7934	7782	Manager CLARK is emp # 7782
1	JONES	7566	7839	Manager JONES is emp # 7566
2	FORD	7902	7566	Manager JONES is emp # 7566
3	SMITH	7369	7902	Manager JONES is emp # 7566
2	SCOTT	7788	7566	Manager JONES is emp # 7566
3	ADAMS	7876	7788	Manager JONES is emp # 7566

(13 rows)

#### 6.4.5.7 Retrieving a Path with `SYS_CONNECT_BY_PATH`

`SYS_CONNECT_BY_PATH` is a function that works within a hierarchical query to retrieve the column values of a specified column that occur between the current node and the root node. The signature of the function is:

```
SYS_CONNECT_BY_PATH (<column>, <delimiter>)
```

The function takes two arguments:

`column` is the name of a column that resides within a table specified in the hierarchical query that is calling the function.

`delimiter` is the `varchar` value that separates each entry in the specified column.

The following example returns a list of employee names, and their managers; if the manager has a manager, that name is appended to the result:

```
edb=# SELECT level, ename , SYS_CONNECT_BY_PATH(ename, '/') managers
  FROM emp
 CONNECT BY PRIOR empno = mgr
 START WITH mgr IS NULL
 ORDER BY level, ename, managers;
```

level	ename	managers
1	KING	/KING
2	BLAKE	/KING/BLAKE
2	CLARK	/KING/CLARK
2	JONES	/KING/JONES
3	ALLEN	/KING/BLAKE/ALLEN
3	FORD	/KING/JONES/FORD
3	JAMES	/KING/BLAKE/JAMES
3	MARTIN	/KING/BLAKE/MARTIN
3	MILLER	/KING/CLARK/MILLER
3	SCOTT	/KING/JONES/SCOTT
3	TURNER	/KING/BLAKE/TURNER
3	WARD	/KING/BLAKE/WARD
4	ADAMS	/KING/JONES/SCOTT/ADAMS
4	SMITH	/KING/JONES/FORD/SMITH

(14 rows)

Within the result set:

- The `level` column displays the number of levels that the query returned.
- The `ename` column displays the employee name.
- The `managers` column contains the hierarchical list of managers.

The Advanced Server implementation of `SYS_CONNECT_BY_PATH` does not support use of:

- `SYS_CONNECT_BY_PATH` inside `CONNECT_BY_PATH`
- `SYS_CONNECT_BY_PATH` inside `SYS_CONNECT_BY_PATH`

## 6.4.6 Multidimensional Analysis

*Multidimensional analysis* refers to the process commonly used in data warehousing applications of examining data using various combinations of dimensions. *Dimensions* are categories used to classify data such as time, geography, a company's departments, product lines, and so forth. The results associated with a particular set of dimensions are called *facts*. Facts are typically figures associated with product sales, profits, volumes, counts, etc.

In order to obtain these facts according to a set of dimensions in a relational database system, SQL aggregation is

typically used. *SQL aggregation* basically means data is grouped according to certain criteria (dimensions) and the result set consists of aggregates of facts such as counts, sums, and averages of the data in each group.

The **GROUP BY** clause of the SQL **SELECT** command supports the following extensions that simplify the process of producing aggregate results.

- **ROLLUP** extension
- **CUBE** extension
- **GROUPING SETS** extension

In addition, the **GROUPING** function and the **GROUPING\_ID** function can be used in the **SELECT** list or the **HAVING** clause to aid with the interpretation of the results when these extensions are used.

#### Note

The sample **dept** and **emp** tables are used extensively in this discussion to provide usage examples. The following changes were applied to these tables to provide more informative results.

```
UPDATE dept SET loc = 'BOSTON' WHERE deptno = 20;
INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,job,deptno) VALUES (9001,'SMITH','CLERK',40);
INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,job,deptno) VALUES (9002,'JONES','ANALYST',40);
INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,job,deptno) VALUES (9003,'ROGERS','MANAGER',40);
```

The following rows from a join of the **emp** and **dept** tables are used:

```
SELECT loc, dname, job, empno FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
ORDER BY 1, 2, 3, 4;
```

loc	dname	job	empno
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	ANALYST	9002
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	CLERK	9001
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	MANAGER	9003
BOSTON	RESEARCH	ANALYST	7788
BOSTON	RESEARCH	ANALYST	7902
BOSTON	RESEARCH	CLERK	7369
BOSTON	RESEARCH	CLERK	7876
BOSTON	RESEARCH	MANAGER	7566
CHICAGO	SALES	CLERK	7900
CHICAGO	SALES	MANAGER	7698
CHICAGO	SALES	SALESMAN	7499
CHICAGO	SALES	SALESMAN	7521
CHICAGO	SALES	SALESMAN	7654
CHICAGO	SALES	SALESMAN	7844
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	CLERK	7934
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	MANAGER	7782
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	PRESIDENT	7839

(17 rows)

The **loc**, **dname**, and **job** columns are used for the dimensions of the SQL aggregations used in the examples. The resulting facts of the aggregations are the number of employees obtained by using the **COUNT(\*)** function.

A basic query grouping the **loc**, **dname**, and **job** columns is given by the following.

```
SELECT loc, dname, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY loc, dname, job
```

ORDER BY 1, 2, 3;

The rows of this result set using the basic `GROUP BY` clause without extensions are referred to as the *base aggregate rows*.

loc	dname	job	employees
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	ANALYST	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	CLERK	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	MANAGER	1
BOSTON	RESEARCH	ANALYST	2
BOSTON	RESEARCH	CLERK	2
BOSTON	RESEARCH	MANAGER	1
CHICAGO	SALES	CLERK	1
CHICAGO	SALES	MANAGER	1
CHICAGO	SALES	SALESMAN	4
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	CLERK	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	MANAGER	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	PRESIDENT	1
(12 rows)			

The `ROLLUP` and `CUBE` extensions add to the base aggregate rows by providing additional levels of subtotals to the result set.

The `GROUPING SETS` extension provides the ability to combine different types of groupings into a single result set.

The `GROUPING` and `GROUPING_ID` functions aid in the interpretation of the result set.

The additions provided by these extensions are discussed in more detail in the subsequent sections.

### 6.4.6.1 ROLLUP Extension

The `ROLLUP` extension produces a hierarchical set of groups with subtotals for each hierarchical group as well as a grand total. The order of the hierarchy is determined by the order of the expressions given in the `ROLLUP` expression list. The top of the hierarchy is the leftmost item in the list. Each successive item proceeding to the right moves down the hierarchy with the rightmost item being the lowest level.

The syntax for a single `ROLLUP` is as follows:

```
ROLLUP ( { <expr_1> | ( <expr_1a> [, <expr_1b>] ... ) }
          [, <expr_2> | ( <expr_2a> [, <expr_2b>] ... ) ] ... )
```

Each `expr` is an expression that determines the grouping of the result set. If enclosed within parenthesis as `(expr_1a, expr_1b, ...)` then the combination of values returned by `expr_1a` and `expr_1b` defines a single grouping level of the hierarchy.

The base level of aggregates returned in the result set is for each unique combination of values returned by the expression list.

In addition, a subtotal is returned for the first item in the list (`expr_1` or the combination of `(expr_1a, expr_1b, ...)`, whichever is specified) for each unique value. A subtotal is returned for the second item in the list (`expr_2` or the combination of `(expr_2a, expr_2b, ...)`, whichever is specified) for each unique value, within each grouping of the

first item and so on. Finally a grand total is returned for the entire result set.

For the subtotal rows, null is returned for the items across which the subtotal is taken.

The `ROLLUP` extension specified within the context of the `GROUP BY` clause is shown by the following:

```
SELECT <select_list> FROM ...
GROUP BY [... ,] ROLLUP ( <expression_list> ) [, ...]
```

The items specified in `select_list` must also appear in the `ROLLUP expression_list`; or they must be aggregate functions such as `COUNT`, `SUM`, `AVG`, `MIN`, or `MAX`; or they must be constants or functions whose return values are independent of the individual rows in the group (for example, the `SYSDATE` function).

The `GROUP BY` clause may specify multiple `ROLLUP` extensions as well as multiple occurrences of other `GROUP BY` extensions and individual expressions.

The `ORDER BY` clause should be used if you want the output to display in a hierarchical or other meaningful structure. There is no guarantee on the order of the result set if no `ORDER BY` clause is specified.

The number of grouping levels or totals is  $n + 1$  where  $n$  represents the number of items in the `ROLLUP` expression list. A parenthesized list counts as one item.

The following query produces a rollup based on a hierarchy of columns `loc`, `dname`, then `job`.

```
SELECT loc, dname, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY ROLLUP (loc, dname, job)
ORDER BY 1, 2, 3;
```

The following is the result of the query. There is a count of the number of employees for each unique combination of `loc`, `dname`, and `job`, as well as subtotals for each unique combination of `loc` and `dname`, for each unique value of `loc`, and a grand total displayed on the last line.

loc	dname	job	employees
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	ANALYST	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	CLERK	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	MANAGER	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS		3
BOSTON	RESEARCH	ANALYST	2
BOSTON	RESEARCH	CLERK	2
BOSTON	RESEARCH	MANAGER	1
BOSTON	RESEARCH		5
BOSTON			8
CHICAGO	SALES	CLERK	1
CHICAGO	SALES	MANAGER	1
CHICAGO	SALES	SALESMAN	4
CHICAGO	SALES		6
CHICAGO			6
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	CLERK	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	MANAGER	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	PRESIDENT	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING		3
NEW YORK			3
			17
(20 rows)			

The following query shows the effect of combining items in the `ROLLUP` list within parenthesis.

```
SELECT loc, dname, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY ROLLUP (loc, (dname, job))
ORDER BY 1, 2, 3;
```

In the output, note that there are no subtotals for `loc` and `dname` combinations as in the prior example.

loc	dname	job	employees
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	ANALYST	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	CLERK	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	MANAGER	1
BOSTON	RESEARCH	ANALYST	2
BOSTON	RESEARCH	CLERK	2
BOSTON	RESEARCH	MANAGER	1
BOSTON			8
CHICAGO	SALES	CLERK	1
CHICAGO	SALES	MANAGER	1
CHICAGO	SALES	SALESMAN	4
CHICAGO			6
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	CLERK	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	MANAGER	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	PRESIDENT	1
NEW YORK			3
			17

(16 rows)

If the first two columns in the `ROLLUP` list are enclosed in parenthesis, the subtotal levels differ as well.

```
SELECT loc, dname, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY ROLLUP ((loc, dname), job)
ORDER BY 1, 2, 3;
```

Now there is a subtotal for each unique `loc` and `dname` combination, but none for unique values of `loc`.

loc	dname	job	employees
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	ANALYST	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	CLERK	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	MANAGER	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS		3
BOSTON	RESEARCH	ANALYST	2
BOSTON	RESEARCH	CLERK	2
BOSTON	RESEARCH	MANAGER	1
BOSTON	RESEARCH		5
CHICAGO	SALES	CLERK	1
CHICAGO	SALES	MANAGER	1
CHICAGO	SALES	SALESMAN	4
CHICAGO	SALES		6
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	CLERK	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	MANAGER	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	PRESIDENT	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING		3
			17

(17 rows)

## 6.4.6.2 CUBE Extension

The `CUBE` extension is similar to the `ROLLUP` extension. However, unlike `ROLLUP`, which produces groupings and results in a hierarchy based on a left to right listing of items in the `ROLLUP` expression list, a `CUBE` produces groupings and subtotals based on every permutation of all items in the `CUBE` expression list. Thus, the result set contains more rows than a `ROLLUP` performed on the same expression list.

The syntax for a single `CUBE` is as follows:

```
CUBE ( { <expr_1> | ( <expr_1a> [, <expr_1b>] ...) }
      [, <expr_2> | ( <expr_2a> [, <expr_2b>] ...) ] ...)
```

Each `expr` is an expression that determines the grouping of the result set. If enclosed within parenthesis as `(expr_1a, expr_1b, ...)` then the combination of values returned by `expr_1a` and `expr_1b` defines a single group.

The base level of aggregates returned in the result set is for each unique combination of values returned by the expression list.

In addition, a subtotal is returned for the first item in the list (`expr_1` or the combination of `(expr_1a, expr_1b, ...)`, whichever is specified) for each unique value. A subtotal is returned for the second item in the list (`expr_2` or the combination of `(expr_2a, expr_2b, ...)`, whichever is specified) for each unique value. A subtotal is also returned for each unique combination of the first item and the second item. Similarly, if there is a third item, a subtotal is returned for each unique value of the third item, each unique value of the third item and first item combination, each unique value of the third item and second item combination, and each unique value of the third item, second item, and first item combination. Finally a grand total is returned for the entire result set.

For the subtotal rows, null is returned for the items across which the subtotal is taken.

The `CUBE` extension specified within the context of the `GROUP BY` clause is shown by the following:

```
SELECT <select_list> FROM ...
GROUP BY [...] CUBE ( <expression_list> ) [, ...]
```

The items specified in `select_list` must also appear in the `CUBE expression_list`; or they must be aggregate functions such as `COUNT`, `SUM`, `AVG`, `MIN`, or `MAX`; or they must be constants or functions whose return values are independent of the individual rows in the group (for example, the `SYSDATE` function).

The `GROUP BY` clause may specify multiple `CUBE` extensions as well as multiple occurrences of other `GROUP BY` extensions and individual expressions.

The `ORDER BY` clause should be used if you want the output to display in a meaningful structure. There is no guarantee on the order of the result set if no `ORDER BY` clause is specified.

The number of grouping levels or totals is `2` raised to the power of `n` where `n` represents the number of items in the `CUBE` expression list. A parenthesized list counts as one item.

The following query produces a cube based on permutations of columns `loc`, `dname`, and `job`.

```
SELECT loc, dname, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY CUBE (loc, dname, job)
ORDER BY 1, 2, 3;
```

The following is the result of the query. There is a count of the number of employees for each combination of `loc`, `dname`, and `job`, as well as subtotals for each combination of `loc` and `dname`, for each combination of `loc` and `job`, for each combination of `dname` and `job`, for each unique value of `loc`, for each unique value of `dname`, for each unique value of `job`, and a grand total displayed on the last line.

loc	dname	job	employees
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	ANALYST	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	CLERK	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	MANAGER	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS		3
BOSTON	RESEARCH	ANALYST	2
BOSTON	RESEARCH	CLERK	2
BOSTON	RESEARCH	MANAGER	1
BOSTON	RESEARCH		5
BOSTON		ANALYST	3
BOSTON		CLERK	3
BOSTON		MANAGER	2
BOSTON			8
CHICAGO	SALES	CLERK	1
CHICAGO	SALES	MANAGER	1
CHICAGO	SALES	SALESMAN	4
CHICAGO	SALES		6
CHICAGO		CLERK	1
CHICAGO		MANAGER	1
CHICAGO		SALESMAN	4
CHICAGO			6
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	CLERK	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	MANAGER	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	PRESIDENT	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING		3
NEW YORK		CLERK	1
NEW YORK		MANAGER	1
NEW YORK		PRESIDENT	1
NEW YORK			3
	ACCOUNTING	CLERK	1
	ACCOUNTING	MANAGER	1
	ACCOUNTING	PRESIDENT	1
	ACCOUNTING		3
	OPERATIONS	ANALYST	1
	OPERATIONS	CLERK	1
	OPERATIONS	MANAGER	1
	OPERATIONS		3
	RESEARCH	ANALYST	2
	RESEARCH	CLERK	2
	RESEARCH	MANAGER	1
	RESEARCH		5
	SALES	CLERK	1
	SALES	MANAGER	1
	SALES	SALESMAN	4
	SALES		6
		ANALYST	3
		CLERK	5
		MANAGER	4
		PRESIDENT	1
		SALESMAN	4
			17

(50 rows)

The following query shows the effect of combining items in the **CUBE** list within parenthesis.

```
SELECT loc, dname, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY CUBE (loc, (dname, job))
ORDER BY 1, 2, 3;
```

In the output note that there are no subtotals for permutations involving `loc` and `dname` combinations, `loc` and `job` combinations, or for `dname` by itself, or for `job` by itself.

loc	dname	job	employees
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	ANALYST	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	CLERK	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	MANAGER	1
BOSTON	RESEARCH	ANALYST	2
BOSTON	RESEARCH	CLERK	2
BOSTON	RESEARCH	MANAGER	1
BOSTON			8
CHICAGO	SALES	CLERK	1
CHICAGO	SALES	MANAGER	1
CHICAGO	SALES	SALESMAN	4
CHICAGO			6
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	CLERK	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	MANAGER	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	PRESIDENT	1
NEW YORK			3
	ACCOUNTING	CLERK	1
	ACCOUNTING	MANAGER	1
	ACCOUNTING	PRESIDENT	1
	OPERATIONS	ANALYST	1
	OPERATIONS	CLERK	1
	OPERATIONS	MANAGER	1
	RESEARCH	ANALYST	2
	RESEARCH	CLERK	2
	RESEARCH	MANAGER	1
	SALES	CLERK	1
	SALES	MANAGER	1
	SALES	SALESMAN	4
			17

(28 rows)

The following query shows another variation whereby the first expression is specified outside of the `CUBE` extension.

```
SELECT loc, dname, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY loc, CUBE (dname, job)
ORDER BY 1, 2, 3;
```

In this output, the permutations are performed for `dname` and `job` within each grouping of `loc`.

loc	dname	job	employees
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	ANALYST	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	CLERK	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	MANAGER	1
BOSTON	OPERATIONS		3

```

BOSTON | RESEARCH | ANALYST |    2
BOSTON | RESEARCH | CLERK   |    2
BOSTON | RESEARCH | MANAGER |    1
BOSTON | RESEARCH |           |    5
BOSTON |           | ANALYST |    3
BOSTON |           | CLERK   |    3
BOSTON |           | MANAGER |    2
BOSTON |           |           |    8
CHICAGO | SALES   | CLERK   |    1
CHICAGO | SALES   | MANAGER |    1
CHICAGO | SALES   | SALESMAN |    4
CHICAGO | SALES   |           |    6
CHICAGO |           | CLERK   |    1
CHICAGO |           | MANAGER |    1
CHICAGO |           | SALESMAN |    4
CHICAGO |           |           |    6
NEW YORK | ACCOUNTING | CLERK   |    1
NEW YORK | ACCOUNTING | MANAGER |    1
NEW YORK | ACCOUNTING | PRESIDENT |    1
NEW YORK | ACCOUNTING |           |    3
NEW YORK |           | CLERK   |    1
NEW YORK |           | MANAGER |    1
NEW YORK |           | PRESIDENT |    1
NEW YORK |           |           |    3
(28 rows)

```

#### 6.4.6.3 GROUPING SETS Extension

The use of the **GROUPING SETS** extension within the **GROUP BY** clause provides a means to produce one result set that is actually the concatenation of multiple results sets based upon different groupings. In other words, a **UNION ALL** operation is performed combining the result sets of multiple groupings into one result set.

Note that a **UNION ALL** operation, and therefore the **GROUPING SETS** extension, do not eliminate duplicate rows from the result sets that are being combined together.

The syntax for a single **GROUPING SETS** extension is as follows:

```

GROUPING SETS (
  { <expr_1> | ( <expr_1a> [, <expr_1b> ] ... ) |
    ROLLUP ( <expr_list> ) | CUBE ( <expr_list> )
  } [, ...] )

```

A **GROUPING SETS** extension can contain any combination of one or more comma-separated expressions, lists of expressions enclosed within parenthesis, **ROLLUP** extensions, and **CUBE** extensions.

The **GROUPING SETS** extension is specified within the context of the **GROUP BY** clause as shown by the following:

```

SELECT <select_list> FROM ...
GROUP BY [...] GROUPING SETS ( <expression_list> ) [, ...]

```

The items specified in **select\_list** must also appear in the **GROUPING SETS expression\_list**; or they must be

aggregate functions such as `COUNT`, `SUM`, `AVG`, `MIN`, or `MAX`; or they must be constants or functions whose return values are independent of the individual rows in the group (for example, the `SYSDATE` function).

The `GROUP BY` clause may specify multiple `GROUPING SETS` extensions as well as multiple occurrences of other `GROUP BY` extensions and individual expressions.

The `ORDER BY` clause should be used if you want the output to display in a meaningful structure. There is no guarantee on the order of the result set if no `ORDER BY` clause is specified.

The following query produces a union of groups given by columns `loc`, `dname`, and `job`.

```
SELECT loc, dname, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY GROUPING SETS (loc, dname, job)
ORDER BY 1, 2, 3;
```

The result is as follows:

loc	dname	job	employees
BOSTON			8
CHICAGO			6
NEW YORK			3
	ACCOUNTING		3
	OPERATIONS		3
	RESEARCH		5
	SALES		6
		ANALYST	3
		CLERK	5
		MANAGER	4
		PRESIDENT	1
		SALESMAN	4

(12 rows)

This is equivalent to the following query, which employs the use of the `UNION ALL` operator.

```
SELECT loc AS "loc", NULL AS "dname", NULL AS "job", COUNT(*) AS "employees"
FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY loc
UNION ALL
SELECT NULL, dname, NULL, COUNT(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY dname
UNION ALL
SELECT NULL, NULL, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY job
ORDER BY 1, 2, 3;
```

The output from the `UNION ALL` query is the same as the `GROUPING SETS` output.

loc	dname	job	employees
BOSTON			8
CHICAGO			6
NEW YORK			3

ACCOUNTING		3
OPERATIONS		3
RESEARCH		5
SALES		6
	ANALYST	3
	CLERK	5
	MANAGER	4
	PRESIDENT	1
	SALESMAN	4

(12 rows)

The following example shows how various types of `GROUP BY` extensions can be used together within a `GROUPING SETS` expression list.

```
SELECT loc, dname, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY GROUPING SETS (loc, ROLLUP (dname, job), CUBE (job, loc))
ORDER BY 1, 2, 3;
```

The following is the output from this query.

loc	dname	job	employees
BOSTON		ANALYST	3
BOSTON		CLERK	3
BOSTON		MANAGER	2
BOSTON			8
BOSTON			8
CHICAGO		CLERK	1
CHICAGO		MANAGER	1
CHICAGO		SALESMAN	4
CHICAGO			6
CHICAGO			6
NEW YORK		CLERK	1
NEW YORK		MANAGER	1
NEW YORK		PRESIDENT	1
NEW YORK			3
NEW YORK			3
	ACCOUNTING	CLERK	1
	ACCOUNTING	MANAGER	1
	ACCOUNTING	PRESIDENT	1
	ACCOUNTING		3
	OPERATIONS	ANALYST	1
	OPERATIONS	CLERK	1
	OPERATIONS	MANAGER	1
	OPERATIONS		3
	RESEARCH	ANALYST	2
	RESEARCH	CLERK	2
	RESEARCH	MANAGER	1
	RESEARCH		5
	SALES	CLERK	1
	SALES	MANAGER	1
	SALES	SALESMAN	4
	SALES		6
		ANALYST	3
		CLERK	5

	MANAGER		4
	PRESIDENT		1
	SALESMAN		4
			17
			17

(38 rows)

The output is basically a concatenation of the result sets that would be produced individually from `GROUP BY loc`, `GROUP BY ROLLUP (dname, job)`, and `GROUP BY CUBE (job, loc)`. These individual queries are shown by the following.

```
SELECT loc, NULL AS "dname", NULL AS "job", COUNT(*) AS "employees"
FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY loc
ORDER BY 1;
```

The following is the result set from the `GROUP BY loc` clause.

loc		dname		job		employees
BOSTON						8
CHICAGO						6
NEW YORK						3

(3 rows)

The following query uses the `GROUP BY ROLLUP (dname, job)` clause.

```
SELECT NULL AS "loc", dname, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY ROLLUP (dname, job)
ORDER BY 2, 3;
```

The following is the result set from the `GROUP BY ROLLUP (dname, job)` clause.

loc		dname		job		employees
		ACCOUNTING		CLERK		1
		ACCOUNTING		MANAGER		1
		ACCOUNTING		PRESIDENT		1
		ACCOUNTING				3
		OPERATIONS		ANALYST		1
		OPERATIONS		CLERK		1
		OPERATIONS		MANAGER		1
		OPERATIONS				3
		RESEARCH		ANALYST		2
		RESEARCH		CLERK		2
		RESEARCH		MANAGER		1
		RESEARCH				5
		SALES		CLERK		1
		SALES		MANAGER		1
		SALES		SALESMAN		4
		SALES				6
						17

(17 rows)

The following query uses the **GROUP BY CUBE (job, loc)** clause.

```
SELECT loc, NULL AS "dname", job, COUNT(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY CUBE (job, loc)
ORDER BY 1, 3;
```

The following is the result set from the **GROUP BY CUBE (job, loc)** clause.

loc	dname	job	employees
BOSTON		ANALYST	3
BOSTON		CLERK	3
BOSTON		MANAGER	2
BOSTON			8
CHICAGO		CLERK	1
CHICAGO		MANAGER	1
CHICAGO		SALESMAN	4
CHICAGO			6
NEW YORK		CLERK	1
NEW YORK		MANAGER	1
NEW YORK		PRESIDENT	1
NEW YORK			3
		ANALYST	3
		CLERK	5
		MANAGER	4
		PRESIDENT	1
		SALESMAN	4
			17

(18 rows)

If the previous three queries are combined with the **UNION ALL** operator, a concatenation of the three results sets is produced.

```
SELECT loc AS "loc", NULL AS "dname", NULL AS "job", COUNT(*) AS "employees"
FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY loc
UNION ALL
SELECT NULL, dname, job, count(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY ROLLUP (dname, job)
UNION ALL
SELECT loc, NULL, job, count(*) AS "employees" FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY CUBE (job, loc)
ORDER BY 1, 2, 3;
```

The following is the output, which is the same as when the **GROUP BY GROUPING SETS (loc, ROLLUP (dname, job), CUBE (job, loc))** clause is used.

loc	dname	job	employees
BOSTON		ANALYST	3
BOSTON		CLERK	3
BOSTON		MANAGER	2

BOSTON				8
BOSTON				8
CHICAGO		CLERK		1
CHICAGO		MANAGER		1
CHICAGO		SALESMAN		4
CHICAGO				6
CHICAGO				6
NEW YORK		CLERK		1
NEW YORK		MANAGER		1
NEW YORK		PRESIDENT		1
NEW YORK				3
NEW YORK				3
ACCOUNTING	CLERK			1
ACCOUNTING	MANAGER			1
ACCOUNTING	PRESIDENT			1
ACCOUNTING				3
OPERATIONS	ANALYST			1
OPERATIONS	CLERK			1
OPERATIONS	MANAGER			1
OPERATIONS				3
RESEARCH	ANALYST			2
RESEARCH	CLERK			2
RESEARCH	MANAGER			1
RESEARCH				5
SALES	CLERK			1
SALES	MANAGER			1
SALES	SALESMAN			4
SALES				6
ANALYST				3
CLERK				5
MANAGER				4
PRESIDENT				1
SALESMAN				4
				17
				17

(38 rows)

#### 6.4.6.4 GROUPING Function

When using the **ROLLUP**, **CUBE**, or **GROUPING SETS** extensions to the **GROUP BY** clause, it may sometimes be difficult to differentiate between the various levels of subtotals generated by the extensions as well as the base aggregate rows in the result set. The **GROUPING** function provides a means of making this distinction.

The general syntax for use of the **GROUPING** function is shown by the following.

```
SELECT [ <expr> ...] GROUPING( <col_expr> ) [, <expr> ] ...
FROM ...
GROUP BY [...]
{ ROLLUP | CUBE | GROUPING SETS }( [...], <col_expr>
[, ...]) [, ...]
```

The **GROUPING** function takes a single parameter that must be an expression of a dimension column specified in the expression list of a **ROLLUP**, **CUBE**, or **GROUPING SETS** extension of the **GROUP BY** clause.

The return value of the **GROUPING** function is either a 0 or 1. In the result set of a query, if the column expression specified in the **GROUPING** function is null because the row represents a subtotal over multiple values of that column then the **GROUPING** function returns a value of 1. If the row returns results based on a particular value of the column specified in the **GROUPING** function, then the **GROUPING** function returns a value of 0. In the latter case, the column can be null as well as non-null, but in any case, it is for a particular value of that column, not a subtotal across multiple values.

The following query shows how the return values of the **GROUPING** function correspond to the subtotal lines.

```
SELECT loc, dname, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees",
       GROUPING(loc) AS "gf_loc",
       GROUPING(dname) AS "gf_dname",
       GROUPING(job) AS "gf_job"
  FROM emp e, dept d
 WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
 GROUP BY ROLLUP (loc, dname, job)
 ORDER BY 1, 2, 3;
```

In the three right-most columns displaying the output of the **GROUPING** functions, a value of 1 appears on a subtotal line wherever a subtotal is taken across values of the corresponding columns.

loc	dname	job	employees	gf_loc	gf_dname	gf_job
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	ANALYST	1	0	0	0
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	CLERK	1	0	0	0
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	MANAGER	1	0	0	0
BOSTON	OPERATIONS		3	0	0	1
BOSTON	RESEARCH	ANALYST	2	0	0	0
BOSTON	RESEARCH	CLERK	2	0	0	0
BOSTON	RESEARCH	MANAGER	1	0	0	0
BOSTON	RESEARCH		5	0	0	1
BOSTON			8	0	1	1
CHICAGO	SALES	CLERK	1	0	0	0
CHICAGO	SALES	MANAGER	1	0	0	0
CHICAGO	SALES	SALESMAN	4	0	0	0
CHICAGO	SALES		6	0	0	1
CHICAGO			6	0	1	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	CLERK	1	0	0	0
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	MANAGER	1	0	0	0
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	PRESIDENT	1	0	0	0
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING		3	0	0	1
NEW YORK			3	0	1	1
			17	1	1	1

(20 rows)

These indicators can be used as screening criteria for particular subtotals. For example, using the previous query, you can display only those subtotals for **loc** and **dname** combinations by using the **GROUPING** function in a **HAVING** clause.

```
SELECT loc, dname, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees",
       GROUPING(loc) AS "gf_loc",
       GROUPING(dname) AS "gf_dname",
       GROUPING(job) AS "gf_job"
  FROM emp e, dept d
```

```
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY ROLLUP (loc, dname, job)
HAVING GROUPING(loc) = 0
AND GROUPING(dname) = 0
AND GROUPING(job) = 1
ORDER BY 1, 2;
```

This query produces the following result:

loc	dname	job	employees	gf_loc	gf_dname	gf_job
BOSTON	OPERATIONS		3	0	0	1
BOSTON	RESEARCH		5	0	0	1
CHICAGO	SALES		6	0	0	1
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING		3	0	0	1

(4 rows)

The **GROUPING** function can be used to distinguish a subtotal row from a base aggregate row or from certain subtotal rows where one of the items in the expression list returns null as a result of the column on which the expression is based being null for one or more rows in the table, as opposed to representing a subtotal over the column.

To illustrate this point, the following row is added to the **emp** table. This provides a row with a null value for the **job** column.

```
INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9004,'PETERS',40);
```

The following query is issued using a reduced number of rows for clarity.

```
SELECT loc, job, COUNT(*) AS "employees",
GROUPING(loc) AS "gf_loc",
GROUPING(job) AS "gf_job"
FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno AND loc = 'BOSTON'
GROUP BY CUBE (loc, job)
ORDER BY 1, 2;
```

Note that the output contains two rows containing **BOSTON** in the **loc** column and spaces in the **job** column (fourth and fifth entries in the table).

loc	job	employees	gf_loc	gf_job
BOSTON	ANALYST	3	0	0
BOSTON	CLERK	3	0	0
BOSTON	MANAGER	2	0	0
BOSTON		1	0	0
BOSTON		9	0	1
	ANALYST	3	1	0
	CLERK	3	1	0
	MANAGER	2	1	0
		1	1	0
		9	1	1

(10 rows)

The fifth row where the **GROUPING** function on the **job** column (gf\_job) returns 1 indicates this is a subtotal over all jobs. Note that the row contains a subtotal value of 9 in the **employees** column.

The fourth row where the `GROUPING` function on the `job` column as well as on the `loc` column returns 0 indicates this is a base aggregate of all rows where `loc` is `BOSTON` and `job` is null, which is the row inserted for this example. The `employees` column contains 1, which is the count of the single such row inserted.

Also note that in the ninth row (next to last) the `GROUPING` function on the `job` column returns 0 while the `GROUPING` function on the `loc` column returns 1 indicating this is a subtotal over all locations where the `job` column is null, which again, is a count of the single row inserted for this example.

#### 6.4.6.5 GROUPING\_ID Function

The `GROUPING_ID` function provides a simplification of the `GROUPING` function in order to determine the subtotal level of a row in the result set from a `ROLLBACK`, `CUBE`, or `GROUPING SETS` extension.

The `GROUPING` function takes only one column expression and returns an indication of whether or not a row is a subtotal over all values of the given column. Thus, multiple `GROUPING` functions may be required to interpret the level of subtotals for queries with multiple grouping columns.

The `GROUPING_ID` function accepts one or more column expressions that have been used in the `ROLLBACK`, `CUBE`, or `GROUPING SETS` extensions and returns a single integer that can be used to determine over which of these columns a subtotal has been aggregated.

The general syntax for use of the `GROUPING_ID` function is shown by the following.

```
SELECT [ <expr> ... ]
  GROUPING_ID( <col_expr_1> [, <col_expr_2> ] ... )
  [, <expr> ] ...
FROM ...
GROUP BY [....]
{ ROLLUP | CUBE | GROUPING SETS }([...,] <col_expr_1>
  [, <col_expr_2> ] [,...]) [, ...]
```

The `GROUPING_ID` function takes one or more parameters that must be expressions of dimension columns specified in the expression list of a `ROLLUP`, `CUBE`, or `GROUPING SETS` extension of the `GROUP BY` clause.

The `GROUPING_ID` function returns an integer value. This value corresponds to the base-10 interpretation of a bit vector consisting of the concatenated 1's and 0's that would be returned by a series of `GROUPING` functions specified in the same left-to-right order as the ordering of the parameters specified in the `GROUPING_ID` function.

The following query shows how the returned values of the `GROUPING_ID` function represented in column `gid` correspond to the values returned by two `GROUPING` functions on columns `loc` and `dname`.

```
SELECT loc, dname, COUNT(*) AS "employees",
  GROUPING(loc) AS "gf_loc", GROUPING(dname) AS "gf_dname",
  GROUPING_ID(loc, dname) AS "gid"
FROM emp e, dept d
WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
GROUP BY CUBE (loc, dname)
ORDER BY 6, 1, 2;
```

In the following output, note the relationship between a bit vector consisting of the `gf_loc` value and `gf_dname` value compared to the integer given in `gid`.

loc	dname	employees	gf_loc	gf_dname	gid

BOSTON	OPERATIONS	3	0	0	0		
BOSTON	RESEARCH	5	0	0	0		
CHICAGO	SALES	6	0	0	0		
NEW YORK	ACCOUNTING	3	0	0	0		
BOSTON		8	0	1	1		
CHICAGO		6	0	1	1		
NEW YORK		3	0	1	1		
	ACCOUNTING	3	1	0	2		
	OPERATIONS	3	1	0	2		
	RESEARCH	5	1	0	2		
	SALES	6	1	0	2		
		17	1	1	3		

(12 rows)

The following table provides specific examples of the `GROUPING_ID` function calculations based on the `GROUPING` function return values for four rows of the output.

loc	dname	Bit Vector	GROUPING_ID
		gf_loc gf_dname	gid
BOSTON	OPERATIONS	$0 * 2^1 + 0 * 2^0$	0
BOSTON	null	$0 * 2^1 + 1 * 2^0$	1
null	ACCOUNTING	$1 * 2^1 + 0 * 2^0$	2
null	null	$1 * 2^1 + 1 * 2^0$	3

The following table summarizes how the `GROUPING_ID` function return values correspond to the grouping columns over which aggregation occurs.

Aggregation by Column	Bit Vector	GROUPING_ID
	gf_loc gf_dname	gid
loc, dname	0 0	0
loc	0 1	1
dname	1 0	2
Grand Total	1 1	3

So to display only those subtotals by `dname`, the following simplified query can be used with a `HAVING` clause based on the `GROUPING_ID` function.

```
SELECT loc, dname, COUNT(*) AS "employees",
       GROUPING(loc) AS "gf_loc", GROUPING(dname) AS "gf_dname",
       GROUPING_ID(loc, dname) AS "gid"
  FROM emp e, dept d
 WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
 GROUP BY CUBE (loc, dname)
 HAVING GROUPING_ID(loc, dname) = 2
 ORDER BY 6, 1, 2;
```

The following is the result of the query.

loc	dname	employees	gf_loc	gf_dname	gid
ACCOUNTING		3	1	0	2
OPERATIONS		3	1	0	2
RESEARCH		5	1	0	2
SALES		6	1	0	2

(4 rows)

## 6.5 Profile Management

Advanced Server allows a database superuser to create named *profiles*. Each profile defines rules for password management that augment `password` and `md5` authentication. The rules in a profile can:

- count failed login attempts
- lock an account due to excessive failed login attempts
- mark a password for expiration
- define a grace period after a password expiration
- define rules for password complexity
- define rules that limit password re-use

A profile is a named set of password attributes that allow you to easily manage a group of roles that share comparable authentication requirements. If the password requirements change, you can modify the profile to have the new requirements applied to each user that is associated with that profile.

After creating the profile, you can associate the profile with one or more users. When a user connects to the server, the server enforces the profile that is associated with their login role. Profiles are shared by all databases within a cluster, but each cluster may have multiple profiles. A single user with access to multiple databases will use the same profile when connecting to each database within the cluster.

Advanced Server creates a profile named `default` that is associated with a new role when the role is created unless an alternate profile is specified. If you upgrade to Advanced Server from a previous server version, existing roles will automatically be assigned to the `default` profile. You cannot delete the `default` profile.

The `default` profile specifies the following attributes:

<code>FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS</code>	<code>UNLIMITED</code>
<code>PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME</code>	<code>UNLIMITED</code>
<code>PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME</code>	<code>UNLIMITED</code>

PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME	UNLIMITED
PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME	UNLIMITED
PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX	UNLIMITED
PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION	NULL
PASSWORD_ALLOW_HASHED	TRUE

A database superuser can use the `ALTER PROFILE` command to modify the values specified by the `default` profile. For more information about modifying a profile, see [Altering a Profile](#).

### 6.5.1 Creating a New Profile

Use the `CREATE PROFILE` command to create a new profile. The syntax is:

```
CREATE PROFILE <profile_name>
    [LIMIT {<parameter value>} ...];
```

Include the `LIMIT` clause and one or more space-delimited `parameter / value` pairs to specify the rules enforced by Advanced Server.

#### Parameters:

`profile_name` specifies the name of the profile.

`parameter` specifies the attribute limited by the profile.

`value` specifies the parameter limit.

Advanced Server supports the `value` shown below for each `parameter`:

`FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS` specifies the number of failed login attempts that a user may make before the server locks the user out of their account for the length of time specified by `PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME`. Supported values are:

- An `INTEGER` value greater than `0`.
- `DEFAULT` - the value of `FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
- `UNLIMITED` – the connecting user may make an unlimited number of failed login attempts.

`PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME` specifies the length of time that must pass before the server unlocks an account that has been locked because of `FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS`. Supported values are:

- A `NUMERIC` value greater than or equal to `0`. To specify a fractional portion of a day, specify a decimal value. For example, use the value `4.5` to specify `4` days, `12` hours.
- `DEFAULT` - the value of `PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
- `UNLIMITED` – the account is locked until it is manually unlocked by a database superuser.

`PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME` specifies the number of days that the current password may be used before the user is prompted to provide a new password. Include the `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME` clause when using the `PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME` clause to specify the number of days that will pass after the password expires before connections by the role are rejected. If `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME` is not specified, the password will expire on the day specified by the default value of `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME`, and the user will not be allowed to execute any command until a new password is provided. Supported values are:

- A `NUMERIC` value greater than or equal to `0`. To specify a fractional portion of a day, specify a

- decimal value. For example, use the value `4.5` to specify `4` days, `12` hours.
- `DEFAULT` - the value of `PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
  - `UNLIMITED` – The password does not have an expiration date.

`PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME` specifies the length of the grace period after a password expires until the user is forced to change their password. When the grace period expires, a user will be allowed to connect, but will not be allowed to execute any command until they update their expired password. Supported values are:

- A `NUMERIC` value greater than or equal to `0`. To specify a fractional portion of a day, specify a decimal value. For example, use the value `4.5` to specify `4` days, `12` hours.
- `DEFAULT` - the value of `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
- `UNLIMITED` – The grace period is infinite.

`PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME` specifies the number of days a user must wait before re-using a password. The `PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME` and `PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX` parameters are intended to be used together. If you specify a finite value for one of these parameters while the other is `UNLIMITED`, old passwords can never be reused. If both parameters are set to `UNLIMITED` there are no restrictions on password reuse. Supported values are:

- A `NUMERIC` value greater than or equal to `0`. To specify a fractional portion of a day, specify a decimal value. For example, use the value `4.5` to specify `4` days, `12` hours.
- `DEFAULT` - the value of `PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
- `UNLIMITED` – The password can be re-used without restrictions.

`PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX` specifies the number of password changes that must occur before a password can be reused. The `PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME` and `PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX` parameters are intended to be used together. If you specify a finite value for one of these parameters while the other is `UNLIMITED`, old passwords can never be reused. If both parameters are set to `UNLIMITED` there are no restrictions on password reuse. Supported values are:

- An `INTEGER` value greater than or equal to `0`.
- `DEFAULT` - the value of `PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
- `UNLIMITED` – The password can be re-used without restrictions.

`PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION` specifies password complexity. Supported values are:

- The name of a PL/SQL function.
- `DEFAULT` - the value of `PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
- `NULL`

`PASSWORD_ALLOW_HASHED` specifies whether an encrypted password to be allowed for use or not. If you specify the value as `TRUE`, the system allows a user to change the password by specifying a hash computed encrypted password on the client side. However, if you specify the value as `FALSE`, then a password must be specified in a plain-text form in order to be validated effectively, else an error will be thrown if a server receives an encrypted password. Supported values are:

- A `BOOLEAN` value `TRUE/ON/YES/1` or `FALSE/OFF/NO/0`.
- `DEFAULT` - the value of `PASSWORD_ALLOW_HASHED` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.

## Note

The `PASSWORD_ALLOW_HASHED` is not an Oracle-compatible parameter.

## Notes

Use `DROP PROFILE` command to remove the profile.

## Examples

The following command creates a profile named `acctg`. The profile specifies that if a user has not authenticated with the correct password in five attempts, the account will be locked for one day:

```
CREATE PROFILE acctg LIMIT
  FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS 5
  PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME 1;
```

The following command creates a profile named `sales`. The profile specifies that a user must change their password every 90 days:

```
CREATE PROFILE sales LIMIT
  PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME 90
  PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME 3;
```

If the user has not changed their password before the 90 days specified in the profile has passed, they will be issued a warning at login. After a grace period of 3 days, their account will not be allowed to invoke any commands until they change their password.

The following command creates a profile named `accts`. The profile specifies that a user cannot re-use a password within 180 days of the last use of the password, and must change their password at least 5 times before re-using the password:

```
CREATE PROFILE accts LIMIT
  PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME 180
  PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX 5;
```

The following command creates a profile named `resources`; the profile calls a user-defined function named `password_rules` that will verify that the password provided meets their standards for complexity:

```
CREATE PROFILE resources LIMIT
  PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION password_rules;
```

### 6.5.1.1 Creating a Password Function

When specifying `PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION`, you can provide a customized function that specifies the security rules that will be applied when your users change their password. For example, you can specify rules that stipulate that the new password must be at least  $n$  characters long, and may not contain a specific value.

The password function has the following signature:

```
<function_name> (<user_name> VARCHAR2,
  <new_password> VARCHAR2,
  <old_password> VARCHAR2) RETURN boolean
```

**Where:**

`user_name` is the name of the user.

`new_password` is the new password.

`old_password` is the user's previous password. If you reference this parameter within your function:

When a database superuser changes their password, the third parameter will always be `NULL`.

When a user with the `CREATEROLE` attribute changes their password, the parameter will pass the previous password if the statement includes the `REPLACE` clause. Note that the `REPLACE` clause is

optional syntax for a user with the `CREATEROLE` privilege.

When a user that is not a database superuser and does not have the `CREATEROLE` attribute changes their password, the third parameter will contain the previous password for the role.

The function returns a Boolean value. If the function returns true and does not raise an exception, the password is accepted; if the function returns false or raises an exception, the password is rejected. If the function raises an exception, the specified error message is displayed to the user. If the function does not raise an exception, but returns false, the following error message is displayed:

**ERROR: password verification for the specified password failed**

The function must be owned by a database superuser, and reside in the `sys` schema.

### Example:

The following example creates a profile and a custom function; then, the function is associated with the profile. The following `CREATE PROFILE` command creates a profile named `acctg_pwd_profile`:

```
CREATE PROFILE acctg_pwd_profile;
```

The following commands create a (schema-qualified) function named `verify_password`:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION sys.verify_password(user_name varchar2,
new_password varchar2, old_password varchar2)
RETURN boolean IMMUTABLE
IS
BEGIN
  IF (length(new_password) < 5)
  THEN
    raise_application_error(-20001, 'too short');
  END IF;

  IF substring(new_password FROM old_password) IS NOT NULL
  THEN
    raise_application_error(-20002, 'includes old password');
  END IF;

  RETURN true;
END;
```

The function first ensures that the password is at least 5 characters long, and then compares the new password to the old password. If the new password contains fewer than 5 characters, or contains the old password, the function raises an error.

The following statement sets the ownership of the `verify_password` function to the `enterprisedb` database superuser:

```
ALTER FUNCTION verify_password(varchar2, varchar2, varchar2) OWNER TO
enterprisedb;
```

Then, the `verify_password` function is associated with the profile:

```
ALTER PROFILE acctg_pwd_profile LIMIT PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION
verify_password;
```

The following statements confirm that the function is working by first creating a test user (`alice`), and then attempting to associate invalid and valid passwords with her role:

```
CREATE ROLE alice WITH LOGIN PASSWORD 'temp_password' PROFILE
acctg_pwd_profile;
```

Then, when `alice` connects to the database and attempts to change her password, she must adhere to the rules established by the profile function. A non-superuser without `CREATEROLE` must include the `REPLACE` clause when changing a password:

```
edb=> ALTER ROLE alice PASSWORD 'hey';
ERROR: missing REPLACE clause
```

The new password must be at least 5 characters long:

```
edb=> ALTER USER alice PASSWORD 'hey' REPLACE 'temp_password';
ERROR: EDB-20001: too short
CONTEXT: edb-spl function verify_password(character varying,character
varying,character varying) line 5 at procedure/function invocation statement
```

If the new password is acceptable, the command completes without error:

```
edb=> ALTER USER alice PASSWORD 'hello' REPLACE 'temp_password';
ALTER ROLE
```

If `alice` decides to change her password, the new password must not contain the old password:

```
edb=> ALTER USER alice PASSWORD 'helloworld' REPLACE 'hello';
ERROR: EDB-20002: includes old password
CONTEXT: edb-spl function verify_password(character varying,character
varying,character varying) line 10 at procedure/function invocation statement
```

To remove the verify function, set `password_verify_function` to `NULL`:

```
ALTER PROFILE acctg_pwd_profile LIMIT password_verify_function NULL;
```

Then, all password constraints will be lifted:

```
edb=# ALTER ROLE alice PASSWORD 'hey';
ALTER ROLE
```

## 6.5.2 Altering a Profile

Use the `ALTER PROFILE` command to modify a user-defined profile; Advanced Server supports two forms of the command:

```
ALTER PROFILE <profile_name> RENAME TO <new_name>;
```

```
ALTER PROFILE <profile_name>
    LIMIT {<parameter value>}[...];
```

Include the `LIMIT` clause and one or more space-delimited `parameter/value` pairs to specify the rules enforced by Advanced Server, or use `ALTER PROFILE...RENAME TO` to change the name of a profile.

### Parameters:

`profile_name` specifies the name of the profile.

`new_name` specifies the new name of the profile.

`parameter` specifies the attribute limited by the profile.

`value` specifies the parameter limit.

See the table in [Creating a New Profile](#), for a complete list of accepted parameter/value pairs.

## Examples

The following example modifies a profile named `acctg_profile`:

```
ALTER PROFILE acctg_profile
    LIMIT FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS 3 PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME 1;
```

`acctg_profile` will count failed connection attempts when a login role attempts to connect to the server. The profile specifies that if a user has not authenticated with the correct password in three attempts, the account will be locked for one day.

The following example changes the name of `acctg_profile` to `payables_profile`:

```
ALTER PROFILE acctg_profile RENAME TO payables_profile;
```

## 6.5.3 Dropping a Profile

Use the `DROP PROFILE` command to drop a profile. The syntax is:

```
DROP PROFILE [IF EXISTS] <profile_name> [CASCADE|RESTRICT];
```

Include the `IF EXISTS` clause to instruct the server to not throw an error if the specified profile does not exist. The server will issue a notice if the profile does not exist.

Include the optional `CASCADE` clause to reassign any users that are currently associated with the profile to the `default` profile, and then drop the profile. Include the optional `RESTRICT` clause to instruct the server to not drop any profile that is associated with a role. This is the default behavior.

### Parameters

`profile_name`

The name of the profile being dropped.

## Examples

The following example drops a profile named `acctg_profile`:

```
DROP PROFILE acctg_profile CASCADE;
```

The command first re-associates any roles associated with the `acctg_profile` profile with the `default` profile, and then drops the `acctg_profile` profile.

The following example drops a profile named `acctg_profile`:

```
DROP PROFILE acctg_profile RESTRICT;
```

The `RESTRICT` clause in the command instructs the server to not drop `acctg_profile` if there are any roles associated with the profile.

## 6.5.4 Associating a Profile with an Existing Role

After creating a profile, you can use the `ALTER USER... PROFILE` or `ALTER ROLE... PROFILE` command to associate the profile with a role. The command syntax related to profile management functionality is:

```
ALTER USER|ROLE <name> [[WITH] option[...]]
```

where `option` can be the following compatible clauses:

```
PROFILE <profile_name>
| ACCOUNT {LOCK|UNLOCK}
| PASSWORD EXPIRE [AT '<timestamp>']
```

or `option` can be the following non-compatible clauses:

```
| PASSWORD SET AT '<timestamp>'
| LOCK TIME '<timestamp>'
| STORE PRIOR PASSWORD {'<password>' '<timestamp>'} [, ...]
```

For information about the administrative clauses of the `ALTER USER` or `ALTER ROLE` command that are supported by Advanced Server, please see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-commands.html>

Only a database superuser can use the `ALTER USER|ROLE` clauses that enforce profile management. The clauses enforce the following behaviors:

Include the `PROFILE` clause and a `profile_name` to associate a pre-defined profile with a role, or to change which pre-defined profile is associated with a user.

Include the `ACCOUNT` clause and the `LOCK` or `UNLOCK` keyword to specify that the user account should be placed in a locked or unlocked state.

Include the `LOCK TIME 'timestamp'` clause and a date/time value to lock the role at the specified time, and unlock the role at the time indicated by the `PASSWORD LOCK_TIME` parameter of the profile assigned to this role. If `LOCK TIME` is used with the `ACCOUNT LOCK` clause, the role can only be unlocked by a database superuser with the `ACCOUNT UNLOCK` clause.

Include the `PASSWORD EXPIRE` clause with the `AT 'timestamp'` keywords to specify a date/time when the password associated with the role will expire. If you omit the `AT 'timestamp'` keywords, the password will expire immediately.

Include the `PASSWORD SET AT 'timestamp'` keywords to set the password modification date to the time specified.

Include the `STORE PRIOR PASSWORD {'password' 'timestamp'} [, ...]` clause to modify the password history, adding the new password and the time the password was set.

Each login role may only have one profile. To discover the profile that is currently associated with a login role,

query the `profile` column of the `DBA_USERS` view.

## Parameters

### `name`

The name of the role with which the specified profile will be associated.

### `password`

The password associated with the role.

### `profile_name`

The name of the profile that will be associated with the role.

### `timestamp`

The date and time at which the clause will be enforced. When specifying a value for `timestamp`, enclose the value in single-quotes.

## Examples

The following command uses the `ALTER USER... PROFILE` command to associate a profile named `acctg` with a user named `john`:

```
ALTER USER john PROFILE acctg_profile;
```

The following command uses the `ALTER ROLE... PROFILE` command to associate a profile named `acctg` with a user named `john`:

```
ALTER ROLE john PROFILE acctg_profile;
```

## 6.5.5      Unlocking a Locked Account

A database superuser can use clauses of the `ALTER USER|ROLE...` command to lock or unlock a role. The syntax is:

```
ALTER USER|ROLE <name>
  ACCOUNT {LOCK|UNLOCK}
  LOCK TIME '<timestamp>'
```

Include the `ACCOUNT LOCK` clause to lock a role immediately; when locked, a role's `LOGIN` functionality is disabled. When you specify the `ACCOUNT LOCK` clause without the `LOCK TIME` clause, the state of the role will not change until a superuser uses the `ACCOUNT UNLOCK` clause to unlock the role.

Use the `ACCOUNT UNLOCK` clause to unlock a role.

Use the `LOCK TIME 'timestamp'` clause to instruct the server to lock the account at the time specified by the given timestamp for the length of time specified by the `PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME` parameter of the profile associated with this role.

Combine the `LOCK TIME 'timestamp'` clause and the `ACCOUNT LOCK` clause to lock an account at a specified time until the account is unlocked by a superuser invoking the `ACCOUNT UNLOCK` clause.

## Parameters

### name

The name of the role that is being locked or unlocked.

### timestamp

The date and time at which the role will be locked. When specifying a value for `timestamp`, enclose the value in single-quotes.

### Note

This command (available only in Advanced Server) is implemented to support Oracle-styled profile management.

## Examples

The following example uses the `ACCOUNT LOCK` clause to lock the role named `john`. The account will remain locked until the account is unlocked with the `ACCOUNT UNLOCK` clause:

```
ALTER ROLE john ACCOUNT LOCK;
```

The following example uses the `ACCOUNT UNLOCK` clause to unlock the role named `john`:

```
ALTER USER john ACCOUNT UNLOCK;
```

The following example uses the `LOCK TIME 'timestamp'` clause to lock the role named `john` on September 4, 2015:

```
ALTER ROLE john LOCK TIME 'September 4 12:00:00 2015';
```

The role will remain locked for the length of time specified by the `PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME` parameter.

The following example combines the `LOCK TIME 'timestamp'` clause and the `ACCOUNT LOCK` clause to lock the role named `john` on September 4, 2015:

```
ALTER ROLE john LOCK TIME 'September 4 12:00:00 2015' ACCOUNT LOCK;
```

The role will remain locked until a database superuser uses the `ACCOUNT UNLOCK` command to unlock the role.

## 6.5.6 Creating a New Role Associated with a Profile

A database superuser can use clauses of the `CREATE USER|ROLE` command to assign a named profile to a role when creating the role, or to specify profile management details for a role. The command syntax related to profile management functionality is:

```
CREATE USER|ROLE <name> [[WITH] <option> [...]]
```

where `option` can be the following compatible clauses:

```
PROFILE <profile_name>
| ACCOUNT {LOCK|UNLOCK}
| PASSWORD EXPIRE [AT '<timestamp>']
```

or **option** can be the following non-compatible clauses:

| **LOCK TIME** '<timestamp>' |

For information about the administrative clauses of the **CREATE USER** or **CREATE ROLE** command that are supported by Advanced Server, see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-commands.html>

**CREATE ROLE|USER... PROFILE** adds a new role with an associated profile to an Advanced Server database cluster.

Roles created with the **CREATE USER** command are (by default) login roles. Roles created with the **CREATE ROLE** command are (by default) not login roles. To create a login account with the **CREATE ROLE** command, you must include the **LOGIN** keyword.

Only a database superuser can use the **CREATE USER|ROLE** clauses that enforce profile management; these clauses enforce the following behaviors:

Include the **PROFILE** clause and a **profile\_name** to associate a pre-defined profile with a role, or to change which pre-defined profile is associated with a user.

Include the **ACCOUNT** clause and the **LOCK** or **UNLOCK** keyword to specify that the user account should be placed in a locked or unlocked state.

Include the **LOCK TIME** 'timestamp' clause and a date/time value to lock the role at the specified time, and unlock the role at the time indicated by the **PASSWORD LOCK\_TIME** parameter of the profile assigned to this role. If **LOCK TIME** is used with the **ACCOUNT LOCK** clause, the role can only be unlocked by a database superuser with the **ACCOUNT UNLOCK** clause.

Include the **PASSWORD EXPIRE** clause with the optional **AT timestamp** keywords to specify a date/time when the password associated with the role will expire. If you omit the **AT timestamp** keywords, the password will expire immediately.

Each login role may only have one profile. To discover the profile that is currently associated with a login role, query the **profile** column of the **DBA\_USERS** view.

## Parameters

**name**

The name of the role.

**profile\_name**

The name of the profile associated with the role.

**timestamp**

The date and time at which the clause will be enforced. When specifying a value for **timestamp**, enclose the value in single-quotes.

## Examples

The following example uses **CREATE USER** to create a login role named **john** who is associated with the **acctg\_profile** profile:

```
CREATE USER john PROFILE acctg_profile IDENTIFIED BY "1safepwd";
```

**john** can log in to the server, using the password **1safepwd**.

The following example uses **CREATE ROLE** to create a login role named **john** who is associated with the

`acctg_profile` profile:

```
CREATE ROLE john PROFILE acctg_profile LOGIN PASSWORD "1safepwd";
```

`john` can log in to the server, using the password `1safepwd`.

## 6.5.7 Backing up Profile Management Functions

A profile may include a `PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION` clause that refers to a user-defined function that specifies the behavior enforced by Advanced Server. Profiles are global objects; they are shared by all of the databases within a cluster. While profiles are global objects, user-defined functions are database objects.

Invoking `pg_dumpall` with the `-g` or `-r` option will create a script that recreates the definition of any existing profiles, but that does not recreate the user-defined functions that are referred to by the `PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION` clause. You should use the `pg_dump` utility to explicitly dump (and later restore) the database in which those functions reside.

The script created by `pg_dump` will contain a command that includes the clause and function name:

```
ALTER PROFILE... LIMIT PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION <function_name>
```

to associate the restored function with the profile with which it was previously associated.

If the `PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION` clause is set to `DEFAULT` or `NULL`, the behavior will be replicated by the script generated by the `pg_dumpall -g` or `pg_dumpall -r` command.

## 6.6 Optimizer Hints

When you invoke a `DELETE`, `INSERT`, `SELECT` or `UPDATE` command, the server generates a set of execution plans; after analyzing those execution plans, the server selects a plan that will (generally) return the result set in the least amount of time. The server's choice of plan is dependent upon several factors:

- The estimated execution cost of data handling operations.
- Parameter values assigned to parameters in the `Query Tuning` section of the `postgresql.conf` file.
- Column statistics that have been gathered by the `ANALYZE` command.

As a rule, the query planner will select the least expensive plan. You can use an *optimizer hint* to influence the server as it selects a query plan. An optimizer hint is a directive (or multiple directives) embedded in a comment-like syntax that immediately follows a `DELETE`, `INSERT`, `SELECT` or `UPDATE` command. Keywords in the comment instruct the server to employ or avoid a specific plan when producing the result set.

### Synopsis

```
{ DELETE | INSERT | SELECT | UPDATE } /*+ { <hint> [ <comment> ] } [...] */
<statement_body>
```

```
{ DELETE | INSERT | SELECT | UPDATE } --+ { <hint> [ <comment> ] } [...] */
<statement_body>
```

Optimizer hints may be included in either of the forms shown above. Note that in both forms, a plus sign (+) must immediately follow the `/*` or `--` opening comment symbols, with no intervening space, or the server will not interpret the following tokens as hints.

If you are using the first form, the hint and optional comment may span multiple lines. The second form requires all hints and comments to occupy a single line; the remainder of the statement must start on a new line.

## Description

Please Note:

- The database server will always try to use the specified hints if at all possible.
- If a planner method parameter is set so as to disable a certain plan type, then this plan will not be used even if it is specified in a hint, unless there are no other possible options for the planner. Examples of planner method parameters are `enable_indexscan`, `enable_seqscan`, `enable_hashjoin`, `enable_mergejoin`, and `enable_nestloop`. These are all Boolean parameters.
- Remember that the hint is embedded within a comment. As a consequence, if the hint is misspelled or if any parameter to a hint such as view, table, or column name is misspelled, or non-existent in the SQL command, there will be no indication that any sort of error has occurred. No syntax error will be given and the entire hint is simply ignored.
- If an alias is used for a table or view name in the SQL command, then the alias name, not the original object name, must be used in the hint. For example, in the command, `SELECT /*+ FULL(acct) */ * FROM accounts acct ... , acct`, the alias for `accounts`, must be specified in the `FULL` hint, not the table name, `accounts`.

Use the `EXPLAIN` command to ensure that the hint is correctly formed and the planner is using the hint. See the Advanced Server documentation set for information on the `EXPLAIN` command.

In general, optimizer hints should not be used in production applications (where table data changes throughout the life of the application). By ensuring that dynamic columns are `ANALYZED` frequently, the column statistics will be updated to reflect value changes, and the planner will use such information to produce the least cost plan for any given command execution. Use of optimizer hints defeats the purpose of this process and will result in the same plan regardless of how the table data changes.

## Parameters

### hint

An optimizer hint directive.

### comment

A string with additional information. Note that there are restrictions as to what characters may be included in the comment. Generally, `comment` may only consist of alphabetic, numeric, the underscore, dollar sign, number sign and space characters. These must also conform to the syntax of an identifier. Any subsequent hint will be ignored if the comment is not in this form.

### statement\_body

The remainder of the `DELETE`, `INSERT`, `SELECT`, or `UPDATE` command.

The following sections describe the optimizer hint directives in more detail.

## 6.6.1 Default Optimization Modes

There are a number of optimization modes that can be chosen as the default setting for an Advanced Server database cluster. This setting can also be changed on a per session basis by using the `ALTER SESSION`

command as well as in individual `DELETE`, `SELECT`, and `UPDATE` commands within an optimizer hint. The configuration parameter that controls these default modes is named `OPTIMIZER_MODE`.

The following table shows the possible values.

Hint	Description
<code>ALL_ROWS</code>	Optimizes for retrieval of all rows of the result set.
<code>CHOOSE</code>	Does no default optimization based on assumed number of rows to be retrieved from the result set. This is the default.
<code>FIRST_ROWS</code>	Optimizes for retrieval of only the first row of the result set.
<code>FIRST_ROWS_10</code>	Optimizes for retrieval of the first 10 rows of the results set.
<code>FIRST_ROWS_100</code>	Optimizes for retrieval of the first 100 rows of the result set.
<code>FIRST_ROWS_1000</code>	Optimizes for retrieval of the first 1000 rows of the result set.
<code>FIRST_ROWS(n)</code>	Optimizes for retrieval of the first <i>n</i> rows of the result set. This form may not be used as the object of the <code>ALTER SESSION SET OPTIMIZER_MODE</code> command. It may only be used in the form of a hint in a SQL command.

These optimization modes are based upon the assumption that the client submitting the SQL command is interested in viewing only the first “n” rows of the result set and will then abandon the remainder of the result set. Resources allocated to the query are adjusted as such.

## Examples

Alter the current session to optimize for retrieval of the first 10 rows of the result set.

```
ALTER SESSION SET OPTIMIZER_MODE = FIRST_ROWS_10;
```

The current value of the `OPTIMIZER_MODE` parameter can be shown by using the `SHOW` command. Note that this command is a utility dependent command. In PSQL, the `SHOW` command is used as follows:

```
SHOW OPTIMIZER_MODE;
```

```
optimizer_mode
-----
first_rows_10
(1 row)
```

The `SHOW` command, compatible with Oracle databases, has the following syntax:

```
SHOW PARAMETER OPTIMIZER_MODE;
```

```
NAME
```

---

-----  
VALUE

---

optimizer\_mode  
first\_rows\_10

The following example shows an optimization mode used in a `SELECT` command as a hint:

```
SELECT /*+ FIRST_ROWS(7) */ * FROM emp;

empno|ename|job|mgr|hiredate|sal|comm|deptno
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
7369 |SMITH|CLERK|7902|17-DEC-80 00:00:00|800.00||20
7499 |ALLEN|SALESMAN|7698|20-FEB-81 00:00:00|1600.00|300.00|30
7521 |WARD|SALESMAN|7698|22-FEB-81 00:00:00|1250.00|500.00|30
7566 |JONES|MANAGER|7839|02-APR-81 00:00:00|2975.00||20
7654 |MARTIN|SALESMAN|7698|28-SEP-81 00:00:00|1250.00|1400.00|30
7698 |BLAKE|MANAGER|7839|01-MAY-81 00:00:00|2850.00||30
7782 |CLARK|MANAGER|7839|09-JUN-81 00:00:00|2450.00||10
7788 |SCOTT|ANALYST|7566|19-APR-87 00:00:00|3000.00||20
7839 |KING|PRESIDENT||17-NOV-81 00:00:00|5000.00||10
7844 |TURNER|SALESMAN|7698|08-SEP-81 00:00:00|1500.00|0.00|30
7876 |ADAMS|CLERK|7788|23-MAY-87 00:00:00|1100.00||20
7900 |JAMES|CLERK|7698|03-DEC-81 00:00:00|950.00||30
7902 |FORD|ANALYST|7566|03-DEC-81 00:00:00|3000.00||20
7934 |MILLER|CLERK|7782|23-JAN-82 00:00:00|1300.00||10
(14 rows)
```

## 6.6.2 Access Method Hints

The following hints influence how the optimizer accesses relations to create the result set.

Hint	Description
<code>FULL(table)</code>	Perform a full sequential scan on <code>table</code> .
<code>INDEX(table [ index ] [...])</code>	Use <code>index</code> on <code>table</code> to access the relation.
<code>NO_INDEX(table [ index ] [...])</code>	Do not use <code>index</code> on <code>table</code> to access the relation.

In addition, the `ALL_ROWS`, `FIRST_ROWS`, and `FIRST_ROWS(n)` hints can be used.

### Examples

The sample application does not have sufficient data to illustrate the effects of optimizer hints so the remainder of the examples in this section will use a banking database created by the `pgbench` application located in the Advanced Server `bin` subdirectory.

The following steps create a database named, `bank`, populated by the tables, `pgbench_accounts`, `pgbench_branches`, `pgbench_tellers`, and `pgbench_history`. The `-s 20` option specifies a scaling factor of twenty, which results in the creation of twenty branches, each with 100,000 accounts, resulting in a total of 2,000,000 rows in the `pgbench_accounts` table and twenty rows in the `pgbench_branches` table. Ten tellers are assigned to each branch resulting in a total of 200 rows in the `pgbench_tellers` table.

The following initializes the `pgbench` application in the `bank` database.

```
createdb -U enterprise db bank
CREATE DATABASE

pgbench -i -s 20 -U enterprise db bank

NOTICE: table "pgbench_history" does not exist, skipping
NOTICE: table "pgbench_tellers" does not exist, skipping
NOTICE: table "pgbench_accounts" does not exist, skipping
NOTICE: table "pgbench_branches" does not exist, skipping
creating tables...
100000 of 2000000 tuples (5%) done (elapsed 0.11 s, remaining 2.10 s)
200000 of 2000000 tuples (10%) done (elapsed 0.22 s, remaining 1.98 s)
300000 of 2000000 tuples (15%) done (elapsed 0.33 s, remaining 1.84 s)
400000 of 2000000 tuples (20%) done (elapsed 0.42 s, remaining 1.67 s)
500000 of 2000000 tuples (25%) done (elapsed 0.52 s, remaining 1.57 s)
600000 of 2000000 tuples (30%) done (elapsed 0.62 s, remaining 1.45 s)
700000 of 2000000 tuples (35%) done (elapsed 0.73 s, remaining 1.35 s)
800000 of 2000000 tuples (40%) done (elapsed 0.87 s, remaining 1.31 s)
900000 of 2000000 tuples (45%) done (elapsed 0.98 s, remaining 1.19 s)
1000000 of 2000000 tuples (50%) done (elapsed 1.09 s, remaining 1.09 s)
1100000 of 2000000 tuples (55%) done (elapsed 1.22 s, remaining 1.00 s)
1200000 of 2000000 tuples (60%) done (elapsed 1.36 s, remaining 0.91 s)
1300000 of 2000000 tuples (65%) done (elapsed 1.51 s, remaining 0.82 s)
1400000 of 2000000 tuples (70%) done (elapsed 1.65 s, remaining 0.71 s)
1500000 of 2000000 tuples (75%) done (elapsed 1.78 s, remaining 0.59 s)
1600000 of 2000000 tuples (80%) done (elapsed 1.93 s, remaining 0.48 s)
1700000 of 2000000 tuples (85%) done (elapsed 2.10 s, remaining 0.37 s)
1800000 of 2000000 tuples (90%) done (elapsed 2.23 s, remaining 0.25 s)
1900000 of 2000000 tuples (95%) done (elapsed 2.37 s, remaining 0.12 s)
2000000 of 2000000 tuples (100%) done (elapsed 2.48 s, remaining 0.00 s)
vacuum...
set primary keys...
done.
```

A total of 500,00 transactions are then processed. This will populate the `pgbench_history` table with 500,000 rows.

```
pgbench -U enterprise db -t 500000 bank

starting vacuum...end.
transaction type: <builtin: TPC-B (sort of)>
scaling factor: 20
query mode: simple
number of clients: 1
number of threads: 1
number of transactions per client: 500000
number of transactions actually processed: 500000/500000
latency average: 0.000 ms
tps = 1464.338375 (including connections establishing)
tps = 1464.350357 (excluding connections establishing)
```

The table definitions are shown below:

```
\d pgbench_accounts
```

```
Table "public.pgbench_accounts"
Column | Type      | Modifiers
-----+-----+
aid   | integer    | not null
bid   | integer    |
abalance | integer   |
filler | character(84) |
Indexes:
"pgbench_accounts_pkey" PRIMARY KEY, btree (aid)
```

```
\d pgbench_branches
```

```
Table "public.pgbench_branches"
Column | Type      | Modifiers
-----+-----+
bid   | integer    | not null
bbalance | integer   |
filler | character(88) |
Indexes:
"pgbench_branches_pkey" PRIMARY KEY, btree (bid)
```

```
\d pgbench_tellers
```

```
Table "public.pgbench_tellers"
Column | Type      | Modifiers
-----+-----+
tid   | integer    | not null
bid   | integer    |
tbalance | integer   |
filler | character(84) |
Indexes:
"pgbench_tellers_pkey" PRIMARY KEY, btree (tid)
```

```
\d pgbench_history
```

```
Table "public.pgbench_history"
Column | Type      | Modifiers
-----+-----+
tid   | integer    |
bid   | integer    |
aid   | integer    |
delta | integer    |
mtime | timestamp without time zone |
filler | character(22)    |
```

The `EXPLAIN` command shows the plan selected by the query planner. In the following example, `aid` is the primary key column, so an indexed search is used on index, `pgbench_accounts_pkey`.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM pgbench_accounts WHERE aid = 100;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
-----  
Index Scan using pgbench_accounts_pkey on pgbench_accounts (cost=0.43..8.45  
rows=1 width=97)
```

```
Index Cond: (aid = 100)
(2 rows)
```

The **FULL** hint is used to force a full sequential scan instead of using the index as shown below:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ FULL(pgbench_accounts) */ * FROM pgbench_accounts WHERE aid = 100;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts (cost=0.00..58781.69 rows=1 width=97)
  Filter: (aid = 100)
(2 rows)
```

The **NO\_INDEX** hint forces a parallel sequential scan instead of use of the index as shown below:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ NO_INDEX(pgbench_accounts pgbench_accounts_pkey) */ *
  FROM pgbench_accounts WHERE aid = 100;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
Gather (cost=1000.00..45094.80 rows=1 width=97)
  Workers Planned: 2
    -> Parallel Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts (cost=0.00..44094.70 rows=1
        width=97)
      Filter: (aid = 100)
(4 rows)
```

In addition to using the **EXPLAIN** command as shown in the prior examples, more detailed information regarding whether or not a hint was used by the planner can be obtained by setting the **trace\_hints** configuration parameter as follows:

```
SET trace_hints TO on;
```

The **SELECT** command with the **NO\_INDEX** hint is repeated below to illustrate the additional information produced when the **trace\_hints** configuration parameters is set.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ NO_INDEX(pgbench_accounts pgbench_accounts_pkey) */ *
  FROM pgbench_accounts WHERE aid = 100;
```

```
INFO: [HINTS] Index Scan of [pgbench_accounts].[pgbench_accounts_pkey]
rejected due to NO_INDEX hint.
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
Gather (cost=1000.00..45094.80 rows=1 width=97)
  Workers Planned: 2
    -> Parallel Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts (cost=0.00..44094.70 rows=1
        width=97)
      Filter: (aid = 100)
(4 rows)
```

Note that if a hint is ignored, the **INFO: [HINTS]** line will not appear. This may be an indication that there was a syntax error or some other misspelling in the hint as shown in the following example where the index name is misspelled.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ NO_INDEX(pgbench_accounts pgbench_accounts_xxx) */ * FROM
pgbench_accounts WHERE aid = 100;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

---

```
Index Scan using pgbench_accounts_pkey on pgbench_accounts (cost=0.43..8.45
rows=1 width=97)
  Index Cond: (aid = 100)
(2 rows)
```

### 6.6.3 Specifying a Join Order

Include the **ORDERED** directive to instruct the query optimizer to join tables in the order in which they are listed in the **FROM** clause. If you do not include the **ORDERED** keyword, the query optimizer will choose the order in which to join the tables.

For example, the following command allows the optimizer to choose the order in which to join the tables listed in the **FROM** clause:

```
SELECT e.ename, d.dname, h.startdate
  FROM emp e, dept d, jobhist h
 WHERE d.deptno = e.deptno
   AND h.empno = e.empno;
```

The following command instructs the optimizer to join the tables in the ordered specified:

```
SELECT /*+ ORDERED */ e.ename, d.dname, h.startdate
  FROM emp e, dept d, jobhist h
 WHERE d.deptno = e.deptno
   AND h.empno = e.empno;
```

In the **ORDERED** version of the command, Advanced Server will first join **emp e** with **dept d** before joining the results with **jobhist h**. Without the **ORDERED** directive, the join order is selected by the query optimizer.

#### Note

The **ORDERED** directive does not work for Oracle-style outer joins (those joins that contain a '+' sign).

---

### 6.6.4 Joining Relations Hints

When two tables are to be joined, there are three possible plans that may be used to perform the join.

- *Nested Loop Join* – A table is scanned once for every row in the other joined table.
- *Merge Sort Join* – Each table is sorted on the join attributes before the join starts. The two tables are then scanned in parallel and the matching rows are combined to form the join rows.
- *Hash Join* – A table is scanned and its join attributes are loaded into a hash table using its join attributes as

hash keys. The other joined table is then scanned and its join attributes are used as hash keys to locate the matching rows from the first table.

The following table lists the optimizer hints that can be used to influence the planner to use one type of join plan over another.

Hint	Description
USE_HASH(table [...])	Use a hash join for <code>table</code> .
NO_USE_HASH(table [...])	Do not use a hash join for <code>table</code> .
USE_MERGE(table [...])	Use a merge sort join for <code>table</code> .
NO_USE_MERGE(table [...])	Do not use a merge sort join for <code>table</code> .
USE_NL(table [...])	Use a nested loop join for <code>table</code> .
NO_USE_NL(table [...])	Do not use a nested loop join for <code>table</code> .

## Examples

In the following example, the `USE_HASH` hint is used for a join on the `pgbench_branches` and `pgbench_accounts` tables. The query plan shows that a hash join is used by creating a hash table from the join attribute of the `pgbench_branches` table.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ USE_HASH(b) */ b.bid, a.aid, abalance FROM
pgbench_branches b, pgbench_accounts a WHERE b.bid = a.bid;
```

### QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Hash Join (cost=21.45..81463.06 rows=2014215 width=12)
  Hash Cond: (a.bid = b.bid)
    -> Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts a (cost=0.00..53746.15 rows=2014215
width=12)
    -> Hash (cost=21.20..21.20 rows=20 width=4)
        -> Seq Scan on pgbench_branches b (cost=0.00..21.20 rows=20
width=4)
(5 rows)
```

Next, the `NO_USE_HASH(a b)` hint forces the planner to use an approach other than hash tables. The result is a merge join.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ NO_USE_HASH(a b) */ b.bid, a.aid, abalance FROM
pgbench_branches b, pgbench_accounts a WHERE b.bid = a.bid;
```

### QUERY PLAN

```

Merge Join (cost=333526.08..368774.94 rows=2014215 width=12)
  Merge Cond: (b.bid = a.bid)
    -> Sort (cost=21.63..21.68 rows=20 width=4)
        Sort Key: b.bid
        -> Seq Scan on pgbench_branches b (cost=0.00..21.20 rows=20
width=4)
    -> Materialize (cost=333504.45..343575.53 rows=2014215 width=12)
        -> Sort (cost=333504.45..338539.99 rows=2014215 width=12)
            Sort Key: a.bid
            -> Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts a (cost=0.00..53746.15
rows=2014215 width=12)
(9 rows)

```

Finally, the `USE_MERGE` hint forces the planner to use a merge join.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ USE_MERGE(a) */ b.bid, a.aid, abalance FROM
pgbench_branches b, pgbench_accounts a WHERE b.bid = a.bid;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

---

```

-----  

Merge Join (cost=333526.08..368774.94 rows=2014215 width=12)
  Merge Cond: (b.bid = a.bid)
    -> Sort (cost=21.63..21.68 rows=20 width=4)
        Sort Key: b.bid
        -> Seq Scan on pgbench_branches b (cost=0.00..21.20 rows=20
width=4)
    -> Materialize (cost=333504.45..343575.53 rows=2014215 width=12)
        -> Sort (cost=333504.45..338539.99 rows=2014215 width=12)
            Sort Key: a.bid
            -> Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts a (cost=0.00..53746.15
rows=2014215 width=12)
(9 rows)

```

In this three-table join example, the planner first performs a hash join on the `pgbench_branches` and `pgbench_history` tables, then finally performs a hash join of the result with the `pgbench_accounts` table.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT h.mtime, h.delta, b.bid, a.aid FROM pgbench_history h,
pgbench_branches b, pgbench_accounts a WHERE h.bid = b.bid AND h.aid = a.aid;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

---

```

-----  

Hash Join (cost=86814.29..123103.29 rows=500000 width=20)
  Hash Cond: (h.aid = a.aid)
    -> Hash Join (cost=21.45..15081.45 rows=500000 width=20)
        Hash Cond: (h.bid = b.bid)
        -> Seq Scan on pgbench_history h (cost=0.00..8185.00
rows=500000 width=20)
        -> Hash (cost=21.20..21.20 rows=20 width=4)
            -> Seq Scan on pgbench_branches b (cost=0.00..21.20 rows=20
width=4)
    -> Hash (cost=53746.15..53746.15 rows=2014215 width=4)
        -> Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts a (cost=0.00..53746.15 rows=2014215
width=4)
(9 rows)

```

This plan is altered by using hints to force a combination of a merge sort join and a hash join.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ USE_MERGE(h b) USE_HASH(a) */ h.mtime, h.delta, b.bid,
a.aid FROM pgbench_history h, pgbench_branches b, pgbench_accounts a WHERE
h.bid = b.bid AND h.aid = a.aid;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

---

```
Hash Join (cost=152583.39..182562.49 rows=500000 width=20)
  Hash Cond: (h.aid = a.aid)
    -> Merge Join (cost=65790.55..74540.65 rows=500000 width=20)
      Merge Cond: (b.bid = h.bid)
        -> Sort (cost=21.63..21.68 rows=20 width=4)
          Sort Key: b.bid
            -> Seq Scan on pgbench_branches b (cost=0.00..21.20 rows=20
width=4)
              -> Materialize (cost=65768.92..68268.92 rows=500000 width=20)
                -> Sort (cost=65768.92..67018.92 rows=500000 width=20)
                  Sort Key: h.bid
                    -> Seq Scan on pgbench_history h (cost=0.00..8185.00
rows=500000 width=20)
    -> Hash (cost=53746.15..53746.15 rows=2014215 width=4)
      -> Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts a (cost=0.00..53746.15
rows=2014215 width=4)
(13 rows)
```

## 6.6.5 Global Hints

Thus far, hints have been applied directly to tables that are referenced in the SQL command. It is also possible to apply hints to tables that appear in a view when the view is referenced in the SQL command. The hint does not appear in the view, itself, but rather in the SQL command that references the view.

When specifying a hint that is to apply to a table within a view, the view and table names are given in dot notation within the hint argument list.

### Synopsis

```
<hint>(<view>.<table>)
```

### Parameters

**hint**

Any of the hints in table [Access Method Hints](#), [Joining Relations Hints](#).

**view**

The name of the view containing **table**.

**table**

The table on which the hint is to be applied.

## Examples

A view named, `tx`, is created from the three-table join of `pgbench_history`, `pgbench_branches`, and `pgbench_accounts` shown in the final example of [Joining Relations Hints](#).

```
CREATE VIEW tx AS SELECT h.mtime, h.delta, b.bid, a.aid FROM pgbench_history
h, pgbench_branches b, pgbench_accounts a WHERE h.bid = b.bid AND h.aid =
a.aid;
```

The query plan produced by selecting from this view is shown below:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tx;
```

### QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Hash Join (cost=86814.29..123103.29 rows=500000 width=20)
  Hash Cond: (h.aid = a.aid)
    -> Hash Join (cost=21.45..15081.45 rows=500000 width=20)
      Hash Cond: (h.bid = b.bid)
        -> Seq Scan on pgbench_history h (cost=0.00..8185.00 rows=500000
width=20)
          -> Hash (cost=21.20..21.20 rows=20 width=4)
            -> Seq Scan on pgbench_branches b (cost=0.00..21.20 rows=20
width=4)
          -> Hash (cost=53746.15..53746.15 rows=2014215 width=4)
            -> Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts a (cost=0.00..53746.15
rows=2014215 width=4)
(9 rows)
```

The same hints that were applied to this join at the end of [Joining Relations Hints](#) can be applied to the view as follows:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ USE_MERGE(tx.h tx.b) USE_HASH(tx.a) */ * FROM tx;
```

### QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Hash Join (cost=152583.39..182562.49 rows=500000 width=20)
  Hash Cond: (h.aid = a.aid)
    -> Merge Join (cost=65790.55..74540.65 rows=500000 width=20)
      Merge Cond: (b.bid = h.bid)
        -> Sort (cost=21.63..21.68 rows=20 width=4)
          Sort Key: b.bid
            -> Seq Scan on pgbench_branches b (cost=0.00..21.20 rows=20
width=4)
          -> Materialize (cost=65768.92..68268.92 rows=500000 width=20)
            -> Sort (cost=65768.92..67018.92 rows=500000 width=20)
              Sort Key: h.bid
                -> Seq Scan on pgbench_history h (cost=0.00..8185.00
rows=500000 width=20)
    -> Hash (cost=53746.15..53746.15 rows=2014215 width=4)
      -> Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts a (cost=0.00..53746.15
rows=2014215 width=4)
(13 rows)
```

In addition to applying hints to tables within stored views, hints can be applied to tables within subqueries as illustrated by the following example. In this query on the sample application `emp` table, employees and their managers are listed by joining the `emp` table with a subquery of the `emp` table identified by the alias, `b`.

```
SELECT a.empno, a.ename, b.empno "mgr empno", b.ename "mgr ename" FROM emp
a, (SELECT * FROM emp) b WHERE a.mgr = b.empno;
```

`empno | ename | mgr empno | mgr ename`

empno	ename	mgr empno	mgr ename
7369	SMITH	7902	FORD
7499	ALLEN	7698	BLAKE
7521	WARD	7698	BLAKE
7566	JONES	7839	KING
7654	MARTIN	7698	BLAKE
7698	BLAKE	7839	KING
7782	CLARK	7839	KING
7788	SCOTT	7566	JONES
7844	TURNER	7698	BLAKE
7876	ADAMS	7788	SCOTT
7900	JAMES	7698	BLAKE
7902	FORD	7566	JONES
7934	MILLER	7782	CLARK

(13 rows)

The plan chosen by the query planner is shown below:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT a.empno, a.ename, b.empno "mgr empno", b.ename "mgr ename"
FROM emp a, (SELECT * FROM emp) b WHERE a.mgr = b.empno;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
Hash Join (cost=1.32..2.64 rows=13 width=22)
  Hash Cond: (a.mgr = emp.empno)
    -> Seq Scan on emp a (cost=0.00..1.14 rows=14 width=16)
    -> Hash (cost=1.14..1.14 rows=14 width=11)
      -> Seq Scan on emp (cost=0.00..1.14 rows=14 width=11)
(5 rows)
```

A hint can be applied to the `emp` table within the subquery to perform an index scan on index, `emp_pk`, instead of a table scan. Note the difference in the query plans.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ INDEX(b.emp emp_pk) */ a.empno, a.ename, b.empno "mgr
empno", b.ename "mgr ename" FROM emp a, (SELECT * FROM emp) b WHERE a.mgr =
b.empno;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
Merge Join (cost=4.17..13.11 rows=13 width=22)
  Merge Cond: (a.mgr = emp.empno)
    -> Sort (cost=1.41..1.44 rows=14 width=16)
      Sort Key: a.mgr
        -> Seq Scan on emp a (cost=0.00..1.14 rows=14 width=16)
        -> Index Scan using emp_pk on emp (cost=0.14..12.35 rows=14 width=11)
(6 rows)
```

## 6.6.6 Using the APPEND Optimizer Hint

By default, Advanced Server will add new data into the first available free-space in a table (vacated by vacuumed records). Include the `APPEND` directive after an `INSERT` or `SELECT` command to instruct the server to bypass mid-table free space, and affix new rows to the end of the table. This optimizer hint can be particularly useful when bulk loading data.

The syntax is:

```
/*+APPEND*/
```

For example, the following command, compatible with Oracle databases, instructs the server to append the data in the `INSERT` statement to the end of the `sales` table:

```
INSERT /*+APPEND*/ INTO sales VALUES  
(10, 10, '01-Mar-2011', 10, 'OR');
```

Note that Advanced Server supports the `APPEND` hint when adding multiple rows in a single `INSERT` statement:

```
INSERT /*+APPEND*/ INTO sales VALUES  
(20, 20, '01-Aug-2011', 20, 'NY'),  
(30, 30, '01-Feb-2011', 30, 'FL'),  
(40, 40, '01-Nov-2011', 40, 'TX');
```

The `APPEND` hint can also be included in the `SELECT` clause of an `INSERT INTO` statement:

```
INSERT INTO sales_history SELECT /*+APPEND*/ FROM sales;
```

## 6.6.7 Parallelism Hints

The `PARALLEL` optimizer hint is used to force parallel scanning.

The `NO_PARALLEL` optimizer hint prevents usage of a parallel scan.

### Synopsis

```
PARALLEL (<table> [ <parallel_degree> | DEFAULT ])
```

```
NO_PARALLEL (<table>)
```

### Description

*Parallel scanning* is the usage of multiple background workers to simultaneously perform a scan of a table (that is, in parallel) for a given query. This process provides performance improvement over other methods such as the sequential scan.

### Parameters

`table`

The table to which the parallel hint is to be applied.

### parallel\_degree | DEFAULT

`parallel_degree` is a positive integer that specifies the desired number of workers to use for a parallel scan. If specified, the lesser of `parallel_degree` and configuration parameter `max_parallel_workers_per_gather` is used as the planned number of workers. For information on the `max_parallel_workers_per_gather` parameter, see [Asynchronous Behavior](#) located under [Resource Consumption](#) in the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/runtime-config-resource.html>

If `DEFAULT` is specified, then the maximum possible parallel degree is used.

If both `parallel_degree` and `DEFAULT` are omitted, then the query optimizer determines the parallel degree. In this case, if `table` has been set with the `parallel_workers` storage parameter, then this value is used as the parallel degree, otherwise the optimizer uses the maximum possible parallel degree as if `DEFAULT` was specified. For information on the `parallel_workers` storage parameter, see the [Storage Parameters](#) located under [CREATE TABLE](#) in the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-createtable.html>

Regardless of the circumstance, the parallel degree never exceeds the setting of configuration parameter `max_parallel_workers_per_gather`.

## Examples

The following configuration parameter settings are in effect:

```
SHOW max_worker_processes;
```

```
max_worker_processes
```

```
-----
```

```
8
```

```
(1 row)
```

```
SHOW max_parallel_workers_per_gather;
```

```
max_parallel_workers_per_gather
```

```
-----
```

```
2
```

```
(1 row)
```

The following example shows the default scan on table `pgbench_accounts`. Note that a sequential scan is shown in the query plan.

```
SET trace_hints TO on;
```

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM pgbench_accounts;
```

```
-----
```

```
QUERY PLAN
```

```
Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts (cost=0.00..53746.15 rows=2014215 width=97)
(1 row)
```

The following example uses the `PARALLEL` hint. In the query plan, the Gather node, which launches the background workers, indicates that two workers are planned to be used.

## Note

If `trace_hints` is set to `on`, the `INFO: [HINTS]` lines appear stating that `PARALLEL` has been accepted for `pgbench_accounts` as well as other hint information. For the remaining examples, these lines will not be displayed as they generally show the same output (that is, `trace_hints` has been reset to `off`).

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ PARALLEL(pgbench_accounts) */ * FROM pgbench_accounts;
```

INFO: [HINTS] SeqScan of [pgbench\_accounts] rejected due to PARALLEL hint.

INFO: [HINTS] PARALLEL on [pgbench\_accounts] accepted.

INFO: [HINTS] Index Scan of [pgbench\_accounts].[pgbench\_accounts\_pkey]  
rejected due to PARALLEL hint.

#### QUERY PLAN

---



---

Gather (cost=1000.00..244418.06 rows=2014215 width=97)

Workers Planned: 2

-> Parallel Seq Scan on pgbench\_accounts (cost=0.00..41996.56  
rows=839256 width=97)  
(3 rows)

Now, the `max_parallel_workers_per_gather` setting is increased:

```
SET max_parallel_workers_per_gather TO 6;
```

```
SHOW max_parallel_workers_per_gather;
```

max\_parallel\_workers\_per\_gather

---

6

(1 row)

The same query on `pgbench_accounts` is issued again with no parallel degree specification in the `PARALLEL` hint. Note that the number of planned workers has increased to `4` as determined by the optimizer.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ PARALLEL(pgbench_accounts) */ * FROM pgbench_accounts;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

---



---

Gather (cost=1000.00..241061.04 rows=2014215 width=97)

Workers Planned: 4

-> Parallel Seq Scan on pgbench\_accounts (cost=0.00..38639.54  
rows=503554 width=97)  
(3 rows)

Now, a value of `6` is specified for the parallel degree parameter of the `PARALLEL` hint. The planned number of workers is now returned as this specified value:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ PARALLEL(pgbench_accounts 6) */ * FROM pgbench_accounts;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

---



---

Gather (cost=1000.00..239382.52 rows=2014215 width=97)

Workers Planned: 6

-> Parallel Seq Scan on pgbench\_accounts (cost=0.00..36961.03  
rows=335702 width=97)

(3 rows)

The same query is now issued with the `DEFAULT` setting for the parallel degree. The results indicate that the maximum allowable number of workers is planned.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ PARALLEL(pgbench_accounts DEFAULT) */ * FROM pgbench_accounts;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Gather (cost=1000.00..239382.52 rows=2014215 width=97)
  Workers Planned: 6
    -> Parallel Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts (cost=0.00..36961.03
rows=335702 width=97)
(3 rows)
```

Table `pgbench_accounts` is now altered so that the `parallel_workers` storage parameter is set to `3`.

#### Note

This format of the `ALTER TABLE` command to set the `parallel_workers` parameter is not compatible with Oracle databases.

The `parallel_workers` setting is shown by the PSQL `\d+` command.

```
ALTER TABLE pgbench_accounts SET (parallel_workers=3);
```

```
\d+ pgbench_accounts
  Table "public.pgbench_accounts"
Column | Type      | Modifiers | Storage | Stats target | Description
-----+-----+-----+-----+
aid   | integer   | not null | plain   |          |
bid   | integer   |          | plain   |          |
abalance| integer |          | plain   |          |
filler | character(84)|          | extended|          |
Indexes:
  "pgbench_accounts_pkey" PRIMARY KEY, btree (aid)
Options: fillfactor=100, parallel_workers=3
```

Now, when the `PARALLEL` hint is given with no parallel degree, the resulting number of planned workers is the value from the `parallel_workers` parameter:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ PARALLEL(pgbench_accounts) */ * FROM pgbench_accounts;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Gather (cost=1000.00..242522.97 rows=2014215 width=97)
  Workers Planned: 3
    -> Parallel Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts (cost=0.00..40101.47
rows=649747 width=97)
(3 rows)
```

Specifying a parallel degree value or `DEFAULT` in the `PARALLEL` hint overrides the `parallel_workers` setting.

The following example shows the `NO_PARALLEL` hint. Note that with `trace hints` set to `on`, the `INFO: [HINTS]` message states that the parallel scan was rejected due to the `NO_PARALLEL` hint.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ NO_PARALLEL(pgbench_accounts) */ * FROM pgbench_accounts;
INFO: [HINTS] Parallel SeqScan of [pgbench_accounts] rejected due to
NO_PARALLEL hint.
```

#### QUERY PLAN

---

```
Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts (cost=0.00..53746.15 rows=2014215 width=97)
(1 row)
```

---

## 6.6.8 Conflicting Hints

If a command includes two or more conflicting hints, the server will ignore the contradictory hints. The following table lists hints that are contradictory to each other.

Hint	Conflicting Hint
<code>ALL_ROWS</code>	<code>FIRST_ROWS</code> - all formats
<code>FULL(table)</code>	<code>INDEX(table [ index ])</code> <code>PARALLEL(table [ degree ])</code>
<code>INDEX(table)</code>	<code>FULL(table)</code> <code>NO_INDEX(table)</code> <code>PARALLEL(table [ degree ])</code>
<code>INDEX(table index)</code>	<code>FULL(table)</code> <code>NO_INDEX(table index)</code> <code>PARALLEL(table [ degree ])</code>
<code>PARALLEL(table [ degree ])</code>	<code>FULL(table)</code> <code>INDEX(table)</code> <code>NO_PARALLEL(table)</code>
<code>USE_HASH(table)</code> <code>USE_MERGE(table)</code> <code>USE_NL(table)</code>	<code>NO_USE_HASH(table)</code> <code>NO_USE_MERGE(table)</code> <code>NO_USE_NL(table)</code>

## 6.7 dblink\_ora

dblink\_ora provides an OCI-based database link that allows you to `SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE` or `DELETE` data stored on an Oracle system from within Advanced Server.

### Connecting to an Oracle Database

To enable Oracle connectivity, download Oracle's freely available OCI drivers from their website, presently at:

<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/database-technologies/instant-client/overview/index.html>

For Linux, if the Oracle instant client that you've downloaded does not include the `libclntsh.so` library, you must create a symbolic link named `libclntsh.so` that points to the downloaded version. Navigate to the instant client directory and execute the following command:

```
ln -s libclntsh.so.<version> libclntsh.so
```

Where `version` is the version number of the `libclntsh.so` library. For example:

```
ln -s libclntsh.so.12.1 libclntsh.so
```

Before creating a link to an Oracle server, you must tell Advanced Server where to find the OCI driver.

Set the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable on Linux (or `PATH` on Windows) to the `lib` directory of the Oracle client installation directory.

For Windows only, you can instead set the value of the `oracle_home` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file. The value specified in the `oracle_home` configuration parameter will override the Windows `PATH` environment variable.

The `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable on Linux (`PATH` environment variable or `oracle_home` configuration parameter on Windows) must be set properly each time you start Advanced Server.

When using a Linux service script to start Advanced Server, be sure `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` has been set within the service script so it is in effect when the script invokes the `pg_ctl` utility to start Advanced Server.

**For Windows only:** To set the `oracle_home` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file, edit the file, adding the following line:

```
oracle_home = 'lib_directory'
```

Substitute the name of the Windows directory that contains `oci.dll` for `lib_directory`.

After setting the `oracle_home` configuration parameter, you must restart the server for the changes to take effect. Restart the server from the Windows Services console.

### 6.7.1 dblink\_ora Functions and Procedures

dblink\_ora supports the following functions and procedures.

## 6.7.1.1 dblink\_ora\_connect()

The `dblink_ora_connect()` function establishes a connection to an Oracle database with user-specified connection information. The function comes in two forms; the signature of the first form is:

```
dblink_ora_connect(<conn_name>, <server_name>, <service_name>, <user_name>,
<password>, <port>, <asDBA>)
```

### Where:

`conn_name` specifies the name of the link.

`server_name` specifies the name of the host.

`service_name` specifies the name of the service.

`user_name` specifies the name used to connect to the server.

`password` specifies the password associated with the user name.

`port` specifies the port number.

`asDBA` is `True` if you wish to request `SYSDBA` privileges on the Oracle server. This parameter is optional; if omitted, the default value is `FALSE`.

The first form of `dblink_ora_connect()` returns a `TEXT` value.

The signature of the second form of the `dblink_ora_connect()` function is:

```
dblink_ora_connect(<foreign_server_name>, <asDBA>)
```

### Where:

`foreign_server_name` specifies the name of a foreign server.

`asDBA` is `True` if you wish to request `SYSDBA` privileges on the Oracle server. This parameter is optional; if omitted, the default value is `FALSE`.

The second form of the `dblink_ora_connect()` function allows you to use the connection properties of a pre-defined foreign server when establishing a connection to the server.

Before invoking the second form of the `dblink_ora_connect()` function, use the `CREATE SERVER` command to store the connection properties for the link to a system table. When you call the `dblink_ora_connect()` function, substitute the server name specified in the `CREATE SERVER` command for the name of the link.

The second form of `dblink_ora_connect()` returns a `TEXT` value.

---

## 6.7.1.2 dblink\_ora\_status()

The `dblink_ora_status()` function returns the database connection status. The signature is:

```
dblink_ora_status(<conn_name>)
```

**Where:**

`conn_name` specifies the name of the link.

If the specified connection is active, the function returns a `TEXT` value of `OK`.

### 6.7.1.3 dblink\_ora\_disconnect()

The `dblink_ora_disconnect()` function closes a database connection. The signature is:

```
dblink_ora_disconnect(<conn_name>)
```

**Where:**

`conn_name` specifies the name of the link.

The function returns a `TEXT` value.

### 6.7.1.4 dblink\_ora\_record()

The `dblink_ora_record()` function retrieves information from a database. The signature is:

```
dblink_ora_record(<conn_name>, <query_text>)
```

**Where:**

`conn_name` specifies the name of the link.

`query_text` specifies the text of the SQL `SELECT` statement that will be invoked on the Oracle server.

The function returns a `SETOF` record.

### 6.7.1.5 dblink\_ora\_call()

The `dblink_ora_call()` function executes a non-`SELECT` statement on an Oracle database and returns a result set. The signature is:

```
dblink_ora_call(<conn_name>, <command>, <iterations>)
```

**Where:**

`conn_name` specifies the name of the link.

`command` specifies the text of the SQL statement that will be invoked on the Oracle server.

`iterations` specifies the number of times the statement is executed.

The function returns a `SETOF` record.

### 6.7.1.6 dblink\_ora\_exec()

The `dblink_ora_exec()` procedure executes a DML or DDL statement in the remote database. The signature is:

```
dblink_ora_exec(<conn_name>, <command>)
```

**Where:**

`conn_name` specifies the name of the link.

`command` specifies the text of the `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` SQL statement that will be invoked on the Oracle server.

The function returns a `VOID`.

### 6.7.1.7 dblink\_ora\_copy()

The `dblink_ora_copy()` function copies an Oracle table to an EDB table. The `dblink_ora_copy()` function returns a `BIGINT` value that represents the number of rows copied. The signature is:

```
dblink_ora_copy(<conn_name>, <command>, <schema_name>, <table_name>,
<truncate>, <count>)
```

**Where:**

`conn_name` specifies the name of the link.

`command` specifies the text of the SQL `SELECT` statement that will be invoked on the Oracle server.

`schema_name` specifies the name of the target schema.

`table_name` specifies the name of the target table.

`truncate` specifies if the server should `TRUNCATE` the table prior to copying; specify `TRUE` to indicate that the server should `TRUNCATE` the table. `truncate` is optional; if omitted, the value is `FALSE`.

`count` instructs the server to report status information every `n` record, where `n` is the number specified. During the execution of the function, Advanced Server raises a notice of severity `INFO` with each iteration of the count. For example, if `FeedbackCount` is `10`, `dblink_ora_copy()` raises a notice every `10` records. `count` is optional; if omitted, the value is `0`.

## 6.7.2 Calling dblink\_ora Functions

The following command establishes a connection using the `dblink_ora_connect()` function:

```
SELECT dblink_ora_connect('acctg', 'localhost', 'xe', 'hr', 'pwd', 1521);
```

The example connects to a service named `xe` running on port `1521` (on the `localhost`) with a user name of `hr` and a password of `pwd`. You can use the connection name `acctg` to refer to this connection when calling other `dblink_ora` functions.

The following command uses the `dblink_ora_copy()` function over a connection named `edb_conn` to copy the `empid` and `deptno` columns from a table (on an Oracle server) named `ora_acctg` to a table located in the `public` schema on an instance of Advanced Server named `as_acctg`. The `TRUNCATE` option is enforced, and a feedback count of `3` is specified:

```
edb=# SELECT dblink_ora_copy('edb_conn','select empid, deptno FROM ora_acctg', 'public', 'as_acctg', true, 3);
```

```
INFO: Row: 0
INFO: Row: 3
INFO: Row: 6
INFO: Row: 9
INFO: Row: 12
```

```
dblink_ora_copy
-----
12
(1 row)
```

The following `SELECT` statement uses `dblink_ora_record()` function and the `acctg` connection to retrieve information from the Oracle server:

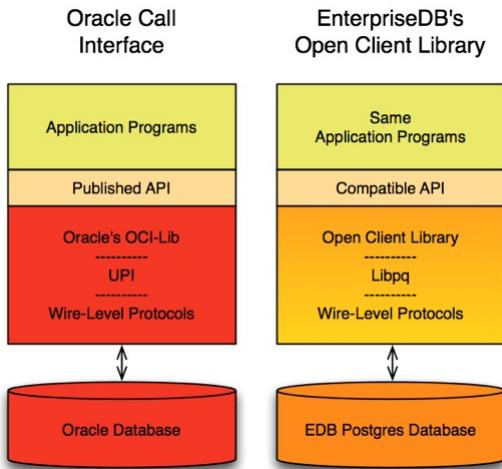
```
SELECT * FROM dblink_ora_record('acctg', 'SELECT first_name from employees') AS t1(id VARCHAR);
```

The command retrieves a list that includes all of the entries in the `first_name` column of the `employees` table.

## 6.8 Open Client Library

The Open Client Library provides application interoperability with the Oracle Call Interface – an application that was formerly “locked in” can now work with either an EDB Postgres Advanced Server or an Oracle database with minimal to no changes to the application code. The EDB implementation of the Open Client Library is written in C.

The following diagram compares the Open Client Library and Oracle Call Interface application stacks.



For detailed usage information about the Open Client Library and the supported functions, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server OCL Connector Guide*:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

#### Note

EDB does not support use of the Open Client Library with Oracle Real Application Clusters (RAC) and Oracle Exadata; the aforementioned Oracle products have not been evaluated nor certified with this EDB product.

## 6.9 Oracle Catalog Views

The Oracle Catalog Views provide information about database objects in a manner compatible with the Oracle data dictionary views. Information about the supported views is now available in the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Catalog Views Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## 6.10 Tools and Utilities

Compatible tools and utility programs can allow a developer to work with Advanced Server in a familiar environment. The tools supported by Advanced Server include:

- EDB\*Plus
- EDB\*Loader
- EDB Wrap
- The Dynamic Runtime Instrumentation Tools Architecture (DRITA)

For detailed information about the functionality supported by Advanced Server, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Tools and Utilities Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## 6.11 ECPGPlus

EDB has enhanced ECPG (the PostgreSQL pre-compiler) to create ECPGPlus. ECPGPlus allows you to include embedded SQL commands in C applications; when you use ECPGPlus to compile an application that contains embedded SQL commands, the SQL code is syntax-checked and translated into C.

ECPGPlus supports Pro\*C compatible syntax in C programs when connected to an Advanced Server database. ECPGPlus supports:

- Oracle Dynamic SQL – Method 4 (ODS-M4).
- Pro\*C compatible anonymous blocks.
- A `CALL` statement compatible with Oracle databases.

As part of ECPGPlus' Pro\*C compatibility, you do not need to include the `BEGIN DECLARE SECTION` and `END DECLARE SECTION` directives.

For more information about using ECPGPlus, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server ECPG Connector Guide* available from the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## 6.12 System Catalog Tables

The system catalog tables contain definitions of database objects that are available to Advanced Server; the layout of the system tables is subject to change. If you are writing an application that depends on information stored in the system tables, it would be prudent to use an existing catalog view, or create a catalog view to isolate the application from changes to the system table.

For detailed information about the system catalog tables, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Catalog Views Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

# 7 Database Compatibility for Oracle® Developers Reference Guide

Database Compatibility for Oracle means that an application runs in an Oracle environment as well as in the EDB Postgres Advanced Server (Advanced Server) environment with minimal or no changes to the application code.

This guide provides reference material about the compatible data types supported by Advanced Server. Reference information about:

- Compatible SQL Language syntax is provided in the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers SQL Guide*.
- Compatible Catalog Views is provided in the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Catalog View Guide*.

Developing an application that is compatible with Oracle databases in the Advanced Server requires special

attention to which features are used in the construction of the application. For example, developing a compatible application means selecting:

- Data types to define the application's database tables that are compatible with Oracle databases
- SQL statements that are compatible with Oracle SQL
- System and built-in functions for use in SQL statements and procedural logic that are compatible with Oracle databases
- Stored Procedure Language (SPL) to create database server-side application logic for stored procedures, functions, triggers, and packages
- System catalog views that are compatible with Oracle's data dictionary

For detailed information about Advanced Server's compatibility features and extended functionality, see the complete library of Advanced Server documentation, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

---

## 7.1 The SQL Language

The following sections describe the subset of the Advanced Server SQL language compatible with Oracle databases. The following SQL syntax, data types, and functions work in both EDB Postgres Advanced Server and Oracle.

The Advanced Server documentation set includes syntax and commands for extended functionality (functionality that does not provide database compatibility for Oracle or support Oracle-styled applications) that is not included in this guide.

This section is organized into the following sections:

- General discussion of Advanced Server SQL syntax and language elements
  - Data types
  - Built-in functions
- 

### 7.1.1 SQL Syntax

This section describes the general syntax of SQL. It forms the foundation for understanding the following chapters that include detail about how the SQL commands are applied to define and modify data.

---

#### 7.1.1.1 Lexical Structure

SQL input consists of a sequence of commands. A **command** is composed of a sequence of **tokens**, terminated by a semicolon (`;`). The end of the input stream also terminates a command. Which tokens are valid depends on the syntax of the particular command.

A token can be a **key word**, an **identifier**, a **quoted identifier**, a **literal** (or **constant**), or a special character symbol. Tokens are normally separated by **whitespace** (space, tab, new line), but need not be if there is no ambiguity (which is generally only the case if a special character is adjacent to some other token type).

Additionally, **comments** can occur in SQL input. They are not tokens -they are effectively equivalent to whitespace.

For example, the following is (syntactically) valid SQL input:

```
SELECT * FROM MY_TABLE;
UPDATE MY_TABLE SET A = 5;
INSERT INTO MY_TABLE VALUES (3, 'hi there');
```

This is a sequence of three commands, one per line (although this is not required; more than one command can be on a line, and commands can usually be split across lines).

The SQL syntax is not very consistent regarding what tokens identify commands and which are operands or parameters. The first few tokens are generally the command name, so in the above example we would usually speak of a **SELECT**, an **UPDATE**, and an **INSERT** command. But for instance the **UPDATE** command always requires a **SET** token to appear in a certain position, and this particular variation of **INSERT** also requires a **VALUES** token in order to be complete. The precise syntax rules for each command are described in *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers SQL Guide*.

### 7.1.1.2 Identifiers and Key Words

Tokens such as **SELECT**, **UPDATE**, or **VALUES** in the example above are examples of **key words**, that is, words that have a fixed meaning in the SQL language. The tokens **MY\_TABLE** and **A** are examples of **identifiers**. They identify names of tables, columns, or other database objects, depending on the command they are used in. Therefore they are sometimes simply called, **names**. Key words and identifiers have the same **lexical structure**, meaning that one cannot know whether a token is an identifier or a key word without knowing the language.

SQL identifiers and key words must begin with a letter (**a-z** or **A-Z**). Subsequent characters in an identifier or key word can be letters, underscores, digits (**0-9**), dollar signs (\$), or number signs (#).

Identifier and key word names are case insensitive. Therefore

```
UPDATE MY_TABLE SET A = 5;
```

can equivalently be written as:

```
uPDAte my_TabLE SeT a = 5;
```

A convention often used is to write key words in upper case and names in lower case, e.g.,

```
UPDATE my_table SET a = 5;
```

There is a second kind of identifier: the **delimited identifier** or **quoted identifier**. It is formed by enclosing an arbitrary sequence of characters in double-quotes (""). A delimited identifier is always an identifier, never a key word. So **"select"** could be used to refer to a column or table named **"select"**, whereas an unquoted select would be taken as a key word and would therefore provoke a parse error when used where a table or column name is expected. The example can be written with quoted identifiers like this:

```
UPDATE "my_table" SET "a" = 5;
```

Quoted identifiers can contain any character, except the character with the numeric code zero.

To include a double quote, use two double quotes. This allows you to construct table or column names that would otherwise not be possible (such as ones containing spaces or ampersands). The length limitation still applies.

Quoting an identifier also makes it case-sensitive, whereas unquoted names are always folded to lower case. For example, the identifiers `FOO`, `foo`, and `"foo"` are considered the same by Advanced Server, but `"Foo"` and `"FOO"` are different from these three and each other. The folding of unquoted names to lower case is not compatible with Oracle databases. In Oracle syntax, unquoted names are folded to upper case: for example, `foo` is equivalent to `"FOO"` not `"foo"`. If you want to write portable applications you are advised to always quote a particular name or never quote it.

### 7.1.1.3 Constants

The kinds of implicitly-typed constants in Advanced Server are `strings` and `numbers`. Constants can also be specified with explicit types, which can enable more accurate representation and more efficient handling by the system. These alternatives are discussed in the following subsections.

#### String Constants

A `string constant` in SQL is an arbitrary sequence of characters bounded by single quotes `('')`, for example `'This is a string'`. To include a single-quote character within a string constant, write two adjacent single quotes, e.g. `'Dianne"s horse'`. Note that this is not the same as a double-quote character `("")`.

#### Numeric Constants

Numeric constants are accepted in these general forms:

```

digits
digits.[digits][e[+-]digits]
[digits].digits[e[+-]digits]
digitse[+-]digits

```

where `digits` is one or more decimal digits (0 through 9). At least one digit must be before or after the decimal point, if one is used. At least one digit must follow the exponent marker `(e)`, if one is present. There may not be any spaces or other characters embedded in the constant. Note that any leading plus or minus sign is not actually considered part of the constant; it is an operator applied to the constant.

These are some examples of valid numeric constants:

```

42
3.5
4.
.001
5e2
1.925e-3

```

A numeric constant that contains neither a decimal point nor an exponent is initially presumed to be type `INTEGER` if its value fits in type `INTEGER` (32 bits); otherwise it is presumed to be type `BIGINT` if its value fits in type `BIGINT` (64 bits); otherwise it is taken to be type `NUMBER`. Constants that contain decimal points and/or

exponents are always initially presumed to be type `NUMBER`.

The initially assigned data type of a numeric constant is just a starting point for the type resolution algorithms. In most cases the constant will be automatically coerced to the most appropriate type depending on context. When necessary, you can force a numeric value to be interpreted as a specific data type by casting it as described in the following section.

## Constants of Other Types

### `CAST`

A constant of an arbitrary type can be entered using the following notation:

```
CAST('string' AS type)
```

The string constant's text is passed to the input conversion routine for the type called `type`. The result is a constant of the indicated type. The explicit type cast may be omitted if there is no ambiguity as to the type the constant must be (for example, when it is assigned directly to a table column), in which case it is automatically coerced.

`CAST` can also be used to specify runtime type conversions of arbitrary expressions.

### `CAST (MULTISET)`

`MULTISET` is an extension to `CAST` that converts subquery results into a nested table type. The synopsis is:

```
CAST ( MULTISET ( < subquery > ) AS < datatype > )
```

Where `subquery` is a query returning one or more rows and `datatype` is a nested table type.

`CAST(MULTISET)` is used to store a collection of data in a table.

### Example

The following example demonstrates using `MULTISET`:

```
edb=# CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE project_table_t AS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(25);
CREATE TYPE
edb=# CREATE TABLE projects (person_id NUMBER(10), project_name VARCHAR2(20));
CREATE TABLE
edb=# CREATE TABLE pers_short (person_id NUMBER(10), last_name VARCHAR2(25));
CREATE TABLE
```

```
edb=# INSERT INTO projects VALUES (1, 'Teach');
INSERT 0 1
edb=# INSERT INTO projects VALUES (1, 'Code');
INSERT 0 1
edb=# INSERT INTO projects VALUES (2, 'Code');
INSERT 0 1
edb=# INSERT INTO pers_short VALUES (1, 'Morgan');
INSERT 0 1
edb=# INSERT INTO pers_short VALUES (2, 'Kolk');
INSERT 0 1
edb=# INSERT INTO pers_short VALUES (3, 'Scott');
INSERT 0 1
edb=# COMMIT;
```

COMMIT

```
edb=# SELECT e.last_name, CAST(MULTISET(
edb(#  SELECT p.project_name
edb(#  FROM projects p
edb(# WHERE p.person_id = e.person_id
edb(# ORDER BY p.project_name) AS project_table_t)
edb#) FROM pers_short e;
last_name | project_table_t
-----+-----
Morgan   | {Code,Teach}
Kolk     | {Code}
Scott    | {}
(3 rows)
```

### 7.1.1.4 Comments

A comment is an arbitrary sequence of characters beginning with double dashes and extending to the end of the line, e.g.:

-- This is a standard SQL comment

Alternatively, C-style block comments can be used:

```
/* multiline comment
* block
*/
```

where the comment begins with /\* and extends to the matching occurrence of \*/.

## 7.1.2 Data Types

The following table shows the built-in general-purpose data types:

Name	Alias	Description
BLOB	LONG RAW, RAW(n), BYTEA	Binary data
BOOLEAN		Logical Boolean (true/false)
CHAR [ (n) ]	CHARACTER [ (n) ]	Fixed-length character string of n characters
CLOB	LONG, LONG VARCHAR	Long character string
DATE	TIMESTAMP	Date and time to the second
DOUBLE PRECISION	FLOAT, FLOAT(25) – FLOAT(53)	Double precision floating-point number
INTEGER	INT, BINARY_INTEGER, PLS_INTEGER	Signed four-byte integer

Name	Alias	Description
NUMBER	DEC, DECIMAL, NUMERIC	Exact numeric with optional decimal places
NUMBER(p [, s ])	DEC(p [, s ]),DECIMAL(p [, s ]),NUMERIC(p [, s ])	Exact numeric of maximum precision, <b>p</b> , and optional scale, <b>s</b>
REAL	FLOAT(1) – FLOAT(24)	Single precision floating-point number
TIMESTAMP [ (p) ]		Date and time with optional, fractional second precision, <b>p</b>
TIMESTAMP [ (p) ] WITH TIME ZONE		Date and time with optional, fractional second precision, <b>p</b> , and with time zone
VARCHAR2(n)	CHAR VARYING(n), CHARACTER VARYING(n), VARCHAR(n)	Variable-length character string with a maximum length of <b>n</b> characters
XMLTYPE		XML data

### 7.1.2.1 Numeric Types

Numeric types consist of four-byte integers, four-byte and eight-byte floating-point numbers, and fixed-precision decimals. The following table lists the available types:

Name	Storage Size	Description	Range
BINARY_INTEGER	4 bytes	Signed integer, Alias for INTEGER	-2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647
DOUBLE PRECISION	8 bytes	Variable-precision, inexact	15 decimal digits precision
INTEGER	4 bytes	Usual choice for integer	-2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647
NUMBER	Variable	User-specified precision, exact	Up to 1000 digits of precision
NUMBER(p [, s ])	Variable	Exact numeric of maximum precision, <b>p</b> , and optional scale, <b>s</b>	Up to 1000 digits of precision
PLS_INTEGER	4 bytes	Signed integer, Alias for INTEGER	-2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647
REAL	4 bytes	Variable-precision, inexact	6 decimal digits precision
ROWID	8 bytes	Signed 8 bit integer.	-9223372036854775808 to 9223372036854775807

The following sections describe the types in detail.

#### Integer Types

The **BINARY\_INTEGER**, **INTEGER**, **PLS\_INTEGER**, and **ROWID** types store whole numbers (without fractional components) as specified in table [Numeric Types](#). Attempts to store values outside of the allowed range will result in an error.

#### Arbitrary Precision Numbers

The type, **NUMBER**, can store practically an unlimited number of digits of precision and perform calculations exactly. It is especially recommended for storing monetary amounts and other quantities where exactness is required. However, the **NUMBER** type is very slow compared to the floating-point types described in the next section.

In what follows we use these terms: The `scale` of a `NUMBER` is the count of decimal digits in the fractional part, to the right of the decimal point. The `precision` of a `NUMBER` is the total count of significant digits in the whole number, that is, the number of digits to both sides of the decimal point. So the number 23.5141 has a precision of 6 and a scale of 4. Integers can be considered to have a scale of zero.

Both the precision and the scale of the `NUMBER` type can be configured. To declare a column of type `NUMBER` use the syntax

```
NUMBER(precision, scale)
```

The precision must be positive, the scale zero or positive. Alternatively,

```
NUMBER(precision)
```

selects a scale of 0. Specifying `NUMBER` without any precision or scale creates a column in which numeric values of any precision and scale can be stored, up to the implementation limit on precision. A column of this kind will not coerce input values to any particular scale, whereas `NUMBER` columns with a declared scale will coerce input values to that scale. (The SQL standard requires a default scale of 0, i.e., coercion to integer precision. For maximum portability, it is best to specify the precision and scale explicitly.)

If the precision or scale of a value is greater than the declared precision or scale of a column, the system will attempt to round the value. If the value cannot be rounded so as to satisfy the declared limits, an error is raised.

## Floating-Point Types

The data types `REAL` and `DOUBLE PRECISION` are `inexact`, variable-precision numeric types. In practice, these types are usually implementations of IEEE Standard 754 for Binary Floating-Point Arithmetic (single and double precision, respectively), to the extent that the underlying processor, operating system, and compiler support it.

`Inexact` means that some values cannot be converted exactly to the internal format and are stored as approximations, so that storing and printing back out a value may show slight discrepancies. Managing these errors and how they propagate through calculations is the subject of an entire branch of mathematics and computer science and will not be discussed further here, except for the following points:

If you require exact storage and calculations (such as for monetary amounts), use the `NUMBER` type instead.

If you want to do complicated calculations with these types for anything important, especially if you rely on certain behavior in boundary cases (infinity, underflow), you should evaluate the implementation carefully.

Comparing two floating-point values for equality may or may not work as expected.

On most platforms, the `REAL` type has a range of at least `1E-37` to `1E+37` with a precision of at least 6 decimal digits. The `DOUBLE PRECISION` type typically has a range of around `1E-307` to `1E+308` with a precision of at least 15 digits. Values that are too large or too small will cause an error. Rounding may take place if the precision of an input number is too high. Numbers too close to zero that are not representable as distinct from zero will cause an underflow error.

Advanced Server also supports the SQL standard notations `FLOAT` and `FLOAT(p)` for specifying inexact numeric types. Here, `p` specifies the minimum acceptable precision in binary digits. Advanced Server accepts `FLOAT(1)` to `FLOAT(24)` as selecting the `REAL` type, while `FLOAT(25)` to `FLOAT(53)` as selecting `DOUBLE PRECISION`. Values of `p` outside the allowed range draw an error. `FLOAT` with no precision specified is taken to mean `DOUBLE PRECISION`.

## 7.1.2.2 Character Types

The following table lists the general-purpose character types available in Advanced Server:

Name	Description
CHAR[(n)]	Fixed-length character string, blank-padded to the size specified by <code>n</code>
CLOB	Large variable-length up to 1 GB
LONG	Variable unlimited length.
NVARCHAR(n)	Variable-length national character string, with limit
NVARCHAR2(n)	Variable-length national character string, with limit
STRING	Alias for VARCHAR2
VARCHAR(n)	Variable-length character string, with limit (considered deprecated, but supported for compatibility)
VARCHAR2(n)	Variable-length character string, with limit

Where `n` is a positive integer; these types can store strings up to `n` characters in length. An attempt to assign a value that exceeds the length of `n` will result in an error, unless the excess characters are all spaces, in which case the string will be truncated to the maximum length.

The storage requirement for data of these types is the actual string plus 1 byte if the string is less than 127 bytes, or 4 bytes if the string is 127 bytes or greater. In the case of CHAR, the padding also requires storage. Long strings are compressed by the system automatically, so the physical requirement on disk may be less. Long values are stored in background tables so they do not interfere with rapid access to the shorter column values.

The database character set determines the character set used to store textual values.

### CHAR

If you do not specify a value for `n`, `n` will default to 1. If the string to be assigned is shorter than `n`, values of type CHAR will be space-padded to the specified width (`n`), and will be stored and displayed that way.

Padding spaces are treated as semantically insignificant. That is, trailing spaces are disregarded when comparing two values of type CHAR, and they will be removed when converting a CHAR value to one of the other string types.

If you explicitly cast an over-length value to a CHAR(`n`) type, the value will be truncated to `n` characters without raising an error (as specified by the SQL standard).

### VARCHAR, VARCHAR2, NVARCHAR and NVARCHAR2

If the string to be assigned is shorter than `n`, values of type VARCHAR, VARCHAR2, NVARCHAR and NVARCHAR2 will store the shorter string without padding.

**Note:** The trailing spaces are semantically significant in VARCHAR values.

If you explicitly cast a value to a VARCHAR type, an over-length value will be truncated to `n` characters without raising an error (as specified by the SQL standard).

### CLOB

You can store a large character string in a CLOB type. CLOB is semantically equivalent to VARCHAR2 except no length limit is specified. Generally, you should use a CLOB type if the maximum string length is not known.

The longest possible character string that can be stored in a CLOB type is about 1 GB.

**Note:** The CLOB data type is actually a DOMAIN based on the PostgreSQL TEXT data type. For information on a DOMAIN, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-domain.html>.

## [createdomain.html](#)

Thus, usage of the `CLOB` type is limited by what can be done for `TEXT` such as a maximum size of approximately 1 GB.

For usage of larger amounts of data, instead of using the `CLOB` data type, use the PostgreSQL `Large Objects` feature that relies on the `pg_largeobject` system catalog. For information on large objects, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/largeobjects.html>

### 7.1.2.3 Binary Data

The following table shows data types that allow the storage of binary strings:

Name	Storage Size	Description
<code>BINARY</code>	The length of the binary string.	Fixed-length binary string, with a length between 1 and 8300.
<code>BLOB</code>	The actual binary string plus 1 byte if the binary string is less than 127 bytes, or 4 bytes if the binary string is 127 bytes or greater.	Variable-length binary string, with a maximum size of 1 GB.
<code>VARBINARY</code>	The length of the binary string	Variable-length binary string, with a length between 1 and 8300.

A binary string is a sequence of octets (or bytes). Binary strings are distinguished from character strings by two characteristics: First, binary strings specifically allow storing octets of value zero and other "non-printable" octets (defined as octets outside the range 32 to 126). Second, operations on binary strings process the actual bytes, whereas the encoding and processing of character strings depends on locale settings.

### 7.1.2.4 Date/Time Types

The following discussion of the date/time types assumes that the configuration parameter, `edb_redwood_date`, has been set to `TRUE` whenever a table is created or altered.

Advanced Server supports the date/time types shown in the following table:

Name	Storage Size	Description	Low Value	High Value	Resolution
<code>DATE</code>	8 bytes	Date and time	4713 BC	5874897 AD	1 second
<code>INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND [(p)]</code>	12 bytes	Period of time	-178000000 years	178000000 years	1 microsecond / 14 digits
<code>INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH</code>	12 bytes	Period of time	-178000000 years	178000000 years	1 microsecond / 14 digits
<code>TIMESTAMP [(p)]</code>	8 bytes	Date and time	4713 BC	5874897 AD	1 microsecond

Name	Storage Size	Description	Low Value	High Value	Resolution
TIMESTAMP [(p)] WITH TIME ZONE	8 bytes	Date and time with time zone	4713 BC	5874897 AD	1 microsecond

When `DATE` appears as the data type of a column in the data definition language (DDL) commands, `CREATE TABLE` or `ALTER TABLE`, it is translated to `TIMESTAMP` at the time the table definition is stored in the database. Thus, a time component will also be stored in the column along with the date.

When `DATE` appears as a data type of a variable in an SPL declaration section, or the data type of a formal parameter in an SPL procedure or an SPL function, or the return type of an SPL function, it is always translated to `TIMESTAMP` and thus can handle a time component if present.

`TIMESTAMP` accepts an optional precision value `p` which specifies the number of fractional digits retained in the seconds field. The allowed range of `p` is from `0` to `6` with the default being `6`.

When `TIMESTAMP` values are stored as double precision floating-point numbers (currently the default), the effective limit of precision may be less than 6. `TIMESTAMP` values are stored as seconds before or after midnight 2000-01-01. Microsecond precision is achieved for dates within a few years of 2000-01-01, but the precision degrades for dates further away. When `TIMESTAMP` values are stored as eight-byte integers (a compile-time option), microsecond precision is available over the full range of values. However eight-byte integer timestamps have a more limited range of dates than shown above: from 4713 BC up to 294276 AD.

`TIMESTAMP (p) WITH TIME ZONE` is similar to `TIMESTAMP (p)`, but includes the time zone as well.

## INTERVAL Types

`INTERVAL` values specify a period of time. Values of `INTERVAL` type are composed of fields that describe the value of the data. The following table lists the fields allowed in an `INTERVAL` type:

Field Name	INTERVAL Values Allowed
YEAR	Integer value (positive or negative)
MONTH	0 through 11
DAY	Integer value (positive or negative)
HOUR	0 through 23
MINUTE	0 through 59
SECOND	0 through 59.9(p) where 9(p) is the precision of fractional seconds

The fields must be presented in descending order – from `YEARS` to `MONTHS`, and from `DAYS` to `HOURS`, `MINUTES` and then `SECONDS`.

Advanced Server supports two `INTERVAL` types compatible with Oracle databases.

The first variation supported by Advanced Server is `INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND [(p)]`. `INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND [(p)]` stores a time interval in days, hours, minutes and seconds.

`p` specifies the precision of the `second` field.

Advanced Server interprets the value:

`INTERVAL '1 2:34:5.678' DAY TO SECOND(3)`

as 1 day, 2 hours, 34 minutes, 5 seconds and 678 thousandths of a second.

Advanced Server interprets the value:

`INTERVAL '1 23' DAY TO HOUR`

as 1 day and 23 hours.

Advanced Server interprets the value:

`INTERVAL '2:34' HOUR TO MINUTE`

as 2 hours and 34 minutes.

Advanced Server interprets the value:

`INTERVAL '2:34:56.129' HOUR TO SECOND(2)`

as 2 hours, 34 minutes, 56 seconds and 13 thousandths of a second. Note that the fractional second is rounded up to 13 because of the specified precision.

The second variation supported by Advanced Server that is compatible with Oracle databases is `INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH`. This variation stores a time interval in years and months.

Advanced Server interprets the value:

`INTERVAL '12-3' YEAR TO MONTH`

as 12 years and 3 months.

Advanced Server interprets the value:

`INTERVAL '456' YEAR(2)`

as 12 years and 3 months.

Advanced Server interprets the value:

`INTERVAL '300' MONTH`

as 25 years.

## Date/Time Input

Date and time input is accepted in ISO 8601 SQL-compatible format, the Oracle default `dd-MON-yy` format, as well as a number of other formats provided that there is no ambiguity as to which component is the year, month, and day. However, use of the `TO_DATE` function is strongly recommended to avoid ambiguities.

Any date or time literal input needs to be enclosed in single quotes, like text strings. The following SQL standard syntax is also accepted:

`type 'value'`

`type` is either `DATE` or `TIMESTAMP`.

`value` is a date/time text string.

## Dates

The following block shows some possible input formats for dates, all of which equate to January 8, 1999.

### Example

```

January 8, 1999
1999-01-08
1999-Jan-08
Jan-08-1999
08-Jan-1999
08-Jan-99
Jan-08-99
19990108
990108

```

The date values can be assigned to a `DATE` or `TIMESTAMP` column or variable. The hour, minute, and seconds fields will be set to zero if the date value is not appended with a time value.

## Times

Some examples of the time component of a date or time stamp are shown in the following table:

Example	Description
04:05:06.789	ISO 8601
04:05:06	ISO 8601
04:05	ISO 8601
040506	ISO 8601
04:05 AM	Same as 04:05; AM does not affect value
04:05 PM	Same as 16:05; input hour must be <= 12

## Time Stamps

Valid input for time stamps consists of a concatenation of a date and a time. The date portion of the time stamp can be formatted according to any of the examples shown in the block under section [Dates](#). The time portion of the time stamp can be formatted according to any of examples shown in table under section [Times](#).

The following is an example of a time stamp which follows the Oracle default format.

```
08-JAN-99 04:05:06
```

The following is an example of a time stamp which follows the ISO 8601 standard.

```
1999-01-08 04:05:06
```

## Date/Time Output

The default output format of the date/time types will be either (`dd-MON-yy`) referred to as the [Redwood date style](#), compatible with Oracle databases, or (`yyy-mm-dd`) referred to as the ISO 8601 format, depending upon the application interface to the database. Applications that use JDBC such as SQL Interactive always present the date in ISO 8601 form. Other applications such as PSQL present the date in Redwood form.

The following table shows examples of the output formats for the two styles, Redwood and ISO 8601:

Description	Example
Redwood style	31-DEC-05 07:37:16

Description	Example
ISO 8601/SQL standard	1997-12-17 07:37:16

## Internals

Advanced Server uses Julian dates for all date/time calculations. Julian dates correctly predict or calculate any date after 4713 BC based on the assumption that the length of the year is 365.2425 days.

### 7.1.2.5 Boolean Types

Advanced Server provides the standard SQL type `BOOLEAN`. `BOOLEAN` can have one of only two states: `TRUE` or `FALSE`. A third state, `UNKNOWN`, is represented by the SQL `NULL` value.

Name	Storage Size	Description
<code>BOOLEAN</code>	1 byte	Logical Boolean (true/false)

The valid literal value for representing the true state is `TRUE`. The valid literal for representing the false state is `FALSE`.

### 7.1.2.6 XML Type

The `XMLTYPE` data type is used to store XML data. Its advantage over storing XML data in a character field is that it checks the input values for well-formedness, and there are support functions to perform type-safe operations on it.

The XML type can store well-formed “documents”, as defined by the XML standard, as well as “content” fragments, which are defined by the production `XMLDecl? content` in the XML standard. Roughly, this means that content fragments can have more than one top-level element or character node.

**Note:** Oracle does not support the storage of content fragments in `XMLTYPE` columns.

The following example shows the creation and insertion of a row into a table with an `XMLTYPE` column.

```
CREATE TABLE books (
    content      XMLTYPE
);

INSERT INTO books VALUES (XMLPARSE (DOCUMENT '<?xml
version="1.0"?><book><title>Manual</title><chapter>...</chapter></book>'));

SELECT * FROM books;

content
```

```
<book><title>Manual</title><chapter>...</chapter></book>
(1 row)
```

## 7.1.3 Functions and Operators

Advanced Server provides a large number of functions and operators for the built-in data types.

### 7.1.3.1 Logical Operators

The usual logical operators are available: `AND`, `OR`, `NOT`

SQL uses a three-valued Boolean logic where the null value represents "unknown". Observe the following truth tables:

`AND/OR Truth Table`

a	b	a AND b	a OR b
True	True	True	True
True	False	False	True
True	Null	Null	True
False	False	False	False
False	Null	False	Null
Null	Null	Null	Null

`NOT Truth Table`

a	NOT a
True	False
False	True
Null	Null

The operators `AND` and `OR` are commutative, that is, you can switch the left and right operand without affecting the result.

### 7.1.3.2 Comparison Operators

The usual comparison operators are shown in the following table:

Operator	Description
<	Less than
>	Greater than
<=	Less than or equal to
>=	Greater than or equal to
=	Equal
<>	Not equal
!=	Not equal

Comparison operators are available for all data types where this makes sense. All comparison operators are binary operators that return values of type `BOOLEAN`; expressions like `1 < 2 < 3` are not valid (because there is no `<` operator to compare a Boolean value with `3`).

In addition to the comparison operators, the special `BETWEEN` construct is available.

`a BETWEEN x AND y`

is equivalent to

`a >= x AND a <= y`

Similarly,

`a NOT BETWEEN x AND y`

is equivalent to

`a < x OR a > y`

There is no difference between the two respective forms apart from the CPU cycles required to rewrite the first one into the second one internally.

To check whether a value is or is not null, use the constructs

`expression IS NULL`

`expression IS NOT NULL`

Do not write `expression = NULL` because `NULL` is not "equal to" `NULL`. (The null value represents an unknown value, and it is not known whether two unknown values are equal.) This behavior conforms to the SQL standard.

Some applications may expect that `expression = NULL` returns true if `expression` evaluates to the null value. It is highly recommended that these applications be modified to comply with the SQL standard.

### 7.1.3.3 Mathematical Functions and Operators

Mathematical operators are provided for many Advanced Server types. For types without common mathematical conventions for all possible permutations (e.g., date/time types) the actual behavior is described in subsequent sections.

The following table shows the available mathematical operators:

Operator	Description	Example	Result
----------	-------------	---------	--------

Operator	Description	Example	Result
+	Addition	2 + 3	5
-	Subtraction	2 - 3	-1
*	Multiplication	2 * 3	6
/	Division (See the following note)	4 / 2	2
**	Exponentiation Operator	2 ** 3	8

**Note:** If the `db_dialect` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file is set to `redwood`, then division of a pair of `INTEGER` data types does not result in a truncated value. Any fractional result is retained as shown by the following example:

```
edb=# SET db_dialect TO redwood;
SET
edb=# SHOW db_dialect;
db_dialect
-----
redwood
(1 row)

edb=# SELECT CAST('10' AS INTEGER) / CAST('3' AS INTEGER) FROM dual;
?column?
-----
3.333333333333333
(1 row)
```

This behavior is compatible with Oracle databases where there is no native `INTEGER` data type, and any `INTEGER` data type specification is internally converted to `NUMBER(38)`, which results in retaining any fractional result.

If the `db_dialect` configuration parameter is set to `postgres`, then division of a pair of `INTEGER` data types results in a truncated value as shown by the following example:

```
edb=# SET db_dialect TO postgres;
SET
edb=# SHOW db_dialect;
db_dialect
-----
postgres
(1 row)

edb=# SELECT CAST('10' AS INTEGER) / CAST('3' AS INTEGER) FROM dual;
?column?
-----
3
(1 row)
```

This behavior is compatible with PostgreSQL databases where division involving any pair of `INTEGER`, `SMALLINT`, or `BIGINT` data types results in truncation of the result. The same truncated result is returned by Advanced Server when `db_dialect` is set to `postgres` as shown in the previous example.

Note however, that even when `db_dialect` is set to `redwood`, only division with a pair of `INTEGER` data types results in no truncation of the result. Division that includes only `SMALLINT` or `BIGINT` data types, with or without an `INTEGER` data type, does result in truncation in the PostgreSQL fashion without retaining the fractional portion as shown by the following where `INTEGER` and `SMALLINT` are involved in the division:

```
edb=# SHOW db_dialect;
```

db dialect

redwood  
(1 row)

```
edb=# SELECT CAST('10' AS INTEGER) / CAST('3' AS SMALLINT) FROM dual;  
?column?
```

3  
(1 row)

The following table shows the available mathematical functions. Many of these functions are provided in multiple forms with different argument types. Except where noted, any given form of a function returns the same data type as its argument. The functions working with **DOUBLE PRECISION** data are mostly implemented on top of the host system's C library; accuracy and behavior in boundary cases may therefore vary depending on the host system.

Function	Return Type	Description	Example	Result
ABS(x)	Same as $x$	Absolute value	ABS(-17.4)	17.4
CEIL(DOUBLE PRECISION or NUMBER)	Same as input	Smallest integer not less than argument	CEIL(-42.8)	-42
EXP(DOUBLE PRECISION or NUMBER)	Same as input	Exponential	EXP(1.0)	2.7182818284590452
FLOOR(DOUBLE PRECISION or NUMBER)	Same as input	Largest integer not greater than argument	FLOOR(-42.8)	43
LN(DOUBLE PRECISION or NUMBER)	Same as input	Natural logarithm	LN(2.0)	0.6931471805599453
LOG(b NUMBER, x NUMBER)	NUMBER	Logarithm to base $b$	LOG(2.0, 64.0)	6.000000000000000
MOD(y, x)	Same as argument types	Remainder of $y/x$	MOD(9, 4)	1
NVL(x, y)	Same as argument types; where both arguments are of the same data type	If $x$ is null, then NVL returns $y$	NVL(9, 0)	9
POWER(a DOUBLE PRECISION, b DOUBLE PRECISION)	DOUBLE PRECISION	$a$ raised to the power of $b$	POWER(9.0, 3.0)	729.0000000000000000
POWER(a NUMBER, b NUMBER)	NUMBER	$a$ raised to the power of $b$	POWER(9.0, 3.0)	729.0000000000000000
ROUND(DOUBLE PRECISION or NUMBER)	Same as input	Round to nearest integer	ROUND(42.4)	42
ROUND(v NUMBER, s INTEGER)	NUMBER	Round to $s$ decimal places	ROUND(42.4382, 2)	42.44

Function	Return Type	Description	Example	Result
SIGN(DOUBLE PRECISION or NUMBER)	Same as input	Sign of the argument (-1, 0, +1)	SIGN(-8.4)	-1
SQRT(DOUBLE PRECISION or NUMBER)	Same as input	Square root	SQRT(2.0)	1.414213562373095
TRUNC(DOUBLE PRECISION or NUMBER)	Same as input	Truncate toward zero	TRUNC(42.8)	42
TRUNC(v NUMBER, s INTEGER)	NUMBER	Truncate to <b>s</b> decimal places	TRUNC(42.4382, 2)	42.43
WIDTH_BUCKET(op NUMBER, b1 NUMBER, b2 NUMBER, count INTEGER)	INTEGER	Return the bucket to which <b>op</b> would be assigned in an equidepth histogram with <b>count</b> buckets, in the range <b>b1</b> to <b>b2</b>	WIDTH_BUCKET(5.35, 0.024, 10.06, 5)	3

The following table shows the available trigonometric functions. All trigonometric functions take arguments and return values of type **DOUBLE PRECISION**.

Function	Description
ACOS(x)	Inverse cosine
ASIN(x)	Inverse sine
ATAN(x)	Inverse tangent
ATAN2(x, y)	Inverse tangent of <b>x/y</b>
COS(x)	Cosine
SIN(x)	Sine
TAN(x)	Tangent

### 7.1.3.4 String Functions and Operators

This section describes functions and operators for examining and manipulating string values. Strings in this context include values of the types **CHAR**, **VARCHAR2**, and **CLOB**. Unless otherwise noted, all of the functions listed below work on all of these types, but be wary of potential effects of automatic padding when using the **CHAR** type. Generally, the functions described here also work on data of non-string types by converting that data to a string representation first.

Function	Return Type	Description	Example	Result
string    string	CLOB	String concatenation	'Enterprise'    'DB'	EnterpriseDB
CONCAT(string, string)	CLOB	String concatenation	'a'    'b'	ab
HEXTORAW(varchar2)	RAW	Converts a <b>VARCHAR2</b> value to a <b>RAW</b> value	HEXTORAW('303132')	'012'

Function	Return Type	Description	Example	Result
RAWTOHEX(raw)	VARCHAR2	Converts a <code>RAW</code> value to a <code>HEXADECIMAL</code> value	RAWTOHEX('012')	'303132'
INSTR(string, set, [ start [, occurrence ] ])	INTEGER	Finds the location of a set of characters in a string, starting at position <code>start</code> in the string, <code>string</code> , and looking for the first, second, third and so on occurrences of the set. Returns <code>0</code> if the set is not found.	INSTR('PETER PIPER PICKED a PECK of PICKLED PEPPERS','PI',1,3)	30
INSTRB(string, set)	INTEGER	Returns the position of the <code>set</code> within the <code>string</code> . Returns <code>0</code> if <code>set</code> is not found.	INSTRB('PETER PIPER PICKED a PECK of PICKLED PEPPERS', 'PICK')	13
INSTRB(string, set, start)	INTEGER	Returns the position of the <code>set</code> within the <code>string</code> , beginning at <code>start</code> . Returns <code>0</code> if <code>set</code> is not found.	INSTRB('PETER PIPER PICKED a PECK of PICKLED PEPPERS', 'PICK', 14)	30
INSTRB(string, set, start, occurrence)	INTEGER	Returns the position of the specified <code>occurrence</code> of <code>set</code> within the <code>string</code> , beginning at <code>start</code> . Returns <code>0</code> if <code>set</code> is not found.	INSTRB('PETER PIPER PICKED a PECK of PICKLED PEPPERS', 'PICK', 1, 2)	30
LOWER(string)	CLOB	Convert <code>string</code> to lower case	LOWER('TOM')	tom
SUBSTR(string, start [, count ])	CLOB	Extract substring starting from <code>start</code> and going for <code>count</code> characters. If <code>count</code> is not specified, the string is clipped from the start till the end.	SUBSTR('This is a test',6,2)	is
SUBSTRB(string, start [, count ])	CLOB	Same as <code>SUBSTR</code> except <code>start</code> and <code>count</code> are in number of bytes.	SUBSTRB('abc',3) (assuming a double-byte character set)	c
SUBSTR2(string, start [, count ])	CLOB	Alias for <code>SUBSTR</code> .	SUBSTR2('This is a test',6,2)	is
SUBSTR2(string, start [, count ])	CLOB	Alias for <code>SUBSTRB</code> .	SUBSTR2('abc',3) (assuming a double-byte character set)	c
SUBSTR4(string, start [, count ])	CLOB	Alias for <code>SUBSTR</code> .	SUBSTR4('This is a test',6,2)	is
SUBSTR4(string, start [, count ])	CLOB	Alias for <code>SUBSTRB</code> .	SUBSTR4('abc',3) (assuming a double-byte character set)	c
SUBSTRC(string, start [, count ])	CLOB	Alias for <code>SUBSTR</code> .	SUBSTRC('This is a test',6,2)	is
SUBSTRC(string, start [, count ])	CLOB	Alias for <code>SUBSTRB</code> .	SUBSTRC('abc',3) (assuming a double-byte character set)	c
TRIM([ LEADING   TRAILING   BOTH ] [ characters ] FROM string)	CLOB	Remove the longest string containing only the characters (a space by default) from the start/end/both ends of the string.	TRIM(BOTH 'x' FROM 'xTomxx')	Tom

Function	Return Type	Description	Example	Result
LTRIM(string [, set])	CLOB	Removes all the characters specified in <code>set</code> from the left of a given <code>string</code> . If <code>set</code> is not specified, a blank space is used as default.	LTRIM('abcdefghijklm', 'abc')	defghijklm
RTRIM(string [, set])	CLOB	Removes all the characters specified in <code>set</code> from the right of a given <code>string</code> . If <code>set</code> is not specified, a blank space is used as default.	RTRIM('abcdefghijklm', 'lm')	abcdefghijkl
UPPER(string)	CLOB	Convert <code>string</code> to upper case	UPPER('tom')	TOM

Additional string manipulation functions are available and are listed in the following table. Some of them are used internally to implement the SQL-standard string functions listed in the above table.

Function	Return Type	Description	Example	Result
ASCII(string)	INTEGER	ASCII code of the first byte of the argument	ASCII('x')	120
CHR(INTEGER)	CLOB	Character with the given ASCII code	CHR(65)	A
DECODE(expr, expr1a, expr1b [, expr2a, expr2b ]... [, default ])	Same as argument types of <code>expr1b</code> , <code>expr2b</code> ,..., <code>default</code>	Finds first match of <code>expr</code> with <code>expr1a</code> , <code>expr2a</code> , etc. When match found, returns corresponding parameter pair, <code>expr1b</code> , <code>expr2b</code> , etc. If no match found, returns <code>default</code> . If no match found and <code>default</code> not specified, returns null.	DECODE(3, 1,'One', 2,'Two', 3,'Three', 'Not found')	Three
INITCAP(string)	CLOB	Convert the first letter of each word to uppercase and the rest to lowercase. Words are sequences of alphanumeric characters separated by non-alphanumeric characters.	INITCAP('hi THOMAS')	Hi Thomas
LENGTH	INTEGER	Returns the number of characters in a string value.	LENGTH('Côte d"azur')	11
LENGTHC	INTEGER	This function is identical in functionality to <code>LENGTH</code> ; the function name is supported for compatibility.	LENGTHC('Côte d"azur')	11
LENGTH2	INTEGER	This function is identical in functionality to <code>LENGTH</code> ; the function name is supported for compatibility.	LENGTH2('Côte d"azur')	11
LENGTH4	INTEGER	This function is identical in functionality to <code>LENGTH</code> ; the function name is supported for compatibility.	LENGTH4('Côte d"azur')	11
LENGTHB	INTEGER	Returns the number of bytes required to hold the given value.	LENGTHB('Côte d"azur')	12
LPAD(string, length INTEGER [, fill ])	CLOB	Fill up <code>string</code> to size, <code>length</code> by prepending the characters, <code>fill</code> (a space by default). If <code>string</code> is already longer than <code>length</code> then it is truncated (on the right).	LPAD('hi', 5, 'xy')	xyhi
REPLACE(string, search_string [, replace_string ])	CLOB	Replaces one value in a string with another. If you do not specify a value for <code>replace_string</code> , the <code>search_string</code> value when found, is removed.	REPLACE('GEORGE', 'GE', 'EG')	EGOREG

Function	Return Type	Description	Example	Result
RPAD(string, length INTEGER [, fill ])	CLOB	Fill up <code>string</code> to size, <code>length</code> by appending the characters, <code>fill</code> (a space by default). If <code>string</code> is already longer than <code>length</code> then it is truncated.	RPAD('hi', 5, 'xy')	hixyx
TRANSLATE(string, from, to)	CLOB	Any character in <code>string</code> that matches a character in the <code>from</code> set is replaced by the corresponding character in the <code>to</code> set.	TRANSLATE('12345', '14', 'ax')	a23x5

## Truncation of String Text Resulting from Concatenation with NULL

**Note:** This section describes a functionality that is not compatible with Oracle databases, which may lead to some inconsistency when converting data from Oracle to Advanced Server.

For Advanced Server, when a column value is `NULL`, the concatenation of the column with a text string may result in either of the following:

- Return of the text string
- Disappearance of the text string (that is, a null result)

The result is dependent upon the data type of the `NULL` column and the way in which the concatenation is done.

If one uses the string concatenation operator '`||`', then the types that have implicit coercion to text as listed in Table Data Types with Implicit Coercion to Text will not truncate the string if one of the input parameters is `NULL`, whereas for other types it will truncate the string unless the explicit type cast is used (that is, `::text`). Also, to see the consistent behavior in the presence of nulls, one can use the `CONCAT` function.

The following query lists the data types that have implicit coercion to text:

```
SELECT castsource::regtype, casttarget::regtype, castfunc::regproc,
CASE castcontext
    WHEN 'e' THEN 'explicit'
    WHEN 'a' THEN 'implicit in assignment'
    WHEN 'i' THEN 'implicit in expressions'
END as castcontext,
CASE castmethod
    WHEN 'f' THEN 'function'
    WHEN 'i' THEN 'input/output function'
    WHEN 'b' THEN 'binary-coercible'
END as castmethod
FROM pg_cast
WHERE casttarget::regtype::text = 'text'
AND castcontext='i';
```

The result of the query is listed in the following table:

castsource	casttarget	castfunc	castcontext	castmethod
character	text	pg_catalog.text	implicit in expressions	function
character varying	text	-	implicit in expressions	binary-coercible
"char"	text	pg_catalog.text	implicit in expressions	function
name	text	pg_catalog.text	implicit in expressions	function
pg_node_tree	text	-	implicit in expressions	binary-coercible
pg_ndistinct	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function

castsource	casttarget	castfunc	castcontext	castmethod
pg_dependencies	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
integer	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
smallint	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
oid	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
date	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
double precision	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
real	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
time with time zone	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
time without time zone	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
timestamp with time zone	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
interval	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
bigrnt	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
numeric	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
timestamp without time zone	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
record	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function
boolean	text	pg_catalog.text	implicit in expressions	function
bytea	text	-	implicit in expressions	input/output function

For information on the column output, see the `pg_cast` system catalog in the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/catalog-pg-cast.html>

So for example, data type `UUID` is not in this list and therefore does not have the implicit coercion to text. As a result, certain concatenation attempts with a `NULL UUID` column results in a truncated text result.

The following table is created for this example with a single row with all `NULL` column values.

```
CREATE TABLE null_concat_types (
    boolean_type BOOLEAN,
    uuid_type UUID,
    char_type CHARACTER
);
```

```
INSERT INTO null_concat_types VALUES (NULL, NULL, NULL);
```

Columns `boolean_type` and `char_type` have the implicit coercion to text while column `uuid_type` does not.

Thus, string concatenation with the concatenation operator `'||'` against columns `boolean_type` or `char_type` results in the following:

```
SELECT 'x=' || boolean_type || 'y' FROM null_concat_types;
```

```
?column?
```

```
-----
```

```
x=y
```

```
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT 'x=' || char_type || 'y' FROM null_concat_types;
```

```
?column?
```

```
-----
```

```
x=y
```

(1 row)

But concatenation with column `uuid_type` results in the loss of the `x=` string:

```
SELECT 'x=' || uuid_type || 'y' FROM null_concat_types;
```

?column?

-----

y

(1 row)

However, using explicit casting with `::text` prevents the loss of the `x=` string:

```
SELECT 'x=' || uuid_type::text || 'y' FROM null_concat_types;
```

?column?

-----

x=y

(1 row)

Using the `CONCAT` function also preserves the `x=` string:

```
SELECT CONCAT('x=',uuid_type) || 'y' FROM null_concat_types;
```

?column?

-----

x=y

(1 row)

Thus, depending upon the data type of a `NULL` column, explicit casting or the `CONCAT` function should be used to avoid loss of some text string.

## SYS\_GUID

The `SYS_GUID` function generates and returns a globally unique identifier; the identifier takes the form of 16 bytes of `RAW` data. The `SYS_GUID` function is based on the `uuid-ossp` module to generate universally unique identifiers. The synopsis is:

```
SYS_GUID()
```

### Example

The following example adds a column to the table `EMP`, inserts a unique identifier, and returns a `16-byte RAW` value:

```
edb=# CREATE TABLE EMP(C1 RAW (16) DEFAULT SYS_GUID() PRIMARY KEY, C2 INT);
CREATE TABLE
edb=# INSERT INTO EMP(C2) VALUES (1);
INSERT 0 1
edb=# SELECT * FROM EMP;
      c1       | c2
-----+-----
\xb944970d3a1b42a7a2119265c49cbb7f | 1
(1 row)
```

### 7.1.3.5 Pattern Matching String Functions

Advanced Server offers support for the `REGEXP_COUNT`, `REGEXP_INSTR` and `REGEXP_SUBSTR` functions. These functions search a string for a pattern specified by a regular expression, and return information about occurrences of the pattern within the string. The pattern should be a POSIX-style regular expression; for more information about forming a POSIX-style regular expression, please refer to the core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/functions-matching.html>

#### REGEXP\_COUNT

`REGEXP_COUNT` searches a string for a regular expression, and returns a count of the times that the regular expression occurs. The signature is:

```
INTEGER REGEXP_COUNT
(
    srcstr TEXT,
    pattern TEXT,
    position DEFAULT 1
    modifier DEFAULT NULL
)
```

#### Parameters

`srcstr`

`srcstr` specifies the string to search.

`pattern`

`pattern` specifies the regular expression for which `REGEXP_COUNT` will search.

`position`

`position` is an integer value that indicates the position in the source string at which `REGEXP_COUNT` will begin searching. The default value is `1`.

`modifier`

`modifier` specifies values that control the pattern matching behavior. The default value is `NULL`. For a complete list of the modifiers supported by Advanced Server, see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/functions-matching.html>

#### Example

In the following simple example, `REGEXP_COUNT` returns a count of the number of times the letter `i` is used in the character string `'reinitializing'`:

```
edb=# SELECT REGEXP_COUNT('reinitializing', 'i', 1) FROM DUAL;
regexp_count
-----
      5
(1 row)
```

In the first example, the command instructs `REGEXP_COUNT` begins counting in the first position; if we modify the command to start the count on the 6th position:

```
edb=# SELECT REGEXP_COUNT('reinitializing', 'i', 6) FROM DUAL;
regexp_count
-----
3
(1 row)
```

`REGEXP_COUNT` returns `3`; the count now excludes any occurrences of the letter `i` that occur before the 6th position.

## REGEXP\_INSTR

`REGEXP_INSTR` searches a string for a POSIX-style regular expression. This function returns the position within the string where the match was located. The signature is:

```
INTEGER REGEXP_INSTR
(
    srcstr      TEXT,
    pattern     TEXT,
    position    INT DEFAULT 1,
    occurrence  INT DEFAULT 1,
    returnparam INT DEFAULT 0,
    modifier    TEXT DEFAULT NULL,
    subexpression INT DEFAULT 0,
)
```

### Parameters:

`srcstr`

`srcstr` specifies the string to search.

`pattern`

`pattern` specifies the regular expression for which `REGEXP_INSTR` will search.

`position`

`position` specifies an integer value that indicates the start position in a source string. The default value is `1`.

`occurrence`

`occurrence` specifies which match is returned if more than one occurrence of the pattern occurs in the string that is searched. The default value is `1`.

`returnparam`

`returnparam` is an integer value that specifies the location within the string that `REGEXP_INSTR` should return. The default value is `0`. Specify:

- `0` to return the location within the string of the first character that matches `pattern`.
- A value greater than `0` to return the position of the first character following the end of the `pattern`.

`modifier`

`modifier` specifies values that control the pattern matching behavior. The default value is `NULL`. For a complete list of the modifiers supported by Advanced Server, see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/functions-matching.html>

### subexpression

`subexpression` is an integer value that identifies the portion of the `pattern` that will be returned by `REGEXP_INSTR`. The default value of `subexpression` is `0`.

If you specify a value for `subexpression`, you must include one (or more) set of parentheses in the `pattern` that isolate a portion of the value being searched for. The value specified by `subexpression` indicates which set of parentheses should be returned; for example, if `subexpression` is `2`, `REGEXP_INSTR` will return the position of the second set of parentheses.

### Example

In the following simple example, `REGEXP_INSTR` searches a string that contains the a phone number for the first occurrence of a pattern that contains three consecutive digits:

```
edb=# SELECT REGEXP_INSTR('800-555-1212', '[0-9][0-9][0-9]', 1, 1) FROM DUAL;
regexp_instr
-----
1
(1 row)
```

The command instructs `REGEXP_INSTR` to return the position of the first occurrence. If we modify the command to return the start of the second occurrence of three consecutive digits:

```
edb=# SELECT REGEXP_INSTR('800-555-1212', '[0-9][0-9][0-9]', 1, 2) FROM DUAL;
regexp_instr
-----
5
(1 row)
```

`REGEXP_INSTR` returns `5`; the second occurrence of three consecutive digits begins in the 5<sup>th</sup> position.

## REGEXP\_SUBSTR

The `REGEXP_SUBSTR` function searches a string for a pattern specified by a POSIX compliant regular expression. `REGEXP_SUBSTR` returns the string that matches the pattern specified in the call to the function. The signature of the function is:

```
TEXT REGEXP_SUBSTR
(
    srcstr    TEXT,
    pattern   TEXT,
    position   INT DEFAULT 1,
    occurrence INT DEFAULT 1,
    modifier   TEXT DEFAULT NULL,
    subexpression INT DEFAULT 0
)
```

### Parameters:

`srcstr`

`srcstr` specifies the string to search.

`pattern`

`pattern` specifies the regular expression for which `REGEXP_SUBSTR` will search.

`position`

`position` specifies an integer value that indicates the start position in a source string. The default value is `1`.

`occurrence`

`occurrence` specifies which match is returned if more than one occurrence of the pattern occurs in the string that is searched. The default value is `1`.

`modifier`

`modifier` specifies values that control the pattern matching behavior. The default value is `NULL`. For a complete list of the modifiers supported by Advanced Server, see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/functions-matching.html>

`subexpression`

`subexpression` is an integer value that identifies the portion of the `pattern` that will be returned by `REGEXP_SUBSTR`. The default value of `subexpression` is `0`.

If you specify a value for `subexpression`, you must include one (or more) set of parentheses in the `pattern` that isolate a portion of the value being searched for. The value specified by `subexpression` indicates which set of parentheses should be returned; for example, if `subexpression` is `2`, `REGEXP_SUBSTR` will return the value contained within the second set of parentheses.

## Example

In the following simple example, `REGEXP_SUBSTR` searches a string that contains a phone number for the first set of three consecutive digits:

```
edb=# SELECT REGEXP_SUBSTR('800-555-1212', '[0-9][0-9][0-9]', 1, 1) FROM
DUAL;
regexp_substr
-----
800
(1 row)
```

It locates the first occurrence of three digits and returns the string `(800)`; if we modify the command to check for the second occurrence of three consecutive digits:

```
edb=# SELECT REGEXP_SUBSTR('800-555-1212', '[0-9][0-9][0-9]', 1, 2) FROM
DUAL;
regexp_substr
-----
555
(1 row)
```

`REGEXP_SUBSTR` returns `555`, the contents of the second substring.

### 7.1.3.6 Pattern Matching Using the LIKE Operator

Advanced Server provides pattern matching using the traditional SQL `LIKE` operator. The syntax for the `LIKE` operator is as follows.

```
string LIKE pattern [ ESCAPE escape-character ]
string NOT LIKE pattern [ ESCAPE escape-character ]
```

Every `pattern` defines a set of strings. The `LIKE` expression returns `TRUE` if `string` is contained in the set of strings represented by `pattern`. As expected, the `NOT LIKE` expression returns `FALSE` if `LIKE` returns `TRUE`, and vice versa. An equivalent expression is `NOT (string LIKE pattern)`.

If `pattern` does not contain percent signs or underscore, then the pattern only represents the string itself; in that case `LIKE` acts like the equals operator. An underscore (`_`) in `pattern` stands for (matches) any single character; a percent sign (`%`) matches any string of zero or more characters.

Some examples:

```
'abc' LIKE 'abc'    true
'abc' LIKE 'a%'    true
'abc' LIKE '_b_'   true
'abc' LIKE 'c'     false
```

`LIKE` pattern matches always cover the entire string. To match a pattern anywhere within a string, the pattern must therefore start and end with a percent sign.

To match a literal underscore or percent sign without matching other characters, the respective character in `pattern` must be preceded by the escape character. The default escape character is the backslash but a different one may be selected by using the `ESCAPE` clause. To match the escape character itself, write two escape characters.

Note that the backslash already has a special meaning in string literals, so to write a pattern constant that contains a backslash you must write two backslashes in an SQL statement. Thus, writing a pattern that actually matches a literal backslash means writing four backslashes in the statement. You can avoid this by selecting a different escape character with `ESCAPE`; then a backslash is not special to `LIKE` anymore. (But it is still special to the string literal parser, so you still need two of them.)

It's also possible to select no escape character by writing `ESCAPE "`. This effectively disables the escape mechanism, which makes it impossible to turn off the special meaning of underscore and percent signs in the pattern.

### 7.1.3.7 Data Type Formatting Functions

The Advanced Server formatting functions described in the following table provide a powerful set of tools for converting various data types (date/time, integer, floating point, numeric) to formatted strings and for converting from formatted strings to specific data types. These functions all follow a common calling convention: the first argument is the value to be formatted and the second argument is a string template that defines the output or input format.

Function	Return Type	Description	Example	Result
----------	-------------	-------------	---------	--------

Function	Return Type	Description	Example	Result
TO_CHAR(DATE [, format ])	VARCHAR2	Convert a date/time to a string with output, <code>format</code> . If omitted default format is DD-MON-YY.	TO_CHAR(SYSDATE, 'MM/DD/YYYY HH12:MI:SS AM')	07/25/2007 09:43:02 AM
TO CHAR(TIMESTAMP [, format ])	VARCHAR2	Convert a timestamp to a string with output, <code>format</code> . If omitted default format is DD-MON-YY.	TO CHAR(CURRENT_TIMESTAMP, 'MM/DD/YYYY HH12:MI:SS AM')	08/13/2015 08:55:22 PM
TO CHAR(INTEGER [, format ])	VARCHAR2	Convert an integer to a string with output, <code>format</code>	TO CHAR(2412, '999,999S')	2,412+
TO CHAR(NUMBER [, format ])	VARCHAR2	Convert a decimal number to a string with output, <code>format</code>	TO CHAR(10125.35, '999,999.99')	10,125.35
TO CHAR(DOUBLE PRECISION, format)	VARCHAR2	Convert a floating-point number to a string with output, <code>format</code>	TO CHAR(CAST(123.5282 AS REAL), '999.99')	123.53
TO_DATE(string [, format ])	DATE	Convert a date formatted string to a DATE data type	TO_DATE('2007-07-04 13:39:10', 'YYYY-MM-DD HH24:MI:SS')	04-JUL-07
TO_NUMBER(string [, format ])	NUMBER	Convert a number formatted string to a NUMBER data type	TO_NUMBER('2,412-', '999,999S')	-2412
TO_TIMESTAMP(string, format)	TIMESTAMPTZ	Convert a timestamp formatted string to a TIMESTAMPTZ data type	TO_TIMESTAMP('05 Dec 2000 08:30:25 pm', 'DD Mon YYYY hh12:mi:ss pm')	05-DEC-00 20:30:25 +05:30
TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ(string, format)	TIMESTAMPTZ	Convert a timestamp formatted string to a TIMESTAMPTZ data type	TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ('2003/12/13 10:13:18 -8:00', 'YYYY/MM/DD HH:MI:SS TZH:TZM')	13-DEC-03 23:43:18 +05:30

## TO\_CHAR, TO\_DATE, TO\_TIMESTAMP, and TO\_TIMESTAMP\_TZ

In an output template string (for `TO_CHAR`), there are certain patterns that are recognized and replaced with appropriately-formatted data from the value to be formatted. Any text that is not a template pattern is simply copied verbatim. Similarly, in an input template string (for anything but `TO_CHAR`), template patterns identify the parts of the input data string to be looked at and the values to be found there.

If you do not specify a date, month, or year when calling `TO_TIMESTAMP`, `TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ` or `TO_DATE`, then by default the output format considers the first date of a current month or current year respectively. In the following example, date, month, and year is not specified in the input string; `TO_TIMESTAMP`, `TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ`, and `TO_DATE` returns a default value of the first date of a current month and current year.

```
edb=# select to_timestamp('12', 'HH');
      to_timestamp
```

```
-----  
01-MAY-20 12:00:00 +05:30  
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# select to_timestamp_tz('12', 'HH');
          to_timestamp_tz
-----
01-MAY-20 12:00:00 +05:30
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# select to_date('12', 'HH');
          to_date
-----
01-MAY-20 12:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following table shows the template patterns available for formatting date values using the `TO_CHAR`, `TO_DATE`, `TO_TIMESTAMP`, and `TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ` functions.

#### Pattern Description

<code>HH</code>	Hour of day (01-12)
<code>HH12</code>	Hour of day (01-12)
<code>HH24</code>	Hour of day (00-23)
<code>MI</code>	Minute (00-59)
<code>SS</code>	Second (00-59)
<code>SSSS</code>	Seconds past midnight (0-86399)
<code>FFn</code>	Fractional seconds where <code>n</code> is an optional integer from 1 to 9 for the number of digits to return. If omitted, the default is 6.
<code>AM</code> or <code>A.M.</code> or <code>PM</code> or <code>P.M.</code>	Meridian indicator (uppercase)
<code>am</code> or <code>a.m.</code> or <code>pm</code> or <code>p.m.</code>	Meridian indicator (lowercase)
<code>Y,YYY</code>	Year (4 and more digits) with comma
<code>YEAR</code>	Year (spelled out)
<code>SYEAR</code>	Year (spelled out) (BC dates prefixed by a minus sign)
<code>YYYY</code>	Year (4 and more digits)
<code>SYYYY</code>	Year (4 and more digits) (BC dates prefixed by a minus sign)
<code>YY</code>	Last 3 digits of year
<code>YY</code>	Last 2 digits of year
<code>Y</code>	Last digit of year
<code>IYYY</code>	ISO year (4 and more digits)
<code>IYY</code>	Last 3 digits of ISO year
<code>IY</code>	Last 2 digits of ISO year
<code>I</code>	Last 1 digit of ISO year
<code>BC</code> or <code>B.C.</code> or <code>AD</code> or <code>A.D.</code>	Era indicator (uppercase)
<code>bc</code> or <code>b.c.</code> or <code>ad</code> or <code>a.d.</code>	Era indicator (lowercase)

Pattern	Description
MONT	Full uppercase month name
Month	Full mixed-case month name
month	Full lowercase month name
MON	Abbreviated uppercase month name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)
Mon	Abbreviated mixed-case month name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)
mon	Abbreviated lowercase month name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)
MM	Month number (01-12)
DAY	Full uppercase day name
Day	Full mixed-case day name
day	Full lowercase day name
DY	Abbreviated uppercase day name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)
Dy	Abbreviated mixed-case day name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)
dy	Abbreviated lowercase day name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)
DDD	Day of year (001-366)
DD	Day of month (01-31)
D	Day of week (1-7; Sunday is 1)
W	Week of month (1-5) (The first week starts on the first day of the month)
WW	Week number of year (1-53) (The first week starts on the first day of the year)
IW	ISO week number of year; the first Thursday of the new year is in week 1
CC	Century (2 digits); the 21st century starts on 2001-01-01
SCC	Same as CC except BC dates are prefixed by a minus sign
J	Julian Day (days since January 1, 4712 BC)
Q	Quarter
RM	Month in Roman numerals (I-XII; I=January) (uppercase)
rm	Month in Roman numerals (i-xii; i=January) (lowercase)
RR	First 2 digits of the year when given only the last 2 digits of the year. Result is based upon an algorithm using the current year and the given 2-digit year. The first 2 digits of the given 2-digit year will be the same as the first 2 digits of the current year with the following exceptions: If the given 2-digit year is <50 and the last 2 digits of the current year is >= 50, then the first 2 digits for the given year is 1 greater than the first 2 digits of the current year. If the given 2-digit year is >= 50 and the last 2 digits of the current year is <50, then the first 2 digits for the given year is 1 less than the first 2 digits of the current year.
RRRR	Only affects <a href="#">TO_DATE</a> function. Allows specification of 2-digit or 4-digit year. If 2-digit year given, then returns first 2 digits of year like RR format. If 4-digit year given, returns the given 4-digit year.
TZH	Time-zone hours
TZM	Time-zone minutes

## Date and Time Modifiers

Certain modifiers may be applied to any template pattern to alter its behavior. For example, [FMMonth](#) is the [Month](#) pattern with the [FM](#) modifier. The following table shows the modifier patterns for date/time formatting.

Modifier	Description	Example
FM prefix	Fill mode (suppress padding blanks and zeros)	<a href="#">FMMonth</a>
TH suffix	Uppercase ordinal number suffix	<a href="#">DDTH</a>
th suffix	Lowercase ordinal number suffix	<a href="#">DDth</a>
FX prefix	Fixed format global option (see usage notes)	<a href="#">FX Month DD Day</a>
SP suffix	Spell mode	<a href="#">DDSP</a>

Usage notes for date/time formatting:

- `FM` suppresses leading zeroes and trailing blanks that would otherwise be added to make the output of a pattern fixed-width.
- `TO_TIMESTAMP`, `TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ`, and `TO_DATE` skip multiple blank spaces in the input string if the `FX` option is not used. `FX` must be specified as the first item in the template. For example:

```
TO_TIMESTAMP('2000 - JUN', 'YYYY-MON') is correct, but
TO_TIMESTAMP('2000  JUN', 'FXYYYY MON') and
TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ('2000  JUN', 'FXYYYY MON') returns an error
because TO_TIMESTAMP and TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ expects one space
only.
```

- Ordinary text is allowed in `TO_CHAR` templates and will be output literally.
- In conversions from string to `timestamp`, `timestamptz`, or `date`, the `CC` field is ignored if there is a `YYY`, `YYYY` or `Y,YYY` field. If `CC` is used with `YY` or `Y` then the year is computed as  $(CC-1)*100+YY$ .

The following table shows some examples of the use of the `TO_CHAR` and `TO_DATE` functions:

Expression	Result
<code>TO_CHAR(CURRENT_TIMESTAMP, 'Day, DD HH12:MI:SS')</code>	'Tuesday , 06 05:39:18'
<code>TO_CHAR(CURRENT_TIMESTAMP, 'FM-Day, FMDD HH12:MI:SS')</code>	'Tuesday, 6 05:39:18'
<code>TO_CHAR(-0.1, '99.99')</code>	' -.10'
<code>TO_CHAR(-0.1, 'FM9.99')</code>	'-.1'
<code>TO_CHAR(0.1, '0.9')</code>	' 0.1'
<code>TO_CHAR(12, '9990999.9')</code>	' 0012.0'
<code>TO_CHAR(12, 'FM9990999.9')</code>	'0012.'
<code>TO_CHAR(485, '999')</code>	' 485'
<code>TO_CHAR(-485, '999')</code>	'-485'
<code>TO_CHAR(1485, '9,999')</code>	' 1,485'
<code>TO_CHAR(1485, '9G999')</code>	' 1,485'
<code>TO_CHAR(148.5, '999.999')</code>	' 148.500'
<code>TO_CHAR(148.5, 'FM999.999')</code>	'148.5'
<code>TO_CHAR(148.5, 'FM999.990')</code>	'148.500'
<code>TO_CHAR(148.5, '999D999')</code>	' 148.500'
<code>TO_CHAR(3148.5, '9G999D999')</code>	' 3,148.500'
<code>TO_CHAR(-485, '999S')</code>	'485-'
<code>TO_CHAR(-485, '999MI')</code>	'485-'
<code>TO_CHAR(485, '999MI')</code>	'485 '
<code>TO_CHAR(485, 'FM999MI')</code>	'485'
<code>TO_CHAR(-485, '999PR')</code>	'<485>'
<code>TO_CHAR(485, 'L999')</code>	'\$ 485'
<code>TO_CHAR(485, 'RN')</code>	'    CDLXXXV'
<code>TO_CHAR(485, 'FMRN')</code>	'CDLXXXV'
<code>TO_CHAR(5.2, 'FMRN')</code>	'V'
<code>TO_CHAR(12, '99V999')</code>	' 12000'
<code>TO_CHAR(12.4, '99V999')</code>	' 12400'
<code>TO_CHAR(12.45, '99V9')</code>	' 125'

The following table shows some examples of the use of the `TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ` function:

Expression	Result
TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ('12-JAN-2010', 'DD-MONTH-YYYY')	'12-JAN-10 00:00:00 +05:30'
TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ('03-APR-07 09:12:21 P.M','DD-MON-YY HH12:MI:SS A.M')	'03-APR-07 09:12:21 +05:30'
TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ('2003/12/13 10:13:18 -8:00', 'YYYY/MM/DD HH:MI:SS TZH:TZM')	'13-DEC-03 23:43:18 +05:30'
TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ('20-MAR-20 04:30:00 +08:00', 'DD-MON-YY HH:MI:SS TZH:TZM')	'20-MAR-20 02:00:00 +05:30'
TO_TIMESTAMP_TZ('10-Sep-02 14:10:10.123000', 'DD-MON-RR HH24:MI:SS.FF')	'10-SEP-02 14:10:10.123 +05:30'

## IMMUTABLE TO\_CHAR(TIMESTAMP, format) Function

There are certain cases of the `TO_CHAR` function that can result in usage of an `IMMUTABLE` form of the function. Basically, a function is `IMMUTABLE` if the function does not modify the database, and the function returns the same, consistent value dependent upon only its input parameters. That is, the settings of configuration parameters, the locale, the content of the database, etc. do not affect the results returned by the function.

For more information about function volatility categories `VOLATILE`, `STABLE`, and `IMMUTABLE`, see the PostgreSQL Core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/xfunc-volatility.html>

A particular advantage of an `IMMUTABLE` function is that it can be used in the `CREATE INDEX` command to create an index based on that function.

In order for the `TO_CHAR` function to use the `IMMUTABLE` form the following conditions must be satisfied:

- The first parameter of the `TO_CHAR` function must be of data type `TIMESTAMP`.
- The format specified in the second parameter of the `TO_CHAR` function must not affect the return value of the function based on factors such as language, locale, etc. For example a format of `'YYYY-MM-DD HH24:MI:SS'` can be used for an `IMMUTABLE` form of the function since, regardless of locale settings, the result of the function is the date and time expressed solely in numeric form. However, a format of `'DD-MON-YYYY'` cannot be used for an `IMMUTABLE` form of the function because the 3-character abbreviation of the month may return different results depending upon the locale setting.

Format patterns that result in a non-immutable function include any variations of spelled out or abbreviated months (`MONTH`, `MON`), days (`DAY`, `DY`), median indicators (`AM`, `PM`), or era indicators (`BC`, `AD`).

For the following example, a table with a `TIMESTAMP` column is created.

```
CREATE TABLE ts_tbl (ts_col TIMESTAMP);
```

The following shows the successful creation of an index with the `IMMUTABLE` form of the `TO_CHAR` function.

```
edb=# CREATE INDEX ts_idx ON ts_tbl (TO_CHAR(ts_col,'YYYY-MM-DD HH24:MI:SS'));
```

```
CREATE INDEX
```

```
edb=# \dS ts_idx
```

Column	Type	Definition
to_char	character varying	to_char(ts_col, 'YYYY-MM-DD HH24:MI:SS'::character varying)

```
btree, for table "public.ts_tbl"
```

The following results in an error because the format specified in the `TO_CHAR` function prevents the use of the `IMMUTABLE` form since the 3-character month abbreviation, `MON`, may result in different return values based on

the locale setting.

```
edb=# CREATE INDEX ts_idx_2 ON ts_tbl (TO_CHAR(ts_col, 'DD-MON-YYYY'));
ERROR: functions in index expression must be marked IMMUTABLE
```

## TO\_NUMBER

The following table lists the template patterns available for formatting numeric values:

Pattern	Description
9	Value with the specified number of digits
0	Value with leading zeroes
. (period)	Decimal point
, (comma)	Group (thousand) separator
\$	Dollar sign
S	Sign anchored to number (uses locale).
L	Currency symbol (uses locale)

Note that 9 results in a value with the same number of digits as there are 9s. If a digit is not available, the server ignores the corresponding 9s. The S pattern does not support + and \$ pattern does not support decimal points in the expression.

The following table shows some examples of the use of the TO\_NUMBER function:

Expression	Result
TO_NUMBER('-65', 'S99')	' -65'
TO_NUMBER('\$65', 'L99')	' 65'
TO_NUMBER('9678584', '9999999')	' 9678584'
TO_NUMBER('123,456,789', '999,999,999')	' 123456789'
TO_NUMBER('1210.73', '9999.99')	' 1210.73'
TO_NUMBER('1210.73')	' 1210.73'
TO_NUMBER('0101.010','FM99999999.99999')	' 101.010'

## Numeric Modifiers

The following table shows the modifier pattern for numeric formatting:

Pattern	Description	Example
FM prefix	Fill mode (suppress trailing zeroes and padding blanks)	FM99.99

## 7.1.3.8 Date/Time Functions and Operators

The Date/Time Functions table shows the available functions for date/time value processing, with details appearing in the following subsections. The following table illustrates the behaviors of the basic arithmetic

operators (+, -). For formatting functions, refer to [IMMUTABLE TO\\_CHAR\(TIMESTAMP, format\) Function](#). You should be familiar with the background information on date/time data types, see [Date/Time Types](#).

Operator	Example	Result
plus (+)	DATE '2001-09-28' + 7	05-OCT-01 00:00:00
plus (+)	TIMESTAMP '2001-09-28 13:30:00' + 3	01-OCT-01 13:30:00
minus (-)	DATE '2001-10-01' - 7	24-SEP-01 00:00:00
minus (-)	TIMESTAMP '2001-09-28 13:30:00' - 3	25-SEP-01 13:30:00
minus (-)	TIMESTAMP '2001-09-29 03:00:00' - TIMESTAMP '2001-09-27 12:00:00'	@ 1 day 15 hours

In the date/time functions of the following table the use of the DATE and TIMESTAMP data types are interchangeable.

Function	Return Type	Description	Example	Result
ADD_MONTHS (DATE, NUMBER)	DATE	Add months to a date	ADD_MONTHS ('28-FEB-97', .3.8)	31-MAY-97 00:00:00
CURRENT_DATE	DATE	Current date	CURRENT_DATE	04-JUL-07
CURRENT_TIMESTAMP	TIMESTAMP	Returns the current date and time	CURRENT_TIMESTAMP	04-JUL-07 15:33:23.484
EXTRACT(field FROM TIMESTAMP)	DOUBLE PRECISION	Get subfield	EXTRACT(hour FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40')	20
LAST_DAY(DATE)	DATE	Returns the last day of the month represented by the given date. If the given date contains a time portion, it is carried forward to the result unchanged	LAST_DAY('14-APR-98')	30-APR-98 00:00:00
LOCALTIMESTAMP [ (precision) ]	TIMESTAMP	Current date and time (start of current transaction)	LOCALTIMESTAMP	04-JUL-07 15:33:23.484
MONTHS_BETWEEN (DATE, DATE)	NUMBER	Number of months between two dates	MONTHS_BETWEEN ('28-FEB-07', '30-NOV-06')	3
NEXT_DAY(DATE, dayofweek)	DATE	Date falling on dayofweek following specified date	NEXT_DAY('16 (-APR-07,FRI') )	20-APR-07 00:00:00

Function	Return Type	Description	Example	Result
NEW_TIME(DATE, VARCHAR, VARCHAR)	DATE	Converts a date and time to an alternate time zone	NEW_TIME(TO_DATE('2005/05/29 01:45', 'AST', 'PST'))	2005/05/29 21:45:00
NUMTODSINTERVAL(NUMBER, INTERVAL)	INTERVAL	Converts a number to a specified day or second interval	SELECT numtodsinterval(100, 'hour');	4 days 04:00:00
NUMTOYMINTERVAL(NUMBER, INTERVAL)	INTERVAL	Converts a number to a specified year or month interval	SELECT numtoyminterval(100, 'month');	8 years 4 mons
ROUND(DATE [, format ])	DATE	Date rounded according to format	ROUND(TO_DATE('29-MAY-05'), 'MON')	01-JUN-05 00:00:00
SYS_EXTRACT_UTCTIMESTAMP(WITH TIME ZONE)	TIMESTAMP	Returns Coordinated Universal Time	SYS_EXTRACT_UTCTIMESTAMP(CAST('24-MAR-11 12:30:00PM -04:00' AS TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE))	24-MAR-11 16:30:00
SYSDATE	DATE	Returns current date and time	SYSDATE	01-AUG-12 11:12:34
SYSTIMESTAMP()	TIMESTAMP	Returns current date and time	SYSTIMESTAMP	01-AUG-12 11:11:23.665229 -07:00
TRUNC(DATE [format ])	DATE	Truncate according to format	TRUNC(TO_DATE('29-MAY-05'), 'MON')	01-MAY-05 00:00:00

## ADD\_MONTHS

The `ADD_MONTHS` functions adds (or subtracts if the second parameter is negative) the specified number of months to the given date. The resulting day of the month is the same as the day of the month of the given date except when the day is the last day of the month in which case the resulting date always falls on the last day of the month.

Any fractional portion of the number of months parameter is truncated before performing the calculation.

If the given date contains a time portion, it is carried forward to the result unchanged.

The following are examples of the `ADD_MONTHS` function.

```
SELECT ADD_MONTHS('13-JUN-07',4) FROM DUAL;
```

```
add_months
-----
13-OCT-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT ADD_MONTHS('31-DEC-06',2) FROM DUAL;
```

```
add_months
```

```
-----
```

```
28-FEB-07 00:00:00
```

```
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT ADD_MONTHS('31-MAY-04',-3) FROM DUAL;
```

```
add_months
```

```
-----
```

```
29-FEB-04 00:00:00
```

```
(1 row)
```

## CURRENT DATE/TIME

Advanced Server provides a number of functions that return values related to the current date and time. These functions all return values based on the start time of the current transaction.

- CURRENT\_DATE
- CURRENT\_TIMESTAMP
- LOCALTIMESTAMP
- LOCALTIMESTAMP(precision)

**CURRENT\_DATE** returns the current date and time based on the start time of the current transaction. The value of **CURRENT\_DATE** will not change if called multiple times within a transaction.

```
SELECT CURRENT_DATE FROM DUAL;
```

```
date
```

```
-----
```

```
06-AUG-07
```

**CURRENT\_TIMESTAMP** returns the current date and time. When called from a single SQL statement, it will return the same value for each occurrence within the statement. If called from multiple statements within a transaction, may return different values for each occurrence. If called from a function, may return a different value than the value returned by `current_timestamp` in the caller.

```
SELECT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP, CURRENT_TIMESTAMP FROM DUAL;
```

```
current_timestamp | current_timestamp
```

```
-----+-----
```

```
02-SEP-13 17:52:29.261473 +05:00 | 02-SEP-13 17:52:29.261474 +05:00
```

**LOCALTIMESTAMP** can optionally be given a precision parameter which causes the result to be rounded to that many fractional digits in the seconds field. Without a precision parameter, the result is given to the full available precision.

```
SELECT LOCALTIMESTAMP FROM DUAL;
```

```
timestamp
```

```
-----
```

```
06-AUG-07 16:11:35.973
```

```
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT LOCALTIMESTAMP(2) FROM DUAL;
```

timestamp

```
-----  
06-AUG-07 16:11:44.58  
(1 row)
```

Since these functions return the start time of the current transaction, their values do not change during the transaction. This is considered a feature: the intent is to allow a single transaction to have a consistent notion of the “current” time, so that multiple modifications within the same transaction bear the same time stamp. Other database systems may advance these values more frequently.

## EXTRACT

The **EXTRACT** function retrieves subfields such as year or hour from date/time values. The **EXTRACT** function returns values of type **DOUBLE PRECISION**. The following are valid field names:

### YEAR

The year field

```
SELECT EXTRACT(YEAR FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40') FROM DUAL;
```

date\_part

```
-----  
2001  
(1 row)
```

### MONTH

The number of the month within the year (1 - 12)

```
SELECT EXTRACT(MONTH FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40') FROM DUAL;
```

date\_part

```
-----  
2  
(1 row)
```

### DAY

The day (of the month) field (1 - 31)

```
SELECT EXTRACT(DAY FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40') FROM DUAL;
```

date\_part

```
-----  
16  
(1 row)
```

### HOUR

The hour field (0 - 23)

```
SELECT EXTRACT(HOUR FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40') FROM DUAL;
```

```
date_part
```

```
-----
20
(1 row)
```

## MINUTE

The minutes field (0 - 59)

```
SELECT EXTRACT(MINUTE FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40') FROM DUAL;
```

```
date_part
```

```
-----
38
(1 row)
```

## SECOND

The seconds field, including fractional parts (0 - 59)

```
SELECT EXTRACT(SECOND FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40') FROM DUAL;
```

```
date_part
```

```
-----
40
(1 row)
```

## MONTHS\_BETWEEN

The **MONTHS\_BETWEEN** function returns the number of months between two dates. The result is a numeric value which is positive if the first date is greater than the second date or negative if the first date is less than the second date.

The result is always a whole number of months if the day of the month of both date parameters is the same, or both date parameters fall on the last day of their respective months.

The following are some examples of the **MONTHS\_BETWEEN** function.

```
SELECT MONTHS_BETWEEN('15-DEC-06','15-OCT-06') FROM DUAL;
```

```
months_between
```

```
-----
2
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT MONTHS_BETWEEN('15-OCT-06','15-DEC-06') FROM DUAL;
```

```
months_between
```

```
-----
-2
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT MONTHS_BETWEEN('31-JUL-00','01-JUL-00') FROM DUAL;
```

```
months_between
```

```
-----
0.967741935
```

```
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT MONTHS_BETWEEN('01-JAN-07','01-JAN-06') FROM DUAL;
```

```
months_between
```

```
-----
12
```

```
(1 row)
```

## NEXT\_DAY

The `NEXT_DAY` function returns the first occurrence of the given weekday strictly greater than the given date. At least the first three letters of the weekday must be specified - e.g., `SAT`. If the given date contains a time portion, it is carried forward to the result unchanged.

The following are examples of the `NEXT_DAY` function.

```
SELECT NEXT_DAY(TO_DATE('13-AUG-07','DD-MON-YY'),'SUNDAY') FROM DUAL;
```

```
next_day
```

```
-----
19-AUG-07 00:00:00
```

```
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT NEXT_DAY(TO_DATE('13-AUG-07','DD-MON-YY'),'MON') FROM DUAL;
```

```
next_day
```

```
-----
20-AUG-07 00:00:00
```

```
(1 row)
```

## NEW\_TIME

The `NEW_TIME` function converts a date and time from one time zone to another. `NEW_TIME` returns a value of type `DATE`. The syntax is:

```
NEW_TIME(DATE, time_zone1, time_zone2)
```

`time_zone1` and `time_zone2` must be string values from the Time Zone column of the following table:

Time Zone	Offset from UTC	Description
AST	UTC+4	Atlantic Standard Time
ADT	UTC+3	Atlantic Daylight Time
BST	UTC+11	Bering Standard Time
BDT	UTC+10	Bering Daylight Time
CST	UTC+6	Central Standard Time
CDT	UTC+5	Central Daylight Time
EST	UTC+5	Eastern Standard Time
EDT	UTC+4	Eastern Daylight Time

Time Zone	Offset from UTC	Description
GMT	UTC	Greenwich Mean Time
HST	UTC+10	Alaska-Hawaii Standard Time
HDT	UTC+9	Alaska-Hawaii Daylight Time
MST	UTC+7	Mountain Standard Time
MDT	UTC+6	Mountain Daylight Time
NST	UTC+3:30	Newfoundland Standard Time
PST	UTC+8	Pacific Standard Time
PDT	UTC+7	Pacific Daylight Time
YST	UTC+9	Yukon Standard Time
YDT	UTC+8	Yukon Daylight Time

Following is an example of the `NEW_TIME` function:

```
SELECT NEW_TIME(TO_DATE('08-13-07 10:35:15','MM-DD-YY HH24:MI:SS'),'AST',
'PST') "Pacific Standard Time" FROM DUAL;
```

Pacific Standard Time

```
-----
13-AUG-07 06:35:15
(1 row)
```

## NUMTODSINTERVAL

The `NUMTODSINTERVAL` function converts a numeric value to a time interval that includes day through second interval units. When calling the function, specify the smallest fractional interval type to be included in the result set. The valid interval types are `DAY`, `HOUR`, `MINUTE`, and `SECOND`.

The following example converts a numeric value to a time interval that includes days and hours:

```
SELECT numtodsinterval(100, 'hour');
numtodsinterval
-----
4 days 04:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following example converts a numeric value to a time interval that includes minutes and seconds:

```
SELECT numtodsinterval(100, 'second');
numtodsinterval
-----
1 min 40 secs
(1 row)
```

## NUMTOYMINTERVAL

The `NUMTOYMINTERVAL` function converts a numeric value to a time interval that includes year through month interval units. When calling the function, specify the smallest fractional interval type to be included in the result set. The valid interval types are `YEAR` and `MONTH`.

The following example converts a numeric value to a time interval that includes years and months:

```
SELECT numtoyminterval(100, 'month');
```

```
numtoyminterval
```

```
-----
```

```
8 years 4 mons
```

```
(1 row)
```

The following example converts a numeric value to a time interval that includes years only:

```
SELECT numtoyminterval(100, 'year');
```

```
numtoyminterval
```

```
-----
```

```
100 years
```

```
(1 row)
```

## ROUND

The `ROUND` function returns a date rounded according to a specified template pattern. If the template pattern is omitted, the date is rounded to the nearest day. The following table shows the template patterns for the `ROUND` function.

Pattern	Description
<code>CC, SCC</code>	Returns January 1, <code>cc01</code> where <code>cc</code> is first 2 digits of the given year if last 2 digits <= 50, or 1 greater than the first 2 digits of the given year if last 2 digits > 50; (for AD years)
<code>YYYY, YYYY, YEAR, SYEAR, YYY, YY, Y</code>	Returns January 1, <code>yyyy</code> where <code>yyyy</code> is rounded to the nearest year; rounds down on June 30, rounds up on July 1
<code>IYYY, IYY, IY, I</code>	Rounds to the beginning of the ISO year which is determined by rounding down if the month and day is on or before June 30th, or by rounding up if the month and day is July 1st or later
<code>Q</code>	Returns the first day of the quarter determined by rounding down if the month and day is on or before the 15th of the second month of the quarter, or by rounding up if the month and day is on the 16th of the second month or later of the quarter
<code>MONTH, MON, MM, RM</code>	Returns the first day of the specified month if the day of the month is on or prior to the 15th; returns the first day of the following month if the day of the month is on the 16th or later
<code>WW</code>	Round to the nearest date that corresponds to the same day of the week as the first day of the year
<code>IW</code>	Round to the nearest date that corresponds to the same day of the week as the first day of the ISO year
<code>W</code>	Round to the nearest date that corresponds to the same day of the week as the first day of the month
<code>DDD, DD, J</code>	Rounds to the start of the nearest day; 11:59:59 AM or earlier rounds to the start of the same day; 12:00:00 PM or later rounds to the start of the next day
<code>DAY, DY, D</code>	Rounds to the nearest Sunday
<code>HH, HH12, HH24</code>	Round to the nearest hour
<code>MI</code>	Round to the nearest minute

Following are examples of usage of the `ROUND` function.

The following examples round to the nearest hundred years.

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(ROUND(TO_DATE('1950','YYYY'),'CC'),'DD-MON-YYYY') "Century" FROM DUAL;
```

```
Century
```

```
-----
01-JAN-1901
```

```
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(ROUND(TO_DATE('1951','YYYY'),'CC'),'DD-MON-YYYY') "Century" FROM DUAL;
```

```
Century
```

```
-----
01-JAN-2001
```

```
(1 row)
```

The following examples round to the nearest year.

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(ROUND(TO_DATE('30-JUN-1999','DD-MON-YYYY'),'Y'),'DD-MON-YYYY') "Year" FROM DUAL;
```

```
Year
```

```
-----
01-JAN-1999
```

```
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(ROUND(TO_DATE('01-JUL-1999','DD-MON-YYYY'),'Y'),'DD-MON-YYYY') "Year" FROM DUAL;
```

```
Year
```

```
-----
01-JAN-2000
```

```
(1 row)
```

The following examples round to the nearest ISO year. The first example rounds to 2004 and the ISO year for 2004 begins on December 29<sup>th</sup> of 2003. The second example rounds to 2005 and the ISO year for 2005 begins on January 3<sup>rd</sup> of that same year.

(An ISO year begins on the first Monday from which a 7 day span, Monday thru Sunday, contains at least 4 days of the new year. Thus, it is possible for the beginning of an ISO year to start in December of the prior year.)

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(ROUND(TO_DATE('30-JUN-2004','DD-MON-YYYY'),'IYYY'),'DD-MON-YYYY') "ISO Year" FROM DUAL;
```

```
ISO Year
```

```
-----
29-DEC-2003
```

```
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(ROUND(TO_DATE('01-JUL-2004','DD-MON-YYYY'),'IYYY'),'DD-MON-YYYY') "ISO Year" FROM DUAL;
```

```
ISO Year
```

```
-----
03-JAN-2005
```

```
(1 row)
```

The following example round to the nearest quarter:

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('15-FEB-07','DD-MON-YY'),'Q') "Quarter" FROM DUAL;
```

Quarter

```
01-JAN-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('16-FEB-07','DD-MON-YY'),'Q') "Quarter" FROM DUAL;
```

Quarter

```
01-APR-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following example round to the nearest month:

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('15-DEC-07','DD-MON-YY'),'MONTH') "Month" FROM DUAL;
```

Month

```
01-DEC-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('16-DEC-07','DD-MON-YY'),'MONTH') "Month" FROM DUAL;
```

Month

```
01-JAN-08 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following examples round to the nearest week. The first day of 2007 lands on a Monday so in the first example, January 18<sup>th</sup> is closest to the Monday that lands on January 15<sup>th</sup>. In the second example, January 19<sup>th</sup> is closer to the Monday that falls on January 22<sup>nd</sup>.

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('18-JAN-07','DD-MON-YY'),'WW') "Week" FROM DUAL;
```

Week

```
15-JAN-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('19-JAN-07','DD-MON-YY'),'WW') "Week" FROM DUAL;
```

Week

```
22-JAN-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following examples round to the nearest ISO week. An ISO week begins on a Monday. In the first example, January 1, 2004 is closest to the Monday that lands on December 29, 2003. In the second example, January 2, 2004 is closer to the Monday that lands on January 5, 2004.

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('01-JAN-04','DD-MON-YY'),'IW') "ISO Week" FROM DUAL;
```

ISO Week

```
29-DEC-03 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('02-JAN-04','DD-MON-YY'),'IW') "ISO Week" FROM DUAL;
```

ISO Week

---

```
05-JAN-04 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following examples round to the nearest week where a week is considered to start on the same day as the first day of the month.

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('05-MAR-07','DD-MON-YY'),'W') "Week" FROM DUAL;
```

Week

---

```
08-MAR-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('04-MAR-07','DD-MON-YY'),'W') "Week" FROM DUAL;
```

Week

---

```
01-MAR-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following examples round to the nearest day.

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('04-AUG-07 11:59:59 AM','DD-MON-YY HH:MI:SS AM'),'J')
"Day" FROM DUAL;
```

Day

---

```
04-AUG-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('04-AUG-07 12:00:00 PM','DD-MON-YY HH:MI:SS AM'),'J')
"Day" FROM DUAL;
```

Day

---

```
05-AUG-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following examples round to the start of the nearest day of the week (Sunday).

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('08-AUG-07','DD-MON-YY'),'DAY') "Day of Week" FROM DUAL;
```

Day of Week

---

```
05-AUG-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT ROUND(TO_DATE('09-AUG-07','DD-MON-YY'),'DAY') "Day of Week" FROM DUAL;
```

Day of Week

```
12-AUG-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following examples round to the nearest hour.

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(ROUND(TO_DATE('09-AUG-07 08:29','DD-MON-YY HH:MI'),'HH'),'DD-MON-YY
HH24:MI:SS') "Hour" FROM DUAL;
```

Hour
09-AUG-07 08:00:00

```
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(ROUND(TO_DATE('09-AUG-07 08:30','DD-MON-YY HH:MI'),'HH'),'DD-MON-YY
HH24:MI:SS') "Hour" FROM DUAL;
```

Hour
09-AUG-07 09:00:00

```
(1 row)
```

The following examples round to the nearest minute.

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(ROUND(TO_DATE('09-AUG-07 08:30:29','DD-MON-YY
HH:MI:SS'),'MI'),'DD-MON-YY HH24:MI:SS') "Minute" FROM DUAL;
```

Minute
09-AUG-07 08:30:00

```
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(ROUND(TO_DATE('09-AUG-07 08:30:30','DD-MON-YY
HH:MI:SS'),'MI'),'DD-MON-YY HH24:MI:SS') "Minute" FROM DUAL;
```

Minute
09-AUG-07 08:31:00

```
(1 row)
```

## SYSDATE

The **SYSDATE** function returns the current date and time (timestamp without timezone) of the operating system on which the database server resides. The function is **STABLE** and requires no arguments.

When called from a single SQL statement, it will return the same value for each occurrence within the statement. If called from multiple statements within a transaction, may return different values for each occurrence. If called from a function, may return a different value than the value returned by **SYSDATE** in the caller.

The following example demonstrates a call to **SYSDATE**:

```
SELECT SYSDATE, SYSDATE FROM DUAL;
      sysdate    |    sysdate
-----+-----
28-APR-20 16:45:28 | 28-APR-20 16:45:28
(1 row)
```

## TRUNC

The `TRUNC` function returns a date truncated according to a specified template pattern. If the template pattern is omitted, the date is truncated to the nearest day. The following table shows the template patterns for the `TRUNC` function.

Pattern	Description
CC, SCC	Returns January 1, <code>cc</code> 01 where <code>cc</code> is first 2 digits of the given year
YYYY, YYYY, YEAR, SYEAR, YYY, YY, Y	Returns January 1, <code>yyyy</code> where <code>yyyy</code> is the given year
IYYY, IYY, IY, I	Returns the start date of the ISO year containing the given date
Q	Returns the first day of the quarter containing the given date
MONTH, MON, MM, RM	Returns the first day of the specified month
WW	Returns the largest date just prior to, or the same as the given date that corresponds to the same day of the week as the first day of the year
IW	Returns the start of the ISO week containing the given date
W	Returns the largest date just prior to, or the same as the given date that corresponds to the same day of the week as the first day of the month
DDD, DD, J	Returns the start of the day for the given date
DAY, DY, D	Returns the start of the week (Sunday) containing the given date
HH, HH12, HH24	Returns the start of the hour
MI	Returns the start of the minute

Following are examples of usage of the `TRUNC` function.

The following example truncates down to the hundred years unit.

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(TRUNC(TO_DATE('1951','YYYY'),'CC'),'DD-MON-YYYY') "Century"
FROM DUAL;
```

Century

```
-----
01-JAN-1901
(1 row)
```

The following example truncates down to the year.

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(TRUNC(TO_DATE('01-JUL-1999','DD-MON-YYYY'),'Y'),'DD-MON-YYYY') "Year" FROM
DUAL;
```

Year

```
-----
01-JAN-1999
(1 row)
```

The following example truncates down to the beginning of the ISO year.

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(TRUNC(TO_DATE('01-JUL-2004','DD-MON-YYYY'),'IYYY'),'DD-MON-YYYY') "ISO Year"
FROM DUAL;
```

ISO Year

```
-----
29-DEC-2003
(1 row)
```

The following example truncates down to the start date of the quarter.

```
SELECT TRUNC(TO_DATE('16-FEB-07','DD-MON-YY'),'Q') "Quarter" FROM DUAL;
```

Quarter

---

```
01-JAN-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following example truncates to the start of the month.

```
SELECT TRUNC(TO_DATE('16-DEC-07','DD-MON-YY'),'MONTH') "Month" FROM DUAL;
```

Month

---

```
01-DEC-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following example truncates down to the start of the week determined by the first day of the year. The first day of 2007 lands on a Monday so the Monday just prior to January 19<sup>th</sup> is January 15<sup>th</sup>.

```
SELECT TRUNC(TO_DATE('19-JAN-07','DD-MON-YY'),'WW') "Week" FROM DUAL;
```

Week

---

```
15-JAN-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following example truncates to the start of an ISO week. An ISO week begins on a Monday. January 2, 2004 falls in the ISO week that starts on Monday, December 29, 2003.

```
SELECT TRUNC(TO_DATE('02-JAN-04','DD-MON-YY'),'IW') "ISO Week" FROM DUAL;
```

ISO Week

---

```
29-DEC-03 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following example truncates to the start of the week where a week is considered to start on the same day as the first day of the month.

```
SELECT TRUNC(TO_DATE('21-MAR-07','DD-MON-YY'),'W') "Week" FROM DUAL;
```

Week

---

```
15-MAR-07 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

The following example truncates to the start of the day.

```
SELECT TRUNC(TO_DATE('04-AUG-07 12:00:00 PM','DD-MON-YY HH:MI:SS AM'),'J')
"Day" FROM DUAL;
```

Day

---

```
04-AUG-07 00:00:00
```

(1 row)

The following example truncates to the start of the week (Sunday).

```
SELECT TRUNC(TO_DATE('09-AUG-07','DD-MON-YY'),'DAY') "Day of Week" FROM DUAL;
```

Day of Week

---

05-AUG-07 00:00:00

(1 row)

The following example truncates to the start of the hour.

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(TRUNC(TO_DATE('09-AUG-07 08:30','DD-MON-YY HH:MI'),'HH'),'DD-MON-YY  
HH24:MI:SS') "Hour" FROM DUAL;
```

Hour

---

09-AUG-07 08:00:00

(1 row)

The following example truncates to the minute.

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(TRUNC(TO_DATE('09-AUG-07 08:30:30','DD-MON-YY  
HH:MI:SS'),'MI'),'DD-MON-YY HH24:MI:SS') "Minute" FROM DUAL;
```

Minute

---

09-AUG-07 08:30:00

(1 row)

### 7.1.3.9 Sequence Manipulation Functions

This section describes Advanced Server's functions for operating on sequence objects. Sequence objects (also called sequence generators or just sequences) are special single-row tables created with the [CREATE SEQUENCE](#) command. A sequence object is usually used to generate unique identifiers for rows of a table. The sequence functions, listed below, provide simple, multiuser-safe methods for obtaining successive sequence values from sequence objects.

```
sequence.NEXTVAL  
sequence.CURRVAL
```

`sequence` is the identifier assigned to the sequence in the [CREATE SEQUENCE](#) command. The following describes the usage of these functions.

#### NEXTVAL

Advance the sequence object to its next value and return that value. This is done atomically: even if multiple sessions execute `NEXTVAL` concurrently, each will safely receive a distinct sequence value.

#### CURRVAL

Return the value most recently obtained by `NEXTVAL` for this sequence in the current session. (An error is reported if `NEXTVAL` has never been called for this sequence in this session.) Notice that because this is returning a session-local value, it gives a predictable answer whether or not other sessions have executed `NEXTVAL` since the current session did.

If a sequence object has been created with default parameters, `NEXTVAL` calls on it will return successive values beginning with 1. Other behaviors can be obtained by using special parameters in the `CREATE SEQUENCE` command.

**Important:** To avoid blocking of concurrent transactions that obtain numbers from the same sequence, a `NEXTVAL` operation is never rolled back; that is, once a value has been fetched it is considered used, even if the transaction that did the `NEXTVAL` later aborts. This means that aborted transactions may leave unused "holes" in the sequence of assigned values.

### 7.1.3.10 Conditional Expressions

The following section describes the SQL-compliant conditional expressions available in Advanced Server.

#### CASE

The SQL `CASE` expression is a generic conditional expression, similar to if/else statements in other languages:

```
CASE WHEN condition THEN result
      [ WHEN ... ]
      [ ELSE result ]
END
```

`CASE` clauses can be used wherever an expression is valid. `condition` is an expression that returns a `BOOLEAN` result. If the result is `TRUE` then the value of the `CASE` expression is the `result` that follows the condition. If the result is `FALSE` any subsequent `WHEN` clauses are searched in the same manner. If `no WHEN condition` is `TRUE` then the value of the `CASE` expression is the `result` in the `ELSE` clause. If the `ELSE` clause is omitted and no condition matches, the result is `null`.

An example:

```
SELECT * FROM test;
```

```
a
---
1
2
3
(3 rows)
```

```
SELECT a,
CASE WHEN a=1 THEN 'one'
      WHEN a=2 THEN 'two'
      ELSE 'other'
END
FROM test;
```

```
a | case
---+-----
1 | one
2 | two
3 | other
(3 rows)
```

The data types of all the `result` expressions must be convertible to a single output type.

The following “simple” `CASE` expression is a specialized variant of the general form above:

```
CASE expression
  WHEN value THEN result
  [WHEN ... ]
  [ELSE result]
END
```

The `expression` is computed and compared to all the `value` specifications in the `WHEN` clauses until one is found that is equal. If no match is found, the `result` in the `ELSE` clause (or a null value) is returned.

The example above can be written using the simple `CASE` syntax:

```
SELECT a,
  CASE a WHEN 1 THEN 'one'
    WHEN 2 THEN 'two'
    ELSE 'other'
  END
FROM test;
```

```
a | case
---+-----
1 | one
2 | two
3 | other
(3 rows)
```

A `CASE` expression does not evaluate any subexpressions that are not needed to determine the result. For example, this is a possible way of avoiding a division-by-zero failure:

```
SELECT ... WHERE CASE WHEN x <> 0 THEN y/x > 1.5 ELSE false END;
```

## COALESCE

The `COALESCE` function returns the first of its arguments that is not null. Null is returned only if all arguments are null.

```
COALESCE(value [, value2] ... )
```

It is often used to substitute a default value for null values when data is retrieved for display or further computation. For example:

```
SELECT COALESCE(description, short_description, '(none)') ...
```

Like a `CASE` expression, `COALESCE` will not evaluate arguments that are not needed to determine the result; that is, arguments to the right of the first non-null argument are not evaluated. This SQL-standard function

provides capabilities similar to `NVL` and `IFNULL`, which are used in some other database systems.

## NULLIF

The `NULLIF` function returns a null value if `value1` and `value2` are equal; otherwise it returns `value1`.

```
NULLIF(value1, value2)
```

This can be used to perform the inverse operation of the `COALESCE` example given above:

```
SELECT NULLIF(value1, '(none)') ...
```

If `value1` is (none), return a null, otherwise return `value1`.

## NVL

The `NVL` function returns the first of its arguments that is not null. `NVL` evaluates the first expression; if that expression evaluates to `NULL`, `NVL` returns the second expression.

```
NVL(expr1, expr2)
```

The return type is the same as the argument types; all arguments must have the same data type (or be coercible to a common type). `NVL` returns `NULL` if all arguments are `NULL`.

The following example computes a bonus for non-commissioned employees. If an employee is a commissioned employee, this expression returns the employees commission; if the employee is not a commissioned employee (that is, his commission is `NULL`), this expression returns a bonus that is 10% of his salary.

```
bonus = NVL(emp.commission, emp.salary * .10)
```

## NVL2

`NVL2` evaluates an expression, and returns either the second or third expression, depending on the value of the first expression. If the first expression is not `NULL`, `NVL2` returns the value in `expr2`; if the first expression is `NULL`, `NVL2` returns the value in `expr3`.

```
NVL2(expr1, expr2, expr3)
```

The return type is the same as the argument types; all arguments must have the same data type (or be coercible to a common type).

The following example computes a bonus for commissioned employees - if a given employee is a commissioned employee, this expression returns an amount equal to 110% of his commission; if the employee is not a commissioned employee (that is, his commission is `NULL`), this expression returns `0`.

```
bonus = NVL2(emp.commission, emp.commission * 1.1, 0)
```

## GREATEST and LEAST

The `GREATEST` and `LEAST` functions select the largest or smallest value from a list of any number of expressions.

```
GREATEST(value [, value2] ... )
LEAST(value [, value2] ... )
```

The expressions must all be convertible to a common data type, which will be the type of the result. Null values in the list are ignored. The result will be null only if all the expressions evaluate to null.

**Note:** The `GREATEST` and `LEAST` are not in the SQL standard, but are a common extension.

### 7.1.3.11 Aggregate Functions

Aggregate functions compute a single result value from a set of input values. The built-in aggregate functions are listed in the following tables.

Function	Argument Type	Return Type	Description
AVG (expression)	INTEGER, REAL, DOUBLE PRECISION, NUMBER	NUMBER for any integer type, DOUBLE PRECISION for a floating-point argument, otherwise the same as the argument data type	The average (arithmetic mean) of all input values
COUNT(*)		BIGINT	Number of input rows
COUNT (expression)	Any	BIGINT	Number of input rows for which the value of expression is not null
MAX (expression)	Any numeric, string, date/time, or bytea type	Same as argument type	Maximum value of expression across all input values
MEDIAN (expression)	BIGINT, DOUBLE PRECISION, INTEGER, INTERVAL, NUMERIC, REAL, SMALLINT, TIMESTAMP, TIMESTAMPZ	NUMBER for any integer type, DOUBLE PRECISION for a floating-point argument, otherwise the same as the argument data type	Identifies the middle value of an expression
MIN (expression)	Any numeric, string, date/time, or bytea type	Same as argument type	Minimum value of expression across all input values
SUM (expression)	INTEGER, REAL, DOUBLE PRECISION, NUMBER	BIGINT for SMALLINT or INTEGER arguments, NUMBER for BIGINT arguments, DOUBLE PRECISION for floating-point arguments, otherwise the same as the argument data type	Sum of expression across all input values

It should be noted that except for `COUNT`, these functions return a null value when no rows are selected. In particular, `SUM` of no rows returns null, not zero as one might expect. The `COALESCE` function may be used to substitute zero for null when necessary.

The following table shows the aggregate functions typically used in statistical analysis. (These are separated out merely to avoid cluttering the listing of more-commonly-used aggregates.) Where the description mentions `N`, it means the number of input rows for which all the input expressions are non-null. In all cases, null is returned if the computation is meaningless, for example when `N` is zero.

Function	Argument Type	Return Type	Description
CORR(Y, X)	DOUBLE PRECISION	DOUBLE PRECISION	Correlation coefficient
COVAR_POP(Y, X)	DOUBLE PRECISION	DOUBLE PRECISION	Population covariance
COVAR_SAMP(Y, X)	DOUBLE PRECISION	DOUBLE PRECISION	Sample covariance
REGR_AVGX(Y, X)	DOUBLE PRECISION	DOUBLE PRECISION	Average of the independent variable ( $\text{sum}(X) / N$ )
REGR_AVGY(Y, X)	DOUBLE PRECISION	DOUBLE PRECISION	Average of the dependent variable ( $\text{sum}(Y) / N$ )
REGR_COUNT(Y, X)	DOUBLE PRECISION	DOUBLE PRECISION	Number of input rows in which both expressions are nonnull
REGR_INTERCEPT(Y, X)	DOUBLE PRECISION	DOUBLE PRECISION	y-intercept of the least-squares-fit linear equation determined by the (X, Y) pairs
REGR_R2(Y, X)	DOUBLE PRECISION	DOUBLE PRECISION	Square of the correlation coefficient
REGR_SLOPE(Y, X)	DOUBLE PRECISION	DOUBLE PRECISION	Slope of the least-squares-fit linear equation determined by the (X, Y) pairs
REGR_SXX(Y, X)	DOUBLE PRECISION	DOUBLE PRECISION	Sum $(X^2) - \text{sum}(X)^2 / N$ ("sum of squares" of the independent variable)
REGR_SXY(Y, X)	DOUBLE PRECISION	DOUBLE PRECISION	Sum $(X*Y) - \text{sum}(X) * \text{sum}(Y) / N$ ("sum of products" of independent times dependent variable)
REGR_SYY(Y, X)	DOUBLE PRECISION	DOUBLE PRECISION	Sum $(Y^2) - \text{sum}(Y)^2 / N$ ("sum of squares" of the dependent variable)
STDDEV(expression)	INTEGER, REAL, DOUBLE PRECISION, NUMBER	DOUBLE PRECISION for floating-point arguments, otherwise NUMBER	Historic alias for <a href="#">STDDEV_SAMP</a>
STDDEV_POP(expression)	INTEGER, REAL, DOUBLE PRECISION, NUMBER	DOUBLE PRECISION for floating-point arguments, otherwise NUMBER	Population standard deviation of the input values
STDDEV_SAMP(expression)	INTEGER, REAL, DOUBLE PRECISION, NUMBER	DOUBLE PRECISION for floating-point arguments, otherwise NUMBER	Sample standard deviation of the input values
VARIANCE(expression)	INTEGER, REAL, DOUBLE PRECISION, NUMBER	DOUBLE PRECISION for floating-point arguments, otherwise NUMBER	Historical alias for <a href="#">VAR_SAMP</a>
VAR_POP(expression)	INTEGER, REAL, DOUBLE PRECISION, NUMBER	DOUBLE PRECISION for floating-point arguments, otherwise NUMBER	Population variance of the input values (square of the population standard deviation)
VAR_SAMP(expression)	INTEGER, REAL, DOUBLE PRECISION, NUMBER	DOUBLE PRECISION for floating-point arguments, otherwise NUMBER	Sample variance of the input values (square of the sample standard deviation)

## LISTAGG

Advanced Server has added the `LISTAGG` function to support string aggregation. `LISTAGG` is an aggregate function that concatenates data from multiple rows into a single row in an ordered manner. You can optionally include a custom delimiter for your data.

The `LISTAGG` function mandates the use of an `ORDER BY` clause under a `WITHIN GROUP` clause to concatenate values of the measure column, and then generate the ordered aggregated data.

### Objective

- `LISTAGG` can be used without any grouping. In this case, the `LISTAGG` function operates on all rows in a table and returns a single row.
- `LISTAGG` can be used with the `GROUP BY` clause. In this case, the `LISTAGG` function operates on each group and returns an aggregated output for each group.
- `LISTAGG` can be used with the `OVER` clause. In this case, the `LISTAGG` function partitions a query result set into groups based on the expression in the `query_partition_by_clause` and then aggregates data in each group.

### Synopsis

```
LISTAGG( <measure_expr> [, <delimiter> ] ) WITHIN GROUP( <order_by_clause> )
[ OVER <query_partition_by_clause> ]
```

### Parameters

`measure_expr`

`measure_expr` (mandatory) specifies the column or expression that assigns a value to aggregate. `NULL` values are ignored.

`delimiter`

`delimiter` (optional) specifies a string that separates the concatenated values in the result row. The `delimiter` can be a `NULL` value, string, character literal, column name, or constant expression. If ignored, the `LISTAGG` function uses a `NULL` value by default.

`order_by_clause`

`order_by_clause` (mandatory) determines the sort order in which the concatenated values are returned.

`query_partition_by_clause`

`query_partition_by_clause` (optional) allows `LISTAGG` function to be used as an analytic function and sets the range of records for each group in the `OVER` clause.

### Return Type

The `LISTAGG` function returns a string value.

### Examples

The following example concatenates the values in the `EMP` table and lists all the employees separated by a `delimiter` comma.

First, create a table named `EMP` and then insert records into the `EMP` table.

```
edb=# CREATE TABLE EMP
edb-#   (EMPNO NUMBER(4) NOT NULL,
edb(#     ENAME VARCHAR2(10),
edb(#     JOB VARCHAR2(9),
```

```
edb(#      MGR NUMBER(4),
edb(#      HIREDATE DATE,
edb(#      SAL NUMBER(7, 2),
edb(#      COMM NUMBER(7, 2),
edb(#      DEPTNO NUMBER(2));
CREATE TABLE
```

```
edb=# INSERT INTO EMP VALUES
edb-#      (7499, 'ALLEN', 'SALESMAN', 7698,
edb(#      TO_DATE('20-FEB-1981', 'DD-MON-YYYY'), 1600, 300, 30);
INSERT 0 1
edb=# INSERT INTO EMP VALUES
edb-#      (7521, 'WARD', 'SALESMAN', 7698,
edb(#      TO_DATE('22-FEB-1981', 'DD-MON-YYYY'), 1250, 500, 30);
INSERT 0 1
edb=# INSERT INTO EMP VALUES
edb-#      (7566, 'JONES', 'MANAGER', 7839,
edb(#      TO_DATE('2-APR-1981', 'DD-MON-YYYY'), 2975, NULL, 20);
INSERT 0 1
edb=# INSERT INTO EMP VALUES
edb-#      (7654, 'MARTIN', 'SALESMAN', 7698,
edb(#      TO_DATE('28-SEP-1981', 'DD-MON-YYYY'), 1250, 1400, 30);
INSERT 0 1
edb=# INSERT INTO EMP VALUES
edb-#      (7698, 'BLAKE', 'MANAGER', 7839,
edb(#      TO_DATE('1-MAY-1981', 'DD-MON-YYYY'), 2850, NULL, 30);
INSERT 0 1
```

```
edb=# SELECT LISTAGG(ENAME, ',') WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY ENAME) FROM EMP;
listagg
```

```
-----+
ALLEN,BLAKE,JONES,MARTIN,WARD
(1 row)
```

The following example uses `PARTITION BY` clause with `LISTAGG` in `EMP` table and generates output based on a partition by `DEPTNO` that applies to each partition and not on the entire table.

```
edb=# SELECT DISTINCT DEPTNO, LISTAGG(ENAME, ',') WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY
ENAME) OVER(PARTITION BY DEPTNO) FROM EMP;
deptno | listagg
-----+-----
 30 | ALLEN,BLAKE,MARTIN,WARD
 20 | JONES
(2 rows)
```

The following example is identical to the previous example, except it includes the `GROUP BY` clause.

```
edb=# SELECT DEPTNO, LISTAGG(ENAME, ',') WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY ENAME) FROM
EMP GROUP BY DEPTNO;
deptno | listagg
-----+-----
 20 | JONES
 30 | ALLEN,BLAKE,MARTIN,WARD
(2 rows)
```

## MEDIAN

The `MEDIAN` function calculates the middle value of an expression from a given range of values; `NULL` values are ignored. The `MEDIAN` function returns an error if a query does not reference the user-defined table.

### Objective

- `MEDIAN` can be used without any grouping. In this case, the `MEDIAN` function operates on all rows in a table and returns a single row.
- `MEDIAN` can be used with the `OVER` clause. In this case, the `MEDIAN` function partitions a query result set into groups based on the `expression` specified in the `PARTITION BY` clause and then aggregates data in each group.

### Synopsis

```
MEDIAN(<median_expression>) [ OVER ([ PARTITION BY... ])]
```

### Parameters

`median_expression`

`median_expression` (mandatory) is a target column or expression that the `MEDIAN` function operates on and returns a median value. It can be a numeric, datetime, or interval data type.

`PARTITION BY`

`PARTITION BY` clause (optional) allows a `MEDIAN` function to be used as an analytic function and sets the range of records for each group in the `OVER` clause.

### Return Types

The return type is determined by the input data type of `expression`. The following table illustrates the return type for each input type.

Input Type	Return Type
<code>BIGINT</code>	<code>NUMERIC</code>
<code>FLOAT, DOUBLE PRECISION</code>	<code>DOUBLE PRECISION</code>
<code>INTEGER</code>	<code>NUMERIC</code>
<code>INTERVAL</code>	<code>INTERVAL</code>
<code>NUMERIC</code>	<code>NUMERIC</code>
<code>REAL</code>	<code>REAL</code>
<code>SMALLINT</code>	<code>NUMERIC</code>
<code>TIMESTAMP</code>	<code>TIMESTAMP</code>
<code>TIMESTAMPTZ</code>	<code>TIMESTAMPTZ</code>

### Examples

In the following example, a query returns the median salary for each department in the `EMP` table:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM EMP;
empno|ename|job|mgr|hiredate|sal|comm|deptno
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
7369 |SMITH|CLERK|7902|17-DEC-80 00:00:00| 800.00|     | 20
7499 |ALLEN|SALESMAN|7698|20-FEB-81 00:00:00|1600.00|300.0| 30
7521 |WARD|SALESMAN|7698|22-FEB-81 00:00:00|1250.00|500.00| 30
7566 |JONES|MANAGER|7839|02-APR-81 00:00:00|2975.00|     | 20
```

```
7654 | MARTIN| SALESMAN| 7698 | 28-SEP-81 00:00:00| 1250.00| 1400.00| 30
(5 rows)
```

```
edb=# SELECT MEDIAN (SAL) FROM EMP;
median
-----
1250
(1 row)
```

The following example uses `PARTITION BY` clause with `MEDIAN` in `EMP` table and returns the median salary based on a partition by `DEPTNO`:

```
edb=# SELECT EMPNO, ENAME, DEPTNO, MEDIAN (SAL) OVER (PARTITION BY DEPTNO)
FROM EMP;
empno | ename | deptno | median
-----+-----+-----+
7369 | SMITH | 20 | 1887.5
7566 | JONES | 20 | 1887.5
7499 | ALLEN | 30 | 1250
7521 | WARD | 30 | 1250
7654 | MARTIN | 30 | 1250
(5 rows)
```

The `MEDIAN` function can be compared with `PERCENTILE_CONT`. In the following example, `MEDIAN` generates the same result as `PERCENTILE_CONT`:

```
edb=# SELECT MEDIAN (SAL), PERCENTILE_CONT(0.5) WITHIN GROUP(ORDER BY SAL)
FROM EMP;
median | percentile_cont
-----+-----
1250 |      1250
(1 row)
```

## STATS\_MODE

The `STATS_MODE` function takes a set of values as an argument and returns the value that occurs with the highest frequency. If multiple values are appearing with the same frequency, the `STATS_MODE` function arbitrarily chooses the first value and returns only that one value.

### Objective

- `STATS_MODE` function can be used without any grouping. In this case, the `STATS_MODE` function operates on all the rows in a table and returns a single value.
- `STATS_MODE` can be used as an ordered-set aggregate function using the `WITHIN GROUP` clause. In this case, the `STATS_MODE` function operates on the ordered data set.
- `STATS_MODE` can be used with the `GROUP BY` clause. In this case, the `STATS_MODE` function operates on each group and returns the most frequent and aggregated output for each group.

### Synopsis

```
STATS_MODE( <expr> )
```

OR

```
STATS_MODE() WITHIN GROUP ( ORDER BY sort_expression )
```

## Parameters

### expr

An expression or value to assign to the column.

## Return Type

The `STATS_MODE` function returns a value that appears frequently. However, if all the values of a column are `NULL`, the `STATS_MODE` returns `NULL`.

## Examples

The following example returns the mode of salary in the `EMP` table:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM EMP;
empno|ename|job|mgr|hiredate|sal|comm|deptno
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
7369 |SMITH|CLERK|7902|17-DEC-80 00:00:00|800.00|| 20
7499 |ALLEN|SALESMAN|7698|20-FEB-81 00:00:00|1600.00|300.0| 30
7521 |WARD|SALESMAN|7698|22-FEB-81 00:00:00|1250.00|500.00| 30
7566 |JONES|MANAGER|7839|02-APR-81 00:00:00|2975.00|| 20
7654 |MARTIN|SALESMAN|7698|28-SEP-81 00:00:00|1250.00|1400.00| 30
(5 rows)
```

```
edb=# SELECT STATS_MODE(SAL) FROM EMP;
stats_mode
-----
1250.00
(1 row)
```

The following example uses `GROUP BY` and `ORDER BY` clause with `STATS_MODE` in `EMP` table and returns the salary based on a partition by `DEPTNO`:

```
edb=# SELECT STATS_MODE(SAL) FROM EMP GROUP BY DEPTNO ORDER BY DEPTNO;
stats_mode
-----
800.00
1250.00
(2 rows)
```

The following example uses the `WITHIN GROUP` clause with the `STATS_MODE` function to perform aggregation on the ordered data set.

```
SELECT STATS_MODE() WITHIN GROUP(ORDER BY SAL) FROM EMP;
stats_mode
-----
1250.00
(1 row)
```

## 7.1.3.12 Subquery Expressions

This section describes the SQL-compliant subquery expressions available in Advanced Server. All of the expression forms documented in this section return Boolean (**TRUE/FALSE**) results.

## EXISTS

The argument of **EXISTS** is an arbitrary **SELECT** statement, or subquery. The subquery is evaluated to determine whether it returns any rows. If it returns at least one row, the result of **EXISTS** is **TRUE**; if the subquery returns no rows, the result of **EXISTS** is **FALSE**.

### **EXISTS(subquery)**

The subquery can refer to variables from the surrounding query, which will act as constants during any one evaluation of the subquery.

The subquery will generally only be executed far enough to determine whether at least one row is returned, not all the way to completion. It is unwise to write a subquery that has any side effects (such as calling sequence functions); whether the side effects occur or not may be difficult to predict.

Since the result depends only on whether any rows are returned, and not on the contents of those rows, the output list of the subquery is normally uninteresting. A common coding convention is to write all **EXISTS** tests in the form **EXISTS(SELECT 1 WHERE ...)**. There are exceptions to this rule however, such as subqueries that use **INTERSECT**.

This simple example is like an inner join on **deptno**, but it produces at most one output row for each **dept** row, even though there are multiple matching **emp** rows:

```
SELECT dname FROM dept WHERE EXISTS (SELECT 1 FROM emp WHERE emp.deptno = dept.deptno);
```

```
dbname
-----
ACCOUNTING
RESEARCH
SALES
(3 rows)
```

## IN

The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly one column. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each row of the subquery result. The result of **IN** is **TRUE** if any equal subquery row is found. The result is **FALSE** if no equal row is found (including the special case where the subquery returns no rows).

### **expression IN (subquery)**

Note that if the left-hand expression yields **NULL**, or if there are no equal right-hand values and at least one right-hand row yields **NULL**, the result of the **IN** construct will be **NULL**, not **FALSE**. This is in accordance with SQL's normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

As with **EXISTS**, it's unwise to assume that the subquery will be evaluated completely.

## NOT IN

The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly one column. The left-hand expression

is evaluated and compared to each row of the subquery result. The result of `NOT IN` is `TRUE` if only unequal subquery rows are found (including the special case where the subquery returns no rows). The result is `FALSE` if any equal row is found.

#### expression NOT IN (subquery)

Note that if the left-hand expression yields `NULL`, or if there are no equal right-hand values and at least one right-hand row yields `NULL`, the result of the `NOT IN` construct will be `NULL`, not `TRUE`. This is in accordance with SQL's normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

As with `EXISTS`, it's unwise to assume that the subquery will be evaluated completely.

## ANY/SOME

The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly one column. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each row of the subquery result using the given operator, which must yield a Boolean result. The result of `ANY` is `TRUE` if any true result is obtained. The result is `FALSE` if no true result is found (including the special case where the subquery returns no rows).

#### expression operator ANY (subquery)

#### expression operator SOME (subquery)

`SOME` is a synonym for `ANY`. `IN` is equivalent to `= ANY`.

Note that if there are no successes and at least one right-hand row yields `NULL` for the operator's result, the result of the `ANY` construct will be `NULL`, not `FALSE`. This is in accordance with SQL's normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

As with `EXISTS`, it's unwise to assume that the subquery will be evaluated completely.

## ALL

The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly one column. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each row of the subquery result using the given operator, which must yield a Boolean result. The result of `ALL` is `TRUE` if all rows yield true (including the special case where the subquery returns no rows). The result is `FALSE` if any false result is found. The result is `NULL` if the comparison does not return `FALSE` for any row, and it returns `NULL` for at least one row.

#### expression operator ALL (subquery)

`NOT IN` is equivalent to `<> ALL`. As with `EXISTS`, it's unwise to assume that the subquery will be evaluated completely.

## 7.2 System Catalog Tables

The following system catalog tables contain definitions of database objects. The layout of the system tables is subject to change; if you are writing an application that depends on information stored in the system tables, it would be prudent to use an existing catalog view, or create a catalog view to isolate the application from changes to the system table.

## dual

The `dual` is a single-row, single-column table that is provided for compatibility with Oracle databases only.

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
dummy	VARCHAR2(1)		Provided for compatibility only.

## edb\_dir

The `edb_dir` table contains one row for each alias that points to a directory created with the `CREATE DIRECTORY` command. A directory is an alias for a pathname that allows a user limited access to the host file system.

You can use a directory to fence a user into a specific directory tree within the file system. For example, the `UTL_FILE` package offers functions that permit a user to read and write files and directories in the host file system, but only allows access to paths that the database administrator has granted access to via a `CREATE DIRECTORY` command.

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
dirname	"name"	not null	The name of the alias.
dirowner	oid	not null	The <code>OID</code> of the user that owns the alias.
dirpath	text		The directory name to which access is granted.
diracl	aclitem[]		The access control list that determines which users may access the alias.

## edb\_password\_history

The `edb_password_history` table contains one row for each password change. The table is shared across all databases within a cluster.

Column	Type	References	Description
passhistroleid	oid	<code>pg_authid.oid</code>	The <code>ID</code> of a role.
passhistpassword	text		Role password in md5 encrypted form.
passhistpasswordsetat	timestamptz		The time the password was set.

## edb\_policy

The `edb_policy` table contains one row for each policy.

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
policyname	name	not null	The policy name.
policygroup	oid	not null	Currently unused.
policyobject	oid	not null	The <code>OID</code> of the table secured by this policy (the <code>object_schema</code> plus the <code>object_name</code> ).
policykind	char	not null	The kind of object secured by this policy: 'r' for a table, 'v' for a view, '=' for a synonym. Currently always 'r'.
policyproc	oid	not null	The <code>OID</code> of the policy function ( <code>function_schema</code> plus <code>policy_function</code> ).

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
policyinsert	boolean	not null	True if the policy is enforced by <code>INSERT</code> statements.
policyselect	boolean	not null	True if the policy is enforced by <code>SELECT</code> statements.
policydelete	boolean	not null	True if the policy is enforced by <code>DELETE</code> statements.
policyupdate	boolean	not null	True if the policy is enforced by <code>UPDATE</code> statements.
policyindex	boolean	not null	Currently unused.
policyenabled	boolean	not null	True if the policy is enabled.
policyupdatecheck	boolean	not null	True if rows updated by an <code>UPDATE</code> statement must satisfy the policy.
policystatic	boolean	not null	Currently unused.
policytype	integer	not null	Currently unused.
policyopts	integer	not null	Currently unused.
policyseccols	int2vector	not null	The column numbers for columns listed in <code>sec_relevant_cols</code> .

## edb\_profile

The `edb_profile` table stores information about the available profiles. `edb_profiles` is shared across all databases within a cluster.

Column	Type	References	Description
oid	oid		Row identifier (hidden attribute; must be explicitly selected).
prfname	name		The name of the profile.
prffailedloginattempts	integer		The number of failed login attempts allowed by the profile. -1 indicates that the value from the default profile should be used. -2 indicates no limit on failed login attempts.
prfpasswordlocktime	integer		The password lock time associated with the profile (in seconds). -1 indicates that the value from the default profile should be used. -2 indicates that the account should be locked permanently.
prfpasswordlifetime	integer		The password life time associated with the profile (in seconds). -1 indicates that the value from the default profile should be used. -2 indicates that the password never expires.
prfpasswordgracetime	integer		The password grace time associated with the profile (in seconds). -1 indicates that the value from the default profile should be used. -2 indicates that the password never expires.
prfpasswordreusetime	integer		The number of seconds that a user must wait before reusing a password. -1 indicates that the value from the default profile should be used. -2 indicates that the old passwords can never be reused.
prfpasswordreusemax	integer		The number of password changes that have to occur before a password can be reused. -1 indicates that the value from the default profile should be used. -2 indicates that the old passwords can never be reused.
prfpasswordallowhashed	integer		The password allow hashed parameter specifies whether an encrypted password to be allowed for use or not. The possible values can be <code>true/on/yes/1</code> , <code>false/off/no/0</code> , and <code>DEFAULT</code> .

Column	Type	References	Description
prfpasswordverifyfuncdb	oid	pg_database.oid	The <b>OID</b> of the database in which the password verify function exists.
prfpasswordverifyfunc	oid	pg_proc.oid	The <b>OID</b> of the password verify function associated with the profile.

## edb\_variable

The `edb_variable` table contains one row for each package level variable (each variable declared within a package).

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
varname	"name"	not null	The name of the variable.
varpackage	oid	not null	The <b>OID</b> of the <code>pg_namespace</code> row that stores the package.
vartype	oid	not null	The <b>OID</b> of the <code>pg_type</code> row that defines the type of the variable.
varaccess	"char"	not null	+ if the variable is visible outside of the package. - if the variable is only visible within the package. Note: Public variables are declared within the package header; private variables are declared within the package body.
varsrcc	text	not null	Contains the source of the variable declaration, including any default value expressions for the variable.
varseq	smallint	not null	The order in which the variable was declared in the package.

## pg\_synonym

The `pg_synonym` table contains one row for each synonym created with the `CREATE SYNONYM` command or `CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM` command.

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
synname	"name"	not null	The name of the synonym.
synnamespace	oid	not null	Replaces <code>synowner</code> . Contains the <b>OID</b> of the <code>pg_namespace</code> row where the synonym is stored.
synowner	oid	not null	The <b>OID</b> of the user that owns the synonym.
synobjschema	"name"	not null	The schema in which the referenced object is defined.
synobjname	"name"	not null	The name of the referenced object.
synlink	text		The (optional) name of the database link in which the referenced object is defined.

## product\_component\_version

The `product_component_version` table contains information about feature compatibility; an application can query this table at installation or run time to verify that features used by the application are available with this deployment.

Column	Type	Description
product	character varying (74)	The name of the product.
version	character varying (74)	The version number of the product.
status	character varying (74)	The status of the release.

## 8 Database Compatibility Stored Procedural Language Guide

Advanced Server's stored procedural language (SPL) is a highly productive, procedural programming language for writing custom procedures, functions, triggers, and packages for Advanced Server that provides:

- full procedural programming functionality to complement the SQL language
- a single, common language to create stored procedures, functions, triggers, and packages for the Advanced Server database
- a seamless development and testing environment
- the use of reusable code
- ease of use

This guide describes the basic elements of an SPL program, before providing an overview of the organization of an SPL program and how it is used to create a procedure or a function. Guides about the other compatibility features (such as triggers or built-in functions) that might be used in conjunction with the SPL language are available at the [EDB website](#).

### 8.1 Character Set

SPL programs are written using the following set of characters:

- Uppercase letters `A` thru `Z` and lowercase letters `a` thru `z`
- Digits `0` thru `9`
- Symbols `( ) + - * / < > = ! ~ ^ ; : . ' @ % , " # $ & _ | { } ? [ ]`
- White space characters tabs, spaces, and carriage returns

Identifiers, expressions, statements, control structures, etc. that comprise the SPL language are written using these characters.

#### Note

The data that can be manipulated by an SPL program is determined by the character set supported by the database encoding.

#### 8.1.1 Case Sensitivity

Keywords and user-defined identifiers that are used in an SPL program are case insensitive. So for example, the statement `DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hello World');` is interpreted to mean the same thing as `dbms_output.put_line('Hello World');` or `Dbms_Output.Put_Line('Hello World');` or `DBMS_output.Put_line('Hello World');`.

Character and string constants, however, are case sensitive as well as any data retrieved from the Advanced Server database or data obtained from other external sources. The statement `DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hello World!');` produces the following output:

Hello World!

However the statement `DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('HELLO WORLD!');` produces the output:

HELLO WORLD!

## 8.1.2 Identifiers

*Identifiers* are user-defined names that are used to identify various elements of an SPL program including variables, cursors, labels, programs, and parameters. The syntax rules for valid identifiers are the same as for identifiers in the SQL language.

An identifier must not be the same as an SPL keyword or a keyword of the SQL language. The following are some examples of valid identifiers:

```
x
last__name
a_$_Sign
Many$$$$$$$$signs_____
THIS_IS_AN_EXTREMELY_LONG_NAME
A1
```

## 8.1.3 Qualifiers

A *qualifier* is a name that specifies the owner or context of an entity that is the object of the qualification. A qualified object is specified as the qualifier name followed by a dot with no intervening white space, followed by the name of the object being qualified with no intervening white space. This syntax is called *dot notation*.

The following is the syntax of a qualified object.

<qualifier.> [ <qualifier.> ]... <object>

`qualifier` is the name of the owner of the object. `object` is the name of the entity belonging to `qualifier`. It is possible to have a chain of qualifications where the preceding qualifier owns the entity identified by the subsequent qualifier(s) and object.

Almost any identifier can be qualified. What an identifier is qualified by depends upon what the identifier represents and the context of its usage.

Some examples of qualification follow:

- Procedure and function names qualified by the schema to which they belong - e.g., `schema_name.procedure_name(...)`
- Trigger names qualified by the schema to which they belong - e.g., `schema_name.trigger_name`
- Column names qualified by the table to which they belong - e.g., `emp.empno`
- Table names qualified by the schema to which they belong - e.g., `public.emp`
- Column names qualified by table and schema - e.g., `public.emp.empno`

As a general rule, wherever a name appears in the syntax of an SPL statement, its qualified name can be used as well. Typically a qualified name would only be used if there is some ambiguity associated with the name. For example, if two procedures with the same name belonging to two different schemas are invoked from within a program or if the same name is used for a table column and SPL variable within the same program.

You should avoid using qualified names if at all possible. In this chapter, the following conventions are adopted to avoid naming conflicts:

- All variables declared in the declaration section of an SPL program are prefixed by `v`. E.g., `v empno`
- All formal parameters declared in a procedure or function definition are prefixed by `p`. E.g., `p empno`
- Column names and table names do not have any special prefix conventions. E.g., column `empno` in table `emp`

## 8.1.4 Constants

*Constants* or *literals* are fixed values that can be used in SPL programs to represent values of various types - e.g., numbers, strings, dates, etc. Constants come in the following types:

- Numeric (Integer and Real)
- Character and String
- Date/time

## 8.1.5 User-Defined PL/SQL Subtypes

Advanced Server supports user-defined PL/SQL subtypes and (subtype) aliases. A subtype is a data type with an optional set of constraints that restrict the values that can be stored in a column of that type. The rules that apply to the type on which the subtype is based are still enforced, but you can use additional constraints to place limits on the precision or scale of values stored in the type.

You can define a subtype in the declaration of a PL function, procedure, anonymous block or package. The syntax is:

```
SUBTYPE <subtype_name> IS <type_name>[(<constraint>)] [NOT NULL]
```

Where `constraint` is:

```
> {<precision> [, <scale>]} | <length>
```

Where:

`subtype_name`

`subtype_name` specifies the name of the subtype.

`type_name`

`type_name` specifies the name of the original type on which the subtype is based. `type_name` may be:

- The name of any of the type supported by Advanced Server.
- The name of any composite type.
- A column anchored by a `%TYPE` operator.

- The name of another subtype.

Include the `constraint` clause to define restrictions for types that support precision or scale.

#### precision

`precision` specifies the total number of digits permitted in a value of the subtype.

#### scale

`scale` specifies the number of fractional digits permitted in a value of the subtype.

#### length

`length` specifies the total length permitted in a value of `CHARACTER`, `VARCHAR`, or `TEXT` base types.

Include the `NOT NULL` clause to specify that `NULL` values may not be stored in a column of the specified subtype.

Note that a subtype that is based on a column will inherit the column size constraints, but the subtype will not inherit `NOT NULL` or `CHECK` constraints.

## Unconstrained Subtypes

To create an unconstrained subtype, use the `SUBTYPE` command to specify the new subtype name and the name of the type on which the subtype is based. For example, the following command creates a subtype named `address` that has all of the attributes of the type, `CHAR`:

```
SUBTYPE address IS CHAR;
```

You can also create a subtype (constrained or unconstrained) that is a subtype of another subtype:

```
SUBTYPE cust_address IS address NOT NULL;
```

This command creates a subtype named `cust_address` that shares all of the attributes of the `address` subtype. Include the `NOT NULL` clause to specify that a value of the `cust_address` may not be `NULL`.

## Constrained Subtypes

Include a `length` value when creating a subtype that is based on a character type to define the maximum length of the subtype. For example:

```
SUBTYPE acct_name IS VARCHAR (15);
```

This example creates a subtype named `acct_name` that is based on a `VARCHAR` data type, but is limited to 15 characters in length.

Include values for `precision` (to specify the maximum number of digits in a value of the subtype) and optionally, `scale` (to specify the number of digits to the right of the decimal point) when constraining a numeric base type. For example:

```
SUBTYPE acct_balance IS NUMBER (5, 2);
```

This example creates a subtype named `acct_balance` that shares all of the attributes of a `NUMBER` type, but that may not exceed 3 digits to the left of the decimal point and 2 digits to the right of the decimal.

An argument declaration (in a function or procedure header) is a *formal argument*. The value passed to a function or procedure is an *actual argument*. When invoking a function or procedure, the caller provides (0 or more) actual arguments. Each actual argument is assigned to a formal argument that holds the value within the body of the function or procedure.

If a formal argument is declared as a constrained subtype:

- Advanced Server does not enforce subtype constraints when assigning an actual argument to a formal argument when invoking a function.
- Advanced Server enforces subtype constraints when assigning an actual argument to a formal argument when invoking a procedure.

## Using the %TYPE Operator

You can use `%TYPE` notation to declare a subtype anchored to a column. For example:

```
| SUBTYPE emp_type IS emp.empno%TYPE
```

This command creates a subtype named `emp_type` whose base type matches the type of the `empno` column in the `emp` table. A subtype that is based on a column will share the column size constraints; `NOT NULL` and `CHECK` constraints are not inherited.

## Subtype Conversion

Unconstrained subtypes are aliases for the type on which they are based. Any variable of type subtype (unconstrained) is interchangeable with a variable of the base type without conversion, and vice versa.

A variable of a constrained subtype may be interchanged with a variable of the base type without conversion, but a variable of the base type may only be interchanged with a constrained subtype if it complies with the constraints of the subtype. A variable of a constrained subtype may be implicitly converted to another subtype if it is based on the same subtype, and the constraint values are within the values of the subtype to which it is being converted.

## 8.2 SPL Programs

SPL is a procedural, block-structured language. There are four different types of programs that can be created using SPL, namely *procedures*, *functions*, *triggers*, and *packages*.

In addition, SPL is used to create subprograms. A *subprogram* refers to a *subprocedure* or a *subfunction*, which are nearly identical in appearance to procedures and functions, but differ in that procedures and functions are *standalone programs*, which are individually stored in the database and can be invoked by other SPL programs or from PSQL. Subprograms can only be invoked from within the standalone program within which they have been created.

### 8.2.1 Basic SPL Elements

Advanced Server's stored procedural language (SPL) is a highly productive, procedural programming language for writing custom procedures, functions, triggers, and packages for Advanced Server that provides:

- full procedural programming functionality to complement the SQL language
- a single, common language to create stored procedures, functions, triggers, and packages for the Advanced Server database
- a seamless development and testing environment
- the use of reusable code
- ease of use

This guide describes the basic elements of an SPL program, before providing an overview of the organization of an SPL program and how it is used to create a procedure or a function. Guides about the other compatibility

features (such as triggers or built-in functions) that might be used in conjunction with the SPL language are available at the [EDB website](#).

---

### 8.2.1.1 Character Set

SPL programs are written using the following set of characters:

- Uppercase letters `A` thru `Z` and lowercase letters `a` thru `z`
- Digits `0` thru `9`
- Symbols `( ) + - * / < > = ! ~ ^ ; : . ' @ % , " # $ & _ | { } ? [ ]`
- White space characters tabs, spaces, and carriage returns

Identifiers, expressions, statements, control structures, etc. that comprise the SPL language are written using these characters.

#### Note

The data that can be manipulated by an SPL program is determined by the character set supported by the database encoding.

---

### 8.2.1.2 Case Sensitivity

Keywords and user-defined identifiers that are used in an SPL program are case insensitive. So for example, the statement `DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hello World');` is interpreted to mean the same thing as `dbms_output.put_line('Hello World');` or `Dbms_Output.Put_Line('Hello World');` or `DBMS_output.Put_line('Hello World');`.

Character and string constants, however, are case sensitive as well as any data retrieved from the Advanced Server database or data obtained from other external sources. The statement `DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hello World!');` produces the following output:

```
Hello World!
```

However the statement `DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('HELLO WORLD!');` produces the output:

```
HELLO WORLD!
```

### 8.2.1.3 Identifiers

*Identifiers* are user-defined names that are used to identify various elements of an SPL program including variables, cursors, labels, programs, and parameters. The syntax rules for valid identifiers are the same as for

identifiers in the SQL language.

An identifier must not be the same as an SPL keyword or a keyword of the SQL language. The following are some examples of valid identifiers:

```
x
last__name
a_$_Sign
Many$$$$$$$$signs_____
THIS_IS_AN_EXTREMELY_LONG_NAME
A1
```

## 8.2.1.4 Qualifiers

A *qualifier* is a name that specifies the owner or context of an entity that is the object of the qualification. A qualified object is specified as the qualifier name followed by a dot with no intervening white space, followed by the name of the object being qualified with no intervening white space. This syntax is called *dot notation*.

The following is the syntax of a qualified object.

```
<qualifier.> [ <qualifier.> ]... <object>
```

**qualifier** is the name of the owner of the object. **object** is the name of the entity belonging to **qualifier**. It is possible to have a chain of qualifications where the preceding qualifier owns the entity identified by the subsequent qualifier(s) and object.

Almost any identifier can be qualified. What an identifier is qualified by depends upon what the identifier represents and the context of its usage.

Some examples of qualification follow:

- Procedure and function names qualified by the schema to which they belong - e.g., `schema_name.procedure_name(...)`
- Trigger names qualified by the schema to which they belong - e.g., `schema_name.trigger_name`
- Column names qualified by the table to which they belong - e.g., `emp.empno`
- Table names qualified by the schema to which they belong - e.g., `public.emp`
- Column names qualified by table and schema - e.g., `public.emp.empno`

As a general rule, wherever a name appears in the syntax of an SPL statement, its qualified name can be used as well. Typically a qualified name would only be used if there is some ambiguity associated with the name. For example, if two procedures with the same name belonging to two different schemas are invoked from within a program or if the same name is used for a table column and SPL variable within the same program.

You should avoid using qualified names if at all possible. In this chapter, the following conventions are adopted to avoid naming conflicts:

- All variables declared in the declaration section of an SPL program are prefixed by `v`. E.g., `v empno`
- All formal parameters declared in a procedure or function definition are prefixed by `p`. E.g., `p empno`
- Column names and table names do not have any special prefix conventions. E.g., column `empno` in table `emp`

## 8.2.1.5 Constants

*Constants* or *literals* are fixed values that can be used in SPL programs to represent values of various types - e.g., numbers, strings, dates, etc. Constants come in the following types:

- Numeric (Integer and Real)
  - Character and String
  - Date/time
- 

## 8.2.1.6 User-Defined PL/SQL Subtypes

Advanced Server supports user-defined PL/SQL subtypes and (subtype) aliases. A subtype is a data type with an optional set of constraints that restrict the values that can be stored in a column of that type. The rules that apply to the type on which the subtype is based are still enforced, but you can use additional constraints to place limits on the precision or scale of values stored in the type.

You can define a subtype in the declaration of a PL function, procedure, anonymous block or package. The syntax is:

```
SUBTYPE <subtype_name> IS <type_name>[(<constraint>)] [NOT NULL]
```

Where `constraint` is:

> {<precision> [, <scale>]} | <length>

Where:

`subtype_name`

| `subtype_name` specifies the name of the subtype.

`type_name`

| `type_name` specifies the name of the original type on which the subtype is based. `type_name` may be:

- The name of any of the type supported by Advanced Server.
- The name of any composite type.
- A column anchored by a `%TYPE` operator.
- The name of another subtype.

Include the `constraint` clause to define restrictions for types that support precision or scale.

`precision`

| `precision` specifies the total number of digits permitted in a value of the subtype.

`scale`

| `scale` specifies the number of fractional digits permitted in a value of the subtype.

`length`

| `length` specifies the total length permitted in a value of `CHARACTER`, `VARCHAR`, or `TEXT` base types.

Include the `NOT NULL` clause to specify that `NULL` values may not be stored in a column of the specified subtype.

Note that a subtype that is based on a column will inherit the column size constraints, but the subtype will not inherit `NOT NULL` or `CHECK` constraints.

## Unconstrained Subtypes

To create an unconstrained subtype, use the `SUBTYPE` command to specify the new subtype name and the name of the type on which the subtype is based. For example, the following command creates a subtype named `address` that has all of the attributes of the type, `CHAR`:

```
SUBTYPE address IS CHAR;
```

You can also create a subtype (constrained or unconstrained) that is a subtype of another subtype:

```
SUBTYPE cust_address IS address NOT NULL;
```

This command creates a subtype named `cust_address` that shares all of the attributes of the `address` subtype. Include the `NOT NULL` clause to specify that a value of the `cust_address` may not be `NULL`.

## Constrained Subtypes

Include a `length` value when creating a subtype that is based on a character type to define the maximum length of the subtype. For example:

```
SUBTYPE acct_name IS VARCHAR (15);
```

This example creates a subtype named `acct_name` that is based on a `VARCHAR` data type, but is limited to 15 characters in length.

Include values for `precision` (to specify the maximum number of digits in a value of the subtype) and optionally, `scale` (to specify the number of digits to the right of the decimal point) when constraining a numeric base type. For example:

```
SUBTYPE acct_balance IS NUMBER (5, 2);
```

This example creates a subtype named `acct_balance` that shares all of the attributes of a `NUMBER` type, but that may not exceed 3 digits to the left of the decimal point and 2 digits to the right of the decimal.

An argument declaration (in a function or procedure header) is a *formal argument*. The value passed to a function or procedure is an *actual argument*. When invoking a function or procedure, the caller provides (0 or more) actual arguments. Each actual argument is assigned to a formal argument that holds the value within the body of the function or procedure.

If a formal argument is declared as a constrained subtype:

- Advanced Server does not enforce subtype constraints when assigning an actual argument to a formal argument when invoking a function.
- Advanced Server enforces subtype constraints when assigning an actual argument to a formal argument when invoking a procedure.

## Using the %TYPE Operator

You can use `%TYPE` notation to declare a subtype anchored to a column. For example:

```
SUBTYPE emp_type IS emp.empno%TYPE
```

This command creates a subtype named `emp_type` whose base type matches the type of the `empno` column in the `emp` table. A subtype that is based on a column will share the column size constraints; `NOT NULL` and `CHECK` constraints are not inherited.

## Subtype Conversion

Unconstrained subtypes are aliases for the type on which they are based. Any variable of type subtype (unconstrained) is interchangeable with a variable of the base type without conversion, and vice versa.

A variable of a constrained subtype may be interchanged with a variable of the base type without conversion, but a variable of the base type may only be interchanged with a constrained subtype if it complies with the constraints of the subtype. A variable of a constrained subtype may be implicitly converted to another subtype if it is based on the same subtype, and the constraint values are within the values of the subtype to which it is being converted.

### 8.2.2 SPL Block Structure

Regardless of whether the program is a procedure, function, subprogram, or trigger, an SPL program has the same *block* structure. A block consists of up to three sections - an optional declaration section, a mandatory executable section, and an optional exception section. Minimally, a block has an executable section that consists of one or more SPL statements within the keywords, `BEGIN` and `END`.

The optional declaration section is used to declare variables, cursors, types, and subprograms that are used by the statements within the executable and exception sections. Declarations appear just prior to the `BEGIN` keyword of the executable section. Depending upon the context of where the block is used, the declaration section may begin with the keyword `DECLARE`.

You can include an exception section within the `BEGIN - END` block. The exception section begins with the keyword, `EXCEPTION`, and continues until the end of the block in which it appears. If an exception is thrown by a statement within the block, program control goes to the exception section where the thrown exception may or may not be handled depending upon the exception and the contents of the exception section.

The following is the general structure of a block:

```
[[ DECLARE ]
  <pragmas>
  <declarations> ]
BEGIN
  <statements>
[ EXCEPTION
  WHEN <exception_condition> THEN
    <statements> [, ...] ]
END;
```

`pragmas` are the directives (`AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION` is the currently supported pragma). `declarations` are one or more variable, cursor, type, or subprogram declarations that are local to the block. If subprogram declarations are included, they must be declared after all other variable, cursor, and type declarations. Each declaration must be terminated by a semicolon. The use of the keyword `DECLARE` depends upon the context in which the block appears.

`statements` are one or more SPL statements. Each statement must be terminated by a semicolon. The end of the block denoted by the keyword `END` must also be terminated by a semicolon.

If present, the keyword `EXCEPTION` marks the beginning of the exception section. `exception_condition` is a conditional expression testing for one or more types of exceptions. If an exception matches one of the exceptions in `exception_condition`, the `statements` following the `WHEN exception_condition` clause are executed. There may be one or more `WHEN exception_condition` clauses, each followed by `statements`.

Note

A **BEGIN/END** block in itself, is considered a statement; thus, blocks may be nested. The exception section may also contain nested blocks.

The following is the simplest possible block consisting of the **NULL** statement within the executable section. The **NULL** statement is an executable statement that does nothing.

```
BEGIN
  NULL;
END;
```

The following block contains a declaration section as well as the executable section.

```
DECLARE
  v_numerator  NUMBER(2);
  v_denominator NUMBER(2);
  v_result      NUMBER(5,2);
BEGIN
  v_numerator := 75;
  v_denominator := 14;
  v_result := v_numerator / v_denominator;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_numerator || ' divided by ' || v_denominator ||
    ' is ' || v_result);
END;
```

In this example, three numeric variables are declared of data type **NUMBER**. Values are assigned to two of the variables, and one number is divided by the other, storing the results in a third variable which is then displayed. If executed, the output would be:

```
75 divided by 14 is 5.36
```

The following block consists of a declaration, an executable, and an exception:

```
DECLARE
  v_numerator  NUMBER(2);
  v_denominator NUMBER(2);
  v_result      NUMBER(5,2);
BEGIN
  v_numerator := 75;
  v_denominator := 0;
  v_result := v_numerator / v_denominator;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_numerator || ' divided by ' || v_denominator ||
    ' is ' || v_result);
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('An exception occurred');
END;
```

The following output shows that the statement within the exception section is executed as a result of the division by zero.

```
An exception occurred
```

## 8.2.3 Anonymous Blocks

Blocks are typically written as part of a procedure, function, subprogram, or trigger. Procedure, function, and trigger programs are named and stored in the database for re-use. For quick (one-time) execution (such as testing), you can simply enter the block without providing a name or storing it in the database.

A block of this type is called an *anonymous block*. An anonymous block is unnamed and is not stored in the database. Once the block has been executed and erased from the application buffer, it cannot be re-executed unless the block code is re-entered into the application.

Typically, the same block of code will be re-executed many times. In order to run a block of code repeatedly without the necessity of re-entering the code each time, with some simple modifications, an anonymous block can be turned into a procedure or function. The following sections discuss how to create a procedure or function that can be stored in the database and invoked repeatedly by another procedure, function, or application program.

## 8.2.4 Procedures Overview

Procedures are standalone SPL programs that are invoked or called as an individual SPL program statement. When called, procedures may optionally receive values from the caller in the form of input parameters and optionally return values to the caller in the form of output parameters.

### 8.2.4.1 Creating a Procedure

The `CREATE PROCEDURE` command defines and names a standalone procedure that will be stored in the database.

If a schema name is included, then the procedure is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the new procedure must not match any existing procedure with the same input argument types in the same schema. However, procedures of different input argument types may share a name (this is called *overloading*). (Overloading of procedures is an Advanced Server feature - overloading of stored, standalone procedures is not compatible with Oracle databases.)

To update the definition of an existing procedure, use `CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE`. It is not possible to change the name or argument types of a procedure this way (if you tried, you would actually be creating a new, distinct procedure). When using `OUT` parameters, you cannot change the types of any `OUT` parameters except by dropping the procedure.

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] PROCEDURE <name> [ (<parameters>) ]
[
    IMMUTABLE
    | STABLE
    | VOLATILE
    | DETERMINISTIC
    | [ NOT ] LEAKPROOF
    | CALLED ON NULL INPUT
    | RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT
    | STRICT
```

```

| [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER
| [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER
| AUTHID DEFINER
| AUTHID CURRENT_USER
| PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }
| COST <execution_cost>
| ROWS <result_rows>
| SET <configuration_parameter>
  { TO <value> | = <value> | FROM CURRENT }
...
{ IS | AS }
[ PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION; ]
[ <declarations> ]
BEGIN
<statements>
END [ <name> ];

```

**Where:****name**

**name** is the identifier of the procedure.

**parameters**

**parameters** is a list of formal parameters.

**declarations**

**declarations** are variable, cursor, type, or subprogram declarations. If subprogram declarations are included, they must be declared after all other variable, cursor, and type declarations.

**statements**

**statements** are SPL program statements (the **BEGIN - END** block may contain an **EXCEPTION** section).

**IMMUTABLE****STABLE****VOLATILE**

These attributes inform the query optimizer about the behavior of the procedure; you can specify only one choice. **VOLATILE** is the default behavior.

**IMMUTABLE** indicates that the procedure cannot modify the database and always reaches the same result when given the same argument values; it does not do database lookups or otherwise use information not directly present in its argument list. If you include this clause, any call of the procedure with all-constant arguments can be immediately replaced with the procedure value.

**STABLE** indicates that the procedure cannot modify the database, and that within a single table scan, it will consistently return the same result for the same argument values, but that its result could change across SQL statements. This is the appropriate selection for procedures that depend on database lookups, parameter variables (such as the current time zone), etc.

**VOLATILE** indicates that the procedure value can change even within a single table scan, so no optimizations can be made. Please note that any function that has side-effects must be classified volatile, even if its result is quite predictable, to prevent calls from being optimized away.

**DETERMINISTIC**

**DETERMINISTIC** is a synonym for **IMMUTABLE**. A **DETERMINISTIC** procedure cannot modify the database and always reaches the same result when given the same argument values; it does not do database lookups or otherwise use information not directly present in its argument list. If you include this clause, any call of the procedure with all-constant arguments can be immediately replaced with the procedure value.

#### [ NOT ] LEAKPROOF

A **LEAKPROOF** procedure has no side effects, and reveals no information about the values used to call the procedure.

#### CALLED ON NULL INPUT

#### RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT

#### STRICT

**CALLED ON NULL INPUT** (the default) indicates that the procedure will be called normally when some of its arguments are **NULL**. It is the author's responsibility to check for **NULL** values if necessary and respond appropriately.

**RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT** or **STRICT** indicates that the procedure always returns **NULL** whenever any of its arguments are **NULL**. If these clauses are specified, the procedure is not executed when there are **NULL** arguments; instead a **NULL** result is assumed automatically.

#### [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER

**SECURITY DEFINER** specifies that the procedure will execute with the privileges of the user that created it; this is the default. The key word **EXTERNAL** is allowed for SQL conformance, but is optional.

#### [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER

The **SECURITY INVOKER** clause indicates that the procedure will execute with the privileges of the user that calls it. The key word **EXTERNAL** is allowed for SQL conformance, but is optional.

#### AUTHID DEFINER

#### AUTHID CURRENT\_USER

The **AUTHID DEFINER** clause is a synonym for **[EXTERNAL] SECURITY DEFINER**. If the **AUTHID** clause is omitted or if **AUTHID DEFINER** is specified, the rights of the procedure owner are used to determine access privileges to database objects.

The **AUTHID CURRENT\_USER** clause is a synonym for **[EXTERNAL] SECURITY INVOKER**. If **AUTHID CURRENT\_USER** is specified, the rights of the current user executing the procedure are used to determine access privileges.

#### PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }

The **PARALLEL** clause enables the use of parallel sequential scans (parallel mode). A parallel sequential scan uses multiple workers to scan a relation in parallel during a query in contrast to a serial sequential scan.

When set to **UNSAFE**, the procedure cannot be executed in parallel mode. The presence of such a procedure forces a serial execution plan. This is the default setting if the **PARALLEL** clause is omitted.

When set to **RESTRICTED**, the procedure can be executed in parallel mode, but the execution is restricted to the parallel group leader. If the qualification for any particular relation has anything that is parallel restricted, that relation won't be chosen for parallelism.

When set to **SAFE**, the procedure can be executed in parallel mode with no restriction.

#### COST execution\_cost

`execution_cost` is a positive number giving the estimated execution cost for the procedure, in units of `cpu_operator_cost`. If the procedure returns a set, this is the cost per returned row. Larger values cause the planner to try to avoid evaluating the function more often than necessary.

### ROWS result\_rows

`result_rows` is a positive number giving the estimated number of rows that the planner should expect the procedure to return. This is only allowed when the procedure is declared to return a set. The default assumption is 1000 rows.

### SET configuration\_parameter { TO value | = value | FROM CURRENT }

The `SET` clause causes the specified configuration parameter to be set to the specified value when the procedure is entered, and then restored to its prior value when the procedure exits. `SET FROM CURRENT` saves the session's current value of the parameter as the value to be applied when the procedure is entered.

If a `SET` clause is attached to a procedure, then the effects of a `SET LOCAL` command executed inside the procedure for the same variable are restricted to the procedure; the configuration parameter's prior value is restored at procedure exit. An ordinary `SET` command (without `LOCAL`) overrides the `SET` clause, much as it would do for a previous `SET LOCAL` command, with the effects of such a command persisting after procedure exit, unless the current transaction is rolled back.

### PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION

`PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION` is the directive that sets the procedure as an autonomous transaction.

#### Note

The `STRICT`, `LEAKPROOF`, `PARALLEL`, `COST`, `ROWS` and `SET` keywords provide extended functionality for Advanced Server and are not supported by Oracle.

#### Note

By default, stored procedures are created as `SECURITY DEFINERS`, but when written in plpgsql, the stored procedures are created as `SECURITY INVOKERS`.

#### Example

The following is an example of a simple procedure that takes no parameters.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE simple_procedure
IS
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('That''s all folks!');
END simple_procedure;
```

The procedure is stored in the database by entering the procedure code in Advanced Server.

The following example demonstrates using the `AUTHID DEFINER` and `SET` clauses in a procedure declaration. The `update_salary` procedure conveys the privileges of the role that defined the procedure to the role that is calling the procedure (while the procedure executes):

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE update_salary(id INT, new_salary NUMBER)
  SET SEARCH_PATH = 'public' SET WORK_MEM = '1MB'
  AUTHID DEFINER IS
BEGIN
  UPDATE emp SET salary = new_salary WHERE emp_id = id;
END;
```

Include the `SET` clause to set the procedure's search path to `public` and the work memory to `1MB`. Other procedures, functions and objects will not be affected by these settings.

In this example, the `AUTHID DEFINER` clause temporarily grants privileges to a role that might otherwise not be allowed to execute the statements within the procedure. To instruct the server to use the privileges associated with the role invoking the procedure, replace the `AUTHID DEFINER` clause with the `AUTHID CURRENT_USER` clause.

## 8.2.4.2 Calling a Procedure

A procedure can be invoked from another SPL program by simply specifying the procedure name followed by its parameters, if any, followed by a semicolon.

```
<name> [ ([ <parameters> ]) ];
```

### Where:

`name` is the identifier of the procedure.

`parameters` is a list of actual parameters.

### Note

If there are no actual parameters to be passed, the procedure may be called with an empty parameter list, or the opening and closing parenthesis may be omitted entirely.

### Note

The syntax for calling a procedure is the same as in the preceding syntax diagram when executing it with the `EXEC` command in PSQL or EDB\*Plus. See the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Tools and Utilities Guide* for information about the `EXEC` command.

The following is an example of calling the procedure from an anonymous block:

```
BEGIN
    simple_procedure;
END;
```

That's all folks!

### Note

Each application has its own unique way to call a procedure. For example, in a Java application, the application programming interface, JDBC, is used.

## 8.2.4.3 Deleting a Procedure

A procedure can be deleted from the database using the `DROP PROCEDURE` command.

```
DROP PROCEDURE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ (<parameters>) ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ];
```

Where `name` is the name of the procedure to be dropped.

#### Note

The specification of the parameter list is required in Advanced Server under certain circumstances such as if this is an overloaded procedure. Oracle requires that the parameter list always be omitted.

#### Note

Usage of `IF EXISTS`, `CASCADE`, or `RESTRICT` is not compatible with Oracle databases. See the `DROP PROCEDURE` command in the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Reference Guide* for information on these options.

The previously created procedure is dropped in this example:

```
DROP PROCEDURE simple_procedure;
```

## 8.2.5 Functions Overview

Functions are standalone SPL programs that are invoked as expressions. When evaluated, a function returns a value that is substituted in the expression in which the function is embedded. Functions may optionally take values from the calling program in the form of input parameters. In addition to the fact that the function, itself, returns a value, a function may optionally return additional values to the caller in the form of output parameters. The use of output parameters in functions, however, is not an encouraged programming practice.

### 8.2.5.1 Creating a Function

The `CREATE FUNCTION` command defines and names a standalone function that will be stored in the database.

If a schema name is included, then the function is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the new function must not match any existing function with the same input argument types in the same schema. However, functions of different input argument types may share a name (this is called *overloading*). (Overloading of functions is an Advanced Server feature - overloading of stored, standalone functions is not compatible with Oracle databases).

To update the definition of an existing function, use `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION`. It is not possible to change the name or argument types of a function this way (if you tried, you would actually be creating a new, distinct function). Also, `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION` will not let you change the return type of an existing function. To do that, you must drop and recreate the function. Also when using `OUT` parameters, you cannot change the types of any `OUT` parameters except by dropping the function.

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] FUNCTION <name> [ (<parameters>) ]
RETURN <data_type>
[
    IMMUTABLE
```

```

| STABLE
| VOLATILE
| DETERMINISTIC
| [ NOT ] LEAKPROOF
| CALLED ON NULL INPUT
| RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT
| STRICT
| [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER
| [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER
| AUTHID DEFINER
| AUTHID CURRENT_USER
| PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }
| COST <execution_cost>
| ROWS <result_rows>
| SET <configuration_parameter>
  { TO <value> | = <value> | FROM CURRENT }
...
{ IS | AS }
[ PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION; ]
[ <declarations> ]
BEGIN
<statements>
END [ <name> ];

```

**Where:****name**

**name** is the identifier of the function.

**parameters**

**parameters** is a list of formal parameters.

**data\_type**

**data\_type** is the data type of the value returned by the function's **RETURN** statement.

**declarations**

**declarations** are variable, cursor, type, or subprogram declarations. If subprogram declarations are included, they must be declared after all other variable, cursor, and type declarations.

**statements**

**statements** are SPL program statements (the **BEGIN - END** block may contain an **EXCEPTION** section).

**IMMUTABLE****STABLE****VOLATILE**

These attributes inform the query optimizer about the behavior of the function; you can specify only one choice. **VOLATILE** is the default behavior.

**IMMUTABLE** indicates that the function cannot modify the database and always reaches the same result when given the same argument values; it does not do database lookups or otherwise use information not directly present in its argument list. If you include this clause, any call of the function with all-constant arguments can be immediately replaced with the function value.

**STABLE** indicates that the function cannot modify the database, and that within a single table scan, it will consistently return the same result for the same argument values, but that its result could change across SQL statements. This is the appropriate selection for function that depend on database lookups, parameter variables (such as the current time zone), etc.

**VOLATILE** indicates that the function value can change even within a single table scan, so no optimizations can be made. Please note that any function that has side-effects must be classified volatile, even if its result is quite predictable, to prevent calls from being optimized away.

## DETERMINISTIC

**DETERMINISTIC** is a synonym for **IMMUTABLE**. A **DETERMINISTIC** function cannot modify the database and always reaches the same result when given the same argument values; it does not do database lookups or otherwise use information not directly present in its argument list. If you include this clause, any call of the function with all-constant arguments can be immediately replaced with the function value.

## [ NOT ] LEAKPROOF

A **LEAKPROOF** function has no side effects, and reveals no information about the values used to call the function.

## CALLED ON NULL INPUT

## RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT

## STRICT

**CALLED ON NULL INPUT** (the default) indicates that the procedure will be called normally when some of its arguments are **NULL**. It is the author's responsibility to check for **NULL** values if necessary and respond appropriately.

**RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT** or **STRICT** indicates that the procedure always returns **NULL** whenever any of its arguments are **NULL**. If these clauses are specified, the procedure is not executed when there are **NULL** arguments; instead a **NULL** result is assumed automatically.

## [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER

**SECURITY DEFINER** specifies that the function will execute with the privileges of the user that created it; this is the default. The key word **EXTERNAL** is allowed for SQL conformance, but is optional.

## [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER

The **SECURITY INVOKER** clause indicates that the function will execute with the privileges of the user that calls it. The key word **EXTERNAL** is allowed for SQL conformance, but is optional.

## AUTHID DEFINER

## AUTHID CURRENT\_USER

The **AUTHID DEFINER** clause is a synonym for **[EXTERNAL] SECURITY DEFINER**. If the **AUTHID** clause is omitted or if **AUTHID DEFINER** is specified, the rights of the function owner are used to determine access privileges to database objects.

The **AUTHID CURRENT\_USER** clause is a synonym for **[EXTERNAL] SECURITY INVOKER**. If **AUTHID CURRENT\_USER** is specified, the rights of the current user executing the function are used to determine access privileges.

## PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }

The **PARALLEL** clause enables the use of parallel sequential scans (parallel mode). A parallel sequential scan uses multiple workers to scan a relation in parallel during a query in contrast to a serial sequential scan.

When set to `UNSAFE`, the function cannot be executed in parallel mode. The presence of such a function in a SQL statement forces a serial execution plan. This is the default setting if the `PARALLEL` clause is omitted.

When set to `RESTRICTED`, the function can be executed in parallel mode, but the execution is restricted to the parallel group leader. If the qualification for any particular relation has anything that is parallel restricted, that relation won't be chosen for parallelism.

When set to `SAFE`, the function can be executed in parallel mode with no restriction.

#### `COST execution_cost`

`execution_cost` is a positive number giving the estimated execution cost for the function, in units of `cpu_operator_cost`. If the function returns a set, this is the cost per returned row. Larger values cause the planner to try to avoid evaluating the function more often than necessary.

#### `ROWS result_rows`

`result_rows` is a positive number giving the estimated number of rows that the planner should expect the function to return. This is only allowed when the function is declared to return a set. The default assumption is 1000 rows.

#### `SET configuration_parameter { TO value | = value | FROM CURRENT }`

The `SET` clause causes the specified configuration parameter to be set to the specified value when the function is entered, and then restored to its prior value when the function exits. `SET FROM CURRENT` saves the session's current value of the parameter as the value to be applied when the function is entered.

If a `SET` clause is attached to a function, then the effects of a `SET LOCAL` command executed inside the function for the same variable are restricted to the function; the configuration parameter's prior value is restored at function exit. An ordinary `SET` command (without `LOCAL`) overrides the `SET` clause, much as it would do for a previous `SET LOCAL` command, with the effects of such a command persisting after procedure exit, unless the current transaction is rolled back.

#### `PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION`

`PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION` is the directive that sets the function as an autonomous transaction.

#### Note

The `STRICT`, `LEAKPROOF`, `PARALLEL`, `COST`, `ROWS` and `SET` keywords provide extended functionality for Advanced Server and are not supported by Oracle.

#### Examples

The following is an example of a simple function that takes no parameters.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION simple_function
  RETURN VARCHAR2
IS
BEGIN
  RETURN 'That''s All Folks!';
END simple_function;
```

The following function takes two input parameters. Parameters are discussed in more detail in subsequent sections.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION emp_comp (
  p_sal      NUMBER,
  p_comm     NUMBER
```

```
) RETURN NUMBER
IS
BEGIN
    RETURN (p_sal + NVL(p_comm, 0)) * 24;
END emp_comp;
```

The following example demonstrates using the `AUTHID CURRENT_USER` clause and `STRICT` keyword in a function declaration:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION dept_salaries(dept_id int) RETURN NUMBER
STRICT
AUTHID CURRENT_USER
BEGIN
    RETURN QUERY (SELECT sum(salary) FROM emp WHERE deptno = id);
END;
```

Include the `STRICT` keyword to instruct the server to return `NULL` if any input parameter passed is `NULL`; if a `NULL` value is passed, the function will not execute.

The `dept_salaries` function executes with the privileges of the role that is calling the function. If the current user does not have sufficient privileges to perform the `SELECT` statement querying the `emp` table (to display employee salaries), the function will report an error. To instruct the server to use the privileges associated with the role that defined the function, replace the `AUTHID CURRENT_USER` clause with the `AUTHID DEFINER` clause.

### 8.2.5.2 Calling a Function

A function can be used anywhere an expression can appear within an SPL statement. A function is invoked by simply specifying its name followed by its parameters enclosed in parenthesis, if any.

```
<name> [ ([ <parameters> ]) ]
```

`name` is the name of the function. `parameters` is a list of actual parameters.

Note

If there are no actual parameters to be passed, the function may be called with an empty parameter list, or the opening and closing parenthesis may be omitted entirely.

The following shows how the function can be called from another SPL program.

```
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(simple_function);
END;
```

That's All Folks!

A function is typically used within a SQL statement as shown in the following.

```
SELECT empno "EMPNO", ename "ENAME", sal "SAL", comm "COMM",
emp_comp(sal, comm) "YEARLY COMPENSATION" FROM emp;
```

EMPNO | ENAME | SAL | COMM | YEARLY COMPENSATION

7369	SMITH	800.00		19200.00
7499	ALLEN	1600.00	300.00	45600.00
7521	WARD	1250.00	500.00	42000.00
7566	JONES	2975.00		71400.00
7654	MARTIN	1250.00	1400.00	63600.00
7698	BLAKE	2850.00		68400.00
7782	CLARK	2450.00		58800.00
7788	SCOTT	3000.00		72000.00
7839	KING	5000.00		120000.00
7844	TURNER	1500.00	0.00	36000.00
7876	ADAMS	1100.00		26400.00
7900	JAMES	950.00		22800.00
7902	FORD	3000.00		72000.00
7934	MILLER	1300.00		31200.00

(14 rows)

### 8.2.5.3 Deleting a Function

A function can be deleted from the database using the `DROP FUNCTION` command.

```
DROP FUNCTION [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ (<parameters>) ]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ];
```

Where `name` is the name of the function to be dropped.

#### Note

The specification of the parameter list is required in Advanced Server under certain circumstances such as if this is an overloaded function. Oracle requires that the parameter list always be omitted.

#### Note

Usage of `IF EXISTS`, `CASCADE`, or `RESTRICT` is not compatible with Oracle databases. See the `DROP FUNCTION` command in the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Reference Guide* for information on these options.

The previously created function is dropped in this example:

```
DROP FUNCTION simple_function;
```

### 8.2.6 Procedure and Function Parameters

An important aspect of using procedures and functions is the capability to pass data from the calling program to the procedure or function and to receive data back from the procedure or function. This is accomplished by using *parameters*.

Parameters are declared in the procedure or function definition, enclosed within parenthesis following the procedure or function name. Parameters declared in the procedure or function definition are known as *formal parameters*. When the procedure or function is invoked, the calling program supplies the actual data that is to be used in the called program's processing as well as the variables that are to receive the results of the called program's processing. The data and variables supplied by the calling program when the procedure or function is called are referred to as the *actual parameters*.

The following is the general format of a formal parameter declaration.

```
(<name> [ IN | OUT | IN OUT ] <data_type> [ DEFAULT <value> ])
```

`name` is an identifier assigned to the formal parameter. If specified, `IN` defines the parameter for receiving input data into the procedure or function. An `IN` parameter can also be initialized to a default value. If specified, `OUT` defines the parameter for returning data from the procedure or function. If specified, `IN OUT` allows the parameter to be used for both input and output. If all of `IN`, `OUT`, and `IN OUT` are omitted, then the parameter acts as if it were defined as `IN` by default. Whether a parameter is `IN`, `OUT`, or `IN OUT` is referred to as the parameter's *mode*. `data_type` defines the data type of the parameter. `value` is a default value assigned to an `IN` parameter in the called program if an actual parameter is not specified in the call.

The following is an example of a procedure that takes parameters:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_query (
    p_deptno      IN      NUMBER,
    p_empno       IN OUT NUMBER,
    p_ename        IN OUT VARCHAR2,
    p_job          OUT     VARCHAR2,
    p_hiredate    OUT     DATE,
    p_sal          OUT     NUMBER
)
IS
BEGIN
    SELECT empno, ename, job, hiredate, sal
    INTO p_empno, p_ename, p_job, p_hiredate, p_sal
    FROM emp
    WHERE deptno = p_deptno
        AND (empno = p_empno
        OR ename = UPPER(p_ename));
END;
```

In this example, `p_deptno` is an `IN` formal parameter, `p_empno` and `p_ename` are `IN OUT` formal parameters, and `p_job`, `p_hiredate`, and `p_sal` are `OUT` formal parameters.

#### Note

In the previous example, no maximum length was specified on the `VARCHAR2` parameters and no precision and scale were specified on the `NUMBER` parameters. It is illegal to specify a length, precision, scale or other constraints on parameter declarations. These constraints are automatically inherited from the actual parameters that are used when the procedure or function is called.

The `emp_query` procedure can be called by another program, passing it the actual parameters. The following is an example of another SPL program that calls `emp_query`.

```
DECLARE
    v_deptno      NUMBER(2);
    v_empno       NUMBER(4);
    v_ename        VARCHAR2(10);
    v_job          VARCHAR2(9);
    v_hiredate    DATE;
    v_sal          NUMBER;
```

```

BEGIN
  v_deptno := 30;
  v_empno := 7900;
  v_ename := "";
  emp_query(v_deptno, v_empno, v_ename, v_job, v_hiredate, v_sal);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Department : ' || v_deptno);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee No: ' || v_empno);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || v_ename);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job       : ' || v_job);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || v_hiredate);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary    : ' || v_sal);
END;

```

In this example, `v_deptno`, `v_empno`, `v_ename`, `v_job`, `v_hiredate`, and `v_sal` are the actual parameters.

The output from the preceding example is shown as follows:

```

Department : 30
Employee No: 7900
Name      : JAMES
Job       : CLERK
Hire Date : 03-DEC-81
Salary    : 950

```

### 8.2.6.1 Positional vs. Named Parameter Notation

You can use either *positional* or *named* parameter notation when passing parameters to a function or procedure. If you specify parameters using positional notation, you must list the parameters in the order that they are declared; if you specify parameters with named notation, the order of the parameters is not significant.

To specify parameters using named notation, list the name of each parameter followed by an arrow (`=>`) and the parameter value. Named notation is more verbose, but makes your code easier to read and maintain.

A simple example that demonstrates using positional and named parameter notation follows:

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_info (
  p_deptno    IN  NUMBER,
  p_empno     IN OUT NUMBER,
  p_ename     IN OUT VARCHAR2,
)
IS
BEGIN
  dbms_output.put_line('Department Number =' || p_deptno);
  dbms_output.put_line('Employee Number =' || p_empno);
  dbms_output.put_line('Employee Name =' || p_ename);
END;

```

To call the procedure using positional notation, pass the following:

```
emp_info(30, 7455, 'Clark');
```

To call the procedure using named notation, pass the following:

```
| emp_info(p_ename =>'Clark', p_empno=>7455, p_deptno=>30);
```

Using named notation can alleviate the need to re-arrange a procedure's parameter list if the parameter list changes, if the parameters are reordered or if a new optional parameter is added.

In a case where you have a default value for an argument and the argument is not a trailing argument, you must use named notation to call the procedure or function. The following case demonstrates a procedure with two, leading, default arguments.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE check_balance (
    p_customerID IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
    p_balance     IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
    p_amount      IN NUMBER
)
IS
DECLARE
    balance NUMBER;
BEGIN
    IF (p_balance IS NULL AND p_customerID IS NULL) THEN
        RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR
            (-20010, 'Must provide balance or customer');
    ELSEIF (p_balance IS NOT NULL AND p_customerID IS NOT NULL) THEN
        RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR
            (-20020,'Must provide balance or customer, not both');
    ELSEIF (p_balance IS NULL) THEN
        balance := getCustomerBalance(p_customerID);
    ELSE
        balance := p_balance;
    END IF;

    IF (amount > balance) THEN
        RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR
            (-20030, 'Balance insufficient');
    END IF;
END;
```

You can only omit non-trailing argument values (when you call this procedure) by using named notation; when using positional notation, only trailing arguments are allowed to default. You can call this procedure with the following arguments:

```
check_balance(p_customerID => 10, p_amount = 500.00)
```

```
check_balance(p_balance => 1000.00, p_amount = 500.00)
```

You can use a combination of positional and named notation (mixed notation) to specify parameters. A simple example that demonstrates using mixed parameter notation follows:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_info (
    p_deptno      IN  NUMBER,
    p_empno       IN OUT NUMBER,
    p_ename       IN OUT VARCHAR2,
)
IS
BEGIN
    dbms_output.put_line('Department Number =' || p_deptno);
    dbms_output.put_line('Employee Number =' || p_empno);
    dbms_output.put_line('Employee Name =' || p_ename);
```

END;

You can call the procedure using mixed notation:

```
emp_info(30, p_ename =>'Clark', p_empno=>7455);
```

If you do use mixed notation, remember that named arguments cannot precede positional arguments.

### 8.2.6.2 Parameter Modes

As previously discussed, a parameter has one of three possible modes - **IN**, **OUT**, or **IN OUT**. The following characteristics of a formal parameter are dependent upon its mode:

- Its initial value when the procedure or function is called.
- Whether or not the called procedure or function can modify the formal parameter.
- How the actual parameter value is passed from the calling program to the called program.
- What happens to the formal parameter value when an unhandled exception occurs in the called program.

The following table summarizes the behavior of parameters according to their mode.

Mode Property	IN	IN OUT	OUT
Formal parameter initialized to:	Actual parameter value	Actual parameter value	Actual parameter value
Formal parameter modifiable by the called program?	No	Yes	Yes
Actual parameter contains: (after normal called program termination)	Original actual parameter value prior to the call	Last value of the formal parameter	Last value of the formal parameter
Actual parameter contains: (after a handled exception in the called program)	Original actual parameter value prior to the call	Last value of the formal parameter	Last value of the formal parameter
Actual parameter contains: (after an unhandled exception in the called program)	Original actual parameter value prior to the call	Original actual parameter value prior to the call	Original actual parameter value prior to the call

As shown by the table, an **IN** formal parameter is initialized to the actual parameter with which it is called unless it was explicitly initialized with a default value. The **IN** parameter may be referenced within the called program, however, the called program may not assign a new value to the **IN** parameter. After control returns to the calling program, the actual parameter always contains the same value as it was set to prior to the call.

The **OUT** formal parameter is initialized to the actual parameter with which it is called. The called program may reference and assign new values to the formal parameter. If the called program terminates without an exception, the actual parameter takes on the value last set in the formal parameter. If a handled exception occurs, the value of the actual parameter takes on the last value assigned to the formal parameter. If an unhandled exception occurs, the value of the actual parameter remains as it was prior to the call.

Like an **IN** parameter, an **IN OUT** formal parameter is initialized to the actual parameter with which it is called. Like an **OUT** parameter, an **IN OUT** formal parameter is modifiable by the called program and the last value in the formal parameter is passed to the calling program's actual parameter if the called program terminates without an exception. If a handled exception occurs, the value of the actual parameter takes on the last value assigned to the formal parameter. If an unhandled exception occurs, the value of the actual parameter remains as it was prior to the call.

### 8.2.6.3 Using Default Values in Parameters

You can set a default value of a formal parameter by including the `DEFAULT` clause or using the assignment operator (`:=`) in the `CREATE PROCEDURE` or `CREATE FUNCTION` statement.

The general form of a formal parameter declaration is:

```
(<name> [ IN|OUT|IN OUT ] <data_type> [{DEFAULT | := } <expr> ])
```

`name` is an identifier assigned to the parameter.

`IN|OUT|IN OUT` specifies the parameter mode.

`data_type` is the data type assigned to the variable.

`expr` is the default value assigned to the parameter. If you do not include a `DEFAULT` clause, the caller must provide a value for the parameter.

The default value is evaluated every time the function or procedure is invoked. For example, assigning `SYSDATE` to a parameter of type `DATE` causes the parameter to have the time of the current invocation, not the time when the procedure or function was created.

The following simple procedure demonstrates using the assignment operator to set a default value of `SYSDATE` into the parameter, `hiredate`:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE hire_emp (
    p_empno      NUMBER,
    p_ename      VARCHAR2,
    p_hiredate    DATE := SYSDATE
)
IS
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO emp(empno, ename, hiredate)
        VALUES(p_empno, p_ename, p_hiredate);

    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hired!');
END hire_emp;
```

If the parameter declaration includes a default value, you can omit the parameter from the actual parameter list when you call the procedure. Calls to the sample procedure (`hire_emp`) must include two arguments: the employee number (`p_empno`) and employee name (`p_ename`). The third parameter (`p_hiredate`) defaults to the value of `SYSDATE`:

```
hire_emp (7575, Clark)
```

If you do include a value for the actual parameter when you call the procedure, that value takes precedence over the default value:

```
hire_emp (7575, Clark, 15-FEB-2010)
```

Adds a new employee with a hiredate of `February 15, 2010`, regardless of the current value of `SYSDATE`.

You can write the same procedure by substituting the `DEFAULT` keyword for the assignment operator:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE hire_emp (
    p_empno      NUMBER,
```

```

    p_ename      VARCHAR2,
    p_hiredate   DATE DEFAULT SYSDATE
)
IS
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO emp(empno, ename, hiredate)
        VALUES(p_empno, p_ename, p_hiredate);

    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hired!');
END hire_emp;

```

## 8.2.7 Subprograms – Subprocedures and Subfunctions

The capability and functionality of SPL procedure and function programs can be used in an advantageous manner to build well-structured and maintainable programs by organizing the SPL code into subprocedures and subfunctions.

The same SPL code can be invoked multiple times from different locations within a relatively large SPL program by declaring subprocedures and subfunctions within the SPL program.

Subprocedures and subfunctions have the following characteristics:

- The syntax, structure, and functionality of subprocedures and subfunctions are practically identical to standalone procedures and functions. The major difference is the use of the keyword **PROCEDURE** or **FUNCTION** instead of **CREATE PROCEDURE** or **CREATE FUNCTION** to declare the subprogram.
- Subprocedures and subfunctions provide isolation for the identifiers (that is, variables, cursors, types, and other subprograms) declared within itself. That is, these identifiers cannot be accessed nor altered from the upper, parent level SPL programs or subprograms outside of the subprocedure or subfunction. This ensures that the subprocedure and subfunction results are reliable and predictable.
- The declaration section of subprocedures and subfunctions can include its own subprocedures and subfunctions. Thus, a multi-level hierarchy of subprograms can exist in the standalone program. Within the hierarchy, a subprogram can access the identifiers of upper level parent subprograms and also invoke upper level parent subprograms. However, the same access to identifiers and invocation cannot be done for lower level child subprograms in the hierarchy.

Subprocedures and subfunctions can be declared and invoked from within any of the following types of SPL programs:

- Standalone procedures and functions
- Anonymous blocks
- Triggers
- Packages
- Procedure and function methods of an object type body
- Subprocedures and subfunctions declared within any of the preceding programs

The rules regarding subprocedure and subfunction structure and access are discussed in more detail in the next sections.

### 8.2.7.1 Creating a Subprocedure

The **PROCEDURE** clause specified in the declaration section defines and names a subprocedure local to that block.

The term *block* refers to the SPL block structure consisting of an optional declaration section, a mandatory executable section, and an optional exception section. Blocks are the structures for standalone procedures and functions, anonymous blocks, subprograms, triggers, packages, and object type methods.

The phrase *the identifier is local to the block* means that the identifier (that is, a variable, cursor, type, or subprogram) is declared within the declaration section of that block and is therefore accessible by the SPL code within the executable section and optional exception section of that block.

Subprocedures can only be declared after all other variable, cursor, and type declarations included in the declaration section. (That is, subprograms must be the last set of declarations.)

```
PROCEDURE <name> [ (<parameters>) ]
{ IS | AS }
[ PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION; ]
[ <declarations> ]
BEGIN
<statements>
END [ <name> ];
```

### Where:

**name**

**name** is the identifier of the subprocedure.

**parameters**

**parameters** is a list of formal parameters.

**PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION**

**PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION** is the directive that sets the subprocedure as an autonomous transaction.

**declarations**

**declarations** are variable, cursor, type, or subprogram declarations. If subprogram declarations are included, they must be declared after all other variable, cursor, and type declarations.

**statements**

**statements** are SPL program statements (the **BEGIN - END** block may contain an **EXCEPTION** section).

### Examples

The following example is a subprocedure within an anonymous block.

```
DECLARE
PROCEDURE list_emp
IS
  v_empno  NUMBER(4);
  v_ename  VARCHAR2(10);
CURSOR emp_cur IS
  SELECT empno, ename FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
  OPEN emp_cur;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Subprocedure list_emp:');
```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- -----');
LOOP
  FETCH emp_cur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
  EXIT WHEN emp_cur%NOTFOUND;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' || v_ename);
END LOOP;
CLOSE emp_cur;
END;
BEGIN
  list_emp;
END;

```

Invoking this anonymous block produces the following output:

Subprocedure list\_emp:

EMPNO	ENAME
7369	SMITH
7499	ALLEN
7521	WARD
7566	JONES
7654	MARTIN
7698	BLAKE
7782	CLARK
7788	SCOTT
7839	KING
7844	TURNER
7876	ADAMS
7900	JAMES
7902	FORD
7934	MILLER

The following example is a subprocedure within a trigger.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER dept_audit_trig
  AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON dept
DECLARE
  v_action      VARCHAR2(24);
  PROCEDURE display_action (
    p_action  IN VARCHAR2
  )
  IS
  BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('User ' || USER || ' ' || p_action ||
      ' dept on ' || TO_CHAR(SYSDATE,'YYYY-MM-DD'));
  END display_action;
BEGIN
  IF INSERTING THEN
    v_action := 'added';
  ELSIF UPDATING THEN
    v_action := 'updated';
  ELSIF DELETING THEN
    v_action := 'deleted';
  END IF;
  display_action(v_action);

```

```
END;
```

Invoking this trigger produces the following output:

```
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50,'HR','DENVER');
```

```
User enterprisedb added dept on 2016-07-26
```

## 8.2.7.2 Creating a Subfunction

The **FUNCTION** clause specified in the declaration section defines and names a subfunction local to that block.

The term *block* refers to the SPL block structure consisting of an optional declaration section, a mandatory executable section, and an optional exception section. Blocks are the structures for standalone procedures and functions, anonymous blocks, subprograms, triggers, packages, and object type methods.

The phrase *the identifier is local to the block* means that the identifier (that is, a variable, cursor, type, or subprogram) is declared within the declaration section of that block and is therefore accessible by the SPL code within the executable section and optional exception section of that block.

```
FUNCTION <name> [ (<parameters>) ]
RETURN <data_type>
{ IS | AS }
[ PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION; ]
[ <declarations> ]
BEGIN
<statements>
END [ <name> ];
```

**Where:**

**name**

**name** is the identifier of the subfunction.

**parameters**

**parameters** is a list of formal parameters.

**data\_type**

**data\_type** is the data type of the value returned by the function's **RETURN** statement.

**PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION**

**PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION** is the directive that sets the subfunction as an autonomous transaction.

**declarations**

**declarations** are variable, cursor, type, or subprogram declarations. If subprogram declarations are included, they must be declared after all other variable, cursor, and type declarations.

**statements**

statements are SPL program statements (the BEGIN - END block may contain an EXCEPTION section).

## Examples

The following example shows the use of a recursive subfunction:

```
DECLARE
  FUNCTION factorial (
    n      BINARY_INTEGER
  ) RETURN BINARY_INTEGER
  IS
  BEGIN
    IF n = 1 THEN
      RETURN n;
    ELSE
      RETURN n * factorial(n-1);
    END IF;
  END factorial;
BEGIN
  FOR i IN 1..5 LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(i || '!' = ' || factorial(i));
  END LOOP;
END;
```

The output from the example is the following:

```
1! = 1
2! = 2
3! = 6
4! = 24
5! = 120
```

### 8.2.7.3 Block Relationships

This section describes the terminology of the relationship between blocks that can be declared in an SPL program. The ability to invoke subprograms and access identifiers declared within a block depends upon this relationship.

The following are the basic terms:

- A *block* is the basic SPL structure consisting of an optional declaration section, a mandatory executable section, and an optional exception section. Blocks implement standalone procedure and function programs, anonymous blocks, triggers, packages, and subprocedures and subfunctions.
- An identifier (variable, cursor, type, or subprogram) *local to a block* means that it is declared within the declaration section of the given block. Such local identifiers are accessible from the executable section and optional exception section of the block.
- The *parent block* contains the declaration of another block (the *child block*).
- *Descendent blocks* are the set of blocks forming the child relationship starting from a given parent block.
- *Ancestor blocks* are the set of blocks forming the parental relationship starting from a given child block.
- The set of descendent (or ancestor) blocks form a *hierarchy*.
- The *level* is an ordinal number of a given block from the highest, ancestor block. For example, given a standalone procedure, the subprograms declared within the declaration section of this procedure are all at the same level, for example call it level 1. Additional subprograms within the declaration section of the subprograms declared in the standalone procedure are at the next level, which is level 2.

- The *sibling blocks* are the set of blocks that have the same parent block (that is, they are all locally declared in the same block). Sibling blocks are also always at the same level relative to each other.

The following schematic of a set of procedure declaration sections provides an example of a set of blocks and their relationships to their surrounding blocks.

The two vertical lines on the left-hand side of the blocks indicate there are two pairs of sibling blocks. `block_1a` and `block_1b` is one pair, and `block_2a` and `block_2b` is the second pair.

The relationship of each block with its ancestors is shown on the right-hand side of the blocks. There are three hierarchical paths formed when progressing up the hierarchy from the lowest level child blocks. The first consists of `block_0`, `block_1a`, `block_2a`, and `block_3`. The second is `block_0`, `block_1a`, and `block_2b`. The third is `block_0`, `block_1b`, and `block_2b`.

CREATE PROCEDURE block\_0

IS

```
END block_0;
```

The rules for invoking subprograms based upon block location is described starting with [Invoking Subprograms](#). The rules for accessing variables based upon block location is described in [Accessing Subprogram Variables](#).

### 8.2.7.4 Invoking Subprograms

A subprogram is invoked in the same manner as a standalone procedure or function by specifying its name and any actual parameters.

The subprogram may be invoked with none, one, or more qualifiers, which are the names of the parent subprograms or labeled anonymous blocks forming the ancestor hierarchy from where the subprogram has been declared.

The invocation is specified as a dot-separated list of qualifiers ending with the subprogram name and any of its arguments as shown by the following:

```
[[<qualifier_1.>][...]<qualifier_n.>]<subprog> [<arguments>]
```

If specified, `qualifier_n` is the subprogram in which `subprog` has been declared in its declaration section. The preceding list of qualifiers must reside in a continuous path up the hierarchy from `qualifier_n` to `qualifier_1`. `qualifier_1` may be any ancestor subprogram in the path as well as any of the following:

- Standalone procedure name containing the subprogram
- Standalone function name containing subprogram
- Package name containing the subprogram
- Object type name containing the subprogram within an object type method
- An anonymous block label included prior to the `DECLARE` keyword if a declaration section exists, or prior to the `BEGIN` keyword if there is no declaration section.

#### Note

`qualifier_1` may not be a schema name, otherwise an error is thrown upon invocation of the subprogram. This Advanced Server restriction is not compatible with Oracle databases, which allow use of the schema name as a qualifier.

`arguments` is the list of actual parameters to be passed to the subprocedure or subfunction.

Upon invocation, the search for the subprogram occurs as follows:

- The invoked subprogram name of its type (that is, subprocedure or subfunction) along with any qualifiers in the specified order, (referred to as the invocation list) is used to find a matching set of blocks residing in the same hierarchical order. The search begins in the block hierarchy where the lowest level is the block from where the subprogram is invoked. The declaration of the subprogram must be in the SPL code prior to the code line where it is invoked when the code is observed from top to bottom. (An exception to this requirement can be accomplished using a forward declaration. See [Using Forward Declarations](#) for information on forward declarations.)
- If the invocation list does not match the hierarchy of blocks starting from the block where the subprogram is invoked, a comparison is made by matching the invocation list starting with the parent of the previous starting block. In other words, the comparison progresses up the hierarchy.
- If there are sibling blocks of the ancestors, the invocation list comparison also includes the hierarchy of the sibling blocks, but always comparing in an upward level, never comparing the descendants of the sibling blocks.

- This comparison process continues up the hierarchies until the first complete match is found in which case the located subprogram is invoked. Note that the formal parameter list of the matched subprogram must comply with the actual parameter list specified for the invoked subprogram, otherwise an error occurs upon invocation of the subprogram.
- If no match is found after searching up to the standalone program, then an error is thrown upon invocation of the subprogram.

#### Note

The Advanced Server search algorithm for subprogram invocation is not quite compatible with Oracle databases. For Oracle, the search looks for the first match of the first qualifier (that is `qualifier_1`). When such a match is found, all remaining qualifiers, the subprogram name, subprogram type, and arguments of the invocation must match the hierarchy content where the matching first qualifier is found, otherwise an error is thrown. For Advanced Server, a match is not found unless all qualifiers, the subprogram name, and the subprogram type of the invocation match the hierarchy content. If such an exact match is not initially found, Advanced Server continues the search progressing up the hierarchy.

The location of subprograms relative to the block from where the invocation is made can be accessed as follows:

- Subprograms declared in the local block can be invoked from the executable section or the exception section of the same block.
- Subprograms declared in the parent or other ancestor blocks can be invoked from the child block of the parent or other ancestors.
- Subprograms declared in sibling blocks can be called from a sibling block or from any descendent block of the sibling.

However, the following location of subprograms cannot be accessed relative to the block from where the invocation is made:

- Subprograms declared in blocks that are descendants of the block from where the invocation is attempted.
- Subprograms declared in blocks that are descendants of a sibling block from where the invocation is attempted.

The following examples illustrate the various conditions previously described.

### **Invoking Locally Declared Subprograms**

The following example contains a single hierarchy of blocks contained within standalone procedure `level_0`. Within the executable section of procedure `level_1a`, the means of invoking the local procedure `level_2a` are shown, both with and without qualifiers.

Also note that access to the descendant of local procedure `level_2a`, which is procedure `level_3a`, is not permitted, with or without qualifiers. These calls are commented out in the example.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE level_0
IS
  PROCEDURE level_1a
  IS
    PROCEDURE level_2a
    IS
      PROCEDURE level_3a
      IS
        BEGIN
          DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... BLOCK level_3a');
          DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... END BLOCK level_3a');
        END level_3a;
      BEGIN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... BLOCK level_2a');
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... END BLOCK level_2a');
      END level_2a;
```

```

BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. BLOCK level_1a');
  level_2a;                      -- Local block called
  level_1a.level_2a;              -- Qualified local block
called
  level_0.level_1a.level_2a;      -- Double qualified local
block called
--   level_3a;                  -- Error - Descendant of
local block
--   level_2a.level_3a;          -- Error - Descendant of
local block
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. END BLOCK level_1a');
END level_1a;
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('BLOCK level_0');
  level_1a;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('END BLOCK level_0');
END level_0;

```

When the standalone procedure is invoked, the output is the following, which indicates that procedure `level_2a` is successfully invoked from the calls in the executable section of procedure `level_1a`.

```

BEGIN
  level_0;
END;

BLOCK level_0
.. BLOCK level_1a
..... BLOCK level_2a
..... END BLOCK level_2a
..... BLOCK level_2a
..... END BLOCK level_2a
..... BLOCK level_2a
..... END BLOCK level_2a
.. END BLOCK level_1a
END BLOCK level_0

```

If you were to attempt to run procedure `level_0` with any of the calls to the descendent block uncommented, then an error occurs.

### Invoking Subprograms Declared in Ancestor Blocks

The following example shows how subprograms can be invoked that are declared in parent and other ancestor blocks relative to the block where the invocation is made.

In this example, the executable section of procedure `level_3a` invokes procedure `level_2a`, which is its parent block. (Note that `v_cnt` is used to avoid an infinite loop.)

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE level_0
IS
  v_cnt      NUMBER(2) := 0;
  PROCEDURE level_1a
  IS
    PROCEDURE level_2a
    IS
      PROCEDURE level_3a
      IS

```

```

BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... BLOCK level_3a');
  v_cnt := v_cnt + 1;
  IF v_cnt < 2 THEN
    level_2a;          -- Parent block called
  END IF;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... END BLOCK level_3a');
END level_3a;
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... BLOCK level_2a');
  level_3a;           -- Local block called
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... END BLOCK level_2a');
END level_2a;
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. BLOCK level_1a);
  level_2a;           -- Local block called
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. END BLOCK level_1a);
END level_1a;
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('BLOCK level_0');
  level_1a;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('END BLOCK level_0');
END level_0;

```

The following is the resulting output:

```

BEGIN
  level_0;
END;

BLOCK level_0
.. BLOCK level_1a
..... BLOCK level_2a
..... BLOCK level_3a
..... BLOCK level_2a
..... BLOCK level_3a
..... END BLOCK level_3a
..... END BLOCK level_2a
..... END BLOCK level_3a
..... END BLOCK level_2a
.. END BLOCK level_1a
END BLOCK level_0

```

In a similar example, the executable section of procedure `level_3a` invokes procedure `level_1a`, which is further up the ancestor hierarchy. (Note that `v_cnt` is used to avoid an infinite loop.)

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE level_0
IS
  v_cnt      NUMBER(2) := 0;
  PROCEDURE level_1a
  IS
    PROCEDURE level_2a
    IS
      PROCEDURE level_3a
      IS
        BEGIN

```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... BLOCK level_3a');
v_cnt := v_cnt + 1;
IF v_cnt < 2 THEN
    level_1a;           -- Ancestor block called
END IF;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... END BLOCK level_3a');
END level_3a;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... BLOCK level_2a');
    level_3a;           -- Local block called
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... END BLOCK level_2a');
END level_2a;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.. BLOCK level_1a');
    level_2a;           -- Local block called
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.. END BLOCK level_1a');
END level_1a;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('BLOCK level_0');
    level_1a;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('END BLOCK level_0');
END level_0;

```

The following is the resulting output:

```

BEGIN
    level_0;
END;

BLOCK level_0
.. BLOCK level_1a
..... BLOCK level_2a
..... BLOCK level_3a
.. BLOCK level_1a
..... BLOCK level_2a
..... BLOCK level_3a
..... END BLOCK level_3a
..... END BLOCK level_2a
.. END BLOCK level_1a
..... END BLOCK level_3a
..... END BLOCK level_2a
.. END BLOCK level_1a
END BLOCK level_0

```

## Invoking Subprograms Declared in Sibling Blocks

The following examples show how subprograms can be invoked that are declared in a sibling block relative to the local, parent, or other ancestor blocks from where the invocation of the subprogram is made.

In this example, the executable section of procedure `level_1b` invokes procedure `level_1a`, which is its sibling block. Both are local to standalone procedure `level_0`.

Note that invocation of `level_2a` or equivalently, `level_1a.level_2a` from within procedure `level_1b` is commented out as this call would result in an error. Invoking a descendent subprogram (`level_2a`) of sibling block (`level_1a`) is not permitted.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE level_0
```

IS

```

v_cnt  NUMBER(2) := 0;
PROCEDURE level_1a
IS
  PROCEDURE level_2a
  IS
    BEGIN
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... BLOCK level_2a');
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... END BLOCK level_2a');
    END level_2a;
  BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.. BLOCK level_1a');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.. END BLOCK level_1a');
  END level_1a;
  PROCEDURE level_1b
  IS
    BEGIN
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. BLOCK level_1b);
      level_1a;           -- Sibling block called
      -- level_2a;         -- Error – Descendant of
      sibling block
      -- level_1a.level_2a; -- Error - Descendant of
      sibling block
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. END BLOCK level_1b);
    END level_1b;
  BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('BLOCK level_0');
    level_1b;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('END BLOCK level_0');
  END level_0;

```

The following is the resulting output:

```

BEGIN
  level_0;
END;

BLOCK level_0
.. BLOCK level_1b
.. BLOCK level_1a
.. END BLOCK level_1a
.. END BLOCK level_1b
END BLOCK level_0

```

In the following example, procedure `level_1a`, which is the sibling of procedure `level_1b`, which is an ancestor of procedure `level_3b` is successfully invoked.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE level_0
IS
  PROCEDURE level_1a
  IS
    BEGIN
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. BLOCK level_1a');
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. END BLOCK level_1a');
    END level_1a;
  PROCEDURE level_1b

```

```

IS
  PROCEDURE level_2b
  IS
    PROCEDURE level_3b
    IS
      BEGIN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... BLOCK level_3b');
        level_1a;          -- Ancestor's sibling block
      END level_3b;
      BEGIN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... BLOCK level_2b');
        level_3b;          -- Local block called
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... END BLOCK level_2b');
      END level_2b;
      BEGIN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.. BLOCK level_1b');
        level_2b;          -- Local block called
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.. END BLOCK level_1b');
      END level_1b;
    BEGIN
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('BLOCK level_0');
      level_1b;
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('END BLOCK level_0');
    END level_0;
  
```

The following is the resulting output:

```

BEGIN
  level_0;
END;

BLOCK level_0
.. BLOCK level_1b
..... BLOCK level_2b
..... BLOCK level_3b
.. BLOCK level_1a
.. END BLOCK level_1a
.. BLOCK level_1a
.. END BLOCK level_1a
..... END BLOCK level_3b
..... END BLOCK level_2b
.. END BLOCK level_1b
END BLOCK level_0
  
```

## 8.2.7.5 Using Forward Declarations

As discussed so far, when a subprogram is to be invoked, it must have been declared somewhere in the hierarchy of blocks within the standalone program, but prior to where it is invoked. In other words, when scanning the SPL code from beginning to end, the subprogram declaration must be found before its invocation.

However, there is a method of constructing the SPL code so that the full declaration of the subprogram (that is, its optional declaration section, its mandatory executable section, and optional exception section) appears in the SPL code after the point in the code where it is invoked.

This is accomplished by inserting a *forward declaration* in the SPL code prior to its invocation. The forward declaration is the specification of a subprocedure or subfunction name, formal parameters, and return type if it is a subfunction.

The full subprogram specification consisting of the optional declaration section, the executable section, and the optional exception section must be specified in the same declaration section as the forward declaration, but may appear following other subprogram declarations that invoke this subprogram with the forward declaration.

Typical usage of a forward declaration is when two subprograms invoke each other as shown by the following:

```
DECLARE
  FUNCTION add_one (
    p_add    IN NUMBER
  ) RETURN NUMBER;
  FUNCTION test_max (
    p_test   IN NUMBER)
  RETURN NUMBER
  IS
  BEGIN
    IF p_test < 5 THEN
      RETURN add_one(p_test);
    END IF;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT('Final value is ');
    RETURN p_test;
  END;
  FUNCTION add_one (
    p_add    IN NUMBER)
  RETURN NUMBER
  IS
  BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Increase by 1');
    RETURN test_max(p_add + 1);
  END;
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(test_max(3));
END;
```

Subfunction `test_max` invokes subfunction `add_one`, which also invokes subfunction `test_max`, so a forward declaration is required for one of the subprograms, which is implemented for `add_one` at the beginning of the anonymous block declaration section.

The resulting output from the anonymous block is as follows:

```
Increase by 1
Increase by 1
Final value is 5
```

## 8.2.7.6 Overloading Subprograms

Generally, subprograms of the same type (subprocedure or subfunction) with the same name, and same formal parameter specification can appear multiple times within the same standalone program as long as they are not sibling blocks (that is, the subprograms are not declared in the same local block).

Each subprogram can be individually invoked depending upon the use of qualifiers and the location where the subprogram invocation is made as discussed in the previous sections.

It is however possible to declare subprograms, even as siblings, that are of the same subprogram type and name as long as certain aspects of the formal parameters differ. These characteristics (subprogram type, name, and formal parameter specification) is generally known as a program's *signature*.

The declaration of multiple subprograms where the signatures are identical except for certain aspects of the formal parameter specification is referred to as subprogram *overloading*.

Thus, the determination of which particular overloaded subprogram is to be invoked is determined by a match of the actual parameters specified by the subprogram invocation and the formal parameter lists of the overloaded subprograms.

Any of the following differences permit overloaded subprograms:

- The number of formal parameters are different.
- At least one pair of data types of the corresponding formal parameters (that is, compared according to the same order of appearance in the formal parameter list) are different, but are not aliases. Data type aliases are discussed later in this section.

Note that the following differences alone do not permit overloaded subprograms:

- Different formal parameter names
- Different parameter modes (**IN**, **IN OUT**, **OUT**) for the corresponding formal parameters
- For subfunctions, different data types in the **RETURN** clause

As previously indicated, one of the differences allowing overloaded subprograms are different data types.

However, certain data types have alternative names referred to as *aliases*, which can be used for the table definition.

For example, there are fixed length character data types that can be specified as **CHAR** or **CHARACTER**. There are variable length character data types that can be specified as **CHAR VARYING**, **CHARACTER VARYING**, **VARCHAR**, or **VARCHAR2**. For integers, there are **BINARY\_INTEGER**, **PLS\_INTEGER**, and **INTEGER** data types. For numbers, there are **NUMBER**, **NUMERIC**, **DEC**, and **DECIMAL** data types.

For detailed information about the data types supported by Advanced Server, see the Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Reference Guide, available from EDB at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

Thus, when attempting to create overloaded subprograms, the formal parameter data types are not considered different if the specified data types are aliases of each other.

It can be determined if certain data types are aliases of other types by displaying the table definition containing the data types in question.

For example, the following table definition contains some data types and their aliases.

```
CREATE TABLE data_type_aliases (
  dt_BLOB      BLOB,
  dt_LONG_RAW  LONG RAW,
  dt_RAW       RAW(4),
```

```

dt_BYTEA      BYTEA,
dt_INTEGER    INTEGER,
dt_BINARY_INTEGER BINARY_INTEGER,
dt_PLIS_INTEGER PLS_INTEGER,
dt_REAL       REAL,
dt_DOUBLE_PRECISION DOUBLE PRECISION,
dt_FLOAT      FLOAT,
dt_NUMBER     NUMBER,
dt_DECIMAL    DECIMAL,
dt_NUMERIC    NUMERIC,
dt_CHAR       CHAR,
dt_CHARACTER   CHARACTER,
dt_VARCHAR2   VARCHAR2(4),
dt_CHAR_VARYING CHAR VARYING(4),
dt_VARCHAR    VARCHAR(4)
);

```

Using the PSQL `\d` command to display the table definition, the Type column displays the data type internally assigned to each column based upon its data type in the table definition:

Column	Type	Modifiers
dt_blob	bytea	
dt_long_raw	bytea	
dt_raw	bytea(4)	
dt_bytea	bytea	
dt_integer	integer	
dt_binary_integer	integer	
dt_pls_integer	integer	
dt_real	real	
dt_double_precision	double precision	
dt_float	double precision	
dt_number	numeric	
dt_decimal	numeric	
dt_numeric	numeric	
dt_char	character(1)	
dt_character	character(1)	
dt_varchar2	character varying(4)	
dt_char_varying	character varying(4)	
dt_varchar	character varying(4)	

In the example, the base set of data types are `bytea`, `integer`, `real`, `double precision`, `numeric`, `character`, and `character varying`.

When attempting to declare overloaded subprograms, a pair of formal parameter data types that are aliases would not be sufficient to allow subprogram overloading. Thus, parameters with data types `INTEGER` and `PLS_INTEGER` cannot overload a pair of subprograms, but data types `INTEGER` and `REAL`, or `INTEGER` and `FLOAT`, or `INTEGER` and `NUMBER` can overload the subprograms.

#### Note

The overloading rules based upon formal parameter data types are not compatible with Oracle databases. Generally, the Advanced Server rules are more flexible, and certain combinations are allowed in Advanced Server that would result in an error when attempting to create the procedure or function in Oracle databases.

For certain pairs of data types used for overloading, casting of the arguments specified by the subprogram invocation may be required to avoid an error encountered during runtime of the subprogram. Invocation of a

subprogram must include the actual parameter list that can specifically identify the data types. Certain pairs of overloaded data types may require the `CAST` function to explicitly identify data types. For example, pairs of overloaded data types that may require casting during the invocation are `CHAR` and `VARCHAR2`, or `NUMBER` and `REAL`.

The following example shows a group of overloaded subfunctions invoked from within an anonymous block. The executable section of the anonymous block contains the use of the `CAST` function to invoke overloaded functions with certain data types.

```

DECLARE
  FUNCTION add_it (
    p_add_1  IN BINARY_INTEGER,
    p_add_2  IN BINARY_INTEGER
  ) RETURN VARCHAR2
  IS
  BEGIN
    RETURN 'add_it BINARY_INTEGER: ' || TO_CHAR(p_add_1 +
p_add_2,9999.9999);
  END add_it;
  FUNCTION add_it (
    p_add_1  IN NUMBER,
    p_add_2  IN NUMBER
  ) RETURN VARCHAR2
  IS
  BEGIN
    RETURN 'add_it NUMBER: ' || TO_CHAR(p_add_1 + p_add_2,999.9999);
  END add_it;
  FUNCTION add_it (
    p_add_1  IN REAL,
    p_add_2  IN REAL
  ) RETURN VARCHAR2
  IS
  BEGIN
    RETURN 'add_it REAL: ' || TO_CHAR(p_add_1 + p_add_2,9999.9999);
  END add_it;
  FUNCTION add_it (
    p_add_1  IN DOUBLE PRECISION,
    p_add_2  IN DOUBLE PRECISION
  ) RETURN VARCHAR2
  IS
  BEGIN
    RETURN 'add_it DOUBLE PRECISION: ' || TO_CHAR(p_add_1 +
p_add_2,9999.9999);
  END add_it;
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(add_it (25, 50));
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(add_it (25.3333, 50.3333));
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(add_it (TO_NUMBER(25.3333), TO_NUMBER(50.3333)));
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(add_it (CAST('25.3333' AS REAL), CAST('50.3333' AS
REAL)));
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(add_it (CAST('25.3333' AS DOUBLE PRECISION),
CAST('50.3333' AS DOUBLE PRECISION)));
END;

```

The following is the output displayed from the anonymous block:

```
add_it BINARY_INTEGER: 75.0000
```

```
add_it NUMBER: 75.6666
add_it NUMBER: 75.6666
add_it REAL: 75.6666
add_it DOUBLE PRECISION: 75.6666
```

## 8.2.7.7 Accessing Subprogram Variables

Variable declared in blocks such as subprograms or anonymous blocks can be accessed from the executable section or the exception section of other blocks depending upon their relative location.

Accessing a variable means being able to reference it within a SQL statement or an SPL statement as is done with any local variable.

### Note

If the subprogram signature contains formal parameters, these may be accessed in the same manner as local variables of the subprogram. In this section, all discussion related to variables of a subprogram also applies to formal parameters of the subprogram.

Access of variables not only includes those defined as a data type, but also includes others such as record types, collection types, and cursors.

The variable may be accessed by at most one qualifier, which is the name of the subprogram or labeled anonymous block in which the variable has been locally declared.

The syntax to reference a variable is shown by the following:

[<qualifier.>]<variable>

If specified, **qualifier** is the subprogram or labeled anonymous block in which **variable** has been declared in its declaration section (that is, it is a local variable).

### Note

In Advanced Server, there is only one circumstance where two qualifiers are permitted. This scenario is for accessing public variables of packages where the reference can be specified in the following format:

schema\_name.package\_name.public\_variable\_name

For more information about supported package syntax, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Built-In Package Guide*.

The following summarizes how variables can be accessed:

- Variables can be accessed as long as the block in which the variable has been locally declared is within the ancestor hierarchical path starting from the block containing the reference to the variable. Such variables declared in ancestor blocks are referred to as *global variables*.
- If a reference to an unqualified variable is made, the first attempt is to locate a local variable of that name. If such a local variable does not exist, then the search for the variable is made in the parent of the current block, and so forth, proceeding up the ancestor hierarchy. If such a variable is not found, then an error occurs upon invocation of the subprogram.
- If a reference to a qualified variable is made, the same search process is performed as described in the previous bullet point, but searching for the first match of the subprogram or labeled anonymous block that contains the local variable. The search proceeds up the ancestor hierarchy until a match is found. If such a match is not found, then an error occurs upon invocation of the subprogram.

The following location of variables cannot be accessed relative to the block from where the reference to the variable is made:

- Variables declared in a descendent block cannot be accessed,
- Variables declared in a sibling block, a sibling block of an ancestor block, or any descendants within the sibling block cannot be accessed.

#### Note

The Advanced Server process for accessing variables is not compatible with Oracle databases. For Oracle, any number of qualifiers can be specified and the search is based upon the first match of the first qualifier in a similar manner to the Oracle matching algorithm for invoking subprograms.

The following example displays how variables in various blocks are accessed, with and without qualifiers. The lines that are commented out illustrate attempts to access variables that would result in an error.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE level_0
IS
    v_level_0      VARCHAR2(20) := 'Value from level_0';
    PROCEDURE level_1a
    IS
        v_level_1a  VARCHAR2(20) := 'Value from level_1a';
        PROCEDURE level_2a
        IS
            v_level_2a  VARCHAR2(20) := 'Value from level_2a';
            BEGIN
                DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... BLOCK level_2a');
                DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... v_level_2a: ' || v_level_2a);
                DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... v_level_1a: ' || v_level_1a);
                DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... level_1a.v_level_1a: ' ||
                    level_1a.v_level_1a);
                DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... v_level_0: ' || v_level_0);
                DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... level_0.v_level_0: ' ||
                    level_0.v_level_0);
                DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... END BLOCK level_2a');
            END level_2a;
            BEGIN
                DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. BLOCK level_1a);
                level_2a;
--                DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.... v_level_2a: ' || v_level_2a);
--                Error - Descendent block ----^
--                DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.... level_2a.v_level_2a: ' ||
level_2a.v_level_2a);
--                Error - Descendent block -----^
                DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. END BLOCK level_1a);
            END level_1a;
            PROCEDURE level_1b
            IS
                v_level_1b  VARCHAR2(20) := 'Value from level_1b';
                BEGIN
                    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. BLOCK level_1b);
                    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.... v_level_1b: ' || v_level_1b);
                    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.... v_level_0 : ' || v_level_0);
--                    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.... level_1a.v_level_1a: ' ||
level_1a.v_level_1a);
--                    Error - Sibling block -----^
--                    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.... level_2a.v_level_2a: ' ||

```

```

level_2a.v_level_2a);
--          Error - Sibling block descendant -----^
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. END BLOCK level_1b);
END level_1b;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('BLOCK level_0');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. v_level_0: ' || v_level_0);
    level_1a;
    level_1b;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('END BLOCK level_0');
END level_0;

```

The following is the output showing the content of each variable when the procedure is invoked:

```

BEGIN
    level_0;
END;

BLOCK level_0
.. v_level_0: Value from level_0
.. BLOCK level_1a
..... BLOCK level_2a
..... v_level_2a: Value from level_2a
..... v_level_1a: Value from level_1a
..... level_1a.v_level_1a: Value from level_1a
..... v_level_0: Value from level_0
..... level_0.v_level_0: Value from level_0
..... END BLOCK level_2a
.. END BLOCK level_1a
.. BLOCK level_1b
.... v_level_1b: Value from level_1b
.... v_level_0 : Value from level_0
.. END BLOCK level_1b
END BLOCK level_0

```

The following example shows similar access attempts when all variables in all blocks have the same name:

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE level_0
IS
    v_common      VARCHAR2(20) := 'Value from level_0';
    PROCEDURE level_1a
    IS
        v_common      VARCHAR2(20) := 'Value from level_1a';
        PROCEDURE level_2a
        IS
            v_common      VARCHAR2(20) := 'Value from level_2a';
        BEGIN
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... BLOCK level_2a');
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... v_common: ' || v_common);
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... level_2a.v_common: ' ||
level_2a.v_common);
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... level_1a.v_common: ' ||
level_1a.v_common);
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... level_0.v_common: ' ||
level_0.v_common);
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... END BLOCK level_2a');

```

```

END level_2a;
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. BLOCK level_1a');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.... v_common: ' || v_common);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.... level_0.v_common: ' || level_0.v_common);
level_2a;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. END BLOCK level_1a');
END level_1a;
PROCEDURE level_1b
IS
  v_common  VARCHAR2(20) := 'Value from level_1b';
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. BLOCK level_1b');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.... v_common: ' || v_common);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.... level_0.v_common : ' || level_0.v_common);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. END BLOCK level_1b');
END level_1b;
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('BLOCK level_0');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. v_common: ' || v_common);
level_1a;
level_1b;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('END BLOCK level_0');
END level_0;

```

The following is the output showing the content of each variable when the procedure is invoked:

```

BEGIN
  level_0;
END;

BLOCK level_0
.. v_common: Value from level_0
.. BLOCK level_1a
.... v_common: Value from level_1a
.... level_0.v_common: Value from level_0
..... BLOCK level_2a
..... v_common: Value from level_2a
..... level_2a.v_common: Value from level_2a
..... level_1a.v_common: Value from level_1a
..... level_0.v_common: Value from level_0
..... END BLOCK level_2a
.. END BLOCK level_1a
.. BLOCK level_1b
.... v_common: Value from level_1b
.... level_0.v_common : Value from level_0
.. END BLOCK level_1b
END BLOCK level_0

```

As previously discussed, the labels on anonymous blocks can also be used to qualify access to variables. The following example shows variable access within a set of nested anonymous blocks:

```

DECLARE
  v_common      VARCHAR2(20) := 'Value from level_0';
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('BLOCK level_0');

```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. v_common: '|| v_common);
<<level_1a>>
DECLARE
    v_common  VARCHAR2(20) := 'Value from level_1a';
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. BLOCK level_1a');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.... v_common: ' || v_common);
    <<level_2a>>
    DECLARE
        v_common  VARCHAR2(20) := 'Value from level_2a';
    BEGIN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... BLOCK level_2a');
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... v_common: ' || v_common);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... level_1a.v_common: ' ||
level_1a.v_common);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('..... END BLOCK level_2a');
    END;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. END BLOCK level_1a);
END;
<<level_1b>>
DECLARE
    v_common  VARCHAR2(20) := 'Value from level_1b';
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. BLOCK level_1b');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.... v_common: ' || v_common);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('.... level_1b.v_common: ' ||
level_1b.v_common);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(.. END BLOCK level_1b);
END;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('END BLOCK level_0');
END;

```

The following is the output showing the content of each variable when the anonymous block is invoked:

```

BLOCK level_0
.. v_common: Value from level_0
.. BLOCK level_1a
.... v_common: Value from level_1a
..... BLOCK level_2a
..... v_common: Value from level_2a
..... level_1a.v_common: Value from level_1a
..... END BLOCK level_2a
.. END BLOCK level_1a
.. BLOCK level_1b
.... v_common: Value from level_1b
.... level_1b.v_common: Value from level_1b
.. END BLOCK level_1b
END BLOCK level_0

```

The following example is an object type whose object type method, `display_emp`, contains record type `emp_typ` and subprocedure `emp_sal_query`. Record variable `r.emp` declared locally to `emp_sal_query` is able to access the record type `emp_typ` declared in the parent block `display_emp`.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE emp_pay_obj_typ AS OBJECT
(
    empno      NUMBER(4),

```

```

 MEMBER PROCEDURE display_emp(SELF IN OUT emp_pay_obj_typ)
);

CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE BODY emp_pay_obj_typ AS
 MEMBER PROCEDURE display_emp (SELF IN OUT emp_pay_obj_typ)
 IS
 TYPE emp_typ IS RECORD (
    ename      emp.ename%TYPE,
    job        emp.job%TYPE,
    hiredate   emp.hiredate%TYPE,
    sal        emp.sal%TYPE,
    deptno    emp.deptno%TYPE
);
 PROCEDURE emp_sal_query (
    p_empno     IN emp.empno%TYPE
)
IS
 r_emp      emp_typ;
 v_avgsal   emp.sal%TYPE;
BEGIN
    SELECT ename, job, hiredate, sal, deptno
        INTO r_emp.ename, r_emp.job, r_emp.hiredate, r_emp.sal,
r_emp.deptno
        FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee # : ' || p_empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || r_emp.ename);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job       : ' || r_emp.job);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || r_emp.hiredate);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary    : ' || r_emp.sal);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Dept #   : ' || r_emp.deptno);

    SELECT AVG(sal) INTO v_avgsal
    FROM emp WHERE deptno = r_emp.deptno;
    IF r_emp.sal > v_avgsal THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee''s salary is more than the '
|| 'department average of ' || v_avgsal);
    ELSE
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee''s salary does not exceed the
'
|| 'department average of ' || v_avgsal);
    END IF;
END;
BEGIN
    emp_sal_query(SELF.empno);
END;
END;

```

The following is the output displayed when an instance of the object type is created and procedure `display_emp` is invoked:

```

DECLARE
    v_emp      EMP_PAY_OBJ_TYP;
BEGIN
    v_emp := emp_pay_obj_typ(7900);
    v_emp.display_emp;
END;

```

```

Employee # : 7900
Name      : JAMES
Job       : CLERK
Hire Date : 03-DEC-81 00:00:00
Salary    : 950.00
Dept #   : 30
Employee's salary does not exceed the department average of 1566.67

```

The following example is a package with three levels of subprocedures. A record type, collection type, and cursor type declared in the upper level procedure can be accessed by the descendent subprocedure.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE emp_dept_pkg
IS
  PROCEDURE display_emp (
    p_deptno    NUMBER
  );
END;

CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY emp_dept_pkg
IS
  PROCEDURE display_emp (
    p_deptno    NUMBER
  )
  IS
    TYPE emp_rec_typ IS RECORD (
      empno      emp.empno%TYPE,
      ename      emp.ename%TYPE
    );
    TYPE emp_arr_typ IS TABLE OF emp_rec_typ INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
    TYPE emp_cur_type IS REF CURSOR RETURN emp_rec_typ;
    PROCEDURE emp_by_dept (
      p_deptno    emp.deptno%TYPE
    )
    IS
      emp_arr    emp_arr_typ;
      emp_refcur emp_cur_type;
      i          BINARY_INTEGER := 0;
    PROCEDURE display_emp_arr
    IS
    BEGIN
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- -----');
      FOR j IN emp_arr.FIRST .. emp_arr.LAST LOOP
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(emp_arr(j).empno || ' ' ||
                           emp_arr(j).ename);
      END LOOP;
    END display_emp_arr;
    BEGIN
      OPEN emp_refcur FOR SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE deptno =
p_deptno;
      LOOP
        i := i + 1;
        FETCH emp_refcur INTO emp_arr(i).empno, emp_arr(i).ename;
        EXIT WHEN emp_refcur%NOTFOUND;
      END LOOP;
    END;

```

```

CLOSE emp_refcur;
display_emp_arr;
END emp_by_dept;
BEGIN
  emp_by_dept(p_deptno);
END;
END;

```

The following is the output displayed when the top level package procedure is invoked:

```

BEGIN
  emp_dept_pkg.display_emp(20);
END;

```

EMPNO	ENAME
7369	SMITH
7566	JONES
7788	SCOTT
7876	ADAMS
7902	FORD

## 8.2.8 Compilation Errors in Procedures and Functions

When the Advanced Server parsers compile a procedure or function, they confirm that both the `CREATE` statement and the program body (that portion of the program that follows the `AS` keyword) conforms to the grammar rules for SPL and SQL constructs. By default, the server will terminate the compilation process if a parser detects an error. Note that the parsers detect syntax errors in expressions, but not semantic errors (i.e. an expression referencing a non-existent column, table, or function, or a value of incorrect type).

`spl.max_error_count` instructs the server to stop parsing if it encounters the specified number of errors in SPL code, or when it encounters an error in SQL code. The default value of `spl.max_error_count` is `10`; the maximum value is `1000`. Setting `spl.max_error_count` to a value of `1` instructs the server to stop parsing when it encounters the first error in either SPL or SQL code.

You can use the `SET` command to specify a value for `spl.max_error_count` for your current session. The syntax is:

```
SET spl.max_error_count = <number_of_errors>
```

Where `number_of_errors` specifies the number of SPL errors that may occur before the server halts the compilation process. For example:

```
| SET spl.max_error_count = 6
```

The example instructs the server to continue past the first five SPL errors it encounters. When the server encounters the sixth error it will stop validating, and print six detailed error messages, and one error summary.

To save time when developing new code, or when importing existing code from another source, you may want to set the `spl.max_error_count` configuration parameter to a relatively high number of errors.

Please note that if you instruct the server to continue parsing in spite of errors in the SPL code in a program body, and the parser encounters an error in a segment of SQL code, there may still be errors in any SPL or SQL code

that follows the erroneous SQL code. For example, the following function results in two errors:

```
CREATE FUNCTION computeBonus(baseSalary number) RETURN number AS
BEGIN

    bonus := baseSalary * 1.10;
    total := bonus + 100;

    RETURN bonus;
END;

ERROR: "bonus" is not a known variable
LINE 4:     bonus := baseSalary * 1.10;
                  ^
ERROR: "total" is not a known variable
LINE 5:     total := bonus + 100;
                  ^
ERROR: compilation of SPL function/procedure "computebonus" failed due to 2
errors
```

The following example adds a `SELECT` statement to the previous example. The error in the `SELECT` statement masks the other errors that follow:

```
CREATE FUNCTION computeBonus(employeeName number) RETURN number AS
BEGIN
    SELECT salary INTO baseSalary FROM emp
        WHERE ename = employeeName;

    bonus := baseSalary * 1.10;
    total := bonus + 100;

    RETURN bonus;
END;

ERROR: "basesalary" is not a known variable
LINE 3:     SELECT salary INTO baseSalary FROM emp WHERE ename = emp...
```

## 8.2.9 Program Security

Security over what user may execute an SPL program and what database objects an SPL program may access for any given user executing the program is controlled by the following:

- Privilege to execute a program.
- Privileges granted on the database objects (including other SPL programs) which a program attempts to access.
- Whether the program is defined with definer's rights or invoker's rights.

These aspects are discussed in the following sections.

## 8.2.9.1 EXECUTE Privilege

An SPL program (function, procedure, or package) can begin execution only if any of the following are true:

- The current user is a superuser, or
- The current user has been granted **EXECUTE** privilege on the SPL program, or
- The current user inherits **EXECUTE** privilege on the SPL program by virtue of being a member of a group which does have such privilege, or
- **EXECUTE** privilege has been granted to the **PUBLIC** group.

Whenever an SPL program is created in Advanced Server, **EXECUTE** privilege is automatically granted to the **PUBLIC** group by default, therefore, any user can immediately execute the program.

This default privilege can be removed by using the **REVOKE EXECUTE** command. The following is an example:

```
REVOKE EXECUTE ON PROCEDURE list_emp FROM PUBLIC;
```

Explicit **EXECUTE** privilege on the program can then be granted to individual users or groups.

```
GRANT EXECUTE ON PROCEDURE list_emp TO john;
```

Now, user, **john**, can execute the **list\_emp** program; other users who do not meet any of the conditions listed at the beginning of this section cannot.

Once a program begins execution, the next aspect of security is what privilege checks occur if the program attempts to perform an action on any database object including:

- Reading or modifying table or view data.
- Creating, modifying, or deleting a database object such as a table, view, index, or sequence.
- Obtaining the current or next value from a sequence.
- Calling another program (function, procedure, or package).

Each such action can be protected by privileges on the database object either allowed or disallowed for the user.

Note that it is possible for a database to have more than one object of the same type with the same name, but each such object belonging to a different schema in the database. If this is the case, which object is being referenced by an SPL program? This is the topic of the next section.

## 8.2.9.2 Database Object Name Resolution

A database object inside an SPL program may either be referenced by its qualified name or by an unqualified name. A qualified name is in the form of **schema.name** where **schema** is the name of the schema under which the database object with identifier, **name**, exists. An unqualified name does not have the **schema**. portion. When a reference is made to a qualified name, there is absolutely no ambiguity as to exactly which database object is intended – it either does or does not exist in the specified schema.

Locating an object with an unqualified name, however, requires the use of the current user's search path. When a user becomes the current user of a session, a default search path is always associated with that user. The search path consists of a list of schemas which are searched in left-to-right order for locating an unqualified database object reference. The object is considered non-existent if it can't be found in any of the schemas in the search path. The default search path can be displayed in PSQL using the **SHOW search\_path** command.

```
edb=# SHOW search_path;
search_path
-----
"$user", public
(1 row)
```

`$user` in the above search path is a generic placeholder that refers to the current user so if the current user of the above session is `enterprisedb`, an unqualified database object would be searched for in the following schemas in this order – first, `enterprisedb`, then `public`.

Once an unqualified name has been resolved in the search path, it can be determined if the current user has the appropriate privilege to perform the desired action on that specific object.

#### Note

The concept of the search path is not compatible with Oracle databases. For an unqualified reference, Oracle simply looks in the schema of the current user for the named database object. It also important to note that in Oracle, a user and his or her schema is the same entity while in Advanced Server, a user and a schema are two distinct objects.

### 8.2.9.3 Database Object Privileges

Once an SPL program begins execution, any attempt to access a database object from within the program results in a check to ensure the current user has the authorization to perform the intended action against the referenced object. Privileges on database objects are bestowed and removed using the `GRANT` and `REVOKE` commands, respectively. If the current user attempts unauthorized access on a database object, then the program will throw an exception. See [Exception Handling](#) for information about exception handling.

### 8.2.9.4 Definer's vs. Invokers Rights

When an SPL program is about to begin execution, a determination is made as to what user is to be associated with this process. This user is referred to as the *current user*. The current user's database object privileges are used to determine whether or not access to database objects referenced in the program will be permitted. The current prevailing search path in effect when the program is invoked will be used to resolve any unqualified object references.

The selection of the current user is influenced by whether the SPL program was created with definer's right or invoker's rights. The `AUTHID` clause determines that selection. Appearance of the clause `AUTHID DEFINER` gives the program definer's rights. This is also the default if the `AUTHID` clause is omitted. Use of the clause `AUTHID CURRENT_USER` gives the program invoker's rights. The difference between the two is summarized as follows:

- If a program has *definer's rights*, then the owner of the program becomes the current user when program execution begins. The program owner's database object privileges are used to determine if access to a referenced object is permitted. In a definer's rights program, it is irrelevant as to which user actually invoked the program.
- If a program has *invoker's rights*, then the current user at the time the program is called remains the current user while the program is executing (but not necessarily within called subprograms – see the following bullet points). When an invoker's rights program is invoked, the current user is typically the user that started the

session (i.e., made the database connection) although it is possible to change the current user after the session has started using the SET ROLE command. In an invoker's rights program, it is irrelevant as to which user actually owns the program.

From the previous definitions, the following observations can be made:

- If a definer's rights program calls a definer's rights program, the current user changes from the owner of the calling program to the owner of the called program during execution of the called program.
- If a definer's rights program calls an invoker's rights program, the owner of the calling program remains the current user during execution of both the calling and called programs.
- If an invoker's rights program calls an invoker's rights program, the current user of the calling program remains the current user during execution of the called program.
- If an invokers' rights program calls a definer's rights program, the current user switches to the owner of the definer's rights program during execution of the called program.

The same principles apply if the called program in turn calls another program in the cases cited above.

## 8.2.9.5 Security Example

In the following example, a new database will be created along with two users – `hr_mgr` who will own a copy of the entire sample application in schema, `hr_mgr`; and `sales_mgr` who will own a schema named, `sales_mgr`, that will have a copy of only the `emp` table containing only the employees who work in sales.

The procedure `list_emp`, function `hire_clerk`, and package `emp_admin` will be used in this example. All of the default privileges that are granted upon installation of the sample application will be removed and then be explicitly re-granted so as to present a more secure environment in this example.

Programs `list_emp` and `hire_clerk` will be changed from the default of definer's rights to invoker's rights. It will be then illustrated that when `sales_mgr` runs these programs, they act upon the `emp` table in `sales_mgr`'s schema since `sales_mgr`'s search path and privileges will be used for name resolution and authorization checking.

Programs `get_dept_name` and `hire_emp` in the `emp_admin` package will then be executed by `sales_mgr`. In this case, the `dept` table and `emp` table in `hr_mgr`'s schema will be accessed as `hr_mgr` is the owner of the `emp_admin` package which is using definer's rights. Since the default search path is in effect with the `$user` placeholder, the schema matching the user (in this case, `hr_mgr`) is used to find the tables.

### Step 1 – Create Database and Users

As user `enterprisedb`, create the `hr` database:

```
CREATE DATABASE hr;
```

Switch to the `hr` database and create the users:

```
\c hr enterprisedb
CREATE USER hr_mgr IDENTIFIED BY password;
CREATE USER sales_mgr IDENTIFIED BY password;
```

### Step 2 – Create the Sample Application

Create the entire sample application, owned by `hr_mgr`, in `hr_mgr`'s schema.

```
\c - hr_mgr
\i /usr/edb/as11/share/edb-sample.sql
```

```
BEGIN
CREATE TABLE
CREATE TABLE
CREATE TABLE
CREATE VIEW
CREATE SEQUENCE
```

```
.
.
.
CREATE PACKAGE
CREATE PACKAGE BODY
COMMIT
```

### Step 3 – Create the emp Table in Schema sales\_mgr

Create a subset of the `emp` table owned by `sales_mgr` in `sales_mgr`'s schema.

```
\c - hr_mgr
GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA hr_mgr TO sales_mgr;
\c - sales_mgr
CREATE TABLE emp AS SELECT * FROM hr_mgr.emp WHERE job = 'SALESMAN';
```

In the above example, the `GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA` command is given to allow `sales_mgr` access into `hr_mgr`'s schema to make a copy of `hr_mgr`'s `emp` table. This step is required in Advanced Server and is not compatible with Oracle databases since Oracle does not have the concept of a schema that is distinct from its user.

### Step 4 – Remove Default Privileges

Remove all privileges to later illustrate the minimum required privileges needed.

```
\c - hr_mgr
REVOKE USAGE ON SCHEMA hr_mgr FROM sales_mgr;
REVOKE ALL ON dept FROM PUBLIC;
REVOKE ALL ON emp FROM PUBLIC;
REVOKE ALL ON next_empno FROM PUBLIC;
REVOKE EXECUTE ON FUNCTION new_empno() FROM PUBLIC;
REVOKE EXECUTE ON PROCEDURE list_emp FROM PUBLIC;
REVOKE EXECUTE ON FUNCTION hire_clerk(VARCHAR2,NUMBER) FROM PUBLIC;
REVOKE EXECUTE ON PACKAGE emp_admin FROM PUBLIC;
```

### Step 5 – Change list\_emp to Invoker's Rights

While connected as user, `hr_mgr`, add the `AUTHID CURRENT_USER` clause to the `list_emp` program and resave it in Advanced Server. When performing this step, be sure you are logged on as `hr_mgr`, otherwise the modified program may wind up in the `public` schema instead of in `hr_mgr`'s schema.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE list_emp
AUTHID CURRENT_USER
IS
    v_empno      NUMBER(4);
    v_ename      VARCHAR2(10);
    CURSOR emp_cur IS
        SELECT empno, ename FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_cur;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');
LOOP
  FETCH emp_cur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
  EXIT WHEN emp_cur%NOTFOUND;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' || v_ename);
END LOOP;
CLOSE emp_cur;
END;

```

## Step 6 – Change hire\_clerk to Invoker’s Rights and Qualify Call to new\_empno

While connected as user, `hr_mgr`, add the `AUTHID CURRENT_USER` clause to the `hire_clerk` program.

Also, after the `BEGIN` statement, fully qualify the reference, `new_empno`, to `hr_mgr.new_empno` in order to ensure the `hire_clerk` function call to the `new_empno` function resolves to the `hr_mgr` schema.

When resaving the program, be sure you are logged on as `hr_mgr`, otherwise the modified program may wind up in the `public` schema instead of in `hr_mgr`’s schema.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION hire_clerk (
  p_ename      VARCHAR2,
  p_deptno     NUMBER
) RETURN NUMBER
AUTHID CURRENT_USER
IS
  v_empno      NUMBER(4);
  v_ename      VARCHAR2(10);
  v_job        VARCHAR2(9);
  v_mgr        NUMBER(4);
  v_hiredate   DATE;
  v_sal         NUMBER(7,2);
  v_comm        NUMBER(7,2);
  v_deptno     NUMBER(2);
BEGIN
  v_empno := hr_mgr.new_empno;
  INSERT INTO emp VALUES (v_empno, p_ename, 'CLERK', 7782,
    TRUNC(SYSDATE), 950.00, NULL, p_deptno);
  SELECT empno, ename, job, mgr, hiredate, sal, comm, deptno INTO
    v_empno, v_ename, v_job, v_mgr, v_hiredate, v_sal, v_comm, v_deptno
    FROM emp WHERE empno = v_empno;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Department : ' || v_deptno);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee No: ' || v_empno);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || v_ename);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job       : ' || v_job);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Manager   : ' || v_mgr);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || v_hiredate);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary    : ' || v_sal);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Commission : ' || v_comm);
  RETURN v_empno;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The following is SQLERRM:');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLERRM);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The following is SQLCODE:');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLCODE);
    RETURN -1;

```

```
END;
```

## Step 7 – Grant Required Privileges

While connected as user, `hr_mgr`, grant the privileges needed so `sales_mgr` can execute the `list_emp` procedure, `hire_clerk` function, and `emp_admin` package. Note that the only data object `sales_mqr` has access to is the `emp` table in the `sales_mgr` schema. `sales_mgr` has no privileges on any table in the `hr_mgr` schema.

```
GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA hr_mgr TO sales_mgr;
GRANT EXECUTE ON PROCEDURE list_emp TO sales_mgr;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION hire_clerk(VARCHAR2,NUMBER) TO sales_mgr;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION new_emph() TO sales_mgr;
GRANT EXECUTE ON PACKAGE emp_admin TO sales_mgr;
```

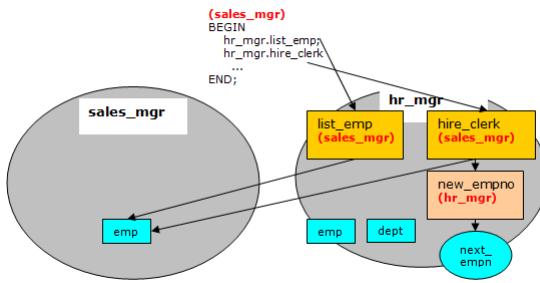
## Step 8 – Run Programs `list_emp` and `hire_clerk`

Connect as user, `sales_mgr`, and run the following anonymous block:

```
\c - sales_mgr
DECLARE
    v_empno      NUMBER(4);
BEGIN
    hr_mgr.list_emp;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('*** Adding new employee ***');
    v_empno := hr_mgr.hire_clerk('JONES',40);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('*** After new employee added ***');
    hr_mgr.list_emp;
END;

EMPNO  ENAME
----- 
7499   ALLEN
7521   WARD
7654   MARTIN
7844   TURNER
*** Adding new employee ***
Department : 40
Employee No: 8000
Name      : JONES
Job       : CLERK
Manager   : 7782
Hire Date : 08-NOV-07 00:00:00
Salary    : 950.00
*** After new employee added ***
EMPNO  ENAME
----- 
7499   ALLEN
7521   WARD
7654   MARTIN
7844   TURNER
8000   JONES
```

The table and sequence accessed by the programs of the anonymous block are illustrated in the following diagram. The gray ovals represent the schemas of `sales_mgr` and `hr_mgr`. The current user during each program execution is shown within parenthesis in bold red font.



Selecting from `sales_mgr`'s `emp` table shows that the update was made in this table.

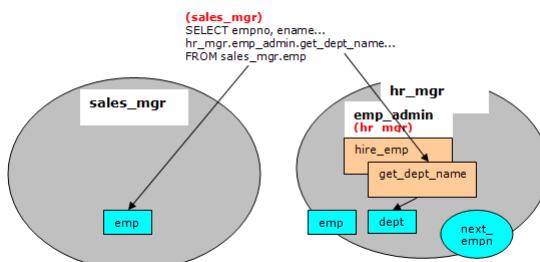
```
SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, deptno,
hr_mgr.emp_admin.get_dept_name(deptno) FROM sales_mgr.emp;
```

empno	ename	hiredate	sal	deptno	get_dept_name
7499	ALLEN	20-FEB-81 00:00:00	1600.00	30	SALES
7521	WARD	22-FEB-81 00:00:00	1250.00	30	SALES
7654	MARTIN	28-SEP-81 00:00:00	1250.00	30	SALES
7844	TURNER	08-SEP-81 00:00:00	1500.00	30	SALES
8000	JONES	08-NOV-07 00:00:00	950.00	40	OPERATIONS

empno	ename	hiredate	sal	deptno	get_dept_name
7499	ALLEN	20-FEB-81 00:00:00	1600.00	30	SALES
7521	WARD	22-FEB-81 00:00:00	1250.00	30	SALES
7654	MARTIN	28-SEP-81 00:00:00	1250.00	30	SALES
7844	TURNER	08-SEP-81 00:00:00	1500.00	30	SALES
8000	JONES	08-NOV-07 00:00:00	950.00	40	OPERATIONS

(5 rows)

The following diagram shows that the `SELECT` command references the `emp` table in the `sales_mgr` schema, but the `dept` table referenced by the `get_dept_name` function in the `emp_admin` package is from the `hr_mgr` schema since the `emp_admin` package has definer's rights and is owned by `hr_mgr`. The default search path setting with the `$user` placeholder resolves the access by user `hr_mgr` to the `dept` table in the `hr_mgr` schema.

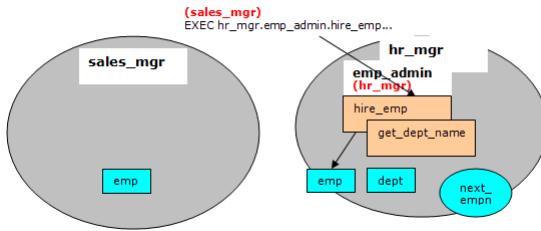


## Step 9 – Run Program `hire_emp` in the `emp_admin` Package

While connected as user, `sales_mgr`, run the `hire_emp` procedure in the `emp_admin` package.

```
EXEC hr_mgr.emp_admin.hire_emp(9001,
'ALICE','SALESMAN',8000,TRUNC(SYSDATE),1000,7369,40);
```

This diagram illustrates that the `hire_emp` procedure in the `emp_admin` definer's rights package updates the `emp` table belonging to `hr_mgr` since the object privileges of `hr_mgr` are used, and the default search path setting with the `$user` placeholder resolves to the schema of `hr_mgr`.



Now connect as user, `hr_mgr`. The following `SELECT` command verifies that the new employee was added to `hr_mgr`'s `emp` table since the `emp_admin` package has definer's rights and `hr_mgr` is `emp_admin`'s owner.

```
\c - hr_mgr
SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, deptno,
hr_mgr.emp_admin.get_dept_name(deptno) FROM hr_mgr.emp;
```

empno	ename	hiredate	sal	deptno	get_dept_name
7369	SMITH	17-DEC-80 00:00:00	800.00	20	RESEARCH
7499	ALLEN	20-FEB-81 00:00:00	1600.00	30	SALES
7521	WARD	22-FEB-81 00:00:00	1250.00	30	SALES
7566	JONES	02-APR-81 00:00:00	2975.00	20	RESEARCH
7654	MARTIN	28-SEP-81 00:00:00	1250.00	30	SALES
7698	BLAKE	01-MAY-81 00:00:00	2850.00	30	SALES
7782	CLARK	09-JUN-81 00:00:00	2450.00	10	ACCOUNTING
7788	SCOTT	19-APR-87 00:00:00	3000.00	20	RESEARCH
7839	KING	17-NOV-81 00:00:00	5000.00	10	ACCOUNTING
7844	TURNER	08-SEP-81 00:00:00	1500.00	30	SALES
7876	ADAMS	23-MAY-87 00:00:00	1100.00	20	RESEARCH
7900	JAMES	03-DEC-81 00:00:00	950.00	30	SALES
7902	FORD	03-DEC-81 00:00:00	3000.00	20	RESEARCH
7934	MILLER	23-JAN-82 00:00:00	1300.00	10	ACCOUNTING
9001	ALICE	08-NOV-07 00:00:00	8000.00	40	OPERATIONS

(15 rows)

## 8.3 Variable Declarations

SPL is a block-structured language. The first section that can appear in a block is the declaration. The declaration contains the definition of variables, cursors, and other types that can be used in SPL statements contained in the block.

### 8.3.1 Declaring a Variable

Generally, all variables used in a block must be declared in the declaration section of the block. A variable declaration consists of a name that is assigned to the variable and its data type. Optionally, the variable can be initialized to a default value in the variable declaration.

The general syntax of a variable declaration is:

```
<name> <type> [ { := | DEFAULT } { <expression> | NULL } ];
```

**name** is an identifier assigned to the variable.

**type** is the data type assigned to the variable.

[ := **expression** ], if given, specifies the initial value assigned to the variable when the block is entered. If the clause is not given then the variable is initialized to the SQL **NULL** value.

The default value is evaluated every time the block is entered. So, for example, assigning **SYSDATE** to a variable of type **DATE** causes the variable to have the time of the current invocation, not the time when the procedure or function was precompiled.

The following procedure illustrates some variable declarations that utilize defaults consisting of string and numeric expressions.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE dept_salary_rpt (
    p_deptno      NUMBER
)
IS
    todays_date   DATE := SYSDATE;
    rpt_title     VARCHAR2(60) := 'Report For Department #' || p_deptno
                           || ' on ' || todays_date;
    base_sal      INTEGER := 35525;
    base_comm_rate NUMBER := 1.33333;
    base_annual   NUMBER := ROUND(base_sal * base_comm_rate, 2);
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(rpt_title);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Base Annual Salary: ' || base_annual);
END;
```

The following output of the above procedure shows that default values in the variable declarations are indeed assigned to the variables.

```
EXEC dept_salary_rpt(20);
```

```
Report For Department # 20 on 10-JUL-07 16:44:45
Base Annual Salary: 47366.55
```

## 8.3.2 Using %TYPE in Variable Declarations

Often, variables will be declared in SPL programs that will be used to hold values from tables in the database. In order to ensure compatibility between the table columns and the SPL variables, the data types of the two should be the same.

However, as quite often happens, a change might be made to the table definition. If the data type of the column is changed, the corresponding change may be required to the variable in the SPL program.

Instead of coding the specific column data type into the variable declaration the column attribute, **%TYPE**, can be used instead. A qualified column name in dot notation or the name of a previously declared variable must be specified as a prefix to **%TYPE**. The data type of the column or variable prefixed to **%TYPE** is assigned to the

variable being declared. If the data type of the given column or variable changes, the new data type will be associated with the variable without the need to modify the declaration code.

#### Note

The `%TYPE` attribute can be used with formal parameter declarations as well.

```
<name> { { <table> | <view> }<.column> | <variable> }%TYPE;
```

`name` is the identifier assigned to the variable or formal parameter that is being declared. `column` is the name of a column in `table` or `view.variable` is the name of a variable that was declared prior to the variable identified by `name`.

#### Note

The variable does not inherit any of the column's other attributes such as might be specified on the column with the `NOT NULL` clause or the `DEFAULT` clause.

In the following example a procedure queries the `emp` table using an employee number, displays the employee's data, finds the average salary of all employees in the department to which the employee belongs, and then compares the chosen employee's salary with the department average.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_sal_query (
    p_empno      IN NUMBER
)
IS
    v_ename      VARCHAR2(10);
    v_job        VARCHAR2(9);
    v_hiredate   DATE;
    v_sal         NUMBER(7,2);
    v_deptno     NUMBER(2);
    v_avgsal     NUMBER(7,2);
BEGIN
    SELECT ename, job, hiredate, sal, deptno
        INTO v_ename, v_job, v_hiredate, v_sal, v_deptno
        FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee # : ' || p_empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || v_ename);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job       : ' || v_job);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || v_hiredate);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary    : ' || v_sal);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Dept #   : ' || v_deptno);

    SELECT AVG(sal) INTO v_avgsal
        FROM emp WHERE deptno = v_deptno;
    IF v_sal > v_avgsal THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee''s salary is more than the '
            || 'department average of ' || v_avgsal);
    ELSE
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee''s salary does not exceed the '
            || 'department average of ' || v_avgsal);
    END IF;
END;
```

Instead of the above, the procedure could be written as follows without explicitly coding the `emp` table data types into the declaration section of the procedure.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_sal_query (
```

```

p_empno      IN emp.empno%TYPE
)
IS
v_ename      emp.ename%TYPE;
v_job        emp.job%TYPE;
v_hiredate   emp.hiredate%TYPE;
v_sal        emp.sal%TYPE;
v_deptno    emp.deptno%TYPE;
v_avgsal    v_sal%TYPE;
BEGIN
  SELECT ename, job, hiredate, sal, deptno
    INTO v_ename, v_job, v_hiredate, v_sal, v_deptno
   FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee # : ' || p_empno);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || v_ename);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job       : ' || v_job);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || v_hiredate);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary    : ' || v_sal);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Dept #   : ' || v_deptno);

  SELECT AVG(sal) INTO v_avgsal
    FROM emp WHERE deptno = v_deptno;
  IF v_sal > v_avgsal THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee''s salary is more than the '
    || 'department average of ' || v_avgsal);
  ELSE
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee''s salary does not exceed the '
    || 'department average of ' || v_avgsal);
  END IF;
END;

```

#### Note

`p_empno` shows an example of a formal parameter defined using `%TYPE`.

`v_avgsal` illustrates the usage of `%TYPE` referring to another variable instead of a table column.

The following is sample output from executing this procedure.

```

EXEC emp_sal_query(7698);

Employee # : 7698
Name      : BLAKE
Job       : MANAGER
Hire Date : 01-MAY-81 00:00:00
Salary    : 2850.00
Dept #   : 30
Employee's salary is more than the department average of 1566.67

```

### 8.3.3 Using %ROWTYPE in Record Declarations

The `%TYPE` attribute provides an easy way to create a variable dependent upon a column's data type. Using the `%ROWTYPE` attribute, you can define a record that contains fields that correspond to all columns of a given table. Each field takes on the data type of its corresponding column. The fields in the record do not inherit any of the columns' other attributes such as might be specified with the `NOT NULL` clause or the `DEFAULT` clause.

A *record* is a named, ordered collection of fields. A *field* is similar to a variable; it has an identifier and data type, but has the additional property of belonging to a record, and must be referenced using dot notation with the record name as its qualifier.

You can use the `%ROWTYPE` attribute to declare a record. The `%ROWTYPE` attribute is prefixed by a table name. Each column in the named table defines an identically named field in the record with the same data type as the column.

```
<record table>%ROWTYPE;
```

`record` is an identifier assigned to the record. `table` is the name of a table (or view) whose columns are to define the fields in the record. The following example shows how the `emp_sal_query` procedure from the prior section can be modified to use `emp%ROWTYPE` to create a record named `r_emp` instead of declaring individual variables for the columns in `emp`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_sal_query (
    p_empno      IN emp.empno%TYPE
)
IS
    r_emp        emp%ROWTYPE;
    v_avgsal    emp.sal%TYPE;
BEGIN
    SELECT ename, job, hiredate, sal, deptno
        INTO r_emp.ename, r_emp.job, r_emp.hiredate, r_emp.sal, r_emp.deptno
        FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee # : ' || p_empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || r_emp.ename);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job       : ' || r_emp.job);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || r_emp.hiredate);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary    : ' || r_emp.sal);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Dept #   : ' || r_emp.deptno);
    SELECT AVG(sal) INTO v_avgsal
        FROM emp WHERE deptno = r_emp.deptno;
    IF r_emp.sal > v_avgsal THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee''s salary is more than the '
            || 'department average of ' || v_avgsal);
    ELSE
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee''s salary does not exceed the '
            || 'department average of ' || v_avgsal);
    END IF;
END;
```

## 8.3.4 User-Defined Record Types and Record Variables

Records can be declared based upon a table definition using the `%ROWTYPE` attribute as shown in [Using %ROWTYPE in Record Declarations](#). This section describes how a new record structure can be defined that is not tied to any particular table definition.

The **TYPE IS RECORD** statement is used to create the definition of a record type. A *record type* is a definition of a record comprised of one or more identifiers and their corresponding data types. A record type cannot, by itself, be used to manipulate data.

The syntax for a **TYPE IS RECORD** statement is:

```
TYPE <rec_type> IS RECORD ( <fields> )
```

Where **fields** is a comma-separated list of one or more field definitions of the following form:

```
<field_name data_type> [NOT NULL][{: | DEFAULT} <default_value>]
```

Where:

**rec\_type**

- | **rec\_type** is an identifier assigned to the record type.

**field\_name**

- | **field\_name** is the identifier assigned to the field of the record type.

**data\_type**

- | **data\_type** specifies the data type of **field\_name**.

**DEFAULT default\_value**

The **DEFAULT** clause assigns a default data value for the corresponding field. The data type of the default expression must match the data type of the column. If no default is specified, then the default is **NULL**.

A *record variable* or simply put, a *record*, is an instance of a record type. A record is declared from a record type. The properties of the record such as its field names and types are inherited from the record type.

The following is the syntax for a record declaration.

```
<record rectype>
```

**record** is an identifier assigned to the record variable. **rectype** is the identifier of a previously defined record type. Once declared, a record can then be used to hold data.

Dot notation is used to make reference to the fields in the record.

```
<record.field>
```

**record** is a previously declared record variable and **field** is the identifier of a field belonging to the record type from which **record** is defined.

The **emp\_sal\_query** is again modified – this time using a user-defined record type and record variable.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_sal_query (
    p_empno      IN emp.empno%TYPE
)
IS
    TYPE emp_typ IS RECORD (
        ename      emp.ename%TYPE,
        job       emp.job%TYPE,
        hiredate   emp.hiredate%TYPE,
        sal        emp.sal%TYPE,
        deptno    emp.deptno%TYPE
```

```

);
r_emp      emp_typ;
v_avgsal   emp.sal%TYPE;
BEGIN
  SELECT ename, job, hiredate, sal, deptno
    INTO r_emp.ename, r_emp.job, r_emp.hiredate, r_emp.sal, r_emp.deptno
   FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee # : ' || p_empno);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || r_emp.ename);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job       : ' || r_emp.job);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || r_emp.hiredate);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary    : ' || r_emp.sal);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Dept #   : ' || r_emp.deptno);

  SELECT AVG(sal) INTO v_avgsal
    FROM emp WHERE deptno = r_emp.deptno;
  IF r_emp.sal > v_avgsal THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee''s salary is more than the '
    || 'department average of ' || v_avgsal);
  ELSE
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee''s salary does not exceed the '
    || 'department average of ' || v_avgsal);
  END IF;
END;

```

Note that instead of specifying data type names, the `%TYPE` attribute can be used for the field data types in the record type definition.

The following is the output from executing this stored procedure.

```

EXEC emp_sal_query(7698);

Employee # : 7698
Name      : BLAKE
Job       : MANAGER
Hire Date : 01-MAY-81 00:00:00
Salary    : 2850.00
Dept #   : 30
Employee's salary is more than the department average of 1566.67

```

## 8.4 Basic Statements

This section begins the discussion of the programming statements that can be used in an SPL program.

### 8.4.1 Assignment

The assignment statement sets a variable or a formal parameter of mode **OUT** or **IN OUT** specified on the left side of the assignment, `=`, to the evaluated expression specified on the right side of the assignment.

```
<variable> := <expression>;
```

**variable** is an identifier for a previously declared variable, **OUT** formal parameter, or **IN OUT** formal parameter.

**expression** is an expression that produces a single value. The value produced by the expression must have a compatible data type with that of **variable**.

The following example shows the typical use of assignment statements in the executable section of the procedure.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE dept_salary_rpt (
    p_deptno      NUMBER
)
IS
    todays_date   DATE;
    rpt_title     VARCHAR2(60);
    base_sal      INTEGER;
    base_comm_rate NUMBER;
    base_annual   NUMBER;
BEGIN
    todays_date := SYSDATE;
    rpt_title := 'Report For Department #' || p_deptno || ' on '
        || todays_date;
    base_sal := 35525;
    base_comm_rate := 1.33333;
    base_annual := ROUND(base_sal * base_comm_rate, 2);

    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(rpt_title);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Base Annual Salary: ' || base_annual);
END;
```

## 8.4.2 DELETE

The **DELETE** command (available in the SQL language) can also be used in SPL programs.

An expression in the SPL language can be used wherever an expression is allowed in the SQL **DELETE** command. Thus, SPL variables and parameters can be used to supply values to the delete operation.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_delete (
    p_empno      IN emp.empno%TYPE
)
IS
BEGIN
    DELETE FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno;

    IF SQL%FOUND THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Deleted Employee # : ' || p_empno);
    ELSE
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee # ' || p_empno || ' not found');
```

```
END IF;
END;
```

The `SQL%FOUND` conditional expression returns `TRUE` if a row is deleted, `FALSE` otherwise. See [Obtaining the Result Status](#) for a discussion of `SQL%FOUND` and other similar expressions.

The following shows the deletion of an employee using this procedure.

```
EXEC emp_delete(9503);
```

Deleted Employee # : 9503

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno = 9503;
```

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno
(0 rows)							

#### Note

The `DELETE` command can be included in a `FORALL` statement. A `FORALL` statement allows a single `DELETE` command to delete multiple rows from values supplied in one or more collections. See [Using the FORALL Statement](#) for more information on the `FORALL` statement.

### 8.4.3 INSERT

The `INSERT` command available in the SQL language can also be used in SPL programs.

An expression in the SPL language can be used wherever an expression is allowed in the SQL `INSERT` command. Thus, SPL variables and parameters can be used to supply values to the insert operation.

The following is an example of a procedure that performs an insert of a new employee using data passed from a calling program.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_insert (
    p_empno      IN emp.empno%TYPE,
    p_ename       IN emp.ename%TYPE,
    p_job         IN emp.job%TYPE,
    p_mgr         IN emp.mgr%TYPE,
    p_hiredate    IN emp.hiredate%TYPE,
    p_sal          IN emp.sal%TYPE,
    p_comm         IN emp.comm%TYPE,
    p_deptno      IN emp.deptno%TYPE
)
IS
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO emp VALUES (
        p_empno,
        p_ename,
        p_job,
        p_mgr,
        p_hiredate,
```

```

p_sal,
p_comm,
p_deptno);

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Added employee...');
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee # : ' || p_empno);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || p_ename);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job       : ' || p_job);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Manager   : ' || p_mgr);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || p_hiredate);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary    : ' || p_sal);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Commission : ' || p_comm);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Dept #   : ' || p_deptno);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');

EXCEPTION
WHEN OTHERS THEN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('OTHERS exception on INSERT of employee #' ||
  || p_empno);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLCODE : ' || SQLCODE);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM : ' || SQLERRM);
END;

```

If an exception occurs all database changes made in the procedure are automatically rolled back. In this example the **EXCEPTION** section with the **WHEN OTHERS** clause catches all exceptions. Two variables are displayed. **SQLCODE** is a number that identifies the specific exception that occurred. **SQLERRM** is a text message explaining the error. See [Exception Handling](#) for more information on exception handling.

The following shows the output when this procedure is executed.

```
EXEC emp_insert(9503,'PETERSON','ANALYST',7902,'31-MAR-05',5000,NULL,40);
```

```

Added employee...
Employee # : 9503
Name      : PETERSON
Job       : ANALYST
Manager   : 7902
Hire Date : 31-MAR-05 00:00:00
Salary    : 5000
Dept #   : 40
-----

```

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno = 9503;
```

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno
9503	PETERSON	ANALYST	7902	31-MAR-05 00:00:00	5000.00		40

(1 row)

#### Note

The **INSERT** command can be included in a **FORALL** statement. A **FORALL** statement allows a single **INSERT** command to insert multiple rows from values supplied in one or more collections. See [Using the FORALL Statement](#) for more information on the **FORALL** statement.

## 8.4.4 NULL

The simplest statement is the `NULL` statement. This statement is an executable statement that does nothing.

```
NULL;
```

The following is the simplest, possible valid SPL program.

```
BEGIN
    NULL;
END;
```

The `NULL` statement can act as a placeholder where an executable statement is required such as in a branch of an `IF-THEN-ELSE` statement.

For example:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE divide_it (
    p_numerator    IN NUMBER,
    p_denominator IN NUMBER,
    p_result       OUT NUMBER
)
IS
BEGIN
    IF p_denominator = 0 THEN
        NULL;
    ELSE
        p_result := p_numerator / p_denominator;
    END IF;
END;
```

## 8.4.5 Using the RETURNING INTO Clause

The `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` commands may be appended by the optional `RETURNING INTO` clause. This clause allows the SPL program to capture the newly added, modified, or deleted values from the results of an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` command, respectively.

The following is the syntax.

```
{ <insert> | <update> | <delete> }
RETURNING { * | <expr_1> [, <expr_2>] ...}
    INTO { <record> | <field_1> [, <field_2>] ...};
```

`insert` is a valid `INSERT` command. `update` is a valid `UPDATE` command. `delete` is a valid `DELETE` command. If `*` is specified, then the values from the row affected by the `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` command are made available for assignment to the record or fields to the right of the `INTO` keyword. (Note that the use of `*` is an Advanced Server extension and is not compatible with Oracle databases.) `expr_1`, `expr_2...` are expressions evaluated upon the row affected by the `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` command. The evaluated results are assigned to the record or fields to the right of the `INTO` keyword. `record` is the identifier of a record that must contain fields that match in number and order, and are data type compatible with the values in the `RETURNING` clause. `field_1`, `field_2...` are variables that must match in number and order, and are data type compatible with

the set of values in the `RETURNING` clause.

If the `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` command returns a result set with more than one row, then an exception is thrown with `SQLCODE 01422, query returned more than one row`. If no rows are in the result set, then the variables following the `INTO` keyword are set to null.

#### Note

There is a variation of `RETURNING INTO` using the `BULK COLLECT` clause that allows a result set of more than one row that is returned into a collection. See [Using the BULK COLLECT Clause](#) for more information on the `BULK COLLECT` clause.

The following example is a modification of the `emp_comp_update` procedure introduced in [UPDATE](#), with the addition of the `RETURNING INTO` clause.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_comp_update (
    p_empno      IN emp.empno%TYPE,
    p_sal        IN emp.sal%TYPE,
    p_comm       IN emp.comm%TYPE
)
IS
    v_empno      emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_ename      emp.ename%TYPE;
    v_job        emp.job%TYPE;
    v_sal        emp.sal%TYPE;
    v_comm       emp.comm%TYPE;
    v_deptno     emp.deptno%TYPE;
BEGIN
    UPDATE emp SET sal = p_sal, comm = p_comm WHERE empno = p_empno
    RETURNING
        empno,
        ename,
        job,
        sal,
        comm,
        deptno
    INTO
        v_empno,
        v_ename,
        v_job,
        v_sal,
        v_comm,
        v_deptno;

    IF SQL%FOUND THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Updated Employee # : ' || v_empno);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || v_ename);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job       : ' || v_job);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Department : ' || v_deptno);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('New Salary   : ' || v_sal);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('New Commission : ' || v_comm);
    ELSE
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee # ' || p_empno || ' not found');
    END IF;
END;
```

The following is the output from this procedure (assuming employee 9503 created by the `emp_insert` procedure

still exists within the table).

```
EXEC emp_comp_update(9503, 6540, 1200);
```

```
Updated Employee # : 9503
Name      : PETERSON
Job       : ANALYST
Department : 40
New Salary : 6540.00
New Commission : 1200.00
```

The following example is a modification of the `emp_delete` procedure, with the addition of the `RETURNING INTO` clause using record types.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_delete (
    p_empno    IN emp.empno%TYPE
)
IS
    r_emp      emp%ROWTYPE;
BEGIN
    DELETE FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno
    RETURNING
        *
    INTO
        r_emp;

    IF SQL%FOUND THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Deleted Employee # : ' || r_emp.empno);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || r_emp.ename);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job       : ' || r_emp.job);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Manager   : ' || r_emp.mgr);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || r_emp.hiredate);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary    : ' || r_emp.sal);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Commission : ' || r_emp.comm);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Department : ' || r_emp.deptno);
    ELSE
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee # ' || p_empno || ' not found');
    END IF;
END;
```

The following is the output from this procedure.

```
EXEC emp_delete(9503);
```

```
Deleted Employee # : 9503
Name      : PETERSON
Job       : ANALYST
Manager   : 7902
Hire Date : 31-MAR-05 00:00:00
Salary    : 6540.00
Commission : 1200.00
Department : 40
```

## 8.4.6 SELECT INTO

The `SELECT INTO` statement is an SPL variation of the SQL `SELECT` command, the differences being:

- That `SELECT INTO` is designed to assign the results to variables or records where they can then be used in SPL program statements.
- The accessible result set of `SELECT INTO` is at most one row.

Other than the above, all of the clauses of the `SELECT` command such as `WHERE, ORDER BY, GROUP BY, HAVING`, etc. are valid for `SELECT INTO`. The following are the two variations of `SELECT INTO`.

```
SELECT <select_expressions> INTO <target> FROM ...;
```

`target` is a comma-separated list of simple variables. `select_expressions` and the remainder of the statement are the same as for the `SELECT` command. The selected values must exactly match in data type, number, and order the structure of the target or a runtime error occurs.

```
SELECT * INTO <record> FROM <table> ...;
```

`record` is a record variable that has previously been declared.

If the query returns zero rows, null values are assigned to the target(s). If the query returns multiple rows, the first row is assigned to the target(s) and the rest are discarded. (Note that "the first row" is not well-defined unless you've used `ORDER BY`.)

Note

In either cases, where no row is returned or more than one row is returned, SPL throws an exception.

Note

There is a variation of `SELECT INTO` using the `BULK COLLECT` clause that allows a result set of more than one row that is returned into a collection. See [SELECT BULK COLLECT](#) for more information on using the `BULK COLLECT` clause with the `SELECT INTO` statement.

You can use the `WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND` clause in an `EXCEPTION` block to determine whether the assignment was successful (that is, at least one row was returned by the query).

This version of the `emp_sal_query` procedure uses the variation of `SELECT INTO` that returns the result set into a record. Also note the addition of the `EXCEPTION` block containing the `WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND` conditional expression.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_sal_query (
    p_empno      IN emp.empno%TYPE
)
IS
    r_emp        emp%ROWTYPE;
    v_avgsal    emp.sal%TYPE;
BEGIN
    SELECT * INTO r_emp
        FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee # : ' || p_empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || r_emp.ename);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job       : ' || r_emp.job);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || r_emp.hiredate);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary    : ' || r_emp.sal);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Dept #   : ' || r_emp.deptno);
```

```

SELECT AVG(sal) INTO v_avgsal
  FROM emp WHERE deptno = r_emp.deptno;
IF r_emp.sal > v_avgsal THEN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee''s salary is more than the '
    || 'department average of ' || v_avgsal);
ELSE
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee''s salary does not exceed the '
    || 'department average of ' || v_avgsal);
END IF;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee #' || p_empno || ' not found');
END;

```

If the query is executed with a non-existent employee number the results appear as follows.

```
EXEC emp_sal_query(0);
```

Employee # 0 not found

Another conditional clause of use in the `EXCEPTION` section with `SELECT INTO` is the `TOO_MANY_ROWS` exception. If more than one row is selected by the `SELECT INTO` statement an exception is thrown by SPL.

When the following block is executed, the `TOO_MANY_ROWS` exception is thrown since there are many employees in the specified department.

```

DECLARE
  v_ename      emp.ename%TYPE;
BEGIN
  SELECT ename INTO v_ename FROM emp WHERE deptno = 20 ORDER BY ename;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN TOO_MANY_ROWS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('More than one employee found');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('First employee returned is ' || v_ename);
END;

```

More than one employee found  
First employee returned is ADAMS

Note

See [Exception Handling](#) for more information on exception handling.

## 8.4.7 UPDATE

The `UPDATE` command available in the SQL language can also be used in SPL programs.

An expression in the SPL language can be used wherever an expression is allowed in the SQL `UPDATE` command. Thus, SPL variables and parameters can be used to supply values to the update operation.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_comp_update (
  p_empno      IN emp.empno%TYPE,
```

```

    p_sal      IN emp.sal%TYPE,
    p_comm     IN emp.comm%TYPE
)
IS
BEGIN
    UPDATE emp SET sal = p_sal, comm = p_comm WHERE empno = p_empno;

    IF SQL%FOUND THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Updated Employee # : ' || p_empno);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('New Salary      : ' || p_sal);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('New Commission   : ' || p_comm);
    ELSE
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee # ' || p_empno || ' not found');
    END IF;
END;

```

The `SQL%FOUND` conditional expression returns `TRUE` if a row is updated, `FALSE` otherwise. See [Obtaining the Result Status](#) for a discussion of `SQL%FOUND` and other similar expressions.

The following shows the update on the employee using this procedure.

```
EXEC emp_comp_update(9503, 6540, 1200);
```

```
Updated Employee # : 9503
New Salary      : 6540
New Commission   : 1200
```

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno = 9503;
```

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno
9503	PETERSON	ANALYST	7902	31-MAR-05 00:00:00	6540.00	1200.00	40

```
(1 row)
```

#### Note

The `UPDATE` command can be included in a `FORALL` statement. A `FORALL` statement allows a single `UPDATE` command to update multiple rows from values supplied in one or more collections. See [Using the FORALL Statement](#) for more information on the `FORALL` statement.

## 8.4.8 Obtaining the Result Status

There are several attributes that can be used to determine the effect of a command. `SQL%FOUND` is a Boolean that returns `TRUE` if at least one row was affected by an `INSERT`, `UPDATE` or `DELETE` command or a `SELECT INTO` command retrieved one or more rows.

The following anonymous block inserts a row and then displays the fact that the row has been inserted.

```

BEGIN
    INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,job,sal,deptno) VALUES (
        9001, 'JONES', 'CLERK', 850.00, 40);
    IF SQL%FOUND THEN

```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Row has been inserted');
END IF;
END;
```

Row has been inserted

`SQL%ROWCOUNT` provides the number of rows affected by an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `SELECT INTO` command. The `SQL%ROWCOUNT` value is returned as a `BIGINT` data type. The following example updates the row that was just inserted and displays `SQL%ROWCOUNT`.

```

BEGIN
  UPDATE emp SET hiredate = '03-JUN-07' WHERE empno = 9001;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('# rows updated: ' || SQL%ROWCOUNT);
END;
```

### rows updated: 1

`SQL%NOTFOUND` is the opposite of `SQL%FOUND`. `SQL%NOTFOUND` returns `TRUE` if no rows were affected by an `INSERT`, `UPDATE` or `DELETE` command or a `SELECT INTO` command retrieved no rows.

```

BEGIN
  UPDATE emp SET hiredate = '03-JUN-07' WHERE empno = 9000;
  IF SQL%NOTFOUND THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('No rows were updated');
  END IF;
END;
```

No rows were updated

## 8.5 Control Structures

The programming statements in SPL that make it a full procedural complement to SQL are described in this section.

### 8.5.1 IF Statement

IF statements let you execute commands based on certain conditions. SPL has four forms of `IF`:

- `IF ... THEN`
- `IF ... THEN ... ELSE`
- `IF ... THEN ... ELSE IF`
- `IF ... THEN ... ELSIF ... THEN ... ELSE`

### 8.5.1.1 IF-THEN

```
IF boolean-expression THEN
  <statements>
END IF;
```

**IF-THEN** statements are the simplest form of **IF**. The statements between **THEN** and **END IF** will be executed if the condition is **TRUE**. Otherwise, they are skipped.

In the following example an **IF-THEN** statement is used to test and display employees who have a commission.

```
DECLARE
  v_empno      emp.empno%TYPE;
  v_comm       emp.comm%TYPE;
  CURSOR emp_cursor IS SELECT empno, comm FROM emp;
BEGIN
  OPEN emp_cursor;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO    COMM');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----    -----');
  LOOP
    FETCH emp_cursor INTO v_empno, v_comm;
    EXIT WHEN emp_cursor%NOTFOUND;
  --
  -- Test whether or not the employee gets a commission
  --
  IF v_comm IS NOT NULL AND v_comm > 0 THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' ||
    TO_CHAR(v_comm,'$99999.99'));
  END IF;
  END LOOP;
  CLOSE emp_cursor;
END;
```

The following is the output from this program.

```
EMPNO    COMM
----    -----
7499    $300.00
7521    $500.00
7654    $1400.00
```

### 8.5.1.2 IF-THEN-ELSE

```
IF boolean-expression THEN
  <statements>
ELSE
  <statements>
```

```
END IF;
```

**IF-THEN-ELSE** statements add to **IF-THEN** by letting you specify an alternative set of statements that should be executed if the condition evaluates to false.

The previous example is modified so an **IF-THEN-ELSE** statement is used to display the text **Non-commission** if the employee does not get a commission.

```
DECLARE
    v_empno      emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_comm       emp.comm%TYPE;
    CURSOR emp_cursor IS SELECT empno, comm FROM emp;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_cursor;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO    COMM');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----  -----');
    LOOP
        FETCH emp_cursor INTO v_empno, v_comm;
        EXIT WHEN emp_cursor%NOTFOUND;
    --
    -- Test whether or not the employee gets a commission
    --
        IF v_comm IS NOT NULL AND v_comm > 0 THEN
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' ||
                TO_CHAR(v_comm,'$99999.99'));
        ELSE
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' || 'Non-commission');
        END IF;
    END LOOP;
    CLOSE emp_cursor;
END;
```

The following is the output from this program.

EMPNO	COMM
7369	Non-commission
7499	\$ 300.00
7521	\$ 500.00
7566	Non-commission
7654	\$ 1400.00
7698	Non-commission
7782	Non-commission
7788	Non-commission
7839	Non-commission
7844	Non-commission
7876	Non-commission
7900	Non-commission
7902	Non-commission
7934	Non-commission

### 8.5.1.3 IF-THEN-ELSE IF

**IF** statements can be nested so that alternative **IF** statements can be invoked once it is determined whether or not the conditional of an outer **IF** statement is **TRUE** or **FALSE**.

In the following example the outer **IF-THEN-ELSE** statement tests whether or not an employee has a commission. The inner **IF-THEN-ELSE** statements then test whether the employee's total compensation exceeds or is less than the company average.

```

DECLARE
    v_empno      emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_sal        emp.sal%TYPE;
    v_comm       emp.comm%TYPE;
    v_avg        NUMBER(7,2);
    CURSOR emp_cursor IS SELECT empno, sal, comm FROM emp;
BEGIN
    --
    -- Calculate the average yearly compensation in the company
    --
    SELECT AVG((sal + NVL(comm,0)) * 24) INTO v_avg FROM emp;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Average Yearly Compensation: ' ||
        TO_CHAR(v_avg,'$999,999.99'));
    OPEN emp_cursor;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO   YEARLY COMP');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----');
    LOOP
        FETCH emp_cursor INTO v_empno, v_sal, v_comm;
        EXIT WHEN emp_cursor%NOTFOUND;
    --
    -- Test whether or not the employee gets a commission
    --
    IF v_comm IS NOT NULL AND v_comm > 0 THEN
        --
        -- Test if the employee's compensation with commission exceeds the average
        --
        IF (v_sal + v_comm) * 24 > v_avg THEN
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' ||
                TO_CHAR((v_sal + v_comm) * 24,'$999,999.99') ||
                ' Exceeds Average');
        ELSE
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' ||
                TO_CHAR((v_sal + v_comm) * 24,'$999,999.99') ||
                ' Below Average');
        END IF;
    ELSE
        --
        -- Test if the employee's compensation without commission exceeds the
        -- average
        --
        IF v_sal * 24 > v_avg THEN
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' ||
                TO_CHAR(v_sal * 24,'$999,999.99') || ' Exceeds Average');
        ELSE
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' ||
                TO_CHAR(v_sal * 24,'$999,999.99') || ' Below Average');
        END IF;
    END IF;
END LOOP;

```

```
CLOSE emp_cursor;
END;
```

#### Note

The logic in this program can be simplified considerably by calculating the employee's yearly compensation using the `NVL` function within the `SELECT` command of the cursor declaration, however, the purpose of this example is to demonstrate how `IF` statements can be used.

The following is the output from this program.

```
Average Yearly Compensation: $ 53,528.57
EMPNO  YEARLY COMP
-----
7369 $ 19,200.00 Below Average
7499 $ 45,600.00 Below Average
7521 $ 42,000.00 Below Average
7566 $ 71,400.00 Exceeds Average
7654 $ 63,600.00 Exceeds Average
7698 $ 68,400.00 Exceeds Average
7782 $ 58,800.00 Exceeds Average
7788 $ 72,000.00 Exceeds Average
7839 $ 120,000.00 Exceeds Average
7844 $ 36,000.00 Below Average
7876 $ 26,400.00 Below Average
7900 $ 22,800.00 Below Average
7902 $ 72,000.00 Exceeds Average
7934 $ 31,200.00 Below Average
```

When you use this form, you are actually nesting an `IF` statement inside the `ELSE` part of an outer `IF` statement. Thus you need one `END IF` statement for each nested `IF` and one for the parent `IF-ELSE`.

### 8.5.1.4 IF-THEN-ELSIF-ELSE

```
IF boolean-expression THEN
  <statements>
[ ELSIF boolean-expression THEN
  <statements>
[ ELSIF boolean-expression THEN
  <statements> ] ...]
[ ELSE
  <statements> ]
END IF;
```

`IF-THEN-ELSIF-ELSE` provides a method of checking many alternatives in one statement. Formally it is equivalent to nested `IF-THEN-ELSE-IF-THEN` commands, but only one `END IF` is needed.

The following example uses an `IF-THEN-ELSIF-ELSE` statement to count the number of employees by compensation ranges of \$25,000.

```
DECLARE
  v_empno    emp.empno%TYPE;
```

```

v_comp      NUMBER(8,2);
v_lt_25K    SMALLINT := 0;
v_25K_50K   SMALLINT := 0;
v_50K_75K   SMALLINT := 0;
v_75K_100K  SMALLINT := 0;
v_ge_100K   SMALLINT := 0;
CURSOR emp_cursor IS SELECT empno, (sal + NVL(comm,0)) * 24 FROM emp;
BEGIN
OPEN emp_cursor;
LOOP
FETCH emp_cursor INTO v_empno, v_comp;
EXIT WHEN emp_cursor%NOTFOUND;
IF v_comp < 25000 THEN
  v_lt_25K := v_lt_25K + 1;
ELSIF v_comp < 50000 THEN
  v_25K_50K := v_25K_50K + 1;
ELSIF v_comp < 75000 THEN
  v_50K_75K := v_50K_75K + 1;
ELSIF v_comp < 100000 THEN
  v_75K_100K := v_75K_100K + 1;
ELSE
  v_ge_100K := v_ge_100K + 1;
END IF;
END LOOP;
CLOSE emp_cursor;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Number of employees by yearly compensation');
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Less than 25,000 : ' || v_lt_25K);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('25,000 - 49,9999 : ' || v_25K_50K);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('50,000 - 74,9999 : ' || v_50K_75K);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('75,000 - 99,9999 : ' || v_75K_100K);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('100,000 and over : ' || v_ge_100K);
END;

```

The following is the output from this program.

```

Number of employees by yearly compensation
Less than 25,000 : 2
25,000 - 49,9999 : 5
50,000 - 74,9999 : 6
75,000 - 99,9999 : 0
100,000 and over : 1

```

## 8.5.2 RETURN Statement

The **RETURN** statement terminates the current function, procedure or anonymous block and returns control to the caller.

There are two forms of the **RETURN** Statement. The first form of the **RETURN** statement is used to terminate a procedure or function that returns **void**. The syntax of the first form is:

```
RETURN;
```

The second form of `RETURN` returns a value to the caller. The syntax of the second form of the `RETURN` statement is:

```
RETURN <expression>;
```

`expression` must evaluate to the same data type as the return type of the function.

The following example uses the `RETURN` statement returns a value to the caller:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION emp_comp (
    p_sal      NUMBER,
    p_comm      NUMBER
) RETURN NUMBER
IS
BEGIN
    RETURN (p_sal + NVL(p_comm, 0)) * 24;
END emp_comp;
```

### 8.5.3 GOTO Statement

The `GOTO` statement causes the point of execution to jump to the statement with the specified label. The syntax of a `GOTO` statement is:

```
GOTO <label>;
```

`label` is a name assigned to an executable statement. `label` must be unique within the scope of the function, procedure or anonymous block.

To label a statement, use the syntax:

```
<<label>> <statement>;
```

`statement` is the point of execution that the program jumps to.

You can label assignment statements, any SQL statement (like `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `CREATE`, etc.) and selected procedural language statements. The procedural language statements that can be labeled are:

- `IF`
- `EXIT`
- `RETURN`
- `RAISE`
- `EXECUTE`
- `PERFORM`
- `GET DIAGNOSTICS`
- `OPEN`
- `FETCH`
- `MOVE`
- `CLOSE`
- `NULL`
- `COMMIT`
- `ROLLBACK`
- `GOTO`
- `CASE`
- `LOOP`

- WHILE
- FOR

Please note that `exit` is considered a keyword, and cannot be used as the name of a label.

`GOTO` statements cannot transfer control *into* a conditional block or sub-block, but can transfer control *from* a conditional block or sub-block.

The following example verifies that an employee record contains a name, job description, and employee hire date; if any piece of information is missing, a `GOTO` statement transfers the point of execution to a statement that prints a message that the employee is not valid.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE verify_emp (
    p_empno      NUMBER
)
IS
    v_ename      emp.ename%TYPE;
    v_job        emp.job%TYPE;
    v_hiredate   emp.hiredate%TYPE;
BEGIN
    SELECT ename, job, hiredate
        INTO v_ename, v_job, v_hiredate
        FROM emp
        WHERE empno = p_empno;
    IF v_ename IS NULL THEN
        GOTO invalid_emp;
    END IF;
    IF v_job IS NULL THEN
        GOTO invalid_emp;
    END IF;
    IF v_hiredate IS NULL THEN
        GOTO invalid_emp;
    END IF;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee ' || p_empno ||
        ' validated without errors.');
    RETURN;
<<invalid_emp>> DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee ' || p_empno ||
    ' is not a valid employee.');
END;
```

`GOTO` statements have the following restrictions:

- A `GOTO` statement cannot jump to a declaration.
- A `GOTO` statement cannot transfer control to another function or procedure.
- A `label` should not be placed at the end of a block, function or procedure.

## 8.5.4 CASE Expression

The `CASE` expression returns a value that is substituted where the `CASE` expression is located within an expression.

There are two formats of the `CASE` expression - one that is called a *searched CASE* and the other that uses a *selector*.

### 8.5.4.1 Selector CASE Expression

The selector **CASE** expression attempts to match an expression called the selector to the expression specified in one or more **WHEN** clauses. **result** is an expression that is type-compatible in the context where the **CASE** expression is used. If a match is found, the value given in the corresponding **THEN** clause is returned by the **CASE** expression. If there are no matches, the value following **ELSE** is returned. If **ELSE** is omitted, the **CASE** expression returns null.

```
CASE <selector-expression>
  WHEN <match-expression> THEN
    <result>
  [ WHEN <match-expression> THEN
    <result>
  [ WHEN <match-expression> THEN
    <result> ] ...]
  [ ELSE
    <result> ]
END;
```

**match-expression** is evaluated in the order in which it appears within the **CASE** expression. **result** is an expression that is type-compatible in the context where the **CASE** expression is used. When the first **match-expression** is encountered that equals **selector-expression**, **result** in the corresponding **THEN** clause is returned as the value of the **CASE** expression. If none of **match-expression** equals **selector-expression** then **result** following **ELSE** is returned. If no **ELSE** is specified, the **CASE** expression returns null.

The following example uses a selector **CASE** expression to assign the department name to a variable based upon the department number.

```
DECLARE
  v_empno      emp.empno%TYPE;
  v_ename       emp.ename%TYPE;
  v_deptno     emp.deptno%TYPE;
  v_dname       dept.dname%TYPE;
  CURSOR emp_cursor IS SELECT empno, ename, deptno FROM emp;
BEGIN
  OPEN emp_cursor;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME  DEPTNO  DNAME');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----  -----  -----');
  LOOP
    FETCH emp_cursor INTO v_empno, v_ename, v_deptno;
    EXIT WHEN emp_cursor%NOTFOUND;
    v_dname :=
      CASE v_deptno
        WHEN 10 THEN 'Accounting'
        WHEN 20 THEN 'Research'
        WHEN 30 THEN 'Sales'
        WHEN 40 THEN 'Operations'
        ELSE 'unknown'
      END;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || '  ' || RPAD(v_ename, 10) ||
      ' ' || v_deptno || '  ' || v_dname);
  END LOOP;
  CLOSE emp_cursor;
END;
```

The following is the output from this program.

EMPNO	ENAME	DEPTNO	DNAME
7369	SMITH	20	Research
7499	ALLEN	30	Sales
7521	WARD	30	Sales
7566	JONES	20	Research
7654	MARTIN	30	Sales
7698	BLAKE	30	Sales
7782	CLARK	10	Accounting
7788	SCOTT	20	Research
7839	KING	10	Accounting
7844	TURNER	30	Sales
7876	ADAMS	20	Research
7900	JAMES	30	Sales
7902	FORD	20	Research
7934	MILLER	10	Accounting

### 8.5.4.2 Searched CASE Expression

A searched **CASE** expression uses one or more Boolean expressions to determine the resulting value to return.

```
CASE WHEN <boolean-expression> THEN
      <result>
[ WHEN <boolean-expression> THEN
  <result>
[ WHEN <boolean-expression> THEN
  <result> ] ...]
[ ELSE
  <result> ]
END;
```

**boolean-expression** is evaluated in the order in which it appears within the **CASE** expression. **result** is an expression that is type-compatible in the context where the **CASE** expression is used. When the first **boolean-expression** is encountered that evaluates to **TRUE**, **result** in the corresponding **THEN** clause is returned as the value of the **CASE** expression. If none of **boolean-expression** evaluates to true then **result** following **ELSE** is returned. If no **ELSE** is specified, the **CASE** expression returns null.

The following example uses a searched **CASE** expression to assign the department name to a variable based upon the department number.

```
DECLARE
  v_empno    emp.empno%TYPE;
  v_ename    emp.ename%TYPE;
  v_deptno   emp.deptno%TYPE;
  v_dname    dept.dname%TYPE;
  CURSOR emp_cursor IS SELECT empno, ename, deptno FROM emp;
BEGIN
  OPEN emp_cursor;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME  DEPTNO  DNAME');
```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----      -----      -----');
LOOP
  FETCH emp_cursor INTO v_empno, v_ename, v_deptno;
  EXIT WHEN emp_cursor%NOTFOUND;
  v_dname :=
    CASE
      WHEN v_deptno = 10 THEN 'Accounting'
      WHEN v_deptno = 20 THEN 'Research'
      WHEN v_deptno = 30 THEN 'Sales'
      WHEN v_deptno = 40 THEN 'Operations'
      ELSE 'unknown'
    END;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || '  ' || RPAD(v_ename, 10) ||
    ' ' || v_deptno || ' ' || v_dname);
END LOOP;
CLOSE emp_cursor;
END;

```

The following is the output from this program.

EMPNO	ENAME	DEPTNO	DNAME
7369	SMITH	20	Research
7499	ALLEN	30	Sales
7521	WARD	30	Sales
7566	JONES	20	Research
7654	MARTIN	30	Sales
7698	BLAKE	30	Sales
7782	CLARK	10	Accounting
7788	SCOTT	20	Research
7839	KING	10	Accounting
7844	TURNER	30	Sales
7876	ADAMS	20	Research
7900	JAMES	30	Sales
7902	FORD	20	Research
7934	MILLER	10	Accounting

## 8.5.5 CASE Statement

The **CASE** statement executes a set of one or more statements when a specified search condition is **TRUE**. The **CASE** statement is a stand-alone statement in itself while the previously discussed **CASE** expression must appear as part of an expression.

There are two formats of the **CASE** statement - one that is called a *searched CASE* and the other that uses a *selector*.

### 8.5.5.1 Selector CASE Statement

The selector `CASE` statement attempts to match an expression called the selector to the expression specified in one or more `WHEN` clauses. When a match is found one or more corresponding statements are executed.

```
CASE <selector-expression>
WHEN <match-expression> THEN
  <statements>
[ WHEN <match-expression> THEN
  <statements>
[ WHEN <match-expression> THEN
  <statements> ] ...]
[ ELSE
  <statements> ]
END CASE;
```

`selector-expression` returns a value type-compatible with each `match-expression`. `match-expression` is evaluated in the order in which it appears within the `CASE` statement. `statements` are one or more SPL statements, each terminated by a semi-colon. When the value of `selector-expression` equals the first `match-expression`, the statement(s) in the corresponding `THEN` clause are executed and control continues following the `END CASE` keywords. If there are no matches, the statement(s) following `ELSE` are executed. If there are no matches and there is no `ELSE` clause, an exception is thrown.

The following example uses a selector `CASE` statement to assign a department name and location to a variable based upon the department number.

```
DECLARE
  v_empno    emp.empno%TYPE;
  v_ename    emp.ename%TYPE;
  v_deptno   emp.deptno%TYPE;
  v_dname    dept.dname%TYPE;
  v_loc      dept.loc%TYPE;
  CURSOR emp_cursor IS SELECT empno, ename, deptno FROM emp;
BEGIN
  OPEN emp_cursor;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME  DEPTNO  DNAME  '
    || '  LOC');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----  -----  -----'
    || '  -----');
  LOOP
    FETCH emp_cursor INTO v_empno, v_ename, v_deptno;
    EXIT WHEN emp_cursor%NOTFOUND;
    CASE v_deptno
      WHEN 10 THEN v_dname := 'Accounting';
        v_loc := 'New York';
      WHEN 20 THEN v_dname := 'Research';
        v_loc := 'Dallas';
      WHEN 30 THEN v_dname := 'Sales';
        v_loc := 'Chicago';
      WHEN 40 THEN v_dname := 'Operations';
        v_loc := 'Boston';
      ELSE v_dname := 'unknown';
        v_loc := "";
    END CASE;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || '  ' || RPAD(v_ename, 10) ||
      ' ' || v_deptno || '  ' || RPAD(v_dname, 14) || ' ' ||
      v_loc);
  END LOOP;
  CLOSE emp_cursor;
```

```
END;
```

The following is the output from this program.

EMPNO	ENAME	DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
7369	SMITH	20	Research	Dallas
7499	ALLEN	30	Sales	Chicago
7521	WARD	30	Sales	Chicago
7566	JONES	20	Research	Dallas
7654	MARTIN	30	Sales	Chicago
7698	BLAKE	30	Sales	Chicago
7782	CLARK	10	Accounting	New York
7788	SCOTT	20	Research	Dallas
7839	KING	10	Accounting	New York
7844	TURNER	30	Sales	Chicago
7876	ADAMS	20	Research	Dallas
7900	JAMES	30	Sales	Chicago
7902	FORD	20	Research	Dallas
7934	MILLER	10	Accounting	New York

### 8.5.5.2 Searched CASE Statement

A searched **CASE** statement uses one or more Boolean expressions to determine the resulting set of statements to execute.

```
CASE WHEN <boolean-expression> THEN
  <statements>
[ WHEN <boolean-expression> THEN
  <statements>
[ WHEN <boolean-expression> THEN
  <statements> ] ...]
[ ELSE
  <statements> ]
END CASE;
```

**boolean-expression** is evaluated in the order in which it appears within the **CASE** statement. When the first **boolean-expression** is encountered that evaluates to **TRUE**, the statement(s) in the corresponding **THEN** clause are executed and control continues following the **END CASE** keywords. If none of **boolean-expression** evaluates to **TRUE**, the statement(s) following **ELSE** are executed. If none of **boolean-expression** evaluates to **TRUE** and there is no **ELSE** clause, an exception is thrown.

The following example uses a searched **CASE** statement to assign a department name and location to a variable based upon the department number.

```
DECLARE
  v_empno    emp.empno%TYPE;
  v_ename    emp.ename%TYPE;
  v_deptno   emp.deptno%TYPE;
  v_dname    dept.dname%TYPE;
  v_loc      dept.loc%TYPE;
```

```

CURSOR emp_cursor IS SELECT empno, ename, deptno FROM emp;
BEGIN
  OPEN emp_cursor;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO    ENAME    DEPTNO    DNAME    '
    || '    LOC');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----  -----  -----'
    || '  -----');
  LOOP
    FETCH emp_cursor INTO v_empno, v_ename, v_deptno;
    EXIT WHEN emp_cursor%NOTFOUND;
    CASE
      WHEN v_deptno = 10 THEN v_dname := 'Accounting';
          v_loc := 'New York';
      WHEN v_deptno = 20 THEN v_dname := 'Research';
          v_loc := 'Dallas';
      WHEN v_deptno = 30 THEN v_dname := 'Sales';
          v_loc := 'Chicago';
      WHEN v_deptno = 40 THEN v_dname := 'Operations';
          v_loc := 'Boston';
      ELSE v_dname := 'unknown';
          v_loc := "";
    END CASE;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || '    ' || RPAD(v_ename, 10) ||
      ' ' || v_deptno || '    ' || RPAD(v_dname, 14) || ' ' ||
      v_loc);
  END LOOP;
  CLOSE emp_cursor;
END;

```

The following is the output from this program.

EMPNO	ENAME	DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
7369	SMITH	20	Research	Dallas
7499	ALLEN	30	Sales	Chicago
7521	WARD	30	Sales	Chicago
7566	JONES	20	Research	Dallas
7654	MARTIN	30	Sales	Chicago
7698	BLAKE	30	Sales	Chicago
7782	CLARK	10	Accounting	New York
7788	SCOTT	20	Research	Dallas
7839	KING	10	Accounting	New York
7844	TURNER	30	Sales	Chicago
7876	ADAMS	20	Research	Dallas
7900	JAMES	30	Sales	Chicago
7902	FORD	20	Research	Dallas
7934	MILLER	10	Accounting	New York

## 8.5.6 Loops

With the **LOOP**, **EXIT**, **CONTINUE**, **WHILE**, and **FOR** statements, you can arrange for your SPL program to repeat a series of commands.

### 8.5.6.1      LOOP

```
LOOP
  <statements>
END LOOP;
```

**LOOP** defines an unconditional loop that is repeated indefinitely until terminated by an **EXIT** or **RETURN** statement.

### 8.5.6.2      EXIT

```
EXIT [ WHEN <expression> ];
```

The innermost loop is terminated and the statement following **END LOOP** is executed next.

If **WHEN** is present, loop exit occurs only if the specified condition is **TRUE**, otherwise control passes to the statement after **EXIT**.

**EXIT** can be used to cause early exit from all types of loops; it is not limited to use with unconditional loops.

The following is a simple example of a loop that iterates ten times and then uses the **EXIT** statement to terminate.

```
DECLARE
  v_counter      NUMBER(2);
BEGIN
  v_counter := 1;
  LOOP
    EXIT WHEN v_counter > 10;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Iteration #' || v_counter);
    v_counter := v_counter + 1;
  END LOOP;
END;
```

The following is the output from this program.

```
Iteration # 1
Iteration # 2
Iteration # 3
Iteration # 4
Iteration # 5
Iteration # 6
Iteration # 7
Iteration # 8
```

Iteration # 9  
Iteration # 10

---

### 8.5.6.3 CONTINUE

The **CONTINUE** statement provides a way to proceed with the next iteration of a loop while skipping intervening statements.

When the **CONTINUE** statement is encountered, the next iteration of the innermost loop is begun, skipping all statements following the **CONTINUE** statement until the end of the loop. That is, control is passed back to the loop control expression, if any, and the body of the loop is re-evaluated.

If the **WHEN** clause is used, then the next iteration of the loop is begun only if the specified expression in the **WHEN** clause evaluates to **TRUE**. Otherwise, control is passed to the next statement following the **CONTINUE** statement.

The **CONTINUE** statement may not be used outside of a loop.

The following is a variation of the previous example that uses the **CONTINUE** statement to skip the display of the odd numbers.

```
DECLARE
    v_counter      NUMBER(2);
BEGIN
    v_counter := 0;
    LOOP
        v_counter := v_counter + 1;
        EXIT WHEN v_counter > 10;
        CONTINUE WHEN MOD(v_counter,2) = 1;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Iteration #' || v_counter);
    END LOOP;
END;
```

The following is the output from above program.

Iteration # 2  
Iteration # 4  
Iteration # 6  
Iteration # 8  
Iteration # 10

---

### 8.5.6.4 WHILE

```
WHILE <expression> LOOP
    <statements>
END LOOP;
```

The `WHILE` statement repeats a sequence of statements so long as the condition expression evaluates to `TRUE`. The condition is checked just before each entry to the loop body.

The following example contains the same logic as in the previous example except the `WHILE` statement is used to take the place of the `EXIT` statement to determine when to exit the loop.

#### Note

The conditional expression used to determine when to exit the loop must be altered. The `EXIT` statement terminates the loop when its conditional expression is true. The `WHILE` statement terminates (or never begins the loop) when its conditional expression is false.

```
DECLARE
    v_counter      NUMBER(2);
BEGIN
    v_counter := 1;
    WHILE v_counter <= 10 LOOP
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Iteration #' || v_counter);
        v_counter := v_counter + 1;
    END LOOP;
END;
```

The same result is generated by this example as in the prior example.

```
Iteration # 1
Iteration # 2
Iteration # 3
Iteration # 4
Iteration # 5
Iteration # 6
Iteration # 7
Iteration # 8
Iteration # 9
Iteration # 10
```

### 8.5.6.5 FOR (integer variant)

```
FOR <name> IN [REVERSE] <expression .. expression> LOOP
    <statements>
END LOOP;
```

This form of `FOR` creates a loop that iterates over a range of integer values. The variable `name` is automatically defined as type `INTEGER` and exists only inside the loop. The two expressions giving the loop range are evaluated once when entering the loop. The iteration step is `+1` and `name` begins with the value of `expression` to the left of `..` and terminates once `name` exceeds the value of `expression` to the right of `...`. Thus the two expressions take on the following roles: `start-value.. end-value`.

The optional `REVERSE` clause specifies that the loop should iterate in reverse order. The first time through the loop, `name` is set to the value of the right-most `expression`; the loop terminates when the `name` is less than the left-most `expression`.

The following example simplifies the `WHILE` loop example even further by using a `FOR` loop that iterates from 1 to 10.

```
BEGIN
  FOR i IN 1 .. 10 LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Iteration #' || i);
  END LOOP;
END;
```

Here is the output using the `FOR` statement.

```
Iteration # 1
Iteration # 2
Iteration # 3
Iteration # 4
Iteration # 5
Iteration # 6
Iteration # 7
Iteration # 8
Iteration # 9
Iteration # 10
```

If the start value is greater than the end value the loop body is not executed at all. No error is raised as shown by the following example.

```
BEGIN
  FOR i IN 10 .. 1 LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Iteration #' || i);
  END LOOP;
END;
```

There is no output from this example as the loop body is never executed.

#### Note

SPL also supports `CURSOR` `FOR` loops (see [Cursor FOR Loop](#)).

## 8.5.7 Exception Handling

By default, any error occurring in an SPL program aborts execution of the program. You can trap errors and recover from them by using a `BEGIN` block with an `EXCEPTION` section. The syntax is an extension of the normal syntax for a `BEGIN` block:

```
[ DECLARE
  <declarations> ]
BEGIN
  <statements>
EXCEPTION
  WHEN <condition> [ OR <condition> ]... THEN
    <handler_statements>
  [ WHEN <condition> [ OR <condition> ]... THEN
    <handler_statements> ]...
END;
```

If no error occurs, this form of block simply executes all the `statements`, and then control passes to the next statement after `END`. If an error occurs within the `statements`, further processing of the `statements` is abandoned, and control passes to the `EXCEPTION` list. The list is searched for the first `condition` matching the error that occurred. If a match is found, the corresponding `handler_statements` are executed, and then control passes to the next statement after `END`. If no match is found, the error propagates out as though the `EXCEPTION` clause were not there at all. The error can be caught by an enclosing block with `EXCEPTION`; if there is no enclosing block, it aborts processing of the subprogram.

The special condition name `OTHERS` matches every error type. Condition names are not case-sensitive.

If a new error occurs within the selected `handler_statements`, it cannot be caught by this `EXCEPTION` clause, but is propagated out. A surrounding `EXCEPTION` clause could catch it.

The following table lists the condition names that may be used:

Condition Name	Description
<code>CASE_NOT_FOUND</code>	The application has encountered a situation where none of the cases in a <code>CASE</code> statement evaluates to <code>TRUE</code> and there is no <code>ELSE</code> condition.
<code>COLLECTION_IS_NULL</code>	The application has attempted to invoke a collection method on a null collection such as an uninitialized nested table.
<code>CURSOR_ALREADY_OPEN</code>	The application has attempted to open a cursor that is already open.
<code>DUP_VAL_ON_INDEX</code>	The application has attempted to store a duplicate value that currently exists within a constrained column.
<code>INVALID_CURSOR</code>	The application has attempted to access an unopened cursor.
<code>INVALID_NUMBER</code>	The application has encountered a data exception (equivalent to SQLSTATE class code 22). <code>INVALID_NUMBER</code> is an alias for <code>VALUE_ERROR</code> .
<code>NO_DATA_FOUND</code>	No rows satisfy the selection criteria.
<code>OTHERS</code>	The application has encountered an exception that hasn't been caught by a prior condition in the exception section.
<code>SUBSCRIPT_BEYOND_COUNT</code>	The application has attempted to reference a subscript of a nested table or varray beyond its initialized or extended size.
<code>SUBSCRIPT_OUTSIDE_LIMIT</code>	The application has attempted to reference a subscript or extend a varray beyond its maximum size limit.
<code>TOO_MANY_ROWS</code>	The application has encountered more than one row that satisfies the selection criteria (where only one row is allowed to be returned).

**VALUE\_ERROR**

The application has encountered a data exception (equivalent to SQLSTATE class code 22). **VALUE\_ERROR** is an alias for **INVALID\_NUMBER**.

**ZERO\_DIVIDE**

The application has tried to divide by zero.

**User-defined Exception**

See [User-defined Exceptions](#).

**Note**

Condition names **INVALID\_NUMBER** and **VALUE\_ERROR** are not compatible with Oracle databases for which these condition names are for exceptions resulting only from a failed conversion of a string to a numeric literal. In addition, for Oracle databases, an **INVALID\_NUMBER** exception is applicable only to SQL statements while a **VALUE\_ERROR** exception is applicable only to procedural statements.

## 8.5.8 User-defined Exceptions

Any number of errors (referred to in PL/SQL as *exceptions*) can occur during program execution. When an exception is *thrown*, normal execution of the program stops, and control of the program transfers to the error-handling portion of the program. An *exception* may be a pre-defined error that is generated by the server, or may be a logical error that raises a user-defined exception.

User-defined exceptions are never raised by the server; they are raised explicitly by a **RAISE** statement. A user-defined exception is raised when a developer-defined logical rule is broken; a common example of a logical rule being broken occurs when a check is presented against an account with insufficient funds. An attempt to cash a check against an account with insufficient funds will provoke a user-defined exception.

You can define exceptions in functions, procedures, packages or anonymous blocks. While you cannot declare the same exception twice in the same block, you can declare the same exception in two different blocks.

Before implementing a user-defined exception, you must declare the exception in the declaration section of a function, procedure, package or anonymous block. You can then raise the exception using the **RAISE** statement:

```
DECLARE
  <exception_name> EXCEPTION;

BEGIN
  ...
  RAISE <exception_name>;
  ...
END;
```

**exception\_name** is the name of the exception.

Unhandled exceptions propagate back through the call stack. If the exception remains unhandled, the exception is eventually reported to the client application.

User-defined exceptions declared in a block are considered to be local to that block, and global to any nested blocks within the block. To reference an exception that resides in an outer block, you must assign a label to the outer block; then, preface the name of the exception with the block name:

### block\_name.exception\_name

Conversely, outer blocks cannot reference exceptions declared in nested blocks.

The scope of a declaration is limited to the block in which it is declared *unless* it is created in a package, and when referenced, qualified by the package name. For example, to raise an exception named `out_of_stock` that resides in a package named `inventory_control` a program must raise an error named:

### inventory\_control.out\_of\_stock

The following example demonstrates declaring a user-defined exception in a package. The user-defined exception does not require a package-qualifier when it is raised in `check_balance`, since it resides in the same package as the exception:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE ar AS
  overdrawn EXCEPTION;
  PROCEDURE check_balance(p_balance NUMBER, p_amount NUMBER);
END;
```

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY ar AS
  PROCEDURE check_balance(p_balance NUMBER, p_amount NUMBER)
  IS
    BEGIN
      IF (p_amount > p_balance) THEN
        RAISE overdrawn;
      END IF;
    END;
```

The following procedure (`purchase`) calls the `check_balance` procedure. If `p_amount` is greater than `p_balance`, `check_balance` raises an exception; `purchase` catches the `ar.overdrawn` exception. `purchase` must refer to the exception with a package-qualified name (`ar.overdrawn`) because `purchase` is not defined within the `ar` package.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE purchase(customerID INT, amount NUMERIC)
AS
BEGIN
  ar.check_balance(getcustomerbalance(customerid), amount);
  record_purchase(customerid, amount);
EXCEPTION
  WHEN ar.overdrawn THEN
    raise_credit_limit(customerid, amount*1.5);
END;
```

When `ar.check_balance` raises an exception, execution jumps to the exception handler defined in `purchase`:

```
EXCEPTION
  WHEN ar.overdrawn THEN
    raise_credit_limit(customerid, amount*1.5);
```

The exception handler raises the customer's credit limit and ends. When the exception handler ends, execution resumes with the statement that follows `ar.check_balance`.

## 8.5.9 PRAGMA EXCEPTION\_INIT

`PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT` associates a user-defined error code with an exception. A `PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT` declaration may be included in any block, sub-block or package. You can only assign an error code to an exception (using `PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT`) after declaring the exception. The format of a `PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT` declaration is:

```
PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT(<exception_name>,
{<exception_number> | <exception_code>})
```

Where:

`exception_name` is the name of the associated exception.

`exception_number` is a user-defined error code associated with the pragma. If you specify an unmapped `exception_number`, the server will return a warning.

`exception_code` is the name of a pre-defined exception. For a complete list of valid exceptions, see the Postgres core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/errcodes-appendix.html>

The previous section (*User-defined Exceptions*) included an example that demonstrates declaring a user-defined exception in a package. The following example uses the same basic structure, but adds a `PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT` declaration:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE ar AS
overdrawn EXCEPTION;
PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT (overdrawn, -20100);
PROCEDURE check_balance(p_balance NUMBER, p_amount NUMBER);
END;
```

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY ar AS
PROCEDURE check_balance(p_balance NUMBER, p_amount NUMBER)
IS
BEGIN
  IF (p_amount > p_balance) THEN
    RAISE overdrawn;
  END IF;
END;
```

The following procedure (`purchase`) calls the `check_balance` procedure. If `p_amount` is greater than `p_balance`, `check_balance` raises an exception; `purchase` catches the `ar.overdrawn` exception.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE purchase(customerID int, amount NUMERIC)
AS
BEGIN
  ar.check_balance(getcustomerbalance(customerid), amount);
  record_purchase(customerid, amount);
EXCEPTION
  WHEN ar.overdrawn THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('This account is overdrawn.');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('SQLCode :||SQLCODE||' ||SQLERRM );
END;
```

When `ar.check_balance` raises an exception, execution jumps to the exception handler defined in `purchase`.

```
EXCEPTION
  WHEN ar.overdrawn THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('This account is overdrawn.');
```

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('SQLCode :'||SQLCODE||' ||SQLERRM );
```

The exception handler returns an error message, followed by `SQLCODE` information:

```
This account is overdrawn.  
SQLCODE: -20100 User-Defined Exception
```

The following example demonstrates using a pre-defined exception. The code creates a more meaningful name for the `no data found exception`; if the given customer does not exist, the code catches the exception, calls `DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE` to report the error, and then re-raises the original exception:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE ar AS
overdrawn EXCEPTION;
PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT (unknown_customer, no_data_found);
PROCEDURE check_balance(p_customer_id NUMBER);
END;

CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY ar AS
PROCEDURE check_balance(p_customer_id NUMBER)
IS
DECLARE
v_balance NUMBER;
BEGIN
SELECT balance INTO v_balance FROM customer
WHERE cust_id = p_customer_id;
EXCEPTION WHEN unknown_customer THEN
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('invalid customer id');
RAISE;
END;
```

## 8.5.10 RAISE\_APPLICATION\_ERROR

The procedure, `RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR`, allows a developer to intentionally abort processing within an SPL program from which it is called by causing an exception. The exception is handled in the same manner as described in [Exception Handling](#). In addition, the `RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR` procedure makes a user-defined code and error message available to the program which can then be used to identify the exception.

```
RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(<error_number>, <message>);
```

Where:

`error_number` is an integer value or expression that is returned in a variable named `SQLCODE` when the procedure is executed. `error_number` must be a value between `-20000` and `-20999`.

`message` is a string literal or expression that is returned in a variable named `SQLERRM`.

For additional information on the `SQLCODE` and `SQLERRM` variables, see [Errors and Messages](#), [Errors and Messages](#).

The following example uses the `RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR` procedure to display a different code and message depending upon the information missing from an employee.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE verify_emp (
    p_empno      NUMBER
)
IS
    v_ename      emp.ename%TYPE;
    v_job        emp.job%TYPE;
    v_mgr        emp.mgr%TYPE;
    v_hiredate   emp.hiredate%TYPE;
BEGIN
    SELECT ename, job, mgr, hiredate
        INTO v_ename, v_job, v_mgr, v_hiredate
        FROM emp
        WHERE empno = p_empno;
    IF v_ename IS NULL THEN
        RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20010, 'No name for ' || p_empno);
    END IF;
    IF v_job IS NULL THEN
        RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20020, 'No job for' || p_empno);
    END IF;
    IF v_mgr IS NULL THEN
        RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20030, 'No manager for ' || p_empno);
    END IF;
    IF v_hiredate IS NULL THEN
        RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20040, 'No hire date for ' || p_empno);
    END IF;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee ' || p_empno ||
        ' validated without errors');
EXCEPTION
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLCODE: ' || SQLCODE);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM: ' || SQLERRM);
END;

```

The following shows the output in a case where the manager number is missing from an employee record.

```
EXEC verify_emp(7839);
```

```
SQLCODE: -20030
```

```
SQLERRM: EDB-20030: No manager for 7839
```

## 8.6 Transaction Control

There may be circumstances where it is desired that all updates to a database are to occur successfully, or none are to occur at all if any error occurs. A set of database updates that are to all occur successfully as a single unit, or are not to occur at all, is said to be a *transaction*.

A common example in banking is a funds transfer between two accounts. The two parts of the transaction are the withdrawal of funds from one account, and the deposit of the funds in another account. Both parts of this transaction must occur otherwise the bank's books will be out of balance. The deposit and withdrawal are one transaction.

An SPL application can be created that uses a style of transaction control compatible with Oracle databases if the

following conditions are met:

- The `edb_stmt_level_tx` parameter must be set to `TRUE`. This prevents the action of unconditionally rolling back all database updates within the `BEGIN/END` block if any exception occurs.
- The application must not be running in autocommit mode. If autocommit mode is on, each successful database update is immediately committed and cannot be undone. The manner in which autocommit mode is turned on or off is application dependent.

A transaction begins when the first SQL command is encountered in the SPL program. All subsequent SQL commands are included as part of that transaction. The transaction ends when one of the following occurs:

- An unhandled exception occurs in which case the effects of all database updates made during the transaction are rolled back and the transaction is aborted.
- A `COMMIT` command is encountered in which case the effect of all database updates made during the transaction become permanent.
- A `ROLLBACK` command is encountered in which case the effects of all database updates made during the transaction are rolled back and the transaction is aborted. If a new SQL command is encountered, a new transaction begins.
- Control returns to the calling application (such as Java, PSQL, etc.) in which case the action of the application determines whether the transaction is committed or rolled back unless the transaction is within a block in which `PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION` has been declared in which case the commitment or rollback of the transaction occurs independently of the calling program.

Note

Unlike Oracle, DDL commands such as `CREATE TABLE` do not implicitly occur within their own transaction. Therefore, DDL commands do not automatically cause an immediate database commit as in Oracle, and DDL commands may be rolled back just like DML commands.

A transaction may span one or more `BEGIN/END` blocks, or a single `BEGIN/END` block may contain one or more transactions.

The following sections discuss the `COMMIT` and `ROLLBACK` commands in more detail.

## 8.6.1 COMMIT

The `COMMIT` command makes all database updates made during the current transaction permanent, and ends the current transaction.

**COMMIT [ WORK ];**

The `COMMIT` command may be used within anonymous blocks, stored procedures, or functions. Within an SPL program, it may appear in the executable section and/or the exception section.

In the following example, the third `INSERT` command in the anonymous block results in an error. The effect of the first two `INSERT` commands are retained as shown by the first `SELECT` command. Even after issuing a `ROLLBACK` command, the two rows remain in the table as shown by the second `SELECT` command verifying that they were indeed committed.

Note

The `edb_stmt_level_tx` configuration parameter shown in the example below can be set for the entire database using the `ALTER DATABASE` command, or it can be set for the entire database server by changing it in the `postgresql.conf` file.

```
\set AUTOCOMMIT off
```

```

SET edb_stmt_level_tx TO on;

BEGIN
  INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50, 'FINANCE', 'DALLAS');
  INSERT INTO dept VALUES (60, 'MARKETING', 'CHICAGO');
  COMMIT;
  INSERT INTO dept VALUES (70, 'HUMAN RESOURCES', 'CHICAGO');
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM: ' || SQLERRM);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLCODE: ' || SQLCODE);
END;

```

SQLERRM: value too long for type character varying(14)  
SQLCODE: 22001

```
SELECT * FROM dept;
```

deptno	dname	loc
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON
50	FINANCE	DALLAS
60	MARKETING	CHICAGO

(6 rows)

```
ROLLBACK;
```

```
SELECT * FROM dept;
```

deptno	dname	loc
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON
50	FINANCE	DALLAS
60	MARKETING	CHICAGO

(6 rows)

## 8.6.2 ROLLBACK

The **ROLLBACK** command undoes all database updates made during the current transaction, and ends the current transaction.

| **ROLLBACK [ WORK ]:**

The **ROLLBACK** command may be used within anonymous blocks, stored procedures, or functions. Within an SPL program, it may appear in the executable section and/or the exception section.

In the following example, the exception section contains a `ROLLBACK` command. Even though the first two `INSERT` commands are executed successfully, the third results in an exception that results in the rollback of all the `INSERT` commands in the anonymous block.

```
\set AUTOCOMMIT off
SET edb_stmt_level_tx TO on;

BEGIN
  INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50, 'FINANCE', 'DALLAS');
  INSERT INTO dept VALUES (60, 'MARKETING', 'CHICAGO');
  INSERT INTO dept VALUES (70, 'HUMAN RESOURCES', 'CHICAGO');
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    ROLLBACK;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM: ' || SQLERRM);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLCODE: ' || SQLCODE);
END;

SQLERRM: value too long for type character varying(14)
SQLCODE: 22001

SELECT * FROM dept;

deptno | dname   | loc
-----+-----+
 10 | ACCOUNTING | NEW YORK
 20 | RESEARCH   | DALLAS
 30 | SALES     | CHICAGO
 40 | OPERATIONS | BOSTON
(4 rows)
```

The following is a more complex example using both `COMMIT` and `ROLLBACK`. First, the following stored procedure is created which inserts a new employee.

```
\set AUTOCOMMIT off
SET edb_stmt_level_tx TO on;

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_insert (
  p_empno      IN emp.empno%TYPE,
  p_ename       IN emp.ename%TYPE,
  p_job         IN emp.job%TYPE,
  p_mgr         IN emp.mgr%TYPE,
  p_hiredate    IN emp.hiredate%TYPE,
  p_sal          IN emp.sal%TYPE,
  p_comm        IN emp.comm%TYPE,
  p_deptno      IN emp.deptno%TYPE
)
IS
BEGIN
  INSERT INTO emp VALUES (
    p_empno,
    p_ename,
    p_job,
    p_mgr,
    p_hiredate,
    p_sal,
```

```

p_comm,
p_deptno);

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Added employee...');

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee # : ' || p_empno);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || p_ename);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job       : ' || p_job);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Manager   : ' || p_mgr);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Hire Date : ' || p_hiredate);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary    : ' || p_sal);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Commission : ' || p_comm);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Dept #   : ' || p_deptno);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');
END;

```

Note that this procedure has no exception section so any error that may occur is propagated up to the calling program.

The following anonymous block is run. Note the use of the `COMMIT` command after all calls to the `emp_insert` procedure and the `ROLLBACK` command in the exception section.

```

BEGIN
  emp_insert(9601,'FARRELL','ANALYST',7902,'03-MAR-08',5000,NULL,40);
  emp_insert(9602,'TYLER','ANALYST',7900,'25-JAN-08',4800,NULL,40);
  COMMIT;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM: ' || SQLERRM);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('An error occurred - roll back inserts');
    ROLLBACK;
END;

```

```

Added employee...
Employee # : 9601
Name      : FARRELL
Job       : ANALYST
Manager   : 7902
Hire Date : 03-MAR-08 00:00:00
Salary    : 5000
Commission :
Dept #   : 40
-----

```

```

Added employee...
Employee # : 9602
Name      : TYLER
Job       : ANALYST
Manager   : 7900
Hire Date : 25-JAN-08 00:00:00
Salary    : 4800
Commission :
Dept #   : 40
-----

```

The following `SELECT` command shows that employees Farrell and Tyler were successfully added.

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno > 9600;
```

```
empno | ename | job | mgr | hiredate | sal | comm | deptno
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 9601| FARRELL| ANALYST|7902 | 03-MAR-08 00:00:00 | 5000.00 |   | 40
 9602| TYLER  | ANALYST|7900 | 25-JAN-08 00:00:00 | 4800.00 |   | 40
(2 rows)
```

Now, execute the following anonymous block:

```
BEGIN
  emp_insert(9603,'HARRISON','SALESMAN',7902,'13-DEC-07',5000,3000,20);
  emp_insert(9604,'JARVIS','SALESMAN',7902,'05-MAY-08',4800,4100,11);
  COMMIT;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SQLERRM: ' || SQLERRM);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('An error occurred - roll back inserts');
    ROLLBACK;
END;
```

Added employee...  
Employee # : 9603  
Name : HARRISON  
Job : SALESMAN  
Manager : 7902  
Hire Date : 13-DEC-07 00:00:00  
Salary : 5000  
Commission : 3000  
Dept # : 20

SQLERRM: insert or update on table "emp" violates foreign key constraint  
"emp\_ref\_dept\_fk"  
An error occurred - roll back inserts

A **SELECT** command run against the table yields the following:

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno > 9600;

empno | ename | job | mgr | hiredate | sal | comm | deptno
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 9601| FARRELL| ANALYST|7902 | 03-MAR-08 00:00:00 | 5000.00 |   | 40
 9602| TYLER  | ANALYST|7900 | 25-JAN-08 00:00:00 | 4800.00 |   | 40
(2 rows)
```

The **ROLLBACK** command in the exception section successfully undoes the insert of employee Harrison. Also note that employees Farrell and Tyler are still in the table as their inserts were made permanent by the **COMMIT** command in the first anonymous block.

#### Note

Executing a **COMMIT** or **ROLLBACK** in a plpgsql procedure will throw an error if there is an Oracle-style SPL procedure on the runtime stack.

## 8.6.3 PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION

An SPL program can be declared as an autonomous transaction by specifying the following directive in the declaration section of the SPL block:

### **PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION;**

An *autonomous transaction* is an independent transaction started by a calling program. A commit or rollback of SQL commands within the autonomous transaction has no effect on the commit or rollback in any transaction of the calling program. A commit or rollback in the calling program has no effect on the commit or rollback of SQL commands in the autonomous transaction.

The following SPL programs can include **PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION**:

- Standalone procedures and functions
- Anonymous blocks
- Procedures and functions declared as subprograms within packages and other calling procedures, functions, and anonymous blocks
- Triggers
- Object type methods

The following are issues and restrictions related to autonomous transactions:

- Each autonomous transaction consumes a connection slot for as long as it is in progress. In some cases, this may mean that the `max_connections` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file should be raised.
- In most respects, an autonomous transaction behaves exactly as if it was a completely separate session, but GUCs (that is, settings established with `SET`) are a deliberate exception. Autonomous transactions absorb the surrounding values and can propagate values they commit to the outer transaction.
- Autonomous transactions can be nested, but there is a limit of 16 levels of autonomous transactions within a single session.
- Parallel query is not supported within autonomous transactions.
- The Advanced Server implementation of autonomous transactions is not entirely compatible with Oracle databases in that the Advanced Server autonomous transaction does not produce an ERROR if there is an uncommitted transaction at the end of an SPL block.

The following set of examples illustrates the usage of autonomous transactions. This first set of scenarios show the default behavior when there are no autonomous transactions.

Before each scenario, the `dept` table is reset to the following initial values:

```
SELECT * FROM dept;
```

deptno	dname	loc
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON

(4 rows)

### **Scenario 1a – No autonomous transactions with only a final COMMIT**

This first set of scenarios show the insertion of three rows starting just after the initial `BEGIN` command of the transaction, then from within an anonymous block within the starting transaction, and finally from a stored procedure executed from within the anonymous block.

The stored procedure is the following:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE insert_dept_70 IS
```

```
BEGIN
  INSERT INTO dept VALUES (70,'MARKETING','LOS ANGELES');
END;
```

The PSQL session is the following:

```
BEGIN;
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50,'HR','DENVER');
BEGIN
  INSERT INTO dept VALUES (60,'FINANCE','CHICAGO');
  insert_dept_70;
END;
COMMIT;
```

After the final commit, all three rows are inserted:

```
SELECT * FROM dept ORDER BY 1;
```

deptno	dname	loc
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON
50	HR	DENVER
60	FINANCE	CHICAGO
70	MARKETING	LOS ANGELES

(7 rows)

### Scenario 1b – No autonomous transactions, but a final ROLLBACK

The next scenario shows that a final **ROLLBACK** command after all inserts results in the rollback of all three insertions:

```
BEGIN;
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50,'HR','DENVER');
BEGIN
  INSERT INTO dept VALUES (60,'FINANCE','CHICAGO');
  insert_dept_70;
END;
ROLLBACK;
```

```
SELECT * FROM dept ORDER BY 1;
```

deptno	dname	loc
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON

(4 rows)

### Scenario 1c – No autonomous transactions, but anonymous block ROLLBACK

A **ROLLBACK** command given at the end of the anonymous block also eliminates all three prior insertions:

```
BEGIN;
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50,'HR','DENVER');
BEGIN
  INSERT INTO dept VALUES (60,'FINANCE','CHICAGO');
  insert_dept_70;
  ROLLBACK;
END;
COMMIT;
```

```
SELECT * FROM dept ORDER BY 1;
```

deptno	dname	loc
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON

(4 rows)

This next set of scenarios shows the effect of using autonomous transactions with **PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION** in various locations.

### Scenario 2a – Autonomous transaction of anonymous block with COMMIT

The procedure remains as initially created:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE insert_dept_70 IS
BEGIN
  INSERT INTO dept VALUES (70,'MARKETING','LOS ANGELES');
END;
```

Now, the **PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION** is given with the anonymous block along with the **COMMIT** command at the end of the anonymous block.

```
BEGIN;
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50,'HR','DENVER');
DECLARE
  PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION;
BEGIN
  INSERT INTO dept VALUES (60,'FINANCE','CHICAGO');
  insert_dept_70;
  COMMIT;
END;
ROLLBACK;
```

After the **ROLLBACK** at the end of the transaction, only the first row insertion at the very beginning of the transaction is discarded. The other two row insertions within the anonymous block with **PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION** have been independently committed.

```
SELECT * FROM dept ORDER BY 1;
```

deptno	dname	loc
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON

```
60 | FINANCE | CHICAGO
70 | MARKETING | LOS ANGELES
(6 rows)
```

### Scenario 2b – Autonomous transaction anonymous block with COMMIT including procedure with ROLLBACK, but not an autonomous transaction procedure

Now, the procedure has the **ROLLBACK** command at the end. Note, however, that the **PRAGMA ANONYMOUS\_TRANSACTION** is not included in this procedure.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE insert_dept_70 IS
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO dept VALUES (70,'MARKETING','LOS ANGELES');
    ROLLBACK;
END;
```

Now, the rollback within the procedure removes the two rows inserted within the anonymous block (`deptno` 60 and 70) before the final **COMMIT** command within the anonymous block.

```
BEGIN;
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50,'HR','DENVER');
DECLARE
    PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION;
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO dept VALUES (60,'FINANCE','CHICAGO');
    insert_dept_70;
    COMMIT;
END;
COMMIT;
```

After the final commit at the end of the transaction, the only row inserted is the first one from the beginning of the transaction. Since the anonymous block is an autonomous transaction, the rollback within the enclosed procedure has no effect on the insertion that occurs before the anonymous block is executed.

```
SELECT * FROM dept ORDER by 1;
```

deptno	dname	loc
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON
50	HR	DENVER

(5 rows)

### Scenario 2c – Autonomous transaction anonymous block with COMMIT including procedure with ROLLBACK that is also an autonomous transaction procedure

Now, the procedure with the **ROLLBACK** command at the end also has **PRAGMA ANONYMOUS\_TRANSACTION** included. This isolates the effect of the **ROLLBACK** command within the procedure.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE insert_dept_70 IS
    PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION;
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO dept VALUES (70,'MARKETING','LOS ANGELES');
    ROLLBACK;
```

```
END;
```

Now, the rollback within the procedure removes the row inserted by the procedure, but not the other row inserted within the anonymous block.

```
BEGIN;
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50,'HR','DENVER');
DECLARE
    PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION;
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO dept VALUES (60,'FINANCE','CHICAGO');
    insert_dept_70;
    COMMIT;
END;
COMMIT;
```

After the final commit at the end of the transaction, the row inserted is the first one from the beginning of the transaction as well as the row inserted at the beginning of the anonymous block. The only insertion rolled back is the one within the procedure.

```
SELECT * FROM dept ORDER by 1;
```

deptno	dname	loc
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON
50	HR	DENVER
60	FINANCE	CHICAGO

(6 rows)

The following sections now show examples of `PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION` in a couple of other SPL program types.

### Autonomous Transaction Trigger

The following example shows the effect of declaring a trigger with `PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION`.

The following table is created to log changes to the `emp` table:

```
CREATE TABLE empauditlog (
    audit_date DATE,
    audit_user VARCHAR2(20),
    audit_desc VARCHAR2(20)
);
```

The trigger attached to the `emp` table that inserts these changes into the `empauditlog` table is the following. Note the inclusion of `PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION` in the declaration section.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER emp_audit_trig
    AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp
DECLARE
    PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION;
    v_action VARCHAR2(20);
BEGIN
    IF INSERTING THEN
```

```

v_action := 'Added employee(s)';
ELSIF UPDATING THEN
    v_action := 'Updated employee(s)';
ELSIF DELETING THEN
    v_action := 'Deleted employee(s)';
END IF;
INSERT INTO empauditlog VALUES (SYSDATE, USER,
    v_action);
END;

```

The following two inserts are made into the `emp` table within a transaction started by the `BEGIN` command.

```

BEGIN;
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (9001,'SMITH','ANALYST',7782,SYSDATE,NULL,NULL,10);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (9002,'JONES','CLERK',7782,SYSDATE,NULL,NULL,10);

```

The following shows the two new rows in the `emp` table as well as the two entries in the `empauditlog` table:

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno > 9000;
```

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno
9001	SMITH	ANALYST	7782	23-AUG-18 07:12:27			10
9002	JONES	CLERK	7782	23-AUG-18 07:12:27			10

(2 rows)

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(AUDIT_DATE,'DD-MON-YY HH24:MI:SS') AS "audit date",
audit_user, audit_desc FROM empauditlog ORDER BY 1 ASC;
```

audit date	audit_user	audit_desc
23-AUG-18 07:12:27	enterprisedb	Added employee(s)
23-AUG-18 07:12:27	enterprisedb	Added employee(s)

(2 rows)

But then the `ROLLBACK` command is given during this session. The `emp` table no longer contains the two rows, but the `empauditlog` table still contains its two entries as the trigger implicitly performed a commit and `PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION` commits those changes independent from the rollback given in the calling transaction.

```
ROLLBACK;
```

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno > 9000;
```

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno

(0 rows)

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(AUDIT_DATE,'DD-MON-YY HH24:MI:SS') AS "audit date",
audit_user, audit_desc FROM empauditlog ORDER BY 1 ASC;
```

audit date	audit_user	audit_desc
23-AUG-18 07:12:27	enterprisedb	Added employee(s)
23-AUG-18 07:12:27	enterprisedb	Added employee(s)

(2 rows)

## Autonomous Transaction Object Type Method

The following example shows the effect of declaring an object method with **PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION**.

The following object type and object type body are created. The member procedure within the object type body contains the **PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION** in the declaration section along with **COMMIT** at the end of the procedure.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE insert_dept_typ AS OBJECT (
    deptno      NUMBER(2),
    dname       VARCHAR2(14),
    loc         VARCHAR2(13),
    MEMBER PROCEDURE insert_dept
);
```

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE BODY insert_dept_typ AS
    MEMBER PROCEDURE insert_dept
    IS
        PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION;
    BEGIN
        INSERT INTO dept VALUES (SELF.deptno,SELF.dname,SELF.loc);
        COMMIT;
    END;
END;
```

In the following anonymous block, an insert is performed into the **dept** table, followed by invocation of the **insert\_dept** method of the object, ending with a **ROLLBACK** command in the anonymous block.

```
BEGIN;
DECLARE
    v_dept      INSERT_DEPT_TYP :=
                insert_dept_typ(60,'FINANCE','CHICAGO');
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50,'HR','DENVER');
    v_dept.insert_dept;
    ROLLBACK;
END;
```

Since **insert\_dept** has been declared as an autonomous transaction, its insert of department number 60 remains in the table, but the rollback removes the insertion of department 50.

```
SELECT * FROM dept ORDER BY 1;
```

deptno	dname	loc
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON
60	FINANCE	CHICAGO

(5 rows)

## 8.7 Dynamic SQL

*Dynamic SQL* is a technique that provides the ability to execute SQL commands that are not known until the commands are about to be executed. Up to this point, the SQL commands that have been illustrated in SPL programs have been static SQL - the full command (with the exception of variables) must be known and coded into the program before the program, itself, can begin to execute. Thus using dynamic SQL, the executed SQL can change during program runtime.

In addition, dynamic SQL is the only method by which data definition commands, such as `CREATE TABLE`, can be executed from within an SPL program.

Note, however, that the runtime performance of dynamic SQL will be slower than static SQL.

The `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` command is used to run SQL commands dynamically.

```
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE '<sql_expression>'  
[ INTO { <variable> [, ...] | <record> } ]  
[ USING <expression> [, ...] ]
```

`sql_expression` is a string expression containing the SQL command to be dynamically executed. `variable` receives the output of the result set, typically from a `SELECT` command, created as a result of executing the SQL command in `sql_expression`. The number, order, and type of variables must match the number, order, and be type-compatible with the fields of the result set. Alternatively, a `record` can be specified as long as the record's fields match the number, order, and are type-compatible with the result set. When using the `INTO` clause, exactly one row must be returned in the result set, otherwise an exception occurs. When using the `USING` clause the value of `expression` is passed to a *placeholder*. Placeholders appear embedded within the SQL command in `sql_expression` where variables may be used. Placeholders are denoted by an identifier with a colon (:) prefix - `:name`. The number, order, and resultant data types of the evaluated expressions must match the number, order and be type-compatible with the placeholders in `sql_expression`. Note that placeholders are not declared anywhere in the SPL program – they only appear in `sql_expression`.

The following example shows basic dynamic SQL commands as string literals.

```
DECLARE  
    v_sql      VARCHAR2(50);  
BEGIN  
    EXECUTE IMMEDIATE 'CREATE TABLE job (jobno NUMBER(3),' ||  
        ' jname VARCHAR2(9))';  
    v_sql := 'INSERT INTO job VALUES (100, "ANALYST")';  
    EXECUTE IMMEDIATE v_sql;  
    v_sql := 'INSERT INTO job VALUES (200, "CLERK")';  
    EXECUTE IMMEDIATE v_sql;  
END;
```

The following example illustrates the `USING` clause to pass values to placeholders in the SQL string.

```
DECLARE  
    v_sql      VARCHAR2(50) := 'INSERT INTO job VALUES ' ||  
        '(:p_jobno, :p_jname)';  
    v_jobno    job.jobno%TYPE;  
    v_jname    job.jname%TYPE;  
BEGIN  
    v_jobno := 300;  
    v_jname := 'MANAGER';  
    EXECUTE IMMEDIATE v_sql USING v_jobno, v_jname;  
    v_jobno := 400;  
    v_jname := 'SALESMAN';
```

```

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE v_sql USING v_jobno, v_jname;
v_jobno := 500;
v_jname := 'PRESIDENT';
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE v_sql USING v_jobno, v_jname;
END;

```

The following example shows both the `INTO` and `USING` clauses. Note the last execution of the `SELECT` command returns the results into a record instead of individual variables.

```

DECLARE
  v_sql      VARCHAR2(60);
  v_jobno    job.jobno%TYPE;
  v_jname    job.jname%TYPE;
  r_job      job%ROWTYPE;
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('JOBNO  JNAME');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- -----');
  v_sql := 'SELECT jobno, jname FROM job WHERE jobno = :p_jobno';
  EXECUTE IMMEDIATE v_sql INTO v_jobno, v_jname USING 100;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_jobno || ' ' || v_jname);
  EXECUTE IMMEDIATE v_sql INTO v_jobno, v_jname USING 200;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_jobno || ' ' || v_jname);
  EXECUTE IMMEDIATE v_sql INTO v_jobno, v_jname USING 300;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_jobno || ' ' || v_jname);
  EXECUTE IMMEDIATE v_sql INTO v_jobno, v_jname USING 400;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_jobno || ' ' || v_jname);
  EXECUTE IMMEDIATE v_sql INTO r_job USING 500;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(r_job.jobno || ' ' || r_job.jname);
END;

```

The following is the output from the previous anonymous block:

JOBNO	JNAME
100	ANALYST
200	CLERK
300	MANAGER
400	SALESMAN
500	PRESIDENT

You can use the `BULK COLLECT` clause to assemble the result set from an `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` statement into a named collection. See [Using the BULK COLLECT Clause](#), `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE BULK COLLECT` for information about using the `BULK COLLECT` clause.

## 8.8 Static Cursors

Rather than executing a whole query at once, it is possible to set up a *cursor* that encapsulates the query, and then read the query result set one row at a time. This allows the creation of SPL program logic that retrieves a row from the result set, does some processing on the data in that row, and then retrieves the next row and repeats the process.

Cursors are most often used in the context of a `FOR` or `WHILE` loop. A conditional test should be included in the

SPL logic that detects when the end of the result set has been reached so the program can exit the loop.

---

## 8.8.1 Declaring a Cursor

In order to use a cursor, it must first be declared in the declaration section of the SPL program. A cursor declaration appears as follows:

```
CURSOR <name> IS <query>;
```

`name` is an identifier that will be used to reference the cursor and its result set later in the program. `query` is a SQL `SELECT` command that determines the result set retrievable by the cursor.

Note

An extension of this syntax allows the use of parameters. This is discussed in more detail in [Parameterized Cursors](#).

The following are some examples of cursor declarations:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cursor_example
IS
    CURSOR emp_cur_1 IS SELECT * FROM emp;
    CURSOR emp_cur_2 IS SELECT empno, ename FROM emp;
    CURSOR emp_cur_3 IS SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE deptno = 10
        ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
    ...
END;
```

---

## 8.8.2 Opening a Cursor

Before a cursor can be used to retrieve rows, it must first be opened. This is accomplished with the `OPEN` statement.

```
OPEN <name>;
```

`name` is the identifier of a cursor that has been previously declared in the declaration section of the SPL program. The `OPEN` statement must not be executed on a cursor that has already been, and still is open.

The following shows an `OPEN` statement with its corresponding cursor declaration.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cursor_example
IS
    CURSOR emp_cur_3 IS SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE deptno = 10
        ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_cur_3;
```

```
...
END;
```

### 8.8.3 Fetching Rows From a Cursor

Once a cursor has been opened, rows can be retrieved from the cursor's result set by using the `FETCH` statement.

```
FETCH <name> INTO { <record> | <variable> [, <variable_2> ]... };
```

`name` is the identifier of a previously opened cursor. `record` is the identifier of a previously defined record (for example, using `table%ROWTYPE`). `variable`, `variable_2...` are SPL variables that will receive the field data from the fetched row. The fields in `record` or `variable`, `variable_2...` must match in number and order, the fields returned in the `SELECT` list of the query given in the cursor declaration. The data types of the fields in the `SELECT` list must match, or be implicitly convertible to the data types of the fields in `record` or the data types of `variable`, `variable_2...`.

#### Note

There is a variation of `FETCH INTO` using the `BULK COLLECT` clause that can return multiple rows at a time into a collection. See Section [Using the BULK COLLECT Clause](#) for more information on using the `BULK COLLECT` clause with the `FETCH INTO` statement.

The following shows the `FETCH` statement.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cursor_example
IS
    v_empno      NUMBER(4);
    v_ename      VARCHAR2(10);
    CURSOR emp_cur_3 IS SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE deptno = 10
        ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_cur_3;
    FETCH emp_cur_3 INTO v_empno, v_ename;
    ...
END;
```

Instead of explicitly declaring the data type of a target variable, `%TYPE` can be used instead. In this way, if the data type of the database column is changed, the target variable declaration in the SPL program does not have to be changed. `%TYPE` will automatically pick up the new data type of the specified column.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cursor_example
IS
    v_empno      emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_ename      emp.ename%TYPE;
    CURSOR emp_cur_3 IS SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE deptno = 10
        ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_cur_3;
    FETCH emp_cur_3 INTO v_empno, v_ename;
    ...
END;
```

If all the columns in a table are retrieved in the order defined in the table, `%ROWTYPE` can be used to define a record into which the `FETCH` statement will place the retrieved data. Each field within the record can then be accessed using dot notation.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cursor_example
IS
  v_emp_rec    emp%ROWTYPE;
  CURSOR emp_cur_1 IS SELECT * FROM emp;
BEGIN
  OPEN emp_cur_1;
  FETCH emp_cur_1 INTO v_emp_rec;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee Number: ' || v_emp_rec.empno);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee Name : ' || v_emp_rec.ename);
  ...
END;
```

## 8.8.4 Closing a Cursor

Once all the desired rows have been retrieved from the cursor result set, the cursor must be closed. Once closed, the result set is no longer accessible. The `CLOSE` statement appears as follows:

```
CLOSE <name>;
```

`name` is the identifier of a cursor that is currently open. Once a cursor is closed, it must not be closed again. However, once the cursor is closed, the `OPEN` statement can be issued again on the closed cursor and the query result set will be rebuilt after which the `FETCH` statement can then be used to retrieve the rows of the new result set.

The following example illustrates the use of the `CLOSE` statement:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cursor_example
IS
  v_emp_rec    emp%ROWTYPE;
  CURSOR emp_cur_1 IS SELECT * FROM emp;
BEGIN
  OPEN emp_cur_1;
  FETCH emp_cur_1 INTO v_emp_rec;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee Number: ' || v_emp_rec.empno);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee Name : ' || v_emp_rec.ename);
  CLOSE emp_cur_1;
END;
```

This procedure produces the following output when invoked. Employee number `7369, SMITH` is the first row of the result set.

```
EXEC cursor_example;
```

```
Employee Number: 7369
Employee Name : SMITH
```

## 8.8.5 Using %ROWTYPE With Cursors

Using the `%ROWTYPE` attribute, a record can be defined that contains fields corresponding to all columns fetched from a cursor or cursor variable. Each field takes on the data type of its corresponding column. The `%ROWTYPE` attribute is prefixed by a cursor name or cursor variable name.

```
<record> <cursor>%ROWTYPE;
```

`record` is an identifier assigned to the record. `cursor` is an explicitly declared cursor within the current scope.

The following example shows how you can use a cursor with `%ROWTYPE` to get information about which employee works in which department.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_info
IS
  CURSOR empcur IS SELECT ename, deptno FROM emp;
  myvar      empcur%ROWTYPE;
BEGIN
  OPEN empcur;
  LOOP
    FETCH empcur INTO myvar;
    EXIT WHEN empcur%NOTFOUND;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE( myvar.ename || ' works in department '
                           || myvar.deptno );
  END LOOP;
  CLOSE empcur;
END;
```

The following is the output from this procedure.

```
EXEC emp_info;

SMITH works in department 20
ALLEN works in department 30
WARD works in department 30
JONES works in department 20
MARTIN works in department 30
BLAKE works in department 30
CLARK works in department 10
SCOTT works in department 20
KING works in department 10
TURNER works in department 30
ADAMS works in department 20
JAMES works in department 30
FORD works in department 20
MILLER works in department 10
```

## 8.8.6 Cursor Attributes

Each cursor has a set of attributes associated with it that allows the program to test the state of the cursor. These attributes are `%ISOPEN`, `%FOUND`, `%NOTFOUND`, and `%ROWCOUNT`. These attributes are described in the following sections.

---

### 8.8.6.1 %ISOPEN

The `%ISOPEN` attribute is used to test whether or not a cursor is open.

```
<cursor_name>%ISOPEN
```

`cursor_name` is the name of the cursor for which a `BOOLEAN` data type of `TRUE` will be returned if the cursor is open, `FALSE` otherwise.

The following is an example of using `%ISOPEN`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cursor_example
IS
    ...
    CURSOR emp_cur_1 IS SELECT * FROM emp;
    ...
BEGIN
    ...
    IF emp_cur_1%ISOPEN THEN
        NULL;
    ELSE
        OPEN emp_cur_1;
    END IF;
    FETCH emp_cur_1 INTO ...
    ...
END;
```

### 8.8.6.2 %FOUND

The `%FOUND` attribute is used to test whether or not a row is retrieved from the result set of the specified cursor after a `FETCH` on the cursor.

```
<cursor_name>%FOUND
```

`cursor_name` is the name of the cursor for which a `BOOLEAN` data type of `TRUE` will be returned if a row is retrieved from the result set of the cursor after a `FETCH`.

After the last row of the result set has been fetched the next `FETCH` results in `%FOUND` returning `FALSE`. `FALSE` is also returned after the first `FETCH` if there are no rows in the result set to begin with.

Referencing `%FOUND` on a cursor before it is opened or after it is closed results in an `INVALID_CURSOR` exception being thrown.

`%FOUND` returns `null` if it is referenced when the cursor is open, but before the first `FETCH`.

The following example uses `%FOUND`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cursor_example
IS
  v_emp_rec    emp%ROWTYPE;
  CURSOR emp_cur_1 IS SELECT * FROM emp;
BEGIN
  OPEN emp_cur_1;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- -----');
  FETCH emp_cur_1 INTO v_emp_rec;
  WHILE emp_cur_1%FOUND LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_emp_rec.empno || ' ' || v_emp_rec.ename);
    FETCH emp_cur_1 INTO v_emp_rec;
  END LOOP;
  CLOSE emp_cur_1;
END;
```

When the previous procedure is invoked, the output appears as follows:

```
EXEC cursor_example;
```

```
EMPNO  ENAME
-----
7369  SMITH
7499  ALLEN
7521  WARD
7566  JONES
7654  MARTIN
7698  BLAKE
7782  CLARK
7788  SCOTT
7839  KING
7844  TURNER
7876  ADAMS
7900  JAMES
7902  FORD
7934  MILLER
```

### 8.8.6.3 %NOTFOUND

The `%NOTFOUND` attribute is the logical opposite of `%FOUND`.

```
<cursor_name>%NOTFOUND
```

`cursor_name` is the name of the cursor for which a `BOOLEAN` data type of `FALSE` will be returned if a row is retrieved from the result set of the cursor after a `FETCH`.

After the last row of the result set has been fetched the next `FETCH` results in `%NOTFOUND` returning `TRUE`.

`TRUE` is also returned after the first `FETCH` if there are no rows in the result set to begin with.

Referencing `%NOTFOUND` on a cursor before it is opened or after it is closed, results in an `INVALID_CURSOR` exception being thrown.

`%NOTFOUND` returns `null` if it is referenced when the cursor is open, but before the first `FETCH`.

The following example uses `%NOTFOUND`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cursor_example
IS
  v_emp_rec    emp%ROWTYPE;
  CURSOR emp_cur_1 IS SELECT * FROM emp;
BEGIN
  OPEN emp_cur_1;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----  -----');
  LOOP
    FETCH emp_cur_1 INTO v_emp_rec;
    EXIT WHEN emp_cur_1%NOTFOUND;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_emp_rec.empno || '  ' || v_emp_rec.ename);
  END LOOP;
  CLOSE emp_cur_1;
END;
```

Similar to the prior example, this procedure produces the same output when invoked.

```
EXEC cursor_example;
```

EMPNO	ENAME
7369	SMITH
7499	ALLEN
7521	WARD
7566	JONES
7654	MARTIN
7698	BLAKE
7782	CLARK
7788	SCOTT
7839	KING
7844	TURNER
7876	ADAMS
7900	JAMES
7902	FORD
7934	MILLER

## 8.8.6.4 %ROWCOUNT

The `%ROWCOUNT` attribute returns an integer showing the number of rows fetched so far from the specified cursor.

```
<cursor_name>%ROWCOUNT
```

`cursor_name` is the name of the cursor for which `%ROWCOUNT` returns the number of rows retrieved thus far. After the last row has been retrieved, `%ROWCOUNT` remains set to the total number of rows returned until the cursor is closed at which point `%ROWCOUNT` will throw an `INVALID_CURSOR` exception if referenced.

Referencing `%ROWCOUNT` on a cursor before it is opened or after it is closed, results in an `INVALID_CURSOR` exception being thrown.

`%ROWCOUNT` returns `0` if it is referenced when the cursor is open, but before the first `FETCH`. `%ROWCOUNT` also returns `0` after the first `FETCH` when there are no rows in the result set to begin with.

The following example uses `%ROWCOUNT`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cursor_example
IS
  v_emp_rec    emp%ROWTYPE;
  CURSOR emp_cur_1 IS SELECT * FROM emp;
BEGIN
  OPEN emp_cur_1;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----  -----');
  LOOP
    FETCH emp_cur_1 INTO v_emp_rec;
    EXIT WHEN emp_cur_1%NOTFOUND;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_emp_rec.empno || '  ' || v_emp_rec.ename);
  END LOOP;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('*****');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(emp_cur_1%ROWCOUNT || ' rows were retrieved');
  CLOSE emp_cur_1;
END;
```

This procedure prints the total number of rows retrieved at the end of the employee list as follows:

```
EXEC cursor_example;
```

EMPNO	ENAME
7369	SMITH
7499	ALLEN
7521	WARD
7566	JONES
7654	MARTIN
7698	BLAKE
7782	CLARK
7788	SCOTT
7839	KING
7844	TURNER
7876	ADAMS
7900	JAMES
7902	FORD
7934	MILLER
*****	

```
14 rows were retrieved
```

## 8.8.6.5 Summary of Cursor States and Attributes

The following table summarizes the possible cursor states and the values returned by the cursor attributes.

Cursor State	%ISOPEN	%FOUND	%NOTFOUND	%ROWCOUNT
Before <code>OPEN</code>	False	<code>INVALID_CURSOR</code> Exception	<code>INVALID_CURSOR</code> Exception	<code>INVALID_CURSOR</code> Exception
After <code>OPEN</code> & Before 1st <code>FETCH</code>	True	Null	Null	0
After 1st Successful <code>FETCH</code>	True	True	False	1
After <code>n</code> Successful <code>FETCH</code> (last row)	True	True	False	<code>n</code>
After <code>n+1</code> st <code>FETCH</code> (after last row)	True	False	True	<code>n</code>
After <code>CLOSE</code>	False	<code>INVALID_CURSOR</code> Exception	<code>INVALID_CURSOR</code> Exception	<code>INVALID_CURSOR</code> Exception

## 8.8.7 Cursor FOR Loop

In the cursor examples presented so far, the programming logic required to process the result set of a cursor included a statement to open the cursor, a loop construct to retrieve each row of the result set, a test for the end of the result set, and finally a statement to close the cursor. The *cursor FOR loop* is a loop construct that eliminates the need to individually code the statements just listed.

The cursor `FOR` loop opens a previously declared cursor, fetches all rows in the cursor result set, and then closes the cursor.

The syntax for creating a cursor `FOR` loop is as follows.

```
FOR <record> IN <cursor>
LOOP
  <statements>
END LOOP;
```

`record` is an identifier assigned to an implicitly declared record with definition, `cursor%ROWTYPE`. `cursor` is the name of a previously declared cursor. `statements` are one or more SPL statements. There must be at least one statement.

The following example shows the example from `%NOTFOUND`, modified to use a cursor `FOR` loop.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cursor_example
IS
  CURSOR emp_cur_1 IS SELECT * FROM emp;
BEGIN
```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- -----');
FOR v_emp_rec IN emp_cur_1 LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_emp_rec.empno || ' ' || v_emp_rec.ename);
END LOOP;
END;

```

The same results are achieved as shown in the output below.

```
EXEC cursor_example;
```

EMPNO	ENAME
7369	SMITH
7499	ALLEN
7521	WARD
7566	JONES
7654	MARTIN
7698	BLAKE
7782	CLARK
7788	SCOTT
7839	KING
7844	TURNER
7876	ADAMS
7900	JAMES
7902	FORD
7934	MILLER

EMPNO	ENAME
7369	SMITH
7499	ALLEN
7521	WARD
7566	JONES
7654	MARTIN
7698	BLAKE
7782	CLARK
7788	SCOTT
7839	KING
7844	TURNER
7876	ADAMS
7900	JAMES
7902	FORD
7934	MILLER

## 8.8.8 Parameterized Cursors

A user can also declare a static cursor that accepts parameters, and can pass values for those parameters when opening that cursor. In the following example we have created a parameterized cursor which will display the name and salary of all employees from the `emp` table that have a salary less than a specified value which is passed as a parameter.

```

DECLARE
    my_record    emp%ROWTYPE;
    CURSOR c1 (max_wage NUMBER) IS
        SELECT * FROM emp WHERE sal < max_wage;
BEGIN
    OPEN c1(2000);
    LOOP
        FETCH c1 INTO my_record;
        EXIT WHEN c1%NOTFOUND;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name = ' || my_record.ename || ', salary = '
            || my_record.sal);
    END LOOP;
    CLOSE c1;
END;

```

So for example if we pass the value 2000 as `max_wage`, then we will only be shown the name and salary of all

employees that have a salary less than 2000. The result of the above query is the following:

```
Name = SMITH, salary = 800.00
Name = ALLEN, salary = 1600.00
Name = WARD, salary = 1250.00
Name = MARTIN, salary = 1250.00
Name = TURNER, salary = 1500.00
Name = ADAMS, salary = 1100.00
Name = JAMES, salary = 950.00
Name = MILLER, salary = 1300.00
```

## 8.9 REF CURSORs and Cursor Variables

This section discusses another type of cursor that provides far greater flexibility than the previously discussed static cursors.

### 8.9.1 REF CURSOR Overview

A *cursor variable* is a cursor that actually contains a pointer to a query result set. The result set is determined by the execution of the `OPEN FOR` statement using the cursor variable.

A cursor variable is not tied to a single particular query like a static cursor. The same cursor variable may be opened a number of times with `OPEN FOR` statements containing different queries. Each time, a new result set is created from that query and made available via the cursor variable.

`REF CURSOR` types may be passed as parameters to or from stored procedures and functions. The return type of a function may also be a `REF CURSOR` type. This provides the capability to modularize the operations on a cursor into separate programs by passing a cursor variable between programs.

### 8.9.2 Declaring a Cursor Variable

SPL supports the declaration of a cursor variable using both the `SYS_REFCURSOR` built-in data type as well as creating a type of `REF CURSOR` and then declaring a variable of that type. `SYS_REFCURSOR` is a `REF CURSOR` type that allows any result set to be associated with it. This is known as a *weakly-typed* `REF CURSOR`.

Only the declaration of `SYS_REFCURSOR` and user-defined `REF CURSOR` variables are different. The remaining usage like opening the cursor, selecting into the cursor and closing the cursor is the same across both the cursor types. For the rest of this chapter our examples will primarily be making use of the `SYS REFCURSOR` cursors. All you need to change in the examples to make them work for user defined `REF CURSORS` is the declaration section.

Note

*Strongly-typed* **REF CURSORS** require the result set to conform to a declared number and order of fields with compatible data types and can also optionally return a result set.

---

### 8.9.2.1 Declaring a SYS\_REFCURSOR Cursor Variable

The following is the syntax for declaring a **SYS\_REFCURSOR** cursor variable:

```
<name> SYS_REFCURSOR;
```

**name** is an identifier assigned to the cursor variable.

The following is an example of a **SYS\_REFCURSOR** variable declaration.

```
DECLARE
  emp_refcur  SYS_REFCURSOR;
  ...
```

---

### 8.9.2.2 Declaring a User Defined REF CURSOR Type Variable

You must perform two distinct declaration steps in order to use a user defined **REF CURSOR** variable:

- Create a referenced cursor **TYPE**
- Declare the actual cursor variable based on that **TYPE**

The syntax for creating a user defined **REF CURSOR** type is as follows:

```
TYPE <cursor_type_name> IS REF CURSOR [RETURN <return_type>];
```

The following is an example of a cursor variable declaration.

```
DECLARE
  TYPE emp_cur_type IS REF CURSOR RETURN emp%ROWTYPE;
  my_rec emp_cur_type;
  ...
```

---

### 8.9.3 Opening a Cursor Variable

Once a cursor variable is declared, it must be opened with an associated **SELECT** command. The **OPEN FOR** statement specifies the **SELECT** command to be used to create the result set.

```
OPEN <name> FOR query;
```

`name` is the identifier of a previously declared cursor variable. `query` is a `SELECT` command that determines the result set when the statement is executed. The value of the cursor variable after the `OPEN FOR` statement is executed identifies the result set.

In the following example, the result set is a list of employee numbers and names from a selected department. Note that a variable or parameter can be used in the `SELECT` command anywhere an expression can normally appear. In this case a parameter is used in the equality test for department number.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_by_dept (
    p_deptno      emp.deptno%TYPE
)
IS
    emp_refcur    SYS_REFCURSOR;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_refcur FOR SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE deptno = p_deptno;
    ...

```

## 8.9.4 Fetching Rows From a Cursor Variable

After a cursor variable is opened, rows may be retrieved from the result set using the `FETCH` statement. See [Fetching Rows From a Cursor](#) for details on using the `FETCH` statement to retrieve rows from a result set.

In the example below, a `FETCH` statement has been added to the previous example so now the result set is returned into two variables and then displayed. Note that the cursor attributes used to determine cursor state of static cursors can also be used with cursor variables. See [Cursor Attributes](#) for details on cursor attributes.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_by_dept (
    p_deptno      emp.deptno%TYPE
)
IS
    emp_refcur    SYS_REFCURSOR;
    v_empno       emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_ename       emp.ename%TYPE;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_refcur FOR SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE deptno = p_deptno;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----');
    LOOP
        FETCH emp_refcur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
        EXIT WHEN emp_refcur%NOTFOUND;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || '  ' || v_ename);
    END LOOP;
    ...

```

## 8.9.5 Closing a Cursor Variable

Use the **CLOSE** statement described in [Closing a Cursor](#) to release the result set.

#### Note

Unlike static cursors, a cursor variable does not have to be closed before it can be re-opened again. The result set from the previous open will be lost.

The example is completed with the addition of the **CLOSE** statement.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_by_dept (
    p_deptno      emp.deptno%TYPE
)
IS
    emp_refcur    SYS_REFCURSOR;
    v_empno       emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_ename        emp.ename%TYPE;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_refcur FOR SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE deptno = p_deptno;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----');
    LOOP
        FETCH emp_refcur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
        EXIT WHEN emp_refcur%NOTFOUND;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || '  ' || v_ename);
    END LOOP;
    CLOSE emp_refcur;
END;
```

The following is the output when this procedure is executed.

```
EXEC emp_by_dept(20)
```

EMPNO	ENAME
7369	SMITH
7566	JONES
7788	SCOTT
7876	ADAMS
7902	FORD

## 8.9.6 Usage Restrictions

The following are restrictions on cursor variable usage.

- Comparison operators cannot be used to test cursor variables for equality, inequality, null, or not null
- Null cannot be assigned to a cursor variable
- The value of a cursor variable cannot be stored in a database column
- Static cursors and cursor variables are not interchangeable. For example, a static cursor cannot be used in an **OPEN FOR** statement.

In addition the following table shows the permitted parameter modes for a cursor variable used as a procedure or function parameter depending upon the operations on the cursor variable within the procedure or function.

Operation	IN	IN OUT	OUT
OPEN	No	Yes	No
FETCH	Yes	Yes	No
CLOSE	Yes	Yes	No

So for example, if a procedure performs all three operations, **OPEN FOR**, **FETCH**, and **CLOSE** on a cursor variable declared as the procedure's formal parameter, then that parameter must be declared with **IN OUT** mode.

## 8.9.7 Examples

The following examples demonstrate cursor variable usage.

### 8.9.7.1 Returning a REF CURSOR From a Function

In the following example the cursor variable is opened with a query that selects employees with a given job. Note that the cursor variable is specified in this function's **RETURN** statement so the result set is made available to the caller of the function.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION emp_by_job (p_job VARCHAR2)
RETURN SYS_REFCURSOR
IS
    emp_refcur    SYS_REFCURSOR;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_refcur FOR SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE job = p_job;
    RETURN emp_refcur;
END;
```

This function is invoked in the following anonymous block by assigning the function's return value to a cursor variable declared in the anonymous block's declaration section. The result set is fetched using this cursor variable and then it is closed.

```
DECLARE
    v_empno      emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_ename      emp.ename%TYPE;
    v_job        emp.job%TYPE := 'SALESMAN';
    v_emp_refcur  SYS_REFCURSOR;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPLOYEES WITH JOB ' || v_job);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----');
    v_emp_refcur := emp_by_job(v_job);
    LOOP
        FETCH v_emp_refcur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
        EXIT WHEN v_emp_refcur%NOTFOUND;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || '  ' || v_ename);
```

```

END LOOP;
CLOSE v_emp_refcur;
END;

```

The following is the output when the anonymous block is executed.

```

EMPLOYEES WITH JOB SALESMAN
EMPNO  ENAME
-----
7499  ALLEN
7521  WARD
7654  MARTIN
7844  TURNER

```

### 8.9.7.2 Modularizing Cursor Operations

The following example illustrates how the various operations on cursor variables can be modularized into separate programs.

The following procedure opens the given cursor variable with a `SELECT` command that retrieves all rows.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE open_all_emp (
    p_emp_refcur  IN OUT SYS_REFCURSOR
)
IS
BEGIN
    OPEN p_emp_refcur FOR SELECT empno, ename FROM emp;
END;

```

This variation opens the given cursor variable with a `SELECT` command that retrieves all rows, but of a given department.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE open_emp_by_dept (
    p_emp_refcur  IN OUT SYS_REFCURSOR,
    p_deptno      emp.deptno%TYPE
)
IS
BEGIN
    OPEN p_emp_refcur FOR SELECT empno, ename FROM emp
        WHERE deptno = p_deptno;
END;

```

This third variation opens the given cursor variable with a `SELECT` command that retrieves all rows, but from a different table. Also note that the function's return value is the opened cursor variable.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION open_dept (
    p_dept_refcur  IN OUT SYS_REFCURSOR
) RETURN SYS_REFCURSOR
IS
    v_dept_refcur  SYS_REFCURSOR;
BEGIN

```

```

v_dept_refcur := p_dept_refcur;
OPEN v_dept_refcur FOR SELECT deptno, dname FROM dept;
RETURN v_dept_refcur;
END;

```

This procedure fetches and displays a cursor variable result set consisting of employee number and name.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE fetch_emp (
    p_emp_refcur IN OUT SYS_REFCURSOR
)
IS
    v_empno      emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_ename      emp.ename%TYPE;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----');
    LOOP
        FETCH p_emp_refcur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
        EXIT WHEN p_emp_refcur%NOTFOUND;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' || v_ename);
    END LOOP;
END;

```

This procedure fetches and displays a cursor variable result set consisting of department number and name.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE fetch_dept (
    p_dept_refcur IN SYS_REFCURSOR
)
IS
    v_deptno      dept.deptno%TYPE;
    v_dname       dept.dname%TYPE;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('DEPT  DNAME');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----');
    LOOP
        FETCH p_dept_refcur INTO v_deptno, v_dname;
        EXIT WHEN p_dept_refcur%NOTFOUND;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_deptno || ' ' || v_dname);
    END LOOP;
END;

```

This procedure closes the given cursor variable.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE close_refcur (
    p_refcur     IN OUT SYS_REFCURSOR
)
IS
BEGIN
    CLOSE p_refcur;
END;

```

The following anonymous block executes all the previously described programs.

```

DECLARE
    gen_refcur   SYS_REFCURSOR;
BEGIN

```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('ALL EMPLOYEES');
open_all_emp(gen_refcur);
fetch_emp(gen_refcur);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('*****');

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPLOYEES IN DEPT #10');
open_emp_by_dept(gen_refcur, 10);
fetch_emp(gen_refcur);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('*****');

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('DEPARTMENTS');
fetch_dept(open_dept(gen_refcur));
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('*****');

close_refcur(gen_refcur);
END;

```

The following is the output from the anonymous block.

ALL EMPLOYEES  
EMPNO ENAME

EMPNO	ENAME
7369	SMITH
7499	ALLEN
7521	WARD
7566	JONES
7654	MARTIN
7698	BLAKE
7782	CLARK
7788	SCOTT
7839	KING
7844	TURNER
7876	ADAMS
7900	JAMES
7902	FORD
7934	MILLER

\*\*\*\*\*

EMPLOYEES IN DEPT #10

EMPNO ENAME

EMPNO	ENAME
7782	CLARK
7839	KING
7934	MILLER

\*\*\*\*\*

DEPARTMENTS

DEPT DNAME

DEPT	DNAME
10	ACCOUNTING
20	RESEARCH
30	SALES
40	OPERATIONS

\*\*\*\*\*

## 8.9.8 Dynamic Queries With REF CURSORs

Advanced Server also supports dynamic queries via the `OPEN FOR USING` statement. A string literal or string variable is supplied in the `OPEN FOR USING` statement to the `SELECT` command.

```
OPEN <name> FOR <dynamic_string>
[ USING <bind_arg> [, <bind_arg_2> ] ...];
```

`name` is the identifier of a previously declared cursor variable. `dynamic_string` is a string literal or string variable containing a `SELECT` command (without the terminating semi-colon). `bind_arg`, `bind_arg_2...` are bind arguments that are used to pass variables to corresponding placeholders in the `SELECT` command when the cursor variable is opened. The placeholders are identifiers prefixed by a colon character.

The following is an example of a dynamic query using a string literal.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE dept_query
IS
    emp_refcur    SYS_REFCURSOR;
    v_empno       emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_ename        emp.ename%TYPE;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_refcur FOR 'SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE deptno = 30' ||
        ' AND sal >= 1500';
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO    ENAME');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----    -----');
    LOOP
        FETCH emp_refcur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
        EXIT WHEN emp_refcur%NOTFOUND;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || '    ' || v_ename);
    END LOOP;
    CLOSE emp_refcur;
END;
```

The following is the output when the procedure is executed.

```
EXEC dept_query;
```

EMPNO	ENAME
7499	ALLEN
7698	BLAKE
7844	TURNER

In the next example, the previous query is modified to use bind arguments to pass the query parameters.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE dept_query (
    p_deptno      emp.deptno%TYPE,
    p_sal         emp.sal%TYPE
)
IS
    emp_refcur    SYS_REFCURSOR;
    v_empno       emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_ename        emp.ename%TYPE;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_refcur FOR 'SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE deptno = :dept'
```

```

|| ' AND sal >= :sal' USING p_deptno, p_sal;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO    ENAME');
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----');
LOOP
  FETCH emp_refcur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
  EXIT WHEN emp_refcur%NOTFOUND;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || '    ' || v_ename);
END LOOP;
CLOSE emp_refcur;
END;

```

The following is the resulting output.

```
EXEC dept_query(30, 1500);
```

EMPNO	ENAME
7499	ALLEN
7698	BLAKE
7844	TURNER

Finally, a string variable is used to pass the `SELECT` providing the most flexibility.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE dept_query (
  p_deptno      emp.deptno%TYPE,
  p_sal        emp.sal%TYPE
)
IS
  emp_refcur    SYS_REFCURSOR;
  v_empno       emp.empno%TYPE;
  v_ename        emp.ename%TYPE;
  p_query_string VARCHAR2(100);
BEGIN
  p_query_string := 'SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE ' ||
    'deptno = :dept AND sal >= :sal';
  OPEN emp_refcur FOR p_query_string USING p_deptno, p_sal;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO    ENAME');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----');
  LOOP
    FETCH emp_refcur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
    EXIT WHEN emp_refcur%NOTFOUND;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || '    ' || v_ename);
  END LOOP;
  CLOSE emp_refcur;
END;
EXEC dept_query(20, 1500);

```

EMPNO	ENAME
7566	JONES
7788	SCOTT
7902	FORD

## 8.10 Collections

A *collection* is a set of ordered data items with the same data type. Generally, the data item is a scalar field, but may also be a user-defined type such as a record type or an object type as long as the structure and the data types that comprise each field of the user-defined type are the same for each element in the set. Each particular data item in the set is referenced by using subscript notation within a pair of parentheses.

### Note

Multilevel collections (that is, where the data item of a collection is another collection) are not supported.

The most commonly known type of collection is an array. In Advanced Server, the supported collection types are *associative arrays* (formerly called *index-by-tables* in Oracle), *nested tables*, and *varrays*.

The general steps for using a collection are the following:

- A collection of the desired type must be defined. This can be done in the declaration section of an SPL program, which results in a *local type* that is accessible only within that program. For nested table and varray types this can also be done using the `CREATE TYPE` command, which creates a persistent, *standalone type* that can be referenced by any SPL program in the database.
- Variables of the collection type are declared. The collection associated with the declared variable is said to be *uninitialized* at this point if there is no value assignment made as part of the variable declaration.
- Uninitialized collections of nested tables and varrays are null. A *null collection* does not yet exist. Generally, a `COLLECTION_IS_NULL` exception is thrown if a collection method is invoked on a null collection.
- Uninitialized collections of associative arrays exist, but have no elements. An existing collection with no elements is called an *empty collection*.
- To initialize a null collection, you must either make it an empty collection or assign a non-null value to it. Generally, a null collection is initialized by using its *constructor*.
- To add elements to an empty associative array, you can simply assign values to its keys. For nested tables and varrays, generally its constructor is used to assign initial values to the nested table or varray. For nested tables and varrays, the `EXTEND` method is then used to grow the collection beyond its initial size established by the constructor.

The specific process for each collection type is described in the following sections.

### 8.10.1 Associative Arrays

An *associative array* is a type of collection that associates a unique key with a value. The key does not have to be numeric, but can be character data as well.

An associative array has the following characteristics:

- An *associative array type* must be defined after which *array variables* can be declared of that array type. Data manipulation occurs using the array variable.
- When an array variable is declared, the associative array is created, but it is empty - just start assigning values to key values.
- The key can be any negative integer, positive integer, or zero if `INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER` or `PLS_INTEGER` is specified.
- The key can be character data if `INDEX BY VARCHAR2` is specified.
- There is no pre-defined limit on the number of elements in the array - it grows dynamically as elements are added.
- The array can be sparse - there may be gaps in the assignment of values to keys.
- An attempt to reference an array element that has not been assigned a value will result in an exception.

The `TYPE IS TABLE OF ... INDEX BY` statement is used to define an associative array type.

```
TYPE <assoctype> IS TABLE OF { <datatype> | <rectype> | <objtype> }
INDEX BY { BINARY_INTEGER | PLS_INTEGER | VARCHAR2(<n>) };
```

`assoctype` is an identifier assigned to the array type. `datatype` is a scalar data type such as `VARCHAR2` or `NUMBER`. `rectype` is a previously defined record type. `objtype` is a previously defined object type. `n` is the maximum length of a character key.

In order to make use of the array, a *variable* must be declared with that array type. The following is the syntax for declaring an array variable.

```
<array assoctype>
```

`array` is an identifier assigned to the associative array. `assoctype` is the identifier of a previously defined array type.

An element of the array is referenced using the following syntax.

```
<array>(<n>)[.<field> ]
```

`array` is the identifier of a previously declared array. `n` is the key value, type-compatible with the data type given in the `INDEX BY` clause. If the array type of `array` is defined from a record type or object type, then `[.field]` must reference an individual field within the record type or attribute within the object type from which the array type is defined. Alternatively, the entire record can be referenced by omitting `[.field]`.

The following example reads the first ten employee names from the `emp` table, stores them in an array, then displays the results from the array.

```
DECLARE
  TYPE emp_arr_typ IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(10) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  emp_arr    emp_arr_typ;
  CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT ename FROM emp WHERE ROWNUM <= 10;
  i          INTEGER := 0;
BEGIN
  FOR r_emp IN emp_cur LOOP
    i := i + 1;
    emp_arr(i) := r_emp.ename;
  END LOOP;
  FOR j IN 1..10 LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(emp_arr(j));
  END LOOP;
END;
```

The above example produces the following output:

```
SMITH
ALLEN
WARD
JONES
MARTIN
BLAKE
CLARK
SCOTT
KING
TURNER
```

The previous example is now modified to use a record type in the array definition.

```
DECLARE
```

```

TYPE emp_rec_typ IS RECORD (
    empno    NUMBER(4),
    ename     VARCHAR2(10)
);
TYPE emp_arr_typ IS TABLE OF emp_rec_typ INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
emp_arr    emp_arr_typ;
CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE ROWNUM <= 10;
i          INTEGER := 0;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----  -----');
    FOR r_emp IN emp_cur LOOP
        i := i + 1;
        emp_arr(i).empno := r_emp.empno;
        emp_arr(i).ename := r_emp.ename;
    END LOOP;
    FOR j IN 1..10 LOOP
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(emp_arr(j).empno || '  ' ||
            emp_arr(j).ename);
    END LOOP;
END;

```

The following is the output from this anonymous block.

EMPNO	ENAME
7369	SMITH
7499	ALLEN
7521	WARD
7566	JONES
7654	MARTIN
7698	BLAKE
7782	CLARK
7788	SCOTT
7839	KING
7844	TURNER

The `emp%ROWTYPE` attribute could be used to define `emp_arr_typ` instead of using the `emp_rec_typ` record type as shown in the following.

```

DECLARE
    TYPE emp_arr_typ IS TABLE OF emp%ROWTYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
    emp_arr    emp_arr_typ;
    CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE ROWNUM <= 10;
    i          INTEGER := 0;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----  -----');
    FOR r_emp IN emp_cur LOOP
        i := i + 1;
        emp_arr(i).empno := r_emp.empno;
        emp_arr(i).ename := r_emp.ename;
    END LOOP;
    FOR j IN 1..10 LOOP
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(emp_arr(j).empno || '  ' ||
            emp_arr(j).ename);
    END LOOP;
END;

```

```
END LOOP;
END;
```

The results are the same as in the prior example.

Instead of assigning each field of the record individually, a record level assignment can be made from `r_emp` to `emp_arr`.

```
DECLARE
  TYPE emp_rec_typ IS RECORD (
    empno    NUMBER(4),
    ename    VARCHAR2(10)
  );
  TYPE emp_arr_typ IS TABLE OF emp_rec_typ INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  emp_arr    emp_arr_typ;
  CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE ROWNUM <= 10;
  i          INTEGER := 0;
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----');
  FOR r_emp IN emp_cur LOOP
    i := i + 1;
    emp_arr(i) := r_emp;
  END LOOP;
  FOR j IN 1..10 LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(emp_arr(j).empno || '  ' ||
      emp_arr(j).ename);
  END LOOP;
END;
```

The key of an associative array can be character data as shown in the following example.

```
DECLARE
  TYPE job_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER INDEX BY VARCHAR2(9);
  job_arr    job_arr_typ;
BEGIN
  job_arr('ANALYST') := 100;
  job_arr('CLERK')   := 200;
  job_arr('MANAGER') := 300;
  job_arr('SALESMAN') := 400;
  job_arr('PRESIDENT') := 500;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('ANALYST : ' || job_arr('ANALYST'));
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('CLERK   : ' || job_arr('CLERK'));
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('MANAGER : ' || job_arr('MANAGER'));
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('SALESMAN : ' || job_arr('SALESMAN'));
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('PRESIDENT: ' || job_arr('PRESIDENT'));
END;

ANALYST : 100
CLERK   : 200
MANAGER : 300
SALESMAN : 400
PRESIDENT: 500
```

## 8.10.2 Nested Tables

A *nested table* is a type of collection that associates a positive integer with a value. A nested table has the following characteristics:

- A *nested table type* must be defined after which *nested table variables* can be declared of that nested table type. Data manipulation occurs using the nested table variable, or simply, “table” for short.
- When a nested table variable is declared, the nested table initially does not exist (it is a null collection). The null table must be initialized with a *constructor*. You can also initialize the table by using an assignment statement where the right-hand side of the assignment is an initialized table of the same type. **Note:** Initialization of a nested table is mandatory in Oracle, but optional in SPL.
- The key is a positive integer.
- The constructor establishes the number of elements in the table. The **EXTEND** method adds additional elements to the table. See [Collection Methods](#) for information on collection methods. **Note:** Usage of the constructor to establish the number of elements in the table and usage of the **EXTEND** method to add additional elements to the table are mandatory in Oracle, but optional in SPL.
- The table can be sparse - there may be gaps in the assignment of values to keys.
- An attempt to reference a table element beyond its initialized or extended size will result in a **SUBSCRIPT\_BEYOND\_COUNT** exception.

The **TYPE IS TABLE** statement is used to define a nested table type within the declaration section of an SPL program.

```
TYPE <tbltype> IS TABLE OF { <datatype> | <rectype> | <objtype> };
```

**tbltype** is an identifier assigned to the nested table type. **datatype** is a scalar data type such as **VARCHAR2** or **NUMBER**. **rectype** is a previously defined record type. **objtype** is a previously defined object type.

### Note

You can use the **CREATE TYPE** command to define a nested table type that is available to all SPL programs in the database. See the Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Reference Guide for more information about the **CREATE TYPE** command.

In order to make use of the table, a *variable* must be declared of that nested table type. The following is the syntax for declaring a table variable.

```
<table tbltype>
```

**table** is an identifier assigned to the nested table. **tbltype** is the identifier of a previously defined nested table type.

A nested table is initialized using the nested table type's constructor.

```
<tbltype> ([ { <expr1> | NULL } [, { <expr2> | NULL } ] [, ...] ])
```

**tbltype** is the identifier of the nested table type's constructor, which has the same name as the nested table type. **expr1**, **expr2**, ... are expressions that are type-compatible with the element type of the table. If **NULL** is specified, the corresponding element is set to null. If the parameter list is empty, then an empty nested table is returned, which means there are no elements in the table. If the table is defined from an object type, then **exprn** must return an object of that object type. The object can be the return value of a function or the object type's constructor, or the object can be an element of another nested table of the same type.

If a collection method other than **EXISTS** is applied to an uninitialized nested table, a **COLLECTION\_IS\_NULL** exception is thrown. See [Collection Methods](#) for information on collection methods.

The following is an example of a constructor for a nested table:

```
DECLARE
```

```
TYPE nested_typ IS TABLE OF CHAR(1);
v_nested      nested_typ := nested_typ('A','B');
```

An element of the table is referenced using the following syntax.

```
<table>(<n>)[<.element> ]
```

**table** is the identifier of a previously declared table. **n** is a positive integer. If the table type of **table** is defined from a record type or object type, then **[.element ]** must reference an individual field within the record type or attribute within the object type from which the nested table type is defined. Alternatively, the entire record or object can be referenced by omitting **[.element ]**.

The following is an example of a nested table where it is known that there will be four elements.

```
DECLARE
  TYPE dname_tbl_typ IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(14);
  dname_tbl      dname_tbl_typ;
  CURSOR dept_cur IS SELECT dname FROM dept ORDER BY dname;
  i              INTEGER := 0;
BEGIN
  dname_tbl := dname_tbl_typ(NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL);
  FOR r_dept IN dept_cur LOOP
    i := i + 1;
    dname_tbl(i) := r_dept.dname;
  END LOOP;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('DNAME');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');
  FOR j IN 1..i LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(dname_tbl(j));
  END LOOP;
END;
```

The above example produces the following output:

```
DNAME
-----
ACCOUNTING
OPERATIONS
RESEARCH
SALES
```

The following example reads the first ten employee names from the **emp** table, stores them in a nested table, then displays the results from the table. The SPL code is written to assume that the number of employees to be returned is not known beforehand.

```
DECLARE
  TYPE emp_rec_typ IS RECORD (
    empno      NUMBER(4),
    ename      VARCHAR2(10)
  );
  TYPE emp_tbl_typ IS TABLE OF emp_rec_typ;
  emp_tbl      emp_tbl_typ;
  CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT empno, ename FROM emp WHERE ROWNUM <= 10;
  i              INTEGER := 0;
BEGIN
  emp_tbl := emp_tbl_typ();
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');
FOR r_emp IN emp_cur LOOP
  i := i + 1;
  emp_tbl.EXTEND;
  emp_tbl(i) := r_emp;
END LOOP;
FOR j IN 1..10 LOOP
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(emp_tbl(j).empno || '    ' ||
    emp_tbl(j).ename);
END LOOP;
END;

```

Note the creation of an empty table with the constructor `emp_tbl_typ()` as the first statement in the executable section of the anonymous block. The `EXTEND` collection method is then used to add an element to the table for each employee returned from the result set. See [Extend](#) for information on `EXTEND`.

The following is the output.

EMPNO	ENAME
7369	SMITH
7499	ALLEN
7521	WARD
7566	JONES
7654	MARTIN
7698	BLAKE
7782	CLARK
7788	SCOTT
7839	KING
7844	TURNER

The following example shows how a nested table of an object type can be used. First, an object type is created with attributes for the department name and location.

```

CREATE TYPE dept_obj_typ AS OBJECT (
  dname      VARCHAR2(14),
  loc        VARCHAR2(13)
);

```

The following anonymous block defines a nested table type whose element consists of the `dept_obj_typ` object type. A nested table variable is declared, initialized, and then populated from the `dept` table. Finally, the elements from the nested table are displayed.

```

DECLARE
  TYPE dept_tbl_typ IS TABLE OF dept_obj_typ;
  dept_tbl  dept_tbl_typ;
  CURSOR dept_cur IS SELECT dname, loc FROM dept ORDER BY dname;
  i         INTEGER := 0;
BEGIN
  dept_tbl := dept_tbl_typ(
    dept_obj_typ(NULL,NULL),
    dept_obj_typ(NULL,NULL),
    dept_obj_typ(NULL,NULL),
    dept_obj_typ(NULL,NULL),
    dept_obj_typ(NULL,NULL)
  );
  FOR r_dept IN dept_cur LOOP
    i := i + 1;

```

```

dept_tbl(i).dname := r_dept.dname;
dept_tbl(i).loc  := r_dept.loc;
END LOOP;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('DNAME      LOC');
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----');
FOR j IN 1..i LOOP
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(RPAD(dept_tbl(j).dname,14) || ' ' ||
    dept_tbl(j).loc);
END LOOP;
END;

```

The parameters comprising the nested table's constructor, `dept_tbl_typ`, are calls to the object type's constructor `dept_obj_typ`. The following is the output from the anonymous block:

DNAME	LOC
ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
OPERATIONS	BOSTON
RESEARCH	DALLAS
SALES	CHICAGO

### 8.10.3 Varrays

A *varray* or *variable-size array* is a type of collection that associates a positive integer with a value. In many respects, it is similar to a nested table.

A varray has the following characteristics:

- A *varray type* must be defined along with a maximum size limit. After the varray type is defined, *varray variables* can be declared of that varray type. Data manipulation occurs using the varray variable, or simply, "varray" for short. The number of elements in the varray cannot exceed the maximum size limit established in the varray type definition.
- When a varray variable is declared, the varray initially does not exist (it is a null collection). The null varray must be initialized with a *constructor*. You can also initialize the varray by using an assignment statement where the right-hand side of the assignment is an initialized varray of the same type.
- The key is a positive integer.
- The constructor establishes the number of elements in the varray, which must not exceed the maximum size limit. The `EXTEND` method can add additional elements to the varray up to the maximum size limit. See [Collection Methods](#) for information on collection methods.
- Unlike a nested table, a varray cannot be sparse - there are no gaps in the assignment of values to keys.
- An attempt to reference a varray element beyond its initialized or extended size, but within the maximum size limit will result in a `SUBSCRIPT_BEYOND_COUNT` exception.
- An attempt to reference a varray element beyond the maximum size limit or extend a varray beyond the maximum size limit will result in a `SUBSCRIPT_OUTSIDE_LIMIT` exception.

The `TYPE IS VARRAY` statement is used to define a varray type within the declaration section of an SPL program.

```

TYPE <varraytype> IS { VARRAY | VARYING ARRAY }(<maxsize>)
OF { <datatype> | <objtype> };

```

`varraytype` is an identifier assigned to the varray type. `datatype` is a scalar data type such as `VARCHAR2` or `NUMBER`. `maxsize` is the maximum number of elements permitted in varrays of that type. `objtype` is a previously

defined object type.

The `CREATE TYPE` command can be used to define a varray type that is available to all SPL programs in the database. In order to make use of the varray, a *variable* must be declared of that varray type. The following is the syntax for declaring a varray variable:

```
<varray varraytype>
```

`varray` is an identifier assigned to the varray. `varraytype` is the identifier of a previously defined varray type.

A varray is initialized using the varray type's constructor.

```
<varraytype> ([ { <expr1> | NULL } [, { <expr2> | NULL } ]
 [, ...] ])
```

`varraytype` is the identifier of the varray type's constructor, which has the same name as the varray type. `expr1`, `expr2`, ... are expressions that are type-compatible with the element type of the varray. If `NULL` is specified, the corresponding element is set to null. If the parameter list is empty, then an empty varray is returned, which means there are no elements in the varray. If the varray is defined from an object type, then `exprn` must return an object of that object type. The object can be the return value of a function or the return value of the object type's constructor. The object can also be an element of another varray of the same varray type.

If a collection method other than `EXISTS` is applied to an uninitialized varray, a `COLLECTION_IS_NULL` exception is thrown. See [Collection Methods](#) for information on collection methods.

The following is an example of a constructor for a varray:

```
DECLARE
  TYPE varray_typ IS VARRAY(2) OF CHAR(1);
  v_varray    varray_typ := varray_typ('A','B');
```

An element of the varray is referenced using the following syntax.

```
<varray>(<n>)[<.element>]
```

`varray` is the identifier of a previously declared varray. `n` is a positive integer. If the varray type of `varray` is defined from an object type, then `[.element]` must reference an attribute within the object type from which the varray type is defined. Alternatively, the entire object can be referenced by omitting `[.element]`.

The following is an example of a varray where it is known that there will be four elements.

```
DECLARE
  TYPE dname_varray_typ IS VARRAY(4) OF VARCHAR2(14);
  dname_varray  dname_varray_typ;
  CURSOR dept_cur IS SELECT dname FROM dept ORDER BY dname;
  i           INTEGER := 0;
BEGIN
  dname_varray := dname_varray_typ(NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL);
  FOR r_dept IN dept_cur LOOP
    i := i + 1;
    dname_varray(i) := r_dept.dname;
  END LOOP;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('DNAME');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');
  FOR j IN 1..i LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(dname_varray(j));
  END LOOP;
END;
```

The above example produces the following output:

```
DNAME
-----
ACCOUNTING
OPERATIONS
RESEARCH
SALES
```

## 8.11 Collection Methods

*Collection methods* are functions and procedures that provide useful information about a collection that can aid in the processing of data in the collection. The following sections discuss the collection methods supported by Advanced Server.

### 8.11.1 COUNT

`COUNT` is a method that returns the number of elements in a collection. The syntax for using `COUNT` is as follows:

```
<collection>.COUNT
```

`collection` is the name of a collection.

For a varray, `COUNT` always equals `LAST`.

The following example shows that an associative array can be sparsely populated (i.e., there are “gaps” in the sequence of assigned elements). `COUNT` includes only the elements that have been assigned a value.

```
DECLARE
  TYPE sparse_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  sparse_arr  sparse_arr_typ;
BEGIN
  sparse_arr(-100) := -100;
  sparse_arr(-10)  := -10;
  sparse_arr(0)    := 0;
  sparse_arr(10)   := 10;
  sparse_arr(100)  := 100;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || sparse_arr.COUNT);
END;
```

The following output shows that there are five populated elements included in `COUNT`.

```
COUNT: 5
```

## 8.11.2 DELETE

The `DELETE` method deletes entries from a collection. You can call the `DELETE` method in three different ways.

Use the first form of the `DELETE` method to remove all entries from a collection:

```
<collection>.DELETE
```

Use the second form of the `DELETE` method to remove the specified entry from a collection:

```
<collection>.DELETE(<subscript>)
```

Use the third form of the `DELETE` method to remove the entries that are within the range specified by `first_subscript` and `last_subscript` (including the entries for the `first_subscript` and the `last_subscript`) from a collection.

```
<collection>.DELETE(<first_subscript>, <last_subscript>)
```

If `first_subscript` and `last_subscript` refer to non-existent elements, elements that are in the range between the specified subscripts are deleted. If `first_subscript` is greater than `last_subscript`, or if you specify a value of `NULL` for one of the arguments, `DELETE` has no effect.

Note that when you delete an entry, the subscript remains in the collection; you can re-use the subscript with an alternate entry. If you specify a subscript that does not exist in the call to the `DELETE` method, `DELETE` does not raise an exception.

The following example demonstrates using the `DELETE` method to remove the element with subscript `0` from the collection:

```
DECLARE
  TYPE sparse_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  sparse_arr sparse_arr_typ;
  v_results VARCHAR2(50);
  v_sub NUMBER;
BEGIN
  sparse_arr(-100) := -100;
  sparse_arr(-10) := -10;
  sparse_arr(0) := 0;
  sparse_arr(10) := 10;
  sparse_arr(100) := 100;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || sparse_arr.COUNT);
  sparse_arr.DELETE(0);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || sparse_arr.COUNT);
  v_sub := sparse_arr.FIRST;
  WHILE v_sub IS NOT NULL LOOP
    IF sparse_arr(v_sub) IS NULL THEN
      v_results := v_results || 'NULL ';
    ELSE
      v_results := v_results || sparse_arr(v_sub) || ' ';
    END IF;
    v_sub := sparse_arr.NEXT(v_sub);
  END LOOP;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Results: ' || v_results);
END;
```

```
COUNT: 5
COUNT: 4
Results: -100 -10 10 100
```

**COUNT** indicates that before the **DELETE** method, there were **5** elements in the collection; after the **DELETE** method was invoked, the collection contains **4** elements.

### 8.11.3 EXISTS

The **EXISTS** method verifies that a subscript exists within a collection. **EXISTS** returns **TRUE** if the subscript exists; if the subscript does not exist, **EXISTS** returns **FALSE**. The method takes a single argument; the **subscript** that you are testing for. The syntax is:

```
<collection>.EXISTS(<subscript>)
```

**collection** is the name of the collection.

**subscript** is the value that you are testing for. If you specify a value of **NULL**, **EXISTS** returns **false**.

The following example verifies that subscript number **10** exists within the associative array:

```
DECLARE
  TYPE sparse_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  sparse_arr  sparse_arr_typ;
BEGIN
  sparse_arr(-100) := -100;
  sparse_arr(-10)  := -10;
  sparse_arr(0)    := 0;
  sparse_arr(10)   := 10;
  sparse_arr(100)  := 100;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The index exists: ' ||
    CASE WHEN sparse_arr.exists(10) = TRUE THEN 'true' ELSE 'false' END);
END;
```

```
The index exists: true
```

Some collection methods raise an exception if you call them with a subscript that does not exist within the specified collection. Rather than raising an error, the **EXISTS** method returns a value of **FALSE**.

### 8.11.4 EXTEND

The **EXTEND** method increases the size of a collection. There are three variations of the **EXTEND** method. The first variation appends a single **NULL** element to a collection; the syntax for the first variation is:

```
<collection>.EXTEND
```

`collection` is the name of a collection.

The following example demonstrates using the `EXTEND` method to append a single, null element to a collection:

```

DECLARE
    TYPE sparse_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
    sparse_arr    sparse_arr_typ := sparse_arr_typ(-100,-10,0,10,100);
    v_results     VARCHAR2(50);
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || sparse_arr.COUNT);
    sparse_arr.EXTEND;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || sparse_arr.COUNT);
    FOR i IN sparse_arr.FIRST .. sparse_arr.LAST LOOP
        IF sparse_arr(i) IS NULL THEN
            v_results := v_results || 'NULL ';
        ELSE
            v_results := v_results || sparse_arr(i) || ' ';
        END IF;
    END LOOP;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Results: ' || v_results);
END;

```

COUNT: 5  
COUNT: 6  
Results: -100 -10 0 10 100 NULL

`COUNT` indicates that before the `EXTEND` method, there were `5` elements in the collection; after the `EXTEND` method was invoked, the collection contains `6` elements.

The second variation of the `EXTEND` method appends a specified number of elements to the end of a collection.

```
<collection>.EXTEND(<count>)
```

`collection` is the name of a collection.

`count` is the number of null elements added to the end of the collection.

The following example demonstrates using the `EXTEND` method to append multiple null elements to a collection:

```

DECLARE
    TYPE sparse_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
    sparse_arr    sparse_arr_typ := sparse_arr_typ(-100,-10,0,10,100);
    v_results     VARCHAR2(50);
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || sparse_arr.COUNT);
    sparse_arr.EXTEND(3);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || sparse_arr.COUNT);
    FOR i IN sparse_arr.FIRST .. sparse_arr.LAST LOOP
        IF sparse_arr(i) IS NULL THEN
            v_results := v_results || 'NULL ';
        ELSE
            v_results := v_results || sparse_arr(i) || ' ';
        END IF;
    END LOOP;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Results: ' || v_results);
END;

```

```
COUNT: 5
COUNT: 8
Results: -100 -10 0 10 100 NULL NULL NULL
```

`COUNT` indicates that before the `EXTEND` method, there were `5` elements in the collection; after the `EXTEND` method was invoked, the collection contains `8` elements.

The third variation of the `EXTEND` method appends a specified number of copies of a particular element to the end of a collection.

```
<collection>.EXTEND(<count>, <index_number>)
```

`collection` is the name of a collection.

`count` is the number of elements added to the end of the collection.

`index_number` is the subscript of the element that is being copied to the collection.

The following example demonstrates using the `EXTEND` method to append multiple copies of the second element to the collection:

```
DECLARE
    TYPE sparse_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
    sparse_arr    sparse_arr_typ := sparse_arr_typ(-100,-10,0,10,100);
    v_results     VARCHAR2(50);
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || sparse_arr.COUNT);
    sparse_arr.EXTEND(3, 2);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || sparse_arr.COUNT);
    FOR i IN sparse_arr.FIRST .. sparse_arr.LAST LOOP
        IF sparse_arr(i) IS NULL THEN
            v_results := v_results || 'NULL ';
        ELSE
            v_results := v_results || sparse_arr(i) || ' ';
        END IF;
    END LOOP;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Results: ' || v_results);
END;
```

```
COUNT: 5
COUNT: 8
Results: -100 -10 0 10 100 -10 -10 -10
```

`COUNT` indicates that before the `EXTEND` method, there were `5` elements in the collection; after the `EXTEND` method was invoked, the collection contains `8` elements.

#### Note

The `EXTEND` method cannot be used on a null or empty collection.

## 8.11.5 FIRST

**FIRST** is a method that returns the subscript of the first element in a collection. The syntax for using **FIRST** is as follows:

```
<collection>.FIRST
```

**collection** is the name of a collection.

The following example displays the first element of the associative array.

```
DECLARE
  TYPE sparse_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  sparse_arr  sparse_arr_typ;
BEGIN
  sparse_arr(-100) := -100;
  sparse_arr(-10)  := -10;
  sparse_arr(0)    := 0;
  sparse_arr(10)   := 10;
  sparse_arr(100)  := 100;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('FIRST element: ' || sparse_arr(sparse_arr.FIRST));
END;
```

FIRST element: -100

## 8.11.6 LAST

**LAST** is a method that returns the subscript of the last element in a collection. The syntax for using **LAST** is as follows:

```
<collection>.LAST
```

**collection** is the name of a collection.

The following example displays the last element of the associative array.

```
DECLARE
  TYPE sparse_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  sparse_arr  sparse_arr_typ;
BEGIN
  sparse_arr(-100) := -100;
  sparse_arr(-10)  := -10;
  sparse_arr(0)    := 0;
  sparse_arr(10)   := 10;
  sparse_arr(100)  := 100;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('LAST element: ' || sparse_arr(sparse_arr.LAST));
END;
```

LAST element: 100

## 8.11.7 LIMIT

**LIMIT** is a method that returns the maximum number of elements permitted in a collection. **LIMIT** is applicable only to varrays. The syntax for using **LIMIT** is as follows:

```
<collection>.LIMIT
```

**collection** is the name of a collection.

For an initialized varray, **LIMIT** returns the maximum size limit determined by the varray type definition. If the varray is uninitialized (that is, it is a null varray), an exception is thrown.

For an associative array or an initialized nested table, **LIMIT** returns **NULL**. If the nested table is uninitialized (that is, it is a null nested table), an exception is thrown.

## 8.11.8 NEXT

**NEXT** is a method that returns the subscript that follows a specified subscript. The method takes a single argument; the **subscript** that you are testing for.

```
<collection>.NEXT(<subscript>)
```

**collection** is the name of the collection.

If the specified subscript is less than the first subscript in the collection, the function returns the first subscript. If the subscript does not have a successor, **NEXT** returns **NULL**. If you specify a **NULL** subscript, **PRIOR** does not return a value.

The following example demonstrates using **NEXT** to return the subscript that follows subscript **10** in the associative array, **sparse\_arr**:

```
DECLARE
  TYPE sparse_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  sparse_arr sparse_arr_typ;
BEGIN
  sparse_arr(-100) := -100;
  sparse_arr(-10) := -10;
  sparse_arr(0) := 0;
  sparse_arr(10) := 10;
  sparse_arr(100) := 100;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('NEXT element: ' || sparse_arr.next(10));
END;
```

NEXT element: 100

## 8.11.9 PRIOR

The **PRIOR** method returns the subscript that precedes a specified subscript in a collection. The method takes a single argument; the **subscript** that you are testing for. The syntax is:

```
<collection>.PRIOR(<subscript>)
```

**collection** is the name of the collection.

If the subscript specified does not have a predecessor, **PRIOR** returns **NULL**. If the specified subscript is greater than the last subscript in the collection, the method returns the last subscript. If you specify a **NULL** subscript, **PRIOR** does not return a value.

The following example returns the subscript that precedes subscript **100** in the associative array, **sparse\_arr**:

```
DECLARE
  TYPE sparse_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  sparse_arr  sparse_arr_typ;
BEGIN
  sparse_arr(-100) := -100;
  sparse_arr(-10)  := -10;
  sparse_arr(0)    := 0;
  sparse_arr(10)   := 10;
  sparse_arr(100)  := 100;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('PRIOR element: ' || sparse_arr.prior(100));
END;
```

```
PRIOR element: 10
```

## 8.11.10 TRIM

The **TRIM** method removes an element or elements from the end of a collection. The syntax for the **TRIM** method is:

```
<collection>.TRIM[(<count>)]
```

**collection** is the name of a collection.

**count** is the number of elements removed from the end of the collection. Advanced Server will return an error if **count** is less than **0** or greater than the number of elements in the collection.

The following example demonstrates using the **TRIM** method to remove an element from the end of a collection:

```
DECLARE
  TYPE sparse_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
  sparse_arr  sparse_arr_typ := sparse_arr_typ(-100,-10,0,10,100);
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || sparse_arr.COUNT);
  sparse_arr.TRIM;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || sparse_arr.COUNT);
END;
```

```
COUNT: 5
COUNT: 4
```

`COUNT` indicates that before the `TRIM` method, there were `5` elements in the collection; after the `TRIM` method was invoked, the collection contains `4` elements.

You can also specify the number of elements to remove from the end of the collection with the `TRIM` method:

```

DECLARE
    TYPE sparse_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
    sparse_arr    sparse_arr_typ := sparse_arr_typ(-100,-10,0,10,100);
    v_results     VARCHAR2(50);
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || sparse_arr.COUNT);
    sparse_arr.TRIM(2);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || sparse_arr.COUNT);
    FOR i IN sparse_arr.FIRST .. sparse_arr.LAST LOOP
        IF sparse_arr(i) IS NULL THEN
            v_results := v_results || 'NULL ';
        ELSE
            v_results := v_results || sparse_arr(i) || ' ';
        END IF;
    END LOOP;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Results: ' || v_results);
END;

```

COUNT: 5  
COUNT: 3  
Results: -100 -10 0

`COUNT` indicates that before the `TRIM` method, there were `5` elements in the collection; after the `TRIM` method was invoked, the collection contains `3` elements.

## 8.12 Working with Collections

Collection operators allow you to transform, query and manipulate the contents of a collection.

### 8.12.1 TABLE()

Use the `TABLE()` function to transform the members of an array into a set of rows. The signature is:

`TABLE(<collection_value>)`

Where:

`collection_value`

`collection_value` is an expression that evaluates to a value of collection type.

The `TABLE()` function expands the nested contents of a collection into a table format. You can use the `TABLE()`

function anywhere you use a regular table expression.

The `TABLE()` function returns a `SETOF ANYELEMENT` (a set of values of any type). For example, if the argument passed to this function is an array of dates, `TABLE()` will return a `SETOF dates`. If the argument passed to this function is an array of paths, `TABLE()` will return a `SETOF paths`.

You can use the `TABLE()` function to expand the contents of a collection into table form:

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM TABLE(monthly_balance(445.00, 980.20, 552.00));
```

```
monthly_balance
```

```
-----  
445.00  
980.20  
552.00  
(3 rows)
```

## 8.12.2 Using the MULTISET UNION Operator

The `MULTISET UNION` operator combines two collections to form a third collection. The signature is:

```
<coll_1> MULTISET UNION [ ALL | DISTINCT | UNIQUE ] <coll_2>
```

Where `coll_1` and `coll_2` specify the names of the collections to combine.

Include the `ALL` keyword to specify that duplicate elements (elements that are present in both `coll_1` and `coll_2`) should be represented in the result, once for each time they are present in the original collections. This is the default behavior of `MULTISET UNION`.

Include the `DISTINCT` or `UNIQUE` keyword to specify that duplicate elements should be included in the result only once. The `DISTINCT` and `UNIQUE` keywords are synonymous.

The following example demonstrates using the `MULTISET UNION` operator to combine two collections (`collection_1` and `collection_2`) into a third collection (`collection_3`):

```
DECLARE
  TYPE int_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER(2);
  collection_1  int_arr_typ;
  collection_2  int_arr_typ;
  collection_3  int_arr_typ;
  v_results    VARCHAR2(50);
BEGIN
  collection_1 := int_arr_typ(10,20,30);
  collection_2 := int_arr_typ(30,40);
  collection_3 := collection_1 MULTISET UNION ALL collection_2;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || collection_3.COUNT);
  FOR i IN collection_3.FIRST .. collection_3.LAST LOOP
    IF collection_3(i) IS NULL THEN
      v_results := v_results || 'NULL ';
    ELSE
      v_results := v_results || collection_3(i) || ' ';
    END IF;
  END LOOP;
END;
```

```

END LOOP;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Results: ' || v_results);
END;

```

COUNT: 5  
Results: 10 20 30 30 40

The resulting collection includes one entry for each element in `collection_1` and `collection_2`. If the `DISTINCT` keyword is used, the results are as follows:

```

DECLARE
  TYPE int_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER(2);
  collection_1  int_arr_typ;
  collection_2  int_arr_typ;
  collection_3  int_arr_typ;
  v_results    VARCHAR2(50);
BEGIN
  collection_1 := int_arr_typ(10,20,30);
  collection_2 := int_arr_typ(30,40);
  collection_3 := collection_1 MULTISET UNION DISTINCT collection_2;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || collection_3.COUNT);
  FOR i IN collection_3.FIRST .. collection_3.LAST LOOP
    IF collection_3(i) IS NULL THEN
      v_results := v_results || 'NULL ';
    ELSE
      v_results := v_results || collection_3(i) || '';
    END IF;
  END LOOP;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Results: ' || v_results);
END;

```

COUNT: 4  
Results: 10 20 30 40

The resulting collection includes only those members with distinct values. Note in the following example that the `MULTISET UNION DISTINCT` operator also removes duplicate entries that are stored within the same collection:

```

DECLARE
  TYPE int_arr_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER(2);
  collection_1  int_arr_typ;
  collection_2  int_arr_typ;
  collection_3  int_arr_typ;
  v_results    VARCHAR2(50);
BEGIN
  collection_1 := int_arr_typ(10,20,30,30);
  collection_2 := int_arr_typ(40,50);
  collection_3 := collection_1 MULTISET UNION DISTINCT collection_2;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('COUNT: ' || collection_3.COUNT);
  FOR i IN collection_3.FIRST .. collection_3.LAST LOOP
    IF collection_3(i) IS NULL THEN
      v_results := v_results || 'NULL ';
    ELSE
      v_results := v_results || collection_3(i) || '';
    END IF;
  END LOOP;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Results: ' || v_results);

```

```

END;

COUNT: 5
Results: 10 20 30 40 50

```

### 8.12.3 Using the FORALL Statement

Collections can be used to more efficiently process DML commands by passing all the values to be used for repetitive execution of a `DELETE`, `INSERT`, or `UPDATE` command in one pass to the database server rather than re-iteratively invoking the DML command with new values. The DML command to be processed in such a manner is specified with the `FORALL` statement. In addition, one or more collections are given in the DML command where different values are to be substituted each time the command is executed.

```

FORALL <index> IN <lower_bound> .. <upper_bound>
{ <insert_stmt> | <update_stmt> | <delete_stmt> };

```

`index` is the position in the collection given in the `insert_stmt`, `update_stmt`, or `delete_stmt` DML command that iterates from the integer value given as `lower_bound` up to and including `upper_bound`.

If an exception occurs during any iteration of the `FORALL` statement, all updates that occurred since the start of the execution of the `FORALL` statement are automatically rolled back. This behavior is not compatible with Oracle databases. Oracle allows explicit use of the `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` commands to control whether or not to commit or roll back updates that occurred prior to the exception.

The `FORALL` statement creates a loop – each iteration of the loop increments the `index` variable (you typically use the `index` within the loop to select a member of a collection). The number of iterations is controlled by the `lower_bound .. upper_bound` clause. The loop executes once for each integer between the `lower_bound` and `upper_bound` (inclusive) and the index is incremented by one for each iteration. For example:

```
| FORALL i IN 2 .. 5
```

Creates a loop that executes four times – in the first iteration, the `index (i)` is set to the value `2`; in the second iteration, the index is set to the value `3`, and so on. The loop executes for the value `5` and then terminates.

The following example creates a table (`emp_copy`) that is an empty copy of the `emp` table. The example declares a type (`emp_tbl`) that is an array where each element in the array is of composite type, composed of the column definitions used to create the table, `emp`. The example also creates an index on the `emp_tbl` type.

`t_emp` is an associative array, of type `emp_tbl`. The `SELECT` statement uses the `BULK COLLECT INTO` command to populate the `t_emp` array. After the `t_emp` array is populated, the `FORALL` statement iterates through the values (`i`) in the `t_emp` array index and inserts a row for each record into `emp_copy`.

```
CREATE TABLE emp_copy(LIKE emp);
```

```
DECLARE
```

```
    TYPE emp_tbl IS TABLE OF emp%ROWTYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

```
    t_emp emp_tbl;
```

```
BEGIN
```

```
    SELECT * FROM emp BULK COLLECT INTO t_emp;
```

```

FORALL i IN t_emp.FIRST .. t_emp.LAST
  INSERT INTO emp_copy VALUES t_emp(i);

END;

```

The following example uses a `FORALL` statement to update the salary of three employees:

```

DECLARE
  TYPE empno_tbl IS TABLE OF emp.empno%TYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  TYPE sal_tbl IS TABLE OF emp.ename%TYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  t_empno    EMPNO_TBL;
  t_sal      SAL_TBL;
BEGIN
  t_empno(1) := 9001;
  t_sal(1)   := 3350.00;
  t_empno(2) := 9002;
  t_sal(2)   := 2000.00;
  t_empno(3) := 9003;
  t_sal(3)   := 4100.00;
  FORALL i IN t_empno.FIRST..t_empno.LAST
    UPDATE emp SET sal = t_sal(i) WHERE empno = t_empno(i);
END;

```

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno > 9000;
```

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno
9001	JONES	ANALYST			3350.00		40
9002	LARSEN	CLERK			2000.00		40
9003	WILSON	MANAGER			4100.00		40

(3 rows)

The following example deletes three employees in a `FORALL` statement:

```

DECLARE
  TYPE empno_tbl IS TABLE OF emp.empno%TYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  t_empno    EMPNO_TBL;
BEGIN
  t_empno(1) := 9001;
  t_empno(2) := 9002;
  t_empno(3) := 9003;
  FORALL i IN t_empno.FIRST..t_empno.LAST
    DELETE FROM emp WHERE empno = t_empno(i);
END;

```

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno > 9000;
```

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno

(0 rows)

## 8.12.4 Using the BULK COLLECT Clause

SQL commands that return a result set consisting of a large number of rows may not be operating as efficiently as possible due to the constant context switching that must occur between the database server and the client in order to transfer the entire result set. This inefficiency can be mitigated by using a collection to gather the entire result set in memory which the client can then access. The **BULK COLLECT** clause is used to specify the aggregation of the result set into a collection.

The **BULK COLLECT** clause can be used with the **SELECT INTO**, **FETCH INTO** and **EXECUTE IMMEDIATE** commands, and with the **RETURNING INTO** clause of the **DELETE**, **INSERT**, and **UPDATE** commands. Each of these is illustrated in the following sections.

### 8.12.4.1 SELECT BULK COLLECT

The **BULK COLLECT** clause can be used with the **SELECT INTO** statement as follows. (Refer to [SELECT INTO](#) for additional information on the **SELECT INTO** statement.)

```
SELECT <select_expressions> BULK COLLECT INTO <collection>
[,...] FROM ...;
```

If a single collection is specified, then **collection** may be a collection of a single field, or it may be a collection of a record type. If more than one collection is specified, then each **collection** must consist of a single field. **select\_expressions** must match in number, order, and type-compatibility all fields in the target collections.

The following example shows the use of the **BULK COLLECT** clause where the target collections are associative arrays consisting of a single field.

```
DECLARE
  TYPE empno_tbl IS TABLE OF emp.empno%TYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  TYPE ename_tbl IS TABLE OF emp.ename%TYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  TYPE job_tbl IS TABLE OF emp.job%TYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  TYPE hiredate_tbl IS TABLE OF emp.hiredate%TYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  TYPE sal_tbl IS TABLE OF emp.sal%TYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  TYPE comm_tbl IS TABLE OF emp.comm%TYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  TYPE deptno_tbl IS TABLE OF emp.deptno%TYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  t_empno    EMPNO_TBL;
  t_ename    ENAME_TBL;
  t_job      JOB_TBL;
  t_hiredate HIREDATE_TBL;
  t_sal      SAL_TBL;
  t_comm     COMM_TBL;
  t_deptno   DEPTNO_TBL;
BEGIN
  SELECT empno, ename, job, hiredate, sal, comm, deptno BULK COLLECT
    INTO t_empno, t_ename, t_job, t_hiredate, t_sal, t_comm, t_deptno
    FROM emp;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME  JOB      HIREDATE  ' ||
    'SAL      ' || 'COMM      DEPTNO');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- ----- ----- ----- ' ||
    '----- ' || '----- -----');
  FOR i IN 1..t_empno.COUNT LOOP
```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(t_empno(i) || ' ' ||
    RPAD(t_ename(i),8) || '' ||
    RPAD(t_job(i),10) || '' ||
    TO_CHAR(t_hiredate(i),'DD-MON-YY') || '' ||
    TO_CHAR(t_sal(i),'99,999.99') || '' ||
    TO_CHAR(NVL(t_comm(i),0),'99,999.99') || ' ' ||
    t_deptno(i));
END LOOP;
END;

```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO
7369	SMITH	CLERK	17-DEC-80	800.00	.00	20
7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN	20-FEB-81	1,600.00	300.00	30
7521	WARD	SALESMAN	22-FEB-81	1,250.00	500.00	30
7566	JONES	MANAGER	02-APR-81	2,975.00	.00	20
7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	28-SEP-81	1,250.00	1,400.00	30
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	01-MAY-81	2,850.00	.00	30
7782	CLARK	MANAGER	09-JUN-81	2,450.00	.00	10
7788	SCOTT	ANALYST	19-APR-87	3,000.00	.00	20
7839	KING	PRESIDENT	17-NOV-81	5,000.00	.00	10
7844	TURNER	SALESMAN	08-SEP-81	1,500.00	.00	30
7876	ADAMS	CLERK	23-MAY-87	1,100.00	.00	20
7900	JAMES	CLERK	03-DEC-81	950.00	.00	30
7902	FORD	ANALYST	03-DEC-81	3,000.00	.00	20
7934	MILLER	CLERK	23-JAN-82	1,300.00	.00	10

The following example produces the same result, but uses an associative array on a record type defined with the `%ROWTYPE` attribute.

```

DECLARE
    TYPE emp_tbl IS TABLE OF emp%ROWTYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
    t_emp      EMP_TBL;
BEGIN
    SELECT * BULK COLLECT INTO t_emp FROM emp;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME   JOB      HIREDATE  ' ||
        'SAL      ' || 'COMM      DEPTNO');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- ----- ----- -----  ' ||
        '-----  ' || '----- -----');
    FOR i IN 1..t_emp.COUNT LOOP
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(t_emp(i).empno || ' ' ||
            RPAD(t_emp(i).ename,8) || '' ||
            RPAD(t_emp(i).job,10) || '' ||
            TO_CHAR(t_emp(i).hiredate,'DD-MON-YY') || '' ||
            TO_CHAR(t_emp(i).sal,'99,999.99') || '' ||
            TO_CHAR(NVL(t_emp(i).comm,0),'99,999.99') || ' ' ||
            t_emp(i).deptno);
    END LOOP;
END;

```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO
7369	SMITH	CLERK	17-DEC-80	800.00	.00	20
7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN	20-FEB-81	1,600.00	300.00	30
7521	WARD	SALESMAN	22-FEB-81	1,250.00	500.00	30
7566	JONES	MANAGER	02-APR-81	2,975.00	.00	20

7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	28-SEP-81	1,250.00	1,400.00	30
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	01-MAY-81	2,850.00	.00	30
7782	CLARK	MANAGER	09-JUN-81	2,450.00	.00	10
7788	SCOTT	ANALYST	19-APR-87	3,000.00	.00	20
7839	KING	PRESIDENT	17-NOV-81	5,000.00	.00	10
7844	TURNER	SALESMAN	08-SEP-81	1,500.00	.00	30
7876	ADAMS	CLERK	23-MAY-87	1,100.00	.00	20
7900	JAMES	CLERK	03-DEC-81	950.00	.00	30
7902	FORD	ANALYST	03-DEC-81	3,000.00	.00	20
7934	MILLER	CLERK	23-JAN-82	1,300.00	.00	10

## 8.12.4.2      FETCH BULK COLLECT

The **BULK COLLECT** clause can be used with a **FETCH** statement. (See [Fetching Rows From a Cursor](#) for information on the **FETCH** statement.) Instead of returning a single row at a time from the result set, the **FETCH BULK COLLECT** will return all rows at once from the result set into the specified collection unless restricted by the **LIMIT** clause.

```
FETCH <name> BULK COLLECT INTO <collection> [, ...] [ LIMIT <n> ];
```

If a single collection is specified, then **collection** may be a collection of a single field, or it may be a collection of a record type. If more than one collection is specified, then each **collection** must consist of a single field. The expressions in the **SELECT** list of the cursor identified by **name** must match in number, order, and type-compatibility all fields in the target collections. If **LIMIT n** is specified, the number of rows returned into the collection on each **FETCH** will not exceed **n**.

The following example uses the **FETCH BULK COLLECT** statement to retrieve rows into an associative array.

```
DECLARE
  TYPE emp_tbl IS TABLE OF emp%ROWTYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  t_emp      EMP_TBL;
  CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT * FROM emp;
BEGIN
  OPEN emp_cur;
  FETCH emp_cur BULK COLLECT INTO t_emp;
  CLOSE emp_cur;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME   JOB      HIREDATE  ' ||
    'SAL      ' || 'COMM      DEPTNO');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- ----- ----- -----  ' ||
    '-----  ' || '----- -----');
  FOR i IN 1..t_emp.COUNT LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(t_emp(i).empno || ' ' ||
      RPAD(t_emp(i).ename,8) || ' ' ||
      RPAD(t_emp(i).job,10) || ' ' ||
      TO_CHAR(t_emp(i).hiredate,'DD-MON-YY') || ' ' ||
      TO_CHAR(t_emp(i).sal,'99,999.99') || ' ' ||
      TO_CHAR(NVL(t_emp(i).comm,0),'99,999.99') || ' ' ||
      t_emp(i).deptno);
  END LOOP;
END;
```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO
7369	SMITH	CLERK	17-DEC-80	800.00	.00	20
7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN	20-FEB-81	1,600.00	300.00	30
7521	WARD	SALESMAN	22-FEB-81	1,250.00	500.00	30
7566	JONES	MANAGER	02-APR-81	2,975.00	.00	20
7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	28-SEP-81	1,250.00	1,400.00	30
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	01-MAY-81	2,850.00	.00	30
7782	CLARK	MANAGER	09-JUN-81	2,450.00	.00	10
7788	SCOTT	ANALYST	19-APR-87	3,000.00	.00	20
7839	KING	PRESIDENT	17-NOV-81	5,000.00	.00	10
7844	TURNER	SALESMAN	08-SEP-81	1,500.00	.00	30
7876	ADAMS	CLERK	23-MAY-87	1,100.00	.00	20
7900	JAMES	CLERK	03-DEC-81	950.00	.00	30
7902	FORD	ANALYST	03-DEC-81	3,000.00	.00	20
7934	MILLER	CLERK	23-JAN-82	1,300.00	.00	10

### 8.12.4.3 EXECUTE IMMEDIATE BULK COLLECT

The `BULK COLLECT` clause can be used with a `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` statement to specify a collection to receive the returned rows.

```
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE '<sql_expression>';  
  BULK COLLECT INTO <collection> [...]  
  [USING {[<bind_type>} <bind_argument>} [, ...]}];
```

`collection` specifies the name of a collection.

`bind_type` specifies the parameter mode of the `bind_argument`.

- A `bind_type` of `IN` specifies that the `bind_argument` contains a value that is passed to the `sql_expression`.
- A `bind_type` of `OUT` specifies that the `bind_argument` receives a value from the `sql_expression`.
- A `bind_type` of `IN OUT` specifies that the `bind_argument` is passed to `sql_expression`, and then stores the value returned by `sql_expression`.

`bind_argument` specifies a parameter that contains a value that is either passed to the `sql_expression` (specified with a `bind_type` of `IN`), or that receives a value from the `sql_expression` (specified with a `bind_type` of `OUT`), or both (specified with a `bind_type` of `IN OUT`).

If a single collection is specified, then `collection` may be a collection of a single field, or a collection of a record type; if more than one collection is specified, each `collection` must consist of a single field.

### 8.12.4.4 RETURNING BULK COLLECT

The `BULK COLLECT` clause can be added to the `RETURNING INTO` clause of a `DELETE`, `INSERT`, or `UPDATE` command. (See [Using the RETURNING INTO Clause](#) for information on the `RETURNING INTO` clause.)

```
{ <insert> | <update> | <delete> }
RETURNING { * | <expr_1> [, <expr_2> ] ...}
BULK COLLECT INTO <collection> [, ...];
```

`insert`, `update`, and `delete` are the `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` commands as described in `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE`, respectively. If a single collection is specified, then `collection` may be a collection of a single field, or it may be a collection of a record type. If more than one collection is specified, then each `collection` must consist of a single field. The expressions following the `RETURNING` keyword must match in number, order, and type-compatibility all fields in the target collections. If `*` is specified, then all columns in the affected table are returned. (Note that the use of `*` is an Advanced Server extension and is not compatible with Oracle databases.)

The `clerkemp` table created by copying the `emp` table is used in the remaining examples in this section as shown below.

```
CREATE TABLE clerkemp AS SELECT * FROM emp WHERE job = 'CLERK';
```

```
SELECT * FROM clerkemp;
```

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno
7369	SMITH	CLERK	7902	17-DEC-80 00:00:00	800.00		20
7876	ADAMS	CLERK	7788	23-MAY-87 00:00:00	1100.00		20
7900	JAMES	CLERK	7698	03-DEC-81 00:00:00	950.00		30
7934	MILLER	CLERK	7782	23-JAN-82 00:00:00	1300.00		10

(4 rows)

The following example increases everyone's salary by 1.5, stores the employees' numbers, names, and new salaries in three associative arrays, and finally, displays the contents of these arrays.

```
DECLARE
  TYPE empno_tbl IS TABLE OF emp.empno%TYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  TYPE ename_tbl IS TABLE OF emp.ename%TYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  TYPE sal_tbl IS TABLE OF emp.sal%TYPE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  t_empno    EMPNO_TBL;
  t_ename    ENAME_TBL;
  t_sal      SAL_TBL;
BEGIN
  UPDATE clerkemp SET sal = sal * 1.5 RETURNING empno, ename, sal
  BULK COLLECT INTO t_empno, t_ename, t_sal;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME    SAL      ');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- ----- -----');
  FOR i IN 1..t_empno.COUNT LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(t_empno(i) || ' ' || RPAD(t_ename(i),8) ||
      '' || TO_CHAR(t_sal(i),'99,999.99'));
  END LOOP;
END;
```

EMPNO	ENAME	SAL
7369	SMITH	1,200.00
7876	ADAMS	1,650.00
7900	JAMES	1,425.00
7934	MILLER	1,950.00

The following example performs the same functionality as the previous example, but uses a single collection defined with a record type to store the employees' numbers, names, and new salaries.

```

DECLARE
  TYPE emp_rec IS RECORD (
    empno    emp.empno%TYPE,
    ename    emp.ename%TYPE,
    sal      emp.sal%TYPE
  );
  TYPE emp_tbl IS TABLE OF emp_rec INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  t_emp     EMP_TBL;
BEGIN
  UPDATE clerkemp SET sal = sal * 1.5 RETURNING empno, ename, sal
  BULK COLLECT INTO t_emp;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME    SAL      ');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- ----- ----- ');
  FOR i IN 1..t_emp.COUNT LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(t_emp(i).empno || ' ' ||
      RPAD(t_emp(i).ename,8) || ' ' ||
      TO_CHAR(t_emp(i).sal,'99,999.99'));
  END LOOP;
END;

```

EMPNO	ENAME	SAL
7369	SMITH	1,200.00
7876	ADAMS	1,650.00
7900	JAMES	1,425.00
7934	MILLER	1,950.00

The following example deletes all rows from the `clerkemp` table, and returns information on the deleted rows into an associative array, which is then displayed.

```

DECLARE
  TYPE emp_rec IS RECORD (
    empno    emp.empno%TYPE,
    ename    emp.ename%TYPE,
    job      emp.job%TYPE,
    hiredate  emp.hiredate%TYPE,
    sal      emp.sal%TYPE,
    comm     emp.comm%TYPE,
    deptno   emp.deptno%TYPE
  );
  TYPE emp_tbl IS TABLE OF emp_rec INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  r_emp     EMP_TBL;
BEGIN
  DELETE FROM clerkemp RETURNING empno, ename, job, hiredate, sal,
  comm, deptno BULK COLLECT INTO r_emp;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME    JOB      HIREDATE  ' ||
    'SAL      ' || 'COMM    DEPTNO');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- ----- ----- -----  ' ||
    '----- ' || '----- ----- ');
  FOR i IN 1..r_emp.COUNT LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(r_emp(i).empno || ' ' ||
      RPAD(r_emp(i).ename,8) || ' ' ||
      RPAD(r_emp(i).job,10) || ' ' ||
      TO_CHAR(r_emp(i).hiredate,'DD-MON-YY') || ' ' ||
      TO_CHAR(r_emp(i).sal,'99,999.99') || ' ' ||
      TO_CHAR(NVL(r_emp(i).comm,0),'99,999.99') || ' ' ||

```

```

    r_emp(i).deptno);
END LOOP;
END;

```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO
7369	SMITH	CLERK	17-DEC-80	1,200.00	.00	20
7876	ADAMS	CLERK	23-MAY-87	1,650.00	.00	20
7900	JAMES	CLERK	03-DEC-81	1,425.00	.00	30
7934	MILLER	CLERK	23-JAN-82	1,950.00	.00	10

## 8.12.5 Errors and Messages

Use the `DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE` statement to report messages.

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ( <message> );
```

`message` is any expression evaluating to a string.

This example displays the message on the user's output display:

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('My name is John');
```

The special variables `SQLCODE` and `SQLERRM` contain a numeric code and a text message, respectively, that describe the outcome of the last SQL command issued. If any other error occurs in the program such as division by zero, these variables contain information pertaining to the error.

## 8.13 Triggers

This chapter describes Advanced Server triggers. As with procedures and functions, triggers are written in the SPL language.

### 8.13.1 Overview

A trigger is a named SPL code block that is associated with a table and stored in the database. When a specified event occurs on the associated table, the SPL code block is executed. The trigger is said to be *fired* when the code block is executed.

The event that causes a trigger to fire can be any combination of an insert, update, or deletion carried out on the table, either directly or indirectly. If the table is the object of a SQL `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `TRUNCATE` command the trigger is directly fired assuming that the corresponding insert, update, delete, or truncate event is defined as a *triggering event*. The events that fire the trigger are defined in the `CREATE TRIGGER` command.

A trigger can be fired indirectly if a triggering event occurs on the table as a result of an event initiated on another table. For example, if a trigger is defined on a table containing a foreign key defined with the `ON DELETE CASCADE` clause and a row in the parent table is deleted, all children of the parent would be deleted as well. If deletion is a triggering event on the child table, deletion of the children will cause the trigger to fire.

---

### 8.13.2 Types of Triggers

Advanced Server supports both *row-level* and *statement-level* triggers. A row-level trigger fires once for each row that is affected by a triggering event. For example, if deletion is defined as a triggering event on a table and a single `DELETE` command is issued that deletes five rows from the table, then the trigger will fire five times, once for each row.

In contrast, a statement-level trigger fires once per triggering statement regardless of the number of rows affected by the triggering event. In the prior example of a single `DELETE` command deleting five rows, a statement-level trigger would fire only once.

The sequence of actions can be defined regarding whether the trigger code block is executed before or after the triggering statement, itself, in the case of statement-level triggers; or before or after each row is affected by the triggering statement in the case of row-level triggers.

In a *before* row-level trigger, the trigger code block is executed before the triggering action is carried out on each affected row. In a *before* statement-level trigger, the trigger code block is executed before the action of the triggering statement is carried out.

In an *after* row-level trigger, the trigger code block is executed after the triggering action is carried out on each affected row. In an *after* statement-level trigger, the trigger code block is executed after the action of the triggering statement is carried out.

In a compound trigger, a statement-level and a row-level trigger can be defined in a single trigger and can be fired at more than one timing point see, [Compound Triggers](#) for information about compound triggers.

---

### 8.13.3 Creating Triggers

The `CREATE TRIGGER` command defines and names a trigger that will be stored in the database.

#### Name

`CREATE TRIGGER` -- define a simple trigger

#### Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TRIGGER <name>
{ BEFORE | AFTER | INSTEAD OF }
{ INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE }
[ OR { INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE } ] [, ...]
ON <table>
[ REFERENCING { OLD AS <old> | NEW AS <new> } ...]
[ FOR EACH ROW ]
[ WHEN <condition> ]
```

```
[ DECLARE
  [ PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION; ]
  <declaration>; [, ...]
BEGIN
  <statement>; [, ...]
[ EXCEPTION
{ WHEN <exception> [ OR <exception> ] [...] THEN
  <statement>; [, ...] } [, ...]
]
END
```

## Name

**CREATE TRIGGER** -- define a compound trigger

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TRIGGER <name>
FOR { INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE }
[ OR { INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE } ] [, ...]
  ON <table>
[ REFERENCING { OLD AS <old> | NEW AS <new. > } ...]
[ WHEN <condition> ]
COMPOUND TRIGGER
[ <private_declaration>; ] ...
[ <procedure_or_function_definition> ] ...
<compound_trigger_definition>
  END
```

Where **private\_declaration** is an identifier of a private variable that can be accessed by any procedure or function. There can be zero, one, or more private variables. **private\_declaration** can be any of the following:

- Variable Declaration
- Record Declaration
- Collection Declaration
- **REF CURSOR** and Cursor Variable Declaration
- **TYPE** Definitions for Records, Collections, and **REF CURSORS**
- Exception
- Object Variable Declaration

Where **procedure\_or\_function\_definition** :=

> **procedure\_definition** | **function\_definition**

Where **procedure\_definition** :=

```
PROCEDURE proc_name[ argument_list ]
[ options_list ]
{ IS | AS }
procedure_body
END [ proc_name ] ;
```

Where **procedure\_body** :=

```
[ declaration; ] [, ...]
BEGIN
  statement; [...]
[ EXCEPTION
```

```
{ WHEN exception [OR exception] [...] THEN statement; }
[...]
}
```

Where `function_definition` :=

```
FUNCTION func_name [ argument_list ]
RETURN retype [ DETERMINISTIC ]
[ options_list ]
{ IS | AS }
function_body
END [ func_name ] ;
```

Where `function_body` :=

```
[ declaration; ] [, ...]
BEGIN
statement; [...]
[ EXCEPTION
{ WHEN exception [ OR exception ] [...] THEN statement; }
[...]
]
```

Where `compound_trigger_definition` is:

```
{ compound_trigger_event } { IS | AS }
compound_trigger_body
END [ compound_trigger_event ] [ ... ]
```

Where `compound_trigger_event` :=

```
[ BEFORE STATEMENT | BEFORE EACH ROW | AFTER EACH ROW |
AFTER STATEMENT | INSTEAD OF EACH ROW ]
```

Where `compound_trigger_body` :=

```
[ declaration; ] [, ...]
BEGIN
statement; [...]
[ EXCEPTION
{ WHEN exception [OR exception] [...] THEN statement; }
[...]
]
```

## Description

`CREATE TRIGGER` defines a new trigger. `CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER` will either create a new trigger, or replace an existing definition.

If you are using the `CREATE TRIGGER` keywords to create a new trigger, the name of the new trigger must not match any existing trigger defined on the same table. New triggers will be created in the same schema as the table on which the triggering event is defined.

If you are updating the definition of an existing trigger, use the `CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER` keywords.

When you use syntax compatible with Oracle databases to create a trigger, the trigger runs as a `SECURITY DEFINER` function.

## Parameters

### name

The name of the trigger to create.

### BEFORE | AFTER

Determines whether the trigger is fired before or after the triggering event.

### INSTEAD OF

**INSTEAD OF** trigger modifies an updatable view; the trigger will execute to update the underlying table(s) appropriately. The **INSTEAD OF** trigger is executed for each row of the view that is updated or modified.

### INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE

Defines the triggering event.

### table

The name of the table or view on which the triggering event occurs.

### condition

**condition** is a Boolean expression that determines if the trigger will actually be executed; if **condition** evaluates to **TRUE**, the trigger will fire.

If the simple trigger definition includes the **FOR EACH ROW** keywords, the **WHEN** clause can refer to columns of the old and/or new row values by writing **OLD.column\_name** or **NEW.column\_name** respectively. **INSERT** triggers cannot refer to **OLD** and **DELETE** triggers cannot refer to **NEW**.

If the compound trigger definition includes a statement-level trigger having a **WHEN** clause, then the trigger is executed without evaluating the expression in the **WHEN** clause. Similarly, if a compound trigger definition includes a row-level trigger having a **WHEN** clause, then the trigger is executed if the expression evaluates to **TRUE**.

If the trigger includes the **INSTEAD OF** keywords, it may not include a **WHEN** clause. A **WHEN** clause cannot contain subqueries.

### REFERENCING { OLD AS old | NEW AS new } ...

**REFERENCING** clause to reference old rows and new rows, but restricted in that **old** may only be replaced by an identifier named **old** or any equivalent that is saved in all lowercase (for example, **REFERENCING OLD AS old**, **REFERENCING OLD AS OLD**, or **REFERENCING OLD AS "old"**). Also, **new** may only be replaced by an identifier named **new** or any equivalent that is saved in all lowercase (for example, **REFERENCING NEW AS new**, **REFERENCING NEW AS NEW**, or **REFERENCING NEW AS "new"**).

Either one, or both phrases **OLD AS old** and **NEW AS new** may be specified in the **REFERENCING** clause (for example, **REFERENCING NEW AS New OLD AS Old**). This clause is not compatible with Oracle databases in that identifiers other than **old** or **new** may not be used.

### FOR EACH ROW

Determines whether the trigger should be fired once for every row affected by the triggering event, or just once per SQL statement. If specified, the trigger is fired once for every affected row (row-level trigger), otherwise the trigger is a statement-level trigger.

### PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION

**PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION** is the directive that sets the trigger as an autonomous transaction.

## declaration

A variable, type, `REF CURSOR`, or subprogram declaration. If subprogram declarations are included, they must be declared after all other variable, type, and `REF CURSOR` declarations.

## statement

An SPL program statement. Note that a `DECLARE - BEGIN - END` block is considered an SPL statement unto itself. Thus, the trigger body may contain nested blocks.

## exception

An exception condition name such as `NO_DATA_FOUND, OTHERS`, etc.

### 8.13.4 Trigger Variables

In the trigger code block, several special variables are available for use.

#### NEW

`NEW` is a pseudo-record name that refers to the new table row for insert and update operations in row-level triggers. This variable is not applicable in statement-level triggers and in delete operations of row-level triggers.

Its usage is: `:NEW.column` where `column` is the name of a column in the table on which the trigger is defined.

The initial content of `:NEW.column` is the value in the named column of the new row to be inserted or of the new row that is to replace the old one when used in a before row-level trigger. When used in an after row-level trigger, this value has already been stored in the table since the action has already occurred on the affected row.

In the trigger code block, `:NEW.column` can be used like any other variable. If a value is assigned to `:NEW.column`, in the code block of a before row-level trigger, the assigned value will be used in the new inserted or updated row.

#### OLD

`OLD` is a pseudo-record name that refers to the old table row for update and delete operations in row-level triggers. This variable is not applicable in statement-level triggers and in insert operations of row-level triggers.

Its usage is: `:OLD.column` where `column` is the name of a column in the table on which the trigger is defined.

The initial content of `:OLD.column` is the value in the named column of the row to be deleted or of the old row that is to be replaced by the new one when used in a before row-level trigger. When used in an after row-level trigger, this value is no longer stored in the table since the action has already occurred on the affected row.

In the trigger code block, `:OLD.column` can be used like any other variable. Assigning a value to `:OLD.column`, has no effect on the action of the trigger.

#### INSERTING

`INSERTING` is a conditional expression that returns `TRUE` if an insert operation fired the trigger, otherwise it returns `FALSE`.

## UPDATING

**UPDATING** is a conditional expression that returns **TRUE** if an update operation fired the trigger, otherwise it returns **FALSE**.

## DELETING

**DELETING** is a conditional expression that returns **TRUE** if a delete operation fired the trigger, otherwise it returns **FALSE**.

### 8.13.5 Transactions and Exceptions

A trigger is always executed as part of the same transaction within which the triggering statement is executing. When no exceptions occur within the trigger code block, the effects of any triggering commands within the trigger are committed if and only if the transaction containing the triggering statement is committed. Therefore, if the transaction is rolled back, the effects of any triggering commands within the trigger are also rolled back.

If an exception does occur within the trigger code block, but it is caught and handled in an exception section, the effects of any triggering commands within the trigger are still rolled back nonetheless. The triggering statement itself, however, is not rolled back unless the application forces a roll back of the encapsulating transaction.

If an unhandled exception occurs within the trigger code block, the transaction that encapsulates the trigger is aborted and rolled back. Therefore, the effects of any triggering commands within the trigger and the triggering statement, itself are all rolled back.

### 8.13.6 Compound Triggers

Advanced Server has added compatible syntax to support compound triggers. A compound trigger combines all the triggering timings under one trigger body that can be invoked at one or more *timing points*. A timing point is a point in time related to a triggering statement (an **INSERT**, **UPDATE**, **DELETE** or **TRUNCATE** statement that modifies data). The supported timing points are:

- **BEFORE STATEMENT**: Before the triggering statement executes.
- **BEFORE EACH ROW**: Before each row that the triggering statement affects.
- **AFTER EACH ROW**: After each row that the triggering statement affects.
- **AFTER STATEMENT**: After the triggering statement executes.
- **INSTEAD OF EACH ROW**: Trigger fires once for every row affected by the triggering statement.

A compound trigger may include any combination of timing points defined in a single trigger.

The optional declaration section in a compound trigger allows you to declare trigger-level variables and subprograms. The content of the declaration is accessible to all timing points referenced by the trigger definition. The variables and subprograms created by the declaration persist only for the duration of the triggering statement.

A compound trigger contains a declaration, followed by a PL block for each timing point:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER compound_trigger_name
FOR INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON table_name
COMPOUND TRIGGER
```

```
-- Global Declaration Section (optional)
-- Variables declared here can be used inside any timing-point blocks.
```

```
BEFORE STATEMENT IS
BEGIN
    NULL;
END BEFORE STATEMENT;
```

```
BEFORE EACH ROW IS
BEGIN
    NULL;
END BEFORE EACH ROW;
```

```
AFTER EACH ROW IS
BEGIN
    NULL;
END AFTER EACH ROW;
```

```
AFTER STATEMENT IS
BEGIN
    NULL;
END AFTER STATEMENT;
END compound_trigger_name;
/
Trigger created.
```

#### Note

It is not mandatory to have all the four timing blocks; you can create a compound trigger for any of the required timing-points.

A Compound Trigger has the following restrictions:

- A compound trigger body is comprised of a compound trigger block.
- A compound trigger can be defined on a table or a view.
- Exceptions are non-transferable to other timing-point section and must be handled separately in that section only by each compound trigger block.
- If a **GOTO** statement is specified in a timing-point section, then the target of the **GOTO** statement must also be specified in the same timing-point section.
- **:OLD** and **:NEW** variable identifiers cannot exist in the declarative section, the **BEFORE STATEMENT** section, or the **AFTER STATEMENT** section.
- **:NEW** values can only be modified by the **BEFORE EACH ROW** block.
- The sequence of compound trigger timing-point execution is specific, but if a simple trigger exists within the same timing-point then the simple trigger is fired first, followed by the firing of compound triggers.

---

## 8.13.7 Trigger Examples

The following sections illustrate an example of each type of trigger.

## 8.13.7.1 Before Statement-Level Trigger

The following is an example of a simple before statement-level trigger that displays a message prior to an insert operation on the `emp` table.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER emp_alert_trig
  BEFORE INSERT ON emp
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('New employees are about to be added');
END;
```

The following `INSERT` is constructed so that several new rows are inserted upon a single execution of the command. For each row that has an employee id between 7900 and 7999, a new row is inserted with an employee id incremented by 1000. The following are the results of executing the command when three new rows are inserted.

```
INSERT INTO emp (empno, ename, deptno) SELECT empno + 1000, ename, 40
  FROM emp WHERE empno BETWEEN 7900 AND 7999;
New employees are about to be added
```

```
SELECT empno, ename, deptno FROM emp WHERE empno BETWEEN 8900 AND 8999;
```

EMPNO	ENAME	DEPTNO
8900	JAMES	40
8902	FORD	40
8934	MILLER	40

The message, `New employees are about to be added`, is displayed once by the firing of the trigger even though the result is the addition of three new rows.

---

## 8.13.7.2 After Statement-Level Trigger

The following is an example of an after statement-level trigger. Whenever an insert, update, or delete operation occurs on the `emp` table, a row is added to the `empauditlog` table recording the date, user, and action.

```
CREATE TABLE empauditlog (
  audit_date DATE,
  audit_user VARCHAR2(20),
  audit_desc VARCHAR2(20)
);
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER emp_audit_trig
  AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp
DECLARE
  v_action VARCHAR2(20);
BEGIN
  IF INSERTING THEN
    v_action := 'Added employee(s)';
  ELSIF UPDATING THEN
    v_action := 'Updated employee(s)';
  END IF;
  INSERT INTO empauditlog (audit_date, audit_user, audit_desc)
  VALUES (SYSDATE, 'SYSTEM', v_action);
END;
```

```

ELSIF DELETING THEN
    v_action := 'Deleted employee(s)';
END IF;
INSERT INTO empauditlog VALUES (SYSDATE, USER,
    v_action);
END;

```

In the following sequence of commands, two rows are inserted into the `emp` table using two `INSERT` commands. The `sal` and `comm` columns of both rows are updated with one `UPDATE` command. Finally, both rows are deleted with one `DELETE` command.

```
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (9001,'SMITH','ANALYST',7782,SYSDATE,NULL,NULL,10);
```

```
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (9002,'JONES','CLERK',7782,SYSDATE,NULL,NULL,10);
```

```
UPDATE emp SET sal = 4000.00, comm = 1200.00 WHERE empno IN (9001, 9002);
```

```
DELETE FROM emp WHERE empno IN (9001, 9002);
```

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(AUDIT_DATE,'DD-MON-YY HH24:MI:SS') AS "AUDIT DATE",
    audit_user, audit_desc FROM empauditlog ORDER BY 1 ASC;
```

AUDIT DATE	AUDIT_USER	AUDIT_DESC
31-MAR-05 14:59:48	SYSTEM	Added employee(s)
31-MAR-05 15:00:07	SYSTEM	Added employee(s)
31-MAR-05 15:00:19	SYSTEM	Updated employee(s)
31-MAR-05 15:00:34	SYSTEM	Deleted employee(s)

The contents of the `empauditlog` table show how many times the trigger was fired - once each for the two inserts, once for the update (even though two rows were changed) and once for the deletion (even though two rows were deleted).

### 8.13.7.3 Before Row-Level Trigger

The following example is a before row-level trigger that calculates the commission of every new employee belonging to department 30 that is inserted into the `emp` table.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER emp_comm_trig
    BEFORE INSERT ON emp
    FOR EACH ROW
BEGIN
    IF :NEW.deptno = 30 THEN
        :NEW.comm := :NEW.sal * .4;
    END IF;
END;

```

The listing following the addition of the two employees shows that the trigger computed their commissions and inserted it as part of the new employee rows.

```
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
```

```
(9005,'ROBERS','SALESMAN',7782,SYSDATE,3000.00,NULL,30);
```

```
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(9006,'ALLEN','SALESMAN',7782,SYSDATE,4500.00,NULL,30);
```

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno IN (9005, 9006);
```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	MGR	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO
9005	ROBERS	SALESMAN	7782	01-APR-05	3000	1200	30
9006	ALLEN	SALESMAN	7782	01-APR-05	4500	1800	30

### 8.13.7.4 After Row-Level Trigger

The following example is an after row-level trigger. When a new employee row is inserted, the trigger adds a new row to the `jobhist` table for that employee. When an existing employee is updated, the trigger sets the `enddate` column of the latest `jobhist` row (assumed to be the one with a null `enddate`) to the current date and inserts a new `jobhist` row with the employee's new information.

Finally, trigger adds a row to the `empchglog` table with a description of the action.

```
CREATE TABLE empchglog (
    chg_date      DATE,
    chg_desc      VARCHAR2(30)
);
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER emp_chg_trig
    AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp
    FOR EACH ROW
DECLARE
    v_empno      emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_deptno     emp.deptno%TYPE;
    v_dname       dept.dname%TYPE;
    v_action      VARCHAR2(7);
    v_chgdesc    jobhist.chgdesc%TYPE;
BEGIN
    IF INSERTING THEN
        v_action := 'Added';
        v_empno := :NEW.empno;
        v_deptno := :NEW.deptno;
        INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (:NEW.empno, SYSDATE, NULL,
                                     :NEW.job, :NEW.sal, :NEW.comm, :NEW.deptno, 'New Hire');
    ELSIF UPDATING THEN
        v_action := 'Updated';
        v_empno := :NEW.empno;
        v_deptno := :NEW.deptno;
        v_chgdesc := "";
        IF NVL(:OLD.ename, '-null-') != NVL(:NEW.ename, '-null-') THEN
            v_chgdesc := v_chgdesc || 'name, ';
        END IF;
        IF NVL(:OLD.job, '-null-') != NVL(:NEW.job, '-null-') THEN
            v_chgdesc := v_chgdesc || 'job, ';
```

```

END IF;
IF NVL(:OLD.sal, -1) != NVL(:NEW.sal, -1) THEN
    v_chgdesc := v_chgdesc || 'salary, ';
END IF;
IF NVL(:OLD.comm, -1) != NVL(:NEW.comm, -1) THEN
    v_chgdesc := v_chgdesc || 'commission, ';
END IF;
IF NVL(:OLD.deptno, -1) != NVL(:NEW.deptno, -1) THEN
    v_chgdesc := v_chgdesc || 'department, ';
END IF;
v_chgdesc := 'Changed ' || RTRIM(v_chgdesc, ', ');
UPDATE jobhist SET enddate = SYSDATE WHERE empno = :OLD.empno
    AND enddate IS NULL;
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (:NEW.empno, SYSDATE, NULL,
    :NEW.job, :NEW.sal, :NEW.comm, :NEW.deptno, v_chgdesc);
ELSIF DELETING THEN
    v_action := 'Deleted';
    v_empno := :OLD.empno;
    v_deptno := :OLD.deptno;
END IF;

INSERT INTO empchglog VALUES (SYSDATE,
    v_action || ' employee #' || v_empno);
END;

```

In the first sequence of commands shown below, two employees are added using two separate `INSERT` commands and then both are updated using a single `UPDATE` command. The contents of the `jobhist` table shows the action of the trigger for each affected row - two new hire entries for the two new employees and two changed commission records for the updated commissions on the two employees. The `empchglog` table also shows the trigger was fired a total of four times, once for each action on the two rows.

```
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (9003,'PETERS','ANALYST',7782,SYSDATE,5000.00,NULL,40);
```

```
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (9004,'AIKENS','ANALYST',7782,SYSDATE,4500.00,NULL,40);
```

```
UPDATE emp SET comm = sal * 1.1 WHERE empno IN (9003, 9004);
```

```
SELECT * FROM jobhist WHERE empno IN (9003, 9004);
```

EMPNO	STARTDATE	ENDDATE	JOB	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO	CHGDESC
9003	31-MAR-05	31-MAR-05	ANALYST	5000		40	New
	Hire						
9004	31-MAR-05	31-MAR-05	ANALYST	4500		40	New
	Hire						
9003	31-MAR-05		ANALYST	5000	5500	40	
	Changed commission						
9004	31-MAR-05		ANALYST	4500	4950	40	
	Changed commission						

```
SELECT * FROM empchglog;
```

CHG_DATE	CHG_DESC
31-MAR-05	Added employee # 9003

```
31-MAR-05 Added employee # 9004
31-MAR-05 Updated employee # 9003
31-MAR-05 Updated employee # 9004
```

Finally, both employees are deleted with a single `DELETE` command. The `empchglog` table now shows the trigger was fired twice, once for each deleted employee.

```
DELETE FROM emp WHERE empno IN (9003, 9004);
```

```
SELECT * FROM empchglog;
```

```
CHG_DATE CHG_DESC
```

---

```
31-MAR-05 Added employee # 9003
31-MAR-05 Added employee # 9004
31-MAR-05 Updated employee # 9003
31-MAR-05 Updated employee # 9004
31-MAR-05 Deleted employee # 9003
31-MAR-05 Deleted employee # 9004
```

### 8.13.7.5 INSTEAD OF Trigger

The following example shows an `INSTEAD OF` trigger for inserting new employee row into the `emp_vw` view. The `CREATE VIEW` statement creates the `emp_vw` view by joining the two tables. The trigger adds the corresponding new rows into the `emp` and `dept` table respectively for a specific employee.

```
CREATE VIEW emp_vw AS SELECT * FROM emp e JOIN dept d USING(deptno);
CREATE VIEW
```

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER empvw_instead_of_trig
  INSTEAD OF INSERT ON emp_vw
  FOR EACH ROW
DECLARE
  v_empno    emp.empno%TYPE;
  v_ename    emp.ename%TYPE;
  v_deptno   emp.deptno%TYPE;
  v_dname    dept.dname%TYPE;
  v_loc      dept.loc%TYPE;
  v_action   VARCHAR2(7);
BEGIN
  v_empno := :NEW.empno;
  v_ename := :New.ename;
  v_deptno := :NEW.deptno;
  v_dname := :NEW.dname;
  v_loc := :NEW.loc;
  INSERT INTO emp(empno, ename, deptno) VALUES(v_empno, v_ename,
v_deptno);
  INSERT INTO dept(deptno, dname, loc) VALUES(v_deptno, v_dname, v_loc);
END;
CREATE TRIGGER
```

Now, insert the values into the `emp_vw` view. The insert action inserts a new row and produces the following output:

```
INSERT INTO emp_vw (empno, ename, deptno, dname, loc ) VALUES(1234,
'ASHTON', 50, 'IT', 'NEW JERSEY');
INSERT 0 1
```

```
SELECT empno, ename, deptno FROM emp WHERE deptno = 50;
empno | ename | deptno
-----+-----+
 1234 | ASHTON |    50
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT * FROM dept WHERE deptno = 50;
deptno | dname |   loc
-----+-----+
 50 | IT   | NEW JERSEY
(1 row)
```

Similarly, if you specify `UPDATE` or `DELETE` statement, the trigger will perform the appropriate actions for `UPDATE` or `DELETE` events.

### 8.13.7.6 Compound Triggers

The following example of a compound trigger records a change to the employee salary by defining a compound trigger (named `hr_trigger`) on the `emp` table.

First, create a table named `emp`.

```
CREATE TABLE emp(EMPNO INT, ENAME TEXT, SAL INT, DEPTNO INT);
CREATE TABLE
```

Then, create a compound trigger named `hr_trigger`. The trigger utilizes each of the four timing-points to modify the salary with an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` statement. In the global declaration section, the initial salary is declared as `10,000`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER hr_trigger
FOR INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp
  COMPOUND TRIGGER
    -- Global declaration.
    var_sal NUMBER := 10000;

    BEFORE STATEMENT IS
    BEGIN
      var_sal := var_sal + 1000;
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Before Statement: ' || var_sal);
    END BEFORE STATEMENT;

    BEFORE EACH ROW IS
    BEGIN
      var_sal := var_sal + 1000;
```

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Before Each Row: ' || var_sal);
END BEFORE EACH ROW;
```

```
AFTER EACH ROW IS
BEGIN
  var_sal := var_sal + 1000;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After Each Row: ' || var_sal);
END AFTER EACH ROW;
```

```
AFTER STATEMENT IS
BEGIN
  var_sal := var_sal + 1000;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After Statement: ' || var_sal);
END AFTER STATEMENT;
```

```
END hr_trigger;
```

Output: Trigger created.

**INSERT** the record into table `emp`.

```
INSERT INTO emp (EMPNO, ENAME, SAL, DEPTNO) VALUES(1111,'SMITH', 10000, 20);
```

The **INSERT** statement produces the following output:

```
Before Statement: 11000
Before each row: 12000
After each row: 13000
After statement: 14000
INSERT 0 1
```

The **UPDATE** statement will update the employee salary record, setting the salary to `15000` for a specific employee number.

```
UPDATE emp SET SAL = 15000 where EMPNO = 1111;
```

The **UPDATE** statement produces the following output:

```
Before Statement: 11000
Before each row: 12000
After each row: 13000
After statement: 14000
UPDATE 1
```

```
SELECT * FROM emp;
EMPNO | ENAME | SAL | DEPTNO
-----+-----+-----+
 1111 | SMITH | 15000 |    20
(1 row)
```

The **DELETE** statement deletes the employee salary record.

```
DELETE from emp where EMPNO = 1111;
```

The **DELETE** statement produces the following output:

```
Before Statement: 11000
Before each row: 12000
After each row: 13000
After statement: 14000
DELETE 1
```

```
SELECT * FROM emp;
EMPNO | ENAME | SAL | DEPTNO
-----+-----+
(0 rows)
```

The `TRUNCATE` statement removes all the records from the `emp` table.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER hr_trigger
FOR TRUNCATE ON emp
  COMPOUND TRIGGER
    -- Global declaration.
    var_sal NUMBER := 10000;
    BEFORE STATEMENT IS
      BEGIN
        var_sal := var_sal + 1000;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Before Statement: ' || var_sal);
      END BEFORE STATEMENT;

    AFTER STATEMENT IS
      BEGIN
        var_sal := var_sal + 1000;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After Statement: ' || var_sal);
      END AFTER STATEMENT;

    END hr_trigger;
```

Output: Trigger created.

The `TRUNCATE` statement produces the following output:

```
TRUNCATE emp;
Before Statement: 11000
After statement: 12000
TRUNCATE TABLE
```

#### Note

The `TRUNCATE` statement may be used only at a `BEFORE STATEMENT` or `AFTER STATEMENT` timing-point.

The following example creates a compound trigger named `hr_trigger` on the `emp` table with a `WHEN` condition that checks and prints employee salary whenever a `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` statement affects the `emp` table. The database evaluates the `WHEN` condition for a row-level trigger, and the trigger is executed once per row if the `WHEN` condition evaluates to `TRUE`. The statement-level trigger is executed irrespective of the `WHEN` condition.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER hr_trigger
  FOR INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp
  REFERENCING NEW AS new OLD AS old
  WHEN (old.sal > 5000 OR new.sal < 8000)
  COMPOUND TRIGGER
```

```

BEFORE STATEMENT IS
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Before Statement');
END BEFORE STATEMENT;

BEFORE EACH ROW IS
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Before Each Row: ' || :OLD.sal || ' ' || :NEW.sal);
END BEFORE EACH ROW;

AFTER EACH ROW IS
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After Each Row: ' || :OLD.sal || ' ' || :NEW.sal);
END AFTER EACH ROW;

AFTER STATEMENT IS
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After Statement');
END AFTER STATEMENT;

END hr_trigger;

```

Insert the record into table `emp`.

```
INSERT INTO emp(EMPNO, ENAME, SAL, DEPTNO) VALUES(1111, 'SMITH', 1600, 20);
```

The `INSERT` statement produces the following output:

```

Before Statement
Before Each Row: 1600
After Each Row: 1600
After Statement
INSERT 0 1

```

The `UPDATE` statement will update the employee salary record, setting the salary to `7500`.

```
UPDATE emp SET SAL = 7500 where EMPNO = 1111;
```

The `UPDATE` statement produces the following output:

```

Before Statement
Before Each Row: 1600 7500
After Each Row: 1600 7500
After Statement
UPDATE 1

```

```

SELECT * from emp;
empno | ename | sal | deptno
-----+-----+-----+
1111 | SMITH | 7500 |    20
(1 row)

```

The `DELETE` statement deletes the employee salary record.

```
DELETE from emp where EMPNO = 1111;
```

The **DELETE** statement produces the following output:

```
Before Statement
Before Each Row: 7500
After Each Row: 7500
After Statement
DELETE 1
```

```
SELECT * from emp;
empno | ename | sal | deptno
-----+-----+-----+
(0 rows)
```

## 8.14 Packages

Advanced Server provides a collection of packages that provide compatibility with Oracle packages.

A *package* is a named collection of functions, procedures, variables, cursors, user-defined record types, and records that are referenced using a common qualifier – the package identifier. Packages have the following characteristics:

- Packages provide a convenient means of organizing the functions and procedures that perform a related purpose. Permission to use the package functions and procedures is dependent upon one privilege granted to the entire package. All of the package programs must be referenced with a common name.
- Certain functions, procedures, variables, types, etc. in the package can be declared as *public*. Public entities are visible and can be referenced by other programs that are given **EXECUTE** privilege on the package. For public functions and procedures, only their signatures are visible - the program names, parameters if any, and return types of functions. The SPL code of these functions and procedures is not accessible to others, therefore applications that utilize a package are dependent only upon the information available in the signature – not in the procedural logic itself.
- Other functions, procedures, variables, types, etc. in the package can be declared as *private*. Private entities can be referenced and used by function and procedures within the package, but not by other external applications. Private entities are for use only by programs within the package.
- Function and procedure names can be overloaded within a package. One or more functions/procedures can be defined with the same name, but with different signatures. This provides the capability to create identically named programs that perform the same job, but on different types of input.

For more information about the package support provided by Advanced Server, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Built-in Package Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

For a list of built-in packages, see the Table of Contents, of "Built-In Packages" of the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Built-in Package Guide*.

## 8.15 Object Types and Objects

This chapter discusses how object-oriented programming techniques can be exploited in SPL. Object-oriented programming as seen in programming languages such as Java and C++ centers on the concept of objects. An

*object* is a representation of a real-world entity such as a person, place, or thing. The generic description or definition of a particular object such as a person for example, is called an *object type*. Specific people such as "Joe" or "Sally" are said to be *objects of object type*, person, or equivalently, *instances* of the object type, person, or simply, person objects.

#### Note

The terms "database objects" and "objects" that have been used in this document up to this point should not be confused with an object type and object as used in this chapter. The previous usage of these terms relates to the entities that can be created in a database such as tables, views, indexes, users, etc. Within the context of this chapter, object type and object refer to specific data structures supported by the SPL programming language to implement object-oriented concepts.

#### Note

In Oracle, the term *abstract data type* (ADT) is used to describe object types in PL/SQL. The SPL implementation of object types is intended to be compatible with Oracle abstract data types.

#### Note

Advanced Server has not yet implemented support for some features of object-oriented programming languages. This chapter documents only those features that have been implemented.

---

### 8.15.1 Basic Object Concepts

An object type is a description or definition of some entity. This definition of an object type is characterized by two components:

- *Attributes* – fields that describe particular characteristics of an object instance. For a person object, examples might be name, address, gender, date of birth, height, weight, eye color, occupation, etc.
- *Methods* – programs that perform some type of function or operation on, or related to an object. For a person object, examples might be calculating the person's age, displaying the person's attributes, changing the values assigned to the person's attributes, etc.

The following sections elaborate on some basic object concepts.

---

#### 8.15.1.1 Attributes

Every object type must contain at least one attribute. The data type of an attribute can be any of the following:

- A base data type such as `NUMBER`, `VARCHAR2`, etc.
- Another object type
- A globally defined collection type (created by the `CREATE TYPE` command) such as a nested table or varray

An attribute gets its initial value (which may be null) when an object instance is initially created. Each object instance has its own set of attribute values.

---

## 8.15.1.2 Methods

Methods are SPL procedures or functions defined within an object type. Methods can be categorized into three general types:

- *Member Methods* – procedures or functions that operate within the context of an object instance. Member methods have access to, and can change the attributes of the object instance on which they are operating.
  - *Static Methods* – procedures or functions that operate independently of any particular object instance. Static methods do not have access to, and cannot change the attributes of an object instance.
  - *Constructor Methods* – functions used to create an instance of an object type. A default constructor method is always provided when an object type is defined.
- 

## 8.15.1.3 Overloading Methods

In an object type it is permissible to define two or more identically named methods of the same type (this is, either a procedure or function), but with different signatures. Such methods are referred to as *overloaded* methods.

A method's signature consists of the number of formal parameters, the data types of its formal parameters, and their order.

---

## 8.15.2 Object Type Components

Object types are created and stored in the database by using the following two constructs of the SPL language:

- The *object type specification* - This is the public interface specifying the attributes and method signatures of the object type.
- The *object type body* - This contains the implementation of the methods specified in the object type specification.

The following sections describe the commands used to create the object type specification and the object type body.

---

## 8.15.2.1 Object Type Specification Syntax

The following is the syntax of the object type specification:

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TYPE <name>
[ AUTHID { DEFINER | CURRENT_USER } ]
{ IS | AS } OBJECT
( { <attribute> { <datatype> | <objtype> | <collecttype> } }
[, ...]
```

```
[ <method_spec> ] [, ...]
[ <constructor> ] [, ...]
) [ [ NOT ] { FINAL | INSTANTIABLE } ] ...;
```

where `method_spec` is the following:

```
[ [ NOT ] { FINAL | INSTANTIABLE } ] ...
[ OVERRIDING ]
<subprogram_spec>
```

where `subprogram_spec` is the following:

```
{ MEMBER | STATIC }
{ PROCEDURE <proc_name>
  [ ( [ SELF [ IN | IN OUT ] <name> ]
    [, <parm1> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <datatype1>
      [ DEFAULT <value1> ] ]
    [, <parm2> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <datatype2>
      [ DEFAULT <value2> ] ]
    ] ... )
  ]
|
  FUNCTION <func_name>
  [ ( [ SELF [ IN | IN OUT ] <name> ]
    [, <parm1> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <datatype1>
      [ DEFAULT <value1> ] ]
    [, <parm2> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <datatype2>
      [ DEFAULT <value2> ] ]
    ] ... )
  ]
  RETURN <return_type>
}
```

where `constructor` is the following:

```
CONSTRUCTOR <func_name>
[ ( [ SELF [ IN | IN OUT ] <name> ]
  [, <parm1> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <datatype1>
    [ DEFAULT <value1> ] ]
  [, <parm2> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <datatype2>
    [ DEFAULT <value2> ] ]
  ] ... )
]
RETURN self AS RESULT
```

#### Note

The `OR REPLACE` option cannot be currently used to add, delete, or modify the attributes of an existing object type. Use the `DROP TYPE` command to first delete the existing object type. The `OR REPLACE` option can be used to add, delete, or modify the methods in an existing object type.

#### Note

The PostgreSQL form of the `ALTER TYPE ALTER ATTRIBUTE` command can be used to change the data type of an attribute in an existing object type. However, the `ALTER TYPE` command cannot add or delete attributes in the object type.

`name` is an identifier (optionally schema-qualified) assigned to the object type.

If the `AUTHID` clause is omitted or `DEFINER` is specified, the rights of the object type owner are used to determine access privileges to database objects. If `CURRENT_USER` is specified, the rights of the current user executing a method in the object are used to determine access privileges.

`attribute` is an identifier assigned to an attribute of the object type.

`datatype` is a base data type.

`objtype` is a previously defined object type.

`collecttype` is a previously defined collection type.

Following the closing parenthesis of the `CREATE TYPE` definition, `[ NOT ] FINAL` specifies whether or not a subtype can be derived from this object type. `FINAL`, which is the default, means that no subtypes can be derived from this object type. Specify `NOT FINAL` if you want to allow subtypes to be defined under this object type.

#### Note

Even though the specification of `NOT FINAL` is accepted in the `CREATE TYPE` command, SPL does not currently support the creation of subtypes.

Following the closing parenthesis of the `CREATE TYPE` definition, `[ NOT ] INSTANTIABLE` specifies whether or not an object instance can be created of this object type. `INSTANTIABLE`, which is the default, means that an instance of this object type can be created. Specify `NOT INSTANTIABLE` if this object type is to be used only as a parent “template” from which other specialized subtypes are to be defined. If `NOT INSTANTIABLE` is specified, then `NOT FINAL` must be specified as well. If any method in the object type contains the `NOT INSTANTIABLE` qualifier, then the object type, itself, must be defined with `NOT INSTANTIABLE` and `NOT FINAL`.

#### Note

Even though the specification of `NOT INSTANTIABLE` is accepted in the `CREATE TYPE` command, SPL does not currently support the creation of subtypes.

`method_spec` denotes the specification of a member method or static method.

Prior to the definition of a method, `[ NOT ] FINAL` specifies whether or not the method can be overridden in a subtype. `NOT FINAL` is the default meaning the method can be overridden in a subtype.

Prior to the definition of a method specify `OVERRIDING` if the method overrides an identically named method in a supertype. The overriding method must have the same number of identically named method parameters with the same data types and parameter modes, in the same order, and the same return type (if the method is a function) as defined in the supertype.

Prior to the definition of a method, `[ NOT ] INSTANTIABLE` specifies whether or not the object type definition provides an implementation for the method. If `INSTANTIABLE` is specified, then the `CREATE TYPE BODY` command for the object type must specify the implementation of the method. If `NOT INSTANTIABLE` is specified, then the `CREATE TYPE BODY` command for the object type must not contain the implementation of the method. In this latter case, it is assumed a subtype contains the implementation of the method, overriding the method in this object type. If there are any `NOT INSTANTIABLE` methods in the object type, then the object type definition itself, must specify `NOT INSTANTIABLE` and `NOT FINAL` following the closing parenthesis of the object type specification. The default is `INSTANTIABLE`.

`subprogram_spec` denotes the specification of a procedure or function and begins with the specification of either `MEMBER` or `STATIC`. A member subprogram must be invoked with respect to a particular object instance while a static subprogram is not invoked with respect to any object instance.

`proc_name` is an identifier of a procedure. If the `SELF` parameter is specified, `name` is the object type name given in the `CREATE TYPE` command. If specified, `parm1, parm2, ...` are the formal parameters of the procedure. `datatype1, datatype2, ...` are the data types of `parm1, parm2, ...` respectively. `IN, IN OUT, and OUT` are the possible parameter modes for each formal parameter. If none are specified, the default is `IN . value1,`

`value2, ...` are default values that may be specified for `IN` parameters.

Include the `CONSTRUCTOR` keyword and function definition to define a constructor function.

`func_name` is an identifier of a function. If the `SELF` parameter is specified, `name` is the object type name given in the `CREATE TYPE` command. If specified, `parm1, parm2, ...` are the formal parameters of the function. `datatype1, datatype2, ...` are the data types of `parm1, parm2, ...` respectively. `IN, IN OUT`, and `OUT` are the possible parameter modes for each formal parameter. If none are specified, the default is `IN`. `value1, value2, ...` are default values that may be specified for `IN` parameters. `return_type` is the data type of the value the function returns.

The following points should be noted about an object type specification:

- There must be at least one attribute defined in the object type.
- There may be none, one, or more methods defined in the object type.
- For each member method there is an implicit, built-in parameter named `SELF`, whose data type is that of the object type being defined.

`SELF` refers to the object instance that is currently invoking the method. `SELF` can be explicitly declared as an `IN` or `IN OUT` parameter in the parameter list (for example as `MEMBER FUNCTION (SELF IN OUT object_type ...)`).

If `SELF` is explicitly declared, `SELF` must be the first parameter in the parameter list. If `SELF` is not explicitly declared, its parameter mode defaults to `IN OUT` for member procedures and `IN` for member functions.

- A static method cannot be overridden (`OVERRIDING` and `STATIC` cannot be specified together in `method_spec`).
- A static method must be instantiable (`NOT INSTANTIABLE` and `STATIC` cannot be specified together in `method_spec`).

### 8.15.2.2 Object Type Body Syntax

The following is the syntax of the object type body:

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TYPE BODY <name>
{ IS | AS }
<method_spec> [...]
[<constructor>] [...]
END;
```

where `method_spec` is the following:

| `subprogram_spec`

and `subprogram_spec` is the following:

```
{ MEMBER | STATIC }
{ PROCEDURE <proc_name>
 [ ( [ SELF [ IN | IN OUT ] <name> ]
 [, parm1 [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] datatype1
 [ DEFAULT value1 ] ]
```

```
[, parm2 [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] datatype2
    [ DEFAULT value2 ]
] ...)

]

{ IS | AS }

[ PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION; ]

[ <declarations> ]

BEGIN
<statement>; ...

[ EXCEPTION
WHEN ... THEN
<statement>; ...]
END;

| FUNCTION <func_name>
[ ( [ SELF [ IN | IN OUT ] <name> ]
[, parm1 [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] datatype1
    [ DEFAULT value1 ]]
[, parm2 [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] datatype2
    [ DEFAULT value2 ]]
] ...)

]

RETURN <return_type>

{ IS | AS }

[ PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION; ]

[ <declarations> ]

BEGIN
<statement>; ...

[ EXCEPTION
WHEN ... THEN
<statement>; ...]
END;
```

where **constructor** is:

```
CONSTRUCTOR <func_name>
[ ( [ SELF [ IN | IN OUT ] <name> ]
[, parm1 [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] datatype1
    [ DEFAULT value1 ]]
[, parm2 [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] datatype2
    [ DEFAULT value2 ]]
] ...)

]

RETURN self AS RESULT

{ IS | AS }

[ <declarations> ]

BEGIN
<statement>; ...

[ EXCEPTION
WHEN ... THEN
<statement>; ...]
END;
```

**name** is an identifier (optionally schema-qualified) assigned to the object type.

**method\_spec** denotes the implementation of an instantiable method that was specified in the **CREATE TYPE**

command.

If `INSTANTIABLE` was specified or omitted in `method_spec` of the `CREATE TYPE` command, then there must be a `method_spec` for this method in the `CREATE TYPE BODY` command.

If `NOT INSTANTIABLE` was specified in `method_spec` of the `CREATE TYPE` command, then there must be no `method_spec` for this method in the `CREATE TYPE BODY` command.

`subprogram_spec` denotes the specification of a procedure or function and begins with the specification of either `MEMBER` or `STATIC`. The same qualifier must be used as was specified in `subprogram_spec` of the `CREATE TYPE` command.

`proc_name` is an identifier of a procedure specified in the `CREATE TYPE` command. The parameter declarations have the same meaning as described for the `CREATE TYPE` command, and must be specified in the `CREATE TYPE BODY` command in the same manner as specified in the `CREATE TYPE` command.

Include the `CONSTRUCTOR` keyword and function definition to define a constructor function.

`func_name` is an identifier of a function specified in the `CREATE TYPE` command. The parameter declarations have the same meaning as described for the `CREATE TYPE` command, and must be specified in the `CREATE TYPE BODY` command in the same manner as specified in the `CREATE TYPE` command. `return_type` is the data type of the value the function returns and must match `return_type` given in the `CREATE TYPE` command.

`PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION` is the directive that sets the procedure or function as an autonomous transaction.

`declarations` are variable, cursor, type, or subprogram declarations. If subprogram declarations are included, they must be declared after all other variable, cursor, and type declarations.

`statement` is an SPL program statement.

### 8.15.3 Creating Object Types

You can use the `CREATE TYPE` command to create an object type specification, and the `CREATE TYPE BODY` command to create an object type body. This section provides some examples using the `CREATE TYPE` and `CREATE TYPE BODY` commands.

The first example creates the `addr_object_type` object type that contains only attributes and no methods:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE addr_object_type AS OBJECT
(
    street      VARCHAR2(30),
    city        VARCHAR2(20),
    state       CHAR(2),
    zip         NUMBER(5)
);
```

Since there are no methods in this object type, an object type body is not required. This example creates a composite type, which allows you to treat related objects as a single attribute.

### 8.15.3.1 Member Methods

A member method is a function or procedure that is defined within an object type and can only be invoked through an instance of that type. Member methods have access to, and can change the attributes of, the object instance on which they are operating.

The following object type specification creates the `emp_obj_typ` object type:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE emp_obj_typ AS OBJECT
(
    empno      NUMBER(4),
    ename      VARCHAR2(20),
    addr       ADDR_OBJ_TYP,
    MEMBER PROCEDURE display_emp(SELF IN OUT emp_obj_typ)
);
```

Object type `emp_obj_typ` contains a member method named `display_emp`. `display_emp` uses a `SELF` parameter, which passes the object instance on which the method is invoked.

A `SELF` parameter is a parameter whose data type is that of the object type being defined. `SELF` always refers to the instance that is invoking the method. A `SELF` parameter is the first parameter in a member procedure or function *regardless* of whether it is explicitly declared in the parameter list.

The following code snippet defines an object type body for `emp_obj_typ`:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE BODY emp_obj_typ AS
    MEMBER PROCEDURE display_emp (SELF IN OUT emp_obj_typ)
    IS
    BEGIN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee No : ' || empno);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || ename);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Street     : ' || addr.street);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('City/State/Zip: ' || addr.city || ',' ||
                             addr.state || '' || LPAD(addr.zip,5,'0'));
    END;
END;
```

You can also use the `SELF` parameter in an object type body. To illustrate how the `SELF` parameter would be used in the `CREATE TYPE BODY` command, the preceding object type body could be written as follows:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE BODY emp_obj_typ AS
    MEMBER PROCEDURE display_emp (SELF IN OUT emp_obj_typ)
    IS
    BEGIN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee No : ' || SELF.empno);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || SELF.ename);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Street     : ' || SELF.addr.street);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('City/State/Zip: ' || SELF.addr.city || ',' ||
                             SELF.addr.state || '' || LPAD(SELF.addr.zip,5,'0'));
    END;
END;
```

Both versions of the `emp_obj_typ` body are completely equivalent.

## 8.15.3.2 Static Methods

Like a member method, a static method belongs to a type. A static method, however, is invoked not by an *instance* of the type, but by using the *name* of the type. For example, to invoke a static function named `get_count`, defined within the `emp_obj_type` type, you can write:

```
emp_obj_type.get_count();
```

A static method does not have access to, and cannot change the attributes of an object instance, and does not typically work with an instance of the type.

The following object type specification includes a static function `get_dname` and a member procedure `display_dept`:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE dept_obj_typ AS OBJECT (
    deptno      NUMBER(2),
    STATIC FUNCTION get_dname(p_deptno IN NUMBER) RETURN VARCHAR2,
    MEMBER PROCEDURE display_dept
);
```

The object type body for `dept_obj_typ` defines a static function named `get_dname` and a member procedure named `display_dept`:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE BODY dept_obj_typ AS
    STATIC FUNCTION get_dname(p_deptno IN NUMBER) RETURN VARCHAR2
    IS
        v_dname  VARCHAR2(14);
    BEGIN
        CASE p_deptno
            WHEN 10 THEN v_dname := 'ACCOUNTING';
            WHEN 20 THEN v_dname := 'RESEARCH';
            WHEN 30 THEN v_dname := 'SALES';
            WHEN 40 THEN v_dname := 'OPERATIONS';
            ELSE v_dname := 'UNKNOWN';
        END CASE;
        RETURN v_dname;
    END;

    MEMBER PROCEDURE display_dept
    IS
    BEGIN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Dept No : ' || SELF.deptno);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Dept Name : ' ||
            dept_obj_typ.get_dname(SELF.deptno));
    END;
END;
```

Within the static function `get_dname`, there can be no references to `SELF`. Since a static function is invoked independently of any object instance, it has no implicit access to any object attribute.

Member procedure `display_dept` can access the `deptno` attribute of the object instance passed in the `SELF` parameter. It is not necessary to explicitly declare the `SELF` parameter in the `display_dept` parameter list.

The last `DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE` statement in the `display_dept` procedure includes a call to the static function `get_dname` (qualified by its object type name `dept_obj_typ`).

### 8.15.3.3 Constructor Methods

A constructor method is a function that creates an instance of an object type, typically by assigning values to the members of the object. An object type may define several constructors to accomplish different tasks. A constructor method is a member function (invoked with a `SELF` parameter) whose name matches the name of the type.

For example, if you define a type named `address`, each constructor is named `address`. You may overload a constructor by creating one or more different constructor functions with the same name, but with different argument types.

The SPL compiler will provide a default constructor for each object type. The default constructor is a member function whose name matches the name of the type and whose argument list matches the type members (in order). For example, given an object type such as:

```
CREATE TYPE address AS OBJECT
(
    street_address VARCHAR2(40),
    postal_code   VARCHAR2(10),
    city          VARCHAR2(40),
    state         VARCHAR2(2)
)
```

The SPL compiler will provide a default constructor with the following signature:

```
CONSTRUCTOR FUNCTION address
(
    street_address VARCHAR2(40),
    postal_code   VARCHAR2(10),
    city          VARCHAR2(40),
    state         VARCHAR2(2)
)
```

The body of the default constructor simply sets each member to `NULL`.

To create a custom constructor, declare the constructor function (using the keyword `constructor`) in the `CREATE TYPE` command and define the construction function in the `CREATE TYPE BODY` command. For example, you may wish to create a custom constructor for the `address` type which computes the city and state given a `street_address` and `postal_code`:

```
CREATE TYPE address AS OBJECT
(
    street_address VARCHAR2(40),
    postal_code   VARCHAR2(10),
    city          VARCHAR2(40),
    state         VARCHAR2(2),

    CONSTRUCTOR FUNCTION address
    (
        street_address VARCHAR2,
        postal_code   VARCHAR2
    ) RETURN self AS RESULT
)

CREATE TYPE BODY address AS
    CONSTRUCTOR FUNCTION address
```

```

(
    street_address VARCHAR2,
    postal_code VARCHAR2
) RETURN self AS RESULT
IS
BEGIN
    self.street_address := street_address;
    self.postal_code := postal_code;
    self.city := postal_code_to_city(postal_code);
    self.state := postal_code_to_state(postal_code);
    RETURN;
END;
END;

```

To create an instance of an object type, you invoke one of the constructor methods for that type. For example:

```

DECLARE
    cust_addr address := address('100 Main Street', 02203');
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(cust_addr.city); -- displays Boston
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(cust_addr.state); -- displays MA
END;

```

Custom constructor functions are typically used to compute member values when given incomplete information. The preceding example computes the values for `city` and `state` when given a postal code.

Custom constructor functions are also used to enforce business rules that restrict the state of an object. For example, if you define an object type to represent a `payment`, you can use a custom constructor to ensure that no object of type `payment` can be created with an `amount` that is `NULL`, negative, or zero. The default constructor would set `payment.amount` to `NULL` so you must create a custom constructor (whose signature matches the default constructor) to prohibit `NULL` amounts.

## 8.15.4 Creating Object Instances

To create an instance of an object type, you must first declare a variable of the object type, and then initialize the declared object variable. The syntax for declaring an object variable is:

```
<object obj_type>
```

`object` is an identifier assigned to the object variable.

`obj_type` is the identifier of a previously defined object type.

After declaring the object variable, you must invoke a *constructor method* to initialize the object with values. Use the following syntax to invoke the constructor method:

```
[NEW] <obj_type> ({expr1 | NULL} [, {expr2 | NULL}] [, ...])
```

`obj_type` is the identifier of the object type's constructor method; the constructor method has the same name as the previously declared object type.

`expr1, expr2, ...` are expressions that are type-compatible with the first attribute of the object type, the second attribute of the object type, etc. If an attribute is of an object type, then the corresponding expression can be

`NULL`, an object initialization expression, or any expression that returns that object type.

The following anonymous block declares and initializes a variable:

```
DECLARE
    v_emp      EMP_OBJ_TYP;
BEGIN
    v_emp := emp_obj_typ(9001,'JONES',
        addr_obj_typ('123 MAIN STREET','EDISON','NJ',08817));
END;
```

The variable `(v_emp)` is declared with a previously defined object type named `EMP_OBJ_TYPE`. The body of the block initializes the variable using the `emp_obj_typ` and `addr_obj_type` constructors.

You can include the `NEW` keyword when creating a new instance of an object in the body of a block. The `NEW` keyword invokes the object constructor whose signature matches the arguments provided.

The following example declares two variables, named `mgr` and `emp`. The variables are both of `EMP_OBJ_TYPE`. The `mgr` object is initialized in the declaration, while the `emp` object is initialized to `NULL` in the declaration, and assigned a value in the body.

```
DECLARE
    mgr EMP_OBJ_TYPE := (9002,'SMITH');
    emp EMP_OBJ_TYPE;
BEGIN
    emp := NEW EMP_OBJ_TYPE (9003,'RAY');
END;
```

#### Note

In Advanced Server, the following alternate syntax can be used in place of the constructor method.

```
[ ROW ] ({ expr1 | NULL } [, { expr2 | NULL } ] [, ...])
```

`ROW` is an optional keyword if two or more terms are specified within the parenthesis-enclosed, comma-delimited list. If only one term is specified, then specification of the `ROW` keyword is mandatory.

## 8.15.5 Referencing an Object

Once an object variable is created and initialized, individual attributes can be referenced using dot notation of the form:

```
<object.attribute>
```

`object` is the identifier assigned to the object variable. `attribute` is the identifier of an object type attribute.

If `attribute`, itself, is of an object type, then the reference must take the form:

```
<object.attribute.attribute_inner>
```

`attribute_inner` is an identifier belonging to the object type to which `attribute` references in its definition of `object`.

The following example expands upon the previous anonymous block to display the values assigned to the

`emp_obj_typ` object.

```
DECLARE
    v_emp      EMP_OBJ_TYP;
BEGIN
    v_emp := emp_obj_typ(9001,'JONES',
        addr_obj_typ('123 MAIN STREET','EDISON','NJ',08817));
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee No : ' || v_emp.empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || v_emp.ename);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Street    : ' || v_emp.addr.street);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('City/State/Zip: ' || v_emp.addr.city || ', ' ||
        v_emp.addr.state || '' || LPAD(v_emp.addr.zip,5,'0'));
END;
```

The following is the output from this anonymous block.

```
Employee No : 9001
Name      : JONES
Street    : 123 MAIN STREET
City/State/Zip: EDISON, NJ 08817
```

Methods are called in a similar manner as attributes.

Once an object variable is created and initialized, member procedures or functions are called using dot notation of the form:

```
<object.prog_name>
```

`object` is the identifier assigned to the object variable. `prog_name` is the identifier of the procedure or function.

Static procedures or functions are not called utilizing an object variable. Instead the procedure or function is called utilizing the object type name:

```
<object_type.prog_name>
```

`object_type` is the identifier assigned to the object type. `prog_name` is the identifier of the procedure or function.

The results of the previous anonymous block can be duplicated by calling the member procedure `display_emp`:

```
DECLARE
    v_emp      EMP_OBJ_TYP;
BEGIN
    v_emp := emp_obj_typ(9001,'JONES',
        addr_obj_typ('123 MAIN STREET','EDISON','NJ',08817));
    v_emp.display_emp;
END;
```

The following is the output from this anonymous block.

```
Employee No : 9001
Name      : JONES
Street    : 123 MAIN STREET
City/State/Zip: EDISON, NJ 08817
```

The following anonymous block creates an instance of `dept_obj_typ` and calls the member procedure `display_dept`:

```

DECLARE
  v_dept      DEPT_OBJ_TYP := dept_obj_typ (20);
BEGIN
  v_dept.display_dept;
END;

```

The following is the output from this anonymous block.

```

Dept No : 20
Dept Name : RESEARCH

```

The static function defined in `dept_obj_typ` can be called directly by qualifying it by the object type name as follows:

```

BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(dept_obj_typ.get_dname(20));
END;

RESEARCH

```

## 8.15.6 Dropping an Object Type

The syntax for deleting an object type is as follows.

```
DROP TYPE <objtype>;
```

`objtype` is the identifier of the object type to be dropped. If the definition of `objtype` contains attributes that are themselves object types or collection types, these nested object types or collection types must be dropped last.

If an object type body is defined for the object type, the `DROP TYPE` command deletes the object type body as well as the object type specification. In order to recreate the complete object type, both the `CREATE TYPE` and `CREATE TYPE BODY` commands must be reissued.

The following example drops the `emp_obj_typ` and the `addr_obj_typ` object types created earlier in this chapter. `emp_obj_typ` must be dropped first since it contains `addr_obj_typ` within its definition as an attribute.

```
DROP TYPE emp_obj_typ;
DROP TYPE addr_obj_typ;
```

The syntax for deleting an object type body, but not the object type specification is as follows.

```
DROP TYPE BODY <objtype>;
```

The object type body can be recreated by issuing the `CREATE TYPE BODY` command.

The following example drops only the object type body of the `dept_obj_typ`.

```
DROP TYPE BODY dept_obj_typ;
```

## 8.16 Errors and Messages

Use the `DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE` statement to report messages.

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ( <message> );
```

`message` is any expression evaluating to a string.

This example displays the message on the user's output display:

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('My name is John');
```

The special variables `SQLCODE` and `SQLERRM` contain a numeric code and a text message, respectively, that describe the outcome of the last SQL command issued. If any other error occurs in the program such as division by zero, these variables contain information pertaining to the error.

## 9 Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers SQL Guide

This guide provides a summary of the SQL commands compatible with Oracle databases that are supported by Advanced Server. The SQL commands in this section will work on both an Oracle database and an Advanced Server database.

Note the following points:

- Advanced Server supports other commands that are not listed here. These commands may have no Oracle equivalent or they may provide the similar or same functionality as an Oracle SQL command, but with different syntax.
- The SQL commands in this section do not necessarily represent the full syntax, options, and functionality available for each command. In most cases, syntax, options, and functionality that are not compatible with Oracle databases have been omitted from the command description and syntax.
- The Advanced Server documentation set documents command functionality that may not be compatible with Oracle databases.

### 9.1 ALTER DIRECTORY

#### Name

`ALTER DIRECTORY` -- change the owner of a directory created using `CREATE DIRECTORY` command.

#### Synopsis

```
ALTER DIRECTORY <name> OWNER TO <rolename>
```

#### Description

The `ALTER DIRECTORY ...OWNER TO` command changes the owner of a directory. You must have the superuser privilege to execute this command; the new owner of the directory must also have the superuser privilege.

## Parameters

### `name`

The name of the directory to be altered.

### `rolename`

The name of an owner that will own the directory.

## Examples

The following example demonstrates changing ownership; `bob` and `carol` are superusers. `bob` is a current owner of directory `EMPDIR`:

```
SELECT * FROM all_directories where directory_name = 'EMPDIR' order by 1,2,3;
owner | directory_name | directory_path
-----+-----+
bob  | EMPDIR        | /path
(1 row)
```

To alter the ownership of directory `EMPDIR` to `carol`:

```
ALTER DIRECTORY EMPDIR OWNER TO carol;
ALTER DIRECTORY
```

```
SELECT * FROM all_directories where directory_name = 'EMPDIR' order by 1,2,3;
owner | directory_name | directory_path
-----+-----+
carol | EMPDIR        | /path
(1 row)
```

The ownership of a directory is altered and granted to `carol`.

## See Also

[CREATE DIRECTORY](#), [DROP DIRECTORY](#)

## 9.2 ALTER INDEX

### Name

`ALTER INDEX` -- modify an existing index.

### Synopsis

Advanced Server supports three variations of the `ALTER INDEX` command compatible with Oracle databases. Use the first variation to rename an index:

`ALTER INDEX <name> RENAME TO <new_name>`

Use the second variation of the `ALTER INDEX` command to rebuild an index:

`ALTER INDEX <name> REBUILD`

Use the third variation of the `ALTER INDEX` command to set the `PARALLEL` or `NOPARALLEL` clause:

`ALTER INDEX <name> { NOPARALLEL | PARALLEL [ <integer> ] }`

## Description

`ALTER INDEX` changes the definition of an existing index. The `RENAME` clause changes the name of the index. The `REBUILD` clause reconstructs an index, replacing the old copy of the index with an updated version based on the index's table.

The `REBUILD` clause invokes the PostgreSQL `REINDEX` command; for more information about using the `REBUILD` clause, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-reindex.html>

The `PARALLEL` clause sets the degree of parallelism for an index that can be used to parallelize the rebuilding of an index.

The `NOPARALLEL` clause resets parallelism to use default values; `reloptions` will show the `parallel_workers` parameter as `0`.

`ALTER INDEX` has no effect on stored data.

## Parameters

`name`

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of an existing index.

`new_name`

New name for the index.

`PARALLEL`

Include the `PARALLEL` clause to specify a degree of parallelism; set the `parallel_workers` parameter equal to the degree of parallelism for the rebuilding of an index. If you specify `PARALLEL` but no degree of parallelism is provided, the server enforces default parallelism.

`NOPARALLEL`

Specify `NOPARALLEL` to reset parallelism to default values.

`integer`

The `integer` indicates the degree of parallelism (the number of `parallel_workers` used when rebuilding an index).

## Examples

To change the name of an index from `name_idx` to `empname_idx`:

`ALTER INDEX name_idx RENAME TO empname_idx;`

To rebuild an index named `empname_idx`:

```
ALTER INDEX empname_idx REBUILD;
```

The following example sets the degree of parallelism on an `empname_idx` index to 7:

```
ALTER INDEX empname_idx PARALLEL 7;
```

## See Also

[CREATE INDEX](#), [DROP INDEX](#)

## 9.3 ALTER PROCEDURE

### Name

`ALTER PROCEDURE`

### Synopsis

```
ALTER PROCEDURE <procedure_name options> [RESTRICT]
```

### Description

Use the `ALTER PROCEDURE` statement to specify that a procedure is a `SECURITY INVOKER` or `SECURITY DEFINER`.

### Parameters

`procedure_name`

`procedure_name` specifies the (possibly schema-qualified) name of a stored procedure.

`options` may be:

`[EXTERNAL] SECURITY DEFINER`

Specify `SECURITY DEFINER` to instruct the server to execute the procedure with the privileges of the user that created the procedure. The `EXTERNAL` keyword is accepted for compatibility, but ignored.

`[EXTERNAL] SECURITY INVOKER`

Specify `SECURITY INVOKER` to instruct the server to execute the procedure with the privileges of the user that is invoking the procedure. The `EXTERNAL` keyword is accepted for compatibility, but ignored.

The `RESTRICT` keyword is accepted for compatibility, but ignored.

### Examples

The following command specifies that the `update_balance` procedure should execute with the privileges of the user invoking the procedure:

```
ALTER PROCEDURE update_balance SECURITY INVOKER;
```

## See Also

[CREATE PROCEDURE](#), [DROP PROCEDURE](#)

## 9.4 ALTER PROFILE

### Name

**ALTER PROFILE** – alter an existing profile

### Synopsis

```
ALTER PROFILE <profile_name> RENAME TO <new_name>;
```

```
ALTER PROFILE <profile_name>
    LIMIT {<parameter value>}[...];
```

### Description

Use the **ALTER PROFILE** command to modify a user-defined profile; Advanced Server supports two forms of the command:

- Use **ALTER PROFILE...RENAME TO** to change the name of a profile.
- Use **ALTER PROFILE...LIMIT** to modify the limits associated with a profile.

Include the **LIMIT** clause and one or more space-delimited **parameter/value** pairs to specify the rules enforced by Advanced Server, or use **ALTER PROFILE...RENAME TO** to change the name of a profile.

### Parameters

**profile\_name**

The name of the profile.

**new\_name**

**new\_name** specifies the new name of the profile.

**parameter**

**parameter** specifies the attribute limited by the profile.

**value**

**value** specifies the parameter limit.

Advanced Server supports the **value** shown below for each **parameter**:

**FAILED\_LOGIN\_ATTEMPTS** specifies the number of failed login attempts that a user may make before the server locks the user out of their account for the length of time specified by **PASSWORD\_LOCK\_TIME**. Supported values are:

- An **INTEGER** value greater than **0**.
- **DEFAULT** - the value of **FAILED\_LOGIN\_ATTEMPTS** specified in the **DEFAULT** profile.
- **DEFAULT** - the value of **FAILED\_LOGIN\_ATTEMPTS** specified in the **DEFAULT** profile.
- **UNLIMITED** – the connecting user may make an unlimited number of failed login attempts.

**PASSWORD\_LOCK\_TIME** specifies the length of time that must pass before the server unlocks an account that has been locked because of **FAILED\_LOGIN\_ATTEMPTS**. Supported values are:

- A **NUMERIC** value greater than or equal to **0**. To specify a fractional portion of a day, specify a decimal value. For example, use the value **4.5** to specify **4** days, **12** hours.

- **DEFAULT** - the value of `PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
- **UNLIMITED** – the account is locked until it is manually unlocked by a database superuser.

`PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME` specifies the number of days that the current password may be used before the user is prompted to provide a new password. Include the `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME` clause when using the `PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME` clause to specify the number of days that will pass after the password expires before connections by the role are rejected. If `PASSWORD GRACE TIME` is not specified, the password will expire on the day specified by the default value of `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME`, and the user will not be allowed to execute any command until a new password is provided. Supported values are:

- A `NUMERIC` value greater than or equal to `0`. To specify a fractional portion of a day, specify a decimal value. For example, use the value `4.5` to specify `4` days, `12` hours.
- **DEFAULT** - the value of `PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
- **UNLIMITED** – The password does not have an expiration date.

`PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME` specifies the length of the grace period after a password expires until the user is forced to change their password. When the grace period expires, a user will be allowed to connect, but will not be allowed to execute any command until they update their expired password. Supported values are:

- A `NUMERIC` value greater than or equal to `0`. To specify a fractional portion of a day, specify a decimal value. For example, use the value `4.5` to specify `4` days, `12` hours.
- **DEFAULT** - the value of `PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
- **UNLIMITED** – The grace period is infinite.

`PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME` specifies the number of days a user must wait before re-using a password. The `PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME` and `PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX` parameters are intended to be used together. If you specify a finite value for one of these parameters while the other is `UNLIMITED`, old passwords can never be reused. If both parameters are set to `UNLIMITED` there are no restrictions on password reuse. Supported values are:

- A `NUMERIC` value greater than or equal to `0`. To specify a fractional portion of a day, specify a decimal value. For example, use the value `4.5` to specify `4` days, `12` hours.
- **DEFAULT** - the value of `PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
- **UNLIMITED** – The password can be re-used without restrictions.

`PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX` specifies the number of password changes that must occur before a password can be reused. The `PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME` and `PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX` parameters are intended to be used together. If you specify a finite value for one of these parameters while the other is `UNLIMITED`, old passwords can never be reused. If both parameters are set to `UNLIMITED` there are no restrictions on password reuse. Supported values are:

- An `INTEGER` value greater than or equal to `0`.
- **DEFAULT** - the value of `PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
- **UNLIMITED** – The password can be re-used without restrictions.

`PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION` specifies password complexity. Supported values are:

- The name of a PL/SQL function.
- **DEFAULT** - the value of `PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
- **NULL**

`PASSWORD_ALLOW_HASHED` specifies whether an encrypted password to be allowed for use or not. If you specify the value as `TRUE`, the system allows a user to change the password by specifying a hash computed encrypted password on the client side. However, if you specify the value as `FALSE`, then a password must be specified in a plain-text form in order to be validated effectively, else an error will be thrown if a server receives an encrypted password. Supported values are:

- A `BOOLEAN` value `TRUE/ON/YES/1` or `FALSE/OFF/NO/0`.
- **DEFAULT** – the value of `PASSWORD_ALLOW_HASHED` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.

## Note

The `PASSWORD_ALLOW_HASHED` is not an Oracle-compatible parameter.

## Examples

The following example modifies a profile named `acctg_profile`:

```
ALTER PROFILE acctg_profile
    LIMIT FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS 3 PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME 1;
```

`acctg_profile` will count failed connection attempts when a login role attempts to connect to the server. The profile specifies that if a user has not authenticated with the correct password in three attempts, the account will be locked for one day.

The following example changes the name of `acctg_profile` to `payables_profile`:

```
ALTER PROFILE acctg_profile RENAME TO payables_profile;
```

## See Also

[CREATE PROFILE](#), [DROP PROFILE](#)

## 9.5 ALTER QUEUE

Advanced Server includes extra syntax (not offered by Oracle) with the `ALTER QUEUE SQL` command. This syntax can be used in association with the `DBMS_AQADM` package.

### Name

`ALTER QUEUE` -- allows a superuser or a user with the `aq_administrator_role` privilege to modify the attributes of a queue.

### Synopsis

This command is available in four forms. The first form of this command changes the name of a queue.

```
ALTER QUEUE <queue_name> RENAME TO <new_name>
```

### Parameters

`queue_name`

| The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing queue.

`RENAME TO`

| Include the `RENAME TO` clause and a new name for the queue to rename the queue.

`new_name`

| New name for the queue.

The second form of the `ALTER QUEUE` command modifies the attributes of the queue:

```
ALTER QUEUE <queue_name> SET [ ( { <option_name option_value> } [,SET
<option_name>
```

## Parameters

### queue\_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing queue.

Include the `SET` clause and `option_name/option_value` pairs to modify the attributes of the queue:

### option\_name option\_value

The name of the option or options to be associated with the new queue and the corresponding value of the option. If you provide duplicate option names, the server will return an error.

- If `option_name` is `retries`, provide an integer that represents the number of times a dequeue may be attempted.
- If `option_name` is `retrydelay`, provide a double-precision value that represents the delay in seconds.
- If `option_name` is `retention`, provide a double-precision value that represents the retention time in seconds.

Use the third form of the `ALTER QUEUE` command to enable or disable enqueueing and/or dequeuing on a particular queue:

```
ALTER QUEUE <queue_name> ACCESS { START | STOP } [ FOR { enqueue | dequeue } ]
[ NOWAIT ]
```

## Parameters

### queue\_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing queue.

### ACCESS

Include the `ACCESS` keyword to enable or disable enqueueing and/or dequeuing on a particular queue.

### START | STOP

Use the `START` and `STOP` keywords to indicate the desired state of the queue.

### FOR enqueue|dequeue

Use the `FOR` clause to indicate if you are specifying the state of enqueueing or dequeuing activity on the specified queue.

### NOWAIT

Include the `NOWAIT` keyword to specify that the server should not wait for the completion of outstanding transactions before changing the state of the queue. The `NOWAIT` keyword can only be used when specifying an `ACCESS` value of `STOP`. The server will return an error if `NOWAIT` is specified with an `ACCESS` value of `START`.

Use the fourth form to `ADD` or `DROP` callback details for a particular queue.

```
ALTER QUEUE <queue_name> { ADD | DROP } CALL TO <location_name> [ WITH
<callback_option> ]
```

## Parameters

### queue\_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing queue.

## ADD | DROP

Include the `ADD` or `DROP` keywords to enable add or remove callback details for a queue.

`location_name`

`location_name` specifies the name of the callback procedure.

`callback_option`

`callback_option` can be `context`; specify a `RAW` value when including this clause.

## Examples

The following example changes the name of a queue from `work_queue_east` to `work_order`:

```
ALTER QUEUE work_queue_east RENAME TO work_order;
```

The following example modifies a queue named `work_order`, setting the number of retries to `100`, the delay between retries to `2` seconds, and the length of time that the queue will retain dequeued messages to `10` seconds:

```
ALTER QUEUE work_order SET (retries 100, retrydelay 2, retention 10);
```

The following commands enable enqueueing and dequeuing in a queue named `work_order`:

```
ALTER QUEUE work_order ACCESS START;
ALTER QUEUE work_order ACCESS START FOR enqueue;
ALTER QUEUE work_order ACCESS START FOR dequeue;
```

The following commands disable enqueueing and dequeuing in a queue named `work_order`:

```
ALTER QUEUE work_order ACCESS STOP NOWAIT;
ALTER QUEUE work_order ACCESS STOP FOR enqueue;
ALTER QUEUE work_order ACCESS STOP FOR dequeue;
```

## See Also

[CREATE QUEUE](#), [DROP QUEUE](#)

## 9.6 ALTER QUEUE TABLE

Advanced Server includes extra syntax (not offered by Oracle) with the `ALTER QUEUE SQL` command. This syntax can be used in association with the `DBMS_AQADM` package.

### Name

`ALTER QUEUE TABLE--` modify an existing queue table.

### Synopsis

Use `ALTER QUEUE TABLE` to change the name of an existing queue table:

```
ALTER QUEUE TABLE <name> RENAME TO <new_name>
```

## Description

`ALTER QUEUE TABLE` allows a superuser or a user with the `ad_administrator_role` privilege to change the name of an existing queue table.

## Parameters

`name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing queue table.

`new_name`

New name for the queue table.

## Examples

To change the name of a queue table from `wo_table_east` to `work_order_table`:

```
ALTER QUEUE TABLE wo_queue_east RENAME TO work_order_table;
```

## See Also

[CREATE QUEUE TABLE](#), [DROP QUEUE TABLE](#)

## 9.7 ALTER ROLE... IDENTIFIED BY

### Name

`ALTER ROLE` - change the password associated with a database role

### Synopsis

```
ALTER ROLE <role_name> IDENTIFIED BY <password>
    [REPLACE <prev_password>]
```

### Description

A role without the `CREATEROLE` privilege may use this command to change their own password. An unprivileged role must include the `REPLACE` clause and their previous password if `PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION` is not `NULL` in their profile. When the `REPLACE` clause is used by a non-superuser, the server will compare the password provided to the existing password and raise an error if the passwords do not match.

A database superuser can use this command to change the password associated with any role. If a superuser includes the `REPLACE` clause, the clause is ignored; a non-matching value for the previous password will not throw an error.

If the role for which the password is being changed has the `SUPERUSER` attribute, then a superuser must issue this command. A role with the `CREATEROLE` attribute can use this command to change the password associated with a role that is not a superuser.

## Parameters

`role_name`

The name of the role whose password is to be altered.

`password`

The role's new password.

`prev_password`

The role's previous password.

## Examples

To change a role's password:

```
ALTER ROLE john IDENTIFIED BY xyRP35z REPLACE 23PJ74a;
```

## 9.8 ALTER ROLE - Managing Database Link and DBMS\_RLS Privileges

Advanced Server includes extra syntax (not offered by Oracle) for the `ALTER ROLE` command. This syntax can be useful when assigning privileges related to creating and dropping database links compatible with Oracle databases, and fine-grained access control (using `DBMS_RLS`).

### CREATE DATABASE LINK

A user who holds the `CREATE DATABASE LINK` privilege may create a private database link. The following `ALTER ROLE` command grants privileges to an Advanced Server role that allow the specified role to create a private database link:

```
ALTER ROLE role_name
  WITH [CREATEDBLINK | CREATE DATABASE LINK]
```

This command is the functional equivalent of:

```
GRANT CREATE DATABASE LINK to role_name
```

Use the following command to revoke the privilege:

```
ALTER ROLE role_name
  WITH [NOCREATEDBLINK | NO CREATE DATABASE LINK]
```

#### Note

The `CREATEDBLINK` and `NOCREATEDBLINK` keywords should be considered deprecated syntax; we recommend using the `CREATE DATABASE LINK` and `NO CREATE DATABASE LINK` syntax options.

### CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK

A user who holds the `CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK` privilege may create a public database link. The following `ALTER ROLE` command grants privileges to an Advanced Server role that allow the specified role to create a public database link:

```
ALTER ROLE role_name
  WITH [CREATEPUBLICDBLINK | CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK]
```

This command is the functional equivalent of:

```
GRANT CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK to role_name
```

Use the following command to revoke the privilege:

```
ALTER ROLE role_name
WITH [NOCREATEPUBLICDBLINK | NO CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK]
```

#### Note

The `CREATEPUBLICDBLINK` and `NOCREATEPUBLICDBLINK` keywords should be considered deprecated syntax; we recommend using the `CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK` and `NO CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK` syntax options.

## DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK

A user who holds the `DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK` privilege may drop a public database link. The following `ALTER ROLE` command grants privileges to an Advanced Server role that allow the specified role to drop a public database link:

```
ALTER ROLE role_name
WITH [DROPPUBLICDBLINK | DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK]
```

This command is the functional equivalent of:

```
GRANT DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK to role_name
```

Use the following command to revoke the privilege:

```
ALTER ROLE role_name
WITH [NODROPPUBLICDBLINK | NO DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK]
```

#### Note

The `DROPPUBLICDBLINK` and `NODROPPUBLICDBLINK` keywords should be considered deprecated syntax; we recommend using the `DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK` and `NO DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK` syntax options.

## EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY

A user who holds the `EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY` privilege is exempt from fine-grained access control (`DBMS_RLS`) policies. A user who holds these privileges will be able to view or modify any row in a table constrained by a `DBMS_RLS` policy. The following `ALTER ROLE` command grants privileges to an Advanced Server role that exempt the specified role from any defined `DBMS_RLS` policies:

```
ALTER ROLE role_name
WITH [POLICYEXEMPT | EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY]
```

This command is the functional equivalent of:

```
GRANT EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY TO role_name
```

Use the following command to revoke the privilege:

```
ALTER ROLE role_name
WITH [NOPOLICYEXEMPT | NO EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY]
```

#### Note

The **POLICYEXEMPT** and **NOPOLICYEXEMPT** keywords should be considered deprecated syntax; we recommend using the **EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY** and **NO EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY** syntax options.

## See Also

[CREATE ROLE](#), [DROP ROLE](#), [GRANT](#), [REVOKE](#), [SET ROLE](#)

## 9.9 ALTER SEQUENCE

### Name

**ALTER SEQUENCE** -- change the definition of a sequence generator

### Synopsis

```
ALTER SEQUENCE <name> [ INCREMENT BY <increment> ]
[ MINVALUE <minvalue> ] [ MAXVALUE <maxvalue> ]
[ CACHE <cache> | NOCACHE ] [ CYCLE ]
```

### Description

**ALTER SEQUENCE** changes the parameters of an existing sequence generator. Any parameter not specifically set in the **ALTER SEQUENCE** command retains its prior setting.

### Parameters

#### name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a sequence to be altered.

#### increment

The clause **INCREMENT BY increment** is optional. A positive value will make an ascending sequence, a negative one a descending sequence. If unspecified, the old increment value will be maintained.

#### minvalue

The optional clause **MINVALUE minvalue** determines the minimum value a sequence can generate. If not specified, the current minimum value will be maintained. Note that the key words, **NO MINVALUE**, may be used to set this behavior back to the defaults of 1 and - $2^{63}$ -1 for ascending and descending sequences, respectively, however, this term is not compatible with Oracle databases.

#### maxvalue

The optional clause **MAXVALUE maxvalue** determines the maximum value for the sequence. If not specified, the current maximum value will be maintained. Note that the key words, **NO MAXVALUE**, may be used to set this behavior back to the defaults of  $2^{63}$ -1 and -1 for ascending and descending sequences, respectively, however, this term is not compatible with Oracle databases.

#### cache

The optional clause **CACHE cache** specifies how many sequence numbers are to be preallocated and stored in memory for faster access. The minimum value is **1** (only one value can be generated at a time, i.e., **NOCACHE**). If unspecified, the old cache value will be maintained.

## CYCLE

The **CYCLE** option allows the sequence to wrap around when the **maxvalue** or **minvalue** has been reached by an ascending or descending sequence respectively. If the limit is reached, the next number generated will be the **minvalue** or **maxvalue**, respectively. If not specified, the old cycle behavior will be maintained. Note that the key words, **NO CYCLE**, may be used to alter the sequence so that it does not recycle, however, this term is not compatible with Oracle databases.

## Notes

To avoid blocking of concurrent transactions that obtain numbers from the same sequence, **ALTER SEQUENCE** is never rolled back; the changes take effect immediately and are not reversible.

**ALTER SEQUENCE** will not immediately affect **NEXTVAL** results in backends, other than the current one, that have pre-allocated (cached) sequence values. They will use up all cached values prior to noticing the changed sequence parameters. The current backend will be affected immediately.

## Examples

Change the increment and cache value of sequence, **serial**.

```
ALTER SEQUENCE serial INCREMENT BY 2 CACHE 5;
```

## See Also

[CREATE SEQUENCE](#), [DROP SEQUENCE](#)

## 9.10 ALTER SESSION

### Name

**ALTER SESSION** -- change a runtime parameter

### Synopsis

```
ALTER SESSION SET <name> = <value>
```

### Description

The **ALTER SESSION** command changes runtime configuration parameters. **ALTER SESSION** only affects the value used by the current session. Some of these parameters are provided solely for compatibility with Oracle syntax and have no effect whatsoever on the runtime behavior of Advanced Server. Others will alter a corresponding Advanced Server database server runtime configuration parameter.

### Parameters

**name**

Name of a settable runtime parameter. Available parameters are listed below.

**value**

New value of parameter.

### Configuration Parameters

The following configuration parameters can be modified using the `ALTER SESSION` command:

#### `NLS_DATE_FORMAT` (string)

Sets the display format for date and time values as well as the rules for interpreting ambiguous date input values. Has the same effect as setting the Advanced Server `datestyle` runtime configuration parameter.

#### `NLS_LANGUAGE` (string)

Sets the language in which messages are displayed. Has the same effect as setting the Advanced Server `lc_messages` runtime configuration parameter.

#### `NLS_LENGTH_SEMANTICS` (string)

Valid values are `BYTE` and `CHAR`. The default is `BYTE`. This parameter is provided for syntax compatibility only and has no effect in the Advanced Server.

#### `OPTIMIZER_MODE` (string)

Sets the default optimization mode for queries. Valid values are `ALL_ROWS`, `CHOOSE`, `FIRST_ROWS`, `FIRST_ROWS_10`, `FIRST_ROWS_100`, and `FIRST_ROWS_1000`. The default is `CHOOSE`. This parameter is implemented in Advanced Server.

#### `QUERY_REWRITE_ENABLED` (string)

Valid values are `TRUE`, `FALSE`, and `FORCE`. The default is `FALSE`. This parameter is provided for syntax compatibility only and has no effect in Advanced Server.

#### `QUERY_REWRITE_INTEGRITY` (string)

Valid values are `ENFORCED`, `TRUSTED`, and `STALE_TOLERATED`. The default is `ENFORCED`. This parameter is provided for syntax compatibility only and has no effect in Advanced Server.

### Examples

Set the language to U.S. English in UTF-8 encoding. Note that in this example, the value, `en_US.UTF-8`, is in the format that must be specified for Advanced Server. This form is not compatible with Oracle databases.

```
ALTER SESSION SET NLS_LANGUAGE = 'en_US.UTF-8';
```

Set the date display format.

```
ALTER SESSION SET NLS_DATE_FORMAT = 'dd/mm/yyyy';
```

## 9.11 ALTER TABLE

### Name

`ALTER TABLE` -- change the definition of a table

### Synopsis

```
ALTER TABLE <name>
  action [, ...]
ALTER TABLE <name>
```

```

RENAME COLUMN <column> TO <new_column>
ALTER TABLE <name>
  RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER TABLE <name>
  { NOPARALLEL | PARALLEL [ <integer> ] }

```

where `action` is one of:

```

ADD <column type> [ column_constraint [ ... ] ]
DROP COLUMN <column>
ADD <table_constraint>
DROP CONSTRAINT <constraint_name> [ CASCADE ]

```

## Description

`ALTER TABLE` changes the definition of an existing table. There are several subforms:

### ADD column type

This form adds a new column to the table using the same syntax as [CREATE TABLE](#).

### DROP COLUMN

This form drops a column from a table. Indexes and table constraints involving the column will be automatically dropped as well.

### ADD table\_constraint

This form adds a new constraint to a table; for details, see [CREATE TABLE](#).

### DROP CONSTRAINT

This form drops constraints on a table. Currently, constraints on tables are not required to have unique names, so there may be more than one constraint matching the specified name. All matching constraints will be dropped.

### RENAME

The `RENAME` forms change the name of a table (or an index, sequence, or view) or the name of an individual column in a table. There is no effect on the stored data.

The `PARALLEL` clause sets the degree of parallelism for a table. The `NOPARALLEL` clause resets the values to their defaults; `reloptions` will show the `parallel_workers` parameter as `0`.

A superuser has permission to create a trigger on any user's table but a user can create a trigger only on the table they own. However, when the ownership of a table is changed, the ownership of the trigger's implicit objects is updated when they are matched with a table owner owning a trigger.

You can use `ALTER TRIGGER ...ON AUTHORIZATION` command to alter a trigger's implicit object owner, for information, see [ALTER TRIGGER](#).

You must own the table to use `ALTER TABLE`.

## Parameters

### name

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of an existing table to alter.

### column

Name of a new or existing column.

`new_column`

New name for an existing column.

`new_name`

New name for the table.

`type`

Data type of the new column.

`table_constraint`

New table constraint for the table.

`constraint_name`

Name of an existing constraint to drop.

`CASCADE`

Automatically drop objects that depend on the dropped constraint.

`PARALLEL`

Specify `PARALLEL` to select a degree of parallelism; you can also specify the degree of parallelism by setting the `parallel_workers` parameter when performing a parallel scan on a table. If you specify `PARALLEL` without including a degree of parallelism, the index will use default parallelism.

`NOPARALLEL`

Specify `NOPARALLEL` to reset parallelism to default values.

`integer`

The `integer` indicates the degree of parallelism, which is the number of `parallel_workers` used in the parallel operation to perform a parallel scan on a table.

## Notes

When you invoke `ADD COLUMN`, all existing rows in the table are initialized with the column's default value (null if no `DEFAULT` clause is specified). Adding a column with a non-null default will require the entire table to be rewritten. This may take a significant amount of time for a large table; and it will temporarily require double the disk space. Adding a `CHECK` or `NOT NULL` constraint requires scanning the table to verify that existing rows meet the constraint.

The `DROP COLUMN` form does not physically remove the column, but simply makes it invisible to SQL operations. Subsequent insert and update operations in the table will store a null value for the column. Thus, dropping a column is quick but it will not immediately reduce the on-disk size of your table, as the space occupied by the dropped column is not reclaimed. The space will be reclaimed over time as existing rows are updated.

Changing any part of a system catalog table is not permitted. Refer to [CREATE TABLE](#) for a further description of valid parameters.

## Examples

To add a column of type `VARCHAR2` to a table:

```
ALTER TABLE emp ADD address VARCHAR2(30);
```

To drop a column from a table:

```
ALTER TABLE emp DROP COLUMN address;
```

To rename an existing column:

```
ALTER TABLE emp RENAME COLUMN address TO city;
```

To rename an existing table:

```
ALTER TABLE emp RENAME TO employee;
```

To add a check constraint to a table:

```
ALTER TABLE emp ADD CONSTRAINT sal_chk CHECK (sal > 500);
```

To remove a check constraint from a table:

```
ALTER TABLE emp DROP CONSTRAINT sal_chk;
```

To reset the degree of parallelism to 0 on the `emp` table:

```
ALTER TABLE emp NOPARALLEL;
```

The following example creates a table named `dept`, and then alters the `dept` table to define and enable a unique key on the `dname` column. The constraint `dept_dname_uq` identifies the `dname` column as a unique key. The `USING_INDEX` clause creates an index on a table `dept` with the index statement specified to enable the unique constraint.

```
CREATE TABLE dept (
    deptno      NUMBER(2),
    dname       VARCHAR2(14),
    loc         VARCHAR2(13)
);
```

```
ALTER TABLE dept
    ADD CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE(dname)
        USING INDEX (CREATE UNIQUE INDEX idx_dept_dname_uq ON dept (dname));
```

The following example creates a table named `emp`, and then alters the `emp` table to define and enable a primary key on the `ename` column. The `emp_ename_pk` constraint identifies the column `ename` as a primary key of the `emp` table. The `USING_INDEX` clause creates an index on a table `emp` with the index statement specified to enable the primary constraint.

```
CREATE TABLE emp (
    empno      NUMBER(4) NOT NULL,
    ename      VARCHAR2(10),
    job        VARCHAR2(9),
    sal        NUMBER(7,2),
    deptno     NUMBER(2)
);
```

```
ALTER TABLE emp
    ADD CONSTRAINT emp_ename_pk PRIMARY KEY (ename)
        USING INDEX (CREATE INDEX idx_emp_ename_pk ON emp (ename));
```

## See Also

[CREATE TABLE, DROP TABLE](#)

## 9.12 ALTER TRIGGER

### Name

**ALTER TRIGGER** -- change the definition of a trigger

### Synopsis

Advanced Server supports three variations of the **ALTER TRIGGER** command. Use the first variation to change the name of a given trigger without changing the trigger definition.

```
ALTER TRIGGER <name> ON <table_name> RENAME TO <new_name>
```

Use the second variation of the **ALTER TRIGGER** command if the trigger is dependent on an extension; if the extension is dropped the trigger will automatically be dropped as well.

```
ALTER TRIGGER <name> ON <table_name> DEPENDS ON EXTENSION <extension_name>
```

Use the third variation of the **ALTER TRIGGER** command to change the ownership of a trigger's object.

```
ALTER TRIGGER <name> ON <table_name> AUTHORIZATION <rolespec>
```

For information about using non-compatible implementations of the **ALTER TRIGGER** command that are supported by Advanced Server, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/sql-altertrigger.html>

### Description

**ALTER TRIGGER** changes the properties of existing trigger. You must own the table on which the trigger acts to be allowed to change its properties.

To alter an owner of the trigger's implicit object you can use the **ALTER TRIGGER ...ON AUTHORIZATION** command. You must have the privilege to execute **ALTER TRIGGER ...ON AUTHORIZATION** command to assign the trigger's implicit object ownership to a user after authorization.

### Parameters

**name**

The name of the trigger to be altered.

**table\_name**

The name of a table on which trigger acts.

**rolespec**

The **rolespec** determines an owner of trigger objects.

### Examples

The following example includes user **bob** and **carol** as superusers. The user **bob** owns a table **emp** and user

carol owns a trigger named `emp_sal_trig`, which is created on table `emp`:

```
SELECT relname, reowner::regrole FROM pg_class WHERE relname = 'emp';
relname | reowner
-----+-----
emp    | bob
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT proname, proowner::regrole FROM pg_proc WHERE oid = (SELECT tgoid
FROM pg_trigger WHERE tgname = 'emp_sal_trig') ORDER BY oid;
proname      | proowner
-----+-----
emp_sal_trig_emp | carol
(1 row)
```

To alter the ownership of table `emp` from user `bob` to a new owner `edb`:

```
ALTER TABLE emp OWNER TO edb;
ALTER TABLE
```

```
SELECT relname, reowner::regrole FROM pg_class WHERE relname = 'emp';
relname | reowner
-----+-----
emp    | edb
(1 row)
```

The table ownership is changed from user `bob` to an owner `edb` but the trigger ownership of `emp_sal_trig` is not altered and owned by user `carol`. Now alter the trigger `emp_sal_trig` on table `emp` and grant authorization to an owner `edb`:

```
ALTER TRIGGER emp_sal_trig ON emp AUTHORIZATION edb;
ALTER TRIGGER
```

```
SELECT proname, proowner::regrole FROM pg_proc WHERE oid = (SELECT tgoid
FROM pg_trigger WHERE tgname = 'emp_sal_trig') ORDER BY oid;
proname      | proowner
-----+-----
emp_sal_trig_emp | edb
(1 row)
```

The trigger ownership `emp_sal_trig` on table `emp` is altered and granted to an owner `edb`.

## See Also

[CREATE TRIGGER](#), [DROP TRIGGER](#)

## 9.13 ALTER TABLESPACE

### Name

`ALTER TABLESPACE` -- change the definition of a tablespace

## Synopsis

```
ALTER TABLESPACE <name> RENAME TO <newname>
```

## Description

`ALTER TABLESPACE` changes the definition of a tablespace.

## Parameters

`name`

The name of an existing tablespace.

`newname`

The new name of the tablespace. The new name cannot begin with `pg_`, as such names are reserved for system tablespaces.

## Examples

Rename tablespace `empspace` to `employee_space`:

```
ALTER TABLESPACE empspace RENAME TO employee_space;
```

## See Also

[DROP TABLESPACE](#)

## 9.14 ALTER USER... IDENTIFIED BY

### Name

`ALTER USER` -- change a database user account

## Synopsis

```
ALTER USER <role_name> IDENTIFIED BY <password> REPLACE <prev_password>
```

## Description

A role without the `CREATEROLE` privilege may use this command to change their own password. An unprivileged role must include the `REPLACE` clause and their previous password if `PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION` is not `NULL` in their profile. When the `REPLACE` clause is used by a non-superuser, the server will compare the password provided to the existing password and raise an error if the passwords do not match.

A database superuser can use this command to change the password associated with any role. If a superuser includes the `REPLACE` clause, the clause is ignored; a non-matching value for the previous password will not throw an error.

If the role for which the password is being changed has the `SUPERUSER` attribute, then a superuser must issue this command. A role with the `CREATEROLE` attribute can use this command to change the password associated with a role that is not a superuser.

## Parameters

**role\_name**

The name of the role whose password is to be altered.

**password**

The role's new password.

**prev\_password**

The role's previous password.

**Examples**

Change a user password:

```
ALTER USER john IDENTIFIED BY xyRP35z REPLACE 23PJ74a;
```

**See Also**

[CREATE USER](#), [DROP USER](#)

## 9.15 ALTER USER|ROLE... PROFILE MANAGEMENT CLAUSES

**Name****ALTER USER|ROLE****Synopsis**

```
ALTER USER|ROLE <name> [[WITH] option[...]]
```

where **option** can be the following compatible clauses:

```
PROFILE <profile_name>
| ACCOUNT {LOCK|UNLOCK}
| PASSWORD EXPIRE [AT '<timestamp>']
```

or **option** can be the following non-compatible clauses:

```
| PASSWORD SET AT '<timestamp>'
| LOCK TIME '<timestamp>'
| STORE PRIOR PASSWORD {'<password>' '<timestamp>'} [, ...]
```

For information about the administrative clauses of the **ALTER USER** or **ALTER ROLE** command that are supported by Advanced Server, see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-commands.html>

Only a database superuser can use the **ALTER USER|ROLE** clauses that enforce profile management. The clauses enforce the following behaviors:

Include the **PROFILE** clause and a **profile\_name** to associate a pre-defined profile with a role, or to change which pre-defined profile is associated with a user.

Include the `ACCOUNT` clause and the `LOCK` or `UNLOCK` keyword to specify that the user account should be placed in a locked or unlocked state.

Include the `LOCK TIME 'timestamp'` clause and a date/time value to lock the role at the specified time, and unlock the role at the time indicated by the `PASSWORD LOCK_TIME` parameter of the profile assigned to this role. If `LOCK TIME` is used with the `ACCOUNT LOCK` clause, the role can only be unlocked by a database superuser with the `ACCOUNT UNLOCK` clause.

Include the `PASSWORD EXPIRE` clause with the `AT 'timestamp'` keywords to specify a date/time when the password associated with the role will expire. If you omit the `AT 'timestamp'` keywords, the password will expire immediately.

Include the `PASSWORD SET AT 'timestamp'` keywords to set the password modification date to the time specified.

Include the `STORE PRIOR PASSWORD {'password' 'timestamp'} [, ...]` clause to modify the password history, adding the new password and the time the password was set.

Each login role may only have one profile. To discover the profile that is currently associated with a login role, query the `profile` column of the `DBA_USERS` view.

## Parameters

### `name`

The name of the role with which the specified profile will be associated.

### `password`

The password associated with the role.

### `profile_name`

The name of the profile that will be associated with the role.

### `timestamp`

The date and time at which the clause will be enforced. When specifying a value for `timestamp`, enclose the value in single-quotes.

## Notes

For information about the Postgres-compatible clauses of the `ALTER USER` or `ALTER ROLE` command, see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-alterrole.html>

## Examples

The following command uses the `ALTER USER... PROFILE` command to associate a profile named `acctg` with a user named `john`:

```
ALTER USER john PROFILE acctg_profile;
```

The following command uses the `ALTER ROLE... PROFILE` command to associate a profile named `acctg` with a user named `john`:

```
ALTER ROLE john PROFILE acctg_profile;
```

## See Also

[CREATE USER|ROLE... PROFILE MANAGEMENT CLAUSES](#)

## 9.16 CALL

### Name

`CALL`

### Synopsis

```
CALL <procedure_name> '(['<argument_list>'])'
```

### Description

Use the `CALL` statement to invoke a procedure. To use the `CALL` statement, you must have `EXECUTE` privileges on the procedure that the `CALL` statement is invoking.

### Parameters

`procedure_name`

`procedure_name` is the (optionally schema-qualified) procedure name.

`argument_list`

`argument_list` specifies a comma-separated list of arguments required by the procedure. Note that each member of `argument_list` corresponds to a formal argument expected by the procedure. Each formal argument may be an `IN` parameter, an `OUT` parameter, or an `INOUT` parameter.

#### Note

You must specify an `OUT` parameter in the `CALL` statement when calling a package function; the `OUT` parameter will act as an `INOUT` parameter during package overloading.

### Examples

The `CALL` statement may take one of several forms, depending on the arguments required by the procedure:

```
CALL update_balance();
CALL update_balance(1,2,3);
```

## 9.17 COMMENT

### Name

`COMMENT --` define or change the comment of an object

### Synopsis

```
COMMENT ON
{
  TABLE <table_name> |
  COLUMN <table_name.column_name>
```

} IS '<text>'

## Description

**COMMENT** stores a comment about a database object. To modify a comment, issue a new **COMMENT** command for the same object. Only one comment string is stored for each object. To remove a comment, specify the empty string (two consecutive single quotes with no intervening space) for **text**. Comments are automatically dropped when the object is dropped.

## Parameters

**table\_name**

The name of the table to be commented. The table name may be schema-qualified.

**table\_name.column\_name**

The name of a column within **table\_name** to be commented. The table name may be schema-qualified.

**text**

The new comment.

## Notes

There is presently no security mechanism for comments: any user connected to a database can see all the comments for objects in that database (although only superusers can change comments for objects that they don't own). **Do not put security-critical information in a comment**.

## Examples

Attach a comment to the table **emp**:

```
COMMENT ON TABLE emp IS 'Current employee information';
```

Attach a comment to the **empno** column of the **emp** table:

```
COMMENT ON COLUMN emp.empno IS 'Employee identification number';
```

Remove these comments:

```
COMMENT ON TABLE emp IS '';
COMMENT ON COLUMN emp.empno IS '';
```

---

## 9.18 COMMIT

### Name

**COMMIT** -- commit the current transaction

### Synopsis

```
COMMIT [ WORK ]
```

## Description

`COMMIT` commits the current transaction. All changes made by the transaction become visible to others and are guaranteed to be durable if a crash occurs.

## Parameters

### WORK

Optional key word - has no effect.

## Notes

Use `ROLLBACK` to abort a transaction. Issuing `COMMIT` when not inside a transaction does no harm.

### Note

Executing a `COMMIT` in a plpgsql procedure will throw an error if there is an Oracle-style SPL procedure on the runtime stack.

## Examples

To commit the current transaction and make all changes permanent:

```
COMMIT;
```

## See Also

[ROLLBACK](#), [ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT](#)

## 9.19 CREATE DATABASE

### Name

`CREATE DATABASE` -- create a new database

### Synopsis

```
CREATE DATABASE <name>
```

## Description

`CREATE DATABASE` creates a new database.

To create a database, you must be a superuser or have the special `CREATEDB` privilege. Normally, the creator becomes the owner of the new database. Non-superusers with `CREATEDB` privilege can only create databases owned by them.

The new database will be created by cloning the standard system database `template1`.

## Parameters

### name

The name of the database to be created.

## Notes

`CREATE DATABASE` cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

Errors along the line of “could not initialize database directory” are most likely related to insufficient permissions on the data directory, a full disk, or other file system problems.

## Examples

To create a new database:

```
CREATE DATABASE employees;
```

## 9.20 CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK

### Name

`CREATE [PUBLIC] DATABASE LINK` -- create a new database link.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [ PUBLIC ] DATABASE LINK <name>
  CONNECT TO { CURRENT_USER |
    <username> IDENTIFIED BY '<password>' }
  USING { postgres_fdw '<fdw_connection_string>' |
    [ oci ] '<oracle_connection_string>' }
```

### Description

`CREATE DATABASE LINK` creates a new database link. A database link is an object that allows a reference to a table or view in a remote database within a `DELETE`, `INSERT`, `SELECT` or `UPDATE` command. A database link is referenced by appending `@dblink` to the table or view name referenced in the SQL command where `dblink` is the name of the database link.

Database links can be public or private. A `public database link` is one that can be used by any user. A `private database link` can be used only by the database link's owner. Specification of the `PUBLIC` option creates a public database link. If omitted, a private database link is created.

When the `CREATE DATABASE LINK` command is given, the database link name and the given connection attributes are stored in the Advanced Server system table named, `pg_catalog.edb_dblink`. When using a given database link, the database containing the `edb_dblink` entry defining this database link is called the `local database`. The server and database whose connection attributes are defined within the `edb_dblink` entry is called the `remote database`.

A SQL command containing a reference to a database link must be issued while connected to the local database. When the SQL command is executed, the appropriate authentication and connection is made to the remote database to access the table or view to which the `@dblink` reference is appended.

**Note:** A database link cannot be used to access a remote database within a standby database server. Standby database servers are used for high availability, load balancing, and replication.

For information about high availability, load balancing, and replication for Postgres database servers, see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/high-availability.html>

**Note:** For Advanced Server 12, the `CREATE DATABASE LINK` command is tested against and certified for use with Oracle version 10g Release 2 (10.2), Oracle version 11g Release 2 (11.2), and Oracle version 12c Release 1 (12.1).

**Note:** The `edb_dblink_oci.rescans` GUC can be set to `SCROLL` or `SERIALIZABLE` at the server level in `postgresql.conf` file. It can also be set at session level using the `SET` command, but the setting will not be applied to existing dblink connections due to dblink connection caching.

The `edb_dblink_oci` supports both types of rescans: `SCROLL` and `SERIALIZABLE`. By default it is set to `SERIALIZABLE`. When set to `SERIALIZABLE`, `edb_dblink_oci` uses the `SERIALIZABLE` transaction isolation level on the Oracle side, which corresponds to PostgreSQL's `REPEATABLE READ`:

- This is necessary as a single PostgreSQL statement can lead to multiple Oracle queries and thereby uses a serializable isolation level to provide consistent results.
- A serialization failure may occur due to a table modification concurrent with long-running DML transactions (for example `ADD`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` statements). If such a failure occurs, the OCI reports `ORA-08177: can't serialize access for this transaction`, and the application must retry the transaction.
- A `SCROLL` rescan will be quick, but with each iteration will reset the current row position to `1`. A `SERIALIZABLE` rescan has performance benefits over a `SCROLL` rescan.

## Parameters

### PUBLIC

Create a public database link that can be used by any user. If omitted, then the database link is private and can only be used by the database link's owner.

### name

The name of the database link.

### username

The username to be used for connecting to the remote database.

### CURRENT\_USER

Include `CURRENT_USER` to specify that Advanced Server should use the user mapping associated with the role that is using the link when establishing a connection to the remote server.

### password

The password for `username`.

### postgres\_fdw

Specifies foreign data wrapper `postgres_fdw` as the connection to a remote Advanced Server database. If `postgres_fdw` has not been installed on the database, use the `CREATE EXTENSION` command to install `postgres_fdw`. For more information, see the `CREATE EXTENSION` command in the PostgreSQL Core documentation at: <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-createextension.html>

### fdw\_connection\_string

Specify the connection information for the `postgres_fdw` foreign data wrapper.

### oci

Specifies a connection to a remote Oracle database. This is Advanced Server's default behavior.

### oracle\_connection\_string

Specify the connection information for an oci connection.

## Notes

To create a non-public database link you must have the `CREATE DATABASE LINK` privilege. To create a public database link you must have the `CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK` privilege.

### Setting up an Oracle Instant Client for oci-dblink

In order to use oci-dblink, an Oracle instant client must be downloaded and installed on the host running the Advanced Server database in which the database link is to be created.

An instant client can be downloaded from the following site:

<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/features/instant-client/index-097480.html>

#### Oracle Instant Client for Linux

The following instructions apply to Linux hosts running Advanced Server.

Be sure the `libaio` library (the Linux-native asynchronous I/O facility) has already been installed on the Linux host running Advanced Server.

The `libaio` library can be installed with the following command:

```
yum install libaio
```

If the Oracle instant client that you've downloaded does not include the file specifically named `libclntsh.so` without a version number suffix, you must create a symbolic link named `libclntsh.so` that points to the downloaded version of the library file. Navigate to the instant client directory and execute the following command:

```
ln -s libclntsh.so.version libclntsh.so
```

Where `version` is the version number of the `libclntsh.so` library. For example:

```
ln -s libclntsh.so.12.1 libclntsh.so
```

When you are executing a SQL command that references a database link to a remote Oracle database, Advanced Server must know where the Oracle instant client library resides on the Advanced Server host.

The `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable must include the path to the Oracle client installation directory containing the `libclntsh.so` file. For example, assuming the installation directory containing `libclntsh.so` is `/tmp/instantclient`:

```
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/tmp/instantclient:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

#### Note

The `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable setting must be in effect when the `pg_ctl` utility is executed to start or restart Advanced Server.

If you are running the current session as the user account (for example, `enterprisedb`) that will directly invoke `pg_ctl` to start or restart Advanced Server, then be sure to set `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` before invoking `pg_ctl`.

You can set `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` within the `.bash_profile` file under the home directory of the `enterprisedb` user account (that is, set `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` within file `~enterprisedb/.bash_profile`). This ensures that `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` will be set when you log in as `enterprisedb`.

If you are using a Linux service script with the `systemctl` or `service` command to start or restart Advanced Server, you must set `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` so it is in effect when the script invokes the `pg_ctl` utility.

For example, to set an environment variable for Advanced Server, you can create a file named `/etc/systemd/system/edb-as-13.service`; include `/lib/systemd/system/edb-as-13.service` within the file.

Assuming the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/tmp/instantclient` you can now include the environment variable by specifying:

```
[Service]
Environment=LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/tmp/instantclient:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
Environment=ORACLE_HOME=/tmp/instantclient
```

Then, use the following command to reload `systemd`:

```
systemctl daemon-reload
```

Then, restart the Advanced Server service with the following command:

```
systemctl restart edb-as-13
```

The particular script file that needs to be modified to include the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` setting depends upon the Advanced Server version, the Linux system on which it was installed, and whether it was installed with the graphical installer or an RPM package.

See the appropriate version of the [EDB Postgres Advanced Server Installation Guide](#) to determine the service script that affects the startup environment. The installation guides can be found at the following location:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## Oracle Instant Client for Windows

The following instructions apply to Windows hosts running Advanced Server.

When you are executing a SQL command that references a database link to a remote Oracle database, Advanced Server must know where the Oracle instant client library resides on the Advanced Server host.

Set the Windows `PATH` system environment variable to include the Oracle client installation directory that contains the `oci.dll` file.

As an alternative you, can set the value of the `oracle_home` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file. The value specified in the `oracle_home` configuration parameter will override the Windows `PATH` environment variable.

To set the `oracle_home` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file, edit the file, adding the following line:

```
oracle_home = 'lib_directory'
```

Substitute the name of the Windows directory that contains `oci.dll` for `lib_directory`. For example:

```
oracle_home = 'C:/tmp/instantclient_10_2'
```

After setting the `PATH` environment variable or the `oracle_home` configuration parameter, you must restart the server for the changes to take effect. Restart the server from the Windows Services console.

### Note

If `tnsnames.ora` is configured in failover mode, and a client:server failure occurs, the client connection will be established with a secondary server (usually a backup server). Later, when the primary server resumes, the client will retain their connection to a secondary server until a new session is established. The new client connections will automatically be established with the primary server. If the primary and secondary servers are out-of-sync, then there is a possibility that the clients that have established a connection to the secondary server and the clients which later connected to the primary server can see a different database view.

## Examples

## Creating an oci-dblink Database Link

The following example demonstrates using the `CREATE DATABASE LINK` command to create a database link (named `chicago`) that connects an instance of Advanced Server to an Oracle server via an oci-dblink connection. The connection information tells Advanced Server to log in to Oracle as user `admin`, whose password is `mypassword`. Including the `oci` option tells Advanced Server that this is an oci-dblink connection; the connection string, `'//127.0.0.1/acctg'` specifies the server address and name of the database.

```
CREATE DATABASE LINK chicago
  CONNECT TO admin IDENTIFIED BY 'mypassword'
  USING oci '//127.0.0.1/acctg';
```

### Note

You can specify a hostname in the connection string (in place of an IP address).

## Creating a postgres\_fdw Database Link

The following example demonstrates using the `CREATE DATABASE LINK` command to create a database link (named `bedford`) that connects an instance of Advanced Server to another Advanced Server instance via a `postgres_fdw` foreign data wrapper connection. The connection information tells Advanced Server to log in as user `admin`, whose password is `mypassword`. Including the `postgres_fdw` option tells Advanced Server that this is a `postgres_fdw` connection; the connection string, `'host=127.0.0.1 port=5444 dbname=marketing'` specifies the server address and name of the database.

```
CREATE DATABASE LINK bedford
  CONNECT TO admin IDENTIFIED BY 'mypassword'
  USING postgres_fdw 'host=127.0.0.1 port=5444 dbname=marketing';
```

### Note

You can specify a hostname in the connection string (in place of an IP address).

## Using a Database Link

The following examples demonstrate using a database link with Advanced Server to connect to an Oracle database. The examples assume that a copy of the Advanced Server sample application's `emp` table has been created in an Oracle database and a second Advanced Server database cluster with the sample application is accepting connections at port `5443`.

Create a public database link named, `oralink`, to an Oracle database named, `xe`, located at `127.0.0.1` on port `1521`. Connect to the Oracle database with username, `edb`, and password, `password`.

```
CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK oralink CONNECT TO edb IDENTIFIED BY 'password'
  USING '//127.0.0.1:1521/xe';
```

Issue a `SELECT` command on the `emp` table in the Oracle database using database link, `oralink`.

```
SELECT * FROM emp@oralink;
```

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno
7369	SMITH	CLERK	7902	17-DEC-80 00:00:00	800		20
7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN	7698	20-FEB-81 00:00:00	1600	300	30
7521	WARD	SALESMAN	7698	22-FEB-81 00:00:00	1250	500	30
7566	JONES	MANAGER	7839	02-APR-81 00:00:00	2975		20
7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	7698	28-SEP-81 00:00:00	1250	1400	30
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	7839	01-MAY-81 00:00:00	2850		30

```

7782 | CLARK | MANAGER | 7839 | 09-JUN-81 00:00:00 | 2450 |   | 10
7788 | SCOTT | ANALYST | 7566 | 19-APR-87 00:00:00 | 3000 |   | 20
7839 | KING | PRESIDENT |    | 17-NOV-81 00:00:00 | 5000 |   | 10
7844 | TURNER | SALESMAN | 7698 | 08-SEP-81 00:00:00 | 1500 | 0 | 30
7876 | ADAMS | CLERK | 7788 | 23-MAY-87 00:00:00 | 1100 |   | 20
7900 | JAMES | CLERK | 7698 | 03-DEC-81 00:00:00 | 950 |   | 30
7902 | FORD | ANALYST | 7566 | 03-DEC-81 00:00:00 | 3000 |   | 20
7934 | MILLER | CLERK | 7782 | 23-JAN-82 00:00:00 | 1300 |   | 10
(14 rows)

```

Create a private database link named, `fdwlink`, to the Advanced Server database named, `edb`, located on host `192.168.2.22` running on port `5444`. Connect to the Advanced Server database with username, `enterprisedb`, and password, `password`.

```
CREATE DATABASE LINK fdwlink CONNECT TO enterprisedb IDENTIFIED BY
'password' USING postgres_fdw 'host=192.168.2.22 port=5444 dbname=edb';
```

Display attributes of database links, `oralink` and `fdwlink`, from the local `edb_dblink` system table:

```
SELECT llname, lnkuser, lnkconnstr FROM pg_catalog.edb_dblink;
```

lnkname	lnkuser	lnkconnstr
oralink	edb	//127.0.0.1:1521/xe
fdwlink	enterprisedb	

(2 rows)

Perform a join of the `emp` table from the Oracle database with the `dept` table from the Advanced Server database:

```
SELECT d.deptno, d.dname, e.empno, e.ename, e.job, e.sal, e.comm FROM
emp@oralink e, dept@fdwlink d WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno ORDER BY 1, 3;
```

deptno	dname	empno	ename	job	sal	comm
10	ACCOUNTING	7782	CLARK	MANAGER	2450	
10	ACCOUNTING	7839	KING	PRESIDENT	5000	
10	ACCOUNTING	7934	MILLER	CLERK	1300	
20	RESEARCH	7369	SMITH	CLERK	800	
20	RESEARCH	7566	JONES	MANAGER	2975	
20	RESEARCH	7788	SCOTT	ANALYST	3000	
20	RESEARCH	7876	ADAMS	CLERK	1100	
20	RESEARCH	7902	FORD	ANALYST	3000	
30	SALES	7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN	1600	300
30	SALES	7521	WARD	SALESMAN	1250	500
30	SALES	7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	1250	1400
30	SALES	7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	2850	
30	SALES	7844	TURNER	SALESMAN	1500	0
30	SALES	7900	JAMES	CLERK	950	

(14 rows)

## Pushdown for an oci Database Link

When the oci-dblink is used to execute SQL statements on a remote Oracle database, there are certain circumstances where pushdown of the processing occurs on the foreign server.

**Pushdown** refers to the occurrence of processing on the foreign (that is, the remote) server instead of the local

client where the SQL statement was issued. Pushdown can result in performance improvement since the data is processed on the remote server before being returned to the local client.

Pushdown applies to statements with the standard SQL join operations (inner join, left outer join, right outer join, and full outer join). Pushdown still occurs even when a sort is specified on the resulting data set.

In order for pushdown to occur, certain basic conditions must be met. The tables involved in the join operation must belong to the same foreign server and use the identical connection information to the foreign server (that is, the same database link defined with the `CREATE DATABASE LINK` command).

In order to determine if pushdown is to be used for a SQL statement, display the execution plan by using the `EXPLAIN` command.

For information about the `EXPLAIN` command, see the PostgreSQL Core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-explain.html>

The following examples use the database link created as shown by the following:

```
CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK oralink CONNECT TO edb IDENTIFIED BY 'password'
USING '//192.168.2.23:1521/xe';
```

The following example shows the execution plan of an inner join:

```
EXPLAIN (verbose,costs off) SELECT d.deptno, d.dname, e.empno, e.ename FROM
dept@oralink d, emp@oralink e WHERE d.deptno = e.deptno ORDER BY 1, 3;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

---

##### Foreign Scan

Output: d.deptno, d.dname, e.empno, e.ename

Relations: (\_dblink\_dept\_1 d) INNER JOIN (\_dblink\_emp\_2 e)

Remote Query: SELECT r1.deptno, r1.dname, r2.empno, r2.ename FROM (dept
r1 INNER JOIN emp r2 ON ((r1.deptno = r2.deptno))) ORDER BY r1.deptno
ASC NULLS LAST, r2.empno ASC NULLS LAST

(4 rows)

Note that the `INNER JOIN` operation occurs under the Foreign Scan section. The output of this join is the following:

deptno	dname	empno	ename
10	ACCOUNTING	7782	CLARK
10	ACCOUNTING	7839	KING
10	ACCOUNTING	7934	MILLER
20	RESEARCH	7369	SMITH
20	RESEARCH	7566	JONES
20	RESEARCH	7788	SCOTT
20	RESEARCH	7876	ADAMS
20	RESEARCH	7902	FORD
30	SALES	7499	ALLEN
30	SALES	7521	WARD
30	SALES	7654	MARTIN
30	SALES	7698	BLAKE
30	SALES	7844	TURNER
30	SALES	7900	JAMES

(14 rows)

The following shows the execution plan of a left outer join:

```
EXPLAIN (verbose,costs off) SELECT d.deptno, d.dname, e.empno, e.ename FROM
dept@oralink d LEFT OUTER JOIN emp@oralink e ON d.deptno = e.deptno ORDER
BY 1, 3;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

---

Foreign Scan

Output: d.deptno, d.dname, e.empno, e.ename

Relations: (\_dblink\_dept\_1 d) LEFT JOIN (\_dblink\_emp\_2 e)

Remote Query: SELECT r1.deptno, r1.dname, r2.empno, r2.ename FROM (dept
r1 LEFT JOIN emp r2 ON ((r1.deptno = r2.deptno))) ORDER BY r1.deptno ASC
NULLS LAST, r2.empno ASC NULLS LAST

(4 rows)

The output of this join is the following:

deptno	dname	empno	ename
10	ACCOUNTING	7782	CLARK
10	ACCOUNTING	7839	KING
10	ACCOUNTING	7934	MILLER
20	RESEARCH	7369	SMITH
20	RESEARCH	7566	JONES
20	RESEARCH	7788	SCOTT
20	RESEARCH	7876	ADAMS
20	RESEARCH	7902	FORD
30	SALES	7499	ALLEN
30	SALES	7521	WARD
30	SALES	7654	MARTIN
30	SALES	7698	BLAKE
30	SALES	7844	TURNER
30	SALES	7900	JAMES
40	OPERATIONS		

(15 rows)

The following example shows a case where the entire processing is not pushed down because the `emp` joined table resides locally instead of on the same foreign server.

```
EXPLAIN (verbose,costs off) SELECT d.deptno, d.dname, e.empno, e.ename FROM
dept@oralink d LEFT OUTER JOIN emp e ON d.deptno = e.deptno ORDER BY 1, 3;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

---

Sort

Output: d.deptno, d.dname, e.empno, e.ename

Sort Key: d.deptno, e.empno

-> Hash Left Join

Output: d.deptno, d.dname, e.empno, e.ename

Hash Cond: (d.deptno = e.deptno)

-> Foreign Scan on \_dblink\_dept\_1 d

Output: d.deptno, d.dname, d.loc

Remote Query: SELECT deptno, dname, NULL FROM dept

-> Hash

```

Output: e.empno, e.ename, e.deptno
-> Seq Scan on public.emp e
      Output: e.empno, e.ename, e.deptno
(13 rows)

```

The output of this join is the same as the previous left outer join example.

## Creating a Foreign Table from a Database Link

### Note

The procedure described in this section is not compatible with Oracle databases.

After you have created a database link, you can create a foreign table based upon this database link. The foreign table can then be used to access the remote table referencing it with the foreign table name instead of using the database link syntax. Using the database link requires appending `@dblink` to the table or view name referenced in the SQL command where `dblink` is the name of the database link.

This technique can be used for either an oci-dblink connection for remote Oracle access, or a `postgres_fdw` connection for remote Postgres access.

The following example shows the creation of a foreign table to access a remote Oracle table.

First, create a database link as previously described. The following is the creation of a database link named `oralink` for connecting to the Oracle database.

```

CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK oralink CONNECT TO edb IDENTIFIED BY 'password'
USING '//127.0.0.1:1521/xe';

```

The following query shows the database link:

```
SELECT lnkname, lnkuser, lnkconnstr FROM pg_catalog.edb_dblink;
```

lnkname	lnkuser	lnkconnstr
oralink	edb	//127.0.0.1:1521/xe

(1 row)

When you create the database link, Advanced Server creates a corresponding foreign server. The following query displays the foreign server:

```

SELECT srvname, srvowner, srvid, srvtpe, srvoptions FROM
pg_foreign_server;

srvname | srvowner | srvid | srvtpe | srvoptions
-----+-----+-----+-----+
oralink | 10 | 14005 | {connstr=/127.0.0.1:1521/xe}
(1 row)

```

For more information about foreign servers, see the `CREATE SERVER` command in the PostgreSQL Core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-createserver.html>

Create the foreign table as shown by the following:

```

CREATE FOREIGN TABLE emp_ora (
    empno      NUMERIC(4),
    ename      VARCHAR(10),

```

```

job      VARCHAR(9),
mgr      NUMERIC(4),
hiredate  TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE,
sal      NUMERIC(7,2),
comm      NUMERIC(7,2),
deptno    NUMERIC(2)
)
SERVER oralink
OPTIONS (table_name 'emp', schema_name 'edb'
);

```

Note the following in the `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` command:

- The name specified in the `SERVER` clause at the end of the `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` command is the name of the foreign server, which is `oralink` in this example as displayed in the `srvname` column from the query on `pg_foreign_server`.
- The table name and schema name are specified in the `OPTIONS` clause by the `table` and `schema` options.
- The column names specified in the `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` command must match the column names in the remote table.
- Generally, `CONSTRAINT` clauses may not be accepted or enforced on the foreign table as they are assumed to have been defined on the remote table.

For more information about the `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` command, see the PostgreSQL Core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-createforeigntable.html>

The following is a query on the foreign table:

```

SELECT * FROM emp_ora;

empno | ename | job | mgr | hiredate | sal | comm
| deptno
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+
7369 | SMITH | CLERK | 7902 | 17-DEC-80 00:00:00 | 800.00 |
| 20
7499 | ALLEN | SALESMAN | 7698 | 20-FEB-81 00:00:00 | 1600.00 | 300.00
| 30
7521 | WARD | SALESMAN | 7698 | 22-FEB-81 00:00:00 | 1250.00 | 500.00
| 30
7566 | JONES | MANAGER | 7839 | 02-APR-81 00:00:00 | 2975.00 |
| 20
7654 | MARTIN | SALESMAN | 7698 | 28-SEP-81 00:00:00 | 1250.00 | 1400.00
| 30
7698 | BLAKE | MANAGER | 7839 | 01-MAY-81 00:00:00 | 2850.00 |
| 30
7782 | CLARK | MANAGER | 7839 | 09-JUN-81 00:00:00 | 2450.00 |
| 10
7788 | SCOTT | ANALYST | 7566 | 19-APR-87 00:00:00 | 3000.00 |
| 20
7839 | KING | PRESIDENT |  | 17-NOV-81 00:00:00 | 5000.00 |
| 10
7844 | TURNER | SALESMAN | 7698 | 08-SEP-81 00:00:00 | 1500.00 | 0.00
| 30
7876 | ADAMS | CLERK | 7788 | 23-MAY-87 00:00:00 | 1100.00 |
| 20

```

```
7900 | JAMES | CLERK | 7698 | 03-DEC-81 00:00:00 | 950.00 |
| 30
7902 | FORD | ANALYST | 7566 | 03-DEC-81 00:00:00 | 3000.00 |
| 20
7934 | MILLER | CLERK | 7782 | 23-JAN-82 00:00:00 | 1300.00 |
| 10
(14 rows)
```

In contrast, the following is a query on the same remote table, but using the database link instead of the foreign table:

```
SELECT * FROM emp@oralink;

empno | ename | job | mgr | hiredate | sal | comm | deptno
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
-- 
7369 | SMITH | CLERK | 7902 | 17-DEC-80 00:00:00 | 800 | | 20
7499 | ALLEN | SALESMAN | 7698 | 20-FEB-81 00:00:00 | 1600 | 300 | 30
7521 | WARD | SALESMAN | 7698 | 22-FEB-81 00:00:00 | 1250 | 500 | 30
7566 | JONES | MANAGER | 7839 | 02-APR-81 00:00:00 | 2975 | | 20
7654 | MARTIN | SALESMAN | 7698 | 28-SEP-81 00:00:00 | 1250 | 1400 | 30
7698 | BLAKE | MANAGER | 7839 | 01-MAY-81 00:00:00 | 2850 | | 30
7782 | CLARK | MANAGER | 7839 | 09-JUN-81 00:00:00 | 2450 | | 10
7788 | SCOTT | ANALYST | 7566 | 19-APR-87 00:00:00 | 3000 | | 20
7839 | KING | PRESIDENT | | 17-NOV-81 00:00:00 | 5000 | | 10
7844 | TURNER | SALESMAN | 7698 | 08-SEP-81 00:00:00 | 1500 | 0 | 30
7876 | ADAMS | CLERK | 7788 | 23-MAY-87 00:00:00 | 1100 | | 20
7900 | JAMES | CLERK | 7698 | 03-DEC-81 00:00:00 | 950 | | 30
7902 | FORD | ANALYST | 7566 | 03-DEC-81 00:00:00 | 3000 | | 20
7934 | MILLER | CLERK | 7782 | 23-JAN-82 00:00:00 | 1300 | | 10
(14 rows)
```

## Note

For backward compatibility reasons, it is still possible to write `USING libpq` rather than `USING postgres_fdw`. However, the `libpq` connector is missing many important optimizations which are present in the `postgres_fdw` connector. Therefore, the `postgres_fdw` connector should be used whenever possible. The `libpq` option is deprecated and may be removed entirely in a future Advanced Server release.

## See Also

[DROP DATABASE LINK](#)

## 9.21 CREATE DIRECTORY

### Name

`CREATE DIRECTORY` -- create an alias for a file system directory path

### Synopsis

```
CREATE DIRECTORY <name> AS '<pathname>'
```

## Description

The `CREATE DIRECTORY` command creates an alias for a file system directory pathname. You must be a database superuser to use this command.

When the alias is specified as the appropriate parameter to the programs of the `UTL_FILE` package, the operating system files are created in, or accessed from the directory corresponding to the given alias.

## Parameters

### `name`

The directory alias name.

### `pathname`

The fully-qualified directory path represented by the alias name. The `CREATE DIRECTORY` command does not create the operating system directory. The physical directory must be created independently using the appropriate operating system commands.

## Notes

The operating system user id, `enterprisedb`, must have the appropriate read and/or write privileges on the directory if the `UTL_FILE` package is to be used to create and/or read files using the directory.

The directory alias is stored in the `pg_catalog.edb_dir` system catalog table. Note that `edb_dir` is not a table compatible with Oracle databases.

The directory alias can also be viewed from the Oracle catalog views `SYS.ALL_DIRECTORIES` and `SYS.DBA_DIRECTORIES`, which are compatible with Oracle databases.

Use the `DROP DIRECTORY` command to delete the directory alias. When a directory alias is deleted, the corresponding physical file system directory is not affected. The file system directory must be deleted using the appropriate operating system commands.

In a Linux system, the directory name separator is a forward slash `(/)`.

In a Windows system, the directory name separator can be specified as a forward slash `(/)` or two consecutive backslashes `(\\)`.

## Examples

Create an alias named `empdir` for directory `/tmp/empdir` on Linux:

```
CREATE DIRECTORY empdir AS '/tmp/empdir';
```

Create an alias named `empdir` for directory `C:\TEMP\EMPDIR` on Windows:

```
CREATE DIRECTORY empdir AS 'C:/TEMP/EMPDIR';
```

View all of the directory aliases:

```
SELECT * FROM pg_catalog.edb_dir;
```

dirname	diowner	dirpath	diracl
empdir	10	C:/TEMP/EMPDIR	

(1 row)

View the directory aliases using a view compatible with Oracle databases:

```
SELECT * FROM SYS.ALL_DIRECTORIES;
```

owner	directory_name	directory_path
ENTERPRISEDB	EMPDIR	C:/TEMP/EMPDIR

(1 row)

## See Also

[ALTER DIRECTORY](#), [DROP DIRECTORY](#)

## 9.22 CREATE FUNCTION

### Name

**CREATE FUNCTION** -- define a new function

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] FUNCTION <name> [ (<parameters>) ]
  RETURN <data_type>
  [
    IMMUTABLE
    | STABLE
    | VOLATILE
    | DETERMINISTIC
    | [ NOT ] LEAKPROOF
    | CALLED ON NULL INPUT
    | RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT
    | STRICT
    | [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER
    | [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER
    | AUTHID DEFINER
    | AUTHID CURRENT_USER
    | PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }
    | COST <execution_cost>
    | ROWS <result_rows>
    | SET configuration_parameter
      { TO <value> | = <value> | FROM CURRENT }
    ...
  ]
  { IS | AS }
  [ PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION; ]
  [ <declarations> ]
BEGIN
<statements>
END [ <name> ];
```

### Description

**CREATE FUNCTION** defines a new function. **CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION** will either create a new function, or replace an existing definition.

If a schema name is included, then the function is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the new function must not match any existing function with the same input argument types in the same schema. However, functions of different input argument types may share a name (this is called **overloading**). (Overloading of functions is an Advanced Server feature - overloading of stored, standalone functions is not compatible with Oracle databases.)

To update the definition of an existing function, use **CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION**. It is not possible to change the name or argument types of a function this way (if you tried, you would actually be creating a new, distinct function). Also, **CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION** will not let you change the return type of an existing function. To do that, you must drop and recreate the function. Also when using **OUT** parameters, you cannot change the types of any **OUT** parameters except by dropping the function.

The user that creates the function becomes the owner of the function.

## Parameters

### **name**

**name** is the identifier of the function.

### **parameters**

**parameters** is a list of formal parameters.

### **data\_type**

**data\_type** is the data type of the value returned by the function's **RETURN** statement.

### **declarations**

**declarations** are variable, cursor, type, or subprogram declarations. If subprogram declarations are included, they must be declared after all other variable, cursor, and type declarations.

### **statements**

**statements** are SPL program statements (the **BEGIN - END** block may contain an **EXCEPTION** section).

### **IMMUTABLE**

### **STABLE**

### **VOLATILE**

These attributes inform the query optimizer about the behavior of the function; you can specify only one choice. **VOLATILE** is the default behavior.

**IMMUTABLE** indicates that the function cannot modify the database and always reaches the same result when given the same argument values; it does not do database lookups or otherwise use information not directly present in its argument list. If you include this clause, any call of the function with all-constant arguments can be immediately replaced with the function value.

**STABLE** indicates that the function cannot modify the database, and that within a single table scan, it will consistently return the same result for the same argument values, but that its result could change across SQL statements. This is the appropriate selection for function that depend on database lookups, parameter variables (such as the current time zone), etc.

**VOLATILE** indicates that the function value can change even within a single table scan, so no optimizations can be made. Please note that any function that has side-effects must be classified volatile, even if its result is quite predictable, to prevent calls from being optimized away.

### **DETERMINISTIC**

**DETERMINISTIC** is a synonym for **IMMUTABLE**. A **DETERMINISTIC** function cannot modify the database and always reaches the same result when given the same argument values; it does not do database lookups or otherwise use information not directly present in its argument list. If you include this clause, any call of the function with all-constant arguments can be immediately replaced with the function value.

#### [ NOT ] LEAKPROOF

A **LEAKPROOF** function has no side effects, and reveals no information about the values used to call the function.

#### CALLED ON NULL INPUT

#### RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT

#### STRICT

**CALLED ON NULL INPUT** (the default) indicates that the procedure will be called normally when some of its arguments are **NULL**. It is the author's responsibility to check for **NULL** values if necessary and respond appropriately.

**RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT** or **STRICT** indicates that the procedure always returns **NULL** whenever any of its arguments are **NULL**. If these clauses are specified, the procedure is not executed when there are **NULL** arguments; instead a **NULL** result is assumed automatically.

#### [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER

**SECURITY DEFINER** specifies that the function will execute with the privileges of the user that created it; this is the default. The key word **EXTERNAL** is allowed for SQL conformance, but is optional.

#### [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER

The **SECURITY INVOKER** clause indicates that the function will execute with the privileges of the user that calls it. The key word **EXTERNAL** is allowed for SQL conformance, but is optional.

#### AUTHID DEFINER

#### AUTHID CURRENT\_USER

The **AUTHID DEFINER** clause is a synonym for **[EXTERNAL] SECURITY DEFINER**. If the **AUTHID** clause is omitted or if **AUTHID DEFINER** is specified, the rights of the function owner are used to determine access privileges to database objects.

The **AUTHID CURRENT\_USER** clause is a synonym for **[EXTERNAL] SECURITY INVOKER**. If **AUTHID CURRENT\_USER** is specified, the rights of the current user executing the function are used to determine access privileges.

#### PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }

The **PARALLEL** clause enables the use of parallel sequential scans (parallel mode). A parallel sequential scan uses multiple workers to scan a relation in parallel during a query in contrast to a serial sequential scan.

When set to **UNSAFE**, the function cannot be executed in parallel mode. The presence of such a function in a SQL statement forces a serial execution plan. This is the default setting if the **PARALLEL** clause is omitted.

When set to **RESTRICTED**, the function can be executed in parallel mode, but the execution is restricted to the parallel group leader. If the qualification for any particular relation has anything that is parallel restricted, that relation won't be chosen for parallelism.

When set to **SAFE**, the function can be executed in parallel mode with no restriction.

#### COST execution\_cost

`execution_cost` is a positive number giving the estimated execution cost for the function, in units of `cpu_operator_cost`. If the function returns a set, this is the cost per returned row. Larger values cause the planner to try to avoid evaluating the function more often than necessary.

## ROWS result\_rows

`result_rows` is a positive number giving the estimated number of rows that the planner should expect the function to return. This is only allowed when the function is declared to return a set. The default assumption is `1000` rows.

## SET configuration\_parameter { TO value | = value | FROM CURRENT }

The `SET` clause causes the specified configuration parameter to be set to the specified value when the function is entered, and then restored to its prior value when the function exits. `SET FROM CURRENT` saves the session's current value of the parameter as the value to be applied when the function is entered.

If a `SET` clause is attached to a function, then the effects of a `SET LOCAL` command executed inside the function for the same variable are restricted to the function; the configuration parameter's prior value is restored at function exit. An ordinary `SET` command (without `LOCAL`) overrides the `SET` clause, much as it would do for a previous `SET LOCAL` command, with the effects of such a command persisting after procedure exit, unless the current transaction is rolled back.

## PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION

`PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION` is the directive that sets the function as an autonomous transaction.

### Note

The `STRICT`, `LEAKPROOF`, `PARALLEL`, `COST`, `ROWS` and `SET` keywords provide extended functionality for Advanced Server and are not supported by Oracle.

### Notes

Advanced Server allows function overloading; that is, the same name can be used for several different functions so long as they have distinct input (`IN`, `IN OUT`) argument data types.

### Examples

The function `emp_comp` takes two numbers as input and returns a computed value. The `SELECT` command illustrates use of the function.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION emp_comp (
    p_sal      NUMBER,
    p_comm     NUMBER
) RETURN NUMBER
IS
BEGIN
    RETURN (p_sal + NVL(p_comm, 0)) * 24;
END;
```

```
SELECT ename "Name", sal "Salary", comm "Commission", emp_comp(sal, comm)
    "Total Compensation" FROM emp;
```

Name	Salary	Commission	Total Compensation
SMITH	800.00		19200.00
ALLEN	1600.00	300.00	45600.00
WARD	1250.00	500.00	42000.00
JONES	2975.00		71400.00

MARTIN	1250.00	1400.00	63600.00
BLAKE	2850.00		68400.00
CLARK	2450.00		58800.00
SCOTT	3000.00		72000.00
KING	5000.00		120000.00
TURNER	1500.00	0.00	36000.00
ADAMS	1100.00		26400.00
JAMES	950.00		22800.00
FORD	3000.00		72000.00
MILLER	1300.00		31200.00

(14 rows)

Function `sal_range` returns a count of the number of employees whose salary falls in the specified range. The following anonymous block calls the function a number of times using the arguments' default values for the first two calls.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION sal_range (
    p_sal_min      NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
    p_sal_max      NUMBER DEFAULT 10000
) RETURN INTEGER
IS
    v_count      INTEGER;
BEGIN
    SELECT COUNT(*) INTO v_count FROM emp
        WHERE sal BETWEEN p_sal_min AND p_sal_max;
    RETURN v_count;
END;

BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Number of employees with a salary: ' ||
        sal_range);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Number of employees with a salary of at least ' ||
        || '$2000.00: ' || sal_range(2000.00));
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Number of employees with a salary between ' ||
        || '$2000.00 and $3000.00: ' || sal_range(2000.00, 3000.00));
END;

```

Number of employees with a salary: 14  
Number of employees with a salary of at least \$2000.00: 6  
Number of employees with a salary between \$2000.00 and \$3000.00: 5

The following example demonstrates using the `AUTHID CURRENT_USER` clause and `STRICT` keyword in a function declaration:

```

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION dept_salaries(dept_id int) RETURN NUMBER
    STRICT
    AUTHID CURRENT_USER
BEGIN
    RETURN QUERY (SELECT sum(salary) FROM emp WHERE deptno = id);
END;

```

Include the `STRICT` keyword to instruct the server to return `NULL` if any input parameter passed is `NULL`; if a `NULL` value is passed, the function will not execute.

The `dept_salaries` function executes with the privileges of the role that is calling the function. If the current user does not have sufficient privileges to perform the `SELECT` statement querying the `emp` table (to display

employee salaries), the function will report an error. To instruct the server to use the privileges associated with the role that defined the function, replace the `AUTHID CURRENT_USER` clause with the `AUTHID DEFINER` clause.

## Other Pragmas (declared within a package specification)

### `PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES`

Advanced Server accepts but ignores syntax referencing `PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES`.

## See Also

[DROP FUNCTION](#)

## 9.23 CREATE INDEX

### Name

`CREATE INDEX` -- define a new index

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [ UNIQUE ] INDEX <name> ON <table>
( { <column> | ( <expression> ) | <constant> } )
[ TABLESPACE <tablespace> ]
( { NOPARALLEL | PARALLEL [ <integer> ] } )
```

### Description

`CREATE INDEX` constructs an index, `name`, on the specified table. Indexes are primarily used to enhance database performance (though inappropriate use will result in slower performance).

The key field(s) for the index are specified as column names, constants, or as expressions written in parentheses. Multiple fields can be specified to create multicolumn indexes.

An index field can be an expression computed from the values of one or more columns of the table row. This feature can be used to obtain fast access to data based on some transformation of the basic data. For example, an index computed on `UPPER(col)` would allow the clause `WHERE UPPER(col) = 'JIM'` to use an index.

Advanced Server provides the B-tree index method. The B-tree index method is an implementation of Lehman-Yao high-concurrency B-trees.

Indexes are not used for `IS NULL` clauses by default.

All functions and operators used in an index definition must be "immutable", that is, their results must depend only on their arguments and never on any outside influence (such as the contents of another table or the current time). This restriction ensures that the behavior of the index is well-defined. To use a user-defined function in an index expression remember to mark the function immutable when you create it.

If you create an index on a partitioned table, the `CREATE INDEX` command does propagate indexes to the table's subpartitions.

The `PARALLEL` clause specifies the degree of parallelism used during the creation of an index. The `NOPARALLEL` clause resets the parallelism to the default value; `reloptions` will show the `parallel_workers` parameter as `0`.

### Note

If you use the `CREATE INDEX... PARALLEL` command to create an index on a table whose definition included the `PARALLEL` clause (at creation), the server will use the `PARALLEL` clause provided with the `CREATE INDEX` command when building a parallel index.

## Parameters

### UNIQUE

Causes the system to check for duplicate values in the table when the index is created (if data already exist) and each time data is added. Attempts to insert or update data which would result in duplicate entries will generate an error.

### name

The name of the index to be created. No schema name can be included here; the index is always created in the same schema as its parent table.

### table

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of the table to be indexed.

### column

The name of a column in the table.

### expression

An expression based on one or more columns of the table. The expression usually must be written with surrounding parentheses, as shown in the syntax. However, the parentheses may be omitted if the expression has the form of a function call.

### constant

A constant value that can be used as an index key.

Normally, a row where all indexed columns are NULL is not included in an index. That means that the optimizer cannot use that index for certain queries. To overcome this limitation, you can add a constant to the index, thereby forcing the index to never contain a row where all index columns are NULL.

### tablespace

The tablespace in which to create the index. If not specified, `default_tablespace` is used, or the database's default tablespace if `default_tablespace` is an empty string.

### PARALLEL

Specify `PARALLEL` to select a degree of parallelism; set `parallel_workers` parameter equal to the degree of parallelism to create a parallelized index. Alternatively, if you specify `PARALLEL` but no degree of parallelism is listed, an index accepts default parallelism.

### NOPARALLEL

Specify `NOPARALLEL` for default execution.

### integer

The `integer` indicates the degree of parallelism, which is a number of `parallel_workers` used in the parallel operation to perform a parallel scan on an index.

## Notes

Up to 32 fields may be specified in a multicolumn index.

## Examples

To create a B-tree index on the column, `ename`, in the table, `emp`:

```
CREATE INDEX name_idx ON emp (ename);
```

To create the same index as above, but have it reside in the `index_tblspc` tablespace:

```
CREATE INDEX name_idx ON emp (ename) TABLESPACE index_tblspc;
```

You can include a constant value in the index definition (`1`) to create an index that never contains a row where all of the indexed columns are `NULL`:

```
CREATE INDEX emp_dob_idx on emp (emp_dob, 1);
```

To create an index on `name_idx` in the table `emp` with degree of parallelism set to 7:

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX name_idx ON emp (ename) PARALLEL 7;
```

## See Also

[ALTER INDEX](#), [DROP INDEX](#)

## 9.24 CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW

### Name

`CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW` -- define a new materialized view

### Synopsis

```
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW <name>
[<build_clause>][<create_mv_refresh>] AS subquery
```

Where `<build_clause>` is:

```
BUILD {IMMEDIATE | DEFERRED}
```

Where `<create_mv_refresh>` is:

```
REFRESH [COMPLETE] [ON DEMAND]``
```

### Description

`CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW` defines a view of a query that is not updated each time the view is referenced in a query. By default, the view is populated when the view is created; you can include the `BUILD DEFERRED` keywords to delay the population of the view.

A materialized view may be schema-qualified; if you specify a schema name when invoking the `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW` command, the view will be created in the specified schema. The view name must be distinct from the name of any other view, table, sequence, or index in the same schema.

### Parameters

**name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a view to be created.

**subquery**

A `SELECT` statement that specifies the contents of the view. Refer to `SELECT` for more information about valid queries.

**build\_clause**

Include a `build clause` to specify when the view should be populated. Specify `BUILD IMMEDIATE`, or `BUILD DEFERRED`:

- `BUILD IMMEDIATE` instructs the server to populate the view immediately. This is the default behavior.
- `BUILD DEFERRED` instructs the server to populate the view at a later time (during a `REFRESH` operation).

**create\_mv\_refresh**

Include the `create_mv_refresh` clause to specify when the contents of a materialized view should be updated. The clause contains the `REFRESH` keyword followed by `COMPLETE` and/or `ON DEMAND`, where:

- `COMPLETE` instructs the server to discard the current content and reload the materialized view by executing the view's defining query when the materialized view is refreshed.
- `ON DEMAND` instructs the server to refresh the materialized view on demand by calling the `DBMS_MVIEW` package or by calling the Postgres `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` statement. This is the default behavior.

**Notes**

Materialized views are read only - the server will not allow an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` on a view.

Access to tables referenced in the view is determined by permissions of the view owner; the user of a view must have permissions to call all functions used by the view.

For more information about the Postgres `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` command, see the PostgreSQL Core Documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-refreshmaterializedview.html>

**Examples**

The following statement creates a materialized view named `dept_30`:

```
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW dept_30 BUILD IMMEDIATE AS SELECT * FROM emp
WHERE deptno = 30;
```

The view contains information retrieved from the `emp` table about any employee that works in department `30`.

## 9.25 CREATE PACKAGE

**Name**

**CREATE PACKAGE** -- define a new package specification

## Synopsis

```

CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] PACKAGE <name>
[ AUTHID { DEFINER | CURRENT_USER } ]
{ IS | AS }
[ <declaration>; [, ...] ]
[ { PROCEDURE <proc_name>
  [ (<argname> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <argtype> [ DEFAULT value ]
    [, ...]) ];
  [ PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES(<name>,
    { RNDS | RNPS | TRUST | WNDS | WNPS } [, ... ]); ]
}
| FUNCTION <func_name>
[ (<argname> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <argtype> [ DEFAULT value ]
  [, ...]) ]
RETURN <rettype> [ DETERMINISTIC ];
[ PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES(<name>,
  { RNDS | RNPS | TRUST | WNDS | WNPS } [, ... ]); ]
}
[, ...]
END [ <name> ]

```

## Description

**CREATE PACKAGE** defines a new package specification. **CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE** will either create a new package specification, or replace an existing specification.

If a schema name is included, then the package is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the new package must not match any existing package in the same schema unless the intent is to update the definition of an existing package, in which case use **CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE**.

The user that creates the procedure becomes the owner of the package.

## Parameters

**name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the package to create.

**DEFINER | CURRENT\_USER**

Specifies whether the privileges of the package owner (**DEFINER**) or the privileges of the current user executing a program in the package (**CURRENT\_USER**) are to be used to determine whether or not access is allowed to database objects referenced in the package. **DEFINER** is the default.

**declaration**

A public variable, type, cursor, or **REF CURSOR** declaration.

**proc\_name**

The name of a public procedure.

**argname**

The name of an argument.

**IN | IN OUT | OUT**

The argument mode.

**argtype**

The data type(s) of the program's arguments.

**DEFAULT value**

Default value of an input argument.

**func\_name**

The name of a public function.

**rettype**

The return data type.

**DETERMINISTIC**

**DETERMINISTIC** is a synonym for **IMMUTABLE**. A **DETERMINISTIC** procedure cannot modify the database and always reaches the same result when given the same argument values; it does not do database lookups or otherwise use information not directly present in its argument list. If you include this clause, any call of the procedure with all-constant arguments can be immediately replaced with the procedure value.

**RNDS | RNPS | TRUST | WNDS | WNPS**

The keywords are accepted for compatibility and ignored.

**Examples**

The package specification, **empinfo**, contains three public components - a public variable, a public procedure, and a public function.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE empinfo
IS
    emp_name      VARCHAR2(10);
    PROCEDURE get_name (
        p_empno   NUMBER
    );
    FUNCTION display_counter
    RETURN INTEGER;
END;
```

**See Also**

[DROP PACKAGE](#)

**9.26 CREATE PACKAGE BODY****Name**

**CREATE PACKAGE BODY** – define a new package body

## Synopsis

```

CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] PACKAGE BODY <name>
{ IS | AS }
[ declaration; ] | [ forward_declaration ] [, ...]
[ { PROCEDURE <proc_name>
  [ (<argname> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <argtype> [ DEFAULT <value> ] [,,
  ...]) ]
  [ STRICT ]
  [ LEAKPROOF ]
  [ PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE } ]
  [ COST <execution_cost> ]
  [ ROWS <result_rows> ]
  [ SET <config_param> { TO <value> | = <value> | FROM CURRENT } ]
  { IS | AS }
    <program_body>
  END [ <proc_name> ];
}
|
FUNCTION <func_name>
[ (<argname> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <argtype> [ DEFAULT <value> ] [,,
...]) ]
RETURN <rettype> [ DETERMINISTIC ]
[ STRICT ]
[ LEAKPROOF ]
[ PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE } ]
[ COST <execution_cost> ]
[ ROWS <result_rows> ]
[ SET <config_param> { TO <value> | = <value> | FROM CURRENT } ]
{ IS | AS }
  <program_body>
END [ <func_name> ];
}
[, ...]
[BEGIN
<statement>; [, ...]]
END [ <name> ]

```

Where forward\_declaration:=

```

[ { PROCEDURE <proc_name>
  [ (<argname> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <argtype> [ DEFAULT <value> ] [, ...])
  ] ; ]
|
[ { FUNCTION <func_name>
  [ (<argname> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <argtype> [ DEFAULT <value> ] [, ...])
  ] ;
  RETURN <rettype> [ DETERMINISTIC ]; ]

```

## Description

**CREATE PACKAGE BODY** defines a new package body. **CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY** will either create a new package body, or replace an existing body.

If a schema name is included, then the package body is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the new package body must match an existing package specification in the

same schema. The new package body name must not match any existing package body in the same schema unless the intent is to update the definition of an existing package body, in which case use `CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY`.

## Parameters

### `name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the package body to create.

### `declaration`

A private variable, type, cursor, or `REF CURSOR` declaration.

### `forward_declaration`

The forward declaration of a procedure or function appears within a package body and is declared in advance of the actual body definition. In a block, you can create multiple subprograms; if they invoke each other, each one requires a forward declaration. A subprogram must be declared before it can be invoked. You can use a forward declaration to declare a subprogram without defining it. The forward declaration and its corresponding definition must reside in the same block.

### `proc_name`

The name of a public or private procedure. If `proc_name` exists in the package specification with an identical signature, then it is public, otherwise it is private.

### `argname`

The name of an argument.

### `IN | IN OUT | OUT`

The argument mode.

### `argtype`

The data type(s) of the program's arguments.

### `DEFAULT value`

Default value of an input argument.

### `STRICT`

The `STRICT` keyword specifies that the function will not be executed if called with a `NULL` argument; instead the function will return `NULL`.

### `LEAKPROOF`

The `LEAKPROOF` keyword specifies that the function will not reveal any information about arguments, other than through a return value.

### `PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }`

The `PARALLEL` clause enables the use of parallel sequential scans (parallel mode). A parallel sequential scan uses multiple workers to scan a relation in parallel during a query in contrast to a serial sequential scan.

When set to `UNSAFE`, the procedure or function cannot be executed in parallel mode. The presence of such a procedure or function forces a serial execution plan. This is the default setting if the `PARALLEL` clause is omitted.

When set to `RESTRICTED`, the procedure or function can be executed in parallel mode, but the execution is restricted to the parallel group leader. If the qualification for any particular relation has anything that is parallel restricted, that relation won't be chosen for parallelism.

When set to `SAFE`, the procedure or function can be executed in parallel mode with no restriction.

#### `execution_cost`

`execution_cost` specifies a positive number giving the estimated execution cost for the function, in units of `cpu_operator_cost`. If the function returns a set, this is the cost per returned row. The default is `0.0025`.

#### `result_rows`

`result_rows` is the estimated number of rows that the query planner should expect the function to return. The default is `1000`.

#### `SET`

Use the `SET` clause to specify a parameter value for the duration of the function:

`config_param` specifies the parameter name.

`value` specifies the parameter value.

`FROM CURRENT` guarantees that the parameter value is restored when the function ends.

#### `program_body`

The pragma, declarations, and SPL statements that comprise the body of the function or procedure.

The pragma may be `PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION` to set the function or procedure as an autonomous transaction.

The declarations may include variable, type, `REF CURSOR`, or subprogram declarations. If subprogram declarations are included, they must be declared after all other variable, type, and `REF CURSOR` declarations.

#### `func_name`

The name of a public or private function. If `func_name` exists in the package specification with an identical signature, then it is public, otherwise it is private.

#### `rettype`

The return data type.

#### `DETERMINISTIC`

Include `DETERMINISTIC` to specify that the function will always return the same result when given the same argument values. A `DETERMINISTIC` function must not modify the database.

#### Note

The `DETERMINISTIC` keyword is equivalent to the PostgreSQL `IMMUTABLE` option. If `DETERMINISTIC` is specified for a public function in the package body, it must also be specified for the function declaration in the package specification. For private functions, there is no function declaration in the package specification.

#### `statement`

An SPL program statement. Statements in the package initialization section are executed once per session the first time the package is referenced.

## Note

The `STRICT`, `LEAKPROOF`, `PARALLEL`, `COST`, `ROWS` and `SET` keywords provide extended functionality for Advanced Server and are not supported by Oracle.

## Examples

The following is the package body for the `empinfo` package.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY empinfo
IS
    v_counter      INTEGER;
    PROCEDURE get_name (
        p_empno      NUMBER
    )
    IS
    BEGIN
        SELECT ename INTO emp_name FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno;
        v_counter := v_counter + 1;
    END;
    FUNCTION display_counter
    RETURN INTEGER
    IS
    BEGIN
        RETURN v_counter;
    END;
BEGIN
    v_counter := 0;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Initialized counter');
END;
```

The following two anonymous blocks execute the procedure and function in the `empinfo` package and display the public variable.

```
BEGIN
    empinfo.get_name(7369);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee Name : ' || empinfo.emp_name);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Number of queries: ' || empinfo.display_counter);
END;
```

```
Initialized counter
Employee Name : SMITH
Number of queries: 1
```

```
BEGIN
    empinfo.get_name(7900);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee Name : ' || empinfo.emp_name);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Number of queries: ' || empinfo.display_counter);
END;
```

```
Employee Name : JAMES
Number of queries: 2
```

The following example demonstrates the use of a forward declaration within a package body. The example displays the name and number of employees whose salary falls in the specified range.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE empinfo IS
```

```

FUNCTION emp_comp (p_sal_range INTEGER) RETURN INTEGER;
END empinfo;

CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY empinfo IS
  FUNCTION sal_range (p_sal_range INTEGER) RETURN INTEGER;
  PROCEDURE list_emp (p_sal_range INTEGER);

  FUNCTION emp_comp (p_sal_range INTEGER) RETURN INTEGER IS
    BEGIN
      dbms_output.put_line ('Employee details');
      return sal_range(p_sal_range);
    END;

  FUNCTION sal_range (p_sal_range INTEGER) RETURN INTEGER IS
    emp_cnt INTEGER;
  BEGIN
    select count(*) into emp_cnt from emp where sal <= p_sal_range;
    dbms_output.put_line('Number of employees in the salary range ' ||
p_sal_range|| ' is :'|| emp_cnt);
    list_emp(p_sal_range);
    return emp_cnt;
  END;

  PROCEDURE list_emp (p_sal_range IN INTEGER) IS
  BEGIN
    FOR i IN select ename from emp where sal <= p_sal_range
    LOOP
      dbms_output.put_line (i);
    END LOOP;
  END;

END empinfo;

```

```

SELECT empinfo.emp_comp(1500);
Employee details
Number of employees in the salary range 1500 is :7
(SMITH)
(WARD)
(MARTIN)
(TURNER)
(ADAMS)
(JAMES)
(MILLER)
emp_comp
-----
7
(1 row)

```

## See Also

[CREATE PACKAGE, DROP PACKAGE](#)

## 9.27 CREATE PROCEDURE

### Name

**CREATE PROCEDURE** -- define a new stored procedure

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] PROCEDURE <name> [ (<parameters>) ]
[
    IMMUTABLE
    | STABLE
    | VOLATILE
    | DETERMINISTIC
    | [ NOT ] LEAKPROOF
    | CALLED ON NULL INPUT
    | RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT
    | STRICT
    | [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER
    | [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER
    | AUTHID DEFINER
    | AUTHID CURRENT_USER
    | PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }
    | COST <execution_cost>
    | ROWS <result_rows>
    | SET <configuration_parameter>
        { TO <value> | = <value> | FROM CURRENT }
    ...
]
{ IS | AS }
[ PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION; ]
[ <declarations> ]
BEGIN
<statements>
END [ <name> ];
```

### Description

**CREATE PROCEDURE** defines a new stored procedure. **CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE** will either create a new procedure, or replace an existing definition.

If a schema name is included, then the procedure is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the new procedure must not match any existing procedure with the same input argument types in the same schema. However, procedures of different input argument types may share a name (this is called [overloading](#)). (Overloading of procedures is an Advanced Server feature - overloading of stored, standalone procedures is not compatible with Oracle databases.)

To update the definition of an existing procedure, use **CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE**. It is not possible to change the name or argument types of a procedure this way (if you tried, you would actually be creating a new, distinct procedure). When using **OUT** parameters, you cannot change the types of any **OUT** parameters except by dropping the procedure.

### Parameters

**name**

| **name** is the identifier of the procedure.

**parameters**

**parameters** is a list of formal parameters.

**declarations**

**declarations** are variable, cursor, type, or subprogram declarations. If subprogram declarations are included, they must be declared after all other variable, cursor, and type declarations.

**statements**

**statements** are SPL program statements (the **BEGIN - END** block may contain an **EXCEPTION** section).

**IMMUTABLE****STABLE****VOLATILE**

These attributes inform the query optimizer about the behavior of the procedure; you can specify only one choice. **VOLATILE** is the default behavior.

**IMMUTABLE** indicates that the procedure cannot modify the database and always reaches the same result when given the same argument values; it does not do database lookups or otherwise use information not directly present in its argument list. If you include this clause, any call of the procedure with all-constant arguments can be immediately replaced with the procedure value.

**STABLE** indicates that the procedure cannot modify the database, and that within a single table scan, it will consistently return the same result for the same argument values, but that its result could change across SQL statements. This is the appropriate selection for procedures that depend on database lookups, parameter variables (such as the current time zone), etc.

**VOLATILE** indicates that the procedure value can change even within a single table scan, so no optimizations can be made. Please note that any function that has side-effects must be classified volatile, even if its result is quite predictable, to prevent calls from being optimized away.

**DETERMINISTIC**

**DETERMINISTIC** is a synonym for **IMMUTABLE**. A **DETERMINISTIC** procedure cannot modify the database and always reaches the same result when given the same argument values; it does not do database lookups or otherwise use information not directly present in its argument list. If you include this clause, any call of the procedure with all-constant arguments can be immediately replaced with the procedure value.

**[ NOT ] LEAKPROOF**

A **LEAKPROOF** procedure has no side effects, and reveals no information about the values used to call the procedure.

**CALLED ON NULL INPUT****RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT****STRICT**

**CALLED ON NULL INPUT** (the default) indicates that the procedure will be called normally when some of its arguments are **NULL**. It is the author's responsibility to check for **NULL** values if necessary and respond appropriately.

**RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT** or **STRICT** indicates that the procedure always returns **NULL** whenever any of its arguments are **NULL**. If these clauses are specified, the procedure is not executed when there are **NULL** arguments; instead a **NULL** result is assumed automatically.

## [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER

**SECURITY DEFINER** specifies that the procedure will execute with the privileges of the user that created it; this is the default. The key word **EXTERNAL** is allowed for SQL conformance, but is optional.

## [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER

The **SECURITY INVOKER** clause indicates that the procedure will execute with the privileges of the user that calls it. The key word **EXTERNAL** is allowed for SQL conformance, but is optional.

## AUTHID DEFINER

### AUTHID CURRENT\_USER

The **AUTHID DEFINER** clause is a synonym for **[EXTERNAL] SECURITY DEFINER**. If the **AUTHID** clause is omitted or if **AUTHID DEFINER** is specified, the rights of the procedure owner are used to determine access privileges to database objects.

The **AUTHID CURRENT\_USER** clause is a synonym for **[EXTERNAL] SECURITY INVOKER**. If **AUTHID CURRENT\_USER** is specified, the rights of the current user executing the procedure are used to determine access privileges.

## PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }

The **PARALLEL** clause enables the use of parallel sequential scans (parallel mode). A parallel sequential scan uses multiple workers to scan a relation in parallel during a query in contrast to a serial sequential scan.

When set to **UNSAFE**, the procedure cannot be executed in parallel mode. The presence of such a procedure forces a serial execution plan. This is the default setting if the **PARALLEL** clause is omitted.

When set to **RESTRICTED**, the procedure can be executed in parallel mode, but the execution is restricted to the parallel group leader. If the qualification for any particular relation has anything that is parallel restricted, that relation won't be chosen for parallelism.

When set to **SAFE**, the procedure can be executed in parallel mode with no restriction.

## COST execution\_cost

**execution\_cost** is a positive number giving the estimated execution cost for the procedure, in units of **cpu\_operator\_cost**. If the procedure returns a set, this is the cost per returned row. Larger values cause the planner to try to avoid evaluating the function more often than necessary.

## ROWS result\_rows

**result\_rows** is a positive number giving the estimated number of rows that the planner should expect the procedure to return. This is only allowed when the procedure is declared to return a set. The default assumption is 1000 rows.

## SET configuration\_parameter { TO value | = value | FROM CURRENT }

The **SET** clause causes the specified configuration parameter to be set to the specified value when the procedure is entered, and then restored to its prior value when the procedure exits. **SET FROM CURRENT** saves the session's current value of the parameter as the value to be applied when the procedure is entered.

If a **SET** clause is attached to a procedure, then the effects of a **SET LOCAL** command executed inside the procedure for the same variable are restricted to the procedure; the configuration parameter's prior value is restored at procedure exit. An ordinary **SET** command (without **LOCAL**) overrides the **SET** clause, much as it would do for a previous **SET LOCAL** command, with the effects of such a command persisting after procedure exit, unless the current transaction is rolled back.

## PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION

**PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION** is the directive that sets the procedure as an autonomous transaction.

#### Note

- The **STRICT**, **LEAKPROOF**, **PARALLEL**, **COST**, **ROWS** and **SET** keywords provide extended functionality for Advanced Server and are not supported by Oracle.
- The **IMMUTABLE**, **STABLE**, **STRICT**, **LEAKPROOF**, **COST**, **ROWS** and **PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }** attributes are only supported for EDB SPL procedures.
- By default, stored procedures are created as **SECURITY DEFINERS**; stored procedures defined in plpgsql are created as **SECURITY INVOKERS**.

#### Examples

The following procedure lists the employees in the **emp** table:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE list_emp
IS
    v_empno      NUMBER(4);
    v_ename      VARCHAR2(10);
    CURSOR emp_cur IS
        SELECT empno, ename FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_cur;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----');
    LOOP
        FETCH emp_cur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
        EXIT WHEN emp_cur%NOTFOUND;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || '  ' || v_ename);
    END LOOP;
    CLOSE emp_cur;
END;
```

```
EXEC list_emp;
```

EMPNO	ENAME
7369	SMITH
7499	ALLEN
7521	WARD
7566	JONES
7654	MARTIN
7698	BLAKE
7782	CLARK
7788	SCOTT
7839	KING
7844	TURNER
7876	ADAMS
7900	JAMES
7902	FORD
7934	MILLER

The following procedure uses **IN OUT** and **OUT** arguments to return an employee's number, name, and job based upon a search using first, the given employee number, and if that is not found, then using the given name. An anonymous block calls the procedure.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE emp_job (
    p_empno      IN OUT emp.empno%TYPE,
    p_ename       IN OUT emp.ename%TYPE,
    p_job        OUT   emp.job%TYPE
)
IS
    v_empno      emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_ename       emp.ename%TYPE;
    v_job        emp.job%TYPE;
BEGIN
    SELECT ename, job INTO v_ename, v_job FROM emp WHERE empno = p_empno;
    p_ename := v_ename;
    p_job := v_job;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Found employee # ' || p_empno);
EXCEPTION
    WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
        BEGIN
            SELECT empno, job INTO v_empno, v_job FROM emp
                WHERE ename = p_ename;
            p_empno := v_empno;
            p_job := v_job;
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Found employee ' || p_ename);
        EXCEPTION
            WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
                DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Could not find an employee with ' ||
                    'number, ' || p_empno || ' nor name, ' || p_ename);
                p_empno := NULL;
                p_ename := NULL;
                p_job := NULL;
        END;
    END;
END;

DECLARE
    v_empno      emp.empno%TYPE;
    v_ename       emp.ename%TYPE;
    v_job        emp.job%TYPE;
BEGIN
    v_empno := 0;
    v_ename := 'CLARK';
    emp_job(v_empno, v_ename, v_job);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee No: ' || v_empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name    : ' || v_ename);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Job     : ' || v_job);
END;

```

Found employee CLARK  
Employee No: 7782  
Name : CLARK  
Job : MANAGER

The following example demonstrates using the **AUTHID DEFINER** and **SET** clauses in a procedure declaration. The **update\_salary** procedure conveys the privileges of the role that defined the procedure to the role that is calling the procedure (while the procedure executes):

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE update_salary(id INT, new_salary NUMBER)
SET SEARCH_PATH = 'public' SET WORK_MEM = '1MB'

```

```
AUTHID DEFINER IS
BEGIN
  UPDATE emp SET salary = new_salary WHERE emp_id = id;
END;
```

Include the `SET` clause to set the procedure's search path to `public` and the work memory to `1MB`. Other procedures, functions and objects will not be affected by these settings.

In this example, the `AUTHID DEFINER` clause temporarily grants privileges to a role that might otherwise not be allowed to execute the statements within the procedure. To instruct the server to use the privileges associated with the role invoking the procedure, replace the `AUTHID DEFINER` clause with the `AUTHID CURRENT_USER` clause.

## See Also

[DROP PROCEDURE](#), [ALTER PROCEDURE](#)

## 9.28 CREATE PROFILE

### Name

`CREATE PROFILE` – create a new profile

### Synopsis

```
CREATE PROFILE <profile_name>
  [LIMIT {<parameter value>} ...];
```

### Description

`CREATE PROFILE` creates a new profile. Include the `LIMIT` clause and one or more space-delimited `parameter/value` pairs to specify the rules enforced by Advanced Server.

Advanced Server creates a default profile named `DEFAULT`. When you use the `CREATE ROLE` command to create a new role, the new role is automatically associated with the `DEFAULT` profile. If you upgrade from a previous version of Advanced Server to Advanced Server 10, the upgrade process will automatically create the roles in the upgraded version to the `DEFAULT` profile.

You must be a superuser to use `CREATE PROFILE`.

Include the `LIMIT` clause and one or more space-delimited `parameter/value` pairs to specify the rules enforced by Advanced Server.

### Parameters

`profile_name`

The name of the profile.

`parameter`

The password attribute that will be monitored by the rule.

`value`

The value the **parameter** must reach before an action is taken by the server.

Advanced Server supports the **value** shown below for each **parameter**:

**FAILED\_LOGIN\_ATTEMPTS** specifies the number of failed login attempts that a user may make before the server locks the user out of their account for the length of time specified by **PASSWORD\_LOCK\_TIME**. Supported values are:

- An **INTEGER** value greater than **0**.
- **DEFAULT** - the value of **FAILED\_LOGIN\_ATTEMPTS** specified in the **DEFAULT** profile.
- **UNLIMITED** – the connecting user may make an unlimited number of failed login attempts.

**PASSWORD\_LOCK\_TIME** specifies the length of time that must pass before the server unlocks an account that has been locked because of **FAILED\_LOGIN\_ATTEMPTS**. Supported values are:

- A **NUMERIC** value greater than or equal to **0**. To specify a fractional portion of a day, specify a decimal value. For example, use the value **4.5** to specify **4** days, **12** hours.
- **DEFAULT** - the value of **PASSWORD\_LOCK\_TIME** specified in the **DEFAULT** profile.
- **UNLIMITED** – the account is locked until it is manually unlocked by a database superuser.

**PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME** specifies the number of days that the current password may be used before the user is prompted to provide a new password. Include the **PASSWORD\_GRACE\_TIME** clause when using the **PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME** clause to specify the number of days that will pass after the password expires before connections by the role are rejected. If **PASSWORD GRACE TIME** is not specified, the password will expire on the day specified by the default value of **PASSWORD\_GRACE\_TIME**, and the user will not be allowed to execute any command until a new password is provided. Supported values are:

- A **NUMERIC** value greater than or equal to **0**. To specify a fractional portion of a day, specify a decimal value. For example, use the value **4.5** to specify **4** days, **12** hours.
- **DEFAULT** - the value of **PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME** specified in the **DEFAULT** profile.
- **UNLIMITED** – The password does not have an expiration date.

**PASSWORD\_GRACE\_TIME** specifies the length of the grace period after a password expires until the user is forced to change their password. When the grace period expires, a user will be allowed to connect, but will not be allowed to execute any command until they update their expired password. Supported values are:

- A **NUMERIC** value greater than or equal to **0**. To specify a fractional portion of a day, specify a decimal value. For example, use the value **4.5** to specify **4** days, **12** hours.
- **DEFAULT** - the value of **PASSWORD\_GRACE\_TIME** specified in the **DEFAULT** profile.
- **UNLIMITED** – The grace period is infinite.

**PASSWORD\_REUSE\_TIME** specifies the number of days a user must wait before re-using a password. The **PASSWORD\_REUSE\_TIME** and **PASSWORD\_REUSE\_MAX** parameters are intended to be used together. If you specify a finite value for one of these parameters while the other is **UNLIMITED**, old passwords can never be reused. If both parameters are set to **UNLIMITED** there are no restrictions on password reuse. Supported values are:

- A **NUMERIC** value greater than or equal to **0**. To specify a fractional portion of a day, specify a decimal value. For example, use the value **4.5** to specify **4** days, **12** hours.
- **DEFAULT** - the value of **PASSWORD\_REUSE\_TIME** specified in the **DEFAULT** profile.
- **UNLIMITED** – The password can be re-used without restrictions.

**PASSWORD\_REUSE\_MAX** specifies the number of password changes that must occur before a password can be reused. The **PASSWORD\_REUSE\_TIME** and **PASSWORD\_REUSE\_MAX** parameters are intended to be used together. If you specify a finite value for one of these parameters while the other is **UNLIMITED**, old passwords can never be reused. If both parameters are set to **UNLIMITED** there are no restrictions on password reuse. Supported values are:

- An **INTEGER** value greater than or equal to **0**.
- **DEFAULT** - the value of **PASSWORD\_REUSE\_MAX** specified in the **DEFAULT** profile.
- **UNLIMITED** – The password can be re-used without restrictions.

`PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION` specifies password complexity. Supported values are:

- The name of a PL/SQL function.
- `DEFAULT` - the value of `PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.
- `NULL`

`PASSWORD_ALLOW_HASHED` specifies whether an encrypted password to be allowed for use or not. If you specify the value as `TRUE`, the system allows a user to change the password by specifying a hash computed encrypted password on the client side. However, if you specify the value as `FALSE`, then a password must be specified in a plain-text form in order to be validated effectively, else an error will be thrown if a server receives an encrypted password. Supported values are:

- A `BOOLEAN` value `TRUE/ON/YES/1` or `FALSE/OFF/NO/0`.
- `DEFAULT` – the value of `PASSWORD_ALLOW_HASHED` specified in the `DEFAULT` profile.

#### Note

The `PASSWORD_ALLOW_HASHED` is not an Oracle-compatible parameter.

#### Notes

Use `DROP PROFILE` command to remove the profile.

#### Examples

The following command creates a profile named `acctg`. The profile specifies that if a user has not authenticated with the correct password in five attempts, the account will be locked for one day:

```
CREATE PROFILE acctg LIMIT
    FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS 5
    PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME 1;
```

The following command creates a profile named `sales`. The profile specifies that a user must change their password every 90 days:

```
CREATE PROFILE sales LIMIT
    PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME 90
    PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME 3;
```

If the user has not changed their password before the 90 days specified in the profile has passed, they will be issued a warning at login. After a grace period of 3 days, their account will not be allowed to invoke any commands until they change their password.

The following command creates a profile named `accts`. The profile specifies that a user cannot re-use a password within 180 days of the last use of the password, and must change their password at least 5 times before re-using the password:

```
CREATE PROFILE accts LIMIT
    PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME 180
    PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX 5;
```

The following command creates a profile named `resources`; the profile calls a user-defined function named `password_rules` that will verify that the password provided meets their standards for complexity:

```
CREATE PROFILE resources LIMIT
    PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION password_rules;
```

#### See Also

[ALTER PROFILE, DROP PROFILE](#)

## 9.29 CREATE QUEUE

Advanced Server includes extra syntax (not offered by Oracle) with the `CREATE QUEUE SQL` command. This syntax can be used in association with `DBMS_AQADM`.

### Name

`CREATE QUEUE` – create a queue.

### Synopsis

Use `CREATE QUEUE` to define a new queue:

```
CREATE QUEUE <name> QUEUE TABLE <queue_table_name> [ ( { <option_name>
option_value>} [, ...] ) ]
```

where `option_name` and the corresponding `option_value` can be:

```
TYPE [normal_queue | exception_queue]
RETRIES [INTEGER]
RETRYDELAY [DOUBLE PRECISION]
RETENTION [DOUBLE PRECISION]
```

### Description

The `CREATE QUEUE` command allows a database superuser or any user with the system-defined `aq_administrator_role` privilege to create a new queue in the current database.

If the name of the queue is schema-qualified, the queue is created in the specified schema. If a schema is not included in the `CREATE QUEUE` command, the queue is created in the current schema. A queue may only be created in the schema in which the queue table resides. The name of the queue must be unique from the name of any other queue in the same schema.

Use `DROP QUEUE` to remove a queue.

### Parameters

`name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the queue to be created.

`queue_table_name`

The name of the queue table with which this queue is associated.

`option_name option_value`

The name of any options that will be associated with the new queue, and the corresponding value for the option. If the call to `CREATE QUEUE` includes duplicate option names, the server will return an error. The following values are supported:

`TYPE`

Specify `normal_queue` to indicate that the queue is a normal queue, or `exception_queue` to indicate that the queue is an exception queue. An exception queue will only accept dequeue operations.

`RETRIES`

An `INTEGER` value that specifies the maximum number of attempts to remove a message from a queue.

<b>TYPE</b>	Specify <code>normal_queue</code> to indicate that the queue is a normal queue, or <code>exception_queue</code> to indicate that the queue is an exception queue. An exception queue will only accept dequeue operations.
<b>RETRYDELAY</b>	A <code>DOUBLE PRECISION</code> value that specifies the number of seconds after a <code>ROLLBACK</code> that the server will wait before retrying a message.
<b>RETENTION</b>	A <code>DOUBLE PRECISION</code> value that specifies the number of seconds that a message will be saved in the queue table after dequeuing.

## Examples

The following command creates a queue named `work_order` that is associated with a queue table named `work_order_table`:

```
CREATE QUEUE work_order QUEUE TABLE work_order_table (RETRIES 5, RETRYDELAY 2);
```

The server will allow 5 attempts to remove a message from the queue, and enforce a retry delay of 2 seconds between attempts.

## See Also

[ALTER QUEUE](#), [DROP QUEUE](#)

## 9.30 CREATE QUEUE TABLE

Advanced Server includes extra syntax (not offered by Oracle) with the `CREATE QUEUE TABLE SQL` command. This syntax can be used in association with `DBMS_AQADM`.

### Name

`CREATE QUEUE TABLE`-- create a new queue table.

### Synopsis

Use `CREATE QUEUE TABLE` to define a new queue table:

```
CREATE QUEUE TABLE <name> OF <type_name> [ ( { <option_name option_value> } [, ...] ) ]
```

where `option_name` and the corresponding `option_value` can be:

<code>option_name</code>	<code>option_value</code>
<code>SORT_LIST</code>	<code>priority, enq_time</code>
<code>MULTIPLE_CONSUMERS</code>	<code>FALSE, TRUE</code>
<code>MESSAGE_GROUPING</code>	<code>NONE, TRANSACTIONAL</code>

option_name	option_value
	TABLESPACE tablespace_name, PCTFREE integer, PCTUSED integer, INITTRANS integer, MAXTRANS integer, STORAGE storage_option
STORAGE_CLAUSE	MINEXTENTS integer, MAXEXTENTS integer, PCTINCREASE integer, INITIAL size_clause, NEXT, FREELISTS integer, OPTIMAL size_clause, BUFFER_POOL {KEEP RECYCLE DEFAULT}.

Please note that only the TABLESPACE option is enforced; all others are accepted for compatibility and ignored. Use the TABLESPACE clause to specify the name of a tablespace in which the table will be created.

## Description

CREATE QUEUE TABLE allows a superuser or a user with the aq\_administrator\_role privilege to create a new queue table.

If the call to CREATE QUEUE TABLE includes a schema name, the queue table is created in the specified schema. If no schema name is provided, the new queue table is created in the current schema.

The name of the queue table must be unique from the name of any other queue table in the same schema.

## Parameters

### name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the new queue table.

### type\_name

The name of an existing type that describes the payload of each entry in the queue table. For information about defining a type, see CREATE TYPE.

### option\_name option\_value

The name of any options that will be associated with the new queue table, and the corresponding value for the option. If the call to CREATE QUEUE TABLE includes duplicate option names, the server will return an error. The following values are accepted:

Use the SORT\_LIST option to control the dequeuing order of the queue; specify th

enq\_time. priority

priority. enq\_time

priority

enq\_time

Any other value will return an ERROR.

### SORT\_LIST

MULTIPLE\_CONSUMERS A BOOLEAN value that indicates if a message can have more than one consumer

MESSAGE_GROUPING	Specify <code>none</code> to indicate that each message should be dequeued individually, or <code>transacted</code> to indicate that messages should be grouped together.
STORAGE_CLAUSE	Use <code>STORAGE_CLAUSE</code> to specify table attributes. <code>STORAGE_CLAUSE</code> may be one or more of the following: <code>MINEXTENTS integer, MAXEXTENTS integer, PCTINCREASE integer, INITIAL size</code> Where <code>storage_option</code> is one or more of the following: <code>MINEXTENTS integer, MAXEXTENTS integer, PCTINCREASE integer, INITIAL size</code> Please note that only the <code>TABLESPACE</code> option is enforced; all others are accepted

## Examples

You must create a user-defined type before creating a queue table; the type describes the columns and data types within the table. The following command creates a type named `work_order`:

```
CREATE TYPE work_order AS (name VARCHAR2, project TEXT, completed BOOLEAN);
```

The following command uses the `work_order` type to create a queue table named `work_order_table`:

```
CREATE QUEUE TABLE work_order_table OF work_order (sort_list (enq_time, priority));
```

## See Also

[ALTER QUEUE TABLE](#), [DROP QUEUE TABLE](#)

## 9.31 CREATE ROLE

### Name

`CREATE ROLE` -- define a new database role

### Synopsis

```
CREATE ROLE <name> [IDENTIFIED BY <password> [REPLACE old_password]]
```

### Description

`CREATE ROLE` adds a new role to the Advanced Server database cluster. A role is an entity that can own database objects and have database privileges; a role can be considered a “user”, a “group”, or both depending on how it is used. The newly created role does not have the `LOGIN` attribute, so it cannot be used to start a session. Use the `ALTER ROLE` command to give the role `LOGIN` rights. You must have `CREATEROLE` privilege or be a database superuser to use the `CREATE ROLE` command.

If the `IDENTIFIED BY` clause is specified, the `CREATE ROLE` command also creates a schema owned by, and with the same name as the newly created role.

### Note

The roles are defined at the database cluster level, and so are valid in all databases in the cluster.

### Parameters

**name**

The name of the new role.

**IDENTIFIED BY password**

Sets the role's password. (A password is only of use for roles having the `LOGIN` attribute, but you can nonetheless define one for roles without it.) If you do not plan to use password authentication you can omit this option.

**Notes**

Use `ALTER ROLE` to change the attributes of a role, and `DROP ROLE` to remove a role. The attributes specified by `CREATE ROLE` can be modified by later `ALTER ROLE` commands.

Use `GRANT` and `REVOKE` to add and remove members of roles that are being used as groups.

The maximum length limit for role name and password is `63` characters.

**Examples**

Create a role (and a schema) named, `admins`, with a password:

```
CREATE ROLE admins IDENTIFIED BY Rt498zb;
```

**See Also**

[ALTER ROLE](#), [DROP ROLE](#), [GRANT](#), [REVOKE](#), [SET ROLE](#)

## 9.32 CREATE SCHEMA

**Name**

`CREATE SCHEMA` -- define a new schema

**Synopsis**

```
CREATE SCHEMA AUTHORIZATION <username> <schema_element> [ ... ]
```

**Description**

This variation of the `CREATE SCHEMA` command creates a new schema owned by `username` and populated with one or more objects. The creation of the schema and objects occur within a single transaction so either all objects are created or none of them including the schema. (Please note: if you are using an Oracle database, no new schema is created – `username`, and therefore the schema, must pre-exist.)

A schema is essentially a namespace: it contains named objects (tables, views, etc.) whose names may duplicate those of other objects existing in other schemas. Named objects are accessed either by “qualifying” their names with the schema name as a prefix, or by setting a search path that includes the desired schema(s). Unqualified objects are created in the current schema (the one at the front of the search path, which can be determined with the function `CURRENT_SCHEMA`). (The search path concept and the `CURRENT_SCHEMA` function are not compatible with Oracle databases.)

`CREATE SCHEMA` includes subcommands to create objects within the schema. The subcommands are treated essentially the same as separate commands issued after creating the schema. All the created objects will be

owned by the specified user.

## Parameters

### username

The name of the user who will own the new schema. The schema will be named the same as `username`. Only superusers may create schemas owned by users other than themselves. (Please note: In Advanced Server the role, `username`, must already exist, but the schema must not exist. In Oracle, the user (equivalently, the schema) must exist.)

### schema\_element

An SQL statement defining an object to be created within the schema. `CREATE TABLE`, `CREATE VIEW`, and `GRANT` are accepted as clauses within `CREATE SCHEMA`. Other kinds of objects may be created in separate commands after the schema is created.

## Notes

To create a schema, the invoking user must have the `CREATE` privilege for the current database. (Of course, superusers bypass this check.)

In Advanced Server, there are other forms of the `CREATE SCHEMA` command that are not compatible with Oracle databases.

## Examples

```
CREATE SCHEMA AUTHORIZATION enterprisedb
CREATE TABLE empjobs (ename VARCHAR2(10), job VARCHAR2(9))
CREATE VIEW managers AS SELECT ename FROM empjobs WHERE job = 'MANAGER'
GRANT SELECT ON managers TO PUBLIC;
```

## 9.33 CREATE SEQUENCE

### Name

`CREATE SEQUENCE` -- define a new sequence generator

### Synopsis

```
CREATE SEQUENCE <name> [ INCREMENT BY <increment> ]
[ { NOMINVALUE | MINVALUE <minvalue> } ]
[ { NOMAXVALUE | MAXVALUE <maxvalue> } ]
[ START WITH <start> ] [ CACHE <cache> | NOCACHE ] [ CYCLE ]
```

### Description

`CREATE SEQUENCE` creates a new sequence number generator. This involves creating and initializing a new special single-row table with the name, `name`. The generator will be owned by the user issuing the command.

If a schema name is given then the sequence is created in the specified schema, otherwise it is created in the current schema. The sequence name must be distinct from the name of any other sequence, table, index, or view in the same schema.

After a sequence is created, use the functions `NEXTVAL` and `CURRVAL` to operate on the sequence. These

functions are documented in Sequence Manipulation Functions of Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Reference Guide.

## Parameters

### name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the sequence to be created.

### increment

The optional clause `INCREMENT BY increment` specifies the value to add to the current sequence value to create a new value. A positive value will make an ascending sequence, a negative one a descending sequence. The default value is `1`.

### NOMINVALUE | MINVALUE minvalue

The optional clause `MINVALUE minvalue` determines the minimum value a sequence can generate. If this clause is not supplied, then defaults will be used. The defaults are `1` and `-263-1` for ascending and descending sequences, respectively. Note that the key words, `NOMINVALUE`, may be used to set this behavior to the default.

### NOMAXVALUE | MAXVALUE maxvalue

The optional clause `MAXVALUE maxvalue` determines the maximum value for the sequence. If this clause is not supplied, then default values will be used. The defaults are `263-1` and `-1` for ascending and descending sequences, respectively. Note that the key words, `NOMAXVALUE`, may be used to set this behavior to the default.

### start

The optional clause `START WITH start` allows the sequence to begin anywhere. The default starting value is `minvalue` for ascending sequences and `maxvalue` for descending ones.

### cache

The optional clause `CACHE cache` specifies how many sequence numbers are to be preallocated and stored in memory for faster access. The minimum value is `1` (only one value can be generated at a time, i.e., `NOCACHE`), and this is also the default.

### CYCLE

The `CYCLE` option allows the sequence to wrap around when the `maxvalue` or `minvalue` has been reached by an ascending or descending sequence respectively. If the limit is reached, the next number generated will be the `minvalue` or `maxvalue`, respectively.

If `CYCLE` is omitted (the default), any calls to `NEXTVAL` after the sequence has reached its maximum value will return an error. Note that the key words, `NO CYCLE`, may be used to obtain the default behavior, however, this term is not compatible with Oracle databases.

## Notes

Sequences are based on big integer arithmetic, so the range cannot exceed the range of an eight-byte integer (-9223372036854775808 to 9223372036854775807). On some older platforms, there may be no compiler support for eight-byte integers, in which case sequences use regular `INTEGER` arithmetic (range -2147483648 to +2147483647).

Unexpected results may be obtained if a `cache` setting greater than one is used for a sequence object that will be used concurrently by multiple sessions. Each session will allocate and cache successive sequence values during one access to the sequence object and increase the sequence object's last value accordingly. Then, the next `cache-1` uses of `NEXTVAL` within that session simply return the preallocated values without touching the sequence object. So, any numbers allocated but not used within a session will be lost when that session ends,

resulting in "holes" in the sequence.

Furthermore, although multiple sessions are guaranteed to allocate distinct sequence values, the values may be generated out of sequence when all the sessions are considered. For example, with a `cache` setting of 10, session A might reserve values 1..10 and return `NEXTVAL=1`, then session B might reserve values 11..20 and return `NEXTVAL=11` before session A has generated `NEXTVAL=2`. Thus, with a `cache` setting of one it is safe to assume that `NEXTVAL` values are generated sequentially; with a `cache` setting greater than one you should only assume that the `NEXTVAL` values are all distinct, not that they are generated purely sequentially. Also, the last value will reflect the latest value reserved by any session, whether or not it has yet been returned by `NEXTVAL`.

## Examples

Create an ascending sequence called `serial`, starting at 101:

```
CREATE SEQUENCE serial START WITH 101;
```

Select the next number from this sequence:

```
SELECT serial.NEXTVAL FROM DUAL;
```

```
nextval
```

```
-----
```

```
101  
(1 row)
```

Create a sequence called `supplier_seq` with the `NOCACHE` option:

```
CREATE SEQUENCE supplier_seq
    MINVALUE 1
    START WITH 1
    INCREMENT BY 1
    NOCACHE;
```

Select the next number from this sequence:

```
SELECT supplier_seq.NEXTVAL FROM DUAL;
```

```
nextval
```

```
-----  
1  
(1 row)
```

## See Also

[ALTER SEQUENCE](#), [DROP SEQUENCE](#)

## 9.34 CREATE SYNONYM

### Name

`CREATE SYNONYM` -- define a new synonym

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] [PUBLIC] SYNONYM [<schema>.]<syn_name>
FOR <object_schema>.<object_name>[@<dblink_name>];
```

## Description

**CREATE SYNONYM** defines a synonym for certain types of database objects. Advanced Server supports synonyms for:

- tables
- views
- materialized views
- sequences
- stored procedures
- stored functions
- types
- objects that are accessible through a database link
- other synonyms

## Parameters

### `syn_name`

`syn_name` is the name of the synonym. A synonym name must be unique within a schema.

### `schema`

`schema` specifies the name of the schema that the synonym resides in. If you do not specify a schema name, the synonym is created in the first existing schema in your search path.

### `object_name`

`object_name` specifies the name of the object.

### `object_schema`

`object_schema` specifies the name of the schema that the referenced object resides in.

### `dblink_name`

`dblink_name` specifies the name of the database link through which an object is accessed.

Include the **REPLACE** clause to replace an existing synonym definition with a new synonym definition.

Include the **PUBLIC** clause to create the synonym in the `public` schema. The **CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM** command, compatible with Oracle databases, creates a synonym that resides in the `public` schema:

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] PUBLIC SYNONYM <syn_name> FOR
<object_schema>.<object_name>;
```

This just a shorthand way to write:

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] SYNONYM public.<syn_name> FOR
<object_schema>.<object_name>;
```

## Notes

Access to the object referenced by the synonym is determined by the permissions of the current user of the synonym; the synonym user must have the appropriate permissions on the underlying database object.

## Examples

Create a synonym for the `emp` table in a schema named, `enterprisedb`:

```
CREATE SYNONYM personnel FOR enterprisedb.emp;
```

## See Also

[DROP SYNONYM](#)

## 9.35 CREATE TABLE

### Name

`CREATE TABLE` -- define a new table

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [ GLOBAL TEMPORARY ] TABLE <table_name> (
  { <column_name> <data_type> [ DEFAULT <default_expr> ]
  [ <column_constraint> [ ... ] | <table_constraint> } [ , ... ]
)
[ WITH ( ROWIDS [= <value>] ) ]
[ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS } ]
[ TABLESPACE <tablespace> ]
{ NOPARALLEL | PARALLEL [ <integer> ] }
```

where `column_constraint` is:

```
[ CONSTRAINT <constraint_name> ]
{ NOT NULL |
  NULL |
  UNIQUE [ USING INDEX TABLESPACE <tablespace> ] |
  PRIMARY KEY [ USING INDEX TABLESPACE <tablespace> ] |
  CHECK (<expression>) |
  REFERENCES <reftable> [ ( <refcolumn> ) ]
  [ ON DELETE <action> ] }
[ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED |
  INITIALLY IMMEDIATE ]
```

and `table_constraint` is:

```
[ CONSTRAINT <constraint_name> ]
{ UNIQUE ( <column_name> [ , ... ] )
  [ USING INDEX [ <create_index_statement> ] TABLESPACE <tablespace> ] |
  PRIMARY KEY ( <column_name> [ , ... ] )
  [ USING INDEX [ <create_index_statement> ] TABLESPACE <tablespace> ] |
  CHECK ( <expression> ) |
  FOREIGN KEY ( <column_name> [ , ... ] )
    REFERENCES <reftable> [ ( <refcolumn> [ , ... ] ) ]
    [ ON DELETE <action> ] }
[ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ]
[ INITIALLY DEFERRED | INITIALLY IMMEDIATE ]
```

## Description

`CREATE TABLE` will create a new, initially empty table in the current database. The table will be owned by the user issuing the command.

If a schema name is given (for example, `CREATE TABLE myschema.mytable ...`) then the table is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Temporary tables exist in a special schema, so a schema name may not be given when creating a temporary table. The table name must be distinct from the name of any other table, sequence, index, or view in the same schema.

`CREATE TABLE` also automatically creates a data type that represents the composite type corresponding to one row of the table. Therefore, tables cannot have the same name as any existing data type in the same schema.

The `PARALLEL` clause sets the degree of parallelism for a table. If you do not specify the `PARALLEL` clause, the server determines a value based on the relation size.

The `NOPARALLEL` clause reset the parallelism for default execution, and `reloptions` will show the `parallel_workers` parameter as `0`.

A table cannot have more than 1600 columns. (In practice, the effective limit is lower because of tuple-length constraints).

The optional constraint clauses specify constraints (or tests) that new or updated rows must satisfy for an insert or update operation to succeed. A constraint is an SQL object that helps define the set of valid values in the table in various ways.

There are two ways to define constraints: table constraints and column constraints. A column constraint is defined as part of a column definition. A table constraint definition is not tied to a particular column, and it can encompass more than one column. Every column constraint can also be written as a table constraint; a column constraint is only a notational convenience if the constraint only affects one column.

## Parameters

### GLOBAL TEMPORARY

If specified, the table is created as a temporary table. Temporary tables are automatically dropped at the end of a session, or optionally at the end of the current transaction (see `ON COMMIT` below). Existing permanent tables with the same name are not visible to the current session while the temporary table exists, unless they are referenced with schema-qualified names. In addition, temporary tables are not visible outside the session in which it was created. (This aspect of global temporary tables is not compatible with Oracle databases.) Any indexes created on a temporary table are automatically temporary as well.

### table\_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be created.

### column\_name

The name of a column to be created in the new table.

### data\_type

The data type of the column. This may include array specifiers. For more information on the data types included with Advanced Server, refer to Data Types of *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Reference Guide*.

### DEFAULT default\_expr

The `DEFAULT` clause assigns a default data value for the column whose column definition it appears within. The value is any variable-free expression (subqueries and cross-references to other columns in the current table are not allowed). The data type of the default expression must match the data type of the column.

The default expression will be used in any insert operation that does not specify a value for the column. If

there is no default for a column, then the default is `null`.

#### `CONSTRAINT constraint_name`

An optional name for a column or table constraint. If not specified, the system generates a name.

#### `NOT NULL`

The column is not allowed to contain null values.

#### `NULL`

The column is allowed to contain null values. This is the default.

This clause is only available for compatibility with non-standard SQL databases. Its use is discouraged in new applications.

#### `UNIQUE` - column constraint

#### `UNIQUE (column_name [, ...])` - table constraint

The `UNIQUE` constraint specifies that a group of one or more distinct columns of a table may contain only unique values. The behavior of the unique table constraint is the same as that for column constraints, with the additional capability to span multiple columns.

For the purpose of a unique constraint, null values are not considered equal.

Each unique table constraint must name a set of columns that is different from the set of columns named by any other unique or primary key constraint defined for the table. (Otherwise it would just be the same constraint listed twice.)

#### `PRIMARY KEY` - column constraint

#### `PRIMARY KEY ( column_name [, ...] )` - table constraint

The primary key constraint specifies that a column or columns of a table may contain only unique (non-duplicate), non-null values. Technically, `PRIMARY KEY` is merely a combination of `UNIQUE` and `NOT NULL`, but identifying a set of columns as primary key also provides metadata about the design of the schema, as a primary key implies that other tables may rely on this set of columns as a unique identifier for rows.

Only one primary key can be specified for a table, whether as a column constraint or a table constraint.

The primary key constraint should name a set of columns that is different from other sets of columns named by any unique constraint defined for the same table.

#### `CHECK (expression)`

The `CHECK` clause specifies an expression producing a Boolean result which new or updated rows must satisfy for an insert or update operation to succeed. Expressions evaluating to TRUE or “unknown” succeed. Should any row of an insert or update operation produce a FALSE result an error exception is raised and the insert or update does not alter the database. A check constraint specified as a column constraint should reference that column’s value only, while an expression appearing in a table constraint may reference multiple columns.

Currently, `CHECK` expressions cannot contain subqueries nor refer to variables other than columns of the current row.

#### `REFERENCES` reftable [ ( refcolumn ) ] [ `ON DELETE` action ] - column constraint

#### `FOREIGN KEY ( column [, ...] ) REFERENCES` reftable [ ( refcolumn [, ...] ) ] [ `ON DELETE` action ] - table constraint

These clauses specify a foreign key constraint, which requires that a group of one or more columns of the new table must only contain values that match values in the referenced column(s) of some row of the referenced table. If `refcolumn` is omitted, the primary key of the `reftable` is used. The referenced columns must be the columns of a unique or primary key constraint in the referenced table.

In addition, when the data in the referenced columns is changed, certain actions are performed on the data in this table's columns. The `ON DELETE` clause specifies the action to perform when a referenced row in the referenced table is being deleted. Referential actions cannot be deferred even if the constraint is deferrable. Here are the following possible actions for each clause:

### CASCADE

Delete any rows referencing the deleted row, or update the value of the referencing column to the new value of the referenced column, respectively.

### SET NULL

Set the referencing column(s) to `NULL`.

If the referenced column(s) are changed frequently, it may be wise to add an index to the foreign key column so that referential actions associated with the foreign key column can be performed more efficiently.

### DEFERRABLE

#### NOT DEFERRABLE

This controls whether the constraint can be deferred. A constraint that is not deferrable will be checked immediately after every command. Checking of constraints that are deferrable may be postponed until the end of the transaction (using the `SET CONSTRAINTS` command). `NOT DEFERRABLE` is the default. Only foreign key constraints currently accept this clause. All other constraint types are not deferrable.

#### INITIALLY IMMEDIATE

#### INITIALLY DEFERRED

If a constraint is deferrable, this clause specifies the default time to check the constraint. If the constraint is `INITIALLY IMMEDIATE`, it is checked after each statement. This is the default. If the constraint is `INITIALLY DEFERRED`, it is checked only at the end of the transaction. The constraint check time can be altered with the `SET CONSTRAINTS` command.

#### WITH ( ROWIDS [= value] )

The `ROWIDS` option for a table include `value` equals to `TRUE/ON/1` or `FALSE/OFF/0`. When set to `TRUE/ON/1`, a `ROWID` column is created in the new table. `ROWID` is an auto-incrementing value based on a sequence that starts with `1` and assigned to each row of a table. If a value is not specified then the default value is always `TRUE`.

By default, a unique index is created on a `ROWID` column. The `ALTER` and `DROP` operations are restricted on a `ROWID` column.

#### ON COMMIT

The behavior of temporary tables at the end of a transaction block can be controlled using `ON COMMIT`. The two options are:

#### PRESERVE ROWS

No special action is taken at the ends of transactions. This is the default behavior. (Note that this aspect is not compatible with Oracle databases. The Oracle default is `DELETE ROWS`.)

#### DELETE ROWS

All rows in the temporary table will be deleted at the end of each transaction block. Essentially, an

automatic `TRUNCATE` is done at each commit.

### `TABLESPACE` tablespace

The `tablespace` is the name of the tablespace in which the new table is to be created. If not specified, `default tablespace` is used, or the database's default tablespace if `default_tablespace` is an empty string.

### `USING INDEX [ create_index_statement ] TABLESPACE` tablespace

This clause allows selection of the tablespace in which the index associated with a `UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY KEY` constraint will be created. If not specified, `default tablespace` is used, or the database's default tablespace if `default_tablespace` is an empty string.

If you specify the `create_index_statement` option, the database server creates an index enabling unique or primary key constraints. The columns specified in the constraint and the columns of an index must be the same, but their order of appearance may differ.

### `PARALLEL`

Include the `PARALLEL` clause to specify the degree of parallelism for the table; set the `parallel_workers` parameter equal to the degree of parallelism to perform a parallel scan of a table. Alternatively, if you specify `PARALLEL` but do not include a degree of parallelism, an index will use default parallelism.

### `NOPARALLEL`

Specify `NOPARALLEL` for default execution.

### `integer`

The `integer` indicates the degree of parallelism, which is a number of `parallel_workers` used in the parallel operation to perform a parallel scan on a table.

## Notes

Advanced Server automatically creates an index for each unique constraint and primary key constraint to enforce the uniqueness. Thus, it is not necessary to create an explicit index for primary key columns. (See `CREATE INDEX` for more information.)

## Examples

Create table `dept` and table `emp`:

```
CREATE TABLE dept (
    deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
    dname       VARCHAR2(14),
    loc         VARCHAR2(13)
);
CREATE TABLE emp (
    empno      NUMBER(4) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT emp_pk PRIMARY KEY,
    ename       VARCHAR2(10),
    job         VARCHAR2(9),
    mgr         NUMBER(4),
    hiredate    DATE,
    sal         NUMBER(7,2),
    comm        NUMBER(7,2),
    deptno     NUMBER(2) CONSTRAINT emp_ref_dept_fk
                REFERENCES dept(deptno)
);
```

Define a unique table constraint for the table `dept`. Unique table constraints can be defined on one or more

columns of the table.

```
CREATE TABLE dept (
    deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
    dname       VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
    loc         VARCHAR2(13)
);
```

Define a check column constraint:

```
CREATE TABLE emp (
    empno      NUMBER(4) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT emp_pk PRIMARY KEY,
    ename       VARCHAR2(10),
    job         VARCHAR2(9),
    mgr         NUMBER(4),
    hiredate    DATE,
    sal         NUMBER(7,2) CONSTRAINT emp_sal_ck CHECK (sal > 0),
    comm        NUMBER(7,2),
    deptno     NUMBER(2) CONSTRAINT emp_ref_dept_fk
                REFERENCES dept(deptno)
);
```

Define a check table constraint:

```
CREATE TABLE emp (
    empno      NUMBER(4) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT emp_pk PRIMARY KEY,
    ename       VARCHAR2(10),
    job         VARCHAR2(9),
    mgr         NUMBER(4),
    hiredate    DATE,
    sal         NUMBER(7,2),
    comm        NUMBER(7,2),
    deptno     NUMBER(2) CONSTRAINT emp_ref_dept_fk
                REFERENCES dept(deptno),
    CONSTRAINT new_emp_ck CHECK (ename IS NOT NULL AND empno > 7000)
);
```

Define a primary key table constraint for the table `jobhist`. Primary key table constraints can be defined on one or more columns of the table.

```
CREATE TABLE jobhist (
    empno      NUMBER(4) NOT NULL,
    startdate   DATE NOT NULL,
    enddate     DATE,
    job         VARCHAR2(9),
    sal         NUMBER(7,2),
    comm        NUMBER(7,2),
    deptno     NUMBER(2),
    chgdesc    VARCHAR2(80),
    CONSTRAINT jobhist_pk PRIMARY KEY (empno, startdate)
);
```

This assigns a literal constant default value for the column, `job` and makes the default value of `hiredate` be the date at which the row is inserted.

```
CREATE TABLE emp (
```

```

empno      NUMBER(4) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT emp_pk PRIMARY KEY,
ename      VARCHAR2(10),
job        VARCHAR2(9) DEFAULT 'SALESMAN',
mgr        NUMBER(4),
hiredate   DATE DEFAULT SYSDATE,
sal         NUMBER(7,2),
comm       NUMBER(7,2),
deptno    NUMBER(2) CONSTRAINT emp_ref_dept_fk
          REFERENCES dept(deptno)
);

```

Create table `dept` in tablespace `diskvol1`:

```

CREATE TABLE dept (
  deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
  dname       VARCHAR2(14),
  loc         VARCHAR2(13)
) TABLESPACE diskvol1;

```

The following `PARALLEL` example creates a table `sales` and sets a degree of parallelism to 6:

```
CREATE TABLE sales (deptno number) PARALLEL 6 WITH (FILLFACTOR=66);
```

The following `NOPARALLEL` example creates a table `sales_order` and sets a degree of parallelism to 0:

```
CREATE TABLE sales_order (deptno number) NOPARALLEL WITH (FILLFACTOR=66);
```

The following example creates a table named `dept`; the definition creates a unique key on the `dname` column. The constraint `dept_dname_uq` identifies the `dname` column as a unique key. The preceding statement includes the `USING_INDEX` clause, which explicitly creates an index on a table `dept` with the index statement specified to enable the unique constraint.

```

CREATE TABLE dept (
  deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL,
  dname       VARCHAR2(14),
  loc         VARCHAR2(13),
  CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE(dname)
    USING INDEX (CREATE UNIQUE INDEX idx_dept_dname_uq ON dept(dname))
);

```

The following example creates a table named `emp`; the definition creates a primary key on the `ename` column. The `emp_ename_pk` constraint identifies the `ename` column as a primary key of the `emp` table. The preceding statement includes the `USING_INDEX` clause, which explicitly creates an index on a table `emp` with the index statement specified to enable the primary constraint.

```

CREATE TABLE emp (
  empno      NUMBER(4) NOT NULL,
  ename      VARCHAR2(10),
  job        VARCHAR2(9),
  sal         NUMBER(7,2),
  deptno    NUMBER(2),
  CONSTRAINT emp_ename_pk PRIMARY KEY (ename)
    USING INDEX (CREATE INDEX idx_emp_ename_pk ON emp (ename))
);

```

## See Also

[ALTER TABLE, DROP TABLE](#)

## 9.36 CREATE TABLE AS

### Name

**CREATE TABLE AS** -- define a new table from the results of a query

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [ GLOBAL TEMPORARY ] TABLE <table_name>
[ (<column_name> [, ...] ) ]
[ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS } ]
[ TABLESPACE tablespace ]
AS <query>
```

### Description

**CREATE TABLE AS** creates a table and fills it with data computed by a **SELECT** command. The table columns have the names and data types associated with the output columns of the **SELECT** (except that you can override the column names by giving an explicit list of new column names).

**CREATE TABLE AS** bears some resemblance to creating a view, but it is really quite different: it creates a new table and evaluates the query just once to fill the new table initially. The new table will not track subsequent changes to the source tables of the query. In contrast, a view re-evaluates its defining **SELECT** statement whenever it is queried.

### Parameters

#### GLOBAL TEMPORARY

If specified, the table is created as a temporary table. Refer to **CREATE TABLE** for details.

#### table\_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be created.

#### column\_name

The name of a column in the new table. If column names are not provided, they are taken from the output column names of the query.

#### query

A query statement ( a **SELECT** command). Refer to **SELECT** for a description of the allowed syntax.

## 9.37 CREATE TRIGGER

### Name

**CREATE TRIGGER** -- define a simple trigger

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TRIGGER <name>
{ BEFORE | AFTER | INSTEAD OF }
{ INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE }
[ OR { INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE } [, ...] ]
ON <table>
[ REFERENCING { OLD AS <old> | NEW AS <new> } ...]
[ FOR EACH ROW ]
[ WHEN <condition> ]
[ DECLARE
  [ PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION; ]
  <declaration>; [, ...] ]
BEGIN
<statement>; [, ...]
[ EXCEPTION
  { WHEN <exception> [ OR <exception> ] [...] THEN
    <statement>; [, ...] } [, ...]
]
END
```

## Name

**CREATE TRIGGER** -- define a compound trigger

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TRIGGER <name>
FOR { INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE }
[ OR { INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE } ] [, ...]
  ON <table>
  [ REFERENCING { OLD AS <old> | NEW AS <new> } ...]
  [ WHEN <condition> ]
  COMPOUND TRIGGER
  [ <private_declaration>; ] ...
  [ <procedure_or_function_definition> ] ...
  <compound_trigger_definition>
END
```

Where **private\_declaration** is an identifier of a private variable that can be accessed by any procedure or function. There can be zero, one, or more private variables. **private\_declaration** can be any of the following:

- Variable Declaration
- Record Declaration
- Collection Declaration
- **REF CURSOR** and Cursor Variable Declaration
- **TYPE** Definitions for Records, Collections, and **REF CURSORS**
- Exception
- Object Variable Declaration

Where **procedure\_or\_function\_definition** :=

procedure\_definition | function\_definition

Where **procedure\_definition** :=

```
PROCEDURE proc_name[ argument_list ]
[ options_list ]
{ IS | AS }
procedure_body
END [ proc_name ];
```

Where `procedure_body` :=

```
[ declaration; ] [, ...]
BEGIN
statement; [...]
[ EXCEPTION
{ WHEN exception [OR exception] [...] THEN statement; }
[...]
]
```

Where `function_definition` :=

```
FUNCTION func_name [ argument_list ]
RETURN retype [ DETERMINISTIC ]
[ options_list ]
{ IS | AS }
function_body
END [ func_name ] ;
```

Where `function_body` :=

```
[ declaration; ] [, ...]
BEGIN
statement; [...]
[ EXCEPTION
{ WHEN exception [ OR exception ] [...] THEN statement; }
[...]
]
```

Where `compound_trigger_definition` :=

```
{ compound_trigger_event } { IS | AS }
compound_trigger_body
END [ compound_trigger_event ] [ ... ]
```

Where `compound_trigger_event` :=

```
[ BEFORE STATEMENT | BEFORE EACH ROW | AFTER EACH ROW |
AFTER STATEMENT | INSTEAD OF EACH ROW ]
```

Where `compound_trigger_body` :=

```
[ declaration; ] [, ...]
BEGIN
statement; [...]
[ EXCEPTION
{ WHEN exception [OR exception] [...] THEN statement; }
[...]
]
```

## Description

`CREATE TRIGGER` defines a new trigger. `CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER` will either create a new trigger, or replace an existing definition.

If you are using the `CREATE TRIGGER` keywords to create a new trigger, the name of the new trigger must not match any existing trigger defined on the same table. New triggers will be created in the same schema as the table on which the triggering event is defined.

If you are updating the definition of an existing trigger, use the `CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER` keywords.

When you use syntax that is compatible with Oracle to create a trigger, the trigger runs as a `SECURITY DEFINER` function.

## Parameters

### `name`

The name of the trigger to create.

### `BEFORE | AFTER`

Determines whether the trigger is fired before or after the triggering event.

### `INSTEAD OF`

`INSTEAD OF` trigger modifies an updatable view; the trigger will execute to update the underlying table(s) appropriately. The `INSTEAD OF` trigger is executed for each row of the view that is updated or modified.

### `INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE`

Defines the triggering event.

### `table`

The name of the table or view on which the triggering event occurs.

### `condition`

`condition` is a Boolean expression that determines if the trigger will actually be executed; if `condition` evaluates to `TRUE`, the trigger will fire.

If the simple trigger definition includes the `FOR EACH ROW` keywords, the `WHEN` clause can refer to columns of the old and/or new row values by writing `OLD.column_name` or `NEW.column_name` respectively. `INSERT` triggers cannot refer to `OLD` and `DELETE` triggers cannot refer to `NEW`.

If the compound trigger definition includes a statement-level trigger having a `WHEN` clause, then the trigger is executed without evaluating the expression in the `WHEN` clause. Similarly, if a compound trigger definition includes a row-level trigger having a `WHEN` clause, then the trigger is executed if the expression evaluates to `TRUE`.

If the trigger includes the `INSTEAD OF` keywords, it may not include a `WHEN` clause. A `WHEN` clause cannot contain subqueries.

### `REFERENCING { OLD AS old | NEW AS new } ...`

`REFERENCING` clause to reference old rows and new rows, but restricted in that `old` may only be replaced by an identifier named `old` or any equivalent that is saved in all lowercase (for example, `REFERENCING OLD AS old`, `REFERENCING OLD AS OLD`, or `REFERENCING OLD AS "old"`). Also, `new` may only be replaced by an identifier named `new` or any equivalent that is saved in all lowercase (for example, `REFERENCING NEW AS new`, `REFERENCING NEW AS NEW`, or `REFERENCING NEW AS "new"`).

Either one, or both phrases `OLD AS old` and `NEW AS new` may be specified in the `REFERENCING` clause (for example, `REFERENCING NEW AS New OLD AS Old`).

This clause is not compatible with Oracle databases in that identifiers other than `old` or `new` may not be used.

## FOR EACH ROW

Determines whether the trigger should be fired once for every row affected by the triggering event, or just once per SQL statement. If specified, the trigger is fired once for every affected row (row-level trigger), otherwise the trigger is a statement-level trigger.

## PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS\_TRANSACTION

`PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION` is the directive that sets the trigger as an autonomous transaction.

### declaration

A variable, type, `REF CURSOR`, or subprogram declaration. If subprogram declarations are included, they must be declared after all other variable, type, and `REF CURSOR` declarations.

### statement

An SPL program statement. Note that a `DECLARE - BEGIN - END` block is considered an SPL statement unto itself. Thus, the trigger body may contain nested blocks.

### exception

An exception condition name such as `NO_DATA_FOUND`, `OTHERS`, etc.

## Examples

The following is a statement-level trigger that fires after the triggering statement (insert, update, or delete on table `emp`) is executed.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER user_audit_trig
  AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp
DECLARE
  v_action      VARCHAR2(24);
BEGIN
  IF INSERTING THEN
    v_action := ' added employee(s) on ';
  ELSIF UPDATING THEN
    v_action := ' updated employee(s) on ';
  ELSIF DELETING THEN
    v_action := ' deleted employee(s) on ';
  END IF;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('User ' || USER || v_action ||
    TO_CHAR(SYSDATE,'YYYY-MM-DD'));
END;
```

The following is a row-level trigger that fires before each row is either inserted, updated, or deleted on table `emp`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER emp_sal_trig
  BEFORE DELETE OR INSERT OR UPDATE ON emp
  FOR EACH ROW
DECLARE
  sal_diff      NUMBER;
```

```

BEGIN
  IF INSERTING THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Inserting employee ' || :NEW.empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(..New salary: ' || :NEW.sal);
  END IF;
  IF UPDATING THEN
    sal_diff := :NEW.sal - :OLD.sal;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Updating employee ' || :OLD.empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(..Old salary: ' || :OLD.sal);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(..New salary: ' || :NEW.sal);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(..Raise   : ' || sal_diff);
  END IF;
  IF DELETING THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Deleting employee ' || :OLD.empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(..Old salary: ' || :OLD.sal);
  END IF;
END;

```

The following is an example of a compound trigger that records a change to the employee salary by defining a compound trigger `hr_trigger` on table `emp`.

First, create a table named `emp`.

```

CREATE TABLE emp(EMPNO INT, ENAME TEXT, SAL INT, DEPTNO INT);
CREATE TABLE

```

Then, create a compound trigger named `hr_trigger`. The trigger utilizes each of the four timing-points to modify the salary with an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` statement. In the global declaration section, the initial salary is declared as `10,000`.

```

CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER hr_trigger
  FOR INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp
  COMPOUND TRIGGER
  -- Global declaration.
  var_sal NUMBER := 10000;

  BEFORE STATEMENT IS
  BEGIN
    var_sal := var_sal + 1000;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Before Statement: ' || var_sal);
  END BEFORE STATEMENT;

  BEFORE EACH ROW IS
  BEGIN
    var_sal := var_sal + 1000;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Before Each Row: ' || var_sal);
  END BEFORE EACH ROW;

  AFTER EACH ROW IS
  BEGIN
    var_sal := var_sal + 1000;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After Each Row: ' || var_sal);
  END AFTER EACH ROW;

  AFTER STATEMENT IS
  BEGIN

```

```

var_sal := var_sal + 1000;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After Statement: ' || var_sal);
END AFTER STATEMENT;

END hr_trigger;

```

Output: Trigger created.

**INSERT** the record into table `emp`.

```
INSERT INTO emp (EMPNO, ENAME, SAL, DEPTNO) VALUES(1111,'SMITH', 10000, 20);
```

The **INSERT** statement produces the following output:

```

Before Statement: 11000
Before each row: 12000
After each row: 13000
After statement: 14000
INSERT 0 1

```

The **UPDATE** statement will update the employee salary record, setting the salary to `15000` for a specific employee number.

```
UPDATE emp SET SAL = 15000 where EMPNO = 1111;
```

The **UPDATE** statement produces the following output:

```

Before Statement: 11000
Before each row: 12000
After each row: 13000
After statement: 14000
UPDATE 1

```

```

SELECT * FROM emp;
EMPNO | ENAME | SAL | DEPTNO
-----+-----+-----+
 1111 | SMITH | 15000 |    20
(1 row)

```

The **DELETE** statement deletes the employee salary record.

```
DELETE from emp where EMPNO = 1111;
```

The **DELETE** statement produces the following output:

```

Before Statement: 11000
Before each row: 12000
After each row: 13000
After statement: 14000
DELETE 1

```

```

SELECT * FROM emp;
EMPNO | ENAME | SAL | DEPTNO
-----+-----+-----+
(0 rows)

```

The **TRUNCATE** statement removes all the records from the **emp** table.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER hr_trigger
FOR TRUNCATE ON emp
  COMPOUND TRIGGER
-- Global declaration.
var_sal NUMBER := 10000;
BEFORE STATEMENT IS
BEGIN
  var_sal := var_sal + 1000;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Before Statement: ' || var_sal);
END BEFORE STATEMENT;

AFTER STATEMENT IS
BEGIN
  var_sal := var_sal + 1000;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After Statement: ' || var_sal);
END AFTER STATEMENT;

END hr_trigger;
```

Output: Trigger created.

The **TRUNCATE** statement produces the following output:

```
TRUNCATE emp;
Before Statement: 11000
After statement: 12000
TRUNCATE TABLE
```

**Note:** The **TRUNCATE** statement may be used only at a **BEFORE STATEMENT** or **AFTER STATEMENT** timing-point.

The following example creates a compound trigger named **hr\_trigger** on the **emp** table with a **WHEN** condition that checks and prints employee salary whenever an **INSERT**, **UPDATE**, or **DELETE** statement affects the **emp** table. The database evaluates the **WHEN** condition for a row-level trigger, and the trigger is executed once per row if the **WHEN** condition evaluates to **TRUE**. The statement-level trigger is executed irrespective of the **WHEN** condition.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER hr_trigger
FOR INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp
REFERENCING NEW AS new OLD AS old
WHEN (old.sal > 5000 OR new.sal < 8000)
  COMPOUND TRIGGER

  BEFORE STATEMENT IS
  BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Before Statement');
  END BEFORE STATEMENT;

  BEFORE EACH ROW IS
  BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Before Each Row: ' || :OLD.sal || ' ' || :NEW.sal);
  END BEFORE EACH ROW;

  AFTER EACH ROW IS
  BEGIN
```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After Each Row: ' || :OLD.sal || ' ' || :NEW.sal);
END AFTER EACH ROW;

AFTER STATEMENT IS
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After Statement');
END AFTER STATEMENT;

END hr_trigger;

```

Insert the record into table `emp`.

```
INSERT INTO emp(EMPNO, ENAME, SAL, DEPTNO) VALUES(1111, 'SMITH', 1600, 20);
```

The `INSERT` statement produces the following output:

```

Before Statement
Before Each Row: 1600
After Each Row: 1600
After Statement
INSERT 0 1

```

The `UPDATE` statement will update the employee salary record, setting the salary to `7500`.

```
UPDATE emp SET SAL = 7500 where EMPNO = 1111;
```

The `UPDATE` statement produces the following output:

```

Before Statement
Before Each Row: 1600 7500
After Each Row: 1600 7500
After Statement
UPDATE 1

```

```

SELECT * from emp;
empno | ename | sal | deptno
-----+-----+-----+
 1111 | SMITH | 7500 |    20
(1 row)

```

The `DELETE` statement deletes the employee salary record.

```
DELETE from emp where EMPNO = 1111;
```

The `DELETE` statement produces the following output:

```

Before Statement
Before Each Row: 7500
After Each Row: 7500
After Statement
DELETE 1

```

```

SELECT * from emp;
empno | ename | sal | deptno
-----+-----+-----+
(0 rows)

```

## See Also

[ALTER TRIGGER, DROP TRIGGER](#)

## 9.38 CREATE TYPE

### Name

**CREATE TYPE** -- define a new user-defined type, which can be an object type, a collection type (a nested table type or a varray type), or a composite type.

### Synopsis

#### Object Type

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TYPE <name>
[ AUTHID { DEFINER | CURRENT_USER } ]
{ IS | AS } OBJECT
( { <attribute> { <datatype> | <objtype> | <collecttype> } }
  [, ...]
  [ <method_spec> [, ...] ]
) [ [ NOT ] { FINAL | INSTANTIABLE } ] ...
```

where **method\_spec** is:

```
[ [ NOT ] { FINAL | INSTANTIABLE } ] ...
[ OVERRIDING ]
<subprogram_spec>
```

and **subprogram\_spec** is:

```
{ MEMBER | STATIC }
{ PROCEDURE <proc_name>
  [ ( [ SELF [ IN | IN OUT ] <name> ]
    [, <argname> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <argtype>
      [ DEFAULT <value> ]
    ] ...
  ]
  |
  FUNCTION <func_name>
  [ ( [ SELF [ IN | IN OUT ] <name> ]
    [, <argname> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <argtype>
      [ DEFAULT <value> ]
    ] ...
  ]
  RETURN <rettype>
}
```

### Nested Table Type

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TYPE <name> { IS | AS } TABLE OF
{ <datatype> | <objtype> | <collecttype> }
```

## Varray Type

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TYPE <name> { IS | AS }
{ VARRAY | VARYING ARRAY } (<maxsize>) OF { <datatype> | <objtype> }
```

## Composite Type

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TYPE <name> { IS | AS }
( [ attribute <datatype> ][, ...]
)
```

## Description

`CREATE TYPE` defines a new, user-defined data type. The types that can be created are an object type, a nested table type, a varray type, or a composite type. Nested table and varray types belong to the category of types known as `collections`.

`Composite types` are not compatible with Oracle databases. However, composite types can be accessed by SPL programs as with other types described in this section.

## Note

- For packages only, a composite type can be included in a user-defined record type declared with the `TYPE IS RECORD` statement within the package specification or package body. Such nested structure is not permitted in other SPL programs such as functions, procedures, triggers, etc.
- In the `CREATE TYPE` command, if a schema name is included, then the type is created in the specified schema, otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the new type must not match any existing type in the same schema unless the intent is to update the definition of an existing type, in which case use `CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE`.
- The `OR REPLACE` option cannot be currently used to add, delete, or modify the attributes of an existing object type. Use the `DROP TYPE` command to first delete the existing object type. The `OR REPLACE` option can be used to add, delete, or modify the methods in an existing object type.
- The PostgreSQL form of the `ALTER TYPE ALTER ATTRIBUTE` command can be used to change the data type of an attribute in an existing object type. However, the `ALTER TYPE` command cannot add or delete attributes in the object type.

The user that creates the type becomes the owner of the type.

## Parameters

### name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the type to create.

### DEFINER | CURRENT\_USER

Specifies whether the privileges of the object type owner (`DEFINER`) or the privileges of the current user executing a method in the object type (`CURRENT_USER`) are to be used to determine whether or not access is allowed to database objects referenced in the object type. `DEFINER` is the default.

### attribute

The name of an attribute in the object type or composite type.

### datatype

The data type that defines an attribute of the object type or composite type, or the elements of the collection type that is being created.

### objtype

The name of an object type that defines an attribute of the object type or the elements of the collection type that is being created.

#### collecttype

The name of a collection type that defines an attribute of the object type or the elements of the collection type that is being created.

#### FINAL

#### NOT FINAL

For an object type, specifies whether or not a subtype can be derived from the object type. **FINAL** (subtype cannot be derived from the object type) is the default.

For **method\_spec**, specifies whether or not the method may be overridden in a subtype. **NOT FINAL** (method may be overridden in a subtype) is the default.

#### INSTANTIABLE

#### NOT INSTANTIABLE

For an object type, specifies whether or not an object instance can be created of this object type.

**INSTANTIABLE** (an instance of this object type can be created) is the default. If **NOT INSTANTIABLE** is specified, then **NOT FINAL** must be specified as well. If **method\_spec** for any method in the object type contains the **NOT INSTANTIABLE** qualifier, then the object type, itself, must be defined with **NOT INSTANTIABLE** and **NOT FINAL** following the closing parenthesis of the object type specification.

For **method spec**, specifies whether or not the object type definition provides an implementation for the method. **INSTANTIABLE** (the **CREATE TYPE BODY** command for the object type provides the implementation of the method) is the default. If **NOT INSTANTIABLE** is specified, then the **CREATE TYPE BODY** command for the object type must not contain the implementation of the method.

#### OVERRIDING

If **OVERRIDING** is specified, **method\_spec** overrides an identically named method with the same number of identically named method arguments with the same data types, in the same order, and the same return type (if the method is a function) as defined in a supertype.

#### MEMBER

#### STATIC

Specify **MEMBER** if the subprogram operates on an object instance. Specify **STATIC** if the subprogram operates independently of any particular object instance.

#### proc\_name

The name of the procedure to create.

#### SELF [ IN | IN OUT ] name

For a member method there is an implicit, built-in parameter named **SELF** whose data type is that of the object type being defined. **SELF** refers to the object instance that is currently invoking the method. **SELF** can be explicitly declared as an **IN** or **IN OUT** parameter in the parameter list. If explicitly declared, **SELF** must be the first parameter in the parameter list. If **SELF** is not explicitly declared, its parameter mode defaults to **IN OUT** for member procedures and **IN** for member functions.

#### argname

The name of an argument. The argument is referenced by this name within the method body.

**argtype**

The data type(s) of the method's arguments. The argument types may be a base data type or a user-defined type such as a nested table or an object type. A length must not be specified for any base type - for example, specify `VARCHAR2`, not `VARCHAR2(10)`.

**DEFAULT value**

Supplies a default value for an input argument if one is not supplied in the method call. `DEFAULT` may not be specified for arguments with modes `IN OUT` or `OUT`.

**func\_name**

The name of the function to create.

**rettype**

The return data type, which may be any of the types listed for `argtype`. As for `argtype`, a length must not be specified for `rettype`.

**maxsize**

The maximum number of elements permitted in the varray.

**Examples****Creating an Object Type**

Create object type `addr_obj_typ`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE addr_obj_typ AS OBJECT (
    street      VARCHAR2(30),
    city        VARCHAR2(20),
    state       CHAR(2),
    zip         NUMBER(5)
);
```

Create object type `emp_obj_typ` that includes a member method `display_emp`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE emp_obj_typ AS OBJECT (
    empno      NUMBER(4),
    ename      VARCHAR2(20),
    addr       ADDR_OBJ_TYP,
    MEMBER PROCEDURE display_emp (SELF IN OUT emp_obj_typ)
);
```

Create object type `dept_obj_typ` that includes a static method `get_dname`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE dept_obj_typ AS OBJECT (
    deptno     NUMBER(2),
    STATIC FUNCTION get_dname (p_deptno IN NUMBER) RETURN VARCHAR2,
    MEMBER PROCEDURE display_dept
);
```

**Creating a Collection Type**

Create a nested table type, `budget_tbl_typ`, of data type, `NUMBER(8,2)`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE budget_tbl_typ IS TABLE OF NUMBER(8,2);
```

## Creating and Using a Composite Type

The following example shows the usage of a composite type accessed from an anonymous block.

The composite type is created by the following:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE emphist_typ AS (
    empno      NUMBER(4),
    ename      VARCHAR2(10),
    hiredate   DATE,
    job        VARCHAR2(9),
    sal        NUMBER(7,2)
);
```

The following is the anonymous block that accesses the composite type:

```
DECLARE
    v_emphist    EMPHIST_TYP;
BEGIN
    v_emphist.empno := 9001;
    v_emphist.ename := 'SMITH';
    v_emphist.hiredate := '01-AUG-17';
    v_emphist.job := 'SALESMAN';
    v_emphist.sal := 8000.00;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' EMPNO: ' || v_emphist.empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' ENAME: ' || v_emphist.ename);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('HIREDATE: ' || v_emphist.hiredate);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' JOB: ' || v_emphist.job);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' SAL: ' || v_emphist.sal);
END;
```

```
EMPNO: 9001
ENAME: SMITH
HIREDATE: 01-AUG-17 00:00:00
JOB: SALESMAN
SAL: 8000.00
```

The following example shows the usage of a composite type accessed from a user-defined record type, declared within a package body.

The composite type is created by the following:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE salhist_typ AS (
    startdate   DATE,
    job         VARCHAR2(9),
    sal         NUMBER(7,2)
);
```

The package specification is defined by the following:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE emp_salhist
IS
    PROCEDURE fetch_emp (
        p_empno IN NUMBER
    );
END;
```

The package body is defined by the following:

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY emp_salhist
IS
  TYPE emprec_typ IS RECORD (
    empno    NUMBER(4),
    ename    VARCHAR(10),
    salhist  SALHIST_TYP
  );
  TYPE emp_arr_typ IS TABLE OF emprec_typ INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
  emp_arr   emp_arr_typ;

  PROCEDURE fetch_emp (
    p_empno  IN NUMBER
  )
  IS
    CURSOR emp_cur IS SELECT e.empno, e.ename, h.startdate, h.job, h.sal
      FROM emp e, jobhist h
      WHERE e.empno = p_empno
        AND e.empno = h.empno;

    i      INTEGER := 0;
  BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME  STARTDATE  JOB      ' ||
    'SAL      ');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----  -----  -----  ' ||
    '-----');

    FOR r_emp IN emp_cur LOOP
      i := i + 1;
      emp_arr(i) := (r_emp.empno, r_emp.ename,
                      (r_emp.startdate, r_emp.job, r_emp.sal));
    END LOOP;

    FOR i IN 1 .. emp_arr.COUNT LOOP
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(emp_arr(i).empno || ' ' ||
      RPAD(emp_arr(i).ename,8) || ' ' ||
      TO_CHAR(emp_arr(i).salhist.startdate,'DD-MON-YY') || ' ' ||
      RPAD(emp_arr(i).salhist.job,10) || ' ' ||
      TO_CHAR(emp_arr(i).salhist.sal,'99,999.99'));
    END LOOP;
  END;
END;

```

Note that in the declaration of the `TYPE emprec_typ IS RECORD` data structure in the package body, the `salhist` field is defined with the `SALHIST_TYP` composite type as created by the `CREATE TYPE salhist_typ` statement.

The associative array definition `TYPE emp_arr_typ IS TABLE OF emprec_typ` references the record type data structure `emprec_typ` that includes the field `salhist` that is defined with the `SALHIST_TYP` composite type.

Invocation of the package procedure that loads the array from a join of the `emp` and `jobhist` tables, then displays the array content is shown by the following:

```

EXEC emp_salhist.fetch_emp(7788);

EMPNO  ENAME  STARTDATE  JOB      SAL
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----

```

```
7788 SCOTT 19-APR-87 CLERK    1,000.00
7788 SCOTT 13-APR-88 CLERK    1,040.00
7788 SCOTT 05-MAY-90 ANALYST   3,000.00
```

EDB-SPL Procedure successfully completed

## See Also

[CREATE TYPE BODY](#), [DROP TYPE](#)

## 9.39 CREATE TYPE BODY

### Name

**CREATE TYPE BODY** -- define a new object type body

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TYPE BODY <name>
{ IS | AS }
<method_spec> [...]
END
```

where **method\_spec** is:

**subprogram\_spec**

and **subprogram\_spec** is:

```
{ MEMBER | STATIC }
{ PROCEDURE <proc_name>
 [ ( [ SELF [ IN | IN OUT ] <name> ]
   [, <argname> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <argtype>
     [ DEFAULT <value> ]
   ] ... )
 ]
{ IS | AS }
<program_body>
END;
|
FUNCTION <func_name>
[ ( [ SELF [ IN | IN OUT ] <name> ]
  [, <argname> [ IN | IN OUT | OUT ] <argtype>
    [ DEFAULT <value> ]
  ] ... )
]
RETURN <rettype>
{ IS | AS }
<program_body>
END;
}
```

## Description

`CREATE TYPE BODY` defines a new object type body. `CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE BODY` will either create a new object type body, or replace an existing body.

If a schema name is included, then the object type body is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the new object type body must match an existing object type specification in the same schema. The new object type body name must not match any existing object type body in the same schema unless the intent is to update the definition of an existing object type body, in which case use `CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE BODY`.

## Parameters

### `name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the object type for which a body is to be created.

### `MEMBER`

### `STATIC`

Specify `MEMBER` if the subprogram operates on an object instance. Specify `STATIC` if the subprogram operates independently of any particular object instance.

### `proc_name`

The name of the procedure to create.

### `SELF [ IN | IN OUT ] name`

For a member method there is an implicit, built-in parameter named `SELF` whose data type is that of the object type being defined. `SELF` refers to the object instance that is currently invoking the method. `SELF` can be explicitly declared as an `IN` or `IN OUT` parameter in the parameter list. If explicitly declared, `SELF` must be the first parameter in the parameter list. If `SELF` is not explicitly declared, its parameter mode defaults to `IN OUT` for member procedures and `IN` for member functions.

### `argname`

The name of an argument. The argument is referenced by this name within the method body.

### `argtype`

The data type(s) of the method's arguments. The argument types may be a base data type or a user-defined type such as a nested table or an object type. A length must not be specified for any base type - for example, specify `VARCHAR2`, not `VARCHAR2(10)`.

### `DEFAULT value`

Supplies a default value for an input argument if one is not supplied in the method call. `DEFAULT` may not be specified for arguments with modes `IN OUT` or `OUT`.

### `program_body`

The pragma, declarations, and SPL statements that comprise the body of the function or procedure. The pragma may be `PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION` to set the function or procedure as an autonomous transaction.

### `func_name`

The name of the function to create.

### `rettype`

The return data type, which may be any of the types listed for `argtype`. As for `argtype`, a length must not be specified for `rettype`.

## Examples

Create the object type body for object type `emp_obj_typ` given in the example for the `CREATE TYPE` command.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE BODY emp_obj_typ AS
  MEMBER PROCEDURE display_emp (SELF IN OUT emp_obj_typ)
  IS
  BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee No : ' || empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name      : ' || ename);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Street     : ' || addr.street);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('City/State/Zip: ' || addr.city || ',' || 
      addr.state || '' || LPAD(addr.zip,5,'0'));
  END;
END;
```

Create the object type body for object type `dept_obj_typ` given in the example for the `CREATE TYPE` command.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE BODY dept_obj_typ AS
  STATIC FUNCTION get_dname (p_deptno IN NUMBER) RETURN VARCHAR2
  IS
    v_dname  VARCHAR2(14);
  BEGIN
    CASE p_deptno
      WHEN 10 THEN v_dname := 'ACCOUNTING';
      WHEN 20 THEN v_dname := 'RESEARCH';
      WHEN 30 THEN v_dname := 'SALES';
      WHEN 40 THEN v_dname := 'OPERATIONS';
      ELSE v_dname := 'UNKNOWN';
    END CASE;
    RETURN v_dname;
  END;
  MEMBER PROCEDURE display_dept
  IS
  BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Dept No : ' || SELF.deptno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Dept Name : ' ||
      dept_obj_typ.get_dname(SELF.deptno));
  END;
END;
```

## See Also

[CREATE TYPE, DROP TYPE](#)

## 9.40 CREATE USER

### Name

**CREATE USER** -- define a new database user account

## Synopsis

```
CREATE USER <name> [IDENTIFIED BY <password>]
```

## Description

**CREATE USER** adds a new user to an Advanced Server database cluster. You must be a database superuser to use this command.

When the **CREATE USER** command is given, a schema will also be created with the same name as the new user and owned by the new user. Objects with unqualified names created by this user will be created in this schema.

## Parameters

**name**

The name of the user.

**password**

The user's password. The password can be changed later using **ALTER USER**.

## Notes

The maximum length allowed for the user name and password is **63** characters.

## Examples

Create a user named, **john**.

```
CREATE USER john IDENTIFIED BY abc;
```

## See Also

[DROP USER](#)

## 9.41 CREATE USER|ROLE... PROFILE MANAGEMENT CLAUSES

### Name

**CREATE USER|ROLE**

## Synopsis

```
CREATE USER|ROLE <name> [[WITH] option [...]]
```

where **option** can be the following compatible clauses:

```
PROFILE <profile_name>
| ACCOUNT {LOCK|UNLOCK}
| PASSWORD EXPIRE [AT '<timestamp>']
```

or **option** can be the following non-compatible clauses:

| **LOCK TIME** '<timestamp>'

For information about the administrative clauses of the **CREATE USER** or **CREATE ROLE** command that are supported by Advanced Server, see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-commands.html>

## Description

**CREATE ROLE|USER... PROFILE** adds a new role with an associated profile to an Advanced Server database cluster.

Roles created with the **CREATE USER** command are (by default) login roles. Roles created with the **CREATE ROLE** command are (by default) not login roles. To create a login account with the **CREATE ROLE** command, you must include the **LOGIN** keyword.

Only a database superuser can use the **CREATE USER|ROLE** clauses that enforce profile management; these clauses enforce the following behaviors:

Include the **PROFILE** clause and a **profile\_name** to associate a pre-defined profile with a role, or to change which pre-defined profile is associated with a user.

Include the **ACCOUNT** clause and the **LOCK** or **UNLOCK** keyword to specify that the user account should be placed in a locked or unlocked state.

Include the **LOCK TIME** 'timestamp' clause and a date/time value to lock the role at the specified time, and unlock the role at the time indicated by the **PASSWORD LOCK\_TIME** parameter of the profile assigned to this role. If **LOCK TIME** is used with the **ACCOUNT LOCK** clause, the role can only be unlocked by a database superuser with the **ACCOUNT UNLOCK** clause.

Include the **PASSWORD EXPIRE** clause with the optional **AT** 'timestamp' keywords to specify a date/time when the password associated with the role will expire. If you omit the **AT** 'timestamp' keywords, the password will expire immediately.

Each login role may only have one profile. To discover the profile that is currently associated with a login role, query the **profile** column of the **DBA\_USERS** view.

## Parameters

**name**

The name of the role.

**profile\_name**

The name of the profile associated with the role.

**timestamp**

The date and time at which the clause will be enforced. When specifying a value for **timestamp**, enclose the value in single-quotes.

## Examples

The following example uses **CREATE USER** to create a login role named **john** who is associated with the **acctg\_profile** profile:

```
CREATE USER john PROFILE acctg_profile IDENTIFIED BY "1safePWD";
```

**john** can log in to the server, using the password **1safePWD**.

The following example uses `CREATE ROLE` to create a login role named `john` who is associated with the `acctg_profile` profile:

```
CREATE ROLE john PROFILE acctg_profile LOGIN PASSWORD "1safepwd";
```

`john` can log in to the server, using the password `1safepwd`.

## See Also

[ALTER USER|ROLE... PROFILE MANAGEMENT CLAUSES](#)

## 9.42 CREATE VIEW

### Name

`CREATE VIEW` -- define a new view

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] VIEW <name> [ ( <column_name> [, ...] ) ]
AS <query>
```

### Description

`CREATE VIEW` defines a view of a query. The view is not physically materialized. Instead, the query is run every time the view is referenced in a query.

`CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW` is similar, but if a view of the same name already exists, it is replaced.

If a schema name is given (for example, `CREATE VIEW myschema.myview ...`) then the view is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The view name must be distinct from the name of any other view, table, sequence, or index in the same schema.

### Parameters

#### `name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a view to be created.

#### `column_name`

An optional list of names to be used for columns of the view. If not given, the column names are deduced from the query.

#### `query`

A query (that is, a `SELECT` statement) which will provide the columns and rows of the view.

Refer to `SELECT` for more information about valid queries.

### Notes

Currently, views are read only - the system will not allow an insert, update, or delete on a view. You can get the effect of an updatable view by creating rules that rewrite inserts, etc. on the view into appropriate actions on other tables.

Access to tables referenced in the view is determined by permissions of the view owner. However, functions called in the view are treated the same as if they had been called directly from the query using the view. Therefore the user of a view must have permissions to call all functions used by the view.

## Examples

Create a view consisting of all employees in department 30:

```
CREATE VIEW dept_30 AS SELECT * FROM emp WHERE deptno = 30;
```

## See Also

[DROP VIEW](#)

## 9.43 DELETE

### Name

**DELETE** -- delete rows of a table

### Synopsis

```
DELETE [ <optimizer_hint> ] FROM <table>[@<dblink> ]
[ WHERE <condition> ]
[ RETURNING <return_expression> [, ...]
 { INTO { <record> | <variable> [, ...] }
 | BULK COLLECT INTO <collection> [, ...] } ]
```

### Description

The **DELETE** command deletes rows that satisfy the **WHERE** clause from the specified table. If the **WHERE** clause is absent, the effect is to delete all rows in the table. The result is a valid, but empty table.

#### Note

The **TRUNCATE** command provides a faster mechanism to remove all rows from a table.

The **RETURNING INTO { record | variable [, ...] }** clause may only be specified if the **DELETE** command is used within an SPL program. In addition the result set of the **DELETE** command must not include more than one row, otherwise an exception is thrown. If the result set is empty, then the contents of the target record or variables are set to null.

The **RETURNING BULK COLLECT INTO collection [, ...]** clause may only be specified if the **DELETE** command is used within an SPL program. If more than one **collection** is specified as the target of the **BULK COLLECT INTO** clause, then each **collection** must consist of a single, scalar field – i.e., **collection** must not be a record. The result set of the **DELETE** command may contain none, one, or more rows. **return\_expression** evaluated for each row of the result set, becomes an element in **collection** starting with the first element. Any existing rows in **collection** are deleted. If the result set is empty, then **collection** will be empty.

You must have the **DELETE** privilege on the table to delete from it, as well as the **SELECT** privilege for any table whose values are read in the condition.

### Parameters

**optimizer\_hint**

Comment-embedded hints to the optimizer for selection of an execution plan.

#### table

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table.

#### dblink

Database link name identifying a remote database. See the [CREATE DATABASE LINK](#) command for information on database links.

#### condition

A value expression that returns a value of type [BOOLEAN](#) that determines the rows which are to be deleted.

#### return\_expression

An expression that may include one or more columns from [table](#). If a column name from [table](#) is specified in the [return\\_expression](#), the value substituted for the column when [return\\_expression](#) is evaluated is the value from the deleted row.

#### record

A record whose field the evaluated [return\\_expression](#) is to be assigned. The first [return\\_expression](#) is assigned to the first field in [record](#), the second [return\\_expression](#) is assigned to the second field in [record](#), etc. The number of fields in [record](#) must exactly match the number of expressions and the fields must be type-compatible with their assigned expressions.

#### variable

A variable to which the evaluated [return\\_expression](#) is to be assigned. If more than one [return\\_expression](#) and [variable](#) are specified, the first [return\\_expression](#) is assigned to the first [variable](#), the second [return\\_expression](#) is assigned to the second [variable](#), etc. The number of variables specified following the [INTO](#) keyword must exactly match the number of expressions following the [RETURNING](#) keyword and the variables must be type-compatible with their assigned expressions.

#### collection

A collection in which an element is created from the evaluated [return\\_expression](#). There can be either a single collection which may be a collection of a single field or a collection of a record type, or there may be more than one collection in which case each collection must consist of a single field. The number of return expressions must match in number and order the number of fields in all specified collections. Each corresponding [return\\_expression](#) and [collection](#) field must be type-compatible.

### Examples

Delete all rows for employee [7900](#) from the [jobhist](#) table:

```
DELETE FROM jobhist WHERE empno = 7900;
```

Clear the table [jobhist](#):

```
DELETE FROM jobhist;
```

### See Also

[TRUNCATE](#)

## 9.44 DROP DATABASE LINK

### Name

**DROP DATABASE LINK** -- remove a database link

### Synopsis

```
DROP [ PUBLIC ] DATABASE LINK name
```

### Description

**DROP DATABASE LINK** drops existing database links. To execute this command you must be a superuser or the owner of the database link.

### Parameters

**name**

The name of a database link to be removed.

**PUBLIC**

Indicates that **name** is a public database link.

### Examples

Remove the public database link named, **oralink**:

```
DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK oralink;
```

Remove the private database link named, **edblink**:

```
DROP DATABASE LINK edblink;
```

### See Also

[CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK](#)

## 9.45 DROP DIRECTORY

### Name

**DROP DIRECTORY** -- remove a directory alias for a file system directory path

### Synopsis

```
DROP DIRECTORY <name>
```

### Description

**DROP DIRECTORY** drops an existing alias for a file system directory path that was created with the **CREATE DIRECTORY** command. To execute this command you must be a superuser.

When a directory alias is deleted, the corresponding physical file system directory is not affected. The file system directory must be deleted using the appropriate operating system commands.

## Parameters

### name

The name of a directory alias to be removed.

## Examples

Remove the directory alias named `empdir`:

```
DROP DIRECTORY empdir;
```

## See Also

[CREATE DIRECTORY](#), [ALTER DIRECTORY](#)

## 9.46 DROP FUNCTION

### Name

**DROP FUNCTION** -- remove a function

### Synopsis

```
DROP FUNCTION [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
[ ( [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> ] [, ...] )
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

### Description

**DROP FUNCTION** removes the definition of an existing function. To execute this command you must be a superuser or the owner of the function. All input (`IN`, `IN OUT`) argument data types to the function must be specified if this is an overloaded function. (This requirement is not compatible with Oracle databases. In Oracle, only the function name is specified. Advanced Server allows overloading of function names, so the function signature given by the input argument data types is required in the Advanced Server **DROP FUNCTION** command of an overloaded function.)

Usage of `IF EXISTS`, `CASCADE`, or `RESTRICT` is not compatible with Oracle databases and is used only by Advanced Server.

## Parameters

### IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the function does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

### name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing function.

### argmode

The mode of an argument: `IN`, `IN OUT`, or `OUT`. If omitted, the default is `IN`. Note that `DROP FUNCTION` does not actually pay any attention to `OUT` arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list only the `IN` and `IN OUT` arguments. (Specification of `argmode` is not compatible with Oracle databases and applies only to Advanced Server.)

#### `argname`

The name of an argument. Note that `DROP FUNCTION` does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function's identity. (Specification of `argname` is not compatible with Oracle databases and applies only to Advanced Server.)

#### `argtype`

The data type of an argument of the function. (Specification of `argtype` is not compatible with Oracle databases and applies only to Advanced Server.)

#### `CASCADE`

Automatically drop objects that depend on the function (such as operators or triggers), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects.

#### `RESTRICT`

Refuse to drop the function if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

#### Examples

The following command removes the `emp_comp` function.

```
DROP FUNCTION emp_comp(NUMBER, NUMBER);
```

#### See Also

[CREATE FUNCTION](#)

## 9.47      `DROP INDEX`

#### Name

`DROP INDEX` -- remove an index

#### Synopsis

```
DROP INDEX <name>
```

#### Description

`DROP INDEX` drops an existing index from the database system. To execute this command you must be a superuser or the owner of the index. If any objects depend on the index, an error will be given and the index will not be dropped.

#### Parameters

##### `name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an index to remove.

## Examples

This command will remove the index, `name_idx`:

```
DROP INDEX name_idx;
```

## See Also

[CREATE INDEX](#), [ALTER INDEX](#)

## 9.48 DROP PACKAGE

### Name

`DROP PACKAGE` -- remove a package

### Synopsis

```
DROP PACKAGE [ BODY ] <name>
```

### Description

`DROP PACKAGE` drops an existing package. To execute this command you must be a superuser or the owner of the package. If `BODY` is specified, only the package body is removed – the package specification is not dropped. If `BODY` is omitted, both the package specification and body are removed.

### Parameters

`name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a package to remove.

## Examples

This command will remove the `emp_admin` package:

```
DROP PACKAGE emp_admin;
```

## See Also

[CREATE PACKAGE](#), [CREATE PACKAGE BODY](#)

## 9.49 DROP PROCEDURE

### Name

`DROP PROCEDURE` -- remove a procedure

## Synopsis

```
DROP PROCEDURE [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
[ ( [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> ] [, ...] )
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

**DROP PROCEDURE** removes the definition of an existing procedure. To execute this command you must be a superuser or the owner of the procedure. All input (**IN**, **IN OUT**) argument data types to the procedure must be specified if this is an overloaded procedure. (This requirement is not compatible with Oracle databases. In Oracle, only the procedure name is specified. Advanced Server allows overloading of procedure names, so the procedure signature given by the input argument data types is required in the Advanced Server **DROP PROCEDURE** command of an overloaded procedure.)

Usage of **IF EXISTS**, **CASCADE**, or **RESTRICT** is not compatible with Oracle databases and is used only by Advanced Server.

## Parameters

### IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the procedure does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

### name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing procedure.

### argmode

The mode of an argument: **IN**, **IN OUT**, or **OUT**. If omitted, the default is **IN**. Note that **DROP PROCEDURE** does not actually pay any attention to **OUT** arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the procedure's identity. So it is sufficient to list only the **IN** and **IN OUT** arguments. (Specification of **argmode** is not compatible with Oracle databases and applies only to Advanced Server.)

### argname

The name of an argument. Note that **DROP PROCEDURE** does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the procedure's identity. (Specification of **argname** is not compatible with Oracle databases and applies only to Advanced Server.)

### argtype

The data type of an argument of the procedure. (Specification of **argtype** is not compatible with Oracle databases and applies only to Advanced Server.)

### CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the procedure, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects.

### RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the procedure if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

The following command removes the **select\_emp** procedure.

```
DROP PROCEDURE select_emp;
```

## See Also

[CREATE PROCEDURE, ALTER PROCEDURE](#)

## 9.50 DROP PROFILE

### Name

**DROP PROFILE** – drop a user-defined profile

### Synopsis

```
DROP PROFILE [IF EXISTS] <profile_name> [CASCADE | RESTRICT];
```

### Description

Include the **IF EXISTS** clause to instruct the server to not throw an error if the specified profile does not exist. The server will issue a notice if the profile does not exist.

Include the optional **CASCADE** clause to reassign any users that are currently associated with the profile to the **default** profile, and then drop the profile. Include the optional **RESTRICT** clause to instruct the server to not drop any profile that is associated with a role. This is the default behavior.

### Parameters

**profile\_name**

The name of the profile being dropped.

### Examples

The following example drops a profile named **acctg\_profile**:

```
DROP PROFILE acctg_profile CASCADE;
```

The command first re-associates any roles associated with the **acctg\_profile** profile with the **default** profile, and then drops the **acctg\_profile** profile.

The following example drops a profile named **acctg\_profile**:

```
DROP PROFILE acctg_profile RESTRICT;
```

The **RESTRICT** clause in the command instructs the server to not drop **acctg\_profile** if there are any roles associated with the profile.

### See Also

[CREATE PROFILE, ALTER PROFILE](#)

## 9.51 DROP QUEUE

Advanced Server includes extra syntax (not offered by Oracle) with the `DROP QUEUE SQL` command. This syntax can be used in association with `DBMS_AQADM`.

## Name

`DROP QUEUE` -- drop an existing queue.

## Synopsis

Use `DROP QUEUE` to drop an existing queue:

```
DROP QUEUE [IF EXISTS] <name>
```

## Description

`DROP QUEUE` allows a superuser or a user with the `aq_administrator_role` privilege to drop an existing queue.

## Parameters

`name`

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of the queue that is being dropped.

`IF EXISTS`

Include the `IF EXISTS` clause to instruct the server to not return an error if the queue does not exist. The server will issue a notice.

## Examples

The following example drops a queue named `work_order`:

```
DROP QUEUE work_order;
```

## See Also

[CREATE QUEUE](#), [ALTER QUEUE](#)

## 9.52      DROP QUEUE TABLE

Advanced Server includes extra syntax (not offered by Oracle) with the `DROP QUEUE TABLE SQL` command. This syntax can be used in association with `DBMS_AQADM`.

## Name

`DROP QUEUE TABLE`-- drop a queue table.

## Synopsis

Use `DROP QUEUE TABLE` to delete a queue table:

```
DROP QUEUE TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [, ...]
[CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

## Description

`DROP QUEUE TABLE` allows a superuser or a user with the `aq_administrator_role` privilege to delete a queue table.

## Parameters

### `name`

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of the queue table that will be deleted.

### `IF EXISTS`

Include the `IF EXISTS` clause to instruct the server to not return an error if the queue table does not exist. The server will issue a notice.

### `CASCADE`

Include the `CASCADE` keyword to automatically delete any objects that depend on the queue table.

### `RESTRICT`

Include the `RESTRICT` keyword to instruct the server to refuse to delete the queue table if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

The following example deletes a queue table named `work_order_table` and any objects that depend on it:

```
DROP QUEUE TABLE work_order_table CASCADE;
```

## See Also

[CREATE QUEUE TABLE](#), [ALTER QUEUE TABLE](#)

## 9.53      DROP SYNONYM

### Name

`DROP SYNONYM` -- remove a synonym

### Synopsis

```
DROP [PUBLIC] SYNONYM [<schema>.]<syn_name>
```

### Description

`DROP SYNONYM` deletes existing synonyms. To execute this command you must be a superuser or the owner of the synonym, and have `USAGE` privileges on the schema in which the synonym resides.

## Parameters

### `syn_name`

`syn_name` is the name of the synonym. A synonym name must be unique within a schema.

### `schema`

**schema** specifies the name of the schema that the synonym resides in.

Like any other object that can be schema-qualified, you may have two synonyms with the same name in your search path. To disambiguate the name of the synonym that you are dropping, include a schema name. Unless a synonym is schema qualified in the **DROP SYNONYM** command, Advanced Server deletes the first instance of the synonym it finds in your search path.

You can optionally include the **PUBLIC** clause to drop a synonym that resides in the **public** schema. The **DROP PUBLIC SYNONYM** command, compatible with Oracle databases, drops a synonym that resides in the **public** schema:

```
DROP PUBLIC SYNONYM syn_name;
```

The following example drops the synonym, **personnel**:

```
DROP SYNONYM personnel;
```

## See Also

[CREATE SYNONYM](#)

## 9.54      **DROP ROLE**

### Name

**DROP ROLE** -- remove a database role

### Synopsis

```
DROP ROLE <name> [ CASCADE ]
```

### Description

**DROP ROLE** removes the specified role. To drop a superuser role, you must be a superuser yourself; to drop non-superuser roles, you must have **CREATEROLE** privilege.

A role cannot be removed if it is still referenced in any database of the cluster; an error will be raised if so. Before dropping the role, you must drop all the objects it owns (or reassign their ownership) and revoke any privileges the role has been granted.

It is not necessary to remove role memberships involving the role; **DROP ROLE** automatically revokes any memberships of the target role in other roles, and of other roles in the target role. The other roles are not dropped nor otherwise affected.

Alternatively, if the only objects owned by the role belong within a schema that is owned by the role and has the same name as the role, the **CASCADE** option can be specified. In this case the issuer of the **DROP ROLE name CASCADE** command must be a superuser and the named role, the schema, and all objects within the schema will be deleted.

### Parameters

**name**

The name of the role to remove.

## CASCADE

If specified, also drops the schema owned by, and with the same name as the role (and all objects owned by the role belonging to the schema) as long as no other dependencies on the role or the schema exist.

### Examples

To drop a role:

```
DROP ROLE admins;
```

### See Also

[CREATE ROLE](#), [SET ROLE](#), [GRANT](#), [REVOKE](#)

## 9.55 DROP SEQUENCE

### Name

`DROP SEQUENCE` -- remove a sequence

### Synopsis

```
DROP SEQUENCE <name> [, ...]
```

### Description

`DROP SEQUENCE` removes sequence number generators. To execute this command you must be a superuser or the owner of the sequence.

### Parameters

`name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a sequence.

### Examples

To remove the sequence, `serial`:

```
DROP SEQUENCE serial;
```

### See Also

[ALTER SEQUENCE](#), [CREATE SEQUENCE](#)

## 9.56 DROP TABLE

### Name

**DROP TABLE** -- remove a table

## Synopsis

```
DROP TABLE <name> [CASCADE | RESTRICT | CASCADE CONSTRAINTS]
```

## Description

**DROP TABLE** removes tables from the database. Only its owner may destroy a table. To empty a table of rows, without destroying the table, use **DELETE**. **DROP TABLE** always removes any indexes, rules, triggers, and constraints that exist for the target table.

## Parameters

**name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to drop.

Include the **RESTRICT** keyword to specify that the server should refuse to drop the table if any objects depend on it. This is the default behavior; the **DROP TABLE** command will report an error if any objects depend on the table.

Include the **CASCADE** clause to drop any objects that depend on the table.

Include the **CASCADE CONSTRAINTS** clause to specify that Advanced Server should drop any dependent constraints (excluding other object types) on the specified table.

## Examples

The following command drops a table named **emp** that has no dependencies:

```
DROP TABLE emp;
```

The outcome of a **DROP TABLE** command will vary depending on whether the table has any dependencies - you can control the outcome by specifying a **drop behavior**. For example, if you create two tables, **orders** and **items**, where the **items** table is dependent on the **orders** table:

```
CREATE TABLE orders
  (order_id int PRIMARY KEY, order_date date, ...);
CREATE TABLE items
  (order_id REFERENCES orders, quantity int, ...);
```

Advanced Server will perform one of the following actions when dropping the **orders** table, depending on the drop behavior that you specify:

- If you specify **DROP TABLE orders RESTRICT**, Advanced Server will report an error.
- If you specify **DROP TABLE orders CASCADE**, Advanced Server will drop the **orders** table and the **items** table.
- If you specify **DROP TABLE orders CASCADE CONSTRAINTS**, Advanced Server will drop the **orders** table and remove the foreign key specification from the **items** table, but not drop the **items** table.

## See Also

[CREATE TABLE](#), [ALTER TABLE](#)

## 9.57 DROP TABLESPACE

**Name**

**DROP TABLESPACE** -- remove a tablespace

**Synopsis**

**DROP TABLESPACE <tablespacename>**

**Description**

**DROP TABLESPACE** removes a tablespace from the system.

A tablespace can only be dropped by its owner or a superuser. The tablespace must be empty of all database objects before it can be dropped. It is possible that objects in other databases may still reside in the tablespace even if no objects in the current database are using the tablespace.

**Parameters**

**tablespacename**

The name of a tablespace.

**Examples**

To remove tablespace **employee\_space** from the system:

**DROP TABLESPACE employee\_space;**

**See Also**

[ALTER TABLESPACE](#)

## 9.58      **DROP TRIGGER**

**Name**

**DROP TRIGGER** -- remove a trigger

**Synopsis**

**DROP TRIGGER <name>**

**Description**

**DROP TRIGGER** removes a trigger from its associated table. The command must be run by a superuser or the owner of the table on which the trigger is defined.

**Parameters**

**name**

The name of a trigger to remove.

**Examples**

Remove a trigger named `emp_salary_trig`:

```
DROP TRIGGER emp_salary_trig;
```

## See Also

[CREATE TRIGGER](#), [ALTER TRIGGER](#)

## 9.59 DROP TYPE

### Name

`DROP TYPE` -- remove a type definition

### Synopsis

```
DROP TYPE [ BODY ] <name>
```

### Description

`DROP TYPE` removes the type definition. To execute this command you must be a superuser or the owner of the type.

The optional `BODY` qualifier applies only to object type definitions, not to collection types nor to composite types. If `BODY` is specified, only the object type body is removed – the object type specification is not dropped. If `BODY` is omitted, both the object type specification and body are removed.

The type will not be deleted if there are other database objects dependent upon the named type.

### Parameters

`name`

The name of a type definition to remove.

### Examples

Drop the object type named `addr_obj_typ`:

```
DROP TYPE addr_obj_typ;
```

Drop the nested table type named `budget_tbl_typ`:

```
DROP TYPE budget_tbl_typ;
```

## See Also

[CREATE TYPE](#), [CREATE TYPE BODY](#)

## 9.60 DROP USER

## Name

**DROP USER** -- remove a database user account

## Synopsis

```
DROP USER <name> [ CASCADE ]
```

## Description

**DROP USER** removes the specified user. To drop a superuser, you must be a superuser yourself; to drop non-superusers, you must have **CREATEROLE** privilege.

A user cannot be removed if it is still referenced in any database of the cluster; an error will be raised if so. Before dropping the user, you must drop all the objects it owns (or reassign their ownership) and revoke any privileges the user has been granted.

However, it is not necessary to remove role memberships involving the user; **DROP USER** automatically revokes any memberships of the target user in other roles, and of other roles in the target user. The other roles are not dropped nor otherwise affected.

Alternatively, if the only objects owned by the user belong within a schema that is owned by the user and has the same name as the user, the **CASCADE** option can be specified. In this case the issuer of the **DROP USER** name **CASCADE** command must be a superuser and the named user, the schema, and all objects within the schema will be deleted.

## Parameters

**name**

The name of the user to remove.

**CASCADE**

If specified, also drops the schema owned by, and with the same name as the user (and all objects owned by the user belonging to the schema) as long as no other dependencies on the user or the schema exist.

## Examples

To drop a user account named **john** that owns no objects nor has been granted any privileges on other objects:

```
DROP USER john;
```

To drop user account, **john**, who has not been granted any privileges on any objects, and does not own any objects outside of a schema named, **john**, that is owned by user, **john**:

```
DROP USER john CASCADE;
```

## See Also

[CREATE USER](#), [ALTER USER](#)

## 9.61 DROP VIEW

## Name

**DROP VIEW** -- remove a view

## Synopsis

```
DROP VIEW <name>
```

## Description

**DROP VIEW** drops an existing view. To execute this command you must be a database superuser or the owner of the view. The named view will not be deleted if other objects are dependent upon this view (such as a view of a view).

The form of the **DROP VIEW** command compatible with Oracle does not support a **CASCADE** clause; to drop a view and its dependencies, use the PostgreSQL-compatible form of the **DROP VIEW** command. For more information, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-dropview.html>

## Parameters

**name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the view to remove.

## Examples

This command will remove the view named **dept\_30**:

```
DROP VIEW dept_30;
```

## See Also

[CREATE VIEW](#)

## 9.62 EXEC

### Name

**EXEC**

## Synopsis

```
EXEC function_name [('['<argument_list>'])']
```

## Description

**EXECUTE**

## Parameters

**procedure\_name**

**procedure\_name** is the (optionally schema-qualified) function name.

**argument\_list**

`argument_list` specifies a comma-separated list of arguments required by the function. Note that each member of `argument_list` corresponds to a formal argument expected by the function. Each formal argument may be an `IN` parameter, an `OUT` parameter, or an `INOUT` parameter.

## Examples

The `EXEC` statement may take one of several forms, depending on the arguments required by the function:

```
EXEC update_balance;
EXEC update_balance();
EXEC update_balance(1,2,3);
```

## 9.63 GRANT

### Name

`GRANT` -- define access privileges

### Synopsis

```
GRANT { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | REFERENCES }
[,...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON tablename
TO { username | groupname | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
```

```
GRANT { { INSERT | UPDATE | REFERENCES } (column [, ...]) }
[, ...]
ON tablename
TO { username | groupname | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
```

```
GRANT { SELECT | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON sequencename
TO { username | groupname | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
```

```
GRANT { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON FUNCTION progname
( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype ] [, ...] )
TO { username | groupname | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
```

```
GRANT { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON PROCEDURE progname
( ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype ] [, ...] ) )
TO { username | groupname | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
```

```
GRANT { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON PACKAGE packagename
```

TO { username | groupname | PUBLIC } [, ...]  
 [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT role [, ...]  
 TO { username | groupname | PUBLIC } [, ...]  
 [ WITH ADMIN OPTION ]

GRANT { CONNECT | RESOURCE | DBA } [, ...]  
 TO { username | groupname } [, ...]  
 [ WITH ADMIN OPTION ]

GRANT CREATE [ PUBLIC ] DATABASE LINK  
 TO { username | groupname }

GRANT DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK  
 TO { username | groupname }

GRANT EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY  
 TO { username | groupname }

## Description

The **GRANT** command has three basic variants: one that grants privileges on a database object (table, view, sequence, or program), one that grants membership in a role, and one that grants system privileges. These variants are similar in many ways, but they are different enough to be described separately.

In Advanced Server, the concept of users and groups has been unified into a single type of entity called a **role**. In this context, a **user** is a role that has the **LOGIN** attribute – the role may be used to create a session and connect to an application. A **group** is a role that does not have the **LOGIN** attribute – the role may not be used to create a session or connect to an application.

A role may be a member of one or more other roles, so the traditional concept of users belonging to groups is still valid. However, with the generalization of users and groups, users may “belong” to users, groups may “belong” to groups, and groups may “belong” to users, forming a general multi-level hierarchy of roles. User names and group names share the same namespace therefore it is not necessary to distinguish whether a grantee is a user or a group in the **GRANT** command.

## GRANT on Database Objects

This variant of the **GRANT** command gives specific privileges on a database object to a role. These privileges are added to those already granted, if any.

The key word **PUBLIC** indicates that the privileges are to be granted to all roles, including those that may be created later. **PUBLIC** may be thought of as an implicitly defined group that always includes all roles. Any particular role will have the sum of privileges granted directly to it, privileges granted to any role it is presently a member of, and privileges granted to **PUBLIC**.

If the **WITH GRANT OPTION** is specified, the recipient of the privilege may in turn grant it to others. Without a grant option, the recipient cannot do that. Grant options cannot be granted to **PUBLIC**.

There is no need to grant privileges to the owner of an object (usually the user that created it), as the owner has all privileges by default. (The owner could, however, choose to revoke some of his own privileges for safety.) The right to drop an object or to alter its definition in any way is not described by a grantable privilege; it is inherent in the owner, and cannot be granted or revoked. The owner implicitly has all grant options for the object as well.

Depending on the type of object, the initial default privileges may include granting some privileges to **PUBLIC**. The default is no public access for tables and **EXECUTE** privilege for functions, procedures, and packages. The object owner may of course revoke these privileges. (For maximum security, issue the **REVOKE** in the same

transaction that creates the object; then there is no window in which another user may use the object.)

The possible privileges are:

### SELECT

Allows `SELECT` from any column of the specified table, view, or sequence. For sequences, this privilege also allows the use of the `currval` function.

### INSERT

Allows `INSERT` of a new row into the specified table.

### UPDATE

Allows `UPDATE` of a column of the specified table. `SELECT ... FOR UPDATE` also requires this privilege (besides the `SELECT` privilege).

### DELETE

Allows `DELETE` of a row from the specified table.

### REFERENCES

To create a foreign key constraint, it is necessary to have this privilege on both the referencing and referenced tables.

### EXECUTE

Allows the use of the specified package, procedure, or function. When applied to a package, allows the use of all of the package's public procedures, public functions, public variables, records, cursors and other public objects and object types. This is the only type of privilege that is applicable to functions, procedures, and packages.

The Advanced Server syntax for granting the `EXECUTE` privilege is not fully compatible with Oracle databases. Advanced Server requires qualification of the program name by one of the keywords, `FUNCTION`, `PROCEDURE`, or `PACKAGE` whereas these keywords must be omitted in Oracle. For functions, Advanced Server requires all input (`IN`, `IN OUT`) argument data types after the function name (including an empty parenthesis if there are no function arguments). For procedures, all input argument data types must be specified if the procedure has one or more input arguments. In Oracle, function and procedure signatures must be omitted. This is due to the fact that all programs share the same namespace in Oracle, whereas functions, procedures, and packages have their own individual namespace in Advanced Server to allow program name overloading to a certain extent.

### ALL PRIVILEGES

Grant all of the available privileges at once.

The privileges required by other commands are listed on the reference page of the respective command.

## GRANT on Roles

This variant of the `GRANT` command grants membership in a role to one or more other roles. Membership in a role is significant because it conveys the privileges granted to a role to each of its members.

If the `WITH ADMIN OPTION` is specified, the member may in turn grant membership in the role to others, and revoke membership in the role as well. Without the admin option, ordinary users cannot do that.

Database superusers can grant or revoke membership in any role to anyone. Roles having the `CREATEROLE` privilege can grant or revoke membership in any role that is not a superuser.

There are three pre-defined roles that have the following meanings:

### CONNECT

Granting the **CONNECT** role is equivalent to giving the grantee the **LOGIN** privilege. The grantor must have the **CREATEROLE** privilege.

### RESOURCE

Granting the **RESOURCE** role is equivalent to granting the **CREATE** and **USAGE** privileges on a schema that has the same name as the grantee. This schema must exist before the grant is given. The grantor must have the privilege to grant **CREATE** or **USAGE** privileges on this schema to the grantee.

### DBA

Granting the **DBA** role is equivalent to making the grantee a superuser. The grantor must be a superuser.

## Notes

The **REVOKE** command is used to revoke access privileges.

When a non-owner of an object attempts to **GRANT** privileges on the object, the command will fail outright if the user has no privileges whatsoever on the object. As long as a privilege is available, the command will proceed, but it will grant only those privileges for which the user has grant options. The **GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES** forms will issue a warning message if no grant options are held, while the other forms will issue a warning if grant options for any of the privileges specifically named in the command are not held. (In principle these statements apply to the object owner as well, but since the owner is always treated as holding all grant options, the cases can never occur.)

It should be noted that database superusers can access all objects regardless of object privilege settings. This is comparable to the rights of **root** in a Unix system. As with **root**, it's unwise to operate as a superuser except when absolutely necessary.

If a superuser chooses to issue a **GRANT** or **REVOKE** command, the command is performed as though it were issued by the owner of the affected object. In particular, privileges granted via such a command will appear to have been granted by the object owner. (For role membership, the membership appears to have been granted by the containing role itself.)

**GRANT** and **REVOKE** can also be done by a role that is not the owner of the affected object, but is a member of the role that owns the object, or is a member of a role that holds privileges **WITH GRANT OPTION** on the object. In this case the privileges will be recorded as having been granted by the role that actually owns the object or holds the privileges **WITH GRANT OPTION**.

For example, if table **t1** is owned by role **g1**, of which role **u1** is a member, then **u1** can grant privileges on **t1** to **u2**, but those privileges will appear to have been granted directly by **g1**. Any other member of role **g1** could revoke them later.

If the role executing **GRANT** holds the required privileges indirectly via more than one role membership path, it is unspecified which containing role will be recorded as having done the grant. In such cases it is best practice to use **SET ROLE** to become the specific role you want to do the **GRANT** as.

Currently, Advanced Server does not support granting or revoking privileges for individual columns of a table. One possible workaround is to create a view having just the desired columns and then grant privileges to that view.

## Examples

Grant insert privilege to all users on table **emp**:

```
GRANT INSERT ON emp TO PUBLIC;
```

Grant all available privileges to user **mary** on view **salesemp**:

```
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON salesemp TO mary;
```

Note that while the above will indeed grant all privileges if executed by a superuser or the owner of `emp`, when executed by someone else it will only grant those permissions for which the someone else has grant options.

Grant membership in role `admins` to user `joe`:

```
GRANT admins TO joe;
```

Grant `CONNECT` privilege to user `joe`:

```
GRANT CONNECT TO joe;
```

## See Also

[REVOKE, SET ROLE](#)

## GRANT on System Privileges

This variant of the `GRANT` command gives a role the ability to perform certain `system` operations within a database. System privileges relate to the ability to create or delete certain database objects that are not necessarily within the confines of one schema. Only database superusers can grant system privileges.

### CREATE [PUBLIC] DATABASE LINK

The `CREATE [PUBLIC] DATABASE LINK` privilege allows the specified role to create a database link. Include the `PUBLIC` keyword to allow the role to create public database links; omit the `PUBLIC` keyword to allow the specified role to create private database links.

### DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK

The `DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK` privilege allows a role to drop a public database link. System privileges are not required to drop a private database link. A private database link may be dropped by the link owner or a database superuser.

### EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY

The `EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY` privilege allows a role to execute a SQL command without invoking any policy function that may be associated with the target database object. The role is exempt from all security policies in the database.

The `EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY` privilege is not inheritable by membership to a role that has the `EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY` privilege. For example, the following sequence of `GRANT` commands does not result in user `joe` obtaining the `EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY` privilege even though `joe` is granted membership to the `enterprisedb` role, which has been granted the `EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY` privilege:

```
GRANT EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY TO enterprisedb;
GRANT enterprisedb TO joe;
```

The `rolpolicyexempt` column of the system catalog table `pg_authid` is set to `true` if a role has the `EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY` privilege.

## Examples

Grant `CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK` privilege to user `joe`:

```
GRANT CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK TO joe;
```

Grant `DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK` privilege to user `joe`:

```
GRANT DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK TO joe;
```

Grant the `EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY` privilege to user `joe`:

```
GRANT EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY TO joe;
```

## Using the ALTER ROLE Command to Assign System Privileges

The Advanced Server `ALTER ROLE` command also supports syntax that you can use to assign:

- the privilege required to create a public or private database link.
- the privilege required to drop a public database link.
- the `EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY` privilege.

The `ALTER ROLE` syntax is functionally equivalent to the respective commands compatible with Oracle databases.

### See Also

[REVOKE, ALTER ROLE](#)

## 9.64      INSERT

### Name

`INSERT` -- create new rows in a table

### Synopsis

```
INSERT INTO <table>[@<dblink>] [ ( <column> [, ...] ) ]
{ VALUES ( { <expression> | DEFAULT } [, ...] )
[ RETURNING <return_expression> [, ...]
{ INTO { <record> | <variable> [, ...] }
| BULK COLLECT INTO <collection> [, ...] } ]
| <query> }
```

### Description

`INSERT` allows you to insert new rows into a table. You can insert a single row at a time or several rows as a result of a query.

The columns in the target list may be listed in any order. Each column not present in the target list will be inserted using a default value, either its declared default value or null.

If the expression for each column is not of the correct data type, automatic type conversion will be attempted.

The `RETURNING INTO { record | variable [, ...] }` clause may only be specified when the `INSERT` command is used within an SPL program and only when the `VALUES` clause is used.

The `RETURNING BULK COLLECT INTO collection [, ...]` clause may only be specified if the `INSERT` command is used within an SPL program. If more than one `collection` is specified as the target of the `BULK COLLECT INTO` clause, then each `collection` must consist of a single, scalar field – i.e., `collection` must not be a record.

`return_expression` evaluated for each inserted row, becomes an element in `collection` starting with the first element. Any existing rows in `collection` are deleted. If the result set is empty, then `collection` will be empty.

You must have `INSERT` privilege to a table in order to insert into it. If you use the `query` clause to insert rows from a query, you also need to have `SELECT` privilege on any table used in the query.

## Parameters

### table

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table.

### dblink

Database link name identifying a remote database. See the `CREATE DATABASE LINK` command for information on database links.

### column

The name of a column in `table`.

### expression

An expression or value to assign to `column`.

### DEFAULT

This column will be filled with its default value.

### query

A query (`SELECT` statement) that supplies the rows to be inserted. Refer to the `SELECT` command for a description of the syntax.

### return\_expression

An expression that may include one or more columns from `table`. If a column name from `table` is specified in `return_expression`, the value substituted for the column when `return_expression` is evaluated is determined as follows:

If the column specified in `return_expression` is assigned a value in the `INSERT` command, then the assigned value is used in the evaluation of `return_expression`.

If the column specified in `return_expression` is not assigned a value in the `INSERT` command and there is no default value for the column in the table's column definition, then null is used in the evaluation of `return_expression`.

If the column specified in `return_expression` is not assigned a value in the `INSERT` command and there is a default value for the column in the table's column definition, then the default value is used in the evaluation of `return_expression`.

### record

A record whose field the evaluated `return_expression` is to be assigned. The first `return_expression` is assigned to the first field in `record`, the second `return_expression` is assigned to the second field in `record`, etc. The number of fields in `record` must exactly match the number of expressions and the fields must be type-compatible with their assigned expressions.

### variable

A variable to which the evaluated `return_expression` is to be assigned. If more than one `return_expression` and `variable` are specified, the first `return_expression` is assigned to the first `variable`, the second

`return_expression` is assigned to the second `variable`, etc. The number of variables specified following the `INTO` keyword must exactly match the number of expressions following the `RETURNING` keyword and the variables must be type-compatible with their assigned expressions.

### collection

A collection in which an element is created from the evaluated `return_expression`. There can be either a single collection which may be a collection of a single field or a collection of a record type, or there may be more than one collection in which case each collection must consist of a single field. The number of return expressions must match in number and order the number of fields in all specified collections. Each corresponding `return_expression` and `collection` field must be type-compatible.

### Examples

Insert a single row into table `emp`:

```
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (8021,'JOHN','SALESMAN',7698,'22-FEB-07',1250,500,30);
```

In this second example, the column, `comm`, is omitted and therefore it will have the default value of null:

```
INSERT INTO emp (empno, ename, job, mgr, hiredate, sal, deptno)
VALUES (8022,'PETERS','CLERK',7698,'03-DEC-06',950,30);
```

The third example uses the `DEFAULT` clause for the `hiredate` and `comm` columns rather than specifying a value:

```
INSERT INTO emp VALUES (8023,'FORD','ANALYST',7566,NULL,3000,NULL,20);
```

This example creates a table for the department names and then inserts into the table by selecting from the `dname` column of the `dept` table:

```
CREATE TABLE deptnames (
    deptname      VARCHAR2(14)
);
INSERT INTO deptnames SELECT dname FROM dept;
```

## 9.65 LOCK

### Name

`LOCK` -- lock a table

### Synopsis

```
LOCK TABLE <name> [, ...] IN <lockmode> MODE [ NOWAIT ]
```

where `lockmode` is one of:

`ROW SHARE | ROW EXCLUSIVE | SHARE | SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE`

### Description

`LOCK TABLE` obtains a table-level lock, waiting if necessary for any conflicting locks to be released. If `NOWAIT` is specified, `LOCK TABLE` does not wait to acquire the desired lock: if it cannot be acquired immediately, the command is aborted and an error is emitted. Once obtained, the lock is held for the remainder of the current

transaction. (There is no `UNLOCK TABLE` command; locks are always released at transaction end.)

When acquiring locks automatically for commands that reference tables, Advanced Server always uses the least restrictive lock mode possible. `LOCK TABLE` provides for cases when you might need more restrictive locking. For example, suppose an application runs a transaction at the isolation level read committed and needs to ensure that data in a table remains stable for the duration of the transaction. To achieve this you could obtain `SHARE` lock mode over the table before querying. This will prevent concurrent data changes and ensure subsequent reads of the table see a stable view of committed data, because `SHARE` lock mode conflicts with the `ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock acquired by writers, and your `LOCK TABLE` name `IN SHARE MODE` statement will wait until any concurrent holders of `ROW EXCLUSIVE` mode locks commit or roll back. Thus, once you obtain the lock, there are no uncommitted writes outstanding; furthermore none can begin until you release the lock.

To achieve a similar effect when running a transaction at the isolation level serializable, you have to execute the `LOCK TABLE` statement before executing any data modification statement. A serializable transaction's view of data will be frozen when its first data modification statement begins. A later `LOCK TABLE` will still prevent concurrent writes - but it won't ensure that what the transaction reads corresponds to the latest committed values.

If a transaction of this sort is going to change the data in the table, then it should use `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock mode instead of `SHARE` mode.

This ensures that only one transaction of this type runs at a time. Without this, a deadlock is possible: two transactions might both acquire `SHARE` mode, and then be unable to also acquire `ROW EXCLUSIVE` mode to actually perform their updates. (Note that a transaction's own locks never conflict, so a transaction can acquire `ROW EXCLUSIVE` mode when it holds `SHARE` mode - but not if anyone else holds `SHARE` mode.) To avoid deadlocks, make sure all transactions acquire locks on the same objects in the same order, and if multiple lock modes are involved for a single object, then transactions should always acquire the most restrictive mode first.

## Parameters

### `name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table to lock.

The command `LOCK TABLE a, b;` is equivalent to `LOCK TABLE a; LOCK TABLE b`. The tables are locked one-by-one in the order specified in the `LOCK TABLE` command.

### `lockmode`

The lock mode specifies which locks this lock conflicts with.

If no lock mode is specified, then the server uses the most restrictive mode, `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE`. (`ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` is not compatible with Oracle databases. In Advanced Server, this configuration mode ensures that no other transaction can access the locked table in any manner.)

### `NOWAIT`

Specifies that `LOCK TABLE` should not wait for any conflicting locks to be released: if the specified lock cannot be immediately acquired without waiting, the transaction is aborted.

## Notes

All forms of `LOCK` require `UPDATE` and/or `DELETE` privileges.

`LOCK TABLE` is useful only inside a transaction block since the lock is dropped as soon as the transaction ends. A `LOCK TABLE` command appearing outside any transaction block forms a self-contained transaction, so the lock will be dropped as soon as it is obtained.

`LOCK TABLE` only deals with table-level locks, and so the mode names involving `ROW` are all misnomers. These mode names should generally be read as indicating the intention of the user to acquire row-level locks within the locked table. Also, `ROW EXCLUSIVE` mode is a sharable table lock. Keep in mind that all the lock modes have identical semantics so far as `LOCK TABLE` is concerned, differing only in the rules about which modes conflict with which.

## 9.66 REVOKE

### Name

**REVOKE** -- remove access privileges

### Synopsis

```
REVOKE { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | REFERENCES }
[,...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON tablename
FROM { username | groupname | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

```
REVOKE { SELECT | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON sequencename
FROM { username | groupname | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

```
REVOKE { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON FUNCTION progname
( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype ] [, ...] )
FROM { username | groupname | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

```
REVOKE { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON PROCEDURE progname
[ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype ] [, ...] ) ]
FROM { username | groupname | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

```
REVOKE { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON PACKAGE packagename
FROM { username | groupname | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

```
REVOKE role [, ...] FROM { username | groupname | PUBLIC }
[, ...]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

```
REVOKE { CONNECT | RESOURCE | DBA } [, ...]
FROM { username | groupname } [, ...]
```

```
REVOKE CREATE [ PUBLIC ] DATABASE LINK
FROM { username | groupname }
```

```
REVOKE DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK
FROM { username | groupname }
```

```
REVOKE EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY
FROM { username | groupname }
```

### Description

The **REVOKE** command revokes previously granted privileges from one or more roles. The key word **PUBLIC** refers to the implicitly defined group of all roles.

See the description of the **GRANT** command for the meaning of the privilege types.

Note that any particular role will have the sum of privileges granted directly to it, privileges granted to any role it is presently a member of, and privileges granted to **PUBLIC**. Thus, for example, revoking **SELECT** privilege from **PUBLIC** does not necessarily mean that all roles have lost **SELECT** privilege on the object: those who have it granted directly or via another role will still have it.

If the privilege had been granted with the grant option, the grant option for the privilege is revoked as well as the privilege, itself.

If a user holds a privilege with grant option and has granted it to other users then the privileges held by those other users are called dependent privileges. If the privilege or the grant option held by the first user is being revoked and dependent privileges exist, those dependent privileges are also revoked if **CASCADE** is specified, else the revoke action will fail. This recursive revocation only affects privileges that were granted through a chain of users that is traceable to the user that is the subject of this **REVOKE** command. Thus, the affected users may effectively keep the privilege if it was also granted through other users.

#### Note

**CASCADE** is not an option compatible with Oracle databases. By default Oracle always cascades dependent privileges, but Advanced Server requires the **CASCADE** keyword to be explicitly given, otherwise the **REVOKE** command will fail.

When revoking membership in a role, **GRANT OPTION** is instead called **ADMIN OPTION**, but the behavior is similar.

#### Notes

A user can only revoke privileges that were granted directly by that user. If, for example, user **A** has granted a privilege with grant option to user **B**, and user **B** has in turn granted it to user **C**, then user **A** cannot revoke the privilege directly from **C**. Instead, user **A** could revoke the grant option from user **B** and use the **CASCADE** option so that the privilege is in turn revoked from user **C**. For another example, if both **A** and **B** have granted the same privilege to **C**, **A** can revoke his own grant but not **B**'s grant, so **C** will still effectively have the privilege.

When a non-owner of an object attempts to **REVOKE** privileges on the object, the command will fail outright if the user has no privileges whatsoever on the object. As long as some privilege is available, the command will proceed, but it will revoke only those privileges for which the user has grant options. The **REVOKE ALL PRIVILEGES** forms will issue a warning message if no grant options are held, while the other forms will issue a warning if grant options for any of the privileges specifically named in the command are not held. (In principle these statements apply to the object owner as well, but since the owner is always treated as holding all grant options, the cases can never occur.)

If a superuser chooses to issue a **GRANT** or **REVOKE** command, the command is performed as though it were issued by the owner of the affected object. Since all privileges ultimately come from the object owner (possibly indirectly via chains of grant options), it is possible for a superuser to revoke all privileges, but this may require use of **CASCADE** as stated above.

**REVOKE** can also be done by a role that is not the owner of the affected object, but is a member of the role that owns the object, or is a member of a role that holds privileges **WITH GRANT OPTION** on the object. In this case the command is performed as though it were issued by the containing role that actually owns the object or holds the privileges **WITH GRANT OPTION**. For example, if table **t1** is owned by role **g1**, of which role **u1** is a member, then **u1** can revoke privileges on **t1** that are recorded as being granted by **g1**. This would include grants made by **u1** as well as by other members of role **g1**.

If the role executing **REVOKE** holds privileges indirectly via more than one role membership path, it is unspecified which containing role will be used to perform the command. In such cases it is best practice to use **SET ROLE** to become the specific role you want to do the **REVOKE** as. Failure to do so may lead to revoking privileges other than the ones you intended, or not revoking anything at all.

## Note

The Advanced Server **ALTER ROLE** command also supports syntax that revokes the system privileges required to create a public or private database link, or exemptions from fine-grained access control policies (**DBMS\_RLS**). The **ALTER ROLE** syntax is functionally equivalent to the respective **REVOKE** command, compatible with Oracle databases.

## Examples

Revoke insert privilege for the public on table **emp**:

```
REVOKE INSERT ON emp FROM PUBLIC;
```

Revoke all privileges from user **mary** on view **salesemp**:

```
REVOKE ALL PRIVILEGES ON salesemp FROM mary;
```

Note that this actually means “revoke all privileges that I granted”.

Revoke membership in role **admins** from user **joe**:

```
REVOKE admins FROM joe;
```

Revoke **CONNECT** privilege from user **joe**:

```
REVOKE CONNECT FROM joe;
```

Revoke **CREATE DATABASE LINK** privilege from user **joe**:

```
REVOKE CREATE DATABASE LINK FROM joe;
```

Revoke the **EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY** privilege from user **joe**:

```
REVOKE EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY FROM joe;
```

## See Also

[GRANT, SET ROLE](#)

## 9.67 ROLLBACK

### Name

**ROLLBACK** -- abort the current transaction

### Synopsis

```
ROLLBACK [ WORK ]
```

### Description

**ROLLBACK** rolls back the current transaction and causes all the updates made by the transaction to be discarded.

## Parameters

### WORK

Optional key word - has no effect.

## Notes

Use **COMMIT** to successfully terminate a transaction.

Issuing **ROLLBACK** when not inside a transaction does no harm.

### Note

Executing a **ROLLBACK** in a plpgsql procedure will throw an error if there is an Oracle-style SPL procedure on the runtime stack.

## Examples

To abort all changes:

```
ROLLBACK;
```

## See Also

[COMMIT](#), [ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT](#), [SAVEPOINT](#)

## 9.68 ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT

### Name

#### ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT -- roll back to a savepoint

### Synopsis

```
ROLLBACK [ WORK ] TO [ SAVEPOINT ] <savepoint_name>
```

### Description

Roll back all commands that were executed after the savepoint was established. The savepoint remains valid and can be rolled back to again, if needed.

**ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT** destroys all savepoints that were established after the named savepoint.

## Parameters

### savepoint\_name

The savepoint to which to roll back.

## Notes

Specifying a savepoint name that has not been established is an error.

**ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT** is not supported within SPL programs.

## Examples

To undo the effects of the commands executed savepoint `depts` was established:

```
\set AUTOCOMMIT off
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50, 'HR', 'NEW YORK');
SAVEPOINT depts;
INSERT INTO emp (empno, ename, deptno) VALUES (9001, 'JONES', 50);
INSERT INTO emp (empno, ename, deptno) VALUES (9002, 'ALICE', 50);
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT depts;
```

## See Also

[COMMIT](#), [ROLLBACK](#), [SAVEPOINT](#)

## 9.69      SAVEPOINT

### Name

`SAVEPOINT` -- define a new savepoint within the current transaction

### Synopsis

```
SAVEPOINT <savepoint_name>
```

### Description

`SAVEPOINT` establishes a new savepoint within the current transaction.

A savepoint is a special mark inside a transaction that allows all commands that are executed after it was established to be rolled back, restoring the transaction state to what it was at the time of the savepoint.

### Parameters

`savepoint_name`

The name to be given to the savepoint.

### Notes

Use `ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT` to roll back to a savepoint.

Savepoints can only be established when inside a transaction block. There can be multiple savepoints defined within a transaction.

When another savepoint is established with the same name as a previous savepoint, the old savepoint is kept, though only the more recent one will be used when rolling back.

`SAVEPOINT` is not supported within SPL programs.

## Examples

To establish a savepoint and later undo the effects of all commands executed after it was established:

```
\set AUTOCOMMIT off
```

```

INSERT INTO dept VALUES (50, 'HR', 'NEW YORK');
SAVEPOINT depts;
INSERT INTO emp (empno, ename, deptno) VALUES (9001, 'JONES', 50);
INSERT INTO emp (empno, ename, deptno) VALUES (9002, 'ALICE', 50);
SAVEPOINT emps;
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (9001,'17-SEP-07',NULL,'CLERK',800,NULL,50,'New
Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES (9002,'20-SEP-07',NULL,'CLERK',700,NULL,50,'New
Hire');
ROLLBACK TO depts;
COMMIT;

```

The above transaction will commit a row into the `dept` table, but the inserts into the `emp` and `jobhist` tables are rolled back.

## See Also

[COMMIT](#), [ROLLBACK](#), [ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT](#)

## 9.70 SELECT

### Name

`SELECT` -- retrieve rows from a table or view

### Synopsis

```

SELECT [ optimizer_hint ] [ ALL | DISTINCT | UNIQUE ]
* | expression [ AS output_name ] [, ...]
FROM from_item [, ...]
[ WHERE condition ]
[ [ START WITH start_expression ]
  CONNECT BY { PRIOR parent_expr = child_expr |
    child_expr = PRIOR parent_expr }
  [ ORDER SIBLINGS BY expression [ ASC | DESC ] [, ...] ] ]
[ GROUP BY { expression | ROLLUP ( expr_list ) |
  CUBE ( expr_list ) | GROUPING SETS ( expr_list ) } [, ...]
  [ LEVEL ] ]
[ HAVING condition [, ...] ]
[ { UNION [ ALL ] | INTERSECT | MINUS } select ]
[ ORDER BY expression [ ASC | DESC ] [, ...] ]
[ FOR UPDATE [WAIT n|NOWAIT|SKIP LOCKED]]

```

where `from_item` can be one of:

```

table_name[@dblink] [ alias ]
( select ) alias
from_item [ NATURAL ] join_type from_item
[ ON join_condition | USING ( join_column [, ...] ) ]

```

### Description

`SELECT` retrieves rows from one or more tables. The general processing of `SELECT` is as follows:

1. All elements in the `FROM` list are computed. (Each element in the `FROM` list is a real or virtual table.) If more than one element is specified in the `FROM` list, they are cross-joined together. (See `FROM` clause, below.)
2. If the `WHERE` clause is specified, all rows that do not satisfy the condition are eliminated from the output. (See `WHERE` clause, below.)
3. If the `GROUP BY` clause is specified, the output is divided into groups of rows that match on one or more values. If the `HAVING` clause is present, it eliminates groups that do not satisfy the given condition. (See `GROUP BY` clause and `HAVING` clause below.)
4. Using the operators `UNION`, `INTERSECT`, and `MINUS`, the output of more than one `SELECT` statement can be combined to form a single result set. The `UNION` operator returns all rows that are in one or both of the result sets. The `INTERSECT` operator returns all rows that are strictly in both result sets. The `MINUS` operator returns the rows that are in the first result set but not in the second. In all three cases, duplicate rows are eliminated. In the case of the `UNION` operator, if `ALL` is specified then duplicates are not eliminated. (See `UNION` clause, `INTERSECT` clause, and `MINUS` clause below.)
5. The actual output rows are computed using the `SELECT` output expressions for each selected row. (See `SELECT` list below.)
6. The `CONNECT BY` clause is used to select data that has a hierarchical relationship. Such data has a parent-child relationship between rows. (See `CONNECT BY` clause.)
7. If the `ORDER BY` clause is specified, the returned rows are sorted in the specified order. If `ORDER BY` is not given, the rows are returned in whatever order the system finds fastest to produce. (See `ORDER BY` clause below.)
8. `DISTINCT | UNIQUE` eliminates duplicate rows from the result. `ALL` (the default) will return all candidate rows, including duplicates. (See `DISTINCT | UNIQUE` clause below.)
9. The `FOR UPDATE` clause causes the `SELECT` statement to lock the selected rows against concurrent updates. (See `FOR UPDATE` clause below.)

You must have `SELECT` privilege on a table to read its values. The use of `FOR UPDATE` requires `UPDATE` privilege as well.

## Parameters

### optimizer\_hint

Comment-embedded hints to the optimizer for selection of an execution plan. See Functions and Operators of *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Reference Guide* for information about optimizer hints.

## FROM Clause

The `FROM` clause specifies one or more source tables for a `SELECT` statement. The syntax is:

`FROM source [, ...]`

Where `source` can be one of following elements:

`table_name[@dblink ]`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table or view. `dblink` is a database link name identifying a remote database. See the `CREATE DATABASE LINK` command for information on database links.

### alias

A substitute name for the `FROM` item containing the alias. An alias is used for brevity or to eliminate ambiguity for self-joins (where the same table is scanned multiple times). When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table or function; for example given `FROM foo AS f`, the remainder of the `SELECT` must refer to this `FROM` item as `f` not `foo`.

## select

A sub-`SELECT` can appear in the `FROM` clause. This acts as though its output were created as a temporary table for the duration of this single `SELECT` command. Note that the sub-`SELECT` must be surrounded by parentheses, and an alias must be provided for it.

## join\_type

One of the following:

`[ INNER ] JOIN`

`LEFT [ OUTER ] JOIN`

`RIGHT [ OUTER ] JOIN`

`FULL [ OUTER ] JOIN`

`CROSS JOIN`

For the `INNER` and `OUTER` join types, a join condition must be specified, namely exactly one of `NATURAL`, `ON join_condition`, or `USING (join_column [, ...] )`. See below for the meaning. For `CROSS JOIN`, none of these clauses may appear.

A `JOIN` clause combines two `FROM` items. Use parentheses if necessary to determine the order of nesting. In the absence of parentheses, `JOINS` nest left-to-right. In any case `JOIN` binds more tightly than the commas separating `FROM` items.

`CROSS JOIN` and `INNER JOIN` produce a simple Cartesian product, the same result as you get from listing the two items at the top level of `FROM`, but restricted by the join condition (if any). `CROSS JOIN` is equivalent to `INNER JOIN ON (TRUE)`, that is, no rows are removed by qualification. These join types are just a notational convenience, since they do nothing you couldn't do with plain `FROM` and `WHERE`.

`LEFT OUTER JOIN` returns all rows in the qualified Cartesian product (i.e., all combined rows that pass its join condition), plus one copy of each row in the left-hand table for which there was no right-hand row that passed the join condition. This left-hand row is extended to the full width of the joined table by inserting null values for the right-hand columns. Note that only the `JOIN` clause's own condition is considered while deciding which rows have matches. Outer conditions are applied afterwards.

Conversely, `RIGHT OUTER JOIN` returns all the joined rows, plus one row for each unmatched right-hand row (extended with nulls on the left). This is just a notational convenience, since you could convert it to a `LEFT OUTER JOIN` by switching the left and right inputs.

`FULL OUTER JOIN` returns all the joined rows, plus one row for each unmatched left-hand row (extended with nulls on the right), plus one row for each unmatched right-hand row (extended with nulls on the left).

## ON join\_condition

`join_condition` is an expression resulting in a value of type `BOOLEAN` (similar to a `WHERE` clause) that specifies which rows in a join are considered to match.

## USING (join\_column [, ...] )

A clause of the form `USING (a, b, ... )` is shorthand for `ON left_table.a = right_table.a AND left_table.b = right_table.b ....` Also, `USING` implies that only one of each pair of equivalent columns will be included in the join output, not both.

## NATURAL

`NATURAL` is shorthand for a `USING` list that mentions all columns in the two tables that have the same names.

If multiple sources are specified, the result is the Cartesian product (cross join) of all the sources. Usually qualification conditions are added to restrict the returned rows to a small subset of the Cartesian product.

## Example

The following example selects all of the entries from the `dept` table:

```
SELECT * FROM dept;
deptno | dname      | loc
-----+-----+
10 | ACCOUNTING | NEW YORK
20 | RESEARCH   | DALLAS
30 | SALES      | CHICAGO
40 | OPERATIONS | BOSTON
(4 rows)
```

## WHERE Clause

The optional `WHERE` clause has the form:

`WHERE condition`

where `condition` is any expression that evaluates to a result of type `BOOLEAN`. Any row that does not satisfy this condition will be eliminated from the output. A row satisfies the condition if it returns `TRUE` when the actual row values are substituted for any variable references.

## Example

The following example joins the contents of the `emp` and `dept` tables, `WHERE` the value of the `deptno` column in the `emp` table is equal to the value of the `deptno` column in the `deptno` table:

```
SELECT d.deptno, d.dname, e.empno, e.ename, e.mgr, e.hiredate
  FROM emp e, dept d
 WHERE d.deptno = e.deptno;
```

deptno	dname	empno	ename	mgr	hiredate
10	ACCOUNTING	7934	MILLER	7782	23-JAN-82 00:00:00
10	ACCOUNTING	7782	CLARK	7839	09-JUN-81 00:00:00
10	ACCOUNTING	7839	KING		17-NOV-81 00:00:00
20	RESEARCH	7788	SCOTT	7566	19-APR-87 00:00:00
20	RESEARCH	7566	JONES	7839	02-APR-81 00:00:00
20	RESEARCH	7369	SMITH	7902	17-DEC-80 00:00:00
20	RESEARCH	7876	ADAMS	7788	23-MAY-87 00:00:00
20	RESEARCH	7902	FORD	7566	03-DEC-81 00:00:00
30	SALES	7521	WARD	7698	22-FEB-81 00:00:00
30	SALES	7844	TURNER	7698	08-SEP-81 00:00:00
30	SALES	7499	ALLEN	7698	20-FEB-81 00:00:00
30	SALES	7698	BLAKE	7839	01-MAY-81 00:00:00
30	SALES	7654	MARTIN	7698	28-SEP-81 00:00:00
30	SALES	7900	JAMES	7698	03-DEC-81 00:00:00

(14 rows)

## GROUP BY Clause

The optional **GROUP BY** clause has the form:

```
GROUP BY { expression | ROLLUP ( expr_list ) |
    CUBE ( expr_list ) | GROUPING SETS ( expr_list ) } [, ...]
```

**GROUP BY** will condense into a single row all selected rows that share the same values for the grouped expressions. **expression** can be an input column name, or the name or ordinal number of an output column (**SELECT** list item), or an arbitrary expression formed from input-column values. In case of ambiguity, a **GROUP BY** name will be interpreted as an input-column name rather than an output column name.

**ROLLUP**, **CUBE**, and **GROUPING SETS** are extensions to the **GROUP BY** clause for supporting multidimensional analysis.

Aggregate functions, if any are used, are computed across all rows making up each group, producing a separate value for each group (whereas without **GROUP BY**, an aggregate produces a single value computed across all the selected rows). When **GROUP BY** is present, it is not valid for the **SELECT** list expressions to refer to ungrouped columns except within aggregate functions, since there would be more than one possible value to return for an ungrouped column.

## Example

The following example computes the sum of the **sal** column in the **emp** table, grouping the results by department number:

```
SELECT deptno, SUM(sal) AS total
    FROM emp
    GROUP BY deptno;
```

deptno	total
10	8750.00
20	10875.00
30	9400.00

(3 rows)

## HAVING Clause

The optional **HAVING** clause has the form:

```
HAVING condition
```

where **condition** is the same as specified for the **WHERE** clause.

**HAVING** eliminates group rows that do not satisfy the specified condition. **HAVING** is different from **WHERE**; **WHERE** filters individual rows before the application of **GROUP BY**, while **HAVING** filters group rows created by **GROUP BY**. Each column referenced in condition must unambiguously reference a grouping column, unless the reference appears within an aggregate function.

## Example

To sum the column, **sal** of all employees, group the results by department number and show those group totals that are less than 10000:

```
SELECT deptno, SUM(sal) AS total
    FROM emp
    GROUP BY deptno
    HAVING SUM(sal) < 10000;
```

```
deptno | total
-----+-----
 10 | 8750.00
 30 | 9400.00
(2 rows)
```

## SELECT List

The `SELECT` list (between the key words `SELECT` and `FROM`) specifies expressions that form the output rows of the `SELECT` statement. The expressions can (and usually do) refer to columns computed in the `FROM` clause. Using the clause `AS output_name`, another name can be specified for an output column. This name is primarily used to label the column for display. It can also be used to refer to the column's value in `ORDER BY` and `GROUP BY` clauses, but not in the `WHERE` or `HAVING` clauses; there you must write out the expression instead.

Instead of an expression, `*` can be written in the output list as a shorthand for all the columns of the selected rows.

### Example

The `SELECT` list in the following example specifies that the result set should include the `empno` column, the `ename` column, the `mgr` column and the `hiredate` column:

```
SELECT empno, ename, mgr, hiredate FROM emp;
```

```
empno | ename | mgr |    hiredate
-----+-----+-----+
 7934 | MILLER | 7782 | 23-JAN-82 00:00:00
 7782 | CLARK  | 7839 | 09-JUN-81 00:00:00
 7839 | KING   |     | 17-NOV-81 00:00:00
 7788 | SCOTT  | 7566 | 19-APR-87 00:00:00
 7566 | JONES  | 7839 | 02-APR-81 00:00:00
 7369 | SMITH  | 7902 | 17-DEC-80 00:00:00
 7876 | ADAMS  | 7788 | 23-MAY-87 00:00:00
 7902 | FORD   | 7566 | 03-DEC-81 00:00:00
 7521 | WARD   | 7698 | 22-FEB-81 00:00:00
 7844 | TURNER | 7698 | 08-SEP-81 00:00:00
 7499 | ALLEN  | 7698 | 20-FEB-81 00:00:00
 7698 | BLAKE  | 7839 | 01-MAY-81 00:00:00
 7654 | MARTIN | 7698 | 28-SEP-81 00:00:00
 7900 | JAMES  | 7698 | 03-DEC-81 00:00:00
(14 rows)
```

## UNION Clause

The `UNION` clause has the form:

```
select_statement UNION [ ALL ] select_statement
```

`select_statement` is any `SELECT` statement without an `ORDER BY` or `FOR UPDATE` clause. (`ORDER BY` can be attached to a sub-expression if it is enclosed in parentheses. Without parentheses, these clauses will be taken to apply to the result of the `UNION`, not to its right-hand input expression.)

The `UNION` operator computes the set union of the rows returned by the involved `SELECT` statements. A row is in the set union of two result sets if it appears in at least one of the result sets. The two `SELECT` statements that

represent the direct operands of the `UNION` must produce the same number of columns, and corresponding columns must be of compatible data types.

The result of `UNION` does not contain any duplicate rows unless the `ALL` option is specified. `ALL` prevents elimination of duplicates.

Multiple `UNION` operators in the same `SELECT` statement are evaluated left to right, unless otherwise indicated by parentheses.

Currently, `FOR UPDATE` may not be specified either for a `UNION` result or for any input of a `UNION`.

## INTERSECT Clause

The `INTERSECT` clause has the form:

```
select_statement INTERSECT select_statement
```

`select_statement` is any `SELECT` statement without an `ORDER BY` or `FOR UPDATE` clause.

The `INTERSECT` operator computes the set intersection of the rows returned by the involved `SELECT` statements. A row is in the intersection of two result sets if it appears in both result sets.

The result of `INTERSECT` does not contain any duplicate rows.

Multiple `INTERSECT` operators in the same `SELECT` statement are evaluated left to right, unless parentheses dictate otherwise. `INTERSECT` binds more tightly than `UNION`. That is, `A UNION B INTERSECT C` will be read as `A UNION (B INTERSECT C)`.

## MINUS Clause

The `MINUS` clause has this general form:

```
select_statement MINUS select_statement
```

`select_statement` is any `SELECT` statement without an `ORDER BY` or `FOR UPDATE` clause.

The `MINUS` operator computes the set of rows that are in the result of the left `SELECT` statement but not in the result of the right one.

The result of `MINUS` does not contain any duplicate rows.

Multiple `MINUS` operators in the same `SELECT` statement are evaluated left to right, unless parentheses dictate otherwise. `MINUS` binds at the same level as `UNION`.

## CONNECT BY Clause

The `CONNECT BY` clause determines the parent-child relationship of rows when performing a hierarchical query. It has the general form:

```
CONNECT BY { PRIOR parent_expr = child_expr |
    child_expr = PRIOR parent_expr }
```

`parent_expr` is evaluated on a candidate parent row. If `parent_expr = child_expr` results in `TRUE` for a row returned by the `FROM` clause, then this row is considered a child of the parent.

The following optional clauses may be specified in conjunction with the `CONNECT BY` clause:

#### `START WITH start_expression`

The rows returned by the `FROM` clause on which `start_expression` evaluates to `TRUE` become the root nodes of the hierarchy.

#### `ORDER SIBLINGS BY expression [ ASC | DESC ] [, ...]`

Sibling rows of the hierarchy are ordered by `expression` in the result set.

#### Note

Advanced Server does not support the use of `AND` (or other operators) in the `CONNECT BY` clause.

## ORDER BY Clause

The optional `ORDER BY` clause has the form:

#### `ORDER BY expression [ ASC | DESC ] [, ...]`

`expression` can be the name or ordinal number of an output column (`SELECT` list item), or it can be an arbitrary expression formed from input-column values.

The `ORDER BY` clause causes the result rows to be sorted according to the specified expressions. If two rows are equal according to the leftmost expression, they are compared according to the next expression and so on. If they are equal according to all specified expressions, they are returned in an implementation-dependent order.

The ordinal number refers to the ordinal (left-to-right) position of the result column. This feature makes it possible to define an ordering on the basis of a column that does not have a unique name. This is never absolutely necessary because it is always possible to assign a name to a result column using the `AS` clause.

It is also possible to use arbitrary expressions in the `ORDER BY` clause, including columns that do not appear in the `SELECT` result list. Thus the following statement is valid:

```
SELECT ename FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
```

A limitation of this feature is that an `ORDER BY` clause applying to the result of a `UNION`, `INTERSECT`, or `MINUS` clause may only specify an output column name or number, not an expression.

If an `ORDER BY` expression is a simple name that matches both a result column name and an input column name, `ORDER BY` will interpret it as the result column name. This is the opposite of the choice that `GROUP BY` will make in the same situation. This inconsistency is made to be compatible with the SQL standard.

Optionally one may add the key word `ASC` (ascending) or `DESC` (descending) after any expression in the `ORDER BY` clause. If not specified, `ASC` is assumed by default.

The null value sorts higher than any other value. In other words, with ascending sort order, null values sort at the end, and with descending sort order, null values sort at the beginning.

Character-string data is sorted according to the locale-specific collation order that was established when the database cluster was initialized.

#### Note

If `SELECT DISTINCT` is specified or if a `SELECT` statement includes the `SELECT DISTINCT ...ORDER BY` clause then all the expressions in `ORDER BY` must be present in the select list of the `SELECT DISTINCT` query.

## Examples

The following two examples are identical ways of sorting the individual results according to the contents of the second column (`dname`):

```
SELECT * FROM dept ORDER BY dname;
```

deptno	dname	loc
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO

(4 rows)

```
SELECT * FROM dept ORDER BY 2;
```

deptno	dname	loc
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO

(4 rows)

The following example uses the `SELECT DISTINCT ...ORDER BY` clause to fetch the `job` and `deptno` from table `emp`:

```
CREATE TABLE EMP(EMPNO NUMBER(4) NOT NULL,
ENAME VARCHAR2(10),
JOB VARCHAR2(9),
DEPTNO NUMBER(2));
```

```
INSERT INTO EMP VALUES (7369, 'SMITH', 'CLERK', 20);
INSERT 0 1
INSERT INTO EMP VALUES (7499, 'ALLEN', 'SALESMAN', 30);
INSERT 0 1
INSERT INTO EMP VALUES (7521, 'WARD', 'SALESMAN', 30);
INSERT 0 1
INSERT INTO EMP VALUES (7566, 'JONES', 'MANAGER', 20);
INSERT 0 1
```

```
SELECT DISTINCT e.job, e.deptno FROM emp e ORDER BY e.job, e.deptno;
```

job	deptno
CLERK	20
MANAGER	20
SALESMAN	30

(3 rows)

## DISTINCT | UNIQUE Clause

If a `SELECT` statement specifies `DISTINCT` or `UNIQUE`, all duplicate rows are removed from the result set (one row is kept from each group of duplicates). The `DISTINCT` or `UNIQUE` clause are synonymous when used with a `SELECT` statement. The `ALL` keyword specifies the opposite: all rows are kept; that is the default.

Error messages resulting from the improper use of a `SELECT` statement that includes the `DISTINCT` or `UNIQUE` keywords will include both the `DISTINCT | UNIQUE` keywords as shown below:

```
psql: ERROR: FOR UPDATE is not allowed with DISTINCT/UNIQUE clause
```

## FOR UPDATE Clause

The `FOR UPDATE` clause takes the form:

```
FOR UPDATE [WAIT n|NOWAIT|SKIP LOCKED]
```

`FOR UPDATE` causes the rows retrieved by the `SELECT` statement to be locked as though for update. This prevents a row from being modified or deleted by other transactions until the current transaction ends; any transaction that attempts to `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `SELECT FOR UPDATE` a selected row will be blocked until the current transaction ends. If an `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `SELECT FOR UPDATE` from another transaction has already locked a selected row or rows, `SELECT FOR UPDATE` will wait for the first transaction to complete, and will then lock and return the updated row (or no row, if the row was deleted).

`FOR UPDATE` cannot be used in contexts where returned rows cannot be clearly identified with individual table rows (for example, with aggregation).

Use `FOR UPDATE` options to specify locking preferences:

- Include the `WAIT n` keywords to specify the number of seconds (or fractional seconds) that the `SELECT` statement will wait for a row locked by another session. Use a decimal form to specify fractional seconds; for example, `WAIT 1.5` instructs the server to wait one and a half seconds. Specify up to 4 digits to the right of the decimal.
- Include the `NOWAIT` keyword to report an error immediately if a row cannot be locked by the current session.
- Include `SKIP LOCKED` to instruct the server to lock rows if possible, and skip rows that are already locked by another session.

## 9.71 SET CONSTRAINTS

### Name

```
SET CONSTRAINTS -- set constraint checking modes for the current transaction
```

### Synopsis

```
SET CONSTRAINTS { ALL | name [, ...] } { DEFERRED | IMMEDIATE }
```

### Description

`SET CONSTRAINTS` sets the behavior of constraint checking within the current transaction. `IMMEDIATE` constraints are checked at the end of each statement. `DEFERRED` constraints are not checked until transaction commit. Each constraint has its own `IMMEDIATE` or `DEFERRED` mode.

Upon creation, a constraint is given one of three characteristics: `DEFERRABLE INITIALLY DEFERRED`, `DEFERRABLE INITIALLY IMMEDIATE`, or `NOT DEFERRABLE`. The third class is always `IMMEDIATE` and is not affected by the `SET CONSTRAINTS` command. The first two classes start every transaction in the indicated mode, but their behavior can be changed within a transaction by `SET CONSTRAINTS`.

`SET CONSTRAINTS` with a list of constraint names changes the mode of just those constraints (which must all be deferrable). If there are multiple constraints matching any given name, all are affected. `SET CONSTRAINTS ALL` changes the mode of all deferrable constraints.

When `SET CONSTRAINTS` changes the mode of a constraint from `DEFERRED` to `IMMEDIATE`, the new mode takes effect retroactively: any outstanding data modifications that would have been checked at the end of the transaction are instead checked during the execution of the `SET CONSTRAINTS` command. If any such constraint is violated, the `SET CONSTRAINTS` fails (and does not change the constraint mode). Thus, `SET CONSTRAINTS` can be used to force checking of constraints to occur at a specific point in a transaction.

Currently, only foreign key constraints are affected by this setting. Check and unique constraints are always effectively not deferrable.

## Notes

This command only alters the behavior of constraints within the current transaction. Thus, if you execute this command outside of a transaction block it will not appear to have any effect.

## 9.72 SET ROLE

### Name

`SET ROLE` -- set the current user identifier of the current session

### Synopsis

```
SET ROLE { rolename | NONE }
```

### Description

This command sets the current user identifier of the current SQL session context to be `rolename`. After `SET ROLE`, permissions checking for SQL commands is carried out as though the named role is the one that had logged in originally.

The specified `rolename` must be a role that the current session user is a member of. If the session user is a superuser, any role can be selected.

`NONE` resets the current user identifier to be the current session user identifier. These forms may be executed by any user.

### Notes

You can use this command, to either add privileges or restrict one's privileges. If the session user role has the `INHERITS` attribute, then it automatically has all the privileges of every role that it could `SET ROLE` to; in this case `SET ROLE` effectively drops all the privileges assigned directly to the session user and to the other roles it is a member of, leaving only the privileges available to the named role. If the session user role has the `NOINHERITS` attribute, `SET ROLE` drops the privileges assigned directly to the session user and instead acquires the privileges available to the named role. When a superuser chooses to `SET ROLE` to a non-superuser role, she loses her superuser privileges.

### Examples

User `mary` takes on the identity of role `admins`:

```
SET ROLE admins;
```

User `mary` reverts back to her own identity:

```
SET ROLE NONE;
```

---

## 9.73 SET TRANSACTION

### Name

`SET TRANSACTION` -- set the characteristics of the current transaction

### Synopsis

```
SET TRANSACTION transaction_mode
```

where `transaction_mode` is one of:

`ISOLATION LEVEL { SERIALIZABLE | READ COMMITTED }`

`READ WRITE | READ ONLY`

### Description

The `SET TRANSACTION` command sets the characteristics of the current transaction. It has no effect on any subsequent transactions. The available transaction characteristics are the transaction isolation level and the transaction access mode (read/write or read-only). The isolation level of a transaction determines what data the transaction can see when other transactions are running concurrently:

`READ COMMITTED`

A statement can only see rows committed before it began. This is the default.

`SERIALIZABLE`

All statements of the current transaction can only see rows committed before the first query or data-modification statement was executed in this transaction.

The transaction isolation level cannot be changed after the first query or data-modification statement (`SELECT`, `INSERT`, `DELETE`, `UPDATE`, or `FETCH`) of a transaction has been executed. The transaction access mode determines whether the transaction is read/write or read-only. Read/write is the default.

When a transaction is read-only, the following SQL commands are disallowed: `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` if the table they would write to is not a temporary table; all `CREATE`, `ALTER`, and `DROP` commands; `COMMENT`, `GRANT`, `REVOKE`, `TRUNCATE`; and `EXECUTE` if the command it would execute is among those listed. This is a high-level notion of read-only that does not prevent all writes to disk.

---

## 9.74 TRUNCATE

### Name

**TRUNCATE** -- empty a table

## Synopsis

```
TRUNCATE TABLE <name> [DROP STORAGE]
```

## Description

**TRUNCATE** quickly removes all rows from a table. It has the same effect as an unqualified **DELETE** but since it does not actually scan the table, it is faster. This is most useful on large tables.

The **DROP STORAGE** clause is accepted for compatibility, but is ignored.

## Parameters

**name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be truncated.

## Notes

**TRUNCATE** cannot be used if there are foreign-key references to the table from other tables. Checking validity in such cases would require table scans, and the whole point is not to do one.

**TRUNCATE** will not run any user-defined **ON DELETE** triggers that might exist for the table.

## Examples

The following command truncates a table named **accounts**:

```
TRUNCATE TABLE accounts;
```

## See Also

[DROP VIEW](#), [DELETE](#)

## 9.75 UPDATE

### Name

**UPDATE** -- update rows of a table

## Synopsis

```
UPDATE [ <optimizer_hint> ] <table>[@<dblink> ]
  SET <column> = { <expression> | DEFAULT } [, ...]
  [ WHERE <condition> ]
  [ RETURNING <return_expression> [, ...]
    { INTO { <record> | <variable> [, ...] }
    | BULK COLLECT INTO <collection> [, ...] } ]
```

## Description

**UPDATE** changes the values of the specified columns in all rows that satisfy the condition. Only the columns to

be modified need be mentioned in the `SET` clause; columns not explicitly modified retain their previous values.

The `RETURNING INTO { record | variable [, ...] }` clause may only be specified within an SPL program. In addition the result set of the `UPDATE` command must not return more than one row, otherwise an exception is thrown. If the result set is empty, then the contents of the target record or variables are set to null.

The `RETURNING BULK COLLECT INTO collection [, ...]` clause may only be specified if the `UPDATE` command is used within an SPL program. If more than one `collection` is specified as the target of the `BULK COLLECT INTO` clause, then each `collection` must consist of a single, scalar field – i.e., `collection` must not be a record. The result set of the `UPDATE` command may contain none, one, or more rows. `return_expression` evaluated for each row of the result set, becomes an element in `collection` starting with the first element. Any existing rows in `collection` are deleted. If the result set is empty, then `collection` will be empty.

You must have the `UPDATE` privilege on the table to update it, as well as the `SELECT` privilege to any table whose values are read in `expression` or `condition`.

## Parameters

### `optimizer_hint`

Comment-embedded hints to the optimizer for selection of an execution plan.

### `table`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to update.

### `dblink`

Database link name identifying a remote database. See the `CREATE DATABASE LINK` command for information on database links.

### `column`

The name of a column in table.

### `expression`

An expression to assign to the column. The expression may use the old values of this and other columns in the table.

### `DEFAULT`

Set the column to its default value (which will be null if no specific default expression has been assigned to it).

### `condition`

An expression that returns a value of type `BOOLEAN`. Only rows for which this expression returns true will be updated.

### `return_expression`

An expression that may include one or more columns from table. If a column name from table is specified in `return_expression`, the value substituted for the column when `return_expression` is evaluated is determined as follows:

If the column specified in `return_expression` is assigned a value in the `UPDATE` command, then the assigned value is used in the evaluation of `return_expression`.

If the column specified in `return_expression` is not assigned a value in the `UPDATE` command, then the column's current value in the affected row is used in the evaluation of `return_expression`.

### `record`

A record whose field the evaluated `return_expression` is to be assigned. The first `return_expression` is assigned to the first field in `record`, the second `return_expression` is assigned to the second field in `record`, etc. The number of fields in `record` must exactly match the number of expressions and the fields must be type-compatible with their assigned expressions.

#### variable

A variable to which the evaluated `return_expression` is to be assigned. If more than one `return_expression` and `variable` are specified, the first `return_expression` is assigned to the first `variable`, the second `return_expression` is assigned to the second `variable`, etc. The number of variables specified following the `INTO` keyword must exactly match the number of expressions following the `RETURNING` keyword and the variables must be type-compatible with their assigned expressions.

#### collection

A collection in which an element is created from the evaluated `return_expression`. There can be either a single collection which may be a collection of a single field or a collection of a record type, or there may be more than one collection in which case each collection must consist of a single field. The number of return expressions must match in number and order the number of fields in all specified collections. Each corresponding `return_expression` and `collection` field must be type-compatible.

### Examples

Change the location to `AUSTIN` for department `20` in the `dept` table:

```
UPDATE dept SET loc = 'AUSTIN' WHERE deptno = 20;
```

For all employees with `job = SALESMAN` in the `emp` table, update the salary by `10%` and increase the commission by `500`.

```
UPDATE emp SET sal = sal * 1.1, comm = comm + 500 WHERE job = 'SALESMAN';
```

## 10 Database Compatibility Table Partitioning Guide

In a partitioned table, one logically large table is broken into smaller physical pieces. Partitioning can provide several benefits:

- Query performance can be improved dramatically in certain situations, particularly when most of the heavily accessed rows of the table are in a single partition or a small number of partitions. Partitioning allows you to omit the partition column from the front of an index, reducing index size and making it more likely that the heavily used parts of the index fits in memory.
- When a query or update accesses a large percentage of a single partition, performance may improve because the server will perform a sequential scan of the partition instead of using an index and random access reads scattered across the whole table.
- A bulk load (or unload) can be implemented by adding or removing partitions, if you plan that requirement into the partitioning design. `ALTER TABLE` is far faster than a bulk operation. It also entirely avoids the `VACUUM` overhead caused by a bulk `DELETE`.
- Seldom-used data can be migrated to less-expensive (or slower) storage media.

Table partitioning is worthwhile only when a table would otherwise be very large. The exact point at which a table will benefit from partitioning depends on the application; a good rule of thumb is that the size of the table should exceed the physical memory of the database server.

This document discusses the aspects of table partitioning compatible with Oracle databases that are supported by Advanced Server.

**Note:** This document and particularly the partitioning presented in this chapter do not describe the *declarative partitioning* feature, which has been introduced with PostgreSQL version 10. Note that PostgreSQL declarative partitioning is supported in Advanced Server 10 in addition to the table partitioning compatible with Oracle databases as described in this chapter. For information about declarative partitioning, see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at: <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/ddl-partitioning.html>

The PostgreSQL 9.6 `INSERT... ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING/UPDATE` clause (commonly known as `UPSERT`) is not supported on Oracle-styled partitioned tables. If you include the `ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING/UPDATE` clause when invoking the `INSERT` command to add data to a partitioned table, the server will return an error.

---

## 10.1 Selecting a Partition Type

When you create a partitioned table, you specify `LIST`, `RANGE`, or `HASH` partitioning rules. The partitioning rules provide a set of constraints that define the data that is stored in each partition. As new rows are added to the partitioned table, the server uses the partitioning rules to decide which partition should contain each row.

Advanced Server can also use the partitioning rules to enforce partition pruning, improving performance when responding to user queries. When selecting a partitioning type and partitioning keys for a table, you should take into consideration how the data that is stored within a table will be queried, and include often-queried columns in the partitioning rules.

### List Partitioning

When you create a list-partitioned table, you specify a single partitioning key column. When adding a row to the table, the server compares the key values specified in the partitioning rule to the corresponding column within the row. If the column value matches a value in the partitioning rule, the row is stored in the partition named in the rule.

**Note:** The `List Partitioning` does not support multi-column list partitioning.

### Range Partitioning

When you create a range-partitioned table, you specify one or more partitioning key columns. When you add a new row to the table, the server compares the value of the partitioning key (or keys) to the corresponding column (or columns) in a table entry. If the column values satisfy the conditions specified in the partitioning rule, the row is stored in the partition named in the rule.

### Hash Partitioning

When you create a hash-partitioned table, you specify one or more partitioning key columns. Data is divided into (approx.) equal-sized partitions amongst the specified partitions. When you add a row to a hash-partitioned table, the server computes a hash value for the data in the specified column (or columns), and stores the row in a partition according to the hash value.

**Note:** When upgrading Advanced Server, you must rebuild each hash-partitioned table on the upgraded version server.

### Subpartitioning

Subpartitioning breaks a partitioned table into smaller subsets. All subsets must be stored in the same database server cluster. A table is typically subpartitioned by a different set of columns, and may be a different subpartitioning type than the parent partition. If one partition is subpartitioned, then each partition will have at least one subpartition.

If a table is subpartitioned, no data will be stored in any of the partition tables; the data will be stored instead in the corresponding subpartitions.

## 10.1.1 Interval Range Partitioning

Interval Range Partitioning is an extension to range partitioning that allows a database to automatically create a new partition when the newly inserted data exceeds the range of an existing partitioning. To implement interval range partitioning, include the **INTERVAL** clause and specify the range size for a new partition.

The high value of a range partition (also known as the transition point) is determined by the range partitioning key value. The database creates new partitions for inserted data with values that are beyond that high value.

If an interval is set to 1 month and if data is inserted for two months after the current transition point, only the partition for that month is created and not the intervening partition. For example, you can create an interval range partitioned table with a monthly interval and a current transition point of February 15, 2019. Now, if you try to insert data for May 10, 2019, then the required partition for April 15 to May 15, 2019 is created and data will be inserted into that partition. The partition for February 15, 2019 to March 15, 2019 and March 15, 2019 to April 15, 2019 is skipped.

For information about Interval Range Partitioning syntax, see [CREATE TABLE...PARTITION BY](#).

### Restrictions on Interval Range Partitioning

The following restrictions apply to the **INTERVAL** clause:

- Interval range partitioning is restricted to a single partition key; that key must be a numerical or date range.
- You must define at least one range partition.
- The **INTERVAL** clause is not supported for index-organized tables.
- A domain index cannot be created on an interval range partitioned table.
- In composite partitioning, the interval range partitioning can be useful as a primary partitioning mechanism but not supported at the subpartition level.
- **DEFAULT** and **MAXVALUE** cannot be defined for an interval range partitioned table.
- **NULL**, **Not-a-Number**, and **Infinity** values cannot be specified in the partitioning key column.
- Interval range partitioning expression must yield constant value and must not be a negative value.
- The partitions for an interval range partitioned table are created in increasing order only.

## 10.1.2 Automatic List Partitioning

Automatic list partitioning is an extension to **LIST** partitioning that allows a database to automatically create a partition for any new distinct value of the list partitioning key. A new partition is created when data is inserted into the **LIST** partitioned table and the inserted value does not match any of the existing table partition. Use the **AUTOMATIC** clause to implement automatic list partitioning.

For example, consider a table named **sales** with a **sales\_state** column that contains the existing partition values **CALIFORNIA** and **FLORIDA**. Each of the **sales state** values will increase with a rise in the state-wise sales. A sale in a new state (for example, **INDIANA** and **OHIO**) will require the creation of new partitions. If you have implemented automatic list partitioning, the new partitions **INDIANA** and **OHIO** are automatically created and data is entered into the **sales** table.

For information about automatic list partitioning syntax, see [CREATE TABLE...PARTITION BY](#).

### Restrictions on Automatic List Partitioning

The following restrictions apply to the **AUTOMATIC** clause:

- A table that enables automatic list partitioning cannot have a **DEFAULT** partition.

- Automatic list partitioning does not support multi-column list partitioning.
  - In composite partitioning, the automatic list partitioning can be useful as a primary partitioning mechanism but is not supported at the subpartition level.
- 

## 10.2 Using Partition Pruning

Advanced Server's query planner uses *partition pruning* to compute an efficient plan to locate a row (or rows) that matches the conditions specified in the `WHERE` clause of a `SELECT` statement. To successfully prune partitions from an execution plan, the `WHERE` clause must constrain the information that is compared to the partitioning key column specified when creating the partitioned table. When querying a:

- list-partitioned table, partition pruning is effective when the `WHERE` clause compares a literal value to the partitioning key using operators like equal (=) or `AND`.
- range-partitioned table, partition pruning is effective when the `WHERE` clause compares a literal value to a partitioning key using operators such as equal (=), less than (<), or greater than (>).
- hash-partitioned table, partition pruning is effective when the `WHERE` clause compares a literal value to the partitioning key using an operator such as equal (=).

The partition pruning mechanism uses two optimization techniques:

- Fast Pruning
- Constraint exclusion

Partition pruning techniques limit the search for data to only those partitions in which the values for which you are searching might reside. Both pruning techniques remove partitions from a query's execution plan, increasing performance.

The difference between the fast pruning and constraint exclusion is that fast pruning understands the relationship between the partitions in an Oracle-partitioned table, while constraint exclusion does not. For example, when a query searches for a specific value within a list-partitioned table, fast pruning can reason that only a specific partition may hold that value, while constraint exclusion must examine the constraints defined for each partition. Fast pruning occurs early in the planning process to reduce the number of partitions that the planner must consider, while constraint exclusion occurs late in the planning process.

### Using Constraint Exclusion

The `constraint_exclusion` parameter controls constraint exclusion. The `constraint_exclusion` parameter may have a value of `on`, `off`, or `partition`. To enable constraint exclusion, the parameter must be set to either `partition` or `on`. By default, the parameter is set to `partition`.

For more information about constraint exclusion, see:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/ddl-partitioning.html>

When constraint exclusion is enabled, the server examines the constraints defined for each partition to determine if that partition can satisfy a query.

When you execute a `SELECT` statement that *does not* contain a `WHERE` clause, the query planner must recommend an execution plan that searches the entire table. When you execute a `SELECT` statement that *does* contain a `WHERE` clause, the query planner determines in which partition that row would be stored, and sends query fragments to that partition, pruning the partitions that could not contain that row from the execution plan. If you are not using partitioned tables, disabling constraint exclusion may improve performance.

### Fast Pruning

Like constraint exclusion, fast pruning can only optimize queries that include a `WHERE` (or join) clause, and only

when the qualifiers in the `WHERE` clause match a certain form. In both cases, the query planner will avoid searching for data within partitions that cannot possibly hold the data required by the query.

Fast pruning is controlled by a boolean configuration parameter named `edb_enable_pruning`. If `edb_enable_pruning` is `ON`, Advanced Server will fast prune certain queries. If `edb_enable_pruning` is `OFF`, the server will disable fast pruning.

**Note:** Fast pruning cannot optimize queries against subpartitioned tables or optimize queries against range-partitioned tables that are partitioned on more than one column.

For LIST-partitioned tables, Advanced Server can fast prune queries that contain a `WHERE` clause that constrains a partitioning column to a literal value. For example, given a LIST-partitioned table such as:

```
CREATE TABLE sales_hist(..., country text, ...)
PARTITION BY LIST(country)
(
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CA', 'MX'),
    PARTITION europe VALUES('BE', 'NL', 'FR'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('JP', 'PK', 'CN'),
    PARTITION others VALUES(DEFAULT)
)
```

Fast pruning can reason about `WHERE` clauses such as:

`WHERE country = 'US'`

`WHERE country IS NULL;`

Given the first `WHERE` clause, fast pruning would eliminate partitions `europe`, `asia`, and `others` because those partitions cannot hold rows that satisfy the qualifier: `WHERE country = 'US'`.

Given the second `WHERE` clause, fast pruning would eliminate partitions `americas`, `europe`, and `asia` because those partitions cannot hold rows where `country IS NULL`.

The operator specified in the `WHERE` clause must be an equal sign (=) or the equality operator appropriate for the data type of the partitioning column.

For range-partitioned tables, Advanced Server can fast prune queries that contain a `WHERE` clause that constrains a partitioning column to a literal value, but the operator may be any of the following:

```
>
>=
=
<=
<
```

Fast pruning will also reason about more complex expressions involving `AND` and `BETWEEN` operators, such as:

```
WHERE size > 100 AND size <= 200
WHERE size BETWEEN 100 AND 200
```

Fast pruning cannot prune based on expressions involving `OR` or `IN`. For example, when querying a RANGE-partitioned table, such as:

```
CREATE TABLE boxes(id int, size int, color text)
```

```
PARTITION BY RANGE(size)
(
    PARTITION small VALUES LESS THAN(100),
    PARTITION medium VALUES LESS THAN(200),
    PARTITION large VALUES LESS THAN(300)
)
```

Fast pruning can reason about `WHERE` clauses such as:

```
WHERE size > 100    -- scan partitions 'medium' and 'large'
WHERE size >= 100   -- scan partitions 'medium' and 'large'
WHERE size = 100    -- scan partition 'medium'
WHERE size <= 100   -- scan partitions 'small' and 'medium'
WHERE size < 100    -- scan partition 'small'
WHERE size > 100 AND size < 199   -- scan partition 'medium'
WHERE size BETWEEN 100 AND 199   -- scan partition 'medium'
WHERE color = 'red' AND size = 100 -- scan 'medium'
WHERE color = 'red' AND (size > 100 AND size < 199) -- scan 'medium'
```

In each case, fast pruning requires that the qualifier must refer to a partitioning column and literal value (or `IS NULL/IS NOT NULL`).

**Note:** Fast pruning can also optimize `DELETE` and `UPDATE` statements containing `WHERE` clauses of the forms described above.

## 10.2.1 Example - Partition Pruning

The `EXPLAIN` statement displays the execution plan of a statement. You can use the `EXPLAIN` statement to confirm that Advanced Server is pruning partitions from the execution plan of a query.

To demonstrate the efficiency of partition pruning, first create a simple table:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country)
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
```

);

Then, perform a constrained query that includes the `EXPLAIN` statement:

```
EXPLAIN (COSTS OFF) SELECT * FROM sales WHERE country = 'INDIA';
```

The resulting query plan shows that the server will scan only the `sales_asia` table - the table in which a row with a `country` value of `INDIA` would be stored:

```
edb=# EXPLAIN (COSTS OFF) SELECT * FROM sales WHERE country = 'INDIA';
      QUERY PLAN
```

---

Append

- > Seq Scan on sales\_asia  
Filter: ((country)::text = 'INDIA'::text)

(3 rows)

If you perform a query that searches for a row that matches a value not included in the partitioning key:

```
EXPLAIN (COSTS OFF) SELECT * FROM sales WHERE dept_no = '30';
```

The resulting query plan shows that the server must look in all of the partitions to locate the rows that satisfy the query:

```
edb=# EXPLAIN (COSTS OFF) SELECT * FROM sales WHERE dept_no = '30';
      QUERY PLAN
```

---

Append

- > Seq Scan on sales\_americas  
Filter: (dept\_no = '30'::numeric)
- > Seq Scan on sales\_europe  
Filter: (dept\_no = '30'::numeric)
- > Seq Scan on sales\_asia  
Filter: (dept\_no = '30'::numeric)

(7 rows)

Constraint exclusion also applies when querying subpartitioned tables:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(date) SUBPARTITION BY LIST (country)
(
    PARTITION "2011" VALUES LESS THAN('01-JAN-2012')
    (
        SUBPARTITION europe_2011 VALUES ('ITALY', 'FRANCE'),
        SUBPARTITION asia_2011 VALUES ('PAKISTAN', 'INDIA'),
        SUBPARTITION americas_2011 VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
    ),
    PARTITION "2012" VALUES LESS THAN('01-JAN-2013')
    (

```

```

SUBPARTITION europe_2012 VALUES ('ITALY', 'FRANCE'),
SUBPARTITION asia_2012 VALUES ('PAKISTAN', 'INDIA'),
SUBPARTITION americas_2012 VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
),
PARTITION "2013" VALUES LESS THAN('01-JAN-2015')
(
SUBPARTITION europe_2013 VALUES ('ITALY', 'FRANCE'),
SUBPARTITION asia_2013 VALUES ('PAKISTAN', 'INDIA'),
SUBPARTITION americas_2013 VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
)
);

```

When you query the table, the query planner prunes any partitions or subpartitions from the search path that cannot possibly contain the desired result set:

```
edb=# EXPLAIN (COSTS OFF) SELECT * FROM sales WHERE country = 'US' AND date = 'Dec 12, 2012';
```

#### QUERY PLAN

---



---

Append

```

-> Seq Scan on sales_americas_2012
  Filter: (((country)::text = 'US'::text) AND (date = '12-DEC-12
  00:00:00'::timestamp without time zone))
(3 rows)

```

## 10.3 Partitioning Commands Compatible with Oracle Databases

The following sections provide information about using the table partitioning syntax compatible with Oracle databases supported by Advanced Server.

### 10.3.1 CREATE TABLE...PARTITION BY

Use the **PARTITION BY** clause of the **CREATE TABLE** command to create a partitioned table with data distributed amongst one or more partitions (and subpartitions). The command syntax comes in the following forms:

#### List Partitioning Syntax

Use the first form to create a list-partitioned table:

```

CREATE TABLE [ schema. ]<table_name>
<table_definition>
PARTITION BY LIST(<column>) [ AUTOMATIC ]
[SUBPARTITION BY {RANGE|LIST|HASH} (<column>[, <column> ]...)]
(<list_partition_definition>[, <list_partition_definition>]...);

```

Where `list_partition_definition` is:

```
PARTITION [<partition_name>]
VALUES (<value>[, <value>]...)
[TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
[(<subpartition>, ...)]
```

## Range Partitioning Syntax

Use the second form to create a range-partitioned table:

```
CREATE TABLE [ schema. ]<table_name>
<table_definition>
PARTITION BY RANGE(<column>[, <column>]...)
[INTERVAL (<constant> | <expression>)]
[SUBPARTITION BY {RANGE|LIST|HASH} (<column>[, <column>]...)]
(<range_partition_definition>[, <range_partition_definition>]...);
```

Where `range_partition_definition` is:

```
PARTITION [<partition_name>]
VALUES LESS THAN (<value>[, <value>]...)
[TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
[(<subpartition>, ...)]
```

## Hash Partitioning Syntax

Use the third form to create a hash-partitioned table:

```
CREATE TABLE [ schema. ]<table_name>
<table_definition>
PARTITION BY HASH(<column>[, <column>]...)
[SUBPARTITION BY {RANGE|LIST|HASH} (<column>[, <column>]...)]
[SUBPARTITIONS <num>] [STORE IN ( <tablespace_name> [, <tablespace_name>]... )]
[PARTITIONS <num>] [STORE IN ( <tablespace_name> [, <tablespace_name>]... )] |
(<hash_partition_definition>[, <hash_partition_definition>]...);
```

Where `hash_partition_definition` is:

```
[PARTITION <partition_name>]
[TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
[(<subpartition>, ...)]
```

## Subpartitioning Syntax

`subpartition` may be one of the following:

```
{<list_subpartition> | <range_subpartition> | <hash_subpartition>}
```

where `list_subpartition` is:

```
SUBPARTITION [<subpartition_name>]
VALUES (<value>[, <value>]...)
```

```
[TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
```

where range\_subpartition is:

```
SUBPARTITION [<subpartition_name>]
  VALUES LESS THAN (<value>[, <value>]...)
[TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
```

where hash\_subpartition is:

```
SUBPARTITION <subpartition_name>
[TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>] |
SUBPARTITIONS <num> [STORE IN ( <tablespace_name> [, <tablespace_name>]... )]
```

## Description

The **CREATE TABLE... PARTITION BY** command creates a table with one or more partitions; each partition may have one or more subpartitions. There is no upper limit to the number of defined partitions, but if you include the **PARTITION BY** clause, you must specify at least one partitioning rule. The resulting table will be owned by the user that creates it.

Use the **PARTITION BY LIST** clause to divide a table into partitions based on the values entered in a specified column. Each partitioning rule must specify at least one literal value, but there is no upper limit placed on the number of values you may specify. Include a rule that specifies a matching value of **DEFAULT** to direct any unqualified rows to the given partition; for more information about using the **DEFAULT** keyword, see [Handling Stray Values in a LIST or RANGE Partitioned Table](#).

Use the **AUTOMATIC** clause to specify the table should use automatic list partitioning. By specifying the **AUTOMATIC** clause, the database automatically creates partitions when new data is inserted into a table that does not correspond to any value declared for an existing partition.

For more information about **AUTOMATIC LIST PARTITIONING**, see [Automatic List Partitioning](#).

Use the **PARTITION BY RANGE** clause to specify boundary rules by which to create partitions. Each partitioning rule must contain at least one column of a data type that has two operators (i.e., a greater-than or equal to operator, and a less-than operator). Range boundaries are evaluated against a **LESS THAN** clause and are non-inclusive; a date boundary of January 1, 2013 will include only those date values that fall on or before December 31, 2012.

Range partition rules must be specified in ascending order. **INSERT** commands that store rows with values that exceed the top boundary of a range-partitioned table will fail unless the partitioning rules include a boundary rule that specifies a value of **MAXVALUE**. If you do not include a **MAXVALUE** partitioning rule, any row that exceeds the maximum limit specified by the boundary rules will result in an error.

For more information about using the **MAXVALUE** keyword, see [Handling Stray Values in a LIST or RANGE Partitioned Table](#).

Use the **INTERVAL** clause to specify an interval range partitioned table. By specifying an **INTERVAL** clause, the range partitioning is extended by the database automatically to create partitions of a specified interval when new data is inserted into a table that exceeds an existing range partition.

For more information about **INTERVAL RANGE PARTITION**, see [Interval Range Partitioning](#).

Use the **PARTITION BY HASH** clause to create a hash-partitioned table. In a **HASH** partitioned table, data is divided amongst equal-sized partitions based on the hash value of the column specified in the partitioning syntax. When specifying a **HASH** partition, choose a column (or combination of columns) that is as close to unique as possible to help ensure that data is evenly distributed amongst the partitions. When selecting a partitioning column (or combination of columns), select a column (or columns) that you frequently search for exact matches for best performance.

Use the `STORE IN` clause to specify the tablespace list across which the autogenerated partitions or subpartitions will be stored.

**Note:** If you are upgrading Advanced Server, you must rebuild the hash-partitioned table on the upgraded version server.

Use the `TABLESPACE` keyword to specify the name of a tablespace on which a partition or subpartition will reside; if you do not specify a tablespace, the partition or subpartition will reside in the default tablespace.

If a table definition includes the `SUBPARTITION BY` clause, each partition within that table will have at least one subpartition. Each subpartition may be explicitly defined or system-defined.

If the subpartition is system-defined, the server-generated subpartition will reside in the default tablespace, and the name of the subpartition will be assigned by the server. The server will create:

- A `DEFAULT` subpartition if the `SUBPARTITION BY` clause specifies `LIST`.
- A `MAXVALUE` subpartition if the `SUBPARTITION BY` clause specifies `RANGE`.

The server will generate a subpartition name that is a combination of the partition table name and a unique identifier. You can query the `ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS` table to review a complete list of subpartition names.

## Parameters

### table\_name

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be created.

### table\_definition

The column names, data types, and constraint information as described in the PostgreSQL core documentation for the `CREATE TABLE` statement, available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-createtable.html>

### partition\_name

The name of the partition to be created. Partition names must be unique amongst all partitions and subpartitions, and must follow the naming conventions for object identifiers.

### subpartition\_name

The name of the subpartition to be created. Subpartition names must be unique amongst all partitions and subpartitions, and must follow the naming conventions for object identifiers.

### num

The `PARTITIONS num` clause can be used to specify the number of `HASH` partitions to be created. Alternatively, you can use the partition definition to specify individual partitions and their tablespaces.

**Note:** You can either use `PARTITIONS` or `PARTITION DEFINITION` when creating a table.

The `SUBPARTITIONS num` clause is only supported for `HASH` partitions, and can be used to specify the number of hash subpartitions to be created. Alternatively, you can use the subpartition definition to specify individual subpartitions and their tablespaces. If no `SUBPARTITIONS` or `SUBPARTITION DEFINITION` is specified, then the partition creates a subpartition based on the `SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE`.

### column

The name of a column on which the partitioning rules are based. Each row will be stored in a partition that corresponds to the `value` of the specified column(s).

### constant | expression

The `constant` and `expression` specifies a `NUMERIC`, `DATE` or `TIME` value.

`(value[, value]...)`

Use `value` to specify a quoted literal value (or comma-delimited list of literal values) by which table entries will be grouped into partitions. Each partitioning rule must specify at least one value, but there is no limit placed on the number of values specified within a rule. `value` may be `NULL`, `DEFAULT` (if specifying a `LIST` partition), or `MAXVALUE` (if specifying a `RANGE` partition).

When specifying rules for a list-partitioned table, include the `DEFAULT` keyword in the last partition rule to direct any un-matched rows to the given partition. If you do not include a rule that includes a value of `DEFAULT`, any `INSERT` statement that attempts to add a row that does not match the specified rules of at least one partition will fail, and return an error.

When specifying rules for a list-partitioned table, include the `MAXVALUE` keyword in the last partition rule to direct any un-categorized rows to the given partition. If you do not include a `MAXVALUE` partition, any `INSERT` statement that attempts to add a row where the partitioning key is greater than the highest value specified will fail, and return an error.

`tablespace_name`

The name of the tablespace in which the partition or subpartition resides.

### 10.3.1.1 Example - PARTITION BY LIST

The following example creates a partitioned table (`sales`) using the `PARTITION BY LIST` clause. The `sales` table stores information in three partitions (`europe`, `asia`, and `americas`).

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country)
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
);
```

The resulting table is partitioned by the value specified in the `country` column.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value from ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | high_value
-----+-----
EUROPE        | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY'
ASIA          | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
AMERICAS      | 'US', 'CANADA'
(3 rows)
```

- Rows with a value of `FRANCE` or `ITALY` in the `country` column are stored in the `europe` partition.
- Rows with a value of `INDIA` or `PAKISTAN` in the `country` column are stored in the `asia` partition.
- Rows with a value of `US` or `CANADA` in the `country` column are stored in the `americas` partition.

The server would evaluate the following statement against the partitioning rules, and store the row in the `europe` partition.

```
INSERT INTO sales VALUES (10, '9519a', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000');
```

### 10.3.1.2 Example - AUTOMATIC LIST PARTITION

The following example shows a (`sales`) table that uses an `AUTOMATIC` clause to create an automatic list partitioned table on the `sales_state` column. The database creates a new partition and adds data to a table.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    sales_state varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(sales_state) AUTOMATIC
(
    PARTITION P_CAL VALUES('CALIFORNIA'),
    PARTITION P_FLO VALUES('FLORIDA')
);
```

Query the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view to see an existing partition that is successfully created.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, high_value from ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
table_name | partition_name | high_value
-----+-----+
SALES    | P_CAL        | 'CALIFORNIA'
SALES    | P_FLO        | 'FLORIDA'
(2 rows)
```

Now, insert data into a `sales` table that cannot fit into an existing partition. For the regular list partitioned table, you will encounter an error but automatic list partitioning creates and inserts the data into a new partition.

```
edb=# INSERT INTO sales VALUES (1, 'IND', 'INDIANA');
INSERT 0 1
edb=# INSERT INTO sales VALUES (2, 'OHI', 'OHIO');
INSERT 0 1
```

Then, query the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view again after the insert. The partition is automatically created and data is inserted to hold a new value. A system-generated name of the partition is created that varies for each session.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, high_value from ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
table_name | partition_name | high_value
-----+-----+
```

```

SALES | P_CAL      | 'CALIFORNIA'
SALES | P_FLO      | 'FLORIDA'
SALES | SYS106900103 | 'INDIANA'
SALES | SYS106900104 | 'OHIO'
(4 rows)

```

### 10.3.1.3 Example - PARTITION BY RANGE

The following example creates a partitioned table (`sales`) using the `PARTITION BY RANGE` clause. The `sales` table stores information in four partitions (`q1_2012`, `q2_2012`, `q3_2012` and `q4_2012`).

```

CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(date)
(
    PARTITION q1_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Apr-01'),
    PARTITION q2_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Jul-01'),
    PARTITION q3_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Oct-01'),
    PARTITION q4_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN('2013-Jan-01')
);

```

The resulting table is partitioned by the value specified in the `date` column.

```

edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value from ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name |   high_value
-----+-----
Q1_2012      | '01-APR-12 00:00:00'
Q2_2012      | '01-JUL-12 00:00:00'
Q3_2012      | '01-OCT-12 00:00:00'
Q4_2012      | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
(4 rows)

```

- Any row with a value in the `date` column before April 1, 2012 is stored in a partition named `q1_2012`.
- Any row with a value in the `date` column before July 1, 2012 is stored in a partition named `q2_2012`.
- Any row with a value in the `date` column before October 1, 2012 is stored in a partition named `q3_2012`.
- Any row with a value in the `date` column before January 1, 2013 is stored in a partition named `q4_2012`.

The server would evaluate the following statement against the partitioning rules and store the row in the `q3_2012` partition.

```
INSERT INTO sales VALUES (10, '9519a', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000');
```

### 10.3.1.4 Example - INTERVAL RANGE PARTITION

The following example shows a `(sales)` table that is partitioned by interval on the `sold_month` column. The range partition is created to establish a transition point and new partitions are created beyond that transition point. The database creates a new interval range partition and adds data into a table.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    prod_id      int,
    prod_quantity  int,
    sold_month   date
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(sold_month)
INTERVAL(NUMTOYMINTERVAL(1, 'MONTH'))
(
    PARTITION p1
    VALUES LESS THAN('15-JAN-2019'),
    PARTITION p2
    VALUES LESS THAN('15-FEB-2019')
);
```

First, query the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view before an interval range partition is created by the database.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value from ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | high_value
-----+-----
P1           | '15-JAN-19 00:00:00'
P2           | '15-FEB-19 00:00:00'
(2 rows)
```

Now, insert data into a `sales` table that exceeds the high value of a range partition.

```
edb=# INSERT INTO sales VALUES (1,200,'10-MAY-2019');
INSERT 0 1
```

Then, query the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view again after the insert. The data is successfully inserted and a system generated name of the interval range partition is created that varies for each session.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value from ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | high_value
-----+-----
P1           | '15-JAN-19 00:00:00'
P2           | '15-FEB-19 00:00:00'
SYS916340103 | '15-MAY-19 00:00:00'
(3 rows)
```

### 10.3.1.5 Example - PARTITION BY HASH

The following example creates a partitioned table (`sales`) using the `PARTITION BY HASH` clause. The `sales` table stores information in three partitions (`p1`, `p2`, and `p3`).

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY HASH (part_no)
(
    PARTITION p1,
    PARTITION p2,
    PARTITION p3
);
```

The table will return an empty string for the hash partition value specified in the `part_no` column.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value from ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | high_value
-----+-----
P1      |
P2      |
P3      |
(3 rows)
```

Use the following command to view the hash value of the `part_no` column.

```
edb=# \d+ sales
          Partitioned table "public.sales"
Column |      Type      | Collation | Nullable | Default | Storage |
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
dept_no | numeric      |           |           | main    |
part_no | character varying |           |           | extended|
country | character varying(20) |           |           | extended|
date   | timestamp without time zone |           |           | plain   |
amount | numeric      |           |           | main    |
Partition key: HASH (part_no)
Partitions: sales_p1 FOR VALUES WITH (modulus 3, remainder 0),
            sales_p2 FOR VALUES WITH (modulus 3, remainder 1),
            sales_p3 FOR VALUES WITH (modulus 3, remainder 2)
```

The table is partitioned by the hash value of the values specified in the `part_no` column.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, partition_position from ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | partition_position
-----+-----
P1      |      1
P2      |      2
P3      |      3
(3 rows)
```

The server will evaluate the hash value of the `part_no` column and distribute the rows into approximately equal partitions.

### 10.3.1.6 Example - PARTITION BY HASH...PARTITIONS num...

The following example creates a hash-partitioned table (`sales`) using the `PARTITION BY HASH` clause. The partitioning column is `part_no`; the number of partitions to be created is specified.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY HASH (part_no) PARTITIONS 8;
```

The eight partitions are created and assigned a system-generated name. The partitions are stored in the default tablespace of the table.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS WHERE
table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name
-----+-----
SALES    | SYS0101
SALES    | SYS0102
SALES    | SYS0103
SALES    | SYS0104
SALES    | SYS0105
SALES    | SYS0106
SALES    | SYS0107
SALES    | SYS0108
(8 rows)
```

### Example - PARTITION BY HASH...PARTITIONS num...STORE IN

The following example creates a hash-partitioned table named (`sales`). The number of partitions to be created and the tablespaces in which the partition will reside are specified.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY HASH (part_no) PARTITIONS 5 STORE IN (ts1, ts2, ts3);
```

The `STORE IN` clause evenly distributes the partitions across specified tablespaces (`ts1, ts2, ts3`).

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, tablespace_name FROM
ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
```

table_name   partition_name   tablespace_name
SALES   SYS0101   TS1
SALES   SYS0102   TS2
SALES   SYS0103   TS3
SALES   SYS0104   TS1
SALES   SYS0105   TS2
(5 rows)

## Example - HASH/RANGE PARTITIONS num...

The `HASH` partition clause allows you to define a partitioning strategy. You can extend the `PARTITION BY HASH` clause to include `SUBPARTITION BY` either `[ RANGE | LIST | HASH ]` to create subpartitions in an `HASH` partitioned table.

The following example creates a table `(sales)` that is hash-partitioned by `part_no` and subpartitioned using range by `dept_no`. The number of partitions is specified when creating a table `(sales)`.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY HASH (part_no) SUBPARTITION BY RANGE (dept_no) PARTITIONS 5;
```

The five partitions are created with default subpartitions and assigned system-generated names.

edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name   partition_name   subpartition_name
-----+-----+-----
SALES   SYS0101   SYS0102
SALES   SYS0103   SYS0104
SALES   SYS0105   SYS0106
SALES   SYS0107   SYS0108
SALES   SYS0109   SYS0110
(5 rows)

## Example - LIST/HASH SUBPARTITIONS num...

The following example shows a table `(sales)` that is list-partitioned by `country` and subpartitioned using hash partitioning by the `dept_no` column. The number of subpartitions is specified when creating the table.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
```

```
)
PARTITION BY LIST (country) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (dept_no) SUBPARTITIONS 3
(
  PARTITION p1 VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
  PARTITION p2 VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
  PARTITION p3 VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
);
```

The three partitions `p1`, `p2` and `p3` each contain three subpartitions with system-generated names.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+-----+
SALES   | P1      | SYS0101
SALES   | P1      | SYS0102
SALES   | P1      | SYS0103
SALES   | P2      | SYS0104
SALES   | P2      | SYS0105
SALES   | P2      | SYS0106
SALES   | P3      | SYS0107
SALES   | P3      | SYS0108
SALES   | P3      | SYS0109
(9 rows)
```

## Example - HASH/HASH PARTITIONS num... SUBPARTITIONS num...

The following example creates the `(sales)` table, hash-partitioned by `part_no` and hash-subpartitioned by `dept_no`.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
  dept_no    number,
  part_no    varchar2,
  country    varchar2(20),
  date       date,
  amount     number
)
PARTITION BY HASH (part_no) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (dept_no) SUBPARTITIONS 3
PARTITIONS 2;
```

The two partitions are created and each partition includes three subpartitions with the system-generated name assigned to them.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+-----+
SALES   | SYS0101    | SYS0102
SALES   | SYS0101    | SYS0103
SALES   | SYS0101    | SYS0104
SALES   | SYS0105    | SYS0106
SALES   | SYS0105    | SYS0107
SALES   | SYS0105    | SYS0108
```

(6 rows)

**Example - HASH/HASH SUBPARTITIONS num... STORE IN**

The following example creates a hash-partitioned table (`sales`). The number of partitions and subpartitions to be created are specified along with the tablespaces in which the subpartitions will reside when creating a hash partitioned table.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY HASH (part_no) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (dept_no) SUBPARTITIONS 3
PARTITIONS 2 STORE IN (ts1, ts2);
```

The two partitions are created and assigned a system-generated name. The partitions are stored in the default tablespace and subpartitions are stored in tablespaces (`ts1`) and (`ts2`).

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, tablespace_name FROM
ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | tablespace_name
-----+-----+-----+
SALES   | SYS0101      |
SALES   | SYS0105      |
(2 rows)
```

The `STORE IN` clause assigns the hash subpartitions to the tablespaces and stores them in two named tablespaces (`ts1`, `ts2`).

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name, tablespace_name
FROM ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name | tablespace_name
-----+-----+-----+-----+
SALES   | SYS0101      | SYS0102      | TS1
SALES   | SYS0101      | SYS0103      | TS2
SALES   | SYS0101      | SYS0104      | TS1
SALES   | SYS0105      | SYS0106      | TS1
SALES   | SYS0105      | SYS0107      | TS2
SALES   | SYS0105      | SYS0108      | TS1
(6 rows)
```

**Example - HASH/HASH PARTITIONS num ...STORE IN SUBPARTITIONS num... STORE IN**

The following example creates a hash-partitioned table (`sales`). The number of partitions and subpartitions to be created are specified, along with the tablespaces in which the partitions and subpartitions will reside.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
```

```

part_no    varchar2,
country   varchar2(20),
date      date,
amount     number
)
PARTITION BY HASH (part_no) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (dept_no) SUBPARTITIONS 3
STORE IN (ts3) PARTITIONS 2 STORE IN (ts1, ts2);

```

The two partitions are created with a system-generated name and stored in the default tablespace.

```

edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, tablespace_name FROM
ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | tablespace_name
-----+-----+
SALES    | SYS0101      |
SALES    | SYS0105      |
(2 rows)

```

Each partition includes three subpartitions; the `STORE IN` clause stores the subpartitions in tablespaces `(ts1)` and `(ts2)`.

```

edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name, tablespace_name
FROM ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name | tablespace_name
-----+-----+-----+
SALES    | SYS0101      | SYS0102      | TS1
SALES    | SYS0101      | SYS0103      | TS2
SALES    | SYS0101      | SYS0104      | TS1
SALES    | SYS0105      | SYS0106      | TS1
SALES    | SYS0105      | SYS0107      | TS2
SALES    | SYS0105      | SYS0108      | TS1
(6 rows)

```

**Note:** If the `STORE IN` clause is specified for partitions and subpartitions, then the subpartitions are stored in the tablespaces defined in the `PARTITIONS...STORE IN` clause and the `SUBPARTITIONS...STORE IN` clause is ignored.

## Example - RANGE/HASH SUBPARTITIONS num...

The following example creates a range-partitioned table `(sales)` that is first partitioned by the transaction date; two range partitions are created and then hash-subpartitioned using the value of the `country` column.

```

CREATE TABLE sales
(
dept_no   number,
part_no   varchar2,
country   varchar2(20),
date      date,
amount     number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE (date) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (country) SUBPARTITIONS 2
(
  PARTITION p1 VALUES LESS THAN ('2012-Apr-01') (SUBPARTITION q1_europe),
  PARTITION p2 VALUES LESS THAN ('2012-Jul-01')
);

```

This statement creates a table with two partitions; the subpartition explicitly named `q1_europe` is created for partition `p1`. Because subpartitions are not named for partition `p2`, the subpartitions are created based on the subpartition number, and are assigned a system-generated name.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+
SALES   | P1          | Q1_EUROPE
SALES   | P2          | SYS0101
SALES   | P2          | SYS0102
(3 rows)
```

## Example - RANGE/HASH SUBPARTITIONS num... IN PARTITION DESCRIPTION

The following example creates a range-partitioned table (`sales`) that is first partitioned by the transaction date; two range partitions are created and then hash-subpartitioned using the value of the `country` column.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
dept_no    number,
part_no    varchar2,
country    varchar2(20),
date       date,
amount     number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE (date) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (country) SUBPARTITIONS 2
(
  PARTITION p1 VALUES LESS THAN ('2012-Apr-01') SUBPARTITIONS 3,
  PARTITION p2 VALUES LESS THAN ('2012-Jul-01')
);
```

The partition `p1` explicitly defines the subpartition count in the partition description. By default, two subpartitions will be created for partition `p2`; since subpartitions are not named, system-generated names are assigned.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+
SALES   | P1          | SYS0101
SALES   | P1          | SYS0102
SALES   | P1          | SYS0103
SALES   | P2          | SYS0104
SALES   | P2          | SYS0105
(5 rows)
```

## Example - LIST/HASH SUBPARTITIONS num STORE IN... IN PARTITION DESCRIPTION

The following example creates a list-partitioned table (`sales`) with two list partitions. Partition `p1` consists of three subpartitions and partition `p2` consists of two subpartitions. Since the subpartitions are not named, system-generated names are assigned.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
```

```

(
dept_no    number,
part_no    varchar2,
country    varchar2(20),
date       date,
amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST (country) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (part_no) SUBPARTITIONS 3
STORE IN (ts1)
(
  PARTITION p1 VALUES ('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
  PARTITION p2 VALUES ('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN') SUBPARTITIONS 2 STORE IN
  (ts2)
);

```

The partition `p2` explicitly defines the subpartition count in the partition description. Based on the definition, two subpartitions are created and stored in the tablespace named `(ts2)`. The subpartitions for partition `p1` will be stored in the tablespace named `(ts1)`.

```

edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name, tablespace_name
FROM ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name | tablespace_name
-----+-----+-----+
SALES   | P1        | SYS0101      | TS1
SALES   | P1        | SYS0102      | TS1
SALES   | P1        | SYS0103      | TS1
SALES   | P2        | SYS0104      | TS2
SALES   | P2        | SYS0105      | TS2
(5 rows)

```

## Example - LIST/HASH STORE IN...TABLESPACES

The following example creates a list-partitioned table `(sales)` with partition `p1` consisting of three subpartitions stored explicitly in the tablespace `(ts2)`.

```

CREATE TABLE sales
(
dept_no    number,
part_no    varchar2,
country    varchar2(20),
date       date,
amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST (country) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (part_no) SUBPARTITIONS 3
STORE IN (ts1)
(
  PARTITION p1 VALUES ('FRANCE', 'ITALY') TABLESPACE ts2
);

```

The `SELECT` statement shows partition `p1`, consisting of three subpartitions stored in the tablespace `(ts2)`.

```

edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name, tablespace_name
FROM ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name | tablespace_name
-----+-----+-----+

```

SALES	P1	SYS0101	TS2
SALES	P1	SYS0102	TS2
SALES	P1	SYS0103	TS2
(3 rows)			

The following command adds a new partition `p2` to the `sales` table, five subpartitions will be created and distributed across the tablespace listed by the `STORE IN` clause.

```
ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION p2 VALUES ('US', 'CANADA') SUBPARTITIONS 5
STORE IN (ts1);
```

A query of the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view shows the `sales` table with a partition named `p2`, with five subpartitions. The `STORE IN` clause distributes the subpartitions across a tablespace named `(ts1)`.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name, tablespace_name
  FROM ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' and partition_name =
  'P2' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name | tablespace_name
-----+-----+-----+-----+
SALES    | P2        | SYS0105      | TS1
SALES    | P2        | SYS0106      | TS1
SALES    | P2        | SYS0107      | TS1
SALES    | P2        | SYS0108      | TS1
SALES    | P2        | SYS0109      | TS1
(5 rows)
```

### 10.3.1.7 Example - PARTITION BY RANGE, SUBPARTITION BY LIST

The following example creates a partitioned table `(sales)` that is first partitioned by the transaction date; the range partitions (`q1_2012`, `q2_2012`, `q3_2012` and `q4_2012`) are then list-subpartitioned using the value of the `country` column.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(date)
SUBPARTITION BY LIST(country)
(
    PARTITION q1_2012
    VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Apr-01')
    (
        SUBPARTITION q1_europe VALUES ('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
        SUBPARTITION q1_asia VALUES ('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
        SUBPARTITION q1_americas VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
    ),
    PARTITION q2_2012
    VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Jun-01')
    (
        SUBPARTITION q2_europe VALUES ('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
        SUBPARTITION q2_asia VALUES ('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
        SUBPARTITION q2_americas VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
    ),
    PARTITION q3_2012
    VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Sep-01')
    (
        SUBPARTITION q3_europe VALUES ('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
        SUBPARTITION q3_asia VALUES ('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
        SUBPARTITION q3_americas VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
    ),
    PARTITION q4_2012
    VALUES LESS THAN('2013-Jan-01')
    (
        SUBPARTITION q4_europe VALUES ('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
        SUBPARTITION q4_asia VALUES ('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
        SUBPARTITION q4_americas VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
    )
)
```

```

PARTITION q2_2012
VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Jul-01')
(
  SUBPARTITION q2_europe VALUES ('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
  SUBPARTITION q2_asia VALUES ('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
  SUBPARTITION q2_americas VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
),
PARTITION q3_2012
VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Oct-01')
(
  SUBPARTITION q3_europe VALUES ('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
  SUBPARTITION q3_asia VALUES ('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
  SUBPARTITION q3_americas VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
),
PARTITION q4_2012
VALUES LESS THAN('2013-Jan-01')
(
  SUBPARTITION q4_europe VALUES ('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
  SUBPARTITION q4_asia VALUES ('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
  SUBPARTITION q4_americas VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
)
);

```

This statement creates a table with four partitions; each partition has three subpartitions.

```

edb=# SELECT subpartition_name, high_value, partition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS;
subpartition_name | high_value | partition_name
-----+-----+-----
Q1_EUROPE | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY' | Q1_2012
Q1_ASIA | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN' | Q1_2012
Q1_AMERICAS | 'US', 'CANADA' | Q1_2012
Q2_EUROPE | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY' | Q2_2012
Q2_ASIA | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN' | Q2_2012
Q2_AMERICAS | 'US', 'CANADA' | Q2_2012
Q3_EUROPE | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY' | Q3_2012
Q3_ASIA | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN' | Q3_2012
Q3_AMERICAS | 'US', 'CANADA' | Q3_2012
Q4_EUROPE | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY' | Q4_2012
Q4_ASIA | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN' | Q4_2012
Q4_AMERICAS | 'US', 'CANADA' | Q4_2012
(12 rows)

```

When a row is added to this table, the value in the `date` column is compared to the values specified in the range partitioning rules, and the server selects the partition in which the row should reside. The value in the `country` column is then compared to the values specified in the list subpartitioning rules; when the server locates a match for the value, the row is stored in the corresponding subpartition.

Any row added to the table will be stored in a subpartition, so the partitions will contain no data.

The server would evaluate the following statement against the partitioning and subpartitioning rules and store the row in the `q3_europe` partition.

```
INSERT INTO sales VALUES (10, '9519a', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000');
```

## 10.3.2 ALTER TABLE...ADD PARTITION

Use the `ALTER TABLE... ADD PARTITION` command to add a partition to an existing partitioned table. The syntax is:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> ADD PARTITION <partition_definition>;
```

Where `partition_definition` is:

```
{<list_partition> | <range_partition> }
```

and `list_partition` is:

```
PARTITION [<partition_name>]
VALUES (<value>[, <value>]...)
[TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
[(<subpartition>, ...)]
```

and `range_partition` is:

```
PARTITION [<partition_name>]
VALUES LESS THAN (<value>[, <value>]...)
[TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
[(<subpartition>, ...)]
```

Where `subpartition` is:

```
{<list_subpartition> | <range_subpartition> | <hash_subpartition>}
```

and `list_subpartition` is:

```
SUBPARTITION [<subpartition_name>]
VALUES (<value>[, <value>]...)
[TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
```

and `range_subpartition` is:

```
SUBPARTITION [<subpartition_name> ]
VALUES LESS THAN (<value>[, <value>]...)
[TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
```

and `hash_subpartition` is:

```
SUBPARTITION <subpartition_name>
[TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>] |
SUBPARTITIONS <num> [STORE IN ( <tablespace_name> [
<tablespace_name>]... ) ]
```

### Description

The `ALTER TABLE... ADD PARTITION` command adds a partition to an existing partitioned table. There is no upper limit to the number of defined partitions in a partitioned table.

New partitions must be of the same type (`LIST`, `RANGE`, or `HASH`) as existing partitions. The new partition rules must reference the same column specified in the partitioning rules that define the existing partition(s).

You can use the `ALTER TABLE... ADD PARTITION` statement to add a partition to a table with a `DEFAULT` rule as long as there are no conflicting values between existing rows in the table and the values of the partition to be added.

You cannot use the `ALTER TABLE... ADD PARTITION` statement to add a partition to a table with a `MAXVALUE` rule.

You can alternatively use the `ALTER TABLE... SPLIT PARTITION` statement to split an existing partition, effectively increasing the number of partitions in a table.

`RANGE` partitions must be specified in ascending order. You cannot add a new partition that precedes existing partitions in a `RANGE` partitioned table.

Include the `TABLESPACE` clause to specify the tablespace in which the new partition will reside. If you do not specify a tablespace, the partition will reside in the default tablespace.

Use the `STORE IN` clause to specify the tablespace list across which the autogenerated subpartitions will be stored.

If the table is indexed, the index will be created on the new partition.

To use the `ALTER TABLE... ADD PARTITION` command you must be the table owner, or have superuser (or administrative) privileges.

## Parameters

`table_name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the partitioned table.

`partition_name`

The name of the partition to be created. Partition names must be unique amongst all partitions and subpartitions, and must follow the naming conventions for object identifiers.

`subpartition_name`

The name of the subpartition to be created. Subpartition names must be unique amongst all partitions and subpartitions, and must follow the naming conventions for object identifiers.

`(value[, value]...)`

Use `value` to specify a quoted literal value (or comma-delimited list of literal values) by which rows will be distributed into partitions. Each partitioning rule must specify at least one `value`, but there is no limit placed on the number of values specified within a rule. `value` may also be `NULL`, `DEFAULT` (if specifying a `LIST` partition), or `MAXVALUE` (if specifying a `RANGE` partition).

For information about creating a `DEFAULT` or `MAXVALUE` partition, see [Handling Stray Values in a LIST or RANGE Partitioned Table](#).

`num`

The `SUBPARTITIONS num` clause is only supported for `HASH` and can be used to specify the number of hash subpartitions. Alternatively, you can use the subpartition definition to specify individual subpartitions and their tablespaces. If no `SUBPARTITIONS` or `SUBPARTITION DEFINITION` is specified, then the partition creates a subpartition based on the `SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE`.

`tablespace_name`

The name of the tablespace in which a partition or subpartition resides.

### 10.3.2.1 Example - Adding a Partition to a LIST Partitioned Table

The example that follows adds a partition to the list-partitioned `sales` table. The table was created using the command:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country)
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
);
```

The table contains three partitions (`americas`, `asia`, and `europe`).

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | high_value
-----+-----
EUROPE      | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY'
ASIA        | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
AMERICAS    | 'US', 'CANADA'
(3 rows)
```

The following command adds a partition named `east_asia` to the `sales` table.

```
ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION east_asia
VALUES ('CHINA', 'KOREA');
```

After invoking the command, the table includes the `east_asia` partition.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | high_value
-----+-----
EUROPE      | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY'
ASIA        | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
AMERICAS    | 'US', 'CANADA'
EAST_ASIA   | 'CHINA', 'KOREA'
(4 rows)
```

### 10.3.2.2 Example - Adding a Partition to a RANGE Partitioned Table

The example that follows adds a partition to a range-partitioned table named `sales`:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(date)
(
    PARTITION q1_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Apr-01'),
    PARTITION q2_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Jul-01'),
    PARTITION q3_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Oct-01'),
    PARTITION q4_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN('2013-Jan-01')
);
```

The table contains four partitions (`q1_2012`, `q2_2012`, `q3_2012`, and `q4_2012`).

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name |   high_value
-----+-----
Q1_2012      | '01-APR-12 00:00:00'
Q2_2012      | '01-JUL-12 00:00:00'
Q3_2012      | '01-OCT-12 00:00:00'
Q4_2012      | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
(4 rows)
```

The following command adds a partition named `q1_2013` to the `sales` table.

```
ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION q1_2013
VALUES LESS THAN('01-APR-2013');
```

After invoking the command, the table includes the `q1_2013` partition.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name |   high_value
-----+-----
Q1_2012      | '01-APR-12 00:00:00'
Q2_2012      | '01-JUL-12 00:00:00'
Q3_2012      | '01-OCT-12 00:00:00'
Q4_2012      | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
Q1_2013      | '01-APR-13 00:00:00'
(5 rows)
```

### 10.3.2.3 Example - Adding a Partition with SUBPARTITIONS num...IN

## PARTITION DESCRIPTION

The following example adds a partition to a list-partitioned `sales` table, you can specify a `SUBPARTITIONS` clause to add a specified number of subpartitions. The `sales` table was created with the command:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST (country) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (part_no) SUBPARTITIONS 2
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES ('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia   VALUES ('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN')
);
```

The table contains two partitions `europe` and `asia`, each containing two subpartitions. Because the subpartitions are not named, system-generated names are assigned to them.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+
SALES    | ASIA        | SYS0103
SALES    | ASIA        | SYS0104
SALES    | EUROPE      | SYS0101
SALES    | EUROPE      | SYS0102
(4 rows)
```

The following command adds a new partition `americas` to the `sales` table and will create a number of subpartitions as specified in the partition description.

```
ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION americas
VALUES ('US', 'CANADA');
```

After invoking the command the table includes the partition `americas` and two newly added subpartitions.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+
SALES    | AMERICAS     | SYS0107
SALES    | AMERICAS     | SYS0108
SALES    | ASIA         | SYS0103
SALES    | ASIA         | SYS0104
SALES    | EUROPE       | SYS0101
SALES    | EUROPE       | SYS0102
(6 rows)
```

### Example - Adding a Partition with SUBPARTITIONS num...

The following example adds a partition to a list-partitioned table `sales` consisting of three subpartitions. The `sales` table was created with the command:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST (country) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (part_no) SUBPARTITIONS 3
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES ('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia   VALUES ('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN')
);
```

The table contains partitions `europe` and `asia`, each containing three subpartitions.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+-----
SALES  | ASIA      | SYS0104
SALES  | ASIA      | SYS0105
SALES  | ASIA      | SYS0106
SALES  | EUROPE    | SYS0101
SALES  | EUROPE    | SYS0102
SALES  | EUROPE    | SYS0103
(6 rows)
```

The following command adds a new partition `americas` and five subpartitions as specified in the [ADD PARTITION](#) clause.

```
ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION americas
VALUES ('US', 'CANADA') SUBPARTITIONS 5;
```

After invoking the command `sales` table includes the partition `americas` and five newly added subpartitions.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' and partition_name =
'AMERICAS' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+-----
SALES  | AMERICAS   | SYS0109
SALES  | AMERICAS   | SYS0110
SALES  | AMERICAS   | SYS0111
SALES  | AMERICAS   | SYS0112
SALES  | AMERICAS   | SYS0113
(5 rows)
```

## Example - Adding a Partition with SUBPARTITIONS num... STORE IN

The following example adds a partition to a list-partitioned table `sales` consisting of three subpartitions. The table was created using the command:

```

CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST (country) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (part_no) SUBPARTITIONS 3
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
);

```

The table contains three partitions (`americas`, `asia`, and `europe`), each containing three subpartitions with system-generated names.

```

edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+-----+
SALES   | AMERICAS    | SYS0109
SALES   | AMERICAS    | SYS0107
SALES   | AMERICAS    | SYS0108
SALES   | ASIA        | SYS0105
SALES   | ASIA        | SYS0104
SALES   | ASIA        | SYS0106
SALES   | EUROPE      | SYS0101
SALES   | EUROPE      | SYS0103
SALES   | EUROPE      | SYS0102
(9 rows)

```

The following command adds a new partition `east_asia` with five subpartitions as specified in the `ADD PARTITION` clause and stores them in the tablespace named `(ts1)`.

```

ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION east_asia
VALUES ('CHINA', 'KOREA') SUBPARTITIONS 5 STORE IN (ts1);

```

After invoking the command table includes the partition `east_asia` and five newly added subpartitions stored in tablespace `(ts1)`.

```

edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name, tablespace_name
FROM ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' and partition_name =
'EAST_ASIA' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name | tablespace_name
-----+-----+-----+-----+
SALES   | EAST_ASIA   | SYS0113      | TS1
SALES   | EAST_ASIA   | SYS0114      | TS1
SALES   | EAST_ASIA   | SYS0115      | TS1
SALES   | EAST_ASIA   | SYS0116      | TS1
SALES   | EAST_ASIA   | SYS0117      | TS1
(5 rows)

```

### 10.3.3 ALTER TABLE...ADD SUBPARTITION

The `ALTER TABLE... ADD SUBPARTITION` command adds a subpartition to an existing subpartitioned partition. The syntax is:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> MODIFY PARTITION <partition_name>
    ADD SUBPARTITION <subpartition_definition>;
```

Where `subpartition_definition` is:

```
{<list_subpartition> | <range_subpartition>}
```

and `list_subpartition` is:

```
SUBPARTITION [<subpartition_name>]
    VALUES (<value>[, <value>]...)
    [TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
```

and `range_subpartition` is:

```
SUBPARTITION [subpartition_name]
    VALUES LESS THAN (value[, value]...)
    [TABLESPACE tablespace_name]
```

#### Description

The `ALTER TABLE... ADD SUBPARTITION` command adds a subpartition to an existing partition; the partition must already be subpartitioned. There is no upper limit to the number of defined subpartitions.

New subpartitions must be of the same type (`LIST`, `RANGE` or `HASH`) as existing subpartitions. The new subpartition rules must reference the same column specified in the subpartitioning rules that define the existing subpartition(s).

You can use the `ALTER TABLE... ADD SUBPARTITION` statement to add a subpartition to a table with a `DEFAULT` rule as long as there are no conflicting values between existing rows in the table and the values of the subpartition to be added.

You cannot use the `ALTER TABLE... ADD SUBPARTITION` statement to add a subpartition to a table with a `MAXVALUE` rule.

You can split an existing subpartition with the `ALTER TABLE... SPLIT SUBPARTITION` statement, effectively adding a subpartition to a table.

You cannot add a new subpartition that precedes existing subpartitions in a range subpartitioned table; range subpartitions must be specified in ascending order.

Include the `TABLESPACE` clause to specify the tablespace in which the subpartition will reside. If you do not specify a tablespace, the subpartition will be created in the default tablespace.

If the table is indexed, the index will be created on the new subpartition.

To use the `ALTER TABLE... ADD SUBPARTITION` command you must be the table owner, or have superuser (or administrative) privileges.

#### Parameters

`table_name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the partitioned table in which the subpartition will reside.

#### partition\_name

The name of the partition in which the new subpartition will reside.

#### subpartition\_name

The name of the subpartition to be created. Subpartition names must be unique amongst all partitions and subpartitions, and must follow the naming conventions for object identifiers.

#### (value[, value]...)

Use `value` to specify a quoted literal value (or comma-delimited list of literal values) by which table entries will be grouped into partitions. Each partitioning rule must specify at least one value, but there is no limit placed on the number of values specified within a rule. `value` may also be `NULL`, `DEFAULT` (if specifying a `LIST` partition), or `MAXVALUE` (if specifying a `RANGE` partition).

For information about creating a `DEFAULT` or `MAXVALUE` partition, see [Handling Stray Values in a LIST or RANGE Partitioned Table](#).

#### tablespace\_name

The name of the tablespace in which the subpartition resides.

### 10.3.3.1 Example - Adding a Subpartition to a LIST/RANGE Partitioned Table

The following example adds a `RANGE` subpartition to the list-partitioned `sales` table. The `sales` table was created with the command:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country)
    SUBPARTITION BY RANGE(date)
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY')
    (
        SUBPARTITION europe_2011
            VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Jan-01'),
        SUBPARTITION europe_2012
            VALUES LESS THAN('2013-Jan-01')
    ),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN')
    (
        SUBPARTITION asia_2011
            VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Jan-01'),
```

```

SUBPARTITION asia_2012
    VALUES LESS THAN('2013-Jan-01')
),
PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
(
    SUBPARTITION americas_2011
    VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Jan-01'),
    SUBPARTITION americas_2012
    VALUES LESS THAN('2013-Jan-01')
)
);

```

The `sales` table has three partitions, named `europe`, `asia`, and `americas`. Each partition has two range-defined subpartitions.

```

edb=# SELECT partition_name, subpartition_name, high_value FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS;
partition_name | subpartition_name | high_value
-----+-----+
EUROPE      | EUROPE_2011      | '01-JAN-12 00:00:00'
EUROPE      | EUROPE_2012      | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
ASIA        | ASIA_2011        | '01-JAN-12 00:00:00'
ASIA        | ASIA_2012        | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
AMERICAS    | AMERICAS_2011    | '01-JAN-12 00:00:00'
AMERICAS    | AMERICAS_2012    | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
(6 rows)

```

The following command adds a subpartition named `europe_2013`.

```

ALTER TABLE sales MODIFY PARTITION europe
ADD SUBPARTITION europe_2013
VALUES LESS THAN('2015-Jan-01');

```

After invoking the command, the table includes a subpartition named `europe_2013`.

```

edb=# SELECT partition_name, subpartition_name, high_value FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS;
partition_name | subpartition_name | high_value
-----+-----+
EUROPE      | EUROPE_2011      | '01-JAN-12 00:00:00'
EUROPE      | EUROPE_2012      | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
EUROPE      | EUROPE_2013      | '01-JAN-15 00:00:00'
ASIA        | ASIA_2011        | '01-JAN-12 00:00:00'
ASIA        | ASIA_2012        | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
AMERICAS    | AMERICAS_2011    | '01-JAN-12 00:00:00'
AMERICAS    | AMERICAS_2012    | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
(7 rows)

```

## Note

When adding a new range subpartition, the subpartitioning rules must specify a range that falls *after* any existing subpartitions.

### 10.3.3.2 Example - Adding a Subpartition to a RANGE/LIST Partitioned Table

The following example adds a `LIST` subpartition to the `RANGE` partitioned `sales` table. The `sales` table was created with the command:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(date)
SUBPARTITION BY LIST (country)
(
    PARTITION first_half_2012 VALUES LESS THAN('01-JUL-2012')
    (
        SUBPARTITION europe VALUES ('ITALY', 'FRANCE'),
        SUBPARTITION americas VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
    ),
    PARTITION second_half_2012 VALUES LESS THAN('01-JAN-2013')
    (
        SUBPARTITION asia VALUES ('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN')
    )
);
```

After executing the above command, the `sales` table will have two partitions, named `first_half_2012` and `second_half_2012`. The `first_half_2012` partition has two subpartitions, named `europe` and `americas`, and the `second_half_2012` partition has one partition, named `asia`.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, subpartition_name, high_value FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS;
partition_name | subpartition_name | high_value
-----+-----+
SECOND_HALF_2012 | ASIA | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
FIRST_HALF_2012 | AMERICAS | 'US', 'CANADA'
FIRST_HALF_2012 | EUROPE | 'ITALY', 'FRANCE'
(3 rows)
```

The following command adds a subpartition to the `second_half_2012` partition, named `east_asia`.

```
ALTER TABLE sales MODIFY PARTITION second_half_2012
ADD SUBPARTITION east_asia VALUES ('CHINA');
```

After invoking the command, the table includes a subpartition named `east_asia`.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, subpartition_name, high_value FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS;
partition_name | subpartition_name | high_value
-----+-----+
SECOND_HALF_2012 | ASIA | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
SECOND_HALF_2012 | EAST_ASIA | 'CHINA'
FIRST_HALF_2012 | AMERICAS | 'US', 'CANADA'
```

FIRST_HALF_2012   EUROPE (4 rows)	'ITALY', 'FRANCE'
--------------------------------------	-------------------

## 10.3.4 ALTER TABLE...SPLIT PARTITION

Use the **ALTER TABLE... SPLIT PARTITION** command to divide a single partition into two partitions, maintaining the partitioning of the original table in the newly created partitions, and redistributing the partition's contents between the new partitions. The command syntax comes in two forms.

The first form splits a **RANGE** partition into two partitions:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> SPLIT PARTITION <partition_name>
  AT (<range_part_value>)
  INTO
  (
    PARTITION <new_part1>
    [TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
    [SUBPARTITIONS <num>] [STORE IN ( <tablespace_name> [, <tablespace_name>]... )],
    PARTITION <new_part2>
    [TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
    [SUBPARTITIONS <num>] [STORE IN ( <tablespace_name> [, <tablespace_name>]... )]
  );

```

The second form splits a **LIST** partition into two partitions:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> SPLIT PARTITION <partition_name>
  VALUES (<value>[, <value>]...)
  INTO
  (
    PARTITION <new_part1>
    [TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
    [SUBPARTITIONS <num>] [STORE IN ( <tablespace_name> [, <tablespace_name>]... )],
    PARTITION <new_part2>
    [TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
    [SUBPARTITIONS <num>] [STORE IN ( <tablespace_name> [, <tablespace_name>]... )]
  );

```

### Description

The **ALTER TABLE...SPLIT PARTITION** command adds a partition to an existing **LIST** or **RANGE** partitioned table. Please note that the **ALTER TABLE... SPLIT PARTITION** command cannot add a partition to a **HASH** partitioned table. There is no upper limit to the number of partitions that a table may have.

When you execute an **ALTER TABLE...SPLIT PARTITION** command, Advanced Server creates two new partitions, maintains the partitioning of the original table in the newly created partitions, and redistributes the content of the old partition between them (as constrained by the partitioning rules).

Include the **TABLESPACE** clause to specify the tablespace in which a partition will reside. If you do not specify a

tablespace, the partition will reside in the tablespace of the original partitioned table.

Use the `STORE IN` clause to specify the tablespace list across which the autogenerated subpartitions will be stored.

If the table is indexed, the index will be created on the new partition.

To use the `ALTER TABLE... SPLIT PARTITION` command you must be the table owner, or have superuser (or administrative) privileges.

## Parameters

### `table_name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the partitioned table.

### `partition_name`

The name of the partition that is being split.

### `new_part1`

The name of the first new partition to be created. Partition names must be unique amongst all partitions and subpartitions, and must follow the naming conventions for object identifiers.

`new_part1` will receive the rows that meet the partitioning constraints specified in the `ALTER TABLE... SPLIT PARTITION` command.

### `new_part2`

The name of the second new partition to be created. Partition names must be unique amongst all partitions and subpartitions, and must follow the naming conventions for object identifiers.

`new_part2` will receive the rows are not directed to `new_part1` by the partitioning constraints specified in the `ALTER TABLE... SPLIT PARTITION` command.

### `range_part_value`

Use `range_part_value` to specify the boundary rules by which to create the new partition. The partitioning rule must contain at least one column of a data type that has two operators (i.e., a greater-than-or-equal to operator, and a less-than operator). Range boundaries are evaluated against a `LESS THAN` clause and are non-inclusive; a date boundary of January 1, 2010 will include only those date values that fall on or before December 31, 2009.

### `(value[, value]...)`

Use `value` to specify a quoted literal value (or comma-delimited list of literal values) by which rows will be distributed into partitions. Each partitioning rule must specify at least one value, but there is no limit placed on the number of values specified within a rule.

For information about creating a `DEFAULT` or `MAXVALUE` partition, see [Handling Stray Values in a LIST or RANGE Partitioned Table](#).

### `num`

The `SUBPARTITIONS num` clause is only supported for `HASH` subpartitions; use the clause to specify the number of hash subpartitions. Alternatively, you can use the subpartition definition to specify individual subpartitions and their tablespaces. If no `SUBPARTITIONS` or `SUBPARTITION DEFINITION` is specified, then the partition creates a subpartition based on the `SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE`.

### `tablespace_name`

The name of the tablespace in which the partition or subpartition resides.

### 10.3.4.1 Example - Splitting a LIST Partition

This example will divide one of the partitions in the list-partitioned `sales` table into two new partitions, and redistribute the contents of the partition between them. The `sales` table is created with the statement:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country)
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
);
```

The table definition creates three partitions (`europe`, `asia`, and `americas`). The following command adds rows to each partition.

```
INSERT INTO sales VALUES
(10, '4519b', 'FRANCE', '17-Jan-2012', '45000'),
(20, '3788a', 'INDIA', '01-Mar-2012', '75000'),
(40, '9519b', 'US', '12-Apr-2012', '145000'),
(20, '3788a', 'PAKISTAN', '04-Jun-2012', '37500'),
(40, '4577b', 'US', '11-Nov-2012', '25000'),
(30, '7588b', 'CANADA', '14-Dec-2012', '50000'),
(30, '9519b', 'CANADA', '01-Feb-2012', '75000'),
(30, '4519b', 'CANADA', '08-Apr-2012', '120000'),
(40, '3788a', 'US', '12-May-2012', '4950'),
(10, '9519b', 'ITALY', '07-Jul-2012', '15000'),
(10, '9519a', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(10, '9519b', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(20, '3788b', 'INDIA', '21-Sept-2012', '5090'),
(40, '4788a', 'US', '23-Sept-2012', '4950'),
(40, '4788b', 'US', '09-Oct-2012', '15000'),
(20, '4519a', 'INDIA', '18-Oct-2012', '650000'),
(20, '4519b', 'INDIA', '2-Dec-2012', '5090');
```

The rows are distributed amongst the partitions.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
   tableoid | dept_no | part_no | country |      date      | amount
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_americas | 40 | 9519b | US | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_americas | 40 | 4577b | US | 11-NOV-12 00:00:00 | 25000
sales_americas | 30 | 7588b | CANADA | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_americas | 30 | 9519b | CANADA | 01-FEB-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_americas | 30 | 4519b | CANADA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_americas | 40 | 3788a | US | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00 | 4950
```

```

sales_americas | 40 | 4788a | US    | 23-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_americas | 40 | 4788b | US    | 09-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe   | 10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_europe   | 10 | 9519b | ITALY   | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe   | 10 | 9519a | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_europe   | 10 | 9519b | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia     | 20 | 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_asia     | 20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN | 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_asia     | 20 | 3788b | INDIA  | 21-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_asia     | 20 | 4519a | INDIA  | 18-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia     | 20 | 4519b | INDIA  | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
(17 rows)

```

The following command splits the `americas` partition into two partitions named `us` and `canada`.

```

ALTER TABLE sales SPLIT PARTITION americas
VALUES ('US')
INTO (PARTITION us, PARTITION canada);

```

A `SELECT` statement confirms that the rows have been redistributed.

```

edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
   tableoid  | dept_no | part_no | country |      date      | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_canada | 30 | 7588b | CANADA | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_canada | 30 | 9519b | CANADA | 01-FEB-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_canada | 30 | 4519b | CANADA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_europe  | 10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_europe  | 10 | 9519b | ITALY   | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe  | 10 | 9519a | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_europe  | 10 | 9519b | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN | 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788b | INDIA  | 21-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_asia    | 20 | 4519a | INDIA  | 18-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia    | 20 | 4519b | INDIA  | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_us      | 40 | 9519b | US    | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_us      | 40 | 4577b | US    | 11-NOV-12 00:00:00 | 25000
sales_us      | 40 | 3788a | US    | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_us      | 40 | 4788a | US    | 23-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_us      | 40 | 4788b | US    | 09-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 15000
(17 rows)

```

### 10.3.4.2 Example - Splitting a RANGE Partition

This example divides the `q4_2012` partition (of the range-partitioned `sales` table) into two partitions, and redistribute the partition's contents. Use the following command to create the `sales` table:

```

CREATE TABLE sales
(
  dept_no  number,

```

```

part_no    varchar2,
country    varchar2(20),
date       date,
amount     number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(date)
(
  PARTITION q1_2012
    VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Apr-01'),
  PARTITION q2_2012
    VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Jul-01'),
  PARTITION q3_2012
    VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Oct-01'),
  PARTITION q4_2012
    VALUES LESS THAN('2013-Jan-01')
);

```

The table definition creates four partitions (`q1_2012`, `q2_2012`, `q3_2012`, and `q4_2012`). The following command adds rows to each partition.

```

INSERT INTO sales VALUES
(10, '4519b', 'FRANCE', '17-Jan-2012', '45000'),
(20, '3788a', 'INDIA', '01-Mar-2012', '75000'),
(40, '9519b', 'US', '12-Apr-2012', '145000'),
(20, '3788a', 'PAKISTAN', '04-Jun-2012', '37500'),
(40, '4577b', 'US', '11-Nov-2012', '25000'),
(30, '7588b', 'CANADA', '14-Dec-2012', '50000'),
(30, '9519b', 'CANADA', '01-Feb-2012', '75000'),
(30, '4519b', 'CANADA', '08-Apr-2012', '120000'),
(40, '3788a', 'US', '12-May-2012', '4950'),
(10, '9519b', 'ITALY', '07-Jul-2012', '15000'),
(10, '9519a', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(10, '9519b', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(20, '3788b', 'INDIA', '21-Sept-2012', '5090'),
(40, '4788a', 'US', '23-Sept-2012', '4950'),
(40, '4788b', 'US', '09-Oct-2012', '15000'),
(20, '4519a', 'INDIA', '18-Oct-2012', '650000'),
(20, '4519b', 'INDIA', '2-Dec-2012', '5090);

```

A `SELECT` statement confirms that the rows are distributed amongst the partitions as expected.

```

edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
   tableoid | dept_no | part_no | country |      date      | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_q1_2012 | 10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_q1_2012 | 20 | 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_q1_2012 | 30 | 9519b | CANADA | 01-FEB-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_q2_2012 | 40 | 9519b | US     | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_q2_2012 | 20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN | 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_q2_2012 | 30 | 4519b | CANADA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_q2_2012 | 40 | 3788a | US     | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_q3_2012 | 10 | 9519b | ITALY  | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_q3_2012 | 10 | 9519a | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_q3_2012 | 10 | 9519b | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_q3_2012 | 20 | 3788b | INDIA  | 21-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_q3_2012 | 40 | 4788a | US     | 23-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 4950

```

```

sales_q4_2012 | 40 | 4577b | US    | 11-NOV-12 00:00:00 | 25000
sales_q4_2012 | 30 | 7588b | CANADA | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_q4_2012 | 40 | 4788b | US    | 09-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_q4_2012 | 20 | 4519a | INDIA | 18-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_q4_2012 | 20 | 4519b | INDIA | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
(17 rows)

```

The following command splits the `q4_2012` partition into two partitions named `q4_2012_p1` and `q4_2012_p2`.

```

ALTER TABLE sales SPLIT PARTITION q4_2012
AT ('15-Nov-2012')
INTO
(
  PARTITION q4_2012_p1,
  PARTITION q4_2012_p2
);

```

A `SELECT` statement confirms that the rows have been redistributed across the new partitions.

```

edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
   tableoid   | dept_no | part_no | country |      date      |amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_q1_2012 | 10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_q1_2012 | 20 | 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_q1_2012 | 30 | 9519b | CANADA | 01-FEB-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_q2_2012 | 40 | 9519b | US     | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_q2_2012 | 20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN | 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_q2_2012 | 30 | 4519b | CANADA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_q2_2012 | 40 | 3788a | US     | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_q3_2012 | 10 | 9519b | ITALY   | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_q3_2012 | 10 | 9519a | FRANCE  | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_q3_2012 | 10 | 9519b | FRANCE  | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_q3_2012 | 20 | 3788b | INDIA  | 21-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_q3_2012 | 40 | 4788a | US     | 23-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_q4_2012_p1| 40 | 4577b | US     | 11-NOV-12 00:00:00 | 25000
sales_q4_2012_p1| 40 | 4788b | US     | 09-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_q4_2012_p1| 20 | 4519a | INDIA  | 18-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_q4_2012_p2| 30 | 7588b | CANADA | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_q4_2012_p2| 20 | 4519b | INDIA  | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
(17 rows)

```

### 10.3.4.3 Example - Splitting a RANGE/LIST Partition

The following example will divide one of the partitions in the range-partitioned `sales` table into new partitions, maintaining the partitioning of the original table in the newly created partitions, and redistributing the contents of the partition between them.

```

CREATE TABLE sales
(
  dept_no   number,
  part_no   varchar2,

```

```

country  varchar2(20),
date     date,
amount   number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(date)
  SUBPARTITION BY LIST (country)
(
  PARTITION q1_2012 VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Apr-01')
  (
    SUBPARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    SUBPARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA'),
    SUBPARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN')
  )
);

```

The `sales` table contains partition `q1_2012` and three subpartitions `europe`, `americas`, and `asia`.

```

edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name, high_value FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name | high_value
-----+-----+-----+
SALES    | Q1_2012      | EUROPE        | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY'
SALES    | Q1_2012      | AMERICAS      | 'US', 'CANADA'
SALES    | Q1_2012      | ASIA          | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
(3 rows)

```

The following command splits the `q1_2012` partition into two partitions named `q1_2012_p1` and `q1_2012_p2`.

```

ALTER TABLE sales SPLIT PARTITION q1_2012
AT ('01-Mar-2012')
INTO
(
  PARTITION q1_2012_p1,
  PARTITION q1_2012_p2
);

```

A `SELECT` statement confirms that the same number of subpartitions is created in the newly created partitions `q1_2012_p1` and `q1_2012_p2` with system-generated names.

```

edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name, high_value FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2,3;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name | high_value
-----+-----+-----+
SALES    | Q1_2012_P1   | SYS0105       | 'US', 'CANADA'
SALES    | Q1_2012_P1   | SYS0106       | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY'
SALES    | Q1_2012_P1   | SYS0107       | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
SALES    | Q1_2012_P2   | SYS0108       | 'US', 'CANADA'
SALES    | Q1_2012_P2   | SYS0109       | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY'
SALES    | Q1_2012_P2   | SYS0110       | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
(6 rows)

```

### Example - Splitting a Partition with SUBPARTITIONS num...

The following example will divide one of the partitions in the list-partitioned `sales` table into new partitions,

maintaining the partitioning of the original table in the newly created partitions, and redistributing the contents of the partition between them. The **SUBPARTITIONS** clause lets you add a specified number of subpartitions. If no **SUBPARTITIONS** clause is specified then the new partitions inherit the default number of subpartitions. The **sales** table is created with the statement:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (part_no) SUBPARTITIONS 2
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
);
```

The table definition creates three partitions (**europe**, **asia**, and **americas**) each containing two subpartitions.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+
SALES   | AMERICAS      | SYS0105
SALES   | AMERICAS      | SYS0106
SALES   | ASIA          | SYS0103
SALES   | ASIA          | SYS0104
SALES   | EUROPE         | SYS0101
SALES   | EUROPE         | SYS0102
(6 rows)
```

The following command splits the **americas** partition into two partitions named **partition\_us** and **partition\_canada**.

```
ALTER TABLE sales SPLIT PARTITION americas VALUES ('US') INTO (PARTITION
partition_us SUBPARTITIONS 5, PARTITION partition_canada);
```

A **SELECT** statement confirms that the **americas** partition is split into **partition\_us** and **partition\_canada**. The **partition\_us** contains five subpartitions and **partition\_canada** contains default two subpartitions and assigned system-generated names.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2,3;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+
SALES   | ASIA          | SYS0103
SALES   | ASIA          | SYS0104
SALES   | EUROPE         | SYS0101
SALES   | EUROPE         | SYS0102
SALES   | PARTITION_CANADA | SYS0115
SALES   | PARTITION_CANADA | SYS0116
SALES   | PARTITION_US    | SYS0110
SALES   | PARTITION_US    | SYS0111
SALES   | PARTITION_US    | SYS0112
SALES   | PARTITION_US    | SYS0113
```

```
SALES | PARTITION_US | SYS0114
(11 rows)
```

## Example - Splitting a Partition with SUBPARTITIONS num...STORE IN

The following example will divide the `europe` partition of the list-partitioned `sales` table into two partitions, maintaining the partitioning of the original table in the newly created partitions, and redistributing the partition's contents. The `SUBPARTITIONS` clause lets you add a specified number of subpartitions. Use the following command to create the `sales` table:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (part_no) SUBPARTITIONS 4
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
);
```

The `sales` table contains three partitions (`europe`, `asia`, and `americas`) each containing four subpartitions with system-generated names assigned to them.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+
SALES | AMERICAS | SYS0112
SALES | AMERICAS | SYS0111
SALES | AMERICAS | SYS0109
SALES | AMERICAS | SYS0110
SALES | ASIA | SYS0107
SALES | ASIA | SYS0105
SALES | ASIA | SYS0106
SALES | ASIA | SYS0108
SALES | EUROPE | SYS0101
SALES | EUROPE | SYS0104
SALES | EUROPE | SYS0103
SALES | EUROPE | SYS0102
(12 rows)
```

The following command splits the `europe` partition into two partitions named `france` and `italy`.

```
ALTER TABLE sales SPLIT PARTITION europe VALUES ('FRANCE') INTO (PARTITION
france SUBPARTITIONS 10 STORE IN (ts1), PARTITION italy);
```

A `SELECT` statement confirms that the `europe` partition is split into two partitions. The partition `france` contains ten subpartitions that are stored in the tablespace `ts1` and partition `italy` contains four subpartitions as in the original partition `europe`.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name, tablespace_name
FROM ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2,3;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name | tablespace_name
-----+-----+-----+
SALES | AMERICAS | SYS0109 | 
SALES | AMERICAS | SYS0110 | 
SALES | AMERICAS | SYS0111 | 
SALES | AMERICAS | SYS0112 | 
SALES | ASIA | SYS0105 | 
SALES | ASIA | SYS0106 | 
SALES | ASIA | SYS0107 | 
SALES | ASIA | SYS0108 | 
SALES | FRANCE | SYS0116 | TS1
SALES | FRANCE | SYS0117 | TS1
SALES | FRANCE | SYS0118 | TS1
SALES | FRANCE | SYS0119 | TS1
SALES | FRANCE | SYS0120 | TS1
SALES | FRANCE | SYS0121 | TS1
SALES | FRANCE | SYS0122 | TS1
SALES | FRANCE | SYS0123 | TS1
SALES | FRANCE | SYS0124 | TS1
SALES | FRANCE | SYS0125 | TS1
SALES | ITALY | SYS0126 | 
SALES | ITALY | SYS0127 | 
SALES | ITALY | SYS0128 | 
SALES | ITALY | SYS0129 | 
(22 rows)
```

### 10.3.5 ALTER TABLE...SPLIT SUBPARTITION

Use the **ALTER TABLE... SPLIT SUBPARTITION** command to divide a single subpartition into two subpartitions, and redistribute the subpartition's contents. The command comes in two variations.

The first variation splits a range subpartition into two subpartitions:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> SPLIT SUBPARTITION <subpartition_name>
AT (range_part_value)
INTO
(
    SUBPARTITION <new_subpart1>
    [TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>],
    SUBPARTITION <new_subpart2>
    [TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
);
```

The second variation splits a list subpartition into two subpartitions:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> SPLIT SUBPARTITION <subpartition_name>
VALUES (<value>[, <value>]...)
INTO
(
```

```
SUBPARTITION <new_subpart1>
[TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>],
SUBPARTITION <new_subpart2>
[TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
);
```

## Description

The **ALTER TABLE...SPLIT SUBPARTITION** command adds a subpartition to an existing subpartitioned table. There is no upper limit to the number of defined subpartitions. When you execute an **ALTER TABLE...SPLIT SUBPARTITION** command, Advanced Server creates two new subpartitions, moving any rows that contain values that are constrained by the specified subpartition rules into **new\_subpart1**, and any remaining rows into **new\_subpart2**.

The new subpartition rules must reference the column specified in the rules that define the existing subpartition(s).

Include the **TABLESPACE** clause to specify a tablespace in which a new subpartition will reside. If you do not specify a tablespace, the subpartition will be created in the default tablespace.

If the table is indexed, the index will be created on the new subpartition.

To use the **ALTER TABLE... SPLIT SUBPARTITION** command you must be the table owner, or have superuser (or administrative) privileges.

## Parameters

**table\_name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the partitioned table.

**subpartition\_name**

The name of the subpartition that is being split.

**new\_subpart1**

The name of the first new subpartition to be created. Subpartition names must be unique amongst all partitions and subpartitions, and must follow the naming conventions for object identifiers.

**new\_subpart1** will receive the rows that meet the subpartitioning constraints specified in the **ALTER TABLE... SPLIT SUBPARTITION** command.

**new\_subpart2**

The name of the second new subpartition to be created. Subpartition names must be unique amongst all partitions and subpartitions, and must follow the naming conventions for object identifiers.

**new\_subpart2** will receive the rows are not directed to **new\_subpart1** by the subpartitioning constraints specified in the **ALTER TABLE... SPLIT SUBPARTITION** command.

**(value[, value]...)**

Use **value** to specify a quoted literal value (or comma-delimited list of literal values) by which table entries will be grouped into partitions. Each partitioning rule must specify at least one value, but there is no limit placed on the number of values specified within a rule. **value** may also be **NULL**, **DEFAULT** (if specifying a **LIST** subpartition), or **MAXVALUE** (if specifying a **RANGE** subpartition).

For information about creating a **DEFAULT** or **MAXVALUE** partition, see [Handling Stray Values in a LIST or RANGE Partitioned Table](#).

**tablespace\_name**

The name of the tablespace in which the partition or subpartition resides.

### 10.3.5.1 Example - Splitting a LIST Subpartition

The following example splits a list subpartition, redistributing the subpartition's contents between two new subpartitions. The sample table (`sales`) was created with the command:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(date)
    SUBPARTITION BY LIST (country)
(
    PARTITION first_half_2012 VALUES LESS THAN('01-JUL-2012')
    (
        SUBPARTITION p1_europe VALUES ('ITALY', 'FRANCE'),
        SUBPARTITION p1_americas VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
    ),
    PARTITION second_half_2012 VALUES LESS THAN('01-JAN-2013')
    (
        SUBPARTITION p2_europe VALUES ('ITALY', 'FRANCE'),
        SUBPARTITION p2_americas VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
    )
);
```

The `sales` table has two partitions, named `first_half_2012`, and `second_half_2012`. Each partition has two range-defined subpartitions that distribute the partition's contents into subpartitions based on the value of the `country` column.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, subpartition_name, high_value FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS;
partition_name | subpartition_name | high_value
-----+-----+
SECOND_HALF_2012 | P2_AMERICAS | 'US', 'CANADA'
SECOND_HALF_2012 | P2_EUROPE | 'ITALY', 'FRANCE'
FIRST_HALF_2012 | P1_AMERICAS | 'US', 'CANADA'
FIRST_HALF_2012 | P1_EUROPE | 'ITALY', 'FRANCE'
(4 rows)
```

The following command adds rows to each subpartition.

```
INSERT INTO sales VALUES
(10, '4519b', 'FRANCE', '17-Jan-2012', '45000'),
(40, '9519b', 'US', '12-Apr-2012', '145000'),
(40, '4577b', 'US', '11-Nov-2012', '25000'),
(30, '7588b', 'CANADA', '14-Dec-2012', '50000'),
```

```
(30, '9519b', 'CANADA', '01-Feb-2012', '75000'),
(30, '4519b', 'CANADA', '08-Apr-2012', '120000'),
(40, '3788a', 'US', '12-May-2012', '4950'),
(10, '9519b', 'ITALY', '07-Jul-2012', '15000'),
(10, '9519a', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(10, '9519b', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(40, '4788a', 'US', '23-Sept-2012', '4950'),
(40, '4788b', 'US', '09-Oct-2012', '15000');
```

A `SELECT` statement confirms that the rows are correctly distributed amongst the subpartitions.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
   tableoid   | dept_no | part_no | country |      date       | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_p1_americas| 40 | 9519b | US    | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_p1_americas| 30 | 9519b | CANADA | 01-FEB-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_p1_americas| 30 | 4519b | CANADA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_p1_americas| 40 | 3788a | US    | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_p1_europe  | 10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_p2_americas| 40 | 4577b | US    | 11-NOV-12 00:00:00 | 25000
sales_p2_americas| 30 | 7588b | CANADA | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_p2_americas| 40 | 4788a | US    | 23-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_p2_americas| 40 | 4788b | US    | 09-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_p2_europe  | 10 | 9519b | ITALY  | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_p2_europe  | 10 | 9519a | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_p2_europe  | 10 | 9519b | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
(12 rows)
```

The following command splits the `p2_americas` subpartition into two new subpartitions, and redistributes the contents.

```
ALTER TABLE sales SPLIT SUBPARTITION p2_americas
VALUES ('US')
INTO
(
  SUBPARTITION p2_us,
  SUBPARTITION p2_canada
);
```

After invoking the command, the `p2_americas` subpartition has been deleted; in its place, the server has created two new subpartitions (`p2_us` and `p2_canada`).

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, subpartition_name, high_value FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS;
   partition_name   | subpartition_name | high_value
-----+-----+-----+
FIRST_HALF_2012 | P1_EUROPE     | 'ITALY', 'FRANCE'
FIRST_HALF_2012 | P1_AMERICAS   | 'US', 'CANADA'
SECOND_HALF_2012 | P2_EUROPE     | 'ITALY', 'FRANCE'
SECOND_HALF_2012 | P2_US          | 'US'
SECOND_HALF_2012 | P2_CANADA     | 'CANADA'
(5 rows)
```

Querying the `sales` table demonstrates that the content of the `p2_americas` subpartition has been redistributed.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
```

tableoid	dept_no	part_no	country	date	amount
sales_p1_americas	40	9519b	US	12-APR-12 00:00:00	145000
sales_p1_americas	30	9519b	CANADA	01-FEB-12 00:00:00	75000
sales_p1_americas	30	4519b	CANADA	08-APR-12 00:00:00	120000
sales_p1_americas	40	3788a	US	12-MAY-12 00:00:00	4950
sales_p1_europe	10	4519b	FRANCE	17-JAN-12 00:00:00	45000
sales_p2_canada	30	7588b	CANADA	14-DEC-12 00:00:00	50000
sales_p2_europ	10	9519b	ITALY	07-JUL-12 00:00:00	15000
sales_p2_europe	10	9519a	FRANCE	18-AUG-12 00:00:00	650000
sales_p2_europe	10	9519b	FRANCE	18-AUG-12 00:00:00	650000
sales_p2_us	40	4577b	US	11-NOV-12 00:00:00	25000
sales_p2_us	40	4788a	US	23-SEP-12 00:00:00	4950
sales_p2_us	40	4788b	US	09-OCT-12 00:00:00	15000

(12 rows)

### 10.3.5.2 Example - Splitting a RANGE Subpartition

The following example splits a range subpartition, redistributing the subpartition's contents between two new subpartitions. The sample table (`sales`) was created with the command:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country)
    SUBPARTITION BY RANGE(date)
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY')
    (
        SUBPARTITION europe_2011
            VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Jan-01'),
        SUBPARTITION europe_2012
            VALUES LESS THAN('2013-Jan-01')
    ),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN')
    (
        SUBPARTITION asia_2011
            VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Jan-01'),
        SUBPARTITION asia_2012
            VALUES LESS THAN('2013-Jan-01')
    ),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
    (
        SUBPARTITION americas_2011
            VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Jan-01'),
```

```
SUBPARTITION americas_2012
VALUES LESS THAN('2013-Jan-01')
)
);
```

The `sales` table has three partitions (`europe`, `asia`, and `americas`). Each partition has two range-defined subpartitions that sort the partitions contents into subpartitions by the value of the `date` column.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, subpartition_name, high_value FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS;
partition_name | subpartition_name |    high_value
-----+-----+-----
EUROPE      | EUROPE_2011     | '01-JAN-12 00:00:00'
EUROPE      | EUROPE_2012     | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
ASIA        | ASIA_2011       | '01-JAN-12 00:00:00'
ASIA        | ASIA_2012       | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
AMERICAS    | AMERICAS_2011   | '01-JAN-12 00:00:00'
AMERICAS    | AMERICAS_2012   | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
(6 rows)
```

The following command adds rows to each subpartition.

```
INSERT INTO sales VALUES
(10, '4519b', 'FRANCE', '17-Jan-2012', '45000'),
(20, '3788a', 'INDIA', '01-Mar-2012', '75000'),
(40, '9519b', 'US', '12-Apr-2012', '145000'),
(20, '3788a', 'PAKISTAN', '04-Jun-2012', '37500'),
(40, '4577b', 'US', '11-Nov-2012', '25000'),
(30, '7588b', 'CANADA', '14-Dec-2012', '50000'),
(30, '9519b', 'CANADA', '01-Feb-2012', '75000'),
(30, '4519b', 'CANADA', '08-Apr-2012', '120000'),
(40, '3788a', 'US', '12-May-2012', '4950'),
(10, '9519b', 'ITALY', '07-Jul-2012', '15000'),
(10, '9519a', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(10, '9519b', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(20, '3788b', 'INDIA', '21-Sept-2012', '5090'),
(40, '4788a', 'US', '23-Sept-2012', '4950'),
(40, '4788b', 'US', '09-Oct-2012', '15000'),
(20, '4519a', 'INDIA', '18-Oct-2012', '650000'),
(20, '4519b', 'INDIA', '2-Dec-2012', '5090');
```

A `SELECT` statement confirms that the rows are distributed amongst the subpartitions.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
tableoid |dept_no|part_no| country |    date     | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_americas_2012| 40 | 9519b | US     | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_americas_2012| 40 | 4577b | US     | 11-NOV-12 00:00:00 | 25000
sales_americas_2012| 30 | 7588b | CANADA | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_americas_2012| 30 | 9519b | CANADA | 01-FEB-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_americas_2012| 30 | 4519b | CANADA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_americas_2012| 40 | 3788a | US     | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_americas_2012| 40 | 4788a | US     | 23-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_americas_2012| 40 | 4788b | US     | 09-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe_2012  | 10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_europe_2012  | 10 | 9519b | ITALY   | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
```

```

sales_europe_2012 | 10 | 9519a | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_europe_2012 | 10 | 9519b | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia_2012  | 20 | 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_asia_2012  | 20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN| 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_asia_2012  | 20 | 3788b | INDIA  | 21-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_asia_2012  | 20 | 4519a | INDIA  | 18-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia_2012  | 20 | 4519b | INDIA  | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
(17 rows)

```

The following command splits the `americas_2012` subpartition into two new subpartitions, and redistributes the contents.

```

ALTER TABLE sales
SPLIT SUBPARTITION americas_2012
AT('2012-Jun-01')
INTO
(
    SUBPARTITION americas_p1_2012,
    SUBPARTITION americas_p2_2012
);

```

After invoking the command, the `americas_2012` subpartition has been deleted; in its place, the server has created two new subpartitions (`americas_p1_2012` and `americas_p2_2012`).

```

edb=# SELECT partition_name, subpartition_name, high_value FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS;
partition_name | subpartition_name |   high_value
-----+-----+-----
EUROPE      | EUROPE_2011     | '01-JAN-12 00:00:00'
EUROPE      | EUROPE_2012     | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
ASIA        | ASIA_2011       | '01-JAN-12 00:00:00'
ASIA        | ASIA_2012       | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
AMERICAS    | AMERICAS_2011    | '01-JAN-12 00:00:00'
AMERICAS    | AMERICAS_P1_2012 | '01-JUN-12 00:00:00'
AMERICAS    | AMERICAS_P2_2012 | '01-JAN-13 00:00:00'
(7 rows)

```

Querying the `sales` table demonstrates that the subpartition's contents are redistributed.

```

edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
tableoid      |dept_no|part_no|country |   date     | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_americas_p1_2012| 40 | 9519b | US     | 12-APR-12 00:00:00|145000
sales_americas_p1_2012| 30 | 9519b | CANADA | 01-FEB-12 00:00:00|75000
sales_americas_p1_2012| 30 | 4519b | CANADA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00|120000
sales_americas_p1_2012| 40 | 3788a | US     | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00| 4950
sales_americas_p2_2012| 40 | 4577b | US     | 11-NOV-12 00:00:00|25000
sales_americas_p2_2012| 30 | 7588b | CANADA | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00|50000
sales_americas_p2_2012| 40 | 4788a | US     | 23-SEP-12 00:00:00| 4950
sales_americas_p2_2012| 40 | 4788b | US     | 09-OCT-12 00:00:00|15000
sales_europe_2012    | 10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00|45000
sales_europe_2012    | 10 | 9519b | ITALY   | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00|15000
sales_europe_2012    | 10 | 9519a | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00|650000
sales_europe_2012    | 10 | 9519b | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00|650000
sales_asia_2012     | 20 | 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00|75000
sales_asia_2012     | 20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN|04-JUN-12 00:00:00 |37500

```

sales_asia_2012	20   3788b   INDIA   21-SEP-12 00:00:00 5090			
sales_asia_2012	20   4519a   INDIA   18-OCT-12 00:00:00 650000			
sales_asia_2012	20   4519b   INDIA   02-DEC-12 00:00:00  5090			
(17 rows)				

## 10.3.6 ALTER TABLE...EXCHANGE PARTITION

The `ALTER TABLE...EXCHANGE PARTITION` command swaps an existing table with a partition. If you plan to add a large quantity of data to a partitioned table, you can use the `ALTER TABLE... EXCHANGE PARTITION` command to implement a bulk load. You can also use the `ALTER TABLE... EXCHANGE PARTITION` command to remove old or unneeded data for storage.

The command syntax is available in two forms.

The first form swaps a table for a partition:

```
ALTER TABLE <target_table>
EXCHANGE PARTITION <target_partition>
WITH TABLE <source_table>
[INCLUDING | EXCLUDING) INDEXES]
[(WITH | WITHOUT) VALIDATION];
```

The second form swaps a table for a subpartition:

```
ALTER TABLE <target_table>
EXCHANGE SUBPARTITION <target_subpartition>
WITH TABLE <source_table>
[INCLUDING | EXCLUDING) INDEXES]
[(WITH | WITHOUT) VALIDATION];
```

### Description

When the `ALTER TABLE... EXCHANGE PARTITION` command completes, the data originally located in the `target_partition` will be located in the `source_table`, and the data originally located in the `source_table` will be located in the `target_partition`.

The `ALTER TABLE... EXCHANGE PARTITION` command can exchange partitions in a `LIST`, `RANGE` or `HASH` partitioned table. The structure of the `source_table` must match the structure of the `target_table` (both tables must have matching columns and data types), and the data contained within the table must adhere to the partitioning constraints.

If the `INCLUDING INDEXES` clause is specified with `EXCHANGE PARTITION`, then matching indexes in the `target_partition` and `source_table` are swapped. Indexes in the `target_partition` with no match in the `source_table` are rebuilt and vice versa (that is, indexes in the `source_table` with no match in the `target_partition` are also rebuilt).

If the `EXCLUDING INDEXES` clause is specified with `EXCHANGE PARTITION`, then matching indexes in the `target_partition` and `source_table` are swapped, but the `target_partition` indexes with no match in the `source_table` are marked as invalid and vice versa (that is, indexes in the `source_table` with no match in the `target_partition` are also marked as invalid).

The previously used *matching index* term refers to indexes that have the same attributes such as the collation order, ascending or descending direction, ordering of nulls first or nulls last, and so forth as determined by the `CREATE INDEX` command.

If both `INCLUDING INDEXES` and `EXCLUDING INDEXES` are omitted, then the default action is the `EXCLUDING INDEXES` behavior.

The same behavior as previously described applies for the `target_subpartition` used with the `EXCHANGE SUBPARTITION` clause.

You must own a table to invoke `ALTER TABLE... EXCHANGE PARTITION` or `ALTER TABLE... EXCHANGE SUBPARTITION` against that table.

#### Parameters:

`target_table`

| The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table in which the partition or subpartition resides.

`target_partition`

| The name of the partition to be replaced.

`target_subpartition`

| The name of the subpartition to be replaced.

`source_table`

| The name of the table that will replace the `target_partition` or `target_subpartition`.

### 10.3.6.1 Example - Exchanging a Table for a Partition

The example that follows demonstrates swapping a table for a partition (`americas`) of the `sales` table. You can create the `sales` table with the following command:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country)
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
);
```

Use the following command to add sample data to the `sales` table.

```
INSERT INTO sales VALUES
(40, '9519b', 'US', '12-Apr-2012', '145000'),
(10, '4519b', 'FRANCE', '17-Jan-2012', '45000'),
(20, '3788a', 'INDIA', '01-Mar-2012', '75000'),
```

```
(20, '3788a', 'PAKISTAN', '04-Jun-2012', '37500'),
(10, '9519b', 'ITALY', '07-Jul-2012', '15000'),
(10, '9519a', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(10, '9519b', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(20, '3788b', 'INDIA', '21-Sept-2012', '5090'),
(20, '4519a', 'INDIA', '18-Oct-2012', '650000'),
(20, '4519b', 'INDIA', '2-Dec-2012', '5090');
```

Querying the `sales` table shows that only one row resides in the `americas` partition.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
   tableoid | dept_no | part_no | country |      date      | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_americas |    40 | 9519b | US     | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_europe   |    10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_europe   |    10 | 9519b | ITALY   | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe   |    10 | 9519a | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_europe   |    10 | 9519b | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia     |    20 | 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_asia     |    20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN | 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_asia     |    20 | 3788b | INDIA  | 21-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_asia     |    20 | 4519a | INDIA  | 18-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia     |    20 | 4519b | INDIA  | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
(10 rows)
```

The following command creates a table (`n_america`) that matches the definition of the `sales` table.

```
CREATE TABLE n_america
(
  dept_no  number,
  part_no  varchar2,
  country   varchar2(20),
  date     date,
  amount   number
);
```

The following command adds data to the `n_america` table. The data conforms to the partitioning rules of the `americas` partition.

```
INSERT INTO n_america VALUES
(40, '9519b', 'US', '12-Apr-2012', '145000'),
(40, '4577b', 'US', '11-Nov-2012', '25000'),
(30, '7588b', 'CANADA', '14-Dec-2012', '50000'),
(30, '9519b', 'CANADA', '01-Feb-2012', '75000'),
(30, '4519b', 'CANADA', '08-Apr-2012', '120000'),
(40, '3788a', 'US', '12-May-2012', '4950'),
(40, '4788a', 'US', '23-Sept-2012', '4950'),
(40, '4788b', 'US', '09-Oct-2012', '15000');
```

The following command swaps the table into the partitioned table.

```
ALTER TABLE sales
EXCHANGE PARTITION americas
WITH TABLE n_america;
```

Querying the `sales` table shows that the contents of the `n_america` table has been exchanged for the content of

the `americas` partition.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
tableoid | dept_no | part_no | country | date      | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_americas | 40 | 9519b | US     | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_americas | 40 | 4577b | US     | 11-NOV-12 00:00:00 | 25000
sales_americas | 30 | 7588b | CANADA | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_americas | 30 | 9519b | CANADA | 01-FEB-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_americas | 30 | 4519b | CANADA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_americas | 40 | 3788a | US     | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_americas | 40 | 4788a | US     | 23-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_americas | 40 | 4788b | US     | 09-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe   | 10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_europe   | 10 | 9519b | ITALY   | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe   | 10 | 9519a | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_europe   | 10 | 9519b | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN | 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788b | INDIA  | 21-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_asia    | 20 | 4519a | INDIA  | 18-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia    | 20 | 4519b | INDIA  | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
(17 rows)
```

Querying the `n_americas` table shows that the row that was previously stored in the `americas` partition has been moved to the `n_americas` table.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM n_americas;
tableoid | dept_no | part_no | country | date      | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
n_americas | 40 | 9519b | US     | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
(1 row)
```

### 10.3.7 ALTER TABLE...MOVE PARTITION

Use the `ALTER TABLE... MOVE PARTITION` command to move a partition to a different tablespace. The command takes two forms.

The first form moves a partition to a new tablespace:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name>
MOVE PARTITION <partition_name>
TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>;
```

The second form moves a subpartition to a new tablespace:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name>
MOVE SUBPARTITION <subpartition_name>
TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>;
```

#### Description

The `ALTER TABLE...MOVE PARTITION` command moves a partition from its current tablespace to a different tablespace. The `ALTER TABLE... MOVE PARTITION` command can move partitions of a `LIST`, `RANGE` or `HASH` partitioned table.

The same behavior as previously described applies for the `subpartition_name` used with the `MOVE SUBPARTITION` clause.

You must own the table to invoke `ALTER TABLE... MOVE PARTITION` or `ALTER TABLE... MOVE SUBPARTITION`.

## Parameters

`table_name`

| The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table in which the partition or subpartition resides.

`partition_name`

| The name of the partition to be moved.

`subpartition_name`

| The name of the subpartition to be moved.

`tablespace_name`

| The name of the tablespace to which the partition or subpartition will be moved.

### 10.3.7.1 Example - Moving a Partition to a Different Tablespace

The following example moves a partition of the `sales` table from one tablespace to another. First, create the `sales` table with the command:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(date)
(
    PARTITION q1_2012 VALUES LESS THAN ('2012-Apr-01'),
    PARTITION q2_2012 VALUES LESS THAN ('2012-Jul-01'),
    PARTITION q3_2012 VALUES LESS THAN ('2012-Oct-01'),
    PARTITION q4_2012 VALUES LESS THAN ('2013-Jan-01') TABLESPACE ts_1,
    PARTITION q1_2013 VALUES LESS THAN ('2013-Mar-01') TABLESPACE ts_2
);
```

Querying the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view confirms that the partitions reside on the expected servers and tablespaces.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, tablespace_name FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
```

```
partition_name | tablespace_name
-----+-----
Q1_2012      |
Q2_2012      |
Q3_2012      |
Q4_2012      | TS_1
Q1_2013      | TS_2
(5 rows)
```

After preparing the target tablespace, invoke the `ALTER TABLE... MOVE PARTITION` command to move the `q1_2013` partition from a tablespace named `ts_2` to a tablespace named `ts_3`.

```
ALTER TABLE sales MOVE PARTITION q1_2013 TABLESPACE ts_3;
```

Querying the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view shows that the move was successful.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, tablespace_name FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | tablespace_name
-----+-----
Q1_2012      |
Q2_2012      |
Q3_2012      |
Q4_2012      | TS_1
Q1_2013      | TS_3
(5 rows)
```

### 10.3.8 ALTER TABLE...RENAME PARTITION

Use the `ALTER TABLE... RENAME PARTITION` command to rename a table partition. The syntax takes two forms.

The first form renames a partition:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name>
RENAME PARTITION <partition_name>
TO <new_name>;
```

The second form renames a subpartition:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name>
RENAME SUBPARTITION <subpartition_name>
TO <new_name>;
```

#### Description

The `ALTER TABLE... RENAME PARTITION` command renames a partition.

The same behavior as previously described applies for the `subpartition_name` used with the `RENAME SUBPARTITION` clause.

You must own the specified table to invoke `ALTER TABLE... RENAME PARTITION` or `ALTER TABLE... RENAME SUBPARTITION`.

**Parameters****table\_name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table in which the partition or subpartition resides.

**partition\_name**

The name of the partition to be renamed.

**subpartition\_name**

The name of the subpartition to be renamed.

**new\_name**

The new name of the partition or subpartition.

**10.3.8.1 Example - Renaming a Partition**

The following command creates a list-partitioned table named **sales**:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country)
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
);
```

Query the **ALL\_TAB\_PARTITIONS** view to display the partition names.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | high_value
-----+-----
EUROPE        | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY'
ASIA          | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
AMERICAS      | 'US', 'CANADA'
(3 rows)
```

The following command renames the **americas** partition to **n\_america**.

```
ALTER TABLE sales
RENAME PARTITION americas TO n_america;
```

Querying the **ALL\_TAB\_PARTITIONS** view demonstrates that the partition has been successfully renamed.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | high_value
-----+-----
EUROPE      | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY'
ASIA        | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
N_AMERICA   | 'US', 'CANADA'
(3 rows)
```

## 10.3.9 ALTER TABLE...SET INTERVAL

Use the `ALTER TABLE... SET INTERVAL` command to convert an existing range-partitioned table to an interval range partitioned table. The database automatically creates a new partition of a specified range or interval for the partitioned table when `INTERVAL` is set. The syntax is:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> SET INTERVAL (<constant> | <expression>);
```

To disable an interval range partitioned table and convert it to a range-partitioned table, the syntax is:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> SET INTERVAL ();
```

### Parameters

`table_name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the range-partitioned table.

`constant | expression`

Specifies a `NUMERIC`, `DATE`, or `TIME` value.

### Description

The `ALTER TABLE... SET INTERVAL` command can be used to convert the range-partitioned table to use interval range partitioning. A new partition of a specified interval is created and data can be inserted into the new partition.

The `SET INTERVAL ()` command can be used to disable interval range partitioning. The database converts an interval range partitioned table to range-partitioned and sets the boundaries of the interval range partitions to the boundaries for the range partitions.

## 10.3.9.1 Example - Setting an Interval Range Partition

The example that follows sets an interval range partition of the `sales` table from range partitioning to start using monthly interval range partitioning. Use the following command to create the `sales` table:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    prod_id      int,
```

```

prod_quantity    int,
sold_month      date
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(sold_month)
(
  PARTITION p1
  VALUES LESS THAN('15-JAN-2019'),
  PARTITION p2
  VALUES LESS THAN('15-FEB-2019')
);

```

To set the interval range partitioning from the `sales` table, invoke the following command:

```
ALTER TABLE sales SET INTERVAL (NUMTOYMINTERVAL(1, 'MONTH'));
```

Query the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view before a database creates an interval range partition.

```

edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value from ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name |   high_value
-----+-----
P1      | '15-JAN-19 00:00:00'
P2      | '15-FEB-19 00:00:00'
(2 rows)

```

Now, add data to the `sales` table that exceeds the high value of a range partition.

```

edb=# INSERT INTO sales VALUES (1,100,'05-APR-2019');
INSERT 0 1

```

Then, query the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view again after the `INSERT` statement. The interval range partition is successfully created and data is inserted. A system-generated name of the interval range partition is created that varies for each session.

```

edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value from ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name |   high_value
-----+-----
P1      | '15-JAN-19 00:00:00'
P2      | '15-FEB-19 00:00:00'
SYS916340103 | '15-APR-19 00:00:00'
(3 rows)

```

## 10.3.10 ALTER TABLE...SET [ PARTITIONING ] AUTOMATIC

Use the `ALTER TABLE... SET [ PARTITIONING ] AUTOMATIC` command to convert an existing list partitioned table to automatic list partitioning. The database automatically creates a partition based on a new value inserted into a table when `AUTOMATIC` is set. The syntax is:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> SET [ PARTITIONING ] AUTOMATIC;
```

To disable `AUTOMATIC LIST PARTITIONING` and convert to regular `LIST` partition, the syntax is:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> SET [ PARTITIONING ] MANUAL;
```

## Parameters

`table_name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the list-partitioned table.

## Description

The `ALTER TABLE... SET [ PARTITIONING ] AUTOMATIC` command can be used to convert the regular list partitioned table to use automatic partitioning. A partition is created and data can be inserted into the new partition.

The `ALTER TABLE... SET [ PARTITIONING ] MANUAL` command can be used to disable the automatic list partitioning; the database converts an automatic list partitioned table to a regular list partitioned table.

### 10.3.10.1 Example - Setting an AUTOMATIC List Partition

The example that follows modifies a table `sales` to use automatic list partition instead of regular list partitioning. Use the following command to create a `sales` table:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    sales_state varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(sales_state)
(
    PARTITION P_KAN VALUES('KANSAS'),
    PARTITION P_TEX VALUES('TEXAS')
);
```

To implement automatic list partitioning on the `sales` table, invoke the following command:

```
ALTER TABLE sales SET AUTOMATIC;
```

Query the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view to see that an existing partition is successfully created.

```
edb=# select table_name, partition_name, high_value from all_tab_partitions;
table_name | partition_name | high_value
-----+-----+-----
SALES    | P_KAN        | 'KANSAS'
SALES    | P_TEX        | 'TEXAS'
(2 rows)
```

Now, insert data into the `sales` table to create a new partition and add the new value.

```
edb=# INSERT INTO sales VALUES (1, 'VIR', 'VIRGINIA');
INSERT 0 1
```

Then, query the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view again after the insert. The automatic list partition is successfully created and data is inserted. A system-generated name of the partition is created that varies for each session.

```
edb=# select table_name, partition_name, high_value from all_tab_partitions;
table_name | partition_name | high_value
-----+-----+
SALES    | P_KAN        | 'KANSAS'
SALES    | P_TEX        | 'TEXAS'
SALES    | SYS106900103 | 'VIRGINIA'
(3 rows)
```

### 10.3.11 ALTER TABLE...SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE

Use the `ALTER TABLE... SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE` command to update the subpartition template for a table. The syntax is:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE <num>;
```

To reset the subpartitions number to default using the subpartition template, the syntax is:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE ();
```

#### Parameters

`table_name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the partitioned table.

`num`

The number of subpartitions to be added for a partition.

#### Description

The `ALTER TABLE... SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE` command can be used to update the subpartition template in the table. If you are specifying a subpartition descriptor for a partition then a subpartition descriptor is used instead of a subpartition template. The subpartition template can be used whenever a subpartition descriptor is not specified for a partition. If either subpartition descriptor or subpartition template is not specified, then by default a single subpartition is created.

#### Note

The partitions added to a table after invoking `ALTER TABLE... SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE` command will use the new `SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE`.

The `ALTER TABLE... SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE ()` command can be used to reset the subpartitions number to default `1`.

### 10.3.11.1 Example - Setting a SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE

The following example creates a table `sales` that is range partitioned by `date` and hash subpartitioned by `country`. Use the following command to create the `sales` table:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE (date) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (country) SUBPARTITIONS 2
(
    PARTITION q1_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Apr-01'),
    PARTITION q2_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Jul-01'),
    PARTITION q3_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Oct-01'),
    PARTITION q4_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN('2013-Jan-01')
);
```

The table definition creates four partitions (`q1_2012`, `q2_2012`, `q3_2012`, and `q4_2012`), each partition consisting of two subpartitions with system-generated names.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+
SALES   | Q1_2012    | SYS0101
SALES   | Q1_2012    | SYS0102
SALES   | Q2_2012    | SYS0103
SALES   | Q2_2012    | SYS0104
SALES   | Q3_2012    | SYS0105
SALES   | Q3_2012    | SYS0106
SALES   | Q4_2012    | SYS0107
SALES   | Q4_2012    | SYS0108
(8 rows)
```

To set the subpartition template on the `sales` table, invoke the following command:

```
ALTER TABLE sales SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE 8;
```

The `sales` table is modified with the subpartition template set to eight. Now, if you try to add a new partition `q1_2013`, a new partition will be created consisting of eight subpartitions as described in the subpartition template.

```
ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION q1_2013 VALUES LESS THAN ('2013-Apr-01');
```

Query the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view, the `q1_2013` partition is successfully added comprising of eight subpartitions with system-generated names assigned to them.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' and partition_name =
'Q1_2013' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
```

SALES	Q1_2013	SYS0113
SALES	Q1_2013	SYS0114
SALES	Q1_2013	SYS0115
SALES	Q1_2013	SYS0116
SALES	Q1_2013	SYS0117
SALES	Q1_2013	SYS0118
SALES	Q1_2013	SYS0119
SALES	Q1_2013	SYS0120

(8 rows)

## Example - Resetting a SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE

The following example creates a list-partitioned table `sales` that is list partitioned by `country` and has subpartitioned by `part_no`. Use the following command to create the `sales` table:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST (country) SUBPARTITION BY HASH (part_no) SUBPARTITIONS 3
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
);
```

The table contains three partitions (`AMERICAS`, `ASIA`, and `EUROPE`), each partition consists of three subpartitions with system-generated names.

edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' ORDER BY 1,2;		
table_name	partition_name	subpartition_name
SALES	AMERICAS	SYS0109
SALES	AMERICAS	SYS0107
SALES	AMERICAS	SYS0108
SALES	ASIA	SYS0105
SALES	ASIA	SYS0104
SALES	ASIA	SYS0106
SALES	EUROPE	SYS0101
SALES	EUROPE	SYS0103
SALES	EUROPE	SYS0102

(9 rows)

The following command resets the subpartition template on the `sales` table.

```
ALTER TABLE sales SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE ();
```

The `sales` table is modified with the subpartition template reset to default `1`. Now, try to add a new partition

`east_asia` using the following command:

```
ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION east_asia VALUES ('CHINA', 'KOREA');
```

Query the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view, a new partition `east_asia` will be created consisting of one subpartition with a system-generated name assigned to them.

```
edb=# SELECT table_name, partition_name, subpartition_name FROM
ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS WHERE table_name = 'SALES' and partition_name =
'EAST_ASIA' ORDER BY 1,2;
table_name | partition_name | subpartition_name
-----+-----+
SALES    | EAST_ASIA    | SYS0113
(1 row)
```

## 10.3.12 DROP TABLE

Use the PostgreSQL `DROP TABLE` command to remove a partitioned table definition, it's partitions and subpartitions, and delete the table contents. The syntax is:

```
DROP TABLE <table_name>
```

### Parameters

`table_name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the partitioned table.

### Description

The `DROP TABLE` command removes an entire table, and the data that resides in that table. When you delete a table, any partitions or subpartitions (of that table) are deleted as well.

To use the `DROP TABLE` command, you must be the owner of the partitioning root, a member of a group that owns the table, the schema owner, or a database superuser.

### Example

To delete a table, connect to the controller node (the host of the partitioning root), and invoke the `DROP TABLE` command. For example, to delete the `sales` table, invoke the following command:

```
DROP TABLE sales;
```

The server will confirm that the table has been dropped.

```
edb=# drop table sales;
DROP TABLE
edb=#
```

For more information about the `DROP TABLE` command, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-droppable.html>

## 10.3.13 ALTER TABLE...DROP PARTITION

Use the **ALTER TABLE... DROP PARTITION** command to delete a partition definition, and the data stored in that partition. The syntax is:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> DROP PARTITION <partition_name>;
```

### Parameters

**table\_name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the partitioned table.

**partition\_name**

The name of the partition to be deleted.

### Description

The **ALTER TABLE... DROP PARTITION** command deletes a partition and any data stored on that partition. The **ALTER TABLE... DROP PARTITION** command can drop partitions of a **LIST** or **RANGE** partitioned table; please note that this command does not work on a **HASH** partitioned table. When you delete a partition, any subpartitions (of that partition) are deleted as well.

To use the **DROP PARTITION** clause, you must be the owner of the partitioning root, a member of a group that owns the table, or have database superuser or administrative privileges.

## 10.3.13.1 Example - Deleting a Partition

The example that follows deletes a partition of the **sales** table. Use the following command to create the **sales** table:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country)
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
);
```

Querying the **ALL\_TAB\_PARTITIONS** view displays the partition names.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
```

```
partition_name | high_value
-----+-----
EUROPE      | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY'
ASIA        | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
AMERICAS    | 'US', 'CANADA'
(3 rows)
```

To delete the americas partition from the `sales` table, invoke the following command:

```
ALTER TABLE sales DROP PARTITION americas;
```

Querying the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view demonstrates that the partition has been successfully deleted.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | high_value
-----+-----
EUROPE      | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY'
ASIA        | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
(2 rows)
```

### 10.3.14 ALTER TABLE...DROP SUBPARTITION

Use the `ALTER TABLE... DROP SUBPARTITION` command to drop a subpartition definition, and the data stored in that subpartition. The syntax is:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> DROP SUBPARTITION <subpartition_name>;
```

#### Parameters

`table_name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the partitioned table.

`subpartition_name`

The name of the subpartition to be deleted.

#### Description

The `ALTER TABLE... DROP SUBPARTITION` command deletes a subpartition, and the data stored in that subpartition. To use the `DROP SUBPARTITION` clause, you must be the owner of the partitioning root, a member of a group that owns the table, or have superuser or administrative privileges.

#### 10.3.14.1 Example - Deleting a Subpartition

The example that follows deletes a subpartition of the `sales` table. Use the following command to create the `sales` table:

```

CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(date)
SUBPARTITION BY LIST (country)
(
    PARTITION first_half_2012 VALUES LESS THAN('01-JUL-2012')
    (
        SUBPARTITION europe VALUES ('ITALY', 'FRANCE'),
        SUBPARTITION americas VALUES ('CANADA', 'US'),
        SUBPARTITION asia VALUES ('PAKISTAN', 'INDIA')
    ),
    PARTITION second_half_2012 VALUES LESS THAN('01-JAN-2013')
);

```

Querying the `ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS` view displays the subpartition names.

```

edb=# SELECT subpartition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS;
subpartition_name | high_value
-----+-----
EUROPE      | 'ITALY', 'FRANCE'
AMERICAS     | 'CANADA', 'US'
ASIA        | 'PAKISTAN', 'INDIA'
SYS0101     | DEFAULT
(4 rows)

```

To delete the `americas` subpartition from the `sales` table, invoke the following command:

```
ALTER TABLE sales DROP SUBPARTITION americas;
```

Querying the `ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS` view demonstrates that the subpartition has been successfully deleted.

```

edb=# SELECT subpartition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS;
subpartition_name | high_value
-----+-----
EUROPE      | 'ITALY', 'FRANCE'
ASIA        | 'PAKISTAN', 'INDIA'
SYS0101     | DEFAULT
(3 rows)

```

## 10.3.15 TRUNCATE TABLE

Use the `TRUNCATE TABLE` command to remove the contents of a table, while preserving the table definition. When you truncate a table, any partitions or subpartitions of that table are also truncated. The syntax is:

TRUNCATE TABLE <table\_name>

## Description

The **TRUNCATE TABLE** command removes an entire table, and the data that resides in that table. When you delete a table, any partitions or subpartitions (of that table) are deleted as well.

To use the **TRUNCATE TABLE** command, you must be the owner of the partitioning root, a member of a group that owns the table, the schema owner, or a database superuser.

## Parameters

**table\_name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the partitioned table.

### 10.3.15.1 Example - Emptying a Table

The example that follows removes the data from the **sales** table. Use the following command to create the **sales** table:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country)
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
);
```

Populate the **sales** table with the command:

```
INSERT INTO sales VALUES
(10, '4519b', 'FRANCE', '17-Jan-2012', '45000'),
(20, '3788a', 'INDIA', '01-Mar-2012', '75000'),
(40, '9519b', 'US', '12-Apr-2012', '145000'),
(20, '3788a', 'PAKISTAN', '04-Jun-2012', '37500'),
(40, '4577b', 'US', '11-Nov-2012', '25000'),
(30, '7588b', 'CANADA', '14-Dec-2012', '50000'),
(30, '9519b', 'CANADA', '01-Feb-2012', '75000'),
(30, '4519b', 'CANADA', '08-Apr-2012', '120000'),
(40, '3788a', 'US', '12-May-2012', '4950'),
(10, '9519b', 'ITALY', '07-Jul-2012', '15000'),
(10, '9519a', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(10, '9519b', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(20, '3788b', 'INDIA', '21-Sept-2012', '5090'),
```

```
(40, '4788a', 'US', '23-Sept-2012', '4950'),
(40, '4788b', 'US', '09-Oct-2012', '15000'),
(20, '4519a', 'INDIA', '18-Oct-2012', '650000'),
(20, '4519b', 'INDIA', '2-Dec-2012', '5090');
```

Querying the `sales` table shows that the partitions are populated with data.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
   tableoid | dept_no | part_no | country | date      | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_americas | 40 | 9519b | US     | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_americas | 40 | 4577b | US     | 11-NOV-12 00:00:00 | 25000
sales_americas | 30 | 7588b | CANADA | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_americas | 30 | 9519b | CANADA | 01-FEB-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_americas | 30 | 4519b | CANADA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_americas | 40 | 3788a | US     | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_americas | 40 | 4788a | US     | 23-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_americas | 40 | 4788b | US     | 09-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe   | 10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_europe   | 10 | 9519b | ITALY   | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe   | 10 | 9519a | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_europe   | 10 | 9519b | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN | 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788b | INDIA  | 21-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_asia    | 20 | 4519a | INDIA  | 18-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia    | 20 | 4519b | INDIA  | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
(17 rows)
```

To delete the contents of the `sales` table, invoke the following command:

```
TRUNCATE TABLE sales;
```

Now, querying the `sales` table shows that the data has been removed but the structure is intact.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
   tableoid | dept_no | part_no | country | date      | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
(0 rows)
```

For more information about the `TRUNCATE TABLE` command, see the PostgreSQL documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-truncate.html>

### 10.3.16 ALTER TABLE...TRUNCATE PARTITION

Use the `ALTER TABLE... TRUNCATE PARTITION` command to remove the data from the specified partition, leaving the partition structure intact. The syntax is:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name> TRUNCATE PARTITION <partition_name>
[ {DROP|REUSE} STORAGE ]
```

## Description

Use the `ALTER TABLE... TRUNCATE PARTITION` command to remove the data from the specified partition, leaving the partition structure intact. When you truncate a partition, any subpartitions of that partition are also truncated.

`ALTER TABLE... TRUNCATE PARTITION` will not cause `ON DELETE` triggers that might exist for the table to fire, but it will fire `ON TRUNCATE` triggers. If an `ON TRUNCATE` trigger is defined for the partition, all `BEFORE TRUNCATE` triggers are fired before any truncation happens, and all `AFTER TRUNCATE` triggers are fired after the last truncation occurs.

You must have the `TRUNCATE` privilege on a table to invoke `ALTER TABLE... TRUNCATE PARTITION`.

## Parameters

`table_name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the partitioned table.

`partition_name`

The name of the partition to be deleted.

`DROP STORAGE` and `REUSE STORAGE` are included for compatibility only; the clauses are parsed and ignored.

### 10.3.16.1 Example - Emptying a Partition

The example that follows removes the data from a partition of the `sales` table. Use the following command to create the `sales` table:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country)
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA')
);
```

Populate the `sales` table with the command:

```
INSERT INTO sales VALUES
(10, '4519b', 'FRANCE', '17-Jan-2012', '45000'),
(20, '3788a', 'INDIA', '01-Mar-2012', '75000'),
(40, '9519b', 'US', '12-Apr-2012', '145000'),
(20, '3788a', 'PAKISTAN', '04-Jun-2012', '37500'),
```

```
(40, '4577b', 'US', '11-Nov-2012', '25000'),
(30, '7588b', 'CANADA', '14-Dec-2012', '50000'),
(30, '9519b', 'CANADA', '01-Feb-2012', '75000'),
(30, '4519b', 'CANADA', '08-Apr-2012', '120000'),
(40, '3788a', 'US', '12-May-2012', '4950'),
(10, '9519b', 'ITALY', '07-Jul-2012', '15000'),
(10, '9519a', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(10, '9519b', 'FRANCE', '18-Aug-2012', '650000'),
(20, '3788b', 'INDIA', '21-Sept-2012', '5090'),
(40, '4788a', 'US', '23-Sept-2012', '4950'),
(40, '4788b', 'US', '09-Oct-2012', '15000'),
(20, '4519a', 'INDIA', '18-Oct-2012', '650000'),
(20, '4519b', 'INDIA', '2-Dec-2012', '5090');
```

Querying the `sales` table shows that the partitions are populated with data.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
   tableoid | dept_no | part_no | country |      date      | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_americas |    40 | 9519b | US     | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_americas |    40 | 4577b | US     | 11-NOV-12 00:00:00 | 25000
sales_americas |    30 | 7588b | CANADA | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_americas |    30 | 9519b | CANADA | 01-FEB-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_americas |    30 | 4519b | CANADA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_americas |    40 | 3788a | US     | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_americas |    40 | 4788a | US     | 23-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_americas |    40 | 4788b | US     | 09-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe   |    10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_europe   |    10 | 9519b | ITALY   | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe   |    10 | 9519a | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_europe   |    10 | 9519b | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia    |    20 | 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_asia    |    20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN | 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_asia    |    20 | 3788b | INDIA  | 21-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_asia    |    20 | 4519a | INDIA  | 18-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia    |    20 | 4519b | INDIA  | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
(17 rows)
```

To delete the contents of the `americas` partition, invoke the following command:

```
ALTER TABLE sales TRUNCATE PARTITION americas;
```

Now, querying the `sales` table shows that the content of the `americas` partition has been removed.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
   tableoid | dept_no | part_no | country |      date      | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_europe |    10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_europe |    10 | 9519b | ITALY   | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe |    10 | 9519a | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_europe |    10 | 9519b | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia   |    20 | 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_asia   |    20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN | 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_asia   |    20 | 3788b | INDIA  | 21-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_asia   |    20 | 4519a | INDIA  | 18-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia   |    20 | 4519b | INDIA  | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
```

(9 rows)

While the rows have been removed, the structure of the `americas` partition is still intact.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | high_value
-----+-----
EUROPE      | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY'
ASIA        | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
AMERICAS    | 'US', 'CANADA'
(3 rows)
```

### 10.3.17 ALTER TABLE...TRUNCATE SUBPARTITION

Use the `ALTER TABLE... TRUNCATE SUBPARTITION` command to remove all of the data from the specified subpartition, leaving the subpartition structure intact. The syntax is:

```
ALTER TABLE <table_name>
  TRUNCATE SUBPARTITION <subpartition_name>
  [{DROP|REUSE} STORAGE]
```

#### Description

The `ALTER TABLE... TRUNCATE SUBPARTITION` command removes all data from a specified subpartition, leaving the subpartition structure intact.

`ALTER TABLE... TRUNCATE SUBPARTITION` will not cause `ON DELETE` triggers that might exist for the table to fire, but it will fire `ON TRUNCATE` triggers. If an `ON TRUNCATE` trigger is defined for the subpartition, all `BEFORE TRUNCATE` triggers are fired before any truncation happens, and all `AFTER TRUNCATE` triggers are fired after the last truncation occurs.

You must have the `TRUNCATE` privilege on a table to invoke `ALTER TABLE... TRUNCATE SUBPARTITION`.

#### Parameters

`table_name`

| The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the partitioned table.

`subpartition_name`

| The name of the subpartition to be truncated.

The `DROP STORAGE` and `REUSE STORAGE` clauses are included for compatibility only; the clauses are parsed and ignored.

### 10.3.17.1 Example - Emptying a Subpartition

The example that follows removes the data from a subpartition of the `sales` table. Use the following command to create the `sales` table:

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(date) SUBPARTITION BY LIST (country)
(
    PARTITION "2011" VALUES LESS THAN('01-JAN-2012')
    (
        SUBPARTITION europe_2011 VALUES ('ITALY', 'FRANCE'),
        SUBPARTITION asia_2011 VALUES ('PAKISTAN', 'INDIA'),
        SUBPARTITION americas_2011 VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
    ),
    PARTITION "2012" VALUES LESS THAN('01-JAN-2013')
    (
        SUBPARTITION europe_2012 VALUES ('ITALY', 'FRANCE'),
        SUBPARTITION asia_2012 VALUES ('PAKISTAN', 'INDIA'),
        SUBPARTITION americas_2012 VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
    ),
    PARTITION "2013" VALUES LESS THAN('01-JAN-2015')
    (
        SUBPARTITION europe_2013 VALUES ('ITALY', 'FRANCE'),
        SUBPARTITION asia_2013 VALUES ('PAKISTAN', 'INDIA'),
        SUBPARTITION americas_2013 VALUES ('US', 'CANADA')
    )
);
```

Populate the `sales` table with the command:

```
INSERT INTO sales VALUES
(10, '4519b', 'FRANCE', '17-Jan-2011', '45000'),
(20, '3788a', 'INDIA', '01-Mar-2012', '75000'),
(40, '9519b', 'US', '12-Apr-2012', '145000'),
(20, '3788a', 'PAKISTAN', '04-Jun-2012', '37500'),
(40, '4577b', 'US', '11-Nov-2012', '25000'),
(30, '7588b', 'CANADA', '14-Dec-2011', '50000'),
(30, '4519b', 'CANADA', '08-Apr-2012', '120000'),
(40, '3788a', 'US', '12-May-2011', '4950'),
(20, '3788a', 'US', '04-Apr-2012', '37500'),
(40, '4577b', 'INDIA', '11-Jun-2011', '25000'),
(10, '9519b', 'ITALY', '07-Jul-2012', '15000'),
(20, '4519b', 'INDIA', '2-Dec-2012', '5090');
```

Querying the `sales` table shows that the rows have been distributed amongst the subpartitions.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
   tableoid   | dept_no | part_no | country |      date      | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_americas_2011| 30| 7588b | CANADA | 14-DEC-11 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_americas_2011| 40| 3788a | US     | 12-MAY-11 00:00:00 | 4950
```

```

sales_europe_2011 | 10| 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-11 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_asia_2011  | 40| 4577b | INDIA  | 11-JUN-11 00:00:00 | 25000
sales_americas_2012| 40| 9519b | US    | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 |145000
sales_americas_2012| 40| 4577b | US    | 11-NOV-12 00:00:00 | 25000
sales_americas_2012| 30| 4519b | CANADA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 |120000
sales_americas_2012| 20| 3788a | US    | 04-APR-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_europe_2012 | 10| 9519b | ITALY  | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_asia_2012   | 20| 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_asia_2012   | 20| 3788a | PAKISTAN| 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_asia_2012   | 20| 4519b | INDIA  | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
(12 rows)

```

To delete the contents of the `2012_americas` partition, invoke the following command:

```
ALTER TABLE sales TRUNCATE SUBPARTITION "americas_2012";
```

Now, querying the `sales` table shows that the content of the `americas_2012` partition has been removed.

```

edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
tableoid      | dept_no| part_no | country |      date      |amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_americas_2011| 30| 7588b | CANADA | 14-DEC-11 00:00:00 |50000
sales_americas_2011| 40| 3788a | US    | 12-MAY-11 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_europe_2011 | 10| 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-11 00:00:00 |45000
sales_asia_2011   | 40| 4577b | INDIA  | 11-JUN-11 00:00:00 |25000
sales_europe_2012 | 10| 9519b | ITALY  | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 |15000
sales_asia_2012   | 20| 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 |75000
sales_asia_2012   | 20| 3788a | PAKISTAN| 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 |37500
sales_asia_2012   | 20| 4519b | INDIA  | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
(8 rows)

```

While the rows have been removed, the structure of the `2012_americas` partition is still intact.

```

edb=# SELECT subpartition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS;
subpartition_name |  high_value
-----+-----
EUROPE_2011      | 'ITALY', 'FRANCE'
ASIA_2011        | 'PAKISTAN', 'INDIA'
AMERICAS_2011     | 'US', 'CANADA'
EUROPE_2012      | 'ITALY', 'FRANCE'
ASIA_2012        | 'PAKISTAN', 'INDIA'
AMERICAS_2012     | 'US', 'CANADA'
EUROPE_2013      | 'ITALY', 'FRANCE'
ASIA_2013        | 'PAKISTAN', 'INDIA'
AMERICAS_2013     | 'US', 'CANADA'
(9 rows)

```

## 10.4 Handling Stray Values in a LIST or RANGE Partitioned Table

A `DEFAULT` or `MAXVALUE` partition or subpartition will capture any rows that do not meet the other partitioning rules defined for a table.

## Defining a DEFAULT Partition

A **DEFAULT** partition will capture any rows that do not fit into any other partition in a **LIST** partitioned (or subpartitioned) table. If you do not include a **DEFAULT** rule, any row that does not match one of the values in the partitioning constraints will result in an error. Each **LIST** partition or subpartition may have its own **DEFAULT** rule.

The syntax of a **DEFAULT** rule is:

```
PARTITION [<partition_name>] VALUES (DEFAULT)
```

Where **partition\_name** specifies the name of the partition or subpartition that will store any rows that do not match the rules specified for other partitions.

The last example created a list partitioned table in which the server decided which partition to store the data based upon the value of the **country** column. If you attempt to add a row in which the value of the **country** column contains a value not listed in the rules, Advanced Server reports an error.

```
edb=# INSERT INTO sales VALUES
edb-# (40, '3000x', 'IRELAND', '01-Mar-2012', '45000');
ERROR: no partition of relation "sales_2012" found for row
DETAIL: Partition key of the failing row contains (country) = (IRELAND).
```

The following example creates the same table, but adds a **DEFAULT** partition. The server will store any rows that do not match a value specified in the partitioning rules for **europe**, **asia**, or **americas** partitions in the **others** partition.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    date       date,
    amount     number
)
PARTITION BY LIST(country)
(
    PARTITION europe VALUES('FRANCE', 'ITALY'),
    PARTITION asia VALUES('INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'),
    PARTITION americas VALUES('US', 'CANADA'),
    PARTITION others VALUES (DEFAULT)
);
```

To test the **DEFAULT** partition, add row with a value in the **country** column that does not match one of the countries specified in the partitioning constraints.

```
INSERT INTO sales VALUES
(40, '3000x', 'IRELAND', '01-Mar-2012', '45000');
```

Querying the contents of the **sales** table confirms that the previously rejected row is now stored in the **sales\_others** partition.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
   tableoid | dept_no | part_no | country |      date      | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_americas |    40 | 9519b | US      | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_americas |    40 | 4577b | US      | 11-NOV-12 00:00:00 | 25000
sales_americas |    30 | 7588b | CANADA  | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_americas |    30 | 9519b | CANADA  | 01-FEB-12 00:00:00 | 75000
```

```

sales_americas | 30 | 4519b | CANADA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_americas | 40 | 3788a | US     | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_americas | 40 | 4788a | US     | 23-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_americas | 40 | 4788b | US     | 09-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe   | 10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_europe   | 10 | 9519b | ITALY   | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_europe   | 10 | 9519a | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_europe   | 10 | 9519b | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN | 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788b | INDIA  | 21-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_asia    | 20 | 4519a | INDIA  | 18-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_asia    | 20 | 4519b | INDIA  | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_others  | 40 | 3000x | IRELAND | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 45000
(18 rows)

```

Advanced Server provides the following methods to re-assign the contents of a **DEFAULT** partition or subpartition:

- You can use the **ALTER TABLE... ADD PARTITION** command to add a partition to a table with a **DEFAULT** rule as long as there are no conflicting values between existing rows in the table and the values of the partition to be added. You can alternatively use the **ALTER TABLE... SPLIT PARTITION** command to split an existing partition. Examples are shown following this bullet point list.
- You can use the **ALTER TABLE... ADD SUBPARTITION** command to add a subpartition to a table with a **DEFAULT** rule as long as there are no conflicting values between existing rows in the table and the values of the subpartition to be added. You can alternatively use the **ALTER TABLE... SPLIT SUBPARTITION** command to split an existing subpartition.

### Adding a Partition to a Table with a DEFAULT Partition

Using the table that was created with the **CREATE TABLE sales** command shown at the beginning of this section, the following shows use of the **ALTER TABLE... ADD PARTITION** command assuming there is no conflict of values between the existing rows in the table and the values of the partition to be added.

```

edb=# ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION africa values ('SOUTH AFRICA',
'KENYA');
ALTER TABLE

```

However, the following shows the error when there are conflicting values when the following rows have been inserted into the table.

```

edb=# INSERT INTO sales (dept_no, country) VALUES
(1,'FRANCE'),(2,'INDIA'),(3,'US'),(4,'SOUTH AFRICA'),(5,'NEPAL');
INSERT 0 5

```

Row **(4,'SOUTH AFRICA')** conflicts with the **VALUES** list in the **ALTER TABLE... ADD PARTITION** statement, thus resulting in an error.

```

edb=# ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION africa values ('SOUTH AFRICA',
'KENYA');
ERROR: updated partition constraint for default partition "sales_others"
would be violated by some row

```

### Splitting a DEFAULT Partition

The following example splits a **DEFAULT** partition, redistributing the partition's content between two new partitions. The table was created with the **CREATE TABLE sales** command shown at the beginning of this section.

The following inserts rows into the table including rows into the `DEFAULT` partition.

```
INSERT INTO sales VALUES
(10, '4519b', 'FRANCE', '17-Jan-2012', '45000'),
(10, '9519b', 'ITALY', '07-Jul-2012', '15000'),
(20, '3788a', 'INDIA', '01-Mar-2012', '75000'),
(20, '3788a', 'PAKISTAN', '04-Jun-2012', '37500'),
(30, '9519b', 'US', '12-Apr-2012', '145000'),
(30, '7588b', 'CANADA', '14-Dec-2012', '50000'),
(40, '4519b', 'SOUTH AFRICA', '08-Apr-2012', '120000'),
(40, '4519b', 'KENYA', '08-Apr-2012', '120000'),
(50, '3788a', 'CHINA', '12-May-2012', '4950');
```

The partitions include the `DEFAULT others` partition.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | high_value
-----+-----
EUROPE      | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY'
ASIA        | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
AMERICAS    | 'US', 'CANADA'
OTHERS      | DEFAULT
(4 rows)
```

The following shows the rows distributed amongst the partitions.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
tableoid  | dept_no| part_no | country   | date       | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_americas| 30 | 9519b | US        | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_americas| 30 | 7588b | CANADA    | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_europe  | 10 | 4519b | FRANCE    | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_europe  | 10 | 9519b | ITALY     | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788a | INDIA     | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_asia    | 20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN  | 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_others  | 40 | 4519b | SOUTH AFRICA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_others  | 40 | 4519b | KENYA     | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_others  | 50 | 3788a | CHINA     | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00 | 4950
(9 rows)
```

The following command splits the `DEFAULT others` partition into two partitions named `africa` and `others`.

```
ALTER TABLE sales SPLIT PARTITION others VALUES
('SOUTH AFRICA', 'KENYA')
INTO (PARTITION africa, PARTITION others);
```

The partitions now include the `africa` partition along with the `DEFAULT others` partition.

```
edb=# SELECT partition_name, high_value FROM ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS;
partition_name | high_value
-----+-----
EUROPE      | 'FRANCE', 'ITALY'
ASIA        | 'INDIA', 'PAKISTAN'
AMERICAS    | 'US', 'CANADA'
AFRICA      | 'SOUTH AFRICA', 'KENYA'
OTHERS      | DEFAULT
```

(5 rows)

The following shows that the rows have been redistributed across the new partitions.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
tableoid |dept_no | part_no | country | date      | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_americas | 30 | 9519b | US       | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_americas | 30 | 7588b | CANADA   | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_europe   | 10 | 4519b | FRANCE   | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_europe   | 10 | 9519b | ITALY    | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_asia     | 20 | 3788a | INDIA    | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_asia     | 20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN | 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_africa   | 40 | 4519b | SOUTH AFRICA| 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_africa   | 40 | 4519b | KENYA    | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_others_1 | 50 | 3788a | CHINA    | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00 | 4950
(9 rows)
```

## Defining a MAXVALUE Partition

A **MAXVALUE** partition (or subpartition) will capture any rows that do not fit into any other partition in a range-partitioned (or subpartitioned) table. If you do not include a **MAXVALUE** rule, any row that exceeds the maximum limit specified by the partitioning rules will result in an error. Each partition or subpartition may have its own **MAXVALUE** partition.

The syntax of a **MAXVALUE** rule is:

```
PARTITION [<partition_name>] VALUES LESS THAN (MAXVALUE)
```

Where **partition\_name** specifies the name of the partition that will store any rows that do not match the rules specified for other partitions.

The last example created a range-partitioned table in which the data was partitioned based upon the value of the **date** column. If you attempt to add a row with a **date** that exceeds a date listed in the partitioning constraints, Advanced Server reports an error.

```
edb=# INSERT INTO sales VALUES
edb# (40, '3000x', 'IRELAND', '01-Mar-2013', '45000');
ERROR: no partition of relation "sales" found for row
DETAIL: Partition key of the failing row contains (date) = (01-MAR-13
00:00:00).
```

The following **CREATE TABLE** command creates the same table, but with a **MAXVALUE** partition. Instead of throwing an error, the server will store any rows that do not match the previous partitioning constraints in the **others** partition.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
  dept_no  number,
  part_no  varchar2,
  country  varchar2(20),
  date     date,
  amount   number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(date)
(
  PARTITION q1_2012 VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Apr-01'),
```

```
PARTITION q2_2012 VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Jul-01'),
PARTITION q3_2012 VALUES LESS THAN('2012-Oct-01'),
PARTITION q4_2012 VALUES LESS THAN('2013-Jan-01'),
PARTITION others VALUES LESS THAN (MAXVALUE)
);
```

To test the `MAXVALUE` partition, add a row with a value in the `date` column that exceeds the last date value listed in a partitioning rule. The server will store the row in the `others` partition.

```
INSERT INTO sales VALUES
(40, '3000x', 'IRELAND', '01-Mar-2013', '45000');
```

Querying the contents of the `sales` table confirms that the previously rejected row is now stored in the `sales_others` partition.

```
edb=# SELECT tableoid::regclass, * FROM sales;
   tableoid | dept_no | part_no | country |      date       | amount
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
sales_q1_2012 |    10 | 4519b | FRANCE | 17-JAN-12 00:00:00 | 45000
sales_q1_2012 |    20 | 3788a | INDIA  | 01-MAR-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_q1_2012 |    30 | 9519b | CANADA | 01-FEB-12 00:00:00 | 75000
sales_q2_2012 |    40 | 9519b | US     | 12-APR-12 00:00:00 | 145000
sales_q2_2012 |    20 | 3788a | PAKISTAN | 04-JUN-12 00:00:00 | 37500
sales_q2_2012 |    30 | 4519b | CANADA | 08-APR-12 00:00:00 | 120000
sales_q2_2012 |    40 | 3788a | US     | 12-MAY-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_q3_2012 |    10 | 9519b | ITALY  | 07-JUL-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_q3_2012 |    10 | 9519a | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_q3_2012 |    10 | 9519b | FRANCE | 18-AUG-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_q3_2012 |    20 | 3788b | INDIA  | 21-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_q3_2012 |    40 | 4788a | US     | 23-SEP-12 00:00:00 | 4950
sales_q4_2012 |    40 | 4577b | US     | 11-NOV-12 00:00:00 | 25000
sales_q4_2012 |    30 | 7588b | CANADA | 14-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 50000
sales_q4_2012 |    40 | 4788b | US     | 09-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 15000
sales_q4_2012 |    20 | 4519a | INDIA  | 18-OCT-12 00:00:00 | 650000
sales_q4_2012 |    20 | 4519b | INDIA  | 02-DEC-12 00:00:00 | 5090
sales_others |    40 | 3000x | IRELAND | 01-MAR-13 00:00:00 | 45000
(18 rows)
```

Please note that Advanced Server does not have a way to re-assign the contents of a `MAXVALUE` partition or subpartition.

- You cannot use the `ALTER TABLE... ADD PARTITION` statement to add a partition to a table with a `MAXVALUE` rule, but you can use the `ALTER TABLE... SPLIT PARTITION` statement to split an existing partition.
- You cannot use the `ALTER TABLE... ADD SUBPARTITION` statement to add a subpartition to a table with a `MAXVALUE` rule , but you can split an existing subpartition with the `ALTER TABLE... SPLIT SUBPARTITION` statement.

## 10.5 Specifying Multiple Partitioning Keys in a RANGE Partitioned Table

You can often improve performance by specifying multiple key columns for a `RANGE` partitioned table. If you often select rows using comparison operators (based on a greater-than or less-than value) on a small set of

columns, consider using those columns in **RANGE** partitioning rules.

### Specifying Multiple Keys in a Range-Partitioned Table

Range-partitioned table definitions may include multiple columns in the partitioning key. To specify multiple partitioning keys for a range-partitioned table, include the column names in a comma-separated list after the **PARTITION BY RANGE** clause.

```
CREATE TABLE sales
(
    dept_no    number,
    part_no    varchar2,
    country    varchar2(20),
    sale_year   number,
    sale_month  number,
    sale_day    number,
    amount      number
)
PARTITION BY RANGE(sale_year, sale_month)
(
    PARTITION q1_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN(2012, 4),
    PARTITION q2_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN(2012, 7),
    PARTITION q3_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN(2012, 10),
    PARTITION q4_2012
        VALUES LESS THAN(2013, 1)
);
```

If a table is created with multiple partitioning keys, you must specify multiple key values when querying the table to take full advantage of partition pruning.

```
edb=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM sales WHERE sale_year = 2012 AND sale_month = 8;
          QUERY PLAN
-----
Append (cost=0.00..14.35 rows=1 width=250)
 -> Seq Scan on sales_q3_2012 (cost=0.00..14.35 rows=1 width=250)
     Filter: ((sale_year = '2012'::numeric) AND (sale_month =
'8'::numeric))
(3 rows)
```

Since all rows with a value of **8** in the **sale\_month** column and a value of **2012** in the **sale\_year** column will be stored in the **q3\_2012** partition, Advanced Server searches only that partition.

---

## 10.6 Retrieving Information about a Partitioned Table

Advanced Server provides five system catalog views that you can use to view information about the structure of partitioned tables.

### Querying the Partitioning Views

You can query the following views to retrieve information about partitioned and subpartitioned tables:

- ALL\_PART\_TABLES
- ALL\_TAB\_PARTITIONS
- ALL\_TAB\_SUBPARTITIONS
- ALL\_PART\_KEY\_COLUMNS
- ALL\_SUBPART\_KEY\_COLUMNS

The structure of each view is explained in [Table Partitioning Views - Reference](#). If you are using the EDB-PSQL client, you can also discover the structure of a view by entering:

```
\d <view_name>
```

Where `view_name` specifies the name of the table partitioning view.

Querying a view can provide information about the structure of a partitioned or subpartitioned table. For example, the following code snippet displays the names of a subpartitioned table:

```
edb=# SELECT subpartition_name, partition_name FROM ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS;
subpartition_name | partition_name
-----+-----
EUROPE_2011      | EUROPE
EUROPE_2012      | EUROPE
ASIA_2011        | ASIA
ASIA_2012        | ASIA
AMERICAS_2011    | AMERICAS
AMERICAS_2012    | AMERICAS
(6 rows)
```

## 10.6.1 Table Partitioning Views - Reference

Query the following catalog views (compatible with Oracle databases), to review detailed information about your partitioned tables.

### 10.6.1.1 ALL\_PART\_TABLES

The following table lists the information available in the `ALL_PART_TABLES` view:

Column	Type	Description
owner	name	The owner of the table.
schema_name	name	The schema in which the table resides.

Column	Type	Description
table_name	name	The name of the table.
partitioning_type	text	RANGE, LIST or HASH
subpartitioning_type	text	RANGE, LIST, HASH, or NONE
partition_count	bigint	The number of partitions.
def_subpartition_count	integer	The default subpartition count - this will always be 0.
partitioning_key_count	integer	The number of columns listed in the partition by clause.
subpartitioning_key_count	integer	The number of columns in the subpartition by clause.
status	character varying(8)	This column will always be VALID.
def_tablespace_name	character varying(30)	This column will always be NULL.
def_pct_free	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
def_pct_used	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
def_ini_trans	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
def_max_trans	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
def_initial_extent	character varying(40)	This column will always be NULL.
def_next_extent	character varying(40)	This column will always be NULL.
def_min_extents	character varying(40)	This column will always be NULL.
def_max_extents	character varying(40)	This column will always be NULL.
def_pct_increase	character varying(40)	This column will always be NULL.
def_freelists	numeric	This column will always be NULL.

Column	Type	Description
def_freelist_groups	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
def_logging	character varying(7)	This column will always be YES
def_compression	character varying(8)	This column will always be NONE
def_buffer_pool	character varying(7)	This column will always be DEFAULT
ref_ptn_constraint_name	character varying(30)	This column will always be NULL
interval	character varying(1000)	This column will always be NULL

### 10.6.1.2 ALL\_TAB\_PARTITIONS

The following table lists the information available in the `ALL_TAB_PARTITIONS` view:

Column	Type	Description
table_owner	name	The owner of the table.
schema_name	name	The schema in which the table resides.
table_name	name	The name of the table.
composite	text	YES if the table is subpartitioned; NO if it is not subpartitioned.
partition_name	name	The name of the partition.
subpartition_count	bigint	The number of subpartitions for this partition.
high_value	text	The high partitioning value specified in the <code>CREATE TABLE</code> statement.
high_value_length	integer	The length of high partitioning value.
partition_position	integer	The ordinal position of this partition.
tablespace_name	name	The tablespace in which this partition resides.
pct_free	numeric	This column will always be 0.
pct_used	numeric	This column will always be 0.
ini_trans	numeric	This column will always be 0.
max_trans	numeric	This column will always be 0.
initial_extent	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
next_extent	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
min_extent	numeric	This column will always be 0.
max_extent	numeric	This column will always be 0.
pct_increase	numeric	This column will always be 0.
freelists	numeric	This column will always be NULL
freelist_groups	numeric	This column will always be NULL

Column	Type	Description
logging	character varying(7)	This column will always be YES.
compression	character varying(8)	This column will always be NONE.
num_rows	numeric	The approx. number of rows in this partition.
blocks	integer	The approx. number of blocks in this partition.
empty_blocks	numeric	This column will always be NULL
avg_space	numeric	This column will always be NULL
chain_cnt	numeric	This column will always be NULL
avg_row_len	numeric	This column will always be NULL
sample_size	numeric	This column will always be NULL
last_analyzed	timestamp without time zone	This column will always be NULL
buffer_pool	character varying(7)	This column will always be NULL
global_stats	character varying(3)	This column will always be YES.
user_stats	character varying(3)	This column will always be NO.
Backing_table	regclass	OID of the backing table for this partition.

### 10.6.1.3 ALL\_TAB\_SUBPARTITIONS

The following table lists the information available in the `ALL_TAB_SUBPARTITIONS` view:

Column	Type	Description
table_owner	name	The name of the owner of the table.
schema_name	name	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
table_name	name	The name of the table.
partition_name	name	The name of the partition.
subpartition_name	name	The name of the subpartition.
high_value	text	The high partitioning value specified in the <code>CREATE TABLE</code> statement.
high_value_length	integer	The length of high partitioning value.
subpartition_position	integer	The ordinal position of this subpartition.
tablespace_name	name	The tablespace in which this subpartition resides.
pct_free	numeric	This column will always be 0.
pct_used	numeric	This column will always be 0.
ini_trans	numeric	This column will always be 0.
max_trans	numeric	This column will always be 0.
initial_extent	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
next_extent	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
min_extent	numeric	This column will always be 0.
max_extent	numeric	This column will always be 0.
pct_increase	numeric	This column will always be 0.
freelists	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
freelist_groups	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
logging	character varying(7)	This column will always be YES.
compression	character varying(8)	This column will always be NONE.

Column	Type	Description
num_rows	numeric	The approx. number of rows in this subpartition.
blocks	integer	The approx. number of blocks in this subpartition.
empty_blocks	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
avg_space	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
chain_cnt	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
avg_row_len	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
sample_size	numeric	This column will always be NULL.
last_analyzed	timestamp without time zone	This column will always be NULL.
buffer_pool	character varying(7)	This column will always be NULL.
global_stats	character varying(3)	This column will always be YES.
user_stats	character varying(3)	This column will always be NO.
backing_table	regclass	OID of the backing table for this subpartition.

#### 10.6.1.4 ALL\_PART\_KEY\_COLUMNS

The following table lists the information available in the `ALL_PART_KEY_COLUMNS` view:

Column	Type	Description
owner	name	The name of the table owner.
schema_name	name	The name of the schema on which the table resides.
name	name	The name of the table.
object_type	character(5)	This column will always be TABLE.
column_name	name	The name of the partitioning key column.
column_position	integer	The position of this column within the partitioning key (the first column has a column position of 1, the second column has a column position of 2...)

#### 10.6.1.5 ALL\_SUBPART\_KEY\_COLUMNS

The following table lists the information available in the `ALL_SUBPART_KEY_COLUMNS` view:

Column	Type	Description
owner	name	The name of the table owner.
schema_name	name	The name of the schema on which the table resides.
name	name	The name of the table.
object_type	character(5)	This column will always be TABLE.
column_name	name	The name of the partitioning key column.
column_position	integer	The position of this column within the subpartitioning key (the first column has a column position of 1, the second column has a column position of 2...)

## 11 Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Tools and Utilities Guide

The tools and utilities documented in this guide allow a developer that is accustomed to working with Oracle utilities to work with Advanced Server in a familiar environment.

The sections in this guide describe compatible tools and utilities that are supported by Advanced Server. These include:

- EDB\*Loader
- EDB Wrap
- Dynamic Runtime Instrumentation

The EDB\*Plus command line client provides a user interface to Advanced Server that supports SQL\*Plus commands; EDB\*Plus allows you to:

- Query database objects
- Execute stored procedures
- Format output from SQL commands
- Execute batch scripts
- Execute OS commands
- Record output

For detailed installation and usage information about EDB\*Plus, see the *EDBPlus User's Guide\**, available from the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs/p/edbplus>

For detailed information about the features supported by Advanced Server, consult the complete library of Advanced Server guides available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

### 11.1 EDB\*Loader

EDB\*Loader is a high-performance bulk data loader that provides an interface compatible with Oracle databases for Advanced Server. The EDB\*Loader command line utility loads data from an input source, typically a file, into one or more tables using a subset of the parameters offered by Oracle SQL\*Loader.

EDB\*Loader features include:

- Support for the Oracle SQL\*Loader data loading methods - conventional path load, direct path load, and parallel direct path load
- Syntax for control file directives compatible with Oracle SQL\*Loader
- Input data with delimiter-separated or fixed-width fields
- Bad file for collecting rejected records
- Loading of multiple target tables
- Discard file for collecting records that do not meet the selection criteria of any target table
- Log file for recording the EDB\*Loader session and any error messages
- Data loading from standard input and remote loading, particularly useful for large data sources on remote hosts

These features are explained in detail in the following sections.

Note

The following are important version compatibility restrictions between the EDB\*Loader client and the database server.

- When you invoke the EDB\*Loader program (called `edbldr`), you pass in parameters and directive information to the database server. **We strongly recommend that the version 13 EDB\*Loader client (the `edbldr` program supplied with Advanced Server 13) be used to load data only into version 13 of the database server. In general, the EDB\*Loader client and database server should be the same version.**
- Using EDB\*Loader in conjunction with connection poolers such as PgPool-II and PgBouncer is not supported. EDB\*Loader must connect directly to Advanced Server version 13. Alternatively, the following commands are some of the options that can be used for loading data through connection poolers:
  - `psql \copy`
  - `idbc copyIn`
  - `psycopg2 copy_from`
- Use of a version 13, 12, 11, 10, 9.6, or 9.5 EDB\*Loader client is not supported for Advanced Server with version 9.2 or earlier.

## Data Loading Methods

As with Oracle SQL\*Loader, EDB\*Loader supports three data loading methods:

- Conventional path load
- Direct path load
- Parallel direct path load

Conventional path load is the default method used by EDB\*Loader. Basic insert processing is used to add rows to the table.

The advantage of a conventional path load over the other methods is that table constraints and database objects defined on the table such as primary keys, not null constraints, check constraints, unique indexes, foreign key constraints, and triggers are enforced during a conventional path load.

One exception is that the Advanced Server *rules* defined on the table are not enforced. EDB\*Loader can load tables on which rules are defined, but the rules are not executed. As a consequence, partitioned tables implemented using rules cannot be loaded using EDB\*Loader.

### Note

Advanced Server rules are created by the `CREATE RULE` command. Advanced Server rules are not the same database objects as rules and rule sets used in Oracle.

EDB\*Loader also supports direct path loads. A direct path load is faster than a conventional path load, but requires the removal of most types of constraints and triggers from the table. For more information, see [Direct Path Load](#).

Finally, EDB\*Loader supports parallel direct path loads. A parallel direct path load provides even greater performance improvement by permitting multiple EDB\*Loader sessions to run simultaneously to load a single table. For more information, see [Parallel Direct Path Load](#).

## General Usage

EDB\*Loader can load data files with either delimiter-separated or fixed-width fields, in single-byte or multi-byte character sets. The delimiter can be a string consisting of one or more single-byte or multi-byte characters. Data file encoding and the database encoding may be different. Character set conversion of the data file to the database encoding is supported.

Each EDB\*Loader session runs as a single, independent transaction. If an error should occur during the EDB\*Loader session that aborts the transaction, all changes made during the session are rolled back.

Generally, formatting errors in the data file do not result in an aborted transaction. Instead, the badly formatted records are written to a text file called the *bad file*. The reason for the error is recorded in the *log file*.

Records causing database integrity errors do result in an aborted transaction and rollback. As with formatting errors, the record causing the error is written to the bad file and the reason is recorded in the log file.

#### Note

EDB\*Loader differs from Oracle SQL\*Loader in that a database integrity error results in a rollback in EDB\*Loader. In OracleSQL\*Loader, only the record causing the error is rejected. Records that were previously inserted into the table are retained and loading continues after the rejected record.

The following are examples of types of formatting errors that do not abort the transaction:

- Attempt to load non-numeric value into a numeric column
- Numeric value is too large for a numeric column
- Character value is too long for the maximum length of a character column
- Attempt to load improperly formatted date value into a date column

The following are examples of types of database errors that abort the transaction and result in the rollback of all changes made in the EDB\*Loader session:

- Violation of a unique constraint such as a primary key or unique index
- Violation of a referential integrity constraint
- Violation of a check constraint
- Error thrown by a trigger fired as a result of inserting rows

## Building the EDB\*Loader Control File

When you invoke EDB\*Loader, the list of arguments provided must include the name of a control file. The control file includes the instructions that EDB\*Loader uses to load the table (or tables) from the input data file. The control file includes information such as:

- The name of the input data file containing the data to be loaded.
- The name of the table or tables to be loaded from the data file.
- Names of the columns within the table or tables and their corresponding field placement in the data file.
- Specification of whether the data file uses a delimiter string to separate the fields, or if the fields occupy fixed column positions.
- Optional selection criteria to choose which records from the data file to load into a given table.
- The name of the file that will collect illegally formatted records.
- The name of the discard file that will collect records that do not meet the selection criteria of any table.

The syntax for the EDB\*Loader control file is as follows:

```
[ OPTIONS (<param=value> [, <param=value>] ...) ]
LOAD DATA
[ CHARACTERSET <charset> ]
[ INFILE '{ <data_file> | <stdin> }' ]
[ BADFILE '<bad_file>' ]
[ DISCARDFILE '<discard_file>' ]
[ { DISCARDMAX | DISCARDS } <max_discard_recs> ]
[ INSERT | APPEND | REPLACE | TRUNCATE ]
[ PRESERVE BLANKS ]
{ INTO TABLE <target_table>
  [ WHEN <field_condition> [ AND <field_condition> ] ...]
  [ FIELDS TERMINATED BY '<termstring>' ]
    [ OPTIONALLY ENCLOSED BY '<enclstring>' ] ]
  [ RECORDS DELIMITED BY '<delimstring>' ] }
```

```
[ TRAILING NULLCOLS ]
  (<field_def> [, <field_def> ] ...)
} ...
```

where `field_def` defines a field in the specified `data_file` that describes the location, data format, or value of the data to be inserted into `column_name` of the `target_table`. The syntax of `field_def` is the following:

```
<column_name> {
  CONSTANT <val> |
  FILLER [ POSITION (<start:end>) ] [ <fieldtype> ] |
  BOUNDFILLER [ POSITION (<start:end>) ] [ <fieldtype> ] |
  [ POSITION (<start:end>) ] [ <fieldtype> ]
  [ NULLIF <field_condition> [ AND <field_condition> ] ...]
  [ PRESERVE BLANKS ] [ "<expr>" ]
}
```

where `fieldtype` is one of:

```
CHAR [(<length>)] | DATE [(<length>)] [ "<datemask>" ] |
INTEGER EXTERNAL [(<length>)] |
FLOAT EXTERNAL [(<length>)] | DECIMAL EXTERNAL [(length)] |
ZONED EXTERNAL [(<length>)] | ZONED [(<precision> [,<scale>])]
```

## Description

The specification of `data_file`, `bad_file`, and `discard_file` may include the full directory path or a relative directory path to the file name. If the file name is specified alone or with a relative directory path, the file is then assumed to exist (in the case of `data_file`), or is created (in the case of `bad_file` or `discard_file`), relative to the current working directory from which `edbldr` is invoked.

You can include references to environment variables within the EDB\*Loader control file when referring to a directory path and/or file name. Environment variable references are formatted differently on Windows systems than on Linux systems:

- On Linux, the format is `$ENV_VARIABLE` or  `${ENV_VARIABLE}`
- On Windows, the format is `%ENV_VARIABLE%`

Where `ENV_VARIABLE` is the environment variable that is set to the directory path and/or file name.

The `EDBLDR_ENV_STYLE` environment variable instructs Advanced Server to interpret environment variable references as Windows-styled references or Linux-styled references irregardless of the operating system on which EDB\*Loader resides. You can use this environment variable to create portable control files for EDB\*Loader.

- On a Windows system, set `EDBLDR_ENV_STYLE` to `linux` or `unix` to instruct Advanced Server to recognize Linux-style references within the control file.
- On a Linux system, set `EDBLDR_ENV_STYLE` to `windows` to instruct Advanced Server to recognize Windows-style references within the control file.

The operating system account `enterprisedb` must have read permission on the directory and file specified by `data_file`.

The operating system account `enterprisedb` must have write permission on the directories where `bad_file` and `discard_file` are to be written.

## Note

The file names for `data_file`, `bad_file`, and `discard_file` should include extensions of `.dat`, `.bad`, and `.dsc`, respectively. If the provided file name does not contain an extension, EDB\*Loader assumes the actual file name includes the appropriate aforementioned extension.

If an EDB\*Loader session results in data format errors and the `BADFILE` clause is not specified, nor is the `BAD` parameter given on the command line when `edbldr` is invoked, a bad file is created with the name `control_file_base.bad` in the current working directory from which `edbldr` is invoked. `control_file_base` is the base name of the control file (that is, the file name without any extension) used in the `edbldr` session.

If all of the following conditions are true, the discard file is not created even if the EDB\*Loader session results in discarded records:

- The `DISCARDFILE` clause for specifying the discard file is not included in the control file.
- The `DISCARD` parameter for specifying the discard file is not included on the command line.
- The `DISCARDMAX` clause for specifying the maximum number of discarded records is not included in the control file.
- The `DISCARDS` clause for specifying the maximum number of discarded records is not included in the control file.
- The `DISCARDMAX` parameter for specifying the maximum number of discarded records is not included on the command line.

If neither the `DISCARDFILE` clause nor the `DISCARD` parameter for explicitly specifying the discard file name are specified, but `DISCARDMAX` or `DISCARDS` is specified, then the EDB\*Loader session creates a discard file using the data file name with an extension of `.dsc`.

## Note

There is a distinction between keywords `DISCARD` and `DISCARDS`. `DISCARD` is an EDB\*Loader command line parameter used to specify the discard file name (see [General Usage](#)). `DISCARDS` is a clause of the `LOAD DATA` directive that may only appear in the control file. Keywords `DISCARDS` and `DISCARDMAX` provide the same functionality of specifying the maximum number of discarded records allowed before terminating the EDB\*Loader session. Records loaded into the database before termination of the EDB\*Loader session due to exceeding the `DISCARDS` or `DISCARDMAX` settings are kept in the database and are not rolled back.

If one of `INSERT`, `APPEND`, `REPLACE`, or `TRUNCATE` is specified, it establishes the default action of how rows are to be added to target tables. If omitted, the default action is as if `INSERT` had been specified.

If the `FIELDS TERMINATED BY` clause is specified, then the `POSITION (start:end)` clause may not be specified for any `field_def`. Alternatively if the `FIELDS TERMINATED BY` clause is not specified, then every `field_def` must contain either the `POSITION (start:end)` clause, the `fieldtype(length)` clause, or the `CONSTANT` clause.

## Parameters

### `OPTIONS param=value`

Use the `OPTIONS` clause to specify `param=value` pairs that represent an EDB\*Loader directive. If a parameter is specified in both the `OPTIONS` clause and on the command line when `edbldr` is invoked, the command line setting is used.

Specify one or more of the following parameter/value pairs:

> `DIRECT= { FALSE | TRUE }`

If `DIRECT` is set to `TRUE` EDB\*Loader performs a direct path load instead of a conventional path load. The default value of `DIRECT` is `FALSE`.

You should not set `DIRECT=true` when loading the data into a replicated table. If you are using EDB\*Loader to load data into a replicated table and set `DIRECT=true`, indexes may omit rows that are in a table or may potentially contain references to rows that have been deleted. EnterpriseDB does not support direct inserts to load data into replicated tables.

For information on direct path loads see, [Direct Path Load](#).

### `ERRORS=error_count`

`error_count` specifies the number of errors permitted before aborting the EDB\*Loader session. The

default is `50`.

#### `FREEZE= { FALSE | TRUE }`

Set `FREEZE` to `TRUE` to indicate that the data should be copied with the rows `frozen`. A tuple guaranteed to be visible to all current and future transactions is marked as frozen to prevent transaction ID wrap-around. For more information about frozen tuples, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/routine-vacuuming.html>

You must specify a data-loading type of `TRUNCATE` in the control file when using the `FREEZE` option. `FREEZE` is not supported for direct loading.

By default, `FREEZE` is `FALSE`.

#### `PARALLEL= { FALSE | TRUE }`

Set `PARALLEL` to `TRUE` to indicate that this EDB\*Loader session is one of a number of concurrent EDB\*Loader sessions participating in a parallel direct path load. The default value of `PARALLEL` is `FALSE`.

When `PARALLEL` is `TRUE`, the `DIRECT` parameter must also be set to `TRUE`. For more information about parallel direct path loads, see [Parallel Direct Path Load](#).

#### `ROWS=n`

`n` specifies the number of rows that EDB\*Loader will commit before loading the next set of `n` rows.

If EDB\*Loader encounters an invalid row during a load (in which the `ROWS` parameter is specified), those rows committed prior to encountering the error will remain in the destination table.

#### `SKIP=skip_count`

`skip_count` specifies the number of records at the beginning of the input data file that should be skipped before loading begins. The default is `0`.

#### `SKIP_INDEX_MAINTENANCE={ FALSE | TRUE }`

If `SKIP_INDEX_MAINTENANCE` is `TRUE`, index maintenance is not performed as part of a direct path load, and indexes on the loaded table are marked as invalid. The default value of `SKIP_INDEX_MAINTENANCE` is `FALSE`.

Please note: During a parallel direct path load, target table indexes are not updated, and are marked as invalid after the load is complete.

You can use the `REINDEX` command to rebuild an index. For more information about the `REINDEX` command, see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-reindex.html>

#### `charset`

Use the `CHARACTERSET` clause to identify the character set encoding of `data_file` where `charset` is the character set name. This clause is required if the data file encoding differs from the control file encoding. (The control file encoding must always be in the encoding of the client where `edbldr` is invoked.)

Examples of `charset` settings are `UTF8`, `SQL_ASCII`, and `SJIS`.

For more information about client to database character set conversion, see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/multibyte.html>

## data\_file

File containing the data to be loaded into `target_table`. Each record in the data file corresponds to a row to be inserted into `target_table`.

If an extension is not provided in the file name, EDB\*Loader assumes the file has an extension of `.dat`, for example, `mydatafile.dat`.

### Note

If the `DATA` parameter is specified on the command line when `edbldr` is invoked, the file given by the command line `DATA` parameter is used instead.

If the `INFILE` clause is omitted as well as the command line `DATA` parameter, then the data file name is assumed to be identical to the control file name, but with an extension of `.dat`.

## stdin

Specify `stdin` (all lowercase letters) if you want to use standard input to pipe the data to be loaded directly to EDB\*Loader. This is useful for data sources generating a large number of records to be loaded.

## bad\_file

A file that receives `data_file` records that cannot be loaded due to errors. The bad file is generated for collecting rejected or bad records.

From Advanced Server version 12 and onwards, a bad file will be generated only if there are any bad or rejected records. However, if there is an existing bad file with identical name and location, and no bad records are generated after invoking a new version of `edbldr`, the existing bad file remains untouched.

If an extension is not provided in the file name, EDB\*Loader assumes the file has an extension of `.bad`, for example, `mybadfile.bad`.

### Note

If the `BAD` parameter is specified on the command line when `edbldr` is invoked, the file given by the command line `BAD` parameter is used instead.

## discard\_file

File that receives input data records that are not loaded into any table because none of the selection criteria are met for tables with the `WHEN` clause, and there are no tables without a `WHEN` clause. (All records meet the selection criteria of a table without a `WHEN` clause.)

If an extension is not provided in the file name, EDB\*Loader assumes the file has an extension of `.dsc`, for example, `mydiscardfile.dsc`.

### Note

If the `DISCARD` parameter is specified on the command line when `edbldr` is invoked, the file given by the command line `DISCARD` parameter is used instead.

## { DISCARDMAX | DISCARDS } max\_discard\_recs

Maximum number of discarded records that may be encountered from the input data records before terminating the EDB\*Loader session. (A discarded record is described in the preceding description of the `discard_file` parameter.) Either keyword `DISCARDMAX` or `DISCARDS` may be used preceding the integer value specified by `max_discard_recs`.

For example, if `max_discard_recs` is `0`, then the EDB\*Loader session is terminated if and when a first

discarded record is encountered. If `max_discard_recs` is 1, then the EDB\*Loader session is terminated if and when a second discarded record is encountered.

When the EDB\*Loader session is terminated due to exceeding `max_discard_recs`, prior input data records that have been loaded into the database are retained. They are not rolled back.

## `INSERT | APPEND | REPLACE | TRUNCATE`

Specifies how data is to be loaded into the target tables. If one of `INSERT`, `APPEND`, `REPLACE`, or `TRUNCATE` is specified, it establishes the default action for all tables, overriding the default of `INSERT`.

### `INSERT`

Data is to be loaded into an empty table. EDB\*Loader throws an exception and does not load any data if the table is not initially empty.

#### Note

If the table contains rows, the `TRUNCATE` command must be used to empty the table prior to invoking EDB\*Loader. EDB\*Loader throws an exception if the `DELETE` command is used to empty the table instead of the `TRUNCATE` command. Oracle SQL\*Loader allows the table to be emptied by using either the `DELETE` or `TRUNCATE` command.

### `APPEND`

Data is to be added to any existing rows in the table. The table may be initially empty as well.

### `REPLACE`

The `REPLACE` keyword and `TRUNCATE` keywords are functionally identical. The table is truncated by EDB\*Loader prior to loading the new data.

#### Note

Delete triggers on the table are not fired as a result of the `REPLACE` operation.

### `TRUNCATE`

The table is truncated by EDB\*Loader prior to loading the new data. Delete triggers on the table are not fired as a result of the `TRUNCATE` operation.

## `PRESERVE BLANKS`

For all target tables, retains leading white space when the optional enclosure delimiters are not present and leaves trailing white space intact when fields are specified with a predetermined size. When omitted, the default behavior is to trim leading and trailing white space.

### `target_table`

Name of the table into which data is to be loaded. The table name may be schema-qualified (for example, `enterprisedb.emp`). The specified target must not be a view.

### `field_condition`

Conditional clause taking the following form:

```
[ () { (start:end) | column_name } { = | != | <> } 'val' [ ] ]
```

This conditional clause is used for the `WHEN` clause, which is part of the `INTO TABLE target_table` clause, and the `NULLIF` clause, which is part of the field definition denoted as `field_def` in the syntax diagram.

`start` and `end` are positive integers specifying the column positions in `data_file` that mark the beginning and

end of a field that is to be compared with the constant `val`. The first character in each record begins with a `start` value of `1`.

`column_name` specifies the name assigned to a field definition of the data file as defined by `field_def` in the syntax diagram.

Use of either (`start:end`) or `column_name` defines the portion of the record in `data_file` that is to be compared with the value specified by 'val' to evaluate as either true or false.

All characters used in the `field_condition` text (particularly in the `val` string) must be valid in the database encoding. (For performing data conversion, EDB\*Loader first converts the characters in `val` string to the database encoding and then to the data file encoding.)

In the `WHEN field_condition [ AND field_condition ]` clause, if all such conditions evaluate to `TRUE` for a given record, then EDB\*Loader attempts to insert that record into `target_table`. If the insert operation fails, the record is written to `bad_file`.

If for a given record, none of the `WHEN` clauses evaluate to `TRUE` for all `INTO TABLE` clauses, the record is written to `discard_file`, if a discard file was specified for the EDB\*Loader session.

See the description of the `NULLIF` clause in this Parameters list for the effect of `field_condition` on this clause.

#### termstring

String of one or more characters that separates each field in `data_file`. The characters may be single-byte or multi-byte as long as they are valid in the database encoding. Two consecutive appearances of `termstring` with no intervening character results in the corresponding column set to null.

#### enclstring

String of one or more characters used to enclose a field value in `data_file`. The characters may be single-byte or multi-byte as long as they are valid in the database encoding. Use `enclstring` on fields where `termstring` appears as part of the data.

#### delimstring

String of one or more characters that separates each record in `data_file`. The characters may be single-byte or multi-byte as long as they are valid in the database encoding. Two consecutive appearances of `delimstring` with no intervening character results in no corresponding row loaded into the table. The last record (in other words, the end of the data file) must also be terminated by the `delimstring` characters, otherwise the final record is not loaded into the table.

#### Note

The `RECORDS DELIMITED BY 'delimstring'` clause is not compatible with Oracle databases.

#### TRAILING NULLCOLS

If `TRAILING NULLCOLS` is specified, then the columns in the column list for which there is no data in `data_file` for a given record, are set to null when the row is inserted. This applies only to one or more consecutive columns at the end of the column list.

If fields are omitted at the end of a record and `TRAILING NULLCOLS` is not specified, EDB\*Loader assumes the record contains formatting errors and writes it to the bad file.

#### column\_name

Name of a column in `target_table` into which a field value defined by `field_def` is to be inserted. If the field definition includes the `FILLER` or `BOUNDFILLER` clause, then `column_name` is not required to be the name of a column in the table. It can be any identifier name since the `FILLER` and `BOUNDFILLER` clauses prevent the loading of the field data into a table column.

## CONSTANT val

Specifies a constant that is type-compatible with the column data type to which it is assigned in a field definition. Single or double quotes may enclose `val`. If `val` contains white space, then enclosing quotation marks must be used.

The use of the `CONSTANT` clause completely determines the value to be assigned to a column in each inserted row. No other clause may appear in the same field definition.

If the `TERMINATED BY` clause is used to delimit the fields in `data_file`, there must be no delimited field in `data_file` corresponding to any field definition with a `CONSTANT` clause. In other words, EDB\*Loader assumes there is no field in `data_file` for any field definition with a `CONSTANT` clause.

## FILLER

Specifies that the data in the field defined by the field definition is not to be loaded into the associated column if the identifier of the field definition is an actual column name in the table. In such case, the column is set to null. Use of the `FILLER` or `BOUNDFILLER` clause is the only circumstance in which the field definition does not have to be identified by an actual column name.

Unlike the `BOUNDFILLER` clause, an identifier defined with the `FILLER` clause must not be referenced in a SQL expression. See the discussion of the `expr` parameter.

## BOUNDFILLER

Specifies that the data in the field defined by the field definition is not to be loaded into the associated column if the identifier of the field definition is an actual column name in the table. In such case, the column is set to null. Use of the `FILLER` or `BOUNDFILLER` clause is the only circumstance in which the field definition does not have to be identified by an actual column name.

Unlike the `FILLER` clause, an identifier defined with the `BOUNDFILLER` clause may be referenced in a SQL expression. See the discussion of the `expr` parameter.

## POSITION (start:end)

Defines the location of the field in a record in a fixed-width field data file. `start` and `end` are positive integers. The first character in the record has a start value of `1`.

`CHAR [(<length>)] | DATE [(<length>)] [ "<datemask>" ] |`

`INTEGER EXTERNAL [<length>] |`

`FLOAT EXTERNAL [<length>] | DECIMAL EXTERNAL [<length>] |`

`ZONED EXTERNAL [<length>] | ZONED [<precision>[,<scale>]]]`

Field type that describes the format of the data field in `data_file`.

### Note

Specification of a field type is optional (for descriptive purposes only) and has no effect on whether or not EDB\*Loader successfully inserts the data in the field into the table column. Successful loading depends upon the compatibility of the column data type and the field value. For example, a column with data type `NUMBER(7,2)` successfully accepts a field containing `2600`, but if the field contains a value such as `26XX`, the insertion fails and the record is written to `bad_file`.

Please note that `ZONED` data is not human-readable; `ZONED` data is stored in an internal format where each digit is encoded in a separate nibble/nybble/4-bit field. In each `ZONED` value, the last byte contains a single digit (in the high-order 4 bits) and the sign (in the low-order 4 bits).

## length

Specifies the length of the value to be loaded into the associated column.

If the `POSITION (start:end)` clause is specified along with a `fieldtype(length)` clause, then the ending position of the field is overridden by the specified `length` value. That is, the length of the value to be loaded into the column is determined by the `length` value beginning at the `start` position, and not by the `end` position of the `POSITION (start:end)` clause. Thus, the value to be loaded into the column may be shorter than the field defined by `POSITION (start:end)`, or it may go beyond the `end` position depending upon the specified `length` size.

If the `FIELDS TERMINATED BY 'termstring'` clause is specified as part of the `INTO TABLE` clause, and a field definition contains the `fieldtype(length)` clause, then a record is accepted as long as the specified `length` values are greater than or equal to the field lengths as determined by the `termstring` characters enclosing all such fields of the record. If the specified `length` value is less than a field length as determined by the enclosing `termstring` characters for any such field, then the record is rejected.

If the `FIELDS TERMINATED BY 'termstring'` clause is not specified, and the `POSITION (start:end)` clause is not included with a field containing the `fieldtype(length)` clause, then the starting position of this field begins with the next character following the ending position of the preceding field. The ending position of the preceding field is either the end of its `length` value if the preceding field contains the `fieldtype(length)` clause, or by its `end` parameter if the field contains the `POSITION (start:end)` clause without the `fieldtype(length)` clause.

#### precision

Use `precision` to specify the length of the `ZONED` value.

If the `precision` value specified for `ZONED` conflicts with the length calculated by the server based on information provided with the `POSITION` clause, EDB\*Loader will use the value specified for `precision`.

#### scale

`scale` specifies the number of digits to the right of the decimal point in a `ZONED` value.

#### datemask

Specifies the ordering and abbreviation of the day, month, and year components of a date field.

#### Note

If the `DATE` field type is specified along with a SQL expression for the column, then `datemask` must be specified after `DATE` and before the SQL expression. See the following discussion of the `expr` parameter.

#### NULLIF field\_condition [ AND field\_condition ] ...

See the description of `field_condition` previously listed in this Parameters section for the syntax of `field_condition`.

If all field conditions evaluate to `TRUE`, then the column identified by `column_name` in the field definition is set to null. If any field condition evaluates to `FALSE`, then the column is set to the appropriate value as would normally occur according to the field definition.

#### PRESERVE BLANKS

For the column on which this option appears, retains leading white space when the optional enclosure delimiters are not present and leaves trailing white space intact when fields are specified with a predetermined size. When omitted, the default behavior is to trim leading and trailing white space.

#### expr

A SQL expression returning a scalar value that is type-compatible with the column data type to which it is assigned in a field definition. Double quotes must enclose `expr`. `expr` may contain a reference to any column in the field list (except for fields with the `FILLER` clause) by prefixing the column name by a colon character

(:).

`expr` may also consist of a SQL `SELECT` statement. If a `SELECT` statement is used then the following rules must apply:

- The `SELECT` statement must be enclosed within parentheses (`(SELECT ...)`).
- The select list must consist of exactly one expression following the `SELECT` keyword.
- The result set must not return more than one row. If no rows are returned, then the returned value of the resulting expression is null.

The following is the syntax for use of the `SELECT` statement:

```
"(SELECT expr [ FROM table_list [ WHERE condition ] ])"
```

#### Note

Omitting the `FROM table list` clause is not compatible with Oracle databases. If no tables need to be specified, use of the `FROM DUAL` clause is compatible with Oracle databases.

## EDB Loader Control File Examples

The following are some examples of control files and their corresponding data files.

### Delimiter-Separated Field Data File

The following control file uses a delimiter-separated data file that appends rows to the `emp` table:

```
LOAD DATA
INFILE 'emp.dat'
BADFILE 'emp.bad'
APPEND
INTO TABLE emp
FIELDS TERMINATED BY ',' OPTIONALLY ENCLOSED BY ""
TRAILING NULLCOLS
(
  empno,
  ename,
  job,
  mgr,
  hiredate,
  sal,
  deptno,
  comm
)
```

In the preceding control file, the `APPEND` clause is used to allow the insertion of additional rows into the `emp` table.

The following is the corresponding delimiter-separated data file:

```
9101,ROGERS,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-10,1980.00,20
9102,PETERSON,SALESMAN,7698,20-DEC-10,2600.00,30,2300.00
9103,WARREN,SALESMAN,7698,22-DEC-10,5250.00,30,2500.00
9104,"JONES, JR.",MANAGER,7839,02-APR-09,7975.00,20
```

The use of the `TRAILING NULLCOLS` clause allows the last field supplying the `comm` column to be omitted from the first and last records. The `comm` column is set to null for the rows inserted from these records.

The double quotation mark enclosure character surrounds the value **JONES, JR.** in the last record since the comma delimiter character is part of the field value.

The following query displays the rows added to the table after the EDB\*Loader session:

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno > 9100;

empno|ename|job|mgr|hiredate|sal|comm|deptno
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
9101|ROGERS|CLERK|7902|17-DEC-10 00:00:00|1980.00||20
9102|PETERSON|SALESMAN|7698|20-DEC-10 00:00:00|2600.00|2300.00|30
9103|WARREN|SALESMAN|7698|22-DEC-10 00:00:00|5250.00|2500.00|30
9104|JONES, JR.|MANAGER|7839|02-APR-09 00:00:00|7975.00||20
(4 rows)
```

### Fixed-Width Field Data File

The following example is a control file that loads the same rows into the **emp** table, but uses a data file containing fixed-width fields:

```
LOAD DATA
INFILE 'emp_fixed.dat'
BADFILE 'emp_fixed.bad'
APPEND
INTO TABLE emp
TRAILING NULLCOLS
(
    empno POSITION (1:4),
    ename POSITION (5:14),
    job POSITION (15:23),
    mgr POSITION (24:27),
    hiredate POSITION (28:38),
    sal POSITION (39:46),
    deptno POSITION (47:48),
    comm POSITION (49:56)
)
```

In the preceding control file, the **FIELDS TERMINATED BY** and **OPTIONALLY ENCLOSED BY** clauses are absent. Instead, each field now includes the **POSITION** clause.

The following is the corresponding data file containing fixed-width fields:

```
9101ROGERS CLERK 790217-DEC-10 1980.0020
9102PETERSON SALESMAN 769820-DEC-10 2600.0030 2300.00
9103WARREN SALESMAN 769822-DEC-10 5250.0030 2500.00
9104JONES, JR.MANAGER 783902-APR-09 7975.0020
```

### Single Physical Record Data File – RECORDS DELIMITED BY Clause

The following example is a control file that loads the same rows into the **emp** table, but uses a data file with one physical record. Each individual record that is to be loaded as a row in the table is terminated by the semicolon character (**;**) specified by the **RECORDS DELIMITED BY** clause.

```
LOAD DATA
INFILE 'emp_recdelim.dat'
BADFILE 'emp_recdelim.bad'
APPEND
```

```

INTO TABLE emp
FIELDS TERMINATED BY ',' OPTIONALLY ENCLOSED BY ""
RECORDS DELIMITED BY ;
TRAILING NULLCOLS
(
empno,
ename,
job,
mgr,
hiredate,
sal,
deptno,
comm
)

```

The following is the corresponding data file. The content is a single, physical record in the data file. The record delimiter character is included following the last record (that is, at the end of the file).

```

9101,ROGERS,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-10,1980.00,20,;9102,PETERSON,SALESMAN,7698,20-
DEC-10,2600.00,30,2300.00;9103,WARREN,SALESMAN,7698,22-DEC-
10,5250.00,30,2500.00;9104,"JONES, JR.",MANAGER,7839,02-APR-09,7975.00,20,;

```

### FILLER Clause

The following control file illustrates the use of the **FILLER** clause in the data fields for the **sal** and **comm** columns. EDB\*Loader ignores the values in these fields and sets the corresponding columns to null.

```

LOAD DATA
INFILE    'emp_fixed.dat'
BADFILE   'emp_fixed.bad'
APPEND
INTO TABLE emp
TRAILING NULLCOLS
(
empno    POSITION (1:4),
ename     POSITION (5:14),
job      POSITION (15:23),
mgr      POSITION (24:27),
hiredate  POSITION (28:38),
sal      FILLER POSITION (39:46),
deptno   POSITION (47:48),
comm      FILLER POSITION (49:56)
)

```

Using the same fixed-width data file as in the prior fixed-width field example, the resulting rows in the table appear as follows:

```

SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno > 9100;

empno|ename |job |mgr| hiredate | sal | comm |deptno
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
9101| ROGERS | CLERK |7902| 17-DEC-10 00:00:00|     |     | 20
9102| PETERSON | SALESMAN|7698| 20-DEC-10 00:00:00|     |     | 30
9103| WARREN | SALESMAN|7698| 22-DEC-10 00:00:00|     |     | 30
9104| JONES, JR.| MANAGER |7839| 02-APR-09 00:00:00|     |     | 20
(4 rows)

```

## BOUNDFILLER Clause

The following control file illustrates the use of the **BOUNDFILLER** clause in the data fields for the **job** and **mgr** columns. EDB\*Loader ignores the values in these fields and sets the corresponding columns to null in the same manner as the **FILLER** clause. However, unlike columns with the **FILLER** clause, columns with the **BOUNDFILLER** clause are permitted to be used in an expression as shown for column **jobdesc**.

```
LOAD DATA
INFILE 'emp.dat'
BADFILE 'emp.bad'
APPEND
INTO TABLE empjob
FIELDS TERMINATED BY ',' OPTIONALLY ENCLOSED BY ""
TRAILING NULLCOLS
(
    empno,
    ename,
    job      BOUNDFILLER,
    mgr      BOUNDFILLER,
    hiredate  FILLER,
    sal       FILLER,
    deptno   FILLER,
    comm     FILLER,
    jobdesc   ":job || ' for manager ' || :mgr"
)
)
```

The following is the delimiter-separated data file used in this example.

```
9101,ROGERS,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-10,1980.00,20
9102,PETERSON,SALESMAN,7698,20-DEC-10,2600.00,30,2300.00
9103,WARREN,SALESMAN,7698,22-DEC-10,5250.00,30,2500.00
9104,"JONES, JR.",MANAGER,7839,02-APR-09,7975.00,20
```

The following table is loaded using the preceding control file and data file.

```
CREATE TABLE empjob (
    empno      NUMBER(4) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT empjob_pk PRIMARY KEY,
    ename      VARCHAR2(10),
    job        VARCHAR2(9),
    mgr        NUMBER(4),
    jobdesc    VARCHAR2(25)
);
```

The resulting rows in the table appear as follows:

```
SELECT * FROM empjob;

empno | ename | job | mgr |      jobdesc
-----+-----+-----+
9101 | ROGERS |    |    | CLERK for manager 7902
9102 | PETERSON |   |   | SALESMAN for manager 7698
9103 | WARREN |   |   | SALESMAN for manager 7698
9104 | JONES, JR. |  |  | MANAGER for manager 7839
(4 rows)
```

## Field Types with Length Specification

The following example is a control file that contains the field type clauses with the length specification:

```
LOAD DATA
INFILE 'emp_fixed.dat'
BADFILE 'emp_fixed.bad'
APPEND
INTO TABLE emp
TRAILING NULLCOLS
(
    empno      CHAR(4),
    ename      CHAR(10),
    job        POSITION (15:23) CHAR(9),
    mgr        INTEGER EXTERNAL(4),
    hiredate   DATE(11) "DD-MON-YY",
    sal        DECIMAL EXTERNAL(8),
    deptno    POSITION (47:48),
    comm      POSITION (49:56) DECIMAL EXTERNAL(8)
)
```

#### Note

The **POSITION** clause and the **fieldtype(length)** clause can be used individually or in combination as long as each field definition contains at least one of the two clauses.

The following is the corresponding data file containing fixed-width fields:

```
9101ROGERS CLERK 790217-DEC-10 1980.0020
9102PETERSON SALESMAN 769820-DEC-10 2600.0030 2300.00
9103WARREN SALESMAN 769822-DEC-10 5250.0030 2500.00
9104JONES, JR. MANAGER 783902-APR-09 7975.0020
```

The resulting rows in the table appear as follows:

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno > 9100;

empno|ename|job|mgr|hiredate|sal|comm|deptno
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
9101| ROGERS | CLERK | 7902 | 17-DEC-10 00:00:00 | 1980.00 | 20
9102| PETERSON | SALESMAN | 7698 | 20-DEC-10 00:00:00 | 2600.00 | 2300.00 | 30
9103| WARREN | SALESMAN | 7698 | 22-DEC-10 00:00:00 | 5250.00 | 2500.00 | 30
9104| JONES, JR. | MANAGER | 7839 | 02-APR-09 00:00:00 | 7975.00 | 20
(4 rows)
```

#### NULLIF Clause

The following example uses the **NULLIF** clause on the sal column to set it to null for employees of job **MANAGER** as well as on the comm column to set it to null if the employee is not a **SALESMAN** and is not in department **30**. In other words, a comm value is accepted if the employee is a **SALESMAN** or is a member of department **30**.

The following is the control file:

```
LOAD DATA
INFILE 'emp_fixed_2.dat'
BADFILE 'emp_fixed_2.bad'
APPEND
INTO TABLE emp
```

## TRAILING NULLCOLS

```
(  
    empno      POSITION (1:4),  
    ename      POSITION (5:14),  
    job        POSITION (15:23),  
    mgr        POSITION (24:27),  
    hiredate   POSITION (28:38),  
    sal        POSITION (39:46) NULLIF job = 'MANAGER',  
    deptno    POSITION (47:48),  
    comm      POSITION (49:56) NULLIF job <> 'SALESMAN' AND deptno <> '30'  
)
```

The following is the corresponding data file:

9101ROGERS	CLERK	790217-DEC-10	1980.0020	
9102PETERSON	SALESMAN	769820-DEC-10	2600.0030	2300.00
9103WARREN	SALESMAN	769822-DEC-10	5250.0030	2500.00
9104JONES, JR.	MANAGER	783902-APR-09	7975.0020	
9105ARNOLDS	CLERK	778213-SEP-10	3750.0030	800.00
9106JACKSON	ANALYST	756603-JAN-11	4500.0040	2000.00
9107MAXWELL	SALESMAN	769820-DEC-10	2600.0010	1600.00

The resulting rows in the table appear as follows:

```
SELECT empno, ename, job, NVL(TO_CHAR(sal),'--null--) "sal",  
      NVL(TO_CHAR(comm),'--null--) "comm", deptno FROM emp WHERE empno > 9100;
```

empno	ename	job	sal	comm	deptno
9101	ROGERS	CLERK	1980.00	--null--	20
9102	PETERSON	SALESMAN	2600.00	2300.00	30
9103	WARREN	SALESMAN	5250.00	2500.00	30
9104	JONES, JR.	MANAGER	--null--	--null--	20
9105	ARNOLDS	CLERK	3750.00	800.00	30
9106	JACKSON	ANALYST	4500.00	--null--	40
9107	MAXWELL	SALESMAN	2600.00	1600.00	10

(7 rows)

## Note

The `sal` column for employee `JONES, JR.` is null since the job is `MANAGER`.

The `comm` values from the data file for employees `PETERSON`, `WARREN`, `ARNOLDS`, and `MAXWELL` are all loaded into the `comm` column of the `emp` table since these employees are either `SALESMAN` or members of department `30`.

The `comm` value of `2000.00` in the data file for employee `JACKSON` is ignored and the `comm` column of the `emp` table set to null since this employee is neither a `SALESMAN` nor is a member of department `30`.

**SELECT Statement in a Field Expression**

The following example uses a `SELECT` statement in the expression of the field definition to return the value to be loaded into the column.

```
LOAD DATA  
INFILE  'emp_fixed.dat'  
BADFILE 'emp_fixed.bad'
```

```

APPEND
INTO TABLE emp
    TRAILING NULLCOLS
(
    empno      POSITION (1:4),
    ename      POSITION (5:14),
    job        POSITION (15:23) "(SELECT dname FROM dept WHERE deptno =
:deptno)",
    mgr        POSITION (24:27),
    hiredate   POSITION (28:38),
    sal        POSITION (39:46),
    deptno    POSITION (47:48),
    comm      POSITION (49:56)
)

```

The content of the `dept` table used in the `SELECT` statement is the following:

```
SELECT * FROM dept;
```

deptno	dname	loc
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO
40	OPERATIONS	BOSTON

(4 rows)

The following is the corresponding data file:

```

9101ROGERS CLERK 790217-DEC-10 1980.0020
9102PETERSON SALESMAN 769820-DEC-10 2600.0030 2300.00
9103WARREN SALESMAN 769822-DEC-10 5250.0030 2500.00
9104JONES, JR. MANAGER 783902-APR-09 7975.0020

```

The resulting rows in the table appear as follows:

```
SELECT * FROM emp WHERE empno > 9100;
```

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno
9101	ROGERS	RESEARCH	7902	17-DEC-10 00:00:00	1980.00		20
9102	PETERSON	SALES	7698	20-DEC-10 00:00:00	2600.00	2300.00	30
9103	WARREN	SALES	7698	22-DEC-10 00:00:00	5250.00	2500.00	30
9104	JONES, JR.	RESEARCH	7839	02-APR-09 00:00:00	7975.00		20

(4 rows)

## Note

The `job` column contains the value from the `dname` column of the `dept` table returned by the `SELECT` statement instead of the job name from the data file.

## Multiple INTO TABLE Clauses

The following example illustrates the use of multiple `INTO TABLE` clauses. For this example, two empty tables are created with the same data definition as the `emp` table. The following `CREATE TABLE` commands create these two empty tables, while inserting no rows from the original `emp` table:

```
CREATE TABLE emp_research AS SELECT * FROM emp WHERE deptno = 99;
CREATE TABLE emp_sales AS SELECT * FROM emp WHERE deptno = 99;
```

The following control file contains two `INTO TABLE` clauses. Also note that there is no `APPEND` clause so the default operation of `INSERT` is used, which requires that tables `emp_research` and `emp_sales` be empty.

```
LOAD DATA
INFILE    'emp_multitbl.dat'
BADFILE   'emp_multitbl.bad'
DISCARDFILE 'emp_multitbl.dsc'
INTO TABLE emp_research
WHEN (47:48) = '20'
TRAILING NULLCOLS
(
    empno    POSITION (1:4),
    ename    POSITION (5:14),
    job      POSITION (15:23),
    mgr      POSITION (24:27),
    hiredate  POSITION (28:38),
    sal      POSITION (39:46),
    deptno   CONSTANT '20',
    comm     POSITION (49:56)
)
INTO TABLE emp_sales
WHEN (47:48) = '30'
TRAILING NULLCOLS
(
    empno    POSITION (1:4),
    ename    POSITION (5:14),
    job      POSITION (15:23),
    mgr      POSITION (24:27),
    hiredate  POSITION (28:38),
    sal      POSITION (39:46),
    deptno   CONSTANT '30',
    comm     POSITION (49:56) "ROUND(:comm + (:sal * .25), 0)"
)
```

The `WHEN` clauses specify that when the field designated by columns 47 thru 48 contains `20`, the record is inserted into the `emp_research` table and when that same field contains `30`, the record is inserted into the `emp_sales` table. If neither condition is true, the record is written to the discard file named `emp_multitbl.dsc`.

The `CONSTANT` clause is given for column `deptno` so the specified constant value is inserted into `deptno` for each record. When the `CONSTANT` clause is used, it must be the only clause in the field definition other than the column name to which the constant value is assigned.

Finally, column `comm` of the `emp_sales` table is assigned a SQL expression. Column names may be referenced in the expression by prefixing the column name with a colon character `(:)`.

The following is the corresponding data file:

```
9101ROGERS CLERK 790217-DEC-10 1980.0020
9102PETERSON SALESMAN 769820-DEC-10 2600.0030 2300.00
9103WARREN SALESMAN 769822-DEC-10 5250.0030 2500.00
9104JONES, JR. MANAGER 783902-APR-09 7975.0020
9105ARNOLDS CLERK 778213-SEP-10 3750.0010
9106JACKSON ANALYST 756603-JAN-11 4500.0040
```

Since the records for employees **ARNOLDS** and **JACKSON** contain **10** and **40** in columns 47 thru 48, which do not satisfy any of the **WHEN** clauses, EDB\*Loader writes these two records to the discard file, **emp\_multitbl.dsc**, whose content is shown by the following:

```
9105ARNOLDS CLERK 778213-SEP-10 3750.0010
9106JACKSON ANALYST 756603-JAN-11 4500.0040
```

The following are the rows loaded into the **emp\_research** and **emp\_sales** tables:

```
SELECT * FROM emp_research;
```

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno
9101	ROGERS	CLERK	7902	17-DEC-10 00:00:00	1980.00		20.00
9104	JONES, JR.	MANAGER	7839	02-APR-09 00:00:00	7975.00		20.00

(2 rows)

```
SELECT * FROM emp_sales;
```

empno	ename	job	mgr	hiredate	sal	comm	deptno
9102	PETERSON	SALESMAN	7698	20-DEC-10 00:00:00	2600.00	2950.00	30.00
9103	WARREN	SALESMAN	7698	22-DEC-10 00:00:00	5250.00	3813.00	30.00

(2 rows)

## Invoking EDB\*Loader

You must have superuser privileges to run EDB\*Loader. Use the following command to invoke EDB\*Loader from the command line:

```
edbldr [ -d <dbname> ] [ -p <port> ] [ -h <host> ]
[ USERID={<username/password> | <username>/ | <username> | / } ]
[ { -c | connstr= } <CONNECTION_STRING> ]
  CONTROL=<control_file>
[ DATA=<data_file> ]
[ BAD=<bad_file>]
[ DISCARD=<discard_file> ]
[ DISCARDMAX=<max_discard_recs> ]
[ HANDLE_CONFLICTS={ FALSE | TRUE } ]
[ LOG=<log_file> ]
[ PARFILE=<param_file> ]
[ DIRECT={ FALSE | TRUE } ]
[ FREEZE={ FALSE | TRUE } ]
[ ERRORS=<error_count> ]
[ PARALLEL={ FALSE | TRUE } ]
```

```
[ ROWS=<n> ]
[ SKIP=<skip_count> ]
[ SKIP_INDEX_MAINTENANCE={ FALSE | TRUE } ]
[ edb_resource_group=<group_name> ]
```

## Description

If the `-d` option, the `-p` option, or the `-h` option are omitted, the defaults for the database, port, and host are determined according to the same rules as other Advanced Server utility programs such as `edb-psql`, for example.

Any parameter listed in the preceding syntax diagram except for the `-d` option, `-p` option, `-h` option, and the `PARFILE` parameter may be specified in a *parameter file*. The parameter file is specified on the command line when `edbldr` is invoked using `PARFILE=param_file`. Some parameters may be specified in the `OPTIONS` clause in the control file. For more information on the control file, see [Building the EDB\\*Loader Control File](#).

The specification of `control_file`, `data_file`, `bad_file`, `discard_file`, `log_file`, and `param_file` may include the full directory path or a relative directory path to the file name. If the file name is specified alone or with a relative directory path, the file is assumed to exist (in the case of `control_file`, `data_file`, or `param_file`), or to be created (in the case of `bad_file`, `discard_file`, or `log_file`) relative to the current working directory from which `edbldr` is invoked.

### Note

The control file must exist in the character set encoding of the client where `edbldr` is invoked. If the client is in a different encoding than the database encoding, then the `PGCLIENTENCODING` environment variable must be set on the client to the client's encoding prior to invoking `edbldr`. This must be done to ensure character set conversion is properly done between the client and the database server.

The operating system account used to invoke `edbldr` must have read permission on the directories and files specified by `control_file`, `data_file`, and `param_file`.

The operating system account `enterprisedb` must have write permission on the directories where `bad_file`, `discard_file`, and `log_file` are to be written.

### Note

The file names for `control_file`, `data_file`, `bad_file`, `discard_file`, and `log_file` should include extensions of `.ctl`, `.dat`, `.bad`, `.dsc`, and `.log`, respectively. If the provided file name does not contain an extension, EDB\*Loader assumes the actual file name includes the appropriate aforementioned extension.

## Parameters

`dbname`

Name of the database containing the tables to be loaded.

`port`

Port number on which the database server is accepting connections.

`host`

IP address of the host on which the database server is running.

`USERID={ username/password | username/ | username | / }`

EDB\*Loader connects to the database with `username`. `username` must be a superuser. `password` is the password for `username`.

If the `USERID` parameter is omitted, EDB\*Loader prompts for `username` and `password`. If `USERID=username/` is specified, then EDB\*Loader 1) uses the password file specified by environment variable `PGPASSFILE` if `PGPASSFILE` is set, or 2) uses the `.pgpass` password file (`pgpass.conf` on

Windows systems) if `PGPASSFILE` is not set. If `USERID=username` is specified, then EDB\*Loader prompts for `password`. If `USERID=/` is specified, the connection is attempted using the operating system account as the user name.

#### Note

The Advanced Server connection environment variables `PGUSER` and `PGPASSWORD` are ignored by EDB\*Loader. See the PostgreSQL core documentation for information on the `PGPASSFILE` environment variable and the password file.

#### `-c CONNECTION_STRING`

##### `connstr=CONNECTION_STRING`

The `-c` or `connstr=` option allows you to specify all the connection parameters supported by libpq. With this option, SSL connection parameters or other connection parameters supported by libpq can also be specified. If connection options such as `-d`, `-h`, `-p` or `userid=dbuser/dbpass` are provided separately, they may override the values provided via the `-c` or `connstr=` option.

#### `CONTROL=control_file`

`control_file` specifies the name of the control file containing EDB\*Loader directives. If a file extension is not specified, an extension of `.ctl` is assumed.

For more information on the control file, see [Building the EDB\\*Loader Control File](#).

#### `DATA=data_file`

`data_file` specifies the name of the file containing the data to be loaded into the target table. If a file extension is not specified, an extension of `.dat` is assumed. Specifying a `data_file` on the command line overrides the `INFILE` clause specified in the control file.

For more information about `data_file`, see [Building the EDB\\*Loader Control File](#).

#### `BAD=bad_file`

`bad_file` specifies the name of a file that receives input data records that cannot be loaded due to errors. Specifying a `bad_file` on the command line overrides any `BADFILE` clause specified in the control file.

For more information about `bad_file`, see [Building the EDB\\*Loader Control File](#).

#### `DISCARD=discard_file`

`discard_file` is the name of the file that receives input data records that do not meet any table's selection criteria. Specifying a `discard_file` on the command line overrides the `DISCARDFILE` clause in the control file.

For more information about `discard_file`, see [Building the EDB\\*Loader Control File](#).

#### `DISCARDMAX=max_discard_recs`

`max_discard_recs` is the maximum number of discarded records that may be encountered from the input data records before terminating the EDB\*Loader session. Specifying `max_discard_recs` on the command line overrides the `DISCARDMAX` or `DISCARDS` clause in the control file.

For more information about `max_discard_recs`, see [Building the EDB\\*Loader Control File](#).

#### `HANDLE_CONFLICTS={ FALSE | TRUE }`

If any record insertion fails due to a unique constraint violation, EDB\*Loader will abort the entire operation. You can instruct EDB\*Loader to instead move the duplicate record to the `BAD` file and continue processing by setting `HANDLE_CONFLICTS` to `TRUE`. This behavior will only apply if indexes are present. By default,

`HANDLE_CONFLICTS` is set to `FALSE`.

`HANDLE_CONFLICTS` set to `TRUE` is not supported with direct path loading; if set to `TRUE` when direct path loading, EDB\*Loader will throw an error.

`LOG=log_file`

`log_file` specifies the name of the file in which EDB\*Loader records the results of the EDB\*Loader session.

If the `LOG` parameter is omitted, EDB\*Loader creates a log file with the name `control_file_base.log` in the directory from which `edbldr` is invoked. `control_file_base` is the base name of the control file used in the EDB\*Loader session. The operating system account `enterprisedb` must have write permission on the directory where the log file is to be written.

`PARFILE=param_file`

`param_file` specifies the name of the file that contains command line parameters for the EDB\*Loader session. Any command line parameter listed in this section except for the `-d`, `-p`, and `-h` options, and the `PARFILE` parameter itself, can be specified in `param_file` instead of on the command line.

Any parameter given in `param_file` overrides the same parameter supplied on the command line before the `PARFILE` option. Any parameter given on the command line that appears after the `PARFILE` option overrides the same parameter given in `param_file`.

#### Note

Unlike other EDB\*Loader files, there is no default file name or extension assumed for `param_file`, though by Oracle SQL\*Loader convention, `.par` is typically used, but not required, as an extension.

`DIRECT= { FALSE | TRUE }`

If `DIRECT` is set to `TRUE` EDB\*Loader performs a direct path load instead of a conventional path load. The default value of `DIRECT` is `FALSE`.

You should not set `DIRECT=true` when loading the data into a replicated table. If you are using EDB\*Loader to load data into a replicated table and set `DIRECT=true`, indexes may omit rows that are in a table or may potentially contain references to rows that have been deleted. EnterpriseDB does not support direct inserts to load data into replicated tables.

For information about direct path loads, see [Direct Path Load](#).

`FREEZE= { FALSE | TRUE }`

Set `FREEZE` to `TRUE` to indicate that the data should be copied with the rows `frozen`. A tuple guaranteed to be visible to all current and future transactions is marked as frozen to prevent transaction ID wrap-around. For more information about frozen tuples, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/routine-vacuuming.html>

You must specify a data-loading type of `TRUNCATE` in the control file when using the `FREEZE` option. `FREEZE` is not supported for direct loading.

By default, `FREEZE` is `FALSE`.

`ERRORS=error_count`

`error_count` specifies the number of errors permitted before aborting the EDB\*Loader session. The default is 50.

`PARALLEL= { FALSE | TRUE }`

Set `PARALLEL` to `TRUE` to indicate that this EDB\*Loader session is one of a number of concurrent

EDB\*Loader sessions participating in a parallel direct path load. The default value of **PARALLEL** is **FALSE**.

When **PARALLEL** is **TRUE**, the **DIRECT** parameter must also be set to **TRUE**.

For more information about parallel direct path loads, see [Parallel Direct Path Load](#).

#### **ROWS=n**

**n** specifies the number of rows that EDB\*Loader will commit before loading the next set of **n** rows.

#### **SKIP=skip\_count**

Number of records at the beginning of the input data file that should be skipped before loading begins. The default is **0**.

#### **SKIP\_INDEX\_MAINTENANCE={ FALSE | TRUE }**

If set to **TRUE**, index maintenance is not performed as part of a direct path load, and indexes on the loaded table are marked as invalid. The default value of **SKIP\_INDEX\_MAINTENANCE** is **FALSE**.

During a parallel direct path load, target table indexes are not updated, and are marked as invalid after the load is complete.

You can use the **REINDEX** command to rebuild an index. For more information about the **REINDEX** command, see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-reindex.html>

#### **edb\_resource\_group=group\_name**

**group\_name** specifies the name of an EDB Resource Manager resource group to which the EDB\*Loader session is to be assigned.

Any default resource group that may have been assigned to the session (for example, a database user running the EDB\*Loader session who had been assigned a default resource group with the **ALTER ROLE ... SET edb\_resource\_group** command) is overridden by the resource group given by the **edb\_resource\_group** parameter specified on the **edbldr** command line.

## Examples

In the following example EDB\*Loader is invoked using a control file named **emp.ctl** located in the current working directory to load a table in database **edb**:

```
$ /usr/edb/as13/bin/edbldr -d edb USERID=enterprisedb/password
CONTROL=emp.ctl
EDB*Loader: Copyright (c) 2007-2020, EnterpriseDB Corporation.
```

Successfully loaded (4) records

In the following example, EDB\*Loader prompts for the user name and password since they are omitted from the command line. In addition, the files for the bad file and log file are specified with the **BAD** and **LOG** command line parameters.

```
$ /usr/edb/as13/bin/edbldr -d edb CONTROL=emp.ctl BAD=/tmp/emp.bad
LOG=/tmp/emp.log
Enter the user name : enterprisedb
Enter the password :
EDB*Loader: Copyright (c) 2007-2020, EnterpriseDB Corporation.
```

Successfully loaded (4) records

The following example runs EDB\*Loader with the same parameters as shown in the preceding example, but using a parameter file located in the current working directory. The **SKIP** and **ERRORS** parameters are altered from their defaults in the parameter file as well. The parameter file, **emp.par**, contains the following:

```
CONTROL=emp.ctl
BAD=/tmp/emp.bad
LOG=/tmp/emp.log
SKIP=1
ERRORS=10
```

EDB\*Loader is invoked with the parameter file as shown by the following:

```
$ /usr/edb/as13/bin/edbldr -d edb PARFILE=emp.par
Enter the user name : enterprisedb
Enter the password :
EDB*Loader: Copyright (c) 2007-2020, EnterpriseDB Corporation.

Successfully loaded (3) records
```

In the following example EDB\*Loader is invoked using a **connstr=** option using **emp.ctl** control file located in the current working directory to load a table in a database named **edb**:

```
$ /usr/edb/as13/bin/edbldr connstr=\"sslmode=verify-ca sslcompression=0
host=127.0.0.1 dbname=edb port=5444 user=enterprisedb\" CONTROL=emp.ctl
EDB*Loader: Copyright (c) 2007-2020, EnterpriseDB Corporation.
```

Successfully loaded (4) records

## Exit Codes

When EDB\*Loader exits, it will return one of the following codes:

Exit Code	Description
0	Indicates that all rows loaded successfully.
1	Indicates that EDB*Loader encountered command line or syntax errors, or aborted the load operation due to an unrecoverable error.
2	Indicates that the load completed, but some (or all) rows were rejected or discarded.
3	Indicates that EDB*Loader encountered fatal errors (such as OS errors). This class of errors is equivalent to the FATAL or PANIC severity levels of PostgreSQL errors.

## Direct Path Load

During a direct path load, EDB\*Loader writes the data directly to the database pages, which is then synchronized to disk. The insert processing associated with a conventional path load is bypassed, thereby resulting in a performance improvement.

Bypassing insert processing reduces the types of constraints that may exist on the target table. The following types of constraints are permitted on the target table of a direct path load:

- Primary key
- Not null constraints
- Indexes (unique or non-unique)

The restrictions on the target table of a direct path load are the following:

- Triggers are not permitted
- Check constraints are not permitted
- Foreign key constraints on the target table referencing another table are not permitted
- Foreign key constraints on other tables referencing the target table are not permitted
- The table must not be partitioned
- Rules may exist on the target table, but they are not executed

#### Note

Currently, a direct path load in EDB\*Loader is more restrictive than in Oracle SQL\*Loader. The preceding restrictions do not apply to Oracle SQL\*Loader in most cases. The following restrictions apply to a control file used in a direct path load:

- Multiple table loads are not supported. That is, only one `INTO TABLE` clause may be specified in the control file.
- SQL expressions may not be used in the data field definitions of the `INTO TABLE` clause.
- The `FREEZE` option is not supported for direct path loading.

To run a direct path load, add the `DIRECT=TRUE` option as shown by the following example:

```
$ /usr/edb/as13/bin/edbldr -d edb USERID=enterprisedb/password
CONTROL=emp.ctl DIRECT=TRUE
EDB*Loader: Copyright (c) 2007-2020, EnterpriseDB Corporation.
```

Successfully loaded (4) records

## Parallel Direct Path Load

The performance of a direct path load can be further improved by distributing the loading process over two or more sessions running concurrently. Each session runs a direct path load into the same table.

Since the same table is loaded from multiple sessions, the input records to be loaded into the table must be divided amongst several data files so that each EDB\*Loader session uses its own data file and the same record is not loaded more than once into the table.

The target table of a parallel direct path load is under the same restrictions as a direct path load run in a single session.

The restrictions on the target table of a direct path load are the following:

- Triggers are not permitted
- Check constraints are not permitted
- Foreign key constraints on the target table referencing another table are not permitted
- Foreign key constraints on other tables referencing the target table are not permitted
- The table must not be partitioned
- Rules may exist on the target table, but they are not executed

In addition, the `APPEND` clause must be specified in the control file used by each EDB\*Loader session.

To run a parallel direct path load, run EDB\*Loader in a separate session for each participant of the parallel direct path load. Invocation of each such EDB\*Loader session must include the `DIRECT=TRUE` and `PARALLEL=TRUE` parameters.

Each EDB\*Loader session runs as an independent transaction so if one of the parallel sessions aborts and rolls back its changes, the loading done by the other parallel sessions are not affected.

**Note:** In a parallel direct path load, each EDB\*Loader session reserves a fixed number of blocks in the target table

in a round-robin fashion. Some of the blocks in the last allocated chunk may not be used, and those blocks remain uninitialized. A subsequent use of the `VACUUM` command on the target table may show warnings regarding these uninitialized blocks such as the following:

```
WARNING: relation "emp" page 98264 is uninitialized --- fixing
```

```
WARNING: relation "emp" page 98265 is uninitialized --- fixing
```

```
WARNING: relation "emp" page 98266 is uninitialized --- fixing
```

This is an expected behavior and does not indicate data corruption.

Indexes on the target table are not updated during a parallel direct path load and are therefore marked as invalid after the load is complete. You must use the `REINDEX` command to rebuild the indexes.

The following example shows the use of a parallel direct path load on the `emp` table.

#### Note

If you attempt a parallel direct path load on the sample `emp` table provided with Advanced Server, you must first remove the triggers and constraints referencing the `emp` table. In addition the primary key column, `empno`, was expanded from `NUMBER(4)` to `NUMBER` in this example to allow for the insertion of a larger number of rows.

The following is the control file used in the first session:

```
LOAD DATA
INFILE '/home/user/loader/emp_parallel_1.dat'
APPEND
INTO TABLE emp
FIELDS TERMINATED BY ',' OPTIONALLY ENCLOSED BY ""
TRAILING NULLCOLS
(
    empno,
    ename,
    job,
    mgr,
    hiredate,
    sal,
    deptno,
    comm
)
```

The `APPEND` clause must be specified in the control file for a parallel direct path load.

The following shows the invocation of EDB\*Loader in the first session. The `DIRECT=TRUE` and `PARALLEL=TRUE` parameters must be specified.

```
$ /usr/edb/as13/bin/edbldr -d edb USERID=enterprisedb/password
CONTROL=emp_parallel_1.ctl DIRECT=TRUE PARALLEL=TRUE
WARNING: index maintenance will be skipped with PARALLEL load
EDB*Loader: Copyright (c) 2007-2020, EnterpriseDB Corporation.
```

The control file used for the second session appears as follows. Note that it is the same as the one used in the first session, but uses a different data file.

```
LOAD DATA
INFILE '/home/user/loader/emp_parallel_2.dat'
APPEND
```

```

INTO TABLE emp
FIELDS TERMINATED BY ',' OPTIONALLY ENCLOSED BY ""
TRAILING NULLCOLS
(
    empno,
    ename,
    job,
    mgr,
    hiredate,
    sal,
    deptno,
    comm
)

```

The preceding control file is used in a second session as shown by the following:

```

$ /usr/edb/as13/bin/edbldr -d edb USERID=enterprisedb/password
CONTROL=emp_parallel_2.ctl DIRECT=TRUE PARALLEL=TRUE
WARNING: index maintenance will be skipped with PARALLEL load
EDB*Loader: Copyright (c) 2007-2020, EnterpriseDB Corporation.

```

EDB\*Loader displays the following message in each session when its respective load operation completes:

```
Successfully loaded (10000) records
```

The following query shows that the index on the emp table has been marked as **INVALID**:

```
SELECT index_name, status FROM user_indexes WHERE table_name = 'EMP';
```

index_name	status
EMP_PK	INVALID

```
(1 row)
```

Note

**user\_indexes** is the view of indexes compatible with Oracle databases owned by the current user.

Queries on the **emp** table will not utilize the index unless it is rebuilt using the **REINDEX** command as shown by the following:

```
REINDEX INDEX emp_pk;
```

A subsequent query on **user\_indexes** shows that the index is now marked as **VALID**:

```
SELECT index_name, status FROM user_indexes WHERE table_name = 'EMP';
```

index_name	status
EMP_PK	VALID

```
(1 row)
```

## Remote Loading

EDB\*Loader supports a feature called *remote loading*. In remote loading, the database containing the table to be

loaded is running on a database server on a different host than from where EDB\*Loader is invoked with the input data source.

This feature is useful if you have a large amount of data to be loaded, and you do not want to create a large data file on the host running the database server.

In addition, you can use the standard input feature to pipe the data from the data source such as another program or script, directly to EDB\*Loader, which then loads the table in the remote database. This bypasses the process of having to create a data file on disk for EDB\*Loader.

Performing remote loading along with using standard input requires the following:

- The `edbldr` program must be installed on the client host on which it is to be invoked with the data source for the EDB\*Loader session.
  - The control file must contain the clause `INFILE 'stdin'` so you can pipe the data directly into EDB\*Loader's standard input. For more information, see [Building the EDB\\*Loader Control File](#) for information on the `INFILE` clause and the EDB\*Loader control file.
  - All files used by EDB\*Loader such as the control file, bad file, discard file, and log file must reside on, or are created on, the client host on which `edbldr` is invoked.
  - When invoking EDB\*Loader, use the `-h` option to specify the IP address of the remote database server. For more information, see [Invoking EDB\\*Loader](#) for information on invoking EDB\*Loader.
- Use the operating system pipe operator `(|)` or input redirection operator `(<)` to supply the input data to EDB\*Loader.

The following example loads a database running on a database server at `192.168.1.14` using data piped from a source named `datasource`.

```
datasource | ./edbldr -d edb -h 192.168.1.14 USERID=enterprisedb/password
CONTROL=remote.ctl
```

The following is another example of how standard input can be used:

```
./edbldr -d edb -h 192.168.1.14 USERID=enterprisedb/password
CONTROL=remote.ctl < datasource
```

## Updating a Table with a Conventional Path Load

You can use EDB\*Loader with a conventional path load to update the rows within a table, merging new data with the existing data. When you invoke EDB\*Loader to perform an update, the server searches the table for an existing row with a matching primary key:

- If the server locates a row with a matching key, it replaces the existing row with the new row.
- If the server does not locate a row with a matching key, it adds the new row to the table.

To use EDB\*Loader to update a table, the table must have a primary key. Please note that you cannot use EDB\*Loader to `UPDATE` a partitioned table.

To perform an `UPDATE`, use the same steps as when performing a conventional path load:

1. Create a data file that contains the rows you wish to `UPDATE` or `INSERT`.
2. Define a control file that uses the `INFILE` keyword to specify the name of the data file. For information about building the EDB\*Loader control file, see [Building the EDB\\*Loader Control File](#).
3. Invoke EDB\*Loader, specifying the database name, connection information, and the name of the control file. For information about invoking EDB\*Loader, see [Invoking EDB\\*Loader](#).

The following example uses the `emp` table that is distributed with the Advanced Server sample data. By default, the table contains:

```
edb=# select * from emp;
empno|ename | job | mgr |    hiredate | sal | comm | deptno
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
7369 |SMITH |CLERK | 7902 | 17-DEC-80 00:00:00 | 800.00 |   | 20
7499 |ALLEN |SALESMAN | 7698 | 20-FEB-81 00:00:00 | 1600.00 | 300.00 | 30
7521 |WARD |SALESMAN | 7698 | 22-FEB-81 00:00:00 | 1250.00 | 500.00 | 30
7566 |JONES |MANAGER | 7839 | 02-APR-81 00:00:00 | 2975.00 |   | 20
7654 |MARTIN|SALESMAN | 7698 | 28-SEP-81 00:00:00 | 1250.00 | 1400.00| 30
7698 |BLAKE |MANAGER | 7839 | 01-MAY-81 00:00:00 | 2850.00 |   | 30
7782 |CLARK |MANAGER | 7839 | 09-JUN-81 00:00:00 | 2450.00 |   | 10
7788 |SCOTT |ANALYST | 7566 | 19-APR-87 00:00:00 | 3000.00 |   | 20
7839 |KING |PRESIDENT|   | 17-NOV-81 00:00:00 | 5000.00 |   | 10
7844 |TURNER|SALESMAN | 7698 | 08-SEP-81 00:00:00 | 1500.00 | 0.00 | 30
7876 |ADAMS |CLERK | 7788 | 23-MAY-87 00:00:00 | 1100.00 |   | 20
7900 |JAMES |CLERK | 7698 | 03-DEC-81 00:00:00 | 950.00 |   | 30
7902 |FORD |ANALYST | 7566 | 03-DEC-81 00:00:00 | 3000.00 |   | 20
7934 |MILLER|CLERK | 7782 | 23-JAN-82 00:00:00 | 1300.00 |   | 10
(14 rows)
```

The following control file (`emp_update.ctl`) specifies the fields in the table in a comma-delimited list. The control file performs an `UPDATE` on the `emp` table:

```
LOAD DATA
INFILE 'emp_update.dat'
BADFILE 'emp_update.bad'
DISCARDFILE 'emp_update.dsc'
UPDATE INTO TABLE emp
FIELDS TERMINATED BY ","
(empno, ename, job, mgr, hiredate, sal, comm, deptno)
```

The data that is being updated or inserted is saved in the `emp_update.dat` file. `emp_update.dat` contains:

```
7521,WARD,MANAGER,7839,22-FEB-81 00:00:00,3000.00,0.00,30
7566,JONES,MANAGER,7839,02-APR-81 00:00:00,3500.00,0.00,20
7903,BAKER,SALESMAN,7521,10-JUN-13 00:00:00,1800.00,500.00,20
7904,MILLS,SALESMAN,7839,13-JUN-13 00:00:00,1800.00,500.00,20
7654,MARTIN,SALESMAN,7698,28-SEP-81 00:00:00,1500.00,400.00,30
```

Invoke EDB\*Loader, specifying the name of the database (`edb`), the name of a database superuser (and their associated password) and the name of the control file (`emp_update.ctl`):

```
edbldr -d edb userid=user_name/password control=emp_update.ctl
```

After performing the update, the `emp` table contains:

```
edb=# select * from emp;
empno|ename | job | mgr |    hiredate | sal | comm | deptno
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
7369 |SMITH |CLERK | 7902 | 17-DEC-80 00:00:00 | 800.00 |   | 20
7499 |ALLEN |SALESMAN | 7698 | 20-FEB-81 00:00:00 | 1600.00 | 300.00 | 30
7521 |WARD |MANAGER | 7839 | 22-FEB-81 00:00:00 | 3000.00 | 0.00 | 30
7566 |JONES |MANAGER | 7839 | 02-APR-81 00:00:00 | 3500.00 | 0.00 | 20
7654 |MARTIN|SALESMAN | 7698 | 28-SEP-81 00:00:00 | 1500.00 | 400.00| 30
7698 |BLAKE |MANAGER | 7839 | 01-MAY-81 00:00:00 | 2850.00 |   | 30
7782 |CLARK |MANAGER | 7839 | 09-JUN-81 00:00:00 | 2450.00 |   | 10
7788 |SCOTT |ANALYST | 7566 | 19-APR-87 00:00:00 | 3000.00 |   | 20
```

```

7839 |KING |PRESIDENT|    | 17-NOV-81 00:00:00 | 5000.00 |      | 10
7844 |TURNER|SALESMAN | 7698 | 08-SEP-81 00:00:00 | 1500.00 | 0.00 | 30
7876 |ADAMS |CLERK   | 7788 | 23-MAY-87 00:00:00 | 1100.00 |      | 20
7900 |JAMES |CLERK   | 7698 | 03-DEC-81 00:00:00 | 950.00 |      | 30
7902 |FORD  |ANALYST  | 7566 | 03-DEC-81 00:00:00 | 3000.00 |      | 20
7903 |BAKER |SALESMAN | 7521 | 10-JUN-13 00:00:00 | 1800.00 | 500.00 | 20
7904 |MILLS |SALESMAN | 7839 | 13-JUN-13 00:00:00 | 1800.00 | 500.00 | 20
7934 |MILLER|CLERK   | 7782 | 23-JAN-82 00:00:00 | 1300.00 |      | 10
(16 rows)

```

The rows containing information for the three employees that are currently in the `emp` table are updated, while rows are added for the new employees (`BAKER` and `MILLS`)

## 11.2 EDB Wrap

The EDB Wrap utility protects proprietary source code and programs (functions, stored procedures, triggers, and packages) from unauthorized scrutiny. The EDB Wrap program translates a file that contains SPL or PL/pgSQL source code (the plaintext) into a file that contains the same code in a form that is nearly impossible to read. Once you have the obfuscated form of the code, you can send that code to the PostgreSQL server and the server will store those programs in obfuscated form. While EDB Wrap does obscure code, table definitions are still exposed.

Everything you wrap is stored in obfuscated form. If you wrap an entire package, the package body source, as well as the prototypes contained in the package header and the functions and procedures contained in the package body are stored in obfuscated form.

If you wrap a `CREATE PACKAGE` statement, you hide the package API from other developers. You may want to wrap the package body, but not the package header so users can see the package prototypes and other public variables that are defined in the package body. To allow users to see what prototypes the package contains, use EDBWrap to obfuscate only the `CREATE PACKAGE BODY` statement in the `edbwrap` input file, omitting the `CREATE PACKAGE` statement. The package header source will be stored plaintext, while the package body source and package functions and procedures will be stored obfuscated.

!(images/epas\_tools\_utility\_edb\_wrap.png)

Once wrapped, source code and programs cannot be unwrapped or debugged. Reverse engineering is possible, but would be very difficult.

The entire source file is wrapped into one unit. Any `psql` meta-commands included in the wrapped file will not be recognized when the file is executed; executing an obfuscated file that contains a `psql` meta-command will cause a syntax error. `edbwrap` does not validate SQL source code -if the plaintext form contains a syntax error, `edbwrap` will not complain. Instead, the server will report an error and abort the entire file when you try to execute the obfuscated form.

### Using EDB\*Wrap to Obfuscate Source Code

EDB Wrap is a command line utility; it accepts a single input source file, obfuscates the contents and returns a single output file. When you invoke the `edbwrap` utility, you must provide the name of the file that contains the source code to obfuscate. You may also specify the name of the file where `edbwrap` will write the obfuscated form of the code. `edbwrap` offers three different command-line styles. The first style is compatible with Oracle's `wrap` utility:

```
edbwrap iname=<input_file> [oname= <output_file>]
```

The `iname=input_file` argument specifies the name of the input file; if `input_file` does not contain an extension, `edbwrap` will search for a file named `input_file.sql`

The `oname=output_file` argument (which is optional) specifies the name of the output file; if `output_file` does not contain an extension, `edbwrap` will append `.plb` to the name.

If you do not specify an output file name, `edbwrap` writes to a file whose name is derived from the input file name: `edbwrap` strips the suffix (typically `.sql`) from the input file name and adds `.plb`.

`edbwrap` offers two other command-line styles that may feel more familiar:

```
edbwrap --iname <input_file> [--oname <output_file>]
edbwrap -i <input_file> [-o <output_file>]
```

You may mix command-line styles; the rules for deriving input and output file names are identical regardless of which style you use.

Once `edbwrap` has produced a file that contains obfuscated code, you typically feed that file into the PostgreSQL server using a client application such as `edb-psql`. The server executes the obfuscated code line by line and stores the source code for SPL and PL/pgSQL programs in wrapped form.

In summary, to obfuscate code with EDB Wrap, you:

1. Create the source code file.
2. Invoke EDB Wrap to obfuscate the code.
3. Import the file as if it were in plaintext form.

The following sequence demonstrates `edbwrap` functionality.

First, create the source code for the `list_emp` procedure (in plaintext form):

```
[bash] cat listemp.sql
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE list_emp
IS
    v_empno      NUMBER(4);
    v_ename      VARCHAR2(10);
    CURSOR emp_cur IS
        SELECT empno, ename FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_cur;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO  ENAME');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- -----');
    LOOP
        FETCH emp_cur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
        EXIT WHEN emp_cur%NOTFOUND;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || ' ' || v_ename);
    END LOOP;
    CLOSE emp_cur;
END;
/
```

You can import the `list_emp` procedure with a client application such as `edb-psql`:

```
[bash] edb-psql edb
Welcome to edb-psql 8.4.3.2, the EnterpriseDB interactive terminal.
Type: \copyright for distribution terms
\h for help with SQL commands
\? for help with edb-psql commands
\g or terminate with semicolon to execute query
```

```
\q to quit
edb=# \i listemp.sql
CREATE PROCEDURE
```

You can view the plaintext source code (stored in the server) by examining the `pg_proc` system table:

```
edb=# SELECT prosrc FROM pg_proc WHERE proname = 'list_emp';
      prosrc
-----
```

```
v_empno      NUMBER(4);
v_ename      VARCHAR2(10);
CURSOR emp_cur IS
    SELECT empno, ename FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_cur;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO    ENAME');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----  -----');
    LOOP
        FETCH emp_cur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
        EXIT WHEN emp_cur%NOTFOUND;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_empno || '    ' || v_ename);
    END LOOP;
    CLOSE emp_cur;
END
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# quit
```

Next, obfuscate the plaintext file with EDB Wrap:

```
[bash] edbwrap -i listemp.sql
EDB*Wrap Utility: Release 8.4.3.2
```

Copyright (c) 2004-2020 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Using encoding UTF8 for input  
Processing listemp.sql to listemp.plb

Examining the contents of the output file (listemp.plb) file reveals  
that the code is obfuscated:

```
[bash] cat listemp.plb
$_EDBwrapped_$
UTF8
d+6DL30RVaGjYMIzkuoSzAQgtBw7MhYFuAFkBsfYfhdJ0rjwBv+bHr1FCyH6j9SgH
movU+bYI+jR+hR2jbzq3sovHKEyZIp9y3/GckbQgualRhIlGpyWfE0dltDUpkYRLN
/OUXmk0/P4H6EI98sAHevGDhOWI+58DjJ44qhZ+l5NNEVxbWDztpb/s5sdx4660qQ
Ozx3/gh8VkqS2JbcxYMpjmrwVr6fAxfb68MI9mW2HI7fNtxcb5kjSzXvfWR2XYzJf
KFNrEhbL1DTVISEC5wE6lGlwhYvXOf22m1R2IFns0MtF9fwcnBWAs1YqjR00j6+fc
er/f/efAFh4=
$_EDBwrapped_$_
```

You may notice that the second line of the wrapped file contains an encoding name (in this case, the encoding is UTF8). When you obfuscate a file, edbwrap infers the encoding of the input file by examining the locale. For example, if you are running edbwrap while your locale is set to `en_US.utf8`, edbwrap assumes that the input file is

encoded in UTF8. Be sure to examine the output file after running `edbwrap`; if the locale contained in the wrapped file does not match the encoding of the input file, you should change your locale and rewrap the input file.

You can import the obfuscated code into the PostgreSQL server using the same tools that work with plaintext code:

```
[bash] edb-psql edb
Welcome to edb-psql 8.4.3.2, the EnterpriseDB interactive terminal.
Type: \copyright for distribution terms
\h for help with SQL commands
\? for help with edb-psql commands
\g or terminate with semicolon to execute query
\q to quit
```

```
edb=# \i listemp.plb
CREATE PROCEDURE
```

Now, the `pg_proc` system table contains the obfuscated code:

```
edb=# SELECT prosrc FROM pg_proc WHERE proname = 'list_emp';
      prosrc
-----
$_EDBwrapped_$
UTF8
dw4B9Tz69J3WOsY0GgYJQa+G2sLZ3IOyxS8pDyuOTFuiYe/ExiEatwwG3h3tdJk
ea+Alp35dS/4idbN8wpegM3s994dQ3R97NgNHfvTQnO2vtd4wQtsQ/Zc4v4Lhfj
nIV+A4UpHI5oQEnXeAch2LcRD87hkU0uo1ESeQV8IrXaj9BsZr+ueROnwhGs/Ec
pva/tRV4m9RusFn0wyr38u4Z8w4dfnPW184Y3o6lt4b3aH07WxTkWrMLmOZW1jJ
Nu6u4o+ezO64G9QKPazgehsv4JB9NQnuocActfDSPMY7R7anmgw
$_EDBwrapped_$
(1 row)
```

Invoke the obfuscated code in the same way that you would invoke the plaintext form:

```
edb=# exec list_emp;
EMPNO    ENAME
-----
7369    SMITH
7499    ALLEN
7521    WARD
7566    JONES
7654    MARTIN
7698    BLAKE
7782    CLARK
7788    SCOTT
7839    KING
7844    TURNER
7876    ADAMS
7900    JAMES
7902    FORD
7934    MILLER
```

```
EDB-SPL Procedure successfully completed
edb=# quit
```

When you use `pg_dump` to back up a database, wrapped programs remain obfuscated in the archive file.

Be aware that audit logs produced by the Postgres server will show wrapped programs in plaintext form. Source code is also displayed in plaintext in SQL error messages generated during the execution of a program.

#### Note

At this time, the bodies of the objects created by the following statements will not be stored in obfuscated form:

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] TYPE type_name AS OBJECT
CREATE [OR REPLACE] TYPE type_name UNDER type_name
CREATE [OR REPLACE] TYPE BODY type_name
```

## 11.3 Dynamic Runtime Instrumentation Tools Architecture (DRITA)

The Dynamic Runtime Instrumentation Tools Architecture (DRITA) allows a DBA to query catalog views to determine the *wait events* that affect the performance of individual sessions or the system as a whole. DRITA records the number of times each event occurs as well as the time spent waiting; you can use this information to diagnose performance problems. DRITA offers this functionality, while consuming minimal system resources.

DRITA compares *snapshots* to evaluate the performance of a system. A snapshot is a saved set of system performance data at a given point in time. Each snapshot is identified by a unique ID number; you can use snapshot ID numbers with DRITA reporting functions to return system performance statistics.

### Configuring and Using DRITA

Advanced Server's `postgresql.conf` file includes a configuration parameter named `timed_statistics` that controls the collection of timing data. The valid parameter values are `TRUE` or `FALSE`; the default value is `FALSE`.

This is a dynamic parameter which can be modified in the `postgresql.conf` file, or while a session is in progress. To enable DRITA, you must either:

Modify the `postgresql.conf` file, setting the `timed_statistics` parameter to `TRUE`.

or

Connect to the server with the EDB-PSQL client, and invoke the command:

```
SET timed_statistics = TRUE
```

After modifying the `timed_statistics` parameter, take a starting snapshot. A snapshot captures the current state of each timer and event counter. The server will compare the starting snapshot to a later snapshot to gauge system performance.

Use the `edbssnap()` function to take the beginning snapshot:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edbsnap();
edbsnap
-----
```

```
Statement processed.
(1 row)
```

Then, run the workload that you would like to evaluate; when the workload has completed (or at a strategic point during the workload), take another snapshot:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edbsnap();
edbsnap
-----
```

```
Statement processed.
(1 row)
```

You can capture multiple snapshots during a session. Then, use the DRITA functions and reports to manage and compare the snapshots to evaluate performance information.

## DRITA Functions

You can use DRITA functions to gather wait information and manage snapshots. DRITA functions are fully supported by Advanced Server 13 whether your installation is made compatible with Oracle databases or is made in PostgreSQL-compatible mode.

### get\_snaps()

The `get_snaps()` function returns a list of the current snapshots. The signature is:

```
get_snaps()
```

The following example demonstrates using the `get_snaps()` function to display a list of snapshots:

```
SELECT * FROM get_snaps();
get_snaps
-----
```

```
1 25-JUL-18 09:49:04.224597
2 25-JUL-18 09:49:09.310395
3 25-JUL-18 09:49:14.378728
4 25-JUL-18 09:49:19.448875
5 25-JUL-18 09:49:24.52103
6 25-JUL-18 09:49:29.586889
7 25-JUL-18 09:49:34.655529
8 25-JUL-18 09:49:39.723095
9 25-JUL-18 09:49:44.788392
10 25-JUL-18 09:49:49.855821
11 25-JUL-18 09:49:54.919954
12 25-JUL-18 09:49:59.987707
(12 rows)
```

The first column in the result list displays the snapshot identifier; the second column displays the date and time that the snapshot was captured.

### sys\_rpt()

The `sys_rpt()` function returns system wait information. The signature is:

```
sys_rpt(<beginning_id>, <ending_id>, <top_n>)
```

## Parameters

### beginning\_id

`beginning_id` is an integer value that represents the beginning session identifier.

### ending\_id

`ending_id` is an integer value that represents the ending session identifier.

### top\_n

`top_n` represents the number of rows to return

This example demonstrates a call to the `sys_rpt()` function:

```
SELECT * FROM sys_rpt(9, 10, 10);
          sys_rpt
```

WAIT NAME	COUNT	WAIT TIME	% WAIT
wal flush	8359	1.357593	30.62
wal write	8358	1.349153	30.43
wal file sync	8358	1.286437	29.02
query plan	33439	0.439324	9.91
db file extend	54	0.000585	0.01
db file read	31	0.000307	0.01
other llock acquire	0	0.000000	0.00
ProcArrayLock	0	0.000000	0.00
CLogControlLock	0	0.000000	0.00
(11 rows)			

The information displayed in the result set includes:

Column Name	Description
WAIT NAME	The name of the wait.
COUNT	The number of times that the wait event occurred.
WAIT TIME	The time of the wait event in seconds.
% WAIT	The percentage of the total wait time used by this wait for this session.

## sess\_rpt()

The `sess_rpt()` function returns session wait information. The signature is:

```
sess_rpt(<beginning_id>, <ending_id>, <top_n>)
```

## Parameters

### beginning\_id

`beginning_id` is an integer value that represents the beginning session identifier.

### ending\_id

`ending_id` is an integer value that represents the ending session identifier.

## top\_n

`top_n` represents the number of rows to return

The following example demonstrates a call to the `sess_rpt()` function:

```
SELECT * FROM sess_rpt(8, 9, 10);
```

sess_rpt					
ID	USER	WAIT NAME	COUNT	TIME	% WAIT SES %
<b>WAIT ALL</b>					
3501	enterprise	wal flush	8354	1.354958	30.61
30.61					
3501	enterprise	wal write	8354	1.348192	30.46
30.46					
3501	enterprise	wal file sync	8354	1.285607	29.04
29.04					
3501	enterprise	query plan	33413	0.436901	9.87
9.87					
3501	enterprise	db file extend	54	0.000578	0.01
0.01					
3501	enterprise	db file read	56	0.000541	0.01
0.01					
3501	enterprise	ProcArrayLock	0	0.000000	0.00
0.00					
3501	enterprise	CLogControlLock	0	0.000000	0.00
0.00					
(10 rows)					

The information displayed in the result set includes:

Column Name	Description
<code>ID</code>	The processID of the session.
<code>USER</code>	The name of the user incurring the wait.
<code>WAIT NAME</code>	The name of the wait event.
<code>COUNT</code>	The number of times that the wait event occurred.
<code>TIME</code>	The length of the wait event in seconds.
<code>% WAIT SES</code>	The percentage of the total wait time used by this wait for this session.
<code>% WAIT ALL</code>	The percentage of the total wait time used by this wait (for all sessions).

## sessid\_rpt()

The `sessid_rpt()` function returns session ID information for a specified backend. The signature is:

```
sessid_rpt(<beginning_id>, <ending_id>, <backend_id>)
```

### Parameters

`beginning_id`

`beginning_id` is an integer value that represents the beginning session identifier.

`ending_id`

`ending_id` is an integer value that represents the ending session identifier.

`backend_id`

`backend_id` is an integer value that represents the backend identifier.

The following code sample demonstrates a call to `sessid_rpt()`:

```
SELECT * FROM sessid_rpt(8, 9, 3501);
```

sessid_rpt					
<hr/>					
ID	USER	WAIT NAME	COUNT	TIME	% WAIT SES %
WAIT ALL					
3501	enterprise	CLogControlLock	0	0.000000	0.00
0.00					
3501	enterprise	ProcArrayLock	0	0.000000	0.00
0.00					
3501	enterprise	db file read	56	0.000541	0.01
0.01					
3501	enterprise	db file extend	54	0.000578	0.01
0.01					
3501	enterprise	query plan	33413	0.436901	9.87
9.87					
3501	enterprise	wal file sync	8354	1.285607	29.04
29.04					
3501	enterprise	wal write	8354	1.348192	30.46
30.46					
3501	enterprise	wal flush	8354	1.354958	30.61
30.61					
(10 rows)					

The information displayed in the result set includes:

Column Name	Description
<code>ID</code>	The process ID of the wait.
<code>USER</code>	The name of the user that owns the session.
<code>WAIT NAME</code>	The name of the wait event.
<code>COUNT</code>	The number of times that the wait event occurred.
<code>TIME</code>	The length of the wait in seconds.
<code>% WAIT SES</code>	The percentage of the total wait time used by this wait for this session.
<code>% WAIT ALL</code>	The percentage of the total wait time used by this wait (for all sessions).

## `sesshist_rpt()`

The `sesshist_rpt()` function returns session wait information for a specified backend. The signature is:

`sesshist_rpt(<snapshot_id>, <session_id>)`

## Parameters

`snapshot_id`

  | `snapshot_id` is an integer value that identifies the snapshot.

`session_id`

  | `session_id` is an integer value that represents the session.

The following example demonstrates a call to the `sesshist_rpt()` function:

### Note

The following example has been shortened; over 1300 rows were actually generated.

```
SELECT * FROM sesshist_rpt (9, 3501);
          sesshist_rpt
-----
-----
```

ID	USER	SEQ	WAIT	NAME	ELAPSED	File	Name	#
of Blk								
Sum of Blks								
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	N/A		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	edb_password_history		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	edb_password_history		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	edb_password_history		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	edb_profile		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	edb_profile_name_ind		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	edb_profile_oid_inde		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	edb_profile_password		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	edb_resource_group		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	edb_resource_group_n		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	edb_resource_group_o		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	pg_attribute		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	pg_attribute_relid_a		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	pg_attribute_relid_a		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	pg_auth_members		
0	0							
3501	enterprise	1	query plan	13	0	pg_auth_members_memb		

0	0				
3501	enterprise 1	query plan	13	0	pg_auth_members_role
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	N/A
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	edb_password_history
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	edb_password_history
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	edb_password_history
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	edb_profile
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	edb_profile_name_ind
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	edb_profile_oid_inde
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	edb_profile_password
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	edb_resource_group
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	edb_resource_group_n
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	edb_resource_group_o
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	pg_attribute
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	pg_attribute_relid_a
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	pg_attribute_relid_a
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	pg_auth_members
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	pg_auth_members_memb
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 2	wal flush	149	0	pg_auth_members_role
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	N/A
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	edb_password_history
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	edb_password_history
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	edb_password_history
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	edb_profile
0	0	.	.	.	.
3501	enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	edb_profile_name_ind
0	0	.	.	.	.

3501 enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	edb_profile_oid_index
0 0				
3501 enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	edb_profile_password
0 0				
3501 enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	edb_resource_group
0 0				
3501 enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	edb_resource_group_n
0 0				
3501 enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	edb_resource_group_o
0 0				
3501 enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	pg_attribute
0 0				
3501 enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	pg_attribute_relid_a
0 0				
3501 enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	pg_attribute_relid_a
0 0				
3501 enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	pg_auth_members
0 0				
3501 enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	pg_auth_members_memb
0 0				
3501 enterprise 3	wal write	148	0	pg_auth_members_role
0 0				
	.			
	.			
3501 enterprise 24	wal write	130	0	pg_toast_1255
0 0				
3501 enterprise 24	wal write	130	0	pg_toast_1255_index
0 0				
3501 enterprise 24	wal write	130	0	pg_toast_2396
0 0				
3501 enterprise 24	wal write	130	0	pg_toast_2396_index
0 0				
3501 enterprise 24	wal write	130	0	pg_toast_2964
0 0				
3501 enterprise 24	wal write	130	0	pg_toast_2964_index
0 0				
3501 enterprise 24	wal write	130	0	pg_toast_3592
0 0				
3501 enterprise 24	wal write	130	0	pg_toast_3592_index
0 0				
3501 enterprise 24	wal write	130	0	pg_type
0 0				
3501 enterprise 24	wal write	130	0	pg_type_oid_index
0 0				
3501 enterprise 24	wal write	130	0	pg_type_typname_nsp_
0 0				

(1304 rows)

The information displayed in the result set includes:

Column Name	Description
ID	The system-assigned identifier of the wait.
USER	The name of the user that incurred the wait.

SEQ	The sequence number of the wait event.
WAIT NAME	The name of the wait event.
ELAPSED	The length of the wait event in microseconds.
File	The rfilenode number of the file.
Name	If available, the name of the file name related to the wait event.
# of Blk	The block number read or written for a specific instance of the event .
Sum of Blks	The number of blocks read.

## purgesnap()

The `purgesnap()` function purges a range of snapshots from the snapshot tables. The signature is:

```
purgesnap(<beginning_id>, <ending_id>)
```

### Parameters

`beginning_id`

`beginning_id` is an integer value that represents the beginning session identifier.

`ending_id`

`ending_id` is an integer value that represents the ending session identifier.

`purgesnap()` removes all snapshots between `beginning_id` and `ending_id` (inclusive):

```
SELECT * FROM purgesnap(6, 9);
```

`purgesnap`

---

Snapshots in range 6 to 9 deleted.  
(1 row)

A call to the `get_snaps()` function after executing the example shows that snapshots `6` through `9` have been purged from the snapshot tables:

```
SELECT * FROM get_snaps();
get_snaps
```

---

1 25-JUL-18 09:49:04.224597  
2 25-JUL-18 09:49:09.310395  
3 25-JUL-18 09:49:14.378728  
4 25-JUL-18 09:49:19.448875  
5 25-JUL-18 09:49:24.52103  
10 25-JUL-18 09:49:49.855821  
11 25-JUL-18 09:49:54.919954  
12 25-JUL-18 09:49:59.987707  
(8 rows)

## truncsnap()

Use the `truncsnap()` function to delete all records from the snapshot table. The signature is:

## truncsnap()

For example:

```
SELECT * FROM truncsnap();
```

```
truncsnap
```

```
-----
```

```
Snapshots truncated.
```

```
(1 row)
```

A call to the `get_snaps()` function after calling the `truncsnap()` function shows that all records have been removed from the snapshot tables:

```
SELECT * FROM get_snaps();
```

```
get_snaps
```

```
-----
```

```
(0 rows)
```

## Simulating Statspack AWR Reports

The functions described in this section return information comparable to the information contained in an Oracle Statspack/AWR (Automatic Workload Repository) report. When taking a snapshot, performance data from system catalog tables is saved into history tables. The reporting functions listed below report on the differences between two given snapshots.

- `stat_db_rpt()`
- `stat_tables_rpt()`
- `statio_tables_rpt()`
- `stat_indexes_rpt()`
- `statio_indexes_rpt()`

The reporting functions can be executed individually or you can execute all five functions by calling the `edbreport()` function.

## edbreport()

The `edbreport()` function includes data from the other reporting functions, plus additional system information. The signature is:

```
edbreport(<beginning_id>, <ending_id>)
```

### Parameters

`beginning_id`

`beginning_id` is an integer value that represents the beginning session identifier.

`ending_id`

`ending_id` is an integer value that represents the ending session identifier.

The call to the `edbreport()` function returns a composite report that contains system information and the reports returned by the other statspack functions.

```
SELECT * FROM edbreport(9, 10);
edbreport
```

---

EnterpriseDB Report for database acctg      25-JUL-18  
 Version: PostgreSQL 13.0 (EnterpriseDB Advanced Server 13.0.0) on x86\_64-pc-linux-gnu,  
 compiled by gcc (GCC) 4.4.7 20120313 (Red Hat 4.4.7-18), 64-bit

Begin snapshot: 9 at 25-JUL-18 09:49:44.788392

End snapshot: 10 at 25-JUL-18 09:49:49.855821

Size of database acctg is 173 MB

Tablespace: pg\_default Size: 231 MB Owner: enterpriseedb  
 Tablespace: pg\_global Size: 719 kB Owner: enterpriseedb

Schema: pg\_toast\_temp\_1 Size: 0 bytes Owner: enterpriseedb

Schema: public Size: 158 MB Owner: enterpriseedb

The information displayed in the report introduction includes the database name and version, the current date, the beginning and ending snapshot date and times, database and tablespace details and schema information.

#### Top 10 Relations by pages

TABLE	RELPAGES
pgbench_accounts	16394
pgbench_history	391
pg_proc	145
pg_attribute	92
pg_depend	81
pg_collation	60
edb\$stat_all_indexes	46
edb\$statio_all_indexes	46
pg_description	44
edb\$stat_all_tables	29

The information displayed in the [Top 10 Relations by pages](#) section includes:

Column Name	Description
TABLE	The name of the table.
RELPAGES	The number of pages in the table.

#### Top 10 Indexes by pages

INDEX	RELPAGES
pgbench_accounts_pkey	2745
pg_depend_reference_index	68
pg_depend_depender_index	63
pg_procproname_args_nsp_index	53
pg_attribute_relid_attnam_index	25
pg_description_o_c_o_index	24
pg_attribute_relid_attnum_index	17

pg_proc_oid_index	14
-------------------	----

pg_collation_name_enc_nsp_index	12
---------------------------------	----

edb\$stat_idx_pk
------------------

10
----

The information displayed in the [Top 10 Indexes by pages](#) section includes:

Column Name	Description
INDEX	The name of the index.
RELPAGES	The number of pages in the index.

### Top 10 Relations by DML

SCHEMA	RELATION	UPDATES	DELETES	INSERTS
public	pgbench_accounts	117209	0	1000000
public	pgbench_tellers	117209	0	100
public	pgbench_branches	117209	0	10
public	pgbench_history	0	0	117209

The information displayed in the [Top 10 Relations by DML](#) section includes:

Column Name	Description
SCHEMA	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
RELATION	The name of the table.
UPDATES	The number of UPDATES performed on the table.
DELETES	The number of DELETES performed on the table.
INSERTS	The number of INSERTS performed on the table.

### DATA from pg\_stat\_database

DATABASE	NUMBACKENDS	XACT COMMIT	XACT ROLLBACK	BLKS READ	BLKS HIT	HIT RATIO
<hr/>						

acctg	0	8261	0	117	127985
	99.91				

The information displayed in the DATA from [pg\\_stat\\_database](#) section of the report includes:

Column Name	Description
DATABASE	The name of the database.
NUMBACKENDS	Number of backends currently connected to this database. This is the only column in this view that returns a value reflecting current state; all other columns return the accumulated values since the last reset.
XACT COMMIT	Number of transactions in this database that have been committed.
XACT ROLLBACK	Number of transactions in this database that have been rolled back.
BLKS READ	Number of disk blocks read in this database.
BLKS HIT	Number of times disk blocks were found already in the buffer cache (when a read was not necessary).
HIT RATIO	The percentage of times that a block was found in the shared buffer cache.

## DATA from pg\_buffercache

RELATION	BUFFERS
pgbench_accounts	16665
pgbench_accounts_pkey	2745
pgbench_history	751
edb\$statio_all_indexes	94
edb\$stat_all_indexes	94
edb\$stat_all_tables	60
edb\$statio_all_tables	56
edb\$session_wait_history	34
edb\$statio_idx_pk	17
pg_depend	17

The information displayed in the `DATA from pg_buffercache` section of the report includes:

Column Name	Description
RELATION	The name of the table.
BUFFERS	The number of shared buffers used by the relation.

### Note

In order to obtain the report for `DATA from pg_buffercache`, the `pg_buffercache` module must have been installed in the database. Perform the installation with the `CREATE EXTENSION` command.

For more information on the `CREATE EXTENSION` command, see the PostgreSQL Core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-createextension.html>

## DATA from pg\_stat\_all\_tables ordered by seq scan

SCHEMA	RELATION	SEQ SCAN	REL TUP READ
IDX SCAN			
IDX TUP READ	INS	UPD	DEL
<hr/>			
<hr/>			
public	pgbench_branches	8258	82580
0			
0	0 8258 0		
public	pgbench_tellers	8258	825800
0			
0	0 8258 0		
pg_catalog	pg_class	7	3969
92			
80	0 0 0		
pg_catalog	pg_index	5	950
31			
38	0 0 0		
pg_catalog	pg_namespace	4	144
5			
4	0 0 0		
pg_catalog	pg_database	2	12
7			

7	0	0	0		
pg_catalog	pg_am		1	1	
0					
0	0	0	0		
pg_catalog	pg_authid		1	10	
2					
2	0	0	0		
sys	callback_queue_table		0	0	
0					
0	0	0	0		
sys	edb\$session_wait_history		0	0	
0					
0	125	0	0		

The information displayed in the `DATA from pg_stat_all_tables ordered by seq scan` section includes:

Column Name	Description
<code>SCHEMA</code>	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
<code>RELATION</code>	The name of the table.
<code>SEQ SCAN</code>	The number of sequential scans initiated on this table.
<code>REL TUP READ</code>	The number of tuples read in the table.
<code>IDX SCAN</code>	The number of index scans initiated on the table.
<code>IDX TUP READ</code>	The number of index tuples read.
<code>INS</code>	The number of rows inserted.
<code>UPD</code>	The number of rows updated.
<code>DEL</code>	The number of rows deleted.

#### DATA from pg\_stat\_all\_tables ordered by rel tup read

SCHEMA	RELATION	SEQ SCAN	REL TUP READ	IDX SCAN
IDX TUP READ	INS	UPD	DEL	
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
public	pgbench_tellers	8258	825800	0
0	0	8258	0	
public	pgbench_branches	8258	82580	0
0	0	8258	0	
pg_catalog	pg_class	7	3969	92
80	0	0	0	
pg_catalog	pg_index	5	950	31
38	0	0	0	
pg_catalog	pg_namespace	4	144	5
4	0	0	0	
pg_catalog	pg_database	2	12	7
7	0	0	0	
pg_catalog	pg_authid	1	10	2
2	0	0	0	
pg_catalog	pg_am	1	1	0
0	0	0	0	
sys	callback_queue_table	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	
sys	edb\$session_wait_history	0	0	0
0	125	0	0	

The information displayed in the **DATA from pg\_stat\_all\_tables ordered by rel tup read** section includes:

Column Name	Description
SCHEMA	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
RELATION	The name of the table.
SEQ SCAN	The number of sequential scans performed on the table.
REL TUP READ	The number of tuples read from the table.
IDX SCAN	The number of index scans performed on the table.
IDX TUP READ	The number of index tuples read.
INS	The number of rows inserted.
UPD	The number of rows updated.
DEL	The number of rows deleted.

#### DATA from pg\_statio\_all\_tables

SCHEMA	RELATION	HEAP	HEAP	IDX	IDX
TOAST	TOAST	TIDX	TIDX		
		READ	HIT	READ	HIT
READ	HIT	READ	HIT		
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
public	pgbench_accounts	32	25016	0	49913
0	0	0	0		
public	pgbench_tellers	0	24774	0	0
0	0	0	0		
public	pgbench_branches	0	16516	0	0
0	0	0	0		
public	pgbench_history	53	8364	0	0
0	0	0	0		
pg_catalog	pg_class	0	199	0	187
0	0	0	0		
pg_catalog	pg_attribute	0	198	0	395
0	0	0	0		
pg_catalog	pg_proc	0	75	0	153
0	0	0	0		
pg_catalog	pg_index	0	56	0	33
0	0	0	0		
pg_catalog	pg_amop	0	48	0	56
0	0	0	0		
pg_catalog	pg_namespace	0	28	0	7
0	0	0	0		

The information displayed in the **DATA from pg\_statio\_all\_tables** section includes:

Column Name	Description
SCHEMA	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
RELATION	The name of the table.

**HEAP READ** | The number of heap blocks read.

**HEAP HIT** | The number of heap blocks hit.

**IDX READ** | The number of index blocks read.

**IDX HIT** | The number of index blocks hit.

**TOAST READ** | The number of toast blocks read.

**TOAST HIT** | The number of toast blocks hit.

**TIDX READ** | The number of toast index blocks read.

**TIDX HIT** | The number of toast index blocks hit.

#### DATA from pg\_stat\_all\_indexes

SCHEMA	RELATION	INDEX
IDX SCAN	IDX TUP READ	IDX TUP FETCH
<hr/>		
<hr/>		
public	pgbench_accounts	pgbench_accounts_pkey
16516	16679	16516
pg_catalog	pg_attribute	
pg_attribute_relid_attnum_index	196	402 402
pg_catalog	pg_proc	pg_proc_oid_index
70 70	70	
pg_catalog	pg_class	pg_class_oid_index
61 61	61	
pg_catalog	pg_class	
pg_class_relname_nsp_index		
31 19 19		
pg_catalog	pg_type	pg_type_oid_index
22 22	22	
pg_catalog	edb_policy	
edb_policy_object_name_index		
21 0	0	
pg_catalog	pg_amop	pg_amop_fam_strat_index
16 16	16	
pg_catalog	pg_index	pg_index_indexrelid_index
16 16	16	
pg_catalog	pg_index	pg_index_indrelid_index
15 22	22	

The information displayed in the **DATA from pg\_stat\_all\_indexes** section includes:

Column Name	Description
SCHEMA	The name of the schema in which the index resides.
RELATION	The name of the table on which the index is defined.
INDEX	The name of the index.
IDX SCAN	The number of indexes scans initiated on this index.
IDX TUP READ	Number of index entries returned by scans on this index
IDX TUP FETCH	Number of live table rows fetched by simple index scans using this index.

#### DATA from pg\_statio\_all\_indexes

SCHEMA	RELATION	INDEX
IDX BLKS READ	IDX BLKS HIT	
-----	-----	-----
public	pgbench_accounts	pgbench_accounts_pkey
0	49913	
pg_catalog	pg_attribute	
	pg_attribute_relid_attnum_index	0 395
sys	edb\$stat_all_indexes	edb\$stat_idx_pk
1	382	
sys	edb\$statio_all_indexes	edb\$statio_idx_pk
1	382	
sys	edb\$statio_all_tables	edb\$statio_tab_pk
2	262	
sys	edb\$stat_all_tables	edb\$stat_tab_pk
0	259	
sys	edb\$session_wait_history	session_waits_hist_pk
0	251	
pg_catalog	pg_proc	pg_proc_oid_index
0	142	
pg_catalog	pg_class	pg_class_oid_index
0	123	
pg_catalog	pg_class	pg_class_relname_nsp_index
0	63	

The information displayed in the **DATA from pg\_statio\_all\_indexes** section includes:

Column Name	Description
SCHEMA	The name of the schema in which the index resides.
RELATION	The name of the table on which the index is defined.
INDEX	The name of the index.

IDX BLKS READ	The number of index blocks read.
IDX BLKS HIT	The number of index blocks hit.

### System Wait Information

WAIT NAME	COUNT	WAIT TIME	% WAIT
wal flush	8359	1.357593	30.62
wal write	8358	1.349153	30.43
wal file sync	8358	1.286437	29.02
query plan	33439	0.439324	9.91
db file extend	54	0.000585	0.01
db file read	31	0.000307	0.01
other lwlock acquire	0	0.000000	0.00
ProcArrayLock	0	0.000000	0.00
CLogControlLock	0	0.000000	0.00

The information displayed in the [System Wait Information](#) section includes:

Column Name	Description
WAIT NAME	The name of the wait.
COUNT	The number of times that the wait event occurred.
WAIT TIME	The length of the wait time in seconds.
% WAIT	The percentage of the total wait time used by this wait for this session.

### Database Parameters from postgresql.conf

PARAMETER	SETTING	
CONTEXT	MINVAL	MAXVAL
<hr/>		
<hr/>		
allow_system_table_mods	off	
postmaster		
application_name	psql.bin	
user		
archive_command	(disabled)	
sighup		
archive_mode	off	
postmaster		
archive_timeout	0	
sighup	0	1073741823
array_nulls	on	
user		
authentication_timeout	60	
sighup	1	600
autovacuum	on	
sighup		
autovacuum_analyze_scale_factor	0.1	
sighup	0	100
autovacuum_analyze_threshold	50	
sighup	0	2147483647
autovacuum_freeze_max_age	200000000	
postmaster	100000	2000000000

```

autovacuum_max_workers            3
postmaster 1                     262143
autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age 4000000000
postmaster 10000                2000000000
autovacuum_naptime               60
sighup    1                      2147483
autovacuum_vacuum_cost_delay     20
sighup    -1                     100
.
.
.
```

The information displayed in the **Database Parameters from postgresql.conf** section includes:

Column Name	Description
PARAMETER	The name of the parameter.
SETTING	The current value assigned to the parameter.
CONTEXT	The context required to set the parameter value.
MINVAL	The minimum value allowed for the parameter.
MAXVAL	The maximum value allowed for the parameter.

## stat\_db\_rpt()

The signature is:

```
stat_db_rpt(<beginning_id>, <ending_id>)
```

### Parameters

`beginning_id`

`beginning_id` is an integer value that represents the beginning session identifier.

`ending_id`

`ending_id` is an integer value that represents the ending session identifier.

The following example demonstrates the `stat_db_rpt()` function:

```
SELECT * FROM stat_db_rpt(9, 10);
```

```
stat_db_rpt
```

---



---

DATA from pg\_stat\_database

```
DATABASE NUMBACKENDS XACT COMMIT XACT ROLLBACK BLKS READ BLKS HIT
HIT RATIO
```

---



---

```
acctg 0      8261      0       117      127985
99.91
(5 rows)
```

The information displayed in the DATA from `pg_stat_database` section of the report includes:

Column Name	Description
<code>DATABASE</code>	The name of the database.
<code>NUMBACKENDS</code>	Number of backends currently connected to this database. This is the only column in this view that returns a value reflecting current state; all other columns return the accumulated values since the last reset.
<code>XACT COMMIT</code>	The number of transactions in this database that have been committed.
<code>XACT ROLLBACK</code>	The number of transactions in this database that have been rolled back.
<code>BLKS READ</code>	The number of blocks read.
<code>BLKS HIT</code>	The number of blocks hit.
<code>HIT RATIO</code>	The percentage of times that a block was found in the shared buffer cache.

## stat\_tables\_rpt()

The signature is:

```
function_name(<beginning_id>, <ending_id>, <top_n>, <scope>)
```

### Parameters

`beginning_id`

`beginning_id` is an integer value that represents the beginning session identifier.

`ending_id`

`ending_id` is an integer value that represents the ending session identifier.

`top_n`

`top_n` represents the number of rows to return

`scope`

`scope` determines which tables the function returns statistics about. Specify `SYS`, `USER` or `ALL`:

- `SYS` indicates that the function should return information about system defined tables. A table is considered a system table if it is stored in one of the following schemas: `pg_catalog`, `information_schema`, or `sys`.
- `USER` indicates that the function should return information about user-defined tables.
- `ALL` specifies that the function should return information about all tables.

The `stat_tables_rpt()` function returns a two-part report. The first portion of the report contains:

```
SELECT * FROM stat_tables_rpt(8, 9, 10, 'ALL');
```

`stat_tables_rpt`

---

DATA from `pg_stat_all_tables` ordered by seq scan

SCHEMA	RELATION	SEQ SCAN	REL TUP READ
IDX SCAN			
IDX TUP READ	INS UPD DEL		

---

```
-----
-----
```

SCHEMA	RELATION	SEQ SCAN	REL TUP READ	IDX SCAN	IDX TUP READ	INS	UPD	DEL
public	pgbench_branches	8249	82490	0	0	0	0	0
public	pgbench_tellers	8249	824900	0	0	0	0	0
pg_catalog	pg_class	7	3969	92	0	0	0	0
pg_catalog	pg_index	5	950	80	0	0	0	0
pg_catalog	pg_namespace	4	144	31	0	0	0	0
pg_catalog	pg_am	1	1	38	0	0	0	0
pg_catalog	pg_authid	1	10	5	0	0	0	0
pg_catalog	pg_database	1	6	4	0	0	0	0
sys	callback_queue_table	0	0	2	0	0	0	0
sys	edb\$session_wait_history	0	0	3	0	0	0	0
0	125	0	0	3	0	0	0	0

The information displayed in the `DATA from pg_stat_all_tables ordered by seq scan` section includes:

Column Name	Description
SCHEMA	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
RELATION	The name of the table.
SEQ SCAN	The number of sequential scans on the table.
REL TUP READ	The number of tuples read from the table.
IDX SCAN	The number of index scans performed on the table.
IDX TUP READ	The number of index tuples read from the table.
INS	The number of rows inserted.
UPD	The number of rows updated.
DEL	The number of rows deleted.

The second portion of the report contains:

`DATA from pg_stat_all_tables ordered by rel tup read`

```
SCHEMA      RELATION      SEQ SCAN REL TUP READ IDX
SCAN
IDX TUP READ INS  UPD  DEL
```

```
-----  
public      pgbench_tellers      8249      824900   0  
0          0     8249  0  
public      pgbench_branches    8249      82490   0  
0          0     8249  0  
pg_catalog  pg_class           7        3969    92  
80         0     0     0  
pg_catalog  pg_index           5        950     31  
38         0     0     0  
pg_catalog  pg_namespace       4        144     5  
4          0     0     0  
pg_catalog  pg_authid          1        10     2  
2          0     0     0  
pg_catalog  pg_database        1        6     3  
3          0     0     0  
pg_catalog  pg_am             1        1     0  
0          0     0     0  
sys        callback_queue_table 0        0     0  
0          0     0     0  
sys        edb$session_wait_history 0        0     0  
0        125  0     0  
(29 rows)
```

The information displayed in the `DATA from pg_stat_all_tables ordered by rel tup read` section includes:

Column Name	Description
<code>SCHEMA</code>	The name of the schema in which the table resides.
<code>RELATION</code>	The name of the table.
<code>SEQ SCAN</code>	The number of sequential scans performed on the table.
<code>REL TUP READ</code>	The number of tuples read from the table.
<code>IDX SCAN</code>	The number of index scans performed on the table.
<code>IDX TUP READ</code>	The number of live rows fetched by index scans.
<code>INS</code>	The number of rows inserted.
<code>UPD</code>	The number of rows updated.
<code>DEL</code>	The number of rows deleted.

## statio\_tables\_rpt()

The signature is:

```
statio_tables_rpt(<beginning_id>, <ending_id>, <top_n>, <scope>)
```

### Parameters

`beginning_id`

| `beginning_id` is an integer value that represents the beginning session identifier.

`ending_id`

| `ending_id` is an integer value that represents the ending session identifier.

`top_n`

`top_n` represents the number of rows to return

### scope

scope determines which tables the function returns statistics about. Specify `SYS`, `USER` or `ALL`:

- `SYS` indicates that the function should return information about system defined tables. A table is considered a system table if it is stored in one of the following schemas: `pg_catalog`, `information_schema`, or `sys`.
- `USER` indicates that the function should return information about user-defined tables.
- `ALL` specifies that the function should return information about all tables.

The `statio_tables_rpt()` function returns a report that contains:

```
SELECT * FROM statio_tables_rpt(9, 10, 10, 'SYS');
```

statio\_tables\_rpt

---



---



---

-----

---



---

-----

DATA from pg\_statio\_all\_tables

---

SCHEMA TOAST TOAST	RELATION TIDX TIDX	HEAP READ READ READ	HEAP HIT READ READ	IDX HIT READ HIT	IDX
sys 0 0	edb\$stat_all_indexes 8 edb\$statio_all_index 8 edb\$statio_all_table 5 edb\$stat_all_tables 4 edb\$session_wait_his 2 edb\$session_waits 1 callback_queue_table 0 dual edb\$snap	18 18 12 10 6 1 0 0 0 0 0 0	1 1 2 0 0 4 0 0 0 0 0 0	382 382 262 259 251 12 0 0 0 0 0 0	

---



---



---

sys 0 0	edb\$stat_all_indexes 8 edb\$statio_all_index 8 edb\$statio_all_table 5 edb\$stat_all_tables 4 edb\$session_wait_his 2 edb\$session_waits 1 callback_queue_table 0 dual edb\$snap	18 18 12 10 6 1 0 0 0 0 0 0	1 1 2 0 0 4 0 0 0 0 0 0	382 382 262 259 251 12 0 0 0 0 0 0	
---------------	---	--	--	---	--

```
0      0      0
sys          edb$stat_database  0      2      0      7
0
0      0      0
(15 rows)
```

The information displayed in the `DATA from pg_statio_all_tables` section includes:

Column Name	Description
<code>SCHEMA</code>	The name of the schema in which the relation resides.
<code>RELATION</code>	The name of the relation.
<code>HEAP READ</code>	The number of heap blocks read.
<code>HEAP HIT</code>	The number of heap blocks hit.
<code>IDX READ</code>	The number of index blocks read.
<code>IDX HIT</code>	The number of index blocks hit.
<code>TOAST READ</code>	The number of toast blocks read.
<code>TOAST HIT</code>	The number of toast blocks hit.
<code>TIDX READ</code>	The number of toast index blocks read.
<code>TIDX HIT</code>	The number of toast index blocks hit.

## stat\_indexes\_rpt()

The signature is:

```
stat_indexes_rpt(<beginning_id>, <ending_id>, <top_n>, <scope>)
```

### Parameters

`beginning_id`

`beginning_id` is an integer value that represents the beginning session identifier.

`ending_id`

`ending_id` is an integer value that represents the ending session identifier.

`top_n`

`top_n` represents the number of rows to return

`scope`

`scope` determines which tables the function returns statistics about. Specify `SYS`, `USER` or `ALL`:

- `SYS` indicates that the function should return information about system defined tables. A table is considered a system table if it is stored in one of the following schemas: `pg_catalog`, `information_schema`, or `sys`.
- `USER` indicates that the function should return information about user-defined tables.
- `ALL` specifies that the function should return information about all tables.

The `stat_indexes_rpt()` function returns a report that contains:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM stat_indexes_rpt(9, 10, 10, 'ALL');
```

```
stat_indexes_rpt
```

--  
-----  
DATA from pg\_stat\_all\_indexes

SCHEMA IDX SCAN	RELATION IDX TUP READ	INDEX TUP FETCH
public	pgbench_accounts	pgbench_accounts_pkey
16516	16679	16516
pg_catalog	pg_attribute	
	pg_attribute_relid_attnum_index	196 402 402
pg_catalog	pg_proc	pg_proc_oid_index
70	70	70
pg_catalog	pg_class	pg_class_oid_index
61	61	61
pg_catalog	pg_class	pg_class_relname_nsp_index
31	19	19
pg_catalog	pg_type	pg_type_oid_index
22	22	22
pg_catalog	edb_policy	
	edb_policy_object_name_index	
21	0	0
pg_catalog	pg_amop	pg_amop_fam_strat_index
16	16	16
pg_catalog	pg_index	pg_index_indexrelid_index
16	16	16
pg_catalog	pg_index	pg_index_indrelid_index
15	22	22
(14 rows)		

The information displayed in the `DATA from pg_stat_all_indexes` section includes:

Column Name	Description
<code>SCHEMA</code>	The name of the schema in which the relation resides.
<code>RELATION</code>	The name of the relation.
<code>INDEX</code>	The name of the index.
<code>IDX SCAN</code>	The number of indexes scanned.
<code>IDX TUP READ</code>	The number of index tuples read.
<code>IDX TUP FETCH</code>	The number of index tuples fetched.

## statio\_indexes\_rpt()

The signature is:

```
statio_indexes_rpt(<beginning_id>, <ending_id>, <top_n>, <scope>)
```

### Parameters

`beginning_id`

`beginning_id` is an integer value that represents the beginning session identifier.

`ending_id`

`ending_id` is an integer value that represents the ending session identifier.

`top_n`

`top_n` represents the number of rows to return

`scope`

`scope` determines which tables the function returns statistics about. Specify `SYS`, `USER` or `ALL`:

- `SYS` indicates that the function should return information about system defined tables. A table is considered a system table if it is stored in one of the following schemas: `pg_catalog`, `information_schema`, or `sys`.
- `USER` indicates that the function should return information about user-defined tables.
- `ALL` specifies that the function should return information about all tables.

The `statio_indexes_rpt()` function returns a report that contains:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM statio_indexes_rpt(9, 10, 10, 'SYS');
```

```
statio_indexes_rpt
```

---

```
DATA from pg_statio_all_indexes
```

SCHEMA IDX BLKS READ	RELATION edb\$stat_all_indexes	INDEX edb\$stat_idx_pk
1	382	
sys	edb\$statio_all_indexes	edb\$statio_idx_pk
1	382	
sys	edb\$statio_all_tables	edb\$statio_tab_pk
2	262	
sys	edb\$stat_all_tables	edb\$stat_tab_pk
0	259	
sys	edb\$session_wait_history	
	session_waits_hist_pk	
0	251	
pg_catalog	pg_proc	pg_proc_oid_index
0	142	
pg_catalog	pg_class	pg_class_oid_index
0	123	
pg_catalog	pg_class	
pg_class_rename_nsp_index		
0	63	
pg_catalog	pg_type	pg_type_oid_index
0	45	

(14 rows)

The information displayed in the `DATA from pg_statio_all_indexes` report includes:

Column Name	Description
SCHEMA	The name of the schema in which the relation resides.
RELATION	The name of the table on which the index is defined.
INDEX	The name of the index.
IDX BLKS READ	The number of index blocks read.
IDX BLKS HIT	The number of index blocks hit.

## Performance Tuning Recommendations

To use DRITA reports for performance tuning, review the top five events in a given report, looking for any event that takes a disproportionately large percentage of resources. In a streamlined system, user I/O will probably make up the largest number of waits. Waits should be evaluated in the context of CPU usage and total time; an event may not be significant if it takes 2 minutes out of a total measurement interval of 2 hours, if the rest of the time is consumed by CPU time. The component of response time (CPU "work" time or other "wait" time) that consumes the highest percentage of overall time should be evaluated.

When evaluating events, watch for:

Event type	Description
Checkpoint waits	Checkpoint waits may indicate that checkpoint parameters need to be adjusted, ( <a href="#">checkpoint_segments</a> and <a href="#">checkpoint_timeout</a> ).
WAL-related waits	WAL-related waits may indicate <a href="#">wal_buffers</a> are under-sized.
SQL Parse waits	If the number of waits is high, try to use prepared statements.
db file random reads	If high, check that appropriate indexes and statistics exist.
db file random writes	If high, may need to decrease <a href="#">bgwriter_delay</a> .
btree random lock acquires	May indicate indexes are being rebuilt. Schedule index builds during less active time.

Performance reviews should also include careful scrutiny of the hardware, the operating system, the network and the application SQL statements.

## Event Descriptions

The following table lists the basic wait events that are displayed by DRITA.

Event Name	Description
add in shmem lock acquire	Obsolete/unused
bgwriter communication lock acquire	The bgwriter (background writer) process has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes messages between the bgwriter and a backend process.
btree vacuum lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the next available vacuum cycle ID.
buffer free list lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the list of free buffers (in shared memory).
checkpoint lock acquire	A server process has waited for the short-term lock that prevents simultaneous checkpoints.

Event Name	Description
checkpoint start lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the bgwriter checkpoint schedule.
clog control lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the commit log.
control file lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes write access to the control file (this should usually be a low number).
db file extend	A server process has waited for the operating system while adding a new page to the end of a file.
db file read	A server process has waited for the completion of a read (from disk).
db file write	A server process has waited for the completion of a write (to disk).
db file sync	A server process has waited for the operating system to flush all changes to disk.
first buf mapping lock acquire	The server has waited for a short-term lock that synchronizes access to the shared-buffer mapping table.
freespace lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the freespace map.
lwlock acquire	The server has waited for a short-term lock that has not been described elsewhere in this section.
multi xact gen lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the next available multi-transaction ID (when a SELECT...FOR SHARE statement executes).
multi xact member lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the multi-transaction member file (when a SELECT...FOR SHARE statement executes).
multi xact offset lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the multi-transaction offset file (when a SELECT...FOR SHARE statement executes).
oid gen lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the next available OID (object ID).
query plan	The server has computed the execution plan for a SQL statement.
rel cache init lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that prevents simultaneous relation-cache loads/unloads.
shmem index lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the shared-memory map.
sinval lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the cache invalidation state.
sql parse	The server has parsed a SQL statement.
subtrans control lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the subtransaction log.
tablespace create lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that prevents simultaneous CREATE TABLESPACE or DROP TABLESPACE commands.
two phase state lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the list of prepared transactions.
wal insert lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes write access to the write-ahead log. A high number may indicate that WAL buffers are sized too small.
wal write lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes write-ahead log flushes.
wal file sync	The server has waited for the write-ahead log to sync to disk (related to the wal_sync_method parameter which, by default, is 'fsync' - better performance can be gained by changing this parameter to open_sync).
wal flush	The server has waited for the write-ahead log to flush to disk.

Event Name	Description
wal write	The server has waited for a write to the write-ahead log buffer (expect this value to be high).
xid gen lock acquire	The server has waited for the short-term lock that synchronizes access to the next available transaction ID.

When wait events occur for lightweight locks, they are displayed by DRITA as well. A *lightweight lock* is used to protect a particular data structure in shared memory.

Certain wait events can be due to the server process waiting for one of a group of related lightweight locks, which is referred to as a *lightweight lock tranche*. Individual lightweight lock tranches are not displayed by DRITA, but their summation is displayed by a single event named `other lwlock acquire`.

For a list and description of lightweight locks displayed by DRITA, see Section 28.2, [The Statistics Collector](#) in the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/monitoring-stats.html>

Under Section 28.2.2. [Viewing Statistics](#), the lightweight locks are listed in Table 28-4 `wait_event` Description where the `Wait Event Type` column designates `LWLock`.

The following example displays lightweight locks `ProcArrayLock`, `CLogControlLock`, `WALBufMappingLock`, and `XidGenLock`.

```
postgres=# select * from sys_rpt(40,70,20);
          sys_rpt
-----
```

WAIT NAME	COUNT	WAIT TIME	% WAIT
wal flush	56107	44.456494	47.65
db file read	66123	19.543968	20.95
wal write	32886	12.780866	13.70
wal file sync	32933	11.792972	12.64
query plan	223576	4.539186	4.87
db file extend	2339	0.087038	0.09
other lwlock acquire	402	0.066591	0.07
ProcArrayLock	135	0.012942	0.01
CLogControlLock	212	0.010333	0.01
WALBufMappingLock	47	0.006068	0.01
XidGenLock	53	0.005296	0.01
(13 rows)			

DRITA also displays wait events that occur that are related to certain Advanced Server product features.

These Advanced Server feature specific wait events and the `other lwlock acquire` event are listed in the following table.

Event Name	Description
BulkLoadLock	The server has waited for access related to EDB*Loader.
EDBResourceManagerLock	The server has waited for access related to EDB Resource Manager.
other lwlock acquire	Summation of waits for lightweight lock tranches.

Advanced Server adds extended functionality to the open-source PostgreSQL database. The extended functionality supports database administration, enhanced SQL capabilities, database and application security, performance monitoring and analysis, and application development utilities. This guide documents those features that are exclusive to Advanced Server.

- **Enhanced Compatibility Features.** This section provides an overview of compatibility features supported by Advanced Server.
- **Database Administration.** This section contains information about features and tools that are helpful to the database administrator.
  - **Index Advisor** helps to determine the additional indexes needed on tables to improve application performance.
  - **SQL Profiler** locates and diagnoses poorly running SQL queries in applications.
  - **pgsnmpd** is an SNMP agent that returns hierarchical monitoring information regarding the current state of Advanced Server.
- **Security.** This section contains information about security features supported by Advanced Server.
  - **SQL/Protect** provides protection against SQL injection attacks.
  - **Virtual Private Database** provides fine-grained, row level access.
  - **sslutils** provides SSL certificate generation functions.
  - **Data redaction** provides protection against sensitive data exposure.
- **EDB Resource Manager.** This section contains information about the EDB Resource Manager feature, which provides the capability to control system resource usage by Advanced Server processes.
  - **Resource Groups** shows how to create and maintain the groups on which resource limits can be defined.
  - **CPU Usage Throttling** provides a method to control CPU usage by Advanced Server processes.
  - **Dirty Buffer Throttling** provides a method to control the dirty rate of shared buffers by Advanced Server processes.
- **The libpq C Library.** The **libpq C library** is the C application programming interface (API) language for Advanced Server.
- **The PL Debugger.** The **PL Debugger** is a graphically oriented debugging tool for PL/pgSQL.
- **Performance Analysis and Tuning.** This section contains the various tools for analyzing and improving application and database server performance.
  - **Dynatune** provides a quick and easy means for configuring Advanced Server depending upon the type of application usage.
  - **EDB wait states** provides a way to capture wait events and other data for performance diagnosis.
- **EDB Clone Schema.** This section contains information about the EDB Clone Schema feature, which provides the capability to copy a schema and its database objects within a single database or from one database to another database.
- **Enhanced SQL and Other Miscellaneous Features.** This section contains information on enhanced SQL functionality and other features that provide additional flexibility and convenience.
- **System Catalog Tables.** This section contains additional *system catalog tables* added for Advanced Server specific database objects.
- **Advanced Server Keywords.** This section contains information about the words that Advanced Server recognizes as keywords.

For information about the features that are shared by Advanced Server and PostgreSQL, see the PostgreSQL core documentation, available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/index.html>

## 12.1 What's New

The following features have been changed in EDB Postgres Advanced Server 12 to create Advanced Server 13:

- Advanced Server now supports the PARALLEL | NOPARALLEL clause in the CREATE TABLE, ALTER TABLE, CREATE INDEX, and ALTER INDEX commands to enable or disable parallelism on an index or a table. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's SQL Guide*.
- Advanced Server now supports USING INDEX ... create\_index\_statement clause in the CREATE TABLE, and ALTER TABLE commands to explicitly create an index on a table. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's SQL Guide*.
- Advanced Server introduces AUTOMATIC LIST PARTITIONING, which allows a database to automatically create a new partition if the partitioning key value does not correspond to an existing partition. For information, see the *Database Compatibility Table Partitioning Guide*.
- Advanced Server has added the STATS\_MODE function that takes an argument a set of values to return the most frequent input value. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Reference Guide*.
- Advanced Server has added the SYSDATE fuction that returns the timestamp without time zone. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Reference Guide*.
- Advanced Server has added smallint, init, bigint and numeric variants to the MEDIAN function. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Reference Guide*.
- Advanced Server has added support for the FM format in the TO\_NUMBER function. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Reference Guide*.
- Advanced Server now supports statement loqging and records the number of rows processed during bulk execution. For information, see `edb_log_every_bulk_value` under *Reporting and Logging / What to Log*.
- Advanced Server has added a new GUC to support Oracle-style display output by setting `dbms_output.serveroutput` to FALSE in the DBMS\_OUTPUT package. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Built-in Package Guide*.
- EDB\*Loader now supports HANDLE\_CONFLICTS parameter to move duplicate records to the BAD file. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Tools and Utilities Guide*.
- Advanced Server has added ALTER DIRECTORY ...OWNER TO command to change the owner of a directory. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's SQL Guide*.
- Advanced Server has added ALTER TRIGGER ...ON AUTHORIZATION command to change an owner of the trigger's implicit objects. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's SQL Guide*.
- EDB\*Loader now supports -c CONNECTION STRING or `connstr=CONNECTION_STRING` parameter, which allows you to specify the SSL parameters and the connection parameters supported by libpq. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Tools and Utilities Guide*.
- Advanced Server has added the TO\_TIMESTAMP\_TZ function that converts a timestamp formatted string to a TIMESTAMPTZ datatype. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Reference Guide*.
- Advanced Server has added additional fields to make logs consistent across both CSV and XML audit logs. For information, see *EDB Audit Logging*.
- Advanced Server has added a new GUC `edb_dblink_oci.rescan` to control the scan type for the remote statement. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's SQL Guide*.
- Advanced Server has added support for `utl_http.end_of_body` exception in the UTL\_HTTP package to handle error from `read_line`, `read_text`, and `read_raw` package procedures when no data is present in the response body. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Built-in Package Guide*.
- Advanced Server now supports the forward declaration of function or procedure inside a package body. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's SQL Guide*.
- Advanced Server introduces PARTITIONS, SUBPARTITIONS number to create automatic hash partitions at subpartition level and STORE IN clause to specify the tablespaces to store the autogenerated partitions or subpartitions. For information, see the *Database Compatibility Table Partitioning Guide*.
- Advanced Server has added support for AES192 and AES256 in the DBMS\_CRYPTO package for encrypting and decrypting data types. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Built-in Package Guide*.
- Advanced Server now supports pg\_hba.conf entry upon successful authentication with the server. For information, see *Modifying the pg\_hba.conf File*.
- Advanced Server has implemented WHEN condition inside COMPOUND TRIGGER to execute a trigger when specified conditions occur. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's SQL Guide* or *Database Compatibility Stored Procedural Language Guide*.
- Advanced Server has added support for column\_value\_long, define\_column\_long, and last\_error\_position in the DBMS\_SQL package to define and return a part of the LONG column. For information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Built-in Package Guide*.

## Limitations

The following table describes various hard limits of PostgreSQL. However, practical limits such as performance limitations or available disk space may apply before absolute hard limits are reached.

Item	database size number of databases relations per database	Upper Limit	Comment
relation size rows per table	1,431,650,303	unlimited 32 TB limited by the number of tuples that can fit onto 4,294,967,295 pages	with the default BLCKSZ of 8192 bytes
columns per table field size	1600	1 GB	further limited by tuple size fitting on a single page; see note below
identifier length	63 bytes		can be increased by recompiling PostgreSQL
indexes per table	unlimited		constrained by maximum relations per database
columns per index	32		can be increased by recompiling PostgreSQL
partition keys	32		can be increased by recompiling PostgreSQL

#### Note

The maximum number of columns for a table is further reduced as the tuple being stored must fit in a single 8192-byte heap page. For example, excluding the tuple header, a tuple made up of 1600 `int` columns would consume 6400 bytes and could be stored in a heap page, but a tuple of 1600 `bigint` columns would consume 12800 bytes and would therefore not fit inside a heap page. Variable-length fields of types such as `text`, `varchar`, and `char` can have their values stored out of line in the table's `TOAST` table when the values are large enough to require it. Only an 18-byte pointer must remain inside the tuple in the table's heap. For shorter length variable-length fields, either a 4-byte or 1-byte field header is used and the value is stored inside the heap tuple.

#### Note

Columns that have been dropped from the table also contribute to the maximum column limit. Moreover, although the dropped column values for newly created tuples are internally marked as null in the tuple's null bitmap, the null bitmap also occupies space.

## 12.1.1 Conventions Used in this Guide

The following is a list of conventions used throughout this document.

- This guide applies to both Linux and Windows systems. Directory paths are presented in the Linux format with forward slashes. When working on Windows systems, start the directory path with the drive letter followed by a colon and substitute back slashes for forward slashes.
- Some of the information in this document may apply interchangeably to the PostgreSQL and EDB Postgres Advanced Server database systems. The term *Advanced Server* is used to refer to EDB Postgres Advanced Server. The term *Postgres* is used to generically refer to both PostgreSQL and Advanced Server. When a distinction needs to be made between these two database systems, the specific names, PostgreSQL or Advanced Server are used.
- The installation directory path of the PostgreSQL or Advanced Server products is referred to as `POSTGRES_INSTALL_HOME`.
  - For PostgreSQL Linux installations, this defaults to `/opt/PostgreSQL/x.x` for version 10 and earlier. For later versions, use the PostgreSQL community packages.
  - For Advanced Server Linux installations accomplished using the interactive installer for version 10 and earlier, this defaults to `/opt/edb/asx.x`.
  - For Advanced Server Linux installations accomplished using an RPM package, this defaults to

`/usr/edb/asxx`.

- For Advanced Server Windows installations, this defaults to `C:\Program Files\edb\as\xx`. The product version number is represented by `x.x` or by `xx` for version 10 and later.

## 12.1.2 About the Examples Used in this Guide

The examples in this guide are shown in the type and background illustrated below.

Examples and output from examples are shown in fixed-width, black font on a white background.

The examples use the sample tables, `dept`, `emp`, and `jobhist`, created and loaded when Advanced Server is installed.

The tables and programs in the sample database can be re-created at any time by executing the following script:

```
/usr/edb/asxx/share/pg-sample.sql
```

where `xx` is the Advanced Server version number.

In addition there is a script in the same directory containing the database objects created using syntax compatible with Oracle databases. This script file is `edb-sample.sql`.

The script:

- Creates the sample tables and programs in the currently connected database.
- Grants all permissions on the tables to the `PUBLIC` group.

The tables and programs will be created in the first schema of the search path in which the current user has permission to create tables and procedures. You can display the search path by issuing the command:

```
SHOW SEARCH_PATH;
```

You can use PSQL commands to modify the search path.

### Sample Database Description

The sample database represents employees in an organization. It contains three types of records: employees, departments, and historical records of employees.

Each employee has an identification number, name, hire date, salary, and manager. Some employees earn a commission in addition to their salary. All employee-related information is stored in the `emp` table.

The sample company is regionally diverse, so it tracks the locations of its departments. Each company employee is assigned to a department. Each department is identified by a unique department number and a short name. Each department is associated with one location. All department-related information is stored in the `dept` table.

The company also tracks information about jobs held by the employees. Some employees have been with the company for a long time and have held different positions, received raises, switched departments, etc. When a change in employee status occurs, the company records the end date of the former position. A new job record is added with the start date and the new job title, department, salary, and the reason for the status change. All employee history is maintained in the `jobhist` table.

The following is the `pg-sample.sql` script:

```

SET datestyle TO 'iso, dmy';

-- 
-- Script that creates the 'sample' tables, views
-- functions, triggers, etc.
-- 
-- Start new transaction - commit all or nothing
-- 
BEGIN;

-- Create and load tables used in the documentation examples.
-- 
-- Create the 'dept' table
-- 
CREATE TABLE dept (
    deptno NUMERIC(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
    dname VARCHAR(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
    loc VARCHAR(13)
);
-- 
-- Create the 'emp' table
-- 
CREATE TABLE emp (
    empno NUMERIC(4) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT emp_pk PRIMARY KEY,
    ename VARCHAR(10),
    job VARCHAR(9),
    mgr NUMERIC(4),
    hiredate DATE,
    sal NUMERIC(7,2) CONSTRAINT emp_sal_ck CHECK (sal > 0),
    comm NUMERIC(7,2),
    deptno NUMERIC(2) CONSTRAINT emp_ref_dept_fk
        REFERENCES dept(deptno)
);
-- 
-- Create the 'jobhist' table
-- 
CREATE TABLE jobhist (
    empno NUMERIC(4) NOT NULL,
    startdate TIMESTAMP(0) NOT NULL,
    enddate TIMESTAMP(0),
    job VARCHAR(9),
    sal NUMERIC(7,2),
    comm NUMERIC(7,2),
    deptno NUMERIC(2),
    chgdesc VARCHAR(80),
    CONSTRAINT jobhist_pk PRIMARY KEY (empno, startdate),
    CONSTRAINT jobhist_ref_emp_fk FOREIGN KEY (empno)
        REFERENCES emp(empno) ON DELETE CASCADE,
    CONSTRAINT jobhist_ref_dept_fk FOREIGN KEY (deptno)
        REFERENCES dept (deptno) ON DELETE SET NULL,
    CONSTRAINT jobhist_date_chk CHECK (startdate <= enddate)
);
-- 
-- Create the 'salesemp' view
-- 

```

```

CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW salesemp AS
  SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, comm FROM emp WHERE job = 'SALESMAN';
--
-- Sequence to generate values for function 'new_empno'.
--
CREATE SEQUENCE next_empno START WITH 8000 INCREMENT BY 1;
--
-- Issue PUBLIC grants
--
--GRANT ALL ON emp TO PUBLIC;
--GRANT ALL ON dept TO PUBLIC;
--GRANT ALL ON jobhist TO PUBLIC;
--GRANT ALL ON salesemp TO PUBLIC;
--GRANT ALL ON next_empno TO PUBLIC;
--
-- Load the 'dept' table
--
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (10,'ACCOUNTING','NEW YORK');
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (20,'RESEARCH','DALLAS');
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (30,'SALES','CHICAGO');
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (40,'OPERATIONS','BOSTON');
--
-- Load the 'emp' table
--
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7369,'SMITH','CLERK',7902,'17-DEC-80',800,NULL,20);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7499,'ALLEN','SALESMAN',7698,'20-FEB-81',1600,300,30);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7521,'WARD','SALESMAN',7698,'22-FEB-81',1250,500,30);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7566,'JONES','MANAGER',7839,'02-APR-81',2975,NULL,20);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7654,'MARTIN','SALESMAN',7698,'28-SEP-81',1250,1400,30);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7698,'BLAKE','MANAGER',7839,'01-MAY-81',2850,NULL,30);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7782,'CLARK','MANAGER',7839,'09-JUN-81',2450,NULL,10);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7788,'SCOTT','ANALYST',7566,'19-APR-87',3000,NULL,20);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7839,'KING','PRESIDENT',NULL,'17-NOV-81',5000,NULL,10);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7844,'TURNER','SALESMAN',7698,'08-SEP-81',1500,0,30);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7876,'ADAMS','CLERK',7788,'23-MAY-87',1100,NULL,20);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7900,'JAMES','CLERK',7698,'03-DEC-81',950,NULL,30);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7902,'FORD','ANALYST',7566,'03-DEC-81',3000,NULL,20);
INSERT INTO emp VALUES
(7934,'MILLER','CLERK',7782,'23-JAN-82',1300,NULL,10);
--
-- Load the 'jobhist' table
--

```

```

INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7369,'17-DEC-80',NULL,'CLERK',800,NULL,20,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7499,'20-FEB-81',NULL,'SALESMAN',1600,300,30,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7521,'22-FEB-81',NULL,'SALESMAN',1250,500,30,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7566,'02-APR-81',NULL,'MANAGER',2975,NULL,20,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7654,'28-SEP-81',NULL,'SALESMAN',1250,1400,30,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7698,'01-MAY-81',NULL,'MANAGER',2850,NULL,30,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7782,'09-JUN-81',NULL,'MANAGER',2450,NULL,10,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7788,'19-APR-87','12-APR-88','CLERK',1000,NULL,20,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7788,'13-APR-88','04-MAY-89','CLERK',1040,NULL,20,'Raise');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7788,'05-MAY-90',NULL,'ANALYST',3000,NULL,20,'Promoted to Analyst');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7839,'17-NOV-81',NULL,'PRESIDENT',5000,NULL,10,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7844,'08-SEP-81',NULL,'SALESMAN',1500,0,30,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7876,'23-MAY-87',NULL,'CLERK',1100,NULL,20,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7900,'03-DEC-81','14-JAN-83','CLERK',950,NULL,10,'New Hire');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7900,'15-JAN-83',NULL,'CLERK',950,NULL,30,'Changed to Dept 30');
INSERT INTO jobhist VALUES
(7934,'23-JAN-82',NULL,'CLERK',1300,NULL,10,'New Hire');

-- 
-- Populate statistics table and view (pg_statistic/pg_stats)
-- 

ANALYZE dept;
ANALYZE emp;
ANALYZE jobhist;

-- 
-- Function that lists all employees' numbers and names
-- from the 'emp' table using a cursor.
-- 

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION list_emp() RETURNS VOID
AS $$$
DECLARE
    v_empno NUMERIC(4);
    v_ename VARCHAR(10);
    emp_cur CURSOR FOR
        SELECT empno, ename FROM emp ORDER BY empno;
BEGIN
    OPEN emp_cur;
    RAISE INFO 'EMPNO ENAME';
    RAISE INFO '----- -----';

```

```

LOOP
  FETCH emp_cur INTO v_empno, v_ename;
  EXIT WHEN NOT FOUND;
  RAISE INFO '% %', v_empno, v_ename;
END LOOP;
CLOSE emp_cur;
RETURN;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';

-- 
-- Function that selects an employee row given the employee
-- number and displays certain columns.
-- 

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION select_emp (
  p_empno NUMERIC
) RETURNS VOID
AS $$

DECLARE
  v_ename emp.ename%TYPE;
  v_hiredate emp.hiredate%TYPE;
  v_sal emp.sal%TYPE;
  v_comm emp.comm%TYPE;
  v_dname dept.dname%TYPE;
  v_disp_date VARCHAR(10);

BEGIN
  SELECT INTO
    v_ename, v_hiredate, v_sal, v_comm, v_dname
    ename, hiredate, sal, COALESCE(comm, 0), dname
  FROM emp e, dept d
  WHERE empno = p_empno
    AND e.deptno = d.deptno;
  IF NOT FOUND THEN
    RAISE INFO 'Employee % not found', p_empno;
    RETURN;
  END IF;
  v_disp_date := TO_CHAR(v_hiredate, 'MM/DD/YYYY');
  RAISE INFO 'Number : %', p_empno;
  RAISE INFO 'Name : %', v_ename;
  RAISE INFO 'Hire Date : %', v_disp_date;
  RAISE INFO 'Salary : %', v_sal;
  RAISE INFO 'Commission: %', v_comm;
  RAISE INFO 'Department: %', v_dname;
  RETURN;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    RAISE INFO 'The following is SQLERRM : %', SQLERRM;
    RAISE INFO 'The following is SQLSTATE: %', SQLSTATE;
    RETURN;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';

-- 
-- A RECORD type used to format the return value of
-- function, 'emp_query'.
-- 

CREATE TYPE emp_query_type AS (

```

```

empno NUMERIC,
ename VARCHAR(10),
job VARCHAR(9),
hiredate DATE,
sal NUMERIC
);
-- 
-- Function that queries the 'emp' table based on
-- department number and employee number or name. Returns
-- employee number and name as INOUT parameters and job,
-- hire date, and salary as OUT parameters. These are
-- returned in the form of a record defined by
-- RECORD type, 'emp_query_type'.
-- 
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION emp_query (
    IN p_deptno NUMERIC,
    INOUT p_empno NUMERIC,
    INOUT p_ename VARCHAR,
    OUT p_job VARCHAR,
    OUT p_hiredate DATE,
    OUT p_sal NUMERIC
)
AS $$$
BEGIN
    SELECT INTO
        p_empno, p_ename, p_job, p_hiredate, p_sal
        empno, ename, job, hiredate, sal
    FROM emp
    WHERE deptno = p_deptno
        AND (empno = p_empno
            OR ename = UPPER(p_ename));
END;
$$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';
-- 
-- Function to call 'emp_query_caller' with IN and INOUT
-- parameters. Displays the results received from INOUT and
-- OUT parameters.
-- 
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION emp_query_caller() RETURNS VOID
AS $$$
DECLARE
    v_deptno NUMERIC;
    v_empno NUMERIC;
    v_ename VARCHAR;
    v_rows INTEGER;
    r_emp_query EMP_QUERY_TYPE;
BEGIN
    v_deptno := 30;
    v_empno := 0;
    v_ename := 'Martin';
    r_emp_query := emp_query(v_deptno, v_empno, v_ename);
    RAISE INFO 'Department : %', v_deptno;
    RAISE INFO 'Employee No: %', (r_emp_query).empno;
    RAISE INFO 'Name : %', (r_emp_query).ename;
    RAISE INFO 'Job : %', (r_emp_query).job;

```

```

RAISE INFO 'Hire Date : %', (r_emp_query).hiredate;
RAISE INFO 'Salary : %', (r_emp_query).sal;
RETURN;
EXCEPTION
WHEN OTHERS THEN
    RAISE INFO 'The following is SQLERRM : %', SQLERRM;
    RAISE INFO 'The following is SQLSTATE: %', SQLSTATE;
    RETURN;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';

-- 
-- Function to compute yearly compensation based on semimonthly
-- salary.

-- 
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION emp_comp (
    p_sal NUMERIC,
    p_comm NUMERIC
) RETURNS NUMERIC
AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN (p_sal + COALESCE(p_comm, 0)) \* 24;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';

-- 
-- Function that gets the next number from sequence, 'next_empno',
-- and ensures it is not already in use as an employee number.

-- 
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION new_empno() RETURNS INTEGER
AS $$
DECLARE
    v_cnt INTEGER := 1;
    v_new_empno INTEGER;
BEGIN
    WHILE v_cnt > 0 LOOP
        SELECT INTO v_new_empno nextval('next_empno');
        SELECT INTO v_cnt COUNT(*) FROM emp WHERE empno = v_new_empno;
    END LOOP;
    RETURN v_new_empno;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';

-- 
-- Function that adds a new clerk to table 'emp'.

-- 
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION hire_clerk (
    p_ename VARCHAR,
    p_deptno NUMERIC
) RETURNS NUMERIC
AS $$
DECLARE
    v_empno NUMERIC(4);
    v_ename VARCHAR(10);
    v_job VARCHAR(9);
    v_mgr NUMERIC(4);
    v_hiredate DATE;
    v_sal NUMERIC(7,2);

```

```

v_comm NUMERIC(7,2);
v_deptno NUMERIC(2);
BEGIN
  v_empno := new_empno();
  INSERT INTO emp VALUES (v_empno, p_ename, 'CLERK', 7782,
    CURRENT_DATE, 950.00, NULL, p_deptno);
  SELECT INTO
    v_empno, v_ename, v_job, v_mgr, v_hiredate, v_sal, v_comm, v_deptno
    empno, ename, job, mgr, hiredate, sal, comm, deptno
    FROM emp WHERE empno = v_empno;
  RAISE INFO 'Department : %', v_deptno;
  RAISE INFO 'Employee No: %', v_empno;
  RAISE INFO 'Name : %', v_ename;
  RAISE INFO 'Job : %', v_job;
  RAISE INFO 'Manager : %', v_mgr;
  RAISE INFO 'Hire Date : %', v_hiredate;
  RAISE INFO 'Salary : %', v_sal;
  RAISE INFO 'Commission : %', v_comm;
  RETURN v_empno;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    RAISE INFO 'The following is SQLERRM : %', SQLERRM;
    RAISE INFO 'The following is SQLSTATE: %', SQLSTATE;
    RETURN -1;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';

-- 
-- Function that adds a new salesman to table 'emp'.
-- 

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION hire_salesman (
  p_ename VARCHAR,
  p_sal NUMERIC,
  p_comm NUMERIC
) RETURNS NUMERIC
AS $$
DECLARE
  v_empno NUMERIC(4);
  v_ename VARCHAR(10);
  v_job VARCHAR(9);
  v_mgr NUMERIC(4);
  v_hiredate DATE;
  v_sal NUMERIC(7,2);
  v_comm NUMERIC(7,2);
  v_deptno NUMERIC(2);
BEGIN
  v_empno := new_empno();
  INSERT INTO emp VALUES (v_empno, p_ename, 'SALESMAN', 7698,
    CURRENT_DATE, p_sal, p_comm, 30);
  SELECT INTO
    v_empno, v_ename, v_job, v_mgr, v_hiredate, v_sal, v_comm, v_deptno
    empno, ename, job, mgr, hiredate, sal, comm, deptno
    FROM emp WHERE empno = v_empno;
  RAISE INFO 'Department : %', v_deptno;
  RAISE INFO 'Employee No: %', v_empno;
  RAISE INFO 'Name : %', v_ename;

```

```

RAISE INFO 'Job : %', v_job;
RAISE INFO 'Manager : %', v_mgr;
RAISE INFO 'Hire Date : %', v_hiredate;
RAISE INFO 'Salary : %', v_sal;
RAISE INFO 'Commission : %', v_comm;
RETURN v_empno;
EXCEPTION
WHEN OTHERS THEN
    RAISE INFO 'The following is SQLERRM : %', SQLERRM;
    RAISE INFO 'The following is SQLSTATE: %', SQLSTATE;
    RETURN -1;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';

-- Rule to INSERT into view 'salesemp'
-- CREATE OR REPLACE RULE salesemp_i AS ON INSERT TO salesemp
DO INSTEAD
    INSERT INTO emp VALUES (NEW.empno, NEW.ename, 'SALESMAN', 7698,
                           NEW.hiredate, NEW.sal, NEW.comm, 30);

-- Rule to UPDATE view 'salesemp'
-- CREATE OR REPLACE RULE salesemp_u AS ON UPDATE TO salesemp
DO INSTEAD
    UPDATE emp SET empno = NEW.empno,
                  ename = NEW.ename,
                  hiredate = NEW.hiredate,
                  sal = NEW.sal,
                  comm = NEW.comm
    WHERE empno = OLD.empno;

-- Rule to DELETE from view 'salesemp'
-- CREATE OR REPLACE RULE salesemp_d AS ON DELETE TO salesemp
DO INSTEAD
    DELETE FROM emp WHERE empno = OLD.empno;

-- After statement-level trigger that displays a message after
-- an insert, update, or deletion to the 'emp' table. One message
-- per SQL command is displayed.

-- CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION user_audit_trig() RETURNS TRIGGER
AS $$
DECLARE
    v_action VARCHAR(24);
    v_text TEXT;
BEGIN
    IF TG_OP = 'INSERT' THEN
        v_action := ' added employee(s) on ';
    ELSIF TG_OP = 'UPDATE' THEN
        v_action := ' updated employee(s) on ';
    ELSIF TG_OP = 'DELETE' THEN
        v_action := ' deleted employee(s) on ';
    END IF;

```

```

v_text := 'User ' || USER || v_action || CURRENT_DATE;
RAISE INFO '%', v_text;
RETURN NULL;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';
CREATE TRIGGER user_audit_trig
AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp
FOR EACH STATEMENT EXECUTE PROCEDURE user_audit_trig();
-- 
-- Before row-level trigger that displays employee number and
-- salary of an employee that is about to be added, updated,
-- or deleted in the 'emp' table.
-- 
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION emp_sal_trig() RETURNS TRIGGER
AS $$$
DECLARE
    sal_diff NUMERIC(7,2);
BEGIN
    IF TG_OP = 'INSERT' THEN
        RAISE INFO 'Inserting employee %', NEW.empno;
        RAISE INFO '..New salary: %', NEW.sal;
        RETURN NEW;
    END IF;
    IF TG_OP = 'UPDATE' THEN
        sal_diff := NEW.sal - OLD.sal;
        RAISE INFO 'Updating employee %', OLD.empno;
        RAISE INFO '..Old salary: %', OLD.sal;
        RAISE INFO '..New salary: %', NEW.sal;
        RAISE INFO '..Raise : %', sal_diff;
        RETURN NEW;
    END IF;
    IF TG_OP = 'DELETE' THEN
        RAISE INFO 'Deleting employee %', OLD.empno;
        RAISE INFO '..Old salary: %', OLD.sal;
        RETURN OLD;
    END IF;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE 'plpgsql';
CREATE TRIGGER emp_sal_trig
BEFORE DELETE OR INSERT OR UPDATE ON emp
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE PROCEDURE emp_sal_trig();
COMMIT;

```

## 12.2 Enhanced Compatibility Features

Advanced Server includes extended functionality that provides compatibility for syntax supported by Oracle applications. Detailed information about the compatibility features supported by Advanced Server is provided in the Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Guide; the version-specific guides are available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

The following sections highlight some of the compatibility features supported by Advanced Server.

## Enabling Compatibility Features

There are several ways to install Advanced Server that will allow you to take advantage of compatibility features:

- Use the `INITDBOPTS` variable (in the Advanced Server service configuration file) to specify `--redwood-like` before initializing your cluster.
- When invoking `initdb` to initialize your cluster compatible with Oracle mode, include the `--redwood-like` option or `--no-redwood-compat` option to initialize your cluster in Oracle non-compatible mode.

For more information about the installation options supported by the Advanced Server installers, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server Installation Guide*, available from the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## Stored Procedural Language

Advanced Server supports a highly productive procedural language that allows you to write custom procedures, functions, triggers and packages. The procedural language:

- complements the SQL language and built-in packages.
- provides a seamless development and testing environment.
- allows you to create reusable code.

For information about using the Stored Procedural Language, see the *Database Compatibility for Stored Procedural Language Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## Optimizer Hints

When you invoke a `DELETE`, `INSERT`, `SELECT`, or `UPDATE` command, the server generates a set of execution plans; after analyzing those execution plans, the server selects a plan that will (generally) return the result set in the least amount of time. The server's choice of plan is dependent upon several factors:

- The estimated execution cost of data handling operations.
- Parameter values assigned to parameters in the Query Tuning section of the `postgresql.conf` file.
- Column statistics that have been gathered by the `ANALYZE` command.

As a rule, the query planner will select the least expensive plan. You can use an optimizer hint to influence the server as it selects a query plan.

An optimizer hint is a directive (or multiple directives) embedded in a comment-like syntax that immediately follows a `DELETE`, `INSERT`, `SELECT` or `UPDATE` command. Keywords in the comment instruct the server to employ or avoid a specific plan when producing the result set. For information about using optimizer hints, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## Data Dictionary Views

Advanced Server includes a set of views that provide information about database objects in a manner compatible

with the Oracle data dictionary views. For detailed information about the views available with Advanced Server, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Catalog Views Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## dblink\_ora

dblink\_ora provides an OCI-based database link that allows you to `SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE` or `DELETE` data stored on an Oracle system from within Advanced Server. For detailed information about using `dblink_ora`, and the supported functions and procedures, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## Profile Management

Advanced Server supports compatible SQL syntax for profile management. Profile management commands allow a database superuser to create and manage named *profiles*. Each profile defines rules for password management that augment password and md5 authentication. The rules in a profile can:

- count failed login attempts
- lock an account due to excessive failed login attempts
- mark a password for expiration
- define a grace period after a password expiration
- define rules for password complexity
- define rules that limit password re-use

A profile is a named set of attributes that allow you to easily manage a group of roles that share comparable authentication requirements. If password requirements change, you can modify the profile to have the new requirements applied to each user that is associated with that profile.

After creating the profile, you can associate the profile with one or more users. When a user connects to the server, the server enforces the profile that is associated with their login role. Profiles are shared by all databases within a cluster, but each cluster may have multiple profiles. A single user with access to multiple databases will use the same profile when connecting to each database within the cluster.

For information about using profile management commands, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## Built-In Packages

Advanced Server supports a number of built-in packages that provide compatibility with Oracle procedures and functions.

Package Name	Description
DBMS_ALERT	The DBMS_ALERT package provides the capability to register for, send, and receive alerts.
DBMS_AQ	The DBMS_AQ package provides message queueing and processing for Advanced Server.
DBMS_AQADM	The DBMS_AQADM package provides supporting procedures for Advanced Queueing functionality.

Package Name	Description
DBMS_CRYPTO	The DBMS_CRYPTO package provides functions and procedures that allow you to encrypt or decrypt RAW, BLOB or CLOB data. You can also use DBMS_CRYPTO functions to generate cryptographically strong random values.
DBMS_JOB	The DBMS_JOB package provides for the creation, scheduling, and managing of jobs.
DBMS_LOB	The DBMS_LOB package provides the capability to operate on large objects.
DBMS_LOCK	Advanced Server provides support for the DBMS_LOCK.SLEEP procedure.
DBMS_MVIEW	Use procedures in the DBMS_MVIEW package to manage and refresh materialized views and their dependencies.
DBMS_OUTPUT	The DBMS_OUTPUT package provides the capability to send messages to a message buffer, or get messages from the message buffer.
DBMS_PIPE	The DBMS_PIPE package provides the capability to send messages through a pipe within or between sessions connected to the same database cluster.
DBMS_PROFILER	The DBMS_PROFILER package collects and stores performance information about the PL/pgSQL and SPL statements that are executed during a performance profiling session.
DBMS_RANDOM	The DBMS_RANDOM package provides a number of methods to generate random values.
DBMS_REDACT	The DBMS_REDACT package enables the redacting or masking of data that is returned by a query.
DBMS_RLS	The DBMS_RLS package enables the implementation of Virtual Private Database on certain Advanced Server database objects.
DBMS_SCHEDULER	The DBMS_SCHEDULER package provides a way to create and manage jobs, programs and job schedules.
DBMS_SESSION	Advanced Server provides support for the DBMS_SESSION.SET_ROLE procedure.
DBMS_SQL	The DBMS_SQL package provides an application interface to the EDB dynamic SQL functionality.
DBMS.Utility	The DBMS.Utility package provides various utility programs.
UTL_ENCODE	The UTL_ENCODE package provides a way to encode and decode data.
UTL_FILE	The UTL_FILE package provides the capability to read from, and write to files on the operating system's file system.
UTL_HTTP	The UTL_HTTP package provides a way to use the HTTP or HTTPS protocol to retrieve information found at an URL.
UTL_MAIL	The UTL_MAIL package provides the capability to manage e-mail.
UTL_RAW	The UTL_RAW package allows you to manipulate or retrieve the length of raw data types.
UTL_SMTP	The UTL_SMTP package provides the capability to send e-mails over the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP).
UTL_URL	The UTL_URL package provides a way to escape illegal and reserved characters within an URL.

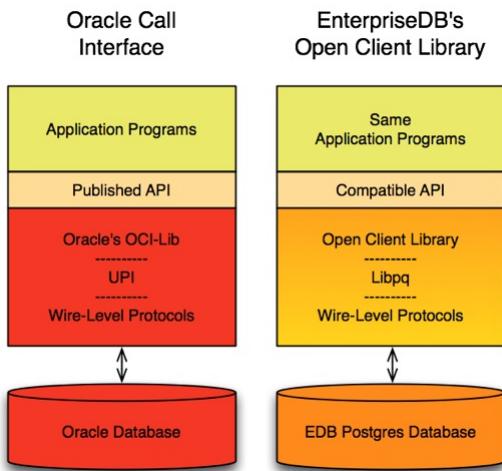
For detailed information about the procedures and functions available within each package, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Built-In Package Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## Open Client Library

The Open Client Library provides application interoperability with the Oracle Call Interface – an application that was formerly “locked in” can now work with either an Advanced Server or an Oracle database with minimal to no changes to the application code. The EDB implementation of the Open Client Library is written in C.

The following diagram compares the Open Client Library and Oracle Call Interface application stacks.



For detailed information about the functions supported by the Open Client Library, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server OCL Connector Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## Utilities

For detailed information about the compatible syntax supported by the utilities listed below, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Tools and Utilities Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

### EDB\*Plus

EDB\*Plus is a utility program that provides a command line user interface to the Advanced Server that will be familiar to Oracle developers and users. EDB\*Plus accepts SQL commands, SPL anonymous blocks, and EDB\*Plus commands.

EDB\*Plus allows you to:

- Query certain database objects
- Execute stored procedures
- Format output from SQL commands
- Execute batch scripts
- Execute OS commands
- Record output

For detailed information about EDB\*Plus, see the *EDBPlus User's Guide\** available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs/p/edbplus>

### EDB\*Loader

EDB\*Loader is a high-performance bulk data loader that provides an interface compatible with Oracle databases for Advanced Server. The EDB\*Loader command line utility loads data from an input source, typically a file, into one or more tables using a subset of the parameters offered by Oracle SQL\*Loader.

EDB\*Loader features include:

- Support for the Oracle SQL\*Loader data loading methods - conventional path load, direct path load, and parallel direct path load
- Oracle SQL\*Loader compatible syntax for control file directives
- Input data with delimiter-separated or fixed-width fields
- Bad file for collecting rejected records

- Loading of multiple target tables
- Discard file for collecting records that do not meet the selection criteria of any target table
- Data loading from standard input and remote loading

## EDB Wrap

The EDB Wrap utility protects proprietary source code and programs (functions, stored procedures, triggers, and packages) from unauthorized scrutiny. The EDB Wrap program translates a file that contains SPL or PL/pgSQL source code (the plaintext) into a file that contains the same code in a form that is nearly impossible to read. Once you have the obfuscated form of the code, you can send that code to Advanced Server and it will store those programs in obfuscated form. While EDB Wrap does obscure code, table definitions are still exposed.

Everything you wrap is stored in obfuscated form. If you wrap an entire package, the package body source, as well as the prototypes contained in the package header and the functions and procedures contained in the package body are stored in obfuscated form.

## Dynamic Runtime Instrumentation Tools Architecture (DRITA)

The Dynamic Runtime Instrumentation Tools Architecture (DRITA) allows a DBA to query catalog views to determine the *wait events* that affect the performance of individual sessions or the system as a whole. DRITA records the number of times each event occurs as well as the time spent waiting; you can use this information to diagnose performance problems. DRITA offers this functionality, while consuming minimal system resources.

DRITA compares *snapshots* to evaluate the performance of a system. A snapshot is a saved set of system performance data at a given point in time. Each snapshot is identified by a unique ID number; you can use snapshot ID numbers with DRITA reporting functions to return system performance statistics.

## ECPGPlus

EDB has enhanced ECPG (the PostgreSQL pre-compiler) to create ECPGPlus. ECPGPlus allows you to include embedded SQL commands in C applications; when you use ECPGPlus to compile an application that contains embedded SQL commands, the SQL code is syntax-checked and translated into C.

ECPGPlus supports Pro\*C syntax in C programs when connected to an Advanced Server database. ECPGPlus supports:

- Oracle Dynamic SQL – Method 4 (ODS-M4)
- Pro\*C compatible anonymous blocks
- A `CALL` statement compatible with Oracle databases

For information about using ECPGPlus, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server ECPG Connector Guide*, available from the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## Table Partitioning

In a partitioned table, one logically large table is broken into smaller physical pieces. Partitioning can provide several benefits:

- Query performance can be improved dramatically in certain situations, particularly when most of the heavily accessed rows of the table are in a single partition or a small number of partitions. Partitioning allows you to omit the partition column from the front of an index, reducing index size and making it more likely that the heavily used parts of the index fits in memory.
- When a query or update accesses a large percentage of a single partition, performance may improve because the server will perform a sequential scan of the partition instead of using an index and random access reads scattered across the whole table.
- A bulk load (or unload) can be implemented by adding or removing partitions, if you plan that requirement into

the partitioning design. `ALTER TABLE` is far faster than a bulk operation. It also entirely avoids the `VACUUM` overhead caused by a bulk `DELETE`.

- Seldom-used data can be migrated to less-expensive (or slower) storage media.

Table partitioning is worthwhile only when a table would otherwise be very large. The exact point at which a table will benefit from partitioning depends on the application; a good rule of thumb is that the size of the table should exceed the physical memory of the database server.

For information about database compatibility features supported by Advanced Server see the *Database Compatibility for Table Partitioning Guide*, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

---

## 12.3 Database Administration

This chapter describes the features that aid in the management and administration of Advanced Server databases.

---

### 12.3.1 Configuration Parameters

This section describes the database server configuration parameters of Advanced Server. These parameters control various aspects of the database server's behavior and environment such as data file and log file locations, connection, authentication, and security settings, resource allocation and consumption, archiving and replication settings, error logging and statistics gathering, optimization and performance tuning, locale and formatting settings, and so on.

Configuration parameters that apply only to Advanced Server are noted in the [Summary of Configuration Parameters](#).

Additional information about configuration parameters can be found in the PostgreSQL Core Documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/runtime-config.html>

---

#### 12.3.1.1 Setting Configuration Parameters

This section provides an overview of how configuration parameters are specified and set.

Each configuration parameter is set using a `name/value` pair. Parameter names are case-insensitive. The parameter name is typically separated from its value by an optional equals sign (`=`).

The following is an example of some configuration parameter settings in the `postgresql.conf` file:

```
### This is a comment
log_connections = yes
log_destination = 'syslog'
search_path = "$user", public
shared_buffers = 128MB
```

Parameter values are specified as one of five types:

- **Boolean.** Acceptable values can be written as `on`, `off`, `true`, `false`, `yes`, `no`, `1`, `0`, or any unambiguous prefix of these.
- **Integer.** Number without a fractional part.
- **Floating Point.** Number with an optional fractional part separated by a decimal point.
- **String.** Text value. Enclose in single quotes if the value is not a simple identifier or number (that is, the value contains special characters such as spaces or other punctuation marks).
- **Enum.** Specific set of string values. The allowed values can be found in the system view `pg_settings.enumvals`. Enum values are case-insensitive.

Some settings specify a memory or time value. Each of these has an implicit unit, which is kilobytes, blocks (typically 8 kilobytes), milliseconds, seconds, or minutes. Default units can be found by referencing the system view `pg_settings.unit`. A different unit can be specified explicitly.

Valid memory units are `KB` (kilobytes), `MB` (megabytes), and `GB` (gigabytes). Valid time units are `ms` (milliseconds), `s` (seconds), `min` (minutes), `h` (hours), and `d` (days). The multiplier for memory units is 1024.

The configuration parameter settings can be established in a number of different ways:

- There is a number of parameter settings that are established when the Advanced Server database product is built. These are read-only parameters, and their values cannot be changed. There are also a couple of parameters that are permanently set for each database when the database is created. These parameters are read-only as well and cannot be subsequently changed for the database.
- The initial settings for almost all configurable parameters across the entire database cluster are listed in the configuration file, `postgresql.conf`. These settings are put into effect upon database server start or restart. Some of these initial parameter settings can be overridden as discussed in the following bullet points. All configuration parameters have built-in default settings that are in effect if not explicitly overridden.
- Configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file are overridden when the same parameters are included in the `postgresql.auto.conf` file. The `ALTER SYSTEM` command is used to manage the configuration parameters in the `postgresql.auto.conf` file.
- Parameter settings can be modified in the configuration file while the database server is running. If the configuration file is then reloaded (meaning a SIGHUP signal is issued), for certain parameter types, the changed parameters settings immediately take effect. For some of these parameter types, the new settings are available in a currently running session immediately after the reload. For other of these parameter types, a new session must be started to use the new settings. And yet for other parameter types, modified settings do not take effect until the database server is stopped and restarted. See the following section of the PostgreSQL Core Documentation for information on how to reload the configuration file:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/config-setting.html>

- The SQL commands `ALTER DATABASE`, `ALTER ROLE`, or `ALTER ROLE IN DATABASE` can be used to modify certain parameter settings. The modified parameter settings take effect for new sessions after the command is executed. `ALTER DATABASE` affects new sessions connecting to the specified database. `ALTER ROLE` affects new sessions started by the specified role. `ALTER ROLE IN DATABASE` affects new sessions started by the specified role connecting to the specified database. Parameter settings established by these SQL commands remain in effect indefinitely, across database server restarts, overriding settings established by the methods discussed in the second and third bullet points. Parameter settings established using the `ALTER DATABASE`, `ALTER ROLE`, or `ALTER ROLE IN DATABASE` commands can only be changed by: a) re-issuing these commands with a different parameter value, or
- b) issuing these commands using either of the `SET parameter TO DEFAULT` clause or the `RESET parameter` clause. These clauses change the parameter back to using the setting established by the methods set forth in

the prior bullet points. See the “SQL Commands” section of Chapter VI “Reference” in the *PostgreSQL Core Documentation* for the exact syntax of these SQL commands:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/sql-commands.html>

- Changes can be made for certain parameter settings for the duration of individual sessions using the `PGOPTIONS` environment variable or by using the `SET` command within the `EDB-PSQL` or `PSQL` command line terminal programs. Parameter settings made in this manner override settings established using any of the methods described by the second, third, and fourth bullet points, but only for the duration of the session.

## Modifying the `postgresql.conf` File

The configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file specify server behavior with regards to auditing, authentication, encryption, and other behaviors. On Linux and Windows host, the `postgresql.conf` file resides in the `data` directory under your Advanced Server installation.

Parameters that are preceded by a pound sign (#) are set to their default value. To change a parameter value, remove the pound sign and enter a new value. After setting or changing a parameter, you must either `reload` or `restart` the server for the new parameter value to take effect.

Within the `postgresql.conf` file, some parameters contain comments that indicate `change requires restart`. To view a list of the parameters that require a server restart, execute the following query at the `psql` command line:

```
SELECT name FROM pg_settings WHERE context = 'postmaster';
```

## Modifying the `pg_hba.conf` File

Appropriate authentication methods provide protection and security. Entries in the `pg_hba.conf` file specify the authentication method or methods that the server will use when authenticating connecting clients. Before connecting to the server, you may be required to modify the authentication properties specified in the `pg_hba.conf` file.

When you invoke the `initdb` utility to create a cluster, `initdb` creates a `pg_hba.conf` file for that cluster that specifies the type of authentication required from connecting clients. To modify the `pg_hba.conf` file, open the file with your choice of editor. After modifying the authentication settings in the `pg_hba.conf` file, restart the server and apply the changes.

For more information about authentication and modifying the `pg_hba.conf` file, see the PostgreSQL Core Documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/auth-pg-hba-conf.html>

When a connection request is received, the server will verify the credentials provided against the authentication settings in the `pg_hba.conf` file before allowing a connection to a database. To log the `pg_hba.conf` file entry to authenticate a connection to the server, set the `log_connections` parameter to `ON` in the `postgresql.conf` file.

A record specifies a connection type, database name, user name, a client IP address, and the authentication method to authorize a connection upon matching these parameters in the `pg_hba.conf` file. Once the connection to a server is authorized, you can see the matched line number and the authentication record from the `pg_hba.conf` file.

The following example shows a log detail for a valid `pg_hba.conf` entry upon successful authentication.

```
2020-05-08 10:42:17 IST LOG: connection received: host=[local]
2020-05-08 10:42:17 IST LOG: connection authorized: user=u1 database=edb
application_name=psql
2020-05-08 10:42:17 IST DETAIL: Connection matched pg_hba.conf line 84:
```

```
"local  all      all      md5"
```

## 12.3.1.2 Summary of Configuration Parameters

This section contains a summary table listing all Advanced Server configuration parameters along with a number of key attributes of the parameters.

These attributes are described by the following columns of the summary table:

- **Parameter.** Configuration parameter name.
- **Scope of Effect.** Scope of effect of the configuration parameter setting.
  - **Cluster** – Setting affects the entire database cluster (that is, all databases managed by the database server instance).
  - **Database** – Setting can vary by database and is established when the database is created. Applies to a small number of parameters related to locale settings.
  - **Session** – Setting can vary down to the granularity of individual sessions.

In other words, different settings can be made for the following entities whereby the latter settings in this list override prior ones: a) the entire database cluster, b) specific databases in the database cluster, c) specific roles, d) specific roles when connected to specific databases, e) a specific session.
- **When Takes Effect.** When a changed parameter setting takes effect.
  - **Preset** – Established when the Advanced Server product is built or a particular database is created. This is a read-only parameter and cannot be changed.
  - **Restart** – Database server must be restarted.
  - **Reload** – Configuration file must be reloaded (or the database server can be restarted).
  - **Immediate** – Immediately effective in a session if the **PGOPTIONS** environment variable or the **SET** command is used to change the setting in the current session. Effective in new sessions if **ALTER DATABASE**, **ALTER ROLE**, or **ALTER ROLE IN DATABASE** commands are used to change the setting.
- **Authorized User.** Type of operating system account or database role that must be used to put the parameter setting into effect.
  - **EPAS service account** – EDB Postgres Advanced Server service account (**enterprisedb** for an installation compatible with Oracle databases, **postgres** for a PostgreSQL compatible mode installation).
  - **Superuser** – Database role with superuser privileges.
  - **User** – Any database role with permissions on the affected database object (the database or role to be altered with the **ALTER** command).
  - **n/a** – Parameter setting cannot be changed by any user.
- **Description.** Brief description of the configuration parameter.
- **EPAS Only.** ‘X’ – Configuration parameter is applicable to EDB Postgres Advanced Server only. No entry in this column indicates the configuration parameter applies to PostgreSQL as well.

### Note

There are a number of parameters that should never be altered. These are designated as “**Note: For internal use only**” in the Description column.

The following table shows the summary of configuration parameters:

Parameter	Scope of Effect	When Takes Effect	Authorized User	Description	EPAS Only
custom_variable_classes	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Deprecated in Advanced Server 9.2.	X
db_dialect	Session	Immediate	User	Sets the precedence of built-in namespaces.	X
dbms_alert.max_alerts	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets maximum number of alerts.	X
dbms_pipe.total_message_buffer	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Specifies the total size of the buffer used for the DBMS_PIPE package.	X
default_heap_fillfactor	Session	Immediate	User	Create new tables with this heap fillfactor by default.	X
default_with_rowids	Session	Immediate	User	Create new tables with ROWID support (ROWIDs with indexes) by default.	X
edb_audit	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Enable EDB Auditing to create audit reports in XML or CSV format.	X
edb_audit_connect	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Audits each successful connection.	X
edb_audit_destination	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Sets edb_audit_directory or syslog as the destination directory for audit files. The syslog setting is only valid for a Linux system.	X
edb_audit_directory	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Sets the destination directory for audit files.	X
edb_audit_disconnect	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Audits end of a session.	X
edb_audit_filename	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Sets the file name pattern for audit files.	X
edb_audit_rotation_day	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Automatic rotation of log files based on day of week.	X
edb_audit_rotation_seconds	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Automatic log file rotation will occur after N seconds.	X
edb_audit_rotation_size	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Automatic log file rotation will occur after N Megabytes.	X

edb_audit_statement	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Sets the type of statements to audit.	X
edb_audit_tag	Session	Immediate	User	Specify a tag to be included in the audit log.	X
edb_connectby_order	Session	Immediate	User	Sort results of CONNECT BY queries with no ORDER BY to depth-first order. Note: For internal use only.	X
edb_data_redaction	Session	Immediate	User	Enable data redaction.	X
edb_dynatune	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets the edb utilization percentage.	X
edb_dynatune_profile	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets the workload profile for dynatune.	X
edb_enable_pruning	Session	Immediate	User	Enables the planner to early-prune partitioned tables.	X
edb_log_every_bulk_value	Session	Immediate	Superuser	Sets the statements logged for bulk processing.	X
edb_max_resource_groups	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Specifies the maximum number of resource groups for simultaneous use.	X
edb_max_spins_per_delay	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Specifies the number of times a session will spin while waiting for a lock.	X
edb_redwood_date	Session	Immediate	User	Determines whether DATE should behave like a TIMESTAMP or not.	X
edb_redwood_greatest_least	Session	Immediate	User	Determines how GREATEST and LEAST functions should handle NULL parameters.	X
edb_redwood_raw_names	Session	Immediate	User	Return the unmodified name stored in the PostgreSQL system catalogs from Redwood interfaces.	X
edb_redwood_strings	Session	Immediate	User	Treat NULL as an empty string when concatenated with a text value.	X
edb_resource_group	Session	Immediate	User	Specifies the resource group to be used by the current process.	X
edb_sql_protect.enabled	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Defines whether SQL/Protect should track queries or not.	X
edb_sql_protect.level	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Defines the behavior of SQL/Protect when an event is found.	X

edb_sql_protect.max_protected_relations	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets the maximum number of relations protected by SQL/Protect per role.	X
edb_sql_protect.max_protected_roles	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets the maximum number of roles protected by SQL/Protect.	X
edb_sql_protect.max_queries_to_save	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets the maximum number of offending queries to save by SQL/Protect.	X
edb_stmt_level_tx	Session	Immediate	User	Allows continuing on errors instead of requiring a transaction abort.	X
edb_wait_states.directory	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	The EDB wait states logs are stored in this directory.	X
edb_wait_states.retention_period	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	EDB wait state log files will be automatically deleted after retention period.	X
edb_wait_states.sampling_interval	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	The interval between two EDB wait state sampling cycles.	X
edbldr.empty_csv_field	Session	Immediate	Superuser	Specifies how EDB*Loader handles empty strings.	X
enable_hints	Session	Immediate	User	Enable optimizer hints in SQL statements.	X
icu_short_form	Database	Preset	n/a	Shows the ICU collation order configuration.	X
index_advisor.enabled	Session	Immediate	User	Enable Index Advisor plugin.	X
nls_length_semantics	Session	Immediate	Superuser	Sets the semantics to use for char, varchar, varchar2 and long columns.	X
odbc_lib_path	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets the path for ODBC library.	X
optimizer_mode	Session	Immediate	User	Default optimizer mode.	X
oracle_home	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets the path for the Oracle home directory.	X
pg_prewarm.autoprewarm	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Enables the autoprewarm background worker.	X
pg_prewarm.autoprewarm_interval	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Sets the minimum number of seconds after which autoprewarm dumps shared buffers.	X

qreplace_function	Session	Immediate	Superuser	The function to be used by Query Replace feature. Note: For internal use only.	X
query_rewrite_enabled	Session	Immediate	User	Child table scans will be skipped if their constraints guarantee that no rows match the query.	X
query_rewrite_integrity	Session	Immediate	Superuser	Sets the degree to which query rewriting must be enforced.	X
timed_statistics	Session	Immediate	User	Enables the recording of timed statistics.	X
trace_hints	Session	Immediate	User	Emit debug info about hints being honored.	X
utl_encode.uudecode_redwood	Session	Immediate	User	Allows decoding of Oracle-created uuencoded data.	X
utl_file.umask	Session	Immediate	User	Umask used for files created through the UTL_FILE package.	X

### 12.3.1.3 Configuration Parameters by Functionality

This section provides more detail for certain groups of configuration parameters.

The section heading for each parameter is followed by a list of attributes:

- **Parameter Type.** Type of values the parameter can accept. See [Setting Configuration Parameters](#) section for a discussion of parameter type values.
- **Default Value.** Default setting if a value is not explicitly set in the configuration file.
- **Range.** Permitted range of values.
- **Minimum Scope of Effect.** Smallest scope for which a distinct setting can be made. Generally, the minimal scope of a distinct setting is either the entire `cluster` (the setting is the same for all databases and sessions thereof, in the cluster), or `per session` (the setting may vary by role, database, or individual session). (This attribute has the same meaning as the `Scope of Effect` column in the table of [Summary of Configuration Parameters](#)).
- **When Value Changes Take Effect.** Least invasive action required to activate a change to a parameter's value. All parameter setting changes made in the configuration file can be put into effect with a restart of the database server; however certain parameters require a database server `restart`. Some parameter setting changes can be put into effect with a `reload` of the configuration file without stopping the database server. Finally, other parameter setting changes can be put into effect with some client side action whose result is `immediate`. (This attribute has the same meaning as the `When Takes Effect` column in the table of [Summary of Configuration Parameters](#)).
- **Required Authorization to Activate.** The type of user authorization to activate a change to a parameter's setting. If a database server restart or a configuration file reload is required, then the user must be a EPAS service account (`enterprisedb` or `postgres` depending upon the Advanced Server compatibility installation mode). (This attribute has the same meaning as the `Authorized User` column in the table of [Summary of Configuration Parameters](#)).

Configuration Parameters).

---

### 12.3.1.3.1 Top Performance Related Parameters

This section discusses the configuration parameters that have the most immediate impact on performance.

---

#### 12.3.1.3.1.1 shared\_buffers

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 32MB

**Range:** 128kB to system dependent

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the amount of memory the database server uses for shared memory buffers. The default is typically 32 megabytes (32MB), but might be less if your kernel settings will not support it (as determined during `initdb`). This setting must be at least 128 kilobytes. (Non-default values of `BLCKSZ` change the minimum.) However, settings significantly higher than the minimum are usually needed for good performance.

If you have a dedicated database server with 1GB or more of RAM, a reasonable starting value for `shared_buffers` is 25% of the memory in your system. There are some workloads where even large settings for `shared_buffers` are effective, but because Advanced Server also relies on the operating system cache, it is unlikely that an allocation of more than 40% of RAM to `shared_buffers` will work better than a smaller amount.

On systems with less than 1GB of RAM, a smaller percentage of RAM is appropriate, so as to leave adequate space for the operating system (15% of memory is more typical in these situations). Also, on Windows, large values for `shared_buffers` aren't as effective. You may find better results keeping the setting relatively low and using the operating system cache more instead. The useful range for `shared_buffers` on Windows systems is generally from 64MB to 512MB.

Increasing this parameter might cause Advanced Server to request more System V shared memory than your operating system's default configuration allows. See the section [Shared Memory and Semaphores](#) in the *PostgreSQL Core Documentation* for information on how to adjust those parameters, if necessary.

---

#### 12.3.1.3.1.2 work\_mem

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 1MB**Range:** 64kB to 2097151kB**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Specifies the amount of memory to be used by internal sort operations and hash tables before writing to temporary disk files. The value defaults to one megabyte (1MB). Note that for a complex query, several sort or hash operations might be running in parallel; each operation will be allowed to use as much memory as this value specifies before it starts to write data into temporary files. Also, several running sessions could be doing such operations concurrently. Therefore, the total memory used could be many times the value of `work_mem`; it is necessary to keep this fact in mind when choosing the value. Sort operations are used for `ORDER BY`, `DISTINCT`, and merge joins. Hash tables are used in hash joins, hash-based aggregation, and hash-based processing of `IN` subqueries.

Reasonable values are typically between 4MB and 64MB, depending on the size of your machine, how many concurrent connections you expect (determined by `max_connections`), and the complexity of your queries.

---

### 12.3.1.3.1.3 maintenance\_work\_mem

**Parameter Type:** Integer**Default Value:** 16MB**Range:** 1024kB to 2097151kB**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Specifies the maximum amount of memory to be used by maintenance operations, such as `VACUUM`, `CREATE INDEX`, and `ALTER TABLE ADD FOREIGN KEY`. It defaults to 16 megabytes (16MB). Since only one of these operations can be executed at a time by a database session, and an installation normally doesn't have many of them running concurrently, it's safe to set this value significantly larger than `work_mem`. Larger settings might improve performance for vacuuming and for restoring database dumps.

Note that when autovacuum runs, up to `autovacuum_max_workers` times this memory may be allocated, so be careful not to set the default value too high.

A good rule of thumb is to set this to about 5% of system memory, but not more than about 512MB. Larger values won't necessarily improve performance.

---

### 12.3.1.3.1.4 wal\_buffers

**Parameter Type:** Integer**Default Value:** 64kB**Range:** 32kB to system dependent**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

The amount of memory used in shared memory for WAL data. The default is 64 kilobytes ( 64kB ). The setting need only be large enough to hold the amount of WAL data generated by one typical transaction, since the data is written out to disk at every transaction commit.

Increasing this parameter might cause Advanced Server to request more System V shared memory than your operating system's default configuration allows. See the section "Shared Memory and Semaphores" in the *PostgreSQL Core Documentation* for information on how to adjust those parameters, if necessary.

Although even this very small setting does not always cause a problem, there are situations where it can result in extra `fsync` calls, and degrade overall system throughput. Increasing this value to 1MB or so can alleviate this problem. On very busy systems, an even higher value may be needed, up to a maximum of about 16MB. Like `shared_buffers`, this parameter increases Advanced Server's initial shared memory allocation, so if increasing it causes an Advanced Server start failure, you will need to increase the operating system limit.

### **12.3.1.3.1.5      `checkpoint_segments`**

Now deprecated; this parameter is not supported by server versions 9.5 or later.

### **12.3.1.3.1.6      `checkpoint_completion_target`**

**Parameter Type:** Floating point**Default Value:** 0.5**Range:** 0 to 1**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the target of checkpoint completion as a fraction of total time between checkpoints. This spreads out the checkpoint writes while the system starts working towards the next checkpoint.

The default of 0.5 means aim to finish the checkpoint writes when 50% of the next checkpoint is ready. A value of 0.9 means aim to finish the checkpoint writes when 90% of the next checkpoint is done, thus throttling the checkpoint writes over a larger amount of time and avoiding spikes of performance bottlenecking.

### 12.3.1.3.1.7 checkpoint\_timeout

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 5min

**Range:** 30s to 3600s

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Maximum time between automatic WAL checkpoints, in seconds. The default is five minutes (5min). Increasing this parameter can increase the amount of time needed for crash recovery.

Increasing `checkpoint_timeout` to a larger value, such as 15 minutes, can reduce the I/O load on your system, especially when using large values for `shared_buffers`.

The downside of making the aforementioned adjustments to the checkpoint parameters is that your system will use a modest amount of additional disk space, and will take longer to recover in the event of a crash. However, for most users, this is a small price to pay for a significant performance improvement.

### 12.3.1.3.1.8 max\_wal\_size

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 1 GB

**Range:** 2 to 2147483647

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

`max_wal_size` specifies the maximum size that the WAL will reach between automatic WAL checkpoints. This is a soft limit; WAL size can exceed `max_wal_size` under special circumstances (when under a heavy load, a failing archive\_command, or a high `wal_keep_segments` setting).

Increasing this parameter can increase the amount of time needed for crash recovery. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

### 12.3.1.3.1.9 min\_wal\_size

**Parameter Type:** Integer**Default Value:** 80 MB**Range:** 2 to 2147483647**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

If WAL disk usage stays below the value specified by `min_wal_size`, old WAL files are recycled for future use at a checkpoint, rather than removed. This ensures that enough WAL space is reserved to handle spikes in WAL usage (like when running large batch jobs). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

---

### **12.3.1.3.1.10      `bgwriter_delay`**

**Parameter Type:** Integer**Default Value:** 200ms**Range:** 10ms to 10000ms**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the delay between activity rounds for the background writer. In each round the writer issues writes for some number of dirty buffers (controllable by the `bgwriter_lru_maxpages` and `bgwriter_lru_multiplier` parameters). It then sleeps for `bgwriter_delay` milliseconds, and repeats.

The default value is 200 milliseconds (200ms). Note that on many systems, the effective resolution of sleep delays is 10 milliseconds; setting `bgwriter_delay` to a value that is not a multiple of 10 might have the same results as setting it to the next higher multiple of 10.

Typically, when tuning `bgwriter_delay`, it should be reduced from its default value. This parameter is rarely increased, except perhaps to save on power consumption on a system with very low utilization.

---

### **12.3.1.3.1.11      `seq_page_cost`**

**Parameter Type:** Floating point**Default Value:** 1**Range:** 0 to 1.79769e+308

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of a disk page fetch that is part of a series of sequential fetches. The default is 1.0. This value can be overridden for a particular tablespace by setting the tablespace parameter of the same name. (Refer to the [ALTER TABLESPACE](#) command in the *PostgreSQL Core Documentation*.)

The default value assumes very little caching, so it's frequently a good idea to reduce it. Even if your database is significantly larger than physical memory, you might want to try setting this parameter to less than 1 (rather than its default value of 1) to see whether you get better query plans that way. If your database fits entirely within memory, you can lower this value much more, perhaps to 0.1.

---

### 12.3.1.3.1.12 random\_page\_cost

**Parameter Type:** Floating point

**Default Value:** 4

**Range:** 0 to 1.79769e+308

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of a non-sequentially-fetched disk page. The default is 4.0. This value can be overridden for a particular tablespace by setting the tablespace parameter of the same name. (Refer to the [ALTER TABLESPACE](#) command in the *PostgreSQL Core Documentation*.)

Reducing this value relative to `seq_page_cost` will cause the system to prefer index scans; raising it will make index scans look relatively more expensive. You can raise or lower both values together to change the importance of disk I/O costs relative to CPU costs, which are described by the `cpu_tuple_cost` and `cpu_index_tuple_cost` parameters.

The default value assumes very little caching, so it's frequently a good idea to reduce it. Even if your database is significantly larger than physical memory, you might want to try setting this parameter to 2 (rather than its default of 4) to see whether you get better query plans that way. If your database fits entirely within memory, you can lower this value much more, perhaps to 0.1.

Although the system will let you do so, never set `random_page_cost` less than `seq_page_cost`. However, setting them equal (or very close to equal) makes sense if the database fits mostly or entirely within memory, since in that case there is no penalty for touching pages out of sequence. Also, in a heavily-cached database you should lower both values relative to the CPU parameters, since the cost of fetching a page already in RAM is much smaller than it would normally be.

---

### 12.3.1.3.1.13 effective\_cache\_size

**Parameter Type:** Integer**Default Value:** 128MB**Range:** 8kB to 17179869176kB**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Sets the planner's assumption about the effective size of the disk cache that is available to a single query. This is factored into estimates of the cost of using an index; a higher value makes it more likely index scans will be used, a lower value makes it more likely sequential scans will be used. When setting this parameter you should consider both Advanced Server's shared buffers and the portion of the kernel's disk cache that will be used for Advanced Server data files. Also, take into account the expected number of concurrent queries on different tables, since they will have to share the available space. This parameter has no effect on the size of shared memory allocated by Advanced Server, nor does it reserve kernel disk cache; it is used only for estimation purposes. The default is 128 megabytes ([128MB](#)).

If this parameter is set too low, the planner may decide not to use an index even when it would be beneficial to do so. Setting `effective_cache_size` to 50% of physical memory is a normal, conservative setting. A more aggressive setting would be approximately 75% of physical memory.

---

### **12.3.1.3.1.14      synchronous\_commit**

**Parameter Type:** Boolean**Default Value:** true**Range:** {true | false}**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Specifies whether transaction commit will wait for WAL records to be written to disk before the command returns a `success` indication to the client. The default, and safe, setting is on. When off, there can be a delay between when success is reported to the client and when the transaction is really guaranteed to be safe against a server crash. (The maximum delay is three times `wal_writer_delay`.)

Unlike `fsync`, setting this parameter to off does not create any risk of database inconsistency: an operating system or database crash might result in some recent allegedly-committed transactions being lost, but the database state will be just the same as if those transactions had been aborted cleanly.

So, turning `synchronous_commit` off can be a useful alternative when performance is more important than exact certainty about the durability of a transaction. See the section [Asynchronous Commit](#) in the *PostgreSQL Core Documentation* for information.

This parameter can be changed at any time; the behavior for any one transaction is determined by the setting in effect when it commits. It is therefore possible, and useful, to have some transactions commit synchronously and others asynchronously. For example, to make a single multistatement transaction commit asynchronously when the default is the opposite, issue `SET LOCAL synchronous_commit TO OFF` within the transaction.

## 12.3.1.3.1.15      `edb_max_spins_per_delay`

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 1000

**Range:** 10 to 1000

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Use `edb_max_spins_per_delay` to specify the maximum number of times that a session will spin while waiting for a spin-lock. If a lock is not acquired, the session will sleep. If you do not specify an alternative value for `edb_max_spins_per_delay`, the server will enforce the default value of 1000.

This may be useful for systems that use NUMA (non-uniform memory access) architecture.

## 12.3.1.3.1.16      `pg_prewarm.autoprewarm`

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

This parameter controls whether or not the database server should run `autoprewarm`, which is a background worker process that automatically dumps shared buffers to disk before a shutdown. It then `prewams` the shared buffers the next time the server is started, meaning it loads blocks from the disk back into the buffer pool.

The advantage is that it shortens the warm up times after the server has been restarted by loading the data that has been dumped to disk before shutdown.

If `pg_prewarm.autoprewarm` is set to on, the `autoprewarm` worker is enabled. If the parameter is set to off, `autoprewarm` is disabled. The parameter is on by default.

Before `autoprewarm` can be used, you must add `$libdir/pg_prewarm` to the libraries listed in the `shared_preload_libraries` configuration parameter of the `postgresql.conf` file as shown by the following example:

```
shared_preload_libraries =
'$libdir/dbms_pipe,$libdir/edb_gen,$libdir/dbms_aq,$libdir/pg_prewarm'
```

After modifying the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter, restart the database server after which the `autoprewarm` background worker is launched immediately after the server has reached a consistent state.

The `autoprewarm` process will start loading blocks that were previously recorded in `$PGDATA/autoprewarm` blocks until there is no free buffer space left in the buffer pool. In this manner, any new blocks that were loaded either by the recovery process or by the querying clients, are not replaced.

Once the `autoprewarm` process has finished loading buffers from disk, it will periodically dump shared buffers to disk at the interval specified by the `pg_prewarm.autoprewarm_interval` parameter. See the `pg_prewarm.autoprewarm_interval` for information on the `autoprewarm` background worker. Upon the next server restart, the `autoprewarm` process will prewarm shared buffers with the blocks that were last dumped to disk.

---

### 12.3.1.3.1.17 pg\_prewarm.autoprewarm\_interval

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 300s

**Range:** 0s to 2147483s

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

This is the minimum number of seconds after which the `autoprewarm` background worker dumps shared buffers to disk. The default is 300 seconds. If set to 0, shared buffers are not dumped at regular intervals, but only when the server is shut down.

See the `pg_prewarm.autoprewarm` for information on the `autoprewarm` background worker.

---

### 12.3.1.3.2 Resource Usage / Memory

The configuration parameters in this section control resource usage pertaining to memory.

#### edb\_dynatune

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 0

**Range:** 0 to 100

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Determines how much of the host system's resources are to be used by the database server based upon the host

machine's total available resources and the intended usage of the host machine.

When Advanced Server is initially installed, the `edb_dynatune` parameter is set in accordance with the selected usage of the host machine on which it was installed (i.e., development machine, mixed use machine, or dedicated server). For most purposes, there is no need for the database administrator to adjust the various configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file in order to improve performance.

The `edb_dynatune` parameter can be set to any integer value between 0 and 100, inclusive. A value of 0, turns off the dynamic tuning feature thereby leaving the database server resource usage totally under the control of the other configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file.

A low non-zero, value (e.g., 1 - 33) dedicates the least amount of the host machine's resources to the database server. This setting would be used for a development machine where many other applications are being used.

A value in the range of 34 - 66 dedicates a moderate amount of resources to the database server. This setting might be used for a dedicated application server that may have a fixed number of other applications running on the same machine as Advanced Server.

The highest values (e.g., 67 - 100) dedicate most of the server's resources to the database server. This setting would be used for a host machine that is totally dedicated to running Advanced Server.

Once a value of `edb_dynatune` is selected, database server performance can be further fine-tuned by adjusting the other configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file. Any adjusted setting overrides the corresponding value chosen by `edb_dynatune`. You can change the value of a parameter by un-commenting the configuration parameter, specifying the desired value, and restarting the database server.

## `edb_dynatune_profile`

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** oltp

**Range:** {oltp | reporting | mixed}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

This parameter is used to control tuning aspects based upon the expected workload profile on the database server.

The following are the possible values:

- `oltp`. Recommended when the database server is processing heavy online transaction processing workloads.
- `reporting`. Recommended for database servers used for heavy data reporting.
- `mixed`. Recommended for servers that provide a mix of transaction processing and data reporting.

### 12.3.1.3.3 Resource Usage / EDB Resource Manager

The configuration parameters in this section control resource usage through EDB Resource Manager.

## `edb_max_resource_groups`

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 16

**Range:** 0 to 65536

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

This parameter controls the maximum number of resource groups that can be used simultaneously by EDB Resource Manager. More resource groups can be created than the value specified by `edb_max_resource_groups`, however, the number of resource groups in active use by processes in these groups cannot exceed this value.

Parameter `edb_max_resource_groups` should be set comfortably larger than the number of groups you expect to maintain so as not to run out.

## `edb_resource_group`

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** none

**Range:** n/a

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Set the `edb_resource_group` parameter to the name of the resource group to which the current session is to be controlled by EDB Resource Manager according to the group's resource type settings.

If the parameter is not set, then the current session does not utilize EDB Resource Manager.

### 12.3.1.3.4      Query Tuning

This section describes the configuration parameters used for optimizer hints.

#### `enable_hints`

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Optimizer hints embedded in SQL commands are utilized when `enable_hints` is on. Optimizer hints are ignored when this parameter is off.

---

### 12.3.1.3.5 Query Tuning / Planner Method Configuration

This section describes the configuration parameters used for planner method configuration.

#### `edb_enable_pruning`

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

When set to `TRUE`, `edb_enable_pruning` allows the query planner to early-prune partitioned tables. **Early-pruning** means that the query planner can `prune` (i.e., ignore) partitions that would not be searched in a query `before` generating query plans. This helps improve performance time as it eliminates the generation of query plans of partitions that would not be searched.

Conversely, `late-pruning` means that the query planner prunes partitions `after` generating query plans for each partition. (The `constraint_exclusion` configuration parameter controls late-pruning.)

The ability to early-prune depends upon the nature of the query in the `WHERE` clause. Early-pruning can be utilized in only simple queries with constraints of the type `WHERE column = literal` (e.g., `WHERE deptno = 10`).

Early-pruning is not used for more complex queries such as `WHERE column = expression` (e.g., `WHERE deptno = 10 + 5`).

---

### 12.3.1.3.6 Reporting and Logging / What to Log

The configuration parameters in this section control reporting and logging.

## trace\_hints

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Use with the optimizer hints feature to provide more detailed information regarding whether or not a hint was used by the planner. Set the `client_min_messages` and `trace_hints` configuration parameters as follows:

```
SET client_min_messages TO info;
SET trace_hints TO true;
```

The `SELECT` command with the `NO_INDEX` hint shown below illustrates the additional information produced when the aforementioned configuration parameters are set.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ NO_INDEX(accounts accounts_pkey) */ * FROM accounts
WHERE aid = 100;
```

```
INFO: [HINTS] Index Scan of [accounts].[accounts_pkey] rejected because
of NO_INDEX hint.
```

```
INFO: [HINTS] Bitmap Heap Scan of [accounts].[accounts_pkey] rejected
because of NO_INDEX hint.
```

### QUERY PLAN

---

```
Seq Scan on accounts (cost=0.00..14461.10 rows=1 width=97)
  Filter: (aid = 100)
(2 rows)
```

## edb\_log\_every\_bulk\_value

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Superuser

Bulk processing logs the resulting statements into both the Advanced Server log file and the EDB Audit log file. However, logging each and every statement in bulk processing is costly. This can be controlled by the `edb_log_every_bulk_value` configuration parameter. When set to `true`, each and every statement in bulk

processing is logged. During bulk execution, when `edb_log_every_bulk_value` is set to `false`, a log message is recorded once per bulk processing along with the number of rows processed. In addition, the duration is emitted once per bulk processing. Default is set to `false`.

---

### 12.3.1.3.7 Auditing Settings

This section describes configuration parameters used by the Advanced Server database auditing feature.

---

#### 12.3.1.3.7.1 `edb_audit`

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** none

**Range:** {none | csv | xml}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Enables or disables database auditing. The values `xml` or `csv` will enable database auditing. These values represent the file format in which auditing information will be captured. `none` will disable database auditing and is also the default.

---

#### 12.3.1.3.7.2 `edb_audit_directory`

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** `edb_audit`

**Range:** n/a

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the directory where the audit log files will be created. The path of the directory can be absolute or relative to the Advanced Server `data` directory.

### 12.3.1.3.7.3      `edb_audit_filename`

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** audit-%Y%m%d\_%H%M%S

**Range:** n/a

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the file name of the audit file where the auditing information will be stored. The default file name will be `audit-%Y%m%d_%H%M%S`. The escape sequences, `%Y`, `%m` etc., will be replaced by the appropriate current values according to the system date and time.

### 12.3.1.3.7.4      `edb_audit_rotation_day`

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** every

**Range:** {none | every | sun | mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat} ...

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the day of the week on which to rotate the audit files. Valid values are `sun`, `mon`, `tue`, `wed`, `thu`, `fri`, `sat`, `every`, and `none`. To disable rotation, set the value to `none`. To rotate the file every day, set the `edb_audit_rotation_day` value to `every`. To rotate the file on a specific day of the week, set the value to the desired day of the week.

### 12.3.1.3.7.5      `edb_audit_rotation_size`

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 0MB

**Range:** 0MB to 5000MB

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies a file size threshold in megabytes when file rotation will be forced to occur. The default value is 0MB. If the parameter is commented out or set to 0, rotation of the file on a size basis will not occur.

---

### 12.3.1.3.7.6      `edb_audit_rotation_seconds`

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 0s

**Range:** 0s to 2147483647s

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the rotation time in seconds when a new log file should be created. To disable this feature, set this parameter to 0.

---

### 12.3.1.3.7.7      `edb_audit_connect`

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** failed

**Range:** {none | failed | all}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Enables auditing of database connection attempts by users. To disable auditing of all connection attempts, set `edb_audit_connect` to `none`. To audit all failed connection attempts, set the value to `failed`. To audit all connection attempts, set the value to `all`.

---

### 12.3.1.3.7.8      `edb_audit_disconnect`

**Parameter Type:** Enum**Default Value:** none**Range:** {none | all}**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Enables auditing of database disconnections by connected users. To enable auditing of disconnections, set the value to `all`. To disable, set the value to `none`.

---

### 12.3.1.3.7.9      `edb_audit_statement`

**Parameter Type:** String**Default Value:** ddl, error

**Range:** {none| ddl | dml | insert | update | delete | truncate | select | error | create | drop | alter | grant | revoke | rollback | all} ...

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

This configuration parameter is used to specify auditing of different categories of SQL statements as well as those statements related to specific SQL commands. To log errors, set the parameter value to `error`. To audit all DDL statements such as `CREATE TABLE`, `ALTER TABLE`, etc., set the parameter value to `ddl`. To audit specific types of DDL statements, the parameter values can include those specific SQL commands (`create`, `drop`, or `alter`). In addition, the object type may be specified following the command such as `create table`, `create view`, `drop role`, etc. All modification statements such as `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE` or `TRUNCATE` can be audited by setting `edb_audit_statement` to `dml`. To audit specific types of DML statements, the parameter values can include the specific SQL commands, `insert`, `update`, `delete`, or `truncate`. Include parameter values `select`, `grant`, `revoke`, or `rollback` to audit statements regarding those SQL commands. Setting the value to `all` will audit every statement while `none` disables this feature.

---

### 12.3.1.3.7.10      `edb_audit_tag`

**Parameter Type:** String**Default Value:** none**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Session**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** User

Use `edb_audit_tag` to specify a string value that will be included in the audit log when the `edb_audit` parameter is set to `csv` or `xml`.

---

**12.3.1.3.7.11      `edb_audit_destination`**

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** file

**Range:** {file | syslog}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies whether the audit log information is to be recorded in the directory as given by the `edb_audit_directory` parameter or to the directory and file managed by the `syslog` process. Set to `file` to use the directory specified by `edb_audit_directory` (the default setting).

Set to `syslog` to use the syslog process and its location as configured in the `/etc/syslog.conf` file. The `syslog` setting is valid only for Advanced Server running on a Linux host, and is not supported on Windows systems.

**Note:** In recent Linux versions, `syslog` has been replaced by `rsyslog` and the configuration file is in `/etc/rsyslog.conf`.

---

**12.3.1.3.7.12      `edb_log_every_bulk_value`**

For information on `edb_log_every_bulk_value`, see the [edb\\_log\\_every\\_bulk\\_value](#).

---

**12.3.1.3.8      Client Connection Defaults / Locale and Formatting**

This section describes configuration parameters affecting locale and formatting.

**`icu_short_form`**

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** none

**Range:** n/a**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Database**When Value Changes Take Effect:** n/a**Required Authorization to Activate:** n/a

The configuration parameter `icu_short_form` is a parameter containing the default ICU short form name assigned to a database or to the Advanced Server instance. See [Unicode Collation Algorithm](#) for general information about the ICU short form and the Unicode Collation Algorithm.

This configuration parameter is set either when the `CREATE DATABASE` command is used with the `ICU_SHORT_FORM` parameter in which case the specified short form name is set and appears in the `icu_short_form` configuration parameter when connected to this database, or when an Advanced Server instance is created with the `initdb` command used with the `--icu_short_form` option in which case the specified short form name is set and appears in the `icu_short_form` configuration parameter when connected to a database in that Advanced Server instance, and the database does not override it with its own `ICU_SHORT_FORM` parameter with a different short form.

Once established in the manner described, the `icu_short_form` configuration parameter cannot be changed.

---

### 12.3.1.3.9 Client Connection Defaults / Statement Behavior

This section describes configuration parameters affecting statement behavior.

#### `default_heap_fillfactor`

**Parameter Type:** Integer**Default Value:** 100**Range:** 10 to 100**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Sets the fillfactor for a table when the `FILLFACTOR` storage parameter is omitted from a `CREATE TABLE` command.

The fillfactor for a table is a percentage between 10 and 100. 100 (complete packing) is the default. When a smaller `fillfactor` is specified, `INSERT` operations pack table pages only to the indicated percentage; the remaining space on each page is reserved for updating rows on that page. This gives `UPDATE` a chance to place the updated copy of a row on the same page as the original, which is more efficient than placing it on a different page. For a table whose entries are never updated, complete packing is the best choice, but in heavily updated tables smaller fillfactors are appropriate.

#### `edb_data_redaction`

**Parameter Type:** Boolean**Default Value:** true**Range:** {true | false}**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Data redaction is the support of policies to limit the exposure of certain sensitive data to certain users by altering the displayed information.

The default setting is `TRUE` so the data redaction is applied to all users except for superusers and the table owner:

- Superusers and table owner bypass data redaction.
- All other users get the redaction policy applied and see the reformatted data.

If the parameter is disabled by setting it to `FALSE`, then the following occurs:

- Superusers and table owner still bypass data redaction.
- All other users will get an error.

For information on data redaction, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server Security Features Guide*.

### 12.3.1.3.10 Client Connection Defaults / Other Defaults

The parameters in this section set other miscellaneous client connection defaults.

#### `oracle_home`

**Parameter Type:** String**Default Value:** none**Range:** n/a**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Before creating an Oracle Call Interface (OCI) database link to an Oracle server, you must direct Advanced Server to the correct Oracle home directory. Set the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable on Linux (or `PATH` on Windows) to the `lib` directory of the Oracle client installation directory.

For Windows only, you can instead set the value of the `oracle_home` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file. The value specified in the `oracle_home` configuration parameter will override the Windows `PATH` environment variable.

The `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable on Linux (PATH environment variable or `oracle_home` configuration parameter on Windows) must be set properly each time you start Advanced Server.

**For Windows only:** To set the `oracle_home` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file, edit the file, adding the following line:

```
oracle_home = 'lib_directory'
```

Substitute the name of the Windows directory that contains `oci.dll` for `lib_directory`.

After setting the `oracle_home` configuration parameter, you must restart the server for the changes to take effect. Restart the server from the Windows Services console.

## odbc\_lib\_path

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** none

**Range:** n/a

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

If you will be using an ODBC driver manager, and if it is installed in a non-standard location, you specify the location by setting the `odbc_lib_path` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file:

```
odbc_lib_path = 'complete_path_to_libodbc.so'
```

The configuration file must include the complete pathname to the driver manager shared library (typically `libodbc.so`).

### 12.3.1.3.11 Compatibility Options

The configuration parameters described in this section control various database compatibility features.

#### edb\_redwood\_date

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

When `DATE` appears as the data type of a column in the commands, it is translated to `TIMESTAMP` at the time the table definition is stored in the database if the configuration parameter `edb_redwood_date` is set to `TRUE`. Thus, a time component will also be stored in the column along with the date.

If `edb_redwood_date` is set to `FALSE` the column's data type in a `CREATE TABLE` or `ALTER TABLE` command remains as a native PostgreSQL `DATE` data type and is stored as such in the database. The PostgreSQL `DATE` data type stores only the date without a time component in the column.

Regardless of the setting of `edb_redwood_date`, when `DATE` appears as a data type in any other context such as the data type of a variable in an SPL declaration section, or the data type of a formal parameter in an SPL procedure or SPL function, or the return type of an SPL function, it is always internally translated to a `TIMESTAMP` and thus, can handle a time component if present.

## `edb_redwood_greatest_least`

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

The `GREATEST` function returns the parameter with the greatest value from its list of parameters. The `LEAST` function returns the parameter with the least value from its list of parameters.

When `edb_redwood_greatest_least` is set to `TRUE`, the `GREATEST` and `LEAST` functions return null when at least one of the parameters is null.

```
SETedb_redwood_greatest_leastTOon;
```

```
SELECTGREATEST(1,2,NULL,3);
```

```
greatest
```

```
-----
```

```
(1row)
```

When `edb_redwood_greatest_least` is set to `FALSE`, null parameters are ignored except when all parameters are null in which case null is returned by the functions.

```
SETedb_redwood_greatest_leastTOoff;
```

```
SELECTGREATEST(1,2,NULL,3);
```

```
greatest
```

```
-----
```

```
3
```

```
(1row)
```

```
SELECTGREATEST(NULL,NULL,NULL);
```

```
greatest
-----
```

```
(1 row)
```

## edb\_redwood\_raw\_names

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

When `edb_redwood_raw_names` is set to its default value of `FALSE`, database object names such as table names, column names, trigger names, program names, user names, etc. appear in uppercase letters when viewed from Redwood catalogs (that is, system catalogs prefixed by `ALL_`, `DBA_`, or `USER_`). In addition, quotation marks enclose names that were created with enclosing quotation marks.

When `edb_redwood_raw_names` is set to `TRUE`, the database object names are displayed exactly as they are stored in the PostgreSQL system catalogs when viewed from the Redwood catalogs. Thus, names created without enclosing quotation marks appear in lowercase as expected in PostgreSQL. Names created with enclosing quotation marks appear exactly as they were created, but without the quotation marks.

For example, the following user name is created, and then a session is started with that user.

```
CREATE USER reduser IDENTIFIED BY password;
edb=# \c - reduser
Password for user reduser:
You are now connected to database "edb" as user "reduser".
```

When connected to the database as reduser, the following tables are created.

```
CREATE TABLE all_lower (col INTEGER);
CREATE TABLE ALL_UPPER (COL INTEGER);
CREATE TABLE "Mixed_Case" ("Col" INTEGER);
```

When viewed from the Redwood catalog, `USER_TABLES`, with `edb_redwood_raw_names` set to the default value `FALSE`, the names appear in uppercase except for the `Mixed_Case` name, which appears as created and also with enclosing quotation marks.

```
edb=> SELECT * FROM USER_TABLES;
schema_name | table_name | tablespace_name | status | temporary
-----+-----+-----+-----+
REDUSER   | ALL_LOWER  |          | VALID  | N
REDUSER   | ALL_UPPER  |          | VALID  | N
REDUSER   | "Mixed_Case" |          | VALID  | N
(3 rows)
```

When viewed with `edb_redwood_raw_names` set to `TRUE`, the names appear in lowercase except for the `Mixed_Case` name, which appears as created, but now without the enclosing quotation marks.

```
edb=> SET edb_redwood_raw_names TO true;
SET
edb=> SELECT * FROM USER_TABLES;
schema_name | table_name | tablespace_name | status | temporary
-----+-----+-----+
reduser | all_lower | VALID | N
reduser | all_upper | VALID | N
reduser | Mixed_Case | VALID | N
(3 rows)
```

These names now match the case when viewed from the PostgreSQL `pg_tables` catalog.

```
edb=> SELECT schemaname, tablename, tableowner FROM pg_tables WHERE
tableowner = 'reduser';
schemaname | tablename | tableowner
-----+-----+-----
reduser | all_lower | reduser
reduser | all_upper | reduser
reduser | Mixed_Case | reduser
(3 rows)
```

## edb\_redwood\_strings

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

If the `edb_redwood_strings` parameter is set to `TRUE`, when a string is concatenated with a null variable or null column, the result is the original string. If `edb_redwood_strings` is set to `FALSE`, the native PostgreSQL behavior is maintained, which is the concatenation of a string with a null variable or null column gives a null result.

The following example illustrates the difference.

The sample application contains a table of employees. This table has a column named `comm` that is null for most employees. The following query is run with `edb_redwood_string` set to `FALSE`. The concatenation of a null column with non-empty strings produces a final result of null, so only employees that have a commission appear in the query result. The output line for all other employees is null.

```
SET edb_redwood_strings TO off;

SELECT RPAD(ename,10) || ' ' || TO_CHAR(sal,'99,999.99') || ' ' ||
TO_CHAR(comm,'99,999.99') "EMPLOYEE COMPENSATION" FROM emp;

EMPLOYEE COMPENSATION
-----
ALLEN    1,600.00  300.00
WARD     1,250.00  500.00
```

```
MARTIN    1,250.00 1,400.00
```

```
TURNER    1,500.00 .00
```

(14 rows)

The following is the same query executed when `edb_redwood_strings` is set to `TRUE`. Here, the value of a null column is treated as an empty string. The concatenation of an empty string with a non-empty string produces the non-empty string.

```
SET edb_redwood_strings TO on;

SELECT RPAD(ename,10) || '' || TO_CHAR(sal,'99,999.99') || '' ||
TO_CHAR(comm,'99,999.99') "EMPLOYEE COMPENSATION" FROM emp;
```

EMPLOYEE COMPENSATION

---

```
SMITH 800.00
ALLEN 1,600.00 300.00
WARD 1,250.00 500.00
JONES 2,975.00
MARTIN 1,250.00 1,400.00
BLAKE 2,850.00
CLARK 2,450.00
SCOTT 3,000.00
KING 5,000.00
TURNER 1,500.00 .00
ADAMS 1,100.00
JAMES 950.00
FORD 3,000.00
MILLER 1,300.00
```

(14 rows)

## `edb_stmt_level_tx`

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

The term `statement level transaction isolation` describes the behavior whereby when a runtime error occurs in a SQL command, all the updates on the database caused by that single command are rolled back. For example, if a

single `UPDATE` command successfully updates five rows, but an attempt to update a sixth row results in an exception, the updates to all six rows made by this `UPDATE` command are rolled back. The effects of prior SQL commands that have not yet been committed or rolled back are pending until a `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` command is executed.

In Advanced Server, if an exception occurs while executing a SQL command, all the updates on the database since the start of the transaction are rolled back. In addition, the transaction is left in an aborted state and either a `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` command must be issued before another transaction can be started.

If `edb_stmt_level_tx` is set to `TRUE`, then an exception will not automatically roll back prior uncommitted database updates. If `edb_stmt_level_tx` is set to `FALSE`, then an exception will roll back uncommitted database updates.

#### Note

Use `edb_stmt_level_tx` set to `TRUE` only when absolutely necessary, as this may cause a negative performance impact.

The following example run in PSQL shows that when `edb_stmt_level_tx` is `FALSE`, the abort of the second `INSERT` command also rolls back the first `INSERT` command. Note that in PSQL, the command `\set AUTOCOMMIT off` must be issued, otherwise every statement commits automatically defeating the purpose of this demonstration of the effect of `edb_stmt_level_tx`.

```
\set AUTOCOMMIT off
SET edb_stmt_level_tx TO off;

INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9001, 'JONES', 40);
INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9002, 'JONES', 00);
ERROR: insert or update on table "emp" violates foreign key constraint
"emp_ref_dept_fk"
DETAIL: Key (deptno)=(0) is not present in table "dept".

COMMIT;
SELECT empno, ename, deptno FROM emp WHERE empno > 9000;

empno | ename | deptno
-----+-----+
(0 rows)
```

In the following example, with `edb_stmt_level_tx` set to `TRUE`, the first `INSERT` command has not been rolled back after the error on the second `INSERT` command. At this point, the first `INSERT` command can either be committed or rolled back.

```
\set AUTOCOMMIT off
SET edb_stmt_level_tx TO on;

INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9001, 'JONES', 40);
INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9002, 'JONES', 00);
ERROR: insert or update on table "emp" violates foreign key constraint
"emp_ref_dept_fk"
DETAIL: Key (deptno)=(0) is not present in table "dept"

SELECT empno, ename, deptno FROM emp WHERE empno > 9000;

empno | ename | deptno
-----+-----+
 9001 | JONES |    40
(1 row)
```

```
COMMIT;
```

A `ROLLBACK` command could have been issued instead of the `COMMIT` command in which case the insert of employee number `9001` would have been rolled back as well.

## `db_dialect`

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** postgres

**Range:** {postgres | redwood}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

In addition to the native PostgreSQL system catalog, `pg_catalog`, Advanced Server contains an extended catalog view. This is the `sys` catalog for the expanded catalog view. The `db_dialect` parameter controls the order in which these catalogs are searched for name resolution.

When set to `postgres`, the namespace precedence is `pg_catalog` then `sys`, giving the PostgreSQL catalog the highest precedence. When set to `redwood`, the namespace precedence is `sys` then `pg_catalog`, giving the expanded catalog views the highest precedence.

## `default_with_rowids`

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

When set to `on`, `CREATE TABLE` includes a `ROWID` column in newly created tables, which can then be referenced in SQL commands. In earlier versions of Advanced Server `ROWIDs` were mapped to `OIDs`, but from Advanced Server version 12 onwards, the `ROWID` is an auto-incrementing value based on a sequence that starts with 1 and assigned to each row of a table created with `ROWIDs` option. By default, a unique index is created on a `ROWID` column.

The `ALTER` and `DROP` operations are restricted on a `ROWID` column.

To restore a database with `ROWIDs` from Advanced Server 11 or an earlier version, you must perform the following:

- `pg_dump`: If a table includes `OIDs` then specify `--convert-oids-to-rowids` to dump a database. Otherwise, ignore the `OIDs` to continue table creation on Advanced Server version 12 onwards.
- `pg_upgrade`: Errors out. But if a table includes `OIDs` or `ROWIDs`, then you must perform the following steps:
  1. Take a dump of the tables by specifying `--convert-oids-to-rowids` option.
  2. Drop the tables and then perform the upgrade.

3. Restore the dump after the upgrade is successful into a new cluster that contains the dumped tables into a target database.

## **optimizer\_mode**

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** choose

**Range:** {choose | ALL\_ROWS | FIRST\_ROWS | FIRST\_ROWS\_10 | FIRST\_ROWS\_100 | FIRST\_ROWS\_1000}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Sets the default optimization mode for analyzing optimizer hints.

The following table shows the possible values:

Hint	Description
ALL_ROWS	Optimizes for retrieval of all rows of the result set.
CHOOSE	Does no default optimization based on assumed number of rows to be retrieved from the result set. This is the default.
FIRST_ROWS	Optimizes for retrieval of only the first row of the result set.
FIRST_ROWS_10	Optimizes for retrieval of the first 10 rows of the results set.
FIRST_ROWS_100	Optimizes for retrieval of the first 100 rows of the result set.
FIRST_ROWS_1000	Optimizes for retrieval of the first 1000 rows of the result set.

These optimization modes are based upon the assumption that the client submitting the SQL command is interested in viewing only the first **n** rows of the result set and will then abandon the remainder of the result set. Resources allocated to the query are adjusted as such.

### **12.3.1.3.12      Customized Options**

In previous releases of Advanced Server, the **custom\_variable\_classes** was required by those parameters not normally known to be added by add-on modules (such as procedural languages).

## **custom\_variable\_classes**

The **custom\_variable\_classes** parameter is deprecated in Advanced Server 9.2; parameters that previously depended on this parameter no longer require its support.

## **dbms\_alert.max\_alerts**

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 100

**Range:** 0 to 500

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the maximum number of concurrent alerts allowed on a system using the `DBMS_ALERTS` package.

## dbms\_pipe.total\_message\_buffer

Parameter Type: Integer

**Default Value:** 30 Kb

**Range:** 30 Kb to 256 Kb

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the total size of the buffer used for the `DBMS_PIPE` package.

## index\_advisor.enabled

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Provides the capability to temporarily suspend Index Advisor in an EDB-PSQL or PSQL session. The Index Advisor plugin, `index_advisor`, must be loaded in the EDB-PSQL or PSQL session in order to use the `index_advisor.enabled` configuration parameter.

The Index Advisor plugin can be loaded as shown by the following example:

```
$ psql -d edb -U enterpriseedb
Password for user enterpriseedb:
psql (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

edb=# LOAD 'index_advisor';
LOAD
```

Use the `SET` command to change the parameter setting to control whether or not Index Advisor generates an alternative query plan as shown by the following example:

```
edb=# SET index_advisor.enabled TO off;
SET
edb=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a < 10000;
      QUERY PLAN
```

---

```
-----  
Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..1693.00 rows=9864 width=8)  
  Filter: (a < 10000)  
(2 rows)
```

```
edb=# SET index_advisor.enabled TO on;
SET
edb=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a < 10000;
      QUERY PLAN
```

---

```
-----  
Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..1693.00 rows=9864 width=8)  
  Filter: (a < 10000)  
Result (cost=0.00..327.88 rows=9864 width=8)  
  One-Time Filter: '===[ HYPOTHETICAL PLAN ]==':text  
    -> Index Scan using "<hypothetical-index>:1" on t (cost=0.00..327.88  
rows=9864 width=8)  
      Index Cond: (a < 10000)  
(6 rows)
```

## `edb_sql_protect.enabled`

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Controls whether or not SQL/Protect is actively monitoring protected roles by analyzing SQL statements issued by those roles and reacting according to the setting of `edb_sql_protect.level`. When you are ready to begin monitoring with SQL/Protect set this parameter to on.

## `edb_sql_protect.level`

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** passive

**Range:** {learn | passive | active}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the action taken by SQL/Protect when a SQL statement is issued by a protected role.

The `edb_sql_protect.level` configuration parameter can be set to one of the following values to use either learn mode, passive mode, or active mode:

- **learn.** Tracks the activities of protected roles and records the relations used by the roles. This is used when initially configuring SQL/Protect so the expected behaviors of the protected applications are learned.
- **passive.** Issues warnings if protected roles are breaking the defined rules, but does not stop any SQL statements from executing. This is the next step after SQL/Protect has learned the expected behavior of the protected roles. This essentially behaves in intrusion detection mode and can be run in production when properly monitored.
- **active.** Stops all invalid statements for a protected role. This behaves as a SQL firewall preventing dangerous queries from running. This is particularly effective against early penetration testing when the attacker is trying to determine the vulnerability point and the type of database behind the application. Not only does SQL/Protect close those vulnerability points, but it tracks the blocked queries allowing administrators to be alerted before the attacker finds an alternate method of penetrating the system.

If you are using SQL/Protect for the first time, set `edb_sql_protect.level` to `learn`.

**`edb_sql_protect.max_protected_relations`**

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 1024

**Range:** 1 to 2147483647

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the maximum number of relations that can be protected per role. Please note the total number of protected relations for the server will be the number of protected relations times the number of protected roles. Every protected relation consumes space in shared memory. The space for the maximum possible protected relations is reserved during database server startup.

If the server is started when `edb_sql_protect.max_protected_relations` is set to a value outside of the valid range (for example, a value of 2,147,483,648), then a warning message is logged in the database server log file:

```
2014-07-18 16:04:12 EDT WARNING: invalid value for parameter
"edb_sql_protect.max_protected_relations": "2147483648"
2014-07-18 16:04:12 EDT HINT: Value exceeds integer range.
```

The database server starts successfully, but with `edb_sql_protect.max_protected_relations` set to the default value of 1024.

Though the upper range for the parameter is listed as the maximum value for an integer data type, the practical setting depends on how much shared memory is available and the parameter value used during database server startup.

As long as the space required can be reserved in shared memory, the value will be acceptable. If the value is such that the space in shared memory cannot be reserved, the database server startup fails with an error message such as the following:

2014-07-18 15:22:17 EDT FATAL: could not map anonymous shared memory:

Cannot allocate memory

2014-07-18 15:22:17 EDT HINT: This error usually means that PostgreSQL's request for a shared memory segment exceeded available memory, swap space or huge pages. To reduce the request size (currently 2070118400 bytes), reduce PostgreSQL's shared memory usage, perhaps by reducing shared\_buffers or max\_connections.

In such cases, reduce the parameter value until the database server can be started successfully.

## **edb\_sql\_protect.max\_protected\_roles**

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 64

**Range:** 1 to 2147483647

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the maximum number of roles that can be protected.

Every protected role consumes space in shared memory. Please note that the server will reserve space for the number of protected roles times the number of protected relations (`edb_sql_protect.max_protected_relations`). The space for the maximum possible protected roles is reserved during database server startup.

If the database server is started when `edb_sql_protect.max_protected_roles` is set to a value outside of the valid range (for example, a value of 2,147,483,648), then a warning message is logged in the database server log file:

2014-07-18 16:04:12 EDT WARNING: invalid value for parameter

"`edb_sql_protect.max_protected_roles`": "2147483648"

2014-07-18 16:04:12 EDT HINT: Value exceeds integer range.

The database server starts successfully, but with `edb_sql_protect.max_protected_roles` set to the default value of 64.

Though the upper range for the parameter is listed as the maximum value for an integer data type, the practical setting depends on how much shared memory is available and the parameter value used during database server startup.

As long as the space required can be reserved in shared memory, the value will be acceptable. If the value is such that the space in shared memory cannot be reserved, the database server startup fails with an error message such as the following:

2014-07-18 15:22:17 EDT FATAL: could not map anonymous shared memory:

Cannot allocate memory

2014-07-18 15:22:17 EDT HINT: This error usually means that PostgreSQL's request for a shared memory segment exceeded available memory, swap space or huge pages. To reduce the request size (currently 2070118400 bytes), reduce PostgreSQL's shared memory usage, perhaps by reducing shared\_buffers or max\_connections.

In such cases, reduce the parameter value until the database server can be started successfully.

**edb\_sql\_protect.max\_queries\_to\_save****Parameter Type:** Integer**Default Value:** 5000**Range:** 100 to 2147483647**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the maximum number of offending queries to save in view `edb_sql_protect_queries`.

Every query that is saved consumes space in shared memory. The space for the maximum possible queries that can be saved is reserved during database server startup.

If the database server is started when `edb_sql_protect.max_queries_to_save` is set to a value outside of the valid range (for example, a value of 10), then a warning message is logged in the database server log file:

```
2014-07-18 13:05:31 EDT WARNING: 10 is outside the valid range for
parameter "edb_sql_protect.max_queries_to_save" (100 .. 2147483647)
```

The database server starts successfully, but with `edb_sql_protect.max_queries_to_save` set to the default value of 5000.

Though the upper range for the parameter is listed as the maximum value for an integer data type, the practical setting depends on how much shared memory is available and the parameter value used during database server startup.

As long as the space required can be reserved in shared memory, the value will be acceptable. If the value is such that the space in shared memory cannot be reserved, the database server startup fails with an error message such as the following:

```
2014-07-18 15:22:17 EDT FATAL: could not map anonymous shared memory:
Cannot allocate memory
2014-07-18 15:22:17 EDT HINT: This error usually means that PostgreSQL's
request for a shared memory segment exceeded available memory, swap
space or huge pages. To reduce the request size (currently 2070118400
bytes), reduce PostgreSQL's shared memory usage, perhaps by reducing
shared_buffers or max_connections.
```

In such cases, reduce the parameter value until the database server can be started successfully.

**edb\_wait\_states.directory****Parameter Type:** String**Default Value:** `edb_wait_states`**Range:** n/a**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the directory path where the EDB wait states log files are stored. The specified path should be a full, absolute path and not a relative path. However, the default setting is `edb_wait_states`, which makes `$PGDATA/edb_wait_states` the default directory location. For information on EDB wait states see [EDB Wait States](#) under [Performance Analysis and Tuning](#).

**`edb_wait_states.retention_period`****Parameter Type:** Integer**Default Value:** 604800s**Range:** 86400s to 2147483647s**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the period of time after which the log files for EDB wait states will be deleted. The default is 604800 seconds, which is 7 days. For information on EDB wait states see [EDB Wait States](#) under [Performance Analysis and Tuning](#).

**`edb_wait_states.sampling_interval`****Parameter Type:** Integer**Default Value:** 1s**Range:** 1s to 2147483647s**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the timing interval between two sampling cycles for EDB wait states. The default setting is 1 second. For information on EDB wait states see [EDB Wait States](#) under [Performance Analysis and Tuning](#).

**`edbldr.empty_csv_field`****Parameter Type:** Enum**Default Value:** NULL**Range:** {NULL | empty\_string | pgsql}**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Use the `edbldr.empty_csv_field` parameter to specify how EDB\*Loader will treat an empty string. The valid values for the `edbldr.empty_csv_field` parameter are:

Parameter Setting	EDB*Loader Behavior
NULL	An empty field is treated as NULL.
empty_string	An empty field is treated as a string of length zero.
pgsql	An empty field is treated as a NULL if it does not contain quotes and as an empty string if it contains quotes.

For more information about the `edbldr.empty_csv_field` parameter in EDB\*Loader, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Tools and Utilities Guide* at the EDB website:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## utl\_encode.uudecode\_redwood

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

When set to `TRUE`, Advanced Server's `UTL_ENCODE.UUDECODE` function can decode uuencoded data that was created by the Oracle implementation of the `UTL_ENCODE.UUENCODE` function.

When set to the default setting of `FALSE`, Advanced Server's `UTL_ENCODE.UUDECODE` function can decode uuencoded data created by Advanced Server's `UTL_ENCODE.UUENCODE` function.

## utl\_file.umask

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** 0077

**Range:** Octal digits for umask settings

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

The `utl_file.umask` parameter sets the *file mode creation mask* or simply, the *mask*, in a manner similar to the Linux `umask` command. This is for usage only within the Advanced Server `UTL_FILE` package.

### Note

The `utl_file.umask` parameter is not supported on Windows systems.

The value specified for `utl_file.umask` is a 3 or 4-character octal string that would be valid for the Linux `umask` command. The setting determines the permissions on files created by the `UTL_FILE` functions and procedures. (Refer to any information source regarding Linux or Unix systems for information on file permissions and the usage of the `umask` command.)

The following shows the results of the default `utl_file.umask` setting of 0077. Note that all permissions are denied on users belonging to the `enterprisedb` group as well as all other users. Only user `enterprisedb` has read and write permissions on the file.

```
-rw----- 1 enterprisedb enterprisedb 21 Jul 24 16:08 utlfile
```

### 12.3.1.3.13 Ungrouped

Configuration parameters in this section apply to Advanced Server only and are for a specific, limited purpose.

#### `nls_length_semantics`

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** byte

**Range:** {byte | char}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Superuser

This parameter has no effect in Advanced Server.

For example, the form of the `ALTER SESSION` command is accepted in Advanced Server without throwing a syntax error, but does not alter the session environment:

```
ALTER SESSION SET nls_length_semantics = char;
```

#### Note

Since the setting of this parameter has no effect on the server environment, it does not appear in the system view `pg_settings`.

#### `query_rewrite_enabled`

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false | force}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

This parameter has no effect in Advanced Server.

For example, the following form of the `ALTER SESSION` command is accepted in Advanced Server without throwing a syntax error, but does not alter the session environment:

```
ALTER SESSION SET query_rewrite_enabled = force;
```

**Note**

Since the setting of this parameter has no effect on the server environment, it does not appear in the system view `pg_settings`.

## query\_rewrite\_integrity

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** enforced

**Range:** {enforced | trusted | stale\_tolerated}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Superuser

This parameter has no effect in Advanced Server.

For example, the following form of the `ALTER SESSION` command is accepted in Advanced Server without throwing a syntax error, but does not alter the session environment:

```
ALTER SESSION SET query_rewrite_integrity = stale_tolerated;
```

**Note**

Since the setting of this parameter has no effect on the server environment, it does not appear in the system view `pg_settings`.

## timed\_statistics

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Controls the collection of timing data for the Dynamic Runtime Instrumentation Tools Architecture (DRITA) feature.

When set to on, timing data is collected.

#### Note

When Advanced Server is installed, the `postgresql.conf` file contains an explicit entry setting `timed_statistics` to off. If this entry is commented out letting `timed_statistics` to default, and the configuration file is reloaded, timed statistics collection would be turned on.

## 12.3.2 Index Advisor

The Index Advisor utility helps determine which columns you should index to improve performance in a given workload. Index Advisor considers B-tree (single-column or composite) index types, and does not identify other index types (GIN, GiST, Hash) that may improve performance. Index Advisor is installed with EDB Postgres Advanced Server.

Index Advisor works with Advanced Server's query planner by creating *hypothetical indexes* that the query planner uses to calculate execution costs as if such indexes were available. Index Advisor identifies the indexes by analyzing SQL queries supplied in the workload.

There are three ways to use Index Advisor to analyze SQL queries:

- Invoke the Index Advisor utility program, supplying a text file containing the SQL queries that you wish to analyze; Index Advisor will generate a text file with `CREATE INDEX` statements for the recommended indexes.
- Provide queries at the EDB-PSQL command line that you want Index Advisor to analyze.
- Access Index Advisor through the Postgres Enterprise Manager client. When accessed via the PEM client, Index Advisor works with SQL Profiler, providing indexing recommendations on code captured in SQL traces. For more information about using SQL Profiler and Index Advisor with PEM, see the *PEM Getting Started Guide* available from the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

Index Advisor will attempt to make indexing recommendations on `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE` and `SELECT` statements. When invoking Index Advisor, you supply the workload in the form of a set of queries (if you are providing the command in an SQL file) or an `EXPLAIN` statement (if you are specifying the SQL statement at the psql command line). Index Advisor displays the query plan and estimated execution cost for the supplied query, but does not actually execute the query.

During the analysis, Index Advisor compares the query execution costs with and without hypothetical indexes. If the execution cost using a hypothetical index is less than the execution cost without it, both plans are reported in the `EXPLAIN` statement output, metrics that quantify the improvement are calculated, and Index Advisor generates the `CREATE INDEX` statement needed to create the index.

If no hypothetical index can be found that reduces the execution cost, Index Advisor displays only the original query plan output of the `EXPLAIN` statement.

*Index Advisor does not actually create indexes on the tables. Use the `CREATE INDEX` statements supplied by Index Advisor to add any recommended indexes to your tables.*

A script supplied with Advanced Server creates the table in which Index Advisor stores the indexing recommendations generated by the analysis; the script also creates a function and a view of the table to simplify the retrieval and interpretation of the results.

If you choose to forego running the script, Index Advisor will log recommendations in a temporary table that is available only for the duration of the Index Advisor session.

## 12.3.2.1 Index Advisor Components

The Index Advisor shared library interacts with the query planner to make indexing recommendations. On Windows, the Advanced Server installer creates the following shared library in the `libdir` subdirectory of your Advanced Server home directory. For Linux, install the `edb-asxx-server-indexadvisor` RPM package where `xx` is the Advanced Server version number.

On Linux:

`index_advisor.so`

On Windows:

`index_advisor.dll`

Please note that libraries in the `libdir` directory can only be loaded by a superuser. A database administrator can allow a non-superuser to use Index Advisor by manually copying the Index Advisor file from the `libdir` directory into the `libdir/plugins` directory (under your Advanced Server home directory). Only a trusted non-superuser should be allowed access to the plugin; this is an unsafe practice in a production environment.

The installer also creates the Index Advisor utility program and setup script:

`pg_advise_index`

`pg_advise_index` is a utility program that reads a user-supplied input file containing SQL queries and produces a text file containing `CREATE INDEX` statements that can be used to create the indexes recommended by the Index Advisor. The `pg_advise_index` program is located in the `bin` subdirectory of the Advanced Server home directory.

`index_advisor.sql`

`index_advisor.sql` is a script that creates a permanent Index Advisor log table along with a function and view to facilitate reporting of recommendations from the log table. The script is located in the `share/contrib` subdirectory of the Advanced Server directory.

The `index_advisor.sql` script creates the `index_advisor_log` table, the `show_index_recommendations()` function and the `index_recommendations` view. These database objects must be created in a schema that is accessible by, and included in the search path of the role that will invoke Index Advisor.

`index_advisor_log`

Index Advisor logs indexing recommendations in the `index_advisor_log` table. If Index Advisor does not find the `index_advisor_log` table in the user's search path, Index Advisor will store any indexing recommendations in a temporary table of the same name. The temporary table exists only for the duration of the current session.

`show_index_recommendations()`

`show_index_recommendations()` is a PL/pgSQL function that interprets and displays the recommendations made during a specific Index Advisor session (as identified by its backend process ID).

`index_recommendations`

Index Advisor creates the `index_recommendations` view based on information stored in the `index_advisor_log` table during a query analysis. The view produces output in the same format as the `show_index_recommendations()` function, but contains Index Advisor recommendations for all stored sessions, while the result set returned by the `show_index_recommendations()` function are limited to a specified session.

## 12.3.2.2 Index Advisor Configuration

Index Advisor does not require configuration to generate recommendations that are available only for the duration of the current session; to store the results of multiple sessions, you must create the `index_advisor_log` table. To create the `index_advisor_log` table, you must run the `index_advisor.sql` script.

When selecting a storage schema for the Index Advisor table, function and view, keep in mind that all users that invoke Index Advisor (and query the result set) must have `USAGE` privileges on the schema. The schema must be in the search path of all users that are interacting with the Index Advisor.

1. Place the selected schema at the start of your `search_path` parameter. For example, if your search path is currently:

```
search_path=public, accounting
```

and you want the Index Advisor objects to be created in a schema named `advisor`, use the command:

```
SET search_path = advisor, public, accounting;
```

2. Run the `index_advisor.sql` script to create the database objects. If you are running the `psql` client, you can use the command:

```
\i full.pathname/index_advisor.sql
```

Specify the pathname to the `index_advisor.sql` script in place of `full.pathname`.

3. Grant privileges on the `index_advisor_log` table to all Index Advisor users; this step is not necessary if the Index Advisor user is a superuser, or the owner of these database objects.

- Grant `SELECT` and `INSERT` privileges on the `index_advisor_log` table to allow a user to invoke Index Advisor.
- Grant `DELETE` privileges on the `index_advisor_log` table to allow the specified user to delete the table contents.
- Grant `SELECT` privilege on the `index_recommendations` view.

The following example demonstrates the creation of the Index Advisor database objects in a schema named `ia`, which will then be accessible to an Index Advisor user with user name `ia_user`:

```
$ edb-psql -d edb -U enterpriseedb
psql.bin (13.0.0, server 13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

edb=# CREATE SCHEMA ia;
CREATE SCHEMA
edb=# SET search_path TO ia;
SET
edb=# \i /usr/edb/as13/share/contrib/index_advisor.sql
CREATE TABLE
CREATE INDEX
CREATE INDEX
CREATE FUNCTION
CREATE FUNCTION
CREATE VIEW
edb=# GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA ia TO ia_user;
GRANT
```

```
edb=# GRANT SELECT, INSERT, DELETE ON index_advisor_log TO ia_user;
GRANT
edb=# GRANT SELECT ON index_recommendations TO ia_user;
GRANT
```

While using Index Advisor, the specified schema (`ia`) must be included in `ia_user`'s `search_path` parameter.

### 12.3.2.3 Using Index Advisor

When you invoke Index Advisor, you must supply a workload; the workload is either a query (specified at the command line), or a file that contains a set of queries (executed by the `pg_advise_index()` function). After analyzing the workload, Index Advisor will either store the result set in a temporary table, or in a permanent table. You can review the indexing recommendations generated by Index Advisor and use the `CREATE INDEX` statements generated by Index Advisor to create the recommended indexes.

#### Note

You should not run Index Advisor in read-only transactions.

The following examples assume that superuser `enterprisedb` is the Index Advisor user, and the Index Advisor database objects have been created in a schema in the `search_path` of superuser `enterprisedb`.

The examples in the following sections use the table created with the statement shown below:

```
CREATE TABLE t( a INT, b INT );
INSERT INTO t SELECT s, 99999 - s FROM generate_series(0,99999) AS s;
ANALYZE t;
```

The resulting table contains the following rows:

a	b
0	99999
1	99998
2	99997
3	99996
.	.
99997	2
99998	1
99999	0

### Using the `pg_advise_index` Utility

When invoking the `pg_advise_index` utility, you must include the name of a file that contains the queries that will be executed by `pg_advise_index`; the queries may be on the same line, or on separate lines, but each query must be terminated by a semicolon. Queries within the file should not begin with the `EXPLAIN` keyword.

The following example shows the contents of a sample `workload.sql` file:

```
SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 500;
SELECT * FROM t WHERE b < 1000;
```

Run the `pg_advise_index` program as shown in the code sample below:

```
$ pg_advise_index -d edb -h localhost -U enterprisedb -s 100M -o
advisory.sql workload.sql
poolsize = 102400 KB
ad workload from file 'workload.sql'
Analyzing queries .. done.
size = 2184 KB, benefit = 1684.720000
size = 2184 KB, benefit = 1655.520000
/* 1. t(a): size=2184 KB, benefit=1684.72 */
/* 2. t(b): size=2184 KB, benefit=1655.52 */
/* Total size = 4368KB */
```

In the code sample, the `-d`, `-h`, and `-U` options are psql connection options.

`-s`

`-s` is an optional parameter that limits the maximum size of the indexes recommended by Index Advisor. If Index Advisor does not return a result set, `-s` may be set too low.

`-o`

The recommended indexes are written to the file specified after the `-o` option.

The information displayed by the `pg_advise_index` program is logged in the `index_advisor_log` table. In response to the command shown in the example, Index Advisor writes the following `CREATE INDEX` statements to the `advisory.sql` output file.

```
create index idx_t_1 on t (a);
create index idx_t_2 on t (b);
```

You can create the recommended indexes at the psql command line with the `CREATE INDEX` statements in the file, or create the indexes by executing the `advisory.sql` script.

```
$ edb-psql -d edb -h localhost -U enterprisedb -e -f advisory.sql
create index idx_t_1 on t (a);
CREATE INDEX
create index idx_t_2 on t (b);
CREATE INDEX
```

## Using Index Advisor at the psql Command Line

You can use Index Advisor to analyze SQL statements entered at the `edb-psql` (or `psql`) command line; the following steps detail loading the Index Advisor plugin and using Index Advisor:

1. Connect to the server with the `edb-psql` command line utility, and load the Index Advisor plugin:

```
$ edb-psql -d edb -U enterprisedb
...
edb=# LOAD 'index_advisor';
LOAD
```

1. Use the `edb-psql` command line to invoke each SQL command that you would like Index Advisor to analyze.

Index Advisor stores any recommendations for the queries in the `index_advisor_log` table. If the `index_advisor_log` table does not exist in the user's `search_path`, a temporary table is created with the same name. This temporary table exists only for the duration of the user's session.

After loading the Index Advisor plugin, Index Advisor will analyze all SQL statements and log any indexing recommendations for the duration of the session.

If you would like Index Advisor to analyze a query (and make indexing recommendations) without actually executing the query, preface the SQL statement with the `EXPLAIN` keyword.

If you do not preface the statement with the `EXPLAIN` keyword, Index Advisor will analyze the statement while the statement executes, writing the indexing recommendations to the `index_advisor_log` table for later review.

In the example that follows, the `EXPLAIN` statement displays the normal query plan, followed by the query plan of the same query, if the query were using the recommended hypothetical index:

```
edb=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a < 10000;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..1693.00 rows=10105 width=8)
  Filter: (a < 10000)
Result (cost=0.00..337.10 rows=10105 width=8)
  One-Time Filter: '===[ HYPOTHETICAL PLAN ]==='::text
    -> Index Scan using "<hypothetical-index>:1" on t
      (cost=0.00..337.10 rows=10105 width=8)
        Index Cond: (a < 10000)
(6 rows)
```

```
edb=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 100;
      QUERY PLAN
```

```
Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..1693.00 rows=1 width=8)
  Filter: (a = 100)
Result (cost=0.00..8.28 rows=1 width=8)
  One-Time Filter: '===[ HYPOTHETICAL PLAN ]==='::text
    -> Index Scan using "<hypothetical-index>:3" on t
      (cost=0.00..8.28 rows=1 width=8)
        Index Cond: (a = 100)
(6 rows)
```

After loading the Index Advisor plugin, the default value of `index_advisor.enabled` is `on`. The Index Advisor plugin must be loaded to use a `SET` or `SHOW` command to display the current value of `index_advisor.enabled`.

You can use the `index_advisor.enabled` parameter to temporarily disable Index Advisor without interrupting the `psql` session:

```
edb=# SET index_advisor.enabled TO off;
SET
```

To enable Index Advisor, set the parameter to `on`:

```
edb=# SET index_advisor.enabled TO on;
SET
```

## 12.3.2.4 Reviewing the Index Advisor Recommendations

There are several ways to review the index recommendations generated by Index Advisor. You can:

- Query the `index_advisor_log` table.
- Run the `show_index_recommendations` function.
- Query the `index_recommendations` view.

### Using the `show_index_recommendations()` Function

To review the recommendations of the Index Advisor utility using the `show_index_recommendations()` function, call the function, specifying the process ID of the session:

```
SELECT show_index_recommendations( pid );
```

Where `pid` is the process ID of the current session. If you do not know the process ID of your current session, passing a value of `NULL` will also return a result set for the current session.

The following code fragment shows an example of a row in a result set:

```
edb=# SELECT show_index_recommendations(null);
      show_index_recommendations
-----
create index idx_t_a on t(a);/* size: 2184 KB, benefit: 3040.62,
gain: 1.39222666981456 */
(1 row)
```

In the example, `create index idx_t_a on t(a)` is the SQL statement needed to create the index suggested by Index Advisor. Each row in the result set shows:

- The command required to create the recommended index.
- The maximum estimated size of the index.
- The calculated benefit of using the index.
- The estimated gain that will result from implementing the index.

You can display the results of all Index Advisor sessions from the following view:

```
SELECT * FROM index_recommendations;
```

### Querying the `index_advisor_log` Table

Index Advisor stores indexing recommendations in a table named `index_advisor_log`. Each row in the `index_advisor_log` table contains the result of a query where Index Advisor determines it can recommend a hypothetical index to reduce the execution cost of that query.

Column	Type	Description
reloid	oid	OID of the base table for the index
relname	name	Name of the base table for the index
attrs	integer[]	Recommended index columns (identified by column number)
benefit	real	Calculated benefit of the index for this query
index_size	integer	Estimated index size in disk-pages
backend_pid	integer	Process ID of the process generating this recommendation

Column	Type	Description
timestamp	timestamp	Date/Time when the recommendation was generated

You can query the `index_advisor_log` table at the psql command line. The following example shows the `index_advisor_log` table entries resulting from two Index Advisor sessions. Each session contains two queries, and can be identified (in the table below) by a different `backend_pid` value. For each session, Index Advisor generated two index recommendations.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM index_advisor_log;
reloid | relname | attrs | benefit | index_size | backend_pid | timestamp
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
16651 | t | {1} | 1684.72 | 2184 | 3442 | 22-MAR-11
16:44:32.712638 -04:00
16651 | t | {2} | 1655.52 | 2184 | 3442 | 22-MAR-11
16:44:32.759436 -04:00
16651 | t | {1} | 1355.9 | 2184 | 3506 | 22-MAR-11
16:48:28.317016 -04:00
16651 | t | {1} | 1684.72 | 2184 | 3506 | 22-MAR-11
16:51:45.927906 -04:00
(4 rows)
```

Index Advisor added the first two rows to the table after analyzing the following two queries executed by the `pg_advise_index` utility:

```
SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 500;
SELECT * FROM t WHERE b < 1000;
```

The value of `3442` in column `backend_pid` identifies these results as coming from the session with process ID `3442`.

The value of `1` in column `attrs` in the first row indicates that the hypothetical index is on the first column of the table (column `a` of table `t`).

The value of `2` in column `attrs` in the second row indicates that the hypothetical index is on the second column of the table (column `b` of table `t`).

Index Advisor added the last two rows to the table after analyzing the following two queries (executed at the psql command line):

```
edb=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a < 10000;
          QUERY PLAN
-----
Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..1693.00 rows=10105 width=8)
  Filter: (a < 10000)
Result (cost=0.00..337.10 rows=10105 width=8)
  One-Time Filter: '===[ HYPOTHETICAL PLAN ]===:text'
    -> Index Scan using "<hypothetical-index>:1" on t (cost=0.00..337.10
      rows=10105 width=8)
        Index Cond: (a < 10000)
(6 rows)
```

```
edb=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 100;
          QUERY PLAN
-----
```

```

Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..1693.00 rows=1 width=8)
  Filter: (a = 100)
Result (cost=0.00..8.28 rows=1 width=8)
  One-Time Filter: '===[ HYPOTHETICAL PLAN ]==='::text
    -> Index Scan using "<hypothetical-index>:3" on t (cost=0.00..8.28
rows=1 width=8)
      Index Cond: (a = 100)
(6 rows)

```

The values in the `benefit` column of the `index_advisor_log` table are calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{benefit} = (\text{normal execution cost}) - (\text{execution cost with hypothetical index})$$

The value of the `benefit` column for the last row of the `index_advisor_log` table (shown in the example) is calculated using the query plan for the following SQL statement:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 100;
```

The execution costs of the different execution plans are evaluated and compared:

$$\text{benefit} = (\text{Seq Scan on t cost}) - (\text{Index Scan using } <\text{hypothetical-index}>)$$

and the benefit is added to the table:

$$\text{benefit} = 1693.00 - 8.28$$

$$\text{benefit} = 1684.72$$

You can delete rows from the `index_advisor_log` table when you no longer have the need to review the results of the queries stored in the row.

## Querying the `index_recommendations` View

The `index_recommendations` view contains the calculated metrics and the `CREATE INDEX` statements to create the recommended indexes for all sessions whose results are currently in the `index_advisor_log` table. You can display the results of all stored Index Advisor sessions by querying the `index_recommendations` view as shown below:

```
SELECT * FROM index_recommendations;
```

Using the example shown in the previous section ([Querying the `index\_advisor\_log` Table](#)), the `index_recommendations` view displays the following:

```

edb=# SELECT * FROM index_recommendations;
backend_pid | show_index_recommendations
-----+-----
 3442 | create index idx_t_a on t(a);/* size: 2184 KB, benefit:
1684.72, gain: 0.771392654586624 */
 3442 | create index idx_t_b on t(b);/* size: 2184 KB, benefit:
1655.52, gain: 0.758021539820856 */
 3506 | create index idx_t_a on t(a);/* size: 2184 KB, benefit:
3040.62, gain: 1.39222666981456 */
(3 rows)

```

Within each session, the results of all queries that benefit from the same recommended index are combined to produce one set of metrics per recommended index, reflected in the fields named `benefit` and `gain`.

The formulas for the fields are as follows:

```
size = MAX(index size of all queries)
benefit = SUM(benefit of each query)
gain = SUM(benefit of each query) / MAX(index size of all queries)
```

So for example, using the following query results from the process with a `backend_pid` of `3506`:

reloid	relname	attrs	benefit	index_size	backend_pid	timestamp
16651	t	{1}	1355.9	2184	3506	22-MAR-11 16:48:28.317016 -04:00
16651	t	{1}	1684.72	2184	3506	22-MAR-11 16:51:45.927906 -04:00

The metrics displayed from the `index_recommendations` view for `backend_pid 3506` are:

backend_pid	show_index_recommendations
3506	create index idx_t_a on t(a);/* size: 2184 KB, benefit: 3040.62, gain: 1.39222666981456 */

The metrics from the view are calculated as follows:

```
benefit = (benefit from 1st query) + (benefit from 2nd query)
benefit = 1355.9 + 1684.72
benefit = 3040.62
```

and

```
gain = ((benefit from 1st query) + (benefit from 2nd query)) / MAX(index
size of all queries)
gain = (1355.9 + 1684.72) / MAX(2184, 2184)
gain = 3040.62 / 2184
gain = 1.39223
```

The gain metric is useful when comparing the relative advantage of the different recommended indexes derived during a given session. The larger the gain value, the better the cost effectiveness derived from the index weighed against the possible disk space consumption of the index.

## 12.3.2.5 Index Advisor Limitations

Index Advisor does not consider Index Only scans; it does consider Index scans when making recommendations.

Index Advisor ignores any computations found in the `WHERE` clause. Effectively, the index field in the recommendations will not be any kind of expression; the field will be a simple column name.

Index Advisor does not consider inheritance when recommending hypothetical indexes. If a query references a parent table, Index Advisor does not make any index recommendations on child tables.

Restoration of a `pg_dump` backup file that includes the `index_advisor_log` table or any tables for which indexing recommendations were made and stored in the `index_advisor_log` table, may result in "broken links" between the `index_advisor_log` table and the restored tables referenced by rows in the `index_advisor_log` table because of changes in object identifiers (OIDs).

If it is necessary to display the recommendations made prior to the backup, you can replace the old OIDs in the `reloid` column of the `index_advisor_log` table with the new OIDs of the referenced tables using the SQL `UPDATE` statement:

```
UPDATE index_advisor_log SET reloid = new_oid WHERE reloid = old_oid;
```

### 12.3.3 SQL Profiler

Inefficient SQL code is one of, if not the leading cause of database performance problems. The challenge for database administrators and developers is locating and then optimizing this code in large, complex systems.

*SQL Profiler* helps you locate and optimize poorly running SQL code.

Specific features and benefits of SQL Profiler include the following:

- **On-Demand Traces.** You can capture SQL traces at any time by manually setting up your parameters and starting the trace.
- **Scheduled Traces.** For inconvenient times, you can also specify your trace parameters and schedule them to run at some later time.
- **Save Traces.** Execute your traces and save them for later review.
- **Trace Filters.** Selectively filter SQL captures by database and by user, or capture every SQL statement sent by all users against all databases.
- **Trace Output Analyzer.** A graphical table lets you quickly sort and filter queries by duration or statement, and a graphical or text based `EXPLAIN` plan lays out your query paths and joins.
- **Index Advisor Integration.** Once you have found your slow queries and optimized them, you can also let the Index Advisor recommend the creation of underlying table indices to further improve performance.

The following describes the installation process.

#### Step 1: Install SQL Profiler

SQL Profiler is installed by the Advanced Server installer on Windows or from the `edb-asxx-server-sqlprofiler` RPM package on Linux where `xx` is the Advanced Server version number.

#### Step 2: Add the SQL Profiler library

Modify the `postgresql.conf` parameter file for the instance to include the SQL Profiler library in the `shared_preload_libraries` configuration parameter.

For Linux installations, the parameter value should include:

```
$libdir/sql-profiler
```

On Windows, the parameter value should include:

```
$libdir\sql-profiler.dll
```

### Step 3: Create the functions used by SQL Profiler

The SQL Profiler installation program places a SQL script (named `sql-profiler.sql`) in:

On Linux:

```
/usr/edb/as13/share/contrib/
```

On Windows:

```
C:\Program Files\edb\as13\share\contrib\
```

Use the `psql` command line interface to run the `sql-profiler.sql` script in the database specified as the Maintenance Database on the server you wish to profile. If you are using Advanced Server, the default maintenance database is named `edb`. If you are using a PostgreSQL instance, the default maintenance database is named `postgres`.

The following command uses the `psql` command line to invoke the `sql-profiler.sql` script on a Linux system:

```
$ /usr/edb/as13/bin/psql -U user_name database_name <
/usr/edb/as13/share/contrib/sql-profiler.sql
```

### Step 4: Stop and restart the server for the changes to take effect.

After configuring SQL Profiler, it is ready to use with all databases that reside on the server. You can take advantage of SQL Profiler functionality with EDB Postgres Enterprise Manager; for more information about Postgres Enterprise Manager, visit the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

### Troubleshooting

If (after performing an upgrade to a newer version of SQL Profiler) you encounter an error that contains the following text:

```
An error has occurred:  
ERROR: function return row and query-specified return row do not match.  
DETAIL: Returned row contains 11 attributes, but the query expects 10.
```

To correct this error, you must replace the existing query set with a new query set. First, uninstall SQL Profiler by invoking the `uninstall-sql-profiler.sql` script, and then reinstall SQL Profiler by invoking the `sql-profiler.sql` script.

## 12.3.4 pgsnmpd

`pgsnmpd` is an SNMP agent that can return hierarchical information about the current state of Advanced Server on a Linux system. `pgsnmpd` is distributed and installed using the `edb-asxx-pgsnmpd` RPM package where `xx` is the Advanced Server version number. The `pgsnmpd` agent can operate as a stand-alone SNMP agent, as a pass-through sub-agent, or as an AgentX sub-agent.

After installing Advanced Server, you will need to update the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` variable. Use the command:

```
$ export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/edb/as13/lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

This command does not persistently alter the value of `LD_LIBRARY_PATH`. Consult the documentation for your

distribution of Linux for information about persistently setting the value of `LD_LIBRARY_PATH`.

The examples that follow demonstrate the simplest usage of `pgsnmpd`, implementing read only access. `pgsnmpd` is based on the net-snmp library; for more information about net-snmp, visit:

<http://net-snmp.sourceforge.net/>

## Configuring pgsnmpd

The `pgsnmpd` configuration file is named `snmpd.conf`. For information about the directives that you can specify in the configuration file, please review the `snmpd.conf` man page (`man snmpd.conf`).

You can create the configuration file by hand, or you can use the `snmpconf` perl script to create the configuration file. The perl script is distributed with net-snmp package.

net-snmp is an open-source package available from:

<http://www.net-snmp.org/>

To use the `snmpconf` configuration file wizard, download and install net-snmp. When the installation completes, open a command line and enter:

`snmpconf`

When the configuration file wizard opens, it may prompt you to read in an existing configuration file. Enter `none` to generate a new configuration file (not based on a previously existing configuration file).

`snmpconf` is a menu-driven wizard. Select menu item `1: snmpd.conf` to start the configuration wizard. As you select each top-level menu option displayed by `snmpconf`, the wizard walks through a series of questions, prompting you for information required to build the configuration file. When you have provided information in each of the category relevant to your system, enter `Finished` to generate a configuration file named `snmpd.conf`. Copy the file to:

/usr/edb/as13/share/

## Setting the Listener Address

By default, `pgsnmpd` listens on port `161`. If the listener port is already being used by another service, you may receive the following error:

Error opening specified endpoint "udp:161".

You can specify an alternate listener port by adding the following line to your `snmpd.conf` file:

`agentaddress $host_address:2000`

The example instructs `pgsnmpd` to listen on UDP port `2000`, where `$host_address` is the IP address of the server (e.g., `127.0.0.1`).

Before invoking `pgsnmpd`, you must create the `pgsnmpd` schema and set the search path to create tables in the `pgsnmpd` schema using the following commands:

```
CREATE SCHEMA pgsnmpd;
SET search_path = pgsnmpd;
\i pgsnmpd.sql
```

## Invoking pgsnmpd

Ensure that an instance of Advanced Server is up and running (`pgsnmpd` will connect to this server). Open a command line and assume superuser privileges, before invoking `pgsnmpd` with a command that takes the following form:

```
POSTGRES_INSTALL_HOME/bin/pgsnmpd -b
-c POSTGRES_INSTALL_HOME/share/snmpd.conf
-C "user=enterprisedb dbname=edb password=safe_password
port=5444"
```

Where `POSTGRES_INSTALL_HOME` specifies the Advanced Server installation directory.

Include the `-b` option to specify that `pgsnmpd` should run in the background.

Include the `-c` option, specifying the path and name of the `pgsnmpd` configuration file.

Include connection information for your installation of Advanced Server (in the form of a `libpq` connection string) after the `-C` option.

## Viewing pgsnmpd Help

Include the `--help` option when invoking the `pgsnmpd` utility to view other `pgsnmpd` command line options:

```
pgsnmpd --help
Version PGSQ-L-SNMP-Ver1.0
usage: pgsnmpd [-s] [-b] [-c FILE] [-x address] [-g] [-C "Connect
String"]
-s : run as AgentX sub-agent of an existing snmpd process
-b : run in the background
-c : configuration file name
-g : use syslog
-C : libpq connection string
-x : address:port of a network interface
-V : display version strings
```

## Requesting Information from pgsnmpd

You can use `net-snmp` commands to query the `pgsnmpd` service. For example:

```
snmpgetnext -v 2c -c public localhost .1.3.6.1.4.1.5432.1.4.2.1.1.0
```

In the above example:

`-v 2c` option instructs the `snmpgetnext` client to send the request in SNMP version 2c format.

`-c public` specifies the community name.

`localhost` indicates the host machine running the `pgsnmpd` server.

`.1.3.6.1.4.1.5432.1.4.2.1.1.0` is the identity of the requested object. To see a list of all databases, increment the last digit by one (e.g. `.1.1`, `.1.2`, `.1.3` etc.).

The encodings required to query any given object are defined in the MIB (Management Information Base). An

SNMP client can monitor a variety of servers; the server type determines the information exposed by a given server. Each SNMP server describes the exposed data in the form of a MIB (Management information base). By default, pgsnmpd searches for MIB's in the following locations:

```
/usr/share/snmp/mibs
```

```
$HOME/.snmp/mibs
```

## 12.3.5 EDB Audit Logging

Advanced Server allows database and security administrators, auditors, and operators to track and analyze database activities using the *EDB Audit Logging* functionality. EDB Audit Logging generates audit log files, which contains all of the relevant information. The audit logs can be configured to record information such as:

- When a role establishes a connection to an Advanced Server database
- What database objects a role creates, modifies, or deletes when connected to Advanced Server
- When any failed authentication attempts occur

The parameters specified in the configuration files, `postgresql.conf` or `postgresql.auto.conf`, control the information included in the audit logs.

### 12.3.5.1 Audit Logging Configuration Parameters

Use the following configuration parameters to control database auditing. See [Summary of Configuration Parameters](#) to determine if a change to the configuration parameter takes effect immediately, or if the configuration needs to be reloaded, or if the database server needs to be restarted.

#### `edb_audit`

Enables or disables database auditing. The values `xml` or `csv` will enable database auditing. These values represent the file format in which auditing information will be captured. `none` will disable database auditing and is also the default.

#### `edb_audit_directory`

Specifies the directory where the log files will be created. The path of the directory can be relative or absolute to the data folder. The default is the `PGDATA/edb_audit` directory.

#### `edb_audit_filename`

Specifies the file name of the audit file where the auditing information will be stored. The default file name will be `audit-%Y%m%d_%H%M%S`. The escape sequences, `%Y`, `%m` etc., will be replaced by the appropriate current values according to the system date and time.

#### `edb_audit_rotation_day`

Specifies the day of the week on which to rotate the audit files. Valid values are `sun`, `mon`, `tue`, `wed`, `thu`, `fri`, `sat`, `every`, and `none`. To disable rotation, set the value to `none`. To rotate the file every day, set the `edb_audit_rotation_day` value to `every`. To rotate the file on a specific day of the week, set the value to the

desired day of the week. `every` is the default value.

#### `edb_audit_rotation_size`

Specifies a file size threshold in megabytes when file rotation will be forced to occur. The default value is 0 MB. If the parameter is commented out or set to 0, rotation of the file on a size basis will not occur.

#### `edb_audit_rotation_seconds`

Specifies the rotation time in seconds when a new log file should be created. To disable this feature, set this parameter to 0, which is the default.

#### `edb_audit_connect`

Enables auditing of database connection attempts by users. To disable auditing of all connection attempts, set `edb_audit_connect` to `none`. To audit all failed connection attempts, set the value to `failed`, which is the default. To audit all connection attempts, set the value to `all`.

#### `edb_audit_disconnect`

Enables auditing of database disconnections by connected users. To enable auditing of disconnections, set the value to `all`. To disable, set the value to `none`, which is the default.

#### `edb_audit_statement`

This configuration parameter is used to specify auditing of different categories of SQL statements. Various combinations of the following values may be specified: `none`, `dml`, `insert`, `update`, `delete`, `truncate`, `select`, `error`, `rollback`, `ddl`, `create`, `drop`, `alter`, `grant`, `revoke`, and `all`. The default is `ddl` and `error`. See [Selecting SQL Statements to Audit](#) for information regarding the setting of this parameter.

#### `edb_audit_tag`

Use this configuration parameter to specify a string value that will be included in the audit log file for each entry as a tracking tag.

#### `edb_log_every_bulk_value`

Bulk processing logs the resulting statements into both the Advanced Server log file and the EDB Audit log file. However, logging each and every statement in bulk processing is costly. This can be controlled by the `edb_log_every_bulk_value` configuration parameter. When set to `true`, each and every statement in bulk processing is logged. During bulk execution, when `edb_log_every_bulk_value` is set to `false`, a log message is recorded once per bulk processing along with the number of rows processed. In addition, the duration is emitted once per bulk processing. Default is set to `false`.

#### `edb_audit_destination`

Specifies whether the audit log information is to be recorded in the directory as given by the `edb_audit_directory` parameter or to the directory and file managed by the `syslog` process. Set to `file` to use the directory specified by `edb_audit_directory`, which is the default setting.

Set to `syslog` to use the syslog process and its location as configured in the `/etc/syslog.conf` file. The `syslog` setting is valid for Advanced Server running on a Linux host and is not supported on Windows systems. **Note:** In recent Linux versions, syslog has been replaced by `rsyslog` and the configuration file is in `/etc/rsyslog.conf`.

The following section describes selection of specific SQL statements for auditing using the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

## 12.3.5.2 Selecting SQL Statements to Audit

The `edb_audit_statement` permits inclusion of one or more, comma-separated values to control which SQL statements are to be audited. The following is the general format:

```
edb_audit_statement = 'value_1[, value_2]...'
```

The comma-separated values may include or omit space characters following the comma. The values can be specified in any combination of lowercase or uppercase letters.

The basic parameter values are the following:

- `all` – Results in the auditing and logging of every statement including any error messages on statements.
- `none` – Disables all auditing and logging. A value of `none` overrides any other value included in the list.
- `ddl` – Results in the auditing of all data definition language (DDL) statements (`CREATE`, `ALTER`, and `DROP`) as well as `GRANT` and `REVOKE` data control language (DCL) statements.
- `dml` – Results in the auditing of all data manipulation language (DML) statements (`INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `TRUNCATE`).
- `select` – Results in the auditing of `SELECT` statements.
- `rollback` – Results in the auditing of `ROLLBACK` statements.
- `error` – Results in the logging of all error messages that occur. Unless the `error` value is included, no error messages are logged regarding any errors that occur on SQL statements related to any of the other preceding parameter values except when `all` is used.

[Data Definition Language and Data Control Language Statements](#) describes additional parameter values for selecting particular DDL or DCL statements for auditing.

[Data Manipulation Language Statements](#) describes additional parameter values for selecting particular DML statements for auditing.

If an unsupported value is included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter, then an error occurs when applying the setting to the database server. See the database server log file for the error such as in the following example where `create materialized vw` results in the error. (The correct value is `create materialized view`.)

```
2017-07-16 11:20:39 EDT LOG: invalid value for parameter
"edb_audit_statement": "create materialized vw, create sequence, grant"
2017-07-16 11:20:39 EDT FATAL: configuration file "/var/lib/edb/as13/data/
postgresql.conf" contains errors
```

The following sections describe the values for the SQL language types DDL, DCL, and DML.

### Data Definition Language and Data Control Language Statements

This section describes values that can be included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter to audit DDL and DCL statements.

The following general rules apply:

- If the `edb_audit_statement` parameter includes either `ddl` or `all`, then all DDL statements are audited. In addition, the DCL statements `GRANT` and `REVOKE` are audited as well.
- If the `edb_audit_statement` is set to `none`, then no DDL nor DCL statements are audited.
- Specific types of DDL and DCL statements can be chosen for auditing by including a combination of values within the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

Use the following syntax to specify an `edb_audit_statement` parameter value for DDL statements:

```
{ create | alter | drop } [ <object_type> ]
```

`object_type` is any of the following:

ACCESS METHOD

AGGREGATE

CAST

COLLATION

CONVERSION

DATABASE

EVENT TRIGGER

EXTENSION

FOREIGN TABLE

FUNCTION

INDEX

LANGUAGE

LARGE OBJECT

MATERIALIZED VIEW

OPERATOR

OPERATOR CLASS

OPERATOR FAMILY

POLICY

PUBLICATION

ROLE

RULE

SCHEMA

SEQUENCE

SERVER

SUBSCRIPTION

TABLE

TABLESPACE

TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

TEXT SEARCH PARSER

**TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE****TRANSFORM****TRIGGER****TYPE****USER MAPPING****VIEW**

Descriptions of object types as used in SQL commands can be found in the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-commands.html>

If `object_type` is omitted from the parameter value, then all of the specified command statements (either `create`, `alter`, or `drop`) are audited.

Use the following syntax to specify an `edb_audit_statement` parameter value for DCL statements:

```
{ grant | revoke }
```

The following are some DDL and DCL examples.

### Example 1

The following is an example where `edb_audit_connect` and `edb_audit_statement` are set with the following non-default values:

```
logging_collector = 'on'
edb_audit_connect = 'all'
edb_audit_statement = 'create, alter, error'
```

Thus, only SQL statements invoked by the `CREATE` and `ALTER` commands are audited. Error messages are also included in the audit log.

The database session that occurs is the following:

```
$ psql edb enterprisedb
Password for user enterprisedb:
psql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.
```

```
edb=# SHOW edb_audit_connect;
edb_audit_connect
```

```
-----
all
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;
edb_audit_statement
```

```
-----
create, alter, error
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# CREATE ROLE adminuser;
CREATE ROLE
```

```

edb=# ALTER ROLE adminuser WITH LOGIN, SUPERUSER, PASSWORD 'password';
ERROR: syntax error at or near ","
LINE 1: ALTER ROLE adminuser WITH LOGIN, SUPERUSER, PASSWORD 'passwo...
          ^
edb=# ALTER ROLE adminuser WITH LOGIN SUPERUSER PASSWORD 'password';
ALTER ROLE
edb=# CREATE DATABASE auditdb;
CREATE DATABASE
edb=# ALTER DATABASE auditdb OWNER TO adminuser;
ALTER DATABASE
edb=# \c auditdb adminuser
Password for user adminuser:
You are now connected to database "auditdb" as user "adminuser".
auditdb=# CREATE SCHEMA edb;
CREATE SCHEMA
auditdb=# SET search_path TO edb;
SET
auditdb=# CREATE TABLE department (
auditdb(# deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
auditdb(# dname       VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
auditdb(# loc        VARCHAR2(13)
auditdb(# );
CREATE TABLE
auditdb=# DROP TABLE department;
DROP TABLE
auditdb=# CREATE TABLE dept (
auditdb(# deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
auditdb(# dname       VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
auditdb(# loc        VARCHAR2(13)
auditdb(# );
CREATE TABLE

```

The resulting audit log file contains the following.

Each audit log entry has been split and displayed across multiple lines, and a blank line has been inserted between the audit log entries for more clarity in the appearance of the results.

2020-05-25 12:32:22.799 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",72518,"[local]",5ecb6d7e.

11b46,1,"authentication",2020-05-25 12:32:22 IST,4/19,0,AUDIT,00000,

"connection authorized:user=enterprisedb database=edb",,,,,,,,"client

backend","",connect"

2020-05-25 12:34:05.843 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",72518,"[local]",5ecb6d7e.

11b46,2,"idle",2020-05-25 12:32:22 IST,4/23,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE

ROLE adminuser;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","CREATE ROLE","create"

2020-05-25 12:34:16.617 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",72518,"[local]",5ecb6d7e.

11b46,3,"idle",2020-05-25 12:32:22 IST,4/24,0,ERROR,42601,"syntax error at or

near "",","","","ALTER ROLE adminuser WITH LOGIN, SUPERUSER, PASSWORD  
'password';",32,"psql","client backend","",error"

2020-05-25 12:34:29.954 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",72518,"[local]",5ecb6d7e.

11b46,4,"idle",2020-05-25 12:32:22 IST,4/25,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: ALTER

ROLE adminuser WITH LOGIN SUPERUSER PASSWORD 'password';",,,,,,,,"psql",  
"client backend","ALTER ROLE","alter"

```
2020-05-25 12:34:40.114 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",72518,"[local]",5ecb6d7e.
11b46,5,"idle",2020-05-25 12:32:22 IST,4/26,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
DATABASE auditdb;","","","psql","client backend","CREATE DATABASE","create"
```

```
2020-05-25 12:34:50.591 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",72518,"[local]",5ecb6d7e.
11b46,6,"idle",2020-05-25 12:32:22 IST,4/27,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: ALTER
DATABASE auditdb OWNER TO adminuser;","","","psql","client backend","ALTER
DATABASE","alter"
```

```
2020-05-25 12:35:01.554 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",75531,"[local]",5ecb6e1d.
1270b,1,"authentication",2020-05-25 12:35:01 IST,5/11,0,AUDIT,00000,
"connection authorized:user=adminuser database=auditdb","","","client
backend","","connect"
```

```
2020-05-25 12:35:12.931 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",75531,"[local]",5ecb6e1d.
1270b,2,"idle",2020-05-25 12:35:01 IST,5/13,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
SCHEMA edb;","","","psql","client backend","CREATE SCHEMA","create"
```

```
2020-05-25 12:37:18.547 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",75531,"[local]",5ecb6e1d.
1270b,3,"idle",2020-05-25 12:35:01 IST,5/15,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
TABLE department
(
    deptno NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
    dname  VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
    loc    VARCHAR2(13)
);","","","psql","client backend","CREATE TABLE","create"
```

```
2020-05-25 12:39:09.065 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",75531,"[local]",5ecb6e1d.
1270b,4,"idle",2020-05-25 12:35:01 IST,5/17,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
TABLE dept (
    deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
    dname       VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
    loc         VARCHAR2(13)
);","","","psql","client backend","CREATE TABLE","create"
```

The `CREATE` and `ALTER` statements for the `adminuser` role and `auditdb` database are audited. The error for the `ALTER ROLE` `adminuser` statement is also logged since error is included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

Similarly, the `CREATE` statements for schema `edb` and tables `department` and `dept` are audited.

Note that the `DROP TABLE department` statement is not in the audit log since there is no `edb_audit_statement` setting that would result in the auditing of successfully processed `DROP` statements such as `ddl`, `all`, or `drop`.

## Example 2

The following is an example where `edb_audit_connect` and `edb_audit_statement` are set with the following non-default values:

```
logging_collector = 'on'
edb_audit_connect = 'all'
edb_audit_statement = create view,create materialized view,create
sequence,grant'
```

Thus, only SQL statements invoked by the `CREATE VIEW`, `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW`, `CREATE SEQUENCE` and `GRANT` commands are audited.

The database session that occurs is the following:

```
$ psql auditdb adminuser
Password for user adminuser:
psql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

auditdb=# SHOW edb_audit_connect;
edb_audit_connect
-----
all
(1 row)

auditdb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;
edb_audit_statement
-----
create view,create materialized view,create sequence,grant
(1 row)

auditdb=# SET search_path TO edb;
SET
auditdb=# CREATE TABLE emp (
auditdb(#   empno      NUMBER(4) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT emp_pk PRIMARY KEY,
auditdb(#   ename      VARCHAR2(10),
auditdb(#   job        VARCHAR2(9),
auditdb(#   mgr        NUMBER(4),
auditdb(#   hiredate    DATE,
auditdb(#   sal        NUMBER(7,2) CONSTRAINT emp_sal_ck CHECK (sal >
0),
auditdb(#   comm      NUMBER(7,2),
auditdb(#   deptno    NUMBER(2) CONSTRAINT emp_ref_dept_fk
auditdb(#                  REFERENCES dept(deptno)
auditdb(# );
CREATE TABLE
auditdb=# CREATE VIEW salesemp AS
auditdb-#   SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, comm FROM emp WHERE job =
'SALESMAN';
CREATE VIEW
auditdb=# CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW managers AS
auditdb-#   SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, comm FROM emp WHERE job =
'MANAGER';
SELECT 0
auditdb=# CREATE SEQUENCE next_empno START WITH 8000 INCREMENT BY 1;
CREATE SEQUENCE
auditdb=# GRANT ALL ON dept TO PUBLIC;
GRANT
auditdb=# GRANT ALL ON emp TO PUBLIC;
GRANT
```

The resulting audit log file contains the following.

Each audit log entry has been split and displayed across multiple lines, and a blank line has been inserted between the audit log entries for more clarity in the appearance of the results.

```
2020-05-25 14:05:29.163 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",40810,"[local]",5ecb8351.
9f6a,1,"authentication",2020-05-25 14:05:29 IST,4/28,0,AUDIT,00000,
```

```
"connection authorized: user=adminuser database=auditdb",,"client
backend","","connect"
```

```
2020-05-25 14:12:06.318 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",40810,"[local]",5ecb8351.
9f6a,2,"idle",2020-05-25 14:05:29 IST,4/34,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
VIEW salesemp AS SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, comm FROM emp WHERE job
= 'SALESMAN';",,"psql","client backend","CREATE VIEW","create"
```

```
2020-05-25 14:13:26.657 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",40810,"[local]",5ecb8351.
9f6a,3,"idle",2020-05-25 14:05:29 IST,4/36,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
MATERIALIZED VIEW managers AS SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, comm FROM
emp WHERE job = 'MANAGER';",,"psql","client backend","CREATE
MATERIALIZED VIEW","create"
```

```
2020-05-25 14:13:38.928 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",40810,"[local]",5ecb8351.
9f6a,4,"idle",2020-05-25 14:05:29 IST,4/37,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
SEQUENCE next_empno START WITH 8000 INCREMENT BY 1;",,"psql","client
backend","CREATE SEQUENCE","create"
```

```
2020-05-25 14:13:51.434 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",40810,"[local]",5ecb8351.
9f6a,5,"idle",2020-05-25 14:05:29 IST,4/38,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: GRANT
ALL ON dept TO PUBLIC;","",,"psql","client backend","GRANT","grant"
```

```
2020-05-25 14:14:03.737 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",40810,"[local]",5ecb8351.
9f6a,6,"idle",2020-05-25 14:05:29 IST,4/39,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: GRANT
ALL ON emp TO PUBLIC;","",,"psql","client backend","GRANT","grant"
```

The `CREATE VIEW` and `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW` statements are audited. Note that the prior `CREATE TABLE emp` statement is not audited since none of the values `create`, `create table`, `ddl`, nor `all` are included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

The `CREATE SEQUENCE` and `GRANT` statements are audited since those values are included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

## Data Manipulation Language Statements

This section describes the values that can be included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter to audit DML statements.

The following general rules apply:

- If the `edb_audit_statement` parameter includes either `dml` or `all`, then all DML statements are audited.
- If the `edb_audit_statement` is set to `none`, then no DML statements are audited.
- Specific types of DML statements can be chosen for auditing by including a combination of values within the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

Use the following syntax to specify an `edb_audit_statement` parameter value for `SQL INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `TRUNCATE` statements:

```
{ insert | update | delete | truncate }
```

### Example

The following is an example where `edb_audit_connect` and `edb_audit_statement` are set with the following non-default values:

```
logging_collector = 'on'
edb_audit_connect = 'all'
edb_audit_statement = 'UPDATE, DELETE, error'
```

Thus, only SQL statements invoked by the `UPDATE` and `DELETE` commands are audited. All errors are also included in the audit log (even errors not related to the `UPDATE` and `DELETE` commands).

The database session that occurs is the following:

```
$ psql auditdb adminuser
Password for user adminuser:
pgsql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

auditdb=# SHOW edb_audit_connect;
edb_audit_connect
-----
all
(1 row)

auditdb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;
edb_audit_statement
-----
UPDATE, DELETE, error
(1 row)

auditdb=# SET search_path TO edb;
SET
auditdb=# INSERT INTO dept VALUES (10,'ACCOUNTING','NEW YORK');
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# INSERT INTO dept VALUES (20,'RESEARCH','DALLAS');
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# INSERT INTO dept VALUES (30,'SALES','CHICAGO');
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# INSERT INTO dept VALUES (40,'OPERATIONS','BOSTON');
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7369,'SMITH','CLERK',7902,'17-DEC-80',800,NULL,20);
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7499,'ALLEN','SALESMAN',7698,'20-FEB-81',1600,300,30);
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7521,'WARD','SALESMAN',7698,'22-FEB-81',1250,500,30);
INSERT 0 1
.
.
.

auditdb=# INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7934,'MILLER','CLERK',7782,'23-JAN-82',1300,NULL,10);
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# UPDATE dept SET loc = 'BEDFORD' WHERE deptno = 40;
UPDATE 1
auditdb=# SELECT * FROM dept;
deptno | dname | loc
-----+-----+-----
```

```
10 | ACCOUNTING | NEW YORK
20 | RESEARCH | DALLAS
30 | SALES | CHICAGO
40 | OPERATIONS | BEDFORD
(4 rows)
```

```
auditdb=# DELETE FROM emp WHERE deptno = 10;
DELETE 3
auditdb=# TRUNCATE employee;
ERROR: relation "employee" does not exist
auditdb=# TRUNCATE emp;
TRUNCATE TABLE
auditdb=# \q
```

The resulting audit log file contains the following.

Each audit log entry has been split and displayed across multiple lines, and a blank line has been inserted between the audit log entries for more clarity in the appearance of the results.

```
2020-05-25 15:17:16.392 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",123420,"[local]",5ecb9424.
```

```
1e21c,1,"authentication",2020-05-25 15:17:16 IST,5/3,0,AUDIT,00000,
"connection authorized:user=adminuser database=auditdb",,,,,,,,"client
backend","",connect"
```

```
2020-05-25 15:19:18.066 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",123420,"[local]",5ecb9424.
```

```
1e21c,2,"idle",2020-05-25 15:17:16 IST,5/14,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: UPDATE
dept SET loc = 'BEDFORD' WHERE deptno = 40;","",,"psql","client backend",
"UPDATE","update"
```

```
2020-05-25 15:19:38.524 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",123420,"[local]",5ecb9424.
```

```
1e21c,3,"idle",2020-05-25 15:17:16 IST,5/16,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: DELETE
FROM emp WHERE deptno = 10;","",,"psql","client backend","DELETE","delete"
```

```
2020-05-25 15:19:48.149 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",123420,"[local]",5ecb9424.
```

```
1e21c,4,"TRUNCATE TABLE",2020-05-25 15:17:16 IST,5/17,0,ERROR,42P01,"relation
""employee""does not exist",,,,,"TRUNCATE employee","",,"psql","client backend
","",TRUNCATE TABLE","error"
```

The `UPDATE dept` and `DELETE FROM emp` statements are audited. Note that all of the prior `INSERT` statements are not audited since none of the values `insert`, `dml`, nor `all` are included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

The `SELECT * FROM dept` statement is not audited as well since neither `select` nor `all` is included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

Since `error` is specified in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter, but not the `truncate` value, the error on the `TRUNCATE employee` statement is logged in the audit file, but not the successful `TRUNCATE emp` statement.

### 12.3.5.3 Enabling Audit Logging

The following steps describe how to configure Advanced Server to log all connections, disconnections, DDL statements, DCL statements, DML statements, and any statements resulting in an error.

1. Enable auditing by the setting the `edb_audit` parameter to `xml` or `csv`.
2. Set the file rotation day when the new file will be created by setting the parameter `edb_audit_rotation_day` to the desired value.
3. To audit all connections, set the parameter, `edb_audit_connect`, to `all`.
4. To audit all disconnections, set the parameter, `edb_audit_disconnect`, to `all`.
5. To audit DDL, DCL, DML and other statements, set the parameter, `edb_audit_statement` according to the instructions in [Selecting SQL Statements to Audit](#).

The setting of the `edb_audit_statement` parameter in the configuration file affects the entire database cluster.

The type of statements that are audited as controlled by the `edb_audit_statement` parameter can be further refined according to the database in use as well as the database role running the session:

- The `edb_audit_statement` parameter can be set as an attribute of a specified database with the `ALTER DATABASE dbname SET edb_audit_statement` command. This setting overrides the `edb_audit_statement` parameter in the configuration file for statements executed when connected to database `dbname`.
- The `edb_audit_statement` parameter can be set as an attribute of a specified role with the `ALTER ROLE rolename SET edb_audit_statement` command. This setting overrides the `edb_audit_statement` parameter in the configuration file as well as any setting assigned to the database by the previously described `ALTER DATABASE` command when the specified role is running the current session.
- The `edb_audit_statement` parameter can be set as an attribute of a specified role when using a specified database with the `ALTER ROLE rolename IN DATABASE dbname SET edb_audit_statement` command. This setting overrides the `edb_audit_statement` parameter in the configuration file as well as any setting assigned to the database by the previously described `ALTER DATABASE` command as well as any setting assigned to the role with the `ALTER ROLE` command without the `IN DATABASE` clause as previously described.

The following are examples of this technique.

The database cluster is established with `edb_audit_statement` set to `all` as shown in its `postgresql.conf` file:

```
logging_collector = 'on'
edb_audit_statement = 'all'    # Statement type to be audited:
                                # none, dml, insert, update, delete,
                                # truncate,
                                # select, error, rollback, ddl, create, drop,
                                # alter, grant, revoke, all
```

A database and role are established with the following settings for the `edb_audit_statement` parameter:

- Database `auditdb` with `ddl`, `insert`, `update`, and `delete`
- Role `admin` with `select` and `truncate`
- Role `admin` in database `auditdb` with `create table`, `insert`, and `update`

Creation and alteration of the database and role are shown by the following:

```
$ psql edb enterprisedb
Password for user enterprisedb:
psql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

edb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;
edb_audit_statement
-----
all
(1 row)

edb=# CREATE DATABASE auditdb;
CREATE DATABASE
edb=# ALTER DATABASE auditdb SET edb_audit_statement TO 'ddl, insert,
update, delete';
```

```

ALTER DATABASE
edb=# CREATE ROLE admin WITH LOGIN SUPERUSER PASSWORD 'password';
CREATE ROLE
edb=# ALTER ROLE admin SET edb_audit_statement TO 'select, truncate';
ALTER ROLE
edb=# ALTER ROLE admin IN DATABASE auditdb SET edb_audit_statement TO
'create table, insert, update';
ALTER ROLE

```

The following demonstrates the changes made and the resulting audit log file for three cases.

**Case 1:** Changes made in database `auditdb` by role `enterprisedb`. Only `ddl`, `insert`, `update`, and `delete` statements are audited:

```

$ psql auditdb enterprisedb
Password for user enterprisedb:
psql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

auditdb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;
edb_audit_statement
-----
 ddl, insert, update, delete
(1 row)

auditdb=# CREATE TABLE audit_tbl (f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT);
CREATE TABLE
auditdb=# INSERT INTO audit_tbl VALUES (1, 'Row 1');
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# UPDATE audit_tbl SET f2 = 'Row A' WHERE f1 = 1;
UPDATE 1
auditdb=# SELECT * FROM audit_tbl;           <== Should not be audited
f1 | f2
-----
 1 | Row A
(1 row)

auditdb=# TRUNCATE audit_tbl;           <== Should not be audited
TRUNCATE TABLE

```

The following audit log file shows entries only for the `CREATE TABLE`, `INSERT INTO audit_tbl`, and `UPDATE audit_tbl` statements. The `SELECT * FROM audit_tbl` and `TRUNCATE audit_tbl` statements were not audited.

Each audit log entry has been split and displayed across multiple lines, and a blank line has been inserted between the audit log entries for more clarity in the appearance of the results.

```

2020-05-25 15:59:12.332 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,2,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/7,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
TABLE audit_tbl(f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT);",,,,,,,,"psql","client
backend","CREATE TABLE","","","create"

```

```

2020-05-25 15:59:22.419 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,3,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/8,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement:
INSERT INTO audit_tbl VALUES (1, 'Row 1');",,,,,,,,"psql","client backend",
"INSERT","","","insert"

```

```
2020-05-25 15:59:32.180 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,4,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/9,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: UPDATE
audit_tbl SET f2 = 'Row A' WHERE f1 = 1;" ,,,,"psql","client backend",
"UPDATE","","update"
```

**Case 2:** Changes made in database `edb` by role `admin`. Only `select` and `truncate` statements are audited:

```
$ psql edb admin
Password for user admin:
psql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

edb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;
edb_audit_statement
-----
select, truncate
(1 row)

edb=# CREATE TABLE edb_tbl (f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT); <== Should not
be audited
CREATE TABLE
edb=# INSERT INTO edb_tbl VALUES (1, 'Row 1'); <== Should not
be audited
INSERT 0 1
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_tbl;
f1 | f2
----+---
 1 | Row 1
(1 row)

edb=# TRUNCATE edb_tbl;
TRUNCATE TABLE
```

Continuation of the audit log file now appears as follows. The last two entries representing the second case show only the `SELECT * FROM edb_tbl` and `TRUNCATE edb_tbl` statements. The `CREATE TABLE edb_tbl` and `INSERT INTO edb_tbl` statements were not audited.

```
2020-05-25 15:59:12.332 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,2,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/7,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
TABLE audit_tbl(f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT);",,,,"psql","client
backend","CREATE TABLE","","create"
```

```
2020-05-25 15:59:22.419 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,3,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/8,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: INSERT
INTO audit_tbl VALUES (1, 'Row 1');",,,,"psql","client backend","INSERT",
","","insert"
```

```
2020-05-25 15:59:32.180 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,4,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/9,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: UPDATE
audit_tbl SET f2 = 'Row A' WHERE f1 = 1;" ,,,,"psql","client backend",
"UPDATE","","update"
```

```
2020-05-25 16:25:37.509 IST,"admin","edb",71920,"[local]",5ecba3fe.118f0,2,
"idle",2020-05-25 16:24:54 IST,4/33,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: SELECT * FROM
edb_tbl;,,,,"psql","client backend","SELECT","","select"
```

```
2020-05-25 16:25:46.131 IST,"admin","edb",71920,"[local]",5ecba3fe.118f0,3,
"idle",2020-05-25 16:24:54 IST,4/34,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: TRUNCATE edb_
tbl;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","TRUNCATE TABLE","","truncate"
```

**Case 3:** Changes made in database `auditdb` by role `admin`. Only `create table`, `insert`, and `update` statements are audited:

```
$ psql auditdb admin
Password for user admin:
psql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

auditdb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;
edb_audit_statement
-----
create table, insert, update
(1 row)

auditdb=# CREATE TABLE audit_tbl_2 (f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT);
CREATE TABLE
auditdb=# INSERT INTO audit_tbl_2 VALUES (1, 'Row 1');
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# SELECT * FROM audit_tbl_2;           <== Should not be audited
f1 | f2
----+---
 1 | Row 1
(1 row)

auditdb=# TRUNCATE audit_tbl_2;               <== Should not be audited
TRUNCATE TABLE
```

Continuation of the audit log file now appears as follows. The next to last two entries representing the third case show only `CREATE TABLE audit_tbl_2` and `INSERT INTO audit_tbl_2` statements. The `SELECT * FROM audit_tbl_2` and `TRUNCATE audit_tbl_2` statements were not audited.

```
2020-05-25 15:59:12.332 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,2,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/7,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
TABLE audit_tbl(f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT);,,,,,,,"psql","client
backend","CREATE TABLE","","create"
```

```
2020-05-25 15:59:22.419 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,3,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/8,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: INSERT
INTO audit_tbl VALUES (1, 'Row 1');,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","INSERT",
","","insert"
```

```
2020-05-25 15:59:32.180 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,4,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/9,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: UPDATE
audit_tbl SET f2 = 'Row A' WHERE f1 = 1;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend",
"UPDATE","","update"
```

```
2020-05-25 16:25:37.509 IST,"admin","edb",71920,"[local]",5ecba3fe.118f0,2,
"idle",2020-05-25 16:24:54 IST,4/33,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: SELECT * FROM
edb_tbl;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","SELECT","","select"
```

```
2020-05-25 16:25:46.131 IST,"admin","edb",71920,"[local]",5ecba3fe.118f0,3,
"idle",2020-05-25 16:24:54 IST,4/34,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: TRUNCATE edb_
```

```
tbl;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","TRUNCATE TABLE","","truncate"
```

```
2020-05-25 17:30:59.057 IST,"admin","auditdb",122093,"[local]",5ecbb370.1dced,  
2,"idle",2020-05-25 17:30:48 IST,5/11,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE TABLE  
audit_tbl_2 (f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT);",",,,,,,,"psql","client backend"  
,"CREATE TABLE","","create"
```

```
2020-05-25 17:31:08.866 IST,"admin","auditdb",122093,"[local]",5ecbb370.1dced,  
3,"idle",2020-05-25 17:30:48 IST,5/12,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: INSERT INTO  
audit_tbl_2 VALUES (1, 'Row 1');",",,,,,,,"psql","client backend","INSERT","","  
"insert"
```

### 12.3.5.4 Audit Log File

The audit log file can be generated in either CSV or XML format depending upon the setting of the `edb_audit` configuration parameter.

The information in the audit log is based on the logging performed by PostgreSQL as described in the section “Using CSV-Format Log Output” within Section “Error Reporting and Logging” in the PostgreSQL core documentation, available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/runtime-config-logging.html>

The following table lists the fields in the order they appear in the XML audit log format. The table contains the following information:

- **Field.** Name of the field as shown in the sample table definition in the PostgreSQL documentation as previously referenced.
- **XML Element/Attribute.** For the XML format, name of the XML element and its attribute (if used), referencing the value. **Note:** `n/a` indicates that there is no XML representation for this field.
- **Data Type.** Data type of the field as given by the PostgreSQL sample table definition.
- **Description.** Description of the field. For certain fields, no output is generated in the audit log as those fields are not supported by auditing. Those fields are indicated by “Not supported”.

The fields that do not have any values for logging appear as consecutive commas (,) in the CSV format.

Field	XML Element/Attribute	Data Type	Description
user_name	event/user	text	Database user who executed the statement.
database_name	event/database	text	Database in which the statement was executed.
process_id	event/process_id	integer	Operating system process ID in which the statement was executed.
connection_from	event/remote_host	text	Host and port location from where the statement was executed.
session_id	event/session_id	text	Session ID in which the statement was executed.
session_line_num	event/session_line_num	bigint	Order of the statement within the session.
process_status	event/process_status	text	Processing status.
session_start_time	event/session_start_time	timestamp with time zone	Date/time when the session was started.

Field	XML Element/Attribute	Data Type	Description
log_time	event/log_time	timestamp with time zone	Log date/time of the statement.
virtual_transaction_id	event/virtual_transaction_id	text	Virtual transaction ID of the statement.
transaction_id	event/transaction_id	bigint	Regular transaction ID of the statement.
type	event/type	text	Determines the audit event_type to identify messages in the log.
sql_state_code	event/sql_state_code	text	SQL state code returned for the statement. The sql_state_code is not logged when its value is 00000 for XML log format.
command_tag	event/command_tag	text	SQL command of the statement.
audit_tag	event/audit_tag	text	Value specified by the audit_tag parameter in the configuration file.
application_name	event/application_name	text	Name of the application from which the statement was executed. (for example, psql.bin).
backend_type	event/backend_type	text	The backend_type corresponds to what pg_stat_activity.backend_type shows and is added as a column to the csv log.
error_severity	error_severity	text	Statement severity. Values are AUDIT for audited statements and ERROR for any resulting error messages.
message	message	text	The SQL statement that was attempted for execution.
detail	detail	text	Error message detail.
hint	hint	text	Hint for error.
internal_query	internal_query	text	Internal query that led to the error, if any.
internal_query_pos	internal_query_pos	integer	Character count of the error position therein.
context	context	text	Error context.
query	query	text	User query that led to the error. For (For errors only)
query_pos	query_pos	integer	Character count of the error position therein. (For errors only)
location	location	text	Location of the error in the source code. The location field will be populated if log_error_verbosity is set to verbose.

The following examples are generated in the CSV and XML formats.

The non-default audit settings in the `postgresql.conf` file are as follows:

```
logging_collector = 'on'
edb_audit = 'csv'
edb_audit_connect = 'all'
edb_audit_disconnect = 'all'
edb_audit_statement = 'ddl, dml, select, error'
edb_audit_tag = 'edbaudit'
```

The `edb_audit` parameter is changed to `xml` when generating the XML format.

The audited session is the following:

```
$ psql edb enterprisedb
Password for user enterprisedb:
```

```

psql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

edb=# CREATE SCHEMA edb;
CREATE SCHEMA
edb=# SET search_path TO edb;
SET
edb=# CREATE TABLE dept (
edb(#   deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
edb(#   dname       VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
edb(#   loc         VARCHAR2(13)
edb(# );
CREATE TABLE
edb=# INSERT INTO dept VALUES (10,'ACCOUNTING','NEW YORK');
INSERT 0 1
edb=# UPDATE department SET loc = 'BOSTON' WHERE deptno = 10;
ERROR: relation "department" does not exist
LINE 1: UPDATE department SET loc = 'BOSTON' WHERE deptno = 10;
^
edb=# UPDATE dept SET loc = 'BOSTON' WHERE deptno = 10;
UPDATE 1
edb=# SELECT * FROM dept;
deptno | dname  | loc
-----+-----+
 10 | ACCOUNTING | BOSTON
(1 row)

edb=# \q

```

## CSV Audit Log File

The following is the CSV format of the audit log file.

Each audit log entry has been split and displayed across multiple lines, and a blank line has been inserted between the audit log entries for more clarity in the appearance of the results.

```

2020-05-22 16:53:37.817 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.
d7ef,1,"authentication",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/21,0,AUDIT,00000,
"connection authorized:user=enterprisedb database=edb",,,,,,,,"client
backend","","edbaudit","connect"

2020-05-22 16:53:42.279 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.
d7ef,2,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/23,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
SCHEMA edb",,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","CREATE SCHEMA","edbaudit",
"create"

2020-05-22 16:54:07.896 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.
d7ef,3,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/25,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
TABLE dept (
    deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
    dname       VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
    loc         VARCHAR2(13)
);,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","CREATE TABLE","edbaudit","create"

2020-05-22 16:54:20.500 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.
d7ef,4,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/26,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: INSERT

```

```
INTO dept VALUES(10,'ACCOUNTING','NEW YORK');,,,,,,,"psql","client backend
","INSERT","edbaudit","insert"
```

2020-05-22 16:54:34.821 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.  
d7ef,5,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/27,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: UPDATE  
department SET loc = 'BOSTON' WHERE deptno = 10;,,,,,,,"psql","client  
backend","UPDATE","edbaudit","update"

2020-05-22 16:54:34.821 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.  
d7ef,6,"UPDATE",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/27,0,ERROR,42P01,"relation "  
"department"" does not exist",,,,,"UPDATE department SET loc = 'BOSTON'  
WHERE deptno = 10;,,8,,,"psql","client backend","UPDATE","edbaudit","error"

2020-05-22 16:54:51.308 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.  
d7ef,7,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/28,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: UPDATE  
dept SET loc = 'BOSTON' WHERE deptno = 10;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend",
"UPDATE","edbaudit","update"

2020-05-22 16:55:00.774 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.  
d7ef,8,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/29,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: SELECT \*  
FROM dept;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","SELECT","edbaudit","select"

2020-05-22 16:55:06.548 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.  
d7ef,9,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,,0,AUDIT,00000,"disconnection: session  
time: 0:01:28.732 user=enterprisedb database=edb host=[local]","","psql",  
"client backend","",,"edbaudit","disconnect"

## XML Audit Log File

The following is the XML format of the audit log file. The output has been formatted for more clarity in the appearance in the example.

```
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
"[local]"
  session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="1" process_status=
  "authentication"
  session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
  16:11:17.806 IST"
  virtual_transaction_id="4/19" type="connect" audit_tag="edbaudit"
  backend_type="client backend">
  <error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
  <message>connection authorized: user=enterprisedb database=edb</
  message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
"[local]"
  session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="2" process_status="idle"
  session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
  16:11:32.558 IST"
  virtual_transaction_id="4/21" type="create" command_tag="CREATE SCHEMA
  " audit_tag="edbaudit" application_name="psql" backend_type="client
  backend">
  <error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
  <message>statement: CREATE SCHEMA edb;</message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
```

"[local]"

session\_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session\_line\_num="3" process\_status="idle"  
 session\_start\_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log\_time="2020-05-22  
 16:12:00.199 IST"  
 virtual\_transaction\_id="4/23" type="create" command\_tag="CREATE TABLE"  
 audit\_tag="edbaudit" application\_name="psql" backend\_type="client  
 backend">  
 <error\_severity>AUDIT</error\_severity>  
 <message>statement: CREATE TABLE dept (  
 deptno NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept\_pk PRIMARY KEY,  
 dname VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept\_dname\_uq UNIQUE,  
 loc VARCHAR2(13));  
 </message>  
</event>

<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process\_id="5941" remote\_host=" "[local]">

session\_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session\_line\_num="4" process\_status="idle"  
 session\_start\_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log\_time="2020-05-22  
 16:12:10.992 IST"  
 virtual\_transaction\_id="4/24" type="insert" command\_tag="INSERT" audit\_  
 tag="edbaudit" application\_name="psql" backend\_type="client backend">  
 <error\_severity>AUDIT</error\_severity>  
 <message>statement: INSERT INTO dept VALUES  
 (10,'ACCOUNTING','NEW YORK');  
 </message>

</event>

<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process\_id="5941" remote\_host=" "[local]">

session\_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session\_line\_num="5" process\_status="idle"  
 session\_start\_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log\_time="2020-05-22  
 16:12:21.764 IST"  
 virtual\_transaction\_id="4/25" type="update" command\_tag="UPDATE" audit\_  
 tag="edbaudit" application\_name="psql" backend\_type="client backend">  
 <error\_severity>AUDIT</error\_severity>  
 <message>statement: UPDATE department SET loc = 'BOSTON'  
 WHERE deptno = 10;  
 </message>

</event>

<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process\_id="5941" remote\_host=" "[local]">

session\_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session\_line\_num="6" process\_status="UPDATE"  
 session\_start\_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log\_time="2020-05-22  
 16:12:21.765 IST"  
 virtual\_transaction\_id="4/25" type="error" sql\_state\_code="42P01"  
 command\_tag="UPDATE" audit\_tag="edbaudit" application\_name="psql"  
 backend\_type="client backend">  
 <error\_severity>ERROR</error\_severity>  
 <message>relation "department" does not exist</message>  
 <query>UPDATE department SET loc = 'BOSTON' WHERE deptno =  
 10;</query>  
 <query\_pos>8</query\_pos>

</event>

<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process\_id="5941" remote\_host=" "[local]">

```

session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="7" process_status="idle"
session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
16:12:34.878 IST"
virtual_transaction_id="4/26" type="update" command_tag="UPDATE" audit_
tag="edbaudit" application_name="psql" backend_type="client backend">
<error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
<message>statement: UPDATE dept SET loc = &apos;BOSTON&apos; WHERE
deptno = 10;
</message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
"[local]">
session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="8" process_status="idle"
session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
16:12:45.471 IST"
virtual_transaction_id="4/27" type="select" command_tag="SELECT" audit_
tag="edbaudit" application_name="psql" backend_type="client backend">
<error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
<message>statement: SELECT * FROM dept;</message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
"[local]">
session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="9" process_status="idle"
session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
16:12:53.048 IST"
type="disconnect" audit_tag="edbaudit" application_name="psql" backend_
type="client backend">
<error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
<message>disconnection: session time: 0:01:35.243 user=enterprisedb
database=edb host=[local]</message>
</event>

```

## 12.3.5.5 Using Error Codes to Filter Audit Logs

Advanced Server includes an extension that you can use to exclude log file entries that include a user-specified error code from the Advanced Server log files. To filter audit log entries, you must first enable the extension by modifying the `postgresql.conf` file, adding the following value to the values specified in the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter:

```
$libdir/edb_filter_log
```

Then, use the `edb_filter_log.errcodes` parameter to specify any error codes you wish to omit from the log files:

```
edb_filter_log.errcode = 'error_code'
```

Where `error_code` specifies one or more error codes that you wish to omit from the log file. Provide multiple error codes in a comma-delimited list.

For example, if `edb_filter_log` is enabled, and `edb_filter_log.errcode` is set to '`23505,23502,22012`', any log entries that return one of the following `SQLSTATE` errors:

**23505** (for violating a unique constraint)

**23502** (for violating a not-null constraint)

**22012** (for dividing by zero)

will be omitted from the log file.

For a complete list of the error codes supported by Advanced Server audit log filtering, see the core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/errcodes-appendix.html>

### 12.3.5.6 Using Command Tags to Filter Audit Logs

Each entry in the log file except for those displaying an error message contains a *command tag*. A command tag is the SQL command executed for that particular log entry. The command tag makes it possible to use subsequent tools to scan the log file to find entries related to a particular SQL command.

The following is an example in XML form. The example has been formatted for easier review. The command tag is displayed as the `command_tag` attribute of the event element with values `CREATE ROLE`, `ALTER ROLE`, and `DROP ROLE` in the example.

```
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="64234" remote_host=
"[local]"
  session_id="5ecbc7e6.faea" session_line_num="2" process_status="idle"
  session_start_time="2020-05-25 18:58:06 IST" log_time="2020-05-25
  18:58:21.147 IST"
  virtual_transaction_id="4/30" type="create" command_tag="CREATE ROLE"
  application_name="psql" backend_type="client backend">
  <error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
  <message>statement: CREATE ROLE newuser WITH LOGIN;</message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="64234" remote_host=
"[local]"
  session_id="5ecbc7e6.faea" session_line_num="3" process_status="idle"
  session_start_time="2020-05-25 18:58:06 IST" log_time="2020-05-25
  18:58:34.142 IST"
  virtual_transaction_id="4/31" type="error" sql_state_code="42601"
  application_name="psql" backend_type="client backend">
  <error_severity>ERROR</error_severity>
  <message>unrecognized role option &quot;super&quot;</message>
  <query>ALTER ROLE newuser WITH SUPER USER;</query>
  <query_pos>25</query_pos>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="64234" remote_host=
"[local]"
  session_id="5ecbc7e6.faea" session_line_num="4" process_status="idle"
  session_start_time="2020-05-25 18:58:06 IST" log_time="2020-05-25
  18:58:44.680 IST"
  virtual_transaction_id="4/32" type="alter" command_tag="ALTER ROLE"
  application_name="psql" backend_type="client backend">
```

```

<error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
<message>statement: ALTER ROLE newuser WITH SUPERUSER;</message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="64234" remote_host=
"[local]"
    session_id="5ecbc7e6.faea" session_line_num="5" process_status="idle"
    session_start_time="2020-05-25 18:58:06 IST" log_time="2020-05-25
    18:58:58.173 IST"
    virtual_transaction_id="4/33" type="drop" command_tag="DROP ROLE"
    application_name="psql" backend_type="client backend">
        <error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
        <message>statement: DROP ROLE newuser;</message>
</event>
```

The following is the same example in CSV form. The command tag is the next to last column of each entry. In the listing, the column that appears empty (""), would be the value of the `edb_audit_tag` parameter if provided.

Each audit log entry has been split and displayed across multiple lines, and a blank line has been inserted between the audit log entries for more clarity in the appearance of the results.

```
2020-05-25 19:09:32.105 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",77212,"[local]",5ecbca7b.
12d9c,2,"idle",2020-05-25 19:09:07 IST,4/30,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
ROLE newuser WITH LOGIN;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","CREATE ROLE","",",
"create"
```

```
2020-05-25 19:09:50.975 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",77212,"[local]",5ecbca7b.
12d9c,3,"idle",2020-05-25 19:09:07 IST,4/31,0,ERROR,42601,"unrecognized role
option ""super""",,"ALTER ROLE newuser WITH SUPER USER;";25,,,"psql",
"client backend","",,"error"
```

```
2020-05-25 19:10:04.128 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",77212,"[local]",5ecbca7b.
12d9c,4,"idle",2020-05-25 19:09:07 IST,4/32,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: ALTER
ROLE newuser WITH SUPERUSER;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","ALTER ROLE","",",
"alter"
```

```
2020-05-25 19:10:15.959 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",77212,"[local]",5ecbca7b.
12d9c,5,"idle",2020-05-25 19:09:07 IST,4/33,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: DROP
ROLE newuser;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","DROP ROLE","",,"drop"
```

### 12.3.5.7 Redacting Passwords from Audit Logs

You can use the `edb_filter_log.redact_password_commands` extension to instruct the server to redact stored passwords from the log file. Note that the module only recognizes the following syntax:

```
{CREATE|ALTER} {USER|ROLE|GROUP} identifier { [WITH] [ENCRYPTED] PASSWORD
'nonempty_string_literal' | IDENTIFIED BY { 'nonempty_string_literal' |
bareword } } [ REPLACE { 'nonempty_string_literal' | bareword } ]
```

When such a statement is logged by `log_statement`, the server will redact the old and new passwords to 'x'. For example, the command:

```
ALTER USER carol PASSWORD '1safePWD' REPLACE 'old_pwd';
```

Will be added to log files as:

```
statement: ALTER USER carol PASSWORD 'x' REPLACE 'x';
```

When a statement that includes a redacted password is logged, the server redacts the statement text. When the statement is logged as context for some other message, the server omits the statement from the context.

To enable password redaction, you must first enable the extension by modifying the `postgresql.conf` file, adding the following value to the values specified in the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter:

```
$libdir/edb_filter_log
```

Then, set `edb_filter_log.redact_password_commands` to `true`:

```
edb_filter_log.redact_password_commands = true
```

After modifying the `postgresql.conf` file, you must restart the server for the changes to take effect.

## 12.3.6 Unicode Collation Algorithm

The *Unicode Collation Algorithm* (UCA) is a specification (*Unicode Technical Report #10*) that defines a customizable method of collating and comparing Unicode data. *Collation* means how data is sorted as with a `SELECT ... ORDER BY` clause. *Comparison* is relevant for searches that use ranges with less than, greater than, or equal to operators.

Customizability is an important factor for various reasons such as the following.

- Unicode supports a vast number of languages. Letters that may be common to several languages may be expected to collate in different orders depending upon the language.
- Characters that appear with letters in certain languages such as accents or umlauts have an impact on the expected collation depending upon the language.
- In some languages, combinations of several consecutive characters should be treated as a single character with regards to its collation sequence.
- There may be certain preferences as to the collation of letters according to case. For example, should the lowercase form of a letter collate before the uppercase form of the same letter or vice versa.
- There may be preferences as to whether punctuation marks such as underscore characters, hyphens, or space characters should be considered in the collating sequence or should they simply be ignored as if they did not exist in the string.

Given all of these variations with the vast number of languages supported by Unicode, there is a necessity for a method to select the specific criteria for determining a collating sequence. This is what the Unicode Collation Algorithm defines.

### Note

In addition, another advantage for using ICU collations (the implementation of the Unicode Collation Algorithm) is for performance. Sorting tasks, including B-tree index creation, can complete in less than half the time it takes with a non-ICU collation. The exact performance gain depends on your operating system version, the language of your text data, and other factors.

The following sections provide a brief, simplified explanation of the Unified Collation Algorithm concepts. As the algorithm and its usage are quite complex with numerous variations, refer to the official documents cited in these sections for complete details.

## Basic Unicode Collation Algorithm Concepts

The official information for the Unicode Collation Algorithm is specified in *Unicode Technical Report #10*, which can be found on The Unicode Consortium website at:

<http://www.unicode.org/reports/tr10/>

The ICU – International Components for Unicode also provides much useful information. An explanation of the collation concepts can be found on their website located at:

<http://userguide.icu-project.org/collation/concepts>

The basic concept behind the Unicode Collation Algorithm is the use of multilevel comparison. This means that a number of levels are defined, which are listed as level 1 through level 5 in the following bullet points. Each level defines a type of comparison. Strings are first compared using the primary level, also called level 1.

If the order can be determined based on the primary level, then the algorithm is done. If the order cannot be determined based on the primary level, then the secondary level, level 2, is applied. If the order can be determined based on the secondary level, then the algorithm is done, otherwise the tertiary level is applied, and so on. There is typically, a final tie-breaking level to determine the order if it cannot be resolved by the prior levels.

- **Level 1 – Primary Level for Base Characters.** The order of basic characters such as letters and digits determines the difference such as `A < B`.
- **Level 2 – Secondary Level for Accents.** If there are no primary level differences, then the presence or absence of accents and other such characters determine the order such as `a < á`.
- **Level 3 – Tertiary Level for Case.** If there are no primary level or secondary level differences, then a difference in case determines the order such as `a < A`.
- **Level 4 – Quaternary Level for Punctuation.** If there are no primary, secondary, or tertiary level differences, then the presence or absence of white space characters, control characters, and punctuation determine the order such as `-A < A`.
- **Level 5 – Identical Level for Tie-Breaking.** If there are no primary, secondary, tertiary, or quaternary level differences, then some other difference such as the code point values determines the order.

## International Components for Unicode

The Unicode Collation Algorithm is implemented by open source software provided by the *International Components for Unicode* (ICU). The software is a set of C/C++ and Java libraries.

When Advanced Server is used to create a collation that invokes the ICU components to produce the collation, the result is referred to as an *ICU collation*.

## Locale Collations

When creating a collation for a locale, a predefined ICU short form name for the given locale is typically provided.

An *ICU short form* is a method of specifying *collation attributes*, which are the properties of a collation. [Collation Attributes](#) provides additional information on collation attributes.

There are predefined ICU short forms for locales. The ICU short form for a locale incorporates the collation attribute settings typically used for the given locale. This simplifies the collation creation process by eliminating the need to specify the entire list of collation attributes for that locale.

The system catalog `pg_catalog.pg_icu_collate_names` contains a list of the names of the ICU short forms for locales. The ICU short form name is listed in column `icu_short_form`.

```
edb=# SELECT icu_short_form, valid_locale FROM pg_icu_collate_names ORDER BY
valid_locale;
```

```
icu_short_form | valid_locale
```

```
+-----+
LAF      | af
LAR      | ar
LAS      | as
LAZ      | az
LBE      | be
LBG      | bg
LBN      | bn
LBS      | bs
LBS_ZCYRL | bs_Cyril
LROOT    | ca
LROOT    | chr
LCS      | cs
LCY      | cy
LDA      | da
LROOT    | de
LROOT    | dz
LEE      | ee
LEL      | el
LROOT    | en
LROOT    | en_US
LEN_RUS_VPOSIX | en_US_POSIX
LEO      | eo
LES      | es
LET      | et
LFA      | fa
LFA_RAF  | fa_AF
.
.
.
```

If needed, the default characteristics of an ICU short form for a given locale can be overridden by specifying the collation attributes to override that property. This is discussed in the next section.

## Collation Attributes

When creating an ICU collation, the desired characteristics of the collation must be specified. As discussed in [Locale Collations](#), this can typically be done with an ICU short form for the desired locale. However, if more specific information is required, the specification of the collation properties can be done by using *collation attributes*.

Collation attributes define the rules of how characters are to be compared for determining the collation sequence of text strings. As Unicode covers a vast set of languages in numerous variations according to country, territory and culture, these collation attributes are quite complex.

For the complete, precise meaning and usage of collation attributes, see Section “Collator Naming Scheme” on the ICU – International Components for Unicode website at:

<http://userguide.icu-project.org/collation/concepts>

The following is a brief summary of the collation attributes and how they are specified using the ICU short form method

Each collation attribute is represented by an uppercase letter, which are listed in the following bullet points. The possible valid values for each attribute are given by codes shown within the parentheses. Some codes have

general meanings for all attributes. **X** means to set the attribute off. **O** means to set the attribute on. **D** means to set the attribute to its default value.

- **A – Alternate (N, S, D).** Handles treatment of *variable* characters such as white spaces, punctuation marks, and symbols. When set to non-ignorable (N), differences in variable characters are treated with the same importance as differences in letters. When set to shifted (S), then differences in variable characters are of minor importance (that is, the variable character is ignored when comparing base characters).
- **C – Case First (X, L, U, D).** Controls whether a lowercase letter sorts before the same uppercase letter (L), or the uppercase letter sorts before the same lowercase letter (U). Off (X) is typically specified when lowercase first (L) is desired.
- **E – Case Level (X, O, D).** Set in combination with the Strength attribute, the Case Level attribute is used when accents are to be ignored, but not case.
- **F – French Collation (X, O, D).** When set to on, secondary differences (presence of accents) are sorted from the back of the string as done in the French Canadian locale.
- **H – Hiragana Quaternary (X, O, D).** Introduces an additional level to distinguish between the Hiragana and Katakana characters for compatibility with the JIS X 4061 collation of Japanese character strings.
- **N – Normalization Checking (X, O, D).** Controls whether or not text is thoroughly normalized for comparison. Normalization deals with the issue of canonical equivalence of text whereby different code point sequences represent the same character, which then present issues when sorting or comparing such characters. Languages such as Arabic, ancient Greek, Hebrew, Hindi, Thai, or Vietnamese should be used with Normalization Checking set to on.
- **S – Strength (1, 2, 3, 4, I, D).** Maximum collation level used for comparison. Influences whether accents or case are taken into account when collating or comparing strings. Each number represents a level. A setting of I represents identical strength (that is, level 5).
- **T – Variable Top (hexadecimal digits).** Applicable only when the Alternate attribute is not set to non-ignorable (N). The hexadecimal digits specify the highest character sequence that is to be considered ignorable. For example, if white space is to be ignorable, but visible variable characters are not to be ignorable, then Variable Top set to 0020 would be specified along with the Alternate attribute set to S and the Strength attribute set to 3. (The space character is hexadecimal 0020. Other non-visible variable characters such as backspace, tab, line feed, carriage return, etc. have values less than 0020. All visible punctuation marks have values greater than 0020.)

A set of collation attributes and their values is represented by a text string consisting of the collation attribute letter concatenated with the desired attribute value. Each attribute/value pair is joined to the next pair with an underscore character as shown by the following example.

#### **AN\_CX\_EX\_FX\_HX\_NO\_S3**

Collation attributes can be specified along with a locale's ICU short form name to override those default attribute settings of the locale.

The following is an example where the ICU short form named **LROOT** is modified with a number of other collation attribute/value pairs.

#### **AN\_CX\_EX\_LROOT\_NO\_S3**

In the preceding example, the Alternate attribute (**A**) is set to non-ignorable (**N**). The Case First attribute (**C**) is set to off (**X**). The Case Level attribute (**E**) is set to off (**X**). The Normalization attribute (**N**) is set to on (**O**). The Strength attribute (**S**) is set to the tertiary level 3. **LROOT** is the ICU short form to which these other attributes are applying modifications.

## Using a Collation

A newly defined ICU collation can be used anywhere the **COLLATION "collation\_name"** clause can be used in a SQL command such as in the column specifications of the **CREATE TABLE** command or appended to an expression in the **ORDER BY** clause of a **SELECT** command.

The following are some examples of the creation and usage of ICU collations based on the English language in the United States (**en\_US.UTF8**).

In these examples, ICU collations are created with the following characteristics.

Collation `icu_collate_lowercase` forces the lowercase form of a letter to sort before its uppercase counterpart (`CL`).

Collation `icu_collate_uppercase` forces the uppercase form of a letter to sort before its lowercase counterpart (`CU`).

Collation `icu_collate_ignore_punct` causes variable characters (white space and punctuation marks) to be ignored during sorting (`AS`).

Collation `icu_collate_ignore_white_sp` causes white space and other non-visible variable characters to be ignored during sorting, but visible variable characters (punctuation marks) are not ignored (`AS`, `T0020`).

```
CREATE COLLATION icu_collate_lowercase (
    LOCALE = 'en_US.UTF8',
    ICU_SHORT_FORM = 'AN_CL_EX_NX_LROOT'
);
```

```
CREATE COLLATION icu_collate_uppercase (
    LOCALE = 'en_US.UTF8',
    ICU_SHORT_FORM = 'AN_CU_EX_NX_LROOT'
);
```

```
CREATE COLLATION icu_collate_ignore_punct (
    LOCALE = 'en_US.UTF8',
    ICU_SHORT_FORM = 'AS_CX_EX_NX_LROOT_L3'
);
```

```
CREATE COLLATION icu_collate_ignore_white_sp (
    LOCALE = 'en_US.UTF8',
    ICU_SHORT_FORM = 'AS_CX_EX_NX_LROOT_L3_T0020'
);
```

#### Note

When creating collations, ICU may generate notice and warning messages when attributes are given to modify the `LROOT` collation.

The following `psql` command lists the collations.

```
edb=# \dO
          List of collations
 Schema |      Name       | Collate | Ctype
 |      ICU        |
-----+-----+-----+-----+
enterprisedb | icu_collate_ignore_punct | en_US.UTF8 | en_US.UTF8 |
AS_CX_EX_NX_LROOT_L3
enterprisedb | icu_collate_ignore_white_sp | en_US.UTF8 | en_US.UTF8 |
AS_CX_EX_NX_LROOT_L3_T0020
enterprisedb | icu_collate_lowercase | en_US.UTF8 | en_US.UTF8 |
AN_CL_EX_NX_LROOT
enterprisedb | icu_collate_uppercase | en_US.UTF8 | en_US.UTF8 |
AN_CU_EX_NX_LROOT
(4 rows)
```

The following table is created and populated.

```

CREATE TABLE collate_tbl (
    id      INTEGER,
    c2      VARCHAR(2)
);

INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (1, 'A');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (2, 'B');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (3, 'C');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (4, 'a');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (5, 'b');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (6, 'c');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (7, '1');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (8, '2');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (9, '.B');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (10, '-B');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (11, ' B');

```

The following query sorts on column `c2` using the default collation. Note that variable characters (white space and punctuation marks) with id column values of `9`, `10`, and `11` are ignored and sort with the letter `B`.

```

edb=# SELECT * FROM collate_tbl ORDER BY c2;
id | c2
----+---
7  | 1
8  | 2
4  | a
1  | A
5  | b
2  | B
11 | B
10 | -B
9  | .B
6  | c
3  | C
(11 rows)

```

The following query sorts on column `c2` using collation `icu_collate_lowercase`, which forces the lowercase form of a letter to sort before the uppercase form of the same base letter. Also note that the `AN` attribute forces variable characters to be included in the sort order at the same level when comparing base characters so rows with `id` values of `9`, `10`, and `11` appear at the beginning of the sort list before all letters and numbers.

```

edb=# SELECT * FROM collate_tbl ORDER BY c2 COLLATE "icu_collate_lowercase";
id | c2
----+---
11 | B
10 | -B
9  | .B
7  | 1
8  | 2
4  | a
1  | A
5  | b
2  | B
6  | c
3  | C
(11 rows)

```

The following query sorts on column `c2` using collation `icu_collate_uppercase`, which forces the uppercase form of a letter to sort before the lowercase form of the same base letter.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM collate_tbl ORDER BY c2 COLLATE "icu_collate_uppercase";
id | c2
----+---
11 | B
10 | -B
9 | .B
7 | 1
8 | 2
1 | A
4 | a
2 | B
5 | b
3 | C
6 | c
(11 rows)
```

The following query sorts on column `c2` using collation `icu_collate_ignore_punct`, which causes variable characters to be ignored so rows with id values of `9`, `10`, and `11` sort with the letter `B` as that is the character immediately following the ignored variable character.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM collate_tbl ORDER BY c2 COLLATE
"icu_collate_ignore_punct";
id | c2
----+---
7 | 1
8 | 2
4 | a
1 | A
5 | b
11 | B
2 | B
9 | .B
10 | -B
6 | c
3 | C
(11 rows)
```

The following query sorts on column `c2` using collation `icu_collate_ignore_white_sp`. The `AS` and `T0020` attributes of the collation cause variable characters with code points less than or equal to hexadecimal `0020` to be ignored while variable characters with code points greater than hexadecimal `0020` are included in the sort.

The row with id value of `11`, which starts with a space character (hexadecimal `0020`) sorts with the letter `B`. The rows with id values of `9` and `10`, which start with visible punctuation marks greater than hexadecimal `0020`, appear at the beginning of the sort list as these particular variable characters are included in the sort order at the same level when comparing base characters.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM collate_tbl ORDER BY c2 COLLATE
"icu_collate_ignore_white_sp";
id | c2
----+---
10 | -B
9 | .B
7 | 1
8 | 2
```

```
4 | a
1 | A
5 | b
11 | B
2 | B
6 | c
3 | C
(11 rows)
```

## 12.4 Configuration Parameters

This section describes the database server configuration parameters of Advanced Server. These parameters control various aspects of the database server's behavior and environment such as data file and log file locations, connection, authentication, and security settings, resource allocation and consumption, archiving and replication settings, error logging and statistics gathering, optimization and performance tuning, locale and formatting settings, and so on.

Configuration parameters that apply only to Advanced Server are noted in the [Summary of Configuration Parameters](#).

Additional information about configuration parameters can be found in the PostgreSQL Core Documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/runtime-config.html>

### 12.4.1 Setting Configuration Parameters

This section provides an overview of how configuration parameters are specified and set.

Each configuration parameter is set using a `name/value` pair. Parameter names are case-insensitive. The parameter name is typically separated from its value by an optional equals sign (`=`).

The following is an example of some configuration parameter settings in the `postgresql.conf` file:

```
### This is a comment
log_connections = yes
log_destination = 'syslog'
search_path = "$user", public
shared_buffers = 128MB
```

Parameter values are specified as one of five types:

- **Boolean.** Acceptable values can be written as `on`, `off`, `true`, `false`, `yes`, `no`, `1`, `0`, or any unambiguous prefix of these.
- **Integer.** Number without a fractional part.
- **Floating Point.** Number with an optional fractional part separated by a decimal point.
- **String.** Text value. Enclose in single quotes if the value is not a simple identifier or number (that is, the value contains special characters such as spaces or other punctuation marks).

- **Enum.** Specific set of string values. The allowed values can be found in the system view `pg_settings.enumvals`. Enum values are case-insensitive.

Some settings specify a memory or time value. Each of these has an implicit unit, which is kilobytes, blocks (typically 8 kilobytes), milliseconds, seconds, or minutes. Default units can be found by referencing the system view `pg_settings.unit`. A different unit can be specified explicitly.

Valid memory units are `kB` (kilobytes), `MB` (megabytes), and `GB` (gigabytes). Valid time units are `ms` (milliseconds), `s` (seconds), `min` (minutes), `h` (hours), and `d` (days). The multiplier for memory units is 1024.

The configuration parameter settings can be established in a number of different ways:

- There is a number of parameter settings that are established when the Advanced Server database product is built. These are read-only parameters, and their values cannot be changed. There are also a couple of parameters that are permanently set for each database when the database is created. These parameters are read-only as well and cannot be subsequently changed for the database.
- The initial settings for almost all configurable parameters across the entire database cluster are listed in the configuration file, `postgresql.conf`. These settings are put into effect upon database server start or restart. Some of these initial parameter settings can be overridden as discussed in the following bullet points. All configuration parameters have built-in default settings that are in effect if not explicitly overridden.
- Configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file are overridden when the same parameters are included in the `postgresql.auto.conf` file. The `ALTER SYSTEM` command is used to manage the configuration parameters in the `postgresql.auto.conf` file.
- Parameter settings can be modified in the configuration file while the database server is running. If the configuration file is then reloaded (meaning a SIGHUP signal is issued), for certain parameter types, the changed parameters settings immediately take effect. For some of these parameter types, the new settings are available in a currently running session immediately after the reload. For other of these parameter types, a new session must be started to use the new settings. And yet for other parameter types, modified settings do not take effect until the database server is stopped and restarted. See the following section of the PostgreSQL Core Documentation for information on how to reload the configuration file:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/config-setting.html>

- The SQL commands `ALTER DATABASE`, `ALTER ROLE`, or `ALTER ROLE IN DATABASE` can be used to modify certain parameter settings. The modified parameter settings take effect for new sessions after the command is executed. `ALTER DATABASE` affects new sessions connecting to the specified database. `ALTER ROLE` affects new sessions started by the specified role. `ALTER ROLE IN DATABASE` affects new sessions started by the specified role connecting to the specified database. Parameter settings established by these SQL commands remain in effect indefinitely, across database server restarts, overriding settings established by the methods discussed in the second and third bullet points. Parameter settings established using the `ALTER DATABASE`, `ALTER ROLE`, or `ALTER ROLE IN DATABASE` commands can only be changed by: a) re-issuing these commands with a different parameter value, or
  - b) issuing these commands using either of the `SET parameter TO DEFAULT` clause or the `RESET parameter` clause. These clauses change the parameter back to using the setting established by the methods set forth in the prior bullet points. See the “SQL Commands” section of Chapter VI “Reference” in the *PostgreSQL Core Documentation* for the exact syntax of these SQL commands:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/sql-commands.html>

- Changes can be made for certain parameter settings for the duration of individual sessions using the `PGOPTIONS` environment variable or by using the `SET` command within the `EDB-PSQL` or `PSQL` command line terminal programs. Parameter settings made in this manner override settings established using any of the methods described by the second, third, and fourth bullet points, but only for the duration of the session.

## Modifying the `postgresql.conf` File

The configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file specify server behavior with regards to auditing, authentication, encryption, and other behaviors. On Linux and Windows host, the `postgresql.conf` file resides in the `data` directory under your Advanced Server installation.

Parameters that are preceded by a pound sign (#) are set to their default value. To change a parameter value, remove the pound sign and enter a new value. After setting or changing a parameter, you must either `reload` or `restart` the server for the new parameter value to take effect.

Within the `postgresql.conf` file, some parameters contain comments that indicate `change requires restart`. To view a list of the parameters that require a server restart, execute the following query at the `psql` command line:

```
SELECT name FROM pg_settings WHERE context = 'postmaster';
```

## Modifying the `pg_hba.conf` File

Appropriate authentication methods provide protection and security. Entries in the `pg_hba.conf` file specify the authentication method or methods that the server will use when authenticating connecting clients. Before connecting to the server, you may be required to modify the authentication properties specified in the `pg_hba.conf` file.

When you invoke the `initdb` utility to create a cluster, `initdb` creates a `pg_hba.conf` file for that cluster that specifies the type of authentication required from connecting clients. To modify the `pg_hba.conf` file, open the file with your choice of editor. After modifying the authentication settings in the `pg_hba.conf` file, restart the server and apply the changes.

For more information about authentication and modifying the `pg_hba.conf` file, see the PostgreSQL Core Documentation at:

- | <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/auth-pg-hba-conf.html>

When a connection request is received, the server will verify the credentials provided against the authentication settings in the `pg_hba.conf` file before allowing a connection to a database. To log the `pg_hba.conf` file entry to authenticate a connection to the server, set the `log_connections` parameter to `ON` in the `postgresql.conf` file.

A record specifies a connection type, database name, user name, a client IP address, and the authentication method to authorize a connection upon matching these parameters in the `pg_hba.conf` file. Once the connection to a server is authorized, you can see the matched line number and the authentication record from the `pg_hba.conf` file.

The following example shows a log detail for a valid `pg_hba.conf` entry upon successful authentication.

```
2020-05-08 10:42:17 IST LOG: connection received: host=[local]
2020-05-08 10:42:17 IST LOG: connection authorized: user=u1 database=edb
application_name=pgsql
2020-05-08 10:42:17 IST DETAIL: Connection matched pg_hba.conf line 84:
"local    all        all          md5"
```

## 12.4.2 Summary of Configuration Parameters

This section contains a summary table listing all Advanced Server configuration parameters along with a number of key attributes of the parameters.

These attributes are described by the following columns of the summary table:

- **Parameter.** Configuration parameter name.
- **Scope of Effect.** Scope of effect of the configuration parameter setting.
  - **Cluster** – Setting affects the entire database cluster (that is, all databases managed by the database server instance).
  - **Database** – Setting can vary by database and is established when the database is created. Applies to a small number of parameters related to locale settings.
  - **Session** – Setting can vary down to the granularity of individual sessions.

In other words, different settings can be made for the following entities whereby the latter settings in this list override prior ones: a) the entire database cluster, b) specific databases in the database cluster, c) specific roles, d) specific roles when connected to specific databases, e) a specific session.

- **When Takes Effect.** When a changed parameter setting takes effect.
  - **Preset** – Established when the Advanced Server product is built or a particular database is created. This is a read-only parameter and cannot be changed.
  - **Restart** – Database server must be restarted.
  - **Reload** – Configuration file must be reloaded (or the database server can be restarted).
  - **Immediate** – Immediately effective in a session if the **PGOPTIONS** environment variable or the **SET** command is used to change the setting in the current session. Effective in new sessions if **ALTER DATABASE**, **ALTER ROLE**, or **ALTER ROLE IN DATABASE** commands are used to change the setting.
- **Authorized User.** Type of operating system account or database role that must be used to put the parameter setting into effect.
  - **EPAS service account** – EDB Postgres Advanced Server service account (**enterprisedb** for an installation compatible with Oracle databases, **postgres** for a PostgreSQL compatible mode installation).
  - **Superuser** – Database role with superuser privileges.
  - **User** – Any database role with permissions on the affected database object (the database or role to be altered with the **ALTER** command).
  - **n/a** – Parameter setting cannot be changed by any user.
- **Description.** Brief description of the configuration parameter.
- **EPAS Only.** ‘X’ – Configuration parameter is applicable to EDB Postgres Advanced Server only. No entry in this column indicates the configuration parameter applies to PostgreSQL as well.

#### Note

There are a number of parameters that should never be altered. These are designated as “**Note: For internal use only**” in the Description column.

The following table shows the summary of configuration parameters:

Parameter	Scope of Effect	When Takes Effect	Authorized User	Description	EPAS Only
custom_variable_classes	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Deprecated in Advanced Server 9.2.	X
db_dialect	Session	Immediate	User	Sets the precedence of built-in namespaces.	X
dbms_alert.max_alerts	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets maximum number of alerts.	X

dbms_pipe.total_message_buffer	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Specifies the total size of the buffer used for the DBMS_PIPE package.	X
default_heap_fillfactor	Session	Immediate	User	Create new tables with this heap fillfactor by default.	X
default_with_rowids	Session	Immediate	User	Create new tables with ROWID support (ROWIDs with indexes) by default.	X
edb_audit	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Enable EDB Auditing to create audit reports in XML or CSV format.	X
edb_audit_connect	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Audits each successful connection.	X
edb_audit_destination	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Sets <code>edb_audit_directory</code> or <code>syslog</code> as the destination directory for audit files. The <code>syslog</code> setting is only valid for a Linux system.	X
edb_audit_directory	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Sets the destination directory for audit files.	X
edb_audit_disconnect	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Audits end of a session.	X
edb_audit_filename	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Sets the file name pattern for audit files.	X
edb_audit_rotation_day	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Automatic rotation of log files based on day of week.	X
edb_audit_rotation_seconds	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Automatic log file rotation will occur after N seconds.	X
edb_audit_rotation_size	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Automatic log file rotation will occur after N Megabytes.	X
edb_audit_statement	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Sets the type of statements to audit.	X
edb_audit_tag	Session	Immediate	User	Specify a tag to be included in the audit log.	X
edb_connectby_order	Session	Immediate	User	Sort results of CONNECT BY queries with no ORDER BY to depth-first order. Note: For internal use only.	X
edb_data_redaction	Session	Immediate	User	Enable data redaction.	X
edb_dynature	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets theedb utilization percentage.	X

edb_dynature_profile	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets the workload profile for dynature.	X
edb_enable_pruning	Session	Immediate	User	Enables the planner to early-prune partitioned tables.	X
edb_log_every_bulk_value	Session	Immediate	Superuser	Sets the statements logged for bulk processing.	X
edb_max_resource_groups	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Specifies the maximum number of resource groups for simultaneous use.	X
edb_max_spins_per_delay	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Specifies the number of times a session will spin while waiting for a lock.	X
edb_redwood_date	Session	Immediate	User	Determines whether DATE should behave like a TIMESTAMP or not.	X
edb_redwood_greatest_least	Session	Immediate	User	Determines how GREATEST and LEAST functions should handle NULL parameters.	X
edb_redwood_raw_names	Session	Immediate	User	Return the unmodified name stored in the PostgreSQL system catalogs from Redwood interfaces.	X
edb_redwood_strings	Session	Immediate	User	Treat NULL as an empty string when concatenated with a text value.	X
edb_resource_group	Session	Immediate	User	Specifies the resource group to be used by the current process.	X
edb_sql_protect.enabled	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Defines whether SQL/Protect should track queries or not.	X
edb_sql_protect.level	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Defines the behavior of SQL/Protect when an event is found.	X
edb_sql_protect.max_protected_relations	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets the maximum number of relations protected by SQL/Protect per role.	X
edb_sql_protect.max_protected_roles	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets the maximum number of roles protected by SQL/Protect.	X
edb_sql_protect.max_queries_to_save	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets the maximum number of offending queries to save by SQL/Protect.	X
edb_stmt_level_tx	Session	Immediate	User	Allows continuing on errors instead of requiring a transaction abort.	X

edb_wait_states.directory	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	The EDB wait states logs are stored in this directory.	X
edb_wait_states.retention_period	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	EDB wait state log files will be automatically deleted after retention period.	X
edb_wait_states.sampling_interval	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	The interval between two EDB wait state sampling cycles.	X
edbldr.empty_csv_field	Session	Immediate	Superuser	Specifies how EDB*Loader handles empty strings.	X
enable_hints	Session	Immediate	User	Enable optimizer hints in SQL statements.	X
icu_short_form	Database	Preset	n/a	Shows the ICU collation order configuration.	X
index_advisor.enabled	Session	Immediate	User	Enable Index Advisor plugin.	X
nls_length_semantics	Session	Immediate	Superuser	Sets the semantics to use for char, varchar, varchar2 and long columns.	X
odbc_lib_path	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets the path for ODBC library.	X
optimizer_mode	Session	Immediate	User	Default optimizer mode.	X
oracle_home	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Sets the path for the Oracle home directory.	X
pg_prewarm.autoprewarm	Cluster	Restart	EPAS service account	Enables the autoprewarm background worker.	X
pg_prewarm.autoprewarm_interval	Cluster	Reload	EPAS service account	Sets the minimum number of seconds after which autoprewarm dumps shared buffers.	X
qreplace_function	Session	Immediate	Superuser	The function to be used by Query Replace feature. Note: For internal use only.	X
query_rewrite_enabled	Session	Immediate	User	Child table scans will be skipped if their constraints guarantee that no rows match the query.	X
query_rewrite_integrity	Session	Immediate	Superuser	Sets the degree to which query rewriting must be enforced.	X
timed_statistics	Session	Immediate	User	Enables the recording of timed statistics.	X
trace_hints	Session	Immediate	User	Emit debug info about hints being honored.	X

utl_encode.uudecode_redwood	Session	Immediate	User	Allows decoding of Oracle-created uuencoded data.	X
utl_file.umask	Session	Immediate	User	Umask used for files created through the UTL_FILE package.	X

### 12.4.3 Configuration Parameters by Functionality

This section provides more detail for certain groups of configuration parameters.

The section heading for each parameter is followed by a list of attributes:

- **Parameter Type.** Type of values the parameter can accept. See [Setting Configuration Parameters](#) section for a discussion of parameter type values.
- **Default Value.** Default setting if a value is not explicitly set in the configuration file.
- **Range.** Permitted range of values.
- **Minimum Scope of Effect.** Smallest scope for which a distinct setting can be made. Generally, the minimal scope of a distinct setting is either the entire `cluster` (the setting is the same for all databases and sessions thereof, in the cluster), or `per session` (the setting may vary by role, database, or individual session). (This attribute has the same meaning as the `Scope of Effect` column in the table of [Summary of Configuration Parameters](#)).
- **When Value Changes Take Effect.** Least invasive action required to activate a change to a parameter's value. All parameter setting changes made in the configuration file can be put into effect with a restart of the database server; however certain parameters require a database server `restart`. Some parameter setting changes can be put into effect with a `reload` of the configuration file without stopping the database server. Finally, other parameter setting changes can be put into effect with some client side action whose result is `immediate`. (This attribute has the same meaning as the `When Takes Effect` column in the table of [Summary of Configuration Parameters](#)).
- **Required Authorization to Activate.** The type of user authorization to activate a change to a parameter's setting. If a database server restart or a configuration file reload is required, then the user must be a EPAS service account (`enterprisedb` or `postgres` depending upon the Advanced Server compatibility installation mode). (This attribute has the same meaning as the `Authorized User` column in the table of [Summary of Configuration Parameters](#)).

### 12.4.3.1 Top Performance Related Parameters

This section discusses the configuration parameters that have the most immediate impact on performance.

## 12.4.3.1.1 shared\_buffers

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 32MB

**Range:** 128kB to system dependent

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the amount of memory the database server uses for shared memory buffers. The default is typically 32 megabytes (32MB), but might be less if your kernel settings will not support it (as determined during `initdb`). This setting must be at least 128 kilobytes. (Non-default values of `BLCKSZ` change the minimum.) However, settings significantly higher than the minimum are usually needed for good performance.

If you have a dedicated database server with 1GB or more of RAM, a reasonable starting value for `shared_buffers` is 25% of the memory in your system. There are some workloads where even large settings for `shared_buffers` are effective, but because Advanced Server also relies on the operating system cache, it is unlikely that an allocation of more than 40% of RAM to `shared_buffers` will work better than a smaller amount.

On systems with less than 1GB of RAM, a smaller percentage of RAM is appropriate, so as to leave adequate space for the operating system (15% of memory is more typical in these situations). Also, on Windows, large values for `shared_buffers` aren't as effective. You may find better results keeping the setting relatively low and using the operating system cache more instead. The useful range for `shared_buffers` on Windows systems is generally from 64MB to 512MB.

Increasing this parameter might cause Advanced Server to request more System V shared memory than your operating system's default configuration allows. See the section [Shared Memory and Semaphores](#) in the *PostgreSQL Core Documentation* for information on how to adjust those parameters, if necessary.

## 12.4.3.1.2 work\_mem

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 1MB

**Range:** 64kB to 2097151kB

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Specifies the amount of memory to be used by internal sort operations and hash tables before writing to temporary disk files. The value defaults to one megabyte (1MB). Note that for a complex query, several sort or hash operations might be running in parallel; each operation will be allowed to use as much memory as this value specifies before it starts to write data into temporary files. Also, several running sessions could be doing such operations concurrently. Therefore, the total memory used could be many times the value of `work_mem`; it is necessary to keep this fact in mind when choosing the value. Sort operations are used for `ORDER BY`, `DISTINCT`, and merge joins. Hash tables are used in hash joins, hash-based aggregation, and hash-based

processing of `IN` subqueries.

Reasonable values are typically between 4MB and 64MB, depending on the size of your machine, how many concurrent connections you expect (determined by `max_connections`), and the complexity of your queries.

---

### 12.4.3.1.3 maintenance\_work\_mem

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 16MB

**Range:** 1024kB to 2097151kB

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Specifies the maximum amount of memory to be used by maintenance operations, such as `VACUUM`, `CREATE INDEX`, and `ALTER TABLE ADD FOREIGN KEY`. It defaults to 16 megabytes (16MB). Since only one of these operations can be executed at a time by a database session, and an installation normally doesn't have many of them running concurrently, it's safe to set this value significantly larger than `work_mem`. Larger settings might improve performance for vacuuming and for restoring database dumps.

Note that when autovacuum runs, up to `autovacuum_max_workers` times this memory may be allocated, so be careful not to set the default value too high.

A good rule of thumb is to set this to about 5% of system memory, but not more than about 512MB. Larger values won't necessarily improve performance.

---

### 12.4.3.1.4 wal\_buffers

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 64kB

**Range:** 32kB to system dependent

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

The amount of memory used in shared memory for WAL data. The default is 64 kilobytes (64kB). The setting need only be large enough to hold the amount of WAL data generated by one typical transaction, since the data is written out to disk at every transaction commit.

Increasing this parameter might cause Advanced Server to request more System V shared memory than your

operating system's default configuration allows. See the section "Shared Memory and Semaphores" in the *PostgreSQL Core Documentation* for information on how to adjust those parameters, if necessary.

Although even this very small setting does not always cause a problem, there are situations where it can result in extra `fsync` calls, and degrade overall system throughput. Increasing this value to 1MB or so can alleviate this problem. On very busy systems, an even higher value may be needed, up to a maximum of about 16MB. Like `shared_buffers`, this parameter increases Advanced Server's initial shared memory allocation, so if increasing it causes an Advanced Server start failure, you will need to increase the operating system limit.

---

### 12.4.3.1.5 `checkpoint_segments`

Now deprecated; this parameter is not supported by server versions 9.5 or later.

---

### 12.4.3.1.6 `checkpoint_completion_target`

**Parameter Type:** Floating point

**Default Value:** 0.5

**Range:** 0 to 1

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the target of checkpoint completion as a fraction of total time between checkpoints. This spreads out the checkpoint writes while the system starts working towards the next checkpoint.

The default of 0.5 means aim to finish the checkpoint writes when 50% of the next checkpoint is ready. A value of 0.9 means aim to finish the checkpoint writes when 90% of the next checkpoint is done, thus throttling the checkpoint writes over a larger amount of time and avoiding spikes of performance bottlenecks.

---

### 12.4.3.1.7 `checkpoint_timeout`

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 5min

**Range:** 30s to 3600s

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Maximum time between automatic WAL checkpoints, in seconds. The default is five minutes (5min). Increasing this parameter can increase the amount of time needed for crash recovery.

Increasing `checkpoint_timeout` to a larger value, such as 15 minutes, can reduce the I/O load on your system, especially when using large values for `shared_buffers`.

The downside of making the aforementioned adjustments to the checkpoint parameters is that your system will use a modest amount of additional disk space, and will take longer to recover in the event of a crash. However, for most users, this is a small price to pay for a significant performance improvement.

---

### 12.4.3.1.8 max\_wal\_size

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 1 GB

**Range:** 2 to 2147483647

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

`max_wal_size` specifies the maximum size that the WAL will reach between automatic WAL checkpoints. This is a soft limit; WAL size can exceed `max_wal_size` under special circumstances (when under a heavy load, a failing archive\_command, or a high `wal_keep_segments` setting).

Increasing this parameter can increase the amount of time needed for crash recovery. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

---

### 12.4.3.1.9 min\_wal\_size

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 80 MB

**Range:** 2 to 2147483647

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

If WAL disk usage stays below the value specified by `min_wal_size`, old WAL files are recycled for future use at a

checkpoint, rather than removed. This ensures that enough WAL space is reserved to handle spikes in WAL usage (like when running large batch jobs). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

---

### 12.4.3.1.10 bgwriter\_delay

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 200ms

**Range:** 10ms to 10000ms

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the delay between activity rounds for the background writer. In each round the writer issues writes for some number of dirty buffers (controllable by the `bgwriter_lru_maxpages` and `bgwriter_lru_multiplier` parameters). It then sleeps for `bgwriter_delay` milliseconds, and repeats.

The default value is 200 milliseconds (200ms). Note that on many systems, the effective resolution of sleep delays is 10 milliseconds; setting `bgwriter_delay` to a value that is not a multiple of 10 might have the same results as setting it to the next higher multiple of 10.

Typically, when tuning `bgwriter_delay`, it should be reduced from its default value. This parameter is rarely increased, except perhaps to save on power consumption on a system with very low utilization.

---

### 12.4.3.1.11 seq\_page\_cost

**Parameter Type:** Floating point

**Default Value:** 1

**Range:** 0 to 1.79769e+308

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of a disk page fetch that is part of a series of sequential fetches. The default is 1.0. This value can be overridden for a particular tablespace by setting the tablespace parameter of the same name. (Refer to the `ALTER TABLESPACE` command in the *PostgreSQL Core Documentation*.)

The default value assumes very little caching, so it's frequently a good idea to reduce it. Even if your database is significantly larger than physical memory, you might want to try setting this parameter to less than 1 (rather than its default value of 1) to see whether you get better query plans that way. If your database fits entirely within memory,

you can lower this value much more, perhaps to 0.1.

---

### 12.4.3.1.12 random\_page\_cost

**Parameter Type:** Floating point

**Default Value:** 4

**Range:** 0 to 1.79769e+308

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of a non-sequentially-fetched disk page. The default is 4.0. This value can be overridden for a particular tablespace by setting the tablespace parameter of the same name. (Refer to the [ALTER TABLESPACE](#) command in the *PostgreSQL Core Documentation*.)

Reducing this value relative to `seq_page_cost` will cause the system to prefer index scans; raising it will make index scans look relatively more expensive. You can raise or lower both values together to change the importance of disk I/O costs relative to CPU costs, which are described by the `cpu_tuple_cost` and `cpu_index_tuple_cost` parameters.

The default value assumes very little caching, so it's frequently a good idea to reduce it. Even if your database is significantly larger than physical memory, you might want to try setting this parameter to 2 (rather than its default of 4) to see whether you get better query plans that way. If your database fits entirely within memory, you can lower this value much more, perhaps to 0.1.

Although the system will let you do so, never set `random_page_cost` less than `seq_page_cost`. However, setting them equal (or very close to equal) makes sense if the database fits mostly or entirely within memory, since in that case there is no penalty for touching pages out of sequence. Also, in a heavily-cached database you should lower both values relative to the CPU parameters, since the cost of fetching a page already in RAM is much smaller than it would normally be.

---

### 12.4.3.1.13 effective\_cache\_size

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 128MB

**Range:** 8kB to 17179869176kB

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Sets the planner's assumption about the effective size of the disk cache that is available to a single query. This is factored into estimates of the cost of using an index; a higher value makes it more likely index scans will be used, a lower value makes it more likely sequential scans will be used. When setting this parameter you should consider both Advanced Server's shared buffers and the portion of the kernel's disk cache that will be used for Advanced Server data files. Also, take into account the expected number of concurrent queries on different tables, since they will have to share the available space. This parameter has no effect on the size of shared memory allocated by Advanced Server, nor does it reserve kernel disk cache; it is used only for estimation purposes. The default is 128 megabytes ([128MB](#)).

If this parameter is set too low, the planner may decide not to use an index even when it would be beneficial to do so. Setting `effective_cache_size` to 50% of physical memory is a normal, conservative setting. A more aggressive setting would be approximately 75% of physical memory.

---

### **12.4.3.1.14      [synchronous\\_commit](#)**

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Specifies whether transaction commit will wait for WAL records to be written to disk before the command returns a [success](#) indication to the client. The default, and safe, setting is on. When off, there can be a delay between when success is reported to the client and when the transaction is really guaranteed to be safe against a server crash. (The maximum delay is three times [wal\\_writer\\_delay](#).)

Unlike [fsync](#), setting this parameter to off does not create any risk of database inconsistency: an operating system or database crash might result in some recent allegedly-committed transactions being lost, but the database state will be just the same as if those transactions had been aborted cleanly.

So, turning [synchronous\\_commit](#) off can be a useful alternative when performance is more important than exact certainty about the durability of a transaction. See the section [Asynchronous Commit](#) in the *PostgreSQL Core Documentation* for information.

This parameter can be changed at any time; the behavior for any one transaction is determined by the setting in effect when it commits. It is therefore possible, and useful, to have some transactions commit synchronously and others asynchronously. For example, to make a single multistatement transaction commit asynchronously when the default is the opposite, issue [SET LOCAL synchronous\\_commit TO OFF](#) within the transaction.

---

### **12.4.3.1.15      [edb\\_max\\_spins\\_per\\_delay](#)**

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 1000

**Range:** 10 to 1000

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Use `edb_max_spins_per_delay` to specify the maximum number of times that a session will spin while waiting for a spin-lock. If a lock is not acquired, the session will sleep. If you do not specify an alternative value for `edb_max_spins_per_delay`, the server will enforce the default value of `1000`.

This may be useful for systems that use `NUMA` (non-uniform memory access) architecture.

## 12.4.3.1.16 pg\_prewarm.autoprewarm

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

This parameter controls whether or not the database server should run `autoprewarm`, which is a background worker process that automatically dumps shared buffers to disk before a shutdown. It then `prewams` the shared buffers the next time the server is started, meaning it loads blocks from the disk back into the buffer pool.

The advantage is that it shortens the warm up times after the server has been restarted by loading the data that has been dumped to disk before shutdown.

If `pg_prewarm.autoprewarm` is set to on, the `autoprewarm` worker is enabled. If the parameter is set to off, `autoprewarm` is disabled. The parameter is on by default.

Before `autoprewarm` can be used, you must add `$libdir/pg_prewarm` to the libraries listed in the `shared_preload_libraries` configuration parameter of the `postgresql.conf` file as shown by the following example:

```
shared_preload_libraries =
'$libdir/dbms_pipe,$libdir/edb_gen,$libdir/dbms_aq,$libdir/pg_prewarm'
```

After modifying the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter, restart the database server after which the `autoprewarm` background worker is launched immediately after the server has reached a consistent state.

The `autoprewarm` process will start loading blocks that were previously recorded in `$PGDATA/autoprewarm` blocks until there is no free buffer space left in the buffer pool. In this manner, any new blocks that were loaded either by the recovery process or by the querying clients, are not replaced.

Once the `autoprewarm` process has finished loading buffers from disk, it will periodically dump shared buffers to disk at the interval specified by the `pg_prewarm.autoprewarm_interval` parameter. See the `pg_prewarm.autoprewarm_interval` for information on the `autoprewarm` background worker. Upon the next server restart, the `autoprewarm` process will prewarm shared buffers with the blocks that were last dumped to disk.

### 12.4.3.1.17 pg\_prewarm.autoprewarm\_interval

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 300s

**Range:** 0s to 2147483s

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

This is the minimum number of seconds after which the `autoprewarm` background worker dumps shared buffers to disk. The default is 300 seconds. If set to 0, shared buffers are not dumped at regular intervals, but only when the server is shut down.

See the [pg\\_prewarm.autoprewarm](#) for information on the `autoprewarm` background worker.

## 12.4.3.2 Resource Usage / Memory

The configuration parameters in this section control resource usage pertaining to memory.

### edb\_dynatune

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 0

**Range:** 0 to 100

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Determines how much of the host system's resources are to be used by the database server based upon the host machine's total available resources and the intended usage of the host machine.

When Advanced Server is initially installed, the `edb_dynatune` parameter is set in accordance with the selected usage of the host machine on which it was installed (i.e., development machine, mixed use machine, or dedicated server). For most purposes, there is no need for the database administrator to adjust the various configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file in order to improve performance.

The `edb_dynatune` parameter can be set to any integer value between 0 and 100, inclusive. A value of 0, turns off the dynamic tuning feature thereby leaving the database server resource usage totally under the control of the other configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file.

A low non-zero value (e.g., 1 - 33) dedicates the least amount of the host machine's resources to the database server. This setting would be used for a development machine where many other applications are being used.

A value in the range of 34 - 66 dedicates a moderate amount of resources to the database server. This setting might be used for a dedicated application server that may have a fixed number of other applications running on the same machine as Advanced Server.

The highest values (e.g., 67 - 100) dedicate most of the server's resources to the database server. This setting would be used for a host machine that is totally dedicated to running Advanced Server.

Once a value of `edb_dynatune` is selected, database server performance can be further fine-tuned by adjusting the other configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file. Any adjusted setting overrides the corresponding value chosen by `edb_dynatune`. You can change the value of a parameter by un-commenting the configuration parameter, specifying the desired value, and restarting the database server.

## `edb_dynatune_profile`

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** oltp

**Range:** {oltp | reporting | mixed}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

This parameter is used to control tuning aspects based upon the expected workload profile on the database server.

The following are the possible values:

- `oltp`. Recommended when the database server is processing heavy online transaction processing workloads.
- `reporting`. Recommended for database servers used for heavy data reporting.
- `mixed`. Recommended for servers that provide a mix of transaction processing and data reporting.

## 12.4.3.3 Resource Usage / EDB Resource Manager

The configuration parameters in this section control resource usage through EDB Resource Manager.

### `edb_max_resource_groups`

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 16

**Range:** 0 to 65536

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

This parameter controls the maximum number of resource groups that can be used simultaneously by EDB Resource Manager. More resource groups can be created than the value specified by `edb_max_resource_groups`, however, the number of resource groups in active use by processes in these groups cannot exceed this value.

Parameter `edb_max_resource_groups` should be set comfortably larger than the number of groups you expect to maintain so as not to run out.

### `edb_resource_group`

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** none

**Range:** n/a

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Set the `edb_resource_group` parameter to the name of the resource group to which the current session is to be controlled by EDB Resource Manager according to the group's resource type settings.

If the parameter is not set, then the current session does not utilize EDB Resource Manager.

## 12.4.3.4 Query Tuning

This section describes the configuration parameters used for optimizer hints.

### `enable_hints`

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Optimizer hints embedded in SQL commands are utilized when `enable_hints` is on. Optimizer hints are ignored when this parameter is off.

## 12.4.3.5 Query Tuning / Planner Method Configuration

This section describes the configuration parameters used for planner method configuration.

### `edb_enable_pruning`

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

When set to `TRUE`, `edb_enable_pruning` allows the query planner to early-prune partitioned tables. **Early-pruning** means that the query planner can `prune` (i.e., ignore) partitions that would not be searched in a query **before** generating query plans. This helps improve performance time as it eliminates the generation of query plans of partitions that would not be searched.

Conversely, **late-pruning** means that the query planner prunes partitions **after** generating query plans for each partition. (The `constraint_exclusion` configuration parameter controls late-pruning.)

The ability to early-prune depends upon the nature of the query in the `WHERE` clause. Early-pruning can be utilized in only simple queries with constraints of the type `WHERE column = literal` (e.g., `WHERE deptno = 10`).

Early-pruning is not used for more complex queries such as `WHERE column = expression` (e.g., `WHERE deptno = 10 + 5`).

## 12.4.3.6 Reporting and Logging / What to Log

The configuration parameters in this section control reporting and logging.

### `trace_hints`

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Use with the optimizer hints feature to provide more detailed information regarding whether or not a hint was used by the planner. Set the `client_min_messages` and `trace_hints` configuration parameters as follows:

```
SET client_min_messages TO info;
SET trace_hints TO true;
```

The `SELECT` command with the `NO_INDEX` hint shown below illustrates the additional information produced when the aforementioned configuration parameters are set.

```
EXPLAIN SELECT /*+ NO_INDEX(accounts accounts_pkey) */ * FROM accounts
WHERE aid = 100;
```

INFO: [HINTS] Index Scan of [accounts].[accounts\_pkey] rejected because of NO\_INDEX hint.

INFO: [HINTS] Bitmap Heap Scan of [accounts].[accounts\_pkey] rejected because of NO\_INDEX hint.

#### QUERY PLAN

---

```
Seq Scan on accounts (cost=0.00..14461.10 rows=1 width=97)
  Filter: (aid = 100)
(2 rows)
```

**edb\_log\_every\_bulk\_value**

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Superuser

Bulk processing logs the resulting statements into both the Advanced Server log file and the EDB Audit log file. However, logging each and every statement in bulk processing is costly. This can be controlled by the `edb_log_every_bulk_value` configuration parameter. When set to `true`, each and every statement in bulk processing is logged. During bulk execution, when `edb_log_every_bulk_value` is set to `false`, a log message is recorded once per bulk processing along with the number of rows processed. In addition, the duration is emitted once per bulk processing. Default is set to `false`.

### 12.4.3.7 Auditing Settings

This section describes configuration parameters used by the Advanced Server database auditing feature.

---

### 12.4.3.7.1      **edb\_audit**

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** none

**Range:** {none | csv | xml}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Enables or disables database auditing. The values `xml` or `csv` will enable database auditing. These values represent the file format in which auditing information will be captured. `none` will disable database auditing and is also the default.

---

### 12.4.3.7.2      **edb\_audit\_directory**

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** `edb_audit`

**Range:** n/a

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the directory where the audit log files will be created. The path of the directory can be absolute or relative to the Advanced Server `data` directory.

---

### 12.4.3.7.3      **edb\_audit\_filename**

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** `audit-%Y%m%d_%H%M%S`

**Range:** n/a

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the file name of the audit file where the auditing information will be stored. The default file name will be `audit-%Y%m%d_%H%M%S`. The escape sequences, `%Y`, `%m` etc., will be replaced by the appropriate current values according to the system date and time.

---

#### 12.4.3.7.4      `edb_audit_rotation_day`

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** every

**Range:** {none | every | sun | mon | tue | wed | thu | fri | sat} ...

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the day of the week on which to rotate the audit files. Valid values are `sun`, `mon`, `tue`, `wed`, `thu`, `fri`, `sat`, `every`, and `none`. To disable rotation, set the value to `none`. To rotate the file every day, set the `edb_audit_rotation_day` value to `every`. To rotate the file on a specific day of the week, set the value to the desired day of the week.

---

#### 12.4.3.7.5      `edb_audit_rotation_size`

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 0MB

**Range:** 0MB to 5000MB

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies a file size threshold in megabytes when file rotation will be forced to occur. The default value is 0MB. If the parameter is commented out or set to 0, rotation of the file on a size basis will not occur.

---

## 12.4.3.7.6 edb\_audit\_rotation\_seconds

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 0s

**Range:** 0s to 2147483647s

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the rotation time in seconds when a new log file should be created. To disable this feature, set this parameter to 0.

---

## 12.4.3.7.7 edb\_audit\_connect

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** failed

**Range:** {none | failed | all}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Enables auditing of database connection attempts by users. To disable auditing of all connection attempts, set `edb_audit_connect` to `none`. To audit all failed connection attempts, set the value to `failed`. To audit all connection attempts, set the value to `all`.

---

## 12.4.3.7.8 edb\_audit\_disconnect

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** none

**Range:** {none | all}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Enables auditing of database disconnections by connected users. To enable auditing of disconnections, set the value to `all`. To disable, set the value to `none`.

---

## 12.4.3.7.9      `edb_audit_statement`

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** `ddl, error`

**Range:** {`none`| `ddl` | `dml` | `insert` | `update` | `delete` | `truncate` | `select` | `error` | `create` | `drop` | `alter` | `grant` | `revoke` | `rollback` | `all`} ...

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

This configuration parameter is used to specify auditing of different categories of SQL statements as well as those statements related to specific SQL commands. To log errors, set the parameter value to `error`. To audit all DDL statements such as `CREATE TABLE`, `ALTER TABLE`, etc., set the parameter value to `ddl`. To audit specific types of DDL statements, the parameter values can include those specific SQL commands (`create`, `drop`, or `alter`). In addition, the object type may be specified following the command such as `create table`, `create view`, `drop role`, etc. All modification statements such as `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE` or `TRUNCATE` can be audited by setting `edb_audit_statement` to `dml`. To audit specific types of DML statements, the parameter values can include the specific SQL commands, `insert`, `update`, `delete`, or `truncate`. Include parameter values `select`, `grant`, `revoke`, or `rollback` to audit statements regarding those SQL commands. Setting the value to `all` will audit every statement while `none` disables this feature.

---

## 12.4.3.7.10      `edb_audit_tag`

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** `none`

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** User

Use `edb audit tag` to specify a string value that will be included in the audit log when the `edb_audit` parameter is set to `csv` or `xml`.

---

## 12.4.3.7.11      `edb_audit_destination`

**Parameter Type:** Enum**Default Value:** file**Range:** {file | syslog}**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies whether the audit log information is to be recorded in the directory as given by the `edb_audit_directory` parameter or to the directory and file managed by the `syslog` process. Set to `file` to use the directory specified by `edb_audit_directory` (the default setting).

Set to `syslog` to use the syslog process and its location as configured in the `/etc/syslog.conf` file. The `syslog` setting is valid only for Advanced Server running on a Linux host, and is not supported on Windows systems.

**Note:** In recent Linux versions, `syslog` has been replaced by `rsyslog` and the configuration file is in `/etc/rsyslog.conf`.

### 12.4.3.7.12      `edb_log_every_bulk_value`

For information on `edb_log_every_bulk_value`, see the [edb\\_log\\_every\\_bulk\\_value](#).

## 12.4.3.8      Client Connection Defaults / Locale and Formatting

This section describes configuration parameters affecting locale and formatting.

### `icu_short_form`

**Parameter Type:** String**Default Value:** none**Range:** n/a**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Database**When Value Changes Take Effect:** n/a**Required Authorization to Activate:** n/a

The configuration parameter `icu_short_form` is a parameter containing the default ICU short form name assigned to a database or to the Advanced Server instance. See [Unicode Collation Algorithm](#) for general information about the ICU short form and the Unicode Collation Algorithm.

This configuration parameter is set either when the `CREATE DATABASE` command is used with the `ICU SHORT FORM` parameter in which case the specified short form name is set and appears in the `icu_short_form` configuration parameter when connected to this database, or when an Advanced Server instance is created with the `initdb` command used with the `--icu_short_form` option in which case the specified short form name is set and appears in the `icu_short_form` configuration parameter when connected to a database in that Advanced Server instance, and the database does not override it with its own `ICU_SHORT_FORM` parameter with a different short form.

Once established in the manner described, the `icu_short_form` configuration parameter cannot be changed.

---

### 12.4.3.9 Client Connection Defaults / Statement Behavior

This section describes configuration parameters affecting statement behavior.

#### `default_heap_fillfactor`

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 100

**Range:** 10 to 100

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Sets the fillfactor for a table when the `FILLCATOR` storage parameter is omitted from a `CREATE TABLE` command.

The fillfactor for a table is a percentage between 10 and 100. 100 (complete packing) is the default. When a smaller `fillfactor` is specified, `INSERT` operations pack table pages only to the indicated percentage; the remaining space on each page is reserved for updating rows on that page. This gives `UPDATE` a chance to place the updated copy of a row on the same page as the original, which is more efficient than placing it on a different page. For a table whose entries are never updated, complete packing is the best choice, but in heavily updated tables smaller fillfactors are appropriate.

#### `edb_data_redaction`

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Data redaction is the support of policies to limit the exposure of certain sensitive data to certain users by altering the displayed information.

The default setting is `TRUE` so the data redaction is applied to all users except for superusers and the table owner:

- Superusers and table owner bypass data redaction.
- All other users get the redaction policy applied and see the reformatted data.

If the parameter is disabled by setting it to `FALSE`, then the following occurs:

- Superusers and table owner still bypass data redaction.
- All other users will get an error.

For information on data redaction, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server Security Features Guide*.

### 12.4.3.10 Client Connection Defaults / Other Defaults

The parameters in this section set other miscellaneous client connection defaults.

#### `oracle_home`

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** none

**Range:** n/a

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Before creating an Oracle Call Interface (OCI) database link to an Oracle server, you must direct Advanced Server to the correct Oracle home directory. Set the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable on Linux (or `PATH` on Windows) to the `lib` directory of the Oracle client installation directory.

For Windows only, you can instead set the value of the `oracle_home` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file. The value specified in the `oracle_home` configuration parameter will override the Windows `PATH` environment variable.

The `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable on Linux (`PATH` environment variable or `oracle_home` configuration parameter on Windows) must be set properly each time you start Advanced Server.

**For Windows only:** To set the `oracle_home` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file, edit the file, adding the following line:

```
oracle_home = 'lib_directory'
```

Substitute the name of the Windows directory that contains `oci.dll` for `lib_directory`.

After setting the `oracle_home` configuration parameter, you must restart the server for the changes to take effect. Restart the server from the Windows Services console.

## odbc\_lib\_path

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** none

**Range:** n/a

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

If you will be using an ODBC driver manager, and if it is installed in a non-standard location, you specify the location by setting the `odbc_lib_path` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file:

```
| odbc_lib_path = 'complete_path_to_libodbc.so'
```

The configuration file must include the complete pathname to the driver manager shared library (typically `libodbc.so`).

### 12.4.3.11 Compatibility Options

The configuration parameters described in this section control various database compatibility features.

#### edb\_redwood\_date

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

When `DATE` appears as the data type of a column in the commands, it is translated to `TIMESTAMP` at the time the table definition is stored in the database if the configuration parameter `edb_redwood_date` is set to `TRUE`. Thus, a time component will also be stored in the column along with the date.

If `edb_redwood_date` is set to `FALSE` the column's data type in a `CREATE TABLE` or `ALTER TABLE` command remains as a native PostgreSQL `DATE` data type and is stored as such in the database. The PostgreSQL `DATE` data type stores only the date without a time component in the column.

Regardless of the setting of `edb_redwood_date`, when `DATE` appears as a data type in any other context such as the data type of a variable in an SPL declaration section, or the data type of a formal parameter in an SPL procedure or SPL function, or the return type of an SPL function, it is always internally translated to a `TIMESTAMP` and thus, can handle a time component if present.

## edb\_redwood\_greatest\_least

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

The `GREATEST` function returns the parameter with the greatest value from its list of parameters. The `LEAST` function returns the parameter with the least value from its list of parameters.

When `edb_redwood_greatest_least` is set to `TRUE`, the `GREATEST` and `LEAST` functions return null when at least one of the parameters is null.

```
SETedb_redwood_greatest_least TO on;
```

```
SELECT GREATEST(1, 2, NULL, 3);
```

```
greatest
```

```
-----
```

```
(1 row)
```

When `edb_redwood_greatest_least` is set to `FALSE`, null parameters are ignored except when all parameters are null in which case null is returned by the functions.

```
SETedb_redwood_greatest_least TO off;
```

```
SELECT GREATEST(1, 2, NULL, 3);
```

```
greatest
```

```
-----
```

```
3
```

```
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT GREATEST(NULL, NULL, NULL);
```

```
greatest
```

```
-----
```

```
(1 row)
```

## edb\_redwood\_raw\_names

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

When `edb_redwood_raw_names` is set to its default value of `FALSE`, database object names such as table names, column names, trigger names, program names, user names, etc. appear in uppercase letters when viewed from Redwood catalogs (that is, system catalogs prefixed by `ALL_`, `DBA_`, or `USER_`). In addition, quotation marks enclose names that were created with enclosing quotation marks.

When `edb_redwood_raw_names` is set to `TRUE`, the database object names are displayed exactly as they are stored in the PostgreSQL system catalogs when viewed from the Redwood catalogs. Thus, names created without enclosing quotation marks appear in lowercase as expected in PostgreSQL. Names created with enclosing quotation marks appear exactly as they were created, but without the quotation marks.

For example, the following user name is created, and then a session is started with that user.

```
CREATE USER reduser IDENTIFIED BY password;
edb=# \c - reduser
Password for user reduser:
You are now connected to database "edb" as user "reduser".
```

When connected to the database as reduser, the following tables are created.

```
CREATE TABLE all_lower (col INTEGER);
CREATE TABLE ALL_UPPER (COL INTEGER);
CREATE TABLE "Mixed_Case" ("Col" INTEGER);
```

When viewed from the Redwood catalog, `USER_TABLES`, with `edb_redwood_raw_names` set to the default value `FALSE`, the names appear in uppercase except for the `Mixed_Case` name, which appears as created and also with enclosing quotation marks.

```
edb=> SELECT * FROM USER_TABLES;
schema_name | table_name | tablespace_name | status | temporary
-----+-----+-----+-----+
REDUSER   | ALL_LOWER |           | VALID  | N
REDUSER   | ALL_UPPER |           | VALID  | N
REDUSER   | "Mixed_Case" |           | VALID  | N
(3 rows)
```

When viewed with `edb_redwood_raw_names` set to `TRUE`, the names appear in lowercase except for the `Mixed_Case` name, which appears as created, but now without the enclosing quotation marks.

```
edb=> SET edb_redwood_raw_names TO true;
SET
edb=> SELECT * FROM USER_TABLES;
schema_name | table_name | tablespace_name | status | temporary
-----+-----+-----+-----+
reduser   | all_lower |           | VALID  | N
reduser   | all_upper |           | VALID  | N
reduser   | Mixed_Case |           | VALID  | N
(3 rows)
```

These names now match the case when viewed from the PostgreSQL `pg_tables` catalog.

```
edb=> SELECT schemaname, tablename, tableowner FROM pg_tables WHERE
tableowner = 'reduser';
```

```
schemaname | tablename | tableowner
-----+-----+
reduser | all_lower | reduser
reduser | all_upper | reduser
reduser | Mixed_Case | reduser
(3 rows)
```

## edb\_redwood\_strings

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

If the `edb_redwood_strings` parameter is set to `TRUE`, when a string is concatenated with a null variable or null column, the result is the original string. If `edb_redwood_strings` is set to `FALSE`, the native PostgreSQL behavior is maintained, which is the concatenation of a string with a null variable or null column gives a null result.

The following example illustrates the difference.

The sample application contains a table of employees. This table has a column named `comm` that is null for most employees. The following query is run with `edb_redwood_string` set to `FALSE`. The concatenation of a null column with non-empty strings produces a final result of null, so only employees that have a commission appear in the query result. The output line for all other employees is null.

```
SET edb_redwood_strings TO off;

SELECT RPAD(ename,10) || ' ' || TO_CHAR(sal,'99,999.99') || ' ' ||
TO_CHAR(comm,'99,999.99') "EMPLOYEE COMPENSATION" FROM emp;
```

EMPLOYEE COMPENSATION

```
-----
ALLEN    1,600.00   300.00
WARD     1,250.00   500.00
MARTIN   1,250.00  1,400.00
TURNER   1,500.00   .00
```

(14 rows)

The following is the same query executed when `edb_redwood_strings` is set to `TRUE`. Here, the value of a null column is treated as an empty string. The concatenation of an empty string with a non-empty string produces the non-empty string.

```
SET edb_redwood_strings TO on;

SELECT RPAD(ename,10) || ' ' || TO_CHAR(sal,'99,999.99') || ' ' ||
TO_CHAR(comm,'99,999.99') "EMPLOYEE COMPENSATION" FROM emp;
```

EMPLOYEE COMPENSATION

---

```
SMITH 800.00
ALLEN 1,600.00 300.00
WARD 1,250.00 500.00
JONES 2,975.00
MARTIN 1,250.00 1,400.00
BLAKE 2,850.00
CLARK 2,450.00
SCOTT 3,000.00
KING 5,000.00
TURNER 1,500.00 .00
ADAMS 1,100.00
JAMES 950.00
FORD 3,000.00
MILLER 1,300.00
(14 rows)
```

## edb\_stmt\_level\_tx

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

The term **statement level transaction isolation** describes the behavior whereby when a runtime error occurs in a SQL command, all the updates on the database caused by that single command are rolled back. For example, if a single **UPDATE** command successfully updates five rows, but an attempt to update a sixth row results in an exception, the updates to all six rows made by this **UPDATE** command are rolled back. The effects of prior SQL commands that have not yet been committed or rolled back are pending until a **COMMIT** or **ROLLBACK** command is executed.

In Advanced Server, if an exception occurs while executing a SQL command, all the updates on the database since the start of the transaction are rolled back. In addition, the transaction is left in an aborted state and either a **COMMIT** or **ROLLBACK** command must be issued before another transaction can be started.

If **edb\_stmt\_level\_tx** is set to **TRUE**, then an exception will not automatically roll back prior uncommitted database updates. If **edb\_stmt\_level\_tx** is set to **FALSE**, then an exception will roll back uncommitted database updates.

### Note

Use **edb\_stmt\_level\_tx** set to **TRUE** only when absolutely necessary, as this may cause a negative performance

impact.

The following example run in PSQL shows that when `edb_stmt_level_tx` is `FALSE`, the abort of the second `INSERT` command also rolls back the first `INSERT` command. Note that in PSQL, the command `\set AUTOCOMMIT off` must be issued, otherwise every statement commits automatically defeating the purpose of this demonstration of the effect of `edb_stmt_level_tx`.

```
\set AUTOCOMMIT off
SET edb_stmt_level_tx TO off;

INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9001, 'JONES', 40);
INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9002, 'JONES', 00);
ERROR: insert or update on table "emp" violates foreign key constraint
"emp_ref_dept_fk"
DETAIL: Key (deptno)=(0) is not present in table "dept".
```

```
COMMIT;
SELECT empno, ename, deptno FROM emp WHERE empno > 9000;
```

empno	ename	deptno
(0 rows)		

In the following example, with `edb_stmt_level_tx` set to `TRUE`, the first `INSERT` command has not been rolled back after the error on the second `INSERT` command. At this point, the first `INSERT` command can either be committed or rolled back.

```
\set AUTOCOMMIT off
SET edb_stmt_level_tx TO on;

INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9001, 'JONES', 40);
INSERT INTO emp (empno,ename,deptno) VALUES (9002, 'JONES', 00);
ERROR: insert or update on table "emp" violates foreign key constraint
"emp_ref_dept_fk"
DETAIL: Key (deptno)=(0) is not present in table "dept"
```

```
SELECT empno, ename, deptno FROM emp WHERE empno > 9000;
```

empno	ename	deptno
9001	JONES	40
(1 row)		

```
COMMIT;
```

A `ROLLBACK` command could have been issued instead of the `COMMIT` command in which case the insert of employee number `9001` would have been rolled back as well.

## db\_dialect

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** postgres

**Range:** {postgres | redwood}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

In addition to the native PostgreSQL system catalog, `pg_catalog`, Advanced Server contains an extended catalog view. This is the `sys` catalog for the expanded catalog view. The `db_dialect` parameter controls the order in which these catalogs are searched for name resolution.

When set to `postgres`, the namespace precedence is `pg_catalog` then `sys`, giving the PostgreSQL catalog the highest precedence. When set to `redwood`, the namespace precedence is `sys` then `pg_catalog`, giving the expanded catalog views the highest precedence.

## default\_with\_rowids

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

When set to `on`, `CREATE TABLE` includes a `ROWID` column in newly created tables, which can then be referenced in SQL commands. In earlier versions of Advanced Server `ROWIDs` were mapped to `OIDs`, but from Advanced Server version 12 onwards, the `ROWID` is an auto-incrementing value based on a sequence that starts with 1 and assigned to each row of a table created with `ROWIDs` option. By default, a unique index is created on a `ROWID` column.

The `ALTER` and `DROP` operations are restricted on a `ROWID` column.

To restore a database with `ROWIDs` from Advanced Server 11 or an earlier version, you must perform the following:

- `pg_dump`: If a table includes `OIDs` then specify `--convert-oids-to-rowids` to dump a database. Otherwise, ignore the `OIDs` to continue table creation on Advanced Server version 12 onwards.
- `pg_upgrade`: Errors out. But if a table includes `OIDs` or `ROWIDs`, then you must perform the following steps:
  1. Take a dump of the tables by specifying `--convert-oids-to-rowids` option.
  2. Drop the tables and then perform the upgrade.
  3. Restore the dump after the upgrade is successful into a new cluster that contains the dumped tables into a target database.

## optimizer\_mode

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** choose

**Range:** {choose | ALL\_ROWS | FIRST\_ROWS | FIRST\_ROWS\_10 | FIRST\_ROWS\_100 | FIRST\_ROWS\_1000}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Sets the default optimization mode for analyzing optimizer hints.

The following table shows the possible values:

Hint	Description
ALL_ROWS	Optimizes for retrieval of all rows of the result set.
CHOOSE	Does no default optimization based on assumed number of rows to be retrieved from the result set. This is the default.
FIRST_ROWS	Optimizes for retrieval of only the first row of the result set.
FIRST_ROWS_10	Optimizes for retrieval of the first 10 rows of the results set.
FIRST_ROWS_100	Optimizes for retrieval of the first 100 rows of the result set.
FIRST_ROWS_1000	Optimizes for retrieval of the first 1000 rows of the result set.

These optimization modes are based upon the assumption that the client submitting the SQL command is interested in viewing only the first *n* rows of the result set and will then abandon the remainder of the result set. Resources allocated to the query are adjusted as such.

### 12.4.3.12 Customized Options

In previous releases of Advanced Server, the `custom_variable_classes` was required by those parameters not normally known to be added by add-on modules (such as procedural languages).

#### `custom_variable_classes`

The `custom_variable_classes` parameter is deprecated in Advanced Server 9.2; parameters that previously depended on this parameter no longer require its support.

#### `dbms_alert.max_alerts`

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 100

**Range:** 0 to 500

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the maximum number of concurrent alerts allowed on a system using the `DBMS_ALERTS` package.

#### `dbms_pipe.total_message_buffer`

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 30 Kb

**Range:** 30 Kb to 256 Kb

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Specifies the total size of the buffer used for the `DBMS_PIPE` package.

## index\_advisor.enabled

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Provides the capability to temporarily suspend Index Advisor in an EDB-PSQL or PSQL session. The Index Advisor plugin, `index_advisor`, must be loaded in the EDB-PSQL or PSQL session in order to use the `index_advisor.enabled` configuration parameter.

The Index Advisor plugin can be loaded as shown by the following example:

```
$ psql -d edb -U enterprisedb
```

```
Password for user enterprisedb:
```

```
psql (13.0.0)
```

```
Type "help" for help.
```

```
edb=# LOAD 'index_advisor';
```

```
LOAD
```

Use the `SET` command to change the parameter setting to control whether or not Index Advisor generates an alternative query plan as shown by the following example:

```
edb=# SET index_advisor.enabled TO off;
```

```
SET
```

```
edb=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a < 10000;
```

```
QUERY PLAN
```

---

```
-----
```

```
Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..1693.00 rows=9864 width=8)
```

```
  Filter: (a < 10000)
```

```
(2 rows)
```

```
edb=# SET index_advisor.enabled TO on;
```

```
SET
```

```
edb=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a < 10000;
      QUERY PLAN
-----
Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..1693.00 rows=9864 width=8)
  Filter: (a < 10000)
Result (cost=0.00..327.88 rows=9864 width=8)
  One-Time Filter: '===[ HYPOTHETICAL PLAN ]==='::text
    -> Index Scan using "<hypothetical-index>:1" on t (cost=0.00..327.88
       rows=9864 width=8)
      Index Cond: (a < 10000)
(6 rows)
```

## edb\_sql\_protect.enabled

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Controls whether or not SQL/Protect is actively monitoring protected roles by analyzing SQL statements issued by those roles and reacting according to the setting of `edb_sql_protect.level`. When you are ready to begin monitoring with SQL/Protect set this parameter to on.

## edb\_sql\_protect.level

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** passive

**Range:** {learn | passive | active}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the action taken by SQL/Protect when a SQL statement is issued by a protected role.

The `edb_sql_protect.level` configuration parameter can be set to one of the following values to use either learn mode, passive mode, or active mode:

- **learn.** Tracks the activities of protected roles and records the relations used by the roles. This is used when initially configuring SQL/Protect so the expected behaviors of the protected applications are learned.
- **passive.** Issues warnings if protected roles are breaking the defined rules, but does not stop any SQL statements from executing. This is the next step after SQL/Protect has learned the expected behavior of the protected roles. This essentially behaves in intrusion detection mode and can be run in production when properly monitored.
- **active.** Stops all invalid statements for a protected role. This behaves as a SQL firewall preventing dangerous

queries from running. This is particularly effective against early penetration testing when the attacker is trying to determine the vulnerability point and the type of database behind the application. Not only does SQL/Protect close those vulnerability points, but it tracks the blocked queries allowing administrators to be alerted before the attacker finds an alternate method of penetrating the system.

If you are using SQL/Protect for the first time, set `edb_sql_protect.level` to `learn`.

## `edb_sql_protect.max_protected_relations`

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 1024

**Range:** 1 to 2147483647

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the maximum number of relations that can be protected per role. Please note the total number of protected relations for the server will be the number of protected relations times the number of protected roles. Every protected relation consumes space in shared memory. The space for the maximum possible protected relations is reserved during database server startup.

If the server is started when `edb_sql_protect.max_protected_relations` is set to a value outside of the valid range (for example, a value of 2,147,483,648), then a warning message is logged in the database server log file:

```
2014-07-18 16:04:12 EDT WARNING: invalid value for parameter
"edb_sql_protect.max_protected_relations": "2147483648"
2014-07-18 16:04:12 EDT HINT: Value exceeds integer range.
```

The database server starts successfully, but with `edb_sql_protect.max_protected_relations` set to the default value of 1024.

Though the upper range for the parameter is listed as the maximum value for an integer data type, the practical setting depends on how much shared memory is available and the parameter value used during database server startup.

As long as the space required can be reserved in shared memory, the value will be acceptable. If the value is such that the space in shared memory cannot be reserved, the database server startup fails with an error message such as the following:

```
2014-07-18 15:22:17 EDT FATAL: could not map anonymous shared memory:
Cannot allocate memory
2014-07-18 15:22:17 EDT HINT: This error usually means that PostgreSQL's
request for a shared memory segment exceeded available memory, swap
space or huge pages. To reduce the request size (currently 2070118400
bytes), reduce PostgreSQL's shared memory usage, perhaps by reducing
shared_buffers or max_connections.
```

In such cases, reduce the parameter value until the database server can be started successfully.

## `edb_sql_protect.max_protected_roles`

**Parameter Type:** Integer**Default Value:** 64**Range:** 1 to 2147483647**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the maximum number of roles that can be protected.

Every protected role consumes space in shared memory. Please note that the server will reserve space for the number of protected roles times the number of protected relations (`edb_sql_protect.max_protected_relations`). The space for the maximum possible protected roles is reserved during database server startup.

If the database server is started when `edb_sql_protect.max_protected_roles` is set to a value outside of the valid range (for example, a value of 2,147,483,648), then a warning message is logged in the database server log file:

```
2014-07-18 16:04:12 EDT WARNING: invalid value for parameter
```

```
"edb_sql_protect.max_protected_roles": "2147483648"
```

```
2014-07-18 16:04:12 EDT HINT: Value exceeds integer range.
```

The database server starts successfully, but with `edb_sql_protect.max_protected_roles` set to the default value of 64.

Though the upper range for the parameter is listed as the maximum value for an integer data type, the practical setting depends on how much shared memory is available and the parameter value used during database server startup.

As long as the space required can be reserved in shared memory, the value will be acceptable. If the value is such that the space in shared memory cannot be reserved, the database server startup fails with an error message such as the following:

```
2014-07-18 15:22:17 EDT FATAL: could not map anonymous shared memory:
```

```
Cannot allocate memory
```

```
2014-07-18 15:22:17 EDT HINT: This error usually means that PostgreSQL's
request for a shared memory segment exceeded available memory, swap
space or huge pages. To reduce the request size (currently 2070118400
bytes), reduce PostgreSQL's shared memory usage, perhaps by reducing
shared_buffers or max_connections.
```

In such cases, reduce the parameter value until the database server can be started successfully.

## `edb_sql_protect.max_queries_to_save`

**Parameter Type:** Integer**Default Value:** 5000**Range:** 100 to 2147483647**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the maximum number of offending queries to save in view `edb_sql_protect_queries`.

Every query that is saved consumes space in shared memory. The space for the maximum possible queries that can be saved is reserved during database server startup.

If the database server is started when `edb_sql_protect.max_queries_to_save` is set to a value outside of the valid range (for example, a value of 10), then a warning message is logged in the database server log file:

```
2014-07-18 13:05:31 EDT WARNING: 10 is outside the valid range for
parameter "edb_sql_protect.max_queries_to_save" (100 .. 2147483647)
```

The database server starts successfully, but with `edb_sql_protect.max_queries_to_save` set to the default value of 5000.

Though the upper range for the parameter is listed as the maximum value for an integer data type, the practical setting depends on how much shared memory is available and the parameter value used during database server startup.

As long as the space required can be reserved in shared memory, the value will be acceptable. If the value is such that the space in shared memory cannot be reserved, the database server startup fails with an error message such as the following:

```
2014-07-18 15:22:17 EDT FATAL: could not map anonymous shared memory:
Cannot allocate memory
2014-07-18 15:22:17 EDT HINT: This error usually means that PostgreSQL's
request for a shared memory segment exceeded available memory, swap
space or huge pages. To reduce the request size (currently 2070118400
bytes), reduce PostgreSQL's shared memory usage, perhaps by reducing
shared_buffers or max_connections.
```

In such cases, reduce the parameter value until the database server can be started successfully.

## `edb_wait_states.directory`

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** `edb_wait_states`

**Range:** n/a

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Restart

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the directory path where the EDB wait states log files are stored. The specified path should be a full, absolute path and not a relative path. However, the default setting is `edb_wait_states`, which makes `$PGDATA/edb_wait_states` the default directory location. For information on EDB wait states see [EDB Wait States](#) under [Performance Analysis and Tuning](#).

## `edb_wait_states.retention_period`

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 604800s

**Range:** 86400s to 2147483647s

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the period of time after which the log files for EDB wait states will be deleted. The default is 604800 seconds, which is 7 days. For information on EDB wait states see [EDB Wait States](#) under [Performance Analysis and Tuning](#).

## edb\_wait\_states.sampling\_interval

**Parameter Type:** Integer

**Default Value:** 1s

**Range:** 1s to 2147483647s

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Cluster

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Reload

**Required Authorization to Activate:** EPAS service account

Sets the timing interval between two sampling cycles for EDB wait states. The default setting is 1 second. For information on EDB wait states see [EDB Wait States](#) under [Performance Analysis and Tuning](#).

## edbldr.empty\_csv\_field

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** NULL

**Range:** {NULL | empty\_string | pgsql}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Use the [edbldr.empty\\_csv\\_field](#) parameter to specify how EDB\*Loader will treat an empty string. The valid values for the [edbldr.empty\\_csv\\_field](#) parameter are:

Parameter Setting	EDB*Loader Behavior
NULL	An empty field is treated as NULL.
empty_string	An empty field is treated as a string of length zero.
pgsql	An empty field is treated as a NULL if it does not contain quotes and as an empty string if it contains quotes.

For more information about the [edbldr.empty\\_csv\\_field](#) parameter in EDB\*Loader, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developers Tools and Utilities Guide* at the EDB website:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## utl\_encode.uudecode\_redwood

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

When set to `TRUE`, Advanced Server's `UTL_ENCODE.UUDECODE` function can decode uuencoded data that was created by the Oracle implementation of the `UTL_ENCODE.UUENCODE` function.

When set to the default setting of `FALSE`, Advanced Server's `UTL_ENCODE.UUDECODE` function can decode uuencoded data created by Advanced Server's `UTL_ENCODE.UUENCODE` function.

## utl\_file.umask

**Parameter Type:** String

**Default Value:** 0077

**Range:** Octal digits for umask settings

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

The `utl_file.umask` parameter sets the *file mode creation mask* or simply, the *mask*, in a manner similar to the Linux `umask` command. This is for usage only within the Advanced Server `UTL_FILE` package.

### Note

The `utl_file.umask` parameter is not supported on Windows systems.

The value specified for `utl_file.umask` is a 3 or 4-character octal string that would be valid for the Linux `umask` command. The setting determines the permissions on files created by the `UTL_FILE` functions and procedures. (Refer to any information source regarding Linux or Unix systems for information on file permissions and the usage of the `umask` command.)

The following shows the results of the default `utl_file.umask` setting of 0077. Note that all permissions are denied on users belonging to the `enterprisedb` group as well as all other users. Only user `enterprisedb` has read and write permissions on the file.

```
-rw----- 1 enterprisedb enterprisedb 21 Jul 24 16:08 utlfile
```

## 12.4.3.13 Ungrouped

Configuration parameters in this section apply to Advanced Server only and are for a specific, limited purpose.

### nls\_length\_semantics

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** byte

**Range:** {byte | char}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Superuser

This parameter has no effect in Advanced Server.

For example, the form of the `ALTER SESSION` command is accepted in Advanced Server without throwing a syntax error, but does not alter the session environment:

```
ALTER SESSION SET nls_length_semantics = char;
```

#### Note

Since the setting of this parameter has no effect on the server environment, it does not appear in the system view `pg_settings`.

### query\_rewrite\_enabled

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** false

**Range:** {true | false | force}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

This parameter has no effect in Advanced Server.

For example, the following form of the `ALTER SESSION` command is accepted in Advanced Server without throwing a syntax error, but does not alter the session environment:

```
ALTER SESSION SET query_rewrite_enabled = force;
```

#### Note

Since the setting of this parameter has no effect on the server environment, it does not appear in the system view `pg_settings`.

## query\_rewrite\_integrity

**Parameter Type:** Enum

**Default Value:** enforced

**Range:** {enforced | trusted | stale\_tolerated}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Superuser

This parameter has no effect in Advanced Server.

For example, the following form of the `ALTER SESSION` command is accepted in Advanced Server without throwing a syntax error, but does not alter the session environment:

```
ALTER SESSION SET query_rewrite_integrity = stale_tolerated;
```

**Note**

Since the setting of this parameter has no effect on the server environment, it does not appear in the system view `pg_settings`.

## timed\_statistics

**Parameter Type:** Boolean

**Default Value:** true

**Range:** {true | false}

**Minimum Scope of Effect:** Per session

**When Value Changes Take Effect:** Immediate

**Required Authorization to Activate:** Session user

Controls the collection of timing data for the Dynamic Runtime Instrumentation Tools Architecture (DRITA) feature. When set to on, timing data is collected.

**Note**

When Advanced Server is installed, the `postgresql.conf` file contains an explicit entry setting `timed_statistics` to off. If this entry is commented out letting `timed_statistics` to default, and the configuration file is reloaded, timed statistics collection would be turned on.

## 12.5 Index Advisor

The Index Advisor utility helps determine which columns you should index to improve performance in a given workload. Index Advisor considers B-tree (single-column or composite) index types, and does not identify other

index types (GIN, GiST, Hash) that may improve performance. Index Advisor is installed with EDB Postgres Advanced Server.

Index Advisor works with Advanced Server's query planner by creating *hypothetical indexes* that the query planner uses to calculate execution costs as if such indexes were available. Index Advisor identifies the indexes by analyzing SQL queries supplied in the workload.

There are three ways to use Index Advisor to analyze SQL queries:

- Invoke the Index Advisor utility program, supplying a text file containing the SQL queries that you wish to analyze; Index Advisor will generate a text file with `CREATE INDEX` statements for the recommended indexes.
- Provide queries at the EDB-PSQL command line that you want Index Advisor to analyze.
- Access Index Advisor through the Postgres Enterprise Manager client. When accessed via the PEM client, Index Advisor works with SQL Profiler, providing indexing recommendations on code captured in SQL traces. For more information about using SQL Profiler and Index Advisor with PEM, see the *PEM Getting Started Guide* available from the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

Index Advisor will attempt to make indexing recommendations on `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE` and `SELECT` statements. When invoking Index Advisor, you supply the workload in the form of a set of queries (if you are providing the command in an SQL file) or an `EXPLAIN` statement (if you are specifying the SQL statement at the psql command line). Index Advisor displays the query plan and estimated execution cost for the supplied query, but does not actually execute the query.

During the analysis, Index Advisor compares the query execution costs with and without hypothetical indexes. If the execution cost using a hypothetical index is less than the execution cost without it, both plans are reported in the `EXPLAIN` statement output, metrics that quantify the improvement are calculated, and Index Advisor generates the `CREATE INDEX` statement needed to create the index.

If no hypothetical index can be found that reduces the execution cost, Index Advisor displays only the original query plan output of the `EXPLAIN` statement.

*Index Advisor does not actually create indexes on the tables. Use the `CREATE INDEX` statements supplied by Index Advisor to add any recommended indexes to your tables.*

A script supplied with Advanced Server creates the table in which Index Advisor stores the indexing recommendations generated by the analysis; the script also creates a function and a view of the table to simplify the retrieval and interpretation of the results.

If you choose to forego running the script, Index Advisor will log recommendations in a temporary table that is available only for the duration of the Index Advisor session.

## 12.5.1 Index Advisor Components

The Index Advisor shared library interacts with the query planner to make indexing recommendations. On Windows, the Advanced Server installer creates the following shared library in the `libdir` subdirectory of your Advanced Server home directory. For Linux, install the `edb-asxx-server-indexadvisor` RPM package where `xx` is the Advanced Server version number.

On Linux:

[index\\_advisor.so](#)

On Windows:

#### `index_advisor.dll`

Please note that libraries in the `libdir` directory can only be loaded by a superuser. A database administrator can allow a non-superuser to use Index Advisor by manually copying the Index Advisor file from the `libdir` directory into the `libdir/plugins` directory (under your Advanced Server home directory). Only a trusted non-superuser should be allowed access to the plugin; this is an unsafe practice in a production environment.

The installer also creates the Index Advisor utility program and setup script:

#### `pg_advise_index`

`pg_advise_index` is a utility program that reads a user-supplied input file containing SQL queries and produces a text file containing `CREATE INDEX` statements that can be used to create the indexes recommended by the Index Advisor. The `pg_advise_index` program is located in the `bin` subdirectory of the Advanced Server home directory.

#### `index_advisor.sql`

`index_advisor.sql` is a script that creates a permanent Index Advisor log table along with a function and view to facilitate reporting of recommendations from the log table. The script is located in the `share/contrib` subdirectory of the Advanced Server directory.

The `index_advisor.sql` script creates the `index_advisor_log` table, the `show_index_recommendations()` function and the `index_recommendations` view. These database objects must be created in a schema that is accessible by, and included in the search path of the role that will invoke Index Advisor.

#### `index_advisor_log`

Index Advisor logs indexing recommendations in the `index_advisor_log` table. If Index Advisor does not find the `index_advisor_log` table in the user's search path, Index Advisor will store any indexing recommendations in a temporary table of the same name. The temporary table exists only for the duration of the current session.

#### `show_index_recommendations()`

`show_index_recommendations()` is a PL/pgSQL function that interprets and displays the recommendations made during a specific Index Advisor session (as identified by its backend process ID).

#### `index_recommendations`

Index Advisor creates the `index_recommendations` view based on information stored in the `index_advisor_log` table during a query analysis. The view produces output in the same format as the `show_index_recommendations()` function, but contains Index Advisor recommendations for all stored sessions, while the result set returned by the `show_index_recommendations()` function are limited to a specified session.

## 12.5.2 Index Advisor Configuration

Index Advisor does not require configuration to generate recommendations that are available only for the duration of the current session; to store the results of multiple sessions, you must create the `index_advisor_log` table. To create the `index_advisor_log` table, you must run the `index_advisor.sql` script.

When selecting a storage schema for the Index Advisor table, function and view, keep in mind that all users that invoke Index Advisor (and query the result set) must have `USAGE` privileges on the schema. The schema must

be in the search path of all users that are interacting with the Index Advisor.

1. Place the selected schema at the start of your `search_path` parameter. For example, if your search path is currently:

```
search_path=public, accounting
```

and you want the Index Advisor objects to be created in a schema named `advisor`, use the command:

```
SET search_path = advisor, public, accounting;
```

2. Run the `index_advisor.sql` script to create the database objects. If you are running the `psql` client, you can use the command:

```
\i full.pathname/index_advisor.sql
```

Specify the pathname to the `index_advisor.sql` script in place of `full.pathname`.

3. Grant privileges on the `index_advisor_log` table to all Index Advisor users; this step is not necessary if the Index Advisor user is a superuser, or the owner of these database objects.

- Grant `SELECT` and `INSERT` privileges on the `index_advisor_log` table to allow a user to invoke Index Advisor.
- Grant `DELETE` privileges on the `index_advisor_log` table to allow the specified user to delete the table contents.
- Grant `SELECT` privilege on the `index_recommendations` view.

The following example demonstrates the creation of the Index Advisor database objects in a schema named `ia`, which will then be accessible to an Index Advisor user with user name `ia_user`:

```
$ edb-psql -d edb -U enterpriseedb
psql.bin (13.0.0, server 13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.
```

```
edb=# CREATE SCHEMA ia;
CREATE SCHEMA
edb=# SET search_path TO ia;
SET
edb=# \i /usredb/as13/share/contrib/index_advisor.sql
CREATE TABLE
CREATE INDEX
CREATE INDEX
CREATE FUNCTION
CREATE FUNCTION
CREATE VIEW
edb=# GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA ia TO ia_user;
GRANT
edb=# GRANT SELECT, INSERT, DELETE ON index_advisor_log TO ia_user;
GRANT
edb=# GRANT SELECT ON index_recommendations TO ia_user;
GRANT
```

While using Index Advisor, the specified schema (`ia`) must be included in `ia_user`'s `search_path` parameter.

## 12.5.3 Using Index Advisor

When you invoke Index Advisor, you must supply a workload; the workload is either a query (specified at the command line), or a file that contains a set of queries (executed by the `pg_advise_index()` function). After analyzing the workload, Index Advisor will either store the result set in a temporary table, or in a permanent table. You can review the indexing recommendations generated by Index Advisor and use the `CREATE INDEX` statements generated by Index Advisor to create the recommended indexes.

### Note

You should not run Index Advisor in read-only transactions.

The following examples assume that superuser `enterprisedb` is the Index Advisor user, and the Index Advisor database objects have been created in a schema in the `search_path` of superuser `enterprisedb`.

The examples in the following sections use the table created with the statement shown below:

```
CREATE TABLE t( a INT, b INT );
INSERT INTO t SELECT s, 99999 - s FROM generate_series(0,99999) AS s;
ANALYZE t;
```

The resulting table contains the following rows:

a	b
0	99999
1	99998
2	99997
3	99996
.	.
99997	2
99998	1
99999	0

## Using the `pg_advise_index` Utility

When invoking the `pg_advise_index` utility, you must include the name of a file that contains the queries that will be executed by `pg_advise_index`; the queries may be on the same line, or on separate lines, but each query must be terminated by a semicolon. Queries within the file should not begin with the `EXPLAIN` keyword.

The following example shows the contents of a sample `workload.sql` file:

```
SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 500;
SELECT * FROM t WHERE b < 1000;
```

Run the `pg_advise_index` program as shown in the code sample below:

```
$ pg_advise_index -d edb -h localhost -U enterprisedb -s 100M -o
advisory.sql workload.sql
poolsize = 102400 KB
ad workload from file 'workload.sql'
Analyzing queries .. done.
size = 2184 KB, benefit = 1684.720000
```

```
size = 2184 KB, benefit = 1655.520000
/* 1. t(a): size=2184 KB, benefit=1684.72 */
/* 2. t(b): size=2184 KB, benefit=1655.52 */
/* Total size = 4368KB */
```

In the code sample, the `-d`, `-h`, and `-U` options are psql connection options.

`-s`

`-s` is an optional parameter that limits the maximum size of the indexes recommended by Index Advisor. If Index Advisor does not return a result set, `-s` may be set too low.

`-o`

The recommended indexes are written to the file specified after the `-o` option.

The information displayed by the `pg_advise_index` program is logged in the `index_advisor_log` table. In response to the command shown in the example, Index Advisor writes the following `CREATE INDEX` statements to the `advisory.sql` output file.

```
create index idx_t_1 on t (a);
create index idx_t_2 on t (b);
```

You can create the recommended indexes at the psql command line with the `CREATE INDEX` statements in the file, or create the indexes by executing the `advisory.sql` script.

```
$ edb-psql -d edb -h localhost -U enterpriseedb -e -f advisory.sql
create index idx_t_1 on t (a);
CREATE INDEX
create index idx_t_2 on t (b);
CREATE INDEX
```

## Using Index Advisor at the psql Command Line

You can use Index Advisor to analyze SQL statements entered at the `edb-psql` (or `psql`) command line; the following steps detail loading the Index Advisor plugin and using Index Advisor:

1. Connect to the server with the `edb-psql` command line utility, and load the Index Advisor plugin:

```
$ edb-psql -d edb -U enterpriseedb
...
edb=# LOAD 'index_advisor';
LOAD
```

1. Use the `edb-psql` command line to invoke each SQL command that you would like Index Advisor to analyze. Index Advisor stores any recommendations for the queries in the `index_advisor_log` table. If the `index_advisor_log` table does not exist in the user's `search_path`, a temporary table is created with the same name. This temporary table exists only for the duration of the user's session.

After loading the Index Advisor plugin, Index Advisor will analyze all SQL statements and log any indexing recommendations for the duration of the session.

If you would like Index Advisor to analyze a query (and make indexing recommendations) without actually executing the query, preface the SQL statement with the `EXPLAIN` keyword.

If you do not preface the statement with the `EXPLAIN` keyword, Index Advisor will analyze the statement while the statement executes, writing the indexing recommendations to the `index_advisor_log` table for later review.

In the example that follows, the `EXPLAIN` statement displays the normal query plan, followed by the query plan of the same query, if the query were using the recommended hypothetical index:

```
edb=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a < 10000;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..1693.00 rows=10105 width=8)
  Filter: (a < 10000)
Result (cost=0.00..337.10 rows=10105 width=8)
  One-Time Filter: '===[ HYPOTHETICAL PLAN ]==='::text
    -> Index Scan using "<hypothetical-index>:1" on t
      (cost=0.00..337.10 rows=10105 width=8)
        Index Cond: (a < 10000)
(6 rows)
```

```
edb=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 100;
          QUERY PLAN
```

```
Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..1693.00 rows=1 width=8)
  Filter: (a = 100)
Result (cost=0.00..8.28 rows=1 width=8)
  One-Time Filter: '===[ HYPOTHETICAL PLAN ]==='::text
    -> Index Scan using "<hypothetical-index>:3" on t
      (cost=0.00..8.28 rows=1 width=8)
        Index Cond: (a = 100)
(6 rows)
```

After loading the Index Advisor plugin, the default value of `index_advisor.enabled` is `on`. The Index Advisor plugin must be loaded to use a `SET` or `SHOW` command to display the current value of `index_advisor.enabled`.

You can use the `index_advisor.enabled` parameter to temporarily disable Index Advisor without interrupting the psql session:

```
edb=# SET index_advisor.enabled TO off;
SET
```

To enable Index Advisor, set the parameter to `on`:

```
edb=# SET index_advisor.enabled TO on;
SET
```

## 12.5.4 Reviewing the Index Advisor Recommendations

There are several ways to review the index recommendations generated by Index Advisor. You can:

- Query the `index_advisor.loq` table.
- Run the `show index recommendations` function.
- Query the `index_recommendations` view.

## Using the show\_index\_recommendations() Function

To review the recommendations of the Index Advisor utility using the `show_index_recommendations()` function, call the function, specifying the process ID of the session:

```
edb=# SELECT show_index_recommendations( pid );
```

Where `pid` is the process ID of the current session. If you do not know the process ID of your current session, passing a value of `NULL` will also return a result set for the current session.

The following code fragment shows an example of a row in a result set:

```
edb=# SELECT show_index_recommendations(null);
      show_index_recommendations
-----
create index idx_t_a on t(a);/* size: 2184 KB, benefit: 3040.62,
gain: 1.39222666981456 */
(1 row)
```

In the example, `create index idx_t_a on t(a)` is the SQL statement needed to create the index suggested by Index Advisor. Each row in the result set shows:

- The command required to create the recommended index.
- The maximum estimated size of the index.
- The calculated benefit of using the index.
- The estimated gain that will result from implementing the index.

You can display the results of all Index Advisor sessions from the following view:

```
SELECT * FROM index_recommendations;
```

## Querying the index\_advisor\_log Table

Index Advisor stores indexing recommendations in a table named `index_advisor_log`. Each row in the `index_advisor_log` table contains the result of a query where Index Advisor determines it can recommend a hypothetical index to reduce the execution cost of that query.

Column	Type	Description
reloid	oid	OID of the base table for the index
relname	name	Name of the base table for the index
attrs	integer[]	Recommended index columns (identified by column number)
benefit	real	Calculated benefit of the index for this query
index_size	integer	Estimated index size in disk-pages
backend_pid	integer	Process ID of the process generating this recommendation
timestamp	timestamp	Date/Time when the recommendation was generated

You can query the `index_advisor_log` table at the psql command line. The following example shows the `index_advisor_log` table entries resulting from two Index Advisor sessions. Each session contains two queries, and can be identified (in the table below) by a different `backend_pid` value. For each session, Index Advisor generated two index recommendations.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM index_advisor_log;
reloid | relname | attrs | benefit | index_size | backend_pid | timestamp
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

```
-----
16651 | t | {1} | 1684.72 | 2184 | 3442 | 22-MAR-11
16:44:32.712638 -04:00
16651 | t | {2} | 1655.52 | 2184 | 3442 | 22-MAR-11
16:44:32.759436 -04:00
16651 | t | {1} | 1355.9 | 2184 | 3506 | 22-MAR-11
16:48:28.317016 -04:00
16651 | t | {1} | 1684.72 | 2184 | 3506 | 22-MAR-11
16:51:45.927906 -04:00
(4 rows)
```

Index Advisor added the first two rows to the table after analyzing the following two queries executed by the `pg_advise_index` utility:

```
SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 500;
SELECT * FROM t WHERE b < 1000;
```

The value of `3442` in column `backend_pid` identifies these results as coming from the session with process ID `3442`.

The value of `1` in column `attrs` in the first row indicates that the hypothetical index is on the first column of the table (column `a` of table `t`).

The value of `2` in column `attrs` in the second row indicates that the hypothetical index is on the second column of the table (column `b` of table `t`).

Index Advisor added the last two rows to the table after analyzing the following two queries (executed at the psql command line):

```
edb=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a < 10000;
      QUERY PLAN
-----
Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..1693.00 rows=10105 width=8)
  Filter: (a < 10000)
Result (cost=0.00..337.10 rows=10105 width=8)
  One-Time Filter: '===[ HYPOTHETICAL PLAN ]==='::text
    -> Index Scan using "<hypothetical-index>:1" on t (cost=0.00..337.10
rows=10105 width=8)
        Index Cond: (a < 10000)
(6 rows)
```

```
edb=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 100;
      QUERY PLAN
-----
Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..1693.00 rows=1 width=8)
  Filter: (a = 100)
Result (cost=0.00..8.28 rows=1 width=8)
  One-Time Filter: '===[ HYPOTHETICAL PLAN ]==='::text
    -> Index Scan using "<hypothetical-index>:3" on t (cost=0.00..8.28
rows=1 width=8)
        Index Cond: (a = 100)
(6 rows)
```

The values in the `benefit` column of the `index_advisor_log` table are calculated using the following formula:

**benefit** = (normal execution cost) - (execution cost with hypothetical index)

The value of the **benefit** column for the last row of the **index\_advisor\_log** table (shown in the example) is calculated using the query plan for the following SQL statement:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 100;
```

The execution costs of the different execution plans are evaluated and compared:

**benefit** = (Seq Scan on t cost) - (Index Scan using <hypothetical-index>)

and the benefit is added to the table:

**benefit** = 1693.00 - 8.28

**benefit** = 1684.72

You can delete rows from the **index\_advisor\_log** table when you no longer have the need to review the results of the queries stored in the row.

## Querying the **index\_recommendations** View

The **index\_recommendations** view contains the calculated metrics and the **CREATE INDEX** statements to create the recommended indexes for all sessions whose results are currently in the **index advisor log** table. You can display the results of all stored Index Advisor sessions by querying the **index\_recommendations** view as shown below:

```
SELECT * FROM index_recommendations;
```

Using the example shown in the previous section ([Querying the \*\*index\\_advisor\\_log\*\* Table](#)), the **index\_recommendations** view displays the following:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM index_recommendations;
backend_pid | show_index_recommendations
-----+
3442 | create index idx_t_a on t(a);/* size: 2184 KB, benefit:
1684.72, gain: 0.771392654586624 */
3442 | create index idx_t_b on t(b);/* size: 2184 KB, benefit:
1655.52, gain: 0.758021539820856 */
3506 | create index idx_t_a on t(a);/* size: 2184 KB, benefit:
3040.62, gain: 1.39222666981456 */
(3 rows)
```

Within each session, the results of all queries that benefit from the same recommended index are combined to produce one set of metrics per recommended index, reflected in the fields named **benefit** and **gain**.

The formulas for the fields are as follows:

```
size = MAX(index size of all queries)
benefit = SUM(benefit of each query)
gain = SUM(benefit of each query) / MAX(index size of all queries)
```

So for example, using the following query results from the process with a **backend\_pid** of 3506:

```
reloid | relname | attrs | benefit | index_size | backend_pid | timestamp
```

```

-----+-----+-----+-----+
-----| 16651 | t | {1} | 1355.9 | 2184 | 3506 | 22-MAR-11
-----| 16:48:28.317016 -04:00
-----| 16651 | t | {1} | 1684.72 | 2184 | 3506 | 22-MAR-11
-----| 16:51:45.927906 -04:00

```

The metrics displayed from the `index_recommendations` view for `backend_pid 3506` are:

backend_pid	show_index_recommendations
3506	create index idx_t_a on t(a);/* size: 2184 KB, benefit: 3040.62, gain: 1.39222666981456 */

The metrics from the view are calculated as follows:

```

benefit = (benefit from 1st query) + (benefit from 2nd query)
benefit = 1355.9 + 1684.72
benefit = 3040.62

```

and

```

gain = ((benefit from 1st query) + (benefit from 2nd query)) / MAX(index
size of all queries)
gain = (1355.9 + 1684.72) / MAX(2184, 2184)
gain = 3040.62 / 2184
gain = 1.39223

```

The gain metric is useful when comparing the relative advantage of the different recommended indexes derived during a given session. The larger the gain value, the better the cost effectiveness derived from the index weighed against the possible disk space consumption of the index.

## 12.5.5 Index Advisor Limitations

Index Advisor does not consider Index Only scans; it does consider Index scans when making recommendations.

Index Advisor ignores any computations found in the `WHERE` clause. Effectively, the index field in the recommendations will not be any kind of expression; the field will be a simple column name.

Index Advisor does not consider inheritance when recommending hypothetical indexes. If a query references a parent table, Index Advisor does not make any index recommendations on child tables.

Restoration of a `pg_dump` backup file that includes the `index_advisor_log` table or any tables for which indexing recommendations were made and stored in the `index_advisor_log` table, may result in "broken links" between the `index_advisor_log` table and the restored tables referenced by rows in the `index_advisor_log` table because of changes in object identifiers (OIDs).

If it is necessary to display the recommendations made prior to the backup, you can replace the old OIDs in the `reloid` column of the `index_advisor_log` table with the new OIDs of the referenced tables using the SQL `UPDATE` statement:

```
UPDATE index_advisor_log SET reloid = new_oid WHERE reloid = old_oid;
```

## 12.6 SQL Profiler

Inefficient SQL code is one of, if not the leading cause of database performance problems. The challenge for database administrators and developers is locating and then optimizing this code in large, complex systems.

*SQL Profiler* helps you locate and optimize poorly running SQL code.

Specific features and benefits of SQL Profiler include the following:

- **On-Demand Traces.** You can capture SQL traces at any time by manually setting up your parameters and starting the trace.
- **Scheduled Traces.** For inconvenient times, you can also specify your trace parameters and schedule them to run at some later time.
- **Save Traces.** Execute your traces and save them for later review.
- **Trace Filters.** Selectively filter SQL captures by database and by user, or capture every SQL statement sent by all users against all databases.
- **Trace Output Analyzer.** A graphical table lets you quickly sort and filter queries by duration or statement, and a graphical or text based `EXPLAIN` plan lays out your query paths and joins.
- **Index Advisor Integration.** Once you have found your slow queries and optimized them, you can also let the Index Advisor recommend the creation of underlying table indices to further improve performance.

The following describes the installation process.

### Step 1: Install SQL Profiler

SQL Profiler is installed by the Advanced Server installer on Windows or from the `edb-asxx-server-sqlprofiler` RPM package on Linux where `xx` is the Advanced Server version number.

### Step 2: Add the SQL Profiler library

Modify the `postgresql.conf` parameter file for the instance to include the SQL Profiler library in the `shared_preload_libraries` configuration parameter.

For Linux installations, the parameter value should include:

```
$libdir/sql-profiler
```

On Windows, the parameter value should include:

```
$libdir\sql-profiler.dll
```

### Step 3: Create the functions used by SQL Profiler

The SQL Profiler installation program places a SQL script (named `sql-profiler.sql`) in:

On Linux:

```
/usr/edb/as13/share/contrib/
```

On Windows:

```
C:\Program Files\edb\as13\share\contrib\
```

Use the `psql` command line interface to run the `sql-profiler.sql` script in the database specified as the Maintenance Database on the server you wish to profile. If you are using Advanced Server, the default maintenance database is named `edb`. If you are using a PostgreSQL instance, the default maintenance database is named `postgres`.

The following command uses the `psql` command line to invoke the `sql-profiler.sql` script on a Linux system:

```
$ /usr/edb/as13/bin/psql -U user_name database_name <
/usr/edb/as13/share/contrib/sql-profiler.sql
```

**Step 4:** Stop and restart the server for the changes to take effect.

After configuring SQL Profiler, it is ready to use with all databases that reside on the server. You can take advantage of SQL Profiler functionality with EDB Postgres Enterprise Manager; for more information about Postgres Enterprise Manager, visit the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## Troubleshooting

If (after performing an upgrade to a newer version of SQL Profiler) you encounter an error that contains the following text:

```
An error has occurred:  
ERROR: function return row and query-specified return row do not match.  
DETAIL: Returned row contains 11 attributes, but the query expects 10.
```

To correct this error, you must replace the existing query set with a new query set. First, uninstall SQL Profiler by invoking the `uninstall-sql-profiler.sql` script, and then reinstall SQL Profiler by invoking the `sql-profiler.sql` script.

## 12.7 pgsnmpd

`pgsnmpd` is an SNMP agent that can return hierarchical information about the current state of Advanced Server on a Linux system. `pgsnmpd` is distributed and installed using the `edb-asxx-pgsnmpd` RPM package where `xx` is the Advanced Server version number. The `pgsnmpd` agent can operate as a stand-alone SNMP agent, as a pass-through sub-agent, or as an AgentX sub-agent.

After installing Advanced Server, you will need to update the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` variable. Use the command:

```
$ export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/edb/as13/lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

This command does not persistently alter the value of `LD_LIBRARY_PATH`. Consult the documentation for your distribution of Linux for information about persistently setting the value of `LD_LIBRARY_PATH`.

The examples that follow demonstrate the simplest usage of `pgsnmpd`, implementing read only access. `pgsnmpd` is based on the net-snmp library; for more information about net-snmp, visit:

<http://net-snmp.sourceforge.net/>

### Configuring pgsnmpd

The `pgsnmpd` configuration file is named `snmpd.conf`. For information about the directives that you can specify in the configuration file, please review the `snmpd.conf` man page (`man snmpd.conf`).

You can create the configuration file by hand, or you can use the `snmpconf` perl script to create the configuration file. The perl script is distributed with net-snmp package.

net-snmp is an open-source package available from:

```
| http://www.net-snmp.org/
```

To use the snmpconf configuration file wizard, download and install net-snmp. When the installation completes, open a command line and enter:

```
snmpconf
```

When the configuration file wizard opens, it may prompt you to read in an existing configuration file. Enter `none` to generate a new configuration file (not based on a previously existing configuration file).

`snmpconf` is a menu-driven wizard. Select menu item `1: snmpd.conf` to start the configuration wizard. As you select each top-level menu option displayed by `snmpconf`, the wizard walks through a series of questions, prompting you for information required to build the configuration file. When you have provided information in each of the category relevant to your system, enter `Finished` to generate a configuration file named `snmpd.conf`. Copy the file to:

```
/usr/edb/as13/share/
```

## Setting the Listener Address

By default, `pgsnmpd` listens on port `161`. If the listener port is already being used by another service, you may receive the following error:

```
Error opening specified endpoint "udp:161".
```

You can specify an alternate listener port by adding the following line to your `snmpd.conf` file:

```
agentaddress $host_address:2000
```

The example instructs `pgsnmpd` to listen on UDP port `2000`, where `$host_address` is the IP address of the server (e.g., `127.0.0.1`).

Before invoking `pgsnmpd`, you must create the `pgsnmpd` schema and set the search path to create tables in the `pgsnmpd` schema using the following commands:

```
CREATE SCHEMA pgsnmpd;
SET search_path = pgsnmpd;
\i pgsnmpd.sql
```

## Invoking pgsnmpd

Ensure that an instance of Advanced Server is up and running (`pgsnmpd` will connect to this server). Open a command line and assume superuser privileges, before invoking `pgsnmpd` with a command that takes the following form:

```
POSTGRES_INSTALL_HOME/bin/pgsnmpd -b
-c POSTGRES_INSTALL_HOME/share/snmpd.conf
-C "user=enterprisedb dbname=edb password=safe_password
port=5444"
```

Where `POSTGRES_INSTALL_HOME` specifies the Advanced Server installation directory.

Include the `-b` option to specify that `pgsnmpd` should run in the background.

Include the `-c` option, specifying the path and name of the `pgsnmpd` configuration file.

Include connection information for your installation of Advanced Server (in the form of a `libpq` connection string) after the `-C` option.

## Viewing pgsnmpd Help

Include the `--help` option when invoking the `pgsnmpd` utility to view other `pgsnmpd` command line options:

```
pgsnmpd --help
Version PGSQ-L-SNMP-Ver1.0
usage: pgsnmpd [-s] [-b] [-c FILE] [-x address] [-g] [-C "Connect
String"]
-s : run as AgentX sub-agent of an existing snmpd process
-b : run in the background
-c : configuration file name
-g : use syslog
-C : libpq connection string
-x : address:port of a network interface
-V : display version strings
```

## Requesting Information from pgsnmpd

You can use `net-snmp` commands to query the `pgsnmpd` service. For example:

```
snmpgetnext -v 2c -c public localhost .1.3.6.1.4.1.5432.1.4.2.1.1.0
```

In the above example:

`-v 2c` option instructs the `snmpgetnext` client to send the request in SNMP version 2c format.

`-c public` specifies the community name.

`localhost` indicates the host machine running the `pgsnmpd` server.

`.1.3.6.1.4.1.5432.1.4.2.1.1.0` is the identity of the requested object. To see a list of all databases, increment the last digit by one (e.g. `.1.1`, `.1.2`, `.1.3` etc.).

The encodings required to query any given object are defined in the MIB (Management Information Base). An SNMP client can monitor a variety of servers; the server type determines the information exposed by a given server. Each SNMP server describes the exposed data in the form of a MIB (Management information base). By default, `pgsnmpd` searches for MIB's in the following locations:

```
/usr/share/snmp/mibs
```

```
$HOME/.snmp/mibs
```

## 12.8 EDB Audit Logging

Advanced Server allows database and security administrators, auditors, and operators to track and analyze database activities using the *EDB Audit Logging* functionality. EDB Audit Logging generates audit log files, which contains all of the relevant information. The audit logs can be configured to record information such as:

- When a role establishes a connection to an Advanced Server database
- What database objects a role creates, modifies, or deletes when connected to Advanced Server
- When any failed authentication attempts occur

The parameters specified in the configuration files, `postgresql.conf` or `postgresql.auto.conf`, control the information included in the audit logs.

## 12.8.1 Audit Logging Configuration Parameters

Use the following configuration parameters to control database auditing. See [Summary of Configuration Parameters](#) to determine if a change to the configuration parameter takes effect immediately, or if the configuration needs to be reloaded, or if the database server needs to be restarted.

### `edb_audit`

Enables or disables database auditing. The values `xml` or `csv` will enable database auditing. These values represent the file format in which auditing information will be captured. `none` will disable database auditing and is also the default.

### `edb_audit_directory`

Specifies the directory where the log files will be created. The path of the directory can be relative or absolute to the data folder. The default is the `PGDATA/edb_audit` directory.

### `edb_audit_filename`

Specifies the file name of the audit file where the auditing information will be stored. The default file name will be `audit-%Y%m%d_%H%M%S`. The escape sequences, `%Y`, `%m` etc., will be replaced by the appropriate current values according to the system date and time.

### `edb_audit_rotation_day`

Specifies the day of the week on which to rotate the audit files. Valid values are `sun`, `mon`, `tue`, `wed`, `thu`, `fri`, `sat`, `every`, and `none`. To disable rotation, set the value to `none`. To rotate the file every day, set the `edb_audit_rotation_day` value to `every`. To rotate the file on a specific day of the week, set the value to the desired day of the week. `every` is the default value.

### `edb_audit_rotation_size`

Specifies a file size threshold in megabytes when file rotation will be forced to occur. The default value is 0 MB. If the parameter is commented out or set to 0, rotation of the file on a size basis will not occur.

### `edb_audit_rotation_seconds`

Specifies the rotation time in seconds when a new log file should be created. To disable this feature, set this parameter to 0, which is the default.

### `edb_audit_connect`

Enables auditing of database connection attempts by users. To disable auditing of all connection attempts, set `edb_audit_connect` to `none`. To audit all failed connection attempts, set the value to `failed`, which is the default. To audit all connection attempts, set the value to `all`.

## edb\_audit\_disconnect

Enables auditing of database disconnections by connected users. To enable auditing of disconnections, set the value to `all`. To disable, set the value to `none`, which is the default.

## edb\_audit\_statement

This configuration parameter is used to specify auditing of different categories of SQL statements. Various combinations of the following values may be specified: `none`, `dml`, `insert`, `update`, `delete`, `truncate`, `select`, `error`, `rollback`, `ddl`, `create`, `drop`, `alter`, `grant`, `revoke`, and `all`. The default is `ddl` and `error`. See [Selecting SQL Statements to Audit](#) for information regarding the setting of this parameter.

## edb\_audit\_tag

Use this configuration parameter to specify a string value that will be included in the audit log file for each entry as a tracking tag.

## edb\_log\_every\_bulk\_value

Bulk processing logs the resulting statements into both the Advanced Server log file and the EDB Audit log file. However, logging each and every statement in bulk processing is costly. This can be controlled by the `edb_log_every_bulk_value` configuration parameter. When set to `true`, each and every statement in bulk processing is logged. During bulk execution, when `edb_log_every_bulk_value` is set to `false`, a log message is recorded once per bulk processing along with the number of rows processed. In addition, the duration is emitted once per bulk processing. Default is set to `false`.

## edb\_audit\_destination

Specifies whether the audit log information is to be recorded in the directory as given by the `edb_audit_directory` parameter or to the directory and file managed by the `syslog` process. Set to `file` to use the directory specified by `edb_audit_directory`, which is the default setting.

Set to `syslog` to use the syslog process and its location as configured in the `/etc/syslog.conf` file. The `syslog` setting is valid for Advanced Server running on a Linux host and is not supported on Windows systems. **Note:** In recent Linux versions, syslog has been replaced by `rsyslog` and the configuration file is in `/etc/rsyslog.conf`.

The following section describes selection of specific SQL statements for auditing using the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

## 12.8.2 Selecting SQL Statements to Audit

The `edb_audit_statement` permits inclusion of one or more, comma-separated values to control which SQL statements are to be audited. The following is the general format:

```
edb_audit_statement = 'value_1[, value_2]...'
```

The comma-separated values may include or omit space characters following the comma. The values can be specified in any combination of lowercase or uppercase letters.

The basic parameter values are the following:

- `all` – Results in the auditing and logging of every statement including any error messages on statements.
- `none` – Disables all auditing and logging. A value of `none` overrides any other value included in the list.
- `ddl` – Results in the auditing of all data definition language (DDL) statements (`CREATE`, `ALTER`, and `DROP`) as well as `GRANT` and `REVOKE` data control language (DCL) statements.

- **dml** – Results in the auditing of all data manipulation language (DML) statements (`INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `TRUNCATE`).
- **select** – Results in the auditing of `SELECT` statements.
- **rollback** – Results in the auditing of `ROLLBACK` statements.
- **error** – Results in the logging of all error messages that occur. Unless the `error` value is included, no error messages are logged regarding any errors that occur on SQL statements related to any of the other preceding parameter values except when `all` is used.

[Data Definition Language and Data Control Language Statements](#) describes additional parameter values for selecting particular DDL or DCL statements for auditing.

[Data Manipulation Language Statements](#) describes additional parameter values for selecting particular DML statements for auditing.

If an unsupported value is included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter, then an error occurs when applying the setting to the database server. See the database server log file for the error such as in the following example where `create materialized vw` results in the error. (The correct value is `create materialized view`.)

```
2017-07-16 11:20:39 EDT LOG: invalid value for parameter
"edb_audit_statement": "create materialized vw, create sequence, grant"
2017-07-16 11:20:39 EDT FATAL: configuration file "/var/lib/edb/as13/data/
postgresql.conf" contains errors
```

The following sections describe the values for the SQL language types DDL, DCL, and DML.

## Data Definition Language and Data Control Language Statements

This section describes values that can be included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter to audit DDL and DCL statements.

The following general rules apply:

- If the `edb_audit_statement` parameter includes either `ddl` or `all`, then all DDL statements are audited. In addition, the DCL statements `GRANT` and `REVOKE` are audited as well.
- If the `edb_audit_statement` is set to `none`, then no DDL nor DCL statements are audited.
- Specific types of DDL and DCL statements can be chosen for auditing by including a combination of values within the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

Use the following syntax to specify an `edb_audit_statement` parameter value for DDL statements:

```
{ create | alter | drop } [ <object_type> ]
```

`object_type` is any of the following:

ACCESS METHOD

AGGREGATE

CAST

COLLATION

CONVERSION

DATABASE

EVENT TRIGGER

EXTENSION

[FOREIGN TABLE](#)[FUNCTION](#)[INDEX](#)[LANGUAGE](#)[LARGE OBJECT](#)[MATERIALIZED VIEW](#)[OPERATOR](#)[OPERATOR CLASS](#)[OPERATOR FAMILY](#)[POLICY](#)[PUBLICATION](#)[ROLE](#)[RULE](#)[SCHEMA](#)[SEQUENCE](#)[SERVER](#)[SUBSCRIPTION](#)[TABLE](#)[TABLESPACE](#)[TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION](#)[TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY](#)[TEXT SEARCH PARSER](#)[TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE](#)[TRANSFORM](#)[TRIGGER](#)[TYPE](#)[USER MAPPING](#)[VIEW](#)

Descriptions of object types as used in SQL commands can be found in the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-commands.html>

If `object_type` is omitted from the parameter value, then all of the specified command statements (either `create`,

`alter`, or `drop`) are audited.

Use the following syntax to specify an `edb_audit_statement` parameter value for DCL statements:

```
{ grant | revoke }
```

The following are some DDL and DCL examples.

### Example 1

The following is an example where `edb_audit_connect` and `edb_audit_statement` are set with the following non-default values:

```
logging_collector = 'on'
edb_audit_connect = 'all'
edb_audit_statement = 'create, alter, error'
```

Thus, only SQL statements invoked by the `CREATE` and `ALTER` commands are audited. Error messages are also included in the audit log.

The database session that occurs is the following:

```
$ psql edb enterprisedb
Password for user enterprisedb:
psql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

edb=# SHOW edb_audit_connect;
edb_audit_connect
-----
all
(1 row)

edb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;
edb_audit_statement
-----
create, alter, error
(1 row)

edb=# CREATE ROLE adminuser;
CREATE ROLE
edb=# ALTER ROLE adminuser WITH LOGIN, SUPERUSER, PASSWORD 'password';
ERROR:  syntax error at or near ","
LINE 1: ALTER ROLE adminuser WITH LOGIN, SUPERUSER, PASSWORD 'passwo...
          ^
edb=# ALTER ROLE adminuser WITH LOGIN SUPERUSER PASSWORD 'password';
ALTER ROLE
edb=# CREATE DATABASE auditdb;
CREATE DATABASE
edb=# ALTER DATABASE auditdb OWNER TO adminuser;
ALTER DATABASE
edb=# \c auditdb adminuser
Password for user adminuser:
You are now connected to database "auditdb" as user "adminuser".
auditdb=# CREATE SCHEMA edb;
CREATE SCHEMA
auditdb=# SET search_path TO edb;
```

SET

```
auditdb=# CREATE TABLE department (
auditdb(# deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
auditdb(# dname       VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
auditdb(# loc        VARCHAR2(13)
auditdb(# );
CREATE TABLE
auditdb=# DROP TABLE department;
DROP TABLE
auditdb=# CREATE TABLE dept (
auditdb(# deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
auditdb(# dname       VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
auditdb(# loc        VARCHAR2(13)
auditdb(# );
CREATE TABLE
```

The resulting audit log file contains the following.

Each audit log entry has been split and displayed across multiple lines, and a blank line has been inserted between the audit log entries for more clarity in the appearance of the results.

2020-05-25 12:32:22.799 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",72518,"[local]",5ecb6d7e.

11b46,1,"authentication",2020-05-25 12:32:22 IST,4/19,0,AUDIT,00000,  
 "connection authorized:user=enterprisedb database=edb",,,,,,,,"client  
 backend",","","connect"

2020-05-25 12:34:05.843 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",72518,"[local]",5ecb6d7e.

11b46,2,"idle",2020-05-25 12:32:22 IST,4/23,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE  
 ROLE adminuser; ",,,,,,"psql","client backend","CREATE ROLE","create"

2020-05-25 12:34:16.617 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",72518,"[local]",5ecb6d7e.

11b46,3,"idle",2020-05-25 12:32:22 IST,4/24,0,ERROR,42601,"syntax error at or  
 near "",",",",,,"ALTER ROLE adminuser WITH LOGIN, SUPERUSER, PASSWORD  
 'password';",32,"psql","client backend",","","error"

2020-05-25 12:34:29.954 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",72518,"[local]",5ecb6d7e.

11b46,4,"idle",2020-05-25 12:32:22 IST,4/25,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: ALTER  
 ROLE adminuser WITH LOGIN SUPERUSER PASSWORD 'password'; ",,,,,,"psql",  
 "client backend","ALTER ROLE","alter"

2020-05-25 12:34:40.114 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",72518,"[local]",5ecb6d7e.

11b46,5,"idle",2020-05-25 12:32:22 IST,4/26,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE  
 DATABASE auditdb; ",,,,,,"psql","client backend","CREATE DATABASE","create"

2020-05-25 12:34:50.591 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",72518,"[local]",5ecb6d7e.

11b46,6,"idle",2020-05-25 12:32:22 IST,4/27,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: ALTER  
 DATABASE auditdb OWNER TO adminuser; ",,,,,,"psql","client backend","ALTER  
 DATABASE","alter"

2020-05-25 12:35:01.554 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",75531,"[local]",5ecb6e1d.

1270b,1,"authentication",2020-05-25 12:35:01 IST,5/11,0,AUDIT,00000,  
 "connection authorized:user=adminuser database=auditdb",,,,,,,,"client  
 backend",","","connect"

2020-05-25 12:35:12.931 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",75531,"[local]",5ecb6e1d.

1270b,2,"idle",2020-05-25 12:35:01 IST,5/13,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE

```
SCHHEMA edb;,",,,,,,,"psql","client backend","CREATE SCHEMA","create"
```

```
2020-05-25 12:37:18.547 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",75531,"[local]",5ecb6e1d.  
1270b,3,"idle",2020-05-25 12:35:01 IST,5/15,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE  
TABLE department
```

```
(  
    deptno NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,  
    dname  VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,  
    loc    VARCHAR2(13)  
)
```

```
);,",,,,,,,"psql","client backend","CREATE TABLE","create"
```

```
2020-05-25 12:39:09.065 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",75531,"[local]",5ecb6e1d.  
1270b,4,"idle",2020-05-25 12:35:01 IST,5/17,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE  
TABLE dept (
```

```
    deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,  
    dname       VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,  
    loc        VARCHAR2(13)
```

```
);,",,,,,,,"psql","client backend","CREATE TABLE","create"
```

The `CREATE` and `ALTER` statements for the `adminuser` role and `auditdb` database are audited. The error for the `ALTER ROLE adminuser` statement is also logged since error is included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

Similarly, the `CREATE` statements for schema `edb` and tables `department` and `dept` are audited.

Note that the `DROP TABLE department` statement is not in the audit log since there is no `edb_audit_statement` setting that would result in the auditing of successfully processed `DROP` statements such as `ddl`, `all`, or `drop`.

## Example 2

The following is an example where `edb_audit_connect` and `edb_audit_statement` are set with the following non-default values:

```
logging_collector = 'on'  
edb_audit_connect = 'all'  
edb_audit_statement = create view,create materialized view,create  
sequence,grant'
```

Thus, only SQL statements invoked by the `CREATE VIEW`, `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW`, `CREATE SEQUENCE` and `GRANT` commands are audited.

The database session that occurs is the following:

```
$ psql auditdb adminuser  
Password for user adminuser:  
psql.bin (13.0.0)  
Type "help" for help.
```

```
auditdb=# SHOW edb_audit_connect;  
edb_audit_connect
```

```
-----  
all  
(1 row)
```

```
auditdb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;  
edb_audit_statement
```

```
create view,create materialized view,create sequence,grant
(1 row)
```

```
auditdb=# SET search_path TO edb;
SET
auditdb=# CREATE TABLE emp (
auditdb(#   empno      NUMBER(4) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT emp_pk PRIMARY KEY,
auditdb(#   ename      VARCHAR2(10),
auditdb(#   job        VARCHAR2(9),
auditdb(#   mgr        NUMBER(4),
auditdb(#   hiredate    DATE,
auditdb(#   sal        NUMBER(7,2) CONSTRAINT emp_sal_ck CHECK (sal >
0),
auditdb(#   comm      NUMBER(7,2),
auditdb(#   deptno    NUMBER(2) CONSTRAINT emp_ref_dept_fk
auditdb(#                  REFERENCES dept(deptno)
auditdb(# );
CREATE TABLE
auditdb=# CREATE VIEW salesemp AS
auditdb#   SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, comm FROM emp WHERE job =
'SALESMAN';
CREATE VIEW
auditdb=# CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW managers AS
auditdb#   SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, comm FROM emp WHERE job =
'MANAGER';
SELECT 0
auditdb=# CREATE SEQUENCE next_empno START WITH 8000 INCREMENT BY 1;
CREATE SEQUENCE
auditdb=# GRANT ALL ON dept TO PUBLIC;
GRANT
auditdb=# GRANT ALL ON emp TO PUBLIC;
GRANT
```

The resulting audit log file contains the following.

Each audit log entry has been split and displayed across multiple lines, and a blank line has been inserted between the audit log entries for more clarity in the appearance of the results.

```
2020-05-25 14:05:29.163 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",40810,"[local]",5ecb8351.
9f6a,1,"authentication",2020-05-25 14:05:29 IST,4/28,0,AUDIT,00000,
"connection authorized:user=adminuser database=auditdb","","","","client
backend","","","connect"

2020-05-25 14:12:06.318 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",40810,"[local]",5ecb8351.
9f6a,2,"idle",2020-05-25 14:05:29 IST,4/34,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
VIEW salesemp AS SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, comm FROM emp WHERE job
= 'SALESMAN';","","","psql","client backend","CREATE VIEW","create"

2020-05-25 14:13:26.657 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",40810,"[local]",5ecb8351.
9f6a,3,"idle",2020-05-25 14:05:29 IST,4/36,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
MATERIALIZED VIEW managers AS SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal, comm FROM
emp WHERE job = 'MANAGER';","","","psql","client backend","CREATE
MATERIALIZED VIEW","create"

2020-05-25 14:13:38.928 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",40810,"[local]",5ecb8351.
9f6a,4,"idle",2020-05-25 14:05:29 IST,4/37,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
```

```
SEQUENCE next_empno START WITH 8000 INCREMENT BY 1;" ,,,," "psql" , "client
backend" , "CREATE SEQUENCE" , "create"
```

```
2020-05-25 14:13:51.434 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",40810,"[local]",5ecb8351.
9f6a,5,"idle",2020-05-25 14:05:29 IST,4/38,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: GRANT
ALL ON dept TO PUBLIC;" ,,,," "psql" , "client backend" , "GRANT" , "grant"
```

```
2020-05-25 14:14:03.737 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",40810,"[local]",5ecb8351.
9f6a,6,"idle",2020-05-25 14:05:29 IST,4/39,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: GRANT
ALL ON emp TO PUBLIC;" ,,,," "psql" , "client backend" , "GRANT" , "grant"
```

The `CREATE VIEW` and `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW` statements are audited. Note that the prior `CREATE TABLE` `emp` statement is not audited since none of the values `create`, `create table`, `ddl`, nor `all` are included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

The `CREATE SEQUENCE` and `GRANT` statements are audited since those values are included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

## Data Manipulation Language Statements

This section describes the values that can be included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter to audit DML statements.

The following general rules apply:

- If the `edb_audit_statement` parameter includes either `dml` or `all`, then all DML statements are audited.
- If the `edb_audit_statement` is set to `none`, then no DML statements are audited.
- Specific types of DML statements can be chosen for auditing by including a combination of values within the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

Use the following syntax to specify an `edb_audit_statement` parameter value for `SQL INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `TRUNCATE` statements:

```
{ insert | update | delete | truncate }
```

### Example

The following is an example where `edb_audit_connect` and `edb_audit_statement` are set with the following non-default values:

```
logging_collector = 'on'
edb_audit_connect = 'all'
edb_audit_statement = 'UPDATE, DELETE, error'
```

Thus, only SQL statements invoked by the `UPDATE` and `DELETE` commands are audited. All errors are also included in the audit log (even errors not related to the `UPDATE` and `DELETE` commands).

The database session that occurs is the following:

```
$ psql auditdb adminuser
Password for user adminuser:
psql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

auditdb=# SHOW edb_audit_connect;
edb_audit_connect
-----
```

```
all
(1 row)
```

```
auditdb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;
edb_audit_statement
-----
UPDATE, DELETE, error
(1 row)

auditdb=# SET search_path TO edb;
SET
auditdb=# INSERT INTO dept VALUES (10,'ACCOUNTING','NEW YORK');
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# INSERT INTO dept VALUES (20,'RESEARCH','DALLAS');
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# INSERT INTO dept VALUES (30,'SALES','CHICAGO');
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# INSERT INTO dept VALUES (40,'OPERATIONS','BOSTON');
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7369,'SMITH','CLERK',7902,'17-DEC-80',800,NULL,20);
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7499,'ALLEN','SALESMAN',7698,'20-FEB-81',1600,300,30);
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7521,'WARD','SALESMAN',7698,'22-FEB-81',1250,500,30);
INSERT 0 1
.
.
.

auditdb=# INSERT INTO emp VALUES (7934,'MILLER','CLERK',7782,'23-JAN-82',1300,NULL,10);
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# UPDATE dept SET loc = 'BEDFORD' WHERE deptno = 40;
UPDATE 1
auditdb=# SELECT * FROM dept;
deptno | dname   | loc
-----+-----+
 10 | ACCOUNTING | NEW YORK
 20 | RESEARCH   | DALLAS
 30 | SALES     | CHICAGO
 40 | OPERATIONS | BEDFORD
(4 rows)

auditdb=# DELETE FROM emp WHERE deptno = 10;
DELETE 3
auditdb=# TRUNCATE employee;
ERROR: relation "employee" does not exist
auditdb=# TRUNCATE emp;
TRUNCATE TABLE
auditdb=# \q
```

The resulting audit log file contains the following.

Each audit log entry has been split and displayed across multiple lines, and a blank line has been inserted

between the audit log entries for more clarity in the appearance of the results.

```
2020-05-25 15:17:16.392 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",123420,"[local]",5ecb9424.
1e21c,1,"authentication",2020-05-25 15:17:16 IST,5/3,0,AUDIT,00000,
"connection authorized:user=adminuser database=auditdb",,,,,,,,"client
backend","","connect"

2020-05-25 15:19:18.066 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",123420,"[local]",5ecb9424.
1e21c,2,"idle",2020-05-25 15:17:16 IST,5/14,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: UPDATE
dept SET loc = 'BEDFORD' WHERE deptno = 40;","",,"pgsql","client backend",
"UPDATE","update"

2020-05-25 15:19:38.524 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",123420,"[local]",5ecb9424.
1e21c,3,"idle",2020-05-25 15:17:16 IST,5/16,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: DELETE
FROM emp WHERE deptno = 10;","",,"pgsql","client backend","DELETE","delete"

2020-05-25 15:19:48.149 IST,"adminuser","auditdb",123420,"[local]",5ecb9424.
1e21c,4,"TRUNCATE TABLE",2020-05-25 15:17:16 IST,5/17,0,ERROR,42P01,"relation
""employee""does not exist","",,"TRUNCATE employee;","",,"pgsql","client backend
","",,"TRUNCATE TABLE","error"
```

The `UPDATE dept` and `DELETE FROM emp` statements are audited. Note that all of the prior `INSERT` statements are not audited since none of the values `insert`, `dml`, nor `all` are included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

The `SELECT * FROM dept` statement is not audited as well since neither `select` nor `all` is included in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter.

Since `error` is specified in the `edb_audit_statement` parameter, but not the `truncate` value, the error on the `TRUNCATE employee` statement is logged in the audit file, but not the successful `TRUNCATE emp` statement.

## 12.8.3 Enabling Audit Logging

The following steps describe how to configure Advanced Server to log all connections, disconnections, DDL statements, DCL statements, DML statements, and any statements resulting in an error.

1. Enable auditing by the setting the `edb_audit` parameter to `xml` or `csv`.
2. Set the file rotation day when the new file will be created by setting the parameter `edb_audit_rotation_day` to the desired value.
3. To audit all connections, set the parameter, `edb_audit_connect`, to `all`.
4. To audit all disconnections, set the parameter, `edb_audit_disconnect`, to `all`.
5. To audit DDL, DCL, DML and other statements, set the parameter, `edb_audit_statement` according to the instructions in [Selecting SQL Statements to Audit](#).

The setting of the `edb_audit_statement` parameter in the configuration file affects the entire database cluster.

The type of statements that are audited as controlled by the `edb_audit_statement` parameter can be further refined according to the database in use as well as the database role running the session:

- The `edb_audit_statement` parameter can be set as an attribute of a specified database with the `ALTER DATABASE dbname SETedb_audit_statement` command. This setting overrides the `edb_audit_statement` parameter in the configuration file for statements executed when connected to database `dbname`.
- The `edb_audit_statement` parameter can be set as an attribute of a specified role with the `ALTER ROLE rolename SETedb_audit_statement` command. This setting overrides the `edb_audit_statement` parameter in

- the configuration file as well as any setting assigned to the database by the previously described `ALTER DATABASE` command when the specified role is running the current session.
- The `edb_audit_statement` parameter can be set as an attribute of a specified role when using a specified database with the `ALTER ROLE rolename IN DATABASE dbname SET edb_audit_statement` command. This setting overrides the `edb_audit_statement` parameter in the configuration file as well as any setting assigned to the database by the previously described `ALTER DATABASE` command as well as any setting assigned to the role with the `ALTER ROLE` command without the `IN DATABASE` clause as previously described.

The following are examples of this technique.

The database cluster is established with `edb_audit_statement` set to `all` as shown in its `postgresql.conf` file:

```
logging_collector = 'on'
edb_audit_statement = 'all'    # Statement type to be audited:
                                # none, dml, insert, update, delete,
                                # truncate,
                                # select, error, rollback, ddl, create, drop,
                                # alter, grant, revoke, all
```

A database and role are established with the following settings for the `edb_audit_statement` parameter:

- Database `auditdb` with `ddl`, `insert`, `update`, and `delete`
- Role `admin` with `select` and `truncate`
- Role `admin` in database `auditdb` with `create table`, `insert`, and `update`

Creation and alteration of the database and role are shown by the following:

```
$ psql edb enterprisedb
Password for user enterprisedb:
psql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

edb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;
edb_audit_statement
-----
all
(1 row)

edb=# CREATE DATABASE auditdb;
CREATE DATABASE
edb=# ALTER DATABASE auditdb SET edb_audit_statement TO 'ddl, insert,
update, delete';
ALTER DATABASE
edb=# CREATE ROLE admin WITH LOGIN SUPERUSER PASSWORD 'password';
CREATE ROLE
edb=# ALTER ROLE admin SET edb_audit_statement TO 'select, truncate';
ALTER ROLE
edb=# ALTER ROLE admin IN DATABASE auditdb SET edb_audit_statement TO
'create table, insert, update';
ALTER ROLE
```

The following demonstrates the changes made and the resulting audit log file for three cases.

**Case 1:** Changes made in database `auditdb` by role `enterprisedb`. Only `ddl`, `insert`, `update`, and `delete` statements are audited:

```
$ psql auditdb enterprisedb
Password for user enterprisedb:
```

```

psql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

auditdb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;
      edb_audit_statement
-----
      ddl, insert, update, delete
(1 row)

auditdb=# CREATE TABLE audit_tbl (f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT);
CREATE TABLE
auditdb=# INSERT INTO audit_tbl VALUES (1, 'Row 1');
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# UPDATE audit_tbl SET f2 = 'Row A' WHERE f1 = 1;
UPDATE 1
auditdb=# SELECT * FROM audit_tbl;           <== Should not be audited
   f1 |   f2
-----+
   1 | Row A
(1 row)

auditdb=# TRUNCATE audit_tbl;           <== Should not be audited
TRUNCATE TABLE

```

The following audit log file shows entries only for the `CREATE TABLE`, `INSERT INTO audit_tbl`, and `UPDATE audit_tbl` statements. The `SELECT * FROM audit_tbl` and `TRUNCATE audit_tbl` statements were not audited.

Each audit log entry has been split and displayed across multiple lines, and a blank line has been inserted between the audit log entries for more clarity in the appearance of the results.

```

2020-05-25 15:59:12.332 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,2,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/7,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
TABLE audit_tbl(f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT);",,,,,,,,"psql","client
backend","CREATE TABLE","","","create"

2020-05-25 15:59:22.419 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,3,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/8,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement:
INSERT INTO audit_tbl VALUES (1, 'Row 1');",,,,,,,,"psql","client backend",
"INSERT","","","insert"

```

```

2020-05-25 15:59:32.180 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,4,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/9,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: UPDATE
audit_tbl SET f2 = 'Row A' WHERE f1 = 1;",,,,,,,,"psql","client backend",
"UPDATE","","","update"

```

**Case 2:** Changes made in database `edb` by role `admin`. Only `select` and `truncate` statements are audited:

```

$ psql edb admin
Password for user admin:
psql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

edb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;
      edb_audit_statement
-----
      select, truncate

```

(1 row)

```
edb=# CREATE TABLE edb_tbl (f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT); <== Should not
be audited
```

```
CREATE TABLE
```

```
edb=# INSERT INTO edb_tbl VALUES (1, 'Row 1'); <== Should not
be audited
```

```
INSERT 0 1
```

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_tbl;
```

```
f1 | f2
```

```
-----
```

```
1 | Row 1
```

```
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# TRUNCATE edb_tbl;
```

```
TRUNCATE TABLE
```

Continuation of the audit log file now appears as follows. The last two entries representing the second case show only the `SELECT * FROM edb_tbl` and `TRUNCATE edb_tbl` statements. The `CREATE TABLE edb_tbl` and `INSERT INTO edb_tbl` statements were not audited.

```
2020-05-25 15:59:12.332 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,2,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/7,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
TABLE audit_tbl(f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT);",,,,,,,,"psql","client
backend","CREATE TABLE","","create"
```

```
2020-05-25 15:59:22.419 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,3,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/8,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: INSERT
INTO audit_tbl VALUES (1, 'Row 1');",,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","INSERT",
","","insert"
```

```
2020-05-25 15:59:32.180 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.
a36d,4,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/9,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: UPDATE
audit_tbl SET f2 = 'Row A' WHERE f1 = 1;",,,,,,,,"psql","client backend",
"UPDATE","","update"
```

```
2020-05-25 16:25:37.509 IST,"admin","edb",71920,"[local]",5ecba3fe.118f0,2,
"idle",2020-05-25 16:24:54 IST,4/33,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: SELECT * FROM
edb_tbl;",,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","SELECT","","select"
```

```
2020-05-25 16:25:46.131 IST,"admin","edb",71920,"[local]",5ecba3fe.118f0,3,
"idle",2020-05-25 16:24:54 IST,4/34,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: TRUNCATE edb_
tbl;",,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","TRUNCATE TABLE","","truncate"
```

**Case 3:** Changes made in database `auditdb` by role `admin`. Only `create table`, `insert`, and `update` statements are audited:

```
$ psql auditdb admin
```

```
Password for user admin:
```

```
psql.bin (13.0.0)
```

```
Type "help" for help.
```

```
auditdb=# SHOW edb_audit_statement;
edb_audit_statement
```

```
-----
create table, insert, update
```

(1 row)

```

auditdb=# CREATE TABLE audit_tbl_2 (f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT);
CREATE TABLE
auditdb=# INSERT INTO audit_tbl_2 VALUES (1, 'Row 1');
INSERT 0 1
auditdb=# SELECT * FROM audit_tbl_2;           <== Should not be audited
f1 | f2
-----+
 1 | Row 1
(1 row)

auditdb=# TRUNCATE audit_tbl_2;           <== Should not be audited
TRUNCATE TABLE

```

Continuation of the audit log file now appears as follows. The next to last two entries representing the third case show only `CREATE TABLE audit_tbl_2` and `INSERT INTO audit_tbl_2` statements. The `SELECT * FROM audit_tbl_2` and `TRUNCATE audit_tbl_2` statements were not audited.

2020-05-25 15:59:12.332 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.a36d,2,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/7,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE TABLE audit\_tbl(f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT);",,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","CREATE TABLE","","create"

2020-05-25 15:59:22.419 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.a36d,3,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/8,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: INSERT INTO audit\_tbl VALUES (1, 'Row 1');",,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","INSERT","","insert"

2020-05-25 15:59:32.180 IST,"enterprisedb","auditdb",41837,"[local]",5ecb9dee.a36d,4,"idle",2020-05-25 15:59:02 IST,5/9,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: UPDATE audit\_tbl SET f2 = 'Row A' WHERE f1 = 1;",,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","UPDATE","","update"

2020-05-25 16:25:37.509 IST,"admin","edb",71920,"[local]",5ecba3fe.118f0,2,"idle",2020-05-25 16:24:54 IST,4/33,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: SELECT \* FROM edb\_tbl;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","SELECT","","select"

2020-05-25 16:25:46.131 IST,"admin","edb",71920,"[local]",5ecba3fe.118f0,3,"idle",2020-05-25 16:24:54 IST,4/34,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: TRUNCATE edb\_tbl;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","TRUNCATE TABLE","","truncate"

2020-05-25 17:30:59.057 IST,"admin","auditdb",122093,"[local]",5ecbb370.1dced,2,"idle",2020-05-25 17:30:48 IST,5/11,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE TABLE audit\_tbl\_2 (f1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, f2 TEXT);",,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","CREATE TABLE","","create"

2020-05-25 17:31:08.866 IST,"admin","auditdb",122093,"[local]",5ecbb370.1dced,3,"idle",2020-05-25 17:30:48 IST,5/12,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: INSERT INTO audit\_tbl\_2 VALUES (1, 'Row 1');",,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","INSERT","","insert"

## 12.8.4 Audit Log File

The audit log file can be generated in either CSV or XML format depending upon the setting of the `edb_audit` configuration parameter.

The information in the audit log is based on the logging performed by PostgreSQL as described in the section “Using CSV-Format Log Output” within Section “Error Reporting and Logging” in the PostgreSQL core documentation, available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/runtime-config-logging.html>

The following table lists the fields in the order they appear in the XML audit log format. The table contains the following information:

- **Field.** Name of the field as shown in the sample table definition in the PostgreSQL documentation as previously referenced.
- **XML Element/Attribute.** For the XML format, name of the XML element and its attribute (if used), referencing the value. **Note:** `n/a` indicates that there is no XML representation for this field.
- **Data Type.** Data type of the field as given by the PostgreSQL sample table definition.
- **Description.** Description of the field. For certain fields, no output is generated in the audit log as those fields are not supported by auditing. Those fields are indicated by “Not supported”.

The fields that do not have any values for logging appear as consecutive commas (,,) in the CSV format.

Field	XML Element/Attribute	Data Type	Description
user_name	event/user	text	Database user who executed the statement.
database_name	event/database	text	Database in which the statement was executed.
process_id	event/process_id	integer	Operating system process ID in which the statement was executed.
connection_from	event/remote_host	text	Host and port location from where the statement was executed.
session_id	event/session_id	text	Session ID in which the statement was executed.
session_line_num	event/session_line_num	bigint	Order of the statement within the session.
process_status	event/process_status	text	Processing status.
session_start_time	event/session_start_time	timestamp with time zone	Date/time when the session was started.
log_time	event/log_time	timestamp with time zone	Log date/time of the statement.
virtual_transaction_id	event/virtual_transaction_id	text	Virtual transaction ID of the statement.
transaction_id	event/transaction_id	bigint	Regular transaction ID of the statement.
type	event/type	text	Determines the audit event_type to identify messages in the log.
sql_state_code	event/sql_state_code	text	SQL state code returned for the statement. The <code>sql_state_code</code> is not logged when its value is 00000 for XML log format.
command_tag	event/command_tag	text	SQL command of the statement.
audit_tag	event/audit_tag	text	Value specified by the <code>audit_tag</code> parameter in the configuration file.
application_name	event/application_name	text	Name of the application from which the statement was executed. (for example, <code>psql.bin</code> ).

Field	XML Element/Attribute	Data Type	Description
backend_type	event/backend_type	text	The backend_type corresponds to what pg_stat_activity.backend_type shows and is added as a column to the csv log.
error_severity	error_severity	text	Statement severity. Values are AUDIT for audited statements and ERROR for any resulting error messages.
message	message	text	The SQL statement that was attempted for execution.
detail	detail	text	Error message detail.
hint	hint	text	Hint for error.
internal_query	internal_query	text	Internal query that led to the error, if any.
internal_query_pos	internal_query_pos	integer	Character count of the error position therein.
context	context	text	Error context.
query	query	text	User query that led to the error. For (For errors only)
query_pos	query_pos	integer	Character count of the error position therein. (For errors only)
location	location	text	Location of the error in the source code. The location field will be populated if log_error_verbosity is set to verbose.

The following examples are generated in the CSV and XML formats.

The non-default audit settings in the `postgresql.conf` file are as follows:

```
logging_collector = 'on'
edb_audit = 'csv'
edb_audit_connect = 'all'
edb_audit_disconnect = 'all'
edb_audit_statement = 'ddl, dml, select, error'
edb_audit_tag = 'edbaudit'
```

The `edb_audit` parameter is changed to `xml` when generating the XML format.

The audited session is the following:

```
$ psql edb enterprisedb
Password for user enterprisedb:
psql.bin (13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.

edb=# CREATE SCHEMA edb;
CREATE SCHEMA
edb=# SET search_path TO edb;
SET
edb=# CREATE TABLE dept (
edb(#   deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
edb(#   dname       VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
edb(#   loc         VARCHAR2(13)
edb(# );
CREATE TABLE
edb=# INSERT INTO dept VALUES (10,'ACCOUNTING','NEW YORK');
INSERT 0 1
edb=# UPDATE department SET loc = 'BOSTON' WHERE deptno = 10;
```

```

ERROR: relation "department" does not exist
LINE 1: UPDATE department SET loc = 'BOSTON' WHERE deptno = 10;
          ^
edb=# UPDATE dept SET loc = 'BOSTON' WHERE deptno = 10;
UPDATE 1
edb=# SELECT * FROM dept;
deptno | dname   | loc
-----+-----+
 10 | ACCOUNTING | BOSTON
(1 row)

edb=# \q

```

## CSV Audit Log File

The following is the CSV format of the audit log file.

Each audit log entry has been split and displayed across multiple lines, and a blank line has been inserted between the audit log entries for more clarity in the appearance of the results.

```

2020-05-22 16:53:37.817 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.
d7ef,1,"authentication",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/21,0,AUDIT,00000,
"connection authorized:user=enterprisedb database=edb",,,,,,,,"client
backend","","","edbaudit","connect"

2020-05-22 16:53:42.279 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.
d7ef,2,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/23,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
SCHEMA edb;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","CREATE SCHEMA","edbaudit",
"create"

2020-05-22 16:54:07.896 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.
d7ef,3,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/25,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE
TABLE dept (
    deptno      NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
    dname       VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
    loc         VARCHAR2(13)
);,,,,,,,"psql","client backend","CREATE TABLE","edbaudit","create"

2020-05-22 16:54:20.500 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.
d7ef,4,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/26,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: INSERT
INTO dept VALUES(10,'ACCOUNTING','NEW YORK');,,,,,,,"psql","client backend
","INSERT","edbaudit","insert"

2020-05-22 16:54:34.821 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.
d7ef,5,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/27,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: UPDATE
department SET loc = 'BOSTON' WHERE deptno = 10;,,,,,,,"psql","client
backend","UPDATE","edbaudit","update"

2020-05-22 16:54:34.821 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.
d7ef,6,"UPDATE",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/27,0,ERROR,42P01,"relation "
"department"" does not exist",,,,,,"UPDATE department SET loc = 'BOSTON'
WHERE deptno = 10;,,,"psql","client backend","UPDATE","edbaudit","error"

2020-05-22 16:54:51.308 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.
d7ef,7,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/28,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: UPDATE
dept SET loc = 'BOSTON' WHERE deptno = 10;,,,,,,,"psql","client backend",

```

```
"UPDATE","edbaudit","update"

2020-05-22 16:55:00.774 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.
d7ef,8,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,4/29,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: SELECT *
FROM dept;","",,"pgsql","client backend","SELECT","edbaudit","select"

2020-05-22 16:55:06.548 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",55279,"[local]",5ec7b639.
d7ef,9,"idle",2020-05-22 16:53:37 IST,,0,AUDIT,00000,"disconnection: session
time: 0:01:28.732 user=enterprisedb database=edb host=[local]","",,"pgsql",
"client backend","",,"edbaudit","disconnect"
```

## XML Audit Log File

The following is the XML format of the audit log file. The output has been formatted for more clarity in the appearance in the example.

```
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
"[local]"
    session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="1" process_status=
    "authentication"
    session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
    16:11:17.806 IST"
    virtual_transaction_id="4/19" type="connect" audit_tag="edbaudit"
    backend_type="client backend">
        <error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
        <message>connection authorized: user=enterprisedb database=edb</
        message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
"[local]"
    session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="2" process_status="idle"
    session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
    16:11:32.558 IST"
    virtual_transaction_id="4/21" type="create" command_tag="CREATE SCHEMA
    " audit_tag="edbaudit" application_name="pgsql" backend_type="client
    backend">
        <error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
        <message>statement: CREATE SCHEMA edb;</message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
"[local]"
    session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="3" process_status="idle"
    session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
    16:12:00.199 IST"
    virtual_transaction_id="4/23" type="create" command_tag="CREATE TABLE"
    audit_tag="edbaudit" application_name="pgsql" backend_type="client
    backend">
        <error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
        <message>statement: CREATE TABLE dept (
            deptno NUMBER(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk PRIMARY KEY,
            dname VARCHAR2(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE,
            loc VARCHAR2(13));
        </message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
"[local]"
```

```

session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="4" process_status="idle"
session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
16:12:10.992 IST"
virtual_transaction_id="4/24" type="insert" command_tag="INSERT" audit_
tag="edbaudit" application_name="psql" backend_type="client backend">
<error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
<message>statement: INSERT INTO dept VALUES
(10,&'ACCOUNTING'&,'NEW YORK'&;
);
</message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
"[local]"
session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="5" process_status="idle"
session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
16:12:21.764 IST"
virtual_transaction_id="4/25" type="update" command_tag="UPDATE" audit_
tag="edbaudit" application_name="psql" backend_type="client backend">
<error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
<message>statement: UPDATE department SET loc = &'BOSTON'&;
WHERE deptno = 10;
</message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
"[local]"
session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="6" process_status="UPDATE"
session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
16:12:21.765 IST"
virtual_transaction_id="4/25" type="error" sql_state_code="42P01"
command_tag="UPDATE" audit_tag="edbaudit" application_name="psql"
backend_type="client backend">
<error_severity>ERROR</error_severity>
<message>relation "department" does not exist</message>
<query>UPDATE department SET loc = &'BOSTON'&; WHERE deptno =
10;</query>
<query_pos>8</query_pos>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
"[local]"
session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="7" process_status="idle"
session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
16:12:34.878 IST"
virtual_transaction_id="4/26" type="update" command_tag="UPDATE" audit_
tag="edbaudit" application_name="psql" backend_type="client backend">
<error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
<message>statement: UPDATE dept SET loc = &'BOSTON'&; WHERE
deptno = 10;
</message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
"[local]"
session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="8" process_status="idle"
session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
16:12:45.471 IST"
virtual_transaction_id="4/27" type="select" command_tag="SELECT" audit_

```

```

tag="edbaudit" application_name="pgsql" backend_type="client backend">
  <error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
  <message>statement: SELECT * FROM dept;</message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="5941" remote_host=
"[local]"
  session_id="5ec7ac4d.1735" session_line_num="9" process_status="idle"
  session_start_time="2020-05-22 16:11:17 IST" log_time="2020-05-22
  16:12:53.048 IST"
  type="disconnect" audit_tag="edbaudit" application_name="pgsql" backend_
  type="client backend">
  <error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
  <message>disconnection: session time: 0:01:35.243 user=enterprisedb
  database=edb host=[local]</message>
</event>
```

## 12.8.5 Using Error Codes to Filter Audit Logs

Advanced Server includes an extension that you can use to exclude log file entries that include a user-specified error code from the Advanced Server log files. To filter audit log entries, you must first enable the extension by modifying the `postgresql.conf` file, adding the following value to the values specified in the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter:

```
$libdir/edb_filter_log
```

Then, use the `edb_filter_log.errcodes` parameter to specify any error codes you wish to omit from the log files:

```
edb_filter_log.errcode = 'error_code'
```

Where `error_code` specifies one or more error codes that you wish to omit from the log file. Provide multiple error codes in a comma-delimited list.

For example, if `edb_filter_log` is enabled, and `edb_filter_log.errcode` is set to '`23505,23502,22012`', any log entries that return one of the following `SQLSTATE` errors:

`23505` (for violating a unique constraint)

`23502` (for violating a not-null constraint)

`22012` (for dividing by zero)

will be omitted from the log file.

For a complete list of the error codes supported by Advanced Server audit log filtering, see the core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/errcodes-appendix.html>

## 12.8.6 Using Command Tags to Filter Audit Logs

Each entry in the log file except for those displaying an error message contains a *command tag*. A command tag is the SQL command executed for that particular log entry. The command tag makes it possible to use subsequent tools to scan the log file to find entries related to a particular SQL command.

The following is an example in XML form. The example has been formatted for easier review. The command tag is displayed as the `command_tag` attribute of the event element with values `CREATE ROLE`, `ALTER ROLE`, and `DROP ROLE` in the example.

```

<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="64234" remote_host=
"[local]"
  session_id="5ecbc7e6.faea" session_line_num="2" process_status="idle"
  session_start_time="2020-05-25 18:58:06 IST" log_time="2020-05-25
  18:58:21.147 IST"
  virtual_transaction_id="4/30" type="create" command_tag="CREATE ROLE"
  application_name="psql" backend_type="client backend">
    <error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
    <message>statement: CREATE ROLE newuser WITH LOGIN;</message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="64234" remote_host=
"[local]"
  session_id="5ecbc7e6.faea" session_line_num="3" process_status="idle"
  session_start_time="2020-05-25 18:58:06 IST" log_time="2020-05-25
  18:58:34.142 IST"
  virtual_transaction_id="4/31" type="error" sql_state_code="42601"
  application_name="psql" backend_type="client backend">
    <error_severity>ERROR</error_severity>
    <message>unrecognized role option &quot;super&quot;</message>
    <query>ALTER ROLE newuser WITH SUPER USER;</query>
    <query_pos>25</query_pos>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="64234" remote_host=
"[local]"
  session_id="5ecbc7e6.faea" session_line_num="4" process_status="idle"
  session_start_time="2020-05-25 18:58:06 IST" log_time="2020-05-25
  18:58:44.680 IST"
  virtual_transaction_id="4/32" type="alter" command_tag="ALTER ROLE"
  application_name="psql" backend_type="client backend">
    <error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
    <message>statement: ALTER ROLE newuser WITH SUPERUSER;</message>
</event>
<event user="enterprisedb" database="edb" process_id="64234" remote_host=
"[local]"
  session_id="5ecbc7e6.faea" session_line_num="5" process_status="idle"
  session_start_time="2020-05-25 18:58:06 IST" log_time="2020-05-25
  18:58:58.173 IST"
  virtual_transaction_id="4/33" type="drop" command_tag="DROP ROLE"
  application_name="psql" backend_type="client backend">
    <error_severity>AUDIT</error_severity>
    <message>statement: DROP ROLE newuser;</message>
</event>
```

The following is the same example in CSV form. The command tag is the next to last column of each entry. In the listing, the column that appears empty (""), would be the value of the `edb_audit_tag` parameter if provided.

Each audit log entry has been split and displayed across multiple lines, and a blank line has been inserted between the audit log entries for more clarity in the appearance of the results.

```
2020-05-25 19:09:32.105 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",77212,"[local]",5ecbca7b.  
12d9c,2,"idle",2020-05-25 19:09:07 IST,4/30,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: CREATE  
ROLE newuser WITH LOGIN;","",,"psql","client backend","CREATE ROLE","",  
"create"
```

```
2020-05-25 19:09:50.975 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",77212,"[local]",5ecbca7b.  
12d9c,3,"idle",2020-05-25 19:09:07 IST,4/31,0,ERROR,42601,"unrecognized role  
option ""super""",,"ALTER ROLE newuser WITH SUPER USER;","",,"psql",  
"client backend","",,"error"
```

```
2020-05-25 19:10:04.128 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",77212,"[local]",5ecbca7b.  
12d9c,4,"idle",2020-05-25 19:09:07 IST,4/32,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: ALTER  
ROLE newuser WITH SUPERUSER;","",,"psql","client backend","ALTER ROLE","",  
"alter"
```

```
2020-05-25 19:10:15.959 IST,"enterprisedb","edb",77212,"[local]",5ecbca7b.  
12d9c,5,"idle",2020-05-25 19:09:07 IST,4/33,0,AUDIT,00000,"statement: DROP  
ROLE newuser;","",,"psql","client backend","DROP ROLE","",,"drop"
```

## 12.8.7 Redacting Passwords from Audit Logs

You can use the `edb_filter_log.redact_password_commands` extension to instruct the server to redact stored passwords from the log file. Note that the module only recognizes the following syntax:

```
{CREATE|ALTER} {USER|ROLE|GROUP} identifier { [WITH] [ENCRYPTED] PASSWORD  
'nonempty_string_literal' | IDENTIFIED BY { 'nonempty_string_literal' |  
bareword } } [ REPLACE { 'nonempty_string_literal' | bareword } ]
```

When such a statement is logged by `log_statement`, the server will redact the old and new passwords to 'x'. For example, the command:

```
ALTER USER carol PASSWORD '1safePWD' REPLACE 'old_pwd';
```

Will be added to log files as:

```
statement: ALTER USER carol PASSWORD 'x' REPLACE 'x';
```

When a statement that includes a redacted password is logged, the server redacts the statement text. When the statement is logged as context for some other message, the server omits the statement from the context.

To enable password redaction, you must first enable the extension by modifying the `postgresql.conf` file, adding the following value to the values specified in the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter:

```
$libdir/edb_filter_log
```

Then, set `edb_filter_log.redact_password_commands` to `true`:

```
edb_filter_log.redact_password_commands = true
```

After modifying the `postgresql.conf` file, you must restart the server for the changes to take effect.

---

## 12.9 Unicode Collation Algorithm

The *Unicode Collation Algorithm* (UCA) is a specification (*Unicode Technical Report #10*) that defines a customizable method of collating and comparing Unicode data. *Collation* means how data is sorted as with a `SELECT ... ORDER BY` clause. *Comparison* is relevant for searches that use ranges with less than, greater than, or equal to operators.

Customizability is an important factor for various reasons such as the following.

- Unicode supports a vast number of languages. Letters that may be common to several languages may be expected to collate in different orders depending upon the language.
- Characters that appear with letters in certain languages such as accents or umlauts have an impact on the expected collation depending upon the language.
- In some languages, combinations of several consecutive characters should be treated as a single character with regards to its collation sequence.
- There may be certain preferences as to the collation of letters according to case. For example, should the lowercase form of a letter collate before the uppercase form of the same letter or vice versa.
- There may be preferences as to whether punctuation marks such as underscore characters, hyphens, or space characters should be considered in the collating sequence or should they simply be ignored as if they did not exist in the string.

Given all of these variations with the vast number of languages supported by Unicode, there is a necessity for a method to select the specific criteria for determining a collating sequence. This is what the Unicode Collation Algorithm defines.

### Note

In addition, another advantage for using ICU collations (the implementation of the Unicode Collation Algorithm) is for performance. Sorting tasks, including B-tree index creation, can complete in less than half the time it takes with a non-ICU collation. The exact performance gain depends on your operating system version, the language of your text data, and other factors.

The following sections provide a brief, simplified explanation of the Unified Collation Algorithm concepts. As the algorithm and its usage are quite complex with numerous variations, refer to the official documents cited in these sections for complete details.

### Basic Unicode Collation Algorithm Concepts

The official information for the Unicode Collation Algorithm is specified in *Unicode Technical Report #10*, which can be found on The Unicode Consortium website at:

<http://www.unicode.org/reports/tr10/>

The ICU – International Components for Unicode also provides much useful information. An explanation of the collation concepts can be found on their website located at:

<http://userguide.icu-project.org/collation/concepts>

The basic concept behind the Unicode Collation Algorithm is the use of multilevel comparison. This means that a number of levels are defined, which are listed as level 1 through level 5 in the following bullet points. Each level defines a type of comparison. Strings are first compared using the primary level, also called level 1.

If the order can be determined based on the primary level, then the algorithm is done. If the order cannot be determined based on the primary level, then the secondary level, level 2, is applied. If the order can be determined based on the secondary level, then the algorithm is done, otherwise the tertiary level is applied, and so on. There is typically, a final tie-breaking level to determine the order if it cannot be resolved by the prior levels.

- **Level 1 – Primary Level for Base Characters.** The order of basic characters such as letters and digits determines the difference such as `A < B`.
- **Level 2 – Secondary Level for Accents.** If there are no primary level differences, then the presence or absence of accents and other such characters determine the order such as `a < á`.
- **Level 3 – Tertiary Level for Case.** If there are no primary level or secondary level differences, then a difference in case determines the order such as `a < A`.
- **Level 4 – Quaternary Level for Punctuation.** If there are no primary, secondary, or tertiary level differences, then the presence or absence of white space characters, control characters, and punctuation determine the order such as `-A < A`.
- **Level 5 – Identical Level for Tie-Breaking.** If there are no primary, secondary, tertiary, or quaternary level differences, then some other difference such as the code point values determines the order.

## International Components for Unicode

The Unicode Collation Algorithm is implemented by open source software provided by the *International Components for Unicode* (ICU). The software is a set of C/C++ and Java libraries.

When Advanced Server is used to create a collation that invokes the ICU components to produce the collation, the result is referred to as an *ICU collation*.

## Locale Collations

When creating a collation for a locale, a predefined ICU short form name for the given locale is typically provided.

An *ICU short form* is a method of specifying *collation attributes*, which are the properties of a collation. [Collation Attributes](#) provides additional information on collation attributes.

There are predefined ICU short forms for locales. The ICU short form for a locale incorporates the collation attribute settings typically used for the given locale. This simplifies the collation creation process by eliminating the need to specify the entire list of collation attributes for that locale.

The system catalog `pg_catalog.pg_icu_collate_names` contains a list of the names of the ICU short forms for locales. The ICU short form name is listed in column `icu_short_form`.

```
edb=# SELECT icu_short_form, valid_locale FROM pg_icu_collate_names ORDER BY
valid_locale;
icu_short_form | valid_locale
-----+-----
LAF      | af
LAR      | ar
LAS      | as
LAZ      | az
LBE      | be
LBG      | bg
LBN      | bn
LBS      | bs
LBS_ZCYRL | bs_Cyril
LROOT    | ca
LROOT    | chr
LCS      | cs
LCY      | cy
```

```

LDA      | da
LROOT    | de
LROOT    | dz
LEE      | ee
LEL      | el
LROOT    | en
LROOT    | en_US
LEN_RUS_VPOSIX | en_US_POSIX
LEO      | eo
LES      | es
LET      | et
LFA      | fa
LFA_RAF  | fa_AF
.
.
```

If needed, the default characteristics of an ICU short form for a given locale can be overridden by specifying the collation attributes to override that property. This is discussed in the next section.

## Collation Attributes

When creating an ICU collation, the desired characteristics of the collation must be specified. As discussed in [Locale Collations](#), this can typically be done with an ICU short form for the desired locale. However, if more specific information is required, the specification of the collation properties can be done by using *collation attributes*.

Collation attributes define the rules of how characters are to be compared for determining the collation sequence of text strings. As Unicode covers a vast set of languages in numerous variations according to country, territory and culture, these collation attributes are quite complex.

For the complete, precise meaning and usage of collation attributes, see Section “Collator Naming Scheme” on the ICU – International Components for Unicode website at:

<http://userguide.icu-project.org/collation/concepts>

The following is a brief summary of the collation attributes and how they are specified using the ICU short form method

Each collation attribute is represented by an uppercase letter, which are listed in the following bullet points. The possible valid values for each attribute are given by codes shown within the parentheses. Some codes have general meanings for all attributes. **X** means to set the attribute off. **O** means to set the attribute on. **D** means to set the attribute to its default value.

- **A – Alternate (N, S, D)**. Handles treatment of *variable* characters such as white spaces, punctuation marks, and symbols. When set to non-ignorable (N), differences in variable characters are treated with the same importance as differences in letters. When set to shifted (S), then differences in variable characters are of minor importance (that is, the variable character is ignored when comparing base characters).
- **C – Case First (X, L, U, D)**. Controls whether a lowercase letter sorts before the same uppercase letter (L), or the uppercase letter sorts before the same lowercase letter (U). Off (X) is typically specified when lowercase first (L) is desired.
- **E – Case Level (X, O, D)**. Set in combination with the Strength attribute, the Case Level attribute is used when accents are to be ignored, but not case.
- **F – French Collation (X, O, D)**. When set to on, secondary differences (presence of accents) are sorted from the back of the string as done in the French Canadian locale.
- **H – Hiragana Quaternary (X, O, D)**. Introduces an additional level to distinguish between the Hiragana and Katakana characters for compatibility with the JIS X 4061 collation of Japanese character strings.
- **N – Normalization Checking (X, O, D)**. Controls whether or not text is thoroughly normalized for comparison.

Normalization deals with the issue of canonical equivalence of text whereby different code point sequences represent the same character, which then present issues when sorting or comparing such characters. Languages such as Arabic, ancient Greek, Hebrew, Hindi, Thai, or Vietnamese should be used with Normalization Checking set to on.

- **S – Strength (1, 2, 3, 4, I, D).** Maximum collation level used for comparison. Influences whether accents or case are taken into account when collating or comparing strings. Each number represents a level. A setting of I represents identical strength (that is, level 5).
- **T – Variable Top (hexadecimal digits).** Applicable only when the Alternate attribute is not set to non-ignorable (N). The hexadecimal digits specify the highest character sequence that is to be considered ignorable. For example, if white space is to be ignorable, but visible variable characters are not to be ignorable, then Variable Top set to 0020 would be specified along with the Alternate attribute set to S and the Strength attribute set to 3. (The space character is hexadecimal 0020. Other non-visible variable characters such as backspace, tab, line feed, carriage return, etc. have values less than 0020. All visible punctuation marks have values greater than 0020.)

A set of collation attributes and their values is represented by a text string consisting of the collation attribute letter concatenated with the desired attribute value. Each attribute/value pair is joined to the next pair with an underscore character as shown by the following example.

#### **AN\_CX\_EX\_FX\_HX\_NO\_S3**

Collation attributes can be specified along with a locale's ICU short form name to override those default attribute settings of the locale.

The following is an example where the ICU short form named **LROOT** is modified with a number of other collation attribute/value pairs.

#### **AN\_CX\_EX\_LROOT\_NO\_S3**

In the preceding example, the Alternate attribute **(A)** is set to non-ignorable **(N)**. The Case First attribute **(C)** is set to off **(X)**. The Case Level attribute **(E)** is set to off **(X)**. The Normalization attribute **(N)** is set to on **(O)**. The Strength attribute **(S)** is set to the tertiary level **3**. **LROOT** is the ICU short form to which these other attributes are applying modifications.

## Using a Collation

A newly defined ICU collation can be used anywhere the **COLLATION "collation\_name"** clause can be used in a SQL command such as in the column specifications of the **CREATE TABLE** command or appended to an expression in the **ORDER BY** clause of a **SELECT** command.

The following are some examples of the creation and usage of ICU collations based on the English language in the United States (**en\_US.UTF8**).

In these examples, ICU collations are created with the following characteristics.

Collation **icu\_collate\_lowercase** forces the lowercase form of a letter to sort before its uppercase counterpart (**CL**).

Collation **icu\_collate\_uppercase** forces the uppercase form of a letter to sort before its lowercase counterpart (**CU**).

Collation **icu\_collate\_ignore\_punct** causes variable characters (white space and punctuation marks) to be ignored during sorting (**AS**).

Collation **icu\_collate\_ignore\_white\_sp** causes white space and other non-visible variable characters to be ignored during sorting, but visible variable characters (punctuation marks) are not ignored (**AS**, **T0020**).

```
CREATE COLLATION icu_collate_lowercase (
  LOCALE = 'en_US.UTF8',
  ICU_SHORT_FORM = 'AN_CL_EX_NX_LROOT'
```

```
);

CREATE COLLATION icu_collate_uppercase (
    LOCALE = 'en_US.UTF8',
    ICU_SHORT_FORM = 'AN_CU_EX_NX_LROOT'
);
```

```
CREATE COLLATION icu_collate_ignore_punct (
    LOCALE = 'en_US.UTF8',
    ICU_SHORT_FORM = 'AS_CX_EX_NX_LROOT_L3'
);
```

```
CREATE COLLATION icu_collate_ignore_white_sp (
    LOCALE = 'en_US.UTF8',
    ICU_SHORT_FORM = 'AS_CX_EX_NX_LROOT_L3_T0020'
);
```

## Note

When creating collations, ICU may generate notice and warning messages when attributes are given to modify the **LROOT** collation.

The following `psql` command lists the collations.

```
edb=# \dO
              List of collations
 Schema |      Name      | Collate | Ctype
 |       ICU        |
-----+-----+-----+-----+
enterprisedb | icu_collate_ignore_punct | en_US.UTF8 | en_US.UTF8 |
AS_CX_EX_NX_LROOT_L3
enterprisedb | icu_collate_ignore_white_sp | en_US.UTF8 | en_US.UTF8 |
AS_CX_EX_NX_LROOT_L3_T0020
enterprisedb | icu_collate_lowercase     | en_US.UTF8 | en_US.UTF8 |
AN_CL_EX_NX_LROOT
enterprisedb | icu_collate_uppercase     | en_US.UTF8 | en_US.UTF8 |
AN_CU_EX_NX_LROOT
(4 rows)
```

The following table is created and populated.

```
CREATE TABLE collate_tbl (
    id      INTEGER,
    c2      VARCHAR(2)
);

INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (1, 'A');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (2, 'B');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (3, 'C');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (4, 'a');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (5, 'b');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (6, 'c');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (7, '1');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (8, '2');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (9, '.B');
```

```
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (10, '-B');
INSERT INTO collate_tbl VALUES (11, ' B');
```

The following query sorts on column `c2` using the default collation. Note that variable characters (white space and punctuation marks) with id column values of `9`, `10`, and `11` are ignored and sort with the letter `B`.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM collate_tbl ORDER BY c2;
id | c2
----+-
7 | 1
8 | 2
4 | a
1 | A
5 | b
2 | B
11 | B
10 | -B
9 | .B
6 | c
3 | C
(11 rows)
```

The following query sorts on column `c2` using collation `icu_collate_lowercase`, which forces the lowercase form of a letter to sort before the uppercase form of the same base letter. Also note that the `AN` attribute forces variable characters to be included in the sort order at the same level when comparing base characters so rows with `id` values of `9`, `10`, and `11` appear at the beginning of the sort list before all letters and numbers.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM collate_tbl ORDER BY c2 COLLATE "icu_collate_lowercase";
id | c2
----+-
11 | B
10 | -B
9 | .B
7 | 1
8 | 2
4 | a
1 | A
5 | b
2 | B
6 | c
3 | C
(11 rows)
```

The following query sorts on column `c2` using collation `icu_collate_uppercase`, which forces the uppercase form of a letter to sort before the lowercase form of the same base letter.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM collate_tbl ORDER BY c2 COLLATE "icu_collate_uppercase";
id | c2
----+-
11 | B
10 | -B
9 | .B
7 | 1
8 | 2
1 | A
4 | a
```

```
2 | B
5 | b
3 | C
6 | c
(11 rows)
```

The following query sorts on column `c2` using collation `icu_collate_ignore_punct`, which causes variable characters to be ignored so rows with id values of `9`, `10`, and `11` sort with the letter `B` as that is the character immediately following the ignored variable character.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM collate_tbl ORDER BY c2 COLLATE
"icu_collate_ignore_punct";
id | c2
----+---
7 | 1
8 | 2
4 | a
1 | A
5 | b
11 | B
2 | B
9 | .B
10 | -B
6 | c
3 | C
(11 rows)
```

The following query sorts on column `c2` using collation `icu_collate_ignore_white_sp`. The `AS` and `T0020` attributes of the collation cause variable characters with code points less than or equal to hexadecimal `0020` to be ignored while variable characters with code points greater than hexadecimal `0020` are included in the sort.

The row with id value of `11`, which starts with a space character (hexadecimal `0020`) sorts with the letter `B`. The rows with id values of `9` and `10`, which start with visible punctuation marks greater than hexadecimal `0020`, appear at the beginning of the sort list as these particular variable characters are included in the sort order at the same level when comparing base characters.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM collate_tbl ORDER BY c2 COLLATE
"icu_collate_ignore_white_sp";
id | c2
----+---
10 | -B
9 | .B
7 | 1
8 | 2
4 | a
1 | A
5 | b
11 | B
2 | B
6 | c
3 | C
(11 rows)
```

## 12.10 EDB Resource Manager

*EDB Resource Manager* is an Advanced Server feature that provides the capability to control the usage of operating system resources used by Advanced Server processes.

This capability allows you to protect the system from processes that may uncontrollably overuse and monopolize certain system resources.

The following are some key points about using EDB Resource Manager.

- The basic component of EDB Resource Manager is a resource group. A *resource group* is a named, global group, available to all databases in an Advanced Server instance, on which various resource usage limits can be defined. Advanced Server processes that are assigned as members of a given resource group are then controlled by EDB Resource Manager so that the aggregate resource usage of all processes in the group is kept near the limits defined on the group.
- Data definition language commands are used to create, alter, and drop resource groups. These commands can only be used by a database user with superuser privileges.
- The desired, aggregate consumption level of all processes belonging to a resource group is defined by *resource type parameters*. There are different resource type parameters for the different types of system resources currently supported by EDB Resource Manager.
- Multiple resource groups can be created, each with different settings for its resource type parameters, thus defining different consumption levels for each resource group.
- EDB Resource Manager throttles processes in a resource group to keep resource consumption near the limits defined by the resource type parameters. If there are multiple resource type parameters with defined settings in a resource group, the actual resource consumption may be significantly lower for certain resource types than their defined resource type parameter settings. This is because EDB Resource Manager throttles processes attempting to keep *all resources with defined resource type settings within their defined limits*.
- The definition of available resource groups and their resource type settings are stored in a shared global system catalog. Thus, resource groups can be utilized by all databases in a given Advanced Server instance.
- The `edb_max_resource_groups` configuration parameter sets the maximum number of resource groups that can be active simultaneously with running processes. The default setting is 16 resource groups. Changes to this parameter take effect on database server restart.
- Use the `SET edb_resource_group TO group_name` command to assign the current process to a specified resource group. Use the `RESET edb_resource_group` command or `SET edb_resource_group TO DEFAULT` to remove the current process from a resource group.
- A default resource group can be assigned to a role using the `ALTER ROLE ... SET` command, or to a database by the `ALTER DATABASE ... SET` command. The entire database server instance can be assigned a default resource group by setting the parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file.
- In order to include resource groups in a backup file of the database server instance, use the `pg_dumpall` backup utility with default settings (That is, do not specify any of the `--globals-only`, `--roles-only`, or `-- tablespaces-only` options.)

### Creating and Managing Resource Groups

The data definition language commands described in this section provide for the creation and management of resource groups.

#### CREATE RESOURCE GROUP

Use the `CREATE RESOURCE GROUP` command to create a new resource group.

```
CREATE RESOURCE GROUP <group_name>;
```

#### Description

The `CREATE RESOURCE GROUP` command creates a resource group with the specified name. Resource limits

can then be defined on the group with the **ALTER RESOURCE GROUP** command. The resource group is accessible from all databases in the Advanced Server instance.

To use the **CREATE RESOURCE GROUP** command you must have superuser privileges.

## Parameters

### group\_name

The name of the resource group.

## Example

The following example results in the creation of three resource groups named `resgrp_a`, `resgrp_b`, and `resgrp_c`.

```
edb=# CREATE RESOURCE GROUP resgrp_a;
CREATE RESOURCE GROUP
edb=# CREATE RESOURCE GROUP resgrp_b;
CREATE RESOURCE GROUP
edb=# CREATE RESOURCE GROUP resgrp_c;
CREATE RESOURCE GROUP
```

The following query shows the entries for the resource groups in the `edb_resource_group` catalog.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_resource_group;
rgrpname | rgrpcpuratelim | rgrpdirtyratelim
-----+-----+
resgrp_a |      0 | 0
resgrp_b |      0 | 0
resgrp_c |      0 | 0
(3 rows)
```

## ALTER RESOURCE GROUP

Use the **ALTER RESOURCE GROUP** command to change the attributes of an existing resource group. The command syntax comes in three forms.

The first form renames the resource group:

```
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP <group_name> RENAME TO <new_name>;
```

The second form assigns a resource type to the resource group:

```
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP <group_name> SET
<resource_type> { TO | = } { <value> | DEFAULT };
```

The third form resets the assignment of a resource type to its default within the group:

```
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP <group_name> RESET <resource_type>;
```

## Description

The **ALTER RESOURCE GROUP** command changes certain attributes of an existing resource group.

The first form with the **RENAME TO** clause assigns a new name to an existing resource group.

The second form with the **SET resource\_type TO** clause either assigns the specified literal value to a resource

type, or resets the resource type when `DEFAULT` is specified. Resetting or setting a resource type to `DEFAULT` means that the resource group has no defined limit on that resource type.

The third form with the `RESET resource_type` clause resets the resource type for the group as described previously.

To use the `ALTER RESOURCE GROUP` command, you must have superuser privileges.

## Parameters

`group_name`

The name of the resource group to be altered.

`new_name`

The new name to be assigned to the resource group.

`resource_type`

The resource type parameter specifying the type of resource to which a usage value is to be set.

`value | DEFAULT`

When `value` is specified, the literal value to be assigned to `resource_type`. When `DEFAULT` is specified, the assignment of `resource_type` is reset for the resource group.

## Example

The following are examples of the `ALTER RESOURCE GROUP` command.

```
edb=# ALTER RESOURCE GROUP resgrp_a RENAME TO newgrp;
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP
edb=# ALTER RESOURCE GROUP resgrp_b SET cpu_rate_limit = .5;
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP
edb=# ALTER RESOURCE GROUP resgrp_b SET dirty_rate_limit = 6144;
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP
edb=# ALTER RESOURCE GROUP resgrp_c RESET cpu_rate_limit;
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP
```

The following query shows the results of the `ALTER RESOURCE GROUP` commands to the entries in the `edb_resource_group` catalog.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_resource_group;
rgrpname | rgrpcpuratelim | rgrpdirtyratelim
-----+-----+
newgrp  | 0          | 0
resgrp_b | 0.5       | 6144
resgrp_c | 0          | 0
(3 rows)
```

## DROP RESOURCE GROUP

Use the `DROP RESOURCE GROUP` command to remove a resource group.

```
DROP RESOURCE GROUP [ IF EXISTS ] <group_name>;
```

## Description

The `DROP RESOURCE GROUP` command removes a resource group with the specified name.

To use the `DROP RESOURCE GROUP` command you must have superuser privileges.

## Parameters

`group_name`

The name of the resource group to be removed.

`IF EXISTS`

Do not throw an error if the resource group does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

## Example

The following example removes resource group `newgrp`.

```
edb=# DROP RESOURCE GROUP newgrp
DROP RESOURCE GROUP
```

## Assigning a Process to a Resource Group

Use the `SET edb_resource_group TO group_name` command to assign the current process to a specified resource group as shown by the following.

```
edb=# SET edb_resource_group TO resgrp_b;
SET
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
resgrp_b
(1 row)
```

The resource type settings of the group immediately take effect on the current process. If the command is used to change the resource group assigned to the current process, the resource type settings of the newly assigned group immediately take effect.

Processes can be included by default in a resource group by assigning a default resource group to roles, databases, or an entire database server instance.

A default resource group can be assigned to a role using the `ALTER ROLE ... SET` command. For more information about the `ALTER ROLE` command, refer to the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-alterrole.html>

A default resource group can be assigned to a database by the `ALTER DATABASE ... SET` command. For more information about the `ALTER DATABASE` command, refer to the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-alterdatabase.html>

The entire database server instance can be assigned a default resource group by setting the `edb_resource_group` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file as shown by the following.

```
### - EDB Resource Manager -
#edb_max_resource_groups = 16      # 0-65536 (change requires restart)
```

```
edb_resource_group = 'resgrp_b'
```

A change to `edb_resource_group` in the `postgresql.conf` file requires a configuration file reload before it takes effect on the database server instance.

## Removing a Process from a Resource Group

Set `edb_resource_group` to `DEFAULT` or use `RESET edb_resource_group` to remove the current process from a resource group as shown by the following.

```
edb=# SET edb_resource_group TO DEFAULT;
SET
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
(1 row)
```

For removing a default resource group from a role, use the `ALTER ROLE ... RESET` form of the `ALTER ROLE` command.

For removing a default resource group from a database, use the `ALTER DATABASE ... RESET` form of the `ALTER DATABASE` command.

For removing a default resource group from the database server instance, set the `edb_resource_group` configuration parameter to an empty string in the `postgresql.conf` file and reload the configuration file.

## Monitoring Processes in Resource Groups

After resource groups have been created, the number of processes actively using these resource groups can be obtained from the view `edb_all_resource_groups`.

The columns in `edb_all_resource_groups` are the following:

- **group\_name**. Name of the resource group.
- **active\_processes**. Number of active processes in the resource group.
- **cpu\_rate\_limit**. The value of the CPU rate limit resource type assigned to the resource group.
- **per\_process\_cpu\_rate\_limit**. The CPU rate limit applicable to an individual, active process in the resource group.
- **dirty\_rate\_limit**. The value of the dirty rate limit resource type assigned to the resource group.
- **per\_process\_dirty\_rate\_limit**. The dirty rate limit applicable to an individual, active process in the resource group.

### Note

Columns `per_process_cpu_rate_limit` and `per_process_dirty_rate_limit` do not show the *actual* resource consumption used by the processes, but indicate how `EDB Resource Manager` sets the resource limit for an individual process based upon the number of active processes in the resource group.

The following shows `edb_all_resource_groups` when resource group `resgrp_a` contains no active processes, resource group `resgrp_b` contains two active processes, and resource group `resgrp_c` contains one active process.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_all_resource_groups ORDER BY group_name;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+
group_name      | resgrp_a
active_processes | 0
```

```

cpu_rate_limit      | 0.5
per_process_cpu_rate_limit |
dirty_rate_limit    | 12288
per_process_dirty_rate_limit |
-[ RECORD 2 ]-----+
group_name          | resgrp_b
active_processes    | 2
cpu_rate_limit      | 0.4
per_process_cpu_rate_limit | 0.195694289022895
dirty_rate_limit    | 6144
per_process_dirty_rate_limit | 3785.92924684337
-[ RECORD 3 ]-----+
group_name          | resgrp_c
active_processes    | 1
cpu_rate_limit      | 0.3
per_process_cpu_rate_limit | 0.292342129631091
dirty_rate_limit    | 3072
per_process_dirty_rate_limit | 3072

```

The CPU rate limit and dirty rate limit settings that are assigned to these resource groups are as follows.

```

edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_resource_group;
rgrpname | rgrpcpuratelim | rgrpdirtyratelim
-----+-----+
resgrp_a | 0.5      | 12288
resgrp_b | 0.4      | 6144
resgrp_c | 0.3      | 3072
(3 rows)

```

In the `edb_all_resource_groups` view, note that the `per_process_cpu_rate_limit` and `per_process_dirty_rate_limit` values are roughly the corresponding CPU rate limit and dirty rate limit divided by the number of active processes.

## CPU Usage Throttling

CPU usage of a resource group is controlled by setting the `cpu_rate_limit` resource type parameter.

Set the `cpu_rate_limit` parameter to the fraction of CPU time over wall-clock time to which the combined, simultaneous CPU usage of all processes in the group should not exceed. Thus, the value assigned to `cpu_rate_limit` should typically be less than or equal to 1.

The valid range of the `cpu_rate_limit` parameter is 0 to `1.67772e+07`. A setting of 0 means no CPU rate limit has been set for the resource group.

When multiplied by 100, the `cpu_rate_limit` can also be interpreted as the CPU usage percentage for a resource group.

EDB Resource Manager utilizes *CPU throttling* to keep the aggregate CPU usage of all processes in the group within the limit specified by the `cpu_rate_limit` parameter. A process in the group may be interrupted and put into sleep mode for a short interval of time to maintain the defined limit. When and how such interruptions occur is defined by a proprietary algorithm used by EDB Resource Manager.

## Setting the CPU Rate Limit for a Resource Group

The `ALTER RESOURCE GROUP` command with the `SET cpu_rate_limit` clause is used to set the CPU rate limit

for a resource group.

In the following example the CPU usage limit is set to 50% for `resgrp_a`, 40% for `resgrp_b` and 30% for `resgrp_c`. This means that the combined CPU usage of all processes assigned to `resgrp_a` is maintained at approximately 50%. Similarly, for all processes in `resgrp_b`, the combined CPU usage is kept to approximately 40%, etc.

```
edb=# ALTER RESOURCE GROUP resgrp_a SET cpu_rate_limit TO .5;
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP
edb=# ALTER RESOURCE GROUP resgrp_b SET cpu_rate_limit TO .4;
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP
edb=# ALTER RESOURCE GROUP resgrp_c SET cpu_rate_limit TO .3;
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP
```

The following query shows the settings of `cpu_rate_limit` in the catalog.

```
edb=# SELECT rgrpname, rgrpcpuratelimt FROM edb_resource_group;
rgrpname | rgrpcpuratelimt
-----+-----
resgrp_a |      0.5
resgrp_b |      0.4
resgrp_c |      0.3
(3 rows)
```

Changing the `cpu_rate_limit` of a resource group not only affects new processes that are assigned to the group, but any currently running processes that are members of the group are immediately affected by the change. That is, if the `cpu_rate_limit` is changed from .5 to .3, currently running processes in the group would be throttled downward so that the aggregate group CPU usage would be near 30% instead of 50%.

To illustrate the effect of setting the CPU rate limit for resource groups, the following examples use a CPU-intensive calculation of 20000 factorial (multiplication of 20000 \* 19999 \* 19998, etc.) performed by the query `SELECT 20000!`; run in the `psql` command line utility.

The resource groups with the CPU rate limit settings shown in the previous query are used in these examples.

## Example – Single Process in a Single Group

The following shows that the current process is set to use resource group `resgrp_b`. The factorial calculation is then started.

```
edb=# SET edb_resource_group TO resgrp_b;
SET
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
resgrp_b
(1 row)
edb=# SELECT 20000!;
```

In a second session, the Linux `top` command is used to display the CPU usage as shown under the `%CPU` column. The following is a snapshot at an arbitrary point in time as the `top` command output periodically changes.

```
$ top
top - 16:37:03 up 4:15, 7 users, load average: 0.49, 0.20, 0.38
Tasks: 202 total, 1 running, 201 sleeping, 0 stopped, 0 zombie
Cpu(s): 42.7%us, 2.3%sy, 0.0%ni, 55.0%id, 0.0%wa, 0.0%hi, 0.0%si, 0.0
```

```
Mem: 1025624k total, 791160k used, 234464k free, 23400k buffers
Swap: 103420k total, 13404k used, 90016k free, 373504k cached
```

PID	USER	PR	NI	VIRT	RES	SHR	S	%CPU	%MEM	TIME+	COMMAND
28915	enterpri	20	0	195m	5900	4212	S	39.9	0.6	3:36.98	edb-postgres
1033	root	20	0	171m	77m	2960	S	1.0	7.8	3:43.96	Xorg
3040	user	20	0	278m	22m	14m	S	1.0	2.2	3:41.72	knotify4

The `psql` session performing the factorial calculation is shown by the row where `edb-postgres` appears under the `COMMAND` column. The CPU usage of the session shown under the `%CPU` column shows 39.9, which is close to the 40% CPU limit set for resource group `resgrp_b`.

By contrast, if the `psql` session is removed from the resource group and the factorial calculation is performed again, the CPU usage is much higher.

```
edb=# SET edb_resource_group TO DEFAULT;
SET
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
(1 row)

edb=# SELECT 20000!;
```

Under the `%CPU` column for `edb-postgres`, the CPU usage is now 93.6, which is significantly higher than the 39.9 when the process was part of the resource group.

```
$ top
top - 16:43:03 up 4:21, 7 users, load average: 0.66, 0.33, 0.37
Tasks: 202 total, 5 running, 197 sleeping, 0 stopped, 0 zombie
Cpu(s): 96.7%us, 3.3%sy, 0.0%ni, 0.0%id, 0.0%wa, 0.0%hi, 0.0%si, 0.0
Mem: 1025624k total, 791228k used, 234396k free, 23560k buffers
Swap: 103420k total, 13404k used, 90016k free, 373508k cached
```

PID	USER	PR	NI	VIRT	RES	SHR	S	%CPU	%MEM	TIME+	COMMAND
28915	enterpri	20	0	195m	5900	4212	R	93.6	0.6	5:01.56	edb-postgres
1033	root	20	0	171m	77m	2960	S	1.0	7.8	3:48.15	Xorg
2907	user	20	0	98.7m	11m	9100	S	0.3	1.2	0:46.51	vmware-user-lo

## Example – Multiple Processes in a Single Group

As stated previously, the CPU rate limit applies to the aggregate of all processes in the resource group. This concept is illustrated in the following example.

The factorial calculation is performed simultaneously in two separate `psql` sessions, each of which has been added to resource group `resgrp_b` that has `cpu_rate_limit` set to .4 (CPU usage of 40%).

### Session 1:

```
edb=# SET edb_resource_group TO resgrp_b;
SET
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
resgrp_b
(1 row)

edb=# SELECT 20000!;
```

**Session 2:**

```
edb=# SET edb_resource_group TO resgrp_b;
SET
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
resgrp_b
(1 row)

edb=# SELECT 20000!;
```

A third session monitors the CPU usage.

```
$ top
top - 16:53:03 up 4:31, 7 users, load average: 0.31, 0.19, 0.27
Tasks: 202 total, 1 running, 201 sleeping, 0 stopped, 0 zombie
Cpu(s): 41.2%us, 3.0%sy, 0.0%ni, 55.8%id, 0.0%wa, 0.0%hi, 0.0%si, 0.0
Mem: 1025624k total, 792020k used, 233604k free, 23844k buffers
Swap: 103420k total, 13404k used, 90016k free, 373508k cached

 PID USER PR NI VIRT RES SHR S %CPU %MEM TIME+ COMMAND
29857 enterpri 20 0 195m 4708 3312 S 19.9 0.5 0:57.35 edb-postgres
28915 enterpri 20 0 195m 5900 4212 S 19.6 0.6 5:35.49 edb-postgres
3040 user 20 0 278m 22m 14m S 1.0 2.2 3:54.99 knotify4
1033 root 20 0 171m 78m 2960 S 0.3 7.8 3:55.71 Xorg
```

There are now two processes named `edb-postgres` with `%CPU` values of 19.9 and 19.6, whose sum is close to the 40% CPU usage set for resource group `resgrp_b`.

The following command sequence displays the sum of all `edb-postgres` processes sampled over half second time intervals. This shows how the total CPU usage of the processes in the resource group changes over time as EDB Resource Manager throttles the processes to keep the total resource group CPU usage near 40%.

```
$ while [[ 1 -eq 1 ]]; do top -d0.5 -b -n2 | grep edb-postgres | awk '{ SUM
+= $9} END { print SUM / 2 }'; done
37.2
39.1
38.9
38.3
44.7
39.2
42.5
```

```
39.1
39.2
39.2
41
42.85
46.1
.
.
```

## Example – Multiple Processes in Multiple Groups

In this example, two additional `psql` sessions are used along with the previous two sessions. The third and fourth sessions perform the same factorial calculation within resource group `resgrp_c` with a `cpu_rate_limit` of `.3` (30% CPU usage).

### Session 3:

```
edb=# SET edb_resource_group TO resgrp_c;
SET
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
resgrp_c
(1 row)

edb=# SELECT 20000!;
```

### Session 4:

```
edb=# SET edb_resource_group TO resgrp_c;
SET
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
resgrp_c
(1 row)
edb=# SELECT 20000!;
```

The `top` command displays the following output.

```
$ top
top - 17:45:09 up 5:23, 8 users, load average: 0.47, 0.17, 0.26
Tasks: 203 total, 4 running, 199 sleeping, 0 stopped, 0 zombie
Cpu(s): 70.2%us, 0.0%sy, 0.0%ni, 29.8%id, 0.0%wa, 0.0%hi, 0.0%si, 0.0
Mem: 1025624k total, 806140k used, 219484k free, 25296k buffers
Swap: 103420k total, 13404k used, 90016k free, 374092k cached

 PID USER PR NI VIRT RES SHR S %CPU %MEM TIME+ COMMAND
29857 enterpri 20 0 195m 4820 3324 S 19.9 0.5 4:25.02 edb-postgres
28915 enterpri 20 0 195m 5900 4212 R 19.6 0.6 9:07.50 edb-postgres
29023 enterpri 20 0 195m 4744 3248 R 16.3 0.5 4:01.73 edb-postgres
11019 enterpri 20 0 195m 4120 2764 R 15.3 0.4 0:04.92 edb-postgres
2907 user 20 0 98.7m 12m 9112 S 1.3 1.2 0:56.54 vmware-user-lo
```

```
3040 user 20 0 278m 22m 14m S 1.3 2.2 4:38.73 knotify4
```

The two resource groups in use have CPU usage limits of 40% and 30%. The sum of the %CPU column for the first two `edb-postgres` processes is 39.5 (approximately 40%, which is the limit for `resgrp_b`) and the sum of the %CPU column for the third and fourth `edb-postgres` processes is 31.6 (approximately 30%, which is the limit for `resgrp_c`).

The sum of the CPU usage limits of the two resource groups to which these processes belong is 70%. The following output shows that the sum of the four processes borders around 70%.

```
$ while [[ 1 -eq 1 ]]; do top -d0.5 -b -n2 | grep edb-postgres | awk '{ SUM  
+= $9} END { print SUM / 2 }'; done  
61.8  
76.4  
72.6  
69.55  
64.55  
79.95  
68.55  
71.25  
74.85  
62  
74.85  
76.9  
72.4  
65.9  
74.9  
68.25
```

By contrast, if three sessions are processing where two sessions remain in `resgrp_b`, but the third session does not belong to any resource group, the `top` command shows the following output.

```
$ top  
top - 17:24:55 up 5:03, 7 users, load average: 1.00, 0.41, 0.38  
Tasks: 199 total, 3 running, 196 sleeping, 0 stopped, 0 zombie  
Cpu(s): 99.7%us, 0.3%sy, 0.0%ni, 0.0%id, 0.0%wa, 0.0%hi, 0.0%si, 0.0  
Mem: 1025624k total, 797692k used, 227932k free, 24724k buffers  
Swap: 103420k total, 13404k used, 90016k free, 374068k cached  
  
 PID USER PR NI VIRT RES SHR S %CPU %MEM TIME+ COMMAND  
29023 enterpri 20 0 195m 4744 3248 R 58.6 0.5 2:53.75 edb-postgres  
28915 enterpri 20 0 195m 5900 4212 S 18.9 0.6 7:58.45 edb-postgres  
29857 enterpri 20 0 195m 4820 3324 S 18.9 0.5 3:14.85 edb-postgres  
1033 root 20 0 174m 81m 2960 S 1.7 8.2 4:26.50 Xorg  
3040 user 20 0 278m 22m 14m S 1.0 2.2 4:21.20 knotify4
```

The second and third `edb-postgres` processes belonging to the resource group where the CPU usage is limited to 40%, have a total CPU usage of 37.8. However, the first `edb-postgres` process has a 58.6% CPU usage as it is not within a resource group, and basically utilizes the remaining, available CPU resources on the system.

Likewise, the following output shows the sum of all three sessions is around 95% since one of the sessions has no set limit on its CPU usage.

```
$ while [[ 1 -eq 1 ]]; do top -d0.5 -b -n2 | grep edb-postgres | awk '{ SUM  
+= $9} END { print SUM / 2 }'; done  
96  
90.35
```

```

92.55
96.4
94.1
90.7
95.7
95.45
93.65
87.95
96.75
94.25
95.45
97.35
92.9
96.05
96.25
94.95
.
.
```

## Dirty Buffer Throttling

Writing to shared buffers is controlled by setting the `dirty_rate_limit` resource type parameter.

Set the `dirty_rate_limit` parameter to the number of kilobytes per second for the combined rate at which all the processes in the group should write to or “dirty” the shared buffers. An example setting would be 3072 kilobytes per seconds.

The valid range of the `dirty_rate_limit` parameter is `0` to `1.67772e+07`. A setting of 0 means no dirty rate limit has been set for the resource group.

EDB Resource Manager utilizes *dirty buffer throttling* to keep the aggregate, shared buffer writing rate of all processes in the group near the limit specified by the `dirty_rate_limit` parameter. A process in the group may be interrupted and put into sleep mode for a short interval of time to maintain the defined limit. When and how such interruptions occur is defined by a proprietary algorithm used by EDB Resource Manager.

## Setting the Dirty Rate Limit for a Resource Group

The `ALTER RESOURCE GROUP` command with the `SET dirty_rate_limit` clause is used to set the dirty rate limit for a resource group.

In the following example the dirty rate limit is set to 12288 kilobytes per second for `resgrp_a`, 6144 kilobytes per second for `resgrp_b` and 3072 kilobytes per second for `resgrp_c`. This means that the combined writing rate to the shared buffer of all processes assigned to `resgrp_a` is maintained at approximately 12288 kilobytes per second. Similarly, for all processes in `resgrp_b`, the combined writing rate to the shared buffer is kept to approximately 6144 kilobytes per second, etc.

```

edb=# ALTER RESOURCE GROUP resgrp_a SET dirty_rate_limit TO 12288;
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP
edb=# ALTER RESOURCE GROUP resgrp_b SET dirty_rate_limit TO 6144;
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP
edb=# ALTER RESOURCE GROUP resgrp_c SET dirty_rate_limit TO 3072;
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP
```

The following query shows the settings of `dirty_rate_limit` in the catalog.

```
edb=# SELECT rgrpname, rgrpdirtyratelimit FROM edb_resource_group;
rgrpname | rgrpdirtyratelimit
-----+-----
resgrp_a |      12288
resgrp_b |      6144
resgrp_c |      3072
(3 rows)
```

Changing the `dirty_rate_limit` of a resource group not only affects new processes that are assigned to the group, but any currently running processes that are members of the group are immediately affected by the change. That is, if the `dirty_rate_limit` is changed from 12288 to 3072, currently running processes in the group would be throttled downward so that the aggregate group dirty rate would be near 3072 kilobytes per second instead of 12288 kilobytes per second.

To illustrate the effect of setting the dirty rate limit for resource groups, the following examples use the following table for intensive I/O operations.

```
CREATE TABLE t1 (c1 INTEGER, c2 CHARACTER(500)) WITH (FILLFACTOR = 10);
```

The `FILLFACTOR = 10` clause results in `INSERT` commands packing rows up to only 10% per page. This results in a larger sampling of dirty shared blocks for the purpose of these examples.

The `pg_stat_statements` module is used to display the number of shared buffer blocks that are dirtied by a SQL command and the amount of time the command took to execute. This provides the information to calculate the actual kilobytes per second writing rate for the SQL command, and thus compare it to the dirty rate limit set for a resource group.

In order to use the `pg_stat_statements` module, perform the following steps.

**Step 1:** In the `postgresql.conf` file, add `$libdir/pg_stat_statements` to the `shared_preload_libraries` configuration parameter as shown by the following.

```
shared_preload_libraries = '$libdir/dbms_pipe,$libdir/edb_gen,$libdir/
pg_stat_statements'
```

**Step 2:** Restart the database server.

**Step 3:** Use the `CREATE EXTENSION` command to complete the creation of the `pg_stat_statements` module.

```
edb=# CREATE EXTENSION pg_stat_statements SCHEMA public;
CREATE EXTENSION
```

The `pg_stat_statements_reset()` function is used to clear out the `pg_stat_statements` view for clarity of each example.

The resource groups with the dirty rate limit settings shown in the previous query are used in these examples.

## Example – Single Process in a Single Group

The following sequence of commands shows the creation of table `t1`. The current process is set to use resource group `resgrp_b`. The `pg_stat_statements` view is cleared out by running the `pg_stat_statements_reset()` function.

Finally, the `INSERT` command generates a series of integers from 1 to 10,000 to populate the table, and dirty approximately 10,000 blocks.

```

edb=# CREATE TABLE t1 (c1 INTEGER, c2 CHARACTER(500)) WITH (FILLFACTOR = 10);
CREATE TABLE
edb=# SET edb_resource_group TO resgrp_b;
SET
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
resgrp_b
(1 row)

edb=# SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset();
pg_stat_statements_reset
-----
(1 row)

edb=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (generate_series (1,10000), 'aaa');
INSERT 0 10000

```

The following shows the results from the `INSERT` command.

```

edb=# SELECT query, rows, total_time, shared_blks_dirtied FROM
pg_stat_statements;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+
query      | INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (generate_series (?,?), ?);
rows       | 10000
total_time   | 13496.184
shared_blks_dirtied | 10003

```

The actual dirty rate is calculated as follows.

- The number of blocks dirtied per millisecond (ms) is 10003 blocks / 13496.184 ms, which yields *0.74117247 blocks per millisecond*.
- Multiply the result by 1000 to give the number of shared blocks dirtied per second (1 second = 1000 ms), which yields *741.17247 blocks per second*.
- Multiply the result by 8.192 to give the number of kilobytes dirtied per second (1 block = 8.192 kilobytes), which yields approximately *6072 kilobytes per second*.

Note that the actual dirty rate of 6072 kilobytes per second is close to the dirty rate limit for the resource group, which is 6144 kilobytes per second.

By contrast, if the steps are repeated again without the process belonging to any resource group, the dirty buffer rate is much higher.

```

edb=# CREATE TABLE t1 (c1 INTEGER, c2 CHARACTER(500)) WITH (FILLFACTOR = 10);
CREATE TABLE
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
(1 row)

edb=# SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset();
pg_stat_statements_reset
-----
(1 row)

```

```
edb=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (generate_series (1,10000), 'aaa');
INSERT 0 10000
```

The following shows the results from the `INSERT` command without the usage of a resource group.

```
edb=# SELECT query, rows, total_time, shared_blk_dirtied FROM
pg_stat_statements;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+
query      | INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (generate_series (?,?), ?);
rows       | 10000
total_time | 2432.165
shared_blk_dirtied | 10003
```

First, note the total time was only 2432.165 milliseconds as compared to 13496.184 milliseconds when a resource group with a dirty rate limit set to 6144 kilobytes per second was used.

The actual dirty rate without the use of a resource group is calculated as follows.

- The number of blocks dirtied per millisecond (ms) is 10003 blocks / 2432.165 ms, which yields *4.112797 blocks per millisecond*.
- Multiply the result by 1000 to give the number of shared blocks dirtied per second (1 second = 1000 ms), which yields *4112.797 blocks per second*.
- Multiply the result by 8.192 to give the number of kilobytes dirtied per second (1 block = 8.192 kilobytes), which yields approximately *33692 kilobytes per second*.

Note that the actual dirty rate of 33692 kilobytes per second is significantly higher than when the resource group with a dirty rate limit of 6144 kilobytes per second was used.

## Example – Multiple Processes in a Single Group

As stated previously, the dirty rate limit applies to the aggregate of all processes in the resource group. This concept is illustrated in the following example.

For this example the inserts are performed simultaneously on two different tables in two separate `psql` sessions, each of which has been added to resource group `resgrp_b` that has a `dirty_rate_limit` set to 6144 kilobytes per second.

### Session 1:

```
edb=# CREATE TABLE t1 (c1 INTEGER, c2 CHARACTER(500)) WITH (FILLFACTOR = 10);
CREATE TABLE
edb=# SET edb_resource_group TO resgrp_b;
SET
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
resgrp_b
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (generate_series (1,10000), 'aaa');
INSERT 0 10000
```

### Session 2:

```
edb=# CREATE TABLE t2 (c1 INTEGER, c2 CHARACTER(500)) WITH (FILLFACTOR = 10);
```

```

CREATE TABLE
edb=# SET edb_resource_group TO resgrp_b;
SET
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
resgrp_b
(1 row)

edb=# SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset();
pg_stat_statements_reset
-----
(1 row)

edb=# INSERT INTO t2 VALUES (generate_series (1,10000), 'aaa');
INSERT 0 10000

```

#### Note

The `INSERT` commands in session 1 and session 2 were started after the `SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset()` command in session 2 was run.

The following shows the results from the `INSERT` commands in the two sessions. `RECORD 3` shows the results from session 1. `RECORD 2` shows the results from session 2.

```

edb=# SELECT query, rows, total_time, shared_blk_dirtied FROM
pg_stat_statements;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+
query      | SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset();
rows       | 1
total_time | 0.43
shared_blk_dirtied | 0
-[ RECORD 2 ]-----+
query      | INSERT INTO t2 VALUES (generate_series (?,?), ?);
rows       | 10000
total_time | 30591.551
shared_blk_dirtied | 10003
-[ RECORD 3 ]-----+
query      | INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (generate_series (?,?), ?);
rows       | 10000
total_time | 33215.334
shared_blk_dirtied | 10003

```

First, note the total time was 33215.334 milliseconds for session 1 and 30591.551 milliseconds for session 2. When only one session was active in the same resource group as shown in the first example, the time was 13496.184 milliseconds. Thus more active processes in the resource group result in a slower dirty rate for each active process in the group. This is shown in the following calculations.

The actual dirty rate for session 1 is calculated as follows.

- The number of blocks dirtied per millisecond (ms) is 10003 blocks / 33215.334 ms, which yields *0.30115609 blocks per millisecond*.
- Multiply the result by 1000 to give the number of shared blocks dirtied per second (1 second = 1000 ms), which yields *301.15609 blocks per second*.
- Multiply the result by 8.192 to give the number of kilobytes dirtied per second (1 block = 8.192 kilobytes), which yields approximately *2467 kilobytes per second*.

The actual dirty rate for session 2 is calculated as follows.

- The number of blocks dirtied per millisecond (ms) is 10003 blocks / 30591.551 ms, which yields *0.32698571 blocks per millisecond*.
- Multiply the result by 1000 to give the number of shared blocks dirtied per second (1 second = 1000 ms), which yields *326.98571 blocks per second*.
- Multiply the result by 8.192 to give the number of kilobytes dirtied per second (1 block = 8.192 kilobytes), which yields approximately *2679 kilobytes per second*.

The combined dirty rate from session 1 (2467 kilobytes per second) and from session 2 (2679 kilobytes per second) yields 5146 kilobytes per second, which is below the set dirty rate limit of the resource group (6144 kilobytes per seconds).

## Example – Multiple Processes in Multiple Groups

In this example, two additional `psql` sessions are used along with the previous two sessions. The third and fourth sessions perform the same `INSERT` command in resource group `resgrp_c` with a `dirty_rate_limit` of 3072 kilobytes per second.

Sessions 1 and 2 are repeated as illustrated in the prior example using resource group `resgrp_b` with a `dirty_rate_limit` of 6144 kilobytes per second.

### Session 3:

```
edb=# CREATE TABLE t3 (c1 INTEGER, c2 CHARACTER(500)) WITH (FILLCODE = 10);
CREATE TABLE
edb=# SET edb_resource_group TO resgrp_c;
SET
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
```

```
resgrp_c
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# INSERT INTO t3 VALUES (generate_series (1,10000), 'aaa');
INSERT 0 10000
```

### Session 4:

```
edb=# CREATE TABLE t4 (c1 INTEGER, c2 CHARACTER(500)) WITH (FILLCODE = 10);
CREATE TABLE
edb=# SET edb_resource_group TO resgrp_c;
SET
edb=# SHOW edb_resource_group;
edb_resource_group
-----
```

```
resgrp_c
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset();
pg_stat_statements_reset
-----
```

```
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# INSERT INTO t4 VALUES (generate_series (1,10000), 'aaa');
INSERT 0 10000
```

## Note

The `INSERT` commands in all four sessions were started after the `SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset()` command in session 4 was run.

The following shows the results from the `INSERT` commands in the four sessions.

`RECORD 3` shows the results from session 1. `RECORD 2` shows the results from session 2.

`RECORD 4` shows the results from session 3. `RECORD 5` shows the results from session 4.

```
edb=# SELECT query, rows, total_time, shared_blks_dirtied FROM
pg_stat_statements;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+
query      | SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset();
rows       | 1
total_time | 0.467
shared_blks_dirtied | 0
-[ RECORD 2 ]-----+
query      | INSERT INTO t2 VALUES (generate_series (?,?), ?);
rows       | 10000
total_time | 31343.458
shared_blks_dirtied | 10003
-[ RECORD 3 ]-----+
query      | INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (generate_series (?,?), ?);
rows       | 10000
total_time | 28407.435
shared_blks_dirtied | 10003
-[ RECORD 4 ]-----+
query      | INSERT INTO t3 VALUES (generate_series (?,?), ?);
rows       | 10000
total_time | 52727.846
shared_blks_dirtied | 10003
-[ RECORD 5 ]-----+
query      | INSERT INTO t4 VALUES (generate_series (?,?), ?);
rows       | 10000
total_time | 56063.697
shared_blks_dirtied | 10003
```

First note that the times of session 1 (28407.435) and session 2 (31343.458) are close to each other as they are both in the same resource group with `dirty_rate_limit` set to 6144, as compared to the times of session 3 (52727.846) and session 4 (56063.697), which are in the resource group with `dirty_rate_limit` set to 3072. The latter group has a slower dirty rate limit so the expected processing time is longer as is the case for sessions 3 and 4.

The actual dirty rate for session 1 is calculated as follows.

- The number of blocks dirtied per millisecond (ms) is 10003 blocks / 28407.435 ms, which yields *0.35212612 blocks per millisecond*.
- Multiply the result by 1000 to give the number of shared blocks dirtied per second (1 second = 1000 ms), which yields *352.12612 blocks per second*.
- Multiply the result by 8.192 to give the number of kilobytes dirtied per second (1 block = 8.192 kilobytes), which yields approximately *2885 kilobytes per second*.

The actual dirty rate for session 2 is calculated as follows.

- The number of blocks dirtied per millisecond (ms) is 10003 blocks / 31343.458 ms, which yields *0.31914156 blocks per millisecond*.
- Multiply the result by 1000 to give the number of shared blocks dirtied per second (1 second = 1000 ms), which yields *319.14156 blocks per second*.
- Multiply the result by 8.192 to give the number of kilobytes dirtied per second (1 block = 8.192 kilobytes), which yields approximately *2614 kilobytes per second*.

The combined dirty rate from session 1 (2885 kilobytes per second) and from session 2 (2614 kilobytes per second) yields 5499 kilobytes per second, which is near the set dirty rate limit of the resource group (6144 kilobytes per seconds).

The actual dirty rate for session 3 is calculated as follows.

- The number of blocks dirtied per millisecond (ms) is 10003 blocks / 52727.846 ms, which yields *0.18971001 blocks per millisecond*.
- Multiply the result by 1000 to give the number of shared blocks dirtied per second (1 second = 1000 ms), which yields *189.71001 blocks per second*.
- Multiply the result by 8.192 to give the number of kilobytes dirtied per second (1 block = 8.192 kilobytes), which yields approximately *1554 kilobytes per second*.

The actual dirty rate for session 4 is calculated as follows.

- The number of blocks dirtied per millisecond (ms) is 10003 blocks / 56063.697 ms, which yields *0.17842205 blocks per millisecond*.
- Multiply the result by 1000 to give the number of shared blocks dirtied per second (1 second = 1000 ms), which yields *178.42205 blocks per second*.
- Multiply the result by 8.192 to give the number of kilobytes dirtied per second (1 block = 8.192 kilobytes), which yields approximately *1462 kilobytes per second*.

The combined dirty rate from session 3 (1554 kilobytes per second) and from session 4 (1462 kilobytes per second) yields 3016 kilobytes per second, which is near the set dirty rate limit of the resource group (3072 kilobytes per seconds).

Thus, this demonstrates how EDB Resource Manager keeps the aggregate dirty rate of the active processes in its groups close to the dirty rate limit set for each group.

## System Catalogs

This section describes the system catalogs that store the resource group information used by EDB Resource Manager.

### `edb_all_resource_groups`

The following table lists the information available in the `edb_all_resource_groups` catalog:

Column	Type	Description
group_name	name	The name of the resource group.
active_processes	integer	Number of currently active processes in the resource group.
cpu_rate_limit	float8	Maximum CPU rate limit for the resource group. 0 means no limit.
per_process_cpu_rate_limit	float8	Maximum CPU rate limit per currently active process in the resource group.
dirty_rate_limit	float8	Maximum dirty rate limit for a resource group. 0 means no limit.
per_process_dirty_rate_limit	float8	Maximum dirty rate limit per currently active process in the resource group.

## edb\_resource\_group

The following table lists the information available in the `edb_resource_group` catalog:

Column	Type	Description
rgrpname	name	The name of the resource group.
rgrpcpuratelimit	float8	Maximum CPU rate limit for a resource group. 0 means no limit.
rgrpdirtyratelimit	float8	Maximum dirty rate limit for a resource group. 0 means no limit.

## 12.11 libpq C Library

libpq is the C application programmer's interface to Advanced Server. libpq is a set of library functions that allow client programs to pass queries to the Advanced Server and to receive the results of these queries.

libpq is also the underlying engine for several other EDB application interfaces including those written for C++, Perl, Python, Tcl and ECPG. So some aspects of libpq's behavior will be important to the user if one of those packages is used.

Client programs that use libpq must include the header file `libpq-fe.h` and must link with the `libpq` library.

### Using libpq with EDB SPL

The EDB SPL language can be used with the libpq interface library, providing support for:

- Procedures, functions, packages
- Prepared statements
- `REFCURSORs`
- Static cursors
- `structs` and `typedefs`
- Arrays
- DML and DDL operations
- `IN/OUT/IN OUT` parameters

### REFCURSOR Support

In earlier releases, Advanced Server provided support for REFCURSORs through the following libpq functions; these functions should now be considered deprecated:

- `POCursorResult()`
- `PQgetCursorResult()`
- `PQnCursor()`

You may now use `POexec()` and `PQgetvalue()` to retrieve a `REFCURSOR` returned by an SPL (or PL/pgSQL) function. A `REFCURSOR` is returned in the form of a null-terminated string indicating the name of the cursor. Once you have the name of the cursor, you can execute one or more `FETCH` statements to retrieve the values exposed through the cursor.

Please note that the samples that follow do not include error-handling code that would be required in a real-world client application.

## Returning a Single REFCURSOR

The following example shows an SPL function that returns a value of type **REFCURSOR**:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION getEmployees(p_deptno NUMERIC)
RETURN REFCURSOR AS
result REFCURSOR;
BEGIN
OPEN result FOR SELECT * FROM emp WHERE deptno = p_deptno;

RETURN result;
END;
```

This function expects a single parameter, **p\_deptno**, and returns a **REFCURSOR** that holds the result set for the **SELECT** query shown in the **OPEN** statement. The **OPEN** statement executes the query and stores the result set in a cursor. The server constructs a name for that cursor and stores the name in a variable (named **result**). The function then returns the name of the cursor to the caller.

To call this function from a C client using libpq, you can use **PQexec()** and **PQgetvalue()**:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include "libpq-fe.h"

static void fetchAllRows(PGconn *conn,
    const char *cursorName,
    const char *description);
static void fail(PGconn *conn, const char *msg);

int
main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    PGconn    *conn = PQconnectdb(argv[1]);
    PGresult  *result;

    if (PQstatus(conn) != CONNECTION_OK)
        fail(conn, PQerrorMessage(conn));

    result = PQexec(conn, "BEGIN TRANSACTION");

    if (PQresultStatus(result) != PGRES_COMMAND_OK)
        fail(conn, PQerrorMessage(conn));

    PQclear(result);

    result = PQexec(conn, "SELECT * FROM getEmployees(10)");

    if (PQresultStatus(result) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
        fail(conn, PQerrorMessage(conn));

    fetchAllRows(conn, PQgetvalue(result, 0, 0), "employees");

    PQclear(result);

    PQexec(conn, "COMMIT");

    PQfinish(conn);
```

```

    exit(0);
}

static void
fetchAllRows(PGconn *conn,
    const char *cursorName,
    const char *description)
{
    size_t commandLength = strlen("FETCH ALL FROM ") +
        strlen(cursorName) + 3;

    char *commandText = malloc(commandLength);
    PGresult *result;
    int     row;

    sprintf(commandText, "FETCH ALL FROM \"%s\"", cursorName);

    result = PQexec(conn, commandText);

    if (PQresultStatus(result) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
        fail(conn, PQerrorMessage(conn));

    printf("-- %s --\n", description);

    for (row = 0; row < PQntuples(result); row++)
    {
        const char *delimiter = "\t";
        int      col;

        for (col = 0; col < PQnfields(result); col++)
        {
            printf("%s%s", delimiter, PQgetvalue(result, row, col));
            delimiter = ",";
        }

        printf("\n");
    }

    PQclear(result);
    free(commandText);
}

static void
fail(PGconn *conn, const char *msg)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", msg);

    if (conn != NULL)
        PQfinish(conn);

    exit(-1);
}

```

The code sample contains a line of code that calls the `getEmployees()` function, and returns a result set that contains all of the employees in department `10`:

```
result = PQexec(conn, "SELECT * FROM getEmployees(10)");
```

The `PQexec()` function returns a result set handle to the C program. The result set will contain exactly one value; that value is the name of the cursor as returned by `getEmployees()`.

Once you have the name of the cursor, you can use the SQL `FETCH` statement to retrieve the rows in that cursor. The function `fetchAllRows()` builds a `FETCH ALL` statement, executes that statement, and then prints the result set of the `FETCH ALL` statement.

The output of this program is shown below:

```
-- employees --
7782,CLARK,MANAGER,7839,09-JUN-81 00:00:00,2450.00,,10
7839,KING,PRESIDENT,,17-NOV-81 00:00:00,5000.00,,10
7934,MILLER,CLERK,7782,23-JAN-82 00:00:00,1300.00,,10
```

## Returning Multiple REFCURSORS

The next example returns two `REFCURSORs`:

- The first `REFCURSOR` contains the name of a cursor (`employees`) that contains all employees who work in a department within the range specified by the caller.
- The second `REFCURSOR` contains the name of a cursor (`departments`) that contains all of the departments in the range specified by the caller.

In this example, instead of returning a single `REFCURSOR`, the function returns a `SETOF REFCURSOR` (which means `0` or more `REFCURSORS`). One other important difference is that the libpq program should not expect a single `REFCURSOR` in the result set, but should expect two rows, each of which will contain a single value (the first row contains the name of the `employees` cursor, and the second row contains the name of the `departments` cursor).

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION getEmpsAndDepts(p_min NUMERIC,
                                         p_max NUMERIC)
RETURNS SETOF REFCURSOR AS
  employees REFCURSOR;
  departments REFCURSOR;
BEGIN
  OPEN employees FOR
    SELECT * FROM emp WHERE deptno BETWEEN p_min AND p_max;
  RETURN NEXT employees;

  OPEN departments FOR
    SELECT * FROM dept WHERE deptno BETWEEN p_min AND p_max;
  RETURN NEXT departments;
END;
```

As in the previous example, you can use `PQexec()` and `PQgetvalue()` to call the SPL function:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include "libpq-fe.h"

static void fetchAllRows(PGconn *conn,
                       const char *cursorName,
                       const char *description);
static void fail(PGconn *conn, const char *msg);

int
```

```

main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    PGconn *conn = PQconnectdb(argv[1]);
    PGresult *result;

    if (PQstatus(conn) != CONNECTION_OK)
        fail(conn, PQerrorMessage(conn));

    result = PQexec(conn, "BEGIN TRANSACTION");

    if (PQresultStatus(result) != PGRES_COMMAND_OK)
        fail(conn, PQerrorMessage(conn));

    PQclear(result);

    result = PQexec(conn, "SELECT * FROM getEmpsAndDepts(20, 30)");

    if (PQresultStatus(result) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
        fail(conn, PQerrorMessage(conn));

    fetchAllRows(conn, PQgetvalue(result, 0, 0), "employees");
    fetchAllRows(conn, PQgetvalue(result, 1, 0), "departments");

    PQclear(result);

    PQexec(conn, "COMMIT");

    PQfinish(conn);

    exit(0);
}

static void
fetchAllRows(PGconn *conn,
            const char *cursorName,
            const char *description)
{
    size_t    commandLength = strlen("FETCH ALL FROM ") +
                           strlen(cursorName) + 3;
    char     *commandText   = malloc(commandLength);
    PGresult *result;
    int      row;

    sprintf(commandText, "FETCH ALL FROM \"%s\"", cursorName);

    result = PQexec(conn, commandText);

    if (PQresultStatus(result) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
        fail(conn, PQerrorMessage(conn));

    printf("-- %s --\n", description);

    for (row = 0; row < PQntuples(result); row++)
    {
        const char *delimiter = "\t";

```

```

int      col;

for (col = 0; col < PQnfields(result); col++)
{
    printf("%s%s", delimiter, PQgetvalue(result, row, col));
    delimiter = ",";
}

printf("\n");
}

PQclear(result);
free(commandText);
}

static void
fail(PGconn *conn, const char *msg)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", msg);

    if (conn != NULL)
        PQfinish(conn);

    exit(-1);
}

```

If you call `getEmpsAndDepts(20, 30)`, the server will return a cursor that contains all employees who work in department `20` or `30`, and a second cursor containing the description of departments `20` and `30`.

```

-- employees --
7369,SMITH,CLERK,7902,17-DEC-80 00:00:00,800.00,,20
7499,ALLEN,SALESMAN,7698,20-FEB-81 00:00:00,1600.00,300.00,30
7521,WARD,SALESMAN,7698,22-FEB-81 00:00:00,1250.00,500.00,30
7566,JONES,MANAGER,7839,02-APR-81 00:00:00,2975.00,,20
7654,MARTIN,SALESMAN,7698,28-SEP-81 00:00:00,1250.00,1400.00,30
7698,BLAKE,MANAGER,7839,01-MAY-81 00:00:00,2850.00,,30
7788,SCOTT,ANALYST,7566,19-APR-87 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
7844,TURNER,SALESMAN,7698,08-SEP-81 00:00:00,1500.00,0.00,30
7876,ADAMS,CLERK,7788,23-MAY-87 00:00:00,1100.00,,20
7900,JAMES,CLERK,7698,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,950.00,,30
7902,FORD,ANALYST,7566,03-DEC-81 00:00:00,3000.00,,20
-- departments --
20,RESEARCH,DALLAS
30,SALES,CHICAGO

```

## Array Binding

Advanced Server's array binding functionality allows you to send an array of data across the network in a single round-trip. When the back end receives the bulk data, it can use the data to perform insert or update operations.

Perform bulk operations with a prepared statement; use the following function to prepare the statement:

```

PGresult *PQprepare(PGconn *conn,
                    const char *stmtName,

```

```
const char *query,
int nParams,
const Oid *paramTypes);
```

Details of [PQprepare\(\)](#) can be found in the prepared statement section.

The following functions can be used to perform bulk operations:

- [PQBulkStart](#)
- [PQexecBulk](#)
- [PQBulkFinish](#)
- [PQexecBulkPrepared](#)

## PQBulkStart

[PQBulkStart\(\)](#) initializes bulk operations on the server. You must call this function before sending bulk data to the server. [PQBulkStart\(\)](#) initializes the prepared statement specified in stmtName to receive data in a format specified by [paramFmts](#).

### API Definition

```
PGresult *PQBulkStart(PGconn *conn,
                      const char *Stmt_Name,
                      unsigned int nCol,
                      const int *paramFmts);
```

## PQexecBulk

[PQexecBulk\(\)](#) is used to supply data ([paramValues](#)) for a statement that was previously initialized for bulk operation using [PQBulkStart\(\)](#).

This function can be used more than once after [PQBulkStart\(\)](#) to send multiple blocks of data. See the example for more details.

### API Definition

```
PGresult *PQexecBulk(PGconn *conn,
                     unsigned int nRows,
                     const char **const paramValues,
                     const int *paramLengths);
```

## PQBulkFinish

This function completes the current bulk operation. You can use the prepared statement again without re-preparing it.

### API Definition

```
PGresult *PQBulkFinish(PGconn *conn);
```

## PQexecBulkPrepared

Alternatively, you can use the [PQexecBulkPrepared\(\)](#) function to perform a bulk operation with a single function call. [PQexecBulkPrepared\(\)](#) sends a request to execute a prepared statement with the given parameters, and waits for the result. This function combines the functionality of [PQbulkStart\(\)](#), [PQexecBulk\(\)](#), and [PQbulkFinish\(\)](#). When using this function, you are not required to initialize or terminate the bulk operation; this function starts the bulk operation, passes the data to the server, and terminates the bulk operation.

Specify a previously prepared statement in the place of stmtName. Commands that will be used repeatedly will be parsed and planned just once, rather than each time they are executed.

## API Definition

```
PGresult *PQexecBulkPrepared(PGconn *conn,
                           const char *stmtName,
                           unsigned int nCols,
                           unsigned int nRows,
                           const char *const *paramValues,
                           const int *paramLengths,
                           const int *paramFormats);
```

## Example Code (Using PQbulkStart, PQexecBulk, PQbulkFinish)

The following example uses [PQBulkStart](#), [PQexecBulk](#), and [PQbulkFinish](#).

```
void InsertDataUsingBulkStyle( PGconn *conn )
{
    PGresult      *res;
    Oid            paramTypes[2];
    char          *paramVals[5][2];
    int            paramLens[5][2];
    int            paramFmts[2];
    int            i;

    int           a[5] = { 10, 20, 30, 40, 50 };
    char         b[5][10] = { "Test_1", "Test_2", "Test_3",
                            "Test_4", "Test_5" };

    paramTypes[0] = 23;
    paramTypes[1] = 1043;
    res = PQprepare( conn, "stmt_1", "INSERT INTO testtable1 values( $1, $2
)", 2, paramTypes );
    PQclear( res );

    paramFmts[0] = 1; /* Binary format */
    paramFmts[1] = 0;

    for( i = 0; i < 5; i++ )
    {
        a[i] = htonl( a[i] );
        paramVals[i][0] = &(a[i]);
        paramVals[i][1] = b[i];

        paramLens[i][0] = 4;
        paramLens[i][1] = strlen( b[i] );
    }
}
```

```

res = PQBulkStart(conn, "stmt_1", 2, paramFmts);
PQclear( res );
printf( "< -- PQBulkStart -- >\n" );

res = PQexecBulk(conn, 5, (const char *const *)paramVals, (const
int*)paramLens);
PQclear( res );
printf( "< -- PQexecBulk -- >\n" );

res = PQexecBulk(conn, 5, (const char *const *)paramVals, (const
int*)paramLens);
PQclear( res );
printf( "< -- PQexecBulk -- >\n" );

res = PQBulkFinish(conn);
PQclear( res );
printf( "< -- PQBulkFinish -- >\n" );
}

```

## Example Code (Using PQexecBulkPrepared)

The following example uses `PQexecBulkPrepared`.

```

void InsertDataUsingBulkStyleCombinedVersion( PGconn *conn )
{
    PGresult      *res;
    Oid           paramTypes[2];
    char          *paramVals[5][2];
    int           paramLens[5][2];
    int           paramFmts[2];
    int           i;

    int           a[5] = { 10, 20, 30, 40, 50 };
    char          b[5][10] = { "Test_1", "Test_2", "Test_3",
                            "Test_4", "Test_5" };

    paramTypes[0] = 23;
    paramTypes[1] = 1043;
    res = PQprepare( conn, "stmt_2", "INSERT INTO testtable1 values(
$1, $2)", 2, paramTypes );
    PQclear( res );

    paramFmts[0] = 1; /* Binary format */
    paramFmts[1] = 0;

    for( i = 0; i < 5; i++ )
    {
        a[i] = htonl( a[i] );
        paramVals[i][0] = &(a[i]);
        paramVals[i][1] = b[i];

        paramLens[i][0] = 4;
        paramLens[i][1] = strlen( b[i] );
    }
}

```

```

    }

res = PQexecBulkPrepared(conn, "stmt_2", 2, 5, (const char *const
*)paramVals,(const int *)paramLens, (const int *)paramFmts);
PQclear( res );
}

```

## 12.12 Debugger

The Debugger gives developers and DBAs the ability to test and debug server-side programs using a graphical, dynamic environment. The types of programs that can be debugged are SPL stored procedures, functions, triggers, and packages as well as PL/pgSQL functions and triggers.

The Debugger is integrated with *pgAdmin 4* and *EDB Postgres Enterprise Manager*. If you have installed Advanced Server on a Windows host, pgAdmin 4 is automatically installed; you will find the pgAdmin 4 icon in the [Windows Start](#) menu. If your Advanced Server host is on a CentOS or Linux system, you can use [yum](#) to install pgAdmin4. Open a command line, assume superuser privileges, and enter:

```
yum install edb-pgadmin4*
```

On Linux, the [edb-asxx-server-pldebugger](#) RPM package where `xx` is the Advanced Server version number, must be installed as well. Information about pgAdmin 4 is available at:

<https://www.pgadmin.org/>

The RPM installation will add the pgAdmin4 icon to your Applications menu.

There are two basic ways the Debugger can be used to test programs:

- **Standalone Debugging.** The Debugger is used to start the program to be tested. You supply any input parameter values required by the program and you can immediately observe and step through the code of the program. Standalone debugging is the typical method used for new programs and for initial problem investigation.
- **In-Context Debugging.** The program to be tested is initiated by an application other than the Debugger. You first set a *global breakpoint* on the program to be tested. The application that makes the first call to the program encounters the global breakpoint. The application suspends execution at which point the Debugger takes control of the called program. You can then observe and step through the code of the called program as it runs within the context of the calling application. After you have completely stepped through the code of the called program in the Debugger, the suspended application resumes execution. In-context debugging is useful if it is difficult to reproduce a problem using standalone debugging due to complex interaction with the calling application.

The debugging tools and operations are the same whether using standalone or in-context debugging. The difference is in how the program to be debugged is invoked.

The following sections discuss the features and functionality of the Debugger using the standalone debugging method. The directions for starting the Debugger for in-context debugging are discussed in the [Setting Global Breakpoint for In-Context Debugging](#).

### Configuring the Debugger

Before using the Debugger, edit the `postgresql.conf` file (located in the `data` subdirectory of your Advanced Server home directory), adding `$libdir/plugin_debugger` to the libraries listed in the `shared_preload_libraries`

configuration parameter:

```
shared_preload_libraries = '$libdir/dbms_pipe,$libdir/edb_gen,$libdir/
plugin_debugger'
```

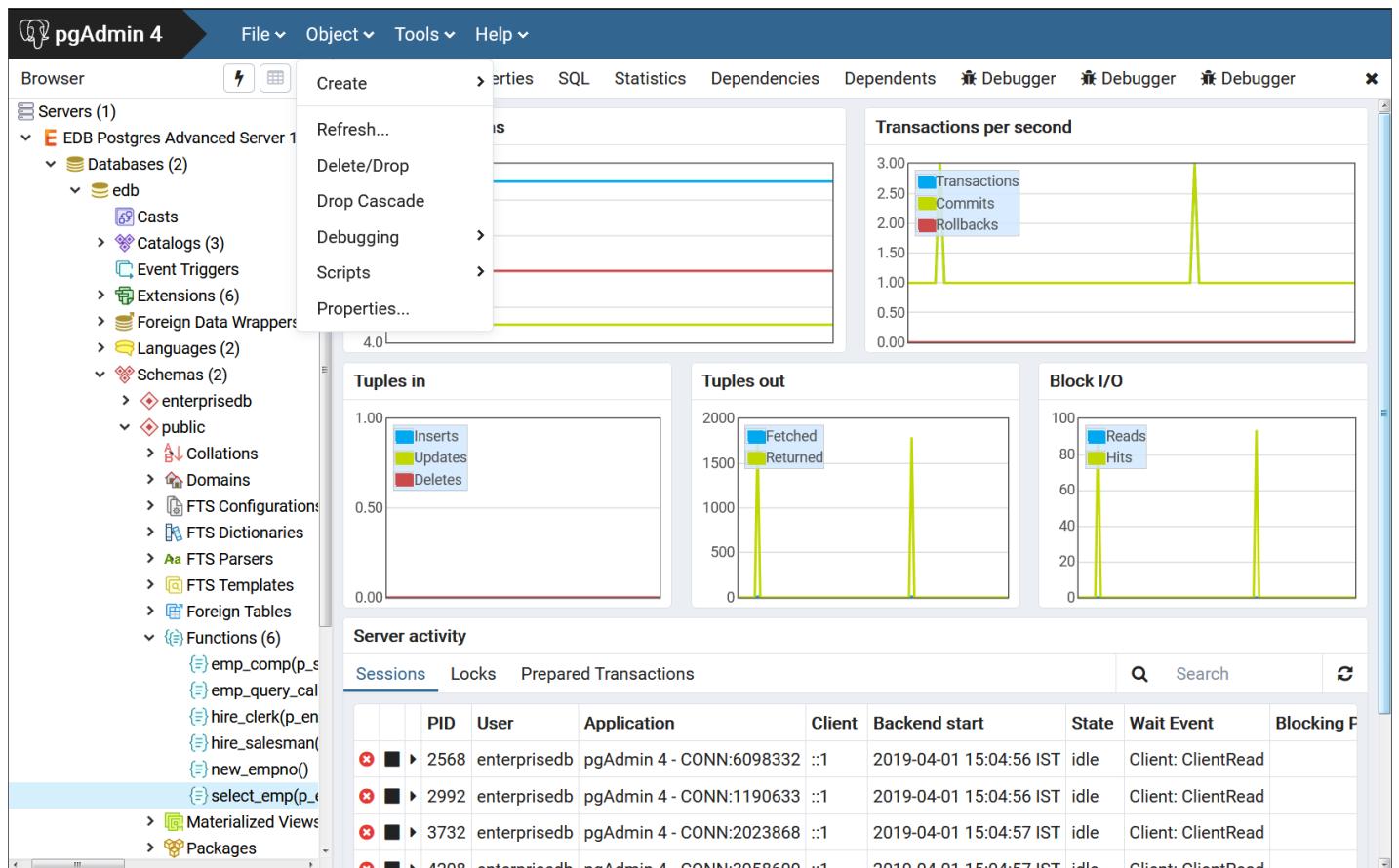
- On Linux, the `postgresql.conf` file is located in: `/var/lib/edb/asxx/data`
- On Windows, the `postgresql.conf` file is located in: `C:\Program Files\edb\asxx\data`

Where `x` is the version of Advanced Server.

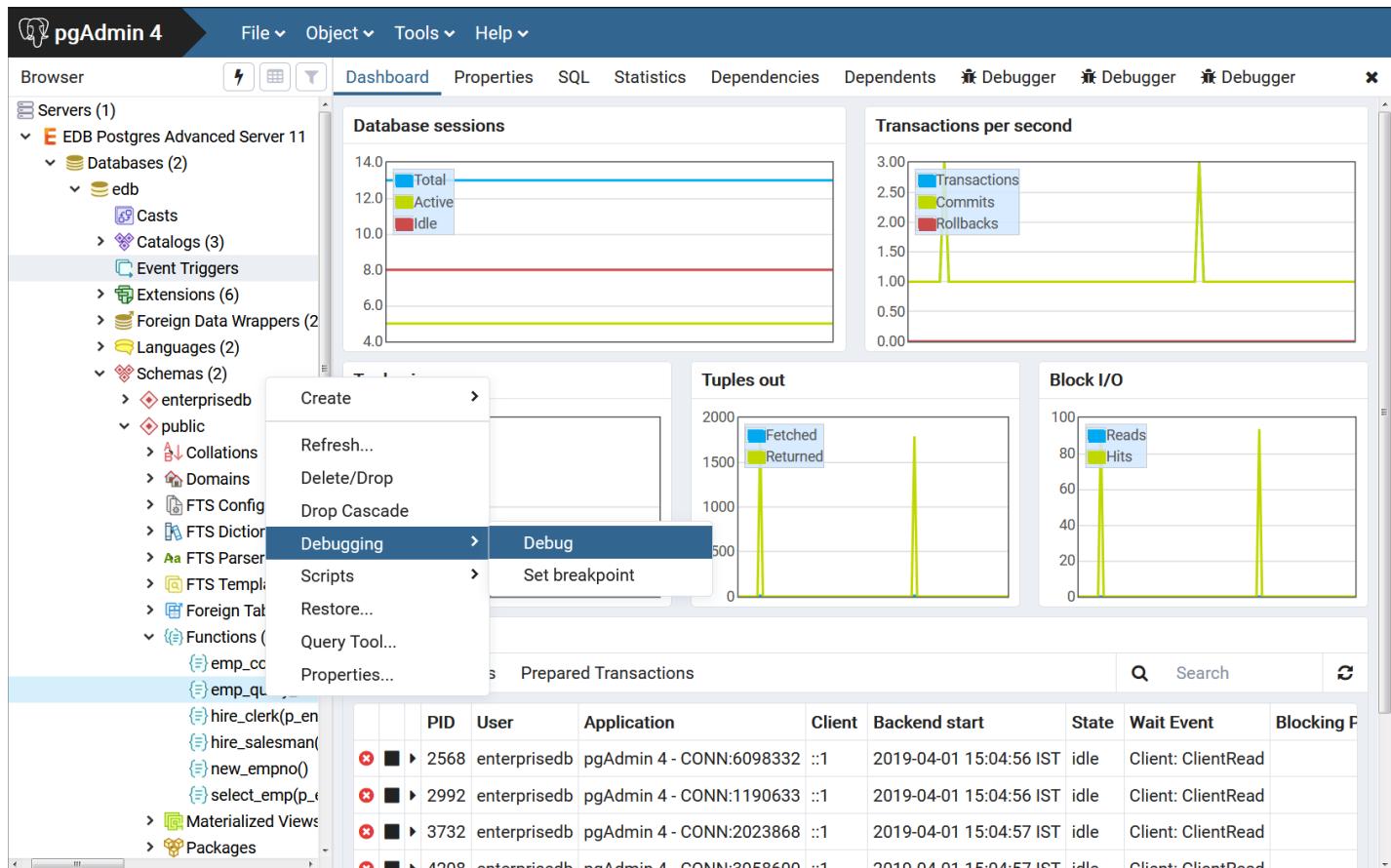
After modifying the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter, you must restart the database server.

## Starting the Debugger

Use pgAdmin 4 to access the Debugger for standalone debugging. To open the Debugger, highlight the name of the stored procedure or function you wish to debug in the pgAdmin 4 `Browser` panel. Then, navigate through the `Object` menu to the `Debugging` menu and select `Debug` from the submenu.



You can also right-click on the name of the stored procedure or function in the pgAdmin 4 `Browser`, and select `Debugging`, and the `Debug` from the context menu.



Note that triggers cannot be debugged using standalone debugging. Triggers must be debugged using in-context debugging. See the [Setting Global Breakpoint for In-Context Debugging](#) for information on setting a global breakpoint for in-context debugging.

To debug a package, highlight the specific procedure or function under the package node of the package you wish to debug and follow the same directions as for stored procedures and functions.

## The Debugger Window

You can use the **Debugger** window to pass parameter values when you are standalone-debugging a program that expects parameters. When you start the debugger, the **Debugger** window opens automatically to display any **IN** or **IN OUT** parameters expected by the program. If the program declares no **IN** or **IN OUT** parameters, the **Debugger** window does not open.

Name	Type	Null?	Expression?	Value	Use Default?	Default value
p_sal	numeric	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	NaN	<input type="checkbox"/>	<No default value>
p_comm	numeric	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	NaN	<input type="checkbox"/>	<No default value>

**Cancel** **Debug**

Use the fields on the **Debugger** window to provide a value for each parameter:

- The **Name** field contains the formal parameter name.
- The **Type** field contains the parameter data type.
- Check the **Null?** checkbox to indicate that the parameter is a **NULL** value.

- Check the **Expression?** checkbox if the **Value** field contains an expression.
- The **Value** field contains the parameter value that will be passed to the program.
- Check the **Use Default?** checkbox to indicate that the program should use the value in the **Default Value** field.
- The **Default Value** field contains the default value of the parameter.

Press the **Tab** key to select the next parameter in the list for data entry, or click on a **Value** field to select the parameter for data entry.

If you are debugging a procedure or function that is a member of a package that has an initialization section, check the **Debug Package Initializer** check box to instruct the Debugger to step into the package initialization section, allowing you to debug the initialization section code before debugging the procedure or function. If you do not select the check box, the Debugger executes the package initialization section without allowing you to see or step through the individual lines of code as they are executed.

After entering the desired parameter values, click the **Debug** button to start the debugging process. Click the **Cancel** button to terminate the Debugger.

#### Note

The **Debugger** window does not open during in-context debugging. Instead, the application calling the program to be debugged must supply any required input parameter values.

When you have completed a full debugging cycle by stepping through the program code, the **Debugger** window re-opens, allowing you to enter new parameter values and repeat the debugging cycle, or end the debugging session.

## Main Debugger Window

The Main Debugger window contains two panels:

- The top **Program Body** panel displays the program source code.
- The bottom **Tabs** panel provides a set of tabs for different information.

Use the **Tool Bar** icons located at the top panel to access debugging functions.

The screenshot shows the pgAdmin 4 interface with the 'Program Body' panel open. The left sidebar displays a tree view of database objects, including Schemas, Functions, and Views. The main panel shows the source code for a function named 'select\_emp'. The code includes a declaration section with variables like v\_ename, v\_hiredate, v\_sal, v\_comm, v\_dname, and v\_disp\_date. It then begins a SELECT INTO statement, followed by a FROM clause joining 'emp' and 'dept' tables, and a WHERE clause filtering by 'p\_empno'. The code concludes with an END; statement. Below the code, there is a 'Parameters' table with one entry: p\_empno of type integer with a value of 7900.

```

select_emp(p_empno integer)
1  DECLARE
2  v_ename emp.ename%TYPE;
3  v_hiredate emp.hiredate%TYPE;
4  v_sal emp.sal%TYPE;
5  v_comm emp.comm%TYPE;
6  v_dname dept.dname%TYPE;
7  v_disp_date VARCHAR(10);
8  BEGIN
9    SELECT INTO
10   v_ename, v_hiredate, v_sal, v_comm, v_dname
11   ename, hiredate, sal, COALESCE(comm, 0), dname
12   FROM emp e, dept d
13   WHERE empno = p_empno;
14

```

Parameters	Local variables	Messages	Results	Stack
Name	Type			
p_empno	integer		7900	

The two panels are described in the following sections.

## The Program Body Panel

The **Program Body** panel displays the source code of the program that is being debugged.

```

select_emp(p_empno integer)
1  DECLARE
2  v_ename emp.ename%TYPE;
3  v_hiredate emp.hiredate%TYPE;
4  v_sal emp.sal%TYPE;
5  v_comm emp.comm%TYPE;
6  v_dname dept.dname%TYPE;
7  v_disp_date VARCHAR(10);
8  BEGIN
9    SELECT INTO
10   v_ename, v_hiredate, v_sal, v_comm, v_dname
11   ename, hiredate, sal, COALESCE(comm, 0), dname
12   FROM emp e, dept d
13   WHERE empno = p_empno;
14 END;

```

Parameters		Local variables	Messages	Results	Stack
Name	Type				
v_ename	character varying				
v_hiredate	timestamp without time zone				
v_sal	numeric				
v_comm	numeric				
v_dname	character varying				
v_disp_date	character varying				

The figure shows that the Debugger is about to execute the `SELECT` statement. The blue indicator in the program body highlights the next statement to execute.

## The Tabs Panel

You can use the bottom `Tabs` panel to view or modify parameter values or local variables, or to view messages generated by `RAISE INFO` and function results.

The following is the information displayed by the tabs in the panel:

- The `Parameters` tab displays the current parameter values.
- The `Local variables` tab displays the value of any variables declared within the program.
- The `Messages` tab displays any results returned by the program as it executes.
- The `Results` tab displays program results (if applicable) such as the value from the `RETURN` statement of a function.
- The `Stack tab` displays the call stack.

The following figures show the results from the various tabs.

pgAdmin 4

File ▾ Object ▾ Tools ▾ Help ▾

Browser

- > Extensions (6)
- > Foreign Data Wrappers (2)
- > Languages (2)
- > Schemas (2)
  - > enterprisesdb
  - > public
    - > Collations
    - > Domains
    - > FTS Configurations
    - > FTS Dictionaries
    - > FTS Parsers
    - > FTS Templates
    - > Foreign Tables
  - > Functions (6)
    - < emp\_comp(p\_sa
    - < emp\_query\_calle
    - < hire\_clerk(p\_en
    - < hire\_salesman(p
    - < new\_empno()
    - < select\_emp(p\_en
- > Materialized Views
- > Packages
- > Procedures
- > Sequences
- > Synonyms
- > Tables
- > Trigger Functions
- > Types
- > Views

Dashboard Properties SQL Statistics Dependencies Dependents Debugger

```
select_emp(p_empno integer)
1 DECLARE
2 v_ename emp.ename%TYPE;
3 v_hiredate emp.hiredate%TYPE;
4 v_sal emp.sal%TYPE;
5 v_comm emp.comm%TYPE;
6 v_dname dept.dname%TYPE;
7 v_disp_date VARCHAR(10);
8 BEGIN
9 SELECT INTO
10 v_ename, v_hiredate, v_sal, v_comm, v_dname
11 ename, hiredate, sal, COALESCE(comm, 0), dname
12 FROM emp e, dept d
13 WHERE empno = p_empno;
```

Parameters Local variables Messages Results Stack

Name	Type	Value
p_empno	integer	7900

pgAdmin 4

File ▾ Object ▾ Tools ▾ Help ▾

Browser

- > Extensions (6)
- > Foreign Data Wrappers (2)
- > Languages (2)
- > Schemas (2)
  - > enterprisesdb
  - > public
    - > Collation
    - > Domain
    - > FTS Configuration
    - > FTS Dictionary
    - > FTS Parser
    - > FTS Template
    - > Foreign Table
    - > Function
      - < emp\_query\_caller()
    - > Materialized View
    - > Package
    - > Procedure
    - > Sequence
    - > Synonym
    - > Table
    - > Trigger Function
    - > Type
    - > View

Dashboard Properties SQL Statistics Dependencies Dependents Debugger

```
emp_query_caller()
1 DECLARE
2 Create
3 no NUMERIC;
4 o NUMERIC;
5 e VARCHAR;
6 INTEGER;
7 query TEXT;
```

Debugging > Debug

Set breakpoint

```
e := 'Martin';
query := emp_query(v_deptno, v_empno, v_ename);
INFO 'Department : %', v_deptno;
INFO 'Employee No: %', (r_emp_query).empno;
```

Parameters Local variables Messages Results Stack

Name	Type	Value
v_deptno	numeric	NULL
v_empno	numeric	NULL
v_ename	character varying	NULL
v_rows	integer	NULL
r_emp_query	text	NULL

pgAdmin 4

File ▾ Object ▾ Tools ▾ Help ▾

Browser

- > Extensions (6)
- > Foreign Data Wrappers (2)
- > Languages (2)
- > Schemas (2)
  - > enterprisesdb
  - > public
    - > Collations
    - > Domains
    - > FTS Configurations
    - > FTS Dictionaries
    - > FTS Parsers
    - > FTS Templates
    - > Foreign Tables
  - > Functions (6)
    - < emp\_comp(p\_ename character varying, p\_deptno numeric)
    - < emp\_query\_call(p\_ename character varying, p\_deptno numeric)
    - < hire\_clerk(p\_ename character varying, p\_deptno numeric)
    - < hire\_salesman(p\_ename character varying, p\_deptno numeric)
    - < new\_empno()
    - < select\_emp(p\_ename character varying, p\_deptno numeric)
- > Materialized Views
- > Packages
- > Procedures
- > Sequences
- > Synonyms
- > Tables
- > Trigger Functions
- > Types
- > Views

Debugger

```
hire_clerk(p_ename character varying, p_deptno numeric)

1   v_empno      NUMBER(4);
2   v_ename       VARCHAR2(10);
3   v_job        VARCHAR2(9);
4   v_mgr         NUMBER(4);
5   v_hiredate    DATE;
6   v_sal         NUMBER(7,2);
7   v_comm        NUMBER(7,2);
8   v_deptno      NUMBER(2);

10  BEGIN
11    v_empno := new_empno;
12    INSERT INTO emp VALUES (v_empno, p_ename, 'CLERK', 7782,
13                           TRUNC(SYSDATE), 950.00, NULL, p_deptno);
```

Parameters Local variables Messages Results Stack

Inserting employee 8001  
..New salary: 950.00  
User enterprisesdb added employee(s) on 2019-04-01  
Department :  
Employee No: 8001  
Name :  
Job : CLERK  
Manager : 7782  
Hire Date : 2019-04-01 00:00:00  
Salary : 950.00  
Commission :

pgAdmin 4

File ▾ Object ▾ Tools ▾ Help ▾

Browser

- > Extensions (6)
- > Foreign Data Wrappers (2)
- > Languages (2)
- > Schemas (2)
  - > enterprisesdb
  - > public
    - > Collations
    - > Domains
    - > FTS Configurations
    - > FTS Dictionaries
    - > FTS Parsers
    - > FTS Templates
    - > Foreign Tables
  - > Functions (6)
    - < emp\_comp(p\_ename character varying, p\_deptno numeric)
    - < emp\_query\_call(p\_ename character varying, p\_deptno numeric)
    - < hire\_clerk(p\_ename character varying, p\_deptno numeric)
    - < hire\_salesman(p\_ename character varying, p\_deptno numeric)
    - < new\_empno()
    - < select\_emp(p\_ename character varying, p\_deptno numeric)
- > Materialized Views
- > Packages
- > Procedures
- > Sequences
- > Synonyms
- > Tables
- > Trigger Functions
- > Types
- > Views

Debugger

```
hire_clerk(p_ename character varying, p_deptno numeric)

1   v_empno      NUMBER(4);
2   v_ename       VARCHAR2(10);
3   v_job        VARCHAR2(9);
4   v_mgr         NUMBER(4);
5   v_hiredate    DATE;
6   v_sal         NUMBER(7,2);
7   v_comm        NUMBER(7,2);
8   v_deptno      NUMBER(2);

10  BEGIN
11    v_empno := new_empno;
12    INSERT INTO emp VALUES (v_empno, p_ename, 'CLERK', 7782,
13                           TRUNC(SYSDATE), 950.00, NULL, p_deptno);
```

Parameters Local variables Messages Results Stack

hire\_clerk

8001

## The Stack Tab

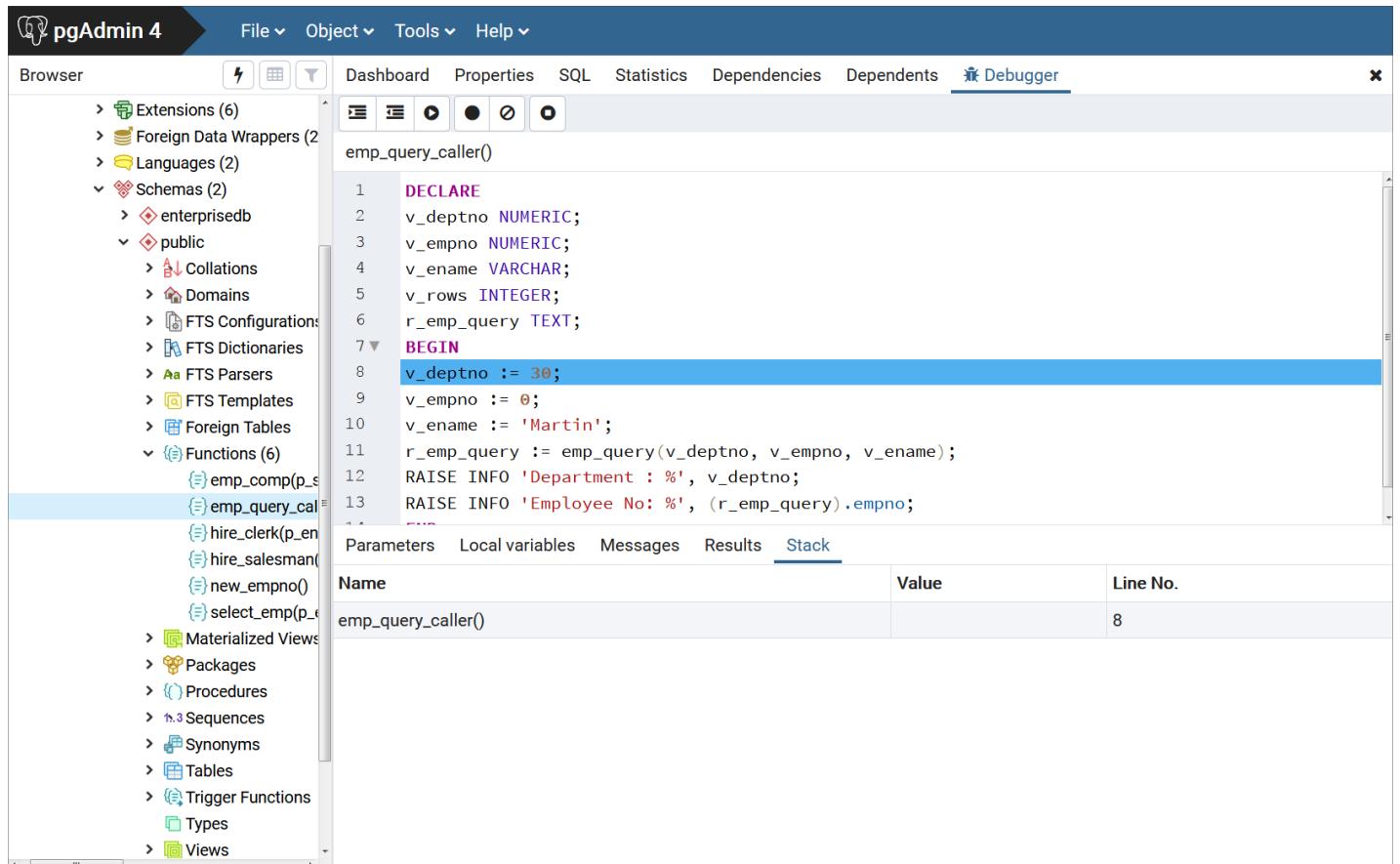
The **Stack** tab displays a list of programs that are currently on the call stack (programs that have been invoked,

but which have not yet completed). When a program is called, the name of the program is added to the top of the list displayed in the **Stack** tab. When the program ends, its name is removed from the list.

The **Stack** tab also displays information about program calls. The information includes:

- The location of the call within the program
- The call arguments
- The name of the program being called

Reviewing the call stack can help you trace the course of execution through a series of nested programs.



The screenshot shows the pgAdmin 4 interface with the 'Debugger' tab selected. The left sidebar shows a tree view of database objects. The main panel displays the code of the `emp_query_caller()` function. The code is as follows:

```

1  DECLARE
2  v_deptno NUMERIC;
3  v_empno NUMERIC;
4  v_ename VARCHAR;
5  v_rows INTEGER;
6  r_emp_query TEXT;
7  BEGIN
8  v_deptno := 30;
9  v_empno := 0;
10 v_ename := 'Martin';
11 r_emp_query := emp_query(v_deptno, v_empno, v_ename);
12 RAISE INFO 'Department : %', v_deptno;
13 RAISE INFO 'Employee No: %', (r_emp_query).empno;
...

```

Below the code, there are tabs for Parameters, Local variables, Messages, Results, and Stack. The Stack tab is selected, showing a table with one row:

Name	Value	Line No.
emp_query_caller()		8

The above figure shows that `emp_query_caller` is about to call a subprogram named `emp_query`. `emp_query_caller` is currently at the top of the call stack.

After the call to `emp_query` executes, `emp_query` is displayed at the top of the **Stack** tab, and its code is displayed in the **Program Body** panel.

pgAdmin 4

File ▾ Object ▾ Tools ▾ Help ▾

Browser

- > Extensions (6)
- > Foreign Data Wrappers (2)
- > Languages (2)
- ▼ Schemas (2)
  - > enterprisesdb
  - < public
    - > Collations
    - > Domains
    - > FTS Configurations
    - > FTS Dictionaries
    - > FTS Parsers
    - > FTS Templates
    - > Foreign Tables
  - < Functions (6)
    - < emp\_comp(p\_s)
    - < emp\_query\_caller()
      - < hire\_clerk(p\_en)
      - < hire\_salesman()
      - < new\_empno()
      - < select\_emp(p\_en)
- > Materialized Views
- > Packages
- > Procedures
- > Sequences
- > Synonyms
- > Tables
- > Trigger Functions
- < Types
- > Views

Dashboard Properties SQL Statistics Dependencies Dependents Debugger

```
emp_query_caller()

1  DECLARE
2  v_deptno NUMERIC;
3  v.empno NUMERIC;
4  v.ename VARCHAR;
5  v.rows INTEGER;
6  r.emp_query TEXT;
7  BEGIN
8  v_deptno := 30;
9  v.empno := 0;
10 v.ename := 'Martin';
11 r.emp_query := emp_query(v_deptno, v.empno, v.ename);
12 RAISE INFO 'Department : %', v_deptno;
13 RAISE INFO 'Employee No: %', (r.emp_query).empno;
14 END;
```

Parameters Local variables Messages Results Stack

Name	Value	Line No.
emp_query_caller()		8

Upon completion of execution of the subprogram, control returns to the calling program (`emp_query_caller`), now displayed at the top of the `Stack` tab.

pgAdmin 4

File ▾ Object ▾ Tools ▾ Help ▾

Browser

- > Extensions (6)
- > Foreign Data Wrappers (2)
- > Languages (2)
- ▼ Schemas (2)
  - > enterprisesdb
  - < public
    - > Collations
    - > Domains
    - > FTS Configurations
    - > FTS Dictionaries
    - > FTS Parsers
    - > FTS Templates
    - > Foreign Tables
  - < Functions (6)
    - < emp\_comp(p\_s)
    - < emp\_query\_caller()
      - < hire\_clerk(p\_en)
      - < hire\_salesman()
      - < new\_empno()
      - < select\_emp(p\_en)
- > Materialized Views
- > Packages
- > Procedures
- > Sequences
- > Synonyms
- > Tables
- > Trigger Functions
- < Types
- > Views

Dashboard Properties SQL Statistics Dependencies Dependents Debugger

```
emp_query_caller()

1  DECLARE
2  v_deptno NUMERIC;
3  v.empno NUMERIC;
4  v.ename VARCHAR;
5  v.rows INTEGER;
6  r.emp_query TEXT;
7  BEGIN
8  v_deptno := 30;
9  v.empno := 0;
10 v.ename := 'Martin';
11 r.emp_query := emp_query(v_deptno, v.empno, v.ename);
12 RAISE INFO 'Department : %', v_deptno;
13 RAISE INFO 'Employee No: %', (r.emp_query).empno;
14 END;
```

Parameters Local variables Messages Results Stack

Name	Value	Line No.
emp_query_caller()		8

## Debugging a Program

You can perform the following operations to debug a program:

- Step through the program one line at a time
- Execute the program until you reach a breakpoint
- View and change local variable values within the program

## Stepping Through the Code

Use the tool bar icons to step through a program with the Debugger:



The icons serve the following purposes:

- **Step into.** Click the **Step into** icon to execute the currently highlighted line of code.
- **Step over.** Click the **Step over** icon to execute a line of code, stepping over any sub-functions invoked by the code. The sub-function executes, but is not debugged unless it contains a breakpoint.
- **Continue/Start.** Click the **Continue/Start** icon to execute the highlighted code, and continue until the program encounters a breakpoint or completes.
- **Stop.** Click the **Stop** icon to halt the execution of a program.

## Using Breakpoints

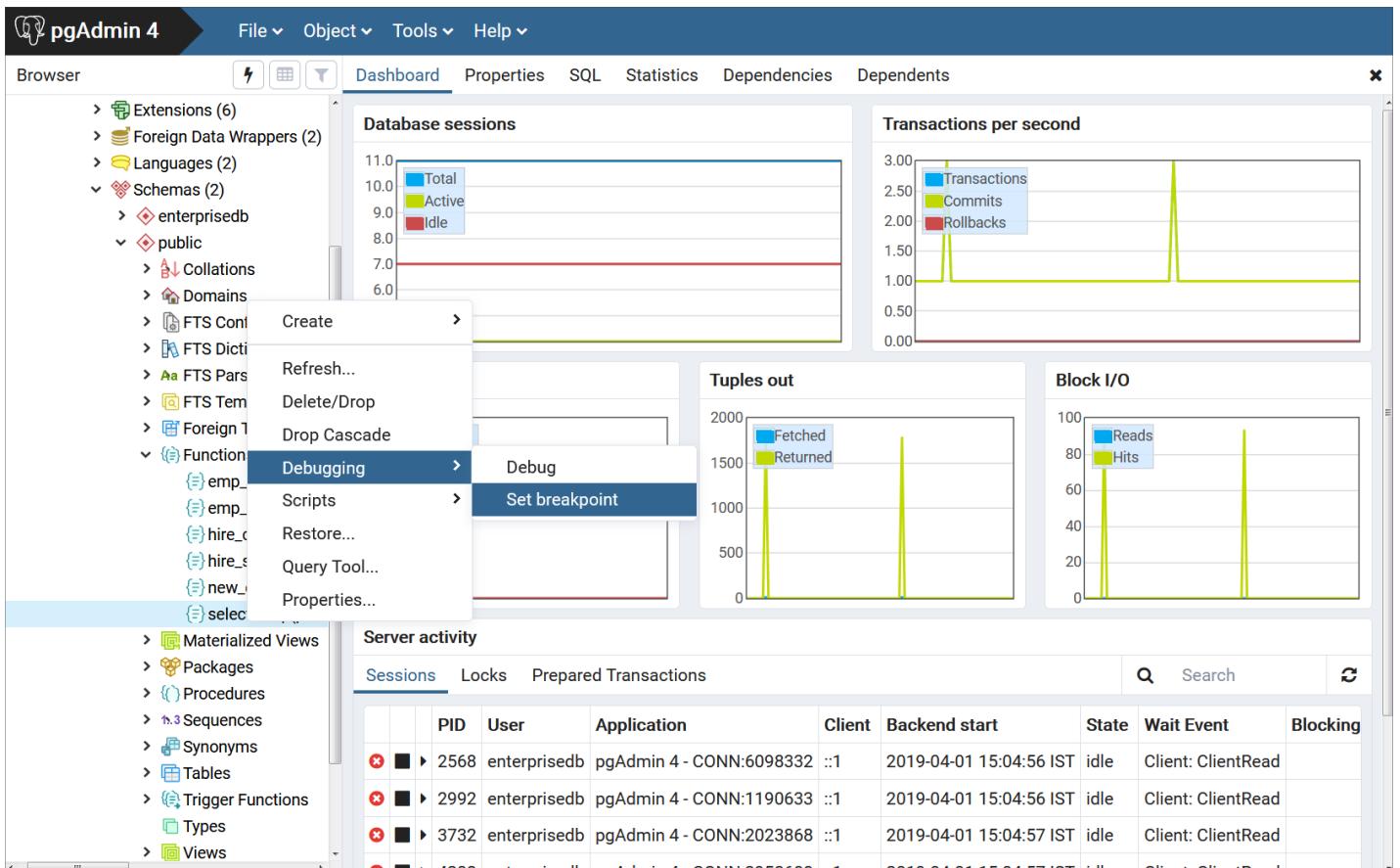
As the Debugger executes a program, it pauses whenever it reaches a breakpoint. When the Debugger pauses, you can observe or change local variables, or navigate to an entry in the call stack to observe variables or set other breakpoints. The next step into, step over, or continue operation forces the debugger to resume execution with the next line of code following the breakpoint. There are two types of breakpoints:

**Local Breakpoint** - A local breakpoint can be set at any executable line of code within a program. The Debugger pauses execution when it reaches a line where a local breakpoint has been set.

**Global Breakpoint** - A global breakpoint will trigger when *any* session reaches that breakpoint. Set a global breakpoint if you want to perform in-context debugging of a program. When a global breakpoint is set on a program, the debugging session that set the global breakpoint waits until that program is invoked in another session. A global breakpoint can only be set by a superuser.

To create a local breakpoint, left-click within the grey shaded margin to the left of the line of code where you want the local breakpoint set. Where you click in the grey shaded margin should be close to the right side of the margin as in the spot where the breakpoint dot is shown on source code line 12.

When created, the Debugger displays a dark dot in the margin, indicating a breakpoint has been set at the selected line of code.



You can set as many local breakpoints as desired. Local breakpoints remain in effect for the duration of a debugging session until they are removed.

## Removing a Local Breakpoint

To remove a local breakpoint, left-click the mouse on the breakpoint dot in the grey shaded margin of the **Program Body** panel. The dot disappears, indicating that the breakpoint has been removed.

You can remove all of the breakpoints from the program that currently appears in the **Program Body** frame by clicking the **Clear all breakpoints** icon.



### Note

When you perform any of the preceding actions, only the breakpoints in the program that currently appears in the **Program Body** panel are removed. Breakpoints in called subprograms or breakpoints in programs that call the program currently appearing in the **Program Body** panel are not removed.

## Setting a Global Breakpoint for In-Context Debugging

To set a global breakpoint for in-context debugging, highlight the stored procedure, function, or trigger on which you wish to set the breakpoint in the **Browser** panel. Navigate through the **Object** menu to select **Debugging**, and then **Set Breakpoint**.

The screenshot shows the pgAdmin 4 interface. In the left sidebar, under the 'Functions' node, there is a list of six functions: emp\_comp, emp\_query\_callee, hire\_clerk, hire\_salesman, new\_empno, and select\_emp. A context menu is open over the 'select\_emp' function, with the 'Debugging' option expanded. The 'Set breakpoint' option is highlighted in blue. The main pane displays several performance monitoring charts: 'Transactions per second' (Transactions, Commits, Rollbacks), 'Tuples in' (Inserts, Updates, Deletes), 'Tuples out' (Fetched, Returned), and 'Block I/O' (Reads, Hits). Below these charts is a 'Server activity' section titled 'Sessions' which lists four sessions.

PID	User	Application	Client	Backend start	State	Wait Event	Blocking
2568	enterprisedb	pgAdmin 4 - CONN:6098332	::1	2019-04-01 15:04:56 IST	idle	Client: ClientRead	
2992	enterprisedb	pgAdmin 4 - CONN:1190633	::1	2019-04-01 15:04:56 IST	idle	Client: ClientRead	
3732	enterprisedb	pgAdmin 4 - CONN:2023868	::1	2019-04-01 15:04:57 IST	idle	Client: ClientRead	
4200	enterprisedb	pgAdmin 4 - CONN:2058600	::1	2019-04-01 15:04:57 IST	idle	Client: ClientRead	

Alternatively, you can right-click on the name of the stored procedure, function, or trigger on which you wish to set a global breakpoint and select **Debugging**, then **Set Breakpoint** from the context menu as shown by the following.

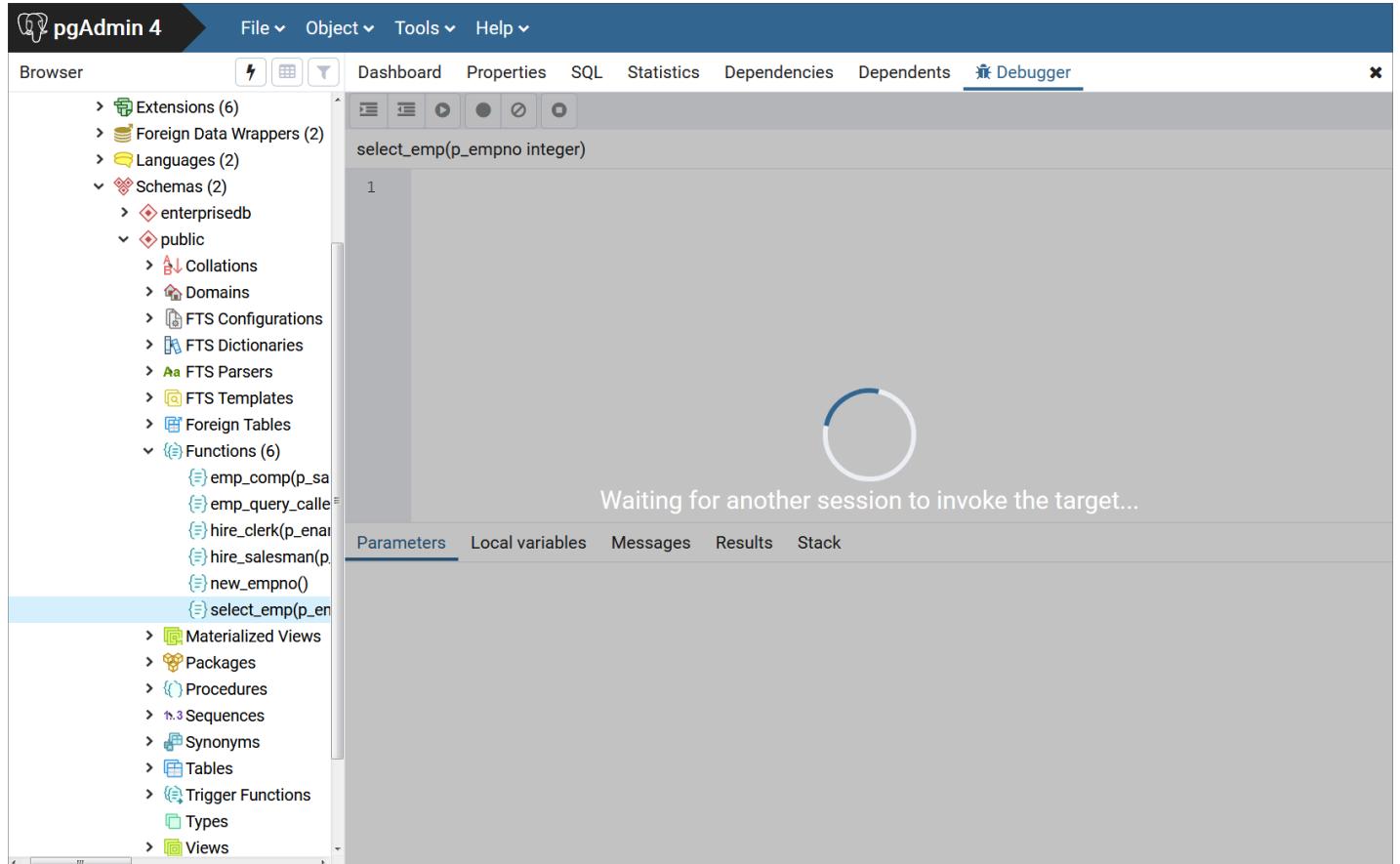
This screenshot is similar to the previous one but focuses on triggers. The left sidebar shows the 'Triggers' node under the 'Tables' category, with a list of triggers: emp\_comp, emp\_query\_callee, hire\_clerk, hire\_salesman, new\_empno, and select\_emp. A context menu is open over the 'select\_emp' trigger, with the 'Debugging' option expanded and 'Set breakpoint' highlighted. The main pane displays the same performance monitoring charts and server activity table as the first screenshot.

PID	User	Application	Client	Backend start	State	Wait Event	Blocking
2568	enterprisedb	pgAdmin 4 - CONN:6098332	::1	2019-04-01 15:04:56 IST	idle	Client: ClientRead	
2992	enterprisedb	pgAdmin 4 - CONN:1190633	::1	2019-04-01 15:04:56 IST	idle	Client: ClientRead	
3732	enterprisedb	pgAdmin 4 - CONN:2023868	::1	2019-04-01 15:04:57 IST	idle	Client: ClientRead	
4200	enterprisedb	pgAdmin 4 - CONN:2058600	::1	2019-04-01 15:04:57 IST	idle	Client: ClientRead	

To set a global breakpoint on a trigger, expand the table node that contains the trigger, highlight the specific trigger you wish to debug, and follow the same directions as for stored procedures and functions.

To set a global breakpoint in a package, highlight the specific procedure or function under the package node of the package you wish to debug and follow the same directions as for stored procedures and functions.

After you choose **Set Breakpoint**, the Debugger window opens and waits for an application to call the program to be debugged.



The PSQL client invokes the `select_emp` function (on which a global breakpoint has been set).

```
$ psql edb enterprisedb
psql.bin (13.0.0, server 13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.
```

```
edb=# SELECT select_emp(7900);
```

The `select_emp` function does not complete until you step through the program in the Debugger.

The screenshot shows the pgAdmin 4 interface with the Debugger tab selected. On the left, the Browser pane lists various database objects like Extensions, Foreign Data Wrappers, Languages, Schemas, Functions, and Views. The 'Functions' section is expanded, and the 'select\_emp(p\_empno integer)' function is selected. The main pane displays the source code of the function:

```

1  DECLARE
2    v_ename emp.ename%TYPE;
3    v_hiredate emp.hiredate%TYPE;
4    v_sal emp.sal%TYPE;
5    v_comm emp.comm%TYPE;
6    v_dname dept.dname%TYPE;
7    v_disp_date VARCHAR(10);
8  BEGIN
9    SELECT INTO
10      v_ename, v_hiredate, v_sal, v_comm, v_dname
11      ename, hiredate, sal, COALESCE(comm, 0), dname
12    FROM emp e, dept d
13    WHERE empno = p_empno;

```

Below the code, there are tabs for Parameters, Local variables, Messages, Results, and Stack. The Parameters tab is active, showing a table with one row:

Name	Type	Value
p_empno	integer	7900

You can now debug the program using any of the previously discussed operations such as step into, step over, and continue, or set local breakpoints. When you have stepped through execution of the program, the calling application (PSQL) regains control and the `select_emp` function completes execution and its output is displayed.

```
$ psql edb enterprisedb
psql.bin (13.0.0, server 13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.
```

```
edb=# SELECT select_emp(7900);
INFO: Number : 7900
INFO: Name : JAMES
INFO: Hire Date : 12/03/1981
INFO: Salary : 950.00
INFO: Commission: 0.00
INFO: Department: SALES
select_emp
-----
(1 row)
```

At this point, you can end the Debugger session. If you do not end the Debugger session, the next application that invokes the program will encounter the global breakpoint and the debugging cycle will begin again.

## Exiting the Debugger

To end a Debugger session and exit the Debugger, click on the close icon (x) located in the upper-right corner to close the tab.

The screenshot shows the EDB Postgres Advanced Server interface with the 'Debugger' tab selected. A script named 'hire\_clerk' is displayed, containing PL/pgSQL code for inserting a new employee record into the 'emp' table. The code defines local variables for employee details and performs an INSERT operation. Below the code, the 'Messages' tab is active, showing the output of the script execution: 'Inserting employee 8003' and '..New salary: 950.00'.

```

hire_clerk(p_ename character varying, p_deptno numeric)

1
2     v_empno      NUMBER(4);
3     v_ename      VARCHAR2(10);
4     v_job       VARCHAR2(9);
5     v_mgr       NUMBER(4);
6     v_hiredate   DATE;
7     v_sal        NUMBER(7,2);
8     v_comm       NUMBER(7,2);
9     v_deptno    NUMBER(2);

10    BEGIN
11        v_empno := new_empno;
12        INSERT INTO emp VALUES (v_empno, p_ename, 'CLERK', 7782,
13                                TRUNC(SYSDATE), 950.00, NULL, p_deptno);
14    END;

```

Parameters Local variables Messages Results Stack

Inserting employee 8003  
..New salary: 950.00

## 12.13 Performance Analysis and Tuning

Advanced Server provides various tools for performance analysis and tuning. These features are described in this section.

### Dynatune

Advanced Server supports dynamic tuning of the database server to make the optimal usage of the system resources available on the host machine on which it is installed. The two parameters that control this functionality are located in the [postgresql.conf](#) file. These parameters are:

- `edb_dynatune`
- `edb_dynatune_profile`

#### `edb_dynatune`

`edb_dynatune` determines how much of the host system's resources are to be used by the database server based upon the host machine's total available resources and the intended usage of the host machine.

When Advanced Server is initially installed, the `edb_dynatune` parameter is set in accordance with the selected usage of the host machine on which it was installed - i.e., development machine, mixed use machine, or dedicated server. For most purposes, there is no need for the database administrator to adjust the various configuration parameters in the [postgresql.conf](#) file in order to improve performance.

You can change the value of the `edb_dynatune` parameter after the initial installation of Advanced Server by editing the [postgresql.conf](#) file. The postmaster must be restarted in order for the new configuration to take effect.

The `edb_dynatune` parameter can be set to any integer value between `0` and `100`, inclusive. A value of `0`, turns off the dynamic tuning feature thereby leaving the database server resource usage totally under the control of the other configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file.

A low non-zero, value (e.g., `1` - `33`) dedicates the least amount of the host machine's resources to the database server. This setting would be used for a development machine where many other applications are being used.

A value in the range of `34` - `66` dedicates a moderate amount of resources to the database server. This setting might be used for a dedicated application server that may have a fixed number of other applications running on the same machine as Advanced Server.

The highest values (e.g., `67` - `100`) dedicate most of the server's resources to the database server. This setting would be used for a host machine that is totally dedicated to running Advanced Server.

Once a value of `edb_dynatune` is selected, database server performance can be further fine-tuned by adjusting the other configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file. Any adjusted setting overrides the corresponding value chosen by `edb_dynatune`. You can change the value of a parameter by un-commenting the configuration parameter, specifying the desired value, and restarting the database server.

## `edb_dynatune_profile`

The `edb_dynatune_profile` parameter is used to control tuning aspects based upon the expected workload profile on the database server. This parameter takes effect upon startup of the database server.

The possible values for `edb_dynatune_profile` are:

Value	Usage
<code>oltp</code>	Recommended when the database server is processing heavy online transaction processing workloads.
<code>reporting</code>	Recommended for database servers used for heavy data reporting.
<code>mixed</code>	Recommended for servers that provide a mix of transaction processing and data reporting.

## EDB Wait States

The *EDB wait states* contrib module contains two main components.

### EDB Wait States Background Worker (EWSBW)

When the wait states background worker is registered as one of the shared preload libraries, EWSBW probes each of the running sessions at regular intervals.

For every session it collects information such as the database to which it is connected, the logged in user of the session, the query running in that session, and the wait events on which it is waiting.

This information is saved in a set of files in a user-configurable path and directory folder given by the `edb_wait_states.directory` parameter to be added to the `postgresql.conf` file. The specified path must be a full, absolute path and not a relative path.

**The following describes the installation process on a Linux system.**

**Step 1:** EDB wait states is installed with the `edb-asxx-server-edb-modules` RPM package where `xx` is the Advanced Server version number.

**Step 2:** To launch the worker, it must be registered in the `postgresql.conf` file using the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter, for example:

```
shared_preload_libraries = '$libdir/edb_wait_states'
```

**Step 3:** Restart the database server. After a successful restart, the background worker begins collecting data.

**Step 4:** To review the data, create the following extension:

```
CREATE EXTENSION edb_wait_states;
```

**Step 5:** To terminate the EDB wait states worker, remove `$libdir/edb_wait_states` from the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter and restart the database server.

**The following describes the installation process on a Windows system.**

**Step 1:** EDB wait states module is installed with the `EDB Modules` installer by invoking StackBuilder Plus utility. Follow the onscreen instructions to complete the installation of the `EDB Modules`.

**Step 2:** To register the worker, modify the `postgresql.conf` file to include the wait states library in the `shared_preload_libraries` configuration parameter. The parameter value must include:

```
shared_preload_libraries = '$libdir/edb_wait_states.dll'
```

The EDB wait states installation places the `edb_wait_states.dll` library file in the following path:

```
C:\Program Files\edb\as13\lib\
```

**Step 3:** Restart the database server for the changes to take effect. After a successful restart, the background worker gets started and starts collecting the data.

**Step 4:** To view the data, create the following extension:

```
CREATE EXTENSION edb_wait_states;
```

The installer places the `edb_wait_states.control` file in the following path:

```
C:\Program Files\edb\as13\share\extension
```

## Terminating the Wait States Worker

To terminate the EDB wait states worker, use the `DROP EXTENSION` command to drop the `edb_wait_states` extension; then modify the `postgresql.conf` file, removing `$libdir/edb_wait_states.dll` from the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter. Restart the database server after modifying the `postgresql.conf` file to apply your changes.

## The Wait States Interface

The interface includes the functions listed in the following sections. Each of these functions has common input and output parameters. Those parameters are as follows:

- **start\_ts and end\_ts (IN).** Together these specify the time interval and the data within which is to be read. If only `start_ts` is specified, the data starting from `start_ts` is output. If only `end_ts` is provided, data up to `end_ts` is output. If none of those are provided, all the data is output. Every function outputs different data. The output of each function will be explained below.
- **query\_id (OUT).** Identifies a normalized query. It is internal hash code computed from the query.
- **session\_id (OUT).** Identifies a session.
- **ref\_start\_ts and ref\_end\_ts (OUT).** Provide the timestamps of a file containing a particular data point. A data point may be a wait event sample record or a query record or a session record.

The syntax of each function is given in the following sections.

**Note:** The examples shown in the following sections are based on the following three queries executed on four

different sessions connected to different databases using different users, simultaneously:

```
SELECT schemaname FROM pg_tables, pg_sleep(15) WHERE schemaname <>
'pg_catalog'; /* ran on 2 sessions */
SELECT tablename FROM pg_tables, pg_sleep(10) WHERE schemaname <>
'pg_catalog';
SELECT tablename, schemaname FROM pg_tables, pg_sleep(10) WHERE schemaname
<> 'pg_catalog';
```

## edb\_wait\_states\_data

This function is used to read the data collected by EWSBW.

```
edb_wait_states_data(
    IN start_ts timestamptz default '-infinity'::timestamptz,
    IN end_ts timestamptz default 'infinity'::timestamptz,
    OUT session_id int4,
    OUT <dbname> text,
    OUT <username> text,
    OUT <query> text,
    OUT <query_start_time> timestamptz,
    OUT <sample_time> timestamptz,
    OUT <wait_event_type> text,
    OUT <wait_event> text
)
```

This function can be used to find out the following:

The queries running in the given duration (defined by `start_ts` and `end_ts`) in all the sessions, and the wait events, if any, they were waiting on. For example:

```
SELECT query, session_id, wait_event_type, wait_event
    FROM edb_wait_states_data(start_ts, end_ts);
```

The progress of a session within a given duration (that is, the queries run in a session (`session_id = 100000`) and the wait events the queries waited on). For example:

```
SELECT query, wait_event_type, wait_event
    FROM edb_wait_states_data(start_ts, end_ts)
    WHERE session_id = 100000;
```

The duration for which the samples are available. For example:

```
SELECT min(sample_time), max(sample_time)
    FROM edb_wait_states_data();
```

## Parameters

In addition to the common parameters described previously, each row of the output gives the following:

`dbname`

The session's database

`username`

The session's logged in user

`query`

The query running in the session

`query_start_time`

The time when the query started

`sample_time`

The time when wait event data was collected

`wait_event_type`

The type of wait event the session (backend) is waiting on

`wait_event`

The wait event the session (backend) is waiting on

## Example

The following is a sample output from the `edb_wait_states_data()` function.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_wait_states_data();
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+
-----+-----+
session_id | 4398
dbname     | edb
username   | enterprisedb
query      | SELECT schemaname FROM pg_tables, pg_sleep($1) WHERE
schemaname <> $2
query_start_time | 17-AUG-18 11:56:05.271962 -04:00
sample_time   | 17-AUG-18 11:56:19.700236 -04:00
wait_event_type | Timeout
wait_event    | PgSleep
-[ RECORD 2 ]-----+
-----+-----+
session_id | 4398
dbname     | edb
username   | enterprisedb
query      | SELECT schemaname FROM pg_tables, pg_sleep($1) WHERE
schemaname <> $2
query_start_time | 17-AUG-18 11:56:05.271962 -04:00
sample_time   | 17-AUG-18 11:56:18.699938 -04:00
wait_event_type | Timeout
wait_event    | PgSleep
-[ RECORD 3 ]-----+
-----+-----+
session_id | 4398
dbname     | edb
username   | enterprisedb
query      | SELECT schemaname FROM pg_tables, pg_sleep($1) WHERE
schemaname <> $2
query_start_time | 17-AUG-18 11:56:05.271962 -04:00
sample_time   | 17-AUG-18 11:56:17.700253 -04:00
```

```
wait_event_type | Timeout
wait_event     | PgSleep
.
```

## edb\_wait\_states\_queries

This function gives information about the queries sampled by EWSBW.

```
edb_wait_states_queries(
    IN start_ts timestamptz default '-infinity'::timestamptz,
    IN end_ts timestamptz default 'infinity'::timestamptz,
    OUT query_id int8,
    OUT <query> text,
    OUT ref_start_ts timestamptz
    OUT ref_end_ts timestamptz
)
```

A new queries file is created periodically and thus, there can be multiple query files generated corresponding to specific intervals.

This function returns all the queries in query files that overlap with the given time interval. A query as shown below, gives all the queries in query files that contained queries sampled between `start_ts` and `end_ts`.

In other words, the function may output queries that did not run in the given interval. To exactly know that the user should use `edb_wait_states_data()`.

```
SELECT query FROM edb_wait_states_queries(start_ts, end_ts);
```

### Parameters

In addition to the common parameters described previously, each row of the output gives the following:

#### query

Normalized query text

### Example

The following is a sample output from the `edb_wait_states_queries()` function.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_wait_states_queries();
-[ RECORD 1 ]+-----
-----+
query_id  | 4292540138852956818
query     | SELECT schemaname FROM pg_tables, pg_sleep($1) WHERE
schemaname <> $2
ref_start_ts | 17-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00
ref_end_ts  | 18-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00
-[ RECORD 2 ]+-----
-----+
query_id  | 3754591102365859187
query     | SELECT tablename FROM pg_tables, pg_sleep($1) WHERE
schemaname <> $2
ref_start_ts | 17-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00
```

```

ref_end_ts | 18-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00
-[ RECORD 3 ]+-----
-----
query_id  | 349089096300352897
query     | SELECT tablename, schemaname FROM pg_tables, pg_sleep($1)
WHERE schemaname <> $2
ref_start_ts | 17-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00
ref_end_ts | 18-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00

```

## edb\_wait\_states\_sessions

This function gives information about the sessions sampled by EWSBW.

```

edb_wait_states_sessions(
    IN start_ts timestamptz default '-infinity'::timestamptz,
    IN end_ts timestamptz default 'infinity'::timestamptz,
    OUT session_id int4,
    OUT <dbname> text,
    OUT <username> text,
    OUT ref_start_ts timestamptz
    OUT ref_end_ts timestamptz
)

```

This function can be used to identify the databases that were connected and/or which users started those sessions. For example:

```

SELECT dbname, username, session_id
  FROM edb_wait_states_sessions();

```

Similar to [edb\\_wait\\_states\\_queries\(\)](#), this function outputs all the sessions logged in session files that contain sessions sampled within the given interval and not necessarily only the sessions sampled within the given interval. To identify that one should use [edb\\_wait\\_states\\_data\(\)](#).

### Parameters

In addition to the common parameters described previously, each row of the output gives the following:

**dbname**

The database to which the session is connected

**username**

Login user of the session

### Example

The following is a sample output from the [edb\\_wait\\_states\\_sessions\(\)](#) function.

```

edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_wait_states_sessions();
-[ RECORD 1 ]+-----
session_id | 4340
dbname     | edb
username   | enterprisedb
ref_start_ts | 17-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00
ref_end_ts | 18-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00

```

```
-[ RECORD 2 ]+-----
session_id | 4398
dbname     | edb
username   | enterprisedb
ref_start_ts | 17-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00
ref_end_ts  | 18-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00
-[ RECORD 3 ]+-----
session_id | 4410
dbname     | db1
username   | user1
ref_start_ts | 17-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00
ref_end_ts  | 18-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00
-[ RECORD 4 ]+-----
session_id | 4422
dbname     | db2
username   | user2
ref_start_ts | 17-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00
ref_end_ts  | 18-AUG-18 11:52:38.698793 -04:00
```

## edb\_wait\_states\_samples

This function gives information about wait events sampled by EWSBW.

```
edb_wait_states_samples(
    IN start_ts timestamptz default '-infinity'::timestamptz,
    IN end_ts timestamptz default 'infinity'::timestamptz,
    OUT query_id int8,
    OUT session_id int4,
    OUT <query_start_time> timestamptz,
    OUT <sample_time> timestamptz,
    OUT <wait_event_type> text,
    OUT <wait_event> text
)
```

Usually, a user would not be required to call this function directly.

### Parameters

In addition to the common parameters described previously, each row of the output gives the following:

`query_start_time`

The time when the query started in this session

`sample_time`

The time when wait event data was collected

`wait_event_type`

The type of wait event on which the session is waiting

`wait_event`

The wait event on which the session (backend) is waiting

## Example

The following is a sample output from the `edb_wait_states_samples()` function.

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_wait_states_samples();
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+
query_id      | 4292540138852956818
session_id    | 4340
query_start_time | 17-AUG-18 11:56:00.39421 -04:00
sample_time    | 17-AUG-18 11:56:00.699934 -04:00
wait_event_type | Timeout
wait_event     | PgSleep
-[ RECORD 2 ]-----+
query_id      | 4292540138852956818
session_id    | 4340
query_start_time | 17-AUG-18 11:56:00.39421 -04:00
sample_time    | 17-AUG-18 11:56:01.699003 -04:00
wait_event_type | Timeout
wait_event     | PgSleep
-[ RECORD 3 ]-----+
query_id      | 4292540138852956818
session_id    | 4340
query_start_time | 17-AUG-18 11:56:00.39421 -04:00
sample_time    | 17-AUG-18 11:56:02.70001 -04:00
wait_event_type | Timeout
wait_event     | PgSleep
-[ RECORD 4 ]-----+
query_id      | 4292540138852956818
session_id    | 4340
query_start_time | 17-AUG-18 11:56:00.39421 -04:00
sample_time    | 17-AUG-18 11:56:03.700081 -04:00
wait_event_type | Timeout
wait_event     | PgSleep
.
.
```

## edb\_wait\_states\_purge

The function deletes all the sampled data files (queries, sessions and wait event samples) that were created after `start_ts` and aged (rotated) before `end_ts`.

```
edb_wait_states_purge(
  IN start_ts timestamptz default '-infinity'::timestamptz,
  IN end_ts timestamptz default 'infinity'::timestamptz
)
```

Usually a user does not need to run this function. The backend should purge those according to the retention age, but in case, that doesn't happen for some reason, this function may be used.

In order to know the duration for which the samples have been retained, use `edb_wait_states_data()` as explained in the previous examples of that function.

## Example

The `$PGDATA/edb_wait_states` directory before running `edb_wait_states_purge()`:

```
[root@localhost data]# pwd
/var/lib/edb/as13/data
[root@localhost data]# ls -l edb_wait_states
total 12
-rw----- 1 enterprise... 253 Aug 17 11:56
edb_ws_queries_587836358698793_587922758698793
-rw----- 1 enterprise... 1600 Aug 17 11:56
edb_ws_samples_587836358698793_587839958698793
-rw----- 1 enterprise... 94 Aug 17 11:56
edb_ws_sessions_587836358698793_587922758698793
```

The `$PGDATA/edb_wait_states` directory after running `edb_wait_states_purge()`:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_wait_states_purge();
edb_wait_states_purge
```

(1 row)

```
[root@localhost data]# pwd
/var/lib/edb/as13/data
[root@localhost data]# ls -l edb_wait_states
total 0
```

## 12.14 EDB Clone Schema

*EDB Clone Schema* is an extension module for Advanced Server that allows you to copy a schema and its database objects from a local or remote database (the source database) to a receiving database (the target database).

The source and target databases can be the same physical database, or different databases within the same database cluster, or separate databases running under different database clusters on separate database server hosts.

Use the following functions with EDB Clone Schema:

- **localcopschema.** This function makes a copy of a schema and its database objects from a source database back into the same database (the target), but with a different schema name than the original. Use this function when the original source schema and the resulting copy are to reside within the same database. See [localcopschema](#) for information on the `localcopschema` function.
- **localcopschema\_nb.** This function performs the same purpose as `localcopschema`, but as a background job, thus freeing up the terminal from which the function was initiated. This is referred to as a *non-blocking* function. See [localcopschema\\_nb](#) for information on the `localcopschema_nb` function.
- **remotecloneschema.** This function makes a copy of a schema and its database objects from a source database to a different target database. Use this function when the original source schema and the resulting copy are to reside in two, separate databases. The separate databases can reside in the same, or in different Advanced Server database clusters. See [remotecloneschema](#) for information on the `remotecloneschema` function.
- **remotecloneschema\_nb.** This function performs the same purpose as `remotecloneschema`, but as a background job, thus freeing up the terminal from which the function was initiated. This is referred to as a *non-blocking* function. See [remotecloneschema\\_nb](#) for information on the `remotecloneschema_nb` function.

- **process\_status\_from\_log.** This function displays the status of the cloning functions. The information is obtained from a log file that must be specified when a cloning function is invoked. See [process\\_status\\_from\\_log](#) for information on the `process_status_from_log` function.
- **remove\_log\_file\_and\_job.** This function deletes the log file created by a cloning function. This function can also be used to delete a job created by the non-blocking form of the function. See [remove\\_log\\_file\\_and\\_job](#) for information on the `remove_log_file_and_job` function.

The database objects that can be cloned from one schema to another are the following:

- Data types
- Tables including partitioned tables, excluding foreign tables
- Indexes
- Constraints
- Sequences
- View definitions
- Materialized views
- Private synonyms
- Table triggers, but excluding event triggers
- Rules
- Functions
- Procedures
- Packages
- Comments for all supported object types
- Access control lists (ACLs) for all supported object types

The following database objects cannot be cloned:

- Large objects (Postgres `LOBs` and `BFILEs`)
- Logical replication attributes for a table
- Database links
- Foreign data wrappers
- Foreign tables
- Event triggers
- Extensions (For cloning objects that rely on extensions, see the third bullet point in the following limitations list.)
- Row level security
- Policies
- Operator class

In addition, the following limitations apply:

- EDB Clone Schema is supported on Advanced Server only when a dialect of `Compatible with Oracle` is specified on the Advanced Server `Dialect` dialog during installation, or when the `--redwood-like` keywords are included during a text mode installation or cluster initialization.
- The source code within functions, procedures, triggers, packages, etc., are not modified after being copied to the target schema. If such programs contain coded references to objects with schema names, the programs may fail upon invocation in the target schema if such schema names are no longer consistent within the target schema.
- Cross schema object dependencies are not resolved. If an object in the target schema depends upon an object in another schema, this dependency is not resolved by the cloning functions.
- For remote cloning, if an object in the source schema is dependent upon an extension, then this extension must be created in the public schema of the remote database before invoking the remote cloning function.
- At most, 16 copy jobs can run in parallel to clone schemas, whereas each job can have at most 16 worker processes to copy table data in parallel.
- Queries being run by background workers cannot be cancelled.

The following section describes how to set up EDB Clone Schema on the databases.

## Setup Process

Several extensions along with the PL/Perl language must be installed on any database to be used as the source

or target database by an EDB Clone Schema function.

In addition, some configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file of the database servers may benefit from some modification.

The following is the setup instructions for these requirements.

## Installing Extensions and PL/Perl

The following describes the steps to install the required extensions and the PL/Perl language.

**These steps must be performed on any database to be used as the source or target database by an EDB Clone Schema function.**

**Step 1:** The following extensions must be installed on the database:

- `postgres_fdw`
- `dblink`
- `adminpack`
- `pgagent`

Ensure that pgAgent is installed before creating the `pgagent` extension. On Linux, you can use the `edb-asxx-pgagent` RPM package where `xx` is the Advanced Server version number to install pgAgent. On Windows, use StackBuilder Plus to download and install pgAgent.

The previously listed extensions can be installed by the following commands if they do not already exist:

```
CREATE EXTENSION postgres_fdw SCHEMA public;
CREATE EXTENSION dblink SCHEMA public;
CREATE EXTENSION adminpack;
CREATE EXTENSION pgagent;
```

For more information about using the `CREATE EXTENSION` command, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-createextension.html>

**Step 2:** Modify the `postgresql.conf` file.

Modify the `postgresql.conf` file by adding `$libdir/parallel_clone` to the `shared_preload_libraries` configuration parameter as shown by the following example:

```
shared_preload_libraries = '$libdir/dbms_pipe,$libdir/dbms_aq,$libdir/
parallel_clone'
```

**Step 3:** The Perl Procedural Language (PL/Perl) must be installed on the database and the `CREATE TRUSTED LANGUAGE plperl` command must be run. For Linux, install PL/Perl using the `edb-asxx-server-plperl` RPM package where `xx` is the Advanced Server version number. For Windows, use the EDB Postgres Language Pack. For information on EDB Language Pack, see the *EDB Postgres Language Pack Guide* available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

**Step 4:** Connect to the database as a superuser and run the following command:

```
CREATE TRUSTED LANGUAGE plperl;
```

For more information about using the `CREATE LANGUAGE` command, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-createlanguage.html>

## Setting Configuration Parameters

The following sections describe configuration parameters that may need to be altered in the `postgresql.conf` file.

### Performance Configuration Parameters

You may need to tune the system for copying a large schema as part of one transaction.

Tuning of configuration parameters is for the source database server referenced in a cloning function.

The configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file that may need to be tuned include the following:

- **work\_mem**. Specifies the amount of memory to be used by internal sort operations and hash tables before writing to temporary disk files.
- **maintenance work mem**. Specifies the maximum amount of memory to be used by maintenance operations, such as `VACUUM`, `CREATE INDEX`, and `ALTER TABLE ADD FOREIGN KEY`.
- **max\_worker\_processes**. Sets the maximum number of background processes that the system can support.
- **checkpoint\_timeout**. Maximum time between automatic WAL checkpoints, in seconds.
- **checkpoint\_completion\_target**. Specifies the target of checkpoint completion, as a fraction of total time between checkpoints.
- **checkpoint\_flush\_after**. Whenever more than `checkpoint_flush_after` bytes have been written while performing a checkpoint, attempt to force the OS to issue these writes to the underlying storage.
- **max\_wal\_size**. Maximum size to let the WAL grow to between automatic WAL checkpoints.
- **max\_locks\_per\_transaction**. This parameter controls the average number of object locks allocated for each transaction; individual transactions can lock more objects as long as the locks of all transactions fit in the lock table.

For information about the configuration parameters, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/runtime-config.html>

### Status Logging

Status logging by the cloning functions creates log files in the directory specified by the `log_directory` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file for the database server to which you are connected when invoking the cloning function.

The default location is `PGDATA/log` as shown by the following:

```
#log_directory = 'log'      # directory where log files are written,
                           # can be absolute or relative to PGDATA
```

This directory must exist prior to running a cloning function.

The name of the log file is determined by what you specify in the parameter list when invoking the cloning function.

To display the status from a log file, use the `process_status_from_log` function.

To delete a log file, use the `remove_log_file_and_job` function, or simply navigate to the log directory and delete it manually.

## Installing EDB Clone Schema

The following are the directions for installing EDB Clone Schema.

**These steps must be performed on any database to be used as the source or target database by an EDB Clone Schema function.**

**Step 1:** If you had previously installed an older version of the `edb_cloneschema` extension, then you must run the following command:

```
DROP EXTENSION parallel_clone CASCADE;
```

This command also drops the `edb_cloneschema` extension.

**Step 2:** Install the extensions using the following commands:

```
CREATE EXTENSION parallel_clone SCHEMA public;
```

```
CREATE EXTENSION edb_cloneschema;
```

Make sure you create the `parallel_clone` extension before creating the `edb_cloneschema` extension.

## Creating the Foreign Servers and User Mappings

When using one of the local cloning functions, `localcopschema` or `localcopschema_nb`, one of the required parameters includes a single, foreign server for identifying the database server along with its database that is the source and the receiver of the cloned schema.

When using one of the remote cloning functions, `remotecopschema` or `remotecopschema_nb`, two of the required parameters include two foreign servers. The foreign server specified as the first parameter identifies the source database server along with its database that is the provider of the cloned schema. The foreign server specified as the second parameter identifies the target database server along with its database that is the receiver of the cloned schema.

For each foreign server, a user mapping must be created. When a selected database superuser invokes a cloning function, that database superuser who invokes the function must have been mapped to a database user name and password that has access to the foreign server that is specified as a parameter in the cloning function.

For general information about foreign data, foreign servers, and user mappings, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/ddl-foreign-data.html>

The following two sections describe how these foreign servers and user mappings are defined.

### Foreign Server and User Mapping for Local Cloning Functions

For the `localcopschema` and `localcopschema_nb` functions, the source and target schemas are both within the same database of the same database server. Thus, only one foreign server must be defined and specified for these functions. This foreign server is also referred to as the *local server*.

This server is referred to as the *local server* because this server is the one to which you must be connected when invoking the `localcopschema` or `localcopschema_nb` function.

The user mapping defines the connection and authentication information for the foreign server.

**This foreign server and user mapping must be created within the database of the local server in which the cloning is to occur.**

**The database user for whom the user mapping is defined must be a superuser and the user connected to the local server when invoking an EDB Clone Schema function.**

The following example creates the foreign server for the database containing the schema to be cloned, and to receive the cloned schema as well.

```
CREATE SERVER local_server FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER postgres_fdw
OPTIONS(
  host 'localhost',
  port '5444',
  dbname 'edb'
);
```

For more information about using the `CREATE SERVER` command, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-createserver.html>

The user mapping for this server is the following:

```
CREATE USER MAPPING FOR enterprisedb SERVER local_server
OPTIONS (
  user 'enterprisedb',
  password 'password'
);
```

For more information about using the `CREATE USER MAPPING` command, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-createusermapping.html>

The following `psql` commands show the foreign server and user mapping:

```
edb=# \des+
List of foreign servers
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+
Name          | local_server
Owner         | enterprisedb
Foreign-data wrapper | postgres_fdw
Access privileges  |
Type          |
Version        |
FDW options    | (host 'localhost', port '5444', dbname 'edb')
Description    |

edb=# \deu+
      List of user mappings
   Server | User name |           FDW options
-----+-----+
local_server | enterprisedb | ("user" 'enterprisedb', password 'password')
(1 row)
```

When database superuser `enterprisedb` invokes a cloning function, the database user `enterprisedb` with its password is used to connect to `local_server` on the `localhost` with port `5444` to database `edb`.

In this case, the mapped database user, `enterprisedb`, and the database user, `enterprisedb`, used to connect to the local `edb` database happen to be the same, identical database user, but that is not an absolute requirement.

For specific usage of these foreign server and user mapping examples, see the example given in `localcopieschema`.

## Foreign Server and User Mapping for Remote Cloning Functions

For the `remotecopyschema` and `remotecopyschema_nb` functions, the source and target schemas are in different databases of either the same or different database servers. Thus, two foreign servers must be defined and specified for these functions.

The foreign server defining the originating database server and its database containing the source schema to be cloned is referred to as the *source server* or the *remote server*.

The foreign server defining the database server and its database to receive the schema to be cloned is referred to as the *target server* or the *local server*.

The target server is also referred to as the local server because this server is the one to which you must be connected when invoking the `remotecopyschema` or `remotecopyschema_nb` function.

The user mappings define the connection and authentication information for the foreign servers.

**All of these foreign servers and user mappings must be created within the target database of the target/local server.**

**The database user for whom the user mappings are defined must be a superuser and the user connected to the local server when invoking an EDB Clone Schema function.**

The following example creates the foreign server for the local, target database that is to receive the cloned schema.

```
CREATE SERVER tgt_server FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER postgres_fdw
OPTIONS(
  host 'localhost',
  port '5444',
  dbname 'tgtdb'
);
```

The user mapping for this server is the following:

```
CREATE USER MAPPING FOR enterprisedb SERVER tgt_server
OPTIONS (
  user 'tgtuser',
  password 'tgtpassword'
);
```

The following example creates the foreign server for the remote, source database that is to be the source for the cloned schema.

```
CREATE SERVER src_server FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER postgres_fdw
OPTIONS(
  host '192.168.2.28',
  port '5444',
  dbname 'srcdb'
);
```

The user mapping for this server is the following:

```
CREATE USER MAPPING FOR enterprisedb SERVER src_server
OPTIONS (
  user 'srcuser',
  password 'srcpassword'
);
```

The following `psql` commands show the foreign servers and user mappings:

```
tgtdb=# \des+
List of foreign servers
-[ RECORD 1 ]+-----+
Name      | src_server
Owner     | tgtuser
Foreign-data wrapper | postgres_fdw
Access privileges |
Type      |
Version   |
FDW options | (host '192.168.2.28', port '5444', dbname 'srcdb')
Description |
-[ RECORD 2 ]+-----+
Name      | tgt_server
Owner     | tgtuser
Foreign-data wrapper | postgres_fdw
Access privileges |
Type      |
Version   |
FDW options | (host 'localhost', port '5444', dbname 'tgtdb')
Description |

tgtdb=# \deu+
      List of user mappings
  Server | User name |           FDW options
-----+-----+
src_server | enterprisedb | ("user" 'srcuser', password 'srcpassword')
tgt_server | enterprisedb | ("user" 'tgtuser', password 'tgtpassword')
(2 rows)
```

When database superuser `enterprisedb` invokes a cloning function, the database user `tgtuser` with password `tgtpassword` is used to connect to `tgt_server` on the `localhost` with port `5444` to database `tgtdb`.

In addition, database user `srcuser` with password `srcpassword` connects to `src_server` on host `192.168.2.28` with port `5444` to database `srcdb`.

#### Note

Be sure the `pg_hba.conf` file of the database server running the source database `srcdb` has an appropriate entry permitting connection from the target server location (address `192.168.2.27` in the following example) connecting with the database user `srcuser` that was included in the user mapping for the foreign server `src_server` defining the source server and database.

##	TYPE	DATABASE	USER	ADDRESS	METHOD
##	"local"				
local	all	all		md5	
##	IPv4	local connections:			
host	srcdb	srcuser	192.168.2.27/32		md5

For specific usage of these foreign server and user mapping examples, see the example given `remotecopyschema`.

## EDB Clone Schema Functions

The EDB Clone Schema functions are created in the `edb_util` schema when the `parallel_clone` and `edb_cloneschema` extensions are installed.

Verify the following conditions before using an EDB Clone Schema function:

- You are connected to the target or local database as the database superuser defined in the `CREATE USER MAPPING` command for the foreign server of the target or local database.
- The `edb_util` schema is in the search path, or the cloning function is to be invoked with the `edb_util` prefix.
- The target schema does not exist in the target database.
- When using the remote copy functions, if the `on_tblspace` parameter is to be set to `true`, then the target database cluster contains all tablespaces that are referenced by objects in the source schema, otherwise creation of the DDL statements for those database objects will fail in the target schema. This causes a failure of the cloning process.
- When using the remote copy functions, if the `copy_acls` parameter is to be set to `true`, then all roles that have `GRANT` privileges on objects in the source schema exist in the target database cluster, otherwise granting of privileges to those roles will fail in the target schema. This causes a failure of the cloning process.
- pgAgent is running against the target database if the non-blocking form of the function is to be used.

For information about pgAgent, see the pgAdmin documentation available at:

<https://www.pgadmin.org/docs/pgadmin4/dev/pgagent.html>

Note that pgAgent is provided as a component with Advanced Server.

## localcopschema

The `localcopschema` function copies a schema and its database objects within a local database specified within the `source_fdw` foreign server from the source schema to the specified target schema within the same database.

```
localcopschema(
    <source_fdw> TEXT,
    <source_schema> TEXT,
    <target_schema> TEXT,
    <log_filename> TEXT
    [, <on_tblspace> BOOLEAN
    [, <verbose_on> BOOLEAN
    [, <copy_acls> BOOLEAN
    [, <worker_count> INTEGER ]]]]
)
```

A `BOOLEAN` value is returned by the function. If the function succeeds, then `true` is returned. If the function fails, then `false` is returned.

The `source_fdw`, `source_schema`, `target_schema`, and `log_filename` are required parameters while all other parameters are optional.

### Parameters

`source_fdw`

Name of the foreign server managed by the `postgres_fdw` foreign data wrapper from which database objects are to be cloned.

`source_schema`

Name of the schema from which database objects are to be cloned.

`target_schema`

Name of the schema into which database objects are to be cloned from the source schema.

#### log\_filename

Name of the log file in which information from the function is recorded. The log file is created under the directory specified by the `log_directory` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file.

#### on\_tblspace

`BOOLEAN` value to specify whether or not database objects are to be created within their tablespaces. If `false` is specified, then the `TABLESPACE` clause is not included in the applicable `CREATE` DDL statement when added to the target schema. If `true` is specified, then the `TABLESPACE` clause is included in the `CREATE` DDL statement when added to the target schema. If the `on_tblspace` parameter is omitted, the default value is `false`.

#### verbose\_on

`BOOLEAN` value to specify whether or not the DDLs are to be printed in `log_filename` when creating objects in the target schema. If `false` is specified, then DDLs are not printed. If `true` is specified, then DDLs are printed. If omitted, the default value is `false`.

#### copy\_acls

`BOOLEAN` value to specify whether or not the access control list (ACL) is to be included while creating objects in the target schema. The access control list is the set of `GRANT` privilege statements. If `false` is specified, then the access control list is not included for the target schema. If `true` is specified, then the access control list is included for the target schema. If the `copy_acls` parameter is omitted, the default value is `false`.

#### worker\_count

Number of background workers to perform the clone in parallel. If omitted, the default value is `1`.

### Example

The following example shows the cloning of schema `edb` containing a set of database objects to target schema `edbcopy`, both within database `edb` as defined by `local_server`.

The example is for the following environment:

- Host on which the database server is running: `localhost`
- Port of the database server: `5444`
- Database source/target of the clone: `edb`
- Foreign server (`local_server`) and user mapping with the information of the preceding bullet points
- Source schema: `edb`
- Target schema: `edbcopy`
- Database superuser to invoke `localcopschema: enterprisedb`

Before invoking the function, the connection is made by database user `enterprisedb` to database `edb`.

```
edb=# SET search_path TO "$user",public,edb_util;
SET
edb=# SHOW search_path;
      search_path
-----
"$user", public, edb_util
(1 row)

edb=# SELECT localcopschema
('local_server','edb','edbcopy','clone_edb_edbcopy');
localcopschema
```

```
-----
t
(1 row)
```

The following displays the logging status using the `process_status_from_log` function:

```
edb=# SELECT process_status_from_log('clone_edb_edbcopy');
      process_status_from_log
```

```
-----
(FINISH,"2017-06-29 11:07:36.830783-04",3855,INFO,"STAGE:
FINAL","successfully cloned schema")
(1 row)
```

After the clone has completed, the following shows some of the database objects copied to the `edbcopy` schema:

```
edb=# SET search_path TO edbcopy;
SET
edb=# \dt+
      List of relations
 Schema | Name | Type | Owner | Size | Description
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
edbcopy | dept | table | enterprisedb | 8192 bytes |
edbcopy | emp | table | enterprisedb | 8192 bytes |
edbcopy | jobhist | table | enterprisedb | 8192 bytes |
(3 rows)
```

```
edb=# \dv
      List of relations
 Schema | Name | Type | Owner
-----+-----+-----+
edbcopy | salesemp | view | enterprisedb
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# \di
      List of relations
 Schema | Name | Type | Owner | Table
-----+-----+-----+-----+
edbcopy | dept_dname_uq | index | enterprisedb | dept
edbcopy | dept_pk | index | enterprisedb | dept
edbcopy | emp_pk | index | enterprisedb | emp
edbcopy | jobhist_pk | index | enterprisedb | jobhist
(4 rows)
```

```
edb=# \ds
      List of relations
 Schema | Name | Type | Owner
-----+-----+-----+
edbcopy | next_empno | sequence | enterprisedb
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# SELECT DISTINCT schema_name, name, type FROM user_source WHERE
schema_name = 'EDBCOPY' ORDER BY type, name;
      schema_name | name | type
-----+-----+-----+
EDBCOPY | EMP_COMP | FUNCTION
```

```

EDBCOPY | HIRE_CLERK           | FUNCTION
EDBCOPY | HIRE SALESMAN        | FUNCTION
EDBCOPY | NEW_EMPNO            | FUNCTION
EDBCOPY | EMP_ADMIN             | PACKAGE
EDBCOPY | EMP_ADMIN              | PACKAGE BODY
EDBCOPY | EMP_QUERY              | PROCEDURE
EDBCOPY | EMP_QUERY_CALLER       | PROCEDURE
EDBCOPY | LIST_EMP                | PROCEDURE
EDBCOPY | SELECT_EMP              | PROCEDURE
EDBCOPY | EMP_SAL_TRIG            | TRIGGER
EDBCOPY | "RI_ConstraintTrigger_a_19991" | TRIGGER
EDBCOPY | "RI_ConstraintTrigger_a_19992" | TRIGGER
EDBCOPY | "RI_ConstraintTrigger_a_19999" | TRIGGER
EDBCOPY | "RI_ConstraintTrigger_a_20000" | TRIGGER
EDBCOPY | "RI_ConstraintTrigger_a_20004" | TRIGGER
EDBCOPY | "RI_ConstraintTrigger_a_20005" | TRIGGER
EDBCOPY | "RI_ConstraintTrigger_c_19993" | TRIGGER
EDBCOPY | "RI_ConstraintTrigger_c_19994" | TRIGGER
EDBCOPY | "RI_ConstraintTrigger_c_20001" | TRIGGER
EDBCOPY | "RI_ConstraintTrigger_c_20002" | TRIGGER
EDBCOPY | "RI_ConstraintTrigger_c_20006" | TRIGGER
EDBCOPY | "RI_ConstraintTrigger_c_20007" | TRIGGER
EDBCOPY | USER_AUDIT_TRIG          | TRIGGER
(24 rows)

```

## localcopschema\_nb

The `localcopschema_nb` function copies a schema and its database objects within a local database specified within the `source_fdw` foreign server from the source schema to the specified target schema within the same database, but in a non-blocking manner as a job submitted to pgAgent.

```

localcopschema_nb(
    <source_fdw> TEXT,
    <source> TEXT,
    <target> TEXT,
    <log_filename> TEXT
    [, <on_tblspace> BOOLEAN
    [, <verbose_on> BOOLEAN
    [, <copy_acls> BOOLEAN
    [, <worker_count> INTEGER ]]]]
)

```

An `INTEGER` value job ID is returned by the function for the job submitted to pgAgent. If the function fails, then null is returned.

The `source_fdw`, `source`, `target`, and `log_filename` are required parameters while all other parameters are optional.

After completion of the pgAgent job, remove the job with the `remove_log_file_and_job` function.

### Parameters

`source_fdw`

Name of the foreign server managed by the `postgres_fdw` foreign data wrapper from which database objects are to be cloned.

**source**

Name of the schema from which database objects are to be cloned.

**target**

Name of the schema into which database objects are to be cloned from the source schema.

**log\_filename**

Name of the log file in which information from the function is recorded. The log file is created under the directory specified by the `log_directory` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file.

**on\_tblspace**

`BOOLEAN` value to specify whether or not database objects are to be created within their tablespaces. If `false` is specified, then the `TABLESPACE` clause is not included in the applicable `CREATE` DDL statement when added to the target schema. If `true` is specified, then the `TABLESPACE` clause is included in the `CREATE` DDL statement when added to the target schema. If the `on_tblspace` parameter is omitted, the default value is `false`.

**verbose\_on**

`BOOLEAN` value to specify whether or not the DDLs are to be printed in `log_filename` when creating objects in the target schema. If `false` is specified, then DDLs are not printed. If `true` is specified, then DDLs are printed. If omitted, the default value is `false`.

**copy\_acls**

`BOOLEAN` value to specify whether or not the access control list (ACL) is to be included while creating objects in the target schema. The access control list is the set of `GRANT` privilege statements. If `false` is specified, then the access control list is not included for the target schema. If `true` is specified, then the access control list is included for the target schema. If the `copy_acls` parameter is omitted, the default value is `false`.

**worker\_count**

Number of background workers to perform the clone in parallel. If omitted, the default value is `1`.

**Example**

The same cloning operation is performed as the example in `localcopschema`, but using the non-blocking function `localcopschema_nb`.

The following command can be used to observe if pgAgent is running on the appropriate local database:

```
[root@localhost ~]# ps -ef | grep pgagent
root    4518    1 0 11:35 pts/1  00:00:00 pgagent -s /tmp/
pgagent_edb_log hostaddr=127.0.0.1 port=5444 dbname=edb user=enterprisedb
password=password
root    4525  4399  0 11:35 pts/1  00:00:00 grep --color=auto pgagent
```

If pgAgent is not running, it can be started as shown by the following. The `pgagent` program file is located in the `bin` subdirectory of the Advanced Server installation directory.

```
[root@localhost bin]# ./pgagent -l 2 -s /tmp/pgagent_edb_log
hostaddr=127.0.0.1 port=5444 dbname=edb user=enterprisedb password=password
```

**Note**

The `pgagent -l 2` option starts pgAgent in `DEBUG` mode, which logs continuous debugging information into the

log file specified with the `-s` option. Use a lower value for the `-l` option, or omit it entirely to record less information.

The `localcopschema_nb` function returns the job ID shown as `4` in the example.

```
edb=# SELECTedb_util.localcopschema_nb
('local_server','edb','edbcopy','clone_edb_edbcopy');
localcopschema_nb
-----
4
(1 row)
```

The following displays the job status:

```
edb=# SELECTedb_util.process_status_from_log('clone_edb_edbcopy');
process_status_from_log
-----
(FINISH,"29-JUN-17 11:39:11.620093 -04:00",4618,INFO,"STAGE:
FINAL","successfully cloned schema")
(1 row)
```

The following removes the pgAgent job:

```
edb=# SELECTedb_util.remove_log_file_and_job (4);
remove_log_file_and_job
-----
t
(1 row)
```

## remotecopschema

The `remotecopschema` function copies a schema and its database objects from a source schema in the remote source database specified within the `source_fdw` foreign server to a target schema in the local target database specified within the `target_fdw` foreign server.

```
remotecopschema(
  <source_fdw> TEXT,
  <target_fdw> TEXT,
  <source_schema> TEXT,
  <target_schema> TEXT,
  <log_filename> TEXT
 [, <on_tbspace> BOOLEAN
 [, <verbose_on> BOOLEAN
 [, <copy_acls> BOOLEAN
 [, <worker_count> INTEGER ]]]]
)
```

A `BOOLEAN` value is returned by the function. If the function succeeds, then `true` is returned. If the function fails, then `false` is returned.

The `source_fdw`, `target_fdw`, `source_schema`, `target_schema`, and `log_filename` are required parameters while all other parameters are optional.

## Parameters

**source\_fdw**

Name of the foreign server managed by the `postgres_fdw` foreign data wrapper from which database objects are to be cloned.

**target\_fdw**

Name of the foreign server managed by the `postgres_fdw` foreign data wrapper to which database objects are to be cloned.

**source\_schema**

Name of the schema from which database objects are to be cloned.

**target\_schema**

Name of the schema into which database objects are to be cloned from the source schema.

**log\_filename**

Name of the log file in which information from the function is recorded. The log file is created under the directory specified by the `log_directory` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file.

**on\_tblspace**

**BOOLEAN** value to specify whether or not database objects are to be created within their tablespaces. If `false` is specified, then the `TABLESPACE` clause is not included in the applicable `CREATE` DDL statement when added to the target schema. If `true` is specified, then the `TABLESPACE` clause is included in the `CREATE` DDL statement when added to the target schema. If the `on_tblspace` parameter is omitted, the default value is `false`.

**Note**

If `true` is specified and a database object has a `TABLESPACE` clause, but that tablespace does not exist in the target database cluster, then the cloning function fails.

**verbose\_on**

**BOOLEAN** value to specify whether or not the DDLs are to be printed in `log_filename` when creating objects in the target schema. If `false` is specified, then DDLs are not printed. If `true` is specified, then DDLs are printed. If omitted, the default value is `false`.

**copy\_acls**

**BOOLEAN** value to specify whether or not the access control list (ACL) is to be included while creating objects in the target schema. The access control list is the set of `GRANT` privilege statements. If `false` is specified, then the access control list is not included for the target schema. If `true` is specified, then the access control list is included for the target schema. If the `copy_acls` parameter is omitted, the default value is `false`.

**Note**

If `true` is specified and a role with `GRANT` privilege does not exist in the target database cluster, then the cloning function fails.

**worker\_count**

Number of background workers to perform the clone in parallel. If omitted, the default value is `1`.

**Example**

The following example shows the cloning of schema `srcschema` within database `srcdb` as defined by `src_server`

to target schema `tgtschema` within database `tgtmdb` as defined by `tgt_server`.

The source server environment:

- Host on which the source database server is running: `192.168.2.28`
- Port of the source database server: `5444`
- Database source of the clone: `srcdb`
- Foreign server (`src_server`) and user mapping with the information of the preceding bullet points
- Source schema: `srcschema`

The target server environment:

- Host on which the target database server is running: `localhost`
- Port of the target database server: `5444`
- Database target of the clone: `tgtmdb`
- Foreign server (`tgt_server`) and user mapping with the information of the preceding bullet points
- Target schema: `tgtschema`
- Database superuser to invoke `remotecopyschema: enterprisedb`

Before invoking the function, the connection is made by database user `enterprisedb` to database `tgtmdb`. A `worker_count` of `4` is specified for this function.

```
tgtmdb=# SELECTedb_util.remotecopyschema
('src_server','tgt_server','srcschema','tgtschema','clone_rmt_src_tgt',worker
_count => 4);
remotecopyschema
-----
t
(1 row)
```

The following displays the status from the log file during various points in the cloning process:

```
tgtmdb=# SELECTedb_util.process_status_from_log('clone_rmt_src_tgt');
process_status_from_log
-----
-- 
(RUNNING,"28-JUN-17 current:18:05.299953 -04:00",4021,INFO,"STAGE: DATA-
COPY","[0][0] successfully copied data in [tgtschema.pgbench_tellers]
")
(1 row)
```

```
tgtmdb=# SELECTedb_util.process_status_from_log('clone_rmt_src_tgt');
process_status_from_log
-----
-- 
(RUNNING,"28-JUN-17 current:18:06.634364 -04:00",4022,INFO,"STAGE: DATA-
COPY","[0][1] successfully copied data in [tgtschema.pgbench_history]
")
(1 row)
```

```
tgtmdb=# SELECTedb_util.process_status_from_log('clone_rmt_src_tgt');
process_status_from_log
-----
```

```
--  
(RUNNING,"28-JUN-17 current:18:10.550393 -04:00",4039,INFO,"STAGE: POST-  
DATA","CREATE PRIMARY KEY CONSTRAINT pgbench_tellers_pkey successful"  
)  
(1 row)
```

```
tgtmdb=# SELECTedb_util.process_status_from_log('clone_rmt_src_tgt');  
process_status_from_log
```

```
--  
(FINISH,"28-JUN-17 current:18:12.019627 -04:00",4039,INFO,"STAGE:  
FINAL","successfully clone schema into tgtschema")  
(1 row)
```

The following shows the cloned tables:

```
tgtmdb=# \dt+  
List of relations  
Schema | Name | Type | Owner | Size |  
Description  
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----  
--  
tgtschema | pgbench_accounts | table | enterprise | 256 MB |  
tgtschema | pgbench_branches | table | enterprise | 8192 bytes |  
tgtschema | pgbench_history | table | enterprise | 25 MB |  
tgtschema | pgbench_tellers | table | enterprise | 16 kB |  
(4 rows)
```

When the `remotecopyschema` function was invoked, four background workers were specified.

The following portion of the log file `clone_rmt_src_tgt` shows the status of the parallel data copying operation using four background workers:

```
Wed Jun 28 current:18:05.232949 2017 EDT: [4019] INFO: [STAGE: DATA-COPY] [0]  
table count [4]  
Wed Jun 28 current:18:05.233321 2017 EDT: [4019] INFO: [STAGE: DATA-COPY]  
[0][0]  
worker started to copy data  
Wed Jun 28 current:18:05.233640 2017 EDT: [4019] INFO: [STAGE: DATA-COPY]  
[0][1]  
worker started to copy data  
Wed Jun 28 current:18:05.233919 2017 EDT: [4019] INFO: [STAGE: DATA-COPY]  
[0][2]  
worker started to copy data  
Wed Jun 28 current:18:05.234231 2017 EDT: [4019] INFO: [STAGE: DATA-COPY]  
[0][3]  
worker started to copy data  
Wed Jun 28 current:18:05.298174 2017 EDT: [4024] INFO: [STAGE: DATA-COPY]  
[0][3]  
successfully copied data in [tgtschema.pgbench_branches]  
Wed Jun 28 current:18:05.2999current 2017 EDT: [4021] INFO: [STAGE: DATA-  
COPY] [0][0]  
successfully copied data in [tgtschema.pgbench_tellers]  
Wed Jun 28 current:18:06.634310 2017 EDT: [4022] INFO: [STAGE: DATA-COPY]  
[0][1]
```

```

successfully copied data in [tgtschema.pgbench_history]
Wed Jun 28 current:18:10.477333 2017 EDT: [4023] INFO: [STAGE: DATA-COPY]
[0][2]
successfully copied data in [tgtschema.pgbench_accounts]
Wed Jun 28 current:18:10.477609 2017 EDT: [4019] INFO: [STAGE: DATA-COPY] [0]
all workers finished [4]
Wed Jun 28 current:18:10.477654 2017 EDT: [4019] INFO: [STAGE: DATA-COPY] [0]
copy done [4] tables
Wed Jun 28 current:18:10.493938 2017 EDT: [4019] INFO: [STAGE: DATA-COPY]
successfully copied data into tgtschema

```

Note that the `DATA-COPY` log message includes two, square bracket numbers (for example, `[0][3]`).

The first number is the job index whereas the second number is the worker index. The worker index values range from `0` to `3` for the four background workers.

In case two clone schema jobs are running in parallel, the first log file will have `0` as the job index whereas the second will have `1` as the job index.

## `remotecopyschema_nb`

The `remotecopyschema_nb` function copies a schema and its database objects from a source schema in the remote source database specified within the `source_fdw` foreign server to a target schema in the local target database specified within the `target_fdw` foreign server, but in a non-blocking manner as a job submitted to pgAgent.

```

remotecopyschema_nb(
    <source_fdw> TEXT,
    <target_fdw> TEXT,
    <source> TEXT,
    <target> TEXT,
    <log_filename> TEXT
    [, <on_tblspace> BOOLEAN
    [, <verbose_on> BOOLEAN
    [, <copy_acls> BOOLEAN
    [, <worker_count> INTEGER ]]]]
)

```

An `INTEGER` value job ID is returned by the function for the job submitted to pgAgent. If the function fails, then null is returned.

The `source_fdw`, `target_fdw`, `source`, `target`, and `log_filename` are required parameters while all other parameters are optional.

After completion of the pgAgent job, remove the job with the `remove_log_file_and_job` function.

### Parameters

#### `source_fdw`

Name of the foreign server managed by the `postgres_fdw` foreign data wrapper from which database objects are to be cloned.

#### `target_fdw`

Name of the foreign server managed by the `postgres_fdw` foreign data wrapper to which database objects are to be cloned.

**source**

Name of the schema from which database objects are to be cloned.

**target**

Name of the schema into which database objects are to be cloned from the source schema.

**log\_filename**

Name of the log file in which information from the function is recorded. The log file is created under the directory specified by the `log_directory` configuration parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file.

**on\_tblspace**

`BOOLEAN` value to specify whether or not database objects are to be created within their tablespaces. If `false` is specified, then the `TABLESPACE` clause is not included in the applicable `CREATE` DDL statement when added to the target schema. If `true` is specified, then the `TABLESPACE` clause is included in the `CREATE` DDL statement when added to the target schema. If the `on_tblspace` parameter is omitted, the default value is `false`.

**Note**

If `true` is specified and a database object has a `TABLESPACE` clause, but that tablespace does not exist in the target database cluster, then the cloning function fails.

**verbose\_on**

`BOOLEAN` value to specify whether or not the DDLs are to be printed in `log_filename` when creating objects in the target schema. If `false` is specified, then DDLs are not printed. If `true` is specified, then DDLs are printed. If omitted, the default value is `false`.

**copy\_acls**

`BOOLEAN` value to specify whether or not the access control list (ACL) is to be included while creating objects in the target schema. The access control list is the set of `GRANT` privilege statements. If `false` is specified, then the access control list is not included for the target schema. If `true` is specified, then the access control list is included for the target schema. If the `copy_acls` parameter is omitted, the default value is `false`.

**Note**

If `true` is specified and a role with `GRANT` privilege does not exist in the target database cluster, then the cloning function fails.

**worker\_count**

Number of background workers to perform the clone in parallel. If omitted, the default value is `1`.

**Example**

The same cloning operation is performed as the example in `remotecopyschema`, but using the non-blocking function `remotecopyschema_nb`.

The following command starts pgAgent on the target database `tgtdb`. The `pgagent` program file is located in the `bin` subdirectory of the Advanced Server installation directory.

```
[root@localhost bin]# ./pgagent -l 1 -s /tmp/pgagent_tgtdb_log
hostaddr=127.0.0.1 port=5444 user=enterprisedb dbname=tgtdb password=password
```

The `remotecopyschema_nb` function returns the job ID shown as `2` in the example.

```
tgtmdb=# SELECTedb_util.remotecopyschema_nb
('src_server','tgt_server','srcschema','tgtschema','clone_rmt_src_tgt',worker
_count >= 4);
remotecopyschema_nb
-----
2
(1 row)
```

The completed status of the job is shown by the following:

```
tgtmdb=# SELECTedb_util.process_status_from_log('clone_rmt_src_tgt');
process_status_from_log
-----
(FINISH,"29-JUN-17 current:16:00.100284 -04:00",3849,INFO,"STAGE:
FINAL","successfully clone schema into tgtschema")
(1 row)
```

The following removes the log file and the pgAgent job:

```
tgtmdb=# SELECTedb_util.remove_log_file_and_job ('clone_rmt_src_tgt',2);
remove_log_file_and_job
-----
t
(1 row)
```

## process\_status\_from\_log

The `process_status_from_log` function provides the status of a cloning function from its log file.

```
process_status_from_log (
  <log_file> TEXT
)
```

The function returns the following fields from the log file:

Field Name	Description
status	Displays either STARTING, RUNNING, FINISH, or FAILED.
execution_time	When the command was executed. Displayed in timestamp format.
pid	Session process ID in which clone schema is getting called.
level	Displays either INFO, ERROR, or SUCCESSFUL.
stage	Displays either STARTUP, INITIAL, DDL-COLLECTION, PRE-DATA, DATA-COPY, POST-DATA, or FINAL.
message	Information respective to each command or failure.

## Parameters

### log\_file

Name of the log file recording the cloning of a schema as specified when the cloning function was invoked.

## Example

The following shows usage of the `process_status_from_log` function:

```
edb=# SELECT edb_util.process_status_from_log('clone_edb_edbcopy');
          process_status_from_log
-----
(FINISH,"26-JUN-17 11:57:03.214458 -04:00",3691,INFO,"STAGE:
FINAL","successfully cloned schema")
(1 row)
```

## remove\_log\_file\_and\_job

The `remove_log_file_and_job` function performs cleanup tasks by removing the log files created by the schema cloning functions and the jobs created by the non-blocking functions.

```
remove_log_file_and_job (
{ <log_file> TEXT |
<job_id> INTEGER |
<log_file> TEXT, <job_id> INTEGER
}
)
```

Values for any or both of the two parameters may be specified when invoking the `remove_log_file_and_job` function:

- If only `log_file` is specified, then the function will only remove the log file.
- If only `job_id` is specified, then the function will only remove the job.
- If both are specified, then the function will remove the log file and the job.

### Parameters

#### `log_file`

Name of the log file to be removed.

#### `job_id`

Job ID of the job to be removed.

### Example

The following examples removes only the log file, given the log filename.

```
edb=# SELECT edb_util.remove_log_file_and_job ('clone_edb_edbcopy');
remove_log_file_and_job
-----
t
(1 row)
```

The following example removes only the job, given the job ID.

```
edb=# SELECT edb_util.remove_log_file_and_job (3);
remove_log_file_and_job
-----
t
(1 row)
```

The following example removes the log file and the job, given both values:

```
tgtdb=# SELECTedb_util.remove_log_file_and_job ('clone_rmt_src_tgt',2);
remove_log_file_and_job
-----
t
(1 row)
```

## 12.15 Enhanced SQL and Other Miscellaneous Features

Advanced Server includes enhanced SQL functionality and various other features that provide additional flexibility and convenience. This chapter discusses some of these additions.

### COMMENT

In addition to commenting on objects supported by the PostgreSQL `COMMENT` command, Advanced Server supports comments on additional object types. The complete supported syntax is:

```
COMMENT ON
{
    AGGREGATE <aggregate_name> ( <aggregate_signature> ) |
    CAST (<source_type> AS <target_type>) |
    COLLATION <object_name> |
    COLUMN <relation_name>.<column_name> |
    CONSTRAINT <constraint_name> ON <table_name> |
    CONSTRAINT <constraint_name> ON DOMAIN <domain_name> |
    CONVERSION <object_name> |
    DATABASE <object_name> |
    DOMAIN <object_name> |
    EXTENSION <object_name> |
    EVENT TRIGGER <object_name> |
    FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <object_name> |
    FOREIGN TABLE <object_name> |
    FUNCTION <func_name> ([[<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [, ...]])) |
    INDEX <object_name> |
    LARGE OBJECT <large_object_oid> |
    MATERIALIZED VIEW <object_name> |
    OPERATOR <operator_name> (left_type, right_type) |
    OPERATOR CLASS <object_name> USING <index_method> |
    OPERATOR FAMILY <object_name> USING <index_method> |
    PACKAGE <object_name>
    POLICY <policy_name> ON <table_name> |
    [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE <object_name> |
    PROCEDURE <proc_name> ([[<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [, ...]])) |
    PUBLIC SYNONYM <object_name>
    ROLE <object_name> |
    RULE <rule_name> ON <table_name> |
    SCHEMA <object_name> |
    SEQUENCE <object_name> |
```

```

SERVER <object_name> |
TABLE <object_name> |
TABLESPACE <object_name> |
TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <object_name> |
TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <object_name> |
TEXT SEARCH PARSER <object_name> |
TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE <object_name> |
TRANSFORM FOR <type_name> LANGUAGE <lang_name> |
TRIGGER <trigger_name> ON <table_name> |
TYPE <object_name> |
VIEW <object_name>
} IS <'text'>
```

where `aggregate_signature` is:

```

* |
[<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [ , ... ] |
[ [ <argmode> ] [<argname>] <argtype> [ , ... ] ]
ORDER BY [ <argmode> ] [<argname>] <argtype> [ , ... ]
```

## Parameters

`object_name`

The name of the object on which you are commenting.

`AGGREGATE aggregate_name (aggregate_signature)`

Include the `AGGREGATE` clause to create a comment about an aggregate. `aggregate_name` specifies the name of an aggregate, and `aggregate_signature` specifies the associated signature in one of the following forms:

```

* |
[<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [ , ... ] |
[ [ <argmode> ] [<argname>] <argtype> [ , ... ] ]
ORDER BY [ <argmode> ] [<argname>] <argtype> [ , ... ]
```

Where `argmode` is the mode of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument, `argmode` may be `IN`, `OUT`, `INOUT`, or `VARIADIC`. If omitted, the default is `IN`.

`argname` is the name of an aggregate argument.

`argtype` is the data type of an aggregate argument.

`CAST (source_type AS target_type)`

Include the `CAST` clause to create a comment about a cast. When creating a comment about a cast, `source_type` specifies the source data type of the cast, and `target_type` specifies the target data type of the cast.

`COLUMN relation_name.column_name`

Include the `COLUMN` clause to create a comment about a column. `column_name` specifies name of the column to which the comment applies. `relation_name` is the table, view, composite type, or foreign table in which a column resides.

`CONSTRAINT constraint_name ON table_name`

`CONSTRAINT constraint_name ON DOMAIN domain_name`

Include the **CONSTRAINT** clause to add a comment about a constraint. When creating a comment about a constraint, **constraint\_name** specifies the name of the constraint. **table\_name** or **domain\_name** specifies the name of the table or domain on which the constraint is defined.

**FUNCTION func\_name ([[argmode] [argname] argtype [, ...]])**

Include the **FUNCTION** clause to add a comment about a function. **func\_name** specifies the name of the function. **argmode** specifies the mode of the function. **argmode** may be **IN**, **OUT**, **INOUT**, or **VARIADIC**. If omitted, the default is **IN**.

**argname** specifies the name of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument. **argtype** specifies the data type of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument.

**large\_object\_oid**

**large\_object\_oid** is the system-assigned OID of the large object about which you are commenting.

**OPERATOR operator\_name (left\_type, right\_type)**

Include the **OPERATOR** clause to add a comment about an operator. **operator\_name** specifies the (optionally schema-qualified) name of an operator on which you are commenting. **left\_type** and **right\_type** are the (optionally schema-qualified) data type(s) of the operator's arguments.

**OPERATOR CLASS object\_name USING index\_method**

Include the **OPERATOR CLASS** clause to add a comment about an operator class. **object\_name** specifies the (optionally schema-qualified) name of an operator on which you are commenting. **index\_method** specifies the associated index method of the operator class.

**OPERATOR FAMILY object\_name USING index\_method**

Include the **OPERATOR FAMILY** clause to add a comment about an operator family. **object\_name** specifies the (optionally schema-qualified) name of an operator family on which you are commenting. **index\_method** specifies the associated index method of the operator family.

**POLICY policy\_name ON table\_name**

Include the **POLICY** clause to add a comment about a policy. **policy\_name** specifies the name of the policy, and **table\_name** specifies the table that the policy is associated with.

**PROCEDURE proc\_name ([[argmode] [argname] argtype [, ...]])**

Include the **PROCEDURE** clause to add a comment about a procedure. **proc\_name** specifies the name of the procedure. **argmode** specifies the mode of the procedure. **argmode** may be **IN**, **OUT**, **INOUT**, or **VARIADIC**. If omitted, the default is **IN**.

**argname** specifies the name of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument. **argtype** specifies the data type of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument.

**RULE rule\_name ON table\_name**

Include the **RULE** clause to specify a **COMMENT** on a rule. **rule\_name** specifies the name of the rule, and **table\_name** specifies the name of the table on which the rule is defined.

**TRANSFORM FOR type\_name LANGUAGE lang\_name |**

Include the **TRANSFORM FOR** clause to specify a **COMMENT** on a **TRANSFORM**.

**type\_name** specifies the name of the data type of the transform and **lang\_name** specifies the name of the language of the transform.

**TRIGGER trigger\_name ON table\_name**

Include the `TRIGGER` clause to specify a `COMMENT` on a trigger. `trigger_name` specifies the name of the trigger, and `table_name` specifies the name of the table on which the trigger is defined.

#### text

The comment, written as a string literal or `NULL` to drop the comment.

#### Notes:

Names of tables, aggregates, collations, conversions, domains, foreign tables, functions, indexes, operators, operator classes, operator families, packages, procedures, sequences, text search objects, types, and views can be schema-qualified.

#### Example:

The following example adds a comment to a table named `new_emp`:

```
COMMENT ON TABLE new_emp IS 'This table contains information about new employees.';
```

For more information about using the `COMMENT` command, see the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-comment.html>

## Output of Function `version()`

The text string output of the `version()` function displays the name of the product, its version, and the host system on which it has been installed.

For Advanced Server, the `version()` output is in a format similar to the PostgreSQL community version in that the first text word is *PostgreSQL* instead of *EnterpriseDB* as in Advanced Server version 10 and earlier.

The general format of the `version()` output is the following:

```
PostgreSQL $PG_VERSION_EXT (EnterpriseDB Advanced Server $PG_VERSION) on $host
```

So for the current Advanced Server the version string appears as follows:

```
edb@45032=#select version();
version
-----
PostgreSQL 13.0 (EnterpriseDB Advanced Server 13.0.0) on x86_64-pc-linux-gnu, compiled by gcc (GCC) 4.8.5 20150623 (Red Hat 4.8.5-11), 64-bit
(1 row)
```

In contrast, for Advanced Server 10, the version string was the following:

```
edb=# select version();
version
-----
EnterpriseDB 10.4.9 on x86_64-pc-linux-gnu, compiled by gcc (GCC) 4.4.7
20120313 (Red Hat 4.4.7-18), 64-bit
(1 row)
```

## Logical Decoding on Standby

Logical decoding on a standby server allows you to create a logical replication slot on a standby server that can respond to API operations such as `get`, `peek`, `advance`, etc..

For more information about the `LOGICAL DECODING`, please refer to the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/logicaldecoding-explanation.html>

For a logical slot on a standby server to work, the `hot_standby_feedback` parameter must be set to `ON` on the standby. The `hot_standby_feedback` parameter prevents `VACUUM` from removing recently-dead rows that are required by an existing logical replication slot on the standby server. If a slot conflict occurs on the standby, the slots will be dropped.

For logical decoding on a standby to work, `wal_level` must be set to `logical` on both the primary and standby server. If `wal_level` is set to a value other than `logical`, then slots are not created. If you set `wal_level` to a value other than `logical` on primary and if there are existing logical slots on standby, such slots are dropped and new slots cannot be created.

When transactions are written to the primary server, the activity will trigger the creation of a logical slot on the standby server. If a primary server is idle, creating a logical slot on a standby server may take noticeable time.

For more information about functions that support replication and logical decoding example, see to the PostgreSQL documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/functions-admin.html#FUNCTIONS-REPLICATION>

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/logicaldecoding-example.html>

## 12.16 System Catalog Tables

The following system catalog tables contain definitions of database objects. The layout of the system tables is subject to change, if you are writing an application that depends on information stored in the system tables, it would be prudent to use an existing catalog view, or create a catalog view to isolate the application from changes to the system table.

### edb\_dir

The `edb_dir` table contains one row for each alias that points to a directory created with the `CREATE DIRECTORY` command. A directory is an alias for a pathname that allows a user limited access to the host file system.

You can use a directory to fence a user into a specific directory tree within the file system. For example, the `UTL_FILE` package offers functions that permit a user to read and write files and directories in the host file system, but only allows access to paths that the database administrator has granted access to via a `CREATE DIRECTORY` command.

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
dirname	"name"	not null	The name of the alias.

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
dirowner dirpath diracl	oid text aclitem[]	not null	The OID of the user that owns the alias. The directory name to which access is granted. The access control list that determines which users may access the alias.

## edb\_all\_resource\_groups

The `edb_all_resource_groups` table contains one row for each resource group created with the `CREATE RESOURCE GROUP` command and displays the number of active processes in each resource group.

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
group_name	"name"		
active_processes	integer		
cpu_rate_limit	float8		
per_process_cpu_rate_limit	float8		
dirty_rate_limit	float8		
per_process_dirty_rate_limit	float8		

## edb\_policy

The `edb_policy` table contains one row for each policy.

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
policyname	name	not null	The policy name.
policygroup	oid	not null	Currently unused.
policyobject	oid	not null	The OID of the table secured by this policy (the object_schema plus the object_name).
			The kind of object secured by this policy: 'r' for a table
policykind	char	not null	'v' for a view = for a synonym
			Currently always 'r'.
policyproc	oid	not null	The OID of the policy function (function_schema plus policy_function).
policyinsert	boolean	not null	True if the policy is enforced by INSERT statements.
policyselect	boolean	not null	True if the policy is enforced by SELECT statements.
policydelete	boolean	not null	True if the policy is enforced by DELETE statements.
policyupdate	boolean	not null	True if the policy is enforced by UPDATE statements.
policyindex	boolean	not null	Currently unused.
policyenabled	boolean	not null	True if the policy is enabled.
policyupdatecheck	boolean	not null	True if rows updated by an UPDATE statement must satisfy the policy.
polycystatic	boolean	not null	Currently unused.
policytype	integer	not null	Currently unused.

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
policyopts	integer	not null	Currently unused.
policyseccols	int2vector	not null	The column numbers for columns listed in sec_relevant_cols.

## edb\_profile

The `edb_profile` table stores information about the available profiles. `edb_profiles` is shared across all databases within a cluster.

Column	Type	References	Description
oid prfname prffailedloginattempts prfpasswordlocktime prfpasswordlifetime prfpasswordgracetime prfpasswordreusetime prfpasswordreusemax	oid name integer integer integer integer integer integer		Row identifier (hidden attribute, must be explicitly selected). The name of the profile. The number of failed login attempts allowed by the profile. -1 indicates that the value from the default profile should be used. -2 indicates no limit on failed login attempts. The password lock time associated with the profile (in seconds). -1 indicates that the value from the default profile should be used. -2 indicates that the account should be locked permanently. The password life time associated with the profile (in seconds). -1 indicates that the value from the default profile should be used. -2 indicates that the password never expires. The password grace time associated with the profile (in seconds). -1 indicates that the value from the default profile should be used. -2 indicates that the password never expires. The number of seconds that a user must wait before reusing a password. -1 indicates that the value from the default profile should be used. -2 indicates that the old passwords can never be reused. The number of password changes that have to occur before a password can be reused. -1 indicates that the value from the default profile should be used. -2 indicates that the old passwords can never be reused.
prfpasswordverifyfuncdb	oid	pg_database.oid	The OID of the database in which the password verify function exists.
prfpasswordverifyfunc	oid	pg_proc.oid	The OID of the password verify function associated with the profile.

## edb\_redaction\_column

The catalog `edb_redaction_column` stores information of data redaction policy attached to the columns of the table.

Column	Type	References	Description
oid	oid		Row identifier (hidden attribute, must be explicitly selected)
rdpolicyid	oid	edb_redaction_policy.oid	The data redaction policy applies to the described column
rdrelid	oid	pg_class.oid	The table that the described column belongs to
rdattnum	int2		The number of the described column
rdscope	int2		The redaction scope: 1 = query, 2 = top_tlist, 4 = top_tlist_or_error
rdexception	pg_node_tree		The redaction exception: 8 = none, 16 = equal, 32 = leakproof
rdfuncexpr		pg_attribute.attnum	Data redaction function expression

## Note

The described column will be redacted if the redaction policy `edb_redaction_column.rdpolicyid` on the table is enabled and the redaction policy expression `edb_redaction_policy.rdexpr` evaluates to true.

## `edb_redaction_policy`

The catalog `edb_redaction_policy` stores information of the redaction policies for tables.

Column	Type	References	Description
oid rdname	oid name		Row identifier (hidden attribute, must be explicitly selected) The name of the data redaction policy
rdrelid rdenable rdexpr	oid boolean <code>pg_node_tree</code>	<code>pg_class.oid</code>	The table to which the data redaction policy applies Is the data redaction policy enabled? The data redaction policy expression

## Note

The data redaction policy applies for the table if it is enabled and the expression ever evaluated true.

## `edb_resource_group`

The `edb_resource_group` table contains one row for each resource group created with the [CREATE RESOURCE GROUP](#) command.

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
<code>rgrpname</code>	"name"	not null	The name of the resource group.
<code>rgrpcpuratelimit</code>	float8	not null	Maximum CPU rate limit for a resource group. 0 means no limit.
<code>rgrpdirtyratelimit</code>	float8	not null	Maximum dirty rate limit for a resource group. 0 means no limit.

## `edb_variable`

The `edb_variable` table contains one row for each package level variable (each variable declared within a package).

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
<code>varname</code>	"name"	not null	The name of the variable.
<code>varpackage</code>	oid	not null	The OID of the <code>pg_namespace</code> row that stores the package.
<code>vartype</code>	oid	not null	The OID of the <code>pg_type</code> row that defines the type of the variable.
			+ if the variable is visible outside of the package.
<code>varaccess</code>	"char"	not null	- if the variable is only visible within the package.
<code>varsr</code>	text		Note: Public variables are declared within the package header, private variables are declared within the package body. Contains the source of the variable declaration, including any default value expressions for the variable.
<code>varseq</code>	smallint	not null	The order in which the variable was declared in the package.

## pg\_synonym

The `pg_synonym` table contains one row for each synonym created with the `CREATE SYNONYM` command or `CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM` command.

Column	Type	Modifiers	Description
synname	"name"	not null	The name of the synonym.
synnamespace	oid	not null	Replaces synowner. Contains the OID of the pg_namespace row where the synonym is stored
synowner	oid	not null	The OID of the user that owns the synonym.
synobjschema	"name"	not null	The schema in which the referenced object is defined.
synobjname	"name"	not null	The name of the referenced object. The (optional) name of the database link in which the referenced object is defined.
synlink	text		

## product\_component\_version

The `product_component_version` table contains information about feature compatibility, an application can query this table at installation or run time to verify that features used by the application are available with this deployment.

Column	Type	Description
product	character varying (74)	The name of the product.
version	character varying (74)	The version number of the product.
status	character varying (74)	The status of the release.

## 12.17 Advanced Server Exceptions

The following table lists the pre-defined exceptions, the SQLstate values, associated redwood error code, and description of the exceptions.

Exception Name	SQLState	Redwood Error Code	Description
value_error	22000	-6502	The exception occurs when the conversion of a character string to a number fails.
invalid_number	22000	-6502	The exception is raised in PL statement, when the conversion of a character string to number fails.
datetime_value_out_of_range	22008	-1863	The exception occurs while writing a field in date format, which is outside the valid range.
divide_by_zero	22012	-1476	The exception occurs when a program attempts to divide a number by zero.
zero_divide	22012	-1476	The exception occurs when a program attempts to divide a number by zero.
dup_val_on_index	23505	-1	The exception occurs when a program attempts to store duplicate values in a column that is constrained by a unique index.

invalid_cursor	34000	-1001	The exception occurs when a program attempts a cursor operation on an invalid cursor, such as closing an unopened cursor.
cursor_already_open	42P03	-6511	The exception occurs when a program attempts to open an already open cursor.
collection_is_null	P1403	-6531	The exception occurs when a program attempts to assign values to the elements of nested table or varray that are uninitialized.
subscript_beyond_count	P1404	-6533	The exception occurs when a program attempts to reference a nested table or varray using an index number larger than the number of elements in the collection.
subscript_outside_limit	P1405	-6532	The exception occurs when a program attempts to reference a nested table or varray element using an index number that is outside the range.

## Redwood Built-in Package Exceptions

### DBMS\_CRYPTO Package

ciphersuiteinvalid	00009	-28827	The exception occurs when the cipher suite is not defined.
ciphersuitenull	00009	-28829	The exception occurs when no value is specified for the cipher suite or contains a <code>NULL</code> value.
keybadsize	00009	0	The exception occurs when the specified key size is bad.
keynull	00009	-28239	The exception occurs when the key is not specified.

### UTL\_FILE Package

invalid_filehandle	P0001 00009	-29282	The exception occurs when file handle is invalid.
invalid_maxlinesize	P0001 00009	-29287	The exception occurs when the max line size is invalid or the max line size value is not within the range.
invalid_mode	P0001 00009	-29281	The exception occurs when the <code>open_mode</code> parameter in <code>FOPEN</code> is invalid.
invalid_operation	P0001 00009	-29283	The exception occurs when the file could not be opened or used upon request.
invalid_path	P0001 00009	-29280	The exception occurs when the file location or filename is invalid.
read_error	P0001 00009	-29284	The exception occurs when the operating system error occurred during the read operation.
write_error	P0001 00009	-29285	The exception occurs when the operating system error occurred during the write operation.

### UTL\_HTTP Package

end_of_body	P0001 00009	-29266	The exception occurs when the end of HTTP response body is reached.
-------------	----------------	--------	---

### UTL\_URL Package

bad_fixed_width_charset	00009	-29274	The exception occurs when the fixed-width multibyte character is not allowed as a URL character set.
bad_url	P0001 00009	-29262	The exception occurs when the URL includes badly formed escape code sequences.

## Advanced Server Keywords

A keyword is a word that is recognized by the Advanced Server parser as having a special meaning or association. You can use the `pg_get_keywords()` function to retrieve an up-to-date list of the Advanced Server keywords:

```
acctg=# 
acctg=# SELECT * FROM pg_get_keywords();
   word    | catcode |      catdesc
-----+-----+-----
abort     | U       | unreserved
absolute   | U       | unreserved
access    | U       | unreserved
...

```

`pg_get_keywords` returns a table containing the keywords recognized by Advanced Server:

- The `word` column displays the keyword.
- The `catcode` column displays a category code.
- The `catdesc` column displays a brief description of the category to which the keyword belongs.

Note that any character can be used in an identifier if the name is enclosed in double quotes. You can selectively query the `pg_get_keywords()` function to retrieve an up-to-date list of the Advanced Server keywords that belong to a specific category:

```
SELECT * FROM pg_get_keywords() WHERE catcode = 'code';
```

Where `code` is:

**R** - The word is reserved. Reserved keywords may never be used as an identifier, they are reserved for use by the server.

**U** - The word is unreserved. Unreserved words are used internally in some contexts, but may be used as a name for a database object.

**T** - The word is used internally, but may be used as a name for a function or type.

**C** - The word is used internally, and may not be used as a name for a function or type.

For more information about Advanced Server identifiers and keywords, see to the PostgreSQL core documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/sql-syntax-lexical.html>

## 13 Advanced Server Installation Guide for Linux

The *EDB Postgres Advanced Server Installation Guide* is a comprehensive guide to installing EDB Postgres Advanced Server (Advanced Server). In this guide you will find detailed information about:

- Software prerequisites for performing an Advanced Server 13 installation on a Linux host.
- Using a package manager to install and update Advanced Server and its supporting components or utilities on a Linux host.
- Managing an Advanced Server installation.
- Configuring an Advanced Server package installation.
- Uninstalling Advanced Server and its components.

## 13.1 Supported Platforms

For information about the platforms and versions supported by Advanced Server, visit the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/product-compatibility>

### Limitations

The following limitations apply to EDB Postgres Advanced Server:

- The `data` directory of a production database should not be stored on an NFS file system.
- The LLVM JIT package is supported on RHEL or CentOS 7.x or 8.x only. LLVM JIT is not supported on PPC-LE 64 running RHEL or CentOS 7.x.

## 13.2 Using a Package Manager to Install Advanced Server

You can use the `dnf` or `yum` package manager to install Advanced Server or Advanced Server supporting components. `dnf` or `yum` will attempt to satisfy package dependencies as it installs a package, but requires access to the Advanced Server repositories. If your system does not have access to a repository via the Internet, you can use RPM to install an individual package or create a local repository, but you may be required to manually satisfy package dependencies.

You can list the dependencies of a package by running the following command:

- On Fedora | RHEL | CentOS: `repoquery --requires --resolve <package_name>`
- On Debian | Ubuntu: `apt-cache depends <package_name>`

Where, `<package_name>` is the name of the package that you want to install.

Installing the server package creates a database superuser named `enterprisedb`. The user is assigned a user ID (UID) and a group ID (GID) of `26`. The user has no default password; use the `passwd` command to assign a password for the user. The default shell for the user is `bash`, and the user's home directory is `/var/lib/edb/as13`.

By default, Advanced Server logging is configured to write files to the `log` subdirectory of the `data` directory, rotating the files each day and retaining one week of log entries. You can customize the logging behavior of the server by modifying the `postgresql.conf` file. For more information about `Modifying the postgresql.conf File`, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server Guide* available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

The RPM installers place Advanced Server components in the directories listed in the table below:

Component	Location
Executables	<code>/usr/edb/as13/bin</code>
Libraries	<code>/usr/edb/as13/lib</code>
Cluster configuration files	<code>/etc/edb/as13</code>
Documentation	<code>/usr/edb/as13/share/doc</code>
Contrib	<code>/usr/edb/as13/share/contrib</code>
Data	<code>/var/lib/edb/as13/data</code>

Component	Location
Logs	/var/log/as13
Lock files	/var/lock/as13
Log rotation file	/etc/logrotate.d/as13
Sudo configuration file	/etc/sudoers.d/as13
Binary to access VIP without sudo	/usr/edb/as13/bin/secure
Backup area	/var/lib/edb/as13/backups
Templates	/usr/edb/as13/share
Procedural Languages	/usr/edb/as13/lib or /usr/edb/as13/lib64
Development Headers	/usr/edb/as13/include
Shared data	/usr/edb/as13/share
Regression tests	/usr/edb/as13/lib/pgxs/src/test/regress
SGML Documentation	/usr/edb/as13/share/doc

## Installation Pre-requisites

Before using an RPM package to install Advanced Server on a Linux host, you must:

### Install Linux-specific Software

You must install `xterm`, `konsole`, or `gnome-terminal` before executing any console-based program installed by EDB installers.

### Install Migration Toolkit or EDB\*Plus Installation Prerequisites (Optional)

Before using an RPM to install Migration Toolkit or EDB\*Plus, you must first install Java version 1.8 or later. On a Linux system, you can use the `dnf` or `yum` package manager to install Java. Open a terminal window, assume superuser privileges, and enter:

- On RHEL or CentOS 7:

```
# yum -y install java
```

- On RHEL or CentOS 8:

```
# dnf -y install java
```

Follow the onscreen instructions to complete the installation.

### Request Credentials to the EDB Repository

Before installing the repository configuration file, you must have credentials that allow access to the EDB repository. For information about requesting credentials, visit the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/user/login>

After receiving your repository credentials you can:

- Create the repository configuration file.
- Modify the file, providing your user name and password.
- Install the repository keys and additional prerequisite software.
- Install Advanced Server and supporting components.

## Installing Advanced Server on a CentOS Host

You can use an RPM package to install Advanced Server on a CentOS host.

- To install the repository configuration file, assume superuser privileges and invoke one of the following platform specific commands:

On CentOS 7:

```
yum -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edbrepos/edb-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
```

On CentOS 8:

```
dnf -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edbrepos/edb-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
```

- Replace the `USERNAME:PASSWORD` variable in the following command with the username and password of a registered EDB user:

```
sed -i "s@<username>:<password>@USERNAME:PASSWORD@" /etc/yum.repos.d/edb.repo
```

- Before installing Advanced Server, you must install the `epel-release` package:

On CentOS 7:

```
# yum -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm
```

```
# yum makecache
```

On CentOS 8:

```
# dnf -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-8.noarch.rpm
```

```
# dnf makecache
```

- For CentOS 8, enable the PowerTools repository to satisfy package dependencies:

```
dnf config-manager --set-enabled PowerTools
```

On CentOS 8, disable the built-in PostgreSQL module:

```
dnf -qy module disable postgresql
```

The repository configuration file is named `edb.repo`. The file resides in `/etc/yum.repos.d`.

After creating the `edb.repo` file, the `enabled` parameter is set to `1` by default. Replace the `username` and `password` placeholders in the `baseurl` specification with the registered EDB username and password.

```
[edb]
name=EnterpriseDB RPMs $releasever - $basearch
baseurl=https://<username>:<password>@yum.enterprisedb.com/edb/redhat/rhel-$releasever-$basearch
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=file:///etc/pki/rpm-gpg/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY
```

After saving your changes to the configuration file, you must download and install the repository keys:

Use the following command to download the repository key. Provide the registered `username` and `password` with the `curl` command to download the key.

```
curl -o /etc/pki/rpm-gpg/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY https://<username>:<password>@yum.enterprisedb.com/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY
```

Use the following command to install the key:

```
rpm --import /etc/pki/rpm-gpg/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY
```

Then, you can use `yum install` or `dnf install` command to install Advanced Server. For example, to install the server and its core components, use the command:

- On CentOS 7:

```
yum -y install edb-as13-server
```

- On CentOS 8:

```
dnf -y install edb-as13-server
```

When you install an RPM package that is signed by a source that is not recognized by your system, `yum` may ask for your permission to import the key to your local server. If prompted, and you are satisfied that the packages come from a trustworthy source, enter a `y`, and press `Return` to continue.

After installing Advanced Server, you must configure the installation. For more information, see [Configuring a Package Installation](#).

**Note:** During the installation, `yum` may encounter a dependency that it cannot resolve. If it does, it will provide a list of the required dependencies that you must manually resolve.

## Installing Advanced Server on a RHEL Host

You can use an RPM package to install Advanced Server on a RHEL host.

- To install the repository configuration file, assume superuser privileges and invoke one of the following platform specific commands:

On RHEL 7:

```
yum -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edbreposedb-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
```

On RHEL 8:

```
dnf -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edbreposedb-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
```

- Replace the `USERNAME:PASSWORD` variable in the following command with the username and password of a registered EDB user:

```
sed -i "s@<username>:<password>@$USERNAME:$PASSWORD@" /etc/yum.repos.d/edb.repo
```

- Before installing Advanced Server, you must install the `epel-release` package:

On RHEL 7:

```
# yum -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm
```

```
# yum makecache
```

On RHEL 8:

```
# dnf -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-8.noarch.rpm
```

```
# dnf makecache
```

- Enable the repository:

On RHEL 7, enable the `optional`, `extras`, and `HA` repositories to satisfy package dependencies:

```
subscription-manager repos --enable "rhel-*-optional-rpms" --enable "rhel-*-extras-rpms" --enable "rhel-ha-for-rhel-*-server-rpms"
```

On RHEL 8, enable the `codeready-builder-for-rhel-8-*-rpms` repository to satisfy package dependencies:

```
ARCH=$( /bin/arch )
```

```
subscription-manager repos --enable "codeready-builder-for-rhel-8-${ARCH}-rpms"
```

On RHEL 8, disable the built-in PostgreSQL module:

```
dnf -qy module disable postgresql
```

The repository configuration file is named `edb.repo`. The file resides in `/etc/yum.repos.d`.

After creating the `edb.repo` file, the `enabled` parameter is set to `1` by default. Replace the `username` and `password` placeholders in the `baseurl` specification with the registered EDB username and password.

```
[edb]
name=EnterpriseDB RPMs $releasever - $basearch
baseurl=https://<username>:<password>@yum.enterprisedb.com/edb/redhat/rhel-$releasever-$basearch
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=file:///etc/pki/rpm-gpg/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY
```

After saving your changes to the configuration file, you must download and install the repository keys:

Use the following command to download the repository key. Provide the registered `username` and `password` with the `curl` command to download the key.

```
curl -o /etc/pki/rpm-gpg/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY https://<username>:<password>@yum.enterprisedb.com/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY
```

Use the following command to install the key:

```
rpm --import /etc/pki/rpm-gpg/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY
```

Then, you can use `yum install` or `dnf install` command to install Advanced Server. For example, to install the server and its core components, use the command:

- On RHEL 7:

```
yum -y install edb-as13-server
```

- On RHEL 8:

```
dnf -y install edb-as13-server
```

When you install an RPM package that is signed by a source that is not recognized by your system, `yum` may ask for your permission to import the key to your local server. If prompted, and you are satisfied that the packages

come from a trustworthy source, enter a `y`, and press `Return` to continue.

After installing Advanced Server, you must configure the installation. For more information, see [Configuring a Package Installation](#).

**Note:** During the installation, `yum` may encounter a dependency that it cannot resolve. If it does, it will provide a list of the required dependencies that you must manually resolve.

## Installing Advanced Server on a CentOS/RHEL 7 ppc64le Host

You can use an RPM package to install Advanced Server on a CentOS or RHEL 7 ppc64le host.

- To install the Advance Toolchain repository:

On CentOS or RHEL 7 ppc64le:

```
rpm --import https://public.dhe.ibm.com/software/server/POWER/Linux/toolchain/at/redhat/RHEL7/gpg-pubkey-6976a827-5164221b
```

The repository configuration file is named `advance-toolchain.repo`. The file resides in `/etc/yum.repos.d`.

- After creating the `advance-toolchain.repo` file, the `enabled` parameter is set to `1` by default.

```
[advance-toolchain]
name=Advance Toolchain IBM FTP
baseurl=https://public.dhe.ibm.com/software/server/POWER/Linux/toolchain/at/redhat/RHEL7
failovermethod=priority
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/software/server/POWER/Linux/toolchain/at/redhat/RHELX/gpg-pubkey-6976a827-5164221b
```

- To install the repository configuration file, assume superuser privileges and invoke the following command:

On CentOS or RHEL 7 ppc64le:

```
yum -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edbrepos/edb-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
```

- Replace the `USERNAME:PASSWORD` placeholder in the following command with the username and password of a registered EDB user:

```
sed -i "s@<username>:<password>@USERNAME:PASSWORD@" /etc/yum.repos.d/edb.repo
```

- Before installing Advanced Server, you must install the `epel-release` package:

On CentOS or RHEL 7 ppc64le:

```
# yum -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm
```

```
# yum makecache
```

- Enable the repository:

On RHEL 7, enable the `optional`, `extras`, and `HA` repositories to satisfy package dependencies:

```
subscription-manager repos --enable "rhel-* optional-rpms" --enable "rhel-* extras-rpms" --enable "rhel-ha-for-rhel-* server-rpms"
```

The repository configuration file is named `edb.repo`. The file resides in `/etc/yum.repos.d`.

After creating the `edb.repo` file, the `enabled` parameter is set to `1` by default. Replace the `username` and `password` placeholders in the `baseurl` specification with the registered EDB username and password.

```
[edb]
name=EnterpriseDB RPMs $releasever - $basearch
baseurl=https://<username>:<password>@yum.enterprisedb.com/edb/redhat/rhel-$releasever-$basearch
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=file:///etc/pki/rpm-gpg/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY
```

After saving your changes to the configuration file, you must download and install the repository keys:

Use the following command to download the repository key. Provide the registered `username` and `password` with the `curl` command to download the key.

```
curl -o /etc/pki/rpm-gpg/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY https://<username>:<password>@yum.enterprisedb.com/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY
```

Use the following command to install the key:

```
rpm --import /etc/pki/rpm-gpg/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY
```

Then, you can use `yum install` command to install Advanced Server. For example, to install the server and its core components, use the command:

- On CentOS or RHEL 7 ppc64le:

```
yum -y install edb-as13-server
```

When you install an RPM package that is signed by a source that is not recognized by your system, `yum` may ask for your permission to import the key to your local server. If prompted, and you are satisfied that the packages come from a trustworthy source, enter a `y`, and press `Return` to continue.

After installing Advanced Server, you must configure the installation. For more information, see [Configuring a Package Installation](#).

**Note:** During the installation, `yum` may encounter a dependency that it cannot resolve. If it does, it will provide a list of the required dependencies that you must manually resolve.

## Advanced Server RPM Packages

The tables that follow list the RPM packages that are available from EDB. You can also use the `yum search` or `dnf search` command to access a list of the packages that are currently available from your configured repository. Open a command line, assume superuser privileges, and enter:

On RHEL or CentOS 7:

```
yum search package
```

On RHEL or CentOS 8:

```
dnf search package
```

Where `package` is the search term that specifies the name (or partial name) of a package.

Please note: The available package list is subject to change.

Package Name	Package Installs
edb-as13-server	This package installs core components of the Advanced Server database server.
edb-as13-server-client	Client programs and utilities that you can use to access and manage Advanced Server.
	Installs contributed tools and utilities that are distributed with Advanced Server. Files for these modules are installed in:
edb-as13-server-contrib	<p>Documentation: <a href="#">/usr/edb/as13/share/doc</a></p> <p>Loadable modules: <a href="#">/usr/edb/as13/lib</a></p> <p>Binaries: <a href="#">/usr/edb/as13/bin</a></p>
edb-as13-server-core	Includes the programs needed to create the core functionality behind the Advanced Server database.
edb-as13-server-devel	Installs the header files and libraries needed to compile C or C++ applications that directly interact with an Advanced Server server and the ecpg or ecpgPlus C preprocessor.
edb-as13-server-docs	Installs the readme file.
edb-as13-server-edb-modules	Installs supporting modules for Advanced Server
edb-as13-server-indexadvisor	Installs Advanced Server's Index Advisor feature. The Index Advisor utility helps determine which columns you should index to improve performance in a given workload.
edb-as13-server-libs	Provides the essential shared libraries for any Advanced Server client program or interface.
edb-as13-server-llvmjit	This package contains support for Just in Time (JIT) compiling parts of EDBAS queries.
edb-as13-server-pldebugger	This package implements an API for debugging PL/pgSQL functions on Advanced Server.
edb-as13-server-plperl	Installs the PL/Perl procedural language for Advanced Server. Please note that the <a href="#">edb-as13-server-plperl</a> package is dependent on the platform-supplied version of Perl.
edb-as13-server-plpython3	Installs the PL/Python procedural language for Advanced Server. Please note that the PL/Python2 support will no longer be available from Advanced Server version 14 onwards.
edb-as13-server-pltcl	Installs the PL/Tcl procedural language for Advanced Server. Please note that the <a href="#">edb-as13-pltcl</a> package is dependent on the platform-supplied version of TCL.
edb-as13-server-sqlprofiler	This package installs Advanced Server's SQL Profiler feature. SQL Profiler helps identify and optimize SQL code.
edb-as13-server-sqlprotect	This package installs Advanced Server's SQL Protect feature. SQL Protect provides protection against SQL injection attacks.
edb-as13-server-sslutils	This package installs functionality that provides SSL support.
edb-as13-server-cloneschema	This package installs the EDB Clone Schema extension. For more information about EDB Clone Schema, see the EDB Postgres Advanced Server Guide.
edb-as13-server-parallel-clone	This package installs functionality that supports the EDB Clone Schema extension.
edb-as13-pgagent	Installs pgAgent; pgAgent is a job scheduler for Advanced Server. Before installing this package, you must install EPEL; for detailed information about installing EPEL, see <a href="#">Installation Troubleshooting</a> .

Package Name	Package Installs
edb-as13-edbplus	The <code>edb-edbplus</code> package contains the files required to install the EDB*Plus command line client. EDB*Plus commands are compatible with Oracle's SQL*Plus.
edb-as13-pgsnmpd	SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a protocol that allows you to supervise an apparatus connected to the network.
edb-as13-pgpool41-extensions	This package creates pgPool extensions required by the server for use with pgpool.
edb-as13-postgis3	Installs POSTGIS meta RPMs.
edb-as13-postgis3-core	This package provides support for geographic objects to the PostgreSQL object-relational database. In effect, PostGIS "spatially enables" the PostgreSQL server, allowing it to be used as a backend spatial database for geographic information systems (GIS), much like ESRI's SDE or Oracle's Spatial extension.
edb-as13-postgis3-docs	This package installs pdf documentation of PostGIS.
edb-as13-postgis-jdbc	This package installs the essential jdbc driver for PostGIS.
edb-as13-postgis3-utils	This package installs the utilities for PostGIS.
edb-as13-postgis3-gui	This package provides a GUI for PostGIS.
edb-as13-slony-replication	Installs the meta RPM for Slony-I.
edb-as13-slony-replication-core	Slony-I builds a primary-standby system that includes all features and capabilities needed to replicate large databases to a reasonably limited number of standby systems.
edb-as13-slony-replication-docs	This package contains the Slony project documentation (in pdf form).
edb-as13-slony-replication-tools	This package contains the Slony altperl tools and utilities that are useful when deploying Slony replication environments. Before installing this package, you must install EPEL; for detailed information about installing EPEL, see <a href="#">Installation Troubleshooting</a> .
edb-as13-libicu	These packages contain supporting library files.

The following table lists the packages for Advanced Server 13 supporting components.

Package Name	Package Installs
edb-pgpool41	<p>This package contains the pgPool-II installer. The pgpool-II utility package acts as a middleman between client applications and Server database servers. pgpool-II functionality is transparent to client applications; client applications connect to pgpool-II instead of directly to Advanced Server, and pgpool-II manages the connection. EDB supports the following pgpool-II features:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Load balancing</li> <li>• Connection pooling</li> <li>• High availability</li> <li>• Connection limits</li> </ul> <p>pgpool-II runs as a service on Linux systems, and is not supported on Windows systems.</p>
edb-jdbc	The <code>edb-jdbc</code> package includes the .jar files needed for Java programs to access an Advanced Server database.
edb-migrationtoolkit	The <code>edb-migrationtoolkit</code> package installs Migration Toolkit, facilitating migration to an Advanced Server database from Oracle, PostgreSQL, MySQL, Sybase and SQL Server.
edb-oci	The <code>edb-oci</code> package installs the EDB Open Client library, allowing applications that use the Oracle Call Interface API to connect to an Advanced Server database.
edb-oci-devel	This package installs the OCI include files; install this package if you are developing C/C++ applications that require these files.
edb-odbc	This package installs the driver needed for applications to access an Advanced Server system via ODBC.

Package Name	Package Installs
edb-odbc-devel	This package installs the ODBC include files; install this package if you are developing C/C++ applications that require these files.
edb-pgbouncer114	This package contains PgBouncer (a lightweight connection pooler). This package requires the libevent package.
ppas-xdb	This package contains the xDB installer; xDB provides asynchronous cross-database replication.
ppas-xdb-console	This package provides support for xDB.
ppas-xdb-libs	This package provides support for xDB.
ppas-xdb-publisher	This package provides support for xDB.
ppas-xdb-subscriber	This package provides support for xDB.
edb-pem	The <a href="#">edb-pem</a> package installs Management Tool that efficiently manages, monitor, and tune large Postgres deployments from a single remote GUI console.
edb-pem-agent	This package is an agent component of Postgres Enterprise Manager.
edb-pem-docs	This package contains documentation for various languages, which are in HTML format.
edb-pem-server	This package contains server components of Postgres Enterprise Manager.
edb-pgadmin4	This package is a management tool for PostgreSQL capable of hosting the Python application and presenting it to the user as a desktop application.
edb-pgadmin4-desktop-common	This package installs the desktop components of pgAdmin4 for all window managers.
edb-pgadmin4-desktop-gnome	This package installs the gnome desktop components of pgAdmin4
edb-pgadmin4-docs	This package contains documentation of pgAdmin4.
edb-pgadmin4-web	This package contains the required files to run pgAdmin4 as a web application.
edb-efm40	This package installs EDB Failover Manager that adds fault tolerance to database clusters to minimize downtime when a primary database fails by keeping data online in high availability configurations.
edb-rs	This package is a java-based replication framework that provides asynchronous replication across Postgres and EPAS database servers. It supports primary-standby, primary-primary, and hybrid configurations.
edb-rs-client	This package is a java-based command-line tool that is used to configure and operate a replication network via different commands by interacting with the EPRS server.
edb-rs-datavalidator	This package is a java-based command-line tool that provides row and column level data comparison of a source and target database table. The supported RDBMS servers include PostgreSQL, EPAS, Oracle, and MS SQL Server.
edb-rs-libs	This package contains certain libraries that are commonly used by ERPS Server, EPRS Client, and Monitoring modules.
edb-rs-monitor	This package is a java-based application that provides monitoring capabilities to ensure a smooth functioning of the EPRS replication cluster.
edb-rs-server	This package is a java-based replication framework that provides asynchronous replication across Postgres and EPAS database servers. It supports primary-standby, primary-primary, and hybrid configurations.
edb-bart	This package installs the Backup and Recovery Tool (BART) to support online backup and recovery across local and remote PostgreSQL and EDB Advanced Servers.
libevent-edb	This package contains supporting library files.

Package Name	Package Installs
libiconv-edb	This package contains supporting library files.
libevent-edb-devel	This package contains supporting library files.

## Updating an RPM Installation

If you have an existing Advanced Server RPM installation, you can use `yum` or `dnf` to upgrade your repository configuration file and update to a more recent product version. To update the `edb.repo` file, assume superuser privileges and enter:

- On RHEL or CentOS 7:

```
yum upgrade edb-repo
```

- On RHEL or CentOS 8:

```
dnf upgrade edb-repo
```

`yum` or `dnf` will update the `edb.repo` file to enable access to the current EDB repository, configured to connect with the credentials specified in your `edb.repo` file. Then, you can use `yum` or `dnf` to upgrade all packages whose names include the expression `edb`:

- On RHEL or CentOS 7:

```
yum upgrade edb*
```

- On RHEL or CentOS 8:

```
dnf upgrade edb*
```

**Note:** The `yum upgrade` or `dnf upgrade` command will only perform an update between minor releases; to update between major releases, you must use `pg_upgrade`.

For more information about using `yum` commands and options, enter `yum --help` on your command line.

For more information about using `dnf` commands and options, visit:

<https://docs.fedoraproject.org/en-US/quick-docs/dnf/>

## Installing Advanced Server on a Debian or Ubuntu Host

To install Advanced Server on a Debian or Ubuntu host, you must have credentials that allow access to the EDB repository. To request credentials for the repository, visit:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/repository-access-request>

The following steps will walk you through using the EDB apt repository to install a debian package. When using the commands, replace the `username` and `password` with the credentials provided by EDB.

- Assume superuser privileges:

```
sudo su -
```

- Configure the EDB repository:

On Debian 9, Ubuntu 18, and Ubuntu 20:

```
sh -c 'echo "deb https://USERNAME:PASSWORD@apt.enterprisedb.com/$(lsb_release -cs)-edb/ $(lsb_release -cs) main" > /etc/apt/sources.list.d/edb-$(lsb_release -cs).list'
```

On Debian 10:

a. Set up the EDB repository:

```
sh -c 'echo "deb [arch=amd64] https://apt.enterprisedb.com/$(lsb_release -cs)-edb/ $(lsb_release -cs) main" > /etc/apt/sources.list.d/edb-$(lsb_release -cs).list'
```

b. Substitute your EDB credentials for the `username` and `password` placeholders in the following command:

```
sh -c 'echo "machine apt.enterprisedb.com login <USERNAME> password <PASSWORD>" > /etc/apt/auth.conf.d/edb.conf'
```

- Add support to your system for secure APT repositories:

```
apt-get -y install apt-transport-https
```

- Add the EBD signing key:

```
wget -q -O - https://apt.enterprisedb.com/edb-deb.gpg.key | sudo apt-key add -
```

- Update the repository metadata:

```
apt-get update
```

- Install Debian package:

```
apt-get -y install edb-as13-server
```

**Note:** Some Advanced Server supporting components require a Java installation. Before using a native package to add Migration Toolkit or EDB\*Plus to your system, please ensure that Java version 8 is installed on your Advanced Server host.

## Managing Authentication on a Debian or Ubuntu Host

By default, the server is running with the peer or md5 permission on a Debian or Ubuntu host. You can change the authentication method by modifying the `pg_hba.conf` file, located under `/etc/edb-as/13/main/`.

For more information about modifying the `pg_hba.conf` file, see the PostgreSQL core documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/auth-pg-hba-conf.html>

The Debian package manager places Advanced Server and supporting components in the directories listed in the following table:

Component	Location
Server	<code>/usr/lib/edb-as/13/</code>
Data and Configuration Directory	<code>/var/lib/edb-as/13/main</code> <code>/etc/edb-as/13/main/</code>
pgAgent	<code>/usr/lib/edb-as/13</code>
Pgpool	<code>/usr/edb/pgpool4.1/</code>

Component	Location
Postgis	/usr/lib/edb-as/13/
PGSNMPD	/usr/lib/edb-as/13
Slony Replication	/usr/lib/edb-as/13
pgBouncer	/usr/edb/pgbouncer1.14/
pgBouncer Configuration Files	/etc/edb/pgbouncer1.14/pgbouncer.ini /etc/edb/pgbouncer1.14/userlist.txt
SQL-Profiler	/usr/lib/edb-as/13/lib
SQL-Protect	/usr/lib/edb-as/13/lib
SSLUTILS	/usr/lib/edb-as/13/lib
PL-PERL	/usr/lib/edb-as/13/lib
PL-PYTHON	/usr/lib/edb-as/13/lib
PLTCL	/usr/lib/edb-as/13/lib
EFM	/usr/edb/efm-4.1/
JDBC	/usr/edb/jdbc
MTK	/usr/edb/migrationtoolkit/

## Advanced Server Debian Packages

The table that follows lists some of the Debian packages that are available from EDB. You can also use the `apt list` command to access a list of the packages that are currently available from your configured repository. Open a command line, assume superuser privileges, and enter:

```
apt list edb*
```

Please note: The available package list is subject to change.

Package Name	Package Installs
edb-as13-server	Installs core components of the Advanced Server database server.
edb-as13-server-client	Includes client programs and utilities that you can use to access and manage Advanced Server.
edb-as13-server-core	Includes the programs needed to create the core functionality behind the Advanced Server database.
edb-as13-server-dev	The <code>edb-as13-server-dev</code> package contains the header files and libraries needed to compile C or C++ applications that directly interact with an Advanced Server server and the ecpg or ecpgPlus C preprocessor.
edb-as13-server-doc	Installs the readme file.
edb-as13-server-edb-modules	Installs supporting modules for Advanced Server.
edb-as13-server-indexadvisor	Installs Advanced Server's Index Advisor feature. The Index Advisor utility helps determine which columns you should index to improve performance in a given workload.
edb-as13-server-pldebugger	This package implements an API for debugging PL/pgSQL functions on Advanced Server.

Package Name	Package Installs
edb-as13-server-plpython3	Installs the PL/Python procedural language for Advanced Server. Please note that the PL/Python2 support will no longer be available from Advanced Server version 14 onwards.
edb-as13-server-pltcl	Installs the PL/Tcl procedural language for Advanced Server. Please note that the <code>edb-as13-pltcl</code> package is dependent on the platform-supplied version of TCL.
edb-as13-server-sqlprofiler	This package installs Advanced Server's SQL Profiler feature. SQL Profiler helps identify and optimize SQL code.
edb-as13-server-sqlprotect	This package installs Advanced Server's SQL Protect feature. SQL Protect provides protection against SQL injection attacks.
edb-as13-server-sslutils	This package installs functionality that provides SSL support.
edb-as13-server-cloneschema	This package installs the EDB Clone Schema extension. For more information about EDB Clone Schema, see the EDB Postgres Advanced Server Guide.
edb-as13-server-parallel-clone	This package installs functionality that supports the EDB Clone Schema extension.
edb-as13-edbplus	The <code>edb-edbplus</code> package contains the files required to install the EDB*Plus command line client. EDB*Plus commands are compatible with Oracle's SQL*Plus.
edb-as13-pgsqlpd	SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a protocol that allows you to supervise an apparatus connected to the network.
edb-as13-pgadmin4	pgAdmin 4 provides a graphical management interface for Advanced Server and PostgreSQL databases.
edb-as13-pgadmin-apache	Apache support module for pgAdmin 4.
edb-as13-pgadmin4-common	pgAdmin 4 supporting files.
edb-as13-pgadmin4-doc	pgAdmin 4 documentation module.
edb-as13-pgpool41-extensions	This package creates pgPool extensions required by the server.
edb-as13-postgis3	This package installs POSTGIS support for geospatial data.
edb-as13-postgis3-scripts	This package installs POSTGIS support for geospatial data.
edb-as13-postgis3-doc	This package provides support for POSTGIS.
edb-as13-postgis3-gui	This package provides a GUI for POSTGIS.
edb-as13-postgis-jdbc	This package provides support for POSTGIS.
edb-as13-postgis-scripts	This package provides support for POSTGIS.
edb-as13-pgagent	This package installs pgAgent; pgAgent is a job scheduler for Advanced Server. Before installing this package, you must install EPEL; for detailed information about installing EPEL, see <a href="#">Installation Troubleshooting</a> .
edb-as13-slony-replication	This package installs the meta RPM for Slony-I.

Package Name	Package Installs
edb-as13-slony-replication-core	This package contains core portions of Slony-I to build a primary-standby system that includes all features and capabilities needed to replicate large databases to a reasonably limited number of standby systems.
edb-as13-slony-replication-docs	This package contains the Slony project documentation (in pdf form).
edb-as13-slony-replication-tools	This package contains the Slony altperl tools and utilities that are useful when deploying Slony replication environments. Before installing this package, you must install EPEL; for detailed information about installing EPEL, see <a href="#">Installation Troubleshooting</a> .
edb-as13-hdfs-fdw	The Hadoop Data Adapter allows you to query and join data from Hadoop environments with your Postgres or Advanced Server instances. It is YARN Ready certified with HortonWorks, and provides optimizations for performance with predicate pushdown support.
edb-as13-hdfs-fdw-doc	Documentation for the Hadoop Data Adapter.
edb-as13-mongo-fdw	This EDB Advanced Server extension implements a Foreign Data Wrapper for MongoDB.
edb-as13-mongo-fdw-doc	Documentation for the Foreign Data Wrapper for MongoDB.
edb-as13-mysql-fdw	This EDB Advanced Server extension implements a Foreign Data Wrapper for MySQL.
edb-pgpool41	<p>This package contains the pgPool-II installer. The pgpool-II utility package acts as a middleman between client applications and Server database servers. pgpool-II functionality is transparent to client applications; client applications connect to pgpool-II instead of directly to Advanced Server, and pgpool-II manages the connection. EDB supports the following pgpool-II features:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Load balancing</li> <li>• Connection pooling</li> <li>• High availability</li> <li>• Connection limits</li> </ul> <p>pgpool-II runs as a service on Linux systems, and is not supported on Windows systems.</p>
edb-jdbc	The <code>edb-jdbc</code> package includes the .jar files needed for Java programs to access an Advanced Server database.
edb-migrationtoolkit	The <code>edb-migrationtoolkit</code> package installs Migration Toolkit, facilitating migration to an Advanced Server database from Oracle, PostgreSQL, MySQL, Sybase and SQL Server.
edb-pgbouncer114	This package contains PgBouncer (a lightweight connection pooler). This package requires the libevent package.
edb-efm40	This package installs EDB Failover Manager that adds fault tolerance to database clusters to minimize downtime when a primary database fails by keeping data online in high availability configurations.

## Configuring a Package Installation

The packages that install the database server component create a unit file (on version 7.x or 8.x hosts) and service startup scripts.

## Creating a Database Cluster and Starting the Service

The PostgreSQL `initdb` command creates a database cluster; when installing Advanced Server with an RPM package, the `initdb` executable is in `/usr/edb/asx.x/bin`. After installing Advanced Server, you must manually configure the service and invoke `initdb` to create your cluster. When invoking `initdb`, you can:

- Specify environment options on the command line.
- Include the `systemd` service manager on RHEL or CentOS 7.x | 8.x and use a service configuration file to configure the environment.

To review the `initdb` documentation, visit:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/app-initdb.html>

After specifying any options in the service configuration file, you can create the database cluster and start the service; these steps are platform specific.

### On RHEL or CentOS 7.x | 8.x

To invoke `initdb` on a RHEL or CentOS 7.x | 8.x system, with the options specified in the service configuration file, assume the identity of the operating system superuser:

```
su - root
```

To initialize a cluster with the non-default values, you can use the `PGSETUP_INITDB_OPTIONS` environment variable by invoking the `edb-as-13-setup` cluster initialization script that resides under `EPAS_Home/bin`.

To invoke `initdb` export the `PGSETUP_INITDB_OPTIONS` environment variable with the following command:

```
PGSETUP_INITDB_OPTIONS="-E UTF-8" /usr/edb/as13/bin/edb-as-13-setup initdb
```

After creating the cluster, use `systemctl` to start, stop, or restart the service:

```
systemctl { start | stop | restart } edb-as-13
```

### On Debian 9.x | 10.x or Ubuntu 18.04 | 20.04

You can initialize multiple clusters using the bundled scripts. To create a new cluster, assume `root` privileges, and invoke the bundled script:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/epas_createcluster 13 main2
```

To start a new cluster, use the following command:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/epas_ctlcluster 13 main2 start
```

To list all the available clusters, use the following command:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/epas_lsclusters
```

**Note:** The data directory is created under `/var/lib/edb-as/13/main2` and configuration directory is created under `/etc/edb-as/13/main/`.

### Specifying Cluster Options with INITDBOPTS

You can use the `INITDBOPTS` variable to specify your cluster configuration preferences. By default, the `INITDBOPTS` variable is commented out in the service configuration file; unless modified, when you run the service startup script, the new cluster will be created in a mode compatible with Oracle databases. Clusters created in this mode will contain a database named `edb`, and have a database superuser named `enterprisedb`.

## Initializing the Cluster in Oracle Mode

If you initialize the database using Oracle compatibility mode, the installation includes:

- Data dictionary views compatible with Oracle databases.
- Oracle data type conversions.
- Date values displayed in a format compatible with Oracle syntax.
- Support for Oracle-styled concatenation rules (if you concatenate a string value with a `NULL` value, the returned value is the value of the string).
- Support for the following Oracle built-in packages.

Package	Functionality compatible with Oracle Databases
<code>dbms_alert</code>	Provides the capability to register for, send, and receive alerts.
<code>dbms_job</code>	Provides the capability for the creation, scheduling, and managing of jobs.
<code>dbms_lob</code>	Provides the capability to manage on large objects.
<code>dbms_output</code>	Provides the capability to send messages to a message buffer, or get messages from the message buffer.
<code>dbms_pipe</code>	Provides the capability to send messages through a pipe within or between sessions connected to the same database cluster.
<code>dbms_rls</code>	Enables the implementation of Virtual Private Database on certain Advanced Server database objects.
<code>dbms_sql</code>	Provides an application interface to the EDB dynamic SQL functionality.
<code>dbms_utility</code>	Provides various utility programs.
<code>dbms_aqadm</code>	Provides supporting procedures for Advanced Queueing functionality.
<code>dbms_aq</code>	Provides message queueing and processing for Advanced Server.
<code>dbms_profiler</code>	Collects and stores performance information about the PL/pgSQL and SPL statements that are executed during a performance profiling session.
<code>dbms_random</code>	Provides a number of methods to generate random values.
<code>dbms_redact</code>	Enables the redacting or masking of data that is returned by a query.
<code>dbms_lock</code>	Provides support for the <code>DBMS_LOCK.SLEEP</code> procedure.
<code>dbms_scheduler</code>	Provides a way to create and manage jobs, programs, and job schedules.
<code>dbms_crypto</code>	Provides functions and procedures to encrypt or decrypt RAW, BLOB or CLOB data. You can also use <code>DBMS_CRYPTO</code> functions to generate cryptographically strong random values.
<code>dbms_mview</code>	Provides a way to manage and refresh materialized views and their dependencies.
<code>dbms_session</code>	Provides support for the <code>DBMS_SESSION.SET_ROLE</code> procedure.
<code>utl_encode</code>	Provides a way to encode and decode data.
<code>utl_http</code>	Provides a way to use the HTTP or HTTPS protocol to retrieve information found at an URL.
<code>utl_file</code>	Provides the capability to read from, and write to files on the operating system's file system.
<code>utl_smtp</code>	Provides the capability to send e-mails over the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP).
<code>utl_mail</code>	Provides the capability to manage e-mail.
<code>utl_url</code>	Provides a way to escape illegal and reserved characters within an URL.
<code>utl_raw</code>	Provides a way to manipulate or retrieve the length of raw data types.

## Initializing the Cluster in Postgres Mode

Clusters created in PostgreSQL mode do not include compatibility features. To create a new cluster in PostgreSQL mode, remove the pound sign (#) in front of the `INITDBOPTS` variable, enabling the `--no-redwood-compat` option. Clusters created in PostgreSQL mode will contain a database named `postgres` and have a database superuser named `postgres`.

You may also specify multiple `initdb` options. For example, the following statement:

```
INITDBOPTS="--no-redwood-compat -U alice --locale=en_US.UTF-8"
```

Creates a database cluster (without compatibility features for Oracle) that contains a database named `postgres` that is owned by a user named `alice`; the cluster uses `UTF-8` encoding.

If you initialize the database using "`--no-redwood-compat`" mode, the installation includes the following package:

Package	Functionality non-compatible with Oracle Databases
<code>dbms_aqadm</code>	Provides supporting procedures for Advanced Queueing functionality.
<code>dbms_aq</code>	Provides message queueing and processing for Advanced Server.
<code>edb_bulkload</code>	Provides direct/conventional data loading capability when loading huge amount of data into a database.
<code>edb_gen</code>	Provides miscellaneous packages to run built-in packages.
<code>edb_objects</code>	Provides Oracle compatible objects such as packages, procedures etc.
<code>waitstates</code>	Provides monitor session blocking.
<code>edb_dblink_libpq</code>	Provides link to foreign databases via libpq.
<code>edb_dblink_oci</code>	Provides link to foreign databases via OCI.
<code>snap_tables</code>	Creates tables to hold wait information. Included with DRITA scripts.
<code>snap_functions</code>	Creates functions to return a list of snap ids and the time the snapshot was taken. Included with DRITA scripts.
<code>sys_stats</code>	Provides OS performance statistics.

In addition to the cluster configuration options documented in the PostgreSQL core documentation, Advanced Server supports the following `initdb` options:

#### `--no-redwood-compat`

Include the `--no-redwood-compat` keywords to instruct the server to create the cluster in PostgreSQL mode. When the cluster is created in PostgreSQL mode, the name of the database superuser will be `postgres`, the name of the default database will be `postgres`, and Advanced Server's features compatible with Oracle databases will not be available to the cluster.

#### `--redwood-like`

Include the `--redwood-like` keywords to instruct the server to use an escape character (an empty string ("")) following the `LIKE` (or PostgreSQL-compatible `ILIKE`) operator in a SQL statement that is compatible with Oracle syntax.

#### `--icu-short-form`

Include the `--icu-short-form` keywords to create a cluster that uses a default ICU (International Components for Unicode) collation for all databases in the cluster. For more information about Unicode collations, refer to the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server Guide* available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

For more information about using `initdb`, and the available cluster configuration options, see the PostgreSQL Core Documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/app-initdb.html>

You can also view online help for `initdb` by assuming superuser privileges and entering:

```
/path_to_initdb_installation_directory/initdb --help
```

Where `path_to_initdb_installation_directory` specifies the location of the `initdb` binary file.

## Modifying the Data Directory Location on CentOS or Redhat 7.x

On a CentOS or RedHat version 7.x host, the unit file is named `edb-as-13.service` and resides in `/usr/lib/systemd/system`. The unit file contains references to the location of the Advanced Server `data` directory. You should avoid making any modifications directly to the unit file because it may be overwritten during package upgrades.

By default, data files reside under `/var/lib/edb/as13/data` directory. To use a data directory that resides in a non-default location, perform the following steps:

- Create a copy of the unit file under the `/etc` directory:

```
cp /usr/lib/systemd/system/edb-as-13.service /etc/systemd/system/
```

- After copying the unit file to the new location, create the service file `/etc/systemd/system/edb-as-13.service`.
- Update the following values with new location of data directory in the `/lib/systemd/system/edb-as-13.service` file:

```
Environment=PGDATA=/var/lib/edb/as13/data
PIDFile=/var/lib/edb/as13/data/postmaster.pid
```

- Delete the entire content of `/etc/systemd/system/edb-as-13.service` file, except the following line:

```
.include /lib/systemd/system/edb-as-13.service
```

- Run the following command to initialize the cluster at the new location:

```
PGSETUP_INITDB_OPTIONS="-E UTF-8" /usr/edb/as13/bin/edb-as-13-setup initdb
```

- Use the following command to reload `systemd`, updating the modified service scripts:

```
systemctl daemon-reload
```

- Start the Advanced Server service with the following command:

```
systemctl start edb-as-13
```

## Configuring SELinux Policy to Change the Data Directory Location on CentOS or Redhat 7.x

By default, the data files resides under `/var/lib/edb/as13/data` directory. To change the default data directory location depending on individual environment preferences, you must configure the SELinux policy and perform the following steps:

- Stop the server using the following command:

```
systemctl stop edb-as-13
```

- Check the status of SELinux using the `getenforce` or `sestatus` command:

```
# getenforce
Enforcing

# sestatus
SELinux status:          enabled
SELinuxfs mount:         /sys/fs/selinux
SELinux root directory:  /etc/selinux
Loaded policy name:      targeted
```

```
Current mode:      enforcing
Mode from config file:      enforcing
Policy MLS status:      enabled
Policy deny_unknown status: allowed
Max kernel policy version: 31
```

- Use the following command to view the SELinux context of the default database location:

```
ls -lZ /var/lib/edb/as13/data
drwx-----. enterpriseenterprise unconfined_u:object_r:var_lib_t:s0 log
```

- Create a new directory for a new location of the database using the following command:

```
mkdir /opt/edb
```

- Use the following command to move the data directory to `/opt/edb`:

```
mv /var/lib/edb/as13/data /opt/edb/
```

- Create a file `edb-as-13.service` under `/etc/systemd/system` directory to include the location of a new data directory:

```
.include /lib/systemd/system/edb-as-13.service
[Service]
Environment=PGDATA=/opt/edb/data
PIDFile=/opt/edb/data/postmaster.pid
```

- Use the `semanage` utility to set the context mapping for `/opt/edb/`. The mapping is written to `/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/files/file.contexts.local` file.

```
semanage fcontext --add --equal /var/lib/edb/as13/data /opt/edb
```

- Apply the context mapping using `restorecon` utility:

```
restorecon -rv /opt/edb/
```

- Reload `systemd` to modify the service script using the following command:

```
systemctl daemon-reload
```

- Now, the `/opt/edb` location has been labeled correctly with the context, use the following command to start the service:

```
systemctl start edb-as-13
```

## Starting Multiple Postmasters with Different Clusters

You can configure Advanced Server to use multiple postmasters, each with its own database cluster. The steps required are version specific to the Linux host.

### On RHEL or CentOS 7.x | 8.x

The `edb-as13-server-core` RPM for version 7.x | 8.x contains a unit file that starts the Advanced Server instance. The file allows you to start multiple services, with unique `data` directories and that monitor different ports. You must have `root` access to invoke or modify the script.

The example that follows creates an Advanced Server installation with two instances; the secondary instance is named `secondary`:

- Make a copy of the default file with the new name. As noted at the top of the file, all modifications must reside under `/etc`. You must pick a name that is not already used in `/etc/systemd/system`.

```
cp /usr/lib/systemd/system/edb-as-13.service /etc/systemd/system/secondary-edb-as-13.service
```

- Edit the file, changing `PGDATA` to point to the new `data` directory that you will create the cluster against.
- Create the target `PGDATA` with user `enterprisedb`.
- Run `initdb`, specifying the setup script:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/edb-as-13-setup initdb secondary-edb-as-13
```

- Edit the `postgresql.conf` file for the new instance, specifying the port, the IP address, TCP/IP settings, etc.
- Make sure that new cluster runs after a reboot:

```
systemctl enable secondary-edb-as-13
```

- Start the second cluster with the following command:

```
systemctl start secondary-edb-as-13
```

## Creating an Advanced Server Repository on an Isolated Network

You can create a local repository to act as a host for the Advanced Server RPM packages if the server on which you wish to install Advanced Server (or supporting components) cannot directly access the EDB repository. Please note that this is a high-level listing of the steps required; you will need to modify the process for your individual network.

To create and use a local repository, you must:

- Use `yum` or `dnf` to install the `epel-release`, `yum-utils`, and `createrepo` packages.

On RHEL or CentOS 7.x:

```
yum install epel-release
yum install yum-utils
yum install createrepo
```

On RHEL or CentOS 8.x:

```
dnf install epel-release
dnf install yum-utils
dnf install createrepo
```

- Create a directory in which to store the repository:

```
mkdir /srv/repos
```

- Copy the RPM installation packages to your local repository. You can download the individual packages or use a tarball to populate the repository. The packages are available from the EDB repository at <https://repos.enterprisedb.com/>.

- Sync the RPM packages and create the repository.

```
reposync -r edbas13 -p /srv/repos
createrepo /srv/repos
```

- Install your preferred webserver on the host that will act as your local repository, and ensure that the repository directory is accessible to the other servers on your network.
- On each isolated database server, configure `yum` or `dnf` to pull updates from the mirrored repository on your local network. For example, you might create a repository configuration file called `/etc/yum.repos.d/edb.repo` with connection information that specifies:

```
[edbas13]
name=EnterpriseDB Advanced Server 13
baseurl=https://yum.your_domain.com/edbas13
enabled=1
gpgcheck=0
```

After specifying the location and connection information for your local repository, you can use `yum` or `dnf` commands to install Advanced Server and its supporting components on the isolated servers. For example:

- On RHEL or CentOS 7.x:

```
yum -y install edb-as13-server
```

- On RHEL or CentOS 8.x:

```
dnf -y install edb-as13-server
```

For more information about creating a local `yum` repository, visit:

<https://wiki.centos.org/HowTos/CreateLocalRepos>

## 13.3 Installation Troubleshooting

### Difficulty Displaying Java-based Applications

If you encounter difficulty displaying Java-based server features (controls or text not being displayed correctly, or blank windows), upgrading to the latest `libxcb-xlib` libraries should correct the problem on most distributions. Please visit the following link for other possible work-arounds:

[http://bugs.sun.com/bugdatabase/view\\_bug.do?bug\\_id=6532373](http://bugs.sun.com/bugdatabase/view_bug.do?bug_id=6532373)

### The Installation Fails to Complete Due to Existing data Directory Contents

If an installation fails to complete due to an existing content in the data directory, the server will write an error message to the server logs:

A data directory is neither empty, or a recognisable data directory.

If you encounter a similar message, you should confirm that the data directory is empty; the presence of files (including the system-generated `lost+found` folder) will prevent the installation from completing. Either remove the files from the data directory, or specify a different location for the data directory before re-invoking the installer to complete the installation.

## Difficulty Installing the EPEL Release Package

If you encounter difficulty when installing the **EPEL** release package, you can use the following command to install the **epel-release** package on RHEL or CentOS 7 and 8 platform:

```
yum -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm
```

```
dnf -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-8.noarch.rpm
```

Please note that you may need to enable the **[extras]** repository definition in the **CentOS-Base.repo** file (located in **/etc/yum.repos.d**). If **yum** cannot access a repository that contains **epel-release**, you will get an error message:

```
No package epel available.
```

```
Error: Nothing to do
```

If you receive this error, you can download the **EPEL** rpm package, and install it manually. To manually install **EPEL**, download the rpm package, assume superuser privileges, navigate into the directory that contains the package, and install **EPEL** with the command:

```
yum -y install epel-release
```

```
dnf -y install epel-release
```

## 13.4 Managing an Advanced Server Installation

Unless otherwise noted, the commands and paths noted in the following section assume that you have performed an installation using the native packages.

### Starting and Stopping Advanced Server and Supporting Components

A service is a program that runs in the background and requires no user interaction (in fact, a service provides no user interface); a service can be configured to start at boot time, or manually on demand. Services are best controlled using the platform-specific operating system service control utility. Many of the Advanced Server supporting components are services.

The following table lists the names of the services that control Advanced Server and services that control Advanced Server supporting components:

Advanced Server Component Name	Linux Service Name	Debian Service Name
Advanced Server	edb-as-13	<a href="#">edb-as@13-main</a>
pgAgent	edb-pgagent-13	edb-as13-pgagent
PgBouncer	edb-pgbouncer-1.14	edb-pgbouncer114
pgPool-II	edb-pgpool-4.1	edb-pgpool41
Slony	edb-slony-replication-13	edb-as13-slony-replication
EFM	edb-efm-4.0	edb-efm-4.0

You can use the Linux command line to control Advanced Server's database server and the services of Advanced Server's supporting components. The commands that control the Advanced Server service on a Linux platform are

host specific.

### ### Controlling a Service on CentOS or RHEL 7.x | 8.x

If your installation of Advanced Server resides on version 7.x | 8.x of RHEL and CentOS, you must use the `systemctl` command to control the Advanced Server service and supporting components.

The `systemctl` command must be in your search path and must be invoked with superuser privileges. To use the command, open a command line, and enter:

```
systemctl <action> <service_name>
```

Where:

`service_name` specifies the name of the service.

`action` specifies the action taken by the service command. Specify:

- `start` to start the service.
- `stop` to stop the service.
- `restart` to stop and then start the service.
- `status` to discover the current status of the service.

### ### Controlling a Service on Debian 9.x | 10.x or Ubuntu 18.04 | 20.04

If your installation of Advanced Server resides on version 9x of Debian or 18.04 of Ubuntu, assume superuser privileges and invoke the following commands (using bundled scripts) to manage the service. Use the following commands to:

- Discover the current status of a service:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/epas_ctlcluster 13 main status
```

- Stop a service:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/epas_ctlcluster 13 main stop
```

- Restart a service:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/epas_ctlcluster 13 main restart
```

- Reload a service:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/epas_ctlcluster 13 main reload
```

- Control the component services:

```
systemctl restart edb-as@13-main
```

## Using pg\_ctl to Control Advanced Server

You can use the `pg_ctl` utility to control an Advanced Server service from the command line on any platform. `pg_ctl` allows you to start, stop, or restart the Advanced Server database server, reload the configuration parameters, or display the status of a running server. To invoke the utility, assume the identity of the cluster owner, navigate into the home directory of Advanced Server, and issue the command:

```
./bin/pg_ctl -D <data_directory> <action>
```

`data_directory` is the location of the data controlled by the Advanced Server cluster.

`action` specifies the action taken by the `pg_ctl` utility. Specify:

- `start` to start the service.
- `stop` to stop the service.
- `restart` to stop and then start the service.
- `reload` sends the server a `SIGHUP` signal, reloading configuration parameters
- `status` to discover the current status of the service.

For more information about using the `pg_ctl` utility, or the command line options available, see the official PostgreSQL Core Documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/app-pg-ctl.html>

### Choosing Between `pg_ctl` and the `service` Command

You can use the `pg_ctl` utility to manage the status of an Advanced Server cluster, but it is important to note that `pg_ctl` does not alert the operating system service controller to changes in the status of a server, so it is beneficial to use the `service` command whenever possible.

## Configuring Component Services to AutoStart at System Reboot

After installing, configuring, and starting the services of Advanced Server supporting components on a Linux system, you must manually configure your system to autostart the service when your system reboots. To configure a service to autostart on a Linux system, open a command line, assume superuser privileges, and enter the following command.

On a Redhat-compatible Linux system, enter:

```
/sbin/chkconfig <service_name> on
```

Where `service_name` specifies the name of the service.

## Connecting to Advanced Server with `edb-psql`

`edb-psql` is a command line client application that allows you to execute SQL commands and view the results. To open the `edb-psql` client, the client must be in your search path. The executable resides in the `bin` directory, under your Advanced Server installation.

Use the following command and options to start the `edb-psql` client:

```
psql -d edb -U enterpriseedb
```

Where:

`-d` specifies the database to which `edb-psql` will connect.

`-U` specifies the identity of the database user that will be used for the session.

`edb-psql` is a symbolic link to PostgreSQL community `psql`. For more information about using the command line client, see the PostgreSQL Core Documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/app-psql.html>

## 13.5 Installing and Configuring pgAdmin4

pgAdmin 4 is the leading Open Source management tool for Postgres databases. EDB pgAdmin 4 is an enhanced version of open source pgAdmin 4 specifically for Advanced Server databases. It is designed to meet the needs of both novice and experienced Postgres users alike, providing a powerful graphical interface that simplifies the creation, maintenance, and use of database objects.

You can install EDB pgAdmin 4 for your Advanced Server database using the `yum` package manager for RHEL or CentOS 7.x platform and using `dnf` package manager for RHEL or CentOS 8.x platform.

### Installing pgAdmin 4 on a Linux Host

You can use the following steps to install pgAdmin4 using `yum` package manager:

#### Create a Repository Configuration File

To create a repository configuration file, you must have the credentials that allow to access the EDB repository. For information about requesting credentials, visit:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/user/login>

To create the repository configuration file, assume superuser privileges and invoke the following command:

```
yum -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edbrepos/edb-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
```

The repository configuration file is named `edb.repo`. The file resides in `/etc/yum.repos.d`.

After creating the `edb.repo` file, the `enabled` parameter is set to `1` by default. Replace the `username` and `password` placeholders in the `baseurl` specification with the name and password of a registered EDB user.

```
[edb]
name=EnterpriseDB RPMs $releasever - $basearch
baseurl=https://<username>:<password>@yum.enterprisedb.com/edb/redhat/rhel-$releasever-$basearch
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=file:///etc/pki/rpm-gpg/ENTERPRISEDB-GPG-KEY
```

**Note:** If you have `edb.repo` already configured then you can skip this step.

#### Install EDB pgAdmin 4

After creating the repository configuration file and adding a username and password to the `edb.repo` file, you can install `edb-pgadmin4`. To install `edb-pgadmin4`, assume superuser privileges and invoke the following command:

```
yum install edb-pgadmin4*
```

The following packages will be installed:

- `edb-pgadmin4`
- `edb-pgadmin4-desktop-common`
- `edb-pgadmin4-desktop-gnome`
- `edb-pgadmin4-docs`
- `edb-pgadmin4-web`

## Start pgAdmin 4 in Desktop Mode

```
/usr/edb/pgadmin4/bin/pgAdmin4
```

You can also start pgAdmin 4 in desktop mode from the **Applications** menu as shown below:

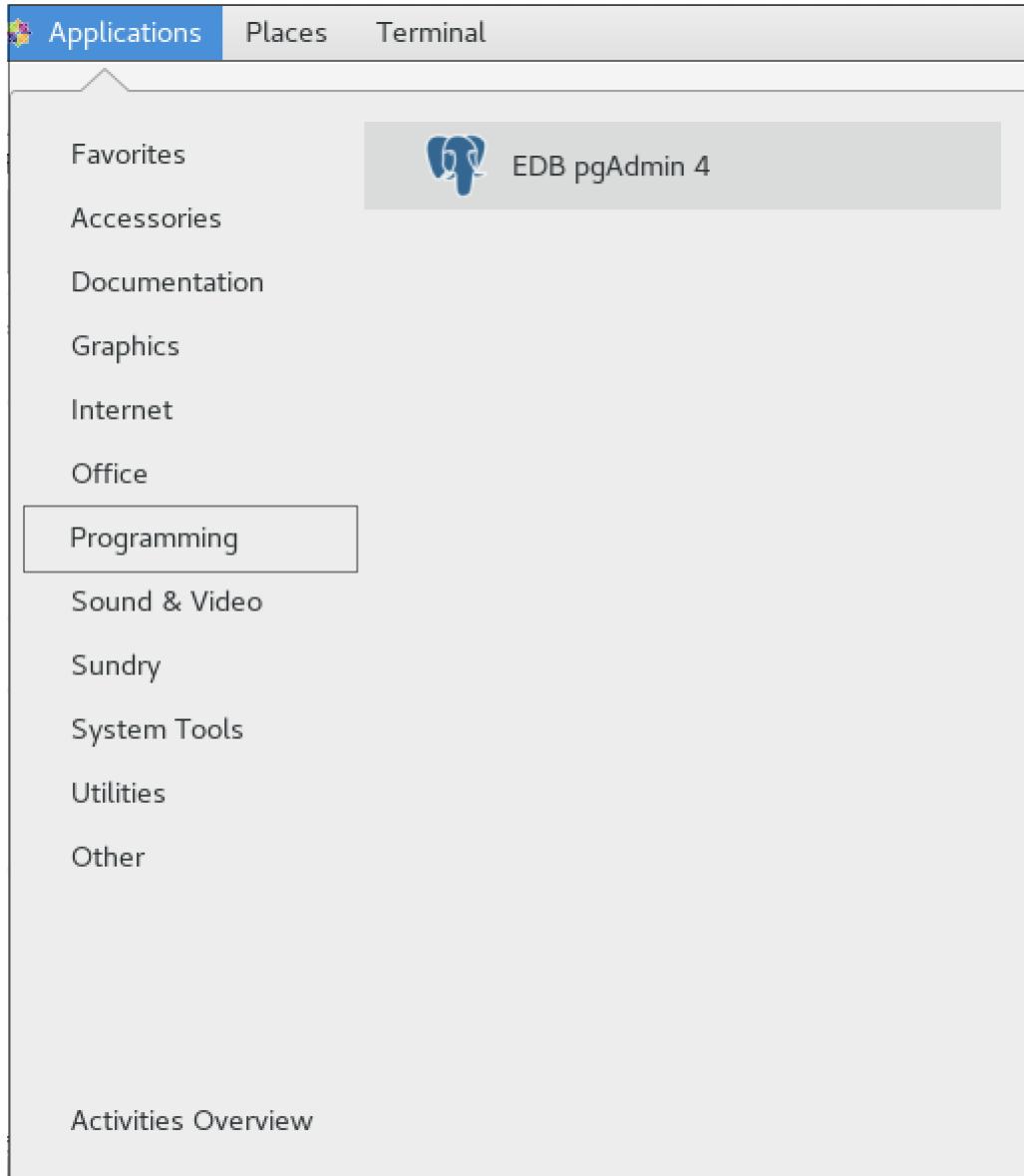


Fig. 1: Accessing EDB pgAdmin 4 from Applications Menu.

## Registering and Connecting to Advanced Server with pgAdmin 4

First, you must register Advanced Server on pgAdmin 4. For information about registering your server, visit:

[https://www.pgadmin.org/docs/pgadmin4/latest/server\\_dialog.html](https://www.pgadmin.org/docs/pgadmin4/latest/server_dialog.html)

To connect to your registered Advanced Server instance, right click on your server name, select **Connect Server**, and provide the password:

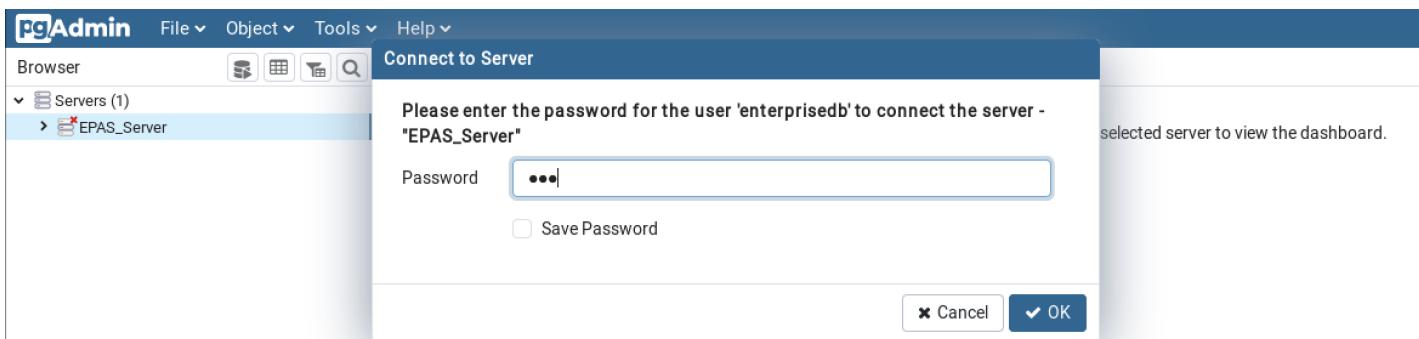


Fig. 2: Connecting to EPAS Server through EDB pgAdmin 4.

## 13.6 Uninstalling Advanced Server

Note that after uninstalling Advanced Server, the cluster data files remain intact and the service user persists. You may manually remove the cluster `data` and service user from the system.

### Uninstalling an RPM Package

You can use variations of the `rpm`, `yum` or `dnf` command to remove installed packages. Note that removing a package does not damage the Advanced Server `data` directory.

Include the `-e` option when invoking the `rpm` command to remove an installed package; the command syntax is:

```
rpm -e <package_name>
```

Where `package_name` is the name of the package that you would like to remove.

You can use the `yum remove` or `dnf remove` command to remove a package installed by `yum` or `dnf`. To remove a package, open a terminal window, assume superuser privileges, and enter the command:

- On RHEL or CentOS 7:

```
yum remove <package_name>
```

- On RHEL or CentOS 8:

```
dnf remove <package_name>
```

Where `package_name` is the name of the package that you would like to remove.

`yum` and RPM will not remove a package that is required by another package. If you attempt to remove a package that satisfies a package dependency, `yum` or RPM will provide a warning.

**Note:** In RHEL or CentOS 8, removing a package also removes all its dependencies that are not required by other packages. To override this default behavior of RHEL or CentOS 8, you must disable the `clean_requirements_on_remove` parameter in the `/etc/yum.conf` file.

To uninstall Advanced Server and its dependent packages; use the following command:

- On RHEL or CentOS 7:

```
yum remove edb-as13-server*
```

- On RHEL or CentOS 8:

```
dnf remove edb-as13-server*
```

## Uninstalling Advanced Server Components on a Debian or Ubuntu Host

- To uninstall Advanced Server, invoke the following command. The configuration files and data directory remains intact.

```
apt-get remove edb-as13-server*
```

- To uninstall Advanced Server, configuration files, and data directory, invoke the following command:

```
apt-get purge edb-as13-server*
```

# 14 Advanced Server Installation Guide for Windows

The EDB Postgres Advanced Server Installation Guide is a comprehensive guide to installing EDB Postgres Advanced Server (Advanced Server). In this guide you will find detailed information about:

- Software prerequisites for Advanced Server 13 installation on Windows.
- Graphical installation options available through the interactive setup wizard on Windows.
- Managing an Advanced Server installation.
- Configuring an Advanced Server package installation.
- Uninstalling Advanced Server and its components.

## 14.1 Requirements Overview

For information about the platforms and versions supported by Advanced Server, visit the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/services-support/edb-supported-products-and-platforms#epas>

### Limitations

The following limitations apply to EDB Postgres Advanced Server:

- The **data** directory of a production database should not be stored on an NFS file system.

### Windows Installation Prerequisites

#### User Privileges

To perform an Advanced Server installation on a Windows system, you must have administrator privileges. If you are installing Advanced Server on a Windows system that is configured with **User Account Control** enabled, you can assume sufficient privileges to invoke the graphical installer by right clicking on the name of the installer and selecting **Run as administrator** from the context menu.

## Windows-specific Software Requirements

You should apply Windows operating system updates before invoking the Advanced Server installer. If (during the installation process) the installer encounters errors, exit the installation, and ensure that your version of Windows is up-to-date before restarting the installer.

### Migration Toolkit or EDB\*Plus Installation Pre-requisites

Before using StackBuilder Plus to install Migration Toolkit or EDB\*Plus, you must first install Java (version 1.8 or later). If you are using Windows, Java installers and instructions are available online at:

<http://www.java.com/en/download/manual.jsp>

## 14.2 Installing Advanced Server with the Interactive Installer

You can use the Advanced Server interactive installer to install Advanced Server on Windows. The interactive installer is available from the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/advanced-downloads>

You can invoke the graphical installer in different installation modes to perform an Advanced Server installation:

- For information about using the graphical installer, see [Performing a Graphical Installation on Windows](#).
- For information about performing an unattended installation, see [Performing an Unattended Installation](#).
- For information about performing an installation with limited privileges, see [Performing an Installation with Limited Privileges](#).
- For information about the command line options you can include when invoking the installer, see [Reference - Command Line Options](#).

During the installation, the graphical installer copies a number of temporary files to the location specified by the **TEMP** environment variable. You can optionally specify an alternate location for the temporary files by modifying the **TEMP** environment variable.

If invoking the installer from the command line, you can set the value of the variable on the command line. Use the command:

```
SET TEMP=temp_file_location
```

Where **temp\_file\_location** specifies the alternate location for the temporary files and must match the permissions with the **TEMP** environment variable.

**Note:** If you are invoking the installer to perform a system upgrade, the installer will preserve the configuration options specified during the previous installation.

### Setting Cluster Preferences during a Graphical Installation

During an installation, the graphical installer invokes the PostgreSQL **initdb** utility to initialize a cluster. If you are using the graphical installer, you can use the **INITDBOPTS** environment variable to specify your **initdb** preferences. Before invoking the graphical installer, set the value of **INITDBOPTS** at the command line, specifying one or more cluster options. For example:

```
SET INITDBOPTS= -k -E=UTF-8
```

If you specify values in `INITDBOPTS` that are also provided by the installer (such as the `-D` option, which specifies the installation directory), the value specified in the graphical installer will supersede the value if specified in `INITDBOPTS`.

For more information about using `initdb` cluster configuration options, see the PostgreSQL Core Documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/app-initdb.html>

In addition to the cluster configuration options documented in the PostgreSQL core documentation, Advanced Server supports the following `initdb` options:

#### --no-redwood-compat

Include the `--no-redwood-compat` keywords to instruct the server to create the cluster in PostgreSQL mode. When the cluster is created in PostgreSQL mode, the name of the database superuser will be `postgres`, the name of the default database will be `postgres`, and Advanced Server's features compatible with Oracle databases will not be available to the cluster.

#### --redwood-like

Include the `--redwood-like` keywords to instruct the server to use an escape character (an empty string ("")) following the `LIKE` (or PostgreSQL compatible `ILIKE`) operator in a SQL statement that is compatible with Oracle syntax.

#### --icu-short-form

Include the `--icu-short-form` keywords to create a cluster that uses a default ICU (International Components for Unicode) collation for all databases in the cluster. For more information about Unicode collations, please refer to the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server Guide* available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

## 14.2.1 Performing a Graphical Installation on Windows

A graphical installation is a quick and easy way to install Advanced Server 13 on a Windows system. Use the wizard's dialogs to specify information about your system and system usage; when you have completed the dialogs, the installer performs an installation based on the selections made during the setup process.

To invoke the wizard, you must have administrator privileges. Assume administrator privileges, and double-click the `edb-as13-server-13.x.x-x-windows-x64` executable file.

**Note:** To install Advanced Server on some versions of Windows, you may be required to right click on the file icon and select `Run as Administrator` from the context menu to invoke the installer with `Administrator` privileges.



Fig. 1: The Advanced Server installer Welcome window

Click **Next** to continue.

The EnterpriseDB **License Agreement** opens.

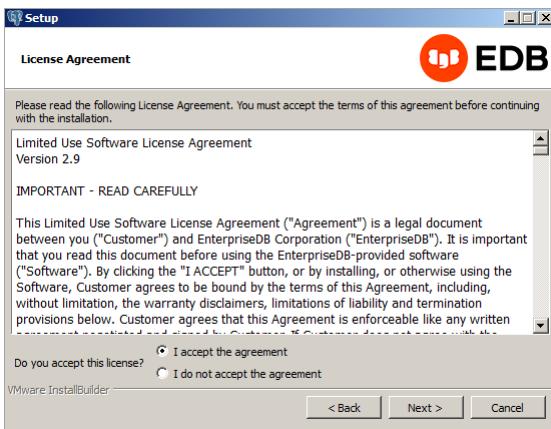


Fig. 2: The EnterpriseDB License Agreement

Carefully review the license agreement before highlighting the appropriate radio button; click **Next** to continue.

The **Installation Directory** window opens.

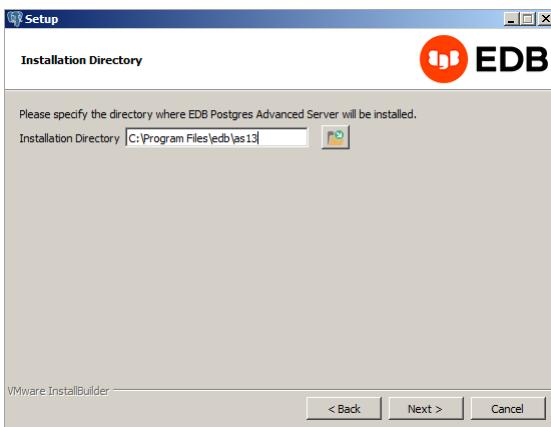


Fig. 3: The Installation Directory window

By default, the Advanced Server installation directory is:

C:\Program Files\edb\as13

You can accept the default installation location, and click **Next** to continue, or optionally click the **File Browser**

icon to open the **Browse For Folder** dialog to choose an alternate installation directory.

**Note:** The **data** directory of a production database should not be stored on an NFS file system.

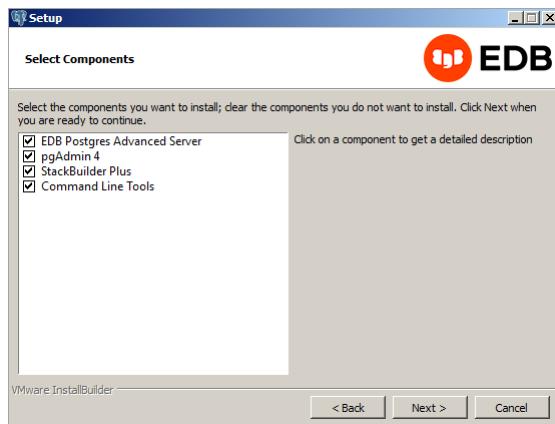


Fig. 4: The *Select Components* window

The **Select Components** window contains a list of optional components that you can install with the Advanced Server **Setup** wizard. You can omit a module from the Advanced Server installation by deselecting the box next to the components name.

The **Setup** wizard can install the following components while installing Advanced Server 13:

#### **EDB Postgres Advanced Server**

Select the **EDB Postgres Advanced Server** option to install Advanced Server 13.

#### **pgAdmin 4**

Select the **pgAdmin 4** option to install the pgAdmin 4 client. pgAdmin 4 provides a powerful graphical interface for database management and monitoring.

#### **StackBuilder Plus**

The **StackBuilder Plus** utility is a graphical tool that can update installed products, or download and add supporting modules (and the resulting dependencies) after your Advanced Server setup and installation completes. See [Using StackBuilder Plus](#) for more information about StackBuilder Plus.

#### **Command Line Tools**

The **Command Line Tools** option installs command line tools and supporting client libraries including:

- libpq
- psql
- EDB\*Loader
- ecpgPlus
- pg\_basebackup, pg\_dump, and pg\_restore
- pg\_bench
- and more.

**Note:** The **Command Line Tools** are required if you are installing Advanced Server or pgAdmin 4.

After selecting the components you wish to install, click **Next** to open the **Additional Directories** window.

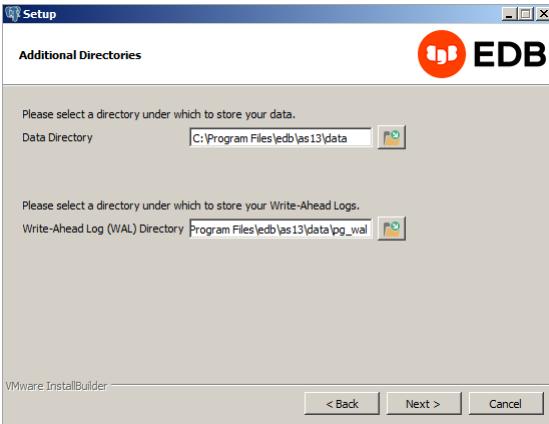


Fig. 5: The Additional Directories window

By default, the Advanced Server **data** files are saved to:

C:\Program Files\edb\as13\data

The default location of the Advanced Server **Write-Ahead Log (WAL) Directory** is:

C:\Program Files\edb\as13\data\pg\_wal

Advanced Server uses write-ahead logs to promote transaction safety and speed transaction processing; when you make a change to a table, the change is stored in shared memory and a record of the change is written to the write-ahead log. When you perform a **COMMIT**, Advanced Server writes contents of the write-ahead log to disk.

Accept the default file locations, or use the **File Browser** icon to select an alternate location; click **Next** to continue to the **Advanced Server Dialect** window.

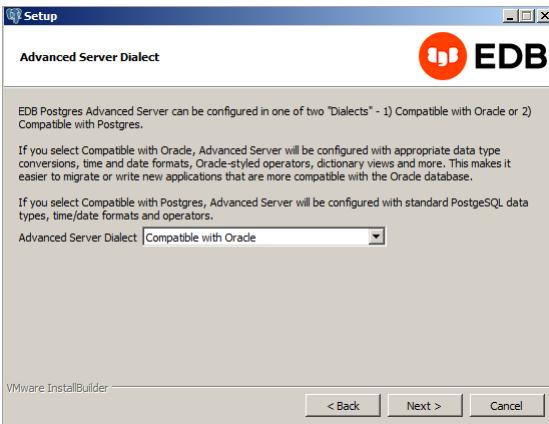


Fig. 6: The Advanced Server Dialect window

Use the drop-down listbox on the **Advanced Server Dialect** window to choose a server dialect. The server dialect specifies the compatibility features supported by Advanced Server.

By default, Advanced Server installs in **Compatible with Oracle** mode; you can choose between **Compatible with Oracle** and **Compatible with PostgreSQL** installation modes.

### **Compatible with Oracle**

If you select **Compatible with Oracle**, the installation will include the following features:

- Data dictionary views that are compatible with Oracle databases.
- Oracle data type conversions.
- Date values displayed in a format compatible with Oracle syntax.
- Support for Oracle-styled concatenation rules (if you concatenate a string value with a **NULL** value, the

returned value is the value of the string).

- Schemas (`dbo` and `sys`) compatible with Oracle databases added to the `SEARCH_PATH`.
- Support for the following Oracle built-in packages:

Package	Functionality compatible with Oracle Databases
<code>dbms_alert</code>	Provides the capability to register for, send, and receive alerts.
<code>dbms_job</code>	Provides the capability for the creation, scheduling, and managing of jobs.
<code>dbms_lob</code>	Provides the capability to manage on large objects.
<code>dbms_output</code>	Provides the capability to send messages to a message buffer, or get messages from the message buffer.
<code>dbms_pipe</code>	Provides the capability to send messages through a pipe within or between sessions connected to the same database cluster.
<code>dbms_rls</code>	Enables the implementation of Virtual Private Database on certain Advanced Server database objects.
<code>dbms_sql</code>	Provides an application interface to the EDB dynamic SQL functionality.
<code>dbms_utility</code>	Provides various utility programs.
<code>dbms_aqadm</code>	Provides supporting procedures for Advanced Queueing functionality.
<code>dbms_aq</code>	Provides message queueing and processing for Advanced Server.
<code>dbms_profiler</code>	Collects and stores performance information about the PL/pgSQL and SPL statements that are executed during a performance profiling session.
<code>dbms_random</code>	Provides a number of methods to generate random values.
<code>dbms_redact</code>	Enables the redacting or masking of data that is returned by a query.
<code>dbms_lock</code>	Provides support for the <code>DBMS_LOCK.SLEEP</code> procedure.
<code>dbms_scheduler</code>	Provides a way to create and manage jobs, programs, and job schedules.
<code>dbms_crypto</code>	Provides functions and procedures to encrypt or decrypt RAW, BLOB or CLOB data. You can also use <code>DBMS_CRYPTO</code> functions to generate cryptographically strong random values.
<code>dbms_mview</code>	Provides a way to manage and refresh materialized views and their dependencies.
<code>dbms_session</code>	Provides support for the <code>DBMS_SESSION.SET_ROLE</code> procedure.
<code>util_encode</code>	Provides a way to encode and decode data.
<code>util_http</code>	Provides a way to use the HTTP or HTTPS protocol to retrieve information found at an URL.
<code>util_file</code>	Provides the capability to read from, and write to files on the operating system's file system.
<code>util_smtp</code>	Provides the capability to send e-mails over the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP).
<code>util_mail</code>	Provides the capability to manage e-mail.
<code>util_url</code>	Provides a way to escape illegal and reserved characters within an URL.
<code>util_raw</code>	Provides a way to manipulate or retrieve the length of raw data types.

This is not a comprehensive list of the compatibility features for Oracle included when Advanced Server is installed in `Compatible with Oracle` mode; for more information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Guide* available from the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

If you choose to install in `Compatible with Oracle` mode, the Advanced Server superuser name is `enterprisedb`.

## Compatible with PostgreSQL

If you select `Compatible with PostgreSQL`, Advanced Server will exhibit compatibility with PostgreSQL version 13. If you choose to install in `Compatible with PostgreSQL` mode, the default Advanced Server superuser name is `postgres`.

For detailed information about PostgreSQL functionality, visit the official PostgreSQL website at:

<http://www.postgresql.org>

After specifying a configuration mode, click **Next** to continue to the **Password** window.

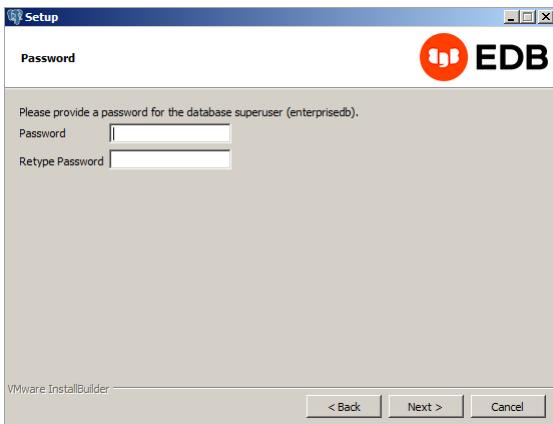


Fig. 7: The **Password** window

Advanced Server uses the password specified on the **Password** window for the database superuser. The specified password must conform to any security policies existing on the Advanced Server host.

After you enter a password in the **Password** field, confirm the password in the **Retype Password** field, and click **Next** to continue.

The **Additional Configuration** window opens.

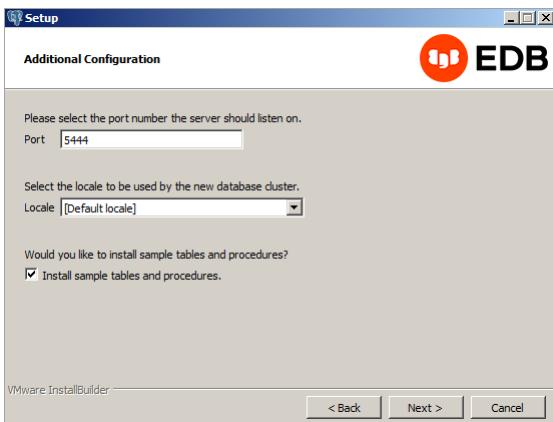


Fig. 8: The **Additional Configuration** window

Use the fields on the **Additional Configuration** window to specify installation details:

- Use the **Port** field to specify the port number that Advanced Server should listen to for connection requests from client applications. The default is **5444**.
- If the **Locale** field is set to **[Default locale]**, Advanced Server uses the system locale as the working locale. Use the drop-down listbox next to **Locale** to specify an alternate locale for Advanced Server.
- By default, the **Setup** wizard installs corresponding sample data for the server dialect specified by the compatibility mode (**Oracle** or **PostgreSQL**). Clear the check box next to **Install sample tables and procedures** if you do not wish to have sample data installed.

After verifying the information on the **Additional Configuration** window, click **Next** to open the **Dynatune Dynamic Tuning: Server Utilization** window.

The graphical **Setup** wizard facilitates performance tuning via the Dynatune Dynamic Tuning feature. Dynatune functionality allows Advanced Server to make optimal usage of the system resources available on the host machine on which it is installed.

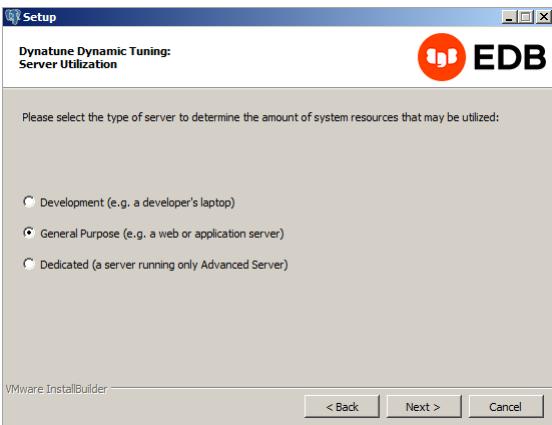


Fig. 9: The Dynatune Dynamic Tuning: Server Utilization window

The `edb_dynatune` configuration parameter determines how Advanced Server allocates system resources. Use the radio buttons on the `Server Utilization` window to set the initial value of the `edb_dynatune` configuration parameter:

- Select `Development` to set the value of `edb_dynatune` to `33`. A low value dedicates the least amount of the host machine's resources to the database server. This is a good choice for a development machine.
- Select `General Purpose` to set the value of `edb_dynatune` to `66`. A mid-range value dedicates a moderate amount of system resources to the database server. This would be a good setting for an application server with a fixed number of applications running on the same host as Advanced Server.
- Select `Dedicated` to set the value of `edb_dynatune` to `100`. A high value dedicates most of the system resources to the database server. This is a good choice for a dedicated server host.

After the installation is complete, you can adjust the value of `edb_dynatune` by editing the `postgresql.conf` file, located in the `data` directory of your Advanced Server installation. After editing the `postgresql.conf` file, you must restart the server for your changes to take effect.

Select the appropriate setting for your system, and click `Next` to continue to the `Dynatune Dynamic Tuning: Workload Profile` window.

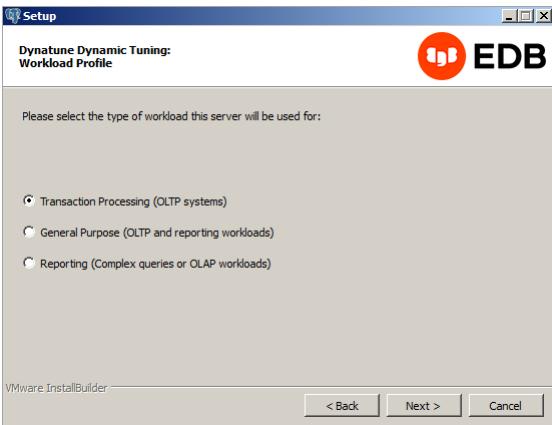


Fig. 10: The Dynatune Dynamic Tuning: Workload Profile window

Use the radio buttons on the `Workload Profile` window to specify the initial value of the `edb_dynatune_profile` configuration parameter. The `edb_dynatune_profile` parameter controls performance-tuning aspects based on the type of work that the server performs.

- Select `Transaction Processing (OLTP systems)` to specify an `edb_dynatune_profile` value of `oltp`. Recommended when Advanced Server is supporting heavy online transaction processing.
- Select `General Purpose (OLTP and reporting workloads)` to specify an `edb_dynatune_profile` value of `mixed`. Recommended for servers that provide a mix of transaction processing and data reporting.
- Select `Reporting (Complex queries or OLAP workloads)` to specify an `edb_dynatune_profile` value of `reporting`. Recommended for database servers used for heavy data reporting.

After the installation is complete, you can adjust the value of `edb_dynatune_profile` by editing the `postgresql.conf` file, located in the `data` directory of your Advanced Server installation. After editing the `postgresql.conf` file, you must restart the server for your changes to take effect.

For more information about `edb_dynatune` and other performance-related topics, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server Guide* available from the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

Click **Next** to continue.

By default, Advanced Server is configured to start the service when the system boots. The **Pre Installation Summary** opens.

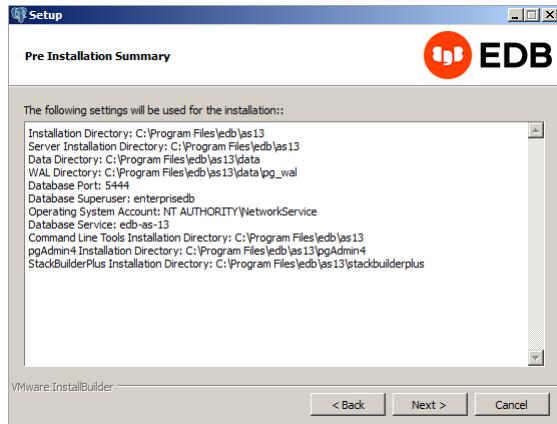


Fig. 11: *The Pre Installation Summary*

The **Pre Installation Summary** provides an overview of the options specified during the **Setup** process. Review the options before clicking **Next**; click **Back** to navigate back through the dialogs and update any options.

The **Ready to Install** window confirms that the installer has the information it needs about your configuration preferences to install Advanced Server. Click **Next** to continue.

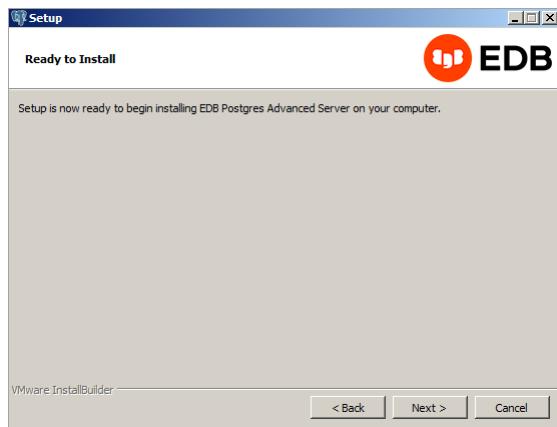


Fig. 12: *The Ready to Install window*

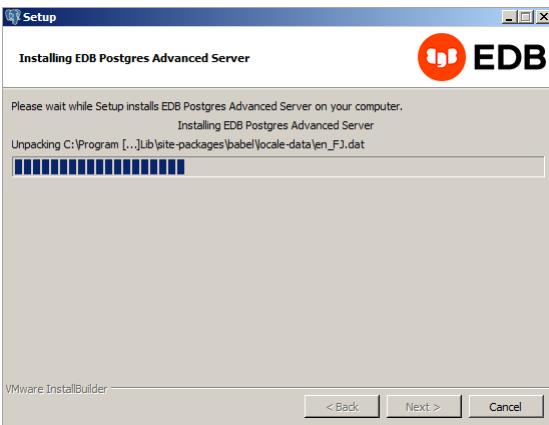


Fig. 13: *Installing Advanced Server*

As each supporting module is unpacked and installed, the module's installation is confirmed with a progress bar.

Before the **Setup** wizard completes the Advanced Server installation, it offers to **Launch StackBuilder Plus at exit?**

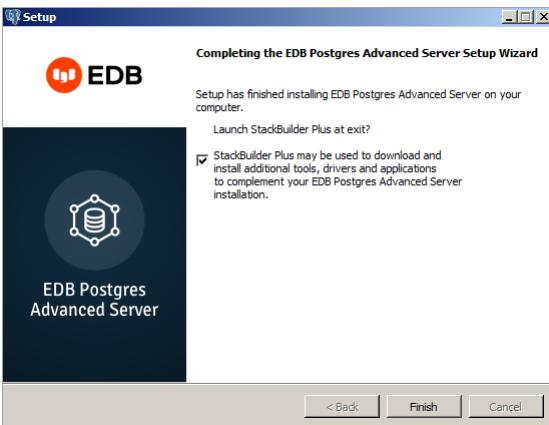


Fig. 14: *The Setup wizard offers to Launch StackBuilder Plus at exit*

You can clear the **StackBuilder Plus** check box and click **Finish** to complete the Advanced Server installation, or accept the default and proceed to StackBuilder Plus.

EDB Postgres StackBuilder Plus is included with the installation of Advanced Server and its core supporting components. StackBuilder Plus is a graphical tool that can update installed products, or download and add supporting modules (and the resulting dependencies) after your Advanced Server setup and installation completes. See [Using StackBuilder Plus](#) for more information about StackBuilder Plus.

## 14.2.2 Invoking the Graphical Installer from the Command Line

The command line options of the Advanced Server installer offer functionality for Windows systems that reside in situations where a graphical installation may not work because of limited resources or privileges. You can:

- Include the **--mode unattended** option when invoking the installer to perform an installation without user input.
- Invoke the installer with the **--extract-only** option to perform a minimal installation when you don't hold the privileges required to perform a complete installation.

Not all command line options are suitable for all situations. For a complete reference guide to the command line options, see [Reference - Command Line Options](#).

**Note:** If you are invoking the installer from the command line to perform a system upgrade, the installer will ignore command line options, and preserve the configuration of the previous installation.

---

### 14.2.2.1 Performing an Unattended Installation

To specify that the installer should run without user interaction, include the `--mode unattended` command line option. In unattended mode, the installer uses one of the following sources for configuration parameters:

- command line options (specified when invoking the installer)
- parameters specified in an option file
- Advanced Server installation defaults

You can embed the non-interactive Advanced Server installer within another application installer; during the installation process, a progress bar allows the user to view the progression of the installation.

You must have administrative privileges to install Advanced Server using the `--mode unattended` option. If you are using the `--mode unattended` option to install Advanced Server with a client, the calling client must be invoked with superuser or administrative privileges.

To start the installer in unattended mode, navigate to the directory that contains the executable file, and enter:

```
edb-as13-server-13.x.x-x-windows-x64.exe --mode unattended --superpassword
database_superuser_password --servicepassword system_password
```

When invoking the installer, include the `--servicepassword` option to specify an operating system password for the user installing Advanced Server.

Use the `--superpassword` option to specify a password that conforms to the password security policies defined on the host; enforced password policies on your system may not accept the default password (`enterprisedb`).

---

### 14.2.2.2 Performing an Installation with Limited Privileges

To perform an abbreviated installation of Advanced Server without access to administrative privileges, invoke the installer from the command line and include the `--extract-only` option. The `--extract-only` option extracts the binary files in an unaltered form, allowing you to experiment with a minimal installation of Advanced Server.

If you invoke the installer with the `--extract-only` options, you can either manually create a cluster and start the service, or run the installation script. To manually create the cluster, you must:

- Use `initdb` to initialize the cluster
- Configure the cluster
- Use `pg_ctl` to start the service

For more information about the `initdb` and `pg_ctl` commands, see the PostgreSQL Core Documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/app-initdb.html>

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/app-pg-ctl.html>

If you include the `--extract-only` option, the installer steps through a shortened form of the `Setup` wizard. During

the brief installation process, the installer generates an installation script that can be later used to complete a more complete installation. You must have administrative privileges to invoke the installation script.

The installation script:

- Initializes the database cluster if the cluster is empty.
- Configures the server to start at boot-time.
- Establishes initial values for Dynatune (dynamic tuning) variables.

The scripted Advanced Server installation does not create menu shortcuts or provide access to EDB Postgres StackBuilder Plus, and no modifications are made to registry files.

To perform a limited installation and generate an installation script, download and unpack the Advanced Server installer. Navigate into the directory that contains the installer, and invoke the installer with the command:

```
edb-as13-server-13.x.x-x-windows.exe --extract-only yes
```

A dialog opens, prompting you to choose an installation language. Select a language for the installation from the drop-down listbox, and click **OK** to continue. The **Setup Wizard** opens.



Fig. 15: *The Welcome window*

Click **Next** to continue.

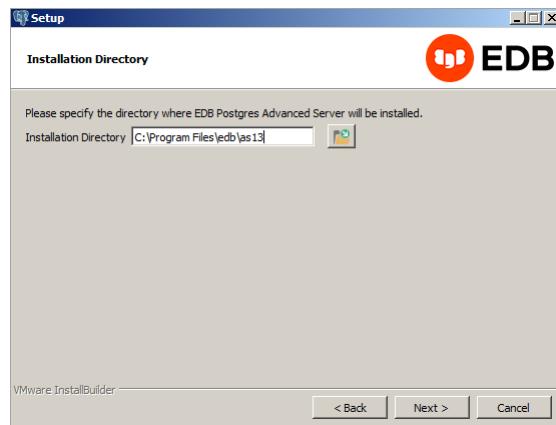


Fig. 16: *Specify an installation directory*

On Windows, the default Advanced Server installation directory is:

```
C:\Program Files\edb\as13
```

You can accept the default installation location and click **Next** to continue to the **Ready to Install** window, or optionally click the **File Browser** icon to choose an alternate installation directory.

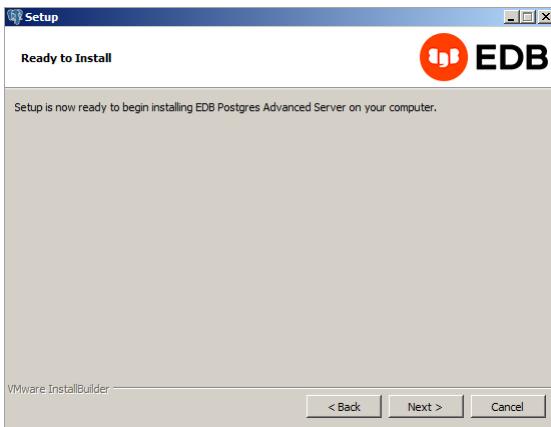


Fig. 17: *The Setup wizard is ready to install Advanced Server*

Click **Next** to proceed with the Advanced Server installation. During the installation, progress bars and popups mark the installation progress. The installer notifies you when the installation is complete.

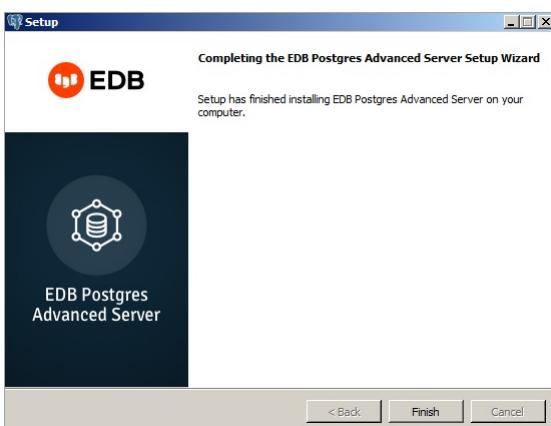


Fig. 18: *The Advanced Server installation is complete*

After completing the minimal installation, you can execute a script to initialize a cluster and start the service. The script is (by default) located in:

```
C:\Program Files\edb
```

### 14.2.2.3 Reference - Command Line Options

You can optionally include the following parameters for an Advanced Server installation on the command line, or in a configuration file when invoking the Advanced Server installer.

```
--create_samples { yes | no }
```

Use the `--create_samples` option to specify whether the installer should create the sample tables and procedures for the database dialect specified with the `--databasemode` parameter. The default is `yes`.

```
--databasemode { oracle | postgresql }
```

Use the `--databasemode` parameter to specify a database dialect. The default is `oracle`.

```
--datadir data_directory
```

Use the `--datadir` parameter to specify a location for the cluster's data directory. `data_directory` is the name of the directory; include the complete path to the desired directory.

`--debuglevel { 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 }`

Use the `--debuglevel` parameter to set the level of detail written to the `debug_log` file (see `--debugtrace`). Higher values produce more detail in a longer trace file. The default is `2`.

`--debugtrace debug_log`

Use the `--debugtrace` parameter to troubleshoot installation problems. `debug_log` is the name of the file that contains troubleshooting details.

`--disable-components component_list`

Use the `--disable-components` parameter to specify a list of Advanced Server components to exclude from the installation. By default, `component_list` contains "" (the empty string). `component_list` is a comma-separated list containing one or more of the following components:

`dbserver`

EDB Postgres Advanced Server 13.

`pgadmin4`

The EDB Postgres pgAdmin 4 provides a powerful graphical interface for database management and monitoring.

`--enable_acledit { 1 | 0 }`

The `--enable_acledit 1` option instructs the installer to grant permission to the user specified by the `--serviceaccount` option to access the Advanced Server binaries and `data` directory. By default, this option is disabled if `--enable_acledit 0` is specified or if the `--enable_acledit` option is completely omitted.

**Note:** Specification of this option is valid only when installing on Windows. The `--enable_acledit 1` option should be specified when a `discretionary access control list` (DACL) needs to be set for allowing access to objects on which Advanced Server is to be installed. See the following for information on a DACL:

[https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa446597\(v=vs.85\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa446597(v=vs.85).aspx)

In order to perform future operations such as upgrading Advanced Server, access to the `data` directory must exist for the service account user specified by the `--serviceaccount` option. By specifying the `--enable_acledit 1` option, access to the `data` directory by the service account user is provided.

`--enable-components component_list`

Although this option is listed when you run the installer with the `--help` option, the `--enable-components` parameter has absolutely no effect on which components are installed. All components will be installed regardless of what is specified in `component_list`. In order to install only specific selected components, you must use the `--disable-components` parameter previously described in this section to list the components you do not want to install.

`--extract-only { yes | no }`

Include the `--extract-only` parameter to indicate that the installer should extract the Advanced Server binaries without performing a complete installation. Superuser privileges are not required for the `--extract-only` option. The default value is `no`.

`--help`

Include the `--help` parameter to view a list of the optional parameters.

`--installer-language { en | ja | zh_CN | zh_TW | ko }`

Use the `--installer-language` parameter to specify an installation language for Advanced Server. The default is `en`.

`en` specifies English.

`ja` specifies Japanese

`zh_CN` specifies Chinese Simplified.

`zh_TW` specifies Traditional Chinese.

`ko` specifies Korean.

#### --install\_runtimes { yes | no }

Include `--install_runtimes` to specify whether the installer should install the Microsoft Visual C++ runtime libraries. Default is `yes`.

#### --locale locale

Specifies the locale for the Advanced Server cluster. By default, the installer will use the locale detected by `initdb`.

#### --mode { unattended }

Use the `--mode unattended` parameter to specify that the installer should perform an installation that requires no user input during the installation process.

#### --optionfile config\_file

Use the `--optionfile` parameter to specify the name of a file that contains the installation configuration parameters. `config_file` must specify the complete path to the configuration parameter file.

#### --prefix installation\_dir/as13

Use the `--prefix` parameter to specify an installation directory for Advanced Server. The installer will append a version-specific sub-directory (that is, `as13`) to the specified directory. The default installation directory is:

```
C:\Program Files\edb\as13
```

#### --serverport port\_number

Use the `--serverport` parameter to specify a listener port number for Advanced Server.

If you are installing Advanced Server in unattended mode, and do not specify a value using the `--serverport` parameter, the installer will use port `5444`, or the first available port after port `5444` as the default listener port.

#### --server\_utilization {33 | 66 | 100}

Use the `--server_utilization` parameter to specify a value for the `edb_dynatune` configuration parameter. The `edb_dynatune` configuration parameter determines how Advanced Server allocates system resources.

- A value of `33` is appropriate for a system used for development. A low value dedicates the least amount of the host machine's resources to the database server.
- A value of `66` is appropriate for an application server with a fixed number of applications. A mid-range value dedicates a moderate amount of system resources to the database server. The default value is `66`.
- A value of `100` is appropriate for a host machine that is dedicated to running Advanced Server. A high value dedicates most of the system resources to the database server.

When the installation is complete, you can adjust the value of `edb_dynatune` by editing the `postgresql.conf` file, located in the `data` directory of your Advanced Server installation. After editing the `postgresql.conf` file, you must restart the server for the changes to take effect.

#### --serviceaccount user\_account\_name

Use the `--serviceaccount` parameter to specify the name of the user account that owns the server process.

- If `--databasemode` is set to `oracle` (the default), the default value of `--serviceaccount` is `enterprisedb`.
- If `--databasemode` is `postgresql`, the default value of `--serviceaccount` is set to `postgres`.

Please note that for security reasons, the `--serviceaccount` parameter must specify the name of an account that does not hold administrator privileges.

If you specify both the `--serviceaccount` option and the `--enable_acledit 1` option when invoking the installer, the database service and pgAgent will use the same service account, thereby having the required permissions to access the Advanced Server binaries and `data` directory.

**Note:** If you do not include the `--serviceaccount` option when invoking the installer, the `NetworkService` account will own the database service, and the pgAgent service will be owned by either `enterprisedb` or `postgres` (depending on the installation mode).

#### `--servicename service_name`

Use the `--servicename` parameter to specify the name of the Advanced Server service. The default is `edb-as-13`.

#### `--servicepassword user_password`

Use `--servicepassword` to specify the OS system password. If unspecified, the value of `--servicepassword` defaults to the value of `--superpassword`.

#### `--superaccount super_user_name`

Use the `--superaccount` parameter to specify the user name of the database superuser.

- If `--databasemode` is set to `oracle` (the default), the default value of `--superaccount` is `enterprisedb`.
- If `--databasemode` is set to `postgresql`, the default value of `--superaccount` is set to `postgres`.

#### `--superpassword superuser_password`

Use `--superpassword` to specify the database superuser password. If you are installing in non-interactive mode, `--superpassword` defaults to `enterprisedb`.

#### `--unattendedmodeui { none | minimal | minimalWithDialogs }`

Use the `--unattendedmodeui` parameter to specify installer behavior during an unattended installation.

Include `--unattendedmodeui none` to specify that the installer should not display progress bars during the Advanced Server installation.

Include `--unattendedmodeui minimal` to specify that the installer should display progress bars during the installation process. This is the default behavior.

Include `--unattendedmodeui minimalWithDialogs` to specify that the installer should display progress bars and report any errors encountered during the installation process (in additional dialogs).

#### `--version`

Include the `--version` parameter to retrieve version information about the installer:

```
EDB Postgres Advanced Server 13.0.3-1 --- Built on 2020-10-23 00:12:44 IB: 20.6.0-202008110127
```

#### `--workload_profile {oltp | mixed | reporting}`

Use the `--workload_profile` parameter to specify an initial value for the `edb_dynatune_profile` configuration parameter. `edb_dynatune_profile` controls aspects of performance-tuning based on the type of work that the server performs.

- Specify `oltp` if the Advanced Server installation will be used to support heavy online transaction processing workloads.
- The default value is `oltp`.
- Specify `mixed` if Advanced Server will provide a mix of transaction processing and data reporting.
- Specify `reporting` if Advanced Server will be used for heavy data reporting.

After the installation is complete, you can adjust the value of `edb_dynamite_profile` by editing the `postgresql.conf` file, located in the `data` directory of your Advanced Server installation. After editing the `postgresql.conf` file, you must restart the server for the changes to take effect.

For more information about `edb_dynamite` and other performance-related topics, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server Guide* available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

### 14.2.3 Using StackBuilder Plus

The StackBuilder Plus utility provides a graphical interface that simplifies the process of updating, downloading, and installing modules that complement your Advanced Server installation. When you install a module with StackBuilder Plus, StackBuilder Plus automatically resolves any software dependencies.

You can invoke StackBuilder Plus at any time after the installation has completed by selecting the `StackBuilder Plus` menu option from the `Apps` menu. Enter your system password (if prompted), and the StackBuilder Plus welcome window opens.



Fig. 19: The StackBuilder Plus welcome window

Use the drop-down listbox on the welcome window to select your Advanced Server installation.

StackBuilder Plus requires Internet access; if your installation of Advanced Server resides behind a firewall (with restricted Internet access), StackBuilder Plus can download program installers through a proxy server. The module provider determines if the module can be accessed through an HTTP proxy or an FTP proxy; currently, all updates are transferred via an HTTP proxy and the FTP proxy information is not used.

If the selected Advanced Server installation has restricted Internet access, use the `Proxy Servers` on the `Welcome` window to open the `Proxy servers` dialog.



Fig. 20: The Proxy Servers dialog

Enter the IP address and port number of the proxy server in the **HTTP proxy** on the **Proxy Servers** dialog. Currently, all StackBuilder Plus modules are distributed via HTTP proxy (FTP proxy information is ignored). Click **OK** to continue.

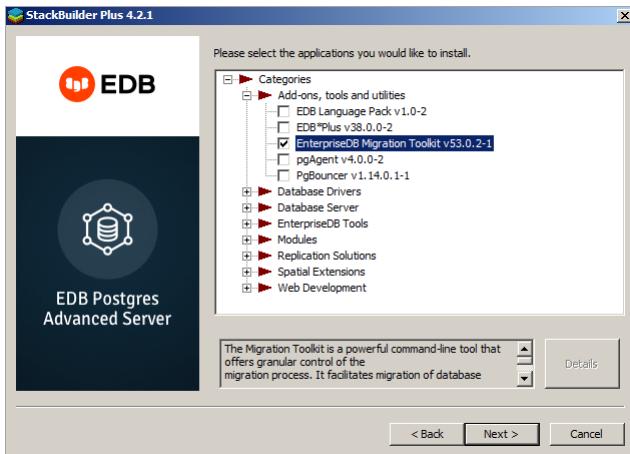


Fig. 21: The StackBuilder Plus module selection window

The tree control on the StackBuilder Plus module selection window displays a node for each module category.

Expand a module, and highlight a component name in the tree control to review a detailed description of the component. To add one or more components to the installation or to upgrade a component, check the box to the left of a module name and click **Next**.

StackBuilder Plus confirms the packages selected.

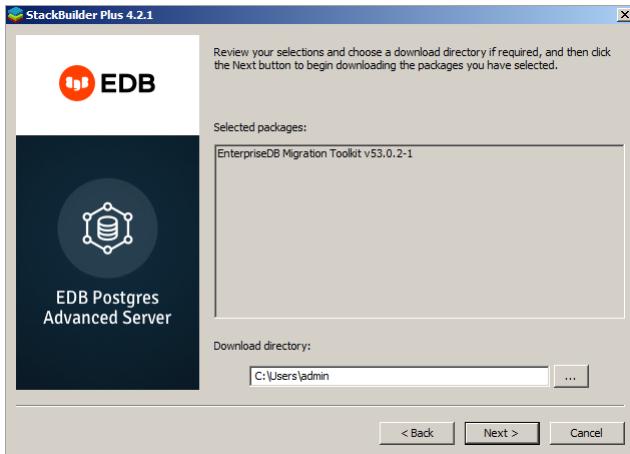


Fig. 22: A summary window displays a list of selected packages

Use the browse icon (...) to the right of the **Download directory** field to open a file selector, and choose an alternate location to store the downloaded installers. Click **Next** to connect to the server and download the required installation files.

When the download completes, a window opens that confirms the installation files have been downloaded and are ready for installation.



Fig. 23: Confirmation that the download process is complete

You can check the box next to **Skip Installation**, and select **Next** to exit StackBuilder Plus without installing the downloaded files, or leave the box unchecked and click **Next** to start the installation process.

Each downloaded installer has different requirements. As the installers execute, they may prompt you to confirm acceptance of license agreements, to enter passwords, and provide configuration information.

During the installation process, you may be prompted by one (or more) of the installers to restart your system. Select **No** or **Restart Later** until all installations are completed. When the last installation has completed, reboot the system to apply all of the updates.

You may occasionally encounter packages that don't install successfully. If a package fails to install, StackBuilder Plus will alert you to the installation error with a popup dialog, and write a message to the log file at **%TEMP%**.

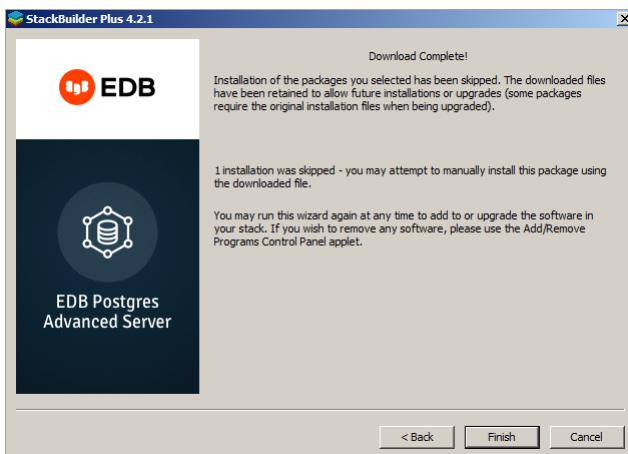


Fig. 24: StackBuilder Plus confirms the completed installation

When the installation is complete, StackBuilder Plus will alert you to the success or failure of the installations of the requested packages. If you were prompted by an installer to restart your computer, reboot now.

## 14.2.4 Installation Troubleshooting

### Difficulty Displaying Java-based Applications

If you encounter difficulty displaying Java-based server features (controls or text not being displayed correctly, or blank windows), upgrading to the latest **libxcb-xlib** libraries should correct the problem on most distributions.

Please visit the following link for other possible work-arounds:

[http://bugs.sun.com/bugdatabase/view\\_bug.do?bug\\_id=6532373](http://bugs.sun.com/bugdatabase/view_bug.do?bug_id=6532373)

#### - --mode unattended Authentication Errors

Authentication errors from component modules during unattended installations may indicate that the specified values of `--servicepassword` or `--superpassword` may be incorrect.

#### Errors During an Advanced Server Installation

If you encounter an error during the installation process, exit the installation, and ensure that your version of Windows is up-to-date. After applying any outstanding operating system updates, re-invoke the Advanced Server installer.

#### The Installation Fails to Complete Due to Existing Data Directory Contents

If an installation fails to complete due to existing content in the data directory, the server will write an error message to the server logs:

A data directory is neither empty, or a recognisable data directory.

If you encounter a similar message, you should confirm that the data directory is empty; the presence of files (including the system-generated `lost+found` folder) will prevent the installation from completing. Either remove the files from the data directory, or specify a different location for the data directory before re-invoking the installer to complete the installation.

## 14.3 Connecting to Advanced Server with the pgAdmin 4 Client

pgAdmin 4 provides an interactive graphical interface that you can use to manage your database and database objects. Easy-to-use dialogs and online help simplify tasks such as object creation, role management, and granting or revoking privileges. The tabbed browser panel provides quick access to information about the object currently selected in the pgAdmin tree control.

The client is distributed with the graphical installer. To open pgAdmin, select pgAdmin4 from the EDB Postgres menu. The client opens in your default browser.

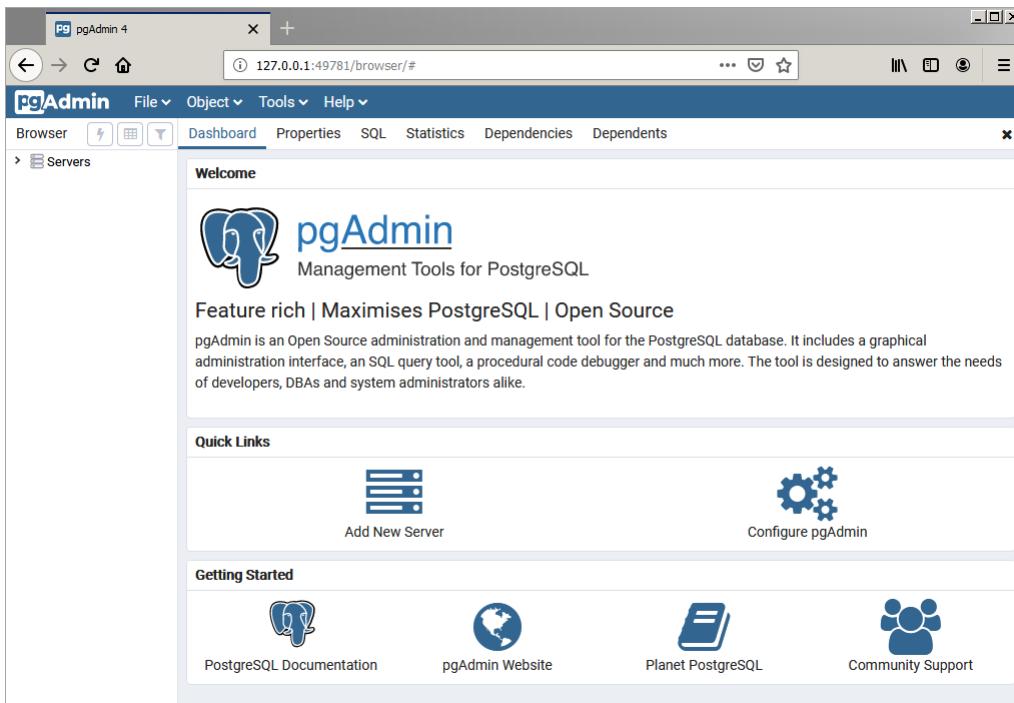


Fig. 1: The pgAdmin 4 client Dashboard

To connect to the Advanced Server database server, expand the **Servers** node of the **Browser** tree control, and right click on the **EDB Postgres Advanced Server** node. When the context menu opens, select **Connect Server**. The **Connect to Server** dialog opens.

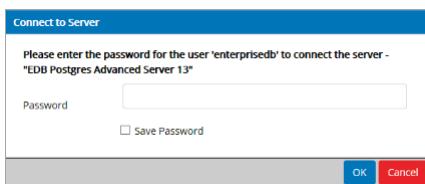


Fig. 2: The Connect to Server dialog

Provide the password associated with the database superuser in the **Password** field, and click **OK** to connect.

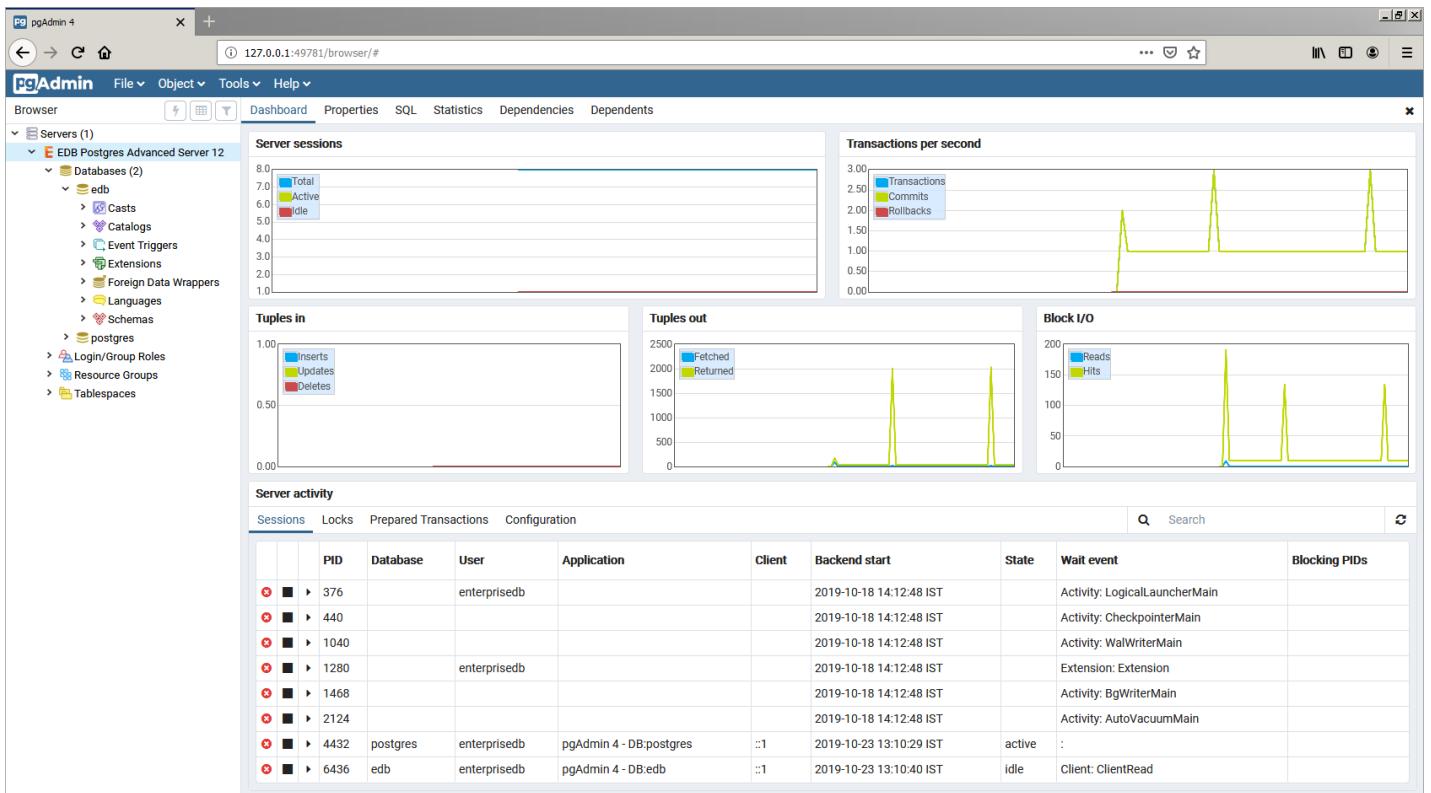


Fig. 3: Connecting to an Advanced Server database

When the client connects, you can use the **Browser** tree control to retrieve information about existing database objects, or to create new objects. For more information about using the pgAdmin client, use the **Help** drop-down menu to access the online help files.

## 14.4 Managing an Advanced Server Installation

Unless otherwise noted, the commands and paths noted in the following section assume that you have performed an installation with the interactive installer.

### Starting and Stopping Advanced Server and Supporting Components

A service is a program that runs in the background and requires no user interaction (in fact, a service provides no user interface); a service can be configured to start at boot time, or manually on demand. Services are best controlled using the platform-specific operating system service control utility. Many of the Advanced Server supporting components are services.

The following table lists the names of the services that control Advanced Server and services that control Advanced Server supporting components:

Advanced Server Component Name	Windows Service Name
Advanced Server	edb-as-13
pgAgent	EDB Postgres Advanced Server 13 Scheduling Agent
PgBouncer	edb-pgbouncer-1.14

Advanced Server Component Name	Windows Service Name
Slony	edb-slony-replication-13

You can use the command line or the Windows Services applet to control Advanced Server's database server and the services of Advanced Server's supporting components on a Windows host.

## 14.4.1 Using the Windows Services Applet

The Windows operating system includes a graphical service controller that offers control of Advanced Server and the services associated with Advanced Server components. The **Services** utility can be accessed through the **Administrative Tools** section of the Windows **Control Panel**.

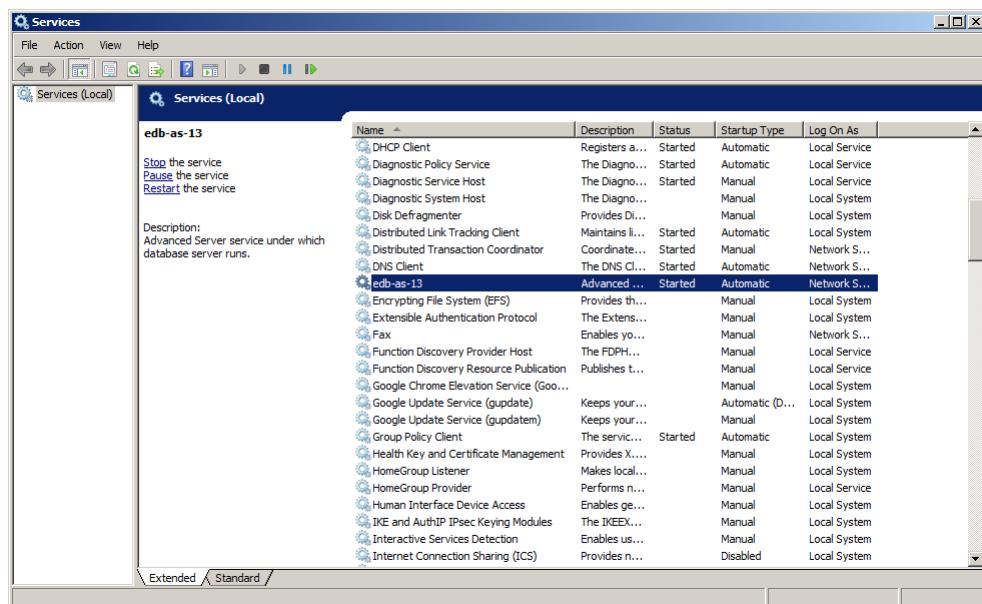


Fig. 1: The Advanced Server service in the Windows Services window

The **Services** window displays an alphabetized list of services; the **edb-as-13** service controls Advanced Server.

- Use the **Stop the service** option to stop the instance of Advanced Server. Please note that any user (or client application) connected to the Advanced Server instance will be abruptly disconnected if you stop the service.
- Use the **Start the service** option to start the Advanced Server service.
- Use the **Pause the service** option to tell Advanced Server to reload the server configuration parameters without disrupting user sessions for many of the configuration parameters. See [Configuring Advanced Server](#) for more information about the parameters that can be updated with a server reload.
- Use the **Restart the service** option to stop and then start the Advanced Server. Please note that any user sessions will be terminated when you stop the service. This option is useful to reset server parameters that only take effect on server start.

## 14.4.2 Using pg\_ctl to Control Advanced Server

You can use the **pg\_ctl** utility to control an Advanced Server service from the command line on any platform.

`pg_ctl` allows you to start, stop, or restart the Advanced Server database server, reload the configuration parameters, or display the status of a running server. To invoke the utility, assume the identity of the cluster owner, navigate into the home directory of Advanced Server, and issue the command:

```
./bin/pg_ctl -D data_directory action
```

`data_directory`

`data_directory` is the location of the data controlled by the Advanced Server cluster.

`action`

`action` specifies the action taken by the `pg_ctl` utility. Specify:

- `start` to start the service.
- `stop` to stop the service.
- `restart` to stop and then start the service.
- `reload` sends the server a `SIGHUP` signal, reloading configuration parameters
- `status` to discover the current status of the service.

For more information about using the `pg_ctl` utility, or the command line options available, see the official PostgreSQL Core Documentation available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/app-pg-ctl.html>

#### 14.4.3 Controlling Server Startup Behavior on Windows

You can use the Windows Services utility to control the startup behavior of the server. Right click on the name of the service you wish to update, and select `Properties` from the context menu to open the `Properties` dialog.

Use the drop-down listbox in the `Startup type` field to specify how the Advanced Server service will behave when the host starts.

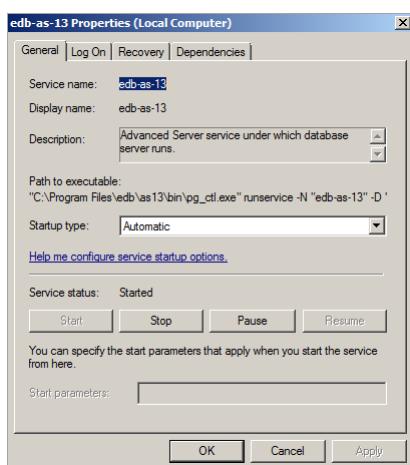


Fig. 2: Specifying Advanced Server's startup behavior

- Specify `Automatic (Delayed Start)` to instruct the service controller to start after boot.
- Specify `Automatic` to instruct the service controller to start and stop the server whenever the system starts or stops.
- Specify `Manual` to instruct the service controller that the server must be started manually.
- Specify `Disabled` to instruct the service controller to disable the service; after disabling the service, you must

stop the service or restart the server to make the change take effect. Once disabled, the server's status cannot be changed until **Startup type** is reset to **Automatic (Delayed Start)**, **Automatic**, or **Manual**.

## 14.5 Configuring Advanced Server

You can easily update parameters that determine the behavior of Advanced Server and supporting components by modifying the following configuration files:

- The **postgresql.conf** file determines the initial values of Advanced Server configuration parameters.
- The **pg\_hba.conf** file specifies your preferences for network authentication and authorization.
- The **pg\_ident.conf** file maps operating system identities (user names) to Advanced Server identities (roles) when using **ident**-based authentication.

For more information about Modifying the **postgresql.conf** file and Modifying the **pg\_hba.conf** file, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server Guide* available from the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

You can use your editor of choice to open a configuration file, or on Windows navigate through the **EDB Postgres** menu to open a file.

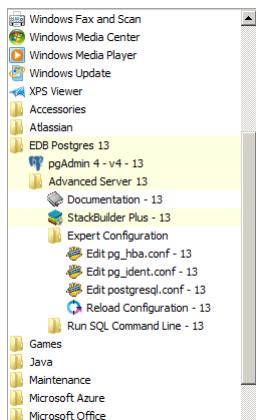


Fig. 1: Accessing the configuration files through the Windows system menu

### 14.5.1 Setting Advanced Server Environment Variables

The graphical installer provides a script that simplifies the task of setting environment variables for Windows users. The script sets the environment variables for your current shell session; when your shell session ends, the environment variables are destroyed. You may wish to invoke **pgplus\_env.bat** from your system-wide shell startup script, so that environment variables are automatically defined for each shell session.

The **pgplus\_env** script is created during the Advanced Server installation process and reflects the choices made during installation. To invoke the script, open a command line and enter:

```
C:\Program Files\edb\as13\pgplus_env.bat
```

As the `pgplus_env.bat` script executes, it sets the following environment variables:

```
PATH="C:\Program Files\edb\as13\bin";%PATH%
EDBHOME=C:\Program Files\edb\as13
PGDATA=C:\Program Files\edb\as13\data
PGDATABASE=edb
REM @SET PGUSER=enterprisedb
PGPORT=5444
PGLOCALEDIR=C:\Program Files\edb\as13\share\locale
```

If you have used an installer created by EDB to install PostgreSQL, the `pg_env` script performs the same function:

```
C:\Progra~1\PostgreSQL\13\pg_env.bat
```

As the `pg_env.bat` script executes on PostgreSQL, it sets the following environment variables:

```
PATH="C:\Program Files\PostgreSQL\13\bin";%PATH%
PGDATA=C:\Program Files\PostgreSQL\13\data
PGDATABASE=postgres
PGUSER=postgres
PGPORT=5432
PGLOCALEDIR=C:\Program Files\PostgreSQL\13\share\locale
```

## 14.5.2 Connecting to Advanced Server with `edb-psql`

`edb-psql` is a command line client application that allows you to execute SQL commands and view the results. To open the `edb-psql` client, the client must be in your search path. The executable resides in the `bin` directory, under your Advanced Server installation.

Use the following command and options to start the `edb-psql` client:

```
psql -d edb -U enterprisedb
```

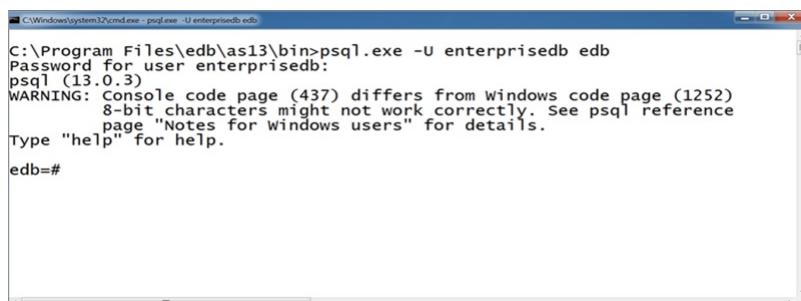


Fig. 2: Connecting to the server

Where:

- d specifies the database to which `edb-psql` will connect.

- U specifies the identity of the database user that will be used for the session.

If you have performed an installation with the interactive installer, you can access the `edb-psql` client by selecting `EDB-PSQL` from the `EDB Postgres` menu. When the client opens, provide connection information for your

session.

`edb-psql` is a symbolic link to PostgreSQL community `psql`. For more information about using the command line client, see the PostgreSQL Core Documentation at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/app-psql.html>

## 14.6 Uninstalling Advanced Server

Note that after uninstalling Advanced Server, the cluster data files remain intact and the service user persists. You may manually remove the cluster data and service user from the system.

### Using Advanced Server Uninstallers at the Command Line

The Advanced Server interactive installer creates an uninstaller that you can use to remove Advanced Server or components that reside on a Windows host. The uninstaller is created in `C:\Program Files\edb\as13`. To open the uninstaller, assume superuser privileges, navigate into the directory that contains the uninstaller, and enter:

```
uninstall-edb-as13-server.exe
```

The uninstaller opens.

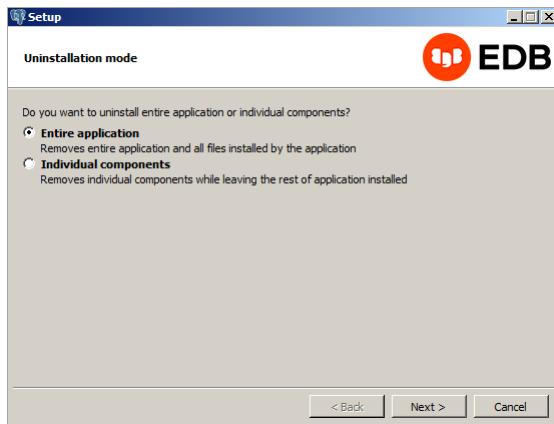


Fig. 1: The Advanced Server uninstaller

You can remove the `Entire application` (the default), or select the radio button next to `Individual components` to select components for removal; if you select `Individual components`, a dialog will open, prompting you to select the components you wish to remove. After making your selection, click `Next`.

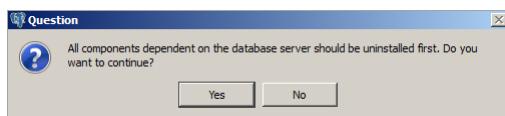


Fig. 2: Acknowledge that dependent components are removed first

If you have elected to remove components that are dependent on Advanced Server, those components will be removed first; click `Yes` to acknowledge that you wish to continue.

Progress bars are displayed as the software is removed. When the uninstallation is complete, an `Info` dialog opens to confirm that Advanced Server (and/or its components) has been removed.



Fig. 3: The uninstallation is complete

## 15 Quick Start Guide for Linux on CentOS or RHEL 7

Advanced Server adds extended functionality to the open-source PostgreSQL database that supports database administration, enhanced SQL capabilities, database and application security, performance monitoring and analysis, and application development utilities. Advanced Server also supports database compatibility features for Oracle users; for detailed information about compatibility features, [see the Advanced Server documentation](#).

This guide will walk you through using `yum` to install EDB Postgres Advanced Server on a RHEL or CentOS 7 system and deploying a database cluster. The database created by this tutorial is well-suited for experimentation and testing. There are additional security and resource considerations when configuring a production installation that are not covered by this document.

This guide assumes that you are familiar with simple operating system and system administration procedures, and have administrative privileges on the host on which Advanced Server will be installed.

Please note that if you are using the pdf version of this document, using cut/paste to copy a command may result in extra spaces or carriage returns in the pasted command. If a command fails, check the command carefully for extra characters.

### Components of an EDB Postgres Advanced Server Deployment

Among the components that make up an Advanced Server deployment are:

**The Database Server** - The database server (the `postmaster`) is the service that provides the key functionality that allows you to store and manage data. Advanced Server is built on the PostgreSQL open-source database project; it includes all of the documented features of community PostgreSQL and more.

**The Database Cluster** - A cluster is a set of on-disk structures that comprise a collection of databases. A cluster is serviced by a single-instance of the database server. A database cluster is stored in the `data` directory; please note that the `data` directory of a production database should not be stored on an NFS file system.

**Configuration Files** - You can use the parameters listed in Postgres configuration files to manage deployment preferences, security preferences, connection behaviors, and logging preferences.

**Supporting Tools, Utilities, and Clients** - EDB makes available a full suite of tools and utilities that can help you monitor and manage your Advanced Server deployment. For more information, visit the [EDB website](#).

**Supporting Functions, Procedures, Data Types, Index Types, Operators, Utilities, and Aggregates** - Advanced Server includes a number of features that help you manage your data.

### Prerequisites

Before installing Advanced Server, use `yum` to install prerequisite packages:

```
yum -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm
```

If you are installing Migration Toolkit or EDB\*Plus, you must first install Java:

```
yum -y install java
```

## Installing and Configuring Advanced Server

**Step 1:** You must register with EDB to receive credentials for the EDB repository. If you have not previously registered with EDB, visit the [EDB site for information about requesting credentials](#).

**Step 2:** Assume superuser privileges to install the EDB repository configuration package:

```
yum -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edbrepos/edb-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
```

**Step 3:** With your choice of editor, edit the `/etc/yum.repos.d/edb.repo` file, replacing the `username` and `password` placeholders in the baseurl specification with the name and password of a registered EDB user and ensure that the `gpgcheck` and `enabled` properties are set to `1`.

**Step 4:** Update the cache and install Advanced Server:

```
yum makecache
```

```
yum -y install edb-as13-server
```

**Step 5:** Use sudo to assume the identity of the `enterprisedb` database superuser and create an Advanced Server cluster named `acctg` on listener port `5444`:

```
sudo su - enterprisedb
```

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/initdb -D /var/lib/edb/as13/acctg
```

## Starting the Cluster

As the `enterprisedb` user, start the cluster:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/pg_ctl start -D /var/lib/edb/as13/acctg
```

You can check the status of the cluster with the command:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/pg_ctl status -D /var/lib/edb/as13/acctg
```

## Using the psql Command Line Client

After installing the server and initializing a cluster, you can connect to the database with your choice of client. For convenience, the server is deployed with the [pgAdmin 4 graphical client](#) and the [psql command line client](#).

As the `enterprisedb` user, open a psql session:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/psql -d edb -p 5444
```

Then, assign a password to the `enterprisedb` user:

```
ALTER ROLE enterprisedb IDENTIFIED BY password;
```

Create a database (named `hr`):

```
CREATE DATABASE hr;
```

Connect to the new database and create a table (named `dept`):

```
\c hr
```

```
CREATE TABLE public.dept (deptno numeric(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk
```

```
PRIMARY KEY, dname varchar(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE, loc
varchar(13));
```

Add data to the table:

```
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (10,'ACCOUNTING','NEW YORK');
```

```
INSERT into dept VALUES (20,'RESEARCH','DALLAS');
```

You can use simple SQL commands to query the database and retrieve information about the data you have added to the table:

```
SELECT * FROM dept;
deptno | dname   | loc
-----+-----+
 10 | ACCOUNTING | NEW YORK
 20 | RESEARCH   | DALLAS
(2 rows)
```

Or, create database users:

```
ALTER ROLE enterprisedb IDENTIFIED BY password;
```

For detailed product usage information, see the [Advanced Server documentation](#), available at the EDB website.

## 16 Quick Start Guide for Linux on CentOS or RHEL 8

Advanced Server adds extended functionality to the open-source PostgreSQL database that supports database administration, enhanced SQL capabilities, database and application security, performance monitoring and analysis, and application development utilities. Advanced Server also supports database compatibility features for Oracle users; for detailed information about compatibility features, see the Advanced Server documentation.

This guide will walk you through using `dnf` to install EDB Postgres Advanced Server on a RHEL or CentOS 8 system and deploying a database cluster. The database created by this tutorial is well-suited for experimentation and testing. There are likely to be additional security and resource considerations when configuring a production installation that are not covered by this document.

This guide assumes that you are familiar with simple operating system and system administration procedures, and have administrative privileges on the host on which Advanced Server will be installed.

Please note that if you are using the pdf version of this document, using cut/paste to copy a command may result in extra spaces or carriage returns in the pasted command. If a command fails, check the command carefully for extra characters.

### Components of an EDB Postgres Advanced Server Deployment

Among the components that make up an Advanced Server deployment are:

**The Database Server** - The database server (the `postmaster`) is the service that provides the key functionality that allows you to store and manage data. Advanced Server is built on the PostgreSQL open-source database project; it includes all of the documented features of community PostgreSQL and more.

**The Database Cluster** - A cluster is a set of on-disk structures that comprise a collection of databases. A cluster is serviced by a single-instance of the database server. A database cluster is stored in the `data` directory; please

note that the `data` directory of a production database should not be stored on an NFS file system.

**Configuration Files** - You can use the parameters listed in Postgres configuration files to manage deployment preferences, security preferences, connection behaviors, and logging preferences.

**Supporting Tools, Utilities, and Clients** - EDB makes available a full suite of tools and utilities that can help you monitor and manage your Advanced Server deployment. For more information, visit the [EDB website](#).

**Supporting Functions, Procedures, Data Types, Index Types, Operators, Utilities, and Aggregates** - Advanced Server includes a number of features that help you manage your data.

## Prerequisites

Before installing Advanced Server, assume superuser privileges and use `dnf` to install prerequisite packages:

```
dnf -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-8.noarch.rpm
```

If you are installing Migration Toolkit or EDB\*Plus, you must first install Java:

```
dnf -y install java
```

## Installing and Configuring Advanced Server

**Step 1:** You must register with EDB to receive credentials for the EDB repository. If you have not previously registered with EDB, visit the [EDB site for information about requesting credentials](#).

**Step 2:** Assume superuser privileges to install the EDB repository configuration package:

```
dnf -y install https://yum.enterprisedb.com/edbrepos/edb-repo-latest.noarch.rpm
```

**Step 3:** With your choice of editor, edit the `/etc/yum.repos.d/edb.repo` file, replacing the `username` and `password` placeholders in the baseurl specification with the name and password of a registered EDB user and ensure that the `gpgcheck` and `enabled` properties are set to `1`.

**Step 4:** Update the cache and install Advanced Server:

```
dnf makecache
```

```
dnf -y install edb-as13-server
```

**Step 5:** Use sudo to assume the identity of the `enterprisedb` database superuser and create an Advanced Server cluster named `acctg` on listener port `5444`:

```
sudo su - enterprisedb
```

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/initdb -D /var/lib/edb/as13/acctg
```

## Starting the Cluster

As the `enterprisedb` user, start the cluster:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/pg_ctl start -D /var/lib/edb/as13/acctg
```

You can check the status of the cluster with the command:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/pg_ctl status -D /var/lib/edb/as13/acctg
```

## Using the psql Command Line Client

After installing the server and initializing a cluster, you can connect to the database with your choice of client. For convenience, the server is deployed with the [pgAdmin 4 graphical client](#) and the [psql command line client](#).

As the `enterprisedb` user, open a psql session:

```
/usr/edb/as13/bin/psql -d edb
```

Then, assign a password to the `enterprisedb` user:

```
ALTER ROLE enterprisedb IDENTIFIED BY password;
```

Create a database (named `hr`):

```
CREATE DATABASE hr;
```

Connect to the new database and create a table (named `dept`):

```
\c hr
```

```
CREATE TABLE public.dept (deptno numeric(2) NOT NULL CONSTRAINT dept_pk
PRIMARY KEY, dname varchar(14) CONSTRAINT dept_dname_uq UNIQUE, loc
varchar(13));
```

Add data to the table:

```
INSERT INTO dept VALUES (10,'ACCOUNTING','NEW YORK');
```

```
INSERT into dept VALUES (20,'RESEARCH','DALLAS');
```

You can use simple SQL commands to query the database and retrieve information about the data you have added to the table:

```
SELECT * FROM dept;
deptno | dname | loc
-----+-----+
 10 | ACCOUNTING | NEW YORK
 20 | RESEARCH | DALLAS
(2 rows)
```

Or create database users:

```
ALTER ROLE enterprisedb IDENTIFIED BY password;
```

For more detailed product usage information, see the [Advanced Server documentation, available at the EDB website](#).

## 17 Quick Start Guide for Windows

Advanced Server adds extended functionality to the open-source PostgreSQL database that supports database administration, enhanced SQL capabilities, database and application security, performance monitoring and analysis, and application development utilities. Advanced Server also supports database compatibility features for Oracle users; for detailed information about compatibility features, see the Advanced Server documentation.

This guide will walk you through using the graphical installer to install EDB Postgres Advanced Server on a Windows system. The database created by this tutorial is well-suited for experimentation and testing. There are likely to be additional security and resource considerations when configuring a production installation that are not covered by this document.

This guide assumes that you are familiar with simple operating system and system administration procedures, and have administrative privileges on the host on which Advanced Server will be installed.

Please note that if you are using the pdf version of this document, using cut/paste to copy a command may result in extra spaces or carriage returns in the pasted command. If a command fails, check the command carefully for extra characters.

## **Components of an EDB Postgres Advanced Server Deployment**

Among the components that make up an Advanced Server deployment are:

**The Database Server** - The database server (the **postmaster**) is the service that provides the key functionality that allows you to store and manage data. Advanced Server is built on the PostgreSQL open-source database project; it includes all of the documented features of community PostgreSQL and more.

**The Database Cluster** - A cluster is a set of on-disk structures that comprise a collection of databases. A cluster is serviced by a single-instance of the database server. A database cluster is stored in the **data** directory; please note that the **data** directory of a production database should not be stored on an NFS file system.

**Configuration Files** - You can use the parameters listed in Postgres configuration files to manage deployment preferences, security preferences, connection behaviors, and logging preferences.

**Supporting Tools, Utilities, and Clients** - EDB makes available a full suite of tools and utilities that can help you monitor and manage your Advanced Server deployment. For more information, visit the [EDB website](#).

**Supporting Functions, Procedures, Data Types, Index Types, Operators, Utilities, and Aggregates** - Advanced Server includes a number of features that help you manage your data.

Please note: The **data** directory of a production database should not be stored on an NFS file system.

## **Installation Prerequisites**

### **User Privileges**

To perform an Advanced Server installation on a Windows system, you must have administrator privileges. If you are installing Advanced Server on a Windows system that is configured with **User Account Control** enabled, you can assume sufficient privileges to invoke the graphical installer by right clicking on the name of the installer and selecting **Run as administrator** from the context menu.

### **Windows-specific Software Requirements**

You should apply Windows operating system updates before invoking the Advanced Server installer. If (during the installation process) the installer encounters errors, exit the installation, and ensure that your version of Windows is up-to-date before restarting the installer.

### **Migration Toolkit or EDB\*Plus Installation Pre-requisites**

Before using StackBuilder Plus to install Migration Toolkit or EDB\*Plus, you must first install Java (version 1.8 or later). If you are using Windows, Java installers and instructions are available online at:

<http://www.java.com/en/download/manual.jsp>

## **Installing and Configuring Advanced Server**

The graphical installer provides a quick and easy way to install Advanced Server 13 on a Windows system. Use the wizard's dialogs to specify information about your system and system usage; when you have completed the dialogs, the installer performs an installation based on the selections made during the setup process.

To invoke the wizard, you must have administrator privileges. Assume administrator privileges, and double-click the `edb-as13-server-13.x.x-windows-x64` executable file.

**Note:** To install Advanced Server on some versions of Windows, you may be required to right click on the file icon and select **Run as Administrator** from the context menu to invoke the installer with **Administrator** privileges.

When the **Language Selection** popup opens, select an installation language and click **OK** to continue to the **Setup** window.



Fig. 1: The Advanced Server installer Welcome window

Click **Next** to continue.

The EnterpriseDB **License Agreement** opens.



Fig. 2: The EnterpriseDB License Agreement

Carefully review the license agreement before highlighting the appropriate radio button; click **Next** to continue.

The **Installation Directory** window opens.

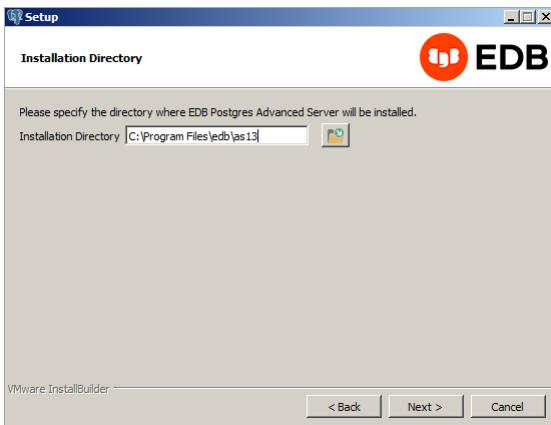


Fig. 3: The Installation Directory window

By default, the Advanced Server installation directory is:

C:\Program Files\edb\as13

You can accept the default installation location, and click **Next** to continue, or optionally click the **File Browser** icon to open the **Browse For Folder** dialog to choose an alternate installation directory.

**Note:** The **data** directory of a production database should not be stored on an NFS file system.

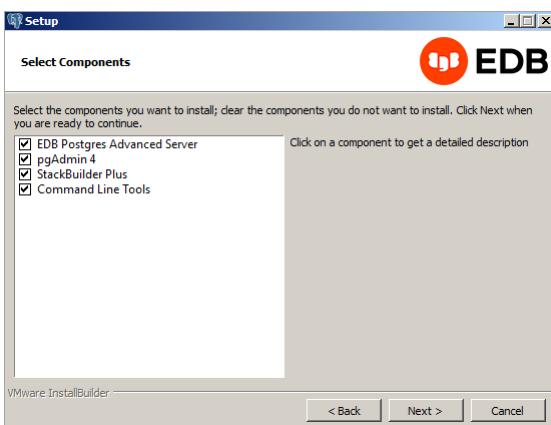


Fig. 4: The Select Components window

The **Select Components** window contains a list of optional components that you can install with the Advanced Server **Setup** wizard. You can omit a module from the Advanced Server installation by deselecting the box next to the components name.

The **Setup** wizard can install the following components while installing Advanced Server 13:

### EDB Postgres Advanced Server

Select the **EDB Postgres Advanced Server** option to install Advanced Server 13.

### pgAdmin 4

Select the **pgAdmin 4** option to install the pgAdmin 4 client. pgAdmin 4 provides a powerful graphical interface for database management and monitoring.

### StackBuilder Plus

The **StackBuilder Plus** utility is a graphical tool that can update installed products, or download and add supporting modules (and the resulting dependencies) after your Advanced Server setup and installation completes.

## Command Line Tools

The **Command Line Tools** option installs command line tools and supporting client libraries including:

- libpq
- psql
- EDB\*Loader
- ecpgPlus
- pg\_basebackup, pg\_dump, and pg\_restore
- pg\_bench
- and more.

**Note:** The **Command Line Tools** are required if you are installing Advanced Server or pgAdmin 4.

After selecting the components you wish to install, click **Next** to open the **Additional Directories** window.

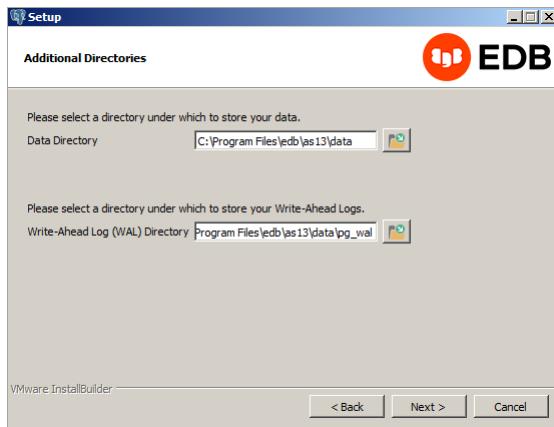


Fig. 5: The Additional Directories window

By default, the Advanced Server **data** files are saved to:

C:\Program Files\edb\as13\data

The default location of the Advanced Server **Write-Ahead Log (WAL) Directory** is:

C:\Program Files\edb\as13\data\pg\_wal

Advanced Server uses write-ahead logs to promote transaction safety and speed transaction processing; when you make a change to a table, the change is stored in shared memory and a record of the change is written to the write-ahead log. When you perform a **COMMIT**, Advanced Server writes contents of the write-ahead log to disk.

Accept the default file locations, or use the **File Browser** icon to select an alternate location; click **Next** to continue to the **Advanced Server Dialect** window.

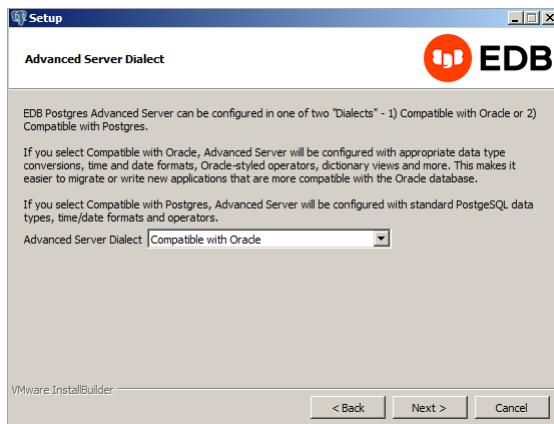


Fig. 6: The Advanced Server Dialect window

Use the drop-down listbox on the **Advanced Server Dialect** window to choose a server dialect. The server dialect specifies the compatibility features supported by Advanced Server.

By default, Advanced Server installs in **Compatible with Oracle** mode; you can choose between **Compatible with Oracle** and **Compatible with PostgreSQL** installation modes.

### Compatible with Oracle

If you select **Compatible with Oracle**, the installation will include the following features:

- Data dictionary views that are compatible with Oracle databases.
- Oracle data type conversions.
- Date values displayed in a format compatible with Oracle syntax.
- Support for Oracle-styled concatenation rules (if you concatenate a string value with a **NULL** value, the returned value is the value of the string).
- Schemas (**dbo** and **sys**) compatible with Oracle databases added to the **SEARCH\_PATH**.
- Support for the following Oracle built-in packages:

Package	Functionality compatible with Oracle Databases
<b>dbms_alert</b>	Provides the capability to register for, send, and receive alerts.
<b>dbms_job</b>	Provides the capability for the creation, scheduling, and managing of jobs.
<b>dbms_lob</b>	Provides the capability to manage on large objects.
<b>dbms_output</b>	Provides the capability to send messages to a message buffer, or get messages from the message buffer.
<b>dbms_pipe</b>	Provides the capability to send messages through a pipe within or between sessions connected to the same database cluster.
<b>dbms_rls</b>	Enables the implementation of Virtual Private Database on certain Advanced Server database objects.
<b>dbms_sql</b>	Provides an application interface to the EDB dynamic SQL functionality.
<b>dbms_utility</b>	Provides various utility programs.
<b>dbms_aqadm</b>	Provides supporting procedures for Advanced Queueing functionality.
<b>dbms_aq</b>	Provides message queueing and processing for Advanced Server.
<b>dbms_profiler</b>	Collects and stores performance information about the PL/pgSQL and SPL statements that are executed during a performance profiling session.
<b>dbms_random</b>	Provides a number of methods to generate random values.
<b>dbms_redact</b>	Enables the redacting or masking of data that is returned by a query.
<b>dbms_lock</b>	Provides support for the <b>DBMS_LOCK.SLEEP</b> procedure.
<b>dbms_scheduler</b>	Provides a way to create and manage jobs, programs, and job schedules.
<b>dbms_crypto</b>	Provides functions and procedures to encrypt or decrypt RAW, BLOB or CLOB data. You can also use <b>DBMS_CRYPTO</b> functions to generate cryptographically strong random values.
<b>dbms_mview</b>	Provides a way to manage and refresh materialized views and their dependencies.
<b>dbms_session</b>	Provides support for the <b>DBMS_SESSION.SET_ROLE</b> procedure.
<b>utl_encode</b>	Provides a way to encode and decode data.
<b>utl_http</b>	Provides a way to use the HTTP or HTTPS protocol to retrieve information found at an URL.
<b>utl_file</b>	Provides the capability to read from, and write to files on the operating system's file system.
<b>utl_smtp</b>	Provides the capability to send e-mails over the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP).
<b>utl_mail</b>	Provides the capability to manage e-mail.
<b>utl_url</b>	Provides a way to escape illegal and reserved characters within an URL.
<b>utl_raw</b>	Provides a way to manipulate or retrieve the length of raw data types.

This is not a comprehensive list of the compatibility features for Oracle included when Advanced Server is installed

in **Compatible with Oracle** mode; for more information, see the *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Guide* available from the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

If you choose to install in **Compatible with Oracle** mode, the Advanced Server superuser name is **enterprisedb**.

## Compatible with PostgreSQL

If you select **Compatible with PostgreSQL**, Advanced Server will exhibit compatibility with PostgreSQL version 13. If you choose to install in **Compatible with PostgreSQL** mode, the default Advanced Server superuser name is **postgres**.

For detailed information about PostgreSQL functionality, visit the official PostgreSQL website at:

<http://www.postgresql.org>

After specifying a configuration mode, click **Next** to continue to the **Password** window.

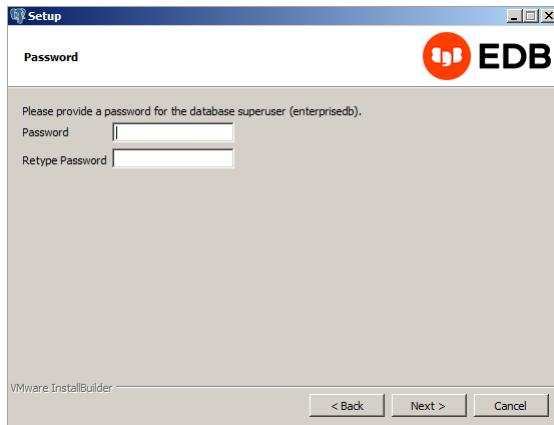


Fig. 7: The **Password** window

Advanced Server uses the password specified on the **Password** window for the database superuser. The specified password must conform to any security policies existing on the Advanced Server host.

After you enter a password in the **Password** field, confirm the password in the **Retype Password** field, and click **Next** to continue.

The **Additional Configuration** window opens.

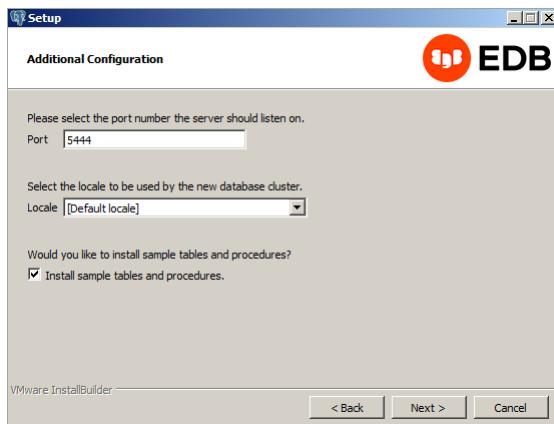


Fig. 8: The **Additional Configuration** window

Use the fields on the **Additional Configuration** window to specify installation details:

- Use the **Port** field to specify the port number that Advanced Server should listen to for connection requests

from client applications. The default is **5444**.

- If the **Locale** field is set to **[Default locale]**, Advanced Server uses the system locale as the working locale. Use the drop-down listbox next to **Locale** to specify an alternate locale for Advanced Server.
- By default, the **Setup** wizard installs corresponding sample data for the server dialect specified by the compatibility mode (**Oracle** or **PostgreSQL**). Clear the check box next to **Install sample tables and procedures** if you do not wish to have sample data installed.

After verifying the information on the **Additional Configuration** window, click **Next** to open the **Dynatune Dynamic Tuning: Server Utilization** window.

The graphical **Setup** wizard facilitates performance tuning via the Dynatune Dynamic Tuning feature. Dynatune functionality allows Advanced Server to make optimal usage of the system resources available on the host machine on which it is installed.

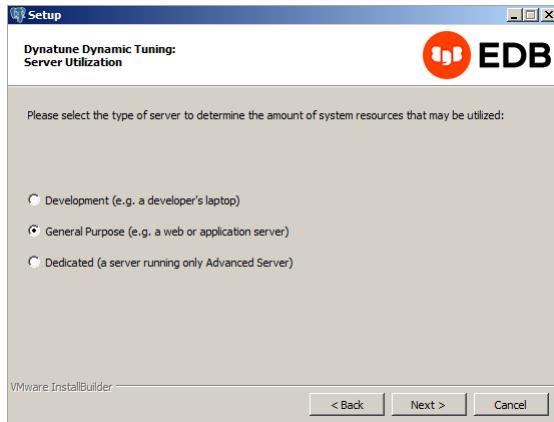


Fig. 9: The Dynatune Dynamic Tuning: Server Utilization window

The **edb\_dynatune** configuration parameter determines how Advanced Server allocates system resources. Use the radio buttons on the **Server Utilization** window to set the initial value of the **edb\_dynatune** configuration parameter:

- Select **Development** to set the value of **edb\_dynatune** to **33**. A low value dedicates the least amount of the host machine's resources to the database server. This is a good choice for a development machine.
- Select **General Purpose** to set the value of **edb\_dynatune** to **66**. A mid-range value dedicates a moderate amount of system resources to the database server. This would be a good setting for an application server with a fixed number of applications running on the same host as Advanced Server.
- Select **Dedicated** to set the value of **edb\_dynatune** to **100**. A high value dedicates most of the system resources to the database server. This is a good choice for a dedicated server host.

After the installation is complete, you can adjust the value of **edb\_dynatune** by editing the **postgresql.conf** file, located in the **data** directory of your Advanced Server installation. After editing the **postgresql.conf** file, you must restart the server for your changes to take effect.

Select the appropriate setting for your system, and click **Next** to continue to the **Dynatune Dynamic Tuning: Workload Profile** window.

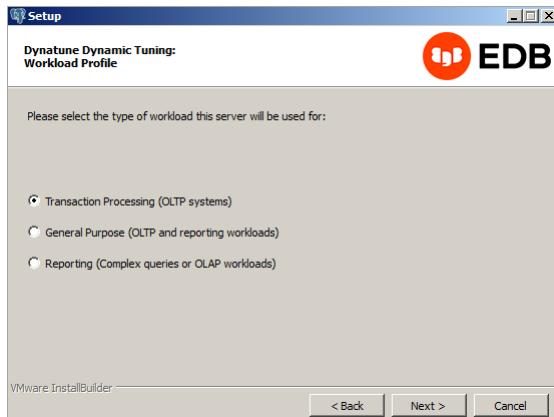


Fig. 10: The Dynatune Dynamic Tuning: Workload Profile window

Use the radio buttons on the **Workload Profile** window to specify the initial value of the `edb_dynatune_profile` configuration parameter. The `edb_dynatune_profile` parameter controls performance-tuning aspects based on the type of work that the server performs.

- Select **Transaction Processing (OLTP systems)** to specify an `edb_dynatune_profile` value of `oltp`. Recommended when Advanced Server is supporting heavy online transaction processing.
- Select **General Purpose (OLTP and reporting workloads)** to specify an `edb_dynatune_profile` value of `mixed`. Recommended for servers that provide a mix of transaction processing and data reporting.
- Select **Reporting (Complex queries or OLAP workloads)** to specify an `edb_dynatune_profile` value of `reporting`. Recommended for database servers used for heavy data reporting.

After the installation is complete, you can adjust the value of `edb_dynatune_profile` by editing the `postgresql.conf` file, located in the `data` directory of your Advanced Server installation. After editing the `postgresql.conf` file, you must restart the server for your changes to take effect.

For more information about `edb_dynatune` and other performance-related topics, see the *EDB Postgres Advanced Server Guide* available from the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs>

Click **Next** to continue. The **Update Notification Service** window opens.



Fig. 11: The Update Notification Service window

When enabled, the update notification service notifies you of any new updates and security patches available for your installation of Advanced Server.

By default, Advanced Server is configured to start the service when the system boots; clear the **Install Update Notification Service** check box, or accept the default, and click **Next** to continue.

The **Pre Installation Summary** opens.

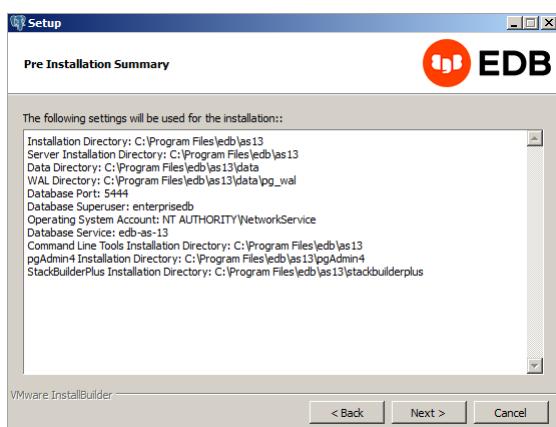


Fig. 12: The Pre Installation Summary

The **Pre Installation Summary** provides an overview of the options specified during the **Setup** process. Review the options before clicking **Next**; click **Back** to navigate back through the dialogs and update any options.

The **Ready to Install** window confirms that the installer has the information it needs about your configuration preferences to install Advanced Server. Click **Next** to continue.

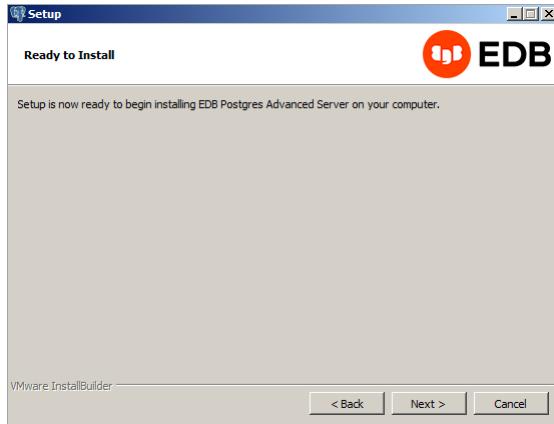


Fig. 13: The Ready to Install window

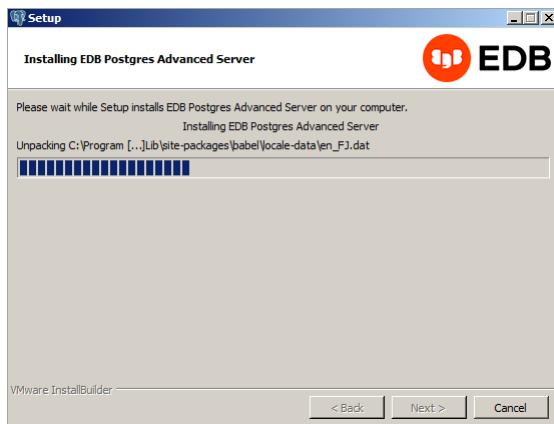


Fig. 14: Installing Advanced Server

As each supporting module is unpacked and installed, the module's installation is confirmed with a progress bar.

Before the **Setup** wizard completes the Advanced Server installation, it offers to **Launch StackBuilder Plus at exit?**

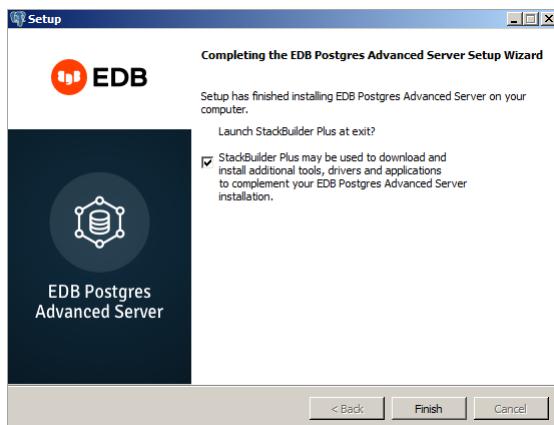


Fig. 15: The Setup wizard offers to Launch StackBuilder Plus at exit

You can clear the **StackBuilder Plus** check box and click **Finish** to complete the Advanced Server installation, or accept the default and proceed to StackBuilder Plus.

EDB Postgres StackBuilder Plus is included with the installation of Advanced Server and its core supporting components. StackBuilder Plus is a graphical tool that can update installed products, or download and add supporting modules (and the resulting dependencies) after your Advanced Server setup and installation completes.

For more detailed product usage information, see the [Advanced Server documentation, available at the EDB website](#).

## 18 EDB Postgres Advanced Server 13 Release Notes

With this release of EDB Postgres Advanced Server 13, EnterpriseDB continues to lead as the only worldwide company to deliver innovative and low cost open-source-derived database solutions with commercial quality, ease of use, compatibility, scalability, and performance for small or large-scale enterprises.

EDB Postgres Advanced Server 13 is built on open-source PostgreSQL 13, which introduces myriad enhancements that enable databases to scale up and scale out in more efficient ways. PostgreSQL 13 has significant performance improvements, which includes an improved indexing and lookup system, a level up on query planning when using extended statistics, improved performance for queries that use aggregates or partitioned tables, and providing more ways to monitor activity within a PostgreSQL database. And along with highly requested features like parallelized vacuuming, incremental sorting, PostgreSQL 13 has a multitude of other new features and capabilities.

EDB Postgres Advanced Server 13 adds a number of new features that will delight developers and DBAs alike, including:

- Automatic LIST Partitioning
- **PARTITION** *number* or **SUBPARTITION** *number* clauses while creating a HASH partition table
- Forward declarations in the package body
- **CREATE INDEX** syntax contains column name and constant
- **USING INDEX** clause in **CREATE TABLE** and **ALTER TABLE**
- EDB Loader handles unique constraint violations
- **STATS\_MODE** aggregate function
- Support for **utl\_http.end\_of\_body** exception
- EDB Loader supports any connection parameters with the **-c** or **CONNSTR** option

### Installers and Documentation

EDB Postgres Advanced Server v13 is packaged and delivered as interactive installers for Windows; visit the EnterpriseDB website:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/advanced-downloads>

RPM Packages are available for Linux from:

<https://repos.enterprisedb.com/>

Debian/Ubuntu Packages are available for download from:

<https://repos.enterprisedb.com/>

To request the credentials required to access EDB repositories, visit:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/repository-access-request>

Documentation is provided on the EDB website, visit:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs/>

## Supported Platforms

EDB Postgres Advanced Server v13 installers support 64 bit Linux and Windows server platforms. The Advanced Server 13 RPM packages are supported on the following 64-bit Linux platforms:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux (x86\_64) 7.x and 8.x
- CentOS (x86\_64) 7.x and 8.x
- OEL (x86\_64) 7.x and 8.x
- PPC64LE 8 running CentOS/RHEL 7.x

The EDB Postgres Advanced Server 13 native packages are supported on the following 64-bit Linux platforms:

- Debian 9.x and 10.x
- Ubuntu 18.04 and 20.04

Graphical installers are supported on the following 64-bit Windows platforms:

- Windows 2019
- Windows Server 2016

Additional information about supported platforms is available on the EDB website:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/services-support/edb-supported-products-and-platforms>

## Component Certification

The following components are included in the EDB Postgres Advanced Server v13 release:

- EPAS 13.1.4
- BART 2.6
- Cloneschema 1.14
- Connectors JDBC 42.2.12.3, ODBC 12.02.0000.02, .NET 4.1.5.1, OCL 13.1.4.1
- Edb-Modules 1.0
- EDBPlus 39.0.0
- EFM 4.0
- Hdfs\_fdw 2.0.7
- Mongo\_fdw 5.2.8
- MySQL\_fdw 2.5.5
- MTK 54.0.0
- Parallel Clone 1.8
- PEM 7.16
- PgAdmin 4.27
- PgAgent 4.2.0
- PgBouncer 1.14
- PgPool 4.1.2
- PostGIS 3.0.2
- Procedural Language Packs – PL/Perl 5.26, PL/Python 3.7, PL/TCL 8.6
- Slony 2.2.8

## EDB Postgres Advanced Server v13 Features

The major highlights of this release are :

- Automatic LIST Partitioning is an extension to LIST partitioning that allows a database to automatically create a partition for any new distinct value of the LIST partitioning key. A new partition is created when data is inserted into the LIST partitioned table and the inserted value does not match any of the existing table partitions.
  - Additional `smallint`, `int`, `bigrint`, and `numeric` variants in the `MEDIAN` aggregate function.
  - Added support for `CREATE INDEX` syntax that contains a column name and number, i.e. `(col_name,1)`.
  - Added support to alter the owner of the directory - `ALTER DIRECTORY <dir_name> OWNER TO <role_name>`.
  - CSV and XML audit logs have been made consistent. It has been observed that there is a difference in terms of number of fields in the CSV and XML formatted audit logs. Now the audit log is consistent across both formats.
  - Default behaviour for `dbms_output` made compatible with Redwood. By default, the `dbms_output` behaviour is `off` in Oracle; in EPAS it is always `on`. In this release, EPAS adds a GUC to control the default behaviour for `DBMS_OUTPUT` package.
  - You can log the number of processed statements with `edb_log_every bulk value`. Currently, during bulk execution EPAS did not identify the number of rows processed when `edb_log_every_bulk_value` was `off`. This feature allows EPAS to log it both in the audit log file and server log file. This will help you analyze the logs for such cases.
  - Previously, EDB Loader would abort the whole operation if any record insertion fails due to a unique constraint violation. This is fixed by using speculative insertion to insert rows. This behavior is enforced if `handle conflicts` (a new parameter) is `true` and indexes are present.
  - `SYSDATE` now behaves in a more compatible manner. `SYSDATE` output changes at every nesting level, so multiple copies of SYSDATE in the same SQL query will return the same value each time. `SYSDATE` changes on successive statements in the same procedure, or within a nested function call.
- `PARALLEL [n] | NOPARALLEL` option for `CREATE TABLE` and `INDEX`. Advanced Server now supports the `PARALLEL [n] | NOPARALLEL` clause in the `CREATE TABLE`, `ALTER TABLE`, `CREATE INDEX`, and `ALTER INDEX` commands to enable or disable parallelism on an index or a table.

- `PARTITION [n]` or `SUBPARTITION [n]` while creating a table. This feature allows you to automatically create `[n]` hash partitions at a subpartition level.
- EDB Loader supports any connection parameters. You can use the EDB Loader `-c` or `CONNSTR` options to specify any connection parameters supported by libpq. This includes SSL connection parameters.
- The `STATS_MODE` function takes a set of values as an argument and returns the value that occurs with the highest frequency. If multiple values appear with the same frequency, the `STATS_MODE` function arbitrarily chooses the first value and returns only that one value.
- Added support for DBMS SQL function/procedures (`DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG`, `COLUMN_VALUE_LONG` and `LAST_ERROR_POSITION`).
- Added support for function `to_timestamp_tz()`.
- Added support for function/procedure specification inside package body.
- Added support for FM format in `to_number` function.
- Added support for `AES192` and `AES256` in the `DBMS CRYPTO` package.
- Added support for the spell mode in `to_char(timestamptz, text)` function.
- Allow creating a compound trigger having `WHEN` clause with `NEW/OLD` variables and `STATEMENT` level triggering events. Enhanced Redwood compatible view.
- Log matched line of `pg_hba.conf` on successful client authentication. Enhanced `pg_catchcheck` to test for and raise an error if a relation's `relnode` is missing from the `data` directory.
- Added support for `utl_http.end_of_body` exception. This feature declares the `end_of_body` exception into `utl_http` package and throws the same from `read_line`, `read_text`, and `read_raw` package procedures when no data is left in the response body.
- The `UNIQUE` and `PRIMARY KEY` constraint clauses now have a `CREATE INDEX` statement. This new syntax allows users to specify explicit index details like fillfactor, etc. Columns specified in the constraint and the columns specified in the index must be the same.

For information about Advanced Server features that are compatible with Oracle databases, see the following guides:

- *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's SQL Guide*
- *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Reference Guide*
- *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Built-in Package Guide*
- *Database Compatibility for Oracle Developer's Tools and Utilities Guide*
- *Database Compatibility Table Partitioning Guide*
- *Database Compatibility Stored Procedural Language Guide*

## Community PostgreSQL 13 Updates

EDB Postgres Advanced Server 13 integrates all of the community PostgreSQL 13 features. To review a complete list of changes to the community PostgreSQL project and the contributors names, see the PostgreSQL 13 Release Notes at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/13/release-13.html>

## How to Report Problems

If you experience any problems installing the new software please contact Technical Support at:

- Email: [support@enterprisedb.com](mailto:support@enterprisedb.com)
- Phone:

US: +1-732-331-1320 or 1-800-235-5891 UK: +44-2033719820 Brazil: +55-2139581371 India: +91-20-66449612

## 19 EDB Postgres Advanced Server Security Features Guide

This guide describes features that provide added security to EDB Postgres Advanced Server installations. It is not a comprehensive guide to the security functionality provided by PostgreSQL that is built into Advanced Server.

- [SQL/Protect](#) provides protection from SQL injection attacks.
- [Virtual Private Database](#) provides fine-grained access control for sensitive data.
- [sslutils](#) is a Postgres extension that allows you to generate SSL certificates.
- [Data redaction](#) functionality allows you to dynamically mask portions of data.

For information about Postgres authentication and security features, consult the PostgreSQL core documentation, available at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/edb-docs/p/postgresql>

### 19.1 Protecting Against SQL Injection Attacks

Advanced Server provides protection against SQL injection attacks. A *SQL injection attack* is an attempt to compromise a database by running SQL statements whose results provide clues to the attacker as to the content, structure, or security of that database.

Preventing a SQL injection attack is normally the responsibility of the application developer. The database administrator typically has little or no control over the potential threat. The difficulty for database administrators is that the application must have access to the data to function properly.

SQL/Protect is a module that allows a database administrator to protect a database from SQL injection attacks. SQL/Protect provides a layer of security in addition to the normal database security policies by examining incoming queries for common SQL injection profiles.

SQL/Protect gives the control back to the database administrator by alerting the administrator to potentially dangerous queries and by blocking these queries.

---

## 19.1.1 SQL/Protect Overview

This section contains an introduction to the different types of SQL injection attacks and describes how SQL/Protect guards against them.

### Types of SQL Injection Attacks

There are a number of different techniques used to perpetrate SQL injection attacks. Each technique is characterized by a certain **signature**. SQL/Protect examines queries for the following signatures:

#### Unauthorized Relations

While Advanced Server allows administrators to restrict access to relations (tables, views, etc.), many administrators do not perform this tedious task. SQL/Protect provides a **learn** mode that tracks the relations a user accesses.

This allows administrators to examine the workload of an application, and for SQL/Protect to learn which relations an application should be allowed to access for a given user or group of users in a role.

When SQL/Protect is switched to either **passive** or **active** mode, the incoming queries are checked against the list of learned relations.

#### Utility Commands

A common technique used in SQL injection attacks is to run utility commands, which are typically SQL Data Definition Language (DDL) statements. An example is creating a user-defined function that has the ability to access other system resources.

SQL/Protect can block the running of all utility commands, which are not normally needed during standard application processing.

#### SQL Tautology

The most frequent technique used in SQL injection attacks is issuing a tautological **WHERE** clause condition (that is, using a condition that is always true).

The following is an example:

```
 WHERE password = 'x' OR 'x'='x'
```

Attackers will usually start identifying security weaknesses using this technique. SQL/Protect can block queries that use a tautological conditional clause.

#### Unbounded DML Statements

A dangerous action taken during SQL injection attacks is the running of unbounded DML statements. These are **UPDATE** and **DELETE** statements with no **WHERE** clause. For example, an attacker may update all users' passwords to a known value or initiate a denial of service attack by deleting all of the data in a key table.

## Monitoring SQL Injection Attacks

This section describes how [SQL/Protect](#) monitors and reports on SQL injection attacks.

### Protected Roles

Monitoring for SQL injection attacks involves analyzing SQL statements originating in database sessions where the current user of the session is a protected role. A [protected role](#) is an Advanced Server user or group that the database administrator has chosen to monitor using SQL/Protect. (In Advanced Server, users and groups are collectively referred to as [roles](#).)

Each protected role can be customized for the types of SQL injection attacks for which it is to be monitored, thus providing different levels of protection by role and significantly reducing the user maintenance load for DBAs.

A role with the superuser privilege cannot be made a protected role. If a protected non-superuser role is subsequently altered to become a superuser, certain behaviors are exhibited whenever an attempt is made by that superuser to issue any command:

- A warning message is issued by SQL/Protect on every command issued by the protected superuser.
- The statistic in column `superusers` of [edb\\_sql\\_protect\\_stats](#) is incremented with every command issued by the protected superuser. See [Attack Attempt Statistics](#) for information on the [edb\\_sql\\_protect\\_stats](#) view.
- When SQL/Protect is in active mode, all commands issued by the protected superuser are prevented from running.

A protected role that has the superuser privilege should either be altered so that it is no longer a superuser, or it should be reverted back to an unprotected role.

### Attack Attempt Statistics

Each usage of a command by a protected role that is considered an attack by SQL/Protect is recorded. Statistics are collected by type of SQL injection attack as discussed in [Types of SQL Injection Attacks](#).

These statistics are accessible from view [edb\\_sql\\_protect\\_stats](#) that can be easily monitored to identify the start of a potential attack.

The columns in [edb\\_sql\\_protect\\_stats](#) monitor the following:

- **username.** Name of the protected role.
- **superusers.** Number of SQL statements issued when the protected role is a superuser. In effect, any SQL statement issued by a protected superuser increases this statistic. See [Protected Roles](#) for information on protected superusers.
- **relations.** Number of SQL statements issued referencing relations that were not learned by a protected role. (That is, relations that are not in a role's protected relations list.)
- **commands.** Number of DDL statements issued by a protected role.
- **tautology.** Number of SQL statements issued by a protected role that contained a tautological condition.
- **dml.** Number of [UPDATE](#) and [DELETE](#) statements issued by a protected role that did not contain a [WHERE](#) clause.

This gives database administrators the opportunity to react proactively in preventing theft of valuable data or other malicious actions.

If a role is protected in more than one database, the role's statistics for attacks in each database are maintained separately and are viewable only when connected to the respective database.

#### Note

SQL/Protect statistics are maintained in memory while the database server is running. When the database server

is shut down, the statistics are saved to a binary file named `edb_sqlprotect.stat` in the `data/global` subdirectory of the Advanced Server home directory.

## Attack Attempt Queries

Each usage of a command by a protected role that is considered an attack by SQL/Protect is recorded in the `edb_sql_protect_queries` view.

The `edb_sql_protect_queries` view contains the following columns:

- **username.** Database user name of the attacker used to log into the database server.
- **ip\_address.** IP address of the machine from which the attack was initiated.
- **port.** Port number from which the attack originated.
- **machine\_name.** Name of the machine, if known, from which the attack originated.
- **date\_time.** Date and time at which the query was received by the database server. The time is stored to the precision of a minute.
- **query.** The query string sent by the attacker.

The maximum number of offending queries that are saved in `edb_sql_protect_queries` is controlled by the `edb_sql_protect.max_queries_to_save` configuration parameter.

If a role is protected in more than one database, the role's queries for attacks in each database are maintained separately and are viewable only when connected to the respective database.

## 19.1.2 Configuring SQL/Protect

Ensure the following prerequisites are met before configuring SQL/Protect:

- The library file (`sqlprotect.so` on Linux, `sqlprotect.dll` on Windows) necessary to run **SQL/Protect** should be installed in the `lib` subdirectory of your Advanced Server home directory. For Windows, this should be done by the Advanced Server installer. For Linux, install the `edb-asxx-server-sqlprotect` RPM package where `xx` is the Advanced Server version number.
- You will also need the SQL script file `sqlprotect.sql` located in the `share/contrib` subdirectory of your Advanced Server home directory.
- You must configure the database server to use **SQL/Protect**, and you must configure each database that you want **SQL/Protect** to monitor:
  - The database server configuration file, `postgresql.conf`, must be modified by adding and enabling configuration parameters used by **SOL/Protect**.
  - Database objects used by **SQL/Protect** must be installed in each database that you want **SQL/Protect** to monitor.

**Step 1:** Edit the following configuration parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file located in the `data` subdirectory of your Advanced Server home directory.

- **shared\_preload\_libraries.** Add `$libdir/sqlprotect` to the list of libraries.
- **edb\_sql\_protect.enabled.** Controls whether or not **SQL/Protect** is actively monitoring protected roles by analyzing SQL statements issued by those roles and reacting according to the setting of `edb_sql_protect.level`. When you are ready to begin monitoring with **SQL/Protect** set this parameter to `on`. If this parameter is omitted, the default is `off`.

- **edb\_sql\_protect.level**. Sets the action taken by SQL/Protect when a SQL statement is issued by a protected role. If this parameter is omitted, the default behavior is `passive`. Initially, set this parameter to `learn`.

See [Setting the Protection Level](#) for more information.

- **edb\_sql\_protect.max\_protected\_roles**. Sets the maximum number of roles that can be protected. If this parameter is omitted, the default setting is `64`.
- **edb\_sql\_protect.max\_protected\_relations**. Sets the maximum number of relations that can be protected per role. If this parameter is omitted, the default setting is `1024`.

Please note that the total number of protected relations for the server will be the number of protected relations times the number of protected roles. Every protected relation consumes space in shared memory. The space for the maximum possible protected relations is reserved during database server startup.

- **edb\_sql\_protect.max\_queries\_to\_save**. Sets the maximum number of offending queries to save in the `edb_sql_protect_queries` view. If this parameter is omitted, the default setting is `5000`. If the number of offending queries reaches the limit, additional queries are not saved in the view, but are accessible in the database server log file.

Please note that the minimum valid value for this parameter is `100`. If a value less than `100` is specified, the database server starts using the default setting of `5000`. A warning message is recorded in the database server log file.

The following example shows the settings of these parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file:

```
shared_preload_libraries = '$libdir/dbms_pipe,$libdir/edb_gen,$libdir/
sqlprotect'
                                # (change requires restart)
```

```
edb_sql_protect.enabled = off
edb_sql_protect.level = learn
edb_sql_protect.max_protected_roles = 64
edb_sql_protect.max_protected_relations = 1024
edb_sql_protect.max_queries_to_save = 5000
```

**Step 2:** Restart the database server after you have modified the `postgresql.conf` file.

**On Linux:** Invoke the Advanced Server service script with the `restart` option.

On a Redhat or CentOS 6.x installation, use the command:

```
/etc/init.d/edb-as-13 restart
```

On a Redhat or CentOS 7.x installation, use the command:

```
systemctl restart edb-as-13
```

**On Windows:** Use the Windows Services applet to restart the service named `edb-as-13`.

**Step 3:** For each database that you want to protect from SQL injection attacks, connect to the database as a superuser (either `enterprisedb` or `postgres`, depending upon your installation options) and run the script `sqlprotect.sql` located in the `share/contrib` subdirectory of your Advanced Server home directory. The script creates the SQL/Protect database objects in a schema named `sqlprotect`.

The following example shows this process to set up protection for a database named `edb`:

```
$ /usr/edb/as13/bin/psql -d edb -U enterprisedb
```

Password for user enterpriseedb:  
 psql.bin (13.0.0, server 13.0.0)  
 Type "help" for help.

```
edb=# \i /usr/edb/as13/share/contrib/sqlprotect.sql
CREATE SCHEMA
GRANT
SET
CREATE TABLE
GRANT
CREATE TABLE
GRANT
CREATE FUNCTION
DO
CREATE FUNCTION
CREATE FUNCTION
DO
CREATE VIEW
GRANT
DO
CREATE VIEW
GRANT
CREATE VIEW
GRANT
CREATE FUNCTION
CREATE FUNCTION
SET
```

## Selecting Roles to Protect

After the SQL/Protect database objects have been created in a database, you can select the roles for which SQL queries are to be monitored for protection, and the level of protection that will be assigned to each role.

## Setting the Protected Roles List

For each database that you want to protect, you must determine the roles you want to monitor and then add those roles to the *protected roles list* of that database.

**Step 1:** Connect as a superuser to a database that you wish to protect with either `psql` or Postgres Enterprise Manager Client:

```
$ /usr/edb/as13/bin/psql -d edb -U enterpriseedb
Password for user enterpriseedb:
psql.bin (13.0.0, server 13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.
```

```
edb=#
```

**Step 2:** Since the SQL/Protect tables, functions, and views are built under the `sqlprotect` schema, use the `SET search_path` command to include the `sqlprotect` schema in your search path. This eliminates the need to schema-qualify any operation or query involving SQL/Protect database objects:

```
edb=# SET search_path TO sqlprotect;
SET
```

**Step 3:** Each role that you wish to protect must be added to the protected roles list. This list is maintained in the table `edb_sql_protect`.

To add a role, use the function `protect_role('rolename')`. The following example protects a role named `appuser`:

```
edb=# SELECT protect_role('appuser');
protect_role
-----
(1 row)
```

You can list the roles that have been added to the protected roles list by issuing the following query:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_sql_protect;
dbid | roleid | protect_relations | allow_utility_cmds | allow_tautology |
allow_empty_dml
-----+-----+-----+-----+-
13917 | 16671 | t | f | f
(1 row)
```

A view is also provided that gives the same information using the object names instead of the Object Identification numbers (OIDs):

```
edb=# \x
Expanded display is on.
edb=# SELECT * FROM list_protected_users;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+
dbname | edb
username | appuser
protect_relations | t
allow_utility_cmds | f
allow_tautology | f
allow_empty_dml | f
```

## Setting the Protection Level

The `edb_sql_protect.level` configuration parameter sets the protection level, which defines the behavior of SQL/Protect when a protected role issues a SQL statement. The defined behavior applies to all roles in the protected roles lists of all databases configured with SQL/Protect in the database server.

The `edb_sql_protect.level` configuration parameter (in the `postgresql.conf` file) can be set to one of the following values to use either `learn` mode, `passive` mode, or `active` mode:

- **learn.** Tracks the activities of protected roles and records the relations used by the roles. This is used when initially configuring SQL/Protect so the expected behaviors of the protected applications are learned.
- **passive.** Issues warnings if protected roles are breaking the defined rules, but does not stop any SQL statements from executing. This is the next step after SQL/Protect has learned the expected behavior of the protected roles. This essentially behaves in intrusion detection mode and can be run in production when

properly monitored.

- **active.** Stops all invalid statements for a protected role. This behaves as a SQL firewall preventing dangerous queries from running. This is particularly effective against early penetration testing when the attacker is trying to determine the vulnerability point and the type of database behind the application. Not only does SQL/Protect close those vulnerability points, but it tracks the blocked queries allowing administrators to be alerted before the attacker finds an alternate method of penetrating the system.

If the `edb_sql_protect.level` parameter is not set or is omitted from the configuration file, the default behavior of SQL/Protect is **passive**.

If you are using **SQL/Protect** for the first time, set `edb_sql_protect.level` to **learn**.

## Monitoring Protected Roles

Once you have configured SQL/Protect in a database, added roles to the protected roles list, and set the desired protection level, you can then activate SQL/Protect in either **learn** mode, **passive** mode, or **active** mode. You can then start running your applications.

With a new SQL/Protect installation, the first step is to determine the relations that protected roles should be permitted to access during normal operation. Learn mode allows a role to run applications during which time SQL/Protect is recording the relations that are accessed. These are added to the role's **protected relations list** stored in table `edb_sql_protect_rel`.

Monitoring for protection against attack begins when SQL/Protect is run in passive or active mode. In passive and active modes, the role is permitted to access the relations in its protected relations list as these were determined to be the relations the role should be able to access during typical usage.

However, if a role attempts to access a relation that is not in its protected relations list, a **WARNING** or **ERROR** severity level message is returned by SQL/Protect. The role's attempted action on the relation may or may not be carried out depending upon whether the mode is passive or active.

## Learn Mode

**Step 1:** To activate SQL/Protect in learn mode, set the parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file as shown below:

```
edb_sql_protect.enabled = on
edb_sql_protect.level = learn
```

**Step 2:** Reload the `postgresql.conf` file.

Choose **Expert Configuration**, then **Reload Configuration** from the Advanced Server application menu.

For an alternative method of reloading the configuration file, use the `pg_reload_conf` function. Be sure you are connected to a database as a superuser and execute `function pg_reload_conf` as shown by the following example:

```
edb=# SELECT pg_reload_conf();
pg_reload_conf
-----
t
(1 row)
```

**Step 3:** Allow the protected roles to run their applications.

As an example the following queries are issued in the `psql` application by protected role `appuser`:

```
edb=> SELECT * FROM dept;
NOTICE: SQLPROTECT: Learned relation: 16384
deptno | dname   | loc
-----+-----+
 10 | ACCOUNTING | NEW YORK
 20 | RESEARCH   | DALLAS
 30 | SALES     | CHICAGO
 40 | OPERATIONS | BOSTON
(4 rows)
```

```
edb=> SELECT empno, ename, job FROM emp WHERE deptno = 10;
NOTICE: SQLPROTECT: Learned relation: 16391
empno | ename | job
-----+-----+
 7782 | CLARK | MANAGER
 7839 | KING  | PRESIDENT
 7934 | MILLER | CLERK
(3 rows)
```

SQL/Protect generates a **NOTICE** severity level message indicating the relation has been added to the role's protected relations list.

In SQL/Protect learn mode, SQL statements that are cause for suspicion are not prevented from executing, but a message is issued to alert the user to potentially dangerous statements as shown by the following example:

```
edb=> CREATE TABLE appuser_tab (f1 INTEGER);
NOTICE: SQLPROTECT: This command type is illegal for this user
CREATE TABLE
edb=> DELETE FROM appuser_tab;
NOTICE: SQLPROTECT: Learned relation: 16672
NOTICE: SQLPROTECT: Illegal Query: empty DML
DELETE 0
```

**Step 4:** As a protected role runs applications, the SQL/Protect tables can be queried to observe the addition of relations to the role's protected relations list.

Connect as a superuser to the database you are monitoring and set the search path to include the **sqlprotect** schema:

```
edb=# SET search_path TO sqlprotect;
SET
```

Query the **edb\_sql\_protect\_rel** table to see the relations added to the protected relations list:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_sql_protect_rel;
dbid | roleid | relid
-----+-----+
13917 | 16671 | 16384
13917 | 16671 | 16391
13917 | 16671 | 16672
(3 rows)
```

The **list\_protected\_rels** view provides more comprehensive information along with the object names instead of the OIDs:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM list_protected_rels;
Database | Protected User | Schema | Name | Type | Owner
```

```
-----+-----+-----+-----+
edb  | appuser   | public | dept    | Table | enterprisesdb
edb  | appuser   | public | emp     | Table | enterprisesdb
edb  | appuser   | public | appuser_tab | Table | appuser
(3 rows)
```

## Passive Mode

Once you have determined that a role's applications have accessed all relations they will need, you can now change the protection level so that SQL/Protect can actively monitor the incoming SQL queries and protect against SQL injection attacks.

Passive mode is the less restrictive of the two protection modes, passive and active.

**Step 1:** To activate **SQL/Protect** in passive mode, set the following parameters in the **postgresql.conf** file as shown below:

```
edb_sql_protect.enabled = on
edb_sql_protect.level = passive
```

**Step 2:** Reload the configuration file as shown in [Step 2](#) of the [Learn Mode](#) section.

Now SQL/Protect is in passive mode. For relations that have been learned such as the **dept** and **emp** tables of the prior examples, SQL statements are permitted with no special notification to the client by **SQL/Protect** as shown by the following queries run by user **appuser**:

```
edb=> SELECT * FROM dept;
deptno | dname   | loc
-----+-----+
10  | ACCOUNTING | NEW YORK
20  | RESEARCH   | DALLAS
30  | SALES      | CHICAGO
40  | OPERATIONS | BOSTON
(4 rows)
```

```
edb=> SELECT empno, ename, job FROM emp WHERE deptno = 10;
empno | ename   | job
-----+-----+
7782 | CLARK   | MANAGER
7839 | KING    | PRESIDENT
7934 | MILLER  | CLERK
(3 rows)
```

SQL/Protect does not prevent any SQL statement from executing, but issues a message of **WARNING** severity level for SQL statements executed against relations that were not learned, or for SQL statements that contain a prohibited signature as shown in the following example:

```
edb=> CREATE TABLE appuser_tab_2 (f1 INTEGER);
WARNING: SQLPROTECT: This command type is illegal for this user
CREATE TABLE
edb=> INSERT INTO appuser_tab_2 VALUES (1);
WARNING: SQLPROTECT: Illegal Query: relations
INSERT 0 1
edb=> INSERT INTO appuser_tab_2 VALUES (2);
WARNING: SQLPROTECT: Illegal Query: relations
```

```
INSERT 0 1
edb=> SELECT * FROM appuser_tab_2 WHERE 'x' = 'x';
WARNING: SQLPROTECT: Illegal Query: relations
WARNING: SQLPROTECT: Illegal Query: tautology
f1
-----
1
2
(2 rows)
```

### Step 3: Monitor the statistics for suspicious activity.

By querying the view `edb_sql_protect_stats`, you can see the number of times SQL statements were executed that referenced relations that were not in a role's protected relations list, or contained SQL injection attack signatures. See [Attack Attempt Statistics](#) for more information on view `edb_sql_protect_stats`.

The following is a query on `edb_sql_protect_stats`:

```
edb=# SET search_path TO sqlprotect;
SET
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_sql_protect_stats;
 username | superusers | relations | commands | tautology | dml
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 appuser | 0 | 3 | 1 | 1 | 0
(1 row)
```

### Step 4: View information on specific attacks.

By querying the `edb_sql_protect_queries` view, you can see the SQL statements that were executed that referenced relations that were not in a role's protected relations list, or contained SQL injection attack signatures. See [Attack Attempt Queries](#) for more information on view `edb_sql_protect_queries`.

The following code sample shows a query on `edb_sql_protect_queries`:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_sql_protect_queries;
-[ RECORD 1 ]+-----
username | appuser
ip_address |
port |
machine_name |
date_time | 20-JUN-14 13:21:00 -04:00
query | INSERT INTO appuser_tab_2 VALUES (1);
-[ RECORD 2 ]+-----
username | appuser
ip_address |
port |
machine_name |
date_time | 20-JUN-14 13:21:00 -04:00
query | CREATE TABLE appuser_tab_2 (f1 INTEGER);
-[ RECORD 3 ]+-----
username | appuser
ip_address |
port |
machine_name |
date_time | 20-JUN-14 13:22:00 -04:00
query | INSERT INTO appuser_tab_2 VALUES (2);
-[ RECORD 4 ]+-----
```

```

username | appuser
ip_address |
port    |
machine_name |
date_time | 20-JUN-14 13:22:00 -04:00
query   | SELECT * FROM appuser_tab_2 WHERE 'x' = 'x';

```

## Note

The `ip_address` and `port` columns do not return any information if the attack originated on the same host as the database server using the Unix-domain socket (that is, `pg_hba.conf` connection type `local`).

## Active Mode

In active mode, disallowed SQL statements are prevented from executing. Also, the message issued by SQL/Protect has a higher severity level of `ERROR` instead of `WARNING`.

**Step 1:** To activate `SQL/Protect` in active mode, set the following parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file as shown below:

```

edb_sql_protect.enabled = on
edb_sql_protect.level = active

```

**Step 2:** Reload the configuration file as shown in [Step 2](#) of the [Learn Mode](#) section.

The following example illustrates SQL statements similar to those given in the examples of [Step 2](#) in [Passive Mode](#), but executed by user `appuser` when `edb_sql_protect.level` is set to `active`:

```

edb=> CREATE TABLE appuser_tab_3 (f1 INTEGER);
ERROR: SQLPROTECT: This command type is illegal for this user
edb=> INSERT INTO appuser_tab_2 VALUES (1);
ERROR: SQLPROTECT: Illegal Query: relations
edb=> SELECT * FROM appuser_tab_2 WHERE 'x' = 'x';
ERROR: SQLPROTECT: Illegal Query: relations

```

The following shows the resulting statistics:

```

edb=# SELECT * FROM sqlprotect.edb_sql_protect_stats;
username | superusers | relations | commands | tautology | dml
-----+-----+-----+-----+
appuser | 0 | 5 | 2 | 1 | 0
(1 row)

```

The following is a query on `edb_sql_protect_queries`:

```

edb=# SELECT * FROM sqlprotect.edb_sql_protect_queries;
-[ RECORD 1 ]+-----
username | appuser
ip_address |
port    |
machine_name |
date_time | 20-JUN-14 13:21:00 -04:00
query   | CREATE TABLE appuser_tab_2 (f1 INTEGER);
-[ RECORD 2 ]+-----
username | appuser

```

```

ip_address  |
port        |
machine_name |
date_time   | 20-JUN-14 13:22:00 -04:00
query      | INSERT INTO appuser_tab_2 VALUES (2);
-[ RECORD 3 ]+-----
username    | appuser
ip_address  | 192.168.2.6
port        | 50098
machine_name |
date_time   | 20-JUN-14 13:39:00 -04:00
query      | CREATE TABLE appuser_tab_3 (f1 INTEGER);
-[ RECORD 4 ]+-----
username    | appuser
ip_address  | 192.168.2.6
port        | 50098
machine_name |
date_time   | 20-JUN-14 13:39:00 -04:00
query      | INSERT INTO appuser_tab_2 VALUES (1);
-[ RECORD 5 ]+-----
username    | appuser
ip_address  | 192.168.2.6
port        | 50098
machine_name |
date_time   | 20-JUN-14 13:39:00 -04:00
query      | SELECT * FROM appuser_tab_2 WHERE 'x' = 'x';

```

### 19.1.3 Common Maintenance Operations

The following describes how to perform other common operations.

You must be connected as a superuser to perform these operations and have included the `sqlprotect` schema in your search path.

#### Adding a Role to the Protected Roles List

To add a role to the protected roles list run `protect_role('rolename')` as shown in the following example:

```

edb=# SELECT protect_role('newuser');
protect_role
-----
(1 row)

```

#### Removing a Role From the Protected Roles List

To remove a role from the protected roles list, use either of the following functions:

```
unprotect_role('rolename')
```

```
unprotect_role(roleoid)
```

The variation of the function using the `OID` is useful if you remove the role using the `DROP ROLE` or `DROP USER` SQL statement before removing the role from the protected roles list. If a query on a SQL/Protect relation returns a value such as `unknown (OID=16458)` for the user name, use the `unprotect_role(roleoid)` form of the function to remove the entry for the deleted role from the protected roles list.

Removing a role using these functions also removes the role's protected relations list.

The statistics for a role that has been removed are not deleted until you use the [drop\\_stats function](#).

The offending queries for a role that has been removed are not deleted until you use the [drop\\_queries function](#).

The following is an example of the `unprotect_role` function:

```
edb=# SELECT unprotect_role('newuser');
unprotect_role
-----
(1 row)
```

Alternatively, the role could be removed by giving its OID of `16693`:

```
edb=# SELECT unprotect_role(16693);
unprotect_role
-----
(1 row)
```

## Setting the Types of Protection for a Role

You can change whether or not a role is protected from a certain type of SQL injection attack.

Change the Boolean value for the column in `edb_sql_protect` corresponding to the type of SQL injection attack for which protection of a role is to be disabled or enabled.

Be sure to qualify the following columns in your `WHERE` clause of the statement that updates `edb_sql_protect`:

- **dbid**. OID of the database for which you are making the change
- **roleid**. OID of the role for which you are changing the Boolean settings

For example, to allow a given role to issue utility commands, update the `allow_utility_cmds` column as follows:

```
UPDATE edb_sql_protect SET allow_utility_cmds = TRUE WHERE dbid =
13917 AND roleid = 16671;
```

You can verify the change was made by querying `edb_sql_protect` or `list_protected_users`. In the following query note that column `allow_utility_cmds` now contains `t`:

```
edb=# SELECT dbid, roleid, allow_utility_cmds FROM edb_sql_protect;
dbid | roleid | allow_utility_cmds
-----+-----+
13917 | 16671 | t
(1 row)
```

The updated rules take effect on new sessions started by the role since the change was made.

## Removing a Relation From the Protected Relations List

If SQL/Protect has learned that a given relation is accessible for a given role, you can subsequently remove that relation from the role's protected relations list.

Delete its entry from the `edb_sql_protect_rel` table using any of the following functions:

```
unprotect_rel('rolename', 'relname') unprotect_rel('rolename', 'schema', 'relname') unprotect_rel(roleoid, reloid)
```

If the relation given by `relname` is not in your current search path, specify the relation's schema using the second function format.

The third function format allows you to specify the OIDs of the role and relation, respectively, instead of their text names.

The following example illustrates the removal of the `public.emp` relation from the protected relations list of the role `appuser`:

```
edb=# SELECT unprotect_rel('appuser', 'public', 'emp');
unprotect_rel
```

```
-----  
(1 row)
```

The following query shows there is no longer an entry for the `emp` relation:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM list_protected_rels;
Database | Protected User | Schema | Name | Type | Owner
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
edb | appuser | public | dept | Table | enterprisedb
edb | appuser | public | appuser_tab | Table | appuser
(2 rows)
```

SQL/Protect will now issue a warning or completely block access (depending upon the setting of `edb_sql_protect.level`) whenever the role attempts to utilize that relation.

## Deleting Statistics

You can delete statistics from view `edb_sql_protect_stats` using either of the two following functions:

```
drop_stats('rolename')
```

```
drop_stats(roleoid)
```

The variation of the function using the OID is useful if you remove the role using the `DROP ROLE` or `DROP USER` SQL statement before deleting the role's statistics using `drop_stats('rolename')`. If a query on `edb_sql_protect_stats` returns a value such as `unknown (OID=16458)` for the user name, use the `drop_stats(roleoid)` form of the function to remove the deleted role's statistics from `edb_sql_protect_stats`.

The following is an example of the `drop_stats` function:

```
edb=# SELECT drop_stats('appuser');
drop_stats
```

```
-----  
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_sql_protect_stats;
```

```
username | superusers | relations | commands | tautology | dml
-----+-----+-----+-----+
(0 rows)
```

The following is an example of using the `drop_stats(roleoid)` form of the function when a role is dropped before deleting its statistics:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_sql_protect_stats;
      username      | superusers | relations | commands | tautology | dml
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
unknown (OID=16693) |      0 |      5 |      3 |      1 |  0
appuser            |      0 |      5 |      2 |      1 |  0
(2 rows)
```

```
edb=# SELECT drop_stats(16693);
drop_stats
-----
```

```
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_sql_protect_stats;
      username      | superusers | relations | commands | tautology | dml
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
appuser            |      0 |      5 |      2 |      1 |  0
(1 row)
```

## Deleting Offending Queries

You can delete offending queries from `view edb_sql_protect_queries` using either of the two following functions:

```
drop_queries('rolename')
```

```
drop_queries(roleoid)
```

The variation of the function using the OID is useful if you remove the role using the `DROP ROLE` or `DROP USER` SQL statement before deleting the role's offending queries using `drop_queries('rolename')`. If a query on `edb_sql_protect_queries` returns a value such as `unknown (OID=16454)` for the user name, use the `drop_queries(roleoid)` form of the function to remove the deleted role's offending queries from `edb_sql_protect_queries`.

The following is an example of the `drop_queries` function:

```
edb=# SELECT drop_queries('appuser');
drop_queries
-----
5
(1 row)
```

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_sql_protect_queries;
      username      | ip_address | port | machine_name | date_time | query
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
(0 rows)
```

The following is an example of using the `drop_queries(roleoid)` form of the function when a role is dropped before deleting its queries:

```

edb=# SELECT username, query FROM edb_sql_protect_queries;
   username   |           query
-----+-----
unknown (OID=16454) | CREATE TABLE appuser_tab_2 (f1 INTEGER);
unknown (OID=16454) | INSERT INTO appuser_tab_2 VALUES (2);
unknown (OID=16454) | CREATE TABLE appuser_tab_3 (f1 INTEGER);
unknown (OID=16454) | INSERT INTO appuser_tab_2 VALUES (1);
unknown (OID=16454) | SELECT * FROM appuser_tab_2 WHERE 'x' = 'x';
(5 rows)

edb=# SELECT drop_queries(16454);
drop_queries
-----
      5
(1 row)

edb=# SELECT * FROM edb_sql_protect_queries;
username | ip_address | port | machine_name | date_time | query
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
(0 rows)

```

## Disabling and Enabling Monitoring

If you wish to turn off SQL/Protect monitoring, modify the `postgresql.conf` file, setting the `edb_sql_protect.enabled` parameter to `off`. After saving the file, reload the server configuration to apply the settings.

If you wish to turn on SQL/Protect monitoring, modify the `postgresql.conf` file, setting the `edb_sql_protect.enabled` parameter to `on`. After saving the file, reload the server configuration to apply the settings.

### 19.1.4 Backing Up and Restoring a SQL/Protect Database

Backing up a database that is configured with SQL/Protect, and then restoring the backup file to a new database requires additional considerations to what is normally associated with backup and restore procedures. This is primarily due to the use of Object Identification numbers (OIDs) in the SQL/Protect tables as explained in this section.

#### Note

This section is applicable if your backup and restore procedures result in the re-creation of database objects in the new database with new OIDs such as is the case when using the `pg_dump` backup program.

If you are backing up your Advanced Server database server by simply using the operating system's copy utility to create a binary image of the Advanced Server data files (file system backup method), then this section does not apply.

#### Object Identification Numbers in SQL/Protect Tables

SQL/Protect uses two tables (`edb_sql_protect` and `edb_sql_protect_rel`) to store information on database objects such as databases, roles, and relations. References to these database objects in these tables are done using the

objects' OIDs, and not the objects' text names. The OID is a numeric data type used by Advanced Server to uniquely identify each database object.

When a database object is created, Advanced Server assigns an OID to the object, which is then used whenever a reference is needed to the object in the database catalogs. If you create the same database object in two databases, such as a table with the same `CREATE TABLE` statement, each table is assigned a different OID in each database.

In a backup and restore operation that results in the re-creation of the backed up database objects, the restored objects end up with different OIDs in the new database than what they were assigned in the original database. As a result, the OIDs referencing databases, roles, and relations stored in the `edb_sql_protect` and `edb_sql_protect_rel` tables are no longer valid when these tables are simply dumped to a backup file and then restored to a new database.

The following sections describe two functions, `export_sqlprotect` and `import_sqlprotect`, that are used specifically for backing up and restoring SQL/Protect tables in order to ensure the OIDs in the SQL/Protect tables reference the correct database objects after the tables are restored.

## Backing Up the Database

The following steps back up a database that has been configured with SQL/Protect.

**Step 1:** Create a backup file using `pg_dump`.

The following example shows a plain-text backup file named `/tmp/edb.dmp` created from database `edb` using the `pg_dump` utility program:

```
$ cd /usr/edb/as13/bin
$ ./pg_dump -U enterprisedb -Fp -f /tmp/edb.dmp edb
Password:
$
```

**Step 2:** Connect to the database as a superuser and export the SQL/Protect data using the `export_sqlprotect('sqlprotect_file')` function (where `sqlprotect_file` is the fully qualified path to a file where the SQL/Protect data is to be saved).

The `enterprisedb` operating system account (`postgres` if you installed Advanced Server in PostgreSQL compatibility mode) must have read and write access to the directory specified in `sqlprotect_file`.

```
edb=# SELECT sqlprotect.export_sqlprotect('/tmp/sqlprotect.dmp');
export_sqlprotect
-----
(1 row)
```

The files `/tmp/edb.dmp` and `/tmp/sqlprotect.dmp` comprise your total database backup.

## Restoring From the Backup Files

**Step 1:** Restore the backup file to the new database.

The following example uses the `psql` utility program to restore the plain-text backup file `/tmp/edb.dmp` to a newly created database named `newdb`:

```
$ /usr/edb/as13/bin/psql -d newdb -U enterprisedb -f /tmp/edb.dmp
Password for user enterprisedb:
SET
```

```
SET
SET
SET
SET
COMMENT
CREATE SCHEMA
.
.
```

**Step 2:** Connect to the new database as a superuser and delete all rows from the `edb_sql_protect_rel` table.

This step removes any existing rows in the `edb_sql_protect_rel` table that were backed up from the original database. These rows do not contain the correct OIDs relative to the database where the backup file has been restored:

```
$ /usr/edb/as13/bin/psql -d newdb -U enterprisedb
Password for user enterprisedb:
psql.bin (13.0.0, server 13.0.0)
Type "help" for help.
```

```
newdb=# DELETE FROM sqlprotect.edb_sql_protect_rel;
DELETE 2
```

**Step 3:** Delete all rows from the `edb_sql_protect` table.

This step removes any existing rows in the `edb_sql_protect` table that were backed up from the original database. These rows do not contain the correct OIDs relative to the database where the backup file has been restored:

```
newdb=# DELETE FROM sqlprotect.edb_sql_protect;
DELETE 1
```

**Step 4:** Delete any statistics that may exist for the database.

This step removes any existing statistics that may exist for the database to which you are restoring the backup. The following query displays any existing statistics:

```
newdb=# SELECT * FROM sqlprotect.edb_sql_protect_stats;
username | superusers | relations | commands | tautology | dml
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
(0 rows)
```

For each row that appears in the preceding query, use the `drop_stats` function specifying the role name of the entry.

For example, if a row appeared with `appuser` in the `username` column, issue the following command to remove it:

```
newdb=# SELECT sqlprotect.drop_stats('appuser');
drop_stats
-----
(1 row)
```

**Step 5:** Delete any offending queries that may exist for the database.

This step removes any existing queries that may exist for the database to which you are restoring the backup. The following query displays any existing queries:

```
edb=# SELECT * FROM sqlprotect.edb_sql_protect_queries;
```

```
username | ip_address | port | machine_name | date_time | query
-----+-----+-----+-----+
(0 rows)
```

For each row that appears in the preceding query, use the `drop_queries` function specifying the role name of the entry.

For example, if a row appeared with `appuser` in the `username` column, issue the following command to remove it:

```
edb=# SELECT sqlprotect.drop_queries('appuser');
drop_queries
-----
(1 row)
```

**Step 6:** Make sure the role names that were protected by SQL/Protect in the original database exist in the database server where the new database resides.

If the original and new databases reside in the same database server, then nothing needs to be done assuming you have not deleted any of these roles from the database server.

**Step 7:** Run the function `import_sqlprotect('sqlprotect_file')` where `sqlprotect_file` is the fully qualified path to the file you created in [Step 2](#) of [Backing Up the Database](#).

```
newdb=# SELECT sqlprotect.import_sqlprotect('/tmp/sqlprotect.dmp');
import_sqlprotect
-----
(1 row)
```

Tables `edb_sql_protect` and `edb_sql_protect_rel` are now populated with entries containing the OIDs of the database objects as assigned in the new database. The statistics view `edb_sql_protect_stats` also now displays the statistics imported from the original database.

The SQL/Protect tables and statistics are now properly restored for this database. This is verified by the following queries on the Advanced Server system catalogs:

```
newdb=# SELECT datname, oid FROM pg_database;
datname | oid
-----+-----
template1 | 1
template0 | 13909
edb | 13917
newdb | 16679
(4 rows)
```

```
newdb=# SELECT rolname, oid FROM pg_roles;
rolname | oid
-----+-----
enterprisedb | 10
appuser | 16671
newuser | 16678
(3 rows)
```

```
newdb=# SELECT relname, oid FROM pg_class WHERE relname IN
('dept','emp','appuser_tab');
relname | oid
-----+-----
appuser_tab | 16803
```

```
dept    | 16809
emp     | 16812
(3 rows)
```

```
newdb=# SELECT * FROM sqlprotect.edb_sql_protect;
dbid | roleid | protect_relations | allow_utility_cmds | allow_tautology |
allow_empty_dml
-----+-----+-----+-----+-
16679 | 16671 | t           | f           | f
(1 row)
```

```
newdb=# SELECT * FROM sqlprotect.edb_sql_protect_rel;
dbid | roleid | relid
-----+-----+
16679 | 16671 | 16809
16679 | 16671 | 16803
(2 rows)
```

```
newdb=# SELECT * FROM sqlprotect.edb_sql_protect_stats;
username | superusers | relations | commands | tautology | dml
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
appuser |      0 |      5 |      2 |      1 |  0
(1 row)
```

```
newedb=# \x
Expanded display is on.
nwedb=# SELECT * FROM sqlprotect.edb_sql_protect_queries;
-[ RECORD 1 ]+-----
username | appuser
ip_address |
port     |
machine_name |
date_time | 20-JUN-14 13:21:00 -04:00
query    | CREATE TABLE appuser_tab_2 (f1 INTEGER);
-[ RECORD 2 ]+-----
username | appuser
ip_address |
port     |
machine_name |
date_time | 20-JUN-14 13:22:00 -04:00
query    | INSERT INTO appuser_tab_2 VALUES (2);
-[ RECORD 3 ]+-----
username | appuser
ip_address | 192.168.2.6
port     | 50098
machine_name |
date_time | 20-JUN-14 13:39:00 -04:00
query    | CREATE TABLE appuser_tab_3 (f1 INTEGER);
-[ RECORD 4 ]+-----
username | appuser
ip_address | 192.168.2.6
port     | 50098
machine_name |
date_time | 20-JUN-14 13:39:00 -04:00
```

```

query    | INSERT INTO appuser_tab_2 VALUES (1);
-[ RECORD 5 ]+-----
username  | appuser
ip_address | 192.168.2.6
port     | 50098
machine_name |
date_time | 20-JUN-14 13:39:00 -04:00
query    | SELECT * FROM appuser_tab_2 WHERE 'x' = 'x';

```

Note the following about the columns in tables `edb_sql_protect` and `edb_sql_protect_rel`:

- **dbid.** Matches the value in the `oid` column from `pg_database` for `newdb`
- **roleid.** Matches the value in the `oid` column from `pg_roles` for `appuser`

Also note that in table `edb_sql_protect_rel`, the values in the `relid` column match the values in the `oid` column of `pg_class` for relations `dept` and `appuser_tab`.

**Step 8:** Verify that the SQL/Protect configuration parameters are set as desired in the `postgresql.conf` file for the database server running the new database. Restart the database server or reload the configuration file as appropriate.

You can now monitor the database using SQL/Protect.

## 19.2 Virtual Private Database

**Virtual Private Database** is a type of fine-grained access control using security policies. **Fine-grained access control** means that access to data can be controlled down to specific rows as defined by the security policy.

The rules that encode a security policy are defined in a *policy function*, which is an SPL function with certain input parameters and return value. The *security policy* is the named association of the policy function to a particular database object, typically a table.

In Advanced Server, the policy function can be written in any language supported by Advanced Server such as SQL and PL/pgSQL in addition to SPL.

### Note

The database objects currently supported by Advanced Server Virtual Private Database are tables. Policies cannot be applied to views or synonyms.

The advantages of using Virtual Private Database are the following:

- Provides a fine-grained level of security. Database object level privileges given by the `GRANT` command determine access privileges to the entire instance of a database object, while Virtual Private Database provides access control for the individual rows of a database object instance.
- A different security policy can be applied depending upon the type of SQL command (`INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or SELECT`).
- The security policy can vary dynamically for each applicable SQL command affecting the database object depending upon factors such as the session user of the application accessing the database object.
- Invocation of the security policy is transparent to all applications that access the database object and thus, individual applications do not have to be modified to apply the security policy.
- Once a security policy is enabled, it is not possible for any application (including new applications) to circumvent the security policy except by the system privilege noted by the following.
- Even superusers cannot circumvent the security policy except by the system privilege noted by the following.

## Note

The only way security policies can be circumvented is if the **EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY** system privilege has been granted to a user. The **EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY** privilege should be granted with extreme care as a user with this privilege is exempted from all policies in the database.

The **DBMS\_RLS** package provides procedures to create policies, remove policies, enable policies, and disable policies.

## 19.3 sslutils

**sslutils** is a Postgres extension that provides SSL certificate generation functions to Advanced Server for use by the EDB Postgres Enterprise Manager server. **sslutils** is installed by using the **edb-asxx-server-sslutils** RPM package where **xx** is the Advanced Server version number.

The **sslutils** package provides the functions shown in the following sections.

In these sections, each parameter in the function's parameter list is described by **parameter n** under the **Parameters** subsection where **n** refers to the **nth** ordinal position (for example, first, second, third, etc.) within the function's parameter list.

### openssl\_rsa\_generate\_key

The **openssl\_rsa\_generate\_key** function generates an RSA private key. The function signature is:

```
openssl_rsa_generate_key(<integer>) RETURNS <text>
```

When invoking the function, pass the number of bits as an integer value; the function returns the generated key.

### openssl\_rsa\_key\_to\_csr

The **openssl\_rsa\_key\_to\_csr** function generates a certificate signing request (CSR). The signature is:

```
openssl_rsa_key_to_csr(<text>, <text>, <text>, <text>, <text>, <text>,
<text>) RETURNS text
```

The function generates and returns the certificate signing request.

#### Parameters

##### parameter 1

The name of the RSA key file.

##### parameter 2

The common name (e.g., **agentN**) of the agent that will use the signing request.

##### parameter 3

The name of the country in which the server resides.

**parameter 4**

The name of the state in which the server resides.

**parameter 5**

The location (city) within the state in which the server resides.

**parameter 6**

The name of the organization unit requesting the certificate.

**parameter 7**

The email address of the user requesting the certificate.

**`openssl_csr_to_crt`**

The `openssl_csr_to_crt` function generates a self-signed certificate or a certificate authority certificate. The signature is:

```
openssl_csr_to_crt(<text>, <text>, <text>) RETURNS <text>
```

The function returns the self-signed certificate or certificate authority certificate.

**Parameters****parameter 1**

The name of the certificate signing the request.

**parameter 2**

The path to the certificate authority certificate, or `NULL` if generating a certificate authority certificate.

**parameter 3**

The path to the certificate authority's private key or (if argument 2 is `NULL`) the path to a private key.

**`openssl_rsa_generate_crl`**

The `openssl_rsa_generate_crl` function generates a default certificate revocation list. The signature is:

```
openssl_rsa_generate_crl(<text>, <text>) RETURNS <text>
```

The function returns the certificate revocation list.

**Parameters****parameter 1**

The path to the certificate authority certificate.

**parameter 2**

The path to the certificate authority private key.

## 19.4 Data Redaction

*Data redaction* limits sensitive data exposure by dynamically changing data as it is displayed for certain users.

For example, a social security number (SSN) is stored as `021-23-9567`. Privileged users can see the full SSN, while other users only see the last four digits `xxx-xx-9567`.

Data redaction is implemented by defining a function for each field to which redaction is to be applied. The function returns the value that should be displayed to the users subject to the data redaction.

So for example, for the SSN field, the redaction function would return `xxx-xx-9567` for an input SSN of `021-23-9567`.

For a salary field, a redaction function would always return `$0.00` regardless of the input salary value.

These functions are then incorporated into a redaction policy by using the `CREATE REDACTION POLICY` command. This command specifies the table on which the policy applies, the table columns to be affected by the specified redaction functions, expressions to determine which session users are to be affected, and other options.

The `edb_data_redaction` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file then determines whether or not data redaction is to be applied.

By default, the parameter is enabled so the redaction policy is in effect and the following occurs:

- Superusers and the table owner bypass data redaction and see the original data.
- All other users get the redaction policy applied and see the reformatted data.

If the parameter is disabled by having it set to `FALSE` during the session, then the following occurs:

- Superusers and the table owner bypass data redaction and see the original data.
- All other users get will get an error.

A redaction policy can be changed by using the `ALTER REDACTION POLICY` command, or it can be eliminated using the `DROP REDACTION POLICY` command.

The redaction policy commands are described in more detail in the subsequent sections.

### CREATE REDACTION POLICY

`CREATE REDACTION POLICY` defines a new data redaction policy for a table.

#### Synopsis

```
CREATE REDACTION POLICY <name> ON <table_name>
[ FOR ( <expression> ) ]
[ ADD [ COLUMN ] <column_name> USING <funcname_clause>
[ WITH OPTIONS ( [ <redaction_option>
 [, <redaction_option> ] )
]
] [, ...]
```

where `redaction_option` is:

```
{ SCOPE <scope_value> |
EXCEPTION <exception_value> }
```

## Description

The `CREATE REDACTION POLICY` command defines a new column-level security policy for a table by redacting column data using redaction function. A newly created data redaction policy will be enabled by default. The policy can be disabled using `ALTER REDACTION POLICY ... DISABLE`.

### `FOR ( expression )`

This form adds a redaction policy expression.

### `ADD [ COLUMN ]`

This optional form adds a column of the table to the data redaction policy. The `USING` specifies a redaction function expression. Multiple `ADD [ COLUMN ]` form can be used, if you want to add multiple columns of the table to the data redaction policy being created. The optional `WITH OPTIONS ( ... )` clause specifies a scope and/or an exception to the data redaction policy to be applied. If the scope and/or exception are not specified, the default values for scope and exception will be `query` and `none` respectively.

## Parameters

### `name`

The name of the data redaction policy to be created. This must be distinct from the name of any other existing data redaction policy for the table.

### `table_name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table the data redaction policy applies to.

### `expression`

The data redaction policy expression. No redaction will be applied if this expression evaluates to false.

### `column_name`

Name of the existing column of the table on which the data redaction policy being created.

### `funcname_clause`

The data redaction function which decides how to compute the redacted column value. Return type of the redaction function should be same as the column type on which data redaction policy being added.

### `scope_value`

The scope identified the query part where redaction to be applied for the column. Scope value could be `query`, `top_tlist` or `top_tlist_or_error`. If the scope is `query` then, the redaction applied on the column irrespective of where it appears in the query. If the scope is `top_tlist` then, the redaction applied on the column only when it appears in the query's top target list. If the scope is `top_tlist_or_error` the behavior will be same as the `top_tlist`, but throws an errors when the column appears anywhere else in the query.

### `exception_value`

The exception identified the query part where redaction to be exempted. Exception value could be `none`, `equal` or `leakproof`. If exception is `none` then there is no exemption. If exception is `equal`, then the column is not redacted when used in an equality test. If exception is `leakproof`, the column will is not redacted when a leakproof function is applied to it.

## Notes:

You must be the owner of a table to create or change data redaction policies for it.

The superuser and the table owner are exempt from the data redaction policy.

## Examples

Below is an example of how this feature can be used in production environments. Create the components for a data redaction policy on the `employees` table:

```

CREATE TABLE employees (
    id      integer GENERATED BY DEFAULT AS IDENTITY PRIMARY KEY,
    name    varchar(40) NOT NULL,
    ssn     varchar(11) NOT NULL,
    phone   varchar(10),
    birthday date,
    salary   money,
    email    varchar(100)
);

-- Insert some data
INSERT INTO employees (name, ssn, phone, birthday, salary, email)
VALUES
('Sally Sample', '020-78-9345', '5081234567', '1961-02-02', 51234.34,
'sally.sample@enterprisedb.com'),
('Jane Doe', '123-33-9345', '6171234567', '1963-02-14', 62500.00,
'jane.doe@gmail.com'),
('Bill Foo', '123-89-9345', '9781234567', '1963-02-14', 45350,
'william.foe@hotmail.com');

-- Create a user hr who can see all the data in employees
CREATE USER hr;
-- Create a normal user
CREATE USER alice;
GRANT ALL ON employees TO hr, alice;

-- Create redaction function in which actual redaction logic resides
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION redact_ssn (ssn varchar(11)) RETURN varchar(11) IS
BEGIN
/* replaces 020-12-9876 with xxx-xx-9876 */
    return overlay (ssn placing 'xxx-xx' from 1) ;
END;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION redact_salary () RETURN money IS BEGIN return
0::money;
END;

```

Now create a data redaction policy on `employees` to redact column `ssn` which should be accessible in equality condition and `salary` with default scope and exception. The redaction policy will be exempt for the `hr` user.

```

CREATE REDACTION POLICY redact_policy_personal_info ON employees FOR
(session_user != 'hr')
ADD COLUMN ssn USING redact_ssn(ssn) WITH OPTIONS (SCOPE query,
EXCEPTION equal),
ADD COLUMN salary USING redact_salary();

```

The visible data for the `hr` user will be:

```

-- hr can view all columns data
edb=# \c edb hr
edb=> SELECT * FROM employees;

```

```

id | name      | ssn       | phone     | birthday      |
salary   | email
-----+-----+-----+-----+---+
-----+
1 | Sally Sample | 020-78-9345 | 5081234567 | 02-FEB-61 00:00:00 |
$51,234.34 | sally.sample@enterprisedb.com
2 | Jane Doe    | 123-33-9345 | 6171234567 | 14-FEB-63 00:00:00 |
$62,500.00 | jane.doe@gmail.com
3 | Bill Foo    | 123-89-9345 | 9781234567 | 14-FEB-63 00:00:00 |
$45,350.00 | william.foe@hotmail.com
(3 rows)

```

The visible data for the normal user `alice` will be:

```

-- Normal user cannot see salary and ssn number.
edb=> \c edb alice
edb=> SELECT * FROM employees;
id | name      | ssn       | phone     | birthday      | salary |
email
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+---+
-----+
1 | Sally Sample | xxx-xx-9345 | 5081234567 | 02-FEB-61 00:00:00 | $0.00 |
sally.sample@enterprisedb.com
2 | Jane Doe    | xxx-xx-9345 | 6171234567 | 14-FEB-63 00:00:00 | $0.00 |
jane.doe@gmail.com
3 | Bill Foo    | xxx-xx-9345 | 9781234567 | 14-FEB-63 00:00:00 | $0.00 |
william.foe@hotmail.com
(3 rows)

```

But `ssn` data is accessible when it used for equality check due to `exception_value` setting.

```

-- Get ssn number starting from 123
edb=> SELECT * FROM employees WHERE substring(ssn from 0 for 4) = '123';
id | name      | ssn       | phone     | birthday      | salary |
email
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+---+
-----+
2 | Jane Doe | xxx-xx-9345 | 6171234567 | 14-FEB-63 00:00:00 | $0.00 |
jane.doe@gmail.com
3 | Bill Foo | xxx-xx-9345 | 9781234567 | 14-FEB-63 00:00:00 | $0.00 |
william.foe@hotmail.com
(2 rows)

```

## Caveats

1. The data redaction policy created on inheritance hierarchies will not be cascaded. For example, if the data redaction policy is created for a parent, it will not be applied to the child table, which inherits it and vice versa. Someone who has access to these child tables can see the non-redacted data. For information about inheritance hierarchies, see [Inheritance](#) in the PostgreSQL Core Documentation available at:
  - | <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/ddl-inherit.html>
2. If the superuser or the table owner has created any materialized view on the table and has provided the access rights `GRANT SELECT` on the table and the materialized view to any non-superuser, then the non-superuser will be able to access the non-redacted data through the materialized view.
3. The objects accessed in the redaction function body should be schema qualified otherwise `pg_dump` might

fail.

## Compatibility

`CREATE REDACTION POLICY` is an EDB extension.

## See Also

`ALTER REDACTION POLICY`, `DROP REDACTION POLICY`

## ALTER REDACTION POLICY

`ALTER REDACTION POLICY` changes the definition of data redaction policy for a table.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER REDACTION POLICY <name> ON <table_name> RENAME TO <new_name>
```

```
ALTER REDACTION POLICY <name> ON <table_name> FOR ( <expression> )
```

```
ALTER REDACTION POLICY <name> ON <table_name> { ENABLE | DISABLE }
```

```
ALTER REDACTION POLICY <name> ON <table_name>
ADD [ COLUMN ] <column_name> USING <funcname_clause>
[ WITH OPTIONS ( [ <redaction_option>
  [, <redaction_option> ] )
]
```

```
ALTER REDACTION POLICY <name> ON <table_name>
MODIFY [ COLUMN ] <column_name>
{
  [ USING <funcname_clause> ]
  |
  [ WITH OPTIONS ( [ <redaction_option>
    [, <redaction_option> ] )
]
}
```

```
ALTER REDACTION POLICY <name> ON <table_name>
DROP [ COLUMN ] <column_name>
```

where `redaction_option` is:

```
{ SCOPE <scope_value> |
EXCEPTION <exception_value> }
```

### Description

`ALTER REDACTION POLICY` changes the definition of an existing data redaction policy.

To use `ALTER REDACTION POLICY`, you must own the table that the data redaction policy applies to.

`FOR ( expression )`

This form adds or replaces the data redaction policy expression.

**ENABLE**

Enables the previously disabled data redaction policy for a table.

**DISABLE**

Disables the data redaction policy for a table.

**ADD [ COLUMN ]**

This form adds a column of the table to the existing redaction policy. See [CREATE REDACTION POLICY](#) for the details.

**MODIFY [ COLUMN ]**

This form modifies the data redaction policy on the column of the table. You can update the redaction function clause and/or the redaction options for the column. The [USING](#) clause specifies the redaction function expression to be updated and the [WITH OPTIONS \( ... \)](#) clause specifies the scope and/or the exception. For more details on the redaction function clause, the redaction scope and the redaction exception, see [CREATE REDACTION POLICY](#).

**DROP [ COLUMN ]**

This form removes the column of the table from the data redaction policy.

**Parameters****name**

The name of an existing data redaction policy to alter.

**table\_name**

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table that the data redaction policy is on.

**new\_name**

The new name for the data redaction policy. This must be distinct from the name of any other existing data redaction policy for the table.

**expression**

The data redaction policy expression.

**column\_name**

Name of existing column of the table on which the data redaction policy being altered or dropped.

**funcname\_clause**

The data redaction function expression for the column. See [CREATE REDACTION POLICY](#) for details.

**scope\_value**

The scope identified the query part where redaction to be applied for the column. See [CREATE REDACTION POLICY](#) for the details.

**exception\_value**

The exception identified the query part where redaction to be exempted. See [CREATE REDACTION POLICY](#) for the details.

## Examples

Update data redaction policy called `redact_policy_personal_info` on the table named `employees`:

```
ALTER REDACTION POLICY redact_policy_personal_info ON employees
FOR (session_user != 'hr' AND session_user != 'manager');
```

And to update data redaction function for the column `ssn` in the same policy:

```
ALTER REDACTION POLICY redact_policy_personal_info ON employees
MODIFY COLUMN ssn USING redact_ssn_new(ssn);
```

## Compatibility

`ALTER REDACTION POLICY` is an EDB extension.

## See Also

[CREATE REDACTION POLICY](#), [DROP REDACTION POLICY](#)

## DROP REDACTION POLICY

`DROP REDACTION POLICY` removes a data redaction policy from a table.

### Synopsis

```
DROP REDACTION POLICY [ IF EXISTS ] <name> ON <table_name>
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

### Description

`DROP REDACTION POLICY` removes the specified data redaction policy from the table.

To use `DROP REDACTION POLICY`, you must own the table that the redaction policy applies to.

### Parameters

`IF EXISTS`

Do not throw an error if the data redaction policy does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

`name`

The name of the data redaction policy to drop.

`table_name`

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table that the data redaction policy is on.

`CASCADE`

`RESTRICT`

These keywords do not have any effect, since there are no dependencies on the data redaction policies.

## Examples

To drop the data redaction policy called `redact_policy_personal_info` on the table named `employees`:

```
DROP REDACTION POLICY redact_policy_personal_info ON employees;
```

## Compatibilities

`DROP REDACTION POLICY` is an EDB extension.

## See Also

`CREATE REDACTION POLICY`, `ALTER REDACTION POLICY`

## System Catalogs

This section describes the system catalogs that store the redaction policy information.

### edb\_redaction\_column

The `edb_redaction_column` system catalog stores information about the data redaction policy attached to the columns of a table.

Column	Type	References	Description
oid	oid		Row identifier (hidden attribute, must be explicitly selected)
rdpolicyid	oid	<code>edb_redaction_policy.oid</code>	The data redaction policy applies to the described column
rdrelid	oid	<code>pg_class.oid</code>	The table that the described column belongs to
rdattnum	int2		The number of the described column
rdscope	int2		The redaction scope: 1 = query, 2 = top_tlist, 4 = top_tlist_or_error
rdexception	<code>pg_node_tree</code>	<code>pg_attribute.attnum</code>	The redaction exception: 8 = none, 16 = equal, 32 = leakproof
rdfuncexpr			Data redaction function expression

#### Note

The described column will be redacted if the redaction policy `edb_redaction_column.rdpolicyid` on the table is enabled and the redaction policy expression `edb_redaction_policy.rdexpr` evaluates to `true`.

### edb\_redaction\_policy

The catalog `edb_redaction_policy` stores information about the redaction policies for tables.

Column	Type	References	Description
oid	oid		Row identifier (hidden attribute, must be explicitly selected)
rdname	name		The name of the data redaction policy
rdrelid	oid		The table to which the data redaction policy applies
rdenable	boolean		Is the data redaction policy enabled?
rdexpr	<code>pg_node_tree</code>	<code>pg_class.oid</code>	The data redaction policy expression

#### Note

The data redaction policy applies for the table if it is enabled and the expression ever evaluated true.

## 20 Advanced Server Upgrade Guide

The EDB Postgres Advanced Server Upgrade Guide is a comprehensive guide about upgrading EDB Postgres Advanced Server (Advanced Server). In this guide you will find detailed information about using:

- `pg_upgrade` to upgrade from an earlier version of Advanced Server to Advanced Server 13.
- `yum` to perform a minor version upgrade on a Linux host.
- `StackBuilder Plus` to perform a minor version upgrade on a Windows host.

### 20.1 Supported Platforms

For information about the platforms and versions supported by Advanced Server, visit the EDB website at:

<https://www.enterprisedb.com/services-support/edb-supported-products-and-platforms#epas>

### 20.2 Limitations

The following limitations apply to EDB Postgres Advanced Server:

- The `data` directory of a production database should not be stored on an NFS file system.
- The `pg_upgrade` utility cannot upgrade a partitioned table if a foreign key refers to the partitioned table.
- If you are upgrading from the version 9.4 server or a lower version of Advanced Server, and you use partitioned tables that include a `SUBPARTITION BY` clause, you must use `pg_dump` and `pg_restore` to upgrade an existing Advanced Server installation to a later version of Advanced Server. To upgrade, you must:
  1. Use `pg_dump` to preserve the content of the subpartitioned table.
  2. Drop the table from the Advanced Server 9.4 database or a lower version of Advanced Server database.
  3. Use `pg_upgrade` to upgrade the rest of the Advanced Server database to a more recent version.
  4. Use `pg_restore` to restore the subpartitioned table to the latest upgraded Advanced Server database.
- If you perform an upgrade of the Advanced Server installation, you must rebuild any hash-partitioned table on the upgraded server.

### 20.3 Upgrading an Installation With `pg_upgrade`

While minor upgrades between versions are fairly simple and require only the installation of new executables, past major version upgrades has been both expensive and time consuming. `pg_upgrade` facilitates migration between any version of Advanced Server (version 9.0 or later), and any subsequent release of Advanced Server that is supported on the same platform.

Without `pg_upgrade`, to migrate from an earlier version of Advanced Server to Advanced Server 13, you must export all of your data using `pg_dump`, install the new release, run `initdb` to create a new cluster, and then import

your old data.

`pg_upgrade` can reduce both the amount of time required and the disk space required for many major-version upgrades.

The `pg_upgrade` utility performs an in-place transfer of existing data between Advanced Server and any subsequent version.

Several factors determine if an in-place upgrade is practical:

- The on-disk representation of user-defined tables must not change between the original version and the upgraded version.
- The on-disk representation of data types must not change between the original version and the upgraded version.
- To upgrade between major versions of Advanced Server with `pg_upgrade`, both versions must share a common binary representation for each data type. Therefore, you cannot use `pg_upgrade` to migrate from a 32-bit to a 64-bit Linux platform.

Before performing a version upgrade, `pg_upgrade` will verify that the two clusters (the old cluster and the new cluster) are compatible.

If the upgrade involves a change in the on-disk representation of database objects or data, or involves a change in the binary representation of data types, `pg_upgrade` will be unable to perform the upgrade; to upgrade, you will have to `pg_dump` the old data and then import that data into the new cluster.

The `pg_upgrade` executable is distributed with Advanced Server 13, and is installed as part of the `Database Server` component; no additional installation or configuration steps are required.

### 20.3.1 Performing an Upgrade

To upgrade an earlier version of Advanced Server to the current version, you must:

- Install the current version of Advanced Server. The new installation must contain the same supporting server components as the old installation.
- Empty the target database or create a new target cluster with `initdb`.
- Place the `pg_hba.conf` file for both databases in `trust` authentication mode (to avoid authentication conflicts).
- Shut down the old and new Advanced Server services.
- Invoke the `pg_upgrade` utility.

When `pg_upgrade` starts, it performs a compatibility check to ensure that all required executables are present and contain the expected version numbers. The verification process also checks the old and new `$PGDATA` directories to ensure that the expected files and subdirectories are in place. If the verification process succeeds, `pg_upgrade` starts the old `postmaster` and runs `pg_dumpall --schema-only` to capture the metadata contained in the old cluster. The script produced by `pg_dumpall` is used in a later step to recreate all user-defined objects in the new cluster.

Note that the script produced by `pg_dumpall` recreates only user-defined objects and not system-defined objects. The new cluster will already contain the system-defined objects created by the latest version of Advanced Server.

After extracting the metadata from the old cluster, `pg_upgrade` performs the bookkeeping tasks required to sync the new cluster with the existing data.

`pg_upgrade` runs the `pg_dumpall` script against the new cluster to create (empty) database objects of the same shape and type as those found in the old cluster. Then, `pg_upgrade` links or copies each table and index from the old cluster to the new cluster.

If you are upgrading from a version of Advanced Server prior to 9.5 to Advanced Server 13 and have installed the `edb_dblink_oci` or `edb_dblink_libpq` extension, you must drop the extension before performing an upgrade. To drop the extension, connect to the server with the `psql` or `PEM` client, and invoke the commands:

```
DROP EXTENSION edb_dblink_oci;
DROP EXTENSION edb_dblink_libpq;
```

When you have completed upgrading, you can use the `CREATE EXTENSION` command to add the current versions of the extensions to your installation.

### 20.3.1.1 Linking versus Copying

When invoking `pg_upgrade`, you can use a command-line option to specify whether `pg_upgrade` should *copy* or *link* each table and index in the old cluster to the new cluster.

Linking is much faster because `pg_upgrade` simply creates a second name (a hard link) for each file in the cluster; linking also requires no extra workspace because `pg_upgrade` does not make a copy of the original data. When linking the old cluster and the new cluster, the old and new clusters share the data; note that after starting the new cluster, your data can no longer be used with the previous version of Advanced Server.

If you choose to copy data from the old cluster to the new cluster, `pg_upgrade` will still reduce the amount of time required to perform an upgrade compared to the traditional `dump/restore` procedure. `pg_upgrade` uses a file-at-a-time mechanism to copy data files from the old cluster to the new cluster (versus the row-by-row mechanism used by `dump/restore`). When you use `pg_upgrade`, you avoid building indexes in the new cluster; each index is simply copied from the old cluster to the new cluster. Finally, using a `dump/restore` procedure to upgrade requires a great deal of workspace to hold the intermediate text-based dump of all of your data, while `pg_upgrade` requires very little extra workspace.

Data that is stored in user-defined tablespaces is not copied to the new cluster; it stays in the same location in the file system, but is copied into a subdirectory whose name reflects the version number of the new cluster. To manually relocate files that are stored in a tablespace after upgrading, move the files to the new location and update the symbolic links (located in the `pg_tblspc` directory under your cluster's `data` directory) to point to the files.

### 20.3.2 Invoking pg\_upgrade

When invoking `pg_upgrade`, you must specify the location of the old and new cluster's `PGDATA` and executable (`/bin`) directories, as well as the name of the Advanced Server superuser, and the ports on which the installations are listening. A typical call to invoke `pg_upgrade` to migrate from Advanced Server 12 to Advanced Server 13 takes the form:

```
pg_upgrade
--old-datadir <path_to_12_data_directory>
--new-datadir <path_to_13_data_directory>
--user <superuser_name>
--old-bindir <path_to_12_bin_directory>
--new-bindir <path_to_13_bin_directory>
--old-port <12_port> --new-port <13_port>
```

Where:

`--old-datadir path_to_12_data_directory`

Use the `--old-datadir` option to specify the complete path to the `data` directory within the Advanced Server 12 installation.

`--new-datadir path_to_13_data_directory`

Use the `--new-datadir` option to specify the complete path to the `data` directory within the Advanced Server 13 installation.

`--username superuser_name`

Include the `--username` option to specify the name of the Advanced Server superuser. The superuser name should be the same in both versions of Advanced Server. By default, when Advanced Server is installed in Oracle mode, the superuser is named `enterprisedb`. If installed in PostgreSQL mode, the superuser is named `postgres`.

If the Advanced Server superuser name is not the same in both clusters, the clusters will not pass the `pg_upgrade` consistency check.

`--old-bindir path_to_12_bin_directory`

Use the `--old-bindir` option to specify the complete path to the `bin` directory in the Advanced Server 12 installation.

`--new-bindir path_to_13_bin_directory`

Use the `--new-bindir` option to specify the complete path to the `bin` directory in the Advanced Server 13 installation.

`--old-port 12_port`

Include the `--old-port` option to specify the port on which Advanced Server 12 listens for connections.

`--new-port 13_port`

Include the `--new-port` option to specify the port on which Advanced Server 13 listens for connections.

### 20.3.2.1 Command Line Options - Reference

`pg_upgrade` accepts the following command line options; each option is available in a long form or a short form:

`-b path_to_old_bin_directory`

`--old-bindir path_to_old_bin_directory`

Use the `-b` or `--old-bindir` keyword to specify the location of the old cluster's executable directory.

`-B path_to_new_bin_directory`

`--new-bindir path_to_new_bin_directory`

Use the `-B` or `--new-bindir` keyword to specify the location of the new cluster's executable directory.

`-c`

`--check`

Include the `-c` or `--check` keyword to specify that `pg_upgrade` should perform a consistency check on the old and

new cluster without performing a version upgrade.

```
-d path_to_old_data_directory
--old-datadir path_to_old_data_directory
```

Use the `-d` or `--old-datadir` keyword to specify the location of the old cluster's `data` directory.

```
-D path_to_new_data_directory
--new-datadir path_to_new_data_directory
```

Use the `-D` or `--new-datadir` keyword to specify the location of the new cluster's `data` directory.

Data that is stored in user-defined tablespaces is not copied to the new cluster; it stays in the same location in the file system, but is copied into a subdirectory whose name reflects the version number of the new cluster. To manually relocate files that are stored in a tablespace after upgrading, you must move the files to the new location and update the symbolic links (located in the `pg_tblspc` directory under your cluster's `data` directory) to point to the files.

```
-j
--jobs
```

Include the `-j` or `--jobs` keyword to specify the number of simultaneous processes or threads to use during the upgrade.

```
-k
--link
```

Include the `-k` or `--link` keyword to create a hard link from the new cluster to the old cluster. See [Linking versus Copying](#) for more information about using a symbolic link.

```
-o options
--old-options options
```

Use the `-o` or `--old-options` keyword to specify options that will be passed to the old `postgres` command. Enclose options in single or double quotes to ensure that they are passed as a group.

```
-O options
--new-options options
```

Use the `-O` or `--new-options` keyword to specify options to be passed to the new `postgres` command. Enclose options in single or double quotes to ensure that they are passed as a group.

```
-p old_port_number
--old-port old_port_number
```

Include the `-p` or `--old-port` keyword to specify the port number of the Advanced Server installation that you are upgrading.

```
-P new_port_number
--new-port new_port_number
```

Include the `-P` or `--new-port` keyword to specify the port number of the new Advanced Server installation.

**Note:** If the original Advanced Server installation is using port number [5444](#) when you invoke the Advanced Server 13 installer, the installer will recommend using listener port [5445](#) for the new installation of Advanced Server.

```
-r
--retain
```

During the upgrade process, `pg_upgrade` creates four append-only log files; when the upgrade is completed, `pg_upgrade` deletes these files. Include the `-r` or `--retain` option to specify that the server should retain the

`pg_upgrade` log files.

```
-U user_name
--username user_name
```

Include the `-U` or `--username` keyword to specify the name of the Advanced Server database superuser. The same superuser must exist in both clusters.

```
-v
--verbose
```

Include the `-v` or `--verbose` keyword to enable verbose output during the upgrade process.

```
-V
--version
```

Use the `-V` or `--version` keyword to display version information for `pg_upgrade`.

```
-?
-h
--help
```

Use `-?, -h`, or `--help` options to display `pg_upgrade` help information.

### 20.3.3 Upgrading to Advanced Server 13

You can use `pg_upgrade` to upgrade from an existing installation of Advanced Server into the cluster built by the Advanced Server 13 installer or into an alternate cluster created using the `initdb` command. In this section, we will provide the details of upgrading into the cluster provided by the installer.

The basic steps to perform an upgrade into an empty cluster created with the `initdb` command are the same as the steps to upgrade into the cluster created by the Advanced Server 13 installer, but you can omit Step 2 ([Empty the edb database](#)), and substitute the location of the alternate cluster when specifying a target cluster for the upgrade.

If a problem occurs during the upgrade process, you can revert to the previous version. See [Reverting to the old cluster](#) Section for detailed information about this process.

You must be an operating system superuser or Windows Administrator to perform an Advanced Server upgrade.

#### Step 1 - Install the New Server

Install Advanced Server 13, specifying the same non-server components that were installed during the previous Advanced Server installation. The new cluster and the old cluster must reside in different directories.

#### Step 2 - Empty the target database

The target cluster must not contain any data; you can create an empty cluster using the `initdb` command, or you can empty a database that was created during the installation of Advanced Server 13. If you have installed Advanced Server in PostgreSQL mode, the installer creates a single database named `postgres`; if you have installed Advanced Server in Oracle mode, it creates a database named `postgres` and a database named `edb`.

The easiest way to empty the target database is to drop the database and then create a new database. Before invoking the `DROP DATABASE` command, you must disconnect any users and halt any services that are currently using the database.

On Windows, navigate through the **Control Panel** to the **Services** manager; highlight each service in the **Services** list, and select **Stop**.

On Linux, open a terminal window, assume superuser privileges, and manually stop each service; for example, if you are on Linux 6.x, invoke the following command to stop the pgAgent service:

```
service edb-pgagent-13 stop
```

After stopping any services that are currently connected to Advanced Server, you can use the EDB-PSQL command line client to drop and create a database. When the client opens, connect to the **template1** database as the database superuser; if prompted, provide authentication information. Then, use the following command to drop your database:

```
DROP DATABASE <database_name>;
```

Where **database\_name** is the name of the database.

Then, create an empty database based on the contents of the **template1** database.

```
CREATE DATABASE <database_name>;
```

### Step 3 - Set both servers in trust mode

During the upgrade process, **pg\_upgrade** will connect to the old and new servers several times; to make the connection process easier, you can edit the **pg\_hba.conf** file, setting the authentication mode to **trust**. To modify the **pg\_hba.conf** file, navigate through the **Start** menu to the **EDB Postgres** menu; to the **Advanced Server** menu, and open the **Expert Configuration** menu; select the **Edit pg\_hba.conf** menu option to open the **pg\_hba.conf** file.

You must allow trust authentication for the previous Advanced Server installation, and Advanced Server 13 servers. Edit the **pg\_hba.conf** file for both installations of Advanced Server as shown in the following figure.

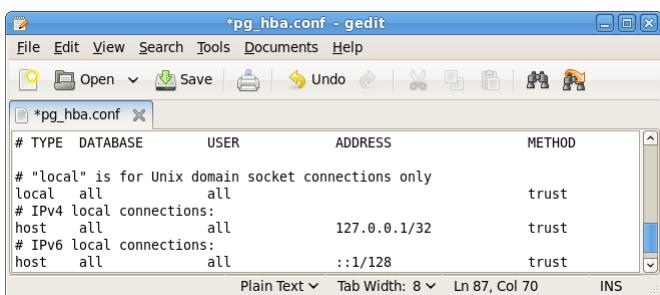


Fig. 1: Configuring Advanced Server to use *trust* authentication.

After editing each file, save the file and exit the editor.

If the system is required to maintain **md5** authentication mode during the upgrade process, you can specify user passwords for the database superuser in a password file (**pgpass.conf** on Windows, **.pgpass** on Linux). For more information about configuring a password file, see the PostgreSQL Core Documentation, available at:

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/libpq-pgpass.html>

### Step 4 - Stop All Component Services and Servers

Before you invoke **pg\_upgrade**, you must stop any services that belong to the original Advanced Server installation, Advanced Server 13, or the supporting components. This ensures that a service will not attempt to access either cluster during the upgrade process.

The services that are most likely to be running in your installation are:

Service:	On Linux:	On Windows:
Postgres Plus Advanced Server 9.0	ppas-9.0	ppas-9.0
Postgres Plus Advanced Server 9.1	ppas-9.1	ppas-9.1
Postgres Plus Advanced Server 9.2	ppas-9.2	ppas-9.2
Postgres Plus Advanced Server 9.3	ppas-9.3	ppas-9.3
Postgres Plus Advanced Server 9.4	ppas-9.4	ppas-9.4
Postgres Plus Advanced Server 9.5	ppas-9.5	ppas-9.5
EnterpriseDB Postgres Advanced Server 9.6	edb-as-9.6	edb-as-9.6
EnterpriseDB Postgres Advanced Server 10	edb-as-10	edb-as-10
EnterpriseDB Postgres Advanced Server 11	edb-as-11	edb-as-11
EnterpriseDB Postgres Advanced Server 12	edb-as-12	edb-as-12
EnterpriseDB Postgres Advanced Server 13	edb-as-13	edb-as-13
Advanced Server 9.0 Scheduling Agent	ppasAgent-90	Postgres Plus Advanced Server 90 Scheduling Agent
Advanced Server 9.1 Scheduling Agent	ppasAgent-91	Postgres Plus Advanced Server 91 Scheduling Agent
Advanced Server 9.2 Scheduling Agent	ppas-agent-9.2	Postgres Plus Advanced Server 9.2 Scheduling Agent
Advanced Server 9.3 Scheduling Agent	ppas-agent-9.3	Postgres Plus Advanced Server 9.3 Scheduling Agent
Advanced Server 9.4 Scheduling Agent	ppas-agent-9.4	Postgres Plus Advanced Server 9.4 Scheduling Agent
Advanced Server 9.5 Scheduling Agent	ppas-agent-9.5	Postgres Plus Advanced Server 9.5 Scheduling Agent
Advanced Server 9.6 Scheduling Agent (pgAgent)	edb-pgagent-9.6	EnterpriseDB Postgres Advanced Server 9.6 Scheduling Agent
Infinite Cache 9.2	ppas-infinitecache-9.2	N/A
Infinite Cache 9.3	ppas-infinitecache-9.3	N/A
Infinite Cache 9.4	ppas-infinitecache	N/A
Infinite Cache 9.5	ppas-infinitecache	N/A
Infinite Cache 9.6	edb-icache	N/A
Infinite Cache 10	edb-icache	N/A
PgBouncer 9.0	pgbouncer-90	pgbouncer-90
PgBouncer 9.1	pgbouncer-91	pgbouncer-91
PgBouncer 9.2	pgbouncer-9.2	pgbouncer-9.2
PgBouncer 9.3	pgbouncer-9.3	pgbouncer-9.3
PgBouncer	Pgbouncer	Pgbouncer
PgBouncer 1.6	ppas-pgbouncer-1.6 or ppas-pgbouncer16	ppas-pgbouncer-1.6
PgBouncer 1.7	edb-pgbouncer-1.7	edb-pgbouncer-1.7
PgPool 9.2	ppas-pgpool-9.2	N/A

Service:	On Linux:	On Windows:
PgPool 9.3	ppas-pgpool-9.3	N/A
PgPool	ppas-pgpool	N/A
PgPool 3.4	ppas-pgpool-3.4 or ppas-pgpool34	N/A
pgPool-II	edb-pgpool-3.5	N/A
Slony 9.2	ppas-replication-9.2	ppas-replication-9.2
Slony 9.3	ppas-replication-9.3	ppas-replication-9.3
Slony 9.4	ppas-replication-9.4	ppas-replication-9.4
Slony 9.5	ppas-replication-9.5	ppas-replication-9.5
Slony 9.6	edb-slony-replication-9.6	edb-slony-replication-9.6
xDB Publication Server 9.0	edb-xdbpubserver-90	Publication Service 90
xDB Publication Server 9.1	edb-xdbpubserver-91	Publication Service 91
xDB Subscription Server	edb-xdbsubserver-90	Subscription Service 90
xDB Subscription Server	edb-xdbsubserver-91	Subscription Service 91
EDB Replication Server v6.x	edb-xdbpubserver	Publication Service for xDB Replication Server
EDB Subscription Server v6.x	edb-xdbsubserver	Subscription Service for xDB Replication Server

#### To stop a service on Windows:

Open the `Services` applet; highlight each Advanced Server or supporting component service displayed in the list, and select `Stop`.

#### To stop a service on Linux:

Open a terminal window and manually stop each service at the command line.

#### Step 5 for Linux only - Assume the identity of the cluster owner

If you are using Linux, assume the identity of the Advanced Server cluster owner. (The following example assumes Advanced Server was installed in the default, compatibility with Oracle database mode, thus assigning `enterprisedb` as the cluster owner. If installed in compatibility with PostgreSQL database mode, `postgres` is the cluster owner.)

```
su - enterprisedb
```

Enter the Advanced Server cluster owner password if prompted. Then, set the path to include the location of the `pg_upgrade` executable:

```
export PATH=$PATH:/usr/edb/as13/bin
```

During the upgrade process, `pg_upgrade` writes a file to the current working directory of the `enterprisedb` user; you must invoke `pg_upgrade` from a directory where the `enterprisedb` user has `write` privileges. After performing the above commands, navigate to a directory in which the `enterprisedb` user has sufficient privileges to write a file.

```
cd /tmp
```

Proceed to Step 6.

#### Step 5 for Windows only - Assume the identity of the cluster owner

If you are using Windows, open a terminal window, assume the identity of the Advanced Server cluster owner and

set the path to the `pg_upgrade` executable.

If the `--serviceaccount service_account_user` parameter was specified during the initial installation of Advanced Server, then `service_account_user` is the Advanced Server cluster owner and is the user to be given with the `RUNAS` command.

```
RUNAS /USER:service_account_user "CMD.EXE"
SET PATH=%PATH%;C:\Program Files\edb\as13\bin
```

During the upgrade process, `pg_upgrade` writes a file to the current working directory of the service account user; you must invoke `pg_upgrade` from a directory where the service account user has `write` privileges. After performing the above commands, navigate to a directory in which the service account user has sufficient privileges to write a file.

```
cd %TEMP%
```

Proceed to Step 6.

If the `--serviceaccount` parameter was omitted during the initial installation of Advanced Server, then the default owner of the Advanced Server service and the database cluster is `NT AUTHORITY\NetworkService`.

When `NT AUTHORITY\NetworkService` is the service account user, the `RUNAS` command may not be usable as it prompts for a password and the `NT AUTHORITY\NetworkService` account is not assigned a password. Thus, there is typically a failure with an error message such as, “Unable to acquire user password”.

Under this circumstance a Windows utility program named `PsExec` must be used to run `CMD.EXE` as the service account `NT AUTHORITY\NetworkService`.

The `PsExec` program must be obtained by downloading `PsTools`, which is available at the following site:

<https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/sysinternals/bb897553.aspx>.

You can then use the following command to run `CMD.EXE` as `NT AUTHORITY\NetworkService`, and then set the path to the `pg_upgrade` executable.

```
psexec.exe -u "NT AUTHORITY\NetworkService" CMD.EXE
SET PATH=%PATH%;C:\Program Files\edb\as13\bin
```

During the upgrade process, `pg_upgrade` writes a file to the current working directory of the service account user; you must invoke `pg_upgrade` from a directory where the service account user has `write` privileges. After performing the above commands, navigate to a directory in which the service account user has sufficient privileges to write a file.

```
cd %TEMP%
```

Proceed with Step 6.

## Step 6 - Perform a consistency check

Before attempting an upgrade, perform a consistency check to assure that the old and new clusters are compatible and properly configured. Include the `--check` option to instruct `pg_upgrade` to perform the consistency check.

The following example demonstrates invoking `pg_upgrade` to perform a consistency check on Linux:

```
pg_upgrade -d /var/lib/edb/as12/data
-D /var/lib/edb/as13/data -U enterprise
-b /usr/edb/as12/bin -B /usr/edb/as13/bin -p 5444 -P 5445 --check
```

If the command is successful, it will return `*Clusters are compatible*`.

If you are using Windows, you must quote any directory names that contain a space:

```
pg_upgrade.exe
-d "C:\Program Files\ PostgresPlus\12AS\data"
-D "C:\Program Files\edb\as13\data" -U enterpriseedb
-b "C:\Program Files\PostgresPlus\12AS\bin"
-B "C:\Program Files\edb\as13\bin" -p 5444 -P 5445 --check
```

During the consistency checking process, `pg_upgrade` will log any discrepancies that it finds to a file located in the directory from which `pg_upgrade` was invoked. When the consistency check completes, review the file to identify any missing components or upgrade conflicts. You must resolve any conflicts before invoking `pg_upgrade` to perform a version upgrade.

If `pg_upgrade` alerts you to a missing component, you can use StackBuilder Plus to add the component that contains the component. Before using StackBuilder Plus, you must restart the Advanced Server 13 service. After restarting the service, open StackBuilder Plus by navigating through the `Start` menu to the `Advanced Server 13` menu, and selecting `StackBuilder Plus`. Follow the onscreen advice of the StackBuilder Plus wizard to download and install the missing components.

When `pg_upgrade` has confirmed that the clusters are compatible, you can perform a version upgrade.

### Step 7 - Run pg\_upgrade

After confirming that the clusters are compatible, you can invoke `pg_upgrade` to upgrade the old cluster to the new version of Advanced Server.

On Linux:

```
pg_upgrade -d /var/lib/edb/as12/data
-D /var/lib/edb/as13/data -U enterpriseedb
-b /usr/edb/as12/bin -B /usr/edb/as13/bin -p 5444 -P 5445
```

On Windows:

```
pg_upgrade.exe -d "C:\Program Files\PostgresPlus\12AS\data"
-D "C:\Program Files\edb\as13\data" -U enterpriseedb
-b "C:\Program Files\PostgresPlus\12AS\bin"
-B "C:\Program Files\edb\as13\bin" -p 5444 -P 5445
```

`pg_upgrade` will display the progress of the upgrade onscreen:

```
$ pg_upgrade -d /var/lib/edb/as12/data -D /var/lib/edb/as13/data -U
enterpriseedb -b /usr/edb/as12/bin -B /usr/edb/as13/bin -p 5444 -P 5445
```

Performing Consistency Checks

```
-----
Checking current, bin, and data directories      ok
Checking cluster versions                      ok
Checking database user is a superuser          ok
Checking for prepared transactions             ok
Checking for reg* system OID user data types   ok
Checking for contrib/isn with bigint-passing mismatch  ok
Creating catalog dump                          ok
Checking for presence of required libraries    ok
Checking database user is a superuser          ok
Checking for prepared transactions             ok
```

If `pg_upgrade` fails after this point, you must re-initdb the new cluster before continuing.

## Performing Upgrade

---

Analyzing all rows in the new cluster	ok
Freezing all rows on the new cluster	ok
Deleting files from new pg_clog	ok
Copying old pg_clog to new server	ok
Setting next transaction ID for new cluster	ok
Resetting WAL archives	ok
Setting frozenid counters in new cluster	ok
Creating databases in the new cluster	ok
Adding support functions to new cluster	ok
Restoring database schema to new cluster	ok
Removing support functions from new cluster	ok
Copying user relation files	ok
Setting next OID for new cluster	ok
Creating script to analyze new cluster	ok
Creating script to delete old cluster	ok

## Upgrade Complete

---

Optimizer statistics are not transferred by pg\_upgrade so, once you start the new server, consider running:

```
analyze_new_cluster.sh
```

Running this script will delete the old cluster's data files:

```
delete_old_cluster.sh
```

While pg\_upgrade runs, it may generate SQL scripts that handle special circumstances that it has encountered during your upgrade. For example, if the old cluster contains large objects, you may need to invoke a script that defines the default permissions for the objects in the new cluster. When performing the pre-upgrade consistency check pg\_upgrade will alert you to any script that you may be required to run manually.

You must invoke the scripts after pg\_upgrade completes. To invoke the scripts, connect to the new cluster as a database superuser with the EDB-PSQL command line client, and invoke each script using the \i option:

```
\i complete_path_to_script/script.sql
```

It is generally unsafe to access tables referenced in rebuild scripts until the rebuild scripts have completed; accessing the tables could yield incorrect results or poor performance. Tables not referenced in rebuild scripts can be accessed immediately.

If pg\_upgrade fails to complete the upgrade process, the old cluster will be unchanged, except that \$PGDATA/global/pg\_control is renamed to pg\_control.old and each tablespace is renamed to tablespace.old. To revert to the pre-invocation state:

1. Delete any tablespace directories created by the new cluster.
2. Rename \$PGDATA/global/pg\_control, removing the .old suffix.
3. Rename the old cluster tablespace directory names, removing the .old suffix.
4. Remove any database objects (from the new cluster) that may have been moved before the upgrade failed.

After performing these steps, resolve any upgrade conflicts encountered before attempting the upgrade again.

When the upgrade is complete, pg\_upgrade may also recommend vacuuming the new cluster, and will provide a script that allows you to delete the old cluster.

**Note:** Before removing the old cluster, ensure that the cluster has been upgraded as expected, and that you have preserved a backup of the cluster in case you need to revert to a previous version.

## Step 8 - Restore the authentication settings in the pg\_hba.conf file

If you modified the `pg_hba.conf` file to permit `trust` authentication, update the contents of the `pg_hba.conf` file to reflect your preferred authentication settings.

## Step 9 - Move and identify user-defined tablespaces (Optional)

If you have data stored in a user-defined tablespace, you must manually relocate tablespace files after upgrading; move the files to the new location and update the symbolic links (located in the `pg_tblspc` directory under your cluster's `data` directory) to point to the files.

---

## 20.3.4 Upgrading a pgAgent Installation

If your existing Advanced Server installation uses pgAgent, you can use a script provided with the Advanced Server 13 installer to update pgAgent. The script is named `dbms_job.upgrade.script.sql`, and is located in the `/share/contrib/` directory under your Advanced Server installation.

If you are using `pg_upgrade` to upgrade your installation, you should:

1. Perform the upgrade.
  2. Invoke the `dbms_job.upgrade.script.sql` script to update the catalog files. If your existing pgAgent installation was performed with a script, the update will convert the installation to an extension.
- 

## 20.3.5 pg\_upgrade Troubleshooting

The troubleshooting tips in this section address problems you may encounter when using `pg_upgrade`.

### Upgrade Error - There seems to be a postmaster servicing the cluster

If `pg_upgrade` reports that a postmaster is servicing the cluster, please stop all Advanced Server services and try the upgrade again.

### Upgrade Error - fe\_sendauth: no password supplied

If `pg_upgrade` reports an authentication error that references a missing password, please modify the `pg_hba.conf` files in the old and new cluster to enable `trust` authentication, or configure the system to use a `pgpass.conf` file.

### Upgrade Error - New cluster is not empty; exiting

If `pg_upgrade` reports that the new cluster is not empty, please empty the new cluster. The target cluster may not contain any user-defined databases.

## Upgrade Error - Failed to load library

If the original Advanced Server cluster included libraries that are not included in the Advanced Server 13 cluster, `pg_upgrade` will alert you to the missing component during the consistency check by writing an entry to the `loadable_libraries.txt` file in the directory from which you invoked `pg_upgrade`. Generally, for missing libraries that are not part of a major component upgrade, perform the following steps:

1. Restart the Advanced Server service.

Use StackBuilder Plus to download and install the missing module. Then:

2. Stop the Advanced Server service.
3. Resume the upgrade process: invoke `pg_upgrade` to perform consistency checking.
4. When you have resolved any remaining problems noted in the consistency checks, invoke `pg_upgrade` to perform the data migration from the old cluster to the new cluster.

### 20.3.6 Reverting to the Old Cluster

The method used to revert to a previous cluster varies with the options specified when invoking `pg_upgrade`:

- If you specified the `--check` option when invoking `pg_upgrade`, an upgrade has not been performed, and no modifications have been made to the old cluster; you can re-use the old cluster at any time.
- If you included the `--link` option when invoking `pg_upgrade`, the data files are shared between the old and new cluster after the upgrade completes. If you have started the server that is servicing the new cluster, the new server has written to those shared files and it is unsafe to use the old cluster.
- If you ran `pg_upgrade` without the `--link` specification or have not started the new server, the old cluster is unchanged, except that the `.old` suffix has been appended to the `$PGDATA/global/pg_control` and tablespace directories.
- To reuse the old cluster, delete the tablespace directories created by the new cluster and remove the `.old` suffix from `$PGDATA/global/pg_control` and the old cluster tablespace directory names and restart the server that services the old cluster.

## 20.4 Performing a Minor Version Update of an RPM Installation

If you used an RPM package to install Advanced Server or its supporting components, you can use `yum` to perform a minor version upgrade to a more recent version. To review a list of the package updates that are available for your system, open a command line, assume root privileges, and enter the command:

```
yum check-update <package_name>
```

Where `package_name` is the search term for which you wish to search for updates. Please note that you can include wild-card values in the search term. To use `yum update` to install an updated package, use the command:

```
yum update <package_name>
```

Where `package_name` is the name of the package you wish to update. Include wild-card values in the update command to update multiple related packages with a single command. For example, use the following command

to update all packages whose names include the expression `edb`:

```
yum update edb*
```

**Note:** The `yum update` command will only perform an update between minor releases; to update between major releases, you must use `pg_upgrade`.

For more information about using yum commands and options, enter `yum --help` on your command line, or visit:

[https://access.redhat.com/documentation/en-US/Red\\_Hat\\_Enterprise\\_Linux/6/html/Deployment\\_Guide/ch-yum.html](https://access.redhat.com/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux/6/html/Deployment_Guide/ch-yum.html)

## 20.5 Using StackBuilder Plus to Perform a Minor Version Update

StackBuilder Plus is supported only on Windows systems.

The StackBuilder Plus utility provides a graphical interface that simplifies the process of updating, downloading, and installing modules that complement your Advanced Server installation. When you install a module with StackBuilder Plus, StackBuilder Plus automatically resolves any software dependencies.

You can invoke StackBuilder Plus at any time after the installation has completed by selecting the `StackBuilder Plus` menu option from the `Apps` menu. Enter your system password (if prompted), and the StackBuilder Plus welcome window opens.



Fig. 1: The StackBuilder Plus welcome window

Use the drop-down listbox on the welcome window to select your Advanced Server installation.

StackBuilder Plus requires Internet access; if your installation of Advanced Server resides behind a firewall (with restricted Internet access), StackBuilder Plus can download program installers through a proxy server. The module provider determines if the module can be accessed through an HTTP proxy or an FTP proxy; currently, all updates are transferred via an HTTP proxy and the FTP proxy information is not used.

If the selected Advanced Server installation has restricted Internet access, use the `Proxy Servers` on the `Welcome` window to open the `Proxy servers` dialog (shown in the following figure).

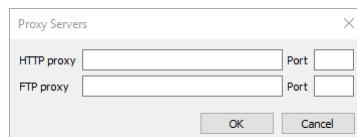


Fig. 2: *The Proxy servers dialog*

Enter the IP address and port number of the proxy server in the **HTTP proxy** on the **Proxy servers** dialog. Currently, all StackBuilder Plus modules are distributed via HTTP proxy (FTP proxy information is ignored). Click **OK** to continue.

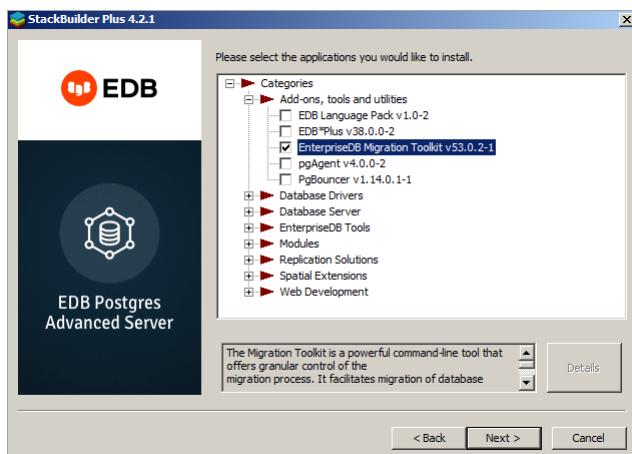


Fig. 3: *The StackBuilder Plus module selection window*

The tree control on the StackBuilder Plus module selection window (shown in the figure) displays a node for each module category.

To add a new component to the selected Advanced Server installation or to upgrade a component, check the box to the left of the module name and click **Next**. If prompted, enter your email address and password on the StackBuilder Plus registration window.

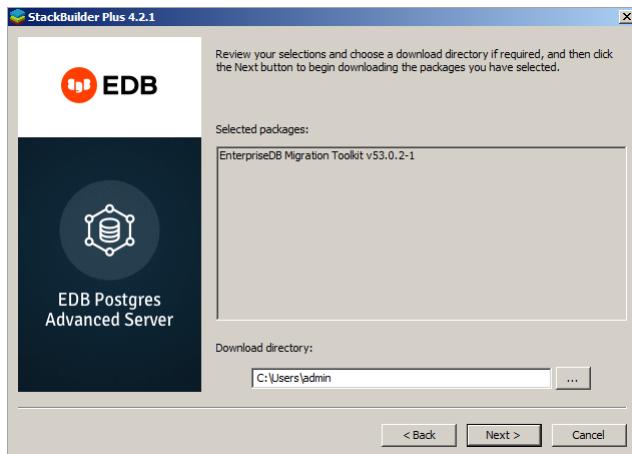


Fig. 4: *A summary window displays a list of selected packages*

StackBuilder Plus confirms the packages selected. The **Selected packages** dialog will display the name and version of the installer; click **Next** to continue.

When the download completes, a window opens that confirms the installation files have been downloaded and are ready for installation.



Fig. 5: Confirmation that the download process is complete

You can check the box next to **Skip Installation**, and select **Next** to exit StackBuilder Plus without installing the downloaded files, or leave the box unchecked and click **Next** to start the installation process.

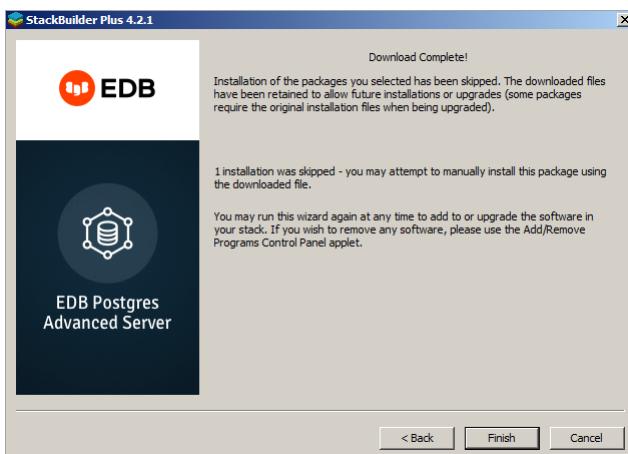


Fig. 6: StackBuilder Plus confirms the completed installation

When the upgrade is complete, StackBuilder Plus will alert you to the success or failure of the installation of the requested package. If you were prompted by an installer to restart your computer, reboot now.

**Note:** If the update fails to install, StackBuilder Plus will alert you to the installation error with a popup dialog and write a message to the log file at `%TEMP%`.

## 20.6 Migration to Version 13

A dump/restore using `pg_dumpall` or `pg_upgrade` or logical replication is required for migrating data from any previous release. See [Upgrading an Installation With pg\\_upgrade](#) for information on migrating to new major releases.

Version 13 contains a number of changes that may affect compatibility with previous releases. Listed is the following incompatibilities:

- Change `SIMILAR TO ... ESCAPE NULL` to return `NULL`.

This new behavior matches the SQL specification. Previously a null `ESCAPE` value was taken to mean using the default escape string (a backslash character). This also applies to `substring (text FROM pattern ESCAPE`

`text`). The previous behavior has been retained in old views by keeping the original function unchanged.

- Make `json[b]_to_tsvector()` fully check the spelling of its `string` option.
- Change the way non-default `effective_io_concurrency` values affect concurrency.

Previously, this value was adjusted before setting the number of concurrent requests. The value is now used directly. Conversion of old values to new ones can be done using:

```
SELECT round(sum(OLDVALUE / n::float)) AS newvalue FROM generate_
series(1, OLDVALUE) s(n);
```

- Prevent display of auxiliary processes in `pg_stat_ssl` and `pg_stat_gssapi` system views. Queries that join these views to `pg_stat_activity` and wish to see auxiliary processes will need to use left joins.
- Rename various `wait events` to improve consistency.
- Fix `ALTER FOREIGN TABLE ... RENAME COLUMN` to return a more appropriate command tag. Previously it returned `ALTER TABLE`; now it returns `ALTER FOREIGN TABLE`.
- Fix `ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW ... RENAME COLUMN` to return a more appropriate command tag. Previously it returned `ALTER TABLE`; now it returns `ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW`.
- Rename configuration parameter `wal_keep_segments` to `wal_keep_size`.

This determines how much WAL to retain for standby servers. It is specified in megabytes, rather than number of files as with the old parameter. If you previously used `wal_keep_segments`, the following formula will give you an approximately equivalent setting:

```
wal_keep_size = wal_keep_segments * wal_segment_size (typically 16MB)
```

- Remove support for defining operator classes using pre-PostgreSQL 8.0 syntax.
- Remove support for defining foreign key constraints using pre-PostgreSQL 7.3 syntax.
- Remove support for "opaque" pseudo-types used by pre-PostgreSQL 7.3 servers.
- Remove support for upgrading unpackaged (pre-9.1) extensions.

The `FROM` option of `CREATE EXTENSION` is no longer supported. Any installations still using unpackaged extensions should upgrade them to a packaged version before updating to PostgreSQL 13.

- Remove support for `posixrules` files in the timezone database.

IANA's timezone group has deprecated this feature, meaning that it will gradually disappear from systems' timezone databases over the next few years. Rather than have a behavioral change appear unexpectedly with a timezone data update, we have removed PostgreSQL's support for this feature as of version 13. This affects only the behavior of POSIX-style time zone specifications that lack an explicit daylight savings transition rule; formerly the transition rule could be determined by installing a custom `posixrules` file, but now it is hard-wired. The recommended fix for any affected installations is to start using a geographical time zone name.

- In ltree, when an `Iquery` pattern contains adjacent asterisks with braces, e.g., `*{2}.*{3}`, properly interpret that as `*{5}`.
- Fix pageinspect's `bt_metap()` to return more appropriate data types that are less likely to overflow.
- The `SELECT DISTINCT...ORDER BY` clause of the `SELECT DISTINCT` query behavior differs after upgrade.

If `SELECT DISTINCT` is specified or if a `SELECT` statement includes the `SELECT DISTINCT ... ORDER BY` clause then all the expressions in `ORDER BY` must be present in the select list of the `SELECT DISTINCT` query (applicable when upgrading from version 9.5 or 9.6 to any higher version of Advanced Server).

- All objects depending on collation must be rebuilt using `pg_upgrade` to migrate from earlier versions (12, 11, 10, 9.6, 9.5) using ICU to the latest Advanced Server version.

A change in collation definitions can lead to corrupt indexes and other problems because the database system relies on stored objects having a certain sort order. Generally, this should be avoided, but it can happen in legitimate circumstances, such as when using `pg_upgrade` to upgrade to server binaries linked with a newer version of ICU. When this happens, all objects depending on the collation should be rebuilt, for example, using `REINDEX`. When that is done, the collation version can be refreshed using the command `ALTER COLLATION ... REFRESH VERSION`. This will update the system catalog to record the current collator version and will make the warning go away. Note that this does not actually check whether all affected objects have been rebuilt correctly.

---

## 21 EDB Postgres Language Pack Guide

This guide provides information about how to install and configure Language Pack, as well as how to use the procedural languages (PL/Perl, PL/Python, and PL/TCL).

Language pack installers contain supported languages that may be used with EDB Postgres Advanced Server and EnterpriseDB PostgreSQL database installers. The language pack installer allows you to install Perl, TCL/TK, and Python without installing supporting software from third-party vendors.

The Language Pack 1.0 installer includes:

- TCL with TK version 8.6
- Perl version 5.26
- Python version 3.7

The Perl package contains the `cpan` package manager, and Python contains `pip` and `easy_install` package managers. There is no package manager for TCL/TK.

In previous Postgres releases, `plpython` was statically linked with ActiveState's python library. The Language Pack Installer dynamically links with our shared object for python. In ActiveState Linux installers for Python, there is no dynamic library. As a result of these changes, `plpython` will no longer work with ActiveState installers.

### Convention Used in this Guide

The term *Postgres* refers to either PostgreSQL or EDB Postgres Advanced Server.

---

## 21.1 Supported Database Server Versions

Language Pack installers are version and platform specific; select the Language Pack installer that corresponds to your EDB Postgres Advanced Server or PostgreSQL server version:

### Linux:

EDB Postgres Advanced Server/PostgreSQL Version	Language Pack Version	Procedural Language Version
9.5	9.5	Perl 5.20, Python 3.3, Tcl 8.5
9.6, 10	1.0	Perl 5.26, Python 3.7, Tcl 8.6

For detailed information about using an RPM package to add Language Pack, please see the EDB Postgres Advanced Server Installation Guide for Linux, available at the [EDB website](#).

#### Mac OS:

PostgreSQL Version	Language Pack Version	Procedural Language Version
9.5, 9.6, 10, 11, 12, 13	1.0	Perl 5.26, Python 3.7, Tcl 8.6

#### Windows 32:

EDB Postgres Advanced Server/PostgreSQL Version	Language Pack Version	Procedural Language Version
9.5	9.5	Perl 5.20, Python 3.3, Tcl 8.5
9.6, 10	1.0	Perl 5.26, Python 3.7, Tcl 8.6

#### Windows 64:

EDB Postgres Advanced Server/PostgreSQL Version	Language Pack Version	Procedural Language Version
PostgreSQL 9.5	9.5	Perl 5.20, Python 3.3, Tcl 8.5
PostgreSQL 9.6, 10, 11, 12, 13	1.0	Perl 5.26, Python 3.7, Tcl 8.8
EDB Postgres Advanced Server 12	1.0	Perl 5.26, Python 3.7, Tcl 8.6

## 21.2 Installing and Configuring Language Pack

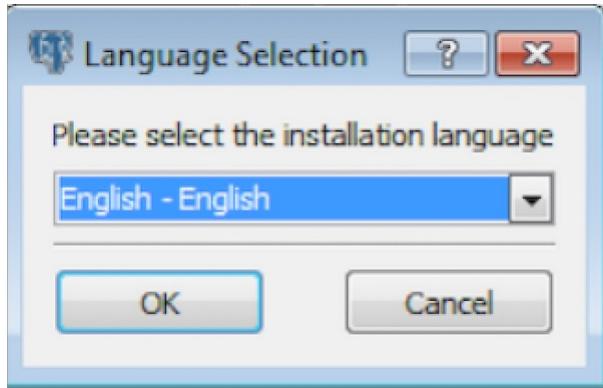
This section walks you through installing and configuring Language Pack.

### Installing Language Pack

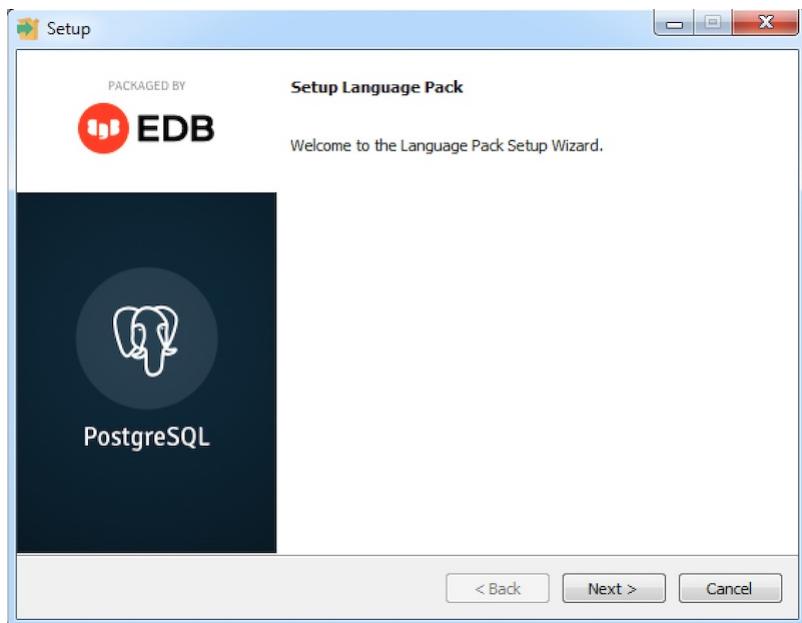
The graphical installer is available from the [EDB website](#), as well as via Stack Builder and StackBuilder Plus. StackBuilder Plus is distributed with EDB Postgres Advanced Server and Stack Builder is distributed with PostgreSQL.

### Invoking the Graphical Installer

Assume Administrator privileges, and double-click the installer icon; if prompted, provide the password associated with the Administrator account. When prompted, select an installation language, and click **OK**.



The Language Pack setup wizard welcome window opens.

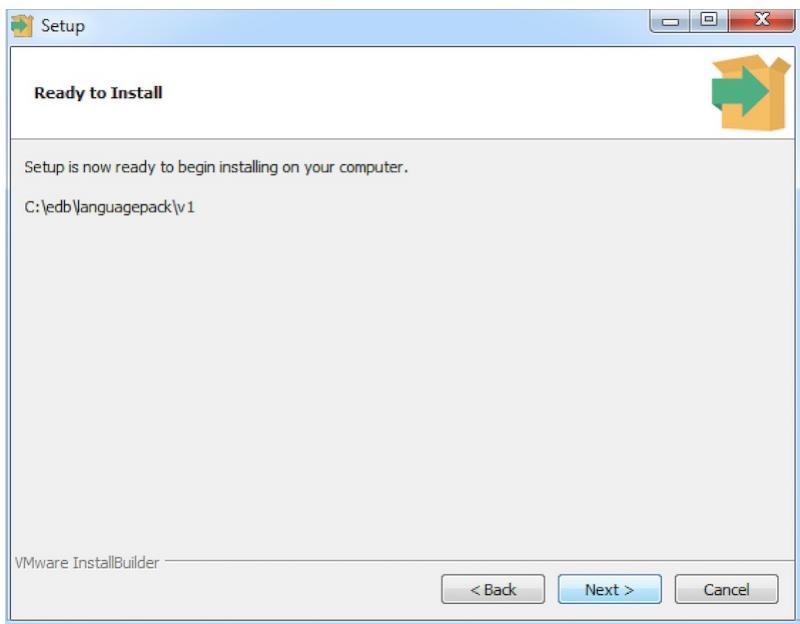


Click **Next** to continue.

The Ready to Install window displays the Language Pack installation directory:

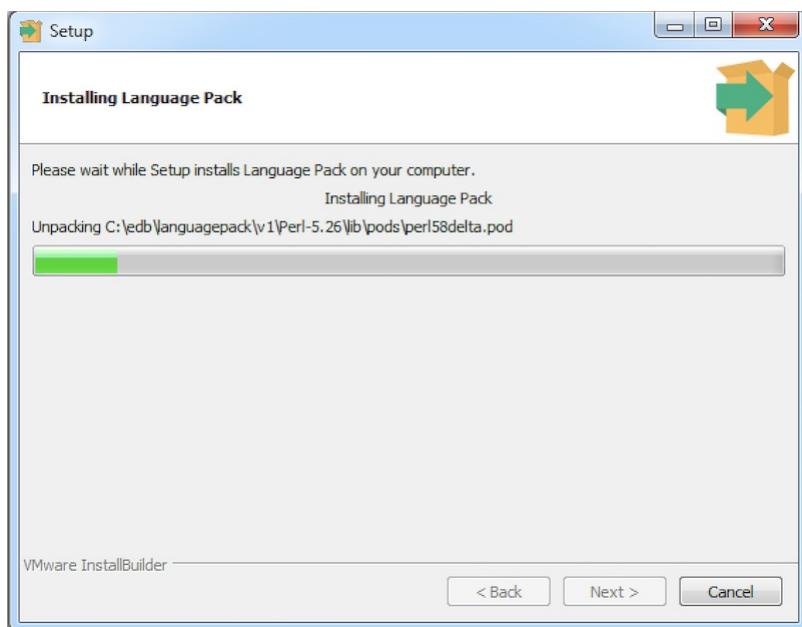
On Windows 64: `C:/edb/languagepack/v1`

On OSX: `/Library/edb/languagepack/v1`



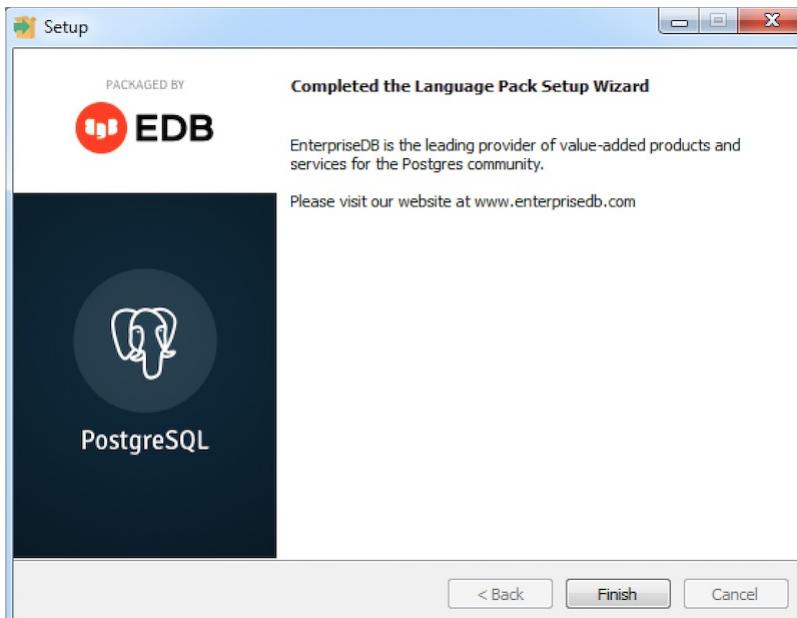
You cannot modify the installation directory. Click **Next** to continue.

A progress bar marks installation progress.



Click **Next** to continue.

The installer will inform you that the Language Pack installation has completed; click **Finish** to exit the installer.



## Installing Language Pack with Stack Builder

You can use Stack Builder or StackBuilder Plus to download and invoke the Language Pack graphical installer. StackBuilder Plus is distributed with EDB Postgres Advanced Server and Stack Builder is distributed with PostgreSQL.

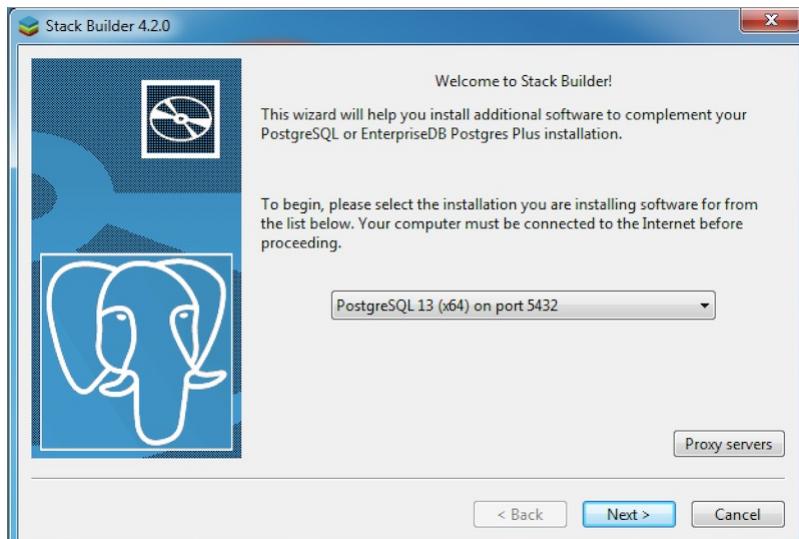
The following section walks you through installing Language Pack with Stack Builder.

The Stack Builder utility provides a graphical interface that simplifies the process of downloading and installing modules that complement your PostgreSQL installation.

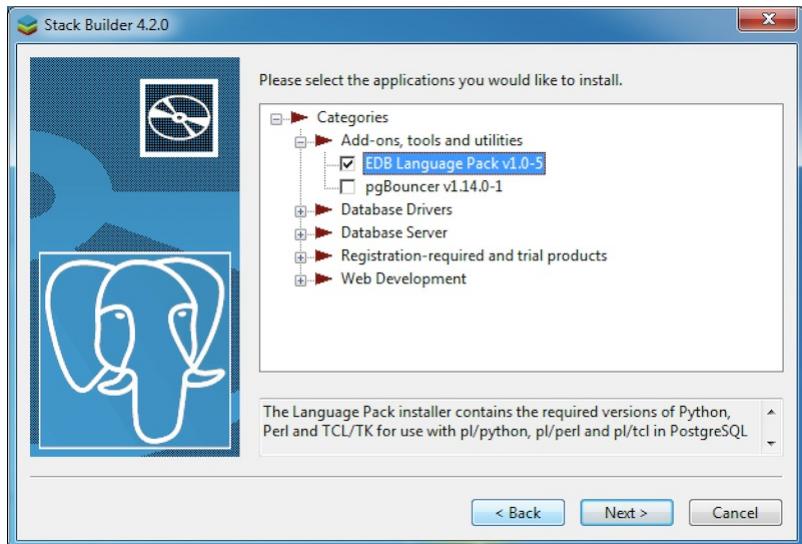
Stack Builder requires Internet access; if your installation of PostgreSQL resides behind a firewall (with restricted Internet access), Stack Builder can download program installers through a proxy server. The module provider determines if the module can be accessed through an HTTP proxy or an FTP proxy; currently, all updates are transferred via an HTTP proxy and the FTP proxy information is not used.

You can invoke Stack Builder at any time after the installation has completed by selecting the **Application Stack Builder** menu option from the **PostgreSQL 13** menu.

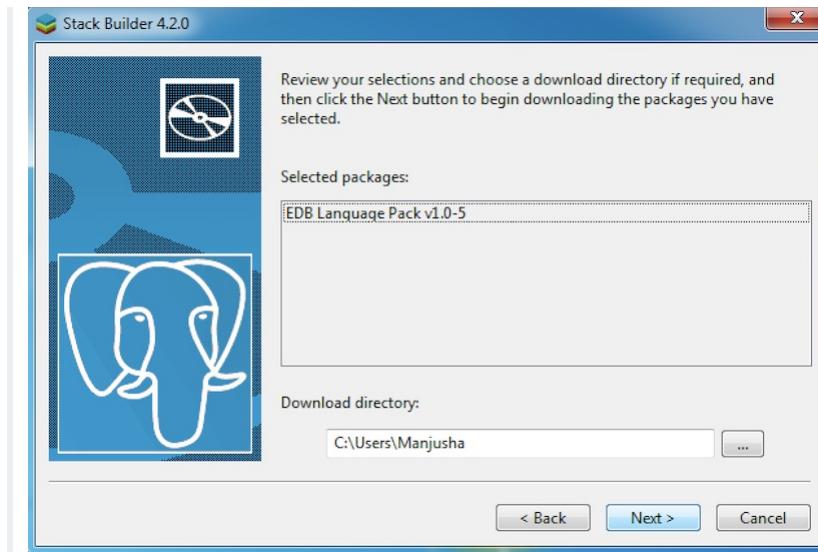
Select your server from the drop-down menu on the Stack Builder Welcome window and click **Next** to continue.



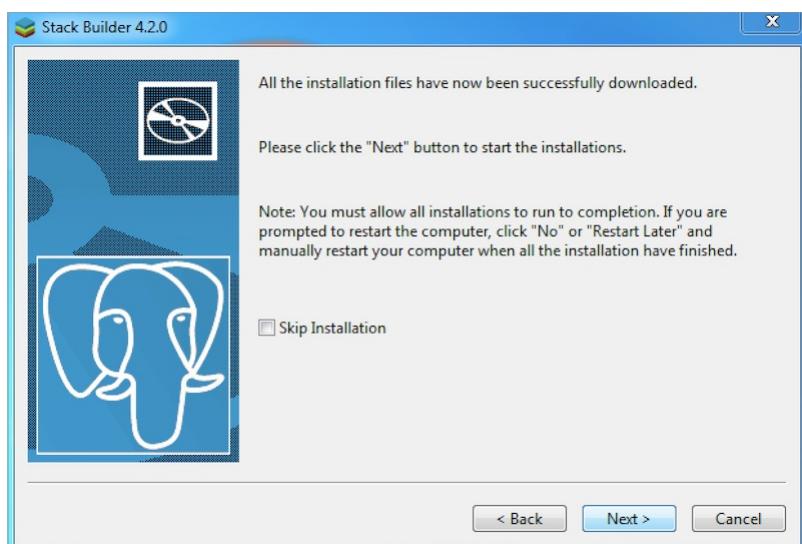
Expand the **Add-ons, tools and utilities** node of the **Categories** tree control, and check the box next to **EDB Language Pack v1.0-5**. Click **Next** to continue.



Stack Builder will confirm your package selection before downloading the installer. Click **Next** to continue.



When the download completes, Stack Builder will offer to invoke the installer for you, or will delay the installation until a more convenient time. To invoke the installer, click **Next** and follow the steps provided in the [Invoking the Graphical Installer section](#).



## Configuring Language Pack

This section walks you through configuring Language Pack on an Advanced Server and PostgreSQL hosts.

### Configuring Language Pack on an Advanced Server Host

After installing Language Pack on an Advanced Server host, you must configure the installation.

#### Configuring Language Pack on Windows

On Windows, the Language Pack installer places the languages in:

```
C:\edb\languagepack\v1
```

After installing Language Pack, you must set the following variables:

```
set PYTHONHOME=C:\edb\languagepack\v1\Python-3.7
```

Use the following commands to add Python, Perl and Tcl to your search path:

```
set PATH=C:\edb\languagepack\v1\Python-3.7;
C:\edb\languagepack\v1\Perl-5.26\bin;
C:\edb\languagepack\v1\Tcl-8.6\bin;%PATH%
```

After performing the steps required to configure Language Pack on Windows, use the Windows [Services](#) applet to restart the Advanced Server.

### Configuring Language Pack on a PostgreSQL Host

After installing Language Pack on a PostgreSQL host, you must configure the installation.

#### Configuring Language Pack on Windows

After installing Language Pack, you must set the following variables:

```
set PYTHONHOME=C:\edb\languagepack\v1\Python-3.7
```

Then, use the following commands to add Language Pack to your search path:

```
set PATH=C:\edb\languagepack\v1\Python-3.7;
C:\edb\languagepack\v1\Perl-5.26\bin;
C:\edb\languagepack\v1\Tcl-8.6\bin;%PATH%
```

After setting the system-specific steps required to configure Language Pack on Windows, restart the database server.

#### Configuring Language Pack on OSX

To simplify setting the value of `PATH` or `LD_LIBRARY_PATH`, you can create environment variables that identify the installation location:

```
PERLHOME=/Library/edb/languagepack/v1/Perl-5.26
PYTHONHOME=/Library/edb/languagepack/v1/Python-3.7
TCLHOME=/Library/edb/languagepack/v1/Tcl-8.6
```

Then, execute the following command to instruct the Python interpreter where to find Python:

```
| export PYTHONHOME
```

You can use the same environment variables when setting the value of `PATH`:

```
export PATH=$PYTHONHOME/bin:  
$PERLHOME/bin:  
$TCLHOME/bin:$PATH
```

Lastly, set the following variables to instruct OSX where to find the shared libraries:

```
export DYLD_LIBRARY_PATH=$PYTHONHOME/lib:  
$PERLHOME/lib/CORE:$TCLHOME/lib:  
$DYLD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

## 21.3 Using the Procedural Languages

The Postgres procedural languages (PL/Perl, PL/Python, and PL/Java) are installed by the Language Pack installer. You can also use an RPM package to add procedural language functionality to your EDB Postgres Advanced Server installation. For more information about using an RPM package, please see the EDB Postgres Advanced Server Installation Guide, available at the [EDB website](#).

### PL/Perl

The PL/Perl procedural language allows you to use Perl functions in Postgres applications.

You must install PL/Perl in each database (or in a template database) before creating a PL/Perl function. Use the `CREATE LANGUAGE` command at the EDB-PSQL command line to install PL/Perl. Open the EDB-PSQL client, establish a connection to the database in which you wish to install PL/Perl, and enter the command:

```
| CREATE EXTENSION plperl;
```

You can now use a Postgres client application to access the features of the PL/Perl language. The following PL/Perl example creates a function named `perl_max` that returns the larger of two integer values:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION perl_max (integer, integer) RETURNS integer  
AS  
$$  
if ($_[0] > $_[1])  
{ return $_[0]; }  
return $_[1];  
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

Pass two values when calling the function:

```
| SELECT perl_max(1, 2);
```

The server returns:

```
perl_max
```

```
-----  
 2  
(1 row)
```

For more information about using the Perl procedural language, consult the official [PostgreSQL documentation](#).

## PL/Python

The PL/Python procedural language allows you to create and execute functions written in Python within Postgres applications. The version of PL/Python used by EDB Postgres Advanced Server and PostgreSQL is untrusted ([plpython3u](#)); it offers no restrictions on users to prevent potential security risks.

Install PL/Python in each database (or in a template database) before creating a PL/Python function. You can use the [CREATE LANGUAGE](#) command at the EDB-PSQL command line to install PL/Python. Use EDB-PSQL to connect to the database in which you wish to install PL/Python, and enter the command:

```
| CREATE EXTENSION plpython3u;
```

After installing PL/Python in your database, you can use the features of the PL/Python language.

### Note

The indentation shown in the following example must be included as you enter the sample function in EDB-PSQL.

The following PL/Python example creates a function named [pymax](#) that returns the larger of two integer values:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION pymax(a integer, b integer) RETURNS
integer AS
$$
if a > b:
return a
return b
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

When calling the [pymax](#) function, pass two values as shown below:

```
| SELECT pymax(12, 3);
```

The server returns:

```
pymax
-----  
 12  
(1 row)
```

For more information about using the Python procedural language, consult the official [PostgreSQL documentation](#).

## PL/Tcl

The PL/Tcl procedural language allows you to use Tcl/Tk functions in applications.

You must install PL/Tcl in each database (or in a template database) before creating a PL/Tcl function. Use the [CREATE LANGUAGE](#) command at the EDB-PSQL command line to install PL/Tcl. Use the psql client to connect to the database in which you wish to install PL/Tcl, and enter the command:

## CREATE EXTENSION pltcl;

After creating the `pltcl` language, you can use the features of the PL/Tcl language from within your Postgres server.

The following PL/Tcl example creates a function named `tcl_max` that returns the larger of two integer values:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION tcl_max(integer, integer) RETURNS integer
AS $$$
if {[argisnull 1]} {
if {[argisnull 2]} { return_null }
return $2
}
if {[argisnull 2]} { return $1 }
if {$1 > $2} {return $1}
return $2
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
```

Pass two values when calling the function:

```
SELECT tcl_max(1, 2);
```

The server returns:

```
tcl_max
-----
2
(1 row)
```

For more information about using the Tcl procedural language, consult the official [PostgreSQL documentation](#).

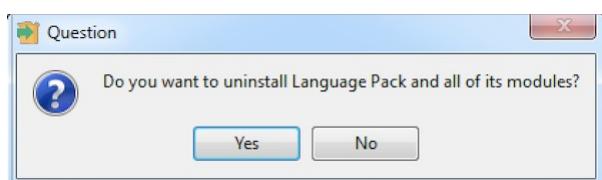
## 21.4 Uninstalling Language Pack

The following section outlines the process of uninstalling Language Pack.

The Language Pack graphical installer creates an uninstaller that you can use to remove Language Pack. The uninstaller is created in the installation directory.

Perform the following steps to uninstall Language Pack:

1. Navigate into the directory that contains the uninstaller and assume superuser privileges. Open the uninstaller and click `Yes` to begin uninstalling Language Pack.



1. The uninstallation process begins. Click `OK` when the uninstallation completes.

